



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL 28 SUPPLEMENTUM 291

---

ASSESSMENT  
OF PHYSICAL CAPABILITIES

With special reference to the evaluation  
of maximal voluntary isometric muscle strength  
and maximal working capacity

An experimental study on civilian and military  
*subject groups*

BY

GUNNAR TORNVALL

---

STOCKHOLM 1963





# ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL 58 SUPPLEMENTUM 201

*From the Department of Clinical Physiology (Head, Prof Torgny Sjöstrand M.D.)  
and the Military Medical Examination Centre (Swedish Defence Medical Board,  
Head Surgeon General C. E. Groth, M.D.)  
Karolinska Sjukhuset Stockholm, Sweden*

---

## ASSESSMENT OF PHYSICAL CAPABILITIES

With special reference to the evaluation  
of maximal voluntary isometric muscle strength  
and maximal working capacity

An experimental study on civilian and military subject groups

BY

GUNNAR TORNVALL



# Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>Part I General</b>	<b>7</b>
<i>Chapter I Methods</i>	<b>9</b>
Clinical examination	9
Anthropometric determinations	9
Laboratory methods	10
Roentgenological determination of heart volume	10
Determination of total haemoglobin and blood volume	10
Determination of lactic acid concentration	11
Statistical methods	11
<i>Chapter II Material</i>	<b>13</b>
Military subject groups	13
Civilian subject groups	16
<b>Part II Evaluation of maximal isometric muscle strength</b>	<b>17</b>
<i>Chapter III Earlier investigations</i>	<b>19</b>
<i>Chapter IV Method</i>	<b>21</b>
Principle	21
Apparatus	21
Procedure	23
Evaluation of method	27
Instrumental equipment	27
Biological factors	29
A Position	29
B Sequence of testing	30
C Effect of repeated tests	30
D Twenty four hours variation	32
E Disposition of the individual	32
F Reproducibility	33
Significance of strength recordings	33



# Contents

Introduction	5
Part I General	7
Chapter I Methods	9
Clinical examination	9
Anthropometric determinations	9
Laboratory methods	10
Roentgenological determination of heart volume	10
Determination of total haemoglobin and blood volume	10
Determination of lactic acid concentration	11
Statistical methods	11
Chapter II Material	13
Military subject groups	13
Civilian subject groups	16
Part II Evaluation of maximal isometric muscle strength	17
Chapter III Earlier investigations	19
Chapter IV Method	21
Principle	21
Apparatus	21
Procedure	23
Evaluation of method	27
Instrumental equipment	27
Biological factors	29
A Position	29
B Sequence of testing	30
C Effect of repeated tests	30
D Twenty four hours variation	32
E Disposition of the individual	32
F Reproducibility	33
Significance of strength recordings	33



## Introduction

Determination of physical fitness is a valuable adjunct to other examinations in appraisal of healthy as well as diseased individuals. By estimation of the physical capacity a rational selection of personnel for various occupations in for example industry and military service may be facilitated. In medical rehabilitation also establishment of the physical state is important since it provides the basis for correct diagnosis for therapy evaluation and prognosis.

In determining physical fitness several components may be taken into consideration i.e. strength, velocity, precision and endurance. Different forms of physical activity will make their specific demands on these qualities. Among abilities used in heavy physical work, however, muscle strength and endurance may be considered to play a dominating role.

During the last few decades technical progress has involved a successive decrease of physical activity for large parts of the population. The consequent lowering of the training level implies a reduced preparedness for emergency situations on the part of both individuals and the State. A reaction against these tendencies has been evoked among military as well as medical authorities. The interest in these problems has initiated physiological investigations in large civilian and military groups. These investigations performed during the last few years have *inter alia* included determination of physical working capacity, muscular strength and various constitutional factors (56-92). In this connection new points of view have been presented regarding the relation between these different qualities in different subject groups and under different conditions. As a continuation of these studies a further elucidation of the methods for assessment of physical fitness in military personnel has been proposed.

In the present work the purpose has been to study some problems involved in determination of muscular strength and physical working capacity. Among questions to be elucidated the following may be mentioned:



<i>Chapter V Studies on muscle strength</i>	37
Muscular strength pattern in 19/20 year old conscripts	37
Prediction of general muscle strength	41
Relation between muscle strength and certain anthropometric data	46
Muscular and circulatory adaptation in conscripts during military service	47
<b>Part III Studies on maximal physical working capacity</b>	57
<i>Chapter VI Earlier investigations</i>	59
<i>Chapter VII Methods</i>	61
Submaximal evaluation of physical working capacity ( $PWC_{170}$ )	61
Maximal oxygen uptake ( $VO_{2\max}$ )	61
Evaluation of maximal physical working capacity ( $PWC_{\max}$ )	62
<i>Chapter VIII Dependence of maximal performance time on work intensity</i>	64
<i>Chapter IX Reproducibility of estimated maximal working capacity (<math>PWC_{\max 6}</math>)</i>	68
<i>Chapter X Circulatory adaptation in exhausting work of varying duration</i>	71
Final heart rate after maximal performances of varying duration	71
Peak oxygen uptake and maximal pulmonary ventilation in exhausting work of varying duration	74
Final concentration of blood lactic acid after exhausting work of varying duration	76
<i>Chapter XI Maximal physical performances in different civilian and military series with special regard to final heart rates and lactic acid concentrations attained</i>	82
<i>Chapter XII Relation between different methods for assessment of physical capability</i>	88
<b>Summary and conclusions</b>	92
<b>References</b>	95

## **PART I**

### **General**

- 1 Biological and methodological variability in evaluation of maximal voluntary isometric muscle strength
- 2 Interrelationship between muscle-strength values recorded in different parts of the body
- 3 Average muscular and circulatory changes during basic military service
- 4 Relationship between work load and duration in maximal physical performances
- 5 Reproducibility of an index of maximal working capacity
- 6 Circulatory adaptation during maximal physical work
- 7 Association between expressions for maximal working capacity on the one hand and muscular and circulatory capacity factors on the other

## Methods

For characterization of the material as well as for studies of the relationship between different physiological data a number of investigational techniques were used

### Clinical examination

Each subject was interviewed according to a standard questionnaire. Information was collected regarding age, place of residence, civil occupation and participation in sport activities. The history of previous illness was taken and current symptoms asked about with special regard to cardio-pulmonary diseases and acute catarrhal infections. The general condition of the subject was noted and physical examination of the heart was performed. The systolic and diastolic blood pressure was measured with the aid of a mercury manometer on the right arm, diastolic pressure being read at disappearance of Korotkow sounds. Only if specially indicated were other organ systems included in the examination. This health control was performed by colleagues working in the Military Medical Centre.

### Anthropometric determinations

Evaluation of various constitutional factors was made according to the principles and methods described by Martin, Stolz & Stolz and Landegård (88, 94, 122). Some minor modifications were however introduced.

The body height was measured to the nearest 0.5 cm with the subjects barefooted. The individuals stood with the back of the head against the rule. As another expression of skeletal length the size of the tibia was determined. The measurement of bone length was performed externally with the aid of an anthropometer and the value recorded in millimetres. For the tibia the length was measured between the margin bordering on the tibial femoral articular groove and the distal end of the medial malleolus.

For evaluation of skeletal sturdiness the femoral condylar breadth was determined with a special instrument graded in 0.1 mm (26). The femoral condylar breadth was here defined as the linear distance between the medial and lateral surfaces of the condyles. The subject was examined in the sitting



## Methods

For characterization of the material as well as for studies of the relationship between different physiological data a number of investigational techniques were used

### Clinical examination

Each subject was interviewed according to a standard questionnaire. Information was collected regarding age, place of residence, civil occupation and participation in sport activities. The history of previous illness was taken and current symptoms asked about with special regard to cardio-pulmonary diseases and acute catarrhal infections. The general condition of the subject was noted and physical examination of the heart was performed. The systolic and diastolic blood pressure was measured with the aid of a mercury manometer on the right arm, diastolic pressure being read at disappearance of Korotkov sounds. Only if specially indicated were other organ systems included in the examination. This health control was performed by colleagues working in the Military Medical Centre.

### Anthropometric determinations

Evaluation of various constitutional factors was made according to the principles and methods described by Martin, Stolz & Stolz and Lundgård (88, 94, 122). Some minor modifications were however introduced.

The body height was measured to the nearest 0.5 cm with the subjects barefooted. The individuals stood with the back of the head against the rule. As another expression of skeletal length the size of the tibia was determined. The measurement of bone length was performed externally with the aid of an anthropometer and the value recorded in millimetres. For the tibia the length was measured between the margin bordering on the tibial femoral articular groove and the distal end of the medial malleolus.

For evaluation of skeletal sturdiness the femoral condylar breadth was determined with a special instrument graded in 0.1 mm (56). The femoral condylar breadth was here defined as the linear distance between the medial and lateral surfaces of the condyles. The subject was examined in the sitting

position with the knee joints at 90°. The calipers were slightly pressed against the condyles and the instrument held perpendicularly to the long axis of the leg.

The skeletal measures were taken only on the right hand side, since comparison of right- and left-side values had shown only minor differences. For the femoral condyles the left-side dimensions were smaller than the right-side values by about 0.5 % (diff 0.05 cm  $P^{***}$ ). For tibia length no significant difference was found between the right and the left side.

The amount of fat was estimated by measurement of the skinfold thickness according to Keys & Brozek (82). The regions used were (1) on the back immediately caudally to the scapula, (2) at the axillary border of the pectoralis major muscle at the level of the mamillae, (3) on the abdomen in the midclavicular line at the umbilical level.

The body weight was measured with the individuals wearing shorts; the values being recorded to the nearest 0.1 kg.

## Laboratory investigations

### *Roentgenological determination of heart volume*

The heart volume was determined according to the method of Larsson & Kjellberg as modified by Kjellberg *et al* (83-85). The individuals were here investigated in the prone position. Calculation of the heart volume was made from two roentgenograms taken simultaneously in the lateral and anteroposterior projections. No consideration was paid to the phase of the heart contraction or the respiratory cycle. In the technique mentioned the X-ray tube is angled 30 degrees caudally. As has been shown by Heilborn & Strandell this procedure may induce a systematic error leading to an overestimation of the heart volume especially in individuals with large thoracic dimensions (54). In the present subject groups consisting mostly of young men of ordinary slim build this error may be relatively small. In a series of duplicate determinations on conscripts ( $n = 13$ ) the error of a single determination amounted to 44 ml (3.9 % of the mean value).

### *Determination of total haemoglobin (THb) and blood volume (TBV)*

The total amount of haemoglobin was determined by the alveolar carbon monoxide method as described by Sjostrand and coworkers (90-115). As a rule, duplicate determinations were performed at intervals of less than one week. As normal values for adult males 11-12 g per kg body weight have been reported by Holmgren *et al* (68). In the present investigation the standard error of a single determination was found to be 3.7 %.

The haemoglobin concentration was determined spectrophotometrically after haemolysis with ammonium solution duplicate samples of finger blood being used

The total blood volume was calculated from the total amount of haemoglobin and the relative haemoglobin concentration The slight error due to the assumption of a constant haemoglobin concentration in the whole blood was disregarded The mean value found for adult males is here 82 ml per kg body weight according to Holmgren *et al* (68)

#### *Determination of lactic acid concentration*

A capillary sample was taken from the finger tip after heating with towels soaked in hot water Special care was taken to avoid any admixture of sweat or other contaminating agents to the sample The blood was analysed according to the method of Barker & Summerson with slight modifications (described in ref 67) Here 0.05 ml of blood was pipetted into 4 ml trichloroacetic acid After centrifugation of the precipitate the lactic acid was oxidized by concentrated sulphuric acid The acetaldehyde formed was determined colorimetrically through the reaction with *p*-hydroxydiphenyl in the presence of cupric ions In the material investigated by Holmgren the error of a single determination amounted to 3.5 % (67)

#### *Evaluation of isometric muscle strength*

See page 21

#### *Assessment of physical working capacity*

See page 61

#### *Statistical methods*

The data were treated according to current statistical methods

Random selection was performed with the aid of random digit tables (131) For calculation of the significance of differences and of correlation coefficients the *t* test was used If the probability of the findings being due to chance was less than 0.1 per cent ( $P = < 0.001^{***}$ ) it was regarded as highly significant if it was less than 1 per cent but equal to or greater than 0.1 per cent ( $P = 0.001-0.01^{**}$ ) it was denoted as significant if it was



less than 5 per cent but equal to or greater than 1 per cent ( $P = 0.01-0.05^*$ ), it was regarded as probably significant. For studies of correlation by regression analysis the methods described by, ■ ■ Snedecor were employed (120).

#### Statistical symbols

$n$ = number of observations	$r$ = correlation coefficient
$\bar{x}$ = arithmetic mean	$s_e$ = deviation of residuals in linear regression
$s$ = standard deviation	$d1//$ = difference between two means
$s_{\bar{x}}$ = standard error of the mean	$p$ = probability
$V_{\text{coeff}}$ = coefficient of variation	

## Material

Different military as well as civilian subject groups were investigated. To get representative values the individuals were if possible chosen at random from larger populations. In some instances where this could not be done the subjects were chosen in such a manner as to give at least a rough cross section of the actual population. The military personnel was as a rule ordered to undergo the examinations. In one group however where the investigation was part of a selection procedure for special service all examinees were volunteers.

### Military personnel

The numerically predominant group of personnel in the Swedish Defence System consists of civilian subjects performing their compulsory military service. The present investigations were confined to subject groups from this category of national servicemen. Before the investigation at the Military Medical Centre these men had all passed two health controls, i.e. at registration and at induction, pathological cases having then been rejected. The resulting selectivity accounts for the subsequent paucity of pathological findings.

Only in one case did a suspected pathological Ecg motivate exclusion of the subject. Slight respiratory infections were relatively common; in such cases the investigation could as a rule be postponed until the subject had recovered, usually after a week. In some instances however more prolonged infections, fractures or other injuries disqualified the subject from continued participation in longitudinal studies.

The investigations were consequently concerned only with normal healthy persons, normality being defined as absence of abnormal subjective symptoms and objective signs in the examination performed.

### Series A

From a population of about 700 fully fit conscripts assigned to an infantry regiment in Stockholm (I 1) 100 men were drawn. The selection was performed on the basis of random digit tables. Of the individuals selected 89 were investigated during the first two weeks after induction in May—June

960 Some of the subjects participated in further examinations during the period of basic military training (nine months). The subject group was used mainly for elaborating and testing the method for muscle strength evaluation. Some of the main characteristics of the series are reported below.

#### Series II

From a contingent of about 700 fully fit conscripts called up for military service in the spring of 1961 100 men were selected at random. They belonged to the same regiment as the above-mentioned group and in all essential respects they were similar to that material. At the first examination, shortly after induction, 93 individuals who were available underwent anthropometric classification and physical fitness assessment. Thereafter the examinees were the subject of a follow up study throughout the nine months of basic military training. The protracted investigation involved a further reduction of the original material. Among the reasons for exclusion were the following: deferment of military service, removal to other regiments, accidental illness at the time of one or several examinations or changed classification as regards military fitness group. One condition for inclusion in the study was that the subjects should be fully fit for military service and that they should have taken part in the regular training during the whole period of investigation. The characteristics of the original series (B) are compared with those of the remaining group (B<sub>1</sub>). All data refer to the examination in May—June 1961 (See Table 1).

#### Series C

Fifty-eight conscripts fully fit for military service were drawn from a coast artillery regiment in the vicinity of Stockholm (KA 1). The selection of this group could not be performed at random and the results may therefore not strictly represent the population mentioned. As far as could be judged from anthropometric data, however, the subjects did not differ appreciably from average conscripts as regards body build, comparison with series A and II showing no statistical difference in this respect. Nor did the physical working capacity (PWC<sub>170</sub>) show any great difference from that generally found at the stage of military training in question, i.e. four months after induction. The examinations were performed in April 1961. Some of the main characteristics of this subject group appear from Table 1.

#### Series D

Fifty-two conscripts from the same coast artillery regiment as the above-mentioned group were ordered to undergo investigation in February 1962.



about one month after induction. No systematic random selection was performed but a cross section of physically fully fit conscripts belonging to the regiment was aimed at. Here too however a good correspondence was obtained for anthropometric data compared with other material selected at random. In this group of subjects studies on the maximal physical working capacity were made. See Table 1.

#### Series E

For a study of the reproducibility of maximal dynamic work at different loads a group of 36 men from the Navy was used. The investigation was performed in February 1962 at a time when the subjects had participated in military training for about one month. They had all volunteered for the study and the investigation was part of an aptitude examination for submarine service. Consequently their motivation and physical data may not be representative of Navy men in general.

#### Civilian subject groups

##### Series F

Twenty-eight male individuals, including students, colleagues and personnel of the Military Medical Centre volunteered in a series of investigations. This subject group was more heterogeneous than the military material as regards age and occupation as well as training status. On the other hand they were available for longer and more complicated examinations. Evaluation of isometric muscle strength and determination of physical working capacity were performed. In some cases however maximal oxygen uptake was also measured. This part of the group was denoted as  $F_1$ .

##### Series G

Two groups of athletes, i.e. middle distance runners and weight lifters, were studied. The reason for choosing representatives of these branches of sport was a desire to elucidate the muscular and circulatory effects of one-sided physical training. The individuals were all taking part in competition activities. They belonged to the elite or the category just below that. The weight lifters formed a group of 15 men who had engaged in their specialty for an average of 7 years. Eight were referable to the heavyweight, two to the middleweight and five to the lightweight category. The other group consisted of 23 runners. They competed over distances ranging from 800 to 10 000 metres and the average period of competitive activity amounted to 15 years. The characteristics of Series G appear in Table 1.

## **PART II**

# **Evaluation of muscle strength**



## Earlier investigations

The desire for objective methods in evaluation of muscle strength has generated an abundance of devices and techniques. A comprehensive survey of earlier work in this field is given by Hunsicker and Donnelly (77). In this chapter only some of the main principles and methods will be mentioned.

Muscle force may be measured either isotonicallly or isometrically. Methods for isotonic determination are described by Mosso, Hellebrandt and DeLorme *et al* (41, 55, 98). Here the force is measured during the whole range of movement effected by the muscle group in question. The procedure is tiring for the individual being tested, however, and in fact it is the work performed rather than the strength that is measured. Because of these disadvantages most investigators have resorted to some form of isometric testing. The force is then measured during isometric or almost isometric contractions in certain well-defined positions.

In isometric testing the following measuring techniques have been used: (a) manual methods, (b) mechanical spring balance methods, (c) the cable-tension method, (d) the mercurial hydraulic method, (e) pneumatic systems and (f) strain gauge methods.

Most dynamometers have been constructed for determination of the finger flexion force. This is the case with the early mechanical balance dynamometers of Regnier, Burq, Duchenne, Brigham, Mathieu, Collin, Smedley and Duvall *et al* (27, 42, 77, 119).

Pneumatic systems have been used by Hamilton and Geckler, whereas Tuttle *et al* have more recently devised a hand dynamometer according to the strain gauge principle (48, 51, 127). For testing the arm and back muscles a modification of the hand dynamometer of Regnier has been used. Other spring balance instruments have been constructed by Sargent, Vernon and Tuttle *et al* for the back and leg, by Shochrin for the leg and by Haxton and Indegård *et al* for the plantar flexion (23, 89, 111, 113, 126, 132).

Arm dynamometers have been devised by Galton using mechanical springs and by Darcus, Bonde, Pedersen and Ralston *et al* applying the strain gauge principle (22, 39, 47, 107).

For a more extensive testing of muscle strength several different systems are available. As early as in 1893 Kellogg described a universal dynamometer where the force of 22 muscle groups could be recorded with the aid of a





## Method

### *Principle*

The strength in different muscle groups was measured during almost isometric contractions. The person investigated had to make attempted movements in standardized positions. The force developed was measured with the aid of special dynamometers.

### *Apparatus*

For standardization of positions and for fixation of the subject a special chair was designed. The dimensions of the seat and of movable arm and leg supports could be adjusted to the size of the individual. Furthermore dynamometers attached to the chair could be placed in positions corresponding to certain anatomical points.

The dynamometers consisted of elastic steel rods to which strain gauges were glued. For temperature compensation one strain gauge was placed on each side of the rod. The dimension of the steel rod was chosen according to the measuring range desired for each dynamometer. The effective lever of the rod could easily be varied for the purpose of calibration. By means of straps or other connections the force of the contracting muscle group was transmitted to the steel. At the resulting deformation the electrical resistance of the strain gauges was changed. This change was measured by a central recording instrument consisting of a Wheatstone's bridge coupled to an alternating current amplifier.<sup>1</sup> Before every testing phase the appropriate dynamometer was connected to the measuring bridge with the aid of a special unit.<sup>2</sup>

The capacitance and resistance of the electrical circuit were furthermore adjusted in order to place the pointer of the scale at the initial zero level. The forces measured were read directly in kiloponds according to prior calibration.

The separate dynamometers had different designs depending upon the

Measuring bridge KWS 11/5 0—1 500 Hz Hottinger

Measuring unit selector UD 8 Hottinger

Note: The instrumental equipment was designed in cooperation with A. H. Mattsson and B. Widén, Institution of Theory and Design of Electrical Machinery, Royal Institute of Technology, Stockholm.

hydraulic system with mercury (81) Lovett *et al* have devised a method by which instead of the concentric and isometric force the eccentric force of different muscles is measured (93) In this so called 'break method' ■ determined the power with which a person can resist an externally applied force In connection with this technique simple spring balances or more complicated dynamometers according to the modification of Schmier have been used (112) A cable-tension method has been developed by Clarke and coworkers In this the force exerted is transmitted by straps and cables to the tension sensitive unit For fixation and standardization of positions a special table and stand enable the cables to be fixed in the desired angles according to the muscle group to be tested The individuals are investigated in the horizontal position and assistants are used to ensure fixation (31)

The perfecting of strain gauge instruments during the last decade has initiated ■ wider application of this technique in muscle testing In the experimental equipment of Beasley two alternative strain gauge dynamometers are used a so-called manual force gauge and an oral tensiometer gauge For testing with the latter a system of cables and mechanical couplings is used in a way similar to that in the method of Clarke (17) Another apparatus using strain gauges has been described by Asmussen *et al* (1) In this method the strength in different muscle groups is measured by ■ number of dynamometers connected to a central recording instrument As this arrangement was found convenient for the purposes of the present investigation equipment similar to the Danish apparatus was chosen Certain modifications of the strain-gauge system as well as the fixation arrangements were however found desirable

demands of the testing situation. Some of them could however be used for strength determination of several muscle groups. The technical equipment and testing procedure are shown in Figs. 1 and 2.

## Procedure

### (1) General

The person was instructed to perform maximal attempted movements in appropriate positions, striving to avoid jerks and other trick movements. After the maximal level of contraction had been reached it had to be held for about two or three seconds, allowing the investigator to read the value on the potentiometer scale. Every attempted movement was performed three times with intervals of about 15–20 seconds. If the highest value was reached the third time, additional contractions were requested until the maximum of the series was obtained. The highest value was used as an expression of the maximal contractile force. Each moment of testing was preceded by thorough instruction and demonstration of the attempted movements wanted. In what follows the standardized positions, fixations and dynamometer types used are described for each movement. The principal muscles which are mechanically capable of acting in the test movements used are also listed according to current anatomical and physiological literature (3, 6, 108).

### (2) Description of the muscle test

#### Neck

##### FORWARD FLEXION OF THE NECK (Flexion)

###### Dynamometer No. 1

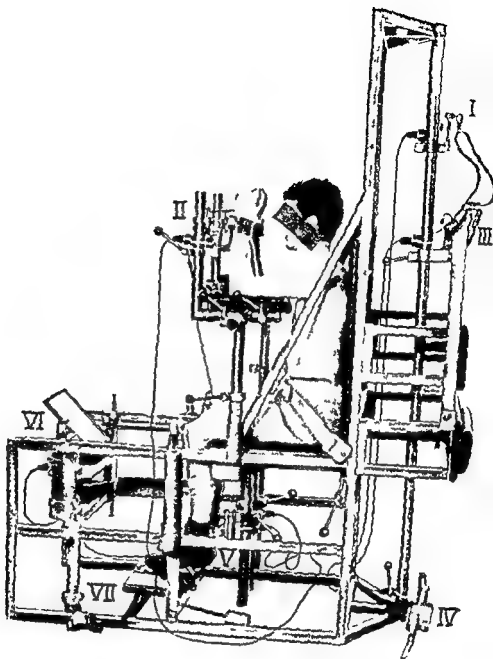
The individual was investigated in the standing position. The dynamometer with its leather strap was placed horizontally at a level of about 2 cm above the eyebrows of the individual, claspings his forehead.

Participating muscles: *sternocleidomastoideus*, *rectus capitis ventralis et lateralis*, *mm. scaleni*, *mm. longus colli et capitis*, *platysma*, the hyoid muscles when the mandible is fixed by its elevators.

##### BACKWARD FLEXION OF THE NECK (Extension)

The same dynamometer and arrangement were used as for forward flexion. The strap was however now placed horizontally around the back of the head with the individual facing the dynamometer.

Participating muscles: *trapezius*, *mm. rectus capitis dorsalis major et*



*Fig 1 Apparatus for muscle strength determination*

<i>Dynamometer</i>	<i>Application</i>
No I	neck flexion and extension
II A and B	elbow flexion and extension
III	trunk flexion forwards and backwards
IV	hip and knee flexion
V A and B	knee extension
VI	leg extension
VII	foot dorsal and plantar flexion

position between pronation and supination. The fastening strap of the dynamometer was placed at the level of the styloid process of the radius.

*Participating muscles:* m. biceps brachii, m. brachioradialis, m. brachialis, m. pronator teres, m. flexor carpi radialis, m. palmaris longus, m. flexor digitorum superficialis, m. flexor pollicis longus, m. extensor carpi radialis longus, m. flexor carpi ulnaris.

## EXTENSION OF THE ELBOW

### Bilateral testing

*Dynamometer and positions:* were the same as for elbow flexion. To secure a standard position of 90° flexion in the elbow, the upper arm was fixed manually by the assistant. At attempted extension, the pressure of the wrist was transmitted to the steel rod by a padded plate.

*Participating muscles:* m. triceps brachii, m. anconeus.

## FINGER FLEXION

### Bilateral testing of handgrip

*Dynamometer:* No. VIII (see Fig. 2 b).

The person was tested in the standing position. The handle distance of the dynamometer was adjusted to the size of the subject's hand. The upper arm was held vertically and the elbow was flexed at 90°. The dynamometer was supported by the hand not being tested.

*Participating muscles:* m. flexor digitorum superficialis, m. flexor digitorum profundus, m. flexor pollicis longus et brevis, m. opponens pollicis, m. adductor pollicis, m. interossei, m. lumbricales.

## Leg

### FLEXION OF THE HIP

#### Bilateral testing

*Dynamometer:* No. IV.

The subject was investigated in the standing position with the back against a padded support. The dynamometer with its strap was placed at a level immediately above the patella. The subject was instructed to keep the trunk fixed against the support and to flex the hip, keeping both knees extended (see Fig. 2 f).

*Participating muscles:* m. iliopsoas, m. rectus femoris, m. tensor fasciae latae, m. sartorius, m. gracilis, m. pectineus, m. adductores, m. obturator externus, m. gluteus medius et minimus, m. quadratus femoris.

minor m obliquus capitis, m obliquus atlantis m splenius m longissimus cervicis et capitis m transverso occipitalis mm transversocostales mm interspinales cervicis

## Trunk

### FORWARD FLEXION OF THE TRUNK

#### *Dynamometer No III*

With the individual in the standing position the *dynamometer* was placed with its strap around the chest at a level corresponding to the midpoint of the sternum. The subject was then instructed to take support with the lower part of the back against a padded plate and to bend forward (see Fig 2 a).

*Participating muscles* m rectus abdominis mm obliquus abdominis externus et internus, m pyramidalis m rectus femoris, m ileopsoas other hip flexors

### BACKWARD FLEXION OF THE TRUNK

The *dynamometer* was the same as for forward flexion but the individual now had to face the measuring unit. Support was taken with the pelvis against the plate and the trunk was bent backwards against the *dynamometer* strap.

*Participating muscles* m sacrospinalis, mm interspinales m spinalis m semispinalis mm multifidi

## Arm

### SHOULDER PULL

#### *Dynamometer No VIII (see Fig 2 c)*

The individual was tested in the standing position. He was instructed to keep the *dynamometer* in front of the jugular notch and to try to pull the handles apart.

*Participating muscles* m triceps brachii m deltoideus mm teres major et minor mm rhomboides major et minor m trapezius m latissimus dorsi

### FLEXION OF THE ELBOW

#### Bilateral testing

#### *Dynamometers Nos II A and B*

The individual was examined sitting in the chair. By means of arm supports the upper arms were held horizontally in front of the shoulders at right angles to the trunk. The elbow also was held at 90° with the forearm vertically in a

position between pronation and supination. The fastening strap of the dynamometer was placed at the level of the styloid process of the radius.

*Participating muscles* m biceps brachii m brachioradialis m brachialis m pronator teres m flexor carpi radialis m palmaris longus m flexor digitorum superficialis m flexor pollicis longus m extensor carpi radialis longus m flexor carpi ulnaris

## EXTENSION OF THE ELBOW

Bilateral testing

Dynamometer and positions were the same as for elbow flexion. To secure a standard position of 90° flexion in the elbow the upper arm was fixed manually by the assistant. At attempted extension the pressure of the wrist was transmitted to the steel rod by a padded plate.

*Participating muscles* m triceps brachii m anconaeus

## FINGER FLEXION

Bilateral testing of handgrip

Dynamometer No VIII (see Fig. 2 b)

The person was tested in the standing position. The handle distance of the dynamometer was adjusted to the size of the subject's hand. The upper arm was held vertically and the elbow was flexed at 90°. The dynamometer was supported by the hand not being tested.

*Participating muscles* m flexor digitorum superficialis m flexor digitorum profundus m flexor pollicis longus et brevis m opponens pollicis m adductor pollicis m interossei m lumbricales

Leg

## FLEXION OF THE HIP

Bilateral testing

Dynamometer No IX

The subject was investigated in the standing position with the back against a padded support. The dynamometer with its strap was placed at a level immediately above the patella. The subject was instructed to keep the trunk fixed against the support and to flex the hip keeping both knees extended (see Fig. 2 f).

*Participating muscles* m iliopsoas m rectus femoris m tensor fasciae latae m sartorius m gracilis m pectineus m adductores m obturator ext m gluteus medius et minimus m quadratus femoris



## LEG EXTENSION

Combined movement where the composite force of both legs was measured  
*Dynamometer No VI*

The measurement was performed with the subject sitting in the chair with his feet on the plate connected to a strain gauge unit. By adjusting the *dynamometer* back and forth it could be fixed in a position such that the angle between the femur and the tibia was about  $150^\circ$ . The subject was instructed to take support with the sacrum against the back of the chair and to press the footboard forward (see Fig 2 d)

*Participating muscles* m gluteus maximus medius et minimus m semitendineus m semimembranaceus, m biceps femoris m quadriceps femoris m adductor magnus m obturator int m piriformis m rectus femoris, m tensor fasciae latae

## FLEXION OF THE KNEE

Bilateral testing

*Dynamometer No IV*

The individual was tested in the standing position. The foot of the non tested leg was placed on a platform 5 cm high the tested leg hanging freely. The body was fixed by the subject grasping the frame of the chair with both hands and pressing the abdomen and thighs against the supports. The *dynamometer* was adjusted to a level where the horizontal strap embraced the Achilles tendon. A satisfactory fixation of the trunk and thighs proved important for the obtaining of reproducible results (see Fig 2 e)

*Participating muscles* m biceps femoris m semitendineus m semimembranaceus m popliteus m gracilis, m sartorius m gastrocnemius m plantaris

## EXTENSION OF THE KNEE

Bilateral testing

*Dynamometers Nos V A and B*

The individual was investigated in the sitting position with the legs hanging vertically. The straps of the *dynamometers* were placed at the level of the lateral malleolus. To secure a standardized position preventing concomitant extension of the hip the pelvis was fixed by a strap coupled to the seat of the chair.

*Participating muscles* m quadriceps femoris m rectus femoris m tensor fasciae latae

## PLANTAR FLEXION OF THE FOOT

### Bilateral testing

*Dynamometer No VII* This unit consisted of two metal plates one for each foot mounted on a steel axis connected to the strain gauge. The whole dynamometer was freely movable in the vertical direction. This arrangement was made to prevent participation of the knee and hip extensors.

The individual was tested in the sitting position. The foot to be measured was fixed to the *dynamometer plate* by a wrist holder whereas the other foot rested on the frame of the chair. Thorough instruction combined with demonstration of the attempted movement proved necessary to obtain reliable results. The force corresponding to a lever of 30 cm was recorded but this value was then converted to a force corresponding to a certain anatomical level. By taking an impression of the foot of the examinee the distance from the axis of the *dynamometer* to the midpoint of the anterior plantar matrix was measured. The force recorded was then converted according to this value (see Fig. 2 g).

*Participating muscles* m gastrocnemius m soleus m plantaris m flexor digitorum longus m tibialis posterior mm fibularis longus et brevis m flexor hallucis longus

## DORSAL FLEXION OF THE FOOT

### Bilateral testing

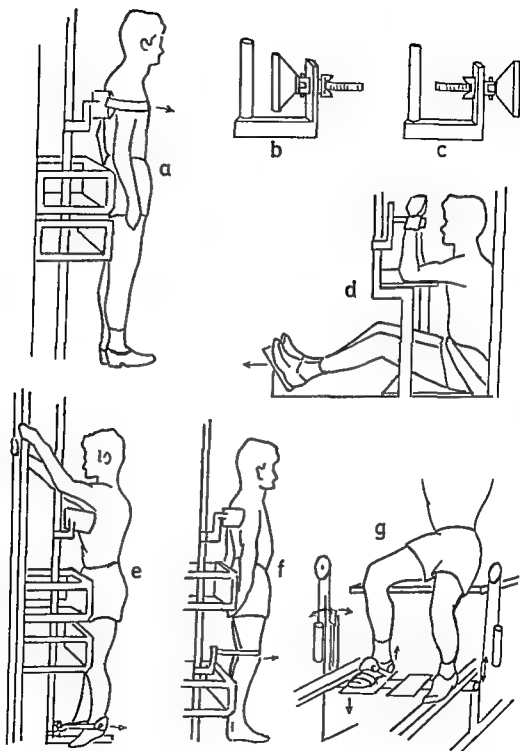
The same *dynamometer* and position were used as for plantar flexion. Instead of the wrist holder which was found to impede the action of the dorsal flexors only a leather strap proximal to the metatarsophalangeal joints was used for fixation and transmission of the force. Special attention had to be paid to the exact placing of the foot on the plate to obtain the correct leverage. Correction of the force recorded was made according to the foot size in the same manner as for plantar flexion.

*Participating muscles* m tibialis anterior m extensor hallucis longus m extensor digitorum longus m fibularis tertius

### Evaluation of method

#### Instrumental equipment

At the construction of the apparatus a complete calibration against known weights was performed. For every strain gauge unit the whole measuring range was checked. The values obtained showed a linear relation to successively increasing loads. The deviation found was in every case less than  $\pm 3\%$ . During the whole period of measurement regular calibration controls were



*Fig 2 Some attempted movements illustration of apparatus and procedure*

- a Position used for forward flexion of the trunk  
 b Dynamometer adapt for testing of the finger flexors  
 c • • • shoulder pull  
 d Position used in leg extension  
 e • • • knee flexion  
 f • • • hip flexion

performed at intervals of about 10 days. Here too the greatest variations noted were less than 3 %.

### Biological factors

**A Position** An important question in muscle testing is how variations of angles and external levers influence the force measured. Some theoretical considerations on this problem have earlier been stated by, for instance Gray (49). Practical studies of the elbow flexors have been performed by Wakim *et al.* (Hunsteler, Clarke *et al.* and Provins & Salter (33, 76, 106, 130). Similar investigations have been made by Elkins *et al.* (Clarke *et al.* and Provins) for the elbow extensors, by Elkins *et al.* for the shoulder abductors, by Hettinger for the foot and knee and by Hettinger and Elkins *et al.* for the hip flexors (33, 45, 60). In summary these studies can be said to have shown a great variation in strength of the muscle group when the angle of the corresponding joint was varied. The relationship between angle and force was specific for the special muscle group, although individual variations were found. Alterations of the position of adjacent joints were also shown to influence the strength of a certain muscle group (34, 35, 110). As expected, testing with varying levers established an inverse relationship between force recorded and length of the lever. In the investigations reported there was considerable variation in apparatus as well as testing positions. To verify the validity of their results for the present technique a few experiments were made.

Here three individuals were examined with varying angles and levers of some attempted movements. The following muscle groups were tested: elbow flexion and extension, knee extension, leg extension and forward and backward flexion of the trunk. In principle the results obtained were in close accordance with those of earlier investigators, stressing the importance of standardization as regards positions.

In designing the testing procedure the following points of view had to be taken into consideration. Positions where small changes of the angles will give large alterations of the force are to be avoided. The muscular tension and internal leverage of the position chosen must not be disadvantageous to the muscles to be measured. The testing positions and fixation arrangements must be relatively easy to bring about and must not be uncomfortable for the subject investigated. The testing procedure chosen represented a compromise between these different aspects.

As regards external leverage the forces were measured at certain anatomical points. It seemed more functional to adopt this approach than to use the same distance from the joint in all persons. If an approximate proportionality

■ presumed to exist between internal and external leverages, the forces measured will here be a rough expression of the physiological cross section of the participating muscles

To study whether the law of leverage was applicable in transformation of forces to torques and vice versa a series of measurements were performed in the elbow and the knee joint. The product of force and lever was found to be relatively constant at variation of the lever

**B Sequence of testing** In the present technique a number of muscle groups were examined on the same occasion. Ideally the intervals between the muscle contractions ought here to be long enough for complete recovery

A testing procedure where these principles were strictly applied would however, be very time-consuming and tedious. It therefore seemed justifiable to use a testing procedure with constant sequence of testing and with moderately long intervals. To estimate how great are the errors due to fatigue that may be involved in this proceeding, a special investigation was performed. Two groups of 12 and 11 individuals respectively were twice examined with one week's interval. In one group the same procedure was used both times whereas in the other the sequence was reversed the second time. Statistical analysis did not confirm any effect from the change in sequence. It ought however to be mentioned that the material investigated was small

**C Effect of repeated tests** In repeated muscle testings the individual may possibly attain a higher value after some time because he has become accustomed to the technique. He may thus learn to use the appropriate muscles in a more effective way. This learning factor is difficult to isolate since repeated testing may also give some augmentation of strength owing to the training inevitable with the method

In studies where one purpose was to study daily variations the strength was measured three times a week in two individuals for  $2\frac{1}{2}$  months (see Fig 3). The strength curves of different muscle groups varied as regards daily fluctuations as well as changes during the testing period. In some of them e.g. forward and backward flexion of the trunk a considerable increase was noted whereas in others such as flexion of the knee there was a moderate decrease. Individual differences were also established. In plantar flexion of the foot one of the subjects showed a successive increase in strength whereas the other had about constant values. Both individuals were conscripts working in the laboratory as assistants. Except for the physical exertion involved in calibration of the apparatus none of them had any physical training during the period of investigation

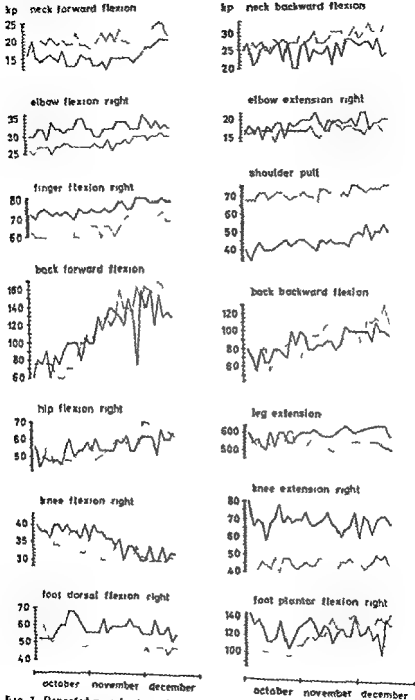


Fig 3 Repeated muscle strength recordings in two individuals studied during 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  months

The subjects investigated were two 20-year-old laboratory assistants in ordinary training condition. All strength values are given in kiloponds.

is presumed to exist between internal and external leverages the forces measured will here be a rough expression of the physiological cross section of the participating muscles

To study whether the law of leverage was applicable in transformation of forces to torques and vice versa, a series of measurements were performed in the elbow and the knee joint. The product of force and lever was found to be relatively constant at variation of the lever

*B Sequence of testing* In the present technique a number of muscle groups were examined on the same occasion. Ideally the intervals between the muscle contractions ought here to be long enough for complete recovery

A testing procedure where these principles were strictly applied would however, be very time-consuming and tedious. It therefore seemed justifiable to use a testing procedure with constant sequence of testing and with moderately long intervals. To estimate how great are the errors due to fatigue that may be involved in this proceeding a special investigation was performed. Two groups of 12 and 11 individuals respectively were twice examined with one week's interval. In one group the same procedure was used both times whereas in the other the sequence was reversed the second time. Statistical analysis did not confirm any effect from the change in sequence. It ought however to be mentioned that the material investigated was small

*C Effect of repeated tests* In repeated muscle testings the individual may possibly attain a higher value after some time because he has become accustomed to the technique. He may thus learn to use the appropriate muscles in a more effective way. This learning factor is difficult to isolate, since repeated testing may also give some augmentation of strength owing to the training inevitable with the method

In studies where one purpose was to study daily variations the strength was measured three times a week in two individuals for 2½ months (see Fig 3). The strength curves of different muscle groups varied as regards daily fluctuations as well as changes during the testing period. In some of them e.g. forward and backward flexion of the trunk a considerable increase was noted whereas in others such as flexion of the knee there was a moderate decrease. Individual differences were also established. In plantar flexion of the foot one of the subjects showed a successive increase in strength whereas the other had about constant values. Both individuals were conscripts working in the laboratory as assistants. Except for the physical exertion involved in calibration of the apparatus none of them had any physical training during the period of investigation

**F Reproducibility** To establish the reproducibility of the method a series of 44 conscripts was twice investigated with an interval of about 1½ hours between each test. The results showed considerable variations between the different muscle groups. Single movements, as for example elbow flexion, where a satisfactory standardization was possible, showed a good reproducibility. In others, however, where several joints participated and the movements were complex, as for example in flexion of the back, the variability was greater. The variations found for various muscle groups appear in Table 2.

*Table 2 Reproducibility at duplicate determinations with about 1½ hours interval*

Attempted movement		$\frac{\bar{x} + \bar{z}}{2}$	Diff	Depend	P	Variation coeff. %
NECK	forward flexion	18.0	-0.16	1.90	0.2	7.5
	backward flexion	24.7	-0.14	2.01	0.2	5.7
ARM	shoulder pull	48.4	-1.54	4.08		6.0
	elbow flexion right	30.1	-0.47	1.35	*	3.2
	left	29.2	-0.32	1.76	0.2	4.3
	elbow extension right	16.3	-0.44	1.64	0.05	7.1
	left	15.4	-0.39	1.77	0.2	8.1
	finger flexion right	71.6	-0.36	4.48	0.2	4.4
	left	66.8	-0.96	4.77	0.1	5.0
TRUNK	forward flexion	66.9	-0.93	10.1	0.2	10.7
	backward flexion	73.1	+1.22	11.6	0.2	11.4
LEG	leg extension	39.6	-1.59	56.0	0.2	10.0
	hip flexion right	45.9	+0.43	4.63	0.2	7.1
	left	44.7	+0.71	3.34	0.1	6.3
	knee flexion right	29.9	0.0	2.34	0.2	5.5
	left	29.7	+0.45	2.10	0.1	5.0
	knee extension right	51.3	-0.02	3.16	0.2	4.4
	left	48.1	+1.00	2.67		3.9
	foot plantar flex. r	101.4	-3.76	11.1		7.8
	l	97.4	-1.13	8.9	0.2	6.5
	foot dorsal flex. r	42.7	-0.37	3.9	0.2	6.3
	l	41.6	+1.46	3.69		6.3

Note: Material: 44 conscripts 19-20 years old randomly selected from Series A.

### Significance of strength recorded with the present method

Maximal voluntary isometric strength is generally accepted as a reliable measure of the ability to perform heavy static or almost static muscular work. As other components of muscular capacity, static and dynamic endurance may be mentioned. Whereas static endurance is rather well correlated with isometric strength (126), the correlation between isometric



In evaluation of the alterations mentioned biological changes during the observation time must be taken into account. The increase of values observed may thus partly be due to augmented strength but at least for some movements — e.g. flexion of the back, an enhanced skill cannot be excluded. It thus seems probable that the learning error may be of importance mainly for certain muscle groups whereas other movements, such as for example elbow flexion and finger flexion may give a good reproducibility even with frequently repeated testings. In muscles where alterations were observed these first became manifest after 6—7 examinations. It is therefore reasonable to assume that the learning error may be reduced if frequent examinations at short intervals are avoided. Further support for this view is obtained from duplicate determinations in which no significant alterations between two examinations were observed (See below)

*D Twenty four hours variation* To elucidate the variation of muscular strength during 24 hours three individuals were examined. The tests including elbow flexion and knee extension were performed at two hour intervals in the daytime and once during the night. The testing was continued with two morning examinations on the following day to reproduce the original values. In addition two afternoon values were measured with an interval of some days during the following week. The fluctuations observed were small and did not show any uniform relation to any particular time of the day.

*E Disposition of the individual* Measurement of the muscle strength involves a volitional process where the attitude of the individual tested will necessarily influence the results. Various kinds of external influences may also modify the power (78). Variations due to the disposition of the individual may at least to some degree be reduced in the design of the investigation procedure. To stimulate the cooperation of the subjects—especially the conscripts—it proved to be a good approach to take advantage of their natural competitive instinct. In each case the purpose of the investigation was made clear before the examination. Afterwards the men obtained their own records giving them the opportunity to compare their own results with those of their fellows. With rare exceptions the interest in the own muscle capacity appeared to promote good cooperation. To obtain as far as possible uniform investigational conditions the author performed all investigations with the aid of an assistant. In this way the testing procedure including instruction and demonstration were as far as possible standardized.

**F Reproducibility** To establish the reproducibility of the method a series of 44 conscripts was twice investigated with an interval of about 1½ hours between each test. The results showed considerable variations between the different muscle group. Single movements as for example elbow flexion where a satisfactory standardization was possible showed a good reproducibility. In others however, where several joints participated and the movements were complex as for example in flexion of the back the variability was greater. The variations found for various muscle groups appear in Table 2.

*Table 2 Reproducibility at duplicate determinations with about 1½ hours interval*

Att. mpt. d. mnt. mnt.		$\frac{\bar{x} + \bar{x}_2}{2}$	Diff.	independ. s	P	Variation coeff.
NECK	forward flexion	18.0	- 0.18	1.90	0.2	7.5
	backward flexion	24.7	- 0.14	2.01	0.2	5.7
ARM	shoulder pull	48.4	- 1.54	4.03	*	6.0
	elbow flexion right	30.1	- 0.47	1.35		5.2
	left	29.2	- 0.32	1.76	0.2	4.3
	elbow extension right	16.3	- 0.44	1.64	0.05	7.1
	left	15.4	- 0.39	1.77	0.2	8.1
	finger flexion right	1.6	- 0.6	4.48	0.2	4.4
	left	15.8	- 0.98	4.77	0.1	5.0
TRUNK	forward flexion	16.9	- 0.93	10.1	0.2	10.7
	backward flexion	13.1	+ 1.72	11.8	0.2	11.4
LEG	leg extension	39.6	- 1.59	56.0	0.2	10.0
	hip flexion right	45.9	+ 0.45	4.63	0.2	7.1
	left	44.1	+ 0.71	3.34	0.1	5.3
	knee flexion right	29.9	0.0	2.33	0.2	5.5
	left	29.7	+ 0.48	2.10	0.1	5.0
	knee extension right	51.3	- 0.02	3.16	0.2	4.4
	left	48.1	+ 1.00	2.67	*	3.9
	foot plantar flex. r	101.4	- 3.18	11.1	*	7.8
	l	97.4	- 1.13	8.9	0.2	6.5
	foot dorsal flex. r	47.7	- 0.37	3.79	0.2	6.3
	l	41.6	+ 1.46	3.63		6.3

Note: Material 44 conscripts 19-20 years old randomly selected from Series 4.

### Significance of strength recorded with the present method

Maximal voluntary isometric strength is generally accepted as a reliable measure of the ability to perform heavy static or almost static muscular work. As other components of muscular capacity static and dynamic endurance may be mentioned. Whereas static endurance is rather well correlated with isometric strength (1,25) the correlation between isometric

In evaluation of the alterations mentioned biological changes during the observation time must be taken into account. The increase of values observed may thus partly be due to augmented strength but at least for some movements e.g. flexion of the back, an enhanced skill cannot be excluded. It thus seems probable that the learning error may be of importance mainly for certain muscle groups whereas other movements such as for example elbow flexion and finger flexion may give a good reproducibility even with frequently repeated testings. In muscles where alterations were observed these first became manifest after 6—7 examinations. It is therefore reasonable to assume that the learning error may be reduced if frequent examinations at short intervals are avoided. Further support for this view is obtained from duplicate determinations in which no significant alterations between two examinations were observed (See below.)

*D Twenty four hours variation* To elucidate the variation of muscular strength during 24 hours three individuals were examined. The tests including elbow flexion and knee extension were performed at two hour intervals in the daytime and once during the night. The testing was continued with two morning examinations on the following day to reproduce the original values. In addition two afternoon values were measured with an interval of some days during the following week. The fluctuations observed were small and did not show any uniform relation to any particular time of the day.

*E Disposition of the individual* Measurement of the muscle strength involves a volitional process, where the attitude of the individual tested will necessarily influence the results. Various kinds of external influences may also modify the power (78). Variations due to the disposition of the individual may, at least to some degree be reduced in the design of the investigational procedure. To stimulate the cooperation of the subjects—especially the conscripts—it proved to be a good approach to take advantage of their natural competitive instinct. In each case the purpose of the investigation was made clear before the examination. Afterwards the men obtained their own records giving them the opportunity to compare their own results with those of their fellows. With rare exceptions the interest in the own muscle capacity appeared to promote good cooperation. To obtain as far as possible uniform investigational conditions the author performed all investigations with the aid of an assistant. In this way the testing procedure including instruction and demonstration were as far as possible standardized.

The most common way of expressing strength is by measurement of anatomically defined forces (31 48 59 119 130). In other methods however torques are recorded instead (22 39 60). The system of muscle testing described by Asmussen *et al* partly includes modified procedures designed by earlier investigators. Here either forces or torques are used each for different muscle groups. At presentation of standard values a correction is performed according to individual differences of body height (*b*). On theoretical grounds it is presumed that the optimal muscle force of an individual might be proportional to the body height in the second power and the muscle torque to the height in the third power. The poor correlation between recorded values and height may be ascribed to the influence of obscuring factors including the varying training status of the individuals.

In the present study no such transformation of values was performed. For all muscle groups the strength was recorded in terms of external forces exerted close to the organ used. In this way the ability to perform heavy work with the muscle group could be presumed to be evaluated in a realistic way. Assuming the internal leverage to be proportional to the external leverage some information may here be obtained regarding the composite physiological cross section of the participating muscles.

Besides the testing procedure the instrumental equipment is another factor determining the absolute values to be obtained with a given method. In a comparative study by Wakim *et al* it was shown that strain gauge instruments will generally give higher readings than mechanical devices such as the cable tensiometer (136). In Sweden perhaps the most commonly used instrument for estimation of grip strength is the Collin dynamometer. It therefore seemed to be of interest to compare measurements obtained by using this instrument with those derived from the strain gauge equipment of the author.

Before this study was begun both devices were calibrated against known weights whereby correct values were obtained at static loading. In Table 3 the means, dispersions and relative dispersions are given for the two methods.

Table 3 Comparison between strength values recorded with two different dynamometers

	Collin dyn. kp				Strain-gauge dyn. kp			
	$\bar{x}$	$s$	$s$	$s$	$\bar{x}$	$s$	$s$	%
Right hand, grip	42.6	0.8	5.2	12.1	67.9	1.3	11.3	16.6
Left	40.0	0.6	5.7	14.0	65.1	1.3	11.8	18.1
Series A	= 9 Conscripts investigated shortly after induction							

strength and dynamic endurance is reported to be lower (32) As pointed out earlier the method of the author is confined to measuring only isometric maximal voluntary strength

The strength of a muscle is a function of the number and the diameters of the fibres in its physiological cross section i.e. a section passing through all the fibres In a muscle with parallel fibres having the same direction as the tendon the physiological cross section will agree with the anatomical cross section, whereas in for example pinnate muscles this correspondence will be less good (49)

In the majority of movements in the body, several different muscles are usually acting together The strength of single muscles cannot as a rule be evaluated separately Under exceptional conditions as in amputees, where free tendons could be attached to measuring devices the function of isolated muscles has been studied by Ralston *et al* (107) Because of the complexity of muscular mechanics in intact man estimations of the physiological cross section from muscle strength recorded may always involve a series of approximations

Muscle strength may be recorded either as the force exerted at a certain distance from the moving joint or as the torque developed by the acting muscles

In principle general laws of mechanics may be applied to muscle physiology The relation between force and torque is thus defined by the following formula

$$\text{Torque (kilopond} \times \text{cm)} = \text{force (kilopond)} \times \text{lever (cm)}$$

When denoting the strength of a certain muscle group with the use of the torque no correction is made for the body size of the individual tested Thus two subjects of different height may have the same torque in a certain muscle group e.g. the elbow flexors Because of disparity of levers their ability to lift weights with the muscle group in question will also be different

From a practical point of view it will usually be more convenient to measure the force than the torque This is especially the case with multiarticular movements where the levers are difficult to evaluate cf. finger flexion and flexion of the back

For comparison of the results obtained with different methods it is essential to know the principle of investigation the technical equipment the procedure and the standard position used If the muscle strength is expressed in different ways it may be impossible to translate values from one method to another

The most common way of expressing strength is by measurement of anatomically defined forces (31 48 59 119 130). In other methods however torques are recorded instead (22 39 60). The system of muscle testing described by Asmussen *et al* partly includes modified procedures designed by earlier investigators. Here either forces or torques are used each for different muscle groups. At presentation of standard values a correction is performed according to individual differences of body height (6). On theoretical grounds it is presumed that the optimal muscle force of an individual might be proportional to the body height in the second power and the muscle torque to the height in the third power. The poor correlation between recorded values and height may be ascribed to the influence of obscuring factors including the varying training status of the individuals.

In the present study no such transformation of values was performed. For all muscle groups the strength was recorded in terms of external forces exerted close to the organ used. In this way the ability to perform heavy work with the muscle group could be presumed to be evaluated in a realistic way. Assuming the internal leverage to be proportional to the external leverage some information may here be obtained regarding the composite physiological cross section of the participating muscles.

Besides the testing procedure the instrumental equipment is another factor determining the absolute values to be obtained with a given method. In a comparative study by Wakim *et al* it was shown that strain gauge instruments will generally give higher readings than mechanical devices such as the cable tensiometer (130). In Sweden perhaps the most commonly used instrument for estimation of grip strength is the Collin dynamometer. It therefore seemed to be of interest to compare measurements obtained by using this instrument with those derived from the strain-gauge equipment of the author.

Before this study was begun both devices were calibrated against known weights whereby correct values were obtained at static loading. In Table 3 the means, dispersions and relative dispersions are given for the two methods.

*Table 3 Comparison between strength values recorded with two different dynamometers*

	Collin dyn. kp				Strain-gauge dyn. kp			
	$\bar{x}$	$s$	$s$	$r\%$	$\bar{x}$	$s$	$s$	$r\%$
Right handgrip	42.6	0.6	5.2	12.1	67.9	1.3	11.3	16.6
Left	40.9	0.6	5.7	14.0	65.1	1.3	11.8	18.1

Series A  $N = 19$  Conscripts investigated shortly after induction

strength and dynamic endurance is reported to be lower (32) As pointed out earlier the method of the author is confined to measuring only isometric maximal volitional strength

The strength of a muscle is a function of the number and the diameters of the fibres in its physiological cross section, i.e. a section passing through all the fibres In a muscle with parallel fibres having the same direction as the tendon the physiological cross section will agree with the anatomical cross section whereas in for example pinnate muscles this correspondence will be less good (49)

In the majority of movements in the body several different muscles are usually acting together The strength of single muscles cannot as a rule be evaluated separately Under exceptional conditions, as in amputees, where free tendons could be attached to measuring devices the function of isolated muscles has been studied by Ralston *et al* (107) Because of the complexity of muscular mechanics in intact man estimations of the physiological cross section from muscle strength recorded may always involve a series of approximations

Muscle strength may be recorded either as the force exerted at a certain distance from the moving joint or as the torque developed by the acting muscles

In principle general laws of mechanics may be applied to muscle physiology The relation between force and torque is thus defined by the following formula

$$\text{Torque (kilopond} \times \text{cm)} = \text{force (kilopond)} \times \text{lever (cm)}$$

When denoting the strength of a certain muscle group with the use of the torque no correction is made for the body size of the individual tested Thus two subjects of different height may have the same torque in a certain muscle group e.g. the elbow flexors Because of disparity of levers their ability to lift weights with the muscle group in question will also be different

From a practical point of view it will usually be more convenient to measure the force than the torque This is especially the case with multiarticular movements where the levers are difficult to evaluate cf. finger flexion and flexion of the back

For comparison of the results obtained with different methods it is essential to know the principle of investigation the technical equipment the procedure and the standard position used If the muscle strength is expressed in different ways it may be impossible to translate values from one method to another

## Studies on muscle strength

The present method for evaluation of muscle strength was designed with a view to use in clinical as well as social medicine. One of the main aims however was to elucidate the possibilities of simple muscle testing in military personnel. The first step in this study was to establish the strength pattern in a series of muscle groups of healthy 19/20-year-old men. As a second question the interrelationship between values from different parts of the body was investigated. The relation to certain anthropometric data was furthermore elucidated. To study how environment may modify muscular strength the values were followed in a group of conscripts during the first year of military service.

### Muscular strength pattern in 19/20 year old conscripts

The method described was tested in a group of conscripts performing their basic military training (Series A). During the investigation modifications had to be made for several testing phases before the technique could be regarded as definite. Part of the results could however be used for elucidation of special questions. For a longitudinal study of the muscular adaptation during the first year of military service a second group was used (Series B). The selection and characteristics of this group are described above. Here the results from the first investigation shortly after the subjects transfer from civilian to military life will be reported.

The above mentioned muscle strength values were recorded in a group of healthy 19/20-year-old Swedish males fully fit for military service. As mentioned earlier the majority of subjects came from the Stockholm area. In civilian life they had mostly light or moderately heavy occupations and 51 % took part in sport either for exercise or as competitors. From earlier investigations we know that factors such as sex, age, body build and occupation are all of importance in determining the degree of muscular strength (6, 39, 87, 128). Although derived from a randomly selected material the values reported may be of restricted representativity.

For some of the muscle groups i.e. handgrip, elbow flexors and knee extensors a comparison was performed with a corresponding material (Series A) investigated one year earlier. The differences found were small and not



Here, too, the strain gauge method yielded higher absolute values than the mechanical dynamometer. In relative terms however, satisfactory agreement was obtained with correlation coefficients of 0.60\*\*\* and 0.67\*\*\* for the right and left handgrip respectively. As pointed out by Wakim *et al* the difference between the absolute values may be ascribed to the fact that mechanical devices have a higher internal friction than strain gauge instruments. The same may be said of the divergent dispersions.

To sum up, it may be concluded that comparisons between absolute values obtained with two different methods are to be avoided. Divergences may be due to the testing procedure and/or the instrumental equipment. If differences in these respects are taken into account comparisons may, however, be performed for evaluation of, for example, relative changes in two experimental series.

## Studies on muscle strength

The present method for evaluation of muscle strength was designed with a view to use in clinical as well as social medicine. One of the main aims however was to elucidate the possibilities of simple muscle testing in military personnel. The first step in this study was to establish the strength pattern in a series of muscle groups of healthy 19/20-year-old men. As a second question the interrelationship between values from different parts of the body was investigated. The relation to certain anthropometric data was furthermore elucidated. To study how environment may modify muscular strength the values were followed in a group of conscripts during the first year of military service.

### Muscular strength pattern in 19/20 year old conscripts

The method described was tested in a group of conscripts performing their basic military training (Series A). During the investigation modifications had to be made for several testing phases before the technique could be regarded as definite. Part of the results could however be used for elucidation of special questions. For a longitudinal study of the muscular adaptation during the first year of military service a second group was used (Series B). The selection and characteristics of this group are described above. Here the results from the first investigation shortly after the subjects' transfer from civilian to military life will be reported.

The above mentioned muscle strength values were recorded in a group of healthy 19/20-year-old Swedish males fully fit for military service. As mentioned earlier the majority of subjects came from the Stockholm area. In civilian life they had mostly light or moderately heavy occupations and 51 % took part in sport either for exercise or as competitors. From earlier investigations we know that factors such as sex, age, body build and occupation are all of importance in determining the degree of muscular strength (6, 59, 87, 128). Although derived from a randomly selected material the values reported may be of restricted representativity.

For some of the muscle groups i.e. handgrip, elbow flexors and knee extensors a comparison was performed with a corresponding material (Series A) investigated one year earlier. The differences found were small and not

*Table 4 Isometric muscle strength values in 92-93 randomly selected 19/20 year old military conscripts (Series B)*

Muscle group	Kiloponds			
	$\bar{x}$	$s$	$s^2$	$s$
Neck flexion	15.4	3.2	0.3	20.8
Neck extension	26.9	5.0	0.5	18.6
Shoulder pull	47.7	10.3	1.1	21.6
Elbow flexion right	28.3	3.6	0.4	12.7
Elbow flexion left	27.7	3.5	0.4	12.6
Elbow extension right	16.3	3.0	0.3	18.4
Elbow extension left	15.2	2.7	0.3	17.8
Finger flexion right	66.5	10.0	1.0	15.0
Finger flexion left	62.3	9.7	1.0	15.6
Back forward flexion	63.1	10.2	1.6	24.5
Back backward flexion	65.4	13.2	1.4	20.2
Leg extension	37.4	9.4	1.0	20.1
Hip flexion right	45.1	8.7	0.9	19.3
Hip flexion left	43.9	8.9	0.9	20.3
Knee flexion right	25.1	4.2	0.4	17.7
Knee flexion left	21.4	4.1	0.4	16.9
Knee extension right	50.0	8.5	0.9	17.0
Knee extension left	47.1	8.2	0.9	17.4
Foot plantar flexion right	103.2	20.6	2.2	20.0
Foot plantar flexion left	97.2	18.2	1.9	18.7
Foot dorsal flexion right	39.1	7.2	0.8	18.1
Foot dorsal flexion left	38.2	7.4	0.8	19.4

statistically significant. The agreement established may support the view that the values are fairly representative of isometric muscle strength of Swedish national servicemen at least from this particular recruiting area.

As mentioned earlier Asmussen *et al* have described a method using technical equipment similar to that used in the present study. Although testing conditions as well as the material investigated are different mean values and standard deviations of comparable strength values are roughly of the same magnitude. A detailed comparison is difficult to perform however as in the works of Asmussen *et al* the absolute values of muscle strength are not given but instead relative values corrected for the body height of the individual.

The correlation between different muscle groups was studied in the group of conscripts reported above (Series B). The coefficients of correlation between muscle strength values recorded appear in Fig. 1.

As a rule a highly significant correlation was observed between different muscle groups. A good correspondence was especially found between right and left-sided values as well as between synergists and antagonists.

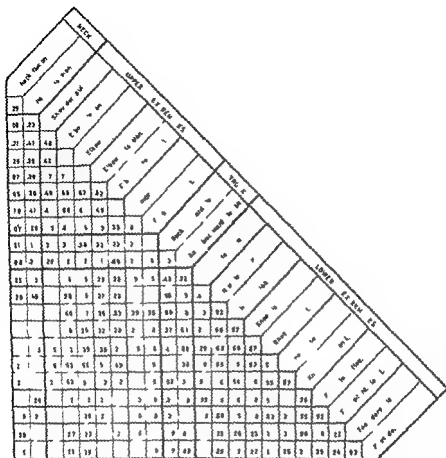


Fig. 4. Correlation between isometric muscle strength recorded in different parts of the body.

Series B 11 2 94 94

The figures denote correlation coefficients ( $r$ ). In the present study the correlation was found to be statistically highly significant for  $r = 0.31$  statistically significant for  $r = 0.29-0.31$  and probably significant for  $r = 0.11-0.22$ .

As expected muscle groups belonging to the same region appeared to be more closely related to one another than to muscles in other parts of the body. Also within the regions however disparities were found certain movements such as elbow extension knee flexion and dorsal flexion of the foot showing a somewhat divergent correlation pattern.

The correlation between neck strength and the strength of the upper extremities and the trunk was found to be rather low. This was also the case

for the power of the trunk compared with that of the upper extremities. The correspondence between trunk and leg strength was, on the other hand, stronger. A relatively good agreement was also found between the values of the upper and lower extremities.

*Discussion.* As pointed out by Landegard, the muscular distribution of strength in a group of individuals will reflect their habitual motional pattern. A distinction between different muscles according to their use may here be possible (88).

Theoretically each individual is assumed to have a certain range of muscular capacity, which is genotypically determined. The actual phenotypical value may be divided into two fractions, viz. the basic—or minimal—strength and the strength superimposed thereupon by training. The basic strength is supposed to be characteristic for each individual, whereas the second part of the actual value, i.e. the training component, may vary according to the demands of environment.

The basic muscle strength is presumably well correlated in different parts of the body, since it is genotypically determined. The same assumption may be valid for the actual muscle strength, if the individuals are trained according to their physical preconditions in all muscle groups. Selective inactivity or excess training of special groups will, however, disturb this correlation.

These considerations may aid in elucidating the intraindividual variations of correspondence between different muscle groups in the material investigated. As mentioned, some muscles, e.g. neck flexors, elbow extensors, knee flexors and foot dorsal flexors, tended to deviate from the majority of muscle groups in regard to strength. This tendency may at least partly be explained by an aberrant state of training. Other causes, such as variability of the measuring method, must however also be reckoned with.

The conditions mentioned apply to subjects in ordinary physical condition investigated before military service. Different relationships may be expected to exist in material with a different training status. To verify this assumption, a number of weight lifters were examined. Here remarkably high strength values were found in, for example, elbow extensors and knee extensors, whereas other muscle groups, as for example hip flexors, seemed to be less trained. Compared with the ordinary conscript material, the weight lifters showed a different pattern of correlation between the different muscle groups. This may be demonstrated for the muscles mentioned, where a significantly lower correlation was found between hip flexion on the one hand and elbow extension and knee extension on the other, as compared with the conscripts.

	Athletes	Conscripts
elbow extension	$r = -0.21$	$r = +0.37$
Hip flexion		
knee extension	$r = +0.15$	$r = +0.59$

### Prediction of general muscle strength from single muscle group values

The impossibility of determining the total muscularity of an individual will necessarily make all attempts at prediction imperfect. In spite of these limitations there have been devised various methods where different factors are constructed as approximate measures of total muscularity.

Generally a number of muscle groups have been measured and the scores obtained have been combined by simple addition as in the studies of Clarke, Martin *et al.* and Bethe *et al.* (18, 32, 95). The procedure mentioned implies that the various muscle values are weighted, each of them being proportionate to the actual strength of movement. The composite value will however greatly depend upon the choice of muscle groups as well as on the testing conditions.

Another method applied by, for instance, Clarke and Landegård is based upon the use of standardized scores (32, 88). Here the strength values recorded are converted to standard deviation units after subtraction of the mean values. The average standardized score—total muscle factor—is used as an expression of the entire strength of the body. The formula of this calculation would be

$$\text{Standardized muscle factor} = \frac{\sum \frac{x - \bar{x}}{s}}{n}$$

$x$  = a single value of muscle strength

$\bar{x}$  = the mean strength value of a single group in the material investigated

$s$  = standard deviation of material

$n$  = number of muscle groups included in the test

In this technique the muscle groups are given equal weight within the resultant muscle factor. One advantage of this procedure is that exclusion of one or several muscle values will induce only a small error of total muscle factor. Sometimes this cannot be avoided owing to accidental injuries affecting single joints and muscle groups.

The first technique was used by Martin *et al.* who constructed a so-called total proportional strength index from the values of 22 muscle groups.

The strength was determined by their breaking method and in addition the Collin dynamometer technique the latter being used for testing of the handgrip. The correlation of the single muscle strength values with the resultant index was studied. It was shown that practically all recorded muscle groups correlated well with the total proportional strength according to the definition used. For practical purposes an abbreviated test was designed in which only a few of the original testing phases were included. It was suggested by the authors that this procedure implied only a slight reduction of accuracy compared to the complete test. In the studies reported some important muscle groups such as plantar flexion and hip extension were not included because of technical limitations. Similarly the handgrip had to be measured by another method.

In principle the procedures mentioned may not add much further information than would studies of the interrelationship between strength values of different muscle groups. For comparison with the results of earlier investi-

**Table 5** *Correlation between the strength of single muscle groups and two expressions for estimated total muscle strength (Series B n = 92-93)*

Muscle group	Summed muscle factor $\bar{x} = 11.76$ kp		Standardized muscle factor $\bar{x} = 0.0$ units	
	r	s <sub>d</sub>	r	s <sub>d</sub>
Neck flexion	0.27**	166	0.33**	0.60
Neck extension	0.52***	147	0.56	0.52
Shoulder pull	0.57***	141	0.59***	0.51
Elbow flexion right	0.61*	133	0.76*	0.41
Elbow flexion left	0.61***	133	0.75***	0.42
Elbow extension right	0.49***	143	0.67*	0.47
Elbow extension left	0.41*	155	0.61***	0.50
Handgrip right	0.69***	124	0.68*	0.46
Handgrip left	0.61***	133	0.61***	0.49
Back forward flexion	0.63***	131	0.61***	0.50
Back backward flexion	0.52***	147	0.47***	0.56
Leg extension	0.89***	81	0.61***	0.50
Hip flexion right	0.72**	120	0.76**	0.41
Hip flexion left	0.67***	128	0.72**	0.44
Knee flexion right	0.50***	150	0.61**	0.49
Knee flexion left	0.58*	141	0.71***	0.15
Knee extension right	0.70***	121	0.78**	0.40
Knee extension left	0.69***	124	0.74**	0.43
Foot plantar flex right	0.62***	135	0.69*	0.46
Foot plantar flex left	0.59***	140	0.61*	0.50
Foot dorsal flex right	0.28**	165	0.40***	0.58
Foot dorsal flex left	0.29**	167	0.33**	0.59

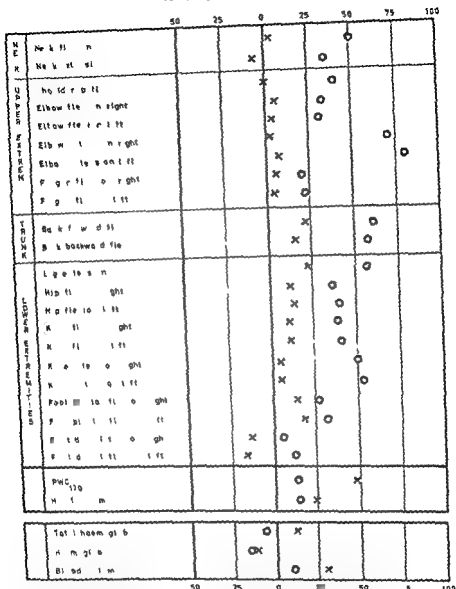


Fig. 5. Isometric muscle strength and some circulatory data recorded in two categories of elite athletes as compared with individuals in normal training.

Symbol: Weight lifters (O); Middle distance runners (X).

Upper section: Mean values from weight lifters (Series G,  $n = 15$ ) and middle-distance runners (Series C,  $n = 23$ ) expressed as percentage deviation of values from a group of randomly selected conscripts (Series B,  $n = 97-93$ ).

Lower section: Mean values from weight lifters ( $n = 17$ ) and middle distance runners ( $n = 7$ ) expressed as percentage deviation of normal standard values of the Clinical Physiological Laboratory of Karolinska Sjukhuset. As the standard in calculation of relative haemoglobin concentration 15.4 g/100 ml was used. For numerical values see Table 6.



gators however, the use of similar approximate measures of total muscularity in the present study may be regarded as justifiable. From the experimentally obtained strength values two different muscle factors were constructed one using the raw scores and one consisting of average scores converted to standard deviation units. The correlation between each of these muscle factors on the one hand and single muscle values on the other is shown in Table 5.

As can be seen a good correspondence was generally found between single muscle groups and the above-mentioned muscle factors. As pointed out earlier some muscle groups seemed to be less representative of general muscularity than did other muscles. In contrast to the findings of Martin *et al*, however the finger flexors showed about the same correlation with the summed muscle factor as did the majority of muscles.

The muscle factors mentioned may be used as approximate expressions of the general muscularity of individuals. If however, the ability to perform special forms of heavy work is to be estimated a closer definition of its physical demands is desirable. For some muscular and circulatory capacity factors this was clearly demonstrated in investigations of two categories of elite athletes. See Fig 5 and Table 6.

In these studies the effects of selective training were established as muscular and circulatory patterns specific to the appropriate branch of athletic activity. As regards muscularity, the factors mentioned may only imperfectly reflect the capacity required in highly specialized occupations of this kind. For a better characterization it would be desirable to use some other measure whereby the different muscle values are weighted according to their importance.

For special military occupations the physical demands are not known as a whole. Certain basic physical capabilities such as a high general muscularity and endurance, may however be assumed to be valuable qualities for elite soldiers. A single-muscle strength value which is shown to reflect general muscle strength may here constitute a valuable piece of information in the selection of individuals for physically hard service.

For practical reasons muscle groups which are readily accessible for strength determinations and which show a high reproducibility are to be chosen. When these factors as well as representativity for estimated general muscularity are taken into consideration such test movements as finger flexion, elbow flexion and knee extension may be recommended for abbreviated muscle-strength determinations. The above-reported correlation studies furthermore indicated that the leg strength is more closely related to the strength of the back than is the muscle power of the upper extremities. A combined testing

of both arm and leg muscle strength will therefore afford a higher accuracy as regards prediction of general strength than will measurements confined to the upper extremity

Table 6 Muscle strength and some circulatory data in two categories of elite athletes

Table 6. Muscle strength and some characteristics										
Differences in	Weight lifters			Middle-distance runners				Differences in	Probability	
	n	$\bar{x}$	s	s <sup>2</sup>	n	$\bar{x}$	s			s <sup>2</sup>
Neck flexion	15	23.1	5.7	0.7	15	15.9	4.4	0.9	72	
Neck extension	15	36.1	4.0	1.0	15	23.4	1.4	0.9	107	
Shoulder pull	15	66.8	10.2	2.6	23	47.6	11.6	2.4	192	
Elbow flexion right	15	37.7	3.8	1.9	23	30.9	3.1	0.7	77	
Elbow flexion left	15	36.5	3.3	0.8	23	28.7	3.3	0.7	78	
Elbow extension right	15	27.8	4.1	1.1	23	16.2	2.3	0.5	113	
Elbow extension left	15	27.3	3.6	0.9	23	16.2	2.0	0.4	111	
Finger flexion right	15	80.0	9.3	2.6	3	70.5	11.3	2.3	97	
Finger flexion left	15	77.1	8.8	2.3	23	65.0	10.1	2.1	121	
Back for vertical flexion	15	100.5	20.6	5.3	23	76.3	10.3	4.2	142	
Backward flexion	15	103.9	20.9	5.4	23	75.7	11.9	2.5	282	
Leg extension	15	81	9.2	2.1	23	46.2	9.3	2.0	119	
Hip flexion right	15	61.4	8.9	2.3	23	49.9	6.6	1.9	111	
Hip flexion left	15	61.7	9.5	2.5	23	49.9	6.6	1.8	118	
Knee flexion right	14	51.8	5.3	1.4	23	37.9	3.5	0.7	69	
Knee flexion left	15	51.0	3.1	0.8	23	27.2	3.5	0.7	68	
Knee extension right	14	74.4	10.5	2.8	23	52.6	5.6	1.2	218	
Knee extension left	15	72.3	10.4	2.7	22	49.9	5.2	1.1	224	
Foot plantar flexion right	15	121.2	27.9	7.2	21	119.5	18.8	4.1	117	
Foot plantar flexion left	15	128.7	27.7	7.1	21	115.6	16.0	4.1	129	
Foot dorsal flexion right	15	41.6	9.9	2.5	21	31.0	7.4	1.0	76	
Foot dorsal flexion left	15	42.8	11.0	2.8	20	32.6	8.1	1.8	102	
PMCA, kpm/min	15	137.7	21.1	5	23	153.1	15.1	32	374	
Heart volume ml	11	86.9	14.4	4.1	22	96.0	10.2	2.7	91	
Total haemoglobin g	12	79.0	1.1	35	22	87.5	8.1	17	83	
Haemoglobin conc g/100 ml	12	13.27	0.79	0.23	22	13.43	0.60	0.13	0.16	
Blood volume l	12	5.97	0.88	0.26	22	6.52	0.68	0.15	0.53	

## Relation between muscle strength and certain anthropometric data

In evaluation of muscle strength the purpose of the investigation must be taken into consideration. The best way of expressing strength recorded may vary from situation to situation.

For establishment of the ability to perform heavy, mainly static work anatomically defined forces will generally be adequate. For follow up studies in connection with physical training or other environmental influences this way of expressing muscle strength will also be satisfactory. In other situations however there may be a desire to evaluate muscle strength with regard to the natural preconditions of the individual.

The assessment of normal values is a general medical problem and is difficult partly because different definitions may be used for the concept of normality. In some works normal muscle strength has been defined as the optimal—mainly genotypically determined—power of an individual when sex, body build and age are taken into account. In other investigations normal values have been used which are synonymous with the average—phenotypical—strength of individuals having certain biological and social characteristics. From this follows the consideration that genotypical and phenotypical strength will show a good correspondence only in subject groups where each individual is trained according to his physical preconditions.

In the above mentioned works of Asmussen *et al* attempts were made to establish optimal values for different categories of individuals by correction of recorded strength with regard to body height. In the present investigation such conversions have not been attempted. Instead it seemed to be of interest to study the actual relation of phenotypical muscle strength to some anthropometric data in the present group of conscripts homogeneous as regards sex and age.

As a measure of estimated general strength the standardized muscle factor used earlier was applied. In the following table the correlation is set out for some body-build data.

Table 7 Relationship between isometric muscle strength ( $y$ ) and certain anthropometric data ( $x$ )

Parameter	Equation of regression line	$r$	$t$
Body height cm	$y = 0.011x + 7.98$	0.11	0.3—0.2
Body weight kg	$y = 0.017x + 6.86$	0.56	•••
Tibial length cm	$y = 0.019x + 9.24$	0.09	0.5—0.4
Femoral condylar breadth mm	$y = 0.043x + 5.83$	0.28	

Note: Muscle strength is expressed as standardized muscle factor.

**Discussion** As can be seen the correlation between body height and muscle strength was low in the present group of subjects. This was the case with the standardized muscle factor as well as with the strength of single muscle groups. The other measure of skeletal length recorded, i.e. tibial length, also showed a low coefficient of correlation with muscle strength. The skeletal breadth on the other hand seemed to be more closely related to muscle strength than was height. Concordant results had earlier been obtained by other investigators from studies on similar subject groups (26-88). Of the parameters studied the body weight showed the highest correlation with muscle strength. A closer analysis of these conditions is however beyond the scope of this investigation.

### **Muscular and circulatory adaptation in conscripts during military service**

During military service people from various occupations and environments are brought together to lead a life in which physical and psychological demands are rather uniform. This situation offers exceptional opportunities to study the process of adaptation to altered environmental conditions. Apart from their theoretical interest, studies of this kind may be of value in the designing of military training programmes.

In Sweden there have been performed comprehensive investigations in which one or several physical capacity factors have been followed in conscripts during the year of basic military training (26-87-92). From these studies some general trends of physical adaptation are known. As regards muscle strength however our knowledge is still incomplete.

In earlier investigations the strength has been recorded in only a few muscle groups, all belonging to the upper extremities. Many muscles which may be assumed to be of importance for military fitness, such as dorsal musculature, leg extensors and plantar flexors of the foot, have not been included. It therefore seemed to be of great interest to apply the present muscle testing method to a longitudinal study of the muscular adaptability in conscripts during the nine months of military service (Series B<sub>1</sub>).

**Plan of investigation** The investigational procedure included clinical examination, heart volume determination, complete muscle strength testing, anthropometry and determination of the physical working capacity (PWC<sub>170</sub>) in the order mentioned. The first examination was performed during the first two weeks after induction, the following ones at intervals of three months, the last examination taking place shortly before return to civilian life.

In preliminary studies on conscripts during the preceding year there were gained some experiences which seemed to be of value in designing the present investigation. Thus it was occasionally found that conscripts hesitated to show their real capacity because they feared that high records might result in their being given a harder training programme. In the actual study the subjects were therefore informed that the results would be used exclusively for scientific purposes and that the individual results would not immediately be imparted to the military authorities. The subjects' interest and active cooperation was furthermore stimulated by the arrangement that at the end of the investigation everyone was offered the opportunity to become acquainted with his own values.

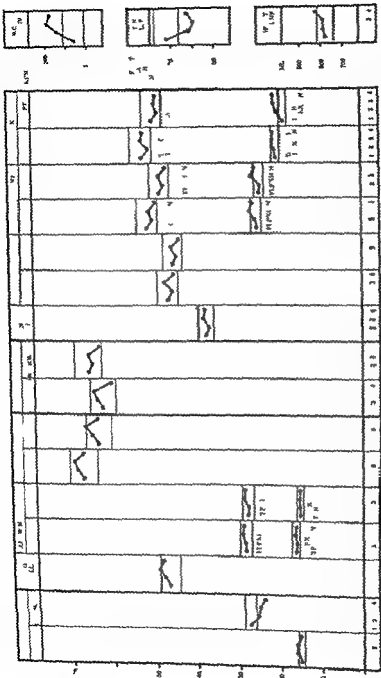
All muscle-strength determinations were performed by the author aided by an assistant. At the time of investigation the method had been in use for about a year and initial inaccuracies had been corrected. As a rule the examinations were performed between 8 a.m. and 2 p.m.

**Results** The mean values from the repeated muscle-strength measurements of different muscle groups are plotted in Fig. 6. For reference the  $PWC_{10}$  values, the resting pulse and the heart volume in the prone position are also reported.

As can be seen, the muscle-strength changes in different parts of the body were found to be rather heterogeneous. In some muscle groups the strength showed a tendency to increase during the observation period. This was the case with neck flexion, shoulder pull, elbow flexion, finger flexion and knee flexion. In other muscle groups, however, there was observed an average decline of neck extension, back flexion, hip flexion and knee extension. A third category viz. elbow extension and leg extension showed largely unchanged values.

Generally the mean changes were small, only occasionally exceeding 5 per cent of the initial value. Sometimes they were not statistically significant. For some groups where a slight gain was recorded—for example shoulder pull and finger flexion—the highest value was observed shortly before Christmas leave, whereas a regression was observed at the last examination before departure.

The physical working capacity ( $PWC_{170}$ ) which showed a pronounced increase during the first six months, had the same tendency to decline—or stagnate—towards the end of military service. The heart-volume alterations approximately followed those of the  $PWC_{170}$ , whereas the resting pulse showed the opposite direction.



**Fig. 6** Average changes of isometric muscle strength and of some circulatory factors in 19/00 year old conscripts during basic military service

Series B, n = 56--58

Series 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840,

In preliminary studies on conscripts during the preceding year there were gained some experiences which seemed to be of value in designing the present investigation. Thus it was occasionally found that conscripts hesitated to show their real capacity because they feared that high records might result in their being given a harder training programme. In the actual study the subjects were therefore informed that the results would be used exclusively for scientific purposes and that the individual results would not immediately be imparted to the military authorities. The subjects' interest and active cooperation was furthermore stimulated by the arrangement that at the end of the investigation everyone was offered the opportunity to become acquainted with his own values.

All muscle-strength determinations were performed by the author, aided by an assistant. At the time of investigation the method had been in use for about a year and initial inaccuracies had been corrected. As a rule the examinations were performed between 8 a.m. and 2 p.m.

*Results.* The mean values from the repeated muscle strength measurements of different muscle groups are plotted in Fig. 6. For reference the  $PWC_{170}$  values, the resting pulse and the heart volume in the prone position are also reported.

As can be seen, the muscle strength changes in different parts of the body were found to be rather heterogeneous. In some muscle groups the strength showed a tendency to increase during the observation period. This was the case with neck flexion, shoulder pull, elbow flexion, finger flexion and knee flexion. In other muscle groups, however, there was observed an average decline of neck extension, back flexion, hip flexion and knee extension. A third category, viz. elbow extension and leg extension, showed largely unchanged values.

Generally the mean changes were small, only occasionally exceeding 5 per cent of the initial value; sometimes they were not statistically significant. For some groups where a slight gain was recorded—for example shoulder pull and finger flexion—the highest value was observed shortly before Christmas leave, whereas a regression was observed at the last examination before departure.

The physical working capacity ( $PWC_{170}$ ), which showed a pronounced increase during the first six months, had the same tendency to decline—or stagnate—towards the end of military service. The heart-volume alterations approximately followed those of the  $PWC_{170}$ , whereas the resting pulse showed the opposite direction.

Table 9 Some anthropometrie and circulatory factors in conscripts followed during military service (Series B n = 50--58)

Parameter	Mean value (x)				Std. d.				s of d.				Stat. significance of difference			
	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
Parametric																
Body height cm	178.4	178.5	178.5	178.5	6.1	6.1	6.1	6.1	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	---	---	---	---
Body weight kg	67.3	68.0	68.1	68.8	7.7	7.1	7.0	7.3	1.0	1.0	0.9	0.9	1	1	1	1
Elmeral condylar breadth cm	9.9	9.9	9.9	9.9	0.39	0.38	0.40	0.39	0.05	0.0	0.0	0.0	---	---	---	---
Tibial length cm	40.6	40.0	40.7	40.5	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.2	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	---	---	---	---
Subcut fat reg	7.0	7.4	7.3	7.2	2.6	2.0	2.0	2.1	0.31	0.0	0.27	0.29	---	1-2	1-3	---
II	1.3	1.6	1.3	1.3	3.6	2.4	2.1	2.1	0.17	0.31	0.28	0.28	---	1-2	1-3	---
III	0.8	0.6	0.2	0.0	2.1	2.3	1.0	2.0	0.31	0.30	0.25	0.20	1-4	1-2	1-3	2-3
PWC <sub>17</sub>	1058	1138	1190	1174	180	180	173	184	20	21	23	24	1-2	1-3	2-3	2-4
Heart volume ml	770	786	786	819	101	94	94	91	11	13	13	12	1-2	1-3	2-3	2-4
Pulse resting beats/min	68	68	67	66	11.1	8.6	7.9	9.7	1.5	1.2	1.1	1.3	1-2	1-3	1-4	---
Maximal heart rate beats/min																
					186.5			8.4								

Figures denote number of examination



Table 8 Muscular adaptation in conscripts during military service (Series B<sub>1</sub> n = 56-58)

Muscle group	Mean value ( $\bar{x}$ ) in kilograms				Stand dev (s)				Stand error of the mean ( $\sigma_{\bar{x}}$ )				Statist significance of differences			
Flexion %	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	$P_{\bar{x}}$ < 0.001	$P_{\bar{x}}$ 0.001-0.01	$P_{\bar{x}}$ 0.01-0.1	$P_{\bar{x}}$
Neck flexion	152	166	100	158	33	41	38	10	01	05	05	05	1-2 2-4	—	—	1-3
Neck extension	270	252	211	233	41	51	43	48	05	07	06	06	1-2 3-4	—	—	3-4
Shoulder pull	466	478	400	481	97	91	97	100	13	12	13	13	—	—	—	1-3
Elbow flexion right	282	285	292	280	33	32	36	35	05	04	05	05	—	—	—	1-3
Elbow flexion left	277	276	286	281	34	35	36	33	03	05	04	05	1-3 2-3	—	—	1-4
Elbow extension right	163	161	161	162	29	28	29	30	01	01	01	04	2-3	1-3 2-4	—	1-4
Elbow extension left	152	153	151	152	27	27	28	26	01	01	04	03	—	—	—	—
Finger flexion right	666	680	688	667	85	78	60	79	12	11	00	11	—	—	—	—
Finger flexion left	628	614	659	631	93	86	81	82	12	11	11	11	1-3 3-4	3-4	—	1-3
Back forward flexion	618	628	638	695	165	111	132	146	22	19	17	20	—	—	—	1-2 2-3
Backward flexion	652	612	631	626	111	130	112	123	15	17	15	16	—	—	—	3-4
Leg extension	371	363	376	372	80	81	101	96	12	11	14	13	—	—	—	1-4
Hip flexion right	456	418	465	411	82	86	83	79	11	11	11	11	—	—	—	—
Hip flexion left	417	439	431	431	80	77	81	88	12	10	11	11	3-4	—	—	2-3
Knee flexion right	219	252	264	259	40	39	38	41	05	05	05	06	—	—	—	—
Knee flexion left	213	212	260	253	41	39	11	41	03	04	06	06	1-3	2-3 1-4	—	—
Knee extension right	306	192	501	487	86	81	78	84	11	11	10	11	1-3 2-3	2-4	—	1-4
Knee extension left	475	467	476	462	82	81	82	80	11	11	11	11	—	—	—	1-2 1 3-4
Foot plantar flexion right	103	100	103	103	20	16	18	18	27	23	21	25	—	—	—	3-4
Foot plantar flexion left	980	919	963	972	192	159	162	172	26	21	22	23	—	—	—	2-3
Foot dorsal flexion right	401	408	417	417	79	78	63	63	11	11	09	09	—	—	—	—
Foot dorsal flexion left	396	390	407	407	79	82	63	51	11	11	08	07	—	—	—	1-3 1-4
Foot dorsal flexion left	396	390	407	407	79	82	63	51	11	11	08	07	—	—	—	2-3 1-4

Figures denote number of examination

Table 9 Some anthropometric and circulatory factors in conscripts followed during military service (Series II, n = 36-9)

Parameter	Mean value (x)					Standard deviation (s)					Mean error of the mean (s/√n)					Significance level					t test				
Parameter	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5	1-4	3-4	2-4	1-3	1-5	2-5	3-5	1-5	2-3	1-3
Body height cm	178.4	178.5	178.5	178.5	178.5	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Body weight kg	67.3	68.0	68.1	68.5	68.8	7.7	7.1	7.0	7.3	7.3	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.9	0.9	1-4	3-4	2-4	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Femoral conlylar breadth cm	9.9	9.9	9.9	9.9	9.9	0.39	0.38	0.40	0.39	0.39	0.05	0.04	0.04	0.04	0.04	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Tibial length cm	49.6	49.8	49.7	49.5	49.5	2.7	2.2	2.2	2.2	2.2	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Subcut fat mm	7.9	7.4	7.3	7.2	7.2	2.6	2.0	2.0	2.1	2.1	0.31	0.30	0.30	0.27	0.28	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Heart volume ml	1058	1138	1190	1171	1193	180	180	173	185	185	26	21	23	21	23	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Pulse resting beat/min	70.8	65.8	61.7	60.0	11.1	8.6	7.9	9.7	15	12	11	13	13	12	12	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Maximal heart rate beats/min	180.5	180.5	180.5	180.5	180.5	8.4	8.4	8.4	8.4	8.4	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Figures denote number of examination

Table 8 Muscular adaptation in conscripts during military service (Series D<sub>1</sub> n = 56-58)

Muscle group	Mean value ( $\bar{x}$ ) in kiloponds				Stand. dev. (s)				Stand. error of the mean ( $\sigma_{\bar{x}}$ )				Statistic significance of differences			
	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	$P_{\infty}$ < 0.001	$t$ 0.001-0.01	$F$ 0.01-0.1	$P_{\infty}$ 0.01-0.1
Examination No	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4				
Neck flexion	15.2	16.6	16.0	15.9	3.3	4.1	3.8	4.0	0.4	0.5	0.5	0.5	1-2 2-1	—	—	1-3
Neck extension	27.0	25.2	21.4	23.5	1.1	1.1	4.3	4.8	0.3	0.7	0.6	0.6	1-2 3-1	—	—	3-1
Shoulder pull	16.6	17.8	49.0	48.1	9.7	9.1	9.7	10.0	1.3	1.2	1.3	1.3	2-1	—	—	—
Elbow flexion right	28.2	28.7	29.2	28.9	3.3	3.2	3.6	3.3	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.5	—	—	—	1-3
Elbow flexion left	27.7	27.6	28.6	28.1	3.4	3.3	3.6	3.3	0.3	0.5	0.3	0.5	—	1-3 2-3	—	1-1
Elbow extension right	16.3	16.1	16.1	16.2	2.9	2.8	2.9	3.0	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.4	2-3	1-3 2-1	—	1-1
Elbow extension left	15.2	15.3	15.4	15.2	2.7	2.7	2.8	2.6	0.4	0.4	0.4	0.3	—	—	—	—
Finger flexion right	66.6	69.0	68.8	66.7	8.5	7.8	6.9	7.9	1.2	1.1	0.9	1.1	—	—	—	—
Finger flexion left	62.8	61.4	63.9	63.1	9.3	8.6	8.1	8.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1-3 3-1	3-1	—	1-3
Back forward flexion	61.8	62.8	63.8	59.3	16.3	14.1	13.2	14.6	2.2	1.9	1.7	2.0	—	—	—	1-2 2-3
Back backward flexion	63.2	64.2	63.1	62.6	11.1	13.0	11.2	12.3	1.5	1.7	1.3	1.6	—	—	—	3-1
Leg extension	371	363	376	372	89	81	101	96	12	11	14	13	—	—	—	—
Hip flexion right	15.6	14.8	16.5	14.1	8.2	8.6	8.3	7.9	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	3-1	—	—	2-3
Hip flexion left	14.7	13.9	15.1	13.1	8.0	7.7	8.1	8.8	1.2	1.0	1.1	1.2	—	3-1	—	—
Knee flexion right	21.0	25.2	26.4	25.9	4.0	3.9	3.8	4.4	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.6	—	—	—	—
Knee flexion left	21.3	24.2	20.0	22.3	4.1	3.9	4.1	4.1	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.6	1-3	2-3 1-1	—	—
Knee extension right	46.6	49.2	46.1	49.7	8.6	8.1	7.8	8.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	1.1	1-3 2-3	2-1	—	1-1
Knee extension left	47.7	46.7	47.6	46.2	8.2	8.1	8.2	8.0	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	—	—	—	1-2 1 3-1
Foot plantar flexion right	103.3	100.2	103.6	107.0	20.3	16.3	18.0	18.6	2.7	2.2	2.1	2.1	—	—	—	3-1
Foot plantar flexion left	98.0	94.9	96.7	97.2	19.2	15.9	16.2	17.2	2.6	2.1	2.2	2.3	—	—	—	2-3
Foot dorsal flexion right	10.1	10.9	11.7	11.7	7.9	7.8	6.3	6.3	1.1	1.1	0.9	0.9	—	—	—	—
Foot dorsal flexion left	18.6	19.0	16.7	16.7	7.9	8.2	6.3	6.1	1.1	1.1	0.8	0.7	—	1-3	—	1-1
													—	—	—	2-3 1-1

\* Figures denote number of examination

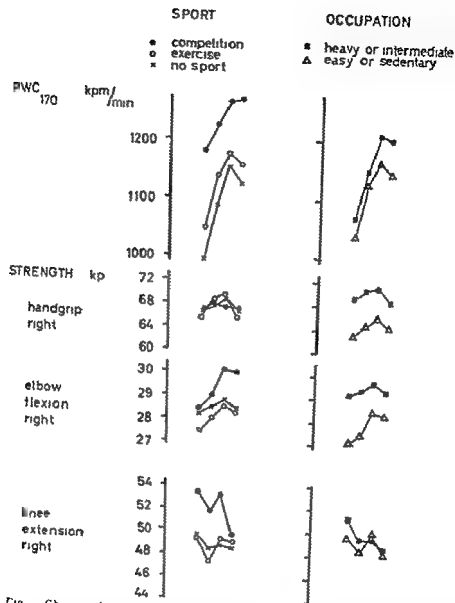


Fig Changes of isometric muscle strength and PWC<sub>170</sub> in a group of conscripts divided into subgroups according to occupation and to participation in sports

Series B  $n = 38$

Figures at the foot of the graph denote date of examination during basic military service  
 1 - May 1961 2 - August 1961 3 - December 1961 and 4 - March 1962  
 Number of subjects SPORT competition 16 exercise 13 no sport 29 OCCUPATION  
 heavy or intermediate 30 easy or sedentary 25

Among the anthropometric data recorded the following may be mentioned. Mean body height was unchanged throughout the nine months of observation whereas body weight significantly increased, from 67.3 to 68.8 kg. The femoral condylar breadth and the tibial length remained the same. The subcutaneous fat was however reduced in all three regions measured, the abdominal fat showing the largest reduction.

A complete survey of absolute mean values, standard deviations, standard errors of mean and significance of differences is given in Tables 8 and 9.

*Discussion.* At first sight the changes in muscle strength during the nine months of military service may seem somewhat surprising. In particular the occasional decrease in muscle strength in spite of physical training was unexpected. To elucidate the mechanism of these changes a closer analysis of the findings was performed with special regard to the composition of the subject group.

The material was divided into subgroups according to occupation on the one hand and participation in sport activities on the other. Physical working capacity ( $PWC_{170}$ ) and muscle strength values of five subgroups appear in Fig. 7.

As regards  $PWC_{170}$  the competitive athletes included in the material showed a significantly higher value at the beginning of the observation period than subjects who did not take part in any sport ( $P = 0.01-0.001^{**}$ ). On the other hand the latter group, who started on a lower level, exhibited the greater relative increase of the two. The difference in the changes was however not statistically significant.

Comparison between subjects accustomed to heavy work and those previously in light or sedentary occupations showed only a slight non-significant difference as regards initial values of  $PWC_{170}$ . The relative alterations furthermore seemed to be of the same degree for both categories.

Three muscle groups, viz. finger flexors, elbow flexors and knee extensors, were studied in the same respect as  $PWC_{170}$ . For these muscles the physically more active subject groups—the competitive athletes and the individuals used to heavy work—showed higher initial values than did the others. The differences were however not statistically significant. Although the changes in the subgroups were rather small, they may reflect some tendencies to muscular rearrangement. As a rule the strength curves of initially less capable subjects and of those with higher initial values had a tendency to converge in the course of military service. For knee extension an average decline of strength was observed in the material as a whole. This alteration seemed to be due to a selective decrease in initially strong individuals, whereas weaker

## SPORT

## OCCUPATION

- competition
- exercise
- × no sport

- heavy or intermediate
- ▲ easy or sedentary

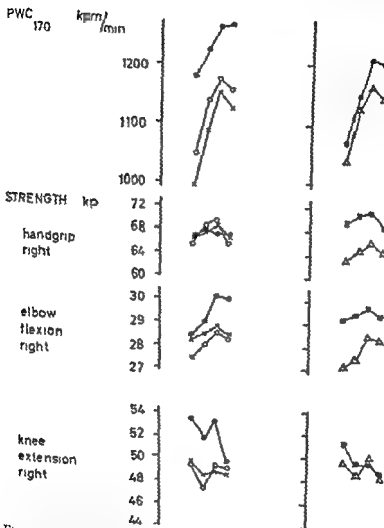


Fig. 1. Changes of isometric muscle strength and PWC<sub>170</sub> in a group of conscripts divided into subgroups according to occupation and to participation in sports.

Series B n = 58

Figures at the foot of the graph denote date of examination during basic military service  
 1 = May 1961 3 = August 1961 3 = December 1961 and 4 = March 1962  
 Number of subjects SPORT competition 16 exercise 13 no sport 29 OCCUPATION  
 heavy or intermediate 30 easy or sedentary 28

individuals largely retained their initial muscle strength. Nor in this case were the differences between the subgroups statistically significant.

Environmental factors such as occupation and participation in sport activities will represent only part of the various civilian influences determining the initial values. This may account for the relatively small differences observed between the different subgroups. Although not conclusive, the tendencies noted may support the view that the initial civilian influences on physical capacity gradually fade during the military service. The results reported are in agreement with those of earlier investigators (56, 87, 92).

As shown earlier, the training level of different muscle groups seems to vary according to their habitual activity. The initial variability in combination with the varying muscular demands of military life, may explain the heterogeneity of changes found in different parts of the body.

The low degree of changes observed—for most muscles within  $\pm 5\%$  of the initial value—would seem to indicate that the general muscular demands of military life are relatively small. On the whole they seem to correspond fairly well to those of average civilian life.

In order to find out whether any particular period of the training time was more effective than others as regards physical improvement, values from the four examinations were compared. As mentioned, a moderate increase of strength was noted in some muscle groups. Here the maximal values were generally reached after about six months, whereas a slight decline was observed towards the end of the training period. A similar tendency was found for the physical working capacity and—although in the opposite direction—for the resting pulse.

In the present material the average physical working capacity ( $PWC_{170}$ ) showed a statistically significant increase between induction to military service and departure therefrom. A corresponding development was found in 1958–59 by Hellstrom, who followed a group of conscripts with a similar civilian background. Other conscript groups investigated by Linroth in 1952–53 showed a moderate average decrease of  $PWC_{170}$  between two examinations during basic military training. As compared with the present finding this may partly be explained by divergent composition of the material studied as regards age, civil occupation, residence, participation in sport, etc. Partly, however, it may be due to the fact that the first examination of Linroth was performed 1–2 months after the beginning of military training. The initially recorded values in his series were also considerably higher than those observed in the present material.

The mean body weight showed a small but statistically significant increase, whereas the body height was constant throughout the investigation.

Unchanged also were the length of tibia and the distance between the femoral condyles on the right hand side. The amount of subcutaneous fat estimated in three regions exhibited a statistically significant decrease.

The stationary body height would seem to indicate that skeletal growth had largely ceased in the present material before induction into military service. This finding is in close agreement with the results of Larroth's investigations where the mean age was 21 years. In Hellstrom's series however a significant increase of body height was recorded during the first three months of military service. As this change was observed exclusively during the first phase of the period a small age difference in the two subject groups may account for the disparity. Moreover the initial body height of Hellstrom's group was somewhat lower possibly indicating an overrepresentation of individuals whose growth was not entirely completed at the time of induction.

The gain of weight followed the increase of physical working capacity whereas the amount of subcutaneous fat showed a contemporaneous reduction. The decrease of fatty tissue may probably be attributed to the effects of physical training. The gain of weight on the other hand may have different causes. It may here be recalled that the increase was relatively small—amounting to 2.2 per cent of the initial weight. This alteration may partly be explained by changes of heart size and blood volume connected with circulatory adjustment to physical training. Other factors such as for example developmental or seasonal changes of body composition are however also to be reckoned with.



individuals largely retained their initial muscle strength. Nor in this case were the differences between the subgroups statistically significant.

Environmental factors such as occupation and participation in sport activities will represent only part of the various civilian influences determining the initial values. This may account for the relatively small differences observed between the different subgroups. Although not conclusive the tendencies noted may support the view that the initial civilian influences on physical capacity gradually fade during the military service. The results reported are in agreement with those of earlier investigators (56, 87, 92).

As shown earlier, the training level of different muscle groups seems to vary according to their habitual activity. The initial variability in combination with the varying muscular demands of military life may explain the heterogeneity of changes found in different parts of the body.

The low degree of changes observed—for most muscles within  $\pm 5\%$  of the initial value—would seem to indicate that the general muscular demands of military life are relatively small. On the whole they seem to correspond fairly well to those of average civilian life.

In order to find out whether any particular period of the training time was more effective than others as regards physical improvement values from the four examinations were compared. As mentioned a moderate increase of strength was noted in some muscle groups. Here the maximal values were generally reached after about six months, whereas a slight decline was observed towards the end of the training period. A similar tendency was found for the physical working capacity and—although in the opposite direction—for the resting pulse.

In the present material the average physical working capacity ( $PWC_{170}$ ) showed a statistically significant increase between induction to military service and departure therefrom. A corresponding development was found in 1938–59 by Hellström who followed a group of conscripts with a similar civilian background. Other conscript groups investigated by Irmroth in 1952–53 showed a moderate average decrease of  $PWC_{170}$  between two examinations during basic military training. As compared with the present finding this may partly be explained by divergent composition of the material studied as regards age, civil occupation, residence, participation in sport, etc. Partly, however, it may be due to the fact that the first examination of Irmroth was performed 1–2 months after the beginning of military training. The initially recorded values in his series were also considerably higher than those observed in the present material.

The mean body weight showed a small but statistically significant increase, whereas the body height was constant throughout the investigation.

### PART III

Studies on maximal physical working capacity



The aim of this part of the investigation was to elucidate some problems connected with the evaluation of maximal working capacity. A method earlier described by Grosse-Idordemann & Müller was here applied to investigations of military and civilian subject groups (20).

The average relationship was thus established between work intensity and maximal performance time. The reproducibility of an index of maximal physical working capacity was tested in duplicate determinations on separate days. Exhausting work of varying duration was furthermore studied with regard to circulatory adaptation. The results obtained in subject groups of divergent composition were compared and differences in final heart rate and lactic acid concentration discussed. Finally, the present technique was compared with some other methods for assessment of physical capability.

## CHAPTER VI

### Earlier investigations

Numerous techniques have been devised for evaluation of physical working capacity. The type of test work as well as the technical details varies from method to method. Certain requirements are however essential to obtain reproducible results. The work must be fairly simple and familiar to the individuals tested. Furthermore it must be possible to grade the work in intensity objectively. These requirements are largely fulfilled by the work on a bicycle ergometer (61-71).

The testing method may be either maximal or submaximal. In submaximal tests the work load is generally related to the heart rate (43, 103, 117, 129). These methods have the advantage of objectivity and they may be applied also to the examination of diseased persons.

Where it is possible to use maximal performance tests they will offer a more realistic way of estimating the physical working capacity. In one of the maximal testing methods the greatest attainable oxygen uptake—the so called aerobic capacity—is used as an expression of physical working capacity (11, 58, 63, 118, 125). Although this measure may afford a reliable value of endurance the method is hard to apply in large subject groups because of its great technical and personnel requirements.



The aim of this part of the investigation was to elucidate some problems connected with the evaluation of maximal working capacity. A method earlier described by Grosse-Lordemann & Müller was here applied to investigations of military and civilian subject groups (50).

The average relationship was thus established between work intensity and maximal performance time. The reproducibility of an index of maximal physical working capacity was tested in duplicate determinations on separate days. Exhausting work of varying duration was furthermore studied with regard to circulatory adaptation. The results obtained in subject groups of divergent composition were compared and differences in final heart rate and lactic acid concentration discussed. Finally the present technique was compared with some other methods for assessment of physical capability.

## CHAPTER VI

### Earlier investigations

Numerous techniques have been devised for evaluation of physical working capacity. The type of test work as well as the technical details varies from method to method. Certain requirements are however essential to obtain reproducible results. The work must be fairly simple and familiar to the individuals tested. Furthermore it must be possible to grade the work in intensity objectively. These requirements are largely fulfilled by the work on a bicycle ergometer (61-71).

The testing method may be either maximal or submaximal. In submaximal tests the work load is generally related to the heart rate (43, 103, 117, 129). These methods have the advantage of objectivity and they may be applied also to the examination of diseased persons.

Where it is possible to use maximal performance tests they will offer a more realistic way of estimating the physical working capacity. In one of the maximal testing methods the greatest attainable oxygen uptake—the so-called aerobic capacity—is used as an expression of physical working capacity (11, 58, 63, 118, 120). Although this measure may afford a reliable value of endurance the method is hard to apply in large subject groups because of its great technical and personnel requirements.

Other approaches have been used where the work load is related to the maximal performance time or to that time combined with other factors. Among methods using this principle the following may be mentioned.

Johnsson & Brouha tested a group of men running on a motor driven treadmill at 7.0 miles per hour on a gradient of 8%. The subjects had to run until exhaustion or for a maximum of 5 minutes. From maximal pulse, maximal serum lactate concentration and duration of run a work index was calculated (79-80). Foltz *et al* used a test of exhaustion where double work periods were applied in order to reduce the individual variations (16). Taylor described another method, where the work on a treadmill was gradually increased until the subject became exhausted. The maximal time was here used as a so called performance index (121).

Grosse Lordemann & Muller studied the relation between work load and maximal time during which the load could be sustained. They used an electrodynamically braked bicycle ergometer of their own design. In their experimental series maximal tests with varying loads were performed with 5 individuals (50-99-102-104). The probable formula reflecting the relationship between work intensity and maximal performance time was established. The influence of different variables such as pedalling velocity, height of saddle and length of pedals was determined. Investigations of the mechanical efficiency were furthermore performed for exhausting work of varying duration. In accordance with the formula of the load time curve a value of maximal working capacity could be calculated for each subject investigated. Similar investigations were carried out by Bink who studied the relationship between effort and endurance in 5 individuals (20).

From the world records for running various distances the relation between mean velocity and performance time was studied by Hill, Henry, Lietzke and Aperia *et al* (1-57-63-86). The data were plotted in a coordinate system and the resultant curve analysed. A curve similar to that of Grosse Lordemann & Muller was obtained. On the basis of these findings a technique for evaluation of maximal working capacity was suggested using as a measure of physical fitness the work intensity sustainable during a maximum of 11 minutes.

In connection with studies on physical performance and perceived exertion a test for short period work on the bicycle ergometer was recently described by Borg (23). Maximal work was here recorded in performances lasting for about 15 seconds using a gradually increasing work load. It was suggested that the level attained reflected mainly muscular capacity and motivation.

## Methods

### A Submaximal evaluation of physical working capacity ( $PWC_{170}$ )

As a matter of routine practically all the subjects admitted to the laboratory were investigated according to the method developed at Karolinska Sjukhuset (117-129). The working capacity is expressed as the work intensity which the individual can maintain at a heart rate of 170 beats per minute in circulatory steady state. The latter concept was defined as the condition where the pulse rate increased 10 beats or less between the 2nd and 6th minutes at the highest load. When the subject did not fulfil this criterion the working capacity was instead related to a pulse level of 160 beats per minute.

The working machine used was an electrodynamically braked bicycle ergometer (71). The five ergometers in use were regularly calibrated twice annually. In no instance did the variation exceed 3 per cent. For the electrocardiographic recordings a direct recording apparatus was used (Mingograph 42 Elema Järnh, Stockholm).

*Procedure.* Prior to the work test an Ecg at rest as well as an orthostatic test was performed. The following leads were used: standard leads I, II and III and precordial leads  $CR_1$  or  $CH_1$ ,  $CR_2$  or  $CH_2$ ,  $CR_4$  or  $CH_4$ ,  $CR_5$  or  $CH_5$  and  $CR_7$  or  $CH_7$ . (The head leads were taken during work.) For the orthostatic test the heart rate and Ecg reaction were studied after 8 minutes of passive standing. The work test was initiated at a load of 300 kpm/min. Every 6 minutes the load was increased until the pulse rate reached a level of 170 beats per minute. To study the effects of maximal work the test was in some subject groups continued until exhaustion. Pulse values were followed at Ecg every two minutes. An Ecg was also recorded immediately after the work period and following 4 minutes of rest. Using the approximately linear relationship between pulse rate and work load the value of  $PWC_{170}$  was obtained by extrapolation or interpolation.

### B Maximal oxygen uptake ( $\dot{V}O_{2\max}$ )

In each individual the measurement was preceded by repeated work tests where the maximal performance times were determined for different loads.



Other approaches have been used where the work load is related to the maximal performance time or to that time combined with other factors. Among methods using this principle the following may be mentioned.

Johnsson & Brouha tested a group of men running on a motor driven treadmill at 7.0 miles per hour on a gradient of 8%. The subjects had to run until exhaustion or for a maximum of 5 minutes. From maximal pulse, maximal serum lactate concentration and duration of run a work index was calculated (79-80). Foltz *et al* used a test of exhaustion where double work periods were applied in order to reduce the individual variations (16). Taylor described another method, where the work on a treadmill was gradually increased until the subject became exhausted. The maximal time was here used as a so called performance index (124).

Grosse Lordemann & Muller studied the relation between work load and maximal time during which the load could be sustained. They used an electro-dynamically braked bicycle ergometer of their own design. In their experimental series maximal tests with varying loads were performed with 5 individuals (50, 99-102, 101). The probable formula reflecting the relationship between work intensity and maximal performance time was established. The influence of different variables such as pedalling velocity, height of saddle and length of pedals, was determined. Investigations of the mechanical efficiency were furthermore performed for exhausting work of varying duration. In accordance with the formula of the load time curve a value of maximal working capacity could be calculated for each subject investigated. Similar investigations were carried out by Bink who studied the relationship between effort and endurance in 5 individuals (20).

From the world records for running various distances the relation between mean velocity and performance time was studied by Hill, Henry, Lietzke and Aperia *et al* (1, 57, 63, 86). The data were plotted in a coordinate system and the resultant curve analysed. A curve similar to that of Grosse Lordemann & Muller was obtained. On the basis of these findings a technique for evaluation of maximal working capacity was suggested using as a measure of physical fitness the work intensity sustainable during a maximum of 6 minutes.

In connection with studies on physical performance and perceived exertion a test for short period work on the bicycle ergometer was recently described by Borg (23). Maximal work was here recorded in performances lasting for about 45 seconds using a gradually increasing work load. It was suggested that the level attained reflected mainly muscular capacity and motivation.

load on the abscissa and the maximal performance time on the ordinate. The resultant curve was shown to have a characteristic shape in agreement with the findings of earlier investigators. By intra- or extrapolation according to the standard form of the curve, the relation between work load and maximal performance time could be estimated for different time values. As a measure of one type of physical working capacity, the work load which could be sustained for a maximum of 11 minutes was chosen. Figures representing other kinds of physical working capacity can however be obtained if other points of the experimental curve are used.

In connection with these experiments the subjects were trained to breathe into an air collecting system. At determination of maximal oxygen uptake the examinees were tested on two or more loads of different severity. The load was kept constant during each work period, and the subject had to work until exhaustion.

Timed air collections were carried out through a rubber mouthpiece, low resistance valve and a short length of tubing leading to a Douglas bag. Before collection the tubing system was flushed with exhaled air for  $\frac{1}{2}$ —1 minute.

Sampling was performed repeatedly during each work period and immediately before the end of work two bags were taken in rapid succession. From each bag two samples were drawn for duplicate determinations. During experiments with a high work load the collection periods varied between 30 and 15 seconds. For easier loads the exhaled air was collected during 30—70 seconds.

The gas volume was measured at constant suction through a dry gasometer (Nordgas) and collected into recipients. The analysis for oxygen and carbon dioxide was performed with the Haldane apparatus. From the volume and composition of inhaled and exhaled air the rate of oxygen consumption was obtained for each period, correcting for volume change which is apparent from different nitrogen concentrations.

### C Evaluation of maximal physical working capacity ( $PWC_m$ )

For studies of maximal working capacity the above mentioned technique suggested by Grosse-Lordemann & Müller was utilized. Some modifications and additions were however introduced.

The work was performed on an electrically braked bicycle ergometer, using a pedal rate of 60 revolutions per minute (71). The effect here remains approximately constant even if the pedalling rate is varied between 50 and 70 r.p.m.

In contrast to the submaximal method described, where the load was increased stepwise during the work period, the examinee was here tested on constant loads. The examination included several such performances on separate days and with varying loads. Each time the work was continued until exhaustion. The time of maximal performance was recorded with the aid of a stop-watch. The number of work periods was determined by the aim of the special part of the investigation.

The values obtained were plotted in a coordinate system with the work

load on the abscissa and the maximal performance time on the ordinate. The resultant curve was shown to have a characteristic shape in agreement with the findings of earlier investigators. By intra- or extrapolation according to the standard form of the curve the relation between work load and maximal performance time could be estimated for different time values. As a measure of one type of physical working capacity the work load which could be sustained for a maximum of 6 minutes was chosen. Figures representing other kinds of physical working capacity can however be obtained if other points of the experimental curve are used.

## Dependence of maximal performance time on work intensity

For elucidation of the relation between work intensity and maximal performance time a group of 28 civilian volunteers was investigated (Series F). Each subject here had to participate in 2—5 or occasionally more maximal work tests on separate days. The whole series of performances extended over a period of 2—4 weeks. The intervals amounted to 1—11 days.

The repeated work periods necessary for the study may be suspected to involve some degree of training. To minimize the effects of accidental physical improvement, the sequence of work intensities was varied irregularly from individual to individual. The number of performances included in the calculations was furthermore limited to five.

*Results.* The shape of the curves obtained indicated a linear relationship between logarithmic values of work load and maximal performance time according to the formula suggested by Grosse-Lordemann & Müller (50)

$$\log T = p \log N + q + z$$

$T$  = time of maximal performance in minutes

$N$  = work load in kilopondmetres per minute

$p$  and  $q$  = constants       $z$  = disturbing factors

The regression equation was computed for each individual. A high correlation was established between the logarithms of work load and maximal performance time ( $r = 0.88-0.99$ ,  $P < 0.001^{***}$ ). The results seemed to verify that the above-mentioned formula will afford a satisfactory approximation within the time limits studied, viz. between about 1 and 18 minutes. Single values corresponded to a maximal performance time of under 1 minute or more than 18 minutes. In these ranges the experimental data were too scanty to permit definite conclusions regarding the relationship mentioned.

In Table 10 are given the individual results including values for the constants  $p$  and  $q$  as well as angle of inclination and estimated physical working capacity during 6 minutes (PWC<sub>max 6</sub>).

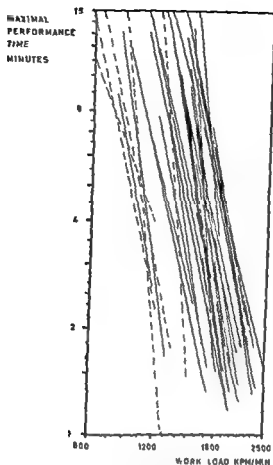
Table 10 Data obtained from maximal performances in 28 civilian volunteers

S. n°	Number of work periods	constant p	constant q	angle alpha	PWC <sub>max</sub> kpm/min
1	4	- 39.1	+ 13.42	75.8	1,580
2	3	- 4.03	+ 13.16	76.1	1,180
3	5	- 3.85	+ 12.89	75.5	1,470
4	5	- 5.64	+ 18.61	79.9	1,480
5	5	- 4.96	+ 16.64	78.6	1,500
6	4	- 3.31	+ 15.50	73.2	1,690
7	4	- 4.43	+ 15.11	77.3	1,600
8	5	- 4.2	+ 14.00	67	1,360
9	2	- 4.57	+ 15.6	77.7	1,730
10	3	- 4.70	+ 15.77	76.0	1,570
11	2	- 4.03	+ 14.07	76.2	1,600
12	3	- 6.39	+ 21.24	81.1	1,590
13	3	- 4.37	+ 14.37	77.1	1,260
14	2	- 11.63	+ 38.05	85.1	1,610
15	2	- 4.2	+ 16.11	80	1,770
16	3	- 5.56	+ 18.82	79.8	1,770
17	3	- 6.25	+ 19.69	80.9	1,060
18	2	- 5.00	+ 15.81	78.7	1,010
19	5	- 1.21	+ 14.13	67	1,390
20	4	- 5.72	+ 18.90	80.1	1,510
21	5	- 4.58	+ 15.41	77.7	1,510
22	3	- 8.73	+ 29.04	83.1	1,730
23	5	- 4.40	+ 14.99	77.2	1,700
24	5	- 5.35	+ 17.88	79.4	1,500
25	1	- 5.19	+ 1.00	79.1	1,340
26	4	- 4.77	+ 16.25	80	1,780
27	4	- 3.5	+ 11.70	74.3	1,190
28	5	- 4.87	+ 15.44	77.8	1,690

The present results were furthermore compared with the findings of Grosse Lordemann & Ueller. In Fig. 8 the curves from their five examinees are approximately reproduced together with those of the present study.

As shown above the inclination of experimental double logarithmic curves reveals variations from individual to individual. The inclination was defined by the smallest angle between the regression line and the abscissa (alpha). For each subject this angle was calculated from the tangent of the angle. For the entire group the mean value as well as the standard deviation of the angle were computed.

Besides the above mentioned group of civilian volunteers a series of 52 ordinary conscripts (Series D) was investigated in a similar way. In this investigation each individual had to work on two different work loads during the same day with an interval of about 4 hours. On a following day the procedure was reversed. Only data from the first work period of the day were used for the present study. The inclination was here computed only from two experimental points.



*Fig 8 Double logarithmic graph illustrating the relation between work load and maximal performance time*

The broken lines represent results from investigations on five subjects reported by Grosse Lordemann & Müller (100). The continuous lines give the regressions computed from maximal work tests in a group of civilian volunteers (Series I,  $n = 28$ ).

In Series I the mean angle was  $\bar{x} = 78^{\circ} 2 \pm 0^{\circ} 5$ ,  $s = 2^{\circ} 5$  and in Series D it was  $\bar{x} = 78^{\circ} 6 \pm 1^{\circ} 1$ ,  $s = 8^{\circ} 0$ . The difference was not statistically significant ( $P = 0.8-0.7$ ).

**Discussion** The relation between work intensity and maximal performance time was shown to imply that the performance time increases in a predictable way as the work load is put lower. In the present study the formula suggested by Grosse Lordemann & Müller was confirmed in a larger group of subjects. The experiments were, however, confined to exhausting work with a duration of between about 1 and 18 minutes.

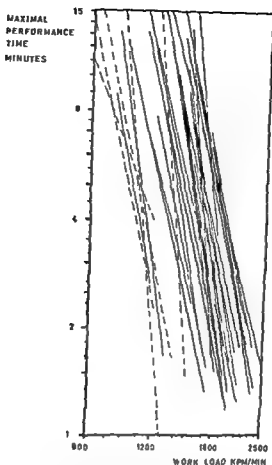
The maximal physical working capacity may be defined as the maximal work intensity for a certain type of work which can be sustained during a certain period of time. The relationship found between work intensity and maximal performance time indicates that small changes in the maximal physical working capacity will correspond to comparatively large changes in the maximal performance time provided the work intensity is kept constant.

As mentioned the inclination of the double logarithmic curve varied from subject to subject. The interindividual variation was considerably larger in the conscript group D than in the civilian group F. This can at least partly be explained by the inaccuracies involved in calculation of the angle from only two experimental points. The small and statistically insignificant difference of inclination between two series furthermore indicated that the interindividual variability may on the whole be relatively moderate.

From their investigations Grosse Lordemann & Muller suggested that the variation of inclination of the load time curve may be due to disparities in the relation between aerobic and anaerobic capacities. In what follows the importance of these two types of energy supply will be elucidated.

As compared with the results of earlier investigators the values of the present group were generally on a higher level. The inclination of curves however seemed to vary within about the same limits. When comparing the characteristics of the two subject groups it was found that the German subjects were considerably shorter and lighter than the Swedish ones. The material of Grosse Lordemann & Muller consisted mainly of laboratory personnel of both sexes whereas the Swedish group included only males usually above average in regard to physical working capacity. This may account for the differences observed.





*Fig. 8 Double logarithmic graph illustrating the relation between work load and maximal performance time*

The broken lines represent results from investigations on five subjects reported by Grosse Lordemann & Müller (1900). The continuous lines give the regressions computed from maximal work tests in a group of civilian volunteers (Series F  $n = 28$ ).

In Series F the mean angle was  $\bar{x} = 78^{\circ} 2 \pm 0^{\circ} 5$   $s = 2^{\circ} 5$  and in Series D it was  $\bar{x} = 78^{\circ} 6 \pm 1^{\circ} 1$   $s = 8^{\circ} 0$ . The difference was not statistically significant ( $P \approx 0.8-0.7$ ).

**Discussion** The relation between work intensity and maximal performance time was shown to imply that the performance time increases in a predictable way as the work load is put lower. In the present study the formula suggested by Grosse Lordemann & Müller was confirmed in a larger group of subjects. The experiments were however confined to exhausting work with a duration of between about 1 and 18 minutes.

The maximal physical working capacity may be defined as the maximal work intensity for a certain type of work which can be sustained during a certain period of time. The relationship found between work intensity and maximal performance time indicates that small changes in the maximal physical working capacity will correspond to comparatively large changes in the maximal performance time provided the work intensity is kept constant.

As mentioned, the inclination of the double logarithmic curve varied from subject to subject. The interindividual variation was considerably larger in the conscript group D than in the civilian group F. This can at least partly be explained by the inaccuracies involved in calculation of the angle from only two experimental points. The small and statistically insignificant difference of inclination between two series furthermore indicated that the interindividual variability may on the whole be relatively moderate.

From their investigations Grosse Lordemann & Müller suggested that the variation of inclination of the load time curve may be due to disparities in the relation between aerobic and anaerobic capacities. In what follows the importance of these two types of energy supply will be elucidated.

As compared with the results of earlier investigators, the values of the present group were generally on a higher level. The inclination of curves, however, seemed to vary within about the same limits. When comparing the characteristics of the two subject groups, it was found that the German subjects were considerably shorter and lighter than the Swedish ones. The material of Grosse Lordemann & Müller consisted mainly of laboratory personnel of both sexes, whereas the Swedish group included only males, usually above average in regard to physical working capacity. This may account for the differences observed.

## Reproducibility of estimated maximal working capacity ( $PWC_{max\ 6}$ )

The reproducibility was investigated in a group of conscripts undergoing aptitude tests for submarine service (Series E). Each subject had to participate in duplicate maximal work tests on separate days. The work load, which was the same on both occasions, was chosen to give a maximal performance time of about 6 minutes.

For each experimental value the  $PWC_{max\ 6}$  was estimated according to the following formula

$$\log \lambda = \frac{\log T - \log 6}{\text{tg } \alpha} + \log N$$

$\lambda$  = estimated work load corresponding to maximal performance time of 6 minutes ( $PWC_{max\ 6}$ )

$N$  = work load used

$T$  = maximal performance time

$\alpha$  = angle between the double logarithmic line and the abscissa

In the above mentioned procedure the  $PWC_{max\ 6}$ -value was estimated from one experimental point according to the empirically established average relationship between work load and maximal performance time. The values were thereby made comparable.

This transformation will involve some degree of approximation owing to individual variations of the line. In Fig. II some information is given regarding the magnitude of this error. Here values representing  $PWC_{max\ 6}$  were calculated for Series F using two different procedures. One figure was computed from the regression equation of 2—load time values, whereas the other was estimated from only one point according to the mean inclination of the double logarithmic line. The latter, more approximate value was expressed as a percentage of the first, put in relation to the maximal performance time.

The variability was computed for performances of varying duration, i.e. between 1 and 2 minutes, between 2 and 12 minutes and between 12 and about 25 minutes. The variability amounted to 10.27 and 4.0% respectively.

As shown, the extrapolation procedure with an average regression line will involve only a moderate discrepancy as compared with the more exact method with individual regression lines, provided the experimentally derived maximal performance time falls within the time limits studied. In the use of estimated values of  $PWC_{max\ 6}$  for calculation of reproducibility the error of divergent individual inclination will thus be relatively small.

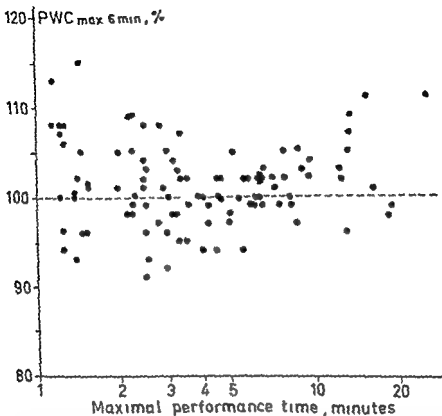
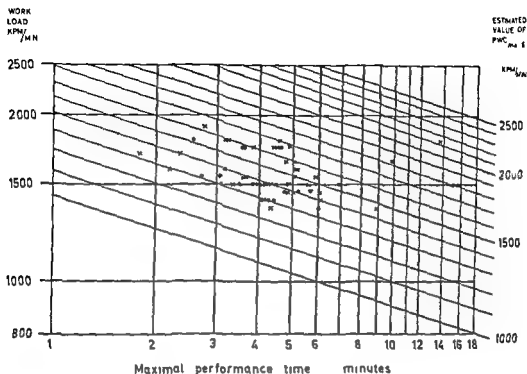


Fig 9 Error induced by calculation of  $PWC_{\max 6}$  from one maximal performance as compared with the value derived from repeated work periods

In each subject the work intensity sustainable during 6 minutes ( $PWC_{\max 6}$ ) was calculated with the aid of the individual regression line of 2-5 load time values. For each of the performances the  $PWC_{\max 6}$  was furthermore estimated according to the average relationship between work load and maximal performance time. In the graph the latter values are expressed as a percentage of the more exact figures derived from repeated work periods.

For the capacity of exhausting work during a maximum of 6 minutes ( $PWC_{\max 6}$ ) as estimated from duplicate performances the variability was found to be 11 % of the mean value. The figures of the second work period were on average slightly, although not significantly, higher than those of the first performance ( $n = 36$ ,  $\bar{x}_1 = 1.165$ ,  $\bar{x}_2 = 1.183$ , diff. 18 kpm/min,  $P = 0.3-0.2$ ).

The experimental values of work load and corresponding maximal performance time are plotted in Fig 10 in the form of a nomogram. It is possible to read estimated  $PWC_{\max 6}$  directly from each experimental point. The average inclination found in Series I is here used for the transformation.



*Fig 10 Work loads and maximal performance times from reproducibility studies on exhausting work*

Series E  $n = 36$

Experimental values of work load and maximal performance time are given in a double logarithmic graph. The oblique lines of the nomogram illustrate the average relation between work load and maximal performance time established in Series D. The estimated  $PWC_{max}$  may here be read directly from each experimental point.

Symbols: 1st performance  $\circ$  2nd performance  $\triangle$

## Circulatory adaptation in exhausting work of varying duration

### Final heart rate after maximal performances of varying duration

The pulse reaction was studied in a series of experiments in which each individual had to work on different loads until complete exhaustion. Two different subject groups were investigated viz a group of civilian volunteers and a group of ordinary military conscripts.

The heart rate was recorded by Ecg the final rate being measured during 10 heart cycles immediately after termination of work.

Comparisons between heart rates calculated before and after the end of performances had shown only minor differences. The post-exercise values were thus on average somewhat lower than the pre-termination rates ( $n = 96$   $\bar{x}_1 = 179.5$   $\bar{x}_2 = 177.0$   $\text{diff} = 2.5$  beats/min  $\approx 1.4\%$  of the first value). For shorter performances as compared with longer ones this difference was of about the same magnitude (duration range 43—59  $\text{diff} = 2.8$  beats/min duration range 6—13  $\text{diff} = 2.1$  beats/min). The use of either value will therefore be equivalent for the purpose of the present investigation.

In the group of civilian volunteers (Series F) each subject participated in a series of exhausting performances with different loads. For 28 individuals final pulse rates were recorded in a total of 125 work periods.

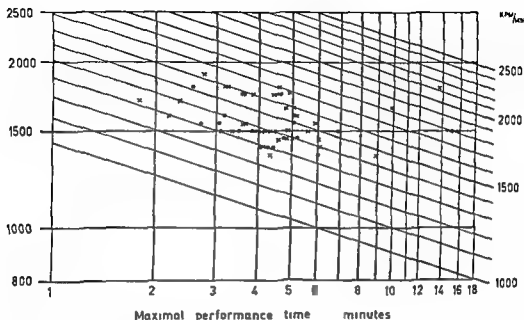
In the group of conscripts (Series D) each man had to work on two different loads during the same day with an interval of about 4 hours. On a following day the procedure was reversed. For the present study only the results from the first work period of each day were used. Data were collected from 43 individuals. The work intensities chosen corresponded to maximal performance times of between about 1 and 18 minutes.

In Fig. 11 the heart rates recorded immediately after termination of work are put in relation to the maximal performance times. By relating the pulse values to maximal work times instead of work loads the data were better adjusted to individual capabilities. For comparison the pulse rates were also recorded after maximal work with graded loads. (See page 61.)

As can be seen the heart rates recorded immediately after exhausting work showed characteristic differences corresponding to the duration of the work.

WORK  
LOAD  
KPM/  
MIN

ESTIMATED  
VALUE OF  
PWC<sub>max</sub> 6



**Fig 10** Work loads and maximal performance times from reproducibility studies on exhausting work

Series E  $n = 36$

Experimental values of work load and maximal performance time are given in a double logarithmic graph. The oblique lines of the nomogram illustrate the average relation between work load and maximal performance time established in Series M. The estimated PWC<sub>max</sub> 6 may here be read directly from each experimental point.

Symbols 1st performance  $\times$  2nd performance  $\vee$

## Circulatory adaptation in exhausting work of varying duration

### Final heart rate after maximal performances of varying duration

The pulse reaction was studied in a series of experiments in which each individual had to work on different loads until complete exhaustion. Two different subject groups were investigated viz a group of civilian volunteers and a group of ordinary military conscripts.

The heart rate was recorded by Ecg the final rate being measured during 10 heart cycles immediately after termination of work.

Comparisons between heart rates calculated before and after the end of performances had shown only minor differences. The post-exercise values were thus on average somewhat lower than the pre-termination rates ( $n = 96$   $\bar{x}_1 = 179.5$   $\bar{x}_2 = 177.0$   $\text{diff} = 2.5$  beats/min  $= 1.4\%$  of the first value). For shorter performances as compared with longer ones this difference was of about the same magnitude (duration range 45—509  $\text{diff} = 2.8$  beats/min duration range 6—18  $\text{diff} = 2.1$  beats/min). The use of either value will therefore be equivalent for the purpose of the present investigation.

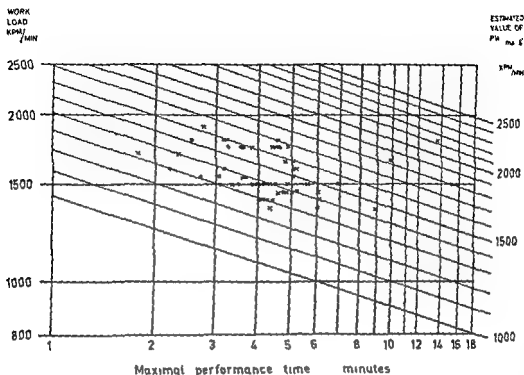
In the group of civilian volunteers (Series F) each subject participated in a series of exhausting performances with different loads. For 28 individuals final pulse rates were recorded in a total of 120 work periods.

In the group of conscripts (Series D) each man had to work on two different loads during the same day with an interval of about 4 hours. On a following day the procedure was reversed. For the present study only the results from the first work period of each day were used. Data were collected from 13 individuals. The work intensities chosen corresponded to maximal performance times of between about 1 and 18 minutes.

In Fig. 11 the heart rates recorded immediately after termination of work are put in relation to the maximal performance times. By relating the pulse values to maximal work times instead of work loads the data were better adjusted to individual capabilities. For comparison the pulse rates were also recorded after maximal work with graded loads (See page 61).

As can be seen the heart rates recorded immediately after exhausting work showed characteristic differences corresponding to the duration of the work.





**Fig 10** Work loads and maximal performance times from reproducibility studies on exhausting work

Series E  $n = 36$

Experimental values of work load and maximal performance time are given in a double logarithmic graph. The oblique lines of the nomogram illustrate the average relation between work load and maximal performance time, established in Series D. The estimated  $PWC_{max}$  may here be read directly from each experimental point.

Symbols: 1st performance o, 2nd performance x

diff = 10.8 beats/min  $P < 0.001^{***}$ ) The final pulse value corresponding to a mean duration of 6.1 minutes was furthermore compared with the pulse level attained after graded exhausting work. The latter lasted on average for about 26 minutes. This difference was however not statistically significant ( $n = 20$   $\bar{x}_1 = 181.1$   $n_2 = 51$   $\bar{x}_2 = 184.3$  diff = 3.2 beats/min  $P = 0.2-0.1$ )

In Series F the examinees as mentioned took part in several exhausting performances. For each individual as well as for the entire material the experimental points could be connected to a curve of characteristic shape. The level of this curve was found to vary between individuals as well as between subject groups. (See Fig. 16.) The group of civilian volunteers was divided into three partly overlapping subgroups (g-i). It was here possible to calculate intraindividual differences of maximal heart rates attained after strenuous work of varying duration. The results of this study appear in Table 11.

Table 11 Final heart rates in Series F divided into subgroups

Subgroup	n	Maximal pulse beats/min	Maximal Mean value	Time Mean value sec	Mean heart rate beats per minute	Diff b/min	P
g	18	0-3	1	57	176	+ 3	<0.001
		3-6	4	53	184		
h	21	3-6	4	17	184	+ 4	0.001- 0.01*
		6-18	10	20	188		
i	25	6-18	10	00	189	+ 2	0.3-0.2
		19-34†	27	25	191		

† Graded maximal work

As shown above final heart rates were significantly lower after exhausting performances of short duration—2 to 4 minutes—than after longer work periods. On the other hand no significant difference was established for maximal pulse values after strenuous work lasting about 10 minutes and those after the more lengthy work in the graded work test.

In order to eliminate interindividual variability the data of Series F were also expressed in relative terms. For each individual the heart rate attained after the graded maximal test was denoted as 100 per cent. The rates recorded after the shorter work periods were expressed as a percentage of the value mentioned. The results of these calculations are shown in Fig. 12.

The findings as regards the relation between final heart rate and duration of work showed good correspondence within both of the subject groups investigated.

In summary the present results indicate that a constant or nearly constant final pulse level is first attained after maximal work periods exceeding 6

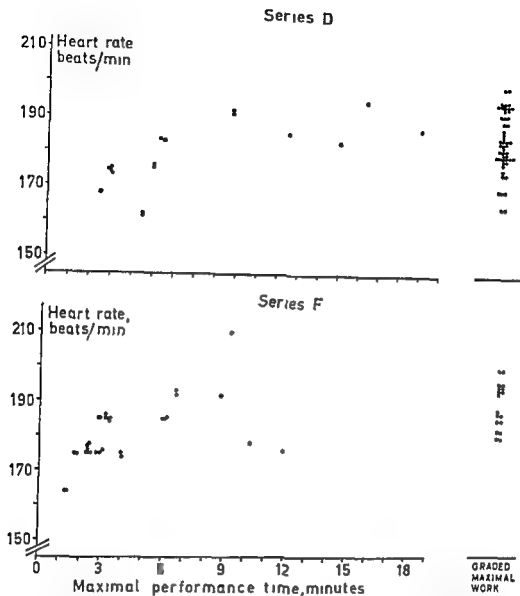


Fig 11 Final heart rates after exhausting work of varying duration in a group of 19/20 year old conscripts (D) and in a group of civilian volunteers (F)

The work loads were chosen to give maximal performances with a duration of between 1 and 18 minutes. On the right are given the final heart rates for exhausting work with work loads increased stepwise.

For Series D where each individual was represented by two such performances means were computed for groups of experimental points corresponding to average maximal performance times of 3.0 and 6.1 minutes respectively. The difference between the mean final heart rates was here statistically highly significant ( $n_1 = 27$   $\bar{x}_1 = 170.3$   $n_2 = 20$   $\bar{x}_2 = 181.1$

diff = 10.8 beats/min  $P < 0.001^{***}$ ) The final pulse value corresponding to a mean duration of 6.1 minutes was furthermore compared with the pulse level attained after graded exhausting work. The latter lasted on average for about 2.6 minutes. This difference was however not statistically significant ( $n_1 = 25$   $\bar{x}_1 = 181.1$   $n_2 = 51$   $\bar{x}_2 = 184.3$  diff = 3.2 beats/min  $P = 0.2-0.1$ )

In Series F the examinees as mentioned took part in several exhausting performances. For each individual as well as for the entire material the experimental points could be connected to a curve of characteristic shape. The level of this curve was found to vary between individuals as well as between subject groups. (See Fig. 16.) The group of civilian volunteers was divided into three partly overlapping subgroups (g-i). It was here possible to calculate intra-individual differences of maximal heart rates attained after strenuous work of varying duration. The results of this study appear in Table 11.

Table 11 Final heart rates in Series F divided into subgroups

Subgroup	n	Maximal performance time Range Min	Mean value Min	sec	Mean heart rate beats per minute	Diff b/min	P
g	18	0-3	1	57	176	+ 8	< 0.001 *
		3-6	4	23	184		
h	21	3-6	4	17	184	+ 4	0.001- 0.01
		6-18	10	20	191		
i	25	6-18	10	00	189	+ 2	0.3-0.2
		19-34†	27	25	191		

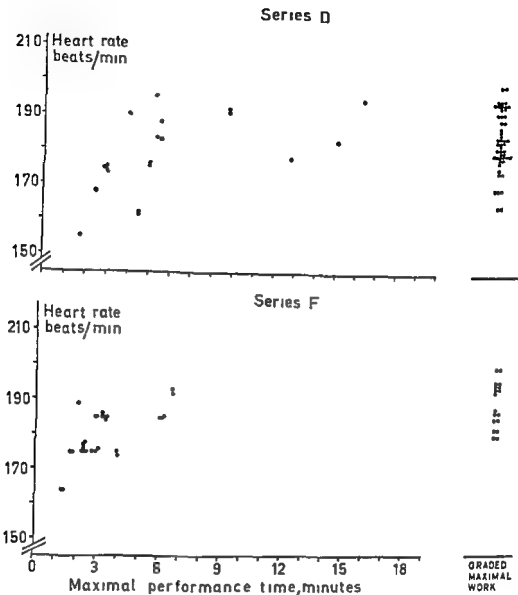
† Graded maximal work.

As shown above final heart rates were significantly lower after exhausting performances of short duration—2 to 4 minutes—than after longer work periods. On the other hand no significant difference was established for maximal pulse values after strenuous work lasting about 10 minutes and those after the more lengthy work in the graded work test.

In order to eliminate interindividual variability the data of Series F were also expressed in relative terms. For each individual the heart rate attained after the graded maximal test was denoted as 100 per cent. The rates recorded after the shorter work periods were expressed as a percentage of the value mentioned. The results of these calculations are shown in Fig. 12.

The findings as regards the relation between final heart rate and duration of work showed good correspondence within both of the subject groups investigated.

In summary the present results indicate that a constant or nearly constant final pulse level is first attained after maximal work periods exceeding 6



**Fig 11** Final heart rates after exhausting work of varying duration in a group of 19/20 year old conscripts (D) and in a group of civilian volunteers (F)

The work loads were chosen to give maximal performances with a duration of between 1 and 18 minutes. On the right are given the final heart rates for exhausting work with work loads increased stepwise

For Series D where each individual was represented by two such performances means were computed for groups of experimental points corresponding to average maximal performance times of 3.0 and 6.1 minutes respectively. The difference between the mean final heart rates was here statistically highly significant ( $n_1 = 27$   $\bar{x}_1 = 170.3$   $n_2 = 25$   $\bar{x}_2 = 181.1$

During each work period the heart rate was continuously recorded by Ecg and the maximal oxygen uptake determined by the Douglas bag method. For technical details regarding the determination of maximal oxygen uptake see page 61.

In each individual the peak oxygen uptake was compared for exhausting performances of shorter and longer duration. In some cases means of two determinations were utilized. The results appear in Fig. 13.

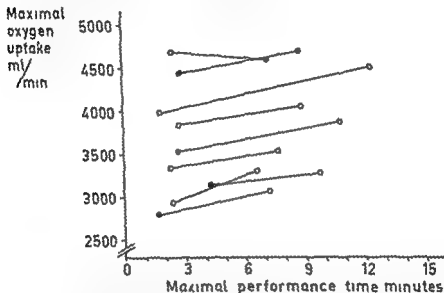


Fig. 13 Maximal oxygen uptake during exhausting work of varying duration.

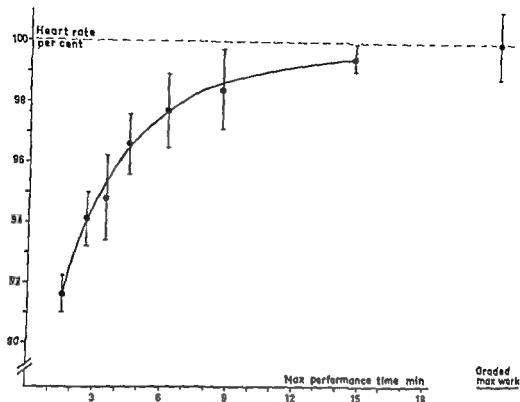
Series F civilian volunteers  $n = 9$ .

Unfilled circles denote experimental values from one maximal performance. Filled symbols denote mean values from two maximal performances with the same or almost the same relative work load.

As shown, higher values were on average attained in exhausting performances of longer duration than in those of shorter duration. Comparison between mean maximal oxygen volumes corresponding to average work durations of 2.39 and 8.46 thus showed a statistically significant difference ( $\bar{x}_1 = 3628$ ,  $\bar{x}_2 = 3863$ ,  $\text{diff} = 235 \text{ ml/min}$ ,  $P = 0.01-0.001^{**}$ ).

Similarly, the maximal pulmonary ventilation was compared for work periods of varying duration. The results are given in Fig. 14.

Here too, higher values were recorded after longer performances. The difference between ventilation volumes corresponding to work durations of 2.39 and 8.46 was however not statistically significant ( $\bar{x}_1 = 99.76$ ,  $\bar{x}_2 = 108.11$ ,  $\text{diff} = 8.35 \text{ l/min}$ ,  $P = 0.1-0.05$ ).



*Fig 12 Final heart rates after exhausting work of varying duration in 28 civilian volunteers*

The values are given as a percentage of the heart rate attained after graded maximal work. Symbols denote  $\bar{x} \pm s_{\bar{x}}$

minutes. In performances of longer duration also a slightly higher heart rate was observed. The differences were however small and statistically insignificant.

### **Peak oxygen uptake and maximal pulmonary ventilation in exhausting work of varying duration**

The above mentioned findings of divergent final heart rates after maximal performances of different duration encouraged an extension of the experimental series to include determinations of maximal oxygen uptake.

In 9 individuals (Series I<sub>1</sub>) the peak oxygen uptake was determined during maximal work periods of varying intensity. After initial assessment of the maximal working capacity the subjects had to participate in two or more additional performances. In these the work loads were chosen to give alternatively short or long maximal work periods. To avoid the influence of accidental training effects here too the sequence of work loads was varied.

During each work period the heart rate was continuously recorded by Ecg and the maximal oxygen uptake determined by the Douglas bag method. For technical details regarding the determination of maximal oxygen uptake see page 61.

In each individual the peak oxygen uptake was compared for exhausting performances of shorter and longer duration. In some cases means of two determinations were utilized. The results appear in Fig 13.

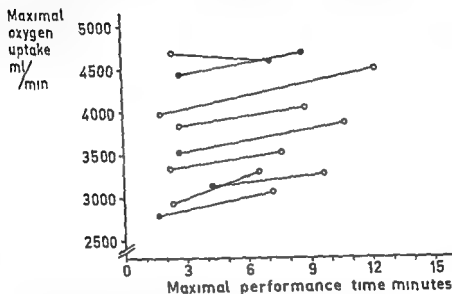


Fig 13 Maximal oxygen uptake during exhausting work of varying duration

Series F civilian volunteers  $n = 9$

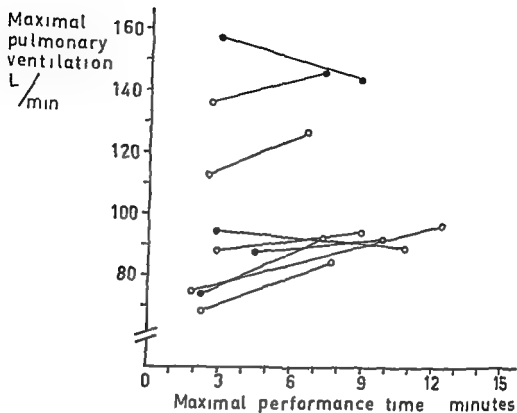
Unfilled circles denote experimental values from one maximal performance. Filled symbols denote mean values from two maximal performances with the same or almost the same relative work load.

As shown higher values were on average attained in exhausting performances of longer duration than in those of shorter duration. Comparison between mean maximal oxygen volumes corresponding to average work durations of 2.39 and 8.16 thus showed a statistically significant difference ( $\bar{x}_1 = 3628$ ,  $\bar{x}_2 = 3863$ ,  $\text{diff} = 235$  ml/min,  $P = 0.01-0.001^{**}$ ).

Similarly the maximal pulmonary ventilation was compared for work periods of varying duration. The results are given in Fig 14.

Here too higher values were recorded after longer performances. The difference between ventilation volumes corresponding to work durations of 2.39 and 8.46 was however not statistically significant ( $\bar{x}_1 = 99.76$ ,  $\bar{x}_2 = 108.11$ ,  $\text{diff} = 8.35$  l/min,  $P = 0.1-0.05$ ).





*Fig 14 Maximal pulmonary ventilation during exhausting work of varying duration*

Series I civilian volunteers  $n = 9$ 

Unfilled circles denote experimental values from one maximal performance. Filled symbols denote mean values from two maximal performances with the same or almost the same relative work load.

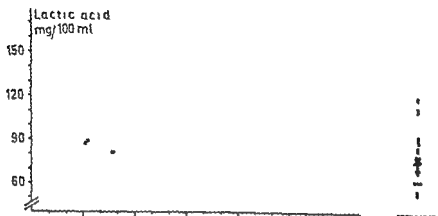
### Final concentration of lactic acid after exhausting work of varying duration

To estimate the degree of anaerobic work in exhausting performances of varying duration, the final lactic-acid concentration in blood was determined in two groups of subjects. These investigations were carried out in close connection with the above mentioned studies on final heart rate. In all cases the blood samples were taken during the first few seconds after termination of the maximal work.

One group consisted of ordinary conscripts (Series D) whereas the other group was composed of civilian volunteers (Series F). The work load was chosen to give maximal performances of varying duration. For Series D the final lactic acid concentration was determined in 37 individuals each participating in one maximal performance. For Series F sampling was performed

in 21 individuals each participating in several performances—number of determinations 80. After the graded maximal test samples were secured from 37 subjects in Series D and 16 subjects in Series F. The results are given in Fig. 15.

### Series D



### Series F

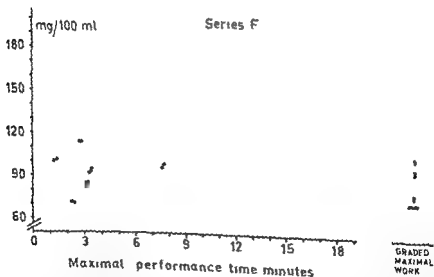
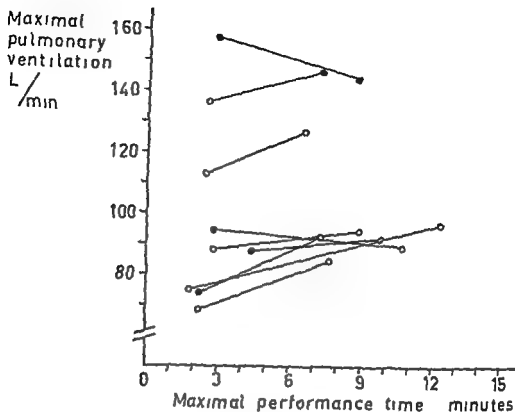


Fig. 15 Final lactic acid concentration of exhausting work of varying duration in a group of 19/20 year-old conscripts (D) and in a group of civilian volunteers (F). The work loads were chosen to give maximal performances of a duration between about 1 and 18 minutes. In addition the final lactic acid concentrations are set out for exhausting work with work loads increased stepwise.



*Fig 14 Maximal pulmonary ventilation during exhausting work of varying duration*

Series F civilian volunteers  $n = 9$

Unfilled circles denote experimental values from one maximal performance. Filled symbols denote mean values from two maximal performances with the same or almost the same relative work load.

### **Final concentration of lactic acid after exhausting work of varying duration**

To estimate the degree of anaerobic work in exhausting performances of varying duration the final lactic acid concentration in blood was determined in two groups of subjects. These investigations were carried out in close connection with the above mentioned studies on final heart rate. In all cases the blood samples were taken during the first few seconds after termination of the maximal work.

One group consisted of ordinary conscripts (Series D) whereas the other group was composed of civilian volunteers (Series F). The work load was chosen to give maximal performances of varying duration. For Series D the final lactic acid concentration was determined in 37 individuals each participating in one maximal performance. For Series F sampling was performed

During work at high intensities the cardiac output may not reach the same magnitude as during performances with lower loads. Especially when maximal working time is reduced below 3 minutes the highest attainable cardiac output seems to decrease significantly. At these high work loads the central circulatory capacity is evidently not used to its full extent.

*Peak oxygen uptake and maximal pulmonary ventilation* The level of oxygen uptake during physical exercise is a function of several mutually interrelated factors including pulmonary ventilation, alveolar gas exchange, cardiac output, peripheral circulatory adjustment and arteriovenous difference. As has been shown by a number of investigators, the metabolic rate during steady state work is roughly linearly correlated with the heart rate (29, 129). Furthermore, in studies using catheterization technique, a high correlation has been established between oxygen consumption on the one hand and cardiac output as well as oxygen utilization on the other (70). For pulmonary ventilation also, a similar although—especially in work of high intensities—less pronounced connection with oxygen uptake has been noted (7).

Of the factors mentioned, the cardiac output seems to be the most important component function determining the magnitude of oxygen consumption during physical exercise (97).

As mentioned, a higher oxygen uptake was observed in more lengthy exhausting work (mean performance time 8 minutes and 16 seconds) than in shorter periods (mean performance time 2 minutes and 39 seconds).

In the interpretation of results, the close association between oxygen supply and circulatory functions has to be taken into account. The final heart rate and the peak oxygen uptake may both approximately reflect the magnitude of cardiac output attained during exhausting work. The present results would thus seem to support the conclusions drawn from the studies of final heart rate.

Besides the function of oxygen transporting organs, the degree of peripheral oxygen utilization may, however, also influence the magnitude of oxygen uptake. An increased oxygen extraction in the muscles would here theoretically be able to compensate for the incomplete adaptation of the central circulation. On the other hand, the present results do not support the hypothesis that such compensatory mechanisms exist.

In summary, the studies reported suggest that in maximal performances of short duration the oxygen supply capacity is generally not fully utilized. The probable explanation for this seems to be that the time of work may be too short for maximal circulatory adjustment.

As can be seen, the final lactic acid concentrations show a considerable scattering between high and low values in both subject groups investigated. For short intensive performances as well as longer, easier ones a considerable elevation of lactic-acid concentrations was observed as compared with the levels generally recorded at rest.

A comparison between the concentrations after exhausting performances of varying duration showed similar differences within both experimental groups. The highest mean value was found after performances of a duration approximating 10 minutes. For shorter as well as longer work periods lower mean values were recorded. The differences observed were however not statistically significant in any of the subject groups investigated.

In Table 12 mean intraindividual differences are given for three partially overlapping subgroups of Series F (k—m).

*Table 12 Final lactic acid concentrations in Series F divided into subgroups*

Subgroup	n	Maximal performance time Range Min	Mean value Min	sec	Mean lactic acid conc. mg/100 ml	Diff mg/100 ml	P
k	11	0—3 3—6	1 4	53 18	95.7 106.8	+ 11.1	0.3—0.2
l	12	3—6 6—18	4 10	02 49	101.0 108.4	+ 7.4	0.4—0.3
m	14	6—18 10—34†	9 27	29 25	106.8 93.3	— 11.5	0.1—0.05

† Graded maximal work.

## Discussion

**Final heart rate.** The magnitude of cardiac output is determined by the stroke volume on the one hand and the heart rate on the other. The changes in cardiac output during adaptation to work are mainly due to the increased heart rate, the augmentation of stroke volume being less pronounced. The latter seems predominantly to occur during work in the sitting position being confined to the period shortly after the commencement of exercise. The mechanism of this increase has been explained by a redistribution of blood from the leg vasculature to the central circulation (2, 19, 70, 81, 116).

In the studies reported the final heart rate was found to be on average lower in short periods of exhausting work than in performances of longer duration. If the stroke volume is assumed to be the same in both events the observations made in the present study may have the following significance.

The highest attainable oxygen uptake heart rate and lactic acid concentration after exhausting work of varying duration has earlier been studied by Åstrand & Saltin (13). Each performance was here preceded by a 10 minutes period of warming up using a work intensity corresponding to 55 % of the maximal oxygen uptake. No significant differences were found for maximal oxygen uptake and heart rate if the length of work on the highest load was varied between 1 and 8 minutes. Similar results were obtained for maximal lactic acid concentration whereas ventilatory volumes showed significantly higher values after the short heavy performances.

In the study just cited the purpose of investigation as well as the design of the experiments differed in essential respects from those of the present study. The preliminary exercise may have contributed to a better circulatory adjustment in performances of high intensity than was attained in the present investigation where work was initiated directly with a high work load. This may account for the disparity of results. Other factors such as divergence in the physical condition of the material may also be of importance in explaining the discrepancy.

*Final lactic-acid concentration* In earlier studies of exhausting performances the lactic acid concentration has been used as an approximate measure of anaerobic work. The basis for these estimations has been the relation between oxygen debt and lactic acid formation (11, 16, 37, 44, 64, 79). In the present investigation it was considered to be of interest to compare the degree of anaerobic work in exhausting work of varying duration.

In two subject groups studied in this respect the lactic acid concentration was measured in finger-prick blood immediately after the conclusion of the maximal work. A large scattering of values as well as moderate disparities were established for final lactic acid after exhausting performances of varying duration. The differences were however not statistically significant in either of the groups.

In evaluating the results it should be remembered that besides muscular hypoxia several other factors such as forced hyperventilation and elevated pyruvate concentration, may influence the lactic acid levels (72, 73). This may account for the large intra- as well as interindividual variation observed. Furthermore in the performances of short duration the values recorded may be somewhat too low, owing to the lag of circulation from the muscles to the sampling site. If the sampling is delayed however another error will be induced, viz. metabolism of lactic acid by the resting muscles after work.

Even if these possible errors are taken into consideration the present results seem to indicate that the degree of anaerobic work will be of about the same order of magnitude in exhausting performances of varying duration (between about 1 and 25 minutes).

From the present findings it may be suggested that the following sequence of events occurs in maximal exertions of varying duration. In exhausting work with high work loads lasting for 2—3 minutes the large energy demands of the muscles will only to a small extent be met by the oxygen available. Anaerobic mechanisms have to provide the greater part of the energy supply. During the course of the work a concentration of anaerobic metabolites will rapidly accumulate leading to a termination of work before maximal circulatory adaptation is attained. If on the other hand the load is put lower allowing the work to continue for e.g. 6—10 minutes the energy demands of the working muscles will be more moderate. The oxygen supplied by the circulatory system will be able to balance the energy demands more effectively. As the work continues however anaerobic metabolism will here too, give rise to an accumulation of metabolic products although at a more gradual rate. The interval before termination of work is provoked will apparently be sufficiently long for practically maximal adjustment of the circulatory system to occur.

Table 13 Final heart rate and lactic acid concentration after exhausting work

Reference No	Author	Category	n	Age	Type of work	Maximal heart rate beats/min	Maximal lactic acid mg/100 ml
40	Dill D B & Brouha L	men	14	20-36	running on treadmill	195	—
109	Robinson S	men	11	20-29	running on treadmill	189	80
96	Wetheny E L et al	college men	30	19-23	running on treadmill	194	110
96	Brouha L & Heath C	college men	10	17-22	running on treadmill	193	—
30	Christensen E & Högberg P	school boys	21	14-16	skating 5 km	231	—
11	Astrand I O	college men	42	20-33	running on treadmill and cycling	194	112
11		college women	44	20-25	running on treadmill and cycling	198	103
119	Slonim N D, Gillispie D & Harold W	naval aviation cadets	50	18-25	running on treadmill	188	—
173	Döbeln W v	pilot	21	18	cycling	204	107
	Engström C G	candidates	21	40	cycling	165	108
	Malmström C & Ström C	pilots					
9	Astrand I	women mostly housewives	8	20-29	cycling	187	121

As shown above the level of final heart rate after exhausting effort is partly dependent upon the duration of work. When comparing maximal heart rates in different subject groups therefore the length of performance has to be taken into consideration. In Fig. 16 final pulse rates in different series after equivalent work were compared.

It was here found that for short as well as longer exhausting performances—at least for durations below 1½ hour—the volunteers tended to reach higher final pulse levels than did average conscripts.

For one of the subject groups viz. Series F the graded work test could not be applied because the examinees could be available only during



## Maximal physical performances in different civilian and military subject groups with special regard to final heart rates and lactic-acid concentrations attained

As pointed out above, divergent final pulse levels may be attained in physical exertions of different kinds. The concept of maximal pulse should therefore not be used without definition of the type of exercise as well as the length of work.

Besides intraindividual variations according to the character of the work considerable interindividual differences are encountered. At present, not all the factors determining the individual level are known. However, psychological mechanisms above all the motivation may be assumed to play an important role in limiting maximal performances. Motivation is here defined as the willingness of the subject to perform physical work until complete exhaustion.

To elucidate the importance of the individual attitude some results of earlier investigators are summarized. In the present study different subject groups with divergent psychological conditions are also studied in this respect.

In Table 13 nine studies, quoted from the literature are compared in regard to character of material, size of subject group, age, type of work, maximal heart rate and lactic acid concentration. As can be seen, the composition of the material varies from one study to another. Mostly the subjects are college students or military candidates. Both in regard to physical capacity and desire to do well these may be assumed to surpass ordinary individuals. As a rule they exhibit high values of maximal heart rate as well as of lactic acid concentration after maximal exertions. Comparison with subject groups of more average composition shows that the latter generally have lower final levels (cf. refs. 9 and 11 B).

In the present investigation four subject groups were studied in regard to pulse rate recorded immediately after exhausting performances. Two of them were conscript groups ordered to undergo examination, one group consisting of non-selected individuals (Series D) the other being selected at random (Series B<sub>1</sub>). A third group was composed of military volunteers (Series E) and a fourth consisted of civilian volunteers (Series F).

The final heart rate after the graded work test performed until exhaustion was furthermore compared between Series F (civilian volunteers) and Series D (ordinary conscripts). Here too the voluntary subjects showed higher pulse values than did the individuals ordered to undergo examination ( $\bar{x}_D = 184.4$   $\bar{x}_F = 191.2$   $\text{diff} = 6.8$  beats/min  $P^{**}$ ) For Series F compared with Series B<sub>1</sub> (randomly selected conscripts) the difference was probably significant ( $\bar{x}_B = 186.5$   $\bar{x}_F = 191.2$   $\text{diff} = 4.7$  beats/min  $P^*$ )

Between the two conscript groups exhibiting a similar psychological attitude no significant difference was found as regards maximal heart rates

Besides final heart frequency some other biological data were compared between the different categories investigated. As regards age the civilian volunteers were on average six years older than the military conscripts. They were furthermore somewhat heavier and revealed significantly higher values of estimated subcutaneous fat than members of the other groups. The PWC<sub>170</sub> was of about the same magnitude as for the conscripts. The values of maximal working capacity (PWC<sub>max</sub>s) were however slightly higher than for the men ordered to undergo examination ( $\text{Diff } P^*$ ). A higher maximal physical working capacity was similarly established for the military volunteers as compared with the ordinary conscripts ( $\text{Diff } P^*$ ). See Table 1. As far as recorded data are concerned no other significant differences were observed.

A comparison of the present results with those cited from the literature was furthermore performed. With reservation for differences in respect of investigational techniques the maximal pulse of randomly selected conscripts seems to be of the same order of magnitude as for the subjects investigated by, for instance, Slonim *et al.* (118). Compared with other mostly voluntary subject groups the final heart rate appeared to be lower at least for this type of work.

Beside maximal heart frequency the lactic acid concentration was determined in two groups of subjects viz Series D (ordinary conscripts) and Series F (civilian volunteers). Since no significant differences were found in concentrations after exhausting performances of varying duration, means were computed for all final lactic acid values of the separate groups. The volunteers here showed a significantly higher average concentration after maximal work than did the ordinary conscripts ( $\bar{x}_D = 84.4$   $\bar{x}_F = 104.9$   $\text{diff} = 20.5$  mmol per 100 ml  $P < 0.001^{***}$ )

**Discussion** Four subject groups of different composition were investigated in the present study. Military groups of ordinary conscripts as well as individuals with a pronounced interest in high test results were examined. In

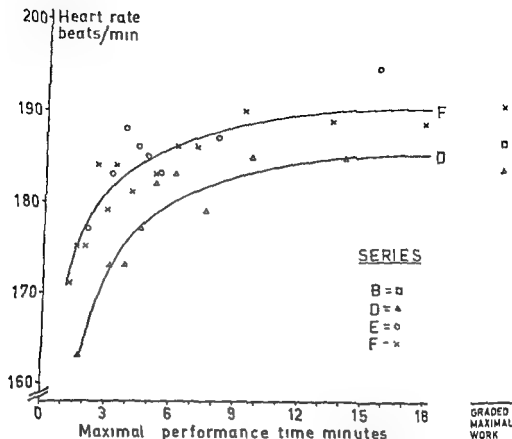


Fig 10 Final heart rates after exhausting work of varying duration. A comparison of maximal heart rate in subject groups of different composition

Series B (□) = randomly selected conscripts

• D (△) = non selected conscripts

• E (○) = military volunteers

• F (×) = civilian volunteers

For subject groups D, E and F the symbols in the left part of the diagram represent means of 10 experimental values. The resulting curves are drawn freehand for Series D and F. The symbols on the right denote means of whole subject groups expressing average final pulse after graded maximal work.

two days used for duplicate maximal tests with constant work loads. Here final pulse values are compared with those of Series D in both cases after exhausting performances with a mean duration of 3 minutes and 55 seconds. It was found that the volunteers attained a significantly higher heart rate than did the ordinary conscripts. The difference of comparable maximal pulse frequencies was found to be statistically highly significant ( $n_D = 55$ ,  $n_E = 60$ , Maximal performance time range 0–6 min, mean value 3 minutes 55 seconds, Final pulse values  $\bar{x}_D = 174$ ,  $\bar{x}_F = 181$ , diff = 10 beats/min,  $P^{***}$ ).

ical characteristics mentioned. A reliable criterion of the individual motivation would seem to be one important prerequisite for correlation studies of this kind. It is possible that psychological investigations will be able further to elucidate the association between final heart rate and lactic acid concentration after strenuous work on the one hand and motivation on the other.

addition, one civilian group was studied representing a selection of people with a high degree of motivation

Subject groups selected at random—as for instance the military conscripts in Series B<sub>1</sub>—may *a priori* be assumed to contain individuals with a variety of attitudes to physical exertion. Compared with volunteers they cannot on average be expected to have the same degree of motivation

In the present study, factors other than the natural willingness to participate in exhausting work were as far as possible reduced. Thus all the conscripts were informed about the scientific purposes of the investigation, as described on page 113

As mentioned a higher mean final heart rate was observed in the group of civilian volunteers than in the two groups of ordinary conscripts. According to the findings of earlier investigators the maximal heart frequency generally decreases with advancing age (9–109). Thus a slightly lower value would have been expected instead. The discrepancy regarding weight and estimated subcutaneous fat was rather small and probably cannot be related to the circulatory data discussed

The two groups of ordinary conscripts on the one hand and the military and civilian volunteers on the other were selected in different ways. As the different motivation seemed to be the dominating factor separating these two categories of examinees this quality may reasonably be connected with the disparity in final heart rates

The finding of a generally higher final lactic acid level in the group of civilian volunteers than in the conscripts would indicate that the former were able to contract a larger oxygen debt than were the conscripts. Here again the difference of psychological attitude may account for the discrepancy

In the subject groups reported on by earlier investigators the values of lactic acid observed at the end of exhausting work were generally higher than those recorded in the present series. It may be pointed out that the actual levels were found in samples taken immediately after the termination of work, whereas the values of earlier authors as a rule represent maximal concentrations reached 3–5 minutes after termination of work. This may explain the differences observed

Comparisons between groups of subjects thus strongly suggested that there is a close connection between the height of final heart rate and lactic acid concentration after exhausting work on the one hand and motivation on the other

For single individuals however it was not possible to draw any definite conclusions regarding the association between the physiological and psycholog

Table 14 B Correlation between  $PWC_{max}(x)$  and  $PWC(y) \vee \dot{V}O_{2max}(y)$

Series	Determination	$PWC_{max 1}$	$PWC_{max 3}$	$PWC_{max 6}$	$PWC_{max 10}$	$PWC_{max 15}$
$F_1$	$\dot{V}O_{2max}$	$r=0.83$	$r=0.91^*$	$r=0.93^*$	$r=0.95^{***}$	$r=0.95^*$
$n=9$	$\bar{y}=3.874$	$s=381$	$s_e=237$	$s_e=237$	$s_e=216$	$s_e=207$
$F$	$PWC_{170}$	$r=0.39$	$r=0.46$	$r=0.49$	$r=0.50$	$r=0.49^*$
$n=28$	$\bar{y}=1.086$	$s=156$	$s=151$	$s_e=148$	$s_e=147$	$s_e=148$

Note  $r$  = correlation coefficient  $s_e$  = standard deviation of residuals Figures of  $\dot{V}O_{2max}$  are given in ml/min values of  $PWC_{10}$  are given in kpm/min

metric strength was recorded with the aid of the strain gauge method described earlier. As an expression of general muscle strength there was here used the standardized muscle factor according to the definition reported

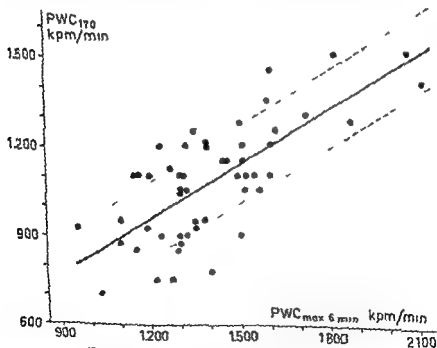


Fig 17 Correlation between  $PWC_{max 6 min}$  and  $PWC_{170}$

Series D  $n=52$

Scatter diagram illustrating the relation between the working intensity sustainable during a maximum of 6 minutes and the working intensity at pulse 170 in circulatory steady state. Broken lines denote  $\pm$  standard error of estimate.

## Relation between different methods for assessment of physical capability

To establish the significance of different expressions of physical working capacity the present results were related to those of some other methods.

Investigations were carried out in which besides maximal physical working capacity ( $PWC_{max}$ ), the working capacity at a pulse of 170 ( $PWC_{170}$ ) and maximal oxygen uptake ( $VO_{2max}$ ) were determined. The latter was defined as the peak oxygen uptake attained during exhausting work of sufficient duration to give a maximal circulatory adaptation.

The material used consisted of the group of civilian volunteers described earlier (Series F) and the two groups of ordinary non selected conscripts (Series C and D). The determinations of  $VO_{2max}$  were performed in 9 members of the voluntary group (Series F<sub>1</sub>).

In Series F the time load curve was established for each individual. From the regression equation different expressions of the maximal working capacity were calculated according to the duration of work. In the conscript groups the capacity corresponding to a maximal performance time of 6 minutes was estimated by intra- or extrapolation from two or occasionally three experimental values ( $PWC_{max 6}$ ).

The above mentioned expressions of maximal working capacity were studied in relation to  $PWC_{170}$  and partly also to  $VO_{2max}$ . The results of these correlation studies appear in Tables 11 A and B.

For one of the two subject groups composed of non selected military conscripts (Series D) the scatter diagram below shows regression line as well as standard error of estimate. See Fig. 17.

In two of the groups investigated (C and F) the maximal voluntary iso

Table 11 A Relationship between  $PWC_{max 6}$  (x) and  $PWC_{170}$  (y)

Series	n	r	P	Equation of regression line	s <sub>e</sub>
C	58	0.67	***	$y = 0.589 x + 233$	118
D	52	0.72	***	$y = 0.595 x + 243$	134
F	28	0.49	**	$y = 0.372 x + 523$	148

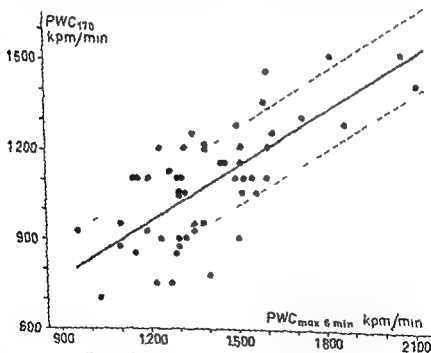
Note: Values are given in kpm/min

Table 14 H Correlation between  $PWC_{max} (x)$  and  $PWC (y) \vee \dot{V}O_{2max} (y)$ 

Series	Determination	$PWC_{max 1}$	$PWC_{max 2}$	$PWC_{max 6}$	$PWC_{max 10}$	$PWC_{max 15}$
$V_1$	$\dot{V}O_{2max}$	$r=0.83$	$r=0.91^{**}$	$r=0.91$	$r=0.93$	$r=0.93^{**}$
$n=3$	$\bar{y}=3.674$	$s=381$	$s_2=237$	$s_2=237$	$s_2=216$	$s_2=207$
$F$	$F \vee C_{170}$	$r=0.39$	$r=0.46^*$	$r=0.49$	$r=0.50$	$r=0.49$
$n=28$	$\bar{y}=1.080$	$s_2=156$	$s_2=151$	$s=148$	$s=147$	$s_2=148$

Note:  $r$  = correlation coefficient  $s$  = standard deviation of residuals Figures of  $\dot{V}O_{2max}$  are given in ml/min values of  $PWC_{170}$  are given in kpm/min

metric strength was recorded with the aid of the strain gauge method described earlier. As an expression of general muscle strength there was here used the standardized muscle factor according to the definition reported

Fig 17 Correlation between  $PWC_{max 6}$  and  $PWC_{170}$ 

Series D  $n=52$

Scatter diagram illustrating the relation between the working intensity sustainable during a maximum of 6 minutes and the working intensity at pulse 170 in circulatory steady state. Broken lines denote  $\pm$  standard error of estimate.



on page 11 For calculation of the muscle factor of the  $PWC_{max}$  and the mean values as well as standard deviations for the series were used

The results of correlation studies between  $PWC_{max}$  and  $PWC_{170}$  on one hand and the muscle factor on the other are shown in Table 15

Table 15 Correlation between  $PWC$  and muscle strength (muscle factor)

Series	$PWC_{max 1}$	$PWC_{max 3}$	$PWC_{max 6}$	$PWC_{max 10}$	$PWC_{max 15}$
I					
$n = 27$	$r = 0.60^{***}$	$r = 0.69^{***}$	$r = 0.69^{***}$	$r = 0.68^{***}$	$r = 0.67^{***}$
C					
$n = 56-58$	—	—	$r = 0.31^*$	—	—

Note  $r$  = correlation coefficient

**Discussion** As shown above the correlation between  $PWC_{max}$  and  $PWC_{170}$  was remarkably high. The strong association between these two expressions of physical working capacity may perhaps be sought in the fact that they are estimated from results of maximal performances. With respect to the small size of the material investigated the close correspondence between these methods may justify an interchangeable use of the tests mentioned.

The submaximal test of Karolinska Sjukhuset in which the work intensity is determined in relation to the pulse of 170 in relative terms at steady state seems to afford an objective test of physical working capacity. In studies using the results from ski running as a criterion of endurance a high correlation with  $PWC_{170}$  was found in a group of military conscripts (21). The character of this method makes it especially suitable for objective evaluation of the capacity of the oxygen transporting system whereas in maximal tests other factors as well may influence the results.

It was therefore considered to be of great interest to study in what degree maximal tests of physical working capacity might give information about the  $PWC_{170}$  of the individual and vice versa.

In one civilian and two military subject groups statistically significant correlations were found between  $PWC_{max}$  and  $PWC_{170}$ . The degree of correlation showed moderate differences from category to category. Neither of the military groups was randomly selected and consequently they were not strictly representative of the population studied. As they were composed

if average conscripts some conclusions may however be drawn regarding the possibilities of prediction from one method to the other

Thus it appears that in ordinary conscripts the  $PWC_{170}$  may be predicted from  $PWC_{max 6}$  with an error of about 12 % (the standard error of estimate in Series C was 10.7 % in Series D it was 12.4 % of the mean value)

In this part of the study were also included correlations between  $PWC_{max}$  defined in different ways and  $PWC_{170}$  as well as  $VO_{2max}$ . It was found that the capacity for short heavy work correlated somewhat lower with both  $PWC_{170}$  and  $VO_{2max}$  than did the capacity for longer work. This observation may accord with the above suggested hypothesis of an incomplete circulatory adaptation in exhausting performances of a shorter duration than 6 minutes

The investigations on maximal voluntary isometric strength indicated that the correlation is of about the same degree between strength and the different expressions for maximal work capacity studied. Obviously the muscle strength may be about equally important in both shorter and longer maximal performances in the duration range 1—15 minutes—at least in highly motivated individuals. Between muscle strength and the physical working capacity at a pulse of 170 however the correlation was lower. The latter observation was made in both series investigated

The correlation found between  $PWC_{max 6}$  on the one hand and  $PWC_{170}$  on the other was differently high in average conscripts and civilian volunteers. This was also the case for the correlation between  $PWC_{max 6}$  and muscle strength although in the opposite direction. Here it seems that the volunteers were using a greater part of their muscle strength in the maximal test ( $PWC_{max 6}$ ) than were the ordinary subjects. In the latter however the cardiopulmonary function was presumably more decisive for the results obtained

In clinical application submaximal tests may be the only choice in evaluation of the physical working capacity. The value obtained will here reflect especially the cardio-circulatory capacity. On the other hand when a maximal test can be used it will in addition give information regarding the muscle strength and subjective motivation of the individuals. In physical classification for example in selection of military personnel this may not involve any disadvantage as the latter quality is one important aspect of individual fitness for military use. The latter assumption is valid only provided that the motivation at the time of examination corresponds to that in the service concerned

on page 11 For calculation of the muscle factor of the participating individuals the mean values as well as standard deviations from the corresponding series were used

The results of correlation studies between  $PWC_{max}$  and  $PWC_{170}$  on the one hand and the muscle factor on the other are shown in Table 15

*Table 15 Correlation between PWC and muscle strength (standardized muscle factor)*

Series	$PWC_{max 1}$	$PWC_{max 3}$	$PWC_{max 6}$	$PWC_{max 10}$	$PWC_{max 15}$	$PWC_{170}$
$\Gamma$ $n = 27$	$r = 0.60^{***}$	$r = 0.69^{***}$	$r = 0.69^{***}$	$r = 0.68^{***}$	$r = 0.65^{***}$	$r = 0.46$
$C$ $n = 56-58$	—	—	$r = 0.31^*$	—	—	$r = 0.19$

Note  $r$  = correlation coefficient

**Discussion** As shown above the correlation between  $PWC_{max 6}$  and  $VO_{2max}$  was remarkably high. The strong association between these two expressions of physical working capacity may perhaps be sought in the fact that both are estimated from results of maximal performances. With reservation for the small size of the material investigated the close correspondence between these methods may justify an interchangeable use of the techniques mentioned.

The submaximal test of Karolinska Sjukhuset in which the work intensity is determined in relation to the pulse of 170 in relative circulatory steady state seems to afford an objective test of physical working capacity. In studies using the results from ski running as a criterion of endurance a high correlation with  $PWC_{170}$  was found in a group of military conscripts (24). The character of this method makes it especially suitable for objective evaluation of the capacity of the oxygen transporting system whereas in maximal tests other factors as well may influence the results.

It was therefore considered to be of great interest to study in what degree maximal tests of physical working capacity might give information about the  $PWC_{170}$  of the individual and vice versa.

In one civilian and two military subject groups statistically significant correlations were found between  $PWC_{max 6}$  and  $PWC_{170}$ . The degree of correlation showed moderate differences from category to category. Neither of the military groups was randomly selected and consequently they were not strictly representative of the population studied. As they were composed

of average conscripts some conclusions may however be drawn regarding the possibilities of prediction from one method to the other

Thus it appears that in ordinary conscripts the  $PWC_{170}$  may be predicted from  $PWC_{max 6}$  with an error of about 12 % (the standard error of estimate in Series C was 10.7 % in Series D it was 12.4 % of the mean value)

In this part of the study were also included correlations between  $PWC_{max}$  defined in different ways and  $PWC_{170}$  as well as  $V_{O_2 max}$ . It was found that the capacity for short heavy work correlated somewhat lower with both  $PWC_{170}$  and  $V_{O_2 max}$  than did the capacity for longer work. This observation may accord with the above-suggested hypothesis of an incomplete circulatory adaptation in exhausting performances of a shorter duration than 11 minutes.

The investigations on maximal voluntary isometric strength indicated that the correlation is of about the same degree between strength and the different expressions for maximal work capacity studied. Obviously the muscle strength may be about equally important in both shorter and longer maximal performances in the duration range 1—15 minutes—at least in highly motivated individuals. Between muscle strength and the physical working capacity at a pulse of 170 however the correlation was lower. The latter observation was made in both series investigated.

The correlation found between  $PWC_{max 6}$  on the one hand and  $PWC_{170}$  on the other was differently high in average conscripts and civilian volunteers. This was also the case for the correlation between  $PWC_{max 6}$  and muscle strength although in the opposite direction. Here it seems that the volunteers were using a greater part of their muscle strength in the maximal test ( $PWC_{max 6}$ ) than were the ordinary subjects. In the latter however the cardiopulmonary function was presumably more decisive for the results obtained.

In clinical application submaximal tests may be the only choice in evaluation of the physical working capacity. The value obtained will here reflect especially the cardio-circulatory capacity. On the other hand when a maximal test can be used it will in addition give information regarding the muscle strength and subjective motivation of the individuals. In physical classification for example in selection of military personnel this may not involve any disadvantage as the latter quality is one important aspect of individual fitness for military use. The latter assumption is valid only provided that the motivation at the time of examination corresponds to that in the service concerned.

on page 41. For calculation of the muscle factor of the participating individuals the mean values as well as standard deviations from the corresponding series were used.

The results of correlation studies between  $PWC_{max}$  and  $PWC_{170}$  on the one hand and the muscle factor on the other are shown in Table 15.

Table 15 Correlation between  $PWC$  and muscle strength (standardized muscle factor)

Series	$PWC_{max 1}$	$PWC_{max 3}$	$PWC_{max 6}$	$PWC_{max 10}$	$PWC_{max 15}$	$PWC_m$
F						
$n = 27$	$r = 0.60^{***}$	$r = 0.69^{***}$	$r = 0.69^{***}$	$r = 0.68^{***}$	$r = 0.65^{***}$	$r = 0.46^*$
C						
$n = 56-58$	—	—	$r = 0.34^*$	—	—	$r = 0.19$

Note:  $r$  = correlation coefficient

**Discussion.** As shown above the correlation between  $PWC_{max 6}$  and  $V_{O_{max}}$  was remarkably high. The strong association between these two expressions of physical working capacity may perhaps be sought in the fact that both are estimated from results of maximal performances. With reservation for the small size of the material investigated the close correspondence between these methods may justify an interchangeable use of the techniques mentioned.

The submaximal test of Karolinska Sjukhuset in which the work intensity is determined in relation to the pulse of 170 in relative circulatory steady state seems to afford an objective test of physical working capacity. In studies using the results from ski running as a criterion of endurance a high correlation with  $PWC_{170}$  was found in a group of military conscripts (21). The character of this method makes it especially suitable for objective evaluation of the capacity of the oxygen transporting system whereas in maximal tests other factors as well may influence the results.

It was therefore considered to be of great interest to study in what degree maximal tests of physical working capacity might give information about the  $PWC_{170}$  of the individual and vice versa.

In one civilian and two military subject groups statistically significant correlations were found between  $PWC_{max 6}$  and  $PWC_{170}$ . The degree of correlation showed moderate differences from category to category. Neither of the military groups was randomly selected and consequently they were not strictly representative of the population studied. As they were composed

of average conscripts some conclusions may however be drawn regarding the possibilities of prediction from one method to the other

Thus it appears that in ordinary conscripts the  $PWC_{170}$  may be predicted from  $PWC_{max 6}$  with an error of about 12 % (the standard error of estimate in Series C was 10.7 % in Series D it was 12.4 % of the mean value)

In this part of the study were also included correlations between  $PWC_{max}$  defined in different ways and  $PWC_{170}$  as well as  $V_{O_{max}}$ . It was found that the capacity for short heavy work correlated somewhat lower with both  $PWC_{170}$  and  $V_{O_{max}}$  than did the capacity for longer work. This observation may accord with the above suggested hypothesis of an incomplete circulatory adaptation in exhausting performances of a shorter duration than 6 minutes.

The investigations on maximal voluntary isometric strength indicated that the correlation is of about the same degree between strength and the different expressions for maximal work capacity studied. Obviously the muscle strength may be about equally important in both shorter and longer maximal performances in the duration range 1—15 minutes—at least in highly motivated individuals. Between muscle strength and the physical working capacity at a pulse of 170 however the correlation was lower. The latter observation was made in both series investigated.

The correlation found between  $PWC_{max 6}$  on the one hand and  $PWC_{170}$  on the other was differently high in average conscripts and civilian volunteers. This was also the case for the correlation between  $PWC_{max 6}$  and muscle strength although in the opposite direction. Here it seems that the volunteers were using a greater part of their muscle strength in the maximal test ( $PWC_{max 6}$ ) than were the ordinary subjects. In the latter however the cardiopulmonary function was presumably more decisive for the results obtained.

In clinical application submaximal tests may be the only choice in evaluation of the physical working capacity. The value obtained will here reflect especially the cardio-circulatory capacity. On the other hand when a maximal test can be used it will in addition give information regarding the muscle strength and subjective motivation of the individuals. In physical classification for example in selection of military personnel this may not involve any disadvantage as the latter quality is one important aspect of individual fitness for military use. The latter assumption is valid only provided that the motivation at the time of examination corresponds to that in the service concerned.

## Summary and conclusions

Some problems pertinent to the assessment of maximal isometric muscle strength and physical working capacity were investigated

To establish the relation between the strength of single muscle groups, the muscle force in different parts of the body had to be determined For this purpose a method was designed whereby isometric strength could be measured in 22 mainly large muscle groups

The maximal contractile force was evaluated for attempted movements using certain well defined positions For adjustment of positions and for fixation a stand in the shape of a chair was used A set of strain gauge dynamometers attached to the chair were connected to a central recording instrument containing a measuring bridge and an alternating current amplifier The values were read directly in kiloponds, according to prior calibration

The technique was evaluated in regard to instrumental and biological errors Reproducibility was established for different phases of testing

The significance of strength evaluation with different methods was furthermore discussed

The method was applied to the study of the muscle strength patterns in military conscripts, civilian volunteers and two categories of élite athletes

In one conscript group the interrelationship of muscle strength was studied for different parts of the body On average the correlation between single muscle groups was high Certain muscles however were judged to be preferable in short tests of strength Reproducibility as well as accessibility for measuring had here also to be taken into consideration

A group of conscripts was followed during the nine months of basic military service Changes of muscle strength were found to be small and heterogeneous In part they could be ascribed to the effect of physical training during military service but they may also have been partly due to the fading of civilian environmental influences This was the case with the physical working capacity as well ( $PWC_{170}$ ) The relative constancy of muscle strength, however may indicate that the muscular demands of military service will on the whole correspond to those of average civilian life

During the observation period the body height was stationary the body weight increased and the estimated subcutaneous fat decreased The significance of these findings is discussed in relation to those of earlier investigators

In the second part of the experimental study some problems connected with the evaluation of maximal physical working capacity were investigated

A method earlier described by Grosse Lordemann & Müller was applied. The relationship between work intensity and maximal performance time suggested by these authors was confirmed in the present investigation.

The reproducibility of maximal physical work was tested in a group of military conscripts taking part in duplicate performances on separate days. For each time value the work intensity corresponding to a maximal performance time of 8 minutes was estimated. The maximal working capacity expressed in this way showed a variation of 4.1 % of the mean value.

As one aspect of maximal working capacity the circulatory adaptation was studied in exhausting work of varying duration. The final heart rate and the peak oxygen uptake measured in exhausting work of short duration (2—3 minutes) were found to be significantly lower than the levels attained in longer maximal performances (6—10 minutes). For final lactic acid concentration no statistically significant differences were established. The results seem to indicate that the circulatory capacity is not completely utilized in strenuous work of short duration. It is only in exhausting performances lasting for more than 6 minutes that the circulatory adaptation may be maximal or nearly maximal. The studies on final lactic acid may suggest that the oxygen debt contracted will be of about the same order of magnitude in maximal performances lasting between about 1 and 20 minutes.

Groups of volunteers were found to reach on average higher final heart rates and lactic acid concentrations than did groups of ordinary conscripts. The significance of these observations is discussed in relation to results reported by earlier investigators.

A comparative study was performed of expressions of maximal working capacity ( $PWC_{max}$ ) on the one hand and maximal oxygen uptake ( $VO_{2max}$ ) and the physical working capacity at a pulse of 170 ( $PWC_{170}$ ) on the other. The correlation between  $PWC_{max}$  and  $VO_{2max}$  was remarkably high, a finding explained by their common character of maximal tests. Between  $PWC_{max}$  and  $PWC_{170}$  a statistically significant although lower correlation was found. This may be ascribed to the fact that these two measures probably reflect different aspects of physical working capacity. Whereas the  $PWC_{170}$  will give an objective value of the capacity of the oxygen transporting system, the  $PWC_{max}$  will also contain an element of motivation and muscular strength. With reservation for the representativity of the material investigated, prediction of  $PWC_{170}$  from  $PWC_{max}$  seems to involve an error of about 12 % in ordinary conscript groups.

For maximal voluntary isometric muscle strength the correlation with different expressions of physical working capacity was studied and the possible significance of findings is discussed.



## Acknowledgments

This investigation was carried out at the Military Medical Examination Centre which is under the administration of the Swedish Defence Medical Board and conducts its work at Karolinska Sjukhuset in collaboration with the Department of Clinical Physiology

To Professor Torgny Sjostrand, chief of the above mentioned department and Chairman of the Research Committee of the Military Medical Examination Centre I wish to convey my warm thanks for his deep interest valuable advice and never-failing support during the course of the investigation

To Professors Gunnar Strom and Henrik Lagerlof I am deeply grateful for their constructive criticism and stimulating discussions

To Dr Klas Linroth Assistant Professors Bjorn Nordenstrom Bengt Jonsson and Sven Carlsoo I am greatly indebted for valuable help and advice

To Mr Torkel Gårding who did most of the statistical work I should like to express my sincere appreciation

To the military institutions and organisations who have in different ways provided facilities for performing the investigations I wish to express my thanks

Finally, I should like to acknowledge my deep indebtedness to all the members of the personnel of the Military Medical Examination Centre and of the Clinical Physiological Laboratory who have contributed to the completion of this work

## References

- 1 *Apérla A Sjöstrand T & Stern B* Några fysiologiska data erhållna ur världsrekordtabellen för löpning Meeting of the Swedish Society of Clinical Physiology Stockholm 1960 (Swedish)
- 2 *Asmussen E & Christensen E H* Einfluss der Blutverteilung auf den Kreislauf bei körperlicher Arbeit *Skand Arch Physiol* 82 1939 185—192
- 3 *Asmussen E Christensen E H & Nielsen M* Pulsfrequenz und Körperstellung *Skand Arch Physiol* 81 1939 190—203
- 4 *Asmussen E Heeboll Nielsen K & Molbech S* Methods for evaluation of muscle strength Communications from the testing and observation institute of the Danish national association for infantile paralysis No 5 1959
- 5 *Asmussen E Heeboll Nielsen K & Molbech S* Description of muscle tests and standard values of muscle strength in children Communications from the testing and observation institute of the Danish national association for infantile paralysis Suppl 1959
- 6 *Asmussen E & Heeboll Nielsen K* Isometric strength of adult men and women Communications from the testing and observation institute of the Danish national association for infantile paralysis No 11 1961
- 7 *Asmussen E & Nielsen M* Studies on the regulation of respiration in heavy work *Acta Physiol Scand* 12 1946 171
- 8 *Asmussen E & Nielsen M* The effect of autotransfusion of work blood on the pulmonary ventilation *Acta Physiol Scand* 20 1950 79
- 9 *Åstrand I* Aerobic work capacity in men and women with special reference to age *Acta Physiol Scand* 49 Suppl 169 Stockholm 1960
- 10 *Åstrand I Åstrand P O Christensen E H & Hedman R* Circulatory and respiratory adaptation to severe muscular work. *Acta Physiol Scand* 50 1960 254
- 11 *Åstrand P O* Experimental studies of physical working capacity in relation to sex and age Munksgaard Copenhagen 1952
- 12 *Åstrand P O* Human physical fitness with special reference to sex and age *Physiol Rev* 36 1956 307
- 13 *Åstrand P O & Saltin B* Oxygen uptake during the first minutes of heavy muscular exercise *J Appl Physiol* 16 1961 971
- 14 *Åstrand P O & Saltin B* Maximal oxygen uptake and heart rate in various types of muscular activity *J Appl Physiol* 16 1961 977
- 15 *Balke B* Optimale körperliche Leistungsfähigkeit Ihre Messung und Veränderung infolge Arbeitsmüdung *Arbeitsphysiologie* 15 1954 311—323
- 16 *Bang O* The lactate content of the blood during and after muscular exercise in man *Skand Arch Physiol* 74 Suppl 10 51

- 17 *Beasley W C* Instrumentation and equipment for quantitative clinical muscle testing *Arch Phys Med* 37 1956 604
- 18 *Bellu A & Fischer, E* Kraftmessungen an Teilnehmern der Olympiade in Amsterdam *Arbeitsphysiologie* 1 1929 600
- 19 *Beicgård, S Holmgren A & Jonsson, B* The effect of body position on the circulation at rest and during exercise with special reference to the influence on the stroke volume  
*Acta Physiol Scand* 49 1960 279
- 20 *Bink B* Effort and endurance Communications read at the XVII international congress of physiological sciences Leiden September 1962
- 21 *Bock, A V van Cauter, C, Dill, D B Fölling A & Hurxthal, L M* Studies in muscular activity III Dynamical changes occurring in man at work  
*J Physiol* 66 1928 136
- 22 *Bonde Petersen F* Muscle training by static concentric and eccentric contractions *Acta Physiol Scand* 48 1960 406
- 23 *Borg G* Physical performance and perceived exertion *Studia psychologica et pedagogica Investigationes XI* Lund 1962
- 24 *Borg G & Dahlstrom H* The reliability and validity of a physical work test  
*Acta Physiol Scand* 55 1962 353
- 25 *Bourne G H* The structure and function of muscle Volume II Biochemistry and Physiology Academic Press New York and London 1960
- 26 *Brouha L & Heath, C W* Resting pulse and blood pressure values in relation to physical fitness in young men  
*New England J Medicine* 228 1943 473
- 27 *Burg, D* Dynamometer médicale 1859 Cit Hunsicker *et al*
- 28 *Carlsson L A & Pernow B* Oxygen utilization and lactic acid formation in the legs at rest and during exercise in normal subjects and in patients with arteriosclerosis obliterans *Acta Med Scand* 164 1959 39
- 29 *Christensen E H* Beiträge zur Physiologie schwerer körperlicher Arbeit IV Die Pulzfrequenz während und unmittelbar nach schwerer körperlicher Arbeit  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 4 1931 453
- 30 *Christensen, E H & Högberg, P* Physiology of skiing  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 14 1950 202
- 31 *Clarke, H H* Objective strength tests of affected muscle groups involved in orthopedic disabilities  
*Res Quart* 19 1948 118
- 32 *Clarke, H H* Relationship of Strength and Anthropometric measures to various arm strength criteria  
*Res Quart* 25 1954 134
- 33 *Clarke H H & Bailey T L* Strength curves for fourteen joint movements  
*Journal of the Ass for Physical and Mental Rehabilitation* 4 1950 12
- 34 *Clarke H H* Recent advantages in measurement and understanding of voluntary muscular strength  
*Res Quart* 27 1956 263
- 35 *Clarke, H H, Elkins E C Martin G M & Walum, K G* Relationship between body position and the application of muscle power to movements of the joints  
*Arch Phys Med* 31 1950 81

- 36 Collet M F & Liljestrand G The minute volume of the heart in man during some different types of exercise  
Skand Arch Physiol 45 1924 29
- 37 Crescitelli F & Taylor C L The lactate response to exercise and its relation ship to physical fitness  
Am J Physiol 141 1944 630
- 38 Cureton T A Physical fitness Appraisal and guidance The C V Mosby Company St Louis 1947
- 39 Darcs H D A strain gauge dynamometer for measuring the strength of muscle contraction and for re-educating muscles Annals of Physical Medicine 1 1952 163
- 40 Dill D B & Brouha L Etude sur le Rhythme Cardiaque pendant l'Exercice Ses Rapports avec l'Age et l'Entraînement Travail Humain 5 1937 1—18
- 41 DeLorme T L & Watkins A L Techniques of progressive resistance exercise Arch Phys Med 29 1948 163
- 42 Duvall E N Heut S J & Hellebrandt F A Reliability of a single effort muscle test  
Arch Phys Med 28 1947 213
- 43 von Döbeln W Fingstrom C G & Ström C Physical working capacity of Swedish air force pilots  
Journal of Aviation Medicine 30 1959 162
- 44 Edwards H T Brouha L & Johnson R E Effets de l'entraînement sur le taux de l'acide lactique sanguin au cours du travail musculaire Travail Humain 8 1940 1
- 45 Elkins E C Leden U M & Wakim K G Objective recording of the strength of normal muscles  
Arch Phys Med 32 1951 639
- 46 Fol E Jpy A C & Barborka C J The use of double work periods in the study of fatigue and the influence of caffeine on recovery Am J Physiol 136 1942 79—86
- 47 Gallon F Range in Height Weight and Strength of males at each age Report of the Anthropometric Committee in Reports of the British Association for Advancement in Science 1881 Cat Hunsicker *et al*
- 48 Geckler E O Pneumatic dynamometer American Journal of Surgery 45 1939 353
- 49 Gray s Anatomy descriptive and applied 29 ed Ed by T B Johnston & J Willis London New York & Toronto 1946
- 50 Crosse Lordemann H & Müller E A Der Einfluss der Leistung und der Arbeitsgeschwindigkeit auf das Arbeitsmaximum und den Wirkungsgrad beim Radfahren  
Arbeitsphysiologie 9 1937 454—475
- 51 Hamilton A L A new dynamometer The Psychological and Medico Legal Journal 2 1875 255 Cat Hunsicker *et al*
- 52 Hansen E Untersuchungen über den mechanischen Wirkungsgrad der Muskelarbeit Skand Arch Physiol 51 1927 1
- 53 Haxton H A Absolute muscle force in the ankle flexors of man J Physiol 111 1944 267
- 54 Heiborn H & Strandell T Personal communication 1962

- 55 *Hellebrandt F A* and coworkers New device for disability evaluation Arch Phys Med 29 1948 21
- 56 *Hellstrom, R* Body build, muscular strength and certain circulatory factors in military personnel Acta Med Scand Suppl 371 1961
- 57 *Henry, F M* Prediction of world records in running sixty yards to twenty six miles Res Quart 26 1955 117
- 58 *Herbst R* Der Gassstoffwechsel als Mass der körperlichen Leistungsfähigkeit Deutsch Arch Klin Med 162 1928 33-50
- 59 *Hellinger, Th* Muskelkraft und Muskeltraining bei Frauen und Männern Arbeitsphysiologie 15 1953 201
- 60 *Hellinger, Th* Die maximale Drehmomente in Hüft, Knie und Fussgelenk bei verschiedener Winkelstellung Arbeitsphysiologie 15 1954 355
- 61 *Hellinger Th, Burkhead, N C, Horvath S M, Issekut, B & Rodal A* Assessment of physical work capacity J Appl Physiol 16 1961 153
- 62 *Hill, A V* The maximum work and mechanical efficiency of human muscles and their most economical speed J Physiol 56 1922 19
- 63 *Hill A V* Muscular Activity, The Williams & Wilkins Co, Baltimore 1926
- 64 *Hill, A V, Long C N H & Lupton H* Muscular exercise, lactic acid and the supply and utilisation of oxygen Proc Roy Soc London B 97 1925 81 et 155
- 65 *Hjortshøj, C-H* Rørelseapparaten GWK Gleerups Forlag Lund 1959 (Swedish)
- 66 *Hoeppe F* Das Muskelspiel des Menschen Gustav Fischer Verlag Stuttgart 1957
- 67 *Holmgren A* Circulatory changes during muscular work in man With special reference to arterial and central venous pressures in the systemic circulation Scand J Clin & Lab Invest 1956 vol 8 Suppl 24
- 68 *Holmgren, A, Jonsson B, Levander M, Linderholm, H, Sjöstrand T & Ström G* Low physical working capacity in suspected heart cases due to inadequate adjustment of peripheral blood flow (vasoregulatory asthenia) Acta Med Scand 158 1957 413
- 69 *Holmgren A, Jonsson B, Linderholm H, Sjöstrand T & Ström G* Physical working capacity in cases of mitral valvular disease in relation to heart volume total amount of hemoglobin and stroke volume Acta Med Scand 162 1958 99
- 70 *Holmgren A, Jonsson B & Sjöstrand T* Circulatory data in normal subjects at rest and during exercise in recumbent position with special reference to the stroke volume at different work intensities Acta Physiol Scand 19 1960 343
- 71 *Holmgren A & Mollson K H* A new ergometer with constant load at varying pedalling rate Scand J Clin & Lab Invest 6 1951 137
- 72 *Holmgren A & Östensson C O* Heart volume at rest and during muscular work in the sitting position Acta Med Scand 167 1960 267

- 3 *Huckabee W F* Relationships of pyruvate and lactate during anaerobic metabolism I Effects of infusion of pyruvate or glucose and hyperventilation on J Clin Invest 37 1958 244
- 4 *Huckabee W F* Relationships of pyruvate and lactate during anaerobic metabolism II Exercise and formation of  $O_2$  debt J Clin Invest 37 1958 255
- 5 *Hugh Jones P* The effect of limb position in seated subjects on their ability to utilize the maximum contractile force of the limb muscles J Physiol 105 1947 332
- 6 *Hunsicker P A* Arm strength at selected degrees of elbow flexion Air Force project No 7214-71727 WADC TR 54-548 Wright Patterson Air Force Base 1954
- 7 *Hunsicker P A & Donelly R J* Instruments to measure strength Res Quart 26 1955 408
- 8 *Ika M & Steinhaus A H* Some factors modifying the expression of human strength J Appl Physiol 16 1961 157
- 9 *Johnsson R E & Brouha L* Pulse rate blood lactate and duration of effort in relation to ability to perform strenuous exercise Rev Can Biol 1 1942 171-178
- 10 *Johnston R F Brouha L & Darling H C* A test of physical fitness for strenuous exertion Rev Can Biol 1 1942 491
- 11 *Kellogg J H* A new dynamometer for use in anthropometry Modern Medicine and Bact World 2 1893 269 *Cit Hunsicker et al*
- 12 *Keys A & Brozek J* Body fat in adult man Physiol Rev 33 1953 240
- 13 *Kjellberg S R Larroth H Rudhe U & Sjöstrand T* The relationship between the heart volume and the blood volume and its physiological and pathological variability Acta Med Scand 140 1953 446
- 14 *Lagerlof H Eliasson H Werkö L Berglund E* Orthostatic changes of the pulmonary and peripheral circulation in man Scand J Clin & Lab Invest 3 1951 95
- 15 *Larsson H & Kjellberg S R* Roentgenological heart volume determination Acta Radiol 29 1948 159
- 16 *Lieke M H* An analytical study of world and olympic racing records Science 119 1954 333
- 17 *Lindgärd B* Variations in human body build Acta psych et neural Suppl 86 1953
- 18 *Lindgärd B* Body build and physical activity Lunds Universitets Årsskrift N 1 2 1956
- 19 *Lindgärd B Johnson O & Bjurulf P* Studies on the amount of muscle tissue in the adult male Kungl Fysiografiska Sällskapet i Lund Förhandlingar 24 1954 123
- 20 *Linderholm H & Söderström B* Device for automatic analysis of carbon monoxide in gas samples for determination of blood volume according to Sjöstrand's method Scand J Clin & Lab Invest 9 1957 307

- 91 Linko, E Lactic acid response to muscular exercise in neurocirculatory asthenia *Ann Med Int Fenn* 39 1950 161
- 92 Linroth, K Physical working capacity in conscripts during military service *Acta Med Scand Suppl* 324 1957
- 93 Lovell R W & Martin E G Certain aspects of infantile paralysis with a description of a method of muscle testing *J A M A* 66 1916 729
- 94 Martin R *Lehrbuch der Anthropologie* Jena 1928
- 95 Martin E G & Rich, W H Muscular strength and muscular symmetry in human beings *Am J Physiol* 47 1918 29
- 96 Metheny E L, Brouha, L, Johnsson, R E & Forbes, W H Some physiologic responses of women and men to moderate and strenuous exercise a comparative study  
*Am J Physiol* 137 1942 318
- 97 Mitchell, J H Sproule B J & Chapman C B The physiological meaning of the maximal oxygen intake test *J Clin Invest* 37 1958 538
- 98 Mosso A Über die Gesetze der Ermüdung Untersuchungen an Muskeln des Menschen *Arch für Anatomie und Physiologie* 1890 page 89 Cit Asmussen et al
- 99 Muller, E A Das Verhältnis des Arbeitsmaximum zum Energieverbrauch bei statischer Halte- und Kontraktionsarbeit *Arbeitsphysiologie* 9 1935 62
- 100 Muller E A Die Abhängigkeit des Arbeitsmaximum von der Leistung bei verschiedenen Personen  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 10 1938 67
- 101 Muller, E A Der Einfluss von Pausen auf das Arbeitsmaximum beim Radfahren *Arbeitsphysiologie* 11 1940 211—218
- 102 Muller, E A Der Einfluss der Sattelstellung auf das Arbeitsmaximum und den Wirkungsgrad beim Radfahren  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 10 1938 1—7
- 103 Muller, E A Ein Leistungs Pulsindex als Mass der Leistungsfähigkeit  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 14 1950 271—284
- 104 Muller E A & Grosse Lordemann, H Der Einfluss der Trethurbellänge auf das Arbeitsmaximum und den Wirkungsgrad beim Radfahren *Arbeitsphysiologie* 9 1937 619
- 105 Passmore R & Durnin J V C 4 Human energy expenditure *Physiol Reviews* 35 1955 801
- 106 Provins K A & Saller, N Maximum torque exerted about the elbow *J Appl Physiol* 7 1955 393
- 107 Ralston H J Inman, V T Strait L A & Shaffrath M D Mechanics of human isolated voluntary muscle  
*Am J Physiol* 151 1947 612
- 108 Rauber Kopsch *Lehrbuch und Atlas der Anatomie des Menschen* Band I Georg Thieme Verlag Leipzig 1940
- 109 Robinson S Experimental studies of physical fitness in relation to age  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 10 1938 251
- 110 Saller N & Darcus H D The effect of the degree of elbow flexion on the maximum torques developed in pronation and supination of the right hand  
*J of Anat* 86 1952 197

- 111 Sargent D A Strength tests and the strong man of Harvard Am Physical Education Review 2 1897 108 Cit Hunsicker *et al*
- 112 Schmier A A Research work on a more precise method of determining muscle strength in poliomyelitis patients The Journal of bone and joint surgery 27 1945 317
- 113 Schochrin W 4 Die Muskelkraft der Beuger und Strecker des Unterschenkels Arbeitsphysiologie 8 1934 251
- 114 Sjostrand T A method for determination of the total hemoglobin content of the body Acta Physiol Scand 16 1918 211
- 115 Sjostrand T The total quantity of hemoglobin in man and its relation to age, sex body weight and height Acta Physiol Scand 18 1919 324
- 116 Sjostrand T Volume and distribution of blood and their significance in regulating the circulation Physiol Rev III 1953 202
- 117 Sjostrand T Functional capacity and exercise tolerance in patients with impaired cardio vascular function p 201—219 Gordon Ed Clinical and cardiopulmonary physiology N Y Grune & Stratton 1960
- 118 Slonim N B Gillispie D G & Harold W H Peak oxygen uptake of healthy young men as determined by a treadmill method J Appl Physiol 10 1957 401
- 119 Smedley F W Report on child study investigation Forty Sixth Annual Report of the Chicago Board of Education for the Year ending June 30 1900 Cit Hunsicker *et al*
- 120 Snedecor G W Statistical methods The Iowa State College Press Ames Iowa USA 1950
- 121 Steinhaus A H Exercise Annual Review Physiol 3 1941 695
- 122 Stoll H R & Stoll L W Somatic development of adolescent boys New York 1951
- 123 Ström G Personal communication
- 124 Taylor C L Exercise Ann Rev Physiol 7 1945 599
- 125 Taylor H L Buskirk E & Henschel A Maximal oxygen intake as an objective measure of cardio respiratory performance J Appl Physiol 8 1955 73
- 126 Tuttle W W Janney C D & Salans J V Relation of maximum back and leg strength to back and leg strength endurance Res Quart 26 1955 96
- 127 Tuttle W W Janney C D & Thompson C W Relation of maximum grip strength to grip strength endurance J Appl Physiol III 1950 96
- 128 Umland J M Einfluss des Lebensalters Geschlechts der Konstitution und des Berufs auf die Kraft verschiedener Muskelgruppen Arbeitsphysiologie 6 1933 653
- 129 Wahlund H Determination of physical working capacity Acta Med Scand Suppl 215 1918
- 130 Wakim K H Gersten J W Elkins E C & Martin C W Objective recording of muscle strength Arch Phys Med 31 1950 90
- 131 Wallis A W & Roberts V H Statistics A new approach The Book Production Co Brooklyn New York 1956



- 91 Linko E Lactic acid response to muscular exercise in neurocirculatory asthenia *Ann Med Int Fenn* 39 1950 161
- 92 Linroth J Physical working capacity in conscripts during military service *Acta Med Scand Suppl* 324 1957
- 93 Lovell, R W & Martin E G Certain aspects of infantile paralysis with a description of a method of muscle testing *J A M A* 66 1916 729
- 94 Martin R *Lehrbuch der Anthropologie* Jena 1928
- 95 Martin, E G & Rich W H Muscular strength and muscular symmetry in human beings *Am J Physiol* 47 1918 29
- 96 Metheny, E L, Brouha, L, Johnsson R E & Forbes, W H Some physiologic responses of women and men to moderate and strenuous exercise a comparative study  
*Am J Physiol* 137 1942 318
- 97 Mitchell J H, Sproule, B J & Chapman C B The physiological meaning of the maximal oxygen intake test *J Clin Invest* 37 1958 538
- 98 Mosso, A Über die Gesetze der Ermüdung Untersuchungen an Muskeln des Menschen *Arch für Anatomie und Physiologie* 1890 page 89 Lit Asmussen et al
- 99 Muller, E A Das Verhältnis des Arbeitsmaximum zum Energieverbrauch bei statischer Halte und Kontraktionsarbeit *Arbeitsphysiologie* 9 1935 62
- 100 Müller, E A Die Abhängigkeit des Arbeitsmaximum von der Leistung bei verschiedenen Personen  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 10 1938 67
- 101 Muller, E A Der Einfluss von Pausen auf das Arbeitsmaximum beim Radfahren *Arbeitsphysiologie* 11 1940 211—218
- 102 Muller, E A Der Einfluss der Sattelstellung auf das Arbeitsmaximum und den Wirkungsgrad beim Radfahren  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 10 1938 1—7
- 103 Muller, E A Ein Leistungs Pulsindex als Mass der Leistungsfähigkeit  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 14 1950 271—284
- 104 Muller, E A & Grosse Lordemann H Der Einfluss der Tretkurbellänge auf das Arbeitsmaximum und den Wirkungsgrad beim Radfahren *Arbeitsphysiologie* 11 1937 610
- 105 Passmore R & Durnin J V C A Human energy expenditure *Physiol Reviews* 35 1955 801
- 106 Provins, K A & Saller N Maximum torque exerted about the elbow *J Appl Physiol* 7 1955 393
- 107 Ralston H J, Inman V T, Strat, L A & Shaffrath W D Mechanics of human isolated voluntary muscle  
*Am J Physiol* 151 1947 612
- 108 Rauber Kopsch *Lehrbuch und Atlas der Anatomie des Menschen* Band I Georg Thieme Verlag Leipzig 1910
- 109 Robinson S *Experimental studies of physical fitness in relation to age*  
*Arbeitsphysiologie* 10 1938 251
- 110 Saller, N & Dareus, H D The effect of the degree of elbow flexion on the maximum torques developed in pronation and supination of the right hand  
*J of Anat* 86 1952 197



- 132 *Vernon H M* The effects of posture and rest in muscular work J  
29 of the Industrial Fatigue Research Board London His Majesty's  
nery Office 1924  
Clt Hunsicker *et al*
- 133 *Wyndham C H, Strydom N B, Maritz, J S Morrison J F*  
*Potgieter, Z U* Maximum oxygen intake and maximum heart rate  
strenuous work  
J Appl Physiol 14 1959 927

ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 33. SUPPLEMENTUM 202

★

THE RATE OF SECRETION AND  
ELECTROLYTE CONTENT  
OF NORMAL GASTRIC JUICE

BY

BENGT NORDGREN

---

UPPSALA 1963

ESSELTE AKTIEBOLAG  
STOC HOLM 18 8

ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL. 58 SUPPLEMENTUM \*02

FROM THE INSTITUTE OF PHYSIOLOGY UNIVERSITY OF UPPSALA SWEDEN

THE RATE OF SECRETION AND  
ELECTROLYTE CONTENT  
OF NORMAL GASTRIC JUICE

BY

BENGT NORDGREN

---

UPPSALA 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL. 58 SUPPLEMENTUM 202

FROM THE INSTITUTE OF PHYSIOLOGY UNIVERSITY OF UPPSALA SWEDEN

THE RATE OF SECRETION AND  
ELECTROLYTE CONTENT  
OF NORMAL GASTRIC JUICE

BY

BENGT NORDGREN

---

UPPSALA 1963



UPPSALA 1963

ALMQVIST & WIKSELLS BOKTRYCKERI AB

# CONTENTS

Introduction	5
Material	6
Methods	6
Procedure	6
Dog experiments	6
Experiments in man	7
Analysis	7
Acidity	7
pH	7
Chloride	7
Sodium and potassium	8
CHAPTER 1 The Relation between Injection Rate of Histamine and Gastric Secretion in Man and Dog	9
Results	10
Dog experiments	10
Experiments in man	11
Some general comments of the results	13
Saliva	13
Duodenal regurgitation	13
The effect of antihistamine on the gastric secretion	16
Discussion	17
Procedure for measurement of the parameters	17
Discussion of an approximation test of the parameters	18
Discussion of the various parameters	22
The basal secretion	22
The maximal secretion rate ( $a$ )	22
The sensitivity index $q$	24
CHAPTER 2 The Relation between the Rate of Gastric Secretion and the Acidity during Steady State Conditions in the Intact Stomach of Man and Dog	26
The primary acidity	27
Results	27
Dog experiments	27
Reduction of extragastric admixture with drugs	28
Experiments in man	29
Discussion	29
Correlation to the theoretical relation used	29
Graphical determination of the primary acidity and the permeability coefficient	30
Use of an approximate test for determination of $C_a$ and $k$	30
The primary acidity	31
Comparison of $k$ values for secretion and instillation experiments	35
Introduction of glycine to determine $C_a$	36
Comments	37
The permeability coefficient $k$	38

CHAPTER 3 The Relation between the Chloride Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion	40
Results	41
Discussion	43
Comparison of $[Cl^-]$ in the primary secretion of man and dog	43
CHAPTER 4 The Relation between the Sodium Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion	44
Results	45
Estimation of the parameters in Eq 4.1	46
Discussion	47
CHAPTER 5 The Relation between the Potassium Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion	49
The relations between $[K^+]$ and $[H^+]$ and between $[K^+]$ and secretion rate	49
Results	50
Discussion	51
Calculation of the regression line	51
Magnitude of $[K^+]$ in the primary secretion	52
The origin of $[K^+]$ in the gastric secretion	52
CHAPTER 6 The Effect of Histamine on Potassium Concentration in Blood <i>in vitro</i> and <i>in vivo</i> Experiments	54
Methods	55
<i>In vitro</i> experiments	55
<i>In vivo</i> experiments	56
Results	56
<i>In vitro</i> experiments	56
<i>In vivo</i> experiments	57
Discussion	58
CHAPTER 7 The movement of Radioactive Sodium and Potassium across the Stomach Wall	60
Material	60
Methods	60
Procedure	60
Anesthesia	60
Analysis	61
Analysis of $Na^{22}$ and $K^{42}$	61
Results	62
The isotopes injected intravenously during gastric secretion	62
The tracers injected intravenously during secretory arrest with an approximately isotonic solution of $HCl$ and $NaCl$ instilled into the stomach	63
The isotopes instilled in the stomach during secretory arrest	63
Discussion	64
$K^{42}$ and $Na^{22}$ injected intravenously during gastric secretion	64
$K^{42}$ and $Na^{22}$ injected intravenously with an isotonic $Na/H$ solution instilled into the non secreting stomach	70
The importance of the crypts for the ion exchange	71
$K^{42}$ and $Na^{22}$ in the instilled volume during secretory arrest	73
General Summary	74
Acknowledgements	77
References	78

## INTRODUCTION

Most of our knowledge concerning the physiology of gastric secretion has been obtained in experiments on animals. This is especially true as regards quantitative studies. The reason for this has undoubtedly been the greater ease with which such experimentation can be performed on animals as compared to man. The need for quantitative data is great and the purpose of this investigation was therefore to study the following interrelationships in man

- (1) The injection rate of histamine and the rate of gastric secretion
- (2) The rate of gastric secretion and the concentrations of  $H^+$ ,  $K^+$ ,  $Na^+$  and  $Cl^-$  in the secretion

These relationships have been studied extensively in Heidenhain pouch dogs (for references see HEINZ and ÖBRINK 1954). In man however only preliminary studies have been carried out (NORDBERG 1958) and the data about these relationships in man are rather incomplete. The aim of the present study was therefore to acquire complementary data from human subjects without obvious signs of gastrointestinal or other disease. For comparison similar experiments were made on dogs with nearly intact stomachs (emptied through a fistula in the abdominal wall).

Notwithstanding the fact that there is a vast literature concerning the composition of the gastric juice in man most of the studies reported were carried out with single subcutaneous doses of histamine or other stimulation procedures giving transient secretion values. To interpret such non steady state values and especially to interrelate them is at present too difficult. In the present study care has been taken to try and keep all parameters at steady state levels thus avoiding the difficulties introduced by time lags and adjustment lapses. Details about the material and the methods used will be described in the relevant chapters.

CHAPTER 3 The Relation between the Chloride Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion	40
Results	41
Discussion	43
Comparison of $[Cl^-]$ in the primary secretion of man and dog	43
CHAPTER 4 The Relation between the Sodium Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion	45
Results	45
Estimation of the parameters in Eq. 4.1	46
Discussion	47
CHAPTER 5 The Relation between the Potassium Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion	49
The relations between $[K^+]$ and $[H^+]$ and between $[K^+]$ and secretion rate	49
Results	50
Discussion	51
Calculation of the regression line	51
Magnitude of $[K^+]$ in the primary secretion	52
The origin of $[K^+]$ in the gastric secretion	52
CHAPTER 6 The Effect of Histamine on Potassium Concentration in Blood <i>in vitro</i> and <i>in vivo</i> Experiments	54
Methods	55
<i>In vitro</i> experiments	55
<i>In vivo</i> experiments	56
Results	56
<i>In vitro</i> experiments	56
<i>In vivo</i> experiments	57
Discussion	58
CHAPTER 7 The movement of Radioactive Sodium and Potassium across the Stomach Wall	60
Material	60
Methods	60
Procedure	60
Anesthesia	60
Analysis	61
Analysis of $Na^{24}$ and $K^{42}$	61
Results	62
The isotopes injected intravenously during gastric secretion	62
The tracers injected intravenously during secretory arrest with an approximately isotonic solution of $KCl$ and $NaCl$ instilled into the stomach	63
The isotopes instilled in the stomach during secretory arrest	63
Discussion	64
$K^{42}$ and $Na^{24}$ injected intravenously during gastric secretion	64
$K^{42}$ and $Na^{24}$ injected intravenously with an isotonic $Na/K$ solution instilled into the non secreting stomach	70
The importance of the crypts for the ion exchange	71
$K^{42}$ and $Na^{24}$ in the instilled volume during secretory arrest	73
General Summary	74
Acknowledgements	77
References	78

was removed by a tube placed in the mouth. Before each experiment the subject had fasted for at least twelve hours but no restriction was placed on water intake. Each experiment lasted about three to five hours and the subject sat leaning backwards in a comfortable chair. Each subject was used for several experiments. The injection procedure was the same as in the dog experiments. For doses and injection volumes see Table 1 I. The range of the dose of chlorpheniramine was 5 to 16 mg and of uramine 0.06 to 0.10 gram.

## Analysis

### Acidity

Two methods were used.

(a) 0.1 ml of sample was diluted with 4 ml of deionized water and titrated with 10 mM NaOH with bromthymolblue as indicator (pH range 6.0-7.6). The NaOH solution was always checked daily against at least three 0.1 ml samples of 100 mM HCl (standard). The diluent water (4 ml deionized water) was also titrated on each occasion with NaOH to check that it contained no significant acidity. The standard error in the acidity determination was  $\pm 1$  mM.

(b) 1 ml of sample was titrated with Topfers mixed indicator: dimethylamino azo benzene end point pH 3.5 for the free acidity and phenolphthalein end point pH 8.0 for the total acidity. The standard error was in the 8 determinations  $< \pm 1$  mM.

### pH

pH was determined with a Radiometer pH meter type phm 22 using a glass electrode. The uncertainty was  $\pm 0.05$  pH units.

### Chloride

0.1 ml of sample was titrated with 20 mM  $\text{Hg}(\text{NO}_3)_2$  with 1 ml of citrate buffer (pH 1.5) and 5-diphenylcarbazone (Eastman Kodak 4453) as indicator as according to BROWN (1949). The  $\text{Hg}(\text{NO}_3)_2$  solution was checked daily against a standard solution of 100 mM NaCl. The standard error in these determinations was  $\pm 2$  mM.

## MATERIAL

Five men in good physical condition were studied. For data about their physical status see Table 1 I. No symptoms of gastro intestinal disease and no history of allergy were noted. In addition two dogs with gastric fistulae were used, these are also included in Table 1 I.

## METHODS

### *Procedure*

#### *Dog experiments*

A fistula was made in each dog by inserting a silver cannula in the lower part of the fundus of the stomach. The dogs were not used until four weeks after operation. The secretion from the stomach was collected via the cannula into a measuring cylinder which was emptied at periods of about five to ten minutes. Before every experiment the dog was fasted for at least twelve hours but was allowed water. The animal was stood on a table and restrained in a loose harness. Each experiment lasted for about four to five hours. The histamine was injected continuously intravenously at a constant rate using a special injection device (see ÖBERG, 1948). For concentrations and the volumes of the histamine injected see Table 1 I. To avoid side effects of histamine an antihistamine preparation chlorpheniramine (Allergisan® Pharmacia) was injected intravenously before the histamine (cf. KAY 1953). The dose of antihistamine was four to twelve mg the amount being adjusted for the injection rate of histamine.

In order to detect regurgitated material from the duodenum in the samples 0.1–0.2 gram of the dye uranine which is secreted in the bile were injected intravenously in a single dose at the same time as the antihistamine.

#### *Experiments in man*

For purposes of comparison the procedure was as far as possible similar to that in the dog experiments. The gastric contents were removed at intervals of about five to ten minutes by suction through a rubber or a plastic tube. To prevent the swallowing of saliva this

## Sodium and potassium

Sodium and potassium were determined flamephotometrically (Flamespectrophotometers used were Perkin Elmer Co type 524 Series 2, with internal lithium standard or Beckman B). Both sodium and potassium were determined in a concentration range up to 4 mN the samples being diluted when necessary. A calibration graph was made with standard solutions of KCl and NaCl (range 0.1–4.0 mN). Potassium does not interfere with the determinations of sodium in the presence of concentrations of at least up to 100 mN and the interference of 100 mN sodium on 1 mN potassium is only 5%. (MARSDEN personal communication). Since the Na concentration when measuring K was never more than about 20 mN the sodium interference was neglected.



## CHAPTER I

# The Relation between Injection Rate of Histamine and Gastric Secretion in Man and Dog

It is well established that after a subcutaneous injection of histamine the rate of gastric secretion first rises to a maximum and then declines until secretion finally ceases after about an hour. In studying the relationship between the dose of histamine and rate of gastric secretion this mode of histamine administration is unsatisfactory. It is desirable to obtain steady state conditions i.e. to maintain a constant stimulus and thus a constant rate of secretion.

TEORELL (1933) pointed out that a constant gastric secretory rate could be obtained by the continuous intravenous injection of histamine. In 1937 he presented the theoretical relationships between the injection rate and the concentrations of histamine in blood and tissue. He suggested that the steady state concentration should be directly proportional to the injection rate.

ÖBRINK (1948) confirmed the correctness of this hypothesis in studies on the concentration of histamine in plasma after continuous intravenous injection. He found a definite relationship between the injection rate of histamine and rate of gastric secretion for Heidenham pouch dogs which could be described by the exponential equation

$$t = a(1 - e^{-k}) \quad (1.1)$$

where  $t$  = the rate of gastric secretion (ml/min)

$a$  = the injection rate of histamine (mg/hour)

and  $a$  and  $k$  are constants

Previously only preliminary studies of this relationship have been made in man (VORPORKY 1959)

The purpose of the work described in this chapter was to study this problem in more detail with special reference to three parameters

- 1 The maximal rate of gastric secretion
- 2 The sensitivity of the mucosa to histamine

### *Sodium and potassium*

Sodium and potassium were determined flamephotometrically (Flamespectrophotometers used were Perkin Elmer Co type 52A Series 2 with internal lithium standard or Beckman B). Both sodium and potassium were determined in a concentration range up to 4 mN the samples being diluted when necessary. A calibration graph was made with standard solutions of KCl and NaCl (range 0.1–4.0 mN). Potassium does not interfere with the determinations of sodium in the presence of concentrations of at least up to 100 mN and the interference of 100 mN sodium on 1 mN potassium is only 5% (MARSDEN personal communication). Since the Na concentration when measuring K was never more than about 20 mN the sodium interference was neglected.

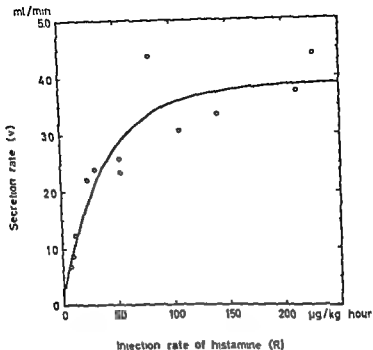


Fig 1 The relationship between injection rate of histamine and rate of gastric secretion during steady state conditions (Dog 31)

different steady injection rates of histamine  $R$  ( $\mu\text{g/kg}$  body weight/hour) and the rates of secretion  $v$  ( $\text{ml/min}$ ) from different experiments on the same dog is given in Fig 1 2 Each point in Fig 1 2 represents the mean secretion rate during the steady state in a single experiment (see Fig 1 1) The continuous line was obtained by fitting the experimental values to Eq 1 2 (see below) using the method of least squares

### Experiments in man

Fig 1 3 illustrates a typical experiment on a human subject With different injection rates of histamine correspondingly different rates of secretion were obtained In experiments without histamine stimulation there was always a basal secretion The results were expressed in the same way as in the dog experiments (see Fig 1 4)

In order to evaluate the total loss of water during an experiment

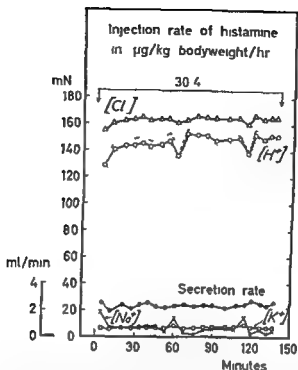


Fig 1.1 A typical experiment with continuous intravenous injection of histamine and a steady rate of gastric secretion with fairly constant  $[H^+]$   $[K^+]$   $[Na^+]$  and  $[Cl^-]$ . The  $[H^+]$  was titrated with bromthymolblue (circles) in addition to Topfer's reagent. Dashed lines total acidity and dotted lines free acidity (Dog M)

### 3 The secretion in the absence of histamine stimulation (basal secretion)

In previous work on the human stomach or intact stomach in dog it has generally not been possible to assess the magnitude of admixture contributed by the saliva or duodenal contents. In the technique described here special attention has been paid to the presence of the disturbing factors

## Results

### Dog experiments

The results of a typical experiment on a dog are shown in Fig 1.1. It can be seen that the rate of secretion and the acidity  $[H^+]$  reach a fairly constant level which is maintained throughout the experiment i.e. a steady state is obtained. A graph of the relation between

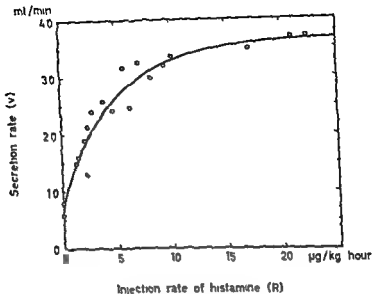


Fig 1.4 The relationship between injection rate of histamine and rate of gastric secretion in man during steady state conditions (Subject B I)

through the pylorus a steady secretion rate would be unlikely to be recorded. As a rule a steady rate was in fact observed.

Only those experiments where steady state levels were attained were included in the analysis of the results. In contrast to the experiments on man contamination by large amounts of saliva and duodenal secretion in several dog experiments necessitated their exclusion from the acceptable material.

### Some general comments on the results

The accuracy with which the gastric secretion rate can be measured is of great importance. For this reason special attention has been paid to the problem of contamination by the admixture of saliva or duodenal secretion.

#### Saliva

In addition to the saliva sucker in the mouth (v.s.) a plastic tube connected to a suction device was in some experiments in man placed in the lower part of the oesophagus (about 40 cm from the teeth)

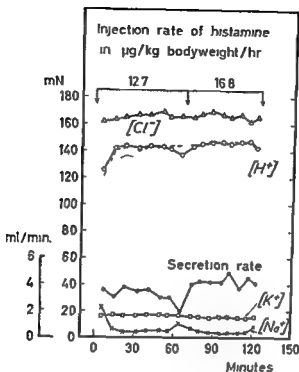


Fig 13 A typical experiment in man (Subject K. G. K.) The notation is the same as in Fig 11

the total amount of gastric contents and saliva collected from the subjects is shown in Table I I where also the volume of saline injected along with the histamine is given. The total water loss was not determined in the dogs because it was considered that a salivary suction fixed in the mouth might be irritating. There was thus some additional unrecorded water loss due to salivary spilling from the mouth.

The juice collected might of course contain an admixture of saliva and duodenal secretion. In order to evaluate the extent of this contamination the procedure used in the experiments was found to be satisfactory for the following reason. Both the rate of gastric secretion and the acidity were obtained at steady state levels. An admixture of the gastric secretion of saliva or duodenal secretion increases the apparent rate of secretion but lowers the acidity (NORDGREN 1958). A real increase in secretion rate is never accompanied by a decrease in the acidity and if this happens it must imply an extragastric admixture. Such an event is illustrated in Fig 15 and it seems valid to exclude such values. If there was a sudden loss of gastric contents

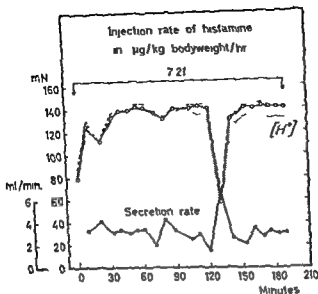


Fig 15 An experiment in man demonstrating the occurrence of extragastric admixture (Subject B 1)

to remove saliva and possible oesophageal secretion. The largest amount collected during a 3 to 4 hours experiment was not more than 3 ml indicating that fluid movement between the mouth oesophagus and the stomach (and the reverse direction) was negligible. It is shown in Table 1 I that large amounts of saliva were collected through the mouth sucker during each experiment.

### Duodenal regurgitation

To detect duodenal regurgitation a dye test was used (NORDOPEN to be published). A number of different dyes were injected intravenously in cats during histamine stimulated gastric secretion. Of the dyes tested uranine was found most suitable because

- 1 it gives an extremely intense colour easily seen with the eye and detectable photofluorometrically in concentrations of  $1 \cdot 10^7$
- 2 it is not secreted by the gastric mucosa
- 3 a considerable amount of the dye passes via the bile to the duodenum and colours vividly all the duodenal contents
- 4 it has a low toxicity (FUJII and SAKATA 1953)

TABLE 11 *Data of the material*

Subject	Weight kg	Length cm	Body surface <sup>a</sup> m <sup>2</sup>	Age in years	Dose of histamine range $\mu\text{g/kg hr}$	Amount of fluid injected (ml)		Gastric contents withdrawn (ml)		Amount of saliva with drawn (ml)	
						Mean	Range	Mean	Range	No of experi- ments	Mean
K O K	77.0	190	2.04	26	3.1-21.1	12.9	9.5-15.5	422.8	259.7-578.5	5	337
B I	72.0	191	1.99	22	1.3-22.4	13.5	10.0-18.4	449.1	276.2-693.0	17 <sup>b</sup>	208
H C	53.0	170	1.68	17	3.6-22.6	22.4	12.2-30.0	369.3	319.4-513.1	3	258
R N	51.5	—	—	15	3.7-20.1	16.2	10.0-24.9	506.3	319.2-687.1	5	209
G L	51.7	171	1.59	16	1.9-27.9	20.4	16.4-26.3	246.2	166.7-419.4	■	276
Dog I	22.5	—	—	—	7.0-36.3	12.2	5.6-19.1	271.8	161.7-458.5		
Dog M	10.2	—	—	—	0.8-227.3	12.7	9.6-22.5	369.6	127.7-581.8		

<sup>a</sup> Body surface calculated as according to Du Bois and Du Bois (1916)<sup>b</sup> In 2 experiments the pH of the saliva was measured (mean 7.9 range 7.6-8.3)



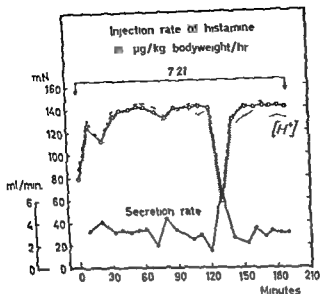


Fig 15 An experiment in man demonstrating the occurrence of extragastric admixture (Subject H I)

to remove saliva and possible oesophageal secretion. The largest amount collected during a 3 to 4 hours experiment was not more than 3 ml indicating that fluid movement between the mouth oesophagus and the stomach (and the reverse direction) was negligible. It is shown in Table 1 I that large amounts of saliva were collected through the mouth sucker during each experiment.

### Duodenal regurgitation

To detect duodenal regurgitation a dye test was used (NORDGREN to be published). A number of different dyes were injected intravenously in cats during histamine stimulated gastric secretion. Of the dyes tested uranine was found most suitable because

- 1 it gives an extremely intense colour easily seen with the eye and detectable photofluorometrically in concentrations of  $1 \cdot 10^7$
- 2 it is not secreted by the gastric mucosa
- 3 a considerable amount of the dye passes via the bile to the duodenum and colours vividly all the duodenal contents
- 4 it has a low toxicity (FUJII and SAKATA 1953)

TABLE I II *Secretion rate and acidity before and after administration of chlorpheniramine*

Subject	Dose of Allergisan given mg	Secretion rate					Acidity [H <sup>+</sup> ]	
		without Aller gisan		with Aller gisan		difference of $a_1$ after Allergisan	without Allergisan mN	with Allergisan mN
		ml/min	of $a_1^*$	ml/min	of $a_1^*$			
C (exp 2)	12.0	1.27	37.6	1.37	40.5	+2.9	110	109
L (exp 5)	8.8	1.04	37.7	1.00	36.2	-1.5	96	95
N (exp 4)	12.0	0.31	9.7	0.34	10.6	+0.9	85	88
I (exp 11)	8.0	1.19	32.4	1.14	31.1	-1.3	100	106

\* $a_1$  = maximal rate of gastric secretion

Because of the appearance of some bile in experiment 11 (B I) this was not used when calculating the regression curve between the injection rate of histamine and rate of gastric secretion

The appearance of uranine in the gastric contents was taken as evidence of duodenal regurgitation

### The effect of antihistamine on the gastric secretion

As chlorpheniramine was used to obviate the side effects of histamine it was of importance to exclude any possible effect of the antihistamine on the parameters under investigation. Chlorpheniramine (Allergisan®) in a dose of 8 to 14 mg therefore was administered intravenously in a single dose during a period when there was steady rate of fluid efflux from the stomach induced by continuous histamine injection. The secretory rate was kept below 40% of the maximal theoretical rate of secretion in order to make the subject more sensitive to the possible effects of the antihistamine drug. At this level of gastric secretion changes should exert relatively large effects on the secretory rate (Fig 1.4). As can be seen in Table I II only small changes were obtained after the administration of the chlorpheniramine. This is in accordance with many earlier reports (McELIN and HORTON 1946 SANGSTER GROSSMAN and ILL 1946 MOERSCH 1946 WOOD 1948 RAGINS BENDITT GREENLEE and DRAGSTEDT 1958) but it should also be noted that a slight stimulating effect of the parenterally administered antihistamine has been reported (LINDER 1950).

## Discussion

The results indicate a correlation between the rate of gastric secretion and the injection rate of histamine in both man and the dog.

For the analysis of the dynamics of gastric secretion it is necessary to evaluate at least three parameters

- (i) The maximal secretory capacity ( $MSC$ ) ml/min
- (ii) An index of the sensitivity of the gastric mucosa to stimulation
- (iii) The basal secretion rate i.e. the secretion without histamine stimulation ml/min

### Procedure for measurement of the parameters

The basal secretion was measured directly but numerical values of parameters (i) and (ii) can only be calculated indirectly as follows

The relation between the injection rate of histamine and the rate of gastric secretion in Heidenhain pouch dogs was found by ÖBRINK (1948) to be described by the equation

$$v = a(1 - e^{-qR}) \quad (1.1)$$

where  $v$  = the rate of secretion (ml/min)  $R$  = the injection rate of histamine (mg/kg body weight hour) Öbrink used  $r$   $a$  = the maximal rate of secretion and  $q$  = a constant (Öbrink used  $k$ ) The locus of this equation is a line passing through the origin which means that in the absence of histamine stimulation the rate of gastric secretion is zero. This is only a special form of the more general case where there is a basal secretion and which is described by the equation

$$v = a_1 - a_2 e^{-qR} \quad (1.2)$$

where  $q$  and  $R$  are the same as in Eq. 1.1  $a_1$  = the maximal rate of secretion (ml/min) and  $a_2$  = the maximal increment in the secretion rate obtained with histamine stimulation

In the human subjects there was always a distinct basal secretion (1.1) and therefore Eq. 1.2 has been used throughout this paper. No attempts were made to fit the experimental data to other types of equations as Eq. 1.2 seemed satisfactory in most cases.

In calculating the regression line the total sum of squares is defined as

$$\sum d_2^2 = \sum (v_j - \bar{v})^2$$

where  $v$  = the  $m$ th observation of the rate of the gastric secretion  $\bar{v}$  = the

TABLE I II *Secretion rate and acidity before and after administration of chlorpheniramine*

Subject	Dose of Allergisan given mg	Secretion rate					Acidity [H <sup>+</sup> ]	
		without Aller gisan		with Aller gisan		difference of a <sub>1</sub> after Allergisan	without Allergisan mN	with Allergisan mN
		ml/min	of a <sub>1</sub> *	ml/min	of a <sub>1</sub> *			
H C (exp 2)	120	127	376	137	405	+29	110	109
G L (exp 5)	88	104	377	100	362	-15	96	95
R \ (exp 4)	120	031	97	034	106	+09	85	88
B I (exp 11)	80	119	324	114	311	-13	100	106

\* $a_1$  = maximal rate of gastric secretion

Because of the appearance of some bile in experiment II (B I) this was not used when calculating the regression curve between the injection rate of histamine and rate of gastric secretion

The appearance of uranine in the gastric contents was taken as evidence of duodenal regurgitation

### The effect of antihistamine on the gastric secretion

As chlorpheniramine was used to obviate the side effects of histamine it was of importance to exclude any possible effect of the antihistamine on the parameters under investigation. Chlorpheniramine (Allergisan®) in a dose of 8 to 14 mg therefore was administered intravenously in a single dose during a period when there was steady rate of fluid efflux from the stomach induced by continuous histamine injection. The secretory rate was kept below 40% of the maximal theoretical rate of secretion in order to make the subject more sensitive to the possible effects of the antihistamine drug. At this level of gastric secretion changes should exert relatively large effects on the secretory rate (Fig 14). As can be seen in Table I II only small changes were obtained after the administration of the chlorpheniramine. This is in accordance with many earlier reports (McELIN and HORTON 1946; SANDSTER, GROSSMAN and IVY 1946; MOERSCH 1946; WOOD 1948; RAGINS, BENDITT, GREENLEE and DRAGSTEDT 1955) but it should also be noted that a slight stimulating effect of the parenterally administered antihistamine has been reported (LINDF 1950).

TABLE 1 III The degree of fit with Eq 1 2

Subject	No of experiments	$\Sigma d_1^2$	$\Sigma d^2$	$100 \left( 1 - \frac{\Sigma d_1^2}{\Sigma d^2} \right) \%$
H G K	11	0 05	17 18	95 9
B I	17	0 986	9 679	89 8
H C	7	0 46	9 974	84 2
R N	5	0 637	1 117	43 0
G L	9	0 169	3 552	95 0
Dog L	8	3 391	8 611	60 6
Dog M	13	0 451	18 349	88 5

The product  $vR$  has been plotted against  $R$  in Fig 1 6 Eq 1 3 has an inflexion point (i.e. the second derivative = 0) at an  $R$  value of  $2/q$ . Beyond the point of inflexion the curve rapidly tends to linearity (cf Fig 1 6).

The slope of the tangent at the point of inflexion is

$$\tan \alpha = f'(2/q) = a_1 + a_2/e^2 \quad (1 4)$$

The full equation of the tangent will consequently be

$$vR - f(2/q) = f'(2/q)(R - 2/q) = 0 \quad (1 5)$$

This gives an intersection on the  $R$  axis

$$R_{\text{int}} = \frac{4a}{q(a_1 e^2 - a_2)} \quad (1 6)$$

The slope ( $\tan \beta$ ) of Eq 1 3 in the origin ( $f(R)$  for  $R=0$ ) is

$$\tan \beta = a_1 - a_2 \quad (1 7)$$

This slope was however difficult to evaluate graphically (see Fig 1 6) and was therefore not used. But it should be remembered that  $a_1 - a_2$  equals the basal secretion ( $b$ ) that can be determined experimentally. Thus

$$a_2 = a_1 - b \quad (1 8)$$

If Eq 1 8 is substituted in Eq 1 4 and  $\tan \alpha$  determined graphically,  $a_1$  can be calculated. Knowing  $a_1$ ,  $a_2$  can be calculated from Eq 1 8.

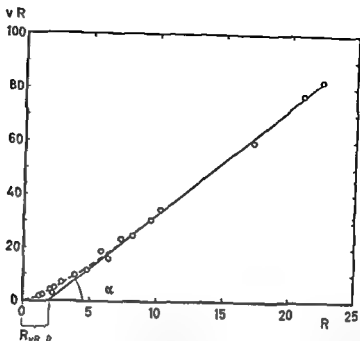


Fig 1.6 The product  $tR$  plotted against  $t$ . The dotted line was obtained from Eq 1.3 and the continuous line corresponds to Eq 1.2. The slope of the continuous line is  $\tan \alpha$  and its intercept on the  $x$ -axis corresponds to  $R_0$  (Subject B I)

### Discussion of an "approximation" test of the parameters

To determine the regression curve of Eq 1.2 a considerable amount of experimental data is required this introduces difficulties into its use in human physiology or clinical medicine. It might however be possible to characterize the stimulation-effect relationship on a basis of Eq 1.2 by a more rapid estimation of the parameters in the following way. If both sides of Eq 1.2 are multiplied by  $R$  we obtain

$$tR = R(a_1 - a_2 e^{-at}) \quad (1.3)$$

$$\text{or } tR = f(R)$$

mean of all  $t_1$ 's. The residual sum of squares is defined as the sum of the squared deviations of the experimental points from the locus of Eq 1.2 in which the parameters have been estimated according to the I.M. method.  $1 - \sum d_1^2 / \sum d^2$  (where  $\sum d_1^2$  is the sum of the least square distances of the experimental points from the regression line Eq 1.2) can be used as a reasonable measure of the degree of fit of the experimental points of the regression curve in the individual subjects (cf. for instance Svedecor 1956). The expression  $(1 - \sum d_1^2 / \sum d^2)$  may however be somewhat influenced by the numerical value of  $a_1$ .

Table I III shows that values of  $100(1 - \sum d_1^2 / \sum d^2)$  up to 96 were obtained. An analysis of the entire data using Eq 1.2 is given in Table I IV.

TABLE 1 III The degree of fit with Eq 1 2

Subject	No of experiments	$\Sigma d_1^2$	$\Sigma d_2^2$	$100 \left( 1 - \frac{\Sigma d_1^2}{\Sigma d_2^2} \right)^{1/2}$
A G A	11	0 05	17 182	95 9
B I	17	0 986	9 679	88 8
H C	7	0 467	2 914	84 2
R N	5	0 637	1 117	43 0
G L	9	0 169	3 57	95 9
Dog L	8	3 391	8 611	60 6
Dog M	13	491	18 349	88 5

The product  $vR$  has been plotted against  $R$  in Fig 1 6 Eq 1 3 has an inflexion point (i.e. the second derivative = 0) at an  $R$  value of  $2/q$ . Beyond the point of inflexion the curve rapidly tends to linearity (cf Fig 1 6).

The slope of the tangent at the point of inflexion is

$$\tan \alpha = f'(2/q) = a_1 + a_2/c^2 \quad (1 4)$$

The full equation of the tangent will consequently be

$$vR - f(2/q) = f'(2/q)(R - 2/q) = 0 \quad (1 5)$$

This gives an intersection on the  $R$  axis

$$R = 0 = \frac{4a}{q(a_1c^2 - a_2)} \quad (1 6)$$

The slope ( $\tan \beta$ ) of Eq 1 3 in the origin ( $f'(R)$  for  $R=0$ ) is

$$\tan \beta = a_1 - a_2 \quad (1 7)$$

This slope was however difficult to evaluate graphically (see Fig 1 6) and was therefore not used. But it should be remembered that  $a_1 - a_2$  equals the basal secretion ( $b$ ) that can be determined experimentally. Thus

$$a_2 = a_1 - b \quad (1 8)$$

If Eq 1 8 is substituted in Eq 1 4 and  $\tan \alpha$  determined graphically  $a_1$  can be calculated. Knowing  $a_1$ ,  $a_2$  can be calculated from Eq 1 8.

$R_{rR=0}$  in Eq 1 6 can be determined graphically and in Eq 1 6  $q$  is now the only unknown parameter and can thus be evaluated

The difficulty seemed to be to determine the slope of the tangent at the point of inflexion, but scrutiny of Fig 1 6 shows that the bend of the curve at this point is so slight that the slope will be approximately the same even if it is not drawn through the point of inflexion

A test was made to see how far from the point of inflexion in Eq 1 3 the tangent could be drawn using the range of the  $R$  values employed in the human subjects with varying  $q$  values Fixed  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  values (the mean of the calculated  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  respectively) were used with varying  $q$  values inserted in Eq 1 3 A low  $q$  value gives the point of inflexion ( $2/q$ ) an  $R$  value far greater than the experimental  $R$  values It can be shown that for  $q$  values below 0 05 the graphical method gives an overestimate Thus the construction of a tangent here could involve a rather uncertain extrapolation of the curve calculated from Eq 1 3

It is of interest to consider the information which can be elicited if for instance only two experimental points as for example in a simple clinical test are available To examine this matter the positions of the tangents and  $R$  axis intercepts ( $R_{rR=0}$ ) drawn from any two points of a whole set of experimental points from the same individuals were estimated The minimal distance between any pair of points used was 4 5  $R$  units and only points lying on or about the graph in its straight part were used A typical set of such points is shown in Fig 1 6 The entire material was treated in this way The results show in the main reasonable accord (see Table 1 V) although some rather wide variations occur in the latter cases however the degree of fit ( $1 - \sum d_i / \sum d'$  in Table 1 III) was also rather poor Obviously the more experimental points that can be determined the more accurate will be the values of  $\tan \alpha$  and  $R_{rR=0}$

The basal secretion rates were not included when the parameters in Eq 1 3 were determined by the method of the least squares For comparison the parameters were included in one subject (B 1) including the basal secretion in Eq 1 3 giving  $q=0.20$   $a_1=3.72$   $a_2=2.98$   $S$  (the standard error of estimate)=0.26 compared with  $a_1=3.67$   $a_2=2.79$   $S=0.26$  (with the basal secretion excluded)



TABLE 1 IV The values of the parameters determined

TABLE 1 IV The values of the parameters determined

Subjects	No of observations	Basal secretion mean	Calculated with the method of the least squares				$a_1$ per m <sup>2</sup> body surface	Basal secretion in % of $a_1$	FD, g/kg hr of fatamine	Calculation with the graphical method	
			$a_1$ ml/min	$a_2$ ml/min kg	$q$ hr/g	$S$				$a_1$ ml/min	$q$ hr/kg
A G K	11	0.00	8.40	6.34	0.05	0.30	3.38	8.6	13.8	0.47	0.09
B I	17	0.00	3.67	7.9	0.00	0.07	1.84	16.9	3.5	3.0	0
H C	7	0.08	3.38	0.00	0.08	0.34	0.038	8.3	9.2	3.11	0.11
R N	5	0.75	3.0	1.51	0.15	0.6	—	23.4	4.7	3.06	0.17
G L	9	0.6	2.78	0.55	0.08	0.17	1.74	9.4	10.0	0.39	0.10
Dog L	8	0.86	3.8	4.4	0.07	0.8	—	5	18.0	4.50	0.44
Dog M	13	—	3.86	3.70	0.03	0.50	—	—	8.0	—	—

## Discussion of the various parameters

### *The basal secretion*

In Heidenhain pouch dogs no basal secretion was found (ÖBRINK 1948). In the present experiments in dogs with intact stomachs a basal secretion was not conclusively demonstrated. In man, however, the basal secretion does not cease even after extended fasting. DRAGSTEDT, OBERHELMAN JR and WOODWARD (1951) suggested that the basal secretion was under central nervous control as it was markedly reduced after vagotomy.

In the present material there was considerable variation of the basal secretion rate in the same subject between different experiments. The mean values for each subject varied between 8 and 23 (mean 14) per cent of their corresponding *MSC* values. On account of the low acid output the acidity necessary to keep the pylorus closed may not always have been maintained. Some acid may therefore have been lost through the pylorus which could possibly explain some of the observed variations in the basal secretion rate.

### *The maximal secretion rate ( $a_1$ )*

Several attempts to determine *MSC* with intravenous infusion of histamine have been reported. ÖBRINK (1948), LYNDE (1950) and NORDGREN (1958) used Eq. 11 to calculate the *MSC*. ADAMS *et al.* (1954) calculated the *MSC* from a logistic curve after subtracting the basal secretion. HANSSON *et al.* (1948) and WOOD (1948) considered they had reached the *MSC* when a bigger dose of histamine gave no significant rise in output from the stomach. Table I VI gives a survey of the estimated values obtained from steady state conditions after histamine injection.

Even if it has not been proved rigorously that the acid originates from the parietal cells, there is much indirect supporting evidence. Thus CARD and MARKS (1957) in man and MARKS, KOVAROV and SHAY (1958-1960) in dog reported a correlation between acid output and parietal cell mass. In patients with atrophic gastritis GIVISS and STEWART (1948) found a relationship between the acid output and the estimated number of parietal cells left intact. CARD and MARKS (1960) in man also reported a correlation between the number of parietal cells in the excised part of the stomach and a diminished acid output. The frequency of parietal cells per unit area of gastric

Table 1 V The variation of  $\tan \alpha$  and  $R_{\text{p-o}}$  (Fig 15) when only two points along the slope are used to estimate them

Subject	The whole material used		Only two points used	
	$\tan \alpha$	$R_{\text{p-o}}$	$\tan \alpha$	$R_{\text{p-o}}$
A. G. A.	6.14	5.15	5.65	4.05
			5.92	4.80
			6.05	5.00
			6.35	5.90
			6.50	6.30
			6.11	6.10
			7.39	7.00
B. I.	4.03	1.90	3.95	1.50
			4.00	1.60
			4.05	2.10
			4.05	2.10
			4.10	2.0
			4.10	2.00
H. C.	3.50	4.10	3.8	3.0
			4.00	4.30
R. V.	3.38	4.0	2.95	1.40
			3.38	2.20
G. L.	6.5	4.0	2.46	3.0
			2.5	2.90
			2.64	4.30
			3.0	4.40
			3.74	4.90
			2.9	5.00
Dog L.	5.06	9.00	3.40	-0.30
			4.47	8.40
			5.60	8.00
			6.17	10.00
Dog M.	4.47	9.50	4.40	3.00
			4.55	37.00
			5.53	47.00
			6.10	63.00

mucosa was correlated to the acid output according to TOUGEN (1950) Variations in the number of parietal cells may therefore be expected to be reflected by differences in the MSC

Attempts to correlate MSC and weight or age of the subject were

## Discussion of the various parameters

### *The basal secretion*

In Heidenham pouch dogs no basal secretion was found (ÖBRINK 1948). In the present experiments in dogs with intact stomachs no basal secretion was not conclusively demonstrated. In man, however, the basal secretion does not cease even after extended fasting. DRAGSTEDT, OBERHELMAN Jr and WOODWARD (1951) suggested that the basal secretion was under central nervous control as it was markedly reduced after vagotomy.

In the present material there was considerable variation of the basal secretion rate in the same subject between different experiments. The mean values for each subject varied between 8 and 23 (mean 14) per cent of their corresponding *MSC* values. On account of the low acid output the acidity necessary to keep the pylorus closed may not always have been maintained. Some acid may therefore have been lost through the pylorus which could possibly explain some of the observed variations in the basal secretion rate.

### *The maximal secretion rate ( $a_1$ )*

Several attempts to determine *MSC* with intravenous infusion of histamine have been reported. ÖBRINK (1948), LYNDE (1950) and LÖRD GREY (1958) used Eq. 11 to calculate the *MSC*. ADAMS *et al.* (1954) calculated the *MSC* from a logistic curve after subtracting the basal secretion. HANSSON *et al.* (1948) and WOOD (1948) considered they had reached the *MSC* when a bigger dose of histamine gave no significant rise in output from the stomach. Table I VI gives a survey of the estimated values obtained from steady state conditions after histamine injection.

Even if it has not been proved rigorously that the acid originates from the parietal cells, there is much indirect supporting evidence. Thus CARD and MARKS (1957) in man and MARKS, KOMAROV and SHAY (1958, 1960) in dog reported a correlation between acid output and parietal cell mass. In patients with atrophic gastritis GUSS and STEWART (1948) found a relationship between the acid output and the estimated number of parietal cells left intact. CARD and MARKS (1960) in man also reported a correlation between the number of parietal cells in the excised part of the stomach and a diminished acid output. The frequency of parietal cells per unit area of gastric

tion (relative to the *MSC*) A suitable measure of the sensitivity would therefore seem to be the injection rate of histamine evoking 50% of the maximal rate of secretion This injection rate might be called the Effective Dose 50 ( $ED_{50}$ ) (see Table I IV)  $ED_{50}$  can be determined if the parameters  $a_1$  and  $a$  of Eq 1.2 are known and  $ED_{50} = 0.693/q$ , i.e.  $ED_{50}$  is in fact independent of  $a_1$  and  $a_2$  It can also be determined from the sigmoid relation between the dosage of histamine ( $\log R$ ) and the rate of secretion

A high numerical value of  $q$  (i.e. a low value of the  $ED_{50}$ ) indicates a high sensitivity of the gastric mucosa to histamine The term *hypersecretion*—a word often used in a rather vague way—might therefore be defined more quantitatively in terms of a high  $q$  (or a low  $ED_{50}$ ) value or a high *MSC* value or a combination of both Hypersecretion would thus refer to the sensitivity of the response of the gastric mucosa to a submaximal (e.g. 50%) histamine stimulus as well as to the magnitude of the maximal secretory rate which is correlated with the number of parietal cells

TABLE 1 VI *Previous determinations of the maximal secretory capacity (MSC) in the whole stomach*

Authors	Species	No of subjects	Type of stomach preparation	Maximal secretory capacity (MSC)
Hansson Grossman Ivy (1948)	dog	6	total stomach vagally denervated	0.67-2.70 ml/min
Hansson Grossman Ivy (1948)	dog	4	intact stomach	1.1-1.70 ml/min
Hansson Grossman Ivy (1948)	man	1	intact stomach	4.70 ml/min (ubmax capacity)
Nordgren (1958)	man	11	intact stomach	1.56-4.64 ml/min
Wood (1948)	cat	6	intact stomach	0.42 ml/hr

not successful (NORDGREN 1958) nor could COX (1952) find any correlation between the weight or the surface area of the stomach and the body weight or the age.

Table 1 IV shows the quotient between  $a_1$  (the MSC) and the body weight or body surface. The body weight quotient was definitely bigger in the dogs than in man which may be a reflection of a bigger parietal cell mass per unit body weight in the dogs. In the present investigation the relation between MSC ( $a_1$ ) and the body weight was found relatively constant and may therefore possibly be a rough measure of the magnitude of this quotient in a population of healthy subjects.

#### *The sensitivity index q*

Measurements of the sensitivity of response of the gastric mucosa to stimulation are few (ÖBERG 1948, HUNT and KAY 1954, NORDGREN 1958). The MSC should be a measure of the number of parietal cells. However it gives no information of the sensitivity of the parietal cells to histamine stimulation although this might be of equal or even greater importance than the MSC itself.

In this study a bigger  $q$  value means that a lower injection rate of histamine suffices to produce the same relative rate of gastric secre-

through the mucosa (i.e. back diffusion of  $H^+$  from the stomach to the circulation) causes the changes in the concentrations of the electrolytes observed at different secretion rates

### 'The primary acidity'

The primary acidity  $C_0$  (i.e. the acidity which the parietal cell is postulated to secrete) was studied through instillation of a buffer glycine into the stomach thus reducing backdiffusion of  $H^+$  from the stomach. In cats *TEORELL* (1940) calculated  $C_0$  to be 203 mN and in dogs *LINDE TEORELL* and *ÖBRINK* (1947) calculated the  $C_0$  value to be 160 mN rising to 464 mN with diminishing rate of gastric secretion. Their highest analytical value was 354 mN. In man *IKKE* (1938) got a value of 143-145 mN and *HAUSER* (1943) a maximum of 155 mN when determining  $C_0$  with glycine instillations. On account of difficulties in avoiding extragastric admixture and losses of glycine the results in man must be considered as somewhat uncertain.

The necessity of constant secretion rates when analysing the present relationship should be stressed. In non steady states time lags obscure the relations of *ÖBRINK's* lake hypothesis (1948).

The relationship has been thoroughly investigated only for gastric pouches and there is a dearth of information from intact stomachs. The purpose of this investigation was therefore to study the relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and the acidity in man and dog. Continuous intravenous injection of histamine was used to get steady state conditions necessary for quantitative analysis of the relationship.

## Results

### Dog experiments

In Fig 11 a typical experiment is shown. When the rate of secretion is constant the acidity also becomes constant. The relatively small amounts of bound acid determined through titration with Topfer's reagent indicate that there are practically no weak acids or buffering substances in the secretion. In Fig 21 the steady state acidity levels are plotted against the corresponding rates of secretion ( $r$ ) obtained in every such experiment. The regression curves were

## CHAPTER 2

# The Relation between the Rate of Gastric Secretion and the Acidity during Steady State Conditions in the Intact Stomach of Man and Dog

The existence of a simple relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and acidity has been a matter of much discussion. HOLLANDER and GOWDILL (1931) found that when a single massive dose of histamine was given subcutaneously the acidity rose and remained at a constant level for a rather long time while at the same time the secretion rate reached a peak and then declined again. This seemed to contradict the existence of a simple relationship but GRAY, BUCHER and HARMAN (1940) who injected histamine subcutaneously every 10 minutes into dogs obtained a constant rate of gastric secretion and suggested there was a hyperbolic relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and the acidity.

A prerequisite for proving a fixed relationship seems to be a constant secretion rate.

ÖBRINK (1948) in Heidenhain pouch dogs and NORDGREN (1958) in man studied the rate of secretion and the acidity with continuous intravenous injection of histamine. ÖBRINK (1948) found that the following relation fitted well with the experimental data

$$H = \frac{C_0}{\frac{k}{v} + 1} \quad (2.1)$$

where  $H$  = the observed acidity (mN)

$C_0$  = the primary acidity (mN)

$v$  = the secretion rate (ml/min) and

$k$  = a permeability coefficient (ml/min)

Eq. 2.1 was deduced by TEORFLA (1947) from his 'diffusion theory' which thus found experimental support. In the diffusion theory he suggested that the diffusion of hydrogen ions and other electrolytes



through the mucosa (i.e. back diffusion of  $H^+$  from the stomach to the circulation) causes the changes in the concentrations of the electrolytes observed at different secretion rates

### The primary acidity

The primary acidity  $C_0$  (i.e. the acidity which the parietal cell is postulated to secrete) was studied through instillation of a buffer glycine into the stomach thus reducing backdiffusion of  $H^+$  from the stomach. In cats TEORELI (1946) calculated  $C_0$  to be 208 mN and in dogs LINDE, TEOPPEL and ÖBRINK (1947) calculated the  $C_0$  value to be 169 mN rising to 464 mN with diminishing rate of gastric secretion. Their highest analytical value was 354 mN. In man LIRE (1938) got a value of 143–145 mN and HALSER (1943) a maximum of 155 mN when determining  $C_0$  with glycine instillations. On account of difficulties in avoiding extragastric admixture and losses of glycine the results in man must be considered as somewhat uncertain.

The necessity of constant secretion rates when analysing the present relationship should be stressed. In non steady states time lags obscure the relations of ÖBRINK's lake hypothesis (1948).

The relationship has been thoroughly investigated only for gastric pouches and there is a dearth of information from intact stomachs. The purpose of this investigation was therefore to study the relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and the acidity in man and dog. Continuous intravenous injection of histamine was used to get steady state conditions necessary for quantitative analysis of the relationship.

## Results

### Dog experiments

In Fig. 1 a typical experiment is shown. When the rate of secretion is constant the acidity also becomes constant. The relatively small amounts of bound acid determined through titration with Topfer's reagent indicate that there are practically no weak acids or buffering substances in the secretion. In Fig. 2 the steady state acidity levels are plotted against the corresponding rates of secretion ( $r$ ) obtained in every such experiment. The regression curves were

## CHAPTER 2

# The Relation between the Rate of Gastric Secretion and the Acidity during Steady State Conditions in the Intact Stomach of Man and Dog

The existence of a simple relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and acidity has been a matter of much discussion. HOLLANDER and GOWALL (1931) found that when a single massive dose of histamine was given subcutaneously the acidity rose and remained at a constant level for a rather long time while at the same time the secretion rate reached a peak and then declined again. This seemed to contradict the existence of a simple relationship but GRAY, BUCHER and HARMAN (1940) who injected histamine subcutaneously every 10 minutes into dogs obtained a constant rate of gastric secretion and suggested there was a hyperbolic relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and the acidity.

A prerequisite for proving a fixed relationship seems to be a constant secretion rate.

ÖBRINK (1948) in Heidenham pouch dogs and NORDGREN (1958) in man studied the rate of secretion and the acidity with continuous intravenous injection of histamine. ÖBRINK (1948) found that the following relation fitted well with the experimental data

$$H = \frac{C_0}{\frac{v}{k} + 1} \quad (2.1)$$

where  $H$  = the observed acidity (mN)

$C_0$  = the primary acidity (mN)

$v$  = the secretion rate (ml/min) and

$k$  = a permeability coefficient (ml/min)

Eq. 2.1 was deduced by TEORELL (1947) from his diffusion theory which thus found experimental support. In the diffusion theory he suggested that the diffusion of hydrogen ions and other electrolytes

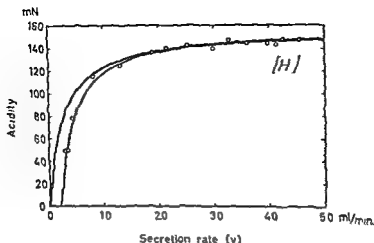


Fig 2.1 The relationship between rate of gastric secretion and acidity in man (Subject K. G. K.) Further see legend of Fig. 1

probably of less significance than that of extragastric admixture. An example of this is seen in Fig. 2.2 where of the two points with the lowest acidity one is obtained with and the other without injection of an antisecretory drug.

### Experiments in man

Fig. 1.3 illustrates a typical experiment. As in the dogs only a small amount of bound acid was present. In Fig. 2.2 the steady state values of the acidity from the same subject (K. G. K.) are plotted against the corresponding gastric secretion rates.

### Discussion

The quantitative relationship between rate of gastric secretion and acidity in man and dog with intact stomach was determined.

### Correlation to the theoretical relation used

In Figs. 2.1 and 2.2 it can be seen that the experimental points fit rather well with the regression curves. The left curve in the figures

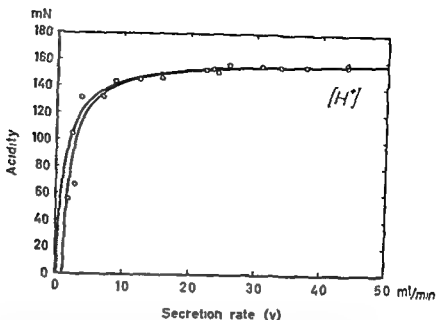


Fig 2 1 The relationship between rate of gastric secretion and acidity (titrated with bromthymolblue) during steady state conditions. The left curve in the figure was obtained from Eq 2 1 and the right curve from Eq 2 2 (Dog M)

obtained by using the method of the least squares on Eq 2 1 (the left curve) and on Eq 2 2 on the right curve respectively (see below)

#### *Reduction of extragastric admixture with drugs*

In both man and dog in experiments with low rates of gastric secretion extragastric admixture was sometimes a serious source of error and thus a steady gastric secretion rate could not always be obtained. In order to diminish the possibilities of extragastric admixture in the gastric secretion by the saliva bile and pancreatic juice the following inhibitory drugs were given in some experiments. Propanthelin (Probanthine® Searle) total dose 6.0–13.5 mg or Dixaon (Banthine® Searle) total dose 20.0–32.5 mg. They were given as single intravenous doses during the first part of the experiments.

These inhibitory drugs also to a certain extent inhibited the histamine stimulated gastric secretion so that a lower rate of gastric secretion was obtained compared to when the drugs were not administered. The relationship between acidity and secretion rate during steady state might possibly be somewhat disturbed in the same way as NORDFEN and ÖBRINK (1956) showed that atropine caused an increased acidity for a fixed secretion rate but such a disturbance was

TABLE 21 Data and calculated parameters of the acidity-crection rate relationship

Calculations with the method of (1) at least in three													
acid part	Number of experiments	$H-C \left(1 - \frac{1}{v}\right)$				$H - \frac{C}{v+1}$				C required at correction		[H] at $v = \bar{v}$	High end of the titration $mN$
		C mN	k ml/min	q	C mN	k ml/min	q	C mN	k ml/min				
AGK	15	153.4	0.2	9.0	138.0	0.15	11	15.5	0	139.5	0	149.0	
BT	18	154.3	0.21	7.9	137.5	0.4	11.7	154.0	0.30	135.0	0.30	145.0	
HC	10	140.8	0.19	9.3	133.1	0.43	7.6	150.0	0.33	130.0	0.33	139.0	
BN	1	153	0.4	17.0	130.3	0.38	0.5	140.0	0.31	114.0	0.31	119.0	
CL	11	138.0	0.3	9	153.4	0.5	5.4	148.0	0.34	117.0	0.34	117.0	
Dog L	8	10.1	0.5	1.4	161.0	0.6	9.0	166.0	0.34	140.0	0.34	160.0	
Dog W	17	100.0	0.11	3.3	16	0.14	5.9	161.5	0.15	154.0	0.15	161.0	

Calculations in this part of table are based on the above

was obtained when using the method of the least squares on Eq 2.1. Eq 2.1 postulates the complete and immediate mixing of the acid secreted. With this condition TEORELL (1947) regarded the concentration gradient between the gastric acid secreted and the blood as  $[H^+] = 0$ . If however mixing is incomplete the concentration gradient will be maximally  $C_0 = 0$  instead of  $[H^+] = 0$ . ÖBRINK (1948) treated this case and derived the equation

$$H = C_0 \left(1 - \frac{l}{t}\right) \quad (2.2)$$

The symbols are the same as in Eq 2.1.

As can be seen from Figs 2.1 and 2.2, Eq 2.2 seems to fit slightly better than Eq 2.1 indicating the existence of some degree of incomplete mixing of the acid secreted.

In Table 2.1 the primary acidity ( $C_0$ ) and the permeability coefficient ( $l$ ) were determined for the whole material using both Eqs 2.1 and 2.2. The sum of the least squares was used to indicate which equation fitted best.

### Graphical determination of the primary acidity and the permeability coefficient

For the graphical determination of  $C_0$  and  $l$  which is a quicker procedure the product  $tH$  (i.e. the acid output per minute) was plotted against  $t$  (Fig 2.3) cf. ÖBRINK (1948) and HERZ and ÖBRINK (1954). The dotted curve in Fig 2.3 was derived from Eq 2.1 and can be written

$$tH = tC_0 - lH \quad (2.3)$$

(with the same symbols as in Eq 2.1)

Similarly Eq 2.2 gives (both sides multiplied by  $t$  and rearranged)

$$tH = tC_0 - lC_0 \quad (2.4)$$

This is the straight line of Fig 2.3 ( $C_0$  and  $l$  are assumed to be constants).

For high values of  $t$  Eq 2.3 and Eq 2.4 will be almost identical because

$$lH \approx lC_0 \quad (2.5)$$

when  $t \rightarrow \infty$

TABLE 2.1 Data and calculated parameters of the acidity-secretion rate relationship

Calculated with the method of the least squares												
Subject	Number of experiments	$H-C \left( \frac{k}{v} \right)$					$H-C \left( \frac{k}{v+1} \right)$					If $\lambda$ is measured at the titration mN
		$C$ mN	$k$ ml/min	$q$	$C$ mN	$k$ ml/min	$q$	Graphic calculated		If $\lambda$ is mN		
								$C$ mN	$k$ ml/min			
K. G. H.	15	152.4	0.0	0.0	159.0	0.26	11.7	15.5	0	130.5	140.0	
M. I.	16	154.3	0.11	7.0	177.5	0.4	11.7	14.0	0.30	138.0	145.0	
H. C.	10	140.8	0.10	9.0	153.1	0.43	7.4	180.0	0.33	130.0	130.0	
H. N.	17	110.3	0.4	17.0	120.3	0.38	0.5	140.0	0.51	114.0	110.0	
G. L.	13	138.0	0.3	9	153.4	0.57	4.4	148.0	0.34	117.0	117.0	
D. H. Y.	8	161.1	0.5	21.4	161.0	0.8	4.0	166.0	0.34	140.0	160.0	
D. H. N.	17	160.0	0.11	3.5	161	0.14	5.9	161.6	0.13	154.0	161.0	

was obtained when using the method of the least squares on Eq 2.1. Eq 2.1 postulates the complete and immediate mixing of the acid secreted. With this condition TEORELL (1947) regarded the concentration gradient between the gastric acid secreted and the blood as  $[H^+] = 0$ . If, however, mixing is incomplete the concentration gradient will be maximally  $C_0 = 0$  instead of  $[H^+] = 0$ . ÖBRINK (1948) treated this case and derived the equation

$$H = C_0 \left(1 - \frac{k}{v}\right) \quad (2.2)$$

The symbols are the same as in Eq 2.1.

As can be seen from Figs 2.1 and 2.2, Eq 2.2 seems to fit slightly better than Eq 2.1, indicating the existence of some degree of incomplete mixing of the acid secreted.

In Table 2.1 the primary acidity ( $C_0$ ) and the permeability coefficient ( $k$ ) were determined for the whole material using both Eqs 2.1 and 2.2. The sum of the least squares was used to indicate which equation fitted best.

### Graphical determination of the primary acidity and the permeability coefficient

For the graphical determination of  $C_0$  and  $k$  which is a quicker procedure, the product  $vH$  (i.e. the acid output per minute) was plotted against  $v$  (Fig 2.3) of ÖBRINK (1948) and HEINZ and ÖBRINK (1954). The dotted curve in Fig 2.3 was derived from Eq 2.1 and can be written

$$vH = vC_0 - kH \quad (2.3)$$

(with the same symbols as in Eq 2.1).

Similarly, Eq 2.2 gives (both sides multiplied by  $v$  and rearranged)

$$vH = vC_0 - kC_0 \quad (2.4)$$

This is the straight line of Fig 2.3 ( $C_0$  and  $k$  are assumed to be constants).

For high values of  $v$ , Eq 2.3 and Eq 2.4 will be almost identical because

$$kH = kC_0 \quad (2.5)$$

when  $v \rightarrow \infty$



TABLE 2 II The primary acidity  $C_0$  and the permeability coefficient  $k$  calculated from the approximation test proposed The meaning of Range  $v$  and Range  $rH$  is described in the text

Subject	$C_0$ m\	$k$ ml/min	Range $v$	Range $rH$
A G K	15	0.01	189-46	256-630
	154	0.05		
	157	0.05		
	157	0.07		
B I	154	0.31	150-368	181-512
	151	0.4		
	153	0.30		
	149	0.03		
H C	185	0.41	107-050	150-330
	149	0.30		
	160	0.44		
	18	0.3		
R \	135	0.53	170-49	206-314
	16	0.33		
	150	0.6		
	139	0.43		
G L	163	0.47	109-10	98-8
	156	0.39		
	150	0.40		
	143	0.33		
Dog L	13	0.39	19-340	84-494
	164	0.18		
	148	0.15		
	123	-0.23		
	16	0.9		
	146	0.0		
Dog M	163	0.16	155-43	-633
	167	0.13		
	160	0.13		
	14	0.10		

and maximum distances (range) between the pairs of points on the  $x$  axis ( $v$ ) and the  $y$  axis ( $rH$ ). With few exceptions the values in Table 2 II agree rather well with the corresponding values in Table 2 I

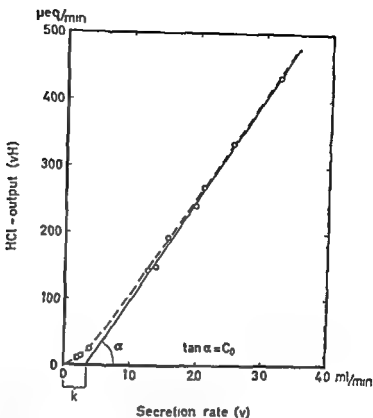


Fig 23 Rate of gastric secretion plotted against acid output per unit time. The dotted curve represents Eq 23 and the continuous line Eq 24.  $\tan \alpha$  in the figure then equals  $C_0$  and the  $x$  axis intercept of the Eq 24 is equal to the permeability coefficient  $k$  (Subject II C)

When applying this graphical method the experimental data always lay along a straight line if the  $v$  values were above 1 ml/min. It would seem valid to regard the straight part of Eq 23 in Fig 23 as an approximation to Eq 24. The slope from the straight line would represent  $C_0$  and the intercept of the line on the  $v$  axis would be  $k$ . Table 2 I shows  $C_0$  and  $k$  calculated graphically in this way.

#### Use of an "approximation" test for determination of $C_0$ and $k$

In order to determine whether it is possible to evaluate  $C_0$  and  $k$  approximately from only two experimental points, pairs of points one in the highest secretion range and the other at a secretion rate just above 1 ml/min were used (Table 2 II). This table gives the minimum

TABLE 2 II *The primary acidity  $C_p$  and the permeability coefficient  $k$  calculated from the approximation test proposed. The meaning of Range  $v$  and Range  $vH$  is described in the text*

Subject	$C_p$ mN	$k$ ml/min	Range $v$	Range $vH$
A G A	153	0.1	189-4.6	256-630
	154	0.25		
	157	0.25		
	157	0.7		
D I	154	0.31	150-3.68	181-512
	151	0.4		
	153	0.30		
	149	0.2		
H C	165	0.41	127-2.52	140-330
	149	0.30		
	160	0.44		
	15	0.3		
R N	135	0.53	17-2.49	206-314
	118	0.38		
	150	0.62		
	139	0.43		
G L	163	0.47	103-2.14	98-58
	156	0.39		
	150	0.4		
	143	0.33		
Dog L	173	0.39	19-3.40	284-434
	164	0.18		
	148	0.15		
	133	-0.3		
	16	0.29		
	146	0.02		
Dog M	163	0.16	153-4.37	221-683
	163	0.17		
	160	0.13		
	158	0.10		

and maximum distances (range) between the pairs of points on the  $x$  axis ( $v$ ) and the  $y$  axis ( $vH$ ). With few exceptions the values in Table 2 II agree rather well with the corresponding values in Table 2 I.

## The primary acidity

From Table 2 I it can be seen that in man the primary acidity  $C_0$  is lower than in dogs. Before accepting this as true all possibilities that it is an artifact resulting from the experimental or other conditions must be ruled out.

The parietal cells are assumed to be the acid secreting cells. They are found over the greater part of the body of the intact stomach but the pyloric part (here estimated to contain maximally 20% of the total surface) lacks them (BFRGER, 1934; COX JR, 1952) and has no acid secretion. This means that in the body of the stomach both secretion and back diffusion of  $H^+$  ions take place while in the pyloric part only back diffusion is possible. With incomplete intragastric mixing the amount of acid stored in the pyloric part and the time for this storage would be important. In the dog experiments the acid gastric contents were emptied continuously while in man the gastric juice remained in the stomach for some minutes.

TEORELL (1939) instilled HCl into the resting stomach of cats and measured the rate at which  $H^+$  ions disappeared. As there was no acid being secreted into the stomach the relationship

$$H = H_0 e^{-kt/p} \quad (2.6)$$

described the results well which fits the concept of diffusion with a concentration gradient  $[H^+] = 0$  between gastric juice and blood.

$H$  = the concentration at time  $t$

$H_0$  = initial concentration at the beginning ( $t = 0$ ) of the instillation

$k$  = the permeability coefficient (ml/min)

$p$  = the volume instilled (ml) and

$t$  = time (min)

The juice secreted into the human stomach remains there until the next emptying. During this time it should be expected that in the pyloric part the acidity will be reduced as according to Eq. 2.6. The final acidity after such an instillation can be estimated as follows. At the highest secretion rates the acidity will be approximately  $C_0$ . Applying Eq. 2.6  $H_0$  should thus be equal to  $C_0$ . In this discussion we assume both dog and man to have the same value of  $C_0$  (162 mN).

The stomach was emptied at intervals not longer than about ten

minutes and it is assumed that the juice collected was secreted continuously during this period. This makes it possible to estimate roughly the values of  $p$  and  $t$  in the following way.

The volume secreted during the first minute has on an average remained in the stomach for  $9\frac{1}{2}$  minutes while the volume secreted during the tenth minute has remained for a half minute. The whole volume secreted during 10 minutes can be considered to have been instilled during approximately 11 minutes. This whole volume constitutes the  $p$  and will here be  $10 a_1$  ml (cf. Eq. 1.2). The permeability coefficient  $k$  was shown in cats (KALISER, 1943) not to differ significantly between the equally divided upper and lower parts of the stomach. 20% of the surface of the stomach mucosa (the pyloric part) gives  $k/5$ . The mean  $k$  values from Eq. 2.1 and Eq. 2.2 were determined for each man (see Table 2.1).

The values for  $H_0$  ( $C_0$  mN),  $p$  ( $10 a_1$  ml),  $t$  (5 min) and  $k$  can now be inserted in Eq. 2.6.

The resulting  $[H^+]$  values were 159.4–160.9 mN, showing only a very small reduction of the acidity.

Thus the lower  $C_0$  values in man (Table 2.1) (compared with  $C_0$  in the dogs) are not explained by instillation in the pyloric part. As at least some of the gastric secretion in the dog experiments must be expected to flow over the pyloric part (where back diffusion should also take place) these calculated instillations in man would scarcely give even these theoretical differences due to the experimental conditions. Consequently the  $C_0$ -differences between man and dog have to be taken for the present as experimental realities.

### Comparison of $k$ values for secretion and instillation experiments

As the role of the back diffusion of  $H^+$  ions from an acid secreting stomach back to the circulation has been a matter of much discussion a series of experiments with intragastric instillation of HCl were made to determine if the back diffusion (expressed by the permeability coefficient  $k$ ) could account for the decrease in the acidity after the instillation. In one subject (B. I.) instillations of about 30–40 ml of HCl (1.4–1.19 mN) were made. In each case the stomach was emptied as completely as possible ten minutes after the introduction of the

acid To check that there was no fluid loss into the duodenum phenol red (estimated by the absorbance at the isobestic point 465 m $\mu$ ) was added to the instilled solution PENNER HOLLANDER and SALTZMAN (1938) HOLLANDER and PENNER (1940) PENNER HOLLANDER and POST (1940) and ÖBRINK (1948) have used phenolred for this purpose

The calculation of  $\lambda$  from Eq. 2.6 in man is however complicated by the basal secretion which is always present In a resting stomach the acidity of instilled HCl always approaches zero where as in a secreting stomach the final acidity will be determined by the secretion rate ÖBRINK (1963) calculated the time course of the acidity in such an instillation experiment as

$$H = \frac{C_0}{1 + \frac{\lambda}{v}} \left( 1 - \frac{1 - \frac{H_0}{C_0} \left( 1 + \frac{\lambda}{v} \right)}{\left( 1 + \frac{vt}{p} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{\lambda}{v} \right)} \right) \quad (2.8)$$

As the values of  $C_0$  and  $v$  (basal secretion) were known  $\lambda$  could be solved from Eq. 2.8 Most experiments had to be excluded because of extragastric dilution and loss of acid into the duodenum but from five experiments a mean value of  $\lambda = 0.43$  was obtained

The mean  $\lambda$  value obtained from secretion experiments without instillation of acid was 0.36 (from both Eqs. 2.1 and 2.2) Both values are certainly liable to errors due to experimental uncertainties They are however of the same order which seems to support the view that the acidity decrease can be explained on a basis of back diffusion

### Introduction of glycine to determine $C_0$

To estimate the primary acidity ( $C_0$ ) at secretion rates other than the maximal ones a glycine buffer (0.25–0.33 N) was used as according to TEORELL (1940) Glycine results in an increase in the pH of the gastric contents and thus in a smaller concentration gradient which should reduce the back diffusion possibly to an insignificant level As mentioned above indirect estimates of  $C_0$  in intact stomachs must be considered a little uncertain since it is not possible to tie off the cardia and pylorus Uranine was injected intravenously before the instillations (see page 15) to detect whether duodenal regurgitation occurred With this precaution 30–50 ml of glycine was instilled into the stomach of one of the dogs (L) during histamine induced steady

gastric secretion. The  $H^+$  ion concentration gradient was calculated to be diminished about 60-120 times by the glycine. The gastric contents were removed about ten minutes after instillation. The volume increment was calculated directly both from the difference between volume removed and volume instilled and also by determination of the final glycine concentration after a formal titration according to SORGVSEV (1908). The latter procedure also gives a check of the total recovery of the glycine (cf. LUND, TEORELL and ÖBERG 1917). Most experiments were spoiled by extragastric dilution and losses of glycine.  $C_0$  could be calculated from four experiments and a mean value of 163 mN was obtained. This value agreed rather well with the mean value of 161.6 from the secretion experiments in the same dog (calculated from the Eqs. 2.1 and 2.2). On account of the experimental difficulties the instillation experiments were considered not suitable for human subjects.

### Comments

The rather good fit of both Eq. 2.1 and Eq. 2.2 with the experimental data justifies the calculation of  $C_0$  by either of these equations. In Table 2.1 it can be seen that the sum of the least squares  $\sum d^2$  is numerically smaller when using Eq. 2.2 than with Eq. 2.1 (except for H.C.). This should mean that the values of  $C_0$  and  $k$  obtained from Eq. 2.2 should be more representative. All dogs gave higher values than the highest  $C_0$  of the human subjects (Table 2.1).

This demonstrates that the primary acidity in man is lower than in the dog. There seemed to be a tendency for the human primary acidity to be higher with increasing age, but the material is rather too small for the significance of this to be assessed.

The secondary acidity  $[H^+]$  in Eq. 2.1 and Eq. 2.2 according to the diffusion theory is dependent on the magnitude of the permeability coefficient  $k$ . This means for any given value of the primary acidity the  $k$  value and secondary acidity vary inversely. In Table 2.1 the highest acidity measured in any experiment for each human subject and dog is given. The lowest of the highest  $[H^+]$  values measured in the dogs was 12 mN greater than the highest value in the human subjects.

If the  $k$  values were found to be of a similar magnitude it should be valid to compare the acidity for any particular secretion rate  $v$ .

(for instance  $v=2.5$  ml/min) between man and dog. In Table 2 I it is shown that this comparison indicates a higher acidity in the dog.

The highest acidity values reported in man are in mN: 140 FRYENBORG (1944), 140 HANSON, GROSSMAN and IVY (1948), 140 NORDGREN (1958), 150 KALJSER (1943), 150 HIRSCHOWITZ (1961), 152.8 LITTE (1938) and 154 WELTY and FRISK (1936).

In dogs the highest acidity values observed are 155 HANSON, GROSSMAN and IVY (1948), 158 MARKS, KOMAROV and SHAY (1958), 160 THULL and REHM (1956), 160 MARKS, KOMAROV and SHAY (1960) and 161 ÖBRINK (1948). For comparison acidities of 167 GUDIKSEN (1950) and about 170 LINDE (1950) have been found in cats. It thus seems

- (1) *That the primary acidity in man is lower than in dog and*
- (2) *That the acidity regulation is qualitatively the same for both man and dog and the 'diffusion theory' fits in with the relationship observed between acidity and secretion rate*

The observation that man and dog have different primary acidities is important because it follows that man and dog should have a different ion composition of the 'primary juice' and this will be discussed in a later part of this investigation.

### The permeability coefficient, $\lambda$

As the sum of the least squares ( $\sum d^2$  see Table 2 I) is smaller when using Eq. 2.2 than Eq. 2.1 (except for subject H. C.) the  $\lambda$  values (like the  $C_0$  values) calculated from Eq. 2.2 can be considered more representative. NORDGREN (1958) in man claimed to have found a relationship between the permeability coefficient  $\lambda$  and the maximal secretion rate although the correlation was not very high. In this material when  $\lambda$  was plotted against the maximal secretion rate  $a_1$  (see previous chapter) no certain correlation was found but this may be due however to the rather small number of subjects who were studied.

It is evident that at submaximal gastric secretion rates a low  $\lambda$  value will yield a higher acidity (i.e. the secondary acidity) than will a high  $\lambda$  value (the primary acidity is assumed to be invariant). A



subject with a low  $k$  value thus could be said to have a *hyperacidity* while a subject with a high  $k$  value would be *hypoacid*

If only the acid output is measured the terms hypersecretion (see previous chapter) and hyperacidity are more difficult to interpret. Hyper- and hypoacidity are thus defined in terms of the acidity at a certain secretion rate. It can be estimated from the  $k$  value (see Eq. 2.1 and Eq. 2.2)

(for instance  $v=2.5$  ml/min) between man and dog. In Table 2 I it is shown that this comparison indicates a higher acidity in the dog.

The highest acidity values reported in man are in mM: 140 FIENSBORG (1944), 140 HANSON, GROSSMAN and IVY (1948), 149 NORDGREN (1958), 150 KALJSER (1943), 150 HIRSCHOWITZ (1961), 152.8 IHRE (1938) and 154 WELIN and FRISK (1936).

In dogs the highest acidity values observed are 155 HANSON, GROSSMAN and IVY (1948), 158 MARKS, KOMAROV and SHAY (1958), 160 THULL and REHM (1956), 160 MARKS, KOMAROV and SHAY (1960) and 161 ÖBRINK (1948). For comparison acidities of 167 GUDIKSEN (1950) and about 170 LINDE (1950) have been found in cats. It thus seems

- (1) *That the primary acidity in man is lower than in dog and*
- (2) *That the acidity regulation is qualitatively the same for both man and dog and the diffusion theory fits in with the relationship observed between acidity and secretion rate*

The observation that man and dog have different primary acidities is important because it follows that man and dog should have a different ion composition of the primary juice and this will be discussed in a later part of this investigation.

### The permeability coefficient, $k$

As the sum of the least squares ( $\sum d^2$  see Table 2 I) is smaller when using Eq. 2.2 than Eq. 2.1 (except for subject H.C.) the  $k$  values (like the  $C_0$  values) calculated from Eq. 2.2 can be considered more representative. NORDGREN (1958) in man claimed to have found a relationship between the permeability coefficient  $k$  and the maximal secretion rate although the correlation was not very high. In this material when  $k$  was plotted against the maximal secretion rate  $a_1$  (see previous chapter) no certain correlation was found but this may be due however to the rather small number of subjects who were studied.

It is evident that at submaximal gastric secretion rates a low  $k$  value will yield a higher acidity (i.e. the secondary acidity) than will a high  $k$  value (the primary acidity is assumed to be invariant). A

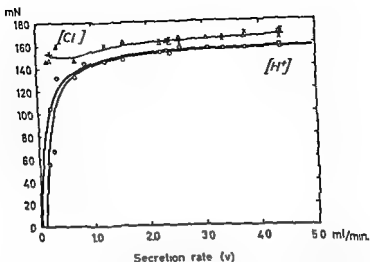


Fig 3.1 The variation of  $[Cl^-]$  in gastric secretion at different steady rates (Dog M). The steady curves are the same as in Fig 2.1.  $[Cl^-]$  is represented by unfilled triangles. The crosses represent the sum of  $[H^+]$ ,  $[K^+]$  and  $[Na^+]$ . The chloride curve was drawn by eye.

Although the chloride concentration and output thus have been correlated with secretion rate in pouch dogs, the situation in the intact stomach of dogs and man has not been investigated extensively and it was considered of interest to study further this problem.

## Results

Figs 1.1 and 1.3 show the variations of the chloride concentration in typical experiments. The steady state values of  $[Cl^-]$  and  $[H^+]$  were plotted against the corresponding secretion rates in Fig 3.1 (dog M) and Fig 3.2 (subject K.G.H.). It can be seen that  $[Cl^-]$  (open triangles) approximately equals the sum of  $[K^+] + [Na^+] + [H^+]$  (crosses). No attempt was made to fit a regression equation to the chloride values since they appear to represent the sum of all the cations.

The net output of  $Cl^-$  ( $vCl^-$ ) is therefore also a measure of the net output of the cations. In Fig 3.3  $Cl^-$  output is plotted against the secretion rate. As can be seen (Fig 3.3) this is apparently a straight line except for the lowest  $v$  values.

## CHAPTER 3

### The Relation between the Chloride Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion

Chloride is the predominant anion and is a satisfactory index of the sum of cations in the gastric secretion

The concentration of the hydrogen ion is always less than that of chloride the excess of which is often referred to as neutral chloride

The chloride concentrations (both total and neutral) have been related to other parameters of the gastric secretion (e.g. the acidity and the secretion rate) Rectilinear relationships have been claimed between

(1) total chlorides and acidity in pouch dogs HOLLANDER (1932) GRAY BUCHER and HARMAN (1941)

(2) neutral chlorides and acidity HOLLANDER (1932) GRAY BUCHER and HARMAN (1941) in dogs and FISHER and HUNT (1950) in man using IHRE's data (1938) Through extrapolation to  $[H^+] = 0$  the neutral chlorides were calculated as 130–140 mN IHRE (1938) in man however taking in account back diffusion concluded that there was a curvilinear relation between total chlorides and acidity

TEORELL (1933 1939 1947) found that for chloride the results of model experiments and instillation experiments on cats were in agreement with the predictions of his diffusion theory i.e. the relationship between total chloride and acidity was curvilinear He also confirmed the existence of the predicted temporary dip in the chloride concentration in instillation experiments GRAY BUCHER and HARMAN (1941) concluded there was a hyperbolic relation between secretion rate and total chloride concentration They however had no analytical data at the very low secretion rates under which conditions in pouch dogs ÖBRINK (1948) and LYNDE and ÖBRINK (1950) did not find any great  $[Cl^-]$  decrease and concluded that these results supported the diffusion theory A rectilinear correlation between the chloride output and the secretion rate was found by GRAY BUCHER and HARMAN (1941)

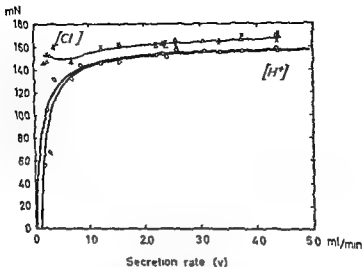


Fig. 3.1 The variation of  $[Cl^-]$  in gastric secretion at different steady rates (Dog M). The acidity curves are the same as in Fig. 2.1.  $[Cl^-]$  is represented by unfilled triangles. The crosses represent the sum of  $[H^+]$ ,  $[K^+]$  and  $[Na^+]$ . The chloride curve was drawn by eye.

Although the chloride concentration and output thus have been correlated with secretion rate in pouch dogs the situation in the intact stomach of dogs and man has not been investigated extensively and it was considered of interest to study further this problem.

## Results

Figs. 1.1 and 1.3 show the variations of the chloride concentration in typical experiments. The steady state values of  $[Cl^-]$  and  $[H^+]$  were plotted against the corresponding secretion rates in Fig. 3.1 (dog M) and Fig. 3.2 (subject K.G.H.). It can be seen that  $[Cl^-]$  (open triangles) approximately equals the sum of  $[H^+] + [Na^+] + [K^+]$  (crosses). No attempt was made to fit a regression equation to the chloride values since they appear to represent the sum of all the cations.

The net output of  $Cl^-$  ( $\epsilon Cl$ ) is therefore also a measure of the net output of the cations. In Fig. 3.3  $Cl^-$  output is plotted against the secretion rate  $r$ . As can be seen (Fig. 3.3) this is apparently a straight line except for the lowest  $r$  values.

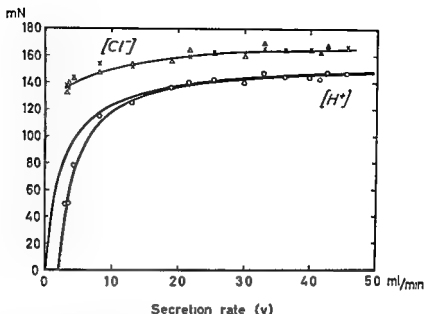


Fig 3.2 The relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and  $[Cl^-]$  in man (Subject K, G, K). The acidity curves are the same as in Fig 2.2. The notations are the same as in Fig 3.1.

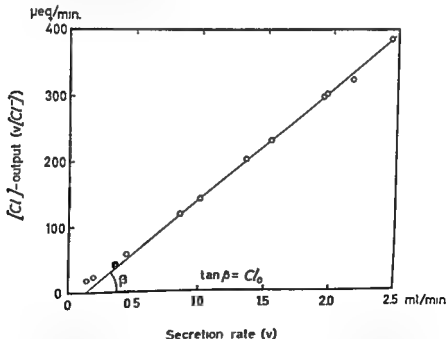


Fig 3.3 Rate of gastric secretion plotted against output of total chlorides  $v[Cl^-]$  per unit time. The continuous line was drawn by eye through the experimental points. The slope of the continuous line  $\tan \beta$  should equal  $Cl_0$ , i.e. the chloride concentration in the primary secretion (see text) (Subject G, I).

## Discussion

The values of the total chloride concentration in secretion experiments have been found to range between about 140 and 170 (mN) in man (IHRE 1938) and in pouch dogs about 140-170 (mN) (ÖBRINK 1948)

The maximal chloride concentration in man was found to reach a level of about 170-180 (mN) (HIRSCHOWITZ 1961) The equilibrium  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration as found by instillation experiments at quasi zero secretion rates tends to the values of about 140-160 (mN) TEORELL (1933) or 140 (mN) KALJSER (1943) in cats and in man about 120-135 (mN) IHRE (1938) or 120 (mN) KALJSER (1943) In the present instillation experiments  $[\text{Cl}^-]$  values of about 140 (mN) were obtained Difficulties in excluding extragastric admixture in man may explain the variations found In the present secretion experiments the range for the chloride concentration was in man 119-167 (mN) and in dog 154-176 (mN) Both in this material and in the work cited above there was no significant difference for the upper limit of the total chloride concentration between man and dog

In order to calculate the primary chloride concentration  $\text{Cl}_p$  i.e. the concentration as the juice emerges from the secretory cell the output of the  $\text{Cl}^-$  per minute ( $v_{\text{Cl}}$ ) was plotted against the secretion rate  $v$  Fig 33 As can be seen there is a linear relationship except at the lowest  $v$  values which means that the  $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration tends to change very little except at very low secretion rates HIRSCHOWITZ (1960) also found linearity between  $\text{Cl}^-$  output and the gastric osmolar clearance (=the secretion rate times the quotient osmotic pressure of gastric juice/plasma) The straight part of the curve may be considered as an asymptote and its slope would then be a measure of  $\text{Cl}_p$  which has been calculated in Table 3 I There was no obvious difference between man and dog (Table 3 I)

### Comparison of $[\text{Cl}^-]$ in the primary secretion of man and dog

A comparison between the  $\text{Cl}_p$  values and the earlier calculated mean values of the primary acidity  $C_p$  from Eq 21 and Eq 22 (see chapter 2) should give information about the amount of neutral

TABLE 3 I *Data of the calculation of the total [Cl<sup>-</sup>] and the neutral [Cl<sup>-</sup>] in the primary secretion*

Subject	Number of Experiments	Cl <sub>0</sub> mN	C <sub>0</sub> (mean from Eqs 2.1 and 2.2)	Cl <sub>0</sub> -C <sub>0</sub> (mean) mN	
K G H	15	183	155.7	27.3	
B I	18	175	155.9	19.1	
H C	10	166	147.0	19.0	
R N	12	158	128.3	29.7	
G L	13	165	145.7	19.3	M = 27.9
Dog L	8	165	161.6	3.4	
Dog M	17	168	161.6	6.4	M = 4.9

chlorides present in the primary secretion. There seems to be a striking difference between man and dog in this respect: a value of about 20-25 mN was calculated for man and about 5 mN for the dog. It thus appears that man has a lower acidity but a higher neutral chloride concentration in the 'primary secretion' compared with the dog.



## CHAPTER 4

# The Relation between the Sodium Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion

At higher rates of gastric secretion the sodium concentration is lower in contrast to the acidity which is higher. HOLLANDER (1952) showed in pouch dogs an inverse rectilinear relationship between  $[Na^+]$  and  $[H^+]$ . In man RIDDELL, STRONG and CAMERON (1960) and HIRSCHOWITZ (1961) found that a curvilinear equation fitted their data better. GRAY and BUCHER (1941) in pouch dogs concluded that the  $[Na^+]$  was a hyperbolic function of the secretion rate. From his diffusion hypothesis TEORELL (1947) derived the relation

$$Na = \frac{S_0}{\frac{r}{r} + 1} \quad (4.1)$$

where  $Na$  = the sodium concentration observed (mN)  
 $r$  = the rate of gastric secretion (ml/min) (in Teorell's notation  $q$ )  
 $S_0$  = the sodium concentration (mN) when  $t = 0$  and  
 $r$  = the permeability coefficient for  $Na^+$  (ml/min)

In model experiments he found that Eq. 4.1 fitted the experimental data rather well.

LINDE and ÖSTRÖM (1950) in pouch dogs found Eq. 4.1 fitted their results in secretion experiments. The purpose of this study was to relate  $[Na^+]$  with the secretion rate in intact stomachs of man and dogs.

## Results

The relationship between sodium concentration and acidity and secretion rate during steady state conditions with continuous histamine stimulation is illustrated in the dog in Fig. 1.1 and man in Fig. 1.3. The different steady state values of  $[Na^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  from each single experiment are plotted against the corresponding rates of gas

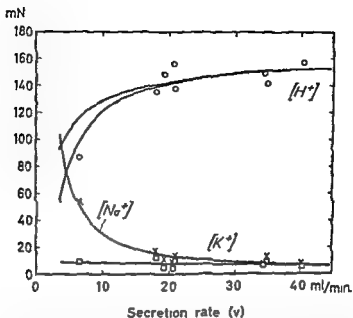


Fig 4.1 The relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and  $[Na^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  during steady state conditions. The extrapolation to  $v=0$  was considered uncertain because of the few experimental values at low rates of secretion. The regression curve for  $[Na^+]$  (marked with crosses) was obtained from Eq 4.1. The  $[H^+]$  secretion rate relationship (unfilled squares) is represented by a straight line (Dog L).

tric secretion in the same subject Fig 4.1 (dog L) and Fig 4.2 (man G L). The inverse relation between  $[Na^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  is obvious.

The scattering of the results is bigger at lower than at higher secretion rates (Fig 4.2). This may be due to the difficulties in controlling extragastric admixture.

The regression curve for  $[Na^+]$  was obtained by using the method of least squares with Eq 4.1.

#### Estimation of the parameters in Eq 4.1

The form of the relationship in Eq 4.1 is of such a kind that a direct regression analysis on the basis of least squares principle will involve certain difficulties. If instead the logarithms of both sides are taken a linear relationship is obtained between the variables  $\log Na$  and  $\log (v+r)$ .

$$\log Na = \log rS_0 - \log (v+r) \quad (4.2)$$

The estimation of the parameters can be performed in the following steps on the basis of the above equation.

- (1) Let the parameter  $r$  have a plausible *a priori* value.
- (2) Estimate  $\log rS_0$  according to the L.S. principle.
- (3) Calculate the sum of the squared residuals.

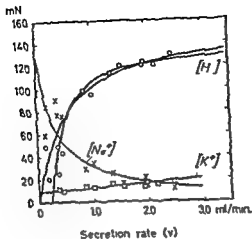


Fig 4.2 The same relations as in Fig 4.1 (Subject H L)

(4) If the above steps have been made for several values of  $r$  it is possible to plot the sum of the squared residuals against the  $r$  values and thus find graphically that value of  $r$  which makes the sum of the squared residuals a minimum

The regression curves for the acidity were derived from Eq 2.1 (the curve passing through the origin) and Eq 2.2

The curves obtained from man and gastric fistula dogs were in general similar

### Discussion

Eq 4.1 is a hyperbolic function with an asymptote ( $r = -1$ ) parallel with the  $y$  axis. A small error in  $r$  means a small displacement of the asymptote along the  $x$  axis which would result in a rather large error in the value of  $S_0$ . When applying the method of least squares it is sometimes possible to get negative  $S_0$  values. This is especially likely to occur in subjects with sparse data from experiments with low secretion rates (Table 4.1). A trial was made therefore to estimate  $S_0$  in another way.  $\log [Na^+]$  was plotted against  $v$  for the whole material and extrapolated to  $r=0$  (Table 4.1). In those cases where  $S_0$  could be calculated from the hyperbolic Eq 4.1 a check on the validity of this second procedure was obtained. The agreement was acceptable.

In the acidity secretion rate relation the acidity curve appeared to

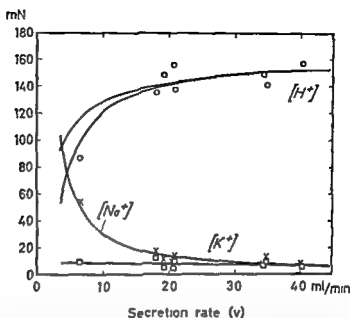


Fig 4.1 The relationship between the rate of gastric secretion and  $[Na^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  during steady state conditions. The extrapolation to  $v = 0$  was considered uncertain because of the few experimental values at low rates of secretion. The regression curve for  $[Na^+]$  (marked with crosses) was obtained from Eq 4.1. The  $[K^+]$  secretion rate relationship (unfilled squares) is represented by a straight line (Dog L).

tric secretion in the same subject Fig 4.1 (dog L) and Fig 4.2 (man G L). The inverse relation between  $[Na^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  is obvious.

The scattering of the results is bigger at lower than at higher secretion rates (Fig 4.2). This may be due to the difficulties in controlling extragastric admixture.

The regression curve for  $[Na^+]$  was obtained by using the method of least squares with Eq 4.1.

#### Estimation of the parameters in Eq 4.1

The form of the relationship in Eq 4.1 is of such a kind that a direct regression analysis on the basis of least squares principle will involve certain difficulties. If instead the logarithms of both sides are taken a linear relationship is obtained between the variables  $\log Na$  and  $\log (v + r)$ .

$$\log Na = \log rS_0 - \log (v + r) \quad (4.2)$$

The estimation of the parameters can be performed in the following steps on the basis of the above equation.

- (1) Let the parameter  $r$  have a plausible *a priori* value.
- (2) Estimate  $\log rS_0$  according to the L.S. principle.
- (3) Calculate the sum of the squared residuals.

## CHAPTER 5

# The Relation between the Potassium Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion

Gastric secretion always contains alkali ions and at low secretion rates sodium predominates. At higher secretion rates sodium diminishes progressively being largely replaced by  $H^+$  ions and the greater part of the alkali ions then consist of potassium. If it is assumed that the primary secretion does not contain any  $Na^+$  the increase in  $[Na^+]$  with decreasing secretion rate can be explained entirely by diffusion of  $Na^+$  through the stomach wall. As potassium however does not decrease (but instead at least in man increases) with increasing secretion rate the relation between secretion rate and potassium similarly cannot be explained in the same way as for sodium. It seems likely that potassium also is secreted in the primary secretion (cf. LINDE and ÖBRINK 1950) in contrast to sodium.

## The relations between $[K^+]$ and $[H^+]$ and between $[K^+]$ and secretion rate

Correlations between the potassium concentration and the acidity or the rate of gastric secretion have been claimed by several authors and these relationships have been a matter of much discussion. After a single subcutaneous injection of histamine SAEMUNDSSON (1948), WENTHER PARKER and HOLLANDER (1960) in man and HOLLANDER (1955) and HOLLANDER and COLCHER (1960) in pouch dogs (the last named also gave repeated subcutaneous injections of histamine) did not find any constant relationship between  $[K^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  or  $[K^+]$  and secretion rate. On the other hand a definite correlation between  $[K^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  was found in human subjects who had received a single subcutaneous injection of histamine (RIDDELL, STROMO and CAMERON 1960) and in cats after continuous intravenous injection of histamine (BLAIR HARPER HARRIS REED and WILKINSON 1960) and BLAIR HARPER and YAGNY (1961). Further RIDDELL, STROMO and CAMERON

TABLE 4 I *Calculated data from the relationship between rate of gastric secretion and  $[\Delta\alpha^+]$* 

Subject	Number of experiments	$r$ ml/min	$S_0$ mN	$S_0$ graphically mN
K G K	15	-0.1	-166.5	100
B I	18	-0.4	-39.8	135
H C	10	0.4	113.5	96
R N	12	1.1	84.9	85
G L	13	0.3	131.9	135
Dog L	8	-0.1	-267.5	87
Dog M	17	-0.1	$\infty$	130

intersect the positive  $x$  axis in some cases (Eq. 2.2). The reason for this may be incomplete mixing of the gastric contents which is not accounted for in Eq. 4.1. If Eq. 2.2 is a satisfactory description of the acidity secretion rate relationship then physically impossible values of  $r$  (negative) and  $S_0$  (tending to infinity) may result if Eq. 4.1 is used to analyse the  $[\text{Na}^+]$  results.

The range for the  $[\text{Na}^+]$  values was 90.1 to 2.9 (mN) in man and 82.5 to 2.5 (mN) in dog i.e. there was a great similarity between the species. Furthermore the decline in  $[\text{Na}^+]$  with increasing secretion rates (Fig. 4.2) together with the small sodium concentration found at the higher secretion rates supports the diffusion theory and the results do not contradict the idea that  $[\text{Na}^+] \rightarrow 0$  when  $t$  becomes very large (i.e. that the 'primary secretion' contains no sodium).

## CHAPTER 5

# The Relation between the Potassium Concentration and Rate of Gastric Secretion

Gastric secretion always contains alkali ions and at low secretion rates sodium predominates. At higher secretion rates sodium diminishes progressively being largely replaced by  $H^+$  ions and the greater part of the alkali ions then consist of potassium. If it is assumed that the primary secretion does not contain any  $Na^+$  the increase in  $[Na^+]$  with decreasing secretion rate can be explained entirely by diffusion of  $Na^+$  through the stomach wall. As potassium however does not decrease (but instead at least in man increases) with increasing secretion rate the relation between secretion rate and potassium similarly cannot be explained in the same way as for sodium. It seems likely that potassium also is secreted in the primary secretion (cf. LINDE and ÖBRINK 1950) in contrast to sodium.

## The relations between $[K^+]$ and $[H^+]$ and between $[K^+]$ and secretion rate

Correlations between the potassium concentration and the acidity or the rate of gastric secretion have been claimed by several authors and these relationships have been a matter of much discussion. After a single subcutaneous injection of histamine MAXIMUDSSON (1948), WERTHER, PARKER and HOLLANDER (1960) in man and HOLLANDER (1952) and HOLLANDER and COLCHER (1960) in pouch dogs (the last named also gave repeated subcutaneous injections of histamine) did not find any constant relationship between  $[K^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  or  $[K^+]$  and secretion rate. On the other hand a definite correlation between  $[K^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  was found in human subjects who had received a single subcutaneous injection of histamine (RIDDELL, STRONG and CAMERON 1960) and in cats after continuous intravenous injection of histamine (BLAIR HARPER, HARRIS REED and WILLIAMS 1960 and BLAIR HARPER and YASSIN 1961). Further RIDDELL, STRONG and CAMERON

(1960) found a positive linear relationship between  $[K^+]$  and rate of gastric secretion in man. In pouch dogs GRAY and BUCHER (1941) after repeated subcutaneous injections of histamine and LINDE and ÖBRINK (1950) after continuous intravenous injection of histamine got a fairly constant  $[K^+]$  at varying secretion rates.

HIRSCHOWITZ (1961) found that the relationship between  $K^+$  and  $H^+$  was disturbed by atropine or  $NaHCO_3$ . After parenteral administration of atropine or  $NaHCO_3$  in man during histamine stimulation there was a fall in  $[K^+]$  while  $[H^+]$  remained unchanged. The effect of  $NaHCO_3$  cannot be fully evaluated as the acid base status was incompletely analyzed.

In conclusion it may therefore be said that there is thus much evidence of a correlation between  $[K^+]$  and secretion rate both with and without steady state conditions but on the other hand there has been objection to the existence of such a correlation.

The situation is therefore somewhat confused and more information about the potassium concentration in gastric secretion is desired. Furthermore in view of a possible connection with the primary secretion of acid and the difference between the primary acidity of man and dog (chapter 2) potassium deserves close attention. It is here relevant to recall that potassium has been considered to be secreted along with the hydrogen ions in the primary secretion (HERZ and ÖBRINK 1954).

To obtain more information and comparable experimental conditions a method giving steady state conditions is preferable and was therefore used in this study in both man and in intact stomachs of dogs. As discussed in an earlier chapter only repeated subcutaneous injections or continuous intravenous injections (but not a single subcutaneous injection) of histamine can give steady state conditions.

## Results

Fig. 1.1 (dog) and Fig. 1.3 (man) illustrate experiments with continuous intravenous injection of histamine. During a steady state in the rate of gastric secretion the potassium concentration remained fairly constant. The relationship between secretion rate and  $[K^+]$  is shown in Fig. 4.1 in dog and Fig. 4.2 in man. The experimental



TABLE III Data obtained from the  $[K^+]$  secretion rate relationship

Subject	n	$[K^+]$ for $v=0$ $m\lambda$	$\frac{d[K^+]}{dv}$ $\frac{m\lambda}{ml}$	$[K^+]$ for $v=4$ $m\lambda$	Cl-C $m\lambda$	$[K^+]$ in gastric secretion range $m\lambda$
K. G. H.	15	87	1.74	157	173	7.9-16.9
B. I.	18	73	3.8	204	191	8.8-19.3
H. C.	9	116	1.19	104	190	11.1-18.9
M. N.	10	79	2.49	191	291	9.3-18.6
G. L.	10	81	4.19	149	193	11.1-19.1
D. G. L.	8	94	-1.59	62	34	5.0-11.8
Dog V.	16	39	-0.35	52	64	3.7-8.1

values of  $[K^+]$  in the gastric secretion for each subject is given in Table 5 I. The variation of  $[K^+]$  in the dog experiments in this material is bigger than LANGE and ØRRECK (1950) found in pouch dogs where however the experimental conditions as regards extragastric admixture must be more favourable.

The  $[K^+]$  during steady secretion rate in the present dog experiments tended to decrease slightly with higher rates of gastric secretion. This was in contrast to man where  $[K^+]$  was always greater with higher secretion rates.

Because the volumes of the gastric juice were sometimes too small  $[K^+]$  could not be determined in these samples with sufficient accuracy.

## Discussion

### Calculation of the regression line

Starting with the assumption that potassium is secreted by the parietal cells and that the mucosa is permeable to it HERTZ and ØRRECK (1954) derived an equation which indicated that there should be a curvilinear relationship between secretion rate and  $[K^+]$ . The equation was applied to this material but it is rather laborious to use. The analysis showed that within the range of secretion rates used the curvilinearity was insignificant and in this case an approximately straight line was obtained in equally good fit for the relation be-

(1960) found a positive linear relationship between  $[K^+]$  and rate of gastric secretion in man. In pouch dogs GRAY and BUCHER (1941) after repeated subcutaneous injections of histamine and LINDE and ÖBRINK (1950) after continuous intravenous injection of histamine got a fairly constant  $[K^+]$  at varying secretion rates.

HIRSCHOWITZ (1961) found that the relationship between  $K^+$  and  $H^+$  was disturbed by atropine or  $NaHCO_3$ . After parenteral administration of atropine or  $NaHCO_3$  in man during histamine stimulation there was a fall in  $[K^+]$  while  $[H^+]$  remained unchanged. The effect of  $NaHCO_3$  cannot be fully evaluated as the acid base status was incompletely analyzed.

In conclusion it may therefore be said that there is thus much evidence of a correlation between  $[K^+]$  and secretion rate both with and without steady state conditions but on the other hand there has been objection to the existence of such a correlation.

The situation is therefore somewhat confused and more information about the potassium concentration in gastric secretion is desired. Furthermore in view of a possible connection with the 'primary secretion' of acid and the difference between the primary acidity of man and dog (chapter 2) potassium deserves close attention. It is here relevant to recall that potassium has been considered to be secreted along with the hydrogen ions in the primary secretion (HEINZ and ÖBRINK 1954).

To obtain more information and comparable experimental conditions a method giving steady state conditions is preferable and was therefore used in this study in both man and in intact stomachs of dogs. As discussed in an earlier chapter only repeated subcutaneous injections or continuous intravenous injections (but not a single subcutaneous injection) of histamine can give steady state conditions.

## Results

Fig 1.1 (dog) and Fig 1.3 (man) illustrate experiments with continuous intravenous injection of histamine. During a steady state in the rate of gastric secretion the potassium concentration remained fairly constant. The relationship between secretion rate and  $[K^+]$  is shown in Fig 4.1 in dog and Fig 4.2 in man. The experimental points fitted well to a straight line. The range of the steady state

TABLE 5 I Data obtained from the  $[K^+]$  secretion rate relationship

Subject	n	$[K^+]$ for $v=0$ mM	$\frac{d[K^+]}{dv}$ mM mm ml	$[K^+]$ for $v=4$ mM	Cl-G mM	$[K^+]$ in gastric secretion range mM
A. G. H.	15	8.7	1.74	15.7	3	7.0-16.0
B. J.	18	7.3	3.08	20.4	19.1	8.8-19.3
H. C.	9	11.6	-1.9	20.4	19.0	11.1-18.9
R. V.	10	7.9	2.72	12.1	29	9.3-18.6
O. L.	10	8.1	4.19	4.9	19.3	11.2-19.1
Dog L.	8	9.4	-1.59	6.7	3.4	5.0-11.8
Dog M.	16	5.9	-0.35	5	6.4	3-8.1

values of  $[K^+]$  in the gastric secretion for each subject is given in Table 5 I. The variation of  $[K^+]$  in the dog experiments in this material is bigger than LANGE and ÖBRINK (1930) found in pouch dogs where however the experimental conditions as regards extragastric admixture must be more favourable.

The  $[K^+]$  during steady secretion rate in the present dog experiments tended to decrease slightly with higher rates of gastric secretion. This was in contrast to man where  $[K^+]$  was always greater with higher secretion rates.

Because the volumes of the gastric juice were sometimes too small  $[K^+]$  could not be determined in the 6 samples with sufficient accuracy.

## Discussion

### Calculation of the regression line

Starting with the assumption that potassium is secreted by the parietal cells and that the mucosa is permeable to it HERZ and ÖBRINK (1934) derived an equation which indicated that there should be a curvilinear relationship between secretion rate and  $[K^+]$ . The equation was applied to this material but it is rather laborious to use. The analysis showed that within the range of secretion rates used the curvilinearity was insignificant and in this case an approximately straight line was obtained. An equally good fit for the relation be-

tween  $[K^+]$  and secretion rate was obtained with the linear regression line calculated by the method of least squares. In Table 5 I the values for the  $y$  axis intercept (i.e.  $[K^+]$  for  $v=0$ ) and the slope of the straight line here denoted as  $d[K^+]/dv$  are given. As can be seen (Fig. 4 I and Fig. 4 2)  $[K^+]$  shows a good correlation with the rate of gastric secretion using a rectilinear relationship.

### Magnitude of $[K^+]$ in the "primary secretion"

Since a curvilinear relationship with a maximal  $[K^+]$  value was not calculated for the relationship between  $[K^+]$  and the secretion rate the  $[K^+]$  value corresponding to the infinitely high secretion rate can not be calculated from the straight regression line. To estimate the  $[K^+]$  in the primary secretion the values of  $[K^+]$  corresponding to a secretion rate of 4.0 ml/min are given in Table 5 I. The value of 4.0 ml/min was chosen as an estimate of the maximal secretion rate it being an approximation of the mean of the  $\alpha_1$  values (see chapter 1). A comparison with the neutral chloride concentration calculated in the primary secretion (see chapter 3) is given in Table 5 I and shows that the higher  $[K^+]$  in man can account for the higher neutral chloride concentration and the lower primary acidity in man compared with the dog.

It was shown in chapter 3 that the primary chloride concentration was not different in man and dog. Chloride is practically the only anion in the gastric secretion which therefore is equiosmolar in dog and man. The higher  $[K^+]$  in man could thus not be accounted for by a higher osmolarity in the primary secretion. This supports the *rather essential conclusion that the primary secretion in man though of the same osmolarity has a different composition from that of the dog having a higher  $[K^+]$  and a correspondingly lower primary acidity*.

### The origin of $K^+$ in the gastric secretion

The potassium concentrations calculated for  $v=0$  (i.e. at secretory arrest) in man and dog were not significantly different (Table 5 I). This is of some interest because it suggests that at secretory arrest potassium tends to reach the same concentration in both man and dog. It seems possible that at secretory arrest the intragastric  $[K^+]$  is in a steady state between the surrounding compartments i.e. between the intracellular and the plasma potassium.

The plasma potassium concentration in dogs (PROSSER 1950) is not very different from that in man (NADLER 1953 BERNSTEIN 1954). If the intragastric potassium (secretory arrest) is considered as being in a compartment lying in contact with both the intracellular and extracellular (plasma) spaces the similarity of the intragastric and extracellular (plasma potassium) concentrations in man and dog might perhaps mean that the intracellular  $[K^+]$  values are similar in man and dog.

The parietal cells are only part of the total cell population of the mucosa. This means that  $[K^+]$  in the parietal cells is not necessarily the same as the average for the whole cell population. In fact DAVEY PORT and ALZAMORA (1962) found differences in  $[K^+]$  between parietal cells and the surface epithelial cells in the frog gastric mucosa. It is therefore possible that although a rather similar average  $[K^+]$  in the whole cell population in man and dog is likely (see discussion above) the  $[K^+]$  values for the parietal cells may be different in dog and man. As potassium probably to a large extent is derived from the parietal cells (see chapter 7) such a difference in the two species may cause different concentration of  $K^+$  in the primary juice. In fact at higher rates of gastric secretion the difference in  $[K^+]$  is manifest.

Another explanation for the difference of the primary  $K^+$  concentration might be different rate constants for the secretion of  $K^+$  from the parietal cells. In such a case we do not need to assume different intracellular concentrations in the parietal cells of man and dog. Such differences in rate constants are not unlikely as was shown by BURGER (1956) to occur in salivary glands when the degree of stimulation changed.

In short the study supports the view that the primary secretion contains potassium and in a higher concentration in man than in dog. This  $[K^+]$  is dependent on the secretion process. Further  $[K^+]$  in the stomach contents at secretory arrest is not different between the species. The findings are good reason for further studies of the kinetics of potassium transport in the gastric juice.

tween  $[K^+]$  and secretion rate was obtained with the linear regression line calculated by the method of least squares. In Table 5 I the values for the  $y$  axis intercept (i.e.  $[K^+]$  for  $t=0$ ) and the slope of the straight line here denoted as  $d[K^+]/dt$  are given. As can be seen (Fig. 4.1 and Fig. 4.2)  $[K^+]$  shows a good correlation with the rate of gastric secretion using a rectilinear relationship.

### Magnitude of $[K^+]$ in the "primary secretion"

Since a curvilinear relationship with a maximal  $[K^+]$  value was not calculated for the relationship between  $[K^+]$  and the secretion rate the  $[K^+]$  value corresponding to the infinitely high secretion rate can not be calculated from the straight regression line. To estimate the  $[K^+]$  in the primary secretion, the values of  $[K^+]$  corresponding to a secretion rate of 4.0 ml/min are given in Table 5 I. The value of 4.0 ml/min was chosen as an estimate of the maximal secretion rate it being an approximation of the mean of the  $a_1$  values (see chapter 1). A comparison with the neutral chloride concentration calculated in the primary secretion (see chapter 3) is given in Table 5 I and shows that the higher  $[K^+]$  in man can account for the higher neutral chloride concentration and the lower primary acidity in man compared with the dog.

It was shown in chapter 3 that the primary chloride concentration was not different in man and dog. Chloride is practically the only anion in the gastric secretion which therefore is equiosmolar in dog and man. The higher  $[K^+]$  in man could thus not be accounted for by a higher osmolarity in the primary secretion. This supports the rather essential conclusion that *the primary secretion in man though of the same osmolarity has a different composition from that of the dog having a higher  $[K^+]$  and a correspondingly lower primary acidity*.

### The origin of $K^+$ in the gastric secretion

The potassium concentrations calculated for  $t=0$  (i.e. at secretory arrest) in man and dog were not significantly different (Table 5 I). This is of some interest because it suggests that at secretory arrest potassium tends to reach the same concentration in both man and dog. It seems possible that at secretory arrest the intragastric  $[K^+]$  is in a steady state between the surrounding compartments i.e. between the intracellular and the plasma potassium.

The plasma potassium concentration in dogs (PROSSER 1950) is not very different from that in man (NADLER 1953 BERNSTEIN 1954). If the intragastric potassium (secretory arrest) is considered as being in a compartment lying in contact with both the intracellular and extracellular (plasma) spaces the similarity of the intragastric and extracellular (plasma potassium) concentrations in man and dog might perhaps mean that the intracellular  $[K^+]$  values are similar in man and dog.

The parietal cells are only part of the total cell population of the mucosa. This means that  $[K^+]$  in the parietal cells is not necessarily the same as the average for the whole cell population. In fact DAVEY PORT and ALZAMORA (1962) found differences in  $[K^+]$  between parietal cells and the surface epithelial cells in the frog gastric mucosa. It is therefore possible that although a rather similar average  $[K^+]$  in the whole cell population in man and dog is likely (see discussion above) the  $[K^+]$  values for the parietal cells may be different in dog and man. As potassium probably to a large extent is derived from the parietal cells (see chapter 7) such a difference in the two species may cause different concentration of  $K^+$  in the primary juice. In fact at higher rates of gastric secretion the difference in  $[K^+]$  is manifest.

Another explanation for the difference of the primary  $K^+$  concentration might be different rate constants for the secretion of  $K^+$  from the parietal cells. In such a case we do not need to assume different intracellular concentrations in the parietal cells of man and dog. Such differences in rate constants are not unlikely as was shown by BURGER (1956) to occur in salivary glands when the degree of stimulation changed.

In short the study supports the view that the primary secretion contains potassium and in a higher concentration in man than in dog. This  $[K^+]$  is dependent on the secretion process. Further  $[K^+]$  in the stomach contents at secretory arrest is not different between the species. The findings are good reason for further studies of the kinetics of potassium transport in the gastric juice.

## CHAPTER 6

### The Effect of Histamine on Potassium Concentration in Blood, *in vitro* and *in vivo* Experiments

After continuous intravenous injection of histamine there was a significantly higher output of potassium in the gastric secretion of man than in dog. At secretory arrest  $[K^+]$  was calculated to be not significantly different between man and dog (chapter 5).

This study attempts to analyze the mechanisms underlying the higher  $[K^+]$  in gastric juice in man during secretion. The aim was to study if the higher gastric potassium concentration obtained in man was a passive process i.e. due to simple diffusion equilibrium with plasma potassium caused secondarily by an increase in plasma potassium (from systematic potassium liberation induced by histamine).

As discussed in chapter 5 plasma  $[K^+]$  appears to be similar in both species but this is no measure of the kinetics of potassium exchange. It is quite possible that in man more potassium is liberated from different parts of the body and then transported to the stomach mucosa.

It has been suggested that histamine may act by liberating potassium from tissues. In cats histamine has been shown to increase the plasma potassium concentration (MACMILLAN 1956, 1957) and this effect could be antagonised by antihistamines (promethazine or pyrilamine).

Similar results have been reported in rabbits and guinea pigs (AUBRUS and AUBRUS 1952). Liberation of  $K^+$  from tissues after histamine administration was found by PARROT, THOUVENOT and LONGUEVILLE (1952, 1953) for example on guinea pig intestine, in cat red blood cells (MACMILLAN and VANCE 1956) and in cat striated muscle (MACMILLAN 1955).

It has been shown in isolated frog gastric mucosa during secretion that an increase of  $[K^+]$  in the nutrition fluid gave an increase in the net transport of  $K^+$  to the secretory side (HARRIS, FRANK and EDELMAN, 1958). With the  $[K^+]$  on the secretory side 40 mN/l higher



than on the blood side there was still a moderately reduced net transport across to the secretory side

It seems justified therefore to consider whether the higher  $K^+$  output in gastric secretion in man depends on a higher extragastric  $K$  liberation than in dog. At this point it should be mentioned that  $[K^+]$  in red blood cells of the dog was found to be 10 mN BERNSTEIN (1954) 9 mN POWDER (1948) and 8.7 mN HERR (1937) compared with the much higher values in man e.g. 106 mN BERNSTEIN (1954) 100 mN POWDER (1948) and 99.2 mN LANS STEIN Jr and MEYER (1952). Thus in marked contrast to the dog there is clearly a not unimportant potential potassium pool in the red cells of man.

In this study both *in vitro* experiments with whole blood and *in vivo* determinations of plasma  $[K^+]$  before and during histamine administration were made. The aim of the *in vitro* experiments was to study whether potassium was liberated from the potassium rich erythrocytes of man (measured as an increase in plasma  $[K^+]$ ) after addition of histamine. The aim of the *in vivo* experiments was to study whether there was any liberation of  $K^+$  from other parts of the body.

## Methods

Blood was collected in tubes treated with dimethyldichlorosilane (Repelcote<sup>®</sup> Hopkins and Williams Ltd) and containing a small amount of heparin. Plasma was obtained by centrifugation. Dilutions were made with 0.1 ammoniated water to solubilise particulate material as according to BARBER and GAFFNEY (1957). Potassium was determined flamephotometrically. 2 ml of plasma was diluted 1/5 with 7 ml ammoniated water and 1 ml 100 mN LiCl.  $[K^+]$  in the red blood cells was calculated from the hematocrit and potassium concentrations in whole blood (hemolysed with ammoniated water) and plasma. No correction was made for trapped plasma.

### *In vitro* experiments

Histamine dihydrochloride in differing amounts (see Table 6.1) was added to the blood samples which were then shaken for about 15 minutes together with the controls (without any histamine added) before centrifugation. The blood used was up to 5 days old.

## CHAPTER 6

### The Effect of Histamine on Potassium Concentration in Blood, *in vitro* and *in vivo* Experiments

After continuous intravenous injection of histamine there was a significantly higher output of potassium in the gastric secretion of man than in dog. At secretory arrest  $[K^+]$  was calculated to be not significantly different between man and dog (chapter 5).

This study attempts to analyze the mechanisms underlying the higher  $[K^+]$  in gastric juice in man during secretion. The aim was to study if the higher gastric potassium concentration obtained in man was a passive process i.e. due to simple diffusion equilibrium with plasma potassium caused secondarily by an increase in plasma potassium (from systematic potassium liberation induced by histamine).

As discussed in chapter 5 plasma  $[K^+]$  appears to be similar in both species but this is no measure of the kinetics of potassium exchange. It is quite possible that in man more potassium is liberated from different parts of the body and then transported to the stomach mucosa.

It has been suggested that histamine may act by liberating potassium from tissues. In cats histamine has been shown to increase the plasma potassium concentration (MACMILLAN 1956, 1957) and this effect could be antagonised by antihistamines (promethazine or pyrilamine).

Similar results have been reported in rabbits and guinea pigs (AMBRUS and AMBRUS 1952). Liberation of  $K^+$  from tissues after histamine administration was found by PARROT, THOUVENOT and LONGUEVALLE (1952, 1953) for example on guinea pig intestine, in cat red blood cells (MACMILLAN and VANE 1956) and in cat striated muscle (MACMILLAN 1955).

It has been shown in isolated frog gastric mucosa during secretion that an increase of  $[K^+]$  in the nutrition fluid gave an increase in the net transport of  $K^+$  to the secretory side (HARRIS, FRANK and EDELMAN, 1958). With the  $[K^+]$  on the secretory side 4.0 mN/l higher

sample as the histamine treated cell. The  $[K^+]$  difference with and without histamine was calculated. The mean difference including all histamine levels was for man  $+0.1$  mN ( $n=9$  *t* test  $t=1.51$   $P>0.1$ ) and for dog  $-0.1$  mN ( $n=8$  *t* test  $t=1.01$   $P>0.1$ ). There was no tendency of increase in  $[K^+]$  with increasing amounts of histamine.

Thus in the concentration range of histamine used and in the absence of an antihistamine an *in vitro* increase of plasma potassium concentration was not detected.

#### *In vivo experiments*

The mean difference between plasma  $[K^+]$  before and during the histamine stimulation was  $-0.269$  mN ( $n=9$  *t* test  $t=2.75$  and  $0.05 > P > 0.02$ ). As in the *in vitro* experiments there was no successive increase in plasma  $[K^+]$  with increasing injection rates of histamine. Thus there was no evidence of an increase in plasma  $[K^+]$  during histamine stimulation. Further work would be required to show if the apparent decrease had any significance. Table 6 II shows the  $[K^+]$

TABLE 6 II *Measured values of  $[K^+]$  in gastric secretion*

Subject	Without histamine stimulation	With histamine stimulation
B I	88	194
H C	111	189
R \	93	186
G L	112	181
Dog L		118
Dog M		81

TABLE 6 III *Examples of changes in plasma  $[K^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  in secretion before and during histamine injection*

Subject	$[K^+]$ in plasma (mN)		$[H^+]$ in gastric secretion (mN)		Injection rate of histamine $\mu\text{g/kg hour}$
	Before histamine injection	During histamine injection	Before histamine injection	During histamine injection	
B I (4)	50	50	9	187	172
B I (5)	53	50	91	14	23

TABLE 6 I *Experiments (in vitro) in man and dog showing  $[K^+]$  in blood plasma without and with histamine addition*

	Man		Dog	
	H <sub>1</sub> tamine conc $\mu$ g/100 ml blood	$[K^+]$ mN	H <sub>1</sub> tamine conc $\mu$ g/100 ml blood	$[K^+]$ mN
	0 0	4 3	0 0	6 1
	12 5	4 2	12 5	5 "
	25 0	4 3	25 0	6 1
	67 5	4 3	67 5	5 9
	125 0	4 2	125 0	6 1
In red cells	—	97 9	—	7 1

#### *In vivo experiments*

Blood was taken from a peripheral vein before the histamine injection and during a steady gastric secretion rate induced by histamine. In these experiments the antihistamine chlorpheniramine was given to the subject as in the other experiments with gastric secretion (see earlier chapters).

In both types of experiments the effect of histamine administration as the plasma  $[K^+]$  was compared.

### *Results*

#### *In vitro experiments*

In pouch dogs ÖBRINK (1948) found a linear relationship between the rate of continuous intravenous histamine injection and the plasma concentration of histamine. For injection rates giving an almost maximal rate of gastric secretion plasma concentrations of 60  $\mu$ g/100 ml of histamine dihydrochloride were obtained. With 48  $\mu$ g/100 ml of histamine base in plasma EMMELIN, KARLSON and WICKSELL (1941) observed pronounced pharmacological systemic effects on dogs. It was therefore decided to use blood concentrations of histamine dihydrochloride from 12.5 to 125  $\mu$ g/100 ml in this study. No antihistamine was used. In Table 6 I results from human and canine blood are shown. In all cases histamine controls were of the same blood

sample in the histamine treated cells. The  $[K^+]$  difference with and without histamine was calculated. The mean difference including all histamine levels was for man  $+0.1 \text{ mN}$  ( $n=9$  *t* test  $t=1.51$   $P>0.1$ ) and for dog  $-0.1 \text{ mN}$  ( $n=8$  *t* test  $t=1.01$   $P>0.1$ ). There was no tendency of increase in  $[K^+]$  with increasing amounts of histamine.

Thus in the concentration range of histamine used and in the absence of an antihistamine an *in vitro* increase of plasma potassium concentration was not detected.

#### *In vivo experiments*

The mean difference between plasma  $[K^+]$  before and during the histamine stimulation was  $-0.289 \text{ mN}$  ( $n=9$  *t* test  $t=-2.75$  and  $0.02 > P > 0.02$ ). As in the *in vitro* experiments there was no successive increase in plasma  $[K^+]$  with increasing injection rates of histamine. Thus there was no evidence of an increase in plasma  $[K^+]$  during histamine stimulation. Further work would be required to show if the apparent decrease had any significance. Table 6 II shows the  $[K^+]$

TABLE 6 II Measured values of  $[K^+]$  in gastric secretion

Subject	Without histamine stimulation	With histamine stimulation
B I	88	194
H C	111	169
R \	93	186
G L	11 -	161
Dog L		118
Dog M		81

TABLE 6 III Examples of changes in plasma  $[K^+]$  and  $[K^+]$  in secretion before and during histamine injection

Subject	$[K^+]$ in plasma (mN)		$[K^+]$ in gastric secretion (mN)		Injection rate of histamine $\mu\text{g/kg}$ hour
	Before histamine injection	During histamine injection	Before histamine injection	During histamine injection	
B I (4)	50	5	79	187	17
B I (5)	53	50	91	14	3

values in the gastric secretion from some experiments in man and dog during histamine stimulation Table II III shows in two experiments in man (B I) with the plasma  $[K^+]$  and the  $[K^+]$  in gastric secretion before and during histamine stimulation

### Discussion

No evidence of an increase in plasma  $[K^+]$  was found either in blood treated with histamine *in vitro* or in blood in *in vivo* experiments after histamine administration As a significant difference between plasma  $[K^+]$  in man and dog has not been established the higher  $[K^+]$  in human gastric secretion during histamine stimulation can not be explained by a higher plasma  $[K^+]$  which might give secondarily a higher  $[K^+]$  in gastric secretion in man

A higher potassium liberation in man might not be reflected however by an increase in plasma  $[K^+]$  if for example the rate of potassium loss from the blood was also increased *pari passu* This might be of importance if the potassium pools in man were of a higher concentration or were more easily liberated by histamine (if  $[K^+]$  was not different) than in dog It may be noted that antihistamines (which have been shown to block partly at least the  $K^+$  liberation *see above*) were given before gastric secretion was induced by histamine

Human red cells have a higher potassium content than in dog The muscles which constitute the main storage site for  $K^+$  in the body (FEYN NOONAN MULLINS and HAEQUE 1941 FORBES 1955) have similar  $[K^+]$  values in man and dog (cf for instance HASTINGS and EICHELBERGER 1937 and EICHELBERGER and ROMA 1949) It seems not unreasonable to expect that if histamine liberates significant amounts of  $K$  from red cells that the  $K$  escaping from the potassium rich human cells should have been detected in the *in vitro* experiments

As man and dog have essentially similar  $K^+$  concentrations in the main storage sites (predominantly the muscles) the possibility remains that  $K$  might be more easily liberated in man than in dog It should be mentioned here that at steady rates of gastric secretion the higher  $[K^+]$  in man is maintained on a fairly constant level for several hours It might be expected therefore that during such conditions a higher plasma  $[K^+]$  should be found if there was a correspondence of steady state  $[K^+]$  levels in gastric secretion and plasma

Although as mentioned above the KCl concentration on the nutrient side was shown to have an effect on  $H^+$  transport across the frog gastric mucosa the increase in intragastric  $[K^+]$  during secretion in man does not seem to arise from an increase in blood  $[K^+]$ . It seems therefore possible that the difference in intragastric  $[K^+]$  between man and dog is dependent on a local secretory mechanism in the gastric mucosa.

## CHAPTER 7

# The Movement of Radioactive Sodium and Potassium across the Stomach Wall

As has been described previously (chapter 5) it was found that the intragastric potassium concentration during acid secretion is higher in man than in dog. The total intragastric cation concentration in both species was however similar and the primary acidity was shown to be correspondingly lower in man than in dog. Thus a general liberation of potassium from the cells of the body as an effect of administered histamine was not likely to be the cause of the differences in intragastric potassium concentration in man and dog. It was suggested that this difference was probably related to the local secretion process in the gastric mucosa and this motivated a study of the pathways for the transport of potassium in the gastric mucosa.

The movements of radioactive potassium and sodium through the gastric mucosa were measured simultaneously so that they could be compared both during secretion and at secretory arrest.

### *Material*

Cats (weight 1.2–4.2 kg) and young dogs (weight 3.4–6.2 kg) were used in acute experiments.

In two experiments with gastric secretion a Heidenhain pouch dog (weight about 20 kg) was used.

### *Methods*

#### *Procedure*

*Anaesthesia* In the acute experiments on cats and dogs the animals were anaesthetized first with ether in a closed cage. Anaesthesia was then maintained with Nembutal<sup>®</sup> (Abbott) 30–50 mg per kg body weight given intravenously or a mixture of chloralose (1% solution



60-100 mg/kg body weight)—urethane (10% solution 1.0-1.5 g/kg body weight) in a few cases. According to STEWART (1950) MACMILLAN and VANE (1956) barbiturate anesthesia can influence plasma  $[K^+]$ . This might explain the variations in plasma  $[K^+]$  observed in the present material.

The abdominal wall was opened and the stomach tied off at the cardia and pylorus (the big blood vessels passing the sphincters were left intact). A glass tube was then inserted into the pyloric end of the stomach. The stomach was then emptied completely at intervals varying between about 5 and 10 minutes (see results) via a rubber tube introduced through the glass tube and the volume of the gastric contents withdrawn was estimated in a measuring cylinder.

In the secretion experiments stimulation was induced with continuous intravenous injection of histamine after 8 mg chlorpheniramine (Allergisan<sup>®</sup>) had been given intravenously in a single dose.

Blood samples (about 1 ml) were taken via a plastic tube (treated with heparin) inserted in a femoral artery. After centrifugation 0.2 ml of plasma was used for determination of the isotope activities. According to MACMILLAN and VANE (1956) 20 samples of 1.5 ml blood (at intervals of either 2 or 10 minutes) can be withdrawn from an anesthetized cat without any increase in plasma potassium. The blood samples were centrifuged (for about 8 minutes at about 2000 rpm) immediately after they were taken. The plasma was then removed. This was done to diminish the possibility of exchange with the potassium in the red cells.

### Analysis

The acidity was titrated with bromthymolblue. For further description of this method and the determination of  $Cl^-$ ,  $K^+$  and  $Na^+$  see page 7.

### Analysis of $Na^{24}$ and $K^{42}$

$Na^{24}$  and  $K^{42}$  were measured simultaneously in a two channel gamma spectrometer. For details of the technique reference may be made to ÖBRINK and ULFENDAHN (1959) and BILL, ÖBRINK and ULFENDAHN (1959). The gamma ray energy for  $K^{42}$  is 1.53 MeV and for  $Na^{24}$  1.37 and 2.76 MeV. The channels were chosen so that one channel registered practically no  $K^{42}$  activity. The error for the determination of  $Na^{24}$  is about 1.3% and for  $K^{42}$  about 1.6% (20 000 cpm of the

isotopes) With lower counting rates the error becomes greater this is especially the case if there is a pronounced difference between the activities of the isotopes (DANIELSON and SJOSTRAND 1963)

The stability of the apparatus was controlled by counting standard samples of  $\text{Na}^{24}$  and  $\text{K}^4$  at least every hour The amounts of radio activity used were  $50\text{--}70\ \mu\text{C Na}^{24}$  and  $50\text{--}70\ \mu\text{C K}^4$  The total amounts of alkali cations injected into the animals were about  $10\ \mu\text{Eq}$  of Na and  $45\ \mu\text{Eq}$  of K

## Results

Three types of experiments were done

I A single dose of  $\text{K}^4$  and  $\text{Na}^4$  was given intravenously during histamine stimulation (dose about  $0.5\text{--}1.0\ \text{mg/hour}$ ) to study the pattern of the appearance of the isotopes in the stomach during secretion (10 experiments)

II In two experiments the  $\text{K}^4$  and  $\text{Na}^4$  were given intravenously without histamine stimulation (i.e. during secretory arrest of the stomach) but with sodium and potassium chlorides instilled in the stomach in concentrations corresponding approximately to the steady state values of the ions at secretory arrest see Table 7 I cats 4 and 5 (mean values) This experiment was done to get information of the isotope fluxes without any net transport of water into the stomach

III In two experiments the rate of departure from the stomach during secretory arrest was measured by the disappearance after intragastric instillation of the isotopes in a solution of the same type of composition as above see Table 7 I cats 3 and 7 (mean values)

### I The isotopes injected intravenously during gastric secretion

Fig 7 Ia shows the variation of the specific activities (cpm/mEq) (for practical reasons the specific activity was expressed in cpm/mEq here) of the potassium and the sodium in plasma and gastric juice after a single intravenous dose of  $\text{K}^4$  and  $\text{Na}^{24}$  during continuous intravenous injection of histamine (cat 6) This means that a constant secretion rate (ml/min) was maintained with a constant  $[\text{H}^+]$   $[\text{Na}^+]$   $[\text{K}^+]$  and  $[\text{Cl}^-]$  during the whole experiment i.e. the rate of potassium and sodium output is constant With a single intravenous injection of  $\text{K}^{42}$  and  $\text{Na}^4$  the specific activity of potassium (and to a lesser extent also of sodium) reached a peak about 8 minutes after the

injection. Subsequently the level of the specific  $\text{K}$  activity declined and then remained at a lower level than the specific activity in the plasma. In all experiments the specific activity of sodium also declined until it reached a level similar or a little higher than the specific activity in plasma.

During gastric secretion and after the initial peak of specific activity had passed and a more or less steady level had been attained the quotient between the specific activities of potassium in gastric juice and plasma was found to be 0.33 (mean) in cats (5 animals 40 determinations) and 0.57 (mean) in dogs (5 animals 39 determinations). The corresponding values for sodium were 1.13 in cats and 1.07 in dogs. Table 7 I gives the data in more detail.

## II *The tracers injected intravenously during secretory arrest with an approximately isotonic solution of $\text{KCl}$ and $\text{NaCl}$ instilled into the stomach*

In Fig. 7.2 (cat 4) the stomach was in secretory arrest and 7 ml solution containing  $\text{KCl}$  and  $\text{NaCl}$  were introduced. In Table 7 I data from the experiments are given. In the experiments with a volume instilled in the stomach the variations in  $[\text{Na}^+]$  and  $[\text{K}^+]$  were between some samples not negligible. There was however no definite trend in these concentration changes. The gastric contents were then withdrawn as completely as possible at intervals of about 10 minutes. A sample (0.2 ml) was then taken before reintroduction of the contents. As in the experiment of Fig. 7.1a  $\text{K}^{42}$  and  $\text{Na}^{24}$  were injected intravenously in a single dose. A sharp initial rise of specific activity in the instillation volume was not obtained. Compared with the secretion experiments the specific activity of sodium in the instilled solution increased continuously rather slowly and after 90–100 minutes had reached a level of about 20–30 % of the specific activity in the plasma. Only very low specific activities of  $\text{K}$  were found intragastrically.

## III *The isotopes instilled in the stomach during secretory arrest*

In order to determine the rate of disappearance of  $\text{K}^{42}$  and  $\text{Na}^{24}$  from the stomach during secretory arrest ~ ml of an approximately isotonic solution (containing  $\text{NaCl}$  and  $\text{KCl}$  with  $\text{K}^{42}$  and  $\text{Na}^{24}$ ) were instilled (see Table 7 I and remarks above about concentration changes). Sampling was done as above (II) at about 10 minute intervals for determination of the specific activities of potassium and sodium and

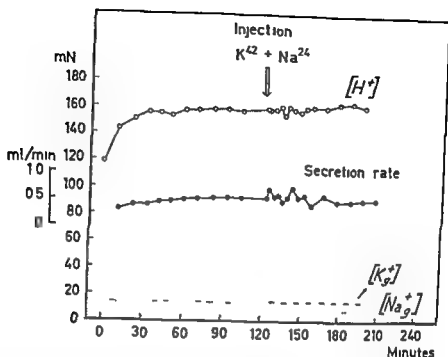


Fig. 7-1a b and c Single intravenous injection of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  during steady rate gastric secretion (induced with continuous intravenous injection of histamine) (Cat 6). This figure (7-1a) shows the rate of secretion and  $[H^+]$ ,  $[K^+]$  and  $[Na^+]$  in the secretion.

flamephotometric analysis. As the fall in specific activity was exponential the logarithm of the specific activity of the ions was plotted against the time thus giving a straight line (Fig. 7-3). From two experiments the mean decrease in specific activity of potassium in the instilled solution was 36%, and for sodium 23% after 60 minutes. The specific activities in the plasma were always very low which means that the concentration gradient across the stomach was only determined by the value of the specific activity in the stomach.

## Discussion

### I. $K^{42}$ and $Na^{24}$ injected intravenously during gastric secretion

The peaks of highest specific activity in the stomach contents occurred about 30 minutes after the intravenous injection of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$ .

Fig. 7-1b The activities of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  (cpm) in plasma and gastric secretion after injection of the isotopes (Cat 6).

Fig. 7-1c The time course of the specific activities of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  in plasma and gastric secretion after injection of the isotopes (Cat 6).

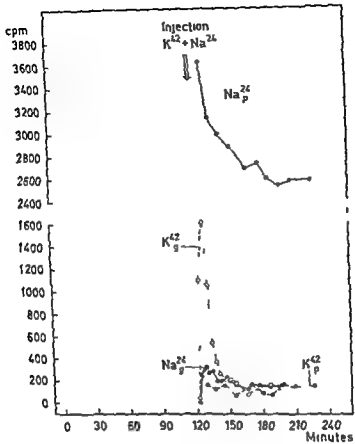
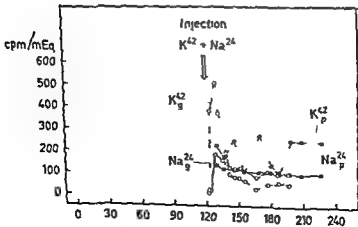


Fig 7 1 b



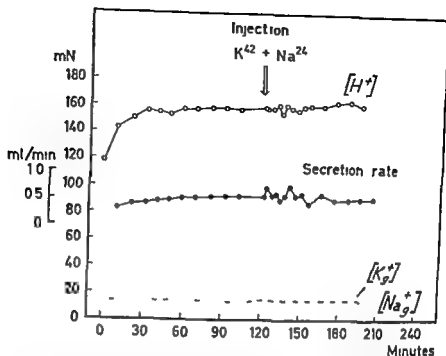


Fig 7 1a b and c Single intravenous injection of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  during steady rate gastric secretion (induced with continuous intravenous injection of histamine) (Cat 6) This figure (7 1a) shows the rate of secretion and  $[H^+]$   $[K^+]$  and  $[Na^+]$  in the secretion

flamephotometric analysis. As the fall in specific activity was exponential the logarithm of the specific activity of these ions was plotted against the time thus giving a straight line (Fig 7 3). From two experiments the mean decrease in specific activity of potassium in the instilled solution was 36% and for sodium 23% after 60 minutes. The specific activities in the plasma were always very low which means that the concentration gradient across the stomach was only determined by the value of the specific activity in the stomach.

## Discussion

### I $K^{42}$ and $Na^{24}$ injected intravenously during gastric secretion

The peaks of highest specific activity in the stomach contents occurred about 8 minutes after the intravenous injection of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$ .

Fig 7 1b The activities of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  (cpm) in plasma and gastric secretion after injection of the isotopes (Cat 6)

Fig 7 1c The time course of the specific activities of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  in plasma and gastric secretion after injection of the isotopes (Cat 6)

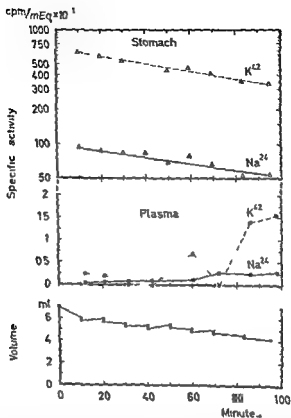


Fig. 3  $\text{K}^{42}$  and  $\text{Na}^{24}$  added to a volume (composition see Table 7 I) instilled in a non-secreting stomach. The dips in the volume-time curve are due to the removal of small aliquots for analysis (Cat 3). It should be noted that although as in Fig. 2 the entire stomach contents were removed and then reintroduced during the sampling that this process has been plotted as though requiring no time. This seems justified because in this experiment the intragastric radioactivity represents the source and thus is withdrawn from the animal periodically.

specific activity of intragastric to plasma potassium falls significantly below unity while the specific activity of sodium never falls below that of plasma. One explanation for the low potassium value in gastric juice might be that it originates from a compartment of low specific activity.

The intracellular concentration of potassium in the gastric mucosa is much higher than the plasma  $[\text{K}^+]$  (MARTIN 1955; DAVENPORT and ALZAMORA 1962) while the plasma concentration is higher than in

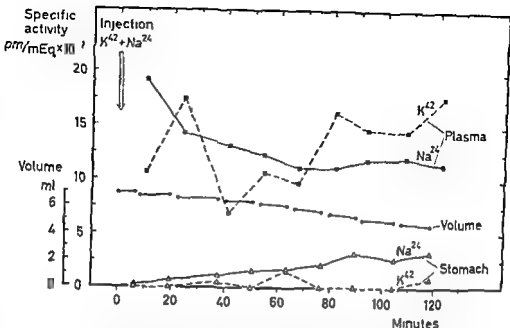


Fig 7.2 The appearance of  $Na^{24}$  and  $K^{42}$  in a stomach after a single intravenous injection of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  during secretory arrest with 7 ml solution (composition see Table 7.1) instilled in the stomach. Volume in the figure refers to the intragastric volume. The sharp decline (left as a discontinuity) in volume between each pair of close points is due to the technique: the whole stomach contents were removed, a small sample was withdrawn for analysis and the remainder of the gastric fluid was then replaced in the stomach (Cat 4).

(Fig 7.1a) It seems most likely that these peaks reflect with some time lag the earlier peaks in the plasma specific activities resulting from the injection of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$ . The width of the peak may be dependent on differences in the transport distance along the crypts. In the solution injected the cpm of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  were similar. The specific activity of the sodium in the plasma after quasi complete circulatory mixing therefore became lower than that of potassium because of the much higher plasma sodium concentration. As  $[Na^+]$  and  $[K^+]$  in the gastric secretion obtained here do not differ very much this should explain the lower specific activity of sodium in gastric secretion.

The 8 minute interval between the intravenous injection of the isotopes and the peak of specific activity in the gastric secretion should be a measure of the transit time of the tracer from plasma to stomach. The approximately simultaneous appearance of both sodium and potassium peaks suggest that their transport mechanisms are similar or at least interrelated. Subsequent to the peak value the ratio of the



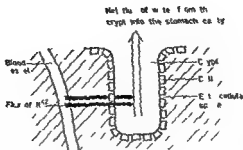


Fig. 4 Proposed scheme for the transport of  $K^+$  from plasma to the stomach cavity during gastric secretion

intracellular concentration of  $K^+$  (IVORAHAM and VESSCHER 1939, DAVIDPORT and ALLAVORA 1962). Thus there is a comparatively large amount of intracellular potassium available which can serve as a diluent for any  $K^+$  influx. A low (compared with plasma) intracellular specific activity might therefore be expected for potassium. Secretion of this intracellular potassium into the stomach cavity should therefore give a specific activity in the gastric secretion much lower than that in plasma.

To explain the initial peak and the subsequent reduction in the specific activity to a value lower than of plasma, it is proposed that duality of the  $K^+$  pathway exists, i.e. some  $K^+$  reaches the crypt lumen by a route which does not involve its dilution with the large intracellular pool of  $K^+$ . This pathway might be for example extracellular or via an intracellular compartment with a low potassium content (Fig. 7.4).

Assuming an extracellular pathway the peak of specific activity in the gastric secretion would then be the result of the  $K^+$  not transported through the parietal cells. The experiments were done during steady state gastric secretion. The  $K^+$  entering the stomach by the non parietal cell pathway would therefore be continually diluted by a low  $K^+$  fluid originating from the parietal cells (low intracellular specific activity). Thus the specific activity of  $K^+$  in the gastric juice would always be lower than that of the plasma. However the time required for the transport of  $K^+$  into the stomach would delay the appearance of the  $K^+$  peak into the gastric juice and the fact that the specific activity in the stomach is at its peak period higher than that of plasma may be merely a consequence of this time lag.

TABLE 7 I Mean values of plasma and stomach contents from the studies of radioactive potassium and sodium movements across the stomach mucosa The mean values represent 5-14 individual samples, usually 10-14

Cats 3 and 7 were experiments with the isotopes instilled in the non secreting stomach Cats 4 and 5 were experiments with intravenous injection of the isotopes and the stomach in secretory arrest In the other experiments the isotopes were injected intravenously during gastric secretion

Experiment	Rate of gastric secretion ml/min	Acidity mN	Plasma mN		Gastric contents mN		Plasma cpm		Gastric contents cpm		Quotient of specific activity of		
			Na <sup>22</sup>	K <sup>41</sup>	Na <sup>22</sup>	K <sup>41</sup>	Na <sup>22</sup>	K <sup>41</sup>	Na <sup>22</sup>	K <sup>41</sup>	Potassium	gastric secretion	Sodium plasma
Cat 2	0.37	138	140	4.3	13.8	16.9	2438	238	361	417	0.51		1.36
Cat 6	0.46	150	132	3.3	7.9	14.3	2796	130	171	190	0.29		0.94
Cat 8	0.44	108	164	2.7	11.8	12.7	355	24	31	21	0.21		1.18
Cat 10	0.26	149	108	2.6	12.9	10.6	2237	6.3	207	486	0.21		1.12
Cat 12	0.22	136	166	3.1	31.3	11.4	3261	342	6.6	406	0.44		1.05
Dog Lotna I	0.15	131	142	4.4	25.7	4.9	1324	74	191	54	0.58		0.88
Dog Lotna II	0.26	146	148	3.6	8.2	3.7	800	10	46	42	0.41		1.20
Dog 1	0.19	102	164	4.4	40.4	3.4	2221	649	622	412	0.67		1.07
Dog 2	0.24	126	146	2.8	12.0	2.2	149	216	128	138	0.77		0.99
Dog 3	0.71	133	160	2.9	13.2	2.8	1328	1	121	103	0.74		1.06
Cat 3			1.2	3.8	113.7	10.0							
Cat 4			149	3.3	11.1	8.2							
Cat 5			148	3.2	144.2	7.4							
Cat 7			136	4	120.6	9.4							

We net  $H^+$  out of  $H^+$  from the  
crypt and the stomach cavity

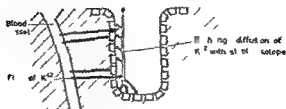


Fig 7.5 Proposed scheme for the transport of  $H^+$  from plasma to the stomach cavity during secretory arrest

the blood flow in the mucosa is increased and thus larger amounts of radioactive plasma pass by

In these experiments the volume in the stomach was not renewed at the sampling times after removal of a 0.2 ml sample for the analyses the rest of the gastric contents were returned to the stomach. Thus a peak such as was found in the secretion experiments (where the stomach was emptied completely at each sampling) would be manifest as a region of much greater slope in the graph relating the specific activity to time. In addition the intragastric volume was rather large and in these cases there was a rather large dilution of any isotope entering which would have the effect of making the determination of such a peak in sodium output more difficult. The  $H^+$  output was in any case so low as to be barely significant.

The low  $H^+$  output seems likely to be due to the large intracellular dilution space available to it (Fig 7.5).

*The importance of the crypts for the ion exchange* Except for part of the mucus the gastric secretion originates from the crypts in the stomach wall. In cats these crypts are about 1 mm in length (TOLDT 1881). The distance between the extracellular space and the crypt lumen is of the order 10-50  $\mu$  (JONSON 1910). According to TOLDT (1881) there are about 70 crypts per  $mm^2$  of the stomach mucosa. The average diameter of the crypts (after histological treatment in which shrinking occurs which must give an underestimate) was about 0.05 mm (TOLDT 1881). These figures yield a very approximate value of about 12  $mm^2$  of internal crypt area per  $mm^2$  of surface area tangential to the stomach cavity. This calculation suggests that by far the biggest area for diffusion is in the crypts which would thus be expected to constitute

The specific activity of sodium in the gastric contents never fell below that of plasma. It must therefore be concluded that unlike  $H^{23}$  the  $Na^{24}$  in its passage into the crypt lumen does not become diluted by the addition of its non radioactive isotope. Thus the sodium pattern is consistent with a simpler e.g. a unicompartmental system such as diffusion through the mucosa. The intracellular sodium content is much lower than that of potassium and the intracellular compartment is thus a much smaller dilution pool for  $Na^{24}$  than for  $K^4$ . The specific activity of sodium emerging from a cell will therefore be much nearer the plasma level than in the case of potassium.

After the peak period the specific activity of sodium in the gastric secretion did not fall lower than that in plasma.

## *II $H^4$ and $Na^{24}$ injected intravenously and with an isotonic $Na/K$ solution instilled into the non secreting stomach*

When comparing the results with the different experimental conditions the question arises as to whether other models fitting the experimental data can be proposed. What here has been called diffusion might be influenced by parameters which are difficult to measure such as non acid components. It is also quite possible that other factors exert some influence on the movements of the radioactive tracers through the stomach mucosa. The electrical potential (i.e. the forces manifested as the electrical potential) might be different (although this difference is not very big) during secretion and secretory arrest. Here a change in electrical potential in the mucosa should however influence sodium and potassium in the same direction and is thus unlikely to account for the result obtained. A result here worthy of note is that sodium enters the instilled volume less slowly than potassium during secretory arrest (Fig 7.2) although the ionic mobility of potassium is greater. The non secretory conditions do not differ from those at secretion only by virtue of the absence of the water secretion. In secretion there is also secretion of  $H^+$  and  $Cl^-$ . A low pH of the crypts for instance may profoundly affect the permeability properties of the crypt walls. Other local conditions resulting from secretion such as changed potential differences across the parietal cell membranes may also be important as regards  $H^+$  (or  $Na$ ) movements. In addition it must be noted that the functional vascular pattern is also much affected in the secretory state. During secretion

No net flux of water from the  
crypt into the stomach cavity

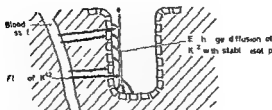


Fig 7.5 Proposed scheme for the transport of  $K^+$  from plasma to the stomach cavity during secretory arrest

the blood flow in the mucosa is increased and thus larger amounts of radioactive plasma pass by

In these experiments the volume in the stomach was not renewed at the sampling times after removal of a 0.2 ml sample for the analyses the rest of the gastric contents were returned to the stomach. Thus a peak such as was found in the secretion experiments (where the stomach was emptied completely at each sampling) would be manifest as a region of much greater slope in the graph relating the specific activity to time. In addition the intragastric volume was rather large and in these cases there was a rather large dilution of any isotope entering which would have the effect of making the determination of such a peak in sodium output more difficult. The  $K^+$  output was in any case so low as to be barely significant.

The low  $K^+$  output seems likely to be due to the large intracellular dilution space available to it (Fig 7.5).

*The importance of the crypts for the ion exchange.* Except for part of the mucus the gastric secretion originates from the crypts in the stomach wall. In cats the crypts are about 1 mm in length (TOLDT 1891). The distance between the extracellular space and the crypt lumen is of the order 10–50  $\mu$  (JONSSON 1910). According to TOLDT (1891) there are about 70 crypts per  $mm^2$  of the stomach mucosa. The average diameter of the crypts (after histological treatment in which shrinking occurs which must give an underestimate) was about 0.03 mm (TOLDT 1891). These figures yield a very approximate value of about 12  $mm^2$  of internal crypt area per  $mm^2$  of surface area tangential to the stomach cavity. This calculation suggests that by far the biggest area for diffusion is in the crypts which would thus be expected to constitute

the predominant transport route from both the extracellular and the intracellular spaces to the stomach cavity

During secretion the ions can be transported through the crypts into the stomach cavity with the water flux. In the absence of secretion transport from crypt to stomach cavity can occur only by diffusion if there is no mechanical stirring or squeezing

HEINZ (1951) in an attempt to prove the validity of the glycine instillation method for determining the primary acidity calculated that in a resting stomach glycine diffusion along a crypt  $30\mu$  in diameter and  $300\mu$  long should be 90% complete in 1½ minutes. This calculation applied however only to the outer wider part of the crypt and the real diffusion time should therefore be somewhat greater. It however seems likely that the time required for diffusion of  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  into the crypts from the stomach cavity is not the rate limiting step as regards their disappearance after instillation.

As it takes less than 8 minutes for the tracer peak to appear in the gastric contents during steady state secretion isotope transport from the plasma to the crypts must take not more than 8 minutes.

In the instillation experiments at secretory arrest with the isotopes given intravenously  $K^4$  output into the stomach was very slow while there was a much greater and steady increase of  $Na^4$  (Fig. 7.2).

Regarding the sodium the plasma specific activity is that after the  $Na^{24}$  has already been diluted with a large sodium pool in plasma and in the extracellular or intracellular spaces there is a relatively much smaller diluting pool for Na than for K. Hence it is not unexpected that the  $Na^{24}$  activity in stomach is much higher compared with the plasma level than in the case of K. This should also mean that the actual  $K^4$  output to the stomach should be less.

This fact that sodium increases less slowly than potassium in the instilled intragastric solution may involve other factors. It has been found also that sodium apparently moves faster than potassium in other biological tissues. Thus for instance TAYLOR, TFORELL and SPIROPOULOS (1961) showed that intracellularly injected  $Na^{24}$  passed squid axon membranes faster than  $K^{42}$ .

An active process such as expulsion of sodium from the intracellular space as proposed by USSING (see for instance USSING *et al.* 1960) could be utilized to explain a smaller distribution volume in the gastric mucosa for sodium compared with potassium. The net effect with such a system on  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^4$  passing through the mucosa

would be that potassium would be retained more than sodium similarly as for instance in gel filtration with apparently different distribution volumes for the ions (MARSDEN 1963)

### III $K^{42}$ and $Na^{24}$ in the instilled volume during secretory arrest

These experiments show that diffusion from the stomach is a rather slow process with less than 40% disappearance of the specific activity from the instilled volume in an hour. The observation that the  $K^{42}$  activity disappears somewhat faster than  $Na^{24}$  from the stomach supports the hypothesis that  $K^{42}$  equilibrates with a mass of potassium larger than the Na pool available for  $Na^{24}$  equilibration. This must mean that the  $K^{42}$  passes largely into the intracellular space (This is in accordance with the conclusion that potassium to a certain part exchanges with the intracellular space in the cells in the stomach mucosa via the crypts.)

## General Summary

*The aim of the investigation was to study the kinetics of volume secretion and ionic transport rate ( $H^+$ ,  $H^+$ ,  $Na^+$  and  $Cl^-$ ) in the intact stomach of man and dog. Especial emphasis has been placed on the  $[H^+]$  and  $[K^+]$  relationships.*

### *Procedure*

*Human subjects and dogs with gastric fistulae were used. A steady gastric secretion rate was induced by the continuous intravenous injection of histamine. An antihistamine (chlorpheniramine) was given before the injection of histamine in order to reduce its side effects. The bidirectional movements of potassium and sodium were also studied with the use of radioisotopes. These experiments were performed on dogs and cats mostly under general anaesthesia.*

### *Methods of analysis*

*The methods used are described in the text in connection with the relevant chapters. They include the following analyses: (1) acidity, (2) pH, (3) chloride, (4) sodium and potassium, (5) radioactive sodium and potassium.*

### *The relationship between the injection rate of histamine and rate of gastric secretion*

*The importance of steady state conditions during stimulation is stressed. The relationship was found to be well described by an exponential equation as proposed by ÖBRINK (1948). It was shown that the antihistamine (chlorpheniramine) had no effect on the gastric secretion. Three parameters describing the relationship between the rate of secretion and the dose of histamine were determined and dis-*



cussed. They were the maximal rate of gastric secretion, the sensitivity of the mucosa to stimulation and the basal secretion. An approximation test for a more rapid estimation of the parameters mentioned is described.

In man a basal secretion was always observed but this could not be conclusively demonstrated in dog. The initial slope of the rate of volume secretion as a function of the rate of histamine injection was proposed as a measure of the sensitivity of the gastric mucosa to histamine stimulation and thus should give additional information concerning hyper- or hypo-secretion of gastric juice.

### *The relationship between the acidity and rate of gastric secretion*

The experimental data fitted well the concept of a diffusion like process as the main factor for the acidity regulation. The amount of bound acidity was observed to be almost negligible. Quantitatively the same relationship was found to be valid in man and dog. On theoretical grounds different relationships between acidity and rate of gastric secretion can be expected if different degrees of mixing between the newly formed gastric acid and the pre-existing gastric contents occur.

The experimental results indicated that normally the mixing is somewhat incomplete. The primary acidity in man was found to be lower than in dog. No evidence was found for other mechanisms that secondarily might lower the acidity in man and the difference in primary acidity in man and dog was considered to be real.

An approximation test to evaluate the acidity-secretion rate relationship more rapidly with a graphical method was described and carried out.

The permeability coefficient  $I$  was proposed as a measure of a possible hyper- or hypoacidity.

### *The relationship between $[Cl^-]$ and rate of gastric secretion*

This relation was found to be quantitatively the same both in man and dog. The sum of  $[K^+]$ ,  $[Na^+]$  and  $[H^+]$  was equal to  $[Cl^-]$ .  $[Cl^-]$  in the primary secretion was calculated with a graphical method and found to be similar in man and dog.

## General Summary

*The aim of the investigation was to study the kinetics of volume secretion and ionic transport rate ( $H^+$ ,  $K^+$ ,  $Na^+$  and  $Cl^-$ ) in the intact stomach of man and dog. Especial emphasis has been placed on the  $[H^+]$  and  $[K^+]$  relationships.*

### *Procedure*

Human subjects and dogs with gastric fistulae were used. A steady gastric secretion rate was induced by the continuous intravenous injection of histamine. An antihistamine (chlorpheniramine) was given before the injection of histamine in order to reduce its side effects. The bidirectional movements of potassium and sodium were also studied with the use of radioisotopes. These experiments were performed on dogs and cats mostly under general anaesthesia.

### *Methods of analysis*

The methods used are described in the text in connection with the relevant chapters. They include the following analyses: (1) acidity, (2) pH, (3) chloride, (4) sodium and potassium, (5) radioactive sodium and potassium.

### *The relationship between the injection rate of histamine and rate of gastric secretion*

The importance of steady state conditions during stimulation is stressed. The relationship was found to be well described by an exponential equation as proposed by ÖBERG (1948). It was shown that the antihistamine (chlorpheniramine) had no effect on the gastric secretion. Three parameters describing the relationship between the rate of secretion and the dose of histamine were determined and dis-

During secretion the intravenously injected  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  were found to exhibit a peak value in the gastric secretion. After the peak the specific activity of potassium was found to be considerably lower at the same time as the specific activity of sodium was almost the same as in plasma.

When  $K^{42}$  and  $Na^{24}$  were given intravenously during secretory arrest only part of the sodium activity and almost none of the potassium activity had passed into the stomach after an hour.

During secretory arrest with the isotopes instilled in the non secreting stomach the specific activity was found to decline by 23-36% in an hour with a tendency for potassium to disappear a little faster.

To explain these results it is proposed that potassium in the gastric secretion originates at least partly from the intracellular space in the gastric mucosa.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I want to thank the members of the staff of the Institute of Physiology, University of Uppsala, for many valuable discussions and much useful advice.

For technical assistance my thanks are due to Mrs. Barbro Nordgren, Mrs. Stina Annhagen and Miss Karin Larsson. Financial support for the work has been given by the Medical Faculty, University of Uppsala, Regnell's donationsfond, P. A. and A. A. Pettersons fond, Magnus Bergvalls Stiftelse and Svenska Sällskapet för Medicin & Förening.

### *Relationship between $[Na^+]$ and rate of gastric secretion*

The same quantitative relationship was found in man and dog. The data fitted reasonably to a hyperbolic regression equation derived from the diffusion hypothesis. The results do not contradict the assumption that there is no sodium in the primary secretion.

### *The relationship between $[K^+]$ and rate of gastric secretion*

During a steady rate of gastric secretion  $[H^+]$  was observed to be fairly constant. A straight line relationship was found to fit the experimental data rather well both in man and dog. An essential difference between man and dog was found. With increasing rates of gastric secretion  $[H^+]$  increased in man. In dog  $[H^+]$  remained about the same concentration at different secretory rates. At very low rates of secretion  $[K^+]$  tended to be the same in man and dog. The  $H^+$  content in the gastric secretion was concluded to be dependent on the secretory process.

The lower primary acidity in man corresponded with a higher  $[H^+]$  than in dog, so that the sum of  $[H^+]$  and  $[K^+]$  in the primary secretion was similar in man and dog. It was proposed that  $H^+$  in the gastric secretion was partly of intracellular origin.

### *The effect of histamine on plasma $[K^+]$*

It has been reported that histamine liberates potassium from body tissues (e.g. MACMILLAN *et al.* 1956). The importance of these findings were investigated in order to assess their possible significance with regard to the differences in  $[H^+]$  in gastric secretion between man and dog. Comparison of plasma  $[K^+]$  before and during histamine administration (*in vitro* and *in vivo*) showed no significant evidence of increase in plasma  $[K^+]$  with histamine administration. The conclusion was drawn that  $[H^+]$  in gastric secretion depends on some local process in the mucosa.

### *Analysis of the fluxes of K and Na in the stomach*

The specific activities of potassium and sodium were measured in plasma and gastric contents during steady gastric secretion and during secretory arrest.

- FICHELBERGER L. and M. ROMA Water and electrolyte distribution in blood and tissues in normal dogs following hypotonic saline injections *Am J Physiol* 1949 159 57-66
- EMMELIN N. G. HANLSON and F. WICKSELL Histamine in plasma and methods of its estimation *Acta Physiol Scand* 1941 2 123-147
- FENN W. O. T. R. NOOVAN L. J. MULLINS and L. HAEGE The exchange of radioactive potassium with body potassium *Am J Physiol* 1941 135 149-163
- FISHER R. H. and J. V. HUNT The inorganic components of gastric secretion *J Physiol* 1950 111 138-149
- FLENSBORG E. W. Ventrikelsekretionen hos normale og syge spæd og småbørn Erh. Flensborgs forlag — Roskilde 1944
- FORBES G. H. Inorganic chemical heterogeneity in man and animals *Growth* 1955 19 15-87
- FUJII R. and F. SAKATA Zur Frühdiagnostik der tuberkulösen Meningitis mit Uranin (Fluorescein Natrium) *Zeitschr. Kinderheilkunde* 1953 13 1-7
- GRAY J. S. G. R. BUCHER and A. H. HARMAN The relationships between total acid and neutral chlorides of gastric juice *Am J Physiol* 1941 137 504-516
- GRAY J. V. and G. R. BUCHER The composition of gastric juice as a function of the rate of secretion *Am J Physiol* 1941 133 442-550
- GUDIKSEN F. Investigations on the composition of gastric juice *Comptes Rendus des Travaux du Laboratoire Carlsberg* 1950 97 145-288
- CUTLER I. W. and F. W. STEWART Histologic basis for anacidity in gastric disease *Arch. Surgery* 1948 57 618-673
- HANSON W. E. M. I. GROSSMAN and A. C. IVY Doses of histamine producing minimal and maximal gastric secretory responses in dog and man *Am J Physiol* 1948 153 442-458
- HARRIS J. B. H. FRANK and I. S. EDRLMAN Effect of potassium on ion transport and bioelectrical potentials of frog gastric mucosa *Am J Physiol* 1958 195 499-504
- HASTINGS A. H. and L. EICHENBERGER The exchange of salt and water between muscle and blood. I. The effect of an increase in total body water produced by the intravenous injection of isotonic salt solutions *J. Biol. Chem.* 1937 127 73-93
- HEINZ E. Über das primäre Azidat der Magensaure *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1951 6 434-444
- HEINZ E. and K. J. ÖRSKOV Acid formation and acidity control in the stomach *Physiol. Rev.* 1954 34 513-63
- HIRSCHOWITZ H. I. Gastric osmolar clearance and ionic barrier: two mechanisms of electrolyte secretion by the human stomach *J. Appl. Physiol.* 1960 15 837-838
- HIRSCHOWITZ H. I. Electrolytes in human gastric secretion: Observations and a theory *Am. J. Digest. Dis.* 1961 6 199-238
- HOLLANDER F. and G. R. COWILL Studies in gastric secretion. I. Gastric juice of constant acidity *J. Biol. Chem.* 1931 91 151-197

## REFERENCES

- ADAM H M W I CARD M J RIDDELL M ROBERTS J A STRONG and B WOOLF Dose Response curves for the effect of histamine on acid gastric secretion in man *Brit J Pharmacol* 1954 9 329-334
- AMBRUS J L and C M AMBRUS Effect of histamine and antihistamines on the liberation of certain shock substances *Am J Med Sci* 1952 223 216
- BARER R and F M GAFFNEY The use of dilute alkali in haemoglobinometry *Clinica Chimica Acta* 1957 2 140-156
- BERGER E H The distribution of parietal cells in the stomach a histotopographic study *Am J Anatomy* 1934 54 87-114
- BERNSTEIN R E Potassium and sodium balance in mammalian red cells *Science* 1954 120 459-460
- BILL A K J ÖBRINK and H R ULFENDAHL An easy way of calculation the composition of a two component system from two channel spectrometry *Int J Rad Isotopes* 1959 7 152-154
- BLAIR E L A A HARPER D HARRIS J D REED and R WILKINSON Potassium and hydrogen ion content of histamine stimulated gastric secretion in the cat *Proc Physiol Soc* 1960 16-17 Sept 12-13
- BLAIR E L A A HARPER and A K YASSIV The effect of a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor upon histamine stimulated electrolyte secretion by the stomach *Proc Physiol Soc* 1961 3-4 Nov 26
- BRUN C Klorbestemmelse *Nordisk Medicin* 1949 42 1774
- BURGEN A S V The secretion of potassium in saliva *J Physiol* 1950 132 20-39
- CARD W I and I N MARKS cited by Card W I and W Circus Modern trends in gastroenterology (London Butterworth 1957 182)
- COX A J Jr Stomach size and its relation to chronic peptic ulcer *A M A Arch Pathology* 1952 54 407-422
- DANIELSON B and U SJOSTRAND Counting accuracy of gamma spectrometric analysis of mixtures of radioisotopes *Acta Soc Med Upsal* 1963 In press
- DAVENPORT H W and F ALZAMORA Sodium potassium chloride and water in frog gastric mucosa *Am J Physiol* 1962 20 711-715
- DRAGSTEDT L R H A OBERHELMAN Jr and F R WOODWARD Physiology of gastric secretion and its relation to the ulcer problem *J Am Med Assoc* 1951 147 1615-1620
- DUBOIS D and E F DUBOIS Clinical calorimetry 10 A formula to estimate the approximate surface area if height and weight be known *Arch Int Med* 1916 17 863-871

- potassium levels of cats *J Pharmacol Exp Therapeutics* 1906 113 181-190
- MACVILLAN W H Exogenous and endogenous histamine induced potassium release as modified by the antihistaminics *Am J Physiol* 1937 191 587-590
- MARKS I N S A KOMAROV and H SHAY Acid secretory responses to histamine and the parietal cell mass in dog *Am J Physiol* 1958 195 528-534
- MARKS I N S A KOMAROV and H SHAY Maximal acid secretory response to histamine and its relation to parietal cell mass in the dog *Am J Physiol* 1960 199 579-588
- MARSDEN V V H *Archie for Hemo* 1963 (in press)
- MARTIN L Electrolytes water and nitrogen distribution in mucosa and muscularis of human stomach and colon *Trans Am Clin Climatolog Assoc* 1955 67 25-45
- MOERSCH R U A B RIVERS and C G MORTLOCK Some results of the gastric secretory response of patients having duodenal ulcer noted during the administration of benadryl *Gastroenterology* 1946 7 91-99
- NADLER C S Recent advances in potassium metabolism *Am J Med Sci* 1953 226 88-103
- NORDGREN B and H J ÖBRINK The effect of atropine on the acidity of a denervated gastric pouch *Acta Physiol Scand* 1907 40 297-304
- NORDGREN B Aspects of gastric acid secretion in man *Acta Med Scand* 1908 161 221-231
- ÖBRINK H J Studies on the kinetics of the parietal secretion of the stomach *Acta Physiol Scand* 1948 16 Suppl 31
- ÖBRINK H J and H H ULFENDARF Gamma-spectrometry for analysis of mixtures of radioisotopes in biological and medical research *Int J Pat Isotopes* 1959 5 99-100
- ÖBRINK H J 1963 in press
- PARROT J L J THOUVENOT and S LONGUEVALLE Liberation de potassium par l'histamine Etude sur le jeuno déon isolé du cobaye *Comptes Rendus Séances Soc Biol* 1909 146 359-36
- PARROT J L J THOUVENOT and S LONGUEVALLE Liberation de potassium par les organes isolés du cobaye Action de l'histamine et de l'un de ses antagonistes de synthèse *J Physiol (Paris)* 1953 45 15-18
- FOYDEN F Hemolysis and related phenomena Churchill Ltd London 1948
- PROSSER C L Comparative animal physiology W B Saunders Philadelphia and London 1950
- RADWIN H E P BENDITT H B GREENLEE and L R DRAGSTEDT Studies of the parenteral and topical effects of antihistamines on gastric secretion *Gastroenterology* 1958 34 1-15
- RINDFELT M J J A SROOG and D CAMERON The electrolyte con

- HOLLANDER F Studies in gastric secretion IV Variations in the chlorine content of gastric juice and their significance *J Biol Chem* 1932 97 585-604
- HOLLANDER F and A PENNER Secretory studies in whole stomachs The determination of phenol red in gastric contents *Am J Digest Dis* 1940 7 199-202
- HOLLANDER F Gastric secretion of electrolytes *Fed Proc* 1957 11 706-714
- HOLLANDER F and H COLCHER Evidence for the independence of  $\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{HCl}$  efflux into gastric secretion *Am J Physiol* 1960 198 729-736
- HUNT J N and A W KAY The nature of gastric hypersecretion of acid in patients with duodenal ulcer *Brit Med J* 1954 11 1444-1446
- IHRE B Human Gastric Secretion *Acta Med Scand* 1938 Suppl 90
- INGRAHAM R C and M B VISSCHER Analyses of gastric mucosa and pancreatic gland tissue of dog for  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  Na K Cl and  $\text{PO}_4$  *Proc Soc Exp Biol and Med* 1939 40 147-149
- JOHNSON F P The development of the mucus membrane of the oesophagus stomach and small intestine in the human embryo *Am J Anatomy* 1910 10 521-561
- KAJSER K Magsaftundersökningar på barn Stockholm 1943
- KAY A Effect of large doses of histamine on gastric secretion of  $\text{HCl}$  *Brit Med J* 1953 11 77-80
- KERR E E Studies on the inorganic composition of blood IV The relationship of potassium to the acid soluble phosphorus fractions *J Biol Chem* 1937 117 227-235
- LANS H S I F STEIN Jr and K A MEYER The relation of serum potassium to erythrocyte potassium in normal subjects and patients with potassium deficiency *Am J Med Sci* 1952 223 65-74
- LINDE S T TEORELL and K J ÖBRINK Experiments on the primary acidity of the gastric juice *Acta Physiol Scand* 1947 14 220-232
- LINDE E Studies on the stimulation mechanism of gastric secretion *Acta Physiol Scand* 1950 21 Suppl 74
- LINDE S and K J ÖBRINK On the behavior of electrolytes in gastric juice induced by histamine *Acta Physiol Scand* 1950 21 54-60
- LINDERSTRÖM LANG K and H HOLTER Beiträge zur enzymatischen Histochemie X Über die Verteilung von Säure in der Schleimhaut des Schweinemagens *Hoppe Seylers Zeitsch Physiol* 1934 226 173-176
- MCELIN T W and H T HORTON Clinical observations on the use of benadryl Its effect on histamine induced gastric acidity in man *Gastroenterology* 1946 7 100-107
- MACMILLAN W H Effects of histamine on skeletal muscle *J Pharmacol Exp Therapeutics* 1955 113 35
- MACMILLAN W H Actions of exogenous and endogenous histamine on cellular potassium *Fed Proc* 1956 15 123
- MACMILLAN W H and J R VANE Effects of histamine on plasma



in man and an interpretation of hypoacidity and achylia *Acta Med Scand* 1936 90 543-570

WERTHER J L J G LARKER and F HOLLANDER Potassium in histamine stimulated gastric secretion in man *Gastroenterology* 1960 38 368-373

WOOD D R The effect on gastric secretion of different rates of histamine infusion and of Necantergan *Brit J Pharmacol* 1948 3 231-236

- centration of human gastric secretion *Quarterly J Exp Physiol* 1960 45 1-11
- SAEMUNDSSON, J Potassium concentration in human gastric juice *Acta Med Scand* 1948 130 Suppl 208
- SANGSTER W M I GROSSMAN and A C IVY The effect of two new histamine antagonists (Benadryl and Compound 63) on histamine stimulated gastric secretion in the dog *Gastroenterology* 1946 6 436-438
- SCOTT G H Growth of crypts and glands of the human stomach *Am J Dis Children* 1925 30 147-173
- SNEDECOR G W Statistical methods Chapter 13 Iowa State College Press 1956
- STEWART J M Effect of barbiturate anesthesia on potassium metabolism of the rabbit and dog *Am J Physiol* 1950 163 622-632
- SØRENSEN S P L Enzymstudien *Biochemische Zeitschrift* 1908 7 45-101
- TASAKI I T TEORELL and C S SPYROPOULUS Movement of radioactive tracers across squid axon membrane *Am J Physiol* 1961 200 11-22
- TEORELL T Untersuchungen über die Magensaftsekretion *Skandinavisches Archiv Physiol* 1933 66 225-318
- TEORELL T The relations between histamine stimulation and response of gastric secretion *Skandinavisches Archiv Physiol* 1937 77 81
- TEORELL T Kinetics of distribution of substances administered to the body I The extravascular modes of administration *Arch internat Pharmacodyn et de Therapie* 1937 57 205-223
- TEORELL T Kinetics of distribution of substances administered to the body II The intravascular modes of administration *Arch internat Pharmacodyn et de Therapie* 1937 57 226-240
- TEORELL T On the permeability of the stomach mucosa for acids and some other substances *J Gen Physiol* 1939 23 263-274
- TEORELL T On the primary acidity of the gastric juice *J Physiol* 1940 97 308-315
- TEORELL T Electrolyte diffusion in relation to the acidity regulation of the gastric juice *Gastroenterology* 1947 9 425-443
- THULL N B and W S REHV Composition and osmolarity of gastric juice as a function of plasma osmolarity *Am J Physiol* 1956 189 317-324
- TOLDT C Die Entwicklung und Ausbildung der Drüsen des Magens *Sitzungsberichte der Math Naturh Classe der K Akademie d Wissenschaften Wien* 1881 82 57-128
- TONGEN L A The quantitative relationship between parietal cells and gastric acidity *Surgery* 1950 28 1009-1015
- USSING H H P ARUHOFFER J H THAYSEV and N A THORV Handbuch der Experimentellen Pharmakologie The Alkali Metal Ions in Biology Springer Verlag Berlin 1960 13
- WELIN G and A R FRISK The amount and acidity of gastric secretion





ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL. 58 SUPPLEMENTUM 203

FROM THE INSTITUTE OF NEUROBIOLOGY MEDICAL FACULTY,  
UNIVERSITY OF GÖTEBORG GÖTEBORG SWEDEN

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN ISOLATED  
NEURONAL AND VASCULAR GLIA WITH  
RESPECT TO RESPIRATORY ACTIVITY

BY

ANDERS HAMBERGER

GÖTEBORG 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL 58 SUPPLEMENTUM 703

FROM THE INSTITUTE OF NEUROPHYSIOLOGY MEDICAL FACULTY  
UNIVERSITY OF GÖTEBORG GÖTEBORG SWEDEN

DIFFERENCE BETWEEN ISOLATED  
NEURONAL AND VASCULAR GLIA WITH  
RESPECT TO RESPIRATORY ACTIVITY

BY

ANDERS HANBERGER

GÖTEBORG 1963





# CONTENTS

## Introduction

## CHAPTER I

### *Historical Background*

Morphological Aspect

Biochemical Aspects

Histochemistry

Quantitative macrochemical analyses

Quantitative histochemistry

## CHAPTER II

### *Material and Methods*

Microdissection

Determination of Dry Weight

Morphological Features of Cerebral Material

Morphological Features During Developmental Experiment

Analytical Methods

Error of the Method

Statistical Analyses

## CHAPTER III

### *Results*

#### *Controls*

Cytochrome Oxidase

Succinate Oxidation

$\alpha$ -Ketoglutarate Oxidation

Glutamate Oxidation

#### *Stimulated Animal*

Vestibular Stimulation

Hypoxia

Tris Hydroxypropene

Dinitrophenol

*Ribonucleic Acid Content of Glial Cells*

Translated from the Swedish by  
**ERICA ODELBERG**

**GÖTEBORG**  
**ELANDERS BOKTRYCKERI & FÖRLAG**  
**1963**

# CONTENTS

## Introduction

## CHAPTER I

### Historical Background

- Morphological Aspects
- Historical Aspect
- Histochemistry
- Quantitative macrochemical analyses
- Quantitative histo and cytochemistry

## CHAPTER II

### Material and Methods

- Microdissection
- Determination of Dry Weight
- Morphological Features of Cerebral Material
- Morphological Features During Divergent Experiment
- Analytical Method
- Error of the Method
- Statistical Analyses

## CHAPTER III

### Results

#### Controls

- Cytochrome Oxidase
- Succinate Oxidation
- $\alpha$ -Ketoglutarate Oxidation
- Glutamate Oxidation

#### Stimulated Animals

- Vertebral Stimulation
- Hypoxia
- Triyano Amro Propen
- Dentrophonol

Ribonucleic Acid Content of Glial Cells

Translated from the Swedish by  
ERICA ODEIBERG

GÖTEBORG  
ELANDERS BOKTRICKÄRRI AKTIEBOLAG  
1963

## INTRODUCTION

Theories in contradiction to the original concept of the neuroglia as a purely supportive tissue in the nervous system were put forward as early as the 19th century. Thus Nansen (1887) postulated that the glial cells are the site of intelligence since their number increases with rising age.

Considerable interest has long been focused on the morphology of the neuroglial cells and the features established 40–50 years ago by light microscopic studies are in fact still mainly valid today.

On the other hand many years elapsed before attempts were made to analyze the function of these cells experimentally, even if certain conclusions had been drawn from studies of pathological material. As late as 10 years ago practically no data were available on this matter. Glees pointed out in 1933 that the observations that would be instrumental in solving the problem of glial function would in all probability be made by the biochemists of the future. Actually it is only during the past five years that the neuroglia and its function has entered into the foreground of experimental research. The conference on the biology of neuroglia held in 1956 was largely responsible for stimulating work that would lead to elucidating the properties of the glial cells. This conference was followed by publication of the monograph *Biology of Neuroglia* (Windle 1958) in which the results already achieved were presented as well as accounts of the methods that had proved most appropriate in various fields.

Two questions that are perhaps of essential importance as far as the glial cells are concerned are their relation to the nerve cells and to the blood vessels. In the latter case interest is focused particularly on their role in the exchange of material between blood and brain.

The present paper comprises a report of the following experimental studies:

- 1 Separation of glial populations on the micro scale in order to produce a biological model system of the grey matter in the brain.
- 2 Attempts to characterize the different components of the system biochemically.
- 3 Attempts to produce specific chemical effects on the components by means of exogenous stimuli.

## CHAPTER IV

General Discussion

---

Summary

References

Theories in contradiction to the original concept of the neuroglia as a purely supportive tissue in the nervous system were put forward as early as the 19th century. Thus Varsen (1857) postulated that the glial cells are the site of intelligence since their number increases with rising age.

Considerable interest has long been focused on the morphology of the neuroglial cells and the features established 40-50 years ago by light microscopic studies are in fact still mainly valid today.

On the other hand many years elapsed before attempts were made to analyze the function of these cells experimentally even if certain conclusions had been drawn from studies of pathological material. As late as 10 years ago practically no data were available on this matter. Glees pointed out in 1933 that the observations that would be instrumental in solving the problem of glial function would in all probability be made by the biochemists of the future. Actually it is only during the past five years that the neuroglia and its function has entered into the foreground of experimental research. The conference on the biology of neuroglia held in 1956 was largely responsible for stimulating work that would lead to elucidating the properties of the glial cell. This conference was followed by publication of the monograph *Biology of Neuroglia* (Windle 1958) in which the results already achieved were presented as well as accounts of the methods that had proved most appropriate in various fields.

Two questions that are perhaps of essential importance as far as the glial cell are concerned are their relation to the nerve cells and to the blood vessels. In the latter case interest is focused particularly on their role in the exchange of material between blood and brain.

The present paper comprises a report of the following experimental studies:

- 1 Separation of glial populations on the micro scale in order to produce a biological model system of the grey matter in the brain.

- 2 Attempt to characterize the different components of the system biochemically.

- 3 Attempt to produce specific chemical effects on the components by means of x-ray ionization stimuli.

The biological system consisted of a nerve cell and glia surrounding it as well as of glia surrounding a capillary pre or postcapillary vessel. The main interest was concentrated on the activity and reactions of the glial cells. The analyses were made on isolated glial cells and nerve cells within the lateral vestibular nucleus of Deiters in the rabbit. The samples for analysis comprised approximately  $10^{-8}$  g of tissue since this quantity has earlier proved to be a prerequisite for investigation of material that is morphologically homogeneous. Zentgraf's (1953) micro dialer technique was used for the metabolic studies.



## HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

## Morphological Aspects

Following Virchow's discovery in 1846 of the glial cells as the non neuronal cellular component of nervous tissue the advances in glial research are attributable to numerous workers whose names are by now classical. Among them was Holmgren (1901, 1914, 1917) who made a series of morphological observations on the intimate relation between neuroglial cells and nerve cells. He demonstrated the existence of fine intercellular connexions and concluded that the glial cells were implicated in nutrition of the nerve cells.

The purely descriptive era ended around 1930. By then — due foremost to the work of Cajal and Hortega — three types of neuroglial cell were distinguished: 1) *astrocytes* star shaped cells with expansions of varying length; 2) *oligodendrocytes* adendritic cells with a small round nucleus and scanty cytoplasm; and 3) *microglia* adendritic cells with a rod like nucleus as the main characteristic (Glees 1951).

The *astrocytes* are larger than the *oligodendrocytes* and have a bigger lighter less rounded nucleus as well as distinct fibrous expansions. In addition the *astrocytes* have thicker processes (vascular end feet).

Some difficulty is encountered in distinguishing *astrocytes* from *oligodendrocytes* in view of the existence of many transitional forms. This applies especially in reactive stages. It has therefore been conjectured that in certain cases the *astrocyte* may actually be a reactive form of *oligodendrocyte* (Ramon Moliner 1954; Koenig, Bunge & Bunge 1962).

The *astrocytes* are found innervated between the nerve fibres in the white matter of the brain as well as in the borderline layer to the pia mater. Their occurrence in the grey matter varies from one region to the next. They are perineuronal and/or perivascular satellites but not in the same way as the *oligodendrocytes* since they are attached to the neuron or blood vessel by their processes and not by the cell body. Certain *astrocytes* do however have numerous moss like expansions the whole cell body then lying directly on the vessel wall.

The *oligodendrocytes* are most abundant in the white matter of the brain where they are present in closely packed rows between the nerve fibres forming

The biological system consisted of a nerve cell and glia surrounding it as well as of glia surrounding a capillary pre or postcapillary vessel. The main interest was concentrated on the activity and reactions of the glial cells. The analyses were made on isolated glial cells and nerve cells within the lateral vestibular nucleus of Deiters in the rabbit. The samples for analysis comprised approximately  $10^{-8}$  g of tissue since this quantity has earlier proved to be a prerequisite for investigation of material that is morphologically homogeneous. Zeuthen's (1953) micro dialer technique was used for the metabolic studies.

## HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

## Morphological Aspects

Following Virchow's discovery in 1846 of the glial cells as the non neuronal cellular component of nervous tissue the advances in glial research are attributable to numerous workers whose names are by now classical. Among them was Holmgren (1901, 1914, 1917) who made a series of morphological observations on the intimate relation between neuroglial cells and nerve cells. He demonstrated the existence of fine intercellular connections and concluded that the glial cells were implicated in nutrition of the nerve cells.

The purely descriptive era ended around 1930. By then — due foremost to the work of Cajal and Hortega — three types of neuroglial cell were distinguished, i.e. 1) *astrocytes* star shaped cells with expansions of varying length, 2) *oligodendrocytes* adendritic cells with a small round nucleus and scanty cytoplasm and 3) *microglia* adendritic cells with a rod like nucleus as the main characteristic (Glees 1955).

The astrocytes are larger than the oligodendrocytes and have a bigger, lighter, less rounded nucleus as well as distinct fibrous expansions. In addition the astrocytes have sucker processes (vascular end feet).

Some difficulty is encountered in distinguishing astrocytes from oligodendrocytes in view of the existence of many transitional forms. This applies especially in reactive stages. It has therefore been conjectured that in certain cases the astrocyte may actually be a reactive form of oligodendrocyte (Ramón Moliner 1958, Koening, Bunge & Bunge 1962).

The astrocytes are found innervated between the nerve fibres in the white matter of the brain as well as in the borderline layer to the pia mater. Their occurrence in the grey matter varies from one region to the next. They are perineuronal and/or perivascular satellites but not in the same way as the oligodendrocytes since they are attached to the neuron or blood vessel by their processes and not by the cell body. Certain astrocytes do however have numerous moss like expansions, the whole cell body then lying directly on the vessel wall.

The *oligodendrocytes* are most abundant in the white matter of the brain where they are present in closely packed rows between the nerve fibres forming

The biological system consisted of a nerve cell and glia surrounding it as well as of glia surrounding a capillary pre or postcapillary vessel. The main interest was concentrated on the activity and reactions of the glial cells. The analyses were made on isolated glial cells and nerve cells within the lateral vestibular nucleus of Deiters in the rabbit. The samples for analysis comprised approximately  $10^{-8}$  g of tissue since this quantity has earlier proved to be a prerequisite for investigation of material that is morphologically homogeneous. Zeuthen's (1953) micro dialer technique was used for the metabolic studies.

neuronal glial cells and axon length in Clarke's column indicating that the nerve cell meets its increased energy requirements by appropriating "auxiliary metabolic units" principally in the form of oligodendrocytes.

The astrocytes whose processes cover not only vessels but also neurons and oligodendrocytes appear to act as a structural transport system between blood vessels and nerve cells (De Robertis & Gerschenfeld 1961). Moreover they undergo hypertrophy and hyperplasia after e.g. slight transient haemia (Lewis & Swank 1953) and in liver damage (Adams & Foley 1953). This is frequently associated with development of additional vascular connexions and sometimes amitotic cell division (Kenfield 1932, Lapham 1962) more often leading to nuclear increase than to cell proliferation.

*Electron microscopic studies.* Studies of the nervous system with this technique have shown that there is probably no extracellular space in the brain and that the entire space between nerve cells and vessels is filled by glial cells and their processes.

Controversial opinions are expressed regarding identification of the different types of glial cell. The majority of workers claim that those cells which have a cytoplasm with low electron density and are in intimate contact with vessels are astrocytes (Farquhar & Hartmann 1957, Maynard, Schultz & Pease 1957, Gerschenfeld, Wald & Zadunavsky 1959, De Robertis & Gerschenfeld 1961). Others regard them as oligodendrocytes (Lux 1958, Dempsey & Luse 1958, Palay 1958).

It has proved almost impossible to induce extracellular cerebral oedema. In experimental oedema of various kinds it is the astrocytes (De Robertis & Gerschenfeld 1961) — or according to the other view the oligodendrocytes — which swell instead. The other type of neuroglial cell does not seem to undergo a change with an increase in the water content of the brain but is slightly compressed like the neurons. Thus although the astrocytes (oligodendrocytes) are cellular they seem to function as a sort of extracellular space in the brain containing a pool of water, electrolytes and nutrients (van Harrevald & Schädé 1959).

Maynard, Schultz & Pease (1957) calculated that about 90% of the capillary surface of the brain is overlaid by astrocytes having special contact organs. Oligodendrocytes and neurons can also achieve partial contact with the capillaries but lack specialized processes.

*Tissue cultures of the nervous system* have opened up new aspects of the function of the glial cells. Both astrocytes and oligodendrocytes show rhythmic pulsatile activity (Lumsden & Pomerat 1951, Pomerat 1954, 1955, Berg & Hallen 1959). Uptake of substances by pinocytosis has been demonstrated (Klatzo & Miquel 1960) as well as transport through cells. Mitotic division

the interfascicular neuroglia. Functionally the cells are regarded as the central homologue of the neurilemmal cells of Schwann and have been shown to play a role in formation of the myelin sheath. The oligodendrocytes are also found in large numbers in the grey matter here they are perineuronal satellites, i.e., closely surrounding the nerve cell. They may be present as perivascular satellites with the cell body lying directly on the small blood vessel and the expansions entwining the endothelium (Penfield 1932).

The cells of the *microglia* — which derive from the mesoderm and do not belong to the neuroglia proper — are scattered throughout the white and the grey matter with both perineuronal and perivascular locations (Glees 1955).

Krupsin Exner (1952) made differential counts of the glial nuclei in various parts of the CNS. In the cerebral cortex he found about 60% astrocytes, 30% oligodendrocytes and 10% microglia. In the medulla oblongata the oligodendrocytes were far more numerous amounting to over 70% of all glial nuclei.

The *morphological relations* between nerve cells and vessels in the CNS have been extensively studied and divergent opinions have been expressed. Presumably the view most commonly held is that the nerve cell is separated from the surrounding capillaries by a layer of glial cells (Tschirgi 1938, Gerschenfeld, Wald, Zadunaisky & De Robertis 1959). Others have shown that the nerve cell is in direct contact with the vessel at some site or sites (Maynard, Schultz & Pease 1957, Cammermeyer 1960a, Luse & Harris 1960). The conditions evidently vary from one region of the brain to the next. According to Cammermeyer (1960b) the oligodendrocytes are arranged chiefly in rows alongside the vessels with large agglomerations at their branchings and around neurons. On the basis of this observation he suggested that the cerebral blood flow on the capillary level is controlled by the oligodendrocytes.

In recent years much attention has been focused on Holmgren's previously mentioned studies of the relation between glial cells and nerve cells. Thus Heus (1958) confirmed the existence of glial penetration into the nerve cell in the form of delicate invaginations. Scheibel & Scheibel (1956) described contacts between oligodendrocytes and the cell body, dendrites and axons of the neuron. It has long been known that the glial cells have the ability to react to damage (Spielmayer 1922). Reactions of both qualitative and quantitative nature by perineuronal glial cells are seen when increased functional demands are made on nerve cells (Kulenkampff 1952, Kulenkampff & Wustenfeld 1954) as well as after their stimulation (Kuntz & Sulkin 1947a, b). This suggests that the glial cells are involved in nerve cell activity. Friede & van Houten (1962) found a linear relation between the number of peri-

Pubinstein Klatzo & Visquel (1962) found no difference between the enzyme activity of astrocytes and oligodendrocytes under normal conditions. Experimental brain damage leading to oedema was followed after a certain latency by an increase in the enzyme content of the astrocytes specific to each enzyme. No histochemical changes occurred in the oligodendrocytes. Friede (1962) stated that normal astrocytes showed the lowest enzyme activity of all cells in the nervous system. Pathologically reacting astrocytes — apparently of the same type in different parts of the brain — exhibited on the contrary a dramatic rise in enzyme content which in certain cases even surpassed that of the nerve cells. The ability of the astrocytes to undergo adaptive enzyme changes is evidently greater than that known to exist in nerve cells and oligodendrocytes.

An uptake and breakdown of glycogen has been localized to the astrocytes (Olsche 1961). This has proved to be related to the state of activity in the nervous system indicating that the astrocytes partake in some way in glucose supply.

### *Quantitative macrochemical analyses*

The nervous system has a complex structure the glial cells being insinuated between fibres and neurons. This makes it impossible to obtain more than a minute specimen of purely glial tissue containing only a few cells. Some attempts have been made to elucidate the metabolism of the glial cells by means of quantitative macrochemical methods. In these studies advantage has been taken of the variations in cellular composition in different regions of the brain or use made of agglomerations of glial cells in the form of tumour tissue. Separation has also been attempted. The proportion of the chemical activity of the brain that can be ascribed to the glial cells has then been estimated on the basis of these results and of the histological features.

Elliott & Hiller (1957) compared the oxygen consumption of the corpus callosum which has a high content of glial cells with that of the cerebral cortex and cerebellar cortex. They calculated that the glial cells were responsible for 30 % of the respiration in the cerebral cortex but that the glial cells of the corpus callosum had a greater oxygen consumption per cell than the nerve cells of the cerebellum.

Abood, Gerard, Banks & Tschirgi (1952) showed that the enzyme activity per unit of fat free dry weight was usually 50% higher in the grey matter than in the white. Dixon (1953) found that the outermost layer of the cerebral cortex which has a sparsity of nerve cells was more active in anaerobic glycolysis than the deeper layers which have an abundance of these cells. This finding is compatible with the observations in glial tumours that have also

has been observed in glial cells but not in nerve cells. The contribution of glial cells to myelination of nerve fibres is another factor that has been studied in tissue cultures (Hild 1959, Murray 1959).

*Electrophysiological aspects* Hitherto little attention has been devoted to this question. Sretetchin *et al* (1961) concluded on the basis of electrophysiological studies of the nerve cells and supporting cells of the retina that the excitability of the neuron is dependent on the state of these glial satellites. Hild & Tasaki (1962) investigated the electric response of glial cells in tissue cultures. They found the resting potential to be at 50–70 mV. Electric stimulation produced a reduction in the resting potential which was regained only after several seconds. This slow glial response could also be demonstrated *in vivo*. The authors concluded that a long continuous activity of neurons can alter the state of the surrounding glial cells.

### Biochemical Aspects

During the past 10 years or so interest has been focused on the biochemistry of the nervous system. As a result we have gained information about metabolic activities of various kinds in the brain and some of its chemical characteristics have been established. Actually there are many chemical similarities between homogenates of the brain and *e.g.* liver.

Various methods have been used in biochemical analyses of the CNS and its components.

### Histochemistry

The methods are based on the use of certain staining procedures — many of them long established ones — to localize various chemical components, primarily enzymes, in histological specimens.

Early work on the nervous system showed lack of enzyme activity in the glial cells (Marinesco 1919, Rutenburg, Wolman & Seligman 1953). Shimizu & Morikawa (1957) found no succinic dehydrogenase activity in the white matter whereas it was demonstrable in the grey matter both in nerve cells and in neuropil. Friede (1959) observed succinic dehydrogenase activity in glial cells during active myelination but not in adult glia. Wolfgram & Rose (1959) using refined techniques demonstrated several dehydrogenases in all types of glial cell. Thomas & Pearce (1961) reported the glia to have a low content of oxidative enzymes with the exception of glycerol 1-phosphate dehydrogenase which was abundant whereas only a small amount was present in the nerve cells.



Lowry *et al* 1956) Lowry found that nerve cells had lower activity than brain tissue on the average as far as the important energy transforming systems are concerned a conclusion that he had already drawn from studies of the highly cellular layers of Ammon's horn (Lowry *et al* 1954) The activity of the nerve cells was particularly evident in the case of phosphoglucose isomerase lactic dehydrogenase and glutamic dehydrogenase Lowry *et al* also observed a striking contrast between the enzyme content of nerve cells and that of ganglion cell capsules (consisting of glial cells) The latter had extremely little hexokinase malic dehydrogenase transaminase and glutamic dehydrogenase whereas their content of phosphoglucose isomerase lactic dehydrogenase and isocitric dehydrogenase was on a par with that of nerve cells In addition they had relatively abundant glucose 6 phosphate and 6 phosphogluconate dehydrogenases

Working with micro methods Hydén and co workers studied isolated nerve cells and glial cells with regard to mass organic material nucleic acid and enzymes Quantitatively considerable differences were noted between the nerve cell and the glial cells directly surrounding it in several respects The glia contained only one tenth the amount of RNA determined on the same dry weight basis as its neuron (Hydén & Pigon 1960 Egyházi & Hydén 1961) Qualitative differences were observed in the RNA of the giant nerve cells and their glia in the lateral vestibular nucleus of Deiters This was reflected in higher guanine and lower cytosine values in the nerve cell and vice versa in the glial cell as determined by Edstrom's micro electrophoretic method

In a study of the cytochrome oxidase and succinoxidase activity in isolated spinal ganglion cells and their glial satellites Hydén Lavtrup & Pigon (1959) found considerably higher values in the latter than in the ganglion cells expressed both per volume and per dry weight This also applied to Deiters nerve cells and their glia (Hydén & Pigon 1960) Glutamate was on the contrary oxidized at a far higher rate by the nerve cells and  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate about as rapidly by both nerve cells and glial cells (Hamberger 1961)

The glial ATPases displayed higher activity than that of the nerve cells in Deiters nucleus surrounded by them Furthermore the two types of cell differed with respect both to pH maxima and ion requirements (Cummins & Hydén 1962)

Studies chiefly on the lateral vestibular nucleus suggest a metabolic relation between the nerve cell and its surrounding glia After intermittent vestibular stimulation the RNA and protein content of the nerve cells in Deiters nucleus increased significantly as did the respiratory enzyme activities In the glial cells a decrease in the corresponding values was recorded (Hydén & Pigon 1960) In those nerve cells whose enzyme activity was raised anaerobic glyco

proved to have a high glycolytic capacity under anaerobic conditions. Korey & Orchen (1959) recovered a fraction containing non neuronal cells chiefly glial cells by means of separation and sedimentation. The respiration per glial cell amounted to  $10^{-5}$   $\mu$ l O /hour. The ratio of nerve cell to glial cell respiration in the cerebral cortex was calculated to be about 11:1.

Victor & Wolf (1937) and Elliott & Heller (1957) found oligodendrogliomas to exhibit considerably greater oxygen uptake than astrocytomas. Allen (1957) demonstrated that the well differentiated astrocytomas had a cytochrome oxidase activity that was even lower than that of the white matter. In the well differentiated oligodendrogliomas it was on the contrary, many times greater amounting to about two thirds of that in the cerebral cortex. Another characteristic of the glial cells that has been studied in tumour tissue is their high pseudocholinesterase content (Bulbring, Philpot & Bonanquet 1953; Cavanagh, Thompson & Webster 1954). The aforementioned authors have intimated that the difference between astrocytomas and oligodendrogliomas may reflect differences between the respective normal cells.

### *Quantitative histo and cytochemistry*

Methods of this type use exceedingly small amounts of biological material to permit direct correlation between chemical and histological observations. With the chemical analytic technique elaborated by Linderstrom-Lang (1939) quantitative data can be obtained from biological samples with a dry weight as low as 0.2  $\mu$ g. Pope (1952, 1958) and Pope *et al.* (1956) studied the enzyme distribution in e.g. the cell layers of the cerebral cortex. They stated that the respiratory enzymes were localized mainly to the cell body and dendrites of the neuron whereas the glial cells had a proteolytic activity of the same order of magnitude as the nerve cells.

Lowry has devised methods to comprise determinations of a large number of enzymes and has achieved a sensitivity that allows analysis to be made of material much smaller than a single glial cell (Lowry *et al.* 1961). The determinations are made on freeze dried material using chiefly fluorimetric techniques. Robins & Smith (1953) analyzed oxidative and glycolytic enzymes in the cerebellum. With few exceptions particularly cholinesterase the molecular layer showed higher activity than the granular layer, thus in its turn was more active than the white matter. Robins, Smith, Eydé & McCaman (1956) showed that in the cerebral cortex the activity of several enzymes was on a high level in the outer layers and fell successively towards the white matter.

The possibility of analyzing individual cells implied a remarkable advance in the quantitative histochemistry of the nervous system (Lowry 1957 a, b).

Lowry *et al* 1956) Lowry found that nerve cells had lower activity than brain tissue on the average as far as the important energy transforming systems are concerned a conclusion that he had already drawn from studies of the highly cellular layers of Ammon's horn (Lowry *et al* 1954) The activity of the nerve cells was particularly evident in the case of phosphoglucose isomerase lactic dehydrogenase and glutamic dehydrogenase Lowry *et al* also observed a striking contrast between the enzyme content of nerve cells and that of ganglion cell capsules consisting of glial cells The latter had extremely little hexokinase malic dehydrogenase transaminase and glutamic dehydrogenase whereas their content of phosphoglucose isomerase lactic dehydrogenase and isocitric dehydrogenase was on a par with that of nerve cells In addition they had relatively abundant glucose 6 phosphate and 6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenases

Working with micro methods Hydén and co workers studied isolated nerve cells and glial cells with regard to mass organic material nucleic acid and enzymes Quantitatively considerable differences were noted between the nerve cell and the glial cells directly surrounding it in several respects The glia contained only one tenth the amount of RNA determined on the same dry weight basis as its neuron (Hydén & Pigon 1960 Egyházi & Hydén 1961) Qualitative differences were observed in the RNA of the giant nerve cells and their glia in the lateral vestibular nucleus of Deiters This was reflected in higher guanine and lower cytosine values in the nerve cell and vice versa in the glial cell as determined by Edstrom's micro-electrophoretic method

In a study of the cytochrome oxidase and succinoxidase activity in isolated spinal ganglion cells and their glial satellites Hydén Lortrup & Pigon (1958) found considerably higher values in the latter than in the ganglion cells expressed both per volume and per dry weight This also applied to Deiters nerve cells and their glia (Hydén & Pigon 1960) Glutamate was on the contrary oxidized at a far higher rate by the nerve cells and  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate about as rapidly by both nerve cells and glial cells (Hamberger 1961)

The glial ATPases displayed higher activity than that of the nerve cells in Deiters nucleus surrounded by them Furthermore the two types of cell differed with respect both to pH optimum and ion requirements (Cummins & Hydén 1962)

Studies chiefly on the lateral vestibular nucleus suggest a metabolic relation between the nerve cell and its surrounding glia After intermittent vestibular stimulation the RNA and protein content of the nerve cells in Deiters nucleus increased significantly as did the respiratory enzyme activities In the glial cells a decrease in the corresponding values was recorded (Hydén & Pigon 1960) In those nerve cells whose enzyme activity was raised anaerobic glyco

lysis was depressed whereas it was significantly augmented in the glial cells (Hamberger & Hydén 1963). Changes in RNA in the glia and nuclei of the neurons were also observed in rats learning to perform a complicated motor pattern (Hydén & Lgyházi 1962).

When enhanced synthesis of protein and RNA was induced by chemical agents the nerve cell responded by a significant increase in both cases. In the glial cell the RNA content fell significantly. The RNA base composition of the nerve cell and its glia exhibited inverse changes with respect to guanine and cytosine values (Egyházi & Hydén 1961; Hydén & Egyházi 1962).

Giacobini (1956, 1957) used the micro dialer technique for analysis of the cholinesterase of the nervous system of cells and parts of cells as well for determination of the carbonic anhydrase of nerve cells and glial cells (Giacobini 1962). He found the latter enzyme to be localized to a high degree to the glial cells.

In human pathology glial cell changes are known to be phenomena associated with vascular and inflammatory disturbances among others and are generally preceded by severe damage to the nerve cells. In a study of paralytic rigidity (Parkinson's disease) biopsy specimens from the globus pallidus were analyzed by microchemical methods (Gomirato & Hydén 1963). In early stages qualitative changes in the RNA of the glial cells were present but when the disease was more advanced the changes in the nerve cells were more prominent.

## MATERIAL AND METHODS

## Microdissection

Albino rabbits of both sexes were used their weight ranged from 1.5 to 1.8 kg. For 8-10 days before the experiments they were kept under uniform conditions with food and water *ad libitum*.

The material consisted both of untreated rabbits (controls) and of rabbits exposed to stimulation of various types. The experimental conditions in the latter animals are described in Chapter III.

The animal was given an air embolus (15 ml of air injected into the ear vein) and became unconscious within a few seconds. The carotid vessels were cut to drain the blood from the body. This procedure was used to ensure minimum blood filling of the brain. The roof of the skull was opened and the brain removed. Slices of the part of the medulla oblongata to be studied approximately 2 mm thick were cut free hand. About 2 minutes after the animal's death these slices were placed in ice cold 0.1 M sucrose solution containing 0.001-0.002 M methylene blue.

The nerve cells were faintly stained by the weak methylene blue solution since the dye is taken up only by the synaptic knobs as demonstrated by silver staining of nerve cells (Hyden 1949). The structure of the lateral vestibular nucleus was therefore distinct. The addition of methylene blue during the preparation had no influence on the enzyme activity determined.

*The Lateral Vestibular Nucleus of Deiters*

This term is used to denote the part of the vestibular complex in the rhombencephalon that is characterized by the presence of Deiters' giant nerve cells. In addition to small cells of various types (Brodal & Pompeiano 1957). The medium sized, usually spindle shaped nerve cells are collected in a small group in its lateral part. In the rostral medial part of the nucleus the giant cells are comparatively sparse and are mixed with small nerve cells. The giant cells are more numerous and largest in the caudal part of the nucleus where the admixture of small cells is unappreciable. The vascular supply to the nucleus is relatively abundant (Craigie 1933).

The efferent fibres of Deiters' nucleus are relayed primarily to the cervical, thoracic and lumbosacral parts of the spinal cord via the homolateral vestibular spinal tract. It receives afferent fibres chiefly from the spinal cord, labyrinth, cerebellum and reticular

lysis was depressed whereas it was significantly augmented in the glial cells (Hamberger & Hydén 1963). Changes in RNA in the glia and nuclei of the neurons were also observed in rats learning to perform a complicated motor pattern (Hydén & Egyházi 1962).

When enhanced synthesis of protein and RNA was induced by chemical agents the nerve cell responded by a significant increase in both cases. In the glial cell the RNA content fell significantly. The RNA base composition of the nerve cell and its glia exhibited inverse changes with respect to guanine and cytosine values (Egyházi & Hydén 1961, Hydén & Egyházi 1962).

Giacobini (1956, 1957) used the micro dialyzer technique for analysis of the cholinesterase of the nervous system of cells and parts of cells as well for determination of the carbonic anhydrase of nerve cells and glial cells (Giacobini 1962). He found the latter enzyme to be localized to a high degree to the glial cells.

In human pathology glial cell changes are known to be phenomena associated with vascular and inflammatory disturbances among others and are generally preceded by severe damage to the nerve cells. In a study of paralysis agitans (Parkinson's disease) biopsy specimens from the globus pallidus were analyzed by microchemical methods (Gomirato & Hydén 1963). In early stages qualitative changes in the RNA of the glial cells were present but when the disease was more advanced the changes in the nerve cells were more prominent.



Fig. 2 Nerve cell (right) and neuronal glia (left) after separation  $\times 200$

When the nerve cell was dissected out the glia surrounding the cell body was adherent to it. By gentle manipulation in the drop the nerve cell was freed from the glial cells which formed a clump (Fig. 2). This clump was shaped into a sphere and trimmed down to approximately the same volume as that of the nerve cell. The volume was determined with a micrometer eyepiece. After some experience the volume of the glial clump in relation to the nerve cell could be estimated by visual inspection only. An account of determination of the volume as a source of error in the method is given on page 28.

The glial clump dissected out in this way is denoted in the following as the *neuronal glia*.

### Capillary glia

To isolate the capillary glia iris scissors were used to cut out a thin flake of tissue about  $500 \times 400 \times 200 \mu$  from which the nerve cells had been picked out (Fig. 3). The sample was examined under the microscope to check that no tissue beyond the lateral vestibular nucleus was included. Actually there is a good margin since the part of the nucleus in which the giant nerve cells are mainly present measures about 0.5–0.8 mm in the rostral-caudal direction (Meessen & Olazewski 1949).

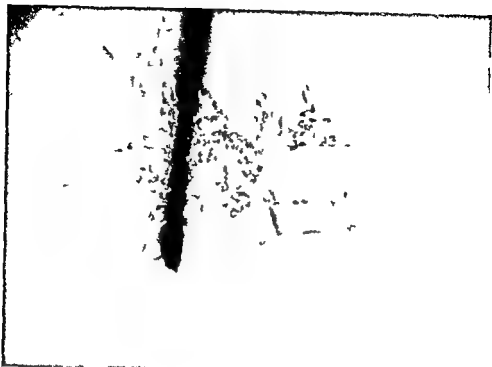


Fig 1 Nerve cell and neuronal glia during separation with the dissecting needle ■ .00

formation. The function of the nucleus is considered to be highly uniform even if the afferent connexions are not the same in all cells. However that part of the nucleus used as material in the present investigation is as far as is known both histologically and physiologically homogeneous (Brodal, Pompeiano & Walberg 1962).

After about 1 minute in the staining fluid the sections were transferred to isotonic sucrose solution and were examined at 32 or 50 times magnification under a Zeiss stereomicroscope with the light falling obliquely on the slice.

### Neuronal glia

The neuronal glia was dissected out with the method of Hydén (1959).

The nerve cells were lifted up from the tissue slice and placed in a small drop of incubation medium with a stainless steel needle  $130\ \mu$  thick mounted in a drawn glass tube (Fig 1). Thin glass needles were also tested for this purpose. Although they were found to be less practicable they afforded a possibility of comparing the results of dissecting out the cells in different ways. No difference in enzyme activity was demonstrable.

<sup>1</sup> The stainless steel wire was supplied by AB Kanthal, Hallstahammar, Sweden.





Fig. 2. Nerve cell (right) and neuronal glia (left) after separation  $\times 200$

When the nerve cell was dissected out the glia surrounding the cell body was adherent to it. By gentle manipulation in the drop the nerve cell was freed from the glial cells which formed a clump (Fig. 2). This clump was shaped into a sphere and trimmed down to approximately the same volume as that of the nerve cell. The volume was determined with a micrometer eyepiece. After some experience the volume of the glial clump in relation to the nerve cell could be estimated by visual inspection only. An account of determination of the volume as a source of error in the method is given on page 28.

The glial clump dissected out in this way is denoted in the following as the *neuronal glia*.

### Capillary glia

To isolate the capillary glia microscissors were used to cut out a thin flake of tissue about  $400 \times 400 \times 200 \mu$  from which the nerve cells had been picked out (Fig. 3). The sample was examined under the microscope to check that no tissue beyond the lateral vestibular nucleus was included. Actually, there is a good margin since the part of the nucleus in which the giant nerve cells are mainly present measures about 0.5–0.8 mm in the rostral-caudal direction (Meessen & Obzewski 1959).



Fig 1 Nerve cell and neuronal glia during separation with the dissecting needle  $\times 200$

formation. The function of the nucleus is considered to be highly uniform even if the afferent connections are not the same in all cells. However that part of the nucleus used as material in the present investigation is as far as is known both histologically and physiologically homogeneous (Brodal, Pompeiano & Walberg 1962).

After about 1 minute in the staining fluid the sections were transferred to isotonic sucrose solution and were examined at 32 or 50 times magnification under a Zeiss stereomicroscope with the light falling obliquely on the slice.

### *Neuronal glia*

The neuronal glia was dissected out with the method of Hydén (1959).

The nerve cells were lifted up from the tissue slice and placed in a small drop of incubation medium with a stainless steel needle  $130 \mu$  thick mounted in a drawn glass tube (Fig 1). Thin glass needles were also tested for this purpose. Although they were found to be less practicable they afforded a possibility of comparing the results of dissecting out the cells in different ways. No difference in enzyme activity was demonstrable.

<sup>1</sup> The stainless steel wire was supplied by AB Kanthal, Hallstammar, Sweden.



Fig 5 Thin vessel with adherent capillary  $\times 100$

The tissue sample was transferred to a drop of incubation medium and divided into small pieces with the help of the aforementioned micro-needles. It was then observed that a relatively thick vessel trunk ( $40-70 \mu$ ) ran through most of the pieces. The whole vessel could easily be freed from practically all nervous tissue leaving a trunk with branches down to  $0-8 \mu$  in diameter. However round the thinnest vessels — particularly at their branchings but also at other sites — a little glia remained (Fig 4) it proved to be considerably more adherent to the vessel than the main part of the tissue mass (Fig 5). The nerve cells were viable all the time and resembled transparent raisins in a cake. Once the vessel had been separated from the nervous tissue no nerve cell was directly adherent to a capillary nor to the glia still attached to the vessel. The glial clumps could be completely freed from the vessel by cautious dissection (Fig 6). They were then formed into spheres in the same way as the neuronal glia their volume in relation to that of the nerve cells was estimated in the same way.

The glial clump dissected out in this way is denoted in the following as the capillary glia.



Fig 3 Flake of tissue from the lateral vestibular nucleus Vital staining of vessels and neurons  $\times 75$



Fig 4 Vessel with capillary glia surrounding the thinnest branches  $\times 100$

the mean values of less than 1%, with a low standard deviation. Consequently the activity relations calculated in the present study on a volume basis are also valid on a dry weight basis.

### Morphological Features of Glial Material

A series of dissected out glial clumps were fixed and stained for identification of their morphological features. The clumps were transferred with an agar coated micro pipette from the drop of incubation medium to a glass slide and allowed to dry. After staining the number of glial nuclei in each clump was counted. There were generally 7-8 in both neuronal and capillary glia although 5 to 9 or 10 nuclei were occasionally present.

The degree of purity of the glial samples is an important factor. In silver stained histological sections the glia surrounding both the nerve cells and the capillaries is seen to contain a fine network of nerve fibres chiefly thin axon terminals. The following calculation was made to ascertain how large a proportion of the volume of the glial clump is represented by these fibres.

The volume of the glial clump is approximately  $80,000 \mu^3$ . For the sake of simplicity the dimensions are assumed to be  $40 \times 50 \times 30 \mu$  with a surface of  $2,000 \mu^2$  bordering on the nerve cell. Directly beside the nerve cell the fibres are extremely thin their mean diameter is stated by Horstmann & Meves (1959) to be  $0.1 \mu$ . According to David (1957) there are 10 synaptic knobs per  $100 \mu^2$  of nerve cell area in the giant cells of *Drosophila*. Consequently about 400 small fibres extend into the region closest to the nerve cell here calculated to lie at a distance of  $15 \mu$  from the surface. This implies that their volume is approximately  $400 \mu^3$  or between 1 and 2% of half the glial volume. Further from the nerve cell's surface the fibres become fewer and coarser i.e. about 5 per  $100 \mu^2$  and about  $1 \mu$  in diameter representing a volume of slightly less than  $2,000 \mu^3$  or approximately 1% of half the glial volume.

Computing the relative area of the fibres on electron micrographs from different parts of the grey matter published by various authors I have found the mean to be about 5%.

On the basis of the foregoing it can be estimated that the nerve fibres are responsible for about 1% of the total volume of the glial clump.

The amount of organic dry substance per  $\mu^3$  in the axon has been shown to be about  $0.08 \mu\mu\text{g}$  (Ingstrom & Luthy 1950) and  $0.06 \mu\mu\text{g}$  (Hyden 1955) whereas the corresponding figure in the glia is  $0.0 \mu\mu\text{g}$ . Consequently the percentage contribution of the fibres is lower from the point of view of organic cell material than from that of volume.

The thin nerve fibres have a low mitochondrial content. Mitochondria are



Fig 6 Capillary glia during separation from vessel  $\times 400$

### *Blood vessels*

In some experiments the oxygen consumption of the thin vessels freed from glia was studied. The rabbits were anaesthetized with Isomyl sodium® (sodium ethylisomyl barbiturate) after which the vascular system was perfused via the heart with physiological saline to remove the blood. The relative quantity of endothelial cells in the different experiments was determined by measuring the total length of vessels of different diameter.

### **Determination of Dry Weight**

Hydén (1959) showed that the dry weight per volume unit of the glial cells surrounding Deiters' giant nerve cells is  $0.20 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ , i.e. a value close to that of the nerve cells.

A comparison between the dry weight per volume unit of the neuronal and the capillary glia was made in freeze-dried sections by means of X-ray micro-radiography at  $8\text{--}10 \text{ \AA}$  (Hydén 1959). The dry weight was evaluated with a scanning microdensitometer (Hydén & Larsson 1956). The weight of each sample represents the mean of a large number of measuring points. A comparison between the mass per volume unit in the glia directly surrounding nerve cells and that around vessels of varying diameter showed a difference in

the mean values of  $\pm 5$  than  $5^\circ$ , with a low standard deviation. Consequently the activity relations calculated in the present study on a volume basis are also valid on a dry weight basis.

### Morphological Features of Glial Material

A series of dissected out glial clumps were fixed and stained for identification of their morphological features. The clumps were transferred with an agar coated micro pipette from the drop of incubation medium to a glass slide and allowed to dry. After staining the number of glial nuclei in each clump was counted. There were generally 7-8 in both neuronal and capillary glia although 5, 6, 9 or 10 nuclei were occasionally present.

The degree of purity of the glial samples is an important factor. In silver stained histological sections the glia surrounding both the nerve cells and the capillaries is seen to contain a fine network of nerve fibres chiefly thin axon terminals. The following calculation was made to ascertain how large a proportion of the volume of the glial clump is represented by these fibres.

The volume of the glial clump is approximately  $80,000 \mu^3$ . For the sake of simplicity the dimensions are assumed to be  $50 \times 50 \times 30 \mu$  with a surface of  $2,500 \mu^2$  bordering on the nerve cell. Directly beside the nerve cell the fibres are extremely thin their mean diameter is stated by Horstmann & Meves (1950) to be  $0.2 \mu$ . According to David (1957) there are 16 synaptic knobs per  $100 \mu^2$  of nerve cell area in the giant cells of *Drosophila*. Consequently about 400 small fibres extend into the region closest to the nerve cell here calculated to lie at a distance of  $15 \mu$  from the surface. This implies that their volume is approximately  $400 \mu^3$  or between 1 and 2% of half the glial volume. Further from the nerve cell's surface the fibres become fewer and coarser i.e. about 5 per  $100 \mu^2$  and about  $1 \mu$  in diameter representing a volume of slightly less than  $2,000 \mu^3$  or approximately 5% of half the glial volume.

Computing the relative area of the fibres on electron micrographs from different parts of the grey matter published by various authors I have found the mean to be about  $5^\circ$ .

On the basis of these figures it can be estimated that the nerve fibres are responsible for about  $5^\circ$  of the total volume of the glial clump.

The amount of organic dry substance per  $\mu^3$  in the axon has been shown to be about  $0.001 \mu\mu\text{g}$  (Engstrom & Luthy 1950) and  $0.66 \mu\mu\text{g}$  (Hydén 1955) whereas the corresponding figure in the glia is  $0.001 \mu\mu\text{g}$ . Consequently the percentage contribution of the fibres is lower from the point of view of organic cell material than from that of volume.

The thin nerve fibres have a low mitochondrial content. Mitochondria are



Fig 6 Capillary glia during separation from vessel  $\times 200$

### *Blood vessels*

In some experiments the oxygen consumption of the thin vessels freed from glia was studied. The rabbits were anaesthetized with Isonyl sodium<sup>®</sup> (sodium ethyl isononyl barbiturate) after which the vascular system was perfused via the heart with physiologic saline to remove the blood. The relative quantity of endothelial cells in the different experiments was determined by measuring the total length of vessels of different diameter.

### *Determination of Dry Weight*

Hydén (1959) showed that the dry weight per volume unit of the glial cells surrounding Deiters' giant nerve cells is  $11.20 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ , i.e. a value close to that of the nerve cells.

A comparison between the dry weight per volume unit of the neuronal and the capillary glia was made in freeze-dried sections by means of X-ray micro-radiography at  $8\text{--}10 \text{ \AA}$  (Hydén 1959). The dry weight was evaluated with a scanning microdensitometer (Hydén & Larsson 1956). The weight of each sample represents the mean of a large number of measuring points. A comparison between the mass per volume unit in the glia directly surrounding nerve cells and that around vessels of varying diameter showed a difference in





Fig Nerve cell (right) and glial clump (left) Diver tip inserted in incubation medium for filling  $\times 200$

### Morphological Features During Diver Experiment

In order to study the morphological features of the nerve cells and glial cells under the conditions of determinations with the micro diver technique — made directly after dissection — filled micro divers were incubated under a photo micro cope for 24 hours at 37 C (A diver experiment is discontinued 3- 4 hours after the animal's death) After this time no morphological changes were observed in either type of cell at  $0.3 \mu$  maximal resolving power as far as membranes and volume were concerned. Nor were any changes demonstrable after a further 20 hours.

### Analytical Methods

The oxygen uptake of nerve cells and glial cells was determined by the micro diver technique (Zeuthen 1953 Zapcek & Zeuthen 1956 1961) as applied to nervous tissue by Hydén & Pignon (1960).

### Divers

The divers were made of thin walled Pyrex glass capillaries about 1 mm in diameter. The capillary was fastened in a glass handle with de Khotinsky

present in the synaptic knobs but as demonstrated earlier, they remain on the surface of the isolated nerve cell and are not included in the glial sample (Hydén 1959) The glial cells — particularly the oligodendrocytes — have on the contrary a relatively large number of mitochondria (De Robertis & Gerschenfeld 1961)

Since in the present study determinations are made of respiratory enzymes that are bound to the mitochondria the activity recorded must reflect almost exclusively the respiration of the glial cells

An attempt was made in the following way to estimate the distribution of the two classical types of neuroglia *i.e.*, oligodendrocytes and astrocytes in the neuronal and capillary glia

Dissected out fixed glial clumps were stained with toluidine blue cresyl violet Cajal's gold sublimate and Hortega silver carbonate respectively with certain modifications In view of the difficulties associated with the gold and silver impregnation methods as well as the special preparation of the tissue the cytoplasmic features of the glial cells could not be brought out distinctly enough Since classification of glial cells is based partly on these features some authors do not regard the appearance of the nucleus alone to be an entirely reliable criterion The appearance of the nucleus is however characteristic and has often been used as the sole criterion in determining the type of cell (Krypsin Exner 1952 Cammermeyer 1960 a b Smart & Leblond 1961 among others)

The oligodendrocyte has a small round dark nucleus containing large clumps of chromatin The astrocyte has a larger oval or irregular nucleus with a light chromatin pattern (Penfield 1932) A number of transitional forms exist The microglia which are relatively sparse were not studied in any detail in the present investigation

On the basis of the foregoing criteria the neuronal glia was found to consist of about 90% oligodendrocytes and 10% astrocytes and the capillary glia of 70% oligodendrocytes and 30% astrocytes These calculations were made on several series of glial clumps totally about 100 clumps, stained with the techniques just listed

For comparison the same staining procedures were applied to histological sections The perfusion technique of Koenig Groat & Windle (1944) was used to prepare the vascular system The vessels were demonstrated with a mixture of 3% gelatin solution and Indian ink The glial cells can obviously be differentiated with greater certainty in sections Practically all glial cells around Deiters giant nerve cells were of oligodendrocyte type Hydén & Pignon (1960) have given their incidence as 90% Although astrocytes were present beside the capillaries the oligodendrocytes predominated here as well



Fig. - Nerve cell (right) and glial clump (left). Diver tip inserted in incubation medium for filling.  $\times 00$

### Morphological Features During Diver Experiment

In order to study the morphological features of the nerve cells and glial cells under the conditions of determinations with the micro diver technique — made directly after dissection — filled micro divers were incubated under a photo microscope for 24 hours at  $37^{\circ}\text{C}$ . (A diver experiment is discontinued 3–4 hours after the animal's death.) After this time no morphological changes were observed in either type of cell at  $0.3\mu$  maximal resolving power as far as membranes and volume were concerned. Nor were any changes demonstrable after a further 20 hours.

### Analytical Methods

The oxygen uptake of nerve cells and glial cells was determined by the micro diver technique (Zeuthen 1953; Zapicek & Zeuthen 1956, 1961) as applied to nervous tissue by Hydén & Pignon (1960).

### Divers

The divers were made of thin walled Pyrex glass capillaries about 1 mm in diameter. The capillary was fastened in a glass handle with de Khotinsky



Fig 8 Glial clump entering the diver  $\times 200$

cement so that the diver formed the tip of a fine braking pipette. The diver tip was then introduced into the drop of incubation medium containing a nerve cell or neuronal or capillary glia. Under the stereomicroscope the diver was filled with one of these samples in a little incubation medium as shown in Figures 7 and 8 after which the tip was sealed with beeswax heated to melting point (about  $60^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). The diver was then detached from its handle and adjusted to flotation equilibrium in  $0.1\text{ M}$  phosphate buffer pH 7.4. This implies that an air bubble in the ampoule (the thickest central part of the diver) was bordered by the incubation medium and the biological material in the sealed end and by the phosphate buffer in the open end (Figs 9 and 10). The size of the air bubble was such that the diver was just able to remain afloat in the phosphate buffer. The diver was then ready to be transferred to the water bath. — A trained worker can fill a diver and transfer it to the water bath within about 20 minutes of the animal's death.

Each diver was about  $15\text{ mm}$  long, had a weight of  $0.2\text{--}0.6\text{ mg}$ , contained about  $0.3\text{ }\mu\text{l}$  of incubation medium and an air bubble with a volume of  $0.1\text{--}0.3\text{ }\mu\text{l}$ . The ratio of the weight of the glass used for the diver to the volume of air required to keep it afloat in the medium was determined for every sample of glass tubing.

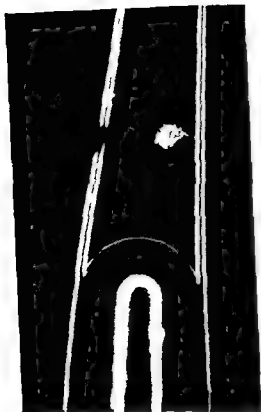


Fig 9



Fig 10

Fig 9 Position of glial clump in the diver. At bottom air bubble  $\times 15$

Fig 10 The whole diver. The dotted rectangle represents the part shown in Fig 9  $\times 5$

### Water bath

The divers were transferred to flotation vessels. These were immersed in a thermostat regulated water bath heated by two 250 W lamps. The temperature variations in the bath were measured by NTC resistors connected in a bridge. During an observation period of several hours they remained below  $\pm 0.005^\circ\text{C}$ . All measurements were made at  $37^\circ\text{C}$ . Four divers were run simultaneously.

### Flotation medium

The flotation vessels were filled with 10 ml of flotation medium. This consisted of the same phosphate buffer as that used in adjusting the divers.

In analogy with the Warburg method and the standard diver 0.1 N NaOH was used in an earlier study to absorb the carbon dioxide (Hamberger 1961). It has subsequently been found that the solubility of carbon dioxide in the phosphate buffer is sufficiently great for the quantities relevant in the diver determinations.

### Enzyme assays

The enzymic parameters measured in nerve cells and glial cells were the aerobic oxidation of cytochrome *c* (cytochrome oxidase), succinate,  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate and glutamate.

**Cytochrome oxidase** Incubation medium  $\text{NaHPO}_4$ - $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  buffer pH 7.4 37.5 mM cytochrome *c*  $8.6 \times 10^{-7}$  mM Na ascorbate 12 mM  $\text{AlCl}_3$  0.5 mM (Slater 1949a Potter 1957). The concentrations refer to the final mixture in the diver. All reagents were mixed directly before the experiment. The Na ascorbate was prepared freshly before final mixing of the medium by neutralizing a solution of ascorbic acid with 0.1 M NaOH.

A complication in the cytochrome oxidase determinations is the autooxidation i.e. oxidation of the reduced cytochrome *c* in the absence of tissue (Slater 1949a Potter 1957 Hydén Lovtrup & Pignon 1958). This is believed to be caused by insufficient purity of the reagents. The pH of the incubation medium is also of importance. Schneider & Potter (1943) determined the oxidation in the blank by concurrent determination with different amounts of enzyme and extrapolation to zero amount of enzyme. This method could not be employed in the diver experiments in view of the differences in activity in morphologically identical nerve cells, as well as in clumps of glia. Instead a diver containing incubation medium but no enzyme represented the autooxidation blank whose activity was subtracted from the values recorded in the other divers in the same run. This procedure has been used in earlier determinations of cytochrome oxidase activity in nerve cells and glia by the micro diver technique (Hydén Lovtrup & Pignon 1958 Hydén & Pignon 1960).

**Succinate oxidation** Incubation medium  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ - $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$  buffer pH 7.4 37.5 mM cytochrome *c*  $8.6 \times 10^{-7}$  mM Na succinate 25 mM  $\text{AlCl}_3$  0.5 mM  $\text{MgCl}_2$  0.5 mM (Slater 1949b Potter 1957). The rate of oxygen uptake with succinate was found to be the same in this medium as in that used for determination of  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate and glutamate (vide infra).

The influence of succinate concentration on the oxygen uptake was investigated (Fig. 11). Parallel curves for activity and substrate concentration were obtained in nerve cells and in glial cells and oxygen uptake was maximal

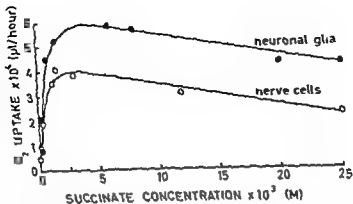


Fig. 11 Succinate oxidation by Drosophila nerve cells and neuronal glia: correlation between enzyme activity and substrate concentration

at a slightly lower concentration than that used here. Slater (1949b) working with heart-muscle particles also found the enzyme activity to be inhibited by a high succinate concentration. He reported the optimal concentration to be about  $0.0^{\circ} \text{ M}$ .

**$\alpha$  Ketoglutarate and glutamate oxidation.** Incubation media:  $\text{MgSO}_4$ ,  $11 \text{ mM}$ ;  $\text{KCl}$ ,  $25 \text{ mM}$ ;  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ ,  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , buffer pH 7.4;  $13.3 \text{ mM}$  cytochrome c,  $2 \times 10^{-2} \text{ mM}$  ATP,  $1 \text{ mM}$  sucrose,  $175 \text{ mM}$  and  $\text{Na } \alpha$  ketoglutarate  $13 \text{ mM}$  or  $\text{Na}$  glutamate  $15 \text{ mM}$  (Christie, Judah & Rees 1953; Hamberger 1961; Løvtrup & Svennerholm 1963).

In the case of succinate,  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate and glutamate oxidation the autooxidation was negligible.

As far as isolated cells were concerned the influence of certain variables in the incubation media was investigated with the following results. The substrate concentration was high enough to induce maximal oxygen uptake. The activity was slightly reduced by omission of cytochrome c. Addition of DPN or calcium ions had no appreciable effect. — A complete accurate analysis of the influence of changes in the incubation media was considered difficult because of the large variations in enzyme activity inherent in biological material.

### Measurements and calculation of results

When the divers had been transferred to the flotation vessels and immersed in the water bath temperature equilibrium was reached after about 30 minutes. Manometric readings of the equilibration pressure were then made every 15–20 minutes for 2–3 hours. The pressure was plotted against the time

and a linear relation was found to be present during the first 3–4 hours and often for a longer period

The enzyme activity is expressed as the oxygen uptake in  $\mu\text{l} \times 10^{-4}/\text{hour}$  per nerve cell or per corresponding volume of glia. The O uptake was calculated according to Zeuthen (1953)

### Error of the Method

The chief factors on which the error of the method is dependent are

- 1 The accuracy of the micro diver method
- 2 The accuracy of determination of the volume of the glial sample

1 — In theoretical calculations Zajicek & Zeuthen (1961) found the error of the diver method to be  $\pm 5\%$  in determination of carbon dioxide production of the order of magnitude of  $10^{-4} \mu\text{l}/\text{hour}$ . Experimentally they achieved the same accuracy by filling three divers with an equal quantity of human plasma cholinesterase. A suspension of isolated mitochondria with succinate as substrate was used in the present investigation to determine the accuracy in measurements of oxygen uptake. Four divers were filled with an equal quantity of suspension. The oxygen consumption was 16.8, 15.2, 15.1 and  $18.7 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l}/\text{hour}$  i.e. a standard error of approximately  $\pm 10\%$ .

2 — As stated earlier the axes of the glial clumps were initially determined with a micrometer eyepiece. The volume was calculated as an ellipsoid. The routine method of calculation subsequently used was based on visual inspection only. That it was in fact sufficiently accurate can be inferred from the results of investigations by various workers who have applied it. The standard deviation was not larger for the glia than for the nerve cells in the present study; it was even slightly smaller.

### Statistical Analyses

The results of the respiratory measurements are recorded in Tables I–VI. The mean standard error of the mean (S.E.M.) and the number of samples in each series ( $n$ ) i.e. the number of animals are given in all but Table V.

In the controls the significance of the difference between nerve cell and neuronal glia as well as between neuronal and capillary glia was tested by customary statistical methods (Hald 1952).

In the animals stimulated in various ways the  $t$  test was used to test the significance of the difference between these samples and samples of corresponding cell types in the controls.

A biologically significant difference was considered to be present when  $p$  was less than 0.05.



## CHAPTER III

### RESULTS

The neuron and its glia i.e. the neuronal glia is the unit of the lateral vestibular nucleus of Deters previously studied by the micro dialyser technique (Hydén & Pigeon 1960 Hydén & Lange 1962 Hamberger & Hydén 1963). The grey matter of the brain consists of neurons, glia and blood vessels, the glia being responsible for a large proportion of the volume. The main object of the present investigation was to obtain data on the capillary glia and to study a model system with three components: nerve cell, neuronal glia and capillary glia. The fundamental problem was to answer the following questions: Is the metabolism of the glia although susceptible to the influence of various factors uniform throughout its mass and therefore demonstrable by microanalyses of the neuronal glia? Or does its metabolism exhibit a well differentiated pattern indicative of a functional distribution?

The first step was therefore to study the metabolism — in terms of the respiratory enzyme activity — under normal conditions. In subsequent experiments with stimulation of various kinds, controls were included in every series as a check that no changes had occurred in the experimental conditions.

The mean values for nerve cell, neuronal glia and capillary glia are given in all tables.

TABLE I

Enzyme activity: nerve cells, neuronal and capillary glia of Deters nucleus controls  
Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu$ l O<sub>2</sub>/hour. Mean values  $\pm$  S.E.M.

	NERVE CELL	n	NEURONAL GLIA	n	CAPILLARY GLIA	n
CYTOCHROME OXIDASE	42.06 <sup>x</sup>	16	115.08 <sup>x</sup>	17	116.11	10
SUCCINATE OXIDATION	22.03 <sup>x</sup>	17	42.05	9	80.02	9
$\alpha$ KETOGLUTARATE OXIDATION	22.04	9	21.02	11	40.07	13
GLUTAMATE OXIDATION	22.03 <sup>xx</sup>	21	111.02	9	111.04	10

<sup>x</sup> From Hydén & Pigeon 1960

<sup>xx</sup> From Hamberger 1961

and a linear relation was found to be present during the first 3—4 hours and often for a longer period

The enzyme activity is expressed as the oxygen uptake in  $\mu\text{l} \times 10^{-4}/\text{hour}$  per nerve cell or per corresponding volume of glia. The  $\text{O}_2$  uptake was calculated according to Zeuthen (1953)

### Error of the Method

The chief factors on which the error of the method is dependent are

- 1 The accuracy of the micro diver method
- 2 The accuracy of determination of the volume of the glial sample

1 — In theoretical calculations Zajíček & Zeuthen (1961) found the error of the diver method to be  $\pm 5\%$  in determination of carbon dioxide production of the order of magnitude of  $10^{-4} \mu\text{l}/\text{hour}$ . Experimentally they achieved the same accuracy by filling three divers with an equal quantity of human plasma cholinesterase. A suspension of isolated mitochondria with succinate as substrate was used in the present investigation to determine the accuracy in measurements of oxygen uptake. Four divers were filled with an equal quantity of suspension. The oxygen consumption was 16.8, 15.2, 15.1 and  $18.7 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l}/\text{hour}$  i.e. a standard error of approximately  $\pm 10\%$ .

2 — As stated earlier the axes of the glial clumps were initially determined with a micrometer eyepiece. The volume was calculated as an ellipsoid. The routine method of calculation subsequently used was based on visual inspection only. That it was in fact sufficiently accurate can be inferred from the results of investigations by various workers who have applied it. The standard deviation was not larger for the glia than for the nerve cells in the present study; it was even slightly smaller.

### Statistical Analyses

The results of the respiratory measurements are recorded in Tables I—VI. The mean standard error of the mean (S.E.M.) and the number of samples in each series ( $n$ ) i.e. the number of animals are given in all but Table V.

In the controls the significance of the difference between nerve cell and neuronal glia as well as between neuronal and capillary glia was tested by customary statistical methods (Hald 1952).

In the animals stimulated in various ways the  $t$  test was used to test the significance of the difference between these samples and samples of corresponding cell types in the controls.

A biologically significant difference was considered to be present when  $p$  was less than 0.05.

# CHAPTER III

## RESULTS

The neuron and its glia i.e. the neuronal glia is the unit of the lateral vestibular nucleus of Deiters previously studied by the micro dialyser technique (Hydén & Pigeon 1960 Hydén & Lange 1962 Hamberger & Hydén 1963). The grey matter of the brain consists of neurons glia and blood vessels the glia being responsible for a large proportion of the volume. The main object of the present investigation was to obtain data on the capillary glia and to study a model system with three components nerve cell neuronal glia and capillary glia. The fundamental problem was to answer the following questions: Is the metabolism of the glia although susceptible to the influence of various factors uniform throughout its mass and therefore demonstrable by micro analyses of the neuronal glia? Or does its metabolism exhibit a well differentiated pattern indicative of a functional distribution?

The first step was therefore to study the metabolism — in terms of the respiratory enzyme activity — under normal conditions. In subsequent experiments with stimulation of various kinds controls were included in every series as a check that no changes had occurred in the experimental conditions.

The mean values for nerve cell neuronal glia and capillary glia are given in all tables.

TABLE I

Enzyme activity: nerve cells neuronal and capillary glia of Deiters nucleus controls  
Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu$ l/hour Mean values  $\pm$  S.F.V.

	NERVE CELL	n	NEURONAL GLIA	n	CAPILLARY GLIA	n
CYTOCHROME OXIDASE	4.2 0.6 <sup>x</sup>	16	11.5 0.8 <sup>x</sup>	17	11.6 1.1	10
SUCCINATE OXIDATION	2.2 0.3 <sup>x</sup>	17	4.2 0.5	9	3.3 0.7	9
$\alpha$ KETOGLUTARATE OXIDATION	2.2 0.4	9	2.1 0.2	12	4.0 0.7	13
GLUTAMATE OXIDATION	2.2 0.3 <sup>xx</sup>	21	1.1 0.2	9	1.6 0.4	10

<sup>x</sup> From Hydén & Pigeon 1960

<sup>xx</sup> From Hamberger 1961

## CONTROLS

The values listed in Table I are based on analyses of samples from 49 control animals

### Cytochrome Oxidase

Cytochrome oxidase the catalyst of electron transfer from cytochrome *c* to oxygen is the terminal enzyme of the respiratory chain. It is seen in Table I that in the isolated nerve cell the absolute value for this activity  $4.2 \times 10^{-4}$   $\mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour was higher than for any of the other oxidative activities investigated. The cytochrome oxidase activity in the neuronal and capillary glia was almost three times as great as that in the nerve cell. The activity was practically the same in the capillary and in the neuronal glia. The variations between observations in each group after correction for autooxidation were no greater than in other parameters studied.

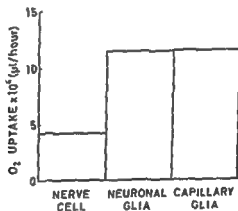


Fig. 12 Cytochrome oxidase in controls

### Succinate Oxidation

As in the case of cytochrome oxidase, succinate oxidation was lowest in the nerve cell. It is interesting to note that a difference was found between neuronal and capillary glia, the activity of the latter being considerably higher. There seemed to be an activity gradient from vessel to neuron.

In a preliminary experimental series it was found that the difference between the two types of glia was less marked if 10 ml of Indian ink were injected intravenously a few minutes before the animals were killed for better visualization of the vessels. The mean value of succinate oxidation in the

capillary glia was then  $0.9 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour whereas the corresponding value in the neuronal glia ( $4.2 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l}$ ) as well as in the nerve cell ( $2.2 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l}$ ) was the same as in the latter series. The decrease in activity in the capillary glia may have been due to a toxic effect of the Indian ink primarily localized to the immediate vicinity of the vessels.

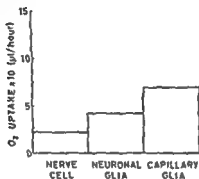


Fig 13 Succinate oxidation in controls

### $\alpha$ Ketoglutarate Oxidation

This activity was as high in the nerve cell as in the neuronal glia — a unique circumstance among the oxidative mechanisms studied here. The activity of the capillary glia was about 100% higher than that of the neuronal glia, thus an observation similar to that in succinate oxidation.

The improvements in the method described in the previous chapter gave as a rule mean values that were slightly higher than those reported earlier.

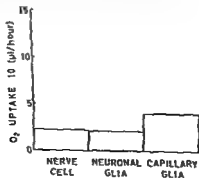


Fig 14  $\alpha$  K toglutarate oxidat on in controls

## CONTROLS

The values listed in Table I are based on analyses of samples from 49 control animals.

### Cytochrome Oxidase

Cytochrome oxidase the catalyst of electron transfer from cytochrome *c* to oxygen is the terminal enzyme of the respiratory chain. It is seen in Table I that in the isolated nerve cell the absolute value for this activity  $4.2 \times 10^{-4}$   $\mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour was higher than for any of the other oxidative activities investigated. The cytochrome oxidase activity in the neuronal and capillary glia was almost three times as great as that in the nerve cell. The activity was practically the same in the capillary and in the neuronal glia. The variations between observations in each group after correction for autooxidation were no greater than in other parameters studied.

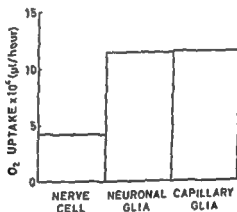


Fig. 12 Cytochrome oxidase in controls

### Succinate Oxidation

As in the case of cytochrome oxidase succinate oxidation was lowest in the nerve cell. It is interesting to note that a difference was found between neuronal and capillary glia the activity of the latter being considerably higher. There seemed to be an activity gradient from vessel to neuron.

In a preliminary experimental series it was found that the difference between the two types of glia was less marked if 10 ml of Indian ink were injected intravenously a few minutes before the animals were killed for better visualization of the vessels. The mean value of succinate oxidation in the

TABLE III

Effect of hypoxia (8%  $O_2$  for 1 hour) on cytochrome oxidase of nerve cell, neuronal and capillary glia of Deiter's nucleus. Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu l$   $O_2$ /hour. Mean values  $\pm$  S.E.M.

	NERVE CELL	n	NEURONAL GLIA	m	CAPILLARY GLIA	m
CYTOCHROME OXIDASE	14.2 $\pm$ 0.8*	14	11.2 $\pm$ 2.5	8	5.7 $\pm$ 0.7	7

\* from Hamberger & Hild 1963

The animals were placed in a glass cage and exposed to a mixture of 8%  $O_2$  and 92%  $N_2$  for about 15 hours. The flow rate of the gas was 3 litres/minute. The inlet and outlet were in opposite corners of the cage. The  $CO_2$  content of the used gas was found not to exceed 0.35% as analyzed by the micro method of Scholander (1947). No pathological symptoms were observed during or after the experiment, nor did microscopic examination of samples of the brain taken up to one month later disclose any pathological changes.

The results of determinations of the cytochrome oxidase activity are given in Table III. In the nerve cell the activity was increased to almost 300% of that in the controls, whereas after vestibular stimulation the corresponding increase was 60%.

The glial reactions were the reverse of those in the previous experiment. Thus the capillary glia formerly relatively unaffected showed a decrease in activity after hypoxia that was nearly as great as that in the neuronal glia after vestibular stimulation. It is seen in Table III that the  $O_2$  uptake fell to 5  $\cdot 10^{-4}$   $\mu l$ /hour as compared to 11.6 in the control samples. The cytochrome oxidase activity in the neuronal glia was on the contrary practically the same as in the controls.

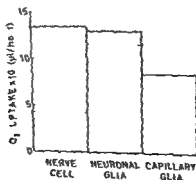


Fig. 1. Cytochrome oxidase after hypoxia.

symptoms were observed during or after stimulation. One hour after the last stimulation the animal was killed and material taken for analysis.

Only the cytochrome oxidase activity was assayed. It is seen in Table II that vestibular stimulation produced an increase in this activity in the nerve cell to  $6.7 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour, as compared to 4.2 in the control samples. A similar, significant increase has been recorded in succinate oxidation (Hydén & Pigeon 1960).

The reaction was however most pronounced in the neuronal glia in which the activity fell from 11.5 to  $3.0 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour.

The activity in the capillary glia — which in the controls was the same as that in the neuronal — showed a slight decrease in the mean value i.e. from 11.5 to  $9.8 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour. Thus the response did not follow that of the neuronal glia but remained relatively unaffected by this type of stimulation. This indicates that the changes which occur are strictly localized to the nerve cell with its surrounding glia.

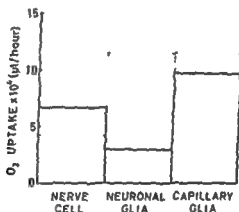


Fig. 10 Cytochrome oxidase after vestibular stimulation. Here and in Figs 11–13 the broken lines denote the corresponding level in the controls.

### Hypoxia

Nerve cells of rabbits exposed during a relatively long period to a moderate reduction in the oxygen content of the inhaled air show an increase in cytochrome oxidase activity of several hundred per cent (Hamberger & Hydén 1963). Such an adaptive change to a new environment has been demonstrated in other organs as well (Delachaux & Tissières 1946). Studies of cerebral metabolism by macrochemical methods have not given reason to expect such pronounced adjustment (Bernelli Iazzera, Bassi & Cassi 1959). The degree to which the glial cells are capable of adapting their enzyme activity is therefore a matter of great interest.



TABLE III

Effect of hypoxia (8%  $O_2$  for 1 hour) on cytochrome oxidase of nerve cell, neuronal and capillary glia of Dorsal nucleus. Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu l O_2$ /hour. Mean values  $\pm$  S.E.M.

	NERVE CELL	n	NEURONAL GLIA	n	CAPILLARY GLIA	n
CYTOCHROME OXIDASE	11.2 08 <sup>x</sup>	11	11.2 25	8	5.7 07	7

<sup>x</sup> From Hamberg & Hiden 1963

The animals were placed in a glass cage and exposed to a mixture of 8%  $O_2$  and 92%  $N_2$  for about 15 hours. The flow rate of the gas was 3 litres/minute. The inlet and outlet were in opposite corners of the cage. The  $CO_2$  content of the used gas was found not to exceed 0.3%, as analyzed by the micro method of Scholander (1947). No pathological symptoms were observed during or after the experiment nor did microscopic examination of samples of the brain taken up to one month later disclose any pathological changes.

The results of determinations of the cytochrome oxidase activity are given in Table III. In the nerve cell the activity was increased to almost 300% of that in the controls whereas after vestibular stimulation the corresponding increase was 60%.

The glial reactions were the reverse of those in the previous experiment. Thus the capillary glia formerly relatively unaffected showed a decrease in activity after hypoxia that was nearly as great as that in the neuronal glia after vestibular stimulation. It is seen in Table III that the  $O_2$  uptake fell to  $5.7 \times 10^{-4}$   $\mu l$ /hour as compared to 11.6 in the control samples. The cytochrome oxidase activity in the neuronal glia was on the contrary practically the same as in the controls.

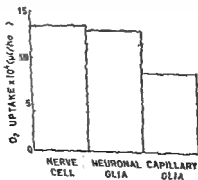


Fig 1 Cytochrome oxidase after hypoxia.

symptoms were observed during or after stimulation. One hour after the last stimulation the animal was killed and material taken for analysis.

Only the cytochrome oxidase activity was assayed. It is seen in Table II that vestibular stimulation produced an increase in this activity in the nerve cell to  $6.7 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour as compared to 4.2 in the control samples. A similar significant increase has been recorded in succinate oxidation (Hydén & Pigeon 1960).

The reaction was however most pronounced in the neuronal glia in which the activity fell from 11.5 to  $3.0 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour.

The activity in the capillary glia — which in the controls was the same as that in the neuronal — showed a slight decrease in the mean value i.e. from 11.6 to  $9.8 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour. Thus the response did not follow that of the neuronal glia but remained relatively unaffected by this type of stimulation. This indicates that the changes which occur are strictly localized to the nerve cell with its surrounding glia.

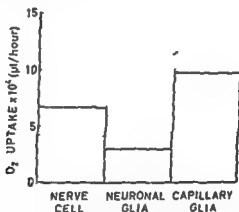


Fig. 16. Cytochrome oxidase after vestibular stimulation. Here and in Figs. 1 - 10 the broken lines denote the corresponding level in the controls.

## HYPONIA

Nerve cells of rabbits exposed during a relatively long period to a moderate reduction in the oxygen content of the inhaled air show an increase in cytochrome oxidase activity of several hundred per cent (Hamberger & Hydén 1963). Such an adaptive change to a new environment has been demonstrated in other organs as well (Delachaux & Tisneres 1946). Studies of cerebral metabolism by macrochemical methods have not given reason to expect such pronounced adjustment (Bernelli Zazzera, Bassi & Cassi 1959). The degree to which the glial cells are capable of adapting their enzyme activity is therefore a matter of great interest.

TABLE III

Effect of hypoxia (3%  $O_2$  for 15 hours) on cytochrome oxidase of nerve cell, neuronal and capillary glia of DeTers nucleus. Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu l$   $O_2$ /hour. Mean values  $\pm$  S.E.M.

	NERVE CELL		n		NEURONAL GLIA		n		CAPILLARY GLIA		n	
CYTOCHROME OXIDASE	4	08*	1		11.2	2.5	8		5.7	0.7	7	

\* From Harberger & Hyden 1963

The animals were placed in a glass cage and exposed to a mixture of 8%  $O_2$  and 92%  $N_2$  for about 15 hours. The flow rate of the gas was 3 litres/minute. The inlet and outlet were in opposite corners of the cage. The  $CO_2$  content of the used gas was found not to exceed 0.35%, as analyzed by the micro method of Scholander (1947). No pathological symptoms were observed during or after the experiment, nor did microscopic examination of samples of the brain taken up to one month later disclose any pathological changes.

The results of determinations of the cytochrome oxidase activity are given in Table III. In the nerve cell the activity was increased to almost 300% of that in the controls, whereas after vestibular stimulation the corresponding increase was 60%.

The glial reactions were the reverse of those in the previous experiment. Thus the capillary glia, formerly relatively unaffected, showed a decrease in activity after hypoxia that was nearly as great as that in the neuronal glia after vestibular stimulation. It is seen in Table III that the  $O_2$  uptake fell to  $5.7 \times 10^{-4}$   $\mu l$ /hour as compared to 11.6 in the control samples. The cytochrome oxidase activity in the neuronal glia was, on the contrary, practically the same as in the controls.

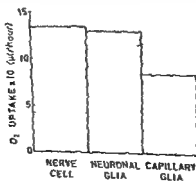


Fig 17 Cytochrome oxidase after hypoxia

symptoms were observed during or after stimulation. One hour after the last stimulation the animal was killed and material taken for analysis.

Only the cytochrome oxidase activity was assayed. It is seen in Table II that vestibular stimulation produced an increase in this activity in the nerve cell to  $6.7 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour, as compared to 4.2 in the control samples. A similar significant increase has been recorded in succinate oxidation (Hydén & Pigeon 1960).

The reaction was however most pronounced in the neuronal glia, in which the activity fell from 11.5 to  $3.0 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour.

The activity in the capillary glia — which in the controls was the same as that in the neuronal — showed a slight decrease in the mean value i.e., from 11.0 to  $9.8 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour. Thus the response did not follow that of the neuronal glia but remained relatively unaffected by this type of stimulation. This indicates that the changes which occur are strictly localized to the nerve cell with its surrounding glia.

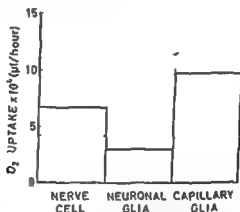


Fig. 16 Cytochrome oxidase after vestibular stimulation. Here and in Figs. 17–20 the broken lines denote the corresponding level in the controls.

## Hypoxia

Nerve cells of rabbits exposed during a relatively long period to a moderate reduction in the oxygen content of the inhaled air show an increase in cytochrome oxidase activity of several hundred per cent (Hamberger & Hydén 1963). Such an adaptive change to a new environment has been demonstrated in other organs as well (Delachaux & Tissieres 1946). Studies of cerebral metabolism by macrochemical methods have not given reason to expect such pronounced adjustment (Bernelli Zazzeri, Bassi & Cassi 1959). The degree to which the glial cells are capable of adapting their enzyme activity is therefore a matter of great interest.

In order to study the effect of TRIAP on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation in the capillary endothelium I made a few experiments with small bundles of the finest branches after freeing them carefully from all glial tissue (It must be pointed out that estimation of the volume was less exact than in the rest of the material) No noteworthy difference was present between the  $O_2$  uptake in samples from treated animals and from controls

Some experiments were also performed to ascertain the effect of TRIAP *in vitro* i.e. added to the incubation medium instead of being injected into the animal Cytochrome oxidase activity was found to be markedly inhibited at a concentration of 0.001 and 0.01 mg/ml and slightly stimulated at 0.1 mg/ml  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation was somewhat decreased at the two higher concentrations a little more at the highest No difference was noticeable between the *in vitro* effect on nerve cells and on glial cells It did not seem possible to reproduce the dramatic changes observed after intravenous administration in any event with the concentrations used

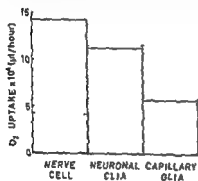


Fig. 18

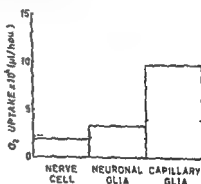


Fig. 19

Fig. 18 Cytochrome oxidase after TRIAP

Fig. 19  $\alpha$  Ketoglutarate oxidation after TRIAP

### Dinitrophenol

It can be inferred from the preceding section that the quantitative and qualitative changes in the PVA content of nerve cells and glial cells induced by TRIAP were in fact accompanied by a complicated pattern of profound changes in their enzyme activity Moreover this substance has been shown to cause uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation in the liver mitochondria of the rabbit (Eberts 1960) I therefore considered it desirable to compare

## Tricyano Amino Propene

Hydén (1947) showed that administration of malononitrile to rabbits raised the RNA and protein content of nerve cells. The active substance in the preparation used has subsequently been identified as 1,1,3-tricyano-2-amino-1-propene (TRIAP)<sup>1</sup> a dimer of malononitrile (Eberts 1960). As mentioned in Chapter I, certain chemical agents — among them TRIAP — have proved to exert a strong action on RNA and protein synthesis in nerve cells and glial cells of experimental animals.

Gomirato, Ferro Milone & Martinelli (1961) tested TRIAP in human subjects. No toxic symptoms were observed even after doses greatly in excess of those used in animal experiments.

In view of these findings I considered it profitable to study the effect of TRIAP to obtain data on the response of the nervous tissue to rapid changes in RNA synthesis. TRIAP was injected intravenously, the dose being 20 mg/kg of body weight of an aqueous solution containing 40 mg/ml. A slight rise in temperature was recorded but no other toxic symptoms. The animals were killed one hour after the injection.

The results are listed in Table IV. It is seen that the cytochrome oxidase activity in the nerve cell  $13.4 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour rose to almost the same level as after hypoxia. Although the RNA content of the neuronal glia decreased by 45% — with an associated change in the base composition (Eberts and Hydén 1961) — its cytochrome oxidase activity remained practically unaltered. That of the capillary glia was reduced to  $8.4 \times 10^{-4}$   $\mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour; the decrease was not, however, as great as after hypoxia.

As far as  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate oxidation is concerned the changes induced were partly in the opposite direction. Thus the activity in both nerve cell and neuronal glia showed an inappreciable change. The only component of the model system to be affected was the capillary glia in which the activity was increased by more than 100%.

TABLE IV

Effect of tricyano amino propene on enzyme activity of nerve cell, neuronal and capillary glia of Dexters' nucleus. 20 mg/kg injected i.v. 1 hour before death. Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$ /hour. Mean values  $\pm$  S.E.M.

	NERVE CELL	n	NEURONAL GLIA	n	CAPILLARY GLIA	n
CYTOCHROME OXIDASE	13.4 $\pm$ 1.2	11	12.9 $\pm$ 1.6	9	8.4 $\pm$ 0.8	11
$\alpha$ -KETOGLOUTARATE OXIDATION	19 $\pm$ 0.4	11	33 $\pm$ 0.6	12	97 $\pm$ 1.9	13

<sup>1</sup> TRIAP was kindly supplied by The Upjohn Company, Kalamazoo, Mich., U.S.A.

In order to study the effect of TRIAP on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation in the capillary endothelium I made a few experiments with small bundles of the finest branches after freeing them carefully from all glial tissue (It must be pointed out that estimation of the volume was less exact than in the rest of the material.) No noteworthy difference was present between the  $O_2$  uptake in samples from treated animals and from controls

Some experiments were also performed to ascertain the effect of TRIAP *in vitro* i.e. added to the incubation medium instead of being injected into the animal. Cytochrome oxidase activity was found to be markedly inhibited at a concentration of 0.001 and 0.01 mg/ml and slightly stimulated at 0.1 mg/ml  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation was somewhat decreased at the two higher concentrations a little more at the highest. No difference was noticeable between the *in vitro* effect on nerve cells and on glial cells. It did not seem possible to reproduce the dramatic changes observed after intravenous administration in any event with the concentrations used

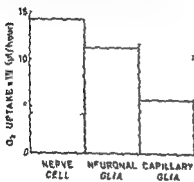


Fig 18

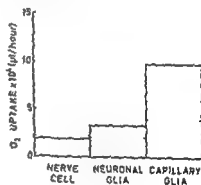


Fig 19

Fig 18 Cytochrome oxidase after TRIAP

Fig 19  $\alpha$  Ketoglutarate oxidation after TRIAP

### Dinitrophenol

It can be inferred from the preceding section that the quantitative and qualitative changes in the RNA content of nerve cells and glial cells induced by TRIAP were in fact accompanied by a complicated pattern of profound changes in their enzyme activity. Moreover this substance has been shown to cause uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation in the liver mitochondria of the rabbit (Fberts 1960). I therefore considered it desirable to compare

## Tricvano Amino Propene

Hyden (1947) showed that administration of malononitrile to rabbits raised the RNA and protein content of nerve cells. The active substance in the preparation used has subsequently been identified as 1,1,1-tricvano-2-amino-1-propene (TRIAP)<sup>1</sup> a dimer of malononitrile (Eberts 1960). As mentioned in Chapter I certain chemical agents — among them TRIAP — have proved to exert a strong action on RNA and protein synthesis in nerve cells and glial cells of experimental animals.

Gomirato, Ferro, Milone & Martinelli (1961) tested TRIAP in human subjects. No toxic symptoms were observed even after doses greatly in excess of those used in animal experiments.

In view of these findings I considered it profitable to study the effect of TRIAP to obtain data on the response of the nervous tissue to rapid changes in RNA synthesis. TRIAP was injected intravenously, the dose being 20 mg/kg of body weight of an aqueous solution containing 40 mg/ml. A slight rise in temperature was recorded but no other toxic symptoms. The animals were killed one hour after the injection.

The results are listed in Table IV. It is seen that the cytochrome oxidase activity in the nerve cell  $13.4 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour rose to almost the same level as after hypoxia. Although the RNA content of the neuronal glia decreased by 45% — with an associated change in the base composition (Egghazi and Hyden 1961) — its cytochrome oxidase activity remained practically unaltered. That of the capillary glia was reduced to  $8.4 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l/hour}$ ; the decrease was not however as great as after hypoxia.

As far as  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate oxidation is concerned the changes induced were partly in the opposite direction. Thus the activity in both nerve cell and neuronal glia showed an inappreciable change. The only component of the model system to be affected was the capillary glia in which the activity was increased by more than 100%.

TABLE IV

Effect of tricvano amino propene on enzyme activity of nerve cell, neuronal and capillary glia of Deters' nucleus. 20 mg/kg injected i.v. 1 hour before death. Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2/\text{hour}$ . Mean value  $\pm$  S.E.M.

	NERVE CELL	n	NEURONAL GLIA	n	CAPILLARY GLIA	n
CYTOCHROME OXIDASE	13.4-12	11	12.9-16	9	8.4-08	11
$\alpha$ -KETOGLOUTARATE OXIDATION	19-04	11	33-06	12	97-19	13

<sup>1</sup> TRIAP was kindly supplied by The Upjohn Company, Kalamazoo, Mich., U.S.A.



In order to study the effect of TRIAP on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation in the capillary endothelium I made a few experiments with small bundles of the finest branches after freeing them carefully from all glial tissue (It must be pointed out that estimation of the volume was less exact than in the rest of the material) No noteworthy difference was present between the  $O_2$  uptake in samples from treated animals and from controls

Some experiments were also performed to ascertain the effect of TRIAP *in vitro* i.e. added to the incubation medium instead of being injected into the animal Cytochrome oxidase activity was found to be markedly inhibited at a concentration of 0.001 and 0.01 mg/ml and slightly stimulated at 0.1 mg/ml  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation was somewhat decreased at the two higher concentrations a little more at the highest No difference was noticeable between the *in vitro* effect on nerve cells and on glial cells It did not seem possible to reproduce the dramatic changes observed after intravenous administration in any event with the concentrations used

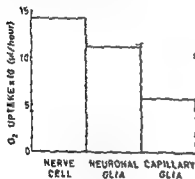


Fig 18

Fig 18 Cytochrome oxidase after TRIAP

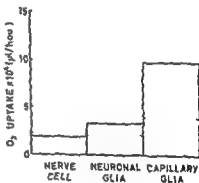


Fig 19

Fig 19  $\alpha$  Keto-glutarate oxidation after TRIAP

### Dinitrophenol

It can be inferred from the preceding section that the quantitative and qualitative changes in the PVA content of nerve cells and glial cells induced by TRIAP were in fact accompanied by a complicated pattern of profound changes in their enzyme activity Moreover this substance has been shown to cause uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation in the liver mitochondria of the rabbit (Fberts 1960) I therefore considered it desirable to compare

TABLE V

Effect of 2,4 dinitrophenol on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation by nerve cells neuronal and capillary glia of Deiters nucleus Rabbit killed one hour after injection At 2.5 and 12.5 mg/kg single determination at 5 mg/kg mean of 2 determinations Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu$ l  $O_2$ /hour

2,4 DINITROPHENOL mg/kg	NERVE CELL	NEURONAL GLIA	CAPILLARY GLIA
2.5	0.6	2.2	3.8
5.0	1.2	14.4	12.3
12.5	4.0	2.3	3.6

the effect of TRIAP with that of another uncoupling agent in an attempt to determine the nature of any typical reactions in the relevant cell types. For this purpose a few experiments were performed with 2,4 dinitrophenol (DNP) a substance with a well established *in vitro* effect.

DNP was administered by intravenous injection of an aqueous solution of the sodium salt, containing 4 mg/ml. The injection was given in the course of about 1 minute in doses of 2.5, 5.0 and 12.5 mg/kg of body weight. In addition to hyperpyrexia some motor restlessness was noticed with the highest dose. The animals were killed one hour after the injection.

The results are shown in Table V. After the lowest and highest dose (1 animal each)  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation in the neuronal and capillary glia was unaffected. Although a decrease and an increase respectively were recorded in the nerve cell they seemed more likely to be a result of the variation between individual observations than an indication of a definite change in activity.

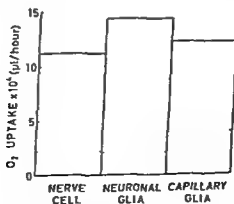


Fig. 20  $\alpha$  Ketoglutarate oxidation after DNP ( mg/kg)

After a dose of 5 mg/kg (2 animals) on the contrary the increase in oxygen uptake was striking. It amounted to at least 300% and in every case exceeded the highest value in the controls. The specific feature was that an increase in activity took place in all three components of the system indicating that the mechanism of action of DNP differs from that of TRIAP as well as that of the more physiological stimuli. The effect of DNP has a considerably less complicated distribution even if the factors underlying it are uncertain.

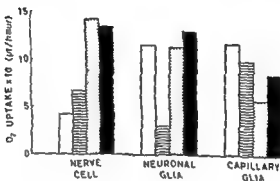


Fig. 1 Summary of cytochrome oxidase assays

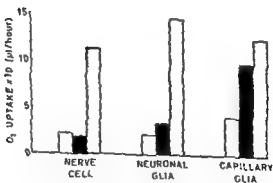


Fig. 2 Summary of α L. to glutamate oxidation assays

- CONTROLS
- ▨ VESTIBULAR STIMULATION
- ▤ HYPOXIA
- TRIAMINOAMINOPROPENE
- DINITROPHENOL

TABLE V

Effect of 2,4 dinitrophenol on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation by nerve cells neuronal and capillary glia of Deiters nucleus Rabbit killed one hour after injection At 2 and 12 mg/kg single determination at 5 mg/kg mean of 2 determinations Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu$ l  $O_2$ /hour

2,4-DINITROPHENOL mg/kg	NERVE CELL	NEURONAL GLIA	CAPILLARY GLIA
25	0.6	2.2	3.8
50	11.2	14.4	12.3
125	4.0	2.3	3.6

the effect of TRIAP with that of another uncoupling agent, in an attempt to determine the nature of any typical reactions in the relevant cell types. For this purpose, a few experiments were performed with 2,4 dinitrophenol (DNP) a substance with a well established *in vitro* effect.

DNP was administered by intravenous injection of an aqueous solution of the sodium salt containing 4 mg/ml. The injection was given in the course of about 1 minute in doses of 2.5, 5.0 and 12.5 mg/kg of body weight. In addition to hyperpyrexia some motor restlessness was noticed with the highest dose. The animals were killed one hour after the injection.

The results are shown in Table V. After the lowest and highest dose (1 animal each)  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation in the neuronal and capillary glia was unaffected. Although a decrease and an increase, respectively were recorded in the nerve cell they seemed more likely to be a result of the variation between individual observations than an indication of a definite change in activity.

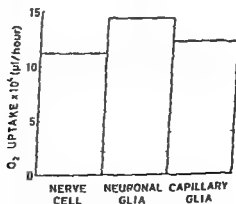


Fig. 20  $\alpha$  Ketoglutarate oxidation after DNP (5 mg/kg)

After a dose of 100 mg/kg (2 animals) on the contrary the increase in oxygen uptake was striking. It amounted to at least 300% and in every case exceeded the highest value in the controls. The specific feature was that an increase in activity took place in all three components of the system indicating that the mechanism of action of DNP differs from that of TRIAP as well as that of the more physiological stimuli. The effect of DNP has a considerably less complicated distribution even if the factors underlying it are uncertain.

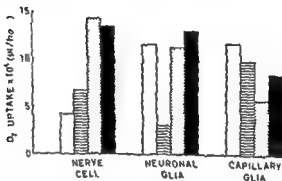


Fig. 1 Summary of cytochrome oxidase assay.

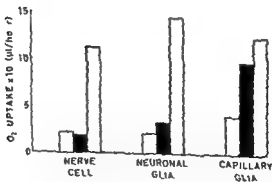


Fig. 2 Summary of  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation assay.

- CONTROLS
- ▨ VESTIBULAR STIMULATION
- ▩ HYPOXIA
- TRICYANDAMINOPROPENE
- DINITROPHENOL

TABLE V

Effect of 2,4 dinitrophenol on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation by nerve cells, neuronal and capillary glia of Dorsal nucleus Rabbit killed one hour after injection. At 2 and 12.5 mg/kg single determination at 5 mg/kg mean of 2 determinations. Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu$ l  $O_2$ /hour

2,4-DINITROPHENOL mg/kg	NERVE CELL	NEURONAL GLIA	CAPILLARY GLIA
2.5	0.6	2.2	3.8
5.0	11.2	14.4	12.3
12.5	4.0	2.3	3.6

the effect of TRIAP with that of another uncoupling agent in an attempt to determine the nature of any typical reactions in the relevant cell types. For this purpose, a few experiments were performed with 2,4 dinitrophenol (DNP) a substance with a well established *in vitro* effect.

DNP was administered by intravenous injection of an aqueous solution of the sodium salt containing 4 mg/ml. The injection was given in the course of about 1 minute in doses of 2.5, 5.0 and 12.5 mg/kg of body weight. In addition to hyperpyrexia some motor restlessness was noticed with the highest dose. The animals were killed one hour after the injection.

The results are shown in Table V. After the lowest and highest dose (1 animal each)  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation in the neuronal and capillary glia was unaffected. Although a decrease and an increase respectively, were recorded in the nerve cell they seemed more likely to be a result of the variation between individual observations than an indication of a definite change in activity.

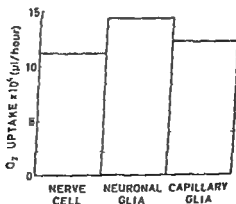


Fig. 20  $\alpha$  Ketoglutarate oxidation after DNP (5 mg/kg)

After a dose of 5 mg/kg (2 animals) on the contrary the increase in oxygen uptake was striking. It amounted to at least 300% and in every case exceeded the highest value in the controls. The specific feature was that an increase in activity took place in all three components of the system indicating that the mechanism of action of DNP differs from that of TRIAP as well as that of the more physiological stimuli. The effect of DNP has a considerably less complicated distribution even if the factors underlying it are uncertain.

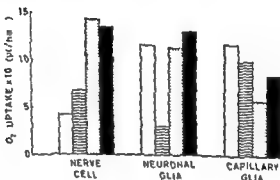


Fig. 4 Summary of cytochrome oxidase activity

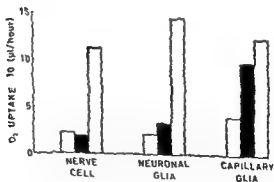


Fig. 5 Summary of  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate oxidation activity

- CONTROLS
- ▨ VESTIBULAR STIMULATION
- ▤ HYPOXIA
- TRICYANOAMINOPROPENE
- DINITROPHENOL

TABLE V

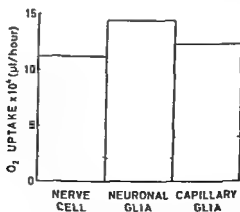
Effect of 2,4 dinitrophenol on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation by nerve cells neuronal and capillary glia of Deters nucleus Rabbit killed one hour after injection At 2.5 and 12.5 mg/kg single determination at 5 mg/kg mean of 2 determinations Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu$ l  $O_2$ /hour

2,4 DINITROPHENOL mg/kg	NERVE CELL	NEURONAL GLIA	CAPILLARY GLIA
2.5	0.6	2.2	3.8
5.0	1.2	14.4	12.3
12.5	4.0	2.3	3.6

the effect of TRIAP with that of another uncoupling agent in an attempt to determine the nature of any typical reactions in the relevant cell types. For this purpose a few experiments were performed with 2,4 dinitrophenol (DNP) a substance with a well established *in vitro* effect.

DNP was administered by intravenous injection of an aqueous solution of the sodium salt containing 4 mg/ml. The injection was given in the course of about 1 minute in doses of 2.5, 5.0 and 12.5 mg/kg of body weight. In addition to hyperpyrexia some motor restlessness was noticed with the highest dose. The animals were killed one hour after the injection.

The results are shown in Table V. After the lowest and highest dose (1 animal each)  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation in the neuronal and capillary glia was unaffected. Although a decrease and an increase respectively were recorded in the nerve cell they seemed more likely to be a result of the variation between individual observations than an indication of a definite change in activity.

Fig. 20  $\alpha$  Ketoglutarate oxidation after DNP (5 mg/kg)



After a dose of 5 mg/kg (2 animals) on the contrary the increase in oxygen uptake was striking. It amounted to at least 300% and in every case exceeded the highest value in the controls. The specific feature was that an increase in activity took place in all three components of the system indicating that the mechanism of action of DNP differs from that of TRIAP as well as that of the more physiological stimuli. The effect of DNP has a considerably less complicated distribution even if the factors underlying it are uncertain.

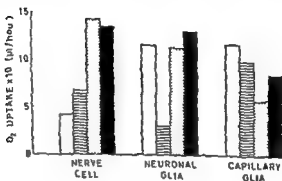


Fig. 1 Summary of cytochrome oxidase assays

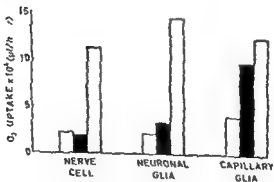


Fig. 2 Summary of α-ketoglutarate oxidation assays

- CONTROLS
- ▨ VESTIBULAR STIMULATION
- ▤ HYPOXIA
- TRICYANOAMINOPROPENE
- ▧ DINITROPHENOL

TABLE V

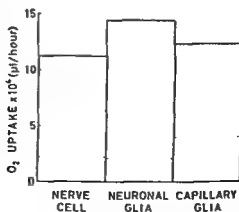
Effect of 2,4 dinitrophenol on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation by nerve cells neuronal and capillary glia of Diencephalus nucleus. Rabbit killed one hour after injection. At 2.5 and 12.5 mg/kg single determination at 5 mg/kg mean of 2 determinations. Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-4}$   $\mu$ l  $O_2$ /hour

2,4-DINITROPHENOL mg/kg	NERVE CELL	NEURONAL GLIA	CAPILLARY GLIA
2.5	0.6	2.2	3.8
5.0	1.2	14.4	12.3
12.5	4.0	2.3	3.6

the effect of TRIAP with that of another uncoupling agent in an attempt to determine the nature of any typical reactions in the relevant cell types. For this purpose a few experiments were performed with 2,4 dinitrophenol (DNP) a substance with a well established *in vitro* effect.

DNP was administered by intravenous injection of an aqueous solution of the sodium salt containing 4 mg/ml. The injection was given in the course of about 1 minute in doses of 2.5, 5.0 and 12.5 mg/l of body weight. In addition to hyperpyrexia some motor restlessness was noticed with the highest dose. The animals were killed one hour after the injection.

The results are shown in Table V. After the lowest and highest dose (1 animal each)  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation in the neuronal and capillary glia was unaffected. Although a decrease and an increase respectively were recorded in the nerve cell they seemed more likely to be a result of the variation between individual observations than an indication of a definite change in activity.

Fig. 20  $\alpha$  Ketoglutarate oxidation after DNP (5 mg/kg)

After a dose of 5 mg/kg (2 animals) on the contrary the increase in oxygen uptake was striking. It amounted to at least 300% and in every case exceeded the highest value in the controls. The specific feature was that an increase in activity took place in all three components of the system indicating that the mechanism of action of DNP differs from that of TRIAP as well as that of the more physiological stimuli. The effect of DNP has a considerably less complicated distribution even if the factors underlying it are uncertain.

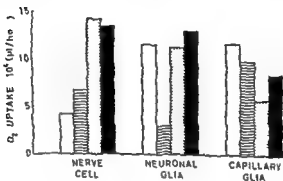


Fig. 1 Summary of cytochrome oxidase activity

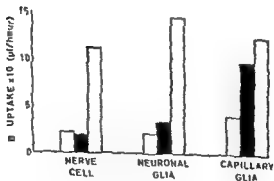


Fig. 2 Summary of α-ketoglutarate oxidase activity

- CONTROL
- ▨ VESTIBULAR STIMULATION
- ▤ HYPOXIA
- TRICYANAMINOPROPENE
- ◻ DINITROPHENOL

TABLE V

Effect of 2,4-dinitrophenol on  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate oxidation by nerve cells, neuronal and capillary glia of Deiters' nucleus. Rabbit killed one hour after injection. At 2.5 and 12.5 mg/kg single determination; at 5 mg/kg mean of 2 determinations. Enzyme activity expressed as  $10^{-3}$   $\mu$ l  $O_2$ /hour.

2,4-DINITROPHENOL mg/kg	NERVE CELL	NEURONAL GLIA	CAPILLARY GLIA
2.5	0.6	2.2	3.8
5.0	1.2	14.4	12.3
12.5	4.0	2.3	3.6

the effect of TRIAP with that of another uncoupling agent in an attempt to determine the nature of any typical reactions in the relevant cell types. For this purpose a few experiments were performed with 2,4-dinitrophenol (DNP), a substance with a well established *in vitro* effect.

DNP was administered by intravenous injection of an aqueous solution of the sodium salt, containing 4 mg/ml. The injection was given in the course of about 1 minute in doses of 2.5, 5.0 and 12.5 mg/kg of body weight. In addition to hyperpyrexia some motor restlessness was noticed with the highest dose. The animals were killed one hour after the injection.

The results are shown in Table V. After the lowest and highest dose (1 animal each)  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate oxidation in the neuronal and capillary glia was unaffected. Although a decrease and an increase respectively were recorded in the nerve cell they seemed more likely to be a result of the variation between individual observations than an indication of a definite change in activity.

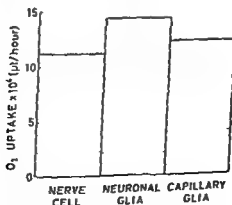


Fig. 20  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate oxidation after DNP (5 mg/kg)

## CHAPTER IV

### GENERAL DISCUSSION

The present investigation comprised the following

- 1 Separation of glial populations on the micro scale in order to produce a biological model system of the grey matter in the brain
- 2 Attempts to characterize the different components of the system biochemically
- 3 Attempts to produce specific chemical effects on the components by means of exogenous stimuli

#### Separation of Glial Populations

I used a micro dissection technique to separate the neuroglial populations in an attempt to illustrate in a concrete way the classical views on the relation of the glial cells to other elements of the central nervous system

The nerve cell was used as the standard volume and was analyzed as the first component of the system. This was because the biochemical activity and reactions of the glial cells must be seen against the background of events taking place in the nerve cell.

The second component the neuronal glia has been analyzed previously on the cellular level and compared with the nerve cell.

The third component the capillary glia — on which most attention was focused in this study — has not been analyzed before by quantitative methods. The question of particular interest was to what extent incorporation of this component in the system would provide a more detailed conception of the behaviour of the central nervous system on the cellular level.

Studies of histological sections have led to certain conclusions regarding the intimacy of the relation between glial cells and neuron and blood vessel respectively. In micro dissection of fresh tissue in the present study the mechanical contact observed was used as the criterion of the glial cells relation to their surroundings.

## RIBONUCLEIC ACID CONTENT OF GLIAL CELLS

In the lateral vestibular nucleus of the rabbit the RNA content of the glial cells is about 10% of that of the nerve cells on a dry weight basis (Hydén & Pignon 1960). Since the neuroglia is responsible for a great proportion of the volume of the grey matter a large contribution must be made by its cells to the total amount of RNA. I therefore considered it of interest to compare the two glial systems from the point of view of their total RNA content.

The determination of RNA in  $\mu\mu\text{g}$  per volume corresponding to that of a nerve cell was performed according to Edstrom (1958). The RNA was extracted from the cells with a buffered ribonuclease solution. The RNA content of the extracts was determined in micro drops by a photographic photometric method with ultraviolet light at 2570 Å.

The results are given in Table VI. It is seen that the total amount of RNA in the capillary glia was about 10% less than in the neuronal. The difference is slight and may reflect differences between the distribution of cell types in the two populations.

TABLE VI

RNA content ( $\mu\mu\text{g}/\text{sample}$ ) of neuronal and capillary glia of Dorsal nucleus. Mean values  $\pm$  S.E.M.

NEURONAL GLIA	n	CAPILLARY GLIA	n
150.41	4	138 $\pm$ 4.5	4

$\alpha$  ketoglutarate and glutamate amounted to  $2.2 \times 10^{-4} \mu\text{l O}_2$  per hour with approximately twice the value for cytochrome oxidase. The dry weight of nerve cells and glial samples as used in the present investigation is about 20 000  $\mu\text{g}$  (Hyden & Pigon 1960). This implies a  $QO$  ( $\mu\text{l/mg}$  dry weight/hour) of around 10.

In the control samples the respiration of the neuronal glia was the same as that of the nerve cell when  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate was used as substrate twice as large in succinate and half as large in glutamate. The cytochrome oxidase activity was about three times that in the nerve cell.

The oxygen uptake in the capillary glia was twice as high as in the nerve cell on incubation with  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate three times as high with succinate and somewhat lower with glutamate. The cytochrome oxidase activity — like that in the neuronal glia — was three times as great as in the nerve cell.

Consequently the  $QO_2$  of the neuronal glia was 5–20 and that of the capillary glia 8–30 depending on the substrate oxidized. This denotes an average quotient of approximately 14 for the whole system, a figure in fairly good agreement with that reported in macrochemical assays in slices or homogenates (Krebs 1950).

These data on the relation nerve cell/glia are to some extent at variance with the calculations made by Elliott & Heller (1957) and Korev & Orchen (1959) on the basis of macrochemical analyses since the present figures indicate greater metabolic activity in the glia. Korev & Orchen calculated the respiration per glial cell (corpus callosum) to be around  $12 \times 10^{-8} \mu\text{l O}_2/\text{hour}$  a figure practically identical with the lowest recorded in the present study namely in glutamate oxidation by neuronal glia. The highest value recorded is that for succinate oxidation by capillary glia is roughly seven times higher than their value. Korev, Orchen & Brotz (1958) also found that succinate was of importance for high glial respiration and that glutamate enhanced the activity in nerve cells.

Qualitative histochemical studies generally show the nerve cell bodies to have by far the highest content of respiratory enzymes (Thomas & Pearse 1961, Friede 1962). Quantitative micro analyses suggest on the contrary that in certain cases the enzyme activity of the glial cells is greater than that of the nerve cells. According to Robins (1960) the nerve cell bodies usually have lower activity than other parts of the grey matter. Similar results were reported by Buell *et al.* (1958) in analyses of the cerebellum and Ammon's horn. Lowry's studies (1957 a, b) on isolated ganglion cells and glial capsules showed higher activity in the nerve cells of enzymes implicated in glutamic acid metabolism, an observation in agreement with my finding of glutamate being the only substrate that was oxidized more rapidly by the nerve cells than by the

Studies of fixation artefacts in nervous tissue (Bairati 1958) give evidence of the tenacity of the glial cells contacts especially as far as vessels are concerned. From a more functional point of view additional proof of the close contact between glia and vessel has been provided by the observations of R. Geiger (1962) in cultures of nervous tissue when a little phenol red was added to the medium. The capillary cement concentrated the dye and the sucker processes of the astrocytes in contact with vessels concentrated it further and took it up in the cell body. The astrocytes that were not in contact with vessels showed no trace of the dye. In addition to the morphological connexions that have been observed as mentioned in Chapter I the exceedingly adherent capsule of the spinal ganglion cells is an example of the mechanical relation between glial cells and the neuron.

As shown in Chapter II the capillary glia contains more astrocytes than the neuronal. This implies a theoretical possibility of establishing the relative metabolism in the astrocytes and oligodendrocytes a problem that has been extensively studied over a period of years. This problem must however remain more or less unanswered in the present investigation since it is not known whether the metabolism of the oligodendrocytes is the same in the different glial populations.

A factor of some importance in this type of investigation is the purity of the glial samples. With the technique I used this source of error has proved to be small.

Another matter of interest is the degree of vitality of the samples. Dissected out nerve cells and glial cells from Deiters' nucleus have been kept for many months in a fluid nutrient medium without any apparent morphological signs of cell degeneration (Hansson & Sourander personal communication). The degree of persisting function in the cells is hard to define. The fact that the cells can be seen under the phase contrast microscope to have an unchanged structure after 24 hours in the incubation medium suggests that their structural organization has been retained during the experiment and that in this respect the cell is not merely a 'bag of mitochondria'. Actually the question is not of any major practical importance for the analyses in question here as even a 'bag of mitochondria' can be presumed to reflect the enzyme content of the cell at death of the animal.

### Characterization of the System's Components

Certain points must be mentioned regarding the nerve cell which served as the standard volume in dissection of the glia. Its metabolism varied less than in the other control material. Thus the oxidation of succinate as well as of



ulation see p 22) Using the results of succinate oxidation (Table 1) we get the following

$$7 \text{ oligodendrocytes} + 1 \text{ astrocyte} = 4 \cdot$$

$$6 \text{ oligodendrocytes} + 2 \text{ astrocytes} = 6 \cdot 9$$

This implies that an astrocyte would have about 15 times higher activity than an oligodendrocyte. The corresponding figure for  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation would be around 20.

Although this would be an interesting result it must for the time being remain a speculation to some extent because of uncertainty in identifying the different types of neuroglial cell (cf p 22). Moreover it is in contradiction to the majority of observations made in this field with other techniques.

Many workers who have studied the blood brain barrier have stressed the important role played by the pericapillary glia in maintaining the permeability (e.g. De Robertis & Gerschenfeld 1961). Such a function could account for its higher oxygen uptake.

To sum up the following statement can be made regarding the present results in the controls. With few exceptions the enzyme activity of the glial cells was higher than that of the nerve cells. With one exception i.e. cytochrome oxidase the capillary glia showed greater activity than the neuronal. The metabolic activity gradient from vessel to nerve cell can possibly be envisaged as parallel to an oxygen gradient in the same direction.

## Exogenous Stimulation

It must be emphasized that in the present connexion the term *stimulation* denotes incitement to a change in neuronal function. Hyden (1963) concluded that "An increased amount of RNA per nerve cell measured during a period of time can be taken as an indicator of increased neuronal function".

### Vestibular stimulation

The first type of stimulation used in the present study was vestibular stimulation by rotation of the animal. In the nerve cells of Dürers nucleus this produces an increase in the cytochrome oxidase RNA and protein content and a decrease in anaerobic glycolysis with changes in the reverse direction in the neuronal glia (Hyden & Pigon 1960, Hamburger & Hyden 1963). A kinetic study of succinoxidase activity and its temperature dependence under the same experimental conditions showed a difference between the neuron

glial cells Lowry stated that the activity of lactic dehydrogenase and isocitric dehydrogenase is the same in nerve cells and glia whereas that of glycolytic enzymes is greater in the glial cells

The aforementioned macrochemical analyses as well as the histochemical staining reactions complement the present results even if certain marked discrepancies are difficult to explain at this stage They can presumably be ascribed partly to variations in the relative activity in different parts of the CNS

The relation between the adenosine triphosphatase activity of the neuronal and capillary glia has recently been investigated by Cummins & Hydén (1962) in samples dissected out exactly as in the present study The activity was 50% higher in the neuronal glia indicating an inverse relation between oxygen uptake and ATPase activity in this case

The possibility that the difference between the ratio of astrocytes/oligodendrocytes in capillary and neuronal glia may actually be responsible for the present findings with respect to enzyme activity is to some extent borne out in the literature Thus Nasu & Viale (1961) found considerably greater lactic dehydrogenase, DPNH and TPNH diaphorase activity in astrocytomas than in oligodendrogliomas in histochemical studies with tetrazolium salts Lehrer (1961) using Lowry's microchemical assay method demonstrated high activity of *e.g.* isocitric dehydrogenase particularly in well differentiated astrocytomas Allen (1957) reported on the other hand that the oligodendroglioma contained eight times as much cytochrome oxidase as the astrocytoma Respiratory determinations have given similar results (Filiott & Heller 1957) It must however be recalled that even if tumours do represent pure glial samples it is difficult to state to what extent the relative activity in different types reflects the activity in organized tissue

Histochemical determinations in sections of normal material suggest that under normal conditions the astrocyte is the least enzyme rich of all cells in the central nervous system (Friede 1962) Rubinstein Klatzo & Miquel (1962) found low activity in the glial cells of the white matter without any apparent difference between the two types of glia

The differences found in the present study between the enzyme activity of the neuronal and capillary glia are striking and may be a function either of their location or of their composition with respect to cell types It is difficult to enter into any discussion of the former alternative If on the other hand the results are a function of composition a rough estimate can be made of the difference between the enzyme activity of astrocytes and oligodendrocytes

Let us assume that on the average the neuronal glia contains 1 astrocyte per 11 glial cells and the capillary glia 2 astrocytes per 8 glial cells (for cal

ulation see p 22) Using the results of succinate oxidation (Table I) we get the following

$$7 \text{ oligodendrocytes} + 1 \text{ astrocyte} = 4 *$$

$$6 \text{ oligodendrocytes} + 2 \text{ astrocytes} = 11 *$$

This implies that an astrocyte would have about 15 times higher activity than an oligodendrocyte. The corresponding figure for  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation would be around 20.

Although this would be an interesting result it must for the time being remain a speculation to some extent because of uncertainty in identifying the different types of neuroglial cell (cf p 22). Moreover it is in contradiction to the majority of observations made in this field with other techniques.

Many workers who have studied the blood brain barrier have stressed the important role played by the pericapillary glia in maintaining the permeability (eg Dr. Poberis & Gerschenfeld 1961). Such a function could account for its higher oxygen uptake.

To sum up the following statement can be made regarding the present results in the controls. With few exceptions the enzyme activity of the glial cells was higher than that of the nerve cells. With one exception i.e. cytochrome oxidase the capillary glia showed greater activity than the neuronal. The metabolic activity gradient from vessel to nerve cell can possibly be envisaged as parallel to an oxygen gradient in the same direction.

### Exogenous Stimulation

It must be emphasized that in the present connexion the term stimulation denotes incitement to a change in neuronal function. Hyden (1963) concluded that "An increased amount of RNA per nerve cell measured during a period of time can be taken as an indicator of increased neuronal function."

#### Vestibular stimulation

The first type of stimulation used in the present study was vestibular stimulation by rotation of the animal. In the nerve cells of Deiters' nucleus this produces an increase in the cytochrome oxidase RNA and protein content and a decrease in anaerobic glycolysis with changes in the reverse direction in the neuronal glia (Hyden & Eigon 1960, Hamberger & Hyden 1963). A kinetic study of succinoxidase activity and its temperature dependence under the same experimental conditions showed a difference between the neuron

and the neuronal glia. The neuron increased its activity as a function of stimulation. The glia did not change in this respect nor did the calculated activation energy of the reaction reveal any temperature dependence within the range 37° to 27° C (Hyden & Lango 1962).

Enhanced activity in a tissue *eg* nervous tissue is accompanied by an increase in its utilization of oxygen and glucose (Larrabee 1961). In the system in question here, it is evidently the nerve cell that chiefly shows a tendency to a raised oxygen uptake and the neuronal glia to an increase in the capacity to utilize glucose. This indicates that nerve cell and neuronal glia form a unit whose reactions are complementary. No decrease in cytochrome oxidase activity was however observed in the capillary glia. A possible cause is its more intimate contact with the oxygen and nutrient transporting blood. In this case the capillary glia is to a certain extent unattached to the unit formed by nerve cell plus neuronal glia.

If it is presumed that the decrease in activity after stimulation involves only the oligodendrocytes the larger number of astrocytes in the capillary glia would explain why the decrease is confined to the perineuronal glial tissue. Friede (1962) has in fact demonstrated that the astrocytes have the ability to react in the form of increased enzyme activity to a greater degree than the oligodendrocytes and even than the nerve cells. Rubinstein, Klatzo & Miquel (1962) also reported enormous astrocyte activity with an increase in various respiratory enzymes after experimental brain damage whereas no change could be observed in the oligodendrocytes. On the other hand Koenig & Barron (1962) found that an experimental demyelinating lesion of the spinal cord produced enlargement and proliferation of the oligodendrocytes and that the reactive glial cells had a raised RNA content and enhanced reactions to oxidative enzymes.

For the time being it is only possible to speculate on the causes of the changes in enzyme activity in the system.

## *Hypoxia*

To permit a comparison with the reactions of the system under different environmental conditions a series of rabbits were exposed to air with an oxygen content of 8%. I also hoped that this might help to explain the changes in enzyme activity produced by vestibular stimulation.

With this reduction of the oxygen level in the inhaled air the cerebral metabolism proceeds largely unaltered the lactic acid production is slightly raised but the ATP and phosphocreatine levels are unaffected (Gurdjian

Webster & Stone 1949) In the present experiments the nerve cell reacted in the same way as to vestibular stimulation namely by an increase in cytochrome oxidase activity although it was a much larger one The glial reactions were on the contrary the reverse of those in the previous experiment i.e. the activity in the neuronal glia was unchanged and that in the capillary glia increased This implies that a similar response is elicited from the nerve cell irrespective of whether stimulation involves increased activity or lowered  $O_2$  tension The earlier reciprocity indicating interaction of nerve cell and neuronal glia was no longer present

Little is known about the effect of prolonged hypoxia on cerebral metabolic processes Since most experiments have been made under purely anoxic conditions no pronounced adaptive changes on the cellular level have had time to occur Severe anoxia of various kinds causes a decrease in oxygen uptake (Rowenthal Shenkin & Drabkin 1945) As the animals' survival is prolonged by barbiturate anaesthesia and/or exposure to anoxia prior to anoxic experiments (Cahn *et al* 1961) certain metabolic processes in the brain can be modified to lessen the effect of reduced  $O_2$  tension

Bernelli Zarzera Bassi & Cassi (1959) exposed rats to a hypoxic atmosphere (3%  $O_2$  and 97%  $N_2$ ) for two hours Analysis of brain slices disclosed no changes in respiration respiratory quotient phosphorylation processes or amino acid incorporation In my experiments the sum of activity changes in the system was small due to concurrent positive and negative alterations This implies that the results are not necessarily in opposition to those of Bernelli Zarzera *et al* In guinea pigs adapted to low oxygen tension during a long period Delachaux & Tissieres (1946) found a 200–300% increase in cytochrome *c* in the skeletal muscle which is much more homogeneous than cerebral tissue

The structural elements of the brain are sensitive to hypoxia in the following order 1) neuron 2) oligodendrocyte 3) astrocyte 4) microglia 5) connective tissue (Lewis & Swank 1953 Scholz 1958) A reaction in the form of enhanced enzyme activity seems to occur only when the sensitivity is great enough for hypoxia to act as a stimulus The difference between the reaction of the neuronal and the capillary glia might be explained by the higher astrocyte content of the latter

The low oxygen uptake in cells surrounding the capillaries may imply some kind of parallel phenomenon to the reaction of the neuronal glia after vestibular stimulation i.e. a depressive effect to save the already limited oxygen supply for the needs of the nerve cell For glial tissue has a considerably greater glycolytic capacity (Victor & Wolf 1937 Elliott & Heller 1957 Hamberger & Hydén 1963)

### *Tricyano amino propene*

The enzymic changes occurring after vestibular stimulation and hypoxia were accompanied by changes in the RNA and protein content of the cells. Several types of stimulation involving increased functional demands on the nerve cell produce marked alterations in its RNA content (Hydén 1962). I therefore studied the changes in enzyme activity that have been found to result from chemically induced (TRIAP) rapid pronounced changes in RNA and protein content (Fgyhazi & Hydén 1961).

With respect to cytochrome oxidase the results were similar to those after hypoxia & Ketoglutarate oxidation was influenced in the opposite direction i.e., the activity was practically unchanged in the nerve cell and neuronal glia whereas it was raised in the capillary glia.

After vestibular stimulation the changes in cytochrome oxidase activity are associated with parallel changes in succinoxidase and RNA content in both glial cells and nerve cells (Hydén & Pignon 1960). As far as TRIAP is concerned, it appears that  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation does not necessarily run parallel to the changes in cytochrome oxidase.

Measurements of the endogenous respiration extrapolated to the time of the animal's death show that it is totally inhibited in both nerve cells and neuronal glia by TRIAP (Hydén & Lange in press). It seems that oxidation of the substrate, represented here by  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate is inhibited during the TRIAP induced synthesis of RNA. A quantitative increase in RNA content as in the nerve cell is evidently accompanied by raised cytochrome oxidase activity whereas a quantitative decrease as in the neuronal glia does not induce any change in the activity of this enzyme.

The capillary glia which exhibited pronounced changes in activity of both enzymes assayed differed completely in behaviour from the neuronal glia which was almost unaffected.

### *Dinitrophenol*

*In vitro* TRIAP causes uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation in liver mitochondria (Eberts 1960). To ascertain whether this mechanism of action might have been responsible for the increased respiration in the capillary glia the effect on  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation of dinitrophenol injected intravenously before death of the animal was investigated (Table V). In a system with respiratory control DNP usually produces an increased oxygen uptake by uncoupling the phosphorylation processes associated with oxidation (Loomis & Lipmann 1948). This does not however apply to brain mitochondria (Lor

trup & Srennerholm 1963) When injected into animals the effect of DNP is expressed as a rise in basal metabolism and body temperature (Slater & Hulsmann 1959) although no changes in the activity of respiratory enzymes have been observed in tissue slices (Dianzani & Scuro 1956) In the present investigation on the contrary distinct changes in activity were seen after a suitable dose All the components of the system being influenced in the same direction

Several factors may account for this difference between the effect of TRIAP and DNP For example the lipid solubility of a substance is considered to play a role as far as penetration into the cerebral tissues is concerned (Mayer Matckel & Brodie 1959 for bibliography see Lajtha 1962) Tests of the lipid solubility expressed as the organic solvent/water partition coefficient do not however show any definite difference between TRIAP and DNP in this respect No explanation of the effect of DNP can in fact be given when such a complicated system as a whole animal is involved The only permissible conclusion is that TRIAP has an effect similar to that of dinitrophenol on the capillary glia whereas the other components of the system are not influenced in this direction

### Conclusions

The response of the nerve cell to the types of stimulation tested here was in the form of a significant increase in cytochrome oxidase activity PNA and protein content which was however considerably greater after hypoxia and TRIAP than after vestibular stimulation Respiration was not on the contrary increased after TRIAP when  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate was used as substrate The neuronal glia did not as a rule react as far as the variables investigated were concerned with the exception of a marked decrease in activity after vestibular stimulation Its PNA content seemed however to be more easily influenced

In no case did either the neuronal or capillary glia respond by an increase in cytochrome oxidase activity In the capillary glia on the other hand oxidation of the substrate could be influenced in a positive direction

In earlier studies of the effect of vestibular stimulation inverse changes in nerve cell and neuronal glia were observed with respect to both cytochrome oxidase and anaerobic glycolysis (Hydén & Egon 1960 Hamberger & Hydén 1963) It was therefore concluded that these two components form a functional metabolic unit

When the reactions to the other stimuli used in the present investigation are studied it is seen that reciprocal changes occur in nerve cell and capillary

glia instead. It is difficult to decide whether these results imply that in certain cases the nerve cell forms a unit with the neuronal glia, and in others with the capillary glia. One is more inclined to interpret the reactions as an indication that, in certain cases, the neuronal glia can be shown to have a metabolic relation to the nerve cell. The capillary glia should — in analogy with the neuronal — be evaluated in relation to the capillary endothelium which is the borderline tissue between blood and brain. The relatively high enzyme activity, as well as the changes in connexion with stimulation shown to be specific to capillary glia, demonstrate that this tissue element participates most strikingly in the metabolic activities of the nervous system.



The present investigation consists of separation and biochemical characterization of glial populations on the micro scale. The main object is to study the glia surrounding the finest cerebral vessels — the *capillary glia*. This component is compared with the glia surrounding nerve cells — the *neuronal glia* and with *nerve cells*. Cells within the lateral vestibular nucleus of Deiters in the rabbit are used for this purpose.

The biochemical characterization implies analyses of glial clumps containing 7–8 cells (approximately  $10^{-8}$  g of tissue) as well as isolated nerve cells. The oxidation of cytochrome c succinate  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate and glutamate is determined by measuring the oxygen uptake with the micro diver technique of Zeuthen (1953).

In the controls the nerve cell shows the lowest enzyme activity per volume unit or per unit dry weight except for glutamate oxidation. The activity of the capillary glia is found to be 50–100 % higher than that of the neuronal apart from cytochrome oxidase whose activity is similar in both types of glia.

After experimental stimulation of the animals — by rotation hypoxia and chemical means — the nerve cell reacts in every case by an increase in cytochrome oxidase activity. The response of the two glial components is found to differ.

The capillary glia is uninfluenced by vestibular (rotatory) stimulation whereas after hypoxia and chemical stimulation (TRIAP) the change is the reverse of that in the nerve cell — a decrease in cytochrome oxidase activity. Moreover an increase in  $\alpha$  ketoglutarate oxidation is observed after chemical stimulation (TRIAP) in contrast to the practically unaltered activity of this enzyme in the nerve cell.

The neuronal glia is found to react to vestibular stimulation by a decrease in cytochrome oxidase activity. As regards the other factors studied it seems to be relatively unaffected by any of the types of stimulation.

**Conclusions:** It is concluded from the results that the neuronal and the capillary glia exhibit marked enzymic differences in a number of respects. The reactions of the neuronal glia argue in favour of a metabolic relation with the nerve cell. The enzymic properties of the capillary glia on the other hand reflect functional differences between it and the neuronal glia. It is suggested that the capillary glia together with the vascular endothelium is of importance in the transport of material between blood and brain.

## REFERENCES

- ABOOD L G R W GERARD J BAYAS and R D TSCHIRGI Substrate and enzyme distribution in cells and cell fractions of the nervous system *Amer J Physiol* 1952 *168* 728-738
- ADAMS R D and J M FOLLEY The neurological disorder associated with liver disease *Res Publ Ass nerv ment Dis* 1953 *32* 198-237
- ALLEN V Cytochrome oxidase in human brain tumours *J Neurochem* 1957 *2* 37-44
- BAIRATI A Perivascular relationship of the neuroglia cells In *Biology of Neuroglia* Ed W F Windle Charles C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1958 pp 85-98
- BERG O and B KALLÉN Studies on rat neuroglia cells in tissue culture *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 1959 *18* 458-467
- BERNFIELDI ZAZZERA A M BASSI and E CASATI The metabolism of isolated cerebral cortex from hypoxic rats *Exp Cell Res* 1959 *18* 554-559
- BRODAL A and O POMPEIANO The vestibular nuclei in the cat *J Anat* 1951 *91* 438-454
- BRODAL A O POMPEIANO and F WALBERG The Vestibular Nuclei and their Connections Anatomy and Functional Correlations Oliver and Boyd London 1962
- BUELL M V O H LOWRY V R ROBERTS M W CHAYO and J I KAPPAHN The quantitative histochemistry of the brain *J Biol Chem* 1958 *233* 970-993
- BULBRING E F J PHILPOT and F D BOSANQUET Amine oxidase precursor amines and cholinesterase in brain tumours *Lancet* 1953 *264* 865-866
- CANN J P MATHIS M HEROLD J ALANO I VAN HOLTFY and V BARRÉ Effects of acute anoxia on EEG and brain metabolism in the rabbit and dog In *Cerebral Anoxia and the EEG* Ed H Gastaut and J S Meyer Charles C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1961 pp 89-104
- CAMMERMEYER J Reappraisal of the perivascular distribution of oligodendrocytes *Am J Anat* 1960 *106* 197-231 (1960 a)
- CAMMERMEYER J Is the perivascular oligodendrocyte another element controlling the blood supply to neurons? *Angiology* 1960 *11* 508-517 (1960 b)
- CAVANAGH J B R H S THOMPSON and G R WEBSTER The localization of pseudo cholinesterase activity in nervous tissue *Quart J exp physiol* 1954 *39* 185-197
- CHRISTIE G S J D JUDAH and K R REE Cofactor and metal requirements of brain mitochondria *Proc roy Soc B* 1953 *141* 553-561
- CRAIGIE E H The comparative anatomy and embryology of the capillary bed of the nervous system *Res Publ Ass nerv ment Dis* 1939 *18* 3-28
- CUMMINS J and H HYDÉ Adenosine triphosphate levels and adenosine triphosphatases in neurons glia and neuronal membranes of the vestibular nucleus *Biochim biophys Acta* 1962 *60* 271-283
- DAVID M B On the structure of the synapse In *Metabolism of the Nervous System* Ed D Richter Pergamon Press London 1957 pp 9-66

- DELACHAUX A and A TISSIÈRE: L'adaptation tissulaire à l'hypoxodose. *Helv. med. Acta* 1946 13 333-339
- DZEMTSKY E V and H LUSE: Fine structure of the neuropil in relation to neuroglial cells. In: *Biology of Neuroglia*. Ed. W F Wundt. Charles C Thomas, Springfield, Illinois 1968 pp 99-119
- DE ROBERTIS E and H M GERSCHETZFIELD: Submicroscopic morphology and function of glial cells. *Int. Rev. Neurobiol.* 1961 3 1-61
- DIARZANI M U and H SCHEER: The effects of some inhibitors of oxidative phosphorylation on the morphology and enzymic activities of mitochondria. *Biochem. J.* 1966 6 65-76
- DIXON A C: Glycolysis and cytochemistry of cerebral cortex. *J. Neurobiol.* 1963 4 70-77
- EBERTS F S JR: 113 trioxo-2-aminopropene (U 9189): a biologically active component of aqueous solutions of mononitrite. *Biochem. biophys. Res. Commun.* 1966 3 101-109
- EDSTRÖM J E: Quantitative determination of ribonucleic acid in the microchromatogram range. *J. Neurochem.* 1965 3 100-106
- ETCHEBÉ E and H HYDÉN: Experimentally induced changes in the base composition of the ribonucleic acids of isolated nerve cells and their oligodendroglial cells. *J. biophys. biochem. Cytol.* 1961 10 403-410
- ELLIOT K A C and I H HELLER: Metabolism of neurons and glia. In: *Metabolism of the Nervous System*. Ed. D Richter. Pergamon Press, London 1967 pp 86-290
- FÄRSTEDT A and H LUTER: The distribution of mass and lipids in the single nerve fiber. *Exp. Cell Res.* 1960 1 81-91
- FARGHAR M O and J F HARTMAN: Neuroglial structure and relationships as revealed by electron microscopy. *J. Neurocytol. exp. Neurol.* 1966 16 18-39
- FRIEDE R L: Histochemical investigations on succinic dehydrogenase in the central nervous system. I. The postnatal development of rat brain. *J. Neurochem.* 1963 4 101-110
- FRIEDE R L: The cytochemistry of normal and reactive astrocytes. *J. Neuropath. exp. Neurol.* 1967 14 1-48
- FRIEDE R L and W H VAN HOUTEN: Neuronal extension and glial supply. Functional significance of glia. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.* 1967 48 81-84
- GEIGER A: Modes of the utilization of glucose by the brain. In: *Progress in Neurobiology*. Ed. R G Greer. H. Hoeber, Harper, New York 1962 pp 310-348
- GERSCHETZFIELD H M, F WALD, J A ZADOKHIN and L H DE ROBERTIS: Function of astroglia in the water metabolism of the central nervous system. *Neurology* 1959 9 41-44
- GIACOBINI F: Histochemical demonstration of AChE activity in isolated nerve cells. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1956 36 26-39
- GIACOBINI F: Quantitative determination of cholinesterase in individual sympathetic cells. *J. Neurochem.* 1966 1 34-44
- GIACOBINI F: A cytochemical study of the localization of carbonic anhydrase in the nervous system. *J. Neurochem.* 1966 9 169-171
- GLEES P: *Neuroglia: Morphology and Function*. Blackwell, Oxford 1966
- COMARATO G, F FERRO MILONE and G MARTINELLI: Clinical trial on the action of U 9189 substance Trioxo-Amino-Propene. *J. Neurobiol.* 1961 3 344-353
- COMARATO G and H HYDÉN: A biochemical error in the Parkinson disease. In press

- GURDJIAN F S J E WEBSTER and W E STONE Cerebral constituents in relation to blood gases Amer J Physiol 1949 156 149-157
- HALD A Statistical Theory with Engineering Applications Wiley New York 1951
- HAMBROGER A Oxidation of tricarboxylic acid cycle intermediates by nerve cell bodies and glial cells J Neurochem 1961 8 31-33
- HAMBROGER A and H HYDÉN Inverse enzymatic changes in neurons and glia during increased function and hypoxia J Cell Biol 1963 In press
- HANSSON H A and P SÖURANDER Personal communication
- HARRFVÄLD A and J P SCHADÉ Chloride movements in cerebral cortex after circulatory arrest during spreading depression J cell comp Physiol 1959 54 63-84
- HESS A The fine structure of nerve cells and fibers neuroglia and sheaths of the ganglion chain in the cockroach (*Periplaneta americana*) J biophys biochem Cytol 1958 1 731-742
- HILD W Myelin formation in cultures of mammalian central nervous tissue In Progress in Neurobiology 4 Ed S R Korey Hoeber Harper New York 1959 pp 188-200
- HILD W and I TAYAKI Morphological and physiological properties of neurons and glial cells in tissue culture J Neurophysiol 1962 25 277-304
- HOLMGREN E Beiträge zur Morphologie der Zelle I Nervenzellen Anat Hefte 1901 19 269-325
- HOLMGREN E Trophospongium und Apparato reticolare der spinalen Ganglienzellen Anat Anz 1914 46 127-138
- HOLMGREN E Nervcellers trofospongier Sv Lak sällsk handl 1917 43 664-680
- HORSTMANN E and H MEYER Die Feinstruktur des molekularen Rindengraues und ihre physiologische Bedeutung Z Zellforsch 1959 49 569-604
- HYDÉN H Protein and nucleotide metabolism in the nerve cell under different functional conditions Symposia Soc Exptl Biol 1947 1 152-162
- HYDÉN H The chemistry of single neurons A study with new methods In Biochemistry of the Developing Nervous System Ed H Waelch Academic Press New York 1955 pp 358-371
- HYDÉN H Quantitative assay of compounds in isolated fresh nerve cells and glial cells from control and stimulated animals Nature 1959 184 433-435
- HYDÉN H Cytophysiological aspects of the nucleic acids and proteins of nervous tissue In Neurochemistry Ed R A C Elliott I H Page and J H Quastel Charles C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1962 pp 331-375
- HYDÉN H RNA - a functional characteristic of the neuron and its glia In press
- HYDÉN H and E EOXHIZI Nuclear RNA changes of nerve cells during a learning experiment in rats Proc nat Acad Sci 1962 48 1366-1373
- HYDÉN H and P LANGE A kinetic study of the neuron glia relationship J Cell Biol 1962 13 233-237
- HYDÉN H and P LANGE Neuron glia endogenous respiration in vivo In press
- HYDÉN H and S LARSSON The application of a scanning and computing cell analyzer to neurocytological problems J Neurochem 1956 1 134-144
- HYDÉN H S LOVTRUP and A PIRNÖY Cytochrome oxidase and succinoxidase activities in spinal ganglion cells and in glial capsule cells J Neurochem 1958 2 304-311
- HYDÉN H and A PIRNÖY A cytophysiological study of the functional relationship between oligodendroglial cells and nerve cells of Deiters nucleus J Neurochem 1960 6

- HLATZO J and J MOQUEL Observations on pinocytosis in nervous tissue *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 1960 19 4 3-48
- KOENIG H and K BARBOV Morphologic and enzymatic alterations of reacting glia in an experimental demyelinating lesion *Anat Rec* 196 117 469
- KOENIG H M B BUCKLE and R P BUCKLE Nucleic acid and protein metabolism in white matter *Arch Neurol* 196 6 1 1-193
- KOENIG H R A GROSS and W F WINDLE A physiological approach to perfusion fixation of tissues with formalin *Stain Technol* 1944 19 13-2
- KOREY M R and M ORRIS Relative respiration of neuronal and glial cells *J Neurochem* 1959 3 2 7-99
- KOREY S P M ORRIS and M BROTZ Study of white matter I Chemical constitution and respiration of neuroglial and myelin enriched fraction of white matter *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 19 8 17 430-435
- KRABER H A Body size and tissue respiration *Bochem biophys Acta* 19 11 249-259
- KREBS H A and D BELLAMY The interconversion of glutamic acid and aspartic acid in respiring tissues *Bochem J* 1960 5 523-529
- KRYSTOF ELNER W Über die Architektur der Glia im Zentralnervensystem des Menschen und der Säugetiere 1952 Cited in Glees
- KULPEMEYER H Das Verhalten der Neuroglia in den Vorderhörnern des Rückenmarks der weissen Maus unter dem Einfluss physiologischer Tätigkeiten *Z Anat Entwickl Gesch* 19 116 304-31
- KULPEMEYER H and E WISTENFELD Funktionsbedingte Veränderungen der Kerngrösse von Gliazellen im Cauda des Rückenmarks der weissen Maus *Z Anat Entwickl Gesch* 19 116 91-101
- KUNTZ A and N M SULKIN Hyperplasia of peripheric neuroglia. A factor in pathologic changes; autonomic ganglion cells. *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 1947 13 33-35 (1947a)
- KUNTZ A and N M SULKIN The neuroglia in the autonomic ganglia: cytologic structure and reactions to stimulation *J comp Neurol* 194 86 46-47 (1947b)
- LAJTHA A The blood barrier system. In *Neurochemistry* Ed H A C Elliott I H Page and J W Quarles Charles C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1960 pp 393-430
- LAPHAM L W Cytologic and cytochemical studies of neuroglia I A study of the problem of ameboid reactive protoplasmic astrocytes *Am J Path* 196 41 1-21
- LARRABEE M C Glucose metabolism in ganglia and nerves. In *Biophysics of Physiological and Pharmacological Actions* Ed A W Shanes American Association for the Advancement of Science 1961 pp 199-213
- LEHRER G M The quantitative histochemistry of human glial tumours. In *Int Congr Neuropath* 1 München 1961 pp 88-90
- LEWIS R C and R L SWANK Effect of cerebral microembolism on the perineuronal neuroglia *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 1957 1 7-63
- LINDERSTROM LANGE A Distribution of enzymes in tissue and cells *Harvey Lect* 1939 34 214-45
- LOOMIS W F and F JERMAN Reversible inhibition of the coupling between phosphorylation and oxidation *J Biol Chem* 1945 175 807-809
- LOVY P S and L STEVENBERG Chemical properties of brain mitochondria *Exp Cell Res* 1963 In press
- LOVY O H Quantitative analysis of single nerve cell bodies. In *Progress in Neurobiology* Ed H Wastach Hoeber-Harper New York 19 7 pp 69-76 (197a)

- LOWRY O H Enzyme concentrations in individual nerve cell bodies. In *Metabolism of the Nervous System* Ed D Richter Pergamon Press London 1957 pp 373-374 (1957 b)
- LOWRY O H J V PASSONNEAU D W SCHULZ and M K ROCK The measurement of pyridine nucleotides by enzymatic cycling *J Biol Chem* 1961 236 2746-2750
- LOWRY O H \ R ROBERTS and M W CHANG The analysis of single cells *J Biol Chem* 1956 222 97-107
- LOWRY O H \ H ROBERTS K Y LEVIER M L WU A L FARR and R W ALBER The quantitative histochemistry of brain III Unkon's horn *J Biol Chem* 1954 207 39-49
- LUNSDEN C E and C M POMERAT Normal oligodendrocytes in tissue culture *Exp Cell Res* 1951 2 103-114
- LUSE S A Electron microscopic observations of the central nervous system *J biophys biochem Cytol* 1956 2 531-542
- LUSE S A and H HARRIS Electron microscopy of the brain in experimental edema *J Neurosurg* 1960 17 439-446
- MARINESCO G Etudes histologiques sur les oxydases et les peroxydases *C R Soc Biol* 1910 82 258-263
- MAYER S R P MAICKEL and H B BRODIE Kinetics of penetration of drugs and other foreign compounds into cerebrospinal fluid and brain *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1959 127 205-211
- MAYNARD M A R L SCHULTZ and D C PEASE Electron microscopy of the surface of rat cerebral cortex *Amer J Anat* 1957 100 409-433
- MEESSEN H and J OLSZEWSKI Cytoneuroanatomic Atlas of the Rhombencephalon of the Rabbit 5 Karger Basel 1949
- MURRAY, M R Factors bearing on myelin formation in vitro In *Progress in Neurobiology* 4 Ed S R Koren Hoeber Harper New York 1959 pp 201-221
- NANSEN F The structure and combination of the histological elements of the central nervous system Bergen 1887 Cited in Gleebs
- NASU H and G L VIALI *Recherches d'histochimie enzymatique avec les sels de tetrazolium sur les gliomes* IV Int Congr Neuropath Munchen 1 1961 pp 115-119
- OKESCHE A Der histochemisch nachweisbare Glykogenaufbau und abbau in den Astrocyten und Ependymzellen als Beispiel einer funktion-abhängigen Stoffwechsellaktivitat der Neuroglia *Z Zellforsch* 1961 54 307-361
- PALAY S L An electron microscopical study of neuroglia In *Biology of Neuroglia* Ed W F Windle Charles C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1953 pp 24-40
- PENFIELD W Neuroglia normal and pathological In *Cytology and Cellular Pathology of the Nervous System* 2 Ed W Penfield Paul H Hoeber New York 1953 pp 421-479
- POMERAT C M Pulatile activity of cells from human brain in tissue culture *J Nerv Ment Dis* 1951 113 430-449
- POMERAT C M Dynamic neuropathology *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 1955 14 28-38
- POPE A Quantitative distribution of dipeptidase and acetylcholine esterase in architectonic layers of rat cerebral cortex *J Neurophysiol* 1955 15 115-130
- POPE A Implication of histochemical studies for metabolism of neuroglia In *Biology of Neuroglia* Ed W F Windle Charles C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1953 pp 211-233

- FORB 1 H H HIZ J R WARK and R H THOMSON Intralamellar distribution of cytochrome oxidase and DP\ in rat cerebral cortex J Neurophysiol 11 8 19 9- 0
- POTTER V P The homogenate technique In Manometric Techniques Ed W W Umbreit R H Burris and J P Stauffer Burgess Minneapolis 1957 pp 170-187
- RAMÓN MOLINER E A study of neuroglia the problem of transitional forms J comp Neurol 10 3 110 147-151
- ROBINSON E The chemical composition of central tracts and of nerve cell bodies. J Histochem Cytochem 1960 8 431-436
- ROBINSON E and D E SMITH A quantitative histochemical study of eight enzymes of the cerebellar cortex and subjacent white matter in the monkey Res Publ Assoc Nerv ment Dis 1953 30 303-3
- ROBINSON F D E SMITH L M EYDT and R E McCAMAN The quantitative histochemistry of the cerebral cortex II Architectonic distribution of nine enzymes in the motor and visual cortices J Neurochem 19 6 1 68-6
- ROUSSEAU O H SKEETIN and D I DRANKIN Oxidation of pyruvate and glucose in brain  $\alpha$ -ketoglutarate from animals subjected to irreversible hemorrhagic shock, carbon monoxide poisoning or temporary arrest of the circulation - a study of the effects of anoxia Amer J Physiol 1945 141 334-34
- RUBINSTEIN L J J J LATRO and J MIZEL Histochemical observation on oxidative enzyme activity of glial cells in a focal brain injury J Neuropath exp Neurol 196 1 116-126
- PUTENBERG A M M WOLMAN and A M SETLOWAN Comparative distribution of succinic dehydrogenase in six mammals and modification in the histochemical technique J Histochem Cytochem 19 3 1 66-61
- SCHNEIDER M E and A B BREIBERL Neurons and neuroglia cells as seen with the light microscope In Biology of Neuroglia Ed H F Wurtz Charles C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1958 pp 5-3
- SCHNEIDER M C and V R POTTER Assay of animal tissues for respiratory enzymes succinate dehydrogenase and cytochrome oxidase J Biol Chem 1943 149 21-2
- SJÖHOLANDER P F Analyzer for accurate estimation of respiratory gases in one half cubic centimeter samples J Biol Chem 194 167 230-240
- SCHOLZ W An nervöse System gebundene (toxische) Kreislaufschäden Cited by Braun L Pathological effects of cerebral anoxia Amer J Med 1849 9 259-66
- SHIMIZU Y and Y MORIKAWA Histochemical studies of succinic dehydrogenase of the brain in mice rats guinea pigs and rabbits J Histochem Cytochem 10 3 334-340
- SLATER E C The measurement of the cytochrome oxidase activity of enzyme preparations Biochim J 1949 44 303-318 (1949 a)
- SLATER E C A comparative study of the succinic dehydrogenase cytochrome system in the rat muscle and in kidney Biochem J 1949 45 1-8 (1949 b)
- SLATER E C and W C HISSONARRE Control of rate of intracellular respiration. In Cytochrome Symposium on the Regulation of Cell Metabolism Church H London 1959 pp 69-83
- SMART J and C P LEROUX Evidence for division and transformations of neuroglial cells in the mouse brain as derived from radioautography after injection of Thymidine H J comp Neurol 1961 116 349-367

- SPIELMAYER W Histopathologie des Nervensystems Springer Berlin 1927
- SVÄETICHIN G M LAUFER G MITARAI H FATECHAND E VALLFCALLE and J VILLEGAL  
Chal control of neuronal networks and receptors In The Visual System Neuro  
physiology and Psychophysics Symp Freiburg 1961 pp 447-456
- THOMAS E and A G PEARSE The fine localization of dehydrogenases in the nervous  
system Histochemie 1961 2 266-282
- TACHIBAI R D The blood brain barrier In Biology of Neuroglia Ed W F Windle  
Charles C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1968 pp 130-138
- VICTOR I V and A WOLF Metabolism of brain tumors Res Publ Nerv ment Dis  
1937 16 44-58
- VIRCHOW R Über das granulirte Ansehen der Wanderungen der Gehirnsventrikel Allg  
Z Psychol 1846 3 242-250 Cited in Gleece
- WINDLE W F Biology of Neuroglia Ed W F Windle Charles C Thomas Springfield  
Illinois 1968
- WOLFGRAF F and A S ROSE Histochemical demonstration of dehydrogenase in  
neuroglia Exp Cell Res 1969 17 526-530
- ZAJICEK J and E ZEUTHEN Quantitative determination of cholinesterase activity in  
individual cells Exp Cell Res 1966 11 568-579
- ZAJICEK J and E ZEUTHEN Quantitative determination by a special propella diver  
of cholinesterase activity in individual cells with notes on other uses of the method  
In Gen Cytochem Methods 2 Ed J F Danielli Academic Press New York 1961  
pp 131-152
- ZEUTHEN E Growth as related to the cell cycle in single cell cultures of Tetrahymena  
piriformis J Embryol exp Morph 1963 1 239-249







ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL. 58 SUPPLEMENTUM 205

The Negative After-Potential<sup>187</sup>  
of Frog Skeletal Muscle Fibres<sup>135</sup>

BY

ANDERS FLRSSON

TÖCKHOLM 1963

**GÖTEBORG 1963**  
**ELANDERS BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG**

ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

*Vol 28 Supplementum 205*

FROM THE NOBEL INSTITUTE FOR NEUROPHYSIOLOGY

KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET STOCKHOLM 60 SWEDEN

The Negative After-Potential  
of Frog Skeletal Muscle Fibres

BY

ANDERS PERSSON

STOCKHOLM 1963



## INTRODUCTION

Intracellular recording has revealed that the action potential of the frog muscle fibre is followed by a negative after potential (Hodgkin and Nastuk 1950) the amplitude and shape of which vary more than the spike potential. Desmedt (1953) noted that the membrane potential at the time of the beginning of the after potential is largely independent of the potassium concentration ratio  $[K]_{\text{outside}}/[K]_{\text{inside}}$  across the membrane. Since the resting membrane potential depends on the ratio of potassium concentrations it is obvious that the amplitude of the after potential relative to resting potential is also dependent on this ratio. The time course of the after potential is said to be exponential (Ishiko and Sato 1956, Frank 1957) and it has been suggested that the membrane is passively recharged through the constant resting leak conductance during the after potential (Ishiko and Sato 1956, Frank 1957, Hutter and Noble 1960). However Macfarlane and Meares (1958a) showed that metabolic poisons such as dinitrophenol reduce or even abolish the negative after potential. Cooling has a similar effect (Macfarlane and Meares 1958b). Replacement of the chloride ions in the external solution by other halides or by thiocyanate increase both the negative after potential and the twitch tension (Lubin 1957). Findings of this kind suggest that the mechanism underlying the after potential may be more involved than a mere passive recharge of the membrane capacitance through a path of constant permeability.

In the present investigation it was found that the membrane conductance was clearly increased during the early part of the after potential and that the membrane potential changed in a rather complicated fashion. Later on at times longer than about 15 msec after the peak of the action potential the conductance changes were found to be negligible and the after potential declined with a simple exponential time course. The ionic environment was experimentally varied in order to find the relation between the after potential and the ionic currents. The effects of dinitrophenol and of repetitive stimulation were also examined.

I ar Heggstroms Tryckeri AB  
Stockholm 1963



## INTRODUCTION

Intracellular recording has revealed that the action potential of the frog muscle fibre is followed by a negative after potential (Hodgkin and Huxley 1950) the amplitude and shape of which vary more than the spike potential. Desmedt (1953) noted that the membrane potential at the time of the beginning of the after potential is largely independent of the potassium concentration ratio  $[K]_{\text{outside}}/[K]_{\text{inside}}$  across the membrane. Since the resting membrane potential depends on the ratio of potassium concentrations it is obvious that the amplitude of the after potential relative to resting potential is also dependent on this ratio. The time course of the after potential is said to be exponential (Ishiko and Sato 1956, Frank 1957) and it has been suggested that the membrane is passively recharged through the constant resting leak conductance during the after potential (Ishiko and Sato 1956, Frank 1957, Hutter and Noble 1960). However Macfarlane and Meares (1958a) showed that metabolic poisons such as dinitrophenol reduce or even abolish the negative after potential. Cooling has a similar effect (Macfarlane and Meares 1958b). Replacement of the chloride ions in the external solution by other halides or by thiocyanate increases both the negative after potential and the twitch tension (Lubin 1957). Findings of this kind suggest that the mechanism underlying the after potential may be more involved than a mere passive recharge of the membrane capacitance through a path of constant permeability.

In the present investigation it was found that the membrane conductance was clearly increased during the early part of the after potential and that the membrane potential changed in a rather complicated fashion. Later on at times longer than about 15 msec after the peak of the action potential the conductance changes were found to be negligible and the after potential declined with a simple exponential time course. The ionic environment was experimentally varied in order to find the relation between the after potential and the ionic currents. The effects of dinitrophenol and of repetitive stimulation were also examined.

Ivar Hæggströms Tryckeri AB  
Stockholm 1963

## METHODS

The experiments were performed during 1958—1962 on muscles from *Rana temporaria*. Autumn frogs were kept in a cold storage room at 3–5°C and remained in fairly good condition for up to 5–6 months. No obvious seasonal variations were noted in the measured potentials. The sartorius muscle was dissected and mounted horizontally with its deep surface uppermost in a Perspex chamber where it could be viewed with a binocular microscope. The distal tendon and the pelvic insertion were attached to clamps by means of human hairs or fine silk threads. The muscle was stretched to about 1.5 times its length *in situ* in order to reduce movement.

Capillary micro-electrodes of less than 0.5  $\mu$  tip diameter and filled with 3 M KCl were used for intracellular measurements. Only electrodes with resistances of 10–20 M $\Omega$  and with tip potentials less than 5 mV measured in Ringer's solution (Adrian 1956) were used. The micro-electrode was connected through an Ag/AgCl electrode to the input cathode follower of a differential DC amplifier (grid current  $< 10^{-11}$  A, input capacity  $< 5$  pF). The reference electrode in the external solution was also Ag/AgCl. In some experiments in which chloride ions in the external solution were replaced by methylsulphate a junction potential appeared making the micro-electrode negative by about 10 mV. This was avoided if the reference electrode was furnished with a KCl bridge. The amplifier was connected to a double beam cathode ray tube.

The stimulating current was supplied by two similar rectangular pulse generators each having an output impedance of 1000 ohms. In most experiments the muscle fibres were excited through a glass pipette having a tip pore of about 100–150  $\mu$  diameter and filled with Ringer's solution. Contraction was limited to very few fibres and unnecessary movement minimized if the tip of the electrode was placed quite near the surface of the muscle. Sometimes an intracellular micro-electrode was used to pass currents through a single fibre.

The experiments were performed at room temperature (about 20°C). The standard Ringer's solution had the following composition (mM): NaCl 110.0, KCl 2.5, CaCl<sub>2</sub> 2.0, NaHCO<sub>3</sub> 2.5, Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub> 1.2, NaH<sub>2</sub>IO<sub>4</sub> 0.6, glucose 10, pH 7.3–7.5. Isotonic solutions with different ionic composition were made with the following substitutions: a) KCl was substituted by NaCl; b) Na<sup>+</sup> by choline<sup>+</sup>; c) Cl<sup>-</sup> by CH<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup>; d) NaCl by sucrose. Hypertonic solutions were sometimes used in order to prevent the mechanical contraction (Hodgkin and Horowitz 1957) which often caused a distor-



## METHODS

The experiments were performed during 1958–1962 on muscles from *Rana temporaria*. Autumn frogs were kept in a cold storage room at 3–5°C and remained in fairly good condition for up to 5–6 months. No obvious seasonal variations were noted in the measured potentials. The sartorius muscle was dissected and mounted horizontally with its deep surface uppermost in a Perspex chamber where it could be viewed with a binocular microscope. The distal tendon and the pelvic insertion were attached to clamps by means of human hairs or fine silk threads. The muscle was stretched to about 1.3 times its length *in situ* in order to reduce movement.

Capillary micro-electrodes of less than 0.5  $\mu$ m tip diameter and filled with 3 M KCl were used for intracellular measurements. Only electrodes with resistances of 10–20 M $\Omega$  and with tip potentials less than 5 mV measured in Ringer's solution (Adrian 1956) were used. The micro-electrode was connected through an Ag/AgCl electrode to the input cathode follower of a differential DC amplifier (grid current  $< 10^{-11}$  A, input capacity  $< 5$  pF). The reference electrode in the external solution was also Ag/AgCl. In some experiments in which chloride ions in the external solution were replaced by methylsulphate a junction potential appeared making the micro-electrode negative by about 10 mV. This was avoided if the reference electrode was furnished with a KCl bridge. The amplifier was connected to a double beam cathode ray tube.

The stimulating current was supplied by two similar rectangular pulse generators each having an output impedance of 1000 ohms. In most experiments the muscle fibres were excited through a glass pipette having a tip pore of about 100–150  $\mu$ m diameter and filled with Ringer's solution. Contraction was limited to very few fibres and unnecessary movement minimized if the tip of the electrode was placed quite near the surface of the muscle. Sometimes an intracellular micro-electrode was used to pass currents through a single fibre.

The experiments were performed at room temperature (about 20°C). The standard Ringer's solution had the following composition (mM): NaCl 110.0, KCl 2.5, CaCl<sub>2</sub> 2.0, NaHCO<sub>3</sub> 2.5, NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> 1.2, NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> 0.6, glucose 10, pH 7.3–7.5. Isotonic solutions with different ionic composition were made with the following substitutions: a) KCl was substituted by NaCl; b) Na<sup>+</sup> by choline<sup>+</sup>; c) Cl<sup>-</sup> by CH<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup>; d) NaCl by sucrose. Hypertonic solutions were sometimes used in order to prevent the mechanical contraction (Hodgkin and Horowitz 1957) which often caused a distort



## METHODS

The experiments were performed during 1955—1962 on muscles from *Rana temporaria*. Autumn frogs were kept in a cold storage room at 3—5°C and remained in fairly good condition for up to 5—6 months. No obvious seasonal variations were noted in the measured potentials. The sartorius muscle was dissected and mounted horizontally with its deep surface uppermost in a Perspex chamber where it could be viewed with a binocular microscope. The distal tendon and the pelvic insertion were attached to clamps by means of human hairs or fine silk threads. The muscle was stretched to about 1.3 times its length *in situ* in order to reduce movement.

Capillary micro-electrodes of less than  $0.5\ \mu$  tip diameter and filled with 3 M KCl were used for intracellular measurements. Only electrode with resistances of 10—20 M $\Omega$  and with tip potentials less than 5 mV measured in Ringer's solution (Adrian 1956) were used. The micro-electrode was connected through an Ag/AgCl electrode to the input cathode follower of a differential DC amplifier (grid current  $<10^{-14}$  A, input capacity  $<5$  pF). The reference electrode in the external solution was also Ag/AgCl. In some experiments in which chloride ions in the external solution were replaced by methylsulphate a junction potential appeared making the micro-electrode negative by about 10 mV. This was avoided if the reference electrode was furnished with a KCl bridge. The amplifier was connected to a double beam cathode ray tube.

The stimulating current was supplied by two similar rectangular pulse generators each having an output impedance of 1000 ohms. In most experiments the muscle fibres were excited through a glass pipette having a tip pore of about 100—150  $\mu$  diameter and filled with Ringer's solution. Contraction was limited to very few fibres and unnecessary movement minimized if the tip of the electrode was placed quite near the surface of the muscle. Sometimes an intracellular micro-electrode was used to pass currents through a single fibre.

The experiments were performed at room temperature (about 20°C). The standard Ringer's solution had the following composition (mM): NaCl 110.0, KCl 2.5, CaCl<sub>2</sub> 2.0, NaHCO<sub>3</sub> 2.5, Na<sub>2</sub>HPO<sub>4</sub> 1.2, NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> 0.6, glucose 10, pH 7.3—7.5. Isotonic solutions with different ionic composition were made with the following substitutions: a) KCl was substituted by NaCl; b) Na<sup>+</sup> by choline<sup>+</sup>; c) Cl<sup>-</sup> by CH<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>; d) NaCl by sucrose. Hypertonic solutions were sometimes used in order to prevent the mechanical contraction (Hodgkin and Horowitz 1957) which often caused a distur-

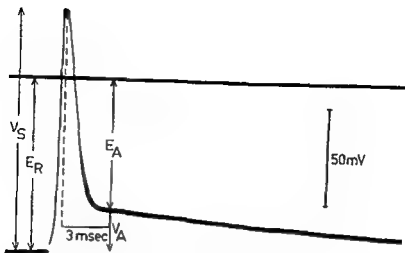


Fig 1 Normal action potential recorded intracellularly. The straight line indicates  $I = 0$ .  $E_R$  = resting potential,  $V_S$  = action potential,  $E_A$  and  $V_A$  = peak amplitude of the negative after potential.

tion of the recorded after potentials. This distortion was especially disturbing in experiments with methylsulphate because the twitch tension was then approximately twice the normal (Hutter and Noble 1960). These hypertonic solutions were usually made up by adding sucrose and had a tonicity of twice normal. A continuous flow of fresh fluid was run in at a rate such that the fluid in the recording cell was changed in about 2 minutes. In most experiments a mixture of 5% carbon dioxide in oxygen was bubbled through the bath solution. The degree of oxygen saturation had no detectable effect on the potentials. The recording cell held 5 ml solution which could be completely changed in less than one minute. Only surface fibres were used and changes in the recorded potentials were observed within two minutes after the beginning of a fluid change. In any case the muscles were routinely left for 15 min to permit equilibration with the new solution. If hypertonic solutions were tested the muscle was first equilibrated in an isotonic solution and the change to the hypertonic one made just before the penetrations. This was done in order to avoid undesirable changes in intracellular ionic composition due to the osmotic effects.

**Nomenclature** Membrane potentials are given as inside potential minus outside potential.  $V$  is used for potentials relative to resting potential and  $E$  for absolute values. Thus  $V = E - E_R$ .

The following abbreviations are used (see Fig 1).  $E_R$  = resting potential,  $V_S$  = action potential,  $E_A$  and  $V_A$  = negative after potential, the peak value of  $E_A$  and  $V_A$  being measured 3 msec after the peak of the action potential,  $\tau_A$  = the time constant of decay of  $V_A$ .



## RESULTS

### *The negative after potential in normal Ringer's solution*

Typical action potentials recorded intracellularly are shown in Fig 2. The shape of the beginning of the after potential varied in different muscles and sometimes also among individual fibres in the same muscle. Fig 2 shows two examples representing different types of negative after potential. The most common type was that in Fig 2a which showed a distinct transition from the falling phase of the spike to the after potential but with  $\frac{dI}{dt}$  remaining negative throughout. This was found in about two third of 3 000 penetrated muscle fibres from 127 muscles. In other muscles  $\frac{dI}{dt}$  went through a positive region (Fig 2b). The hump thus appearing reached a maximum about 5 msec after the spike of the action potential. The transition between the different forms of the negative after potential was gradual.

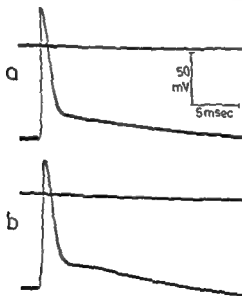


Fig 2 Action potentials showing differences in the shape of the beginning of the negative after potential

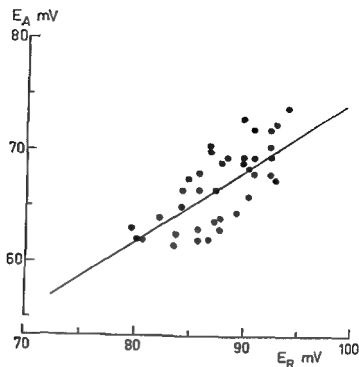


Fig 3 Peak  $E_A$  plotted against  $E_R$  Normal Ringer's solution The straight line represents  $E_A^{\text{peak}} = 0.66 E_R + 9.1$

The peak amplitude of the negative after potential ( $V_A$ ) was  $20.9 \pm 3.8$  mV (mean and s.d. of 334 fibres from 21 muscles) while the resting potential was  $88.0 \pm 4.6$  mV. These values are in good agreement with previous investigations (Hodgkin and Nastuk 1950 Macfarlane and Morris 1958a). The amplitude of the hump measured as the potential difference between the maximum and minimum values of the after potential was as mentioned earlier, quite variable but did not exceed 1 mV in normal Ringer's solution at room temperature.

Fig 3 is a scatter diagram showing the relation between the peak after potential ( $E_A$ ) and the resting potential ( $E_R$ ). The values of  $E_A$  and  $E_R$  are taken from measurements in normal Ringer's solution and thus represent normal variations. The regression line calculated by the method of least squares had the equation  $E_A^{\text{peak}} = 0.66 E_R + 9.1$  in this case. In other experiments the slope of the regression line varied between 0.72 and 0.75. These values agree well with earlier measurements made by Frank (1957).

Desmedt (1953) found in experiments in which  $[K]$  and  $[Ca]$  were varied that the peak value of  $E_A$  was independent of the  $[K]$  concentration changes

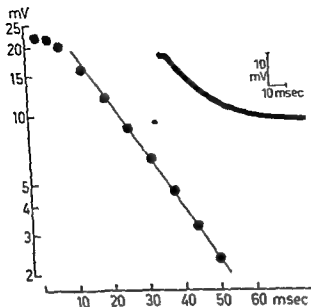


Fig 4 Semilogarithmic plot of the peak amplitude  $E_A$  of the after potential against time for the recorded after potential shown in the inset.

and consequently independent of the accompanying changes in resting potential. The present findings apparently disagree with those of Desmedt. However, Desmedt investigated only the effect of increased  $[K]_i$  and decreased  $[K]_o$  relative to the normal concentration and consequently only the effect of increased  $E_R$ . In other experiments (see p. 13) the dependence of peak  $E_A$  on  $E_R$  was further examined when  $[K]_o$  was varied. These experiments showed that the peak value of  $E_A$  was independent or only slightly dependent on  $E_R$  in the region where  $E_R$  was higher than normal.

The time course of the decay of the negative after potential is plotted in Fig. 4. The semilogarithmic plot shows that at times longer than about 15 msec the decay followed reasonably well a simple exponential time course. At shorter times this was not the case. It has been suggested (Frank 1957; Hutter and Noble 1960) that the specific permeability changes which are the cause of the action potential are terminated soon after the spike potential, i.e. that the permeability after the spike is the same as the permeability of the resting membrane. The after potential would consequently show nothing more than how the membrane capacitance is discharged.

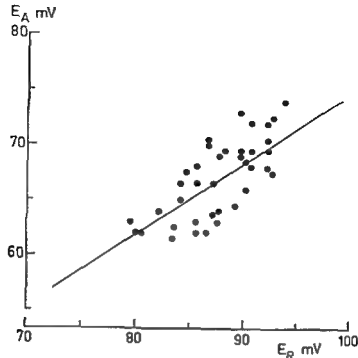


Fig. 3. Peak  $E_A$  plotted against  $E_R$ . Normal Ringer's solution. The straight line represents  $E_A^{\text{peak}} = 0.66 E_R + 9.1$ .

The peak amplitude of the negative after potential ( $I_A$ ) was  $20.9 \pm 3.8$  mV (mean and S.D. of 334 fibres from 21 muscles) while the resting potential was  $88.0 \pm 4.6$  mV. These values are in good agreement with previous investigations (Hodgkin and Nastuk 1950; Macfarlane and Morris 1958a). The amplitude of the hump measured as the potential difference between the maximum and minimum values of the after potential was as mentioned earlier quite variable but did not exceed 1 mV in normal Ringer's solution at room temperature.

Fig. 3 is a scatter diagram showing the relation between the peak after potential ( $E_A$ ) and the resting potential ( $E_R$ ). The values of  $I_A$  and  $E_R$  are taken from measurements in normal Ringer's solution and thus represent normal variations. The regression line calculated by the method of least squares had the equation  $E_A^{\text{peak}} = 0.66 E_R + 9.1$  in this case. In other experiments the slope of the regression line varied between 0.32 and 0.75. These values agree well with earlier measurements made by Frank (1957).

Desmedt (1953) found in experiments in which  $[K]_i$  and  $[K]$  were varied that the peak value of  $I_A$  was independent of these concentration changes.

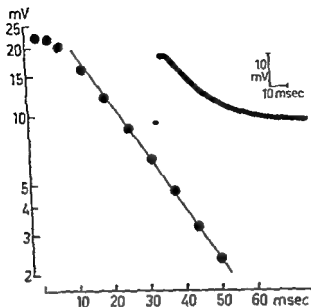


Fig. 4 Semilogarithmic plot of the peak amplitude  $E_A$  of the after potential against time from the recorded after potential shown in the inset

and consequently independent of the accompanying changes in resting potential. The present findings apparently disagree with those of Desmedt. However, Desmedt investigated only the effect of increased  $[K]_o$  and decreased  $[K]_i$  relative to the normal concentration and consequently only the effect of increased  $E_R$ . In other experiments (see p. 13) the dependence of peak  $E_A$  on  $F_R$  was further examined when  $[K]_o$  was varied. These experiments showed that the peak value of  $E_A$  was independent or only slightly dependent on  $E_R$  in the region where  $E_R$  was higher than normal.

The time course of the decay of the negative after potential is plotted in Fig. 4. The semilogarithmic plot shows that at times longer than about 15 msec the decay followed reasonably well a simple exponential time course. At shorter times this was not the case. It has been suggested (Frank 1957; Hutter and Noble 1960) that the specific permeability changes which are the cause of the action potential are terminated soon after the spike potential, so that the permeability after the spike is the same as the permeability of the resting membrane. The after potential would consequently show nothing more than how the membrane capacitance is discharged.

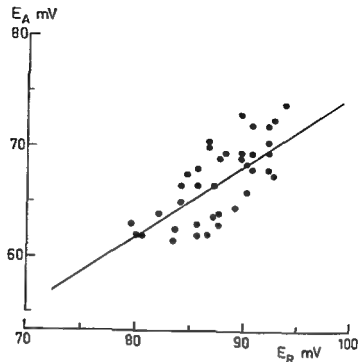


Fig. 3. Peak  $F_A$  plotted against  $F_R$ . Normal Ringer's solution. The straight line represents  $F_A^{\text{peak}} = 0.66 E_R + 9.1$ .

The peak amplitude of the negative after potential ( $F_A$ ) was  $20.9 \pm 3.8$  mV (mean and S.D. of 334 fibres from 21 muscles), while the resting potential was  $98.0 \pm 4.6$  mV. These values are in good agreement with previous investigations (Hodgkin and Nastuk 1950; Macfarlane and Meers 1958a). The amplitude of the hump measured as the potential difference between the maximum and minimum values of the after potential was as mentioned earlier quite variable but did not exceed 1 mV in normal Ringer's solution at room temperature.

Fig. 3 is a scatter diagram showing the relation between the peak after potential ( $F_A$ ) and the resting potential ( $F_R$ ). The values of  $F_A$  and  $F_R$  are taken from measurements in normal Ringer's solution and thus represent normal variations. The regression line calculated by the method of least squares had the equation  $F_A^{\text{peak}} = 0.66 F_R + 9.1$  in this case. In other experiments the slope of the regression line varied between 0.32 and 0.75. These values agree well with earlier measurements made by Frank (1957).

Desmedt (1953) found in experiments in which  $[K]$  and  $[K]$  were varied that the peak value of  $E_A$  was independent of the concentration changes

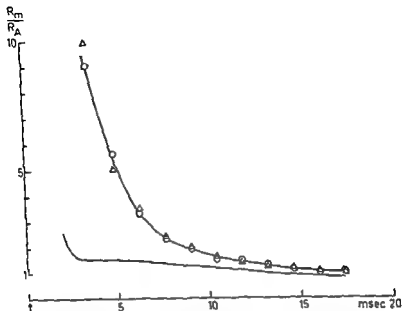


Fig. 6  $R_m/R_A$  plotted against time ( $t=0$  at the peak of the action potential)  $\bigcirc$  = in a normal Ringer's solution  $\triangle$  = in a solution containing 4 m-equiv  $\text{Cl}^-/\text{l}$ . The continuous line drawn through the circles. The time course of an after potential is indicated.

### *The effect of constant currents on the negative after potential*

In some experiments a small constant current was applied through a micro electrode inserted close to the recording electrode and the effect of this current on the negative after potential was measured. If this current is large then it affects the time course of the action potential and the negative after potential since the specific permeability changes depend on membrane potential and time. If however the current is made very small then the time courses of the permeability changes will be almost unaffected and the difference between two records one with and one without the extra current will indicate how the membrane resistance changes (cf. Hodgkin and Rushton 1946).

Fig. 3 shows the records from such an experiment. The effect of the constant current on the resting membrane was first measured. Then two successive action potentials were elicited by two brief shocks one without and one during the application of a constant anodal current. A third action potential was then recorded without a constant current. The three

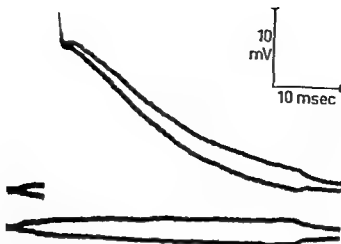


Fig 5 Above superimposed after potentials during constant anodal and cathodal currents Below membrane potential change associated with a step of injected current Calibration 10 mV

through a channel that has a constant permeability equal to the resting permeability. The present findings indicate that this might be the case at times longer than about 15 msec, while at shorter times the situation is clearly more complicated. The time constant ( $\tau_A$ ) of the decay of the after potential ( $t > 15$  msec) was  $108 \pm 61$  msec (mean and S.D.) in 111 fibres from 17 muscles. The time constant of the resting membrane ( $\tau_m$ ) was  $182 \pm 43$  msec (mean and S.D.). This latter value was obtained from measurements on 78 of the same fibres on which  $\tau_A$  was determined.  $\tau_m$  was measured from the decay of membrane potential towards its resting value from its value immediately after a small step of anodal current was applied through another micro electrode inserted about  $50 \mu$  from the recording electrode (see Fatt and Katz 1951).  $\tau_A$  and  $\tau_m$  did not significantly deviate from each other in the present experiments. The findings are therefore consistent with the interpretation of Frank (1957) and of Hutter and Noble (1960) noted earlier if this interpretation is restricted to only the late part of the after potential. However unless it is shown that the membrane resistance during the after potential has the same value as that of the resting membrane there is still the possibility that the similarity between the values of  $\tau_A$  and  $\tau_m$  is a mere coincidence. The divergence of the decay of peak  $I_A$  from a simple exponential curve at short times might indicate that the membrane permeability changes during the beginning of the after potential.



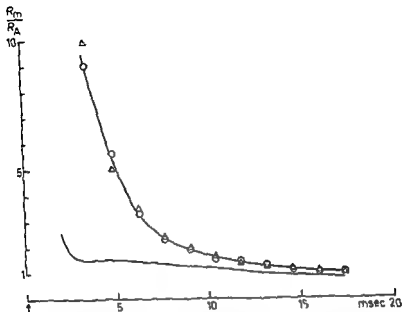


Fig. 6  $R_m/R_A$  plotted against time ( $t=0$  at the peak of the action potential)  $\circ$  = in a normal Ringer's solution  $\Delta$  = in a solution containing  $4 \text{ m-equiv Cl}^-/\text{l}$ . The continuous line drawn through the circles. The time course of an after potential is indicated.

### *The effect of constant currents on the negative after potential*

In some experiments a small constant current was applied through a micro-electrode inserted close to the recording electrode and the effect of this current on the negative after potential was measured. If this current is large then it affects the time course of the action potential and the negative after potential since the specific permeability changes depend on membrane potential and time. If however the current is made very small then the time courses of the permeability changes will be almost unaffected and the difference between two records one with and one without the extra current will indicate how the membrane resistance changes (cf. Hodgkin and Rushton 1946).

Fig. 5 shows the records from such an experiment. The effect of the constant current on the resting membrane was first measured. Then two successive action potentials were elicited by two brief shocks one without and one during the application of a constant anodal current. A third action potential was then recorded without a constant current. The three

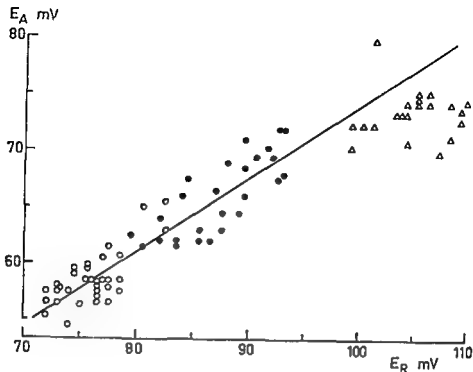


Fig 7  $E_A$  plotted against  $E_R$  in solutions containing 0.5 ( $\Delta$ ) 2.5 ( $\bullet$ ) and 5.0 (O) m equiv  $K^+$ /l. The regression line satisfies  $E_A^{peak} = 0.67 E_R + 8.4$

records were taken on the same frame. If the first and third deviated from each other the measurements were discarded. High amplification was used in order to obtain resolution with currents as weak as possible. Mechanical injury during the contraction was held to be the major cause of the changes between the first and third action potentials in a run. The percentage of successful runs was also larger in experiments in which mechanical movement was diminished by hypertonic solutions (cf Hodgkin and Horowicz 1957).

In Fig 6 the ratio between resting membrane resistance and resistance during the after potential ( $R_m/R_A$ ) is plotted against time as measured from the peak of the action potential. The time course of an action potential is also indicated. It is seen that the membrane resistance at the beginning of the negative after potential was about a tenth of that of the resting membrane and then gradually increased although it was still lower than the resting value 10 msec after the peak of the action potential. At the latter time the after potential amplitude was about half its initial value. At times longer than about 15 msec the membrane resistance was close to its resting value while the membrane potential clearly had not yet reached its resting value (Ishiko and Saito 1956 Persson 1960).

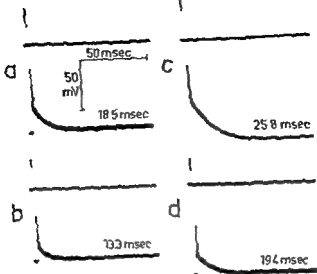


Fig 8 Records from muscle fibres in various potassium concentrations a) and d)  $\sim 5$  m-equiv  $K^+/l$  b)  $3.0$  m-equiv  $K^+/l$  c)  $0.5$  m-equiv  $K^+/l$

#### *The effect of changes in external potassium concentration*

The measurements described earlier (p 8) were made on muscle fibres in a normal ionic environment. Experiments were also made in which the ionic composition of the external solution was varied.

The peak value of  $E_A$  was observed to depend on the resting potential (Fig 3). Since the resting potential depends on the ratio  $[K]_i/[K]_o$  (Boyle and Conway 1941, Adrian 1956, Hodgkin and Horowitz 1959) it seemed logical to extend the measurements of the after potential to solutions containing different potassium concentrations. In Fig 7 the peak value of  $E_A$  is plotted against resting potential for different values of  $[K]_o$  ( $5.0$ ,  $2.5$  and  $0.5$  mst). The peak  $E_A$  was clearly dependent on the resting potential when the latter was less than about  $100$  mV, but only little affected or independent at resting potentials above  $100$  mV. This may be compared with the results from the experiments made by Benoit and Coraboeuf (1955) where it is shown that peak  $E_A$  was not affected by changes in the resting membrane caused by anodal or cathodal currents. The time constant of the decay of the negative after potential was  $13.8 \pm 0.95$  in  $5$  mst  $KCl$  and  $27.6 \pm 0.84$  msec in  $0.5$  mst  $KCl$  (Fig 8). This change in the time constant  $\tau_A$  is of the same order of magnitude as the change in the

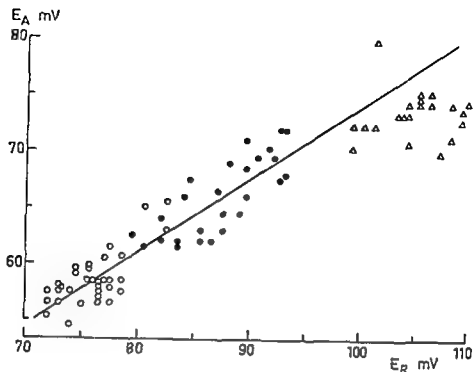


Fig 7  $E_A$  plotted against  $E_R$  in solutions containing 0.5 ( $\Delta$ ) 2.5 ( $\bullet$ ) and 5.0 ( $\circ$ ) m equiv  $K^+$ . The regression line satisfies  $E_A^{\text{peak}} = 0.67 E_R + 8.4$

records were taken on the same frame. If the first and third deviated from each other, the measurements were discarded. High amplification was used in order to obtain resolution with currents as weak as possible. Mechanical injury during the contraction was held to be the major cause of the changes between the first and third action potentials in a run. The percentage of successful runs was also larger in experiments in which mechanical movement was diminished by hypertonic solutions (cf Hodgkin and Horowitz 1957).

In Fig 6 the ratio between resting membrane resistance and resistance during the after potential ( $R_m/R_A$ ) is plotted against time as measured from the peak of the action potential. The time course of an action potential is also indicated. It is seen that the membrane resistance at the beginning of the negative after potential was about a tenth of that of the resting membrane and then gradually increased although it was still lower than the resting value 10 msec after the peak of the action potential. At the latter time the after potential amplitude was about half its initial value. At times longer than about 15 msec the membrane resistance was close to its resting value while the membrane potential clearly had not yet reached its resting value (Ishiko and Sato 1956; Per son 1960).

equilibrium had been reached and showed no shift in either resting membrane potential (cf Hodgkin and Horowitz 1959) or in negative after potential peak  $E_A$ . When  $[Cl]$  was reduced however the after potential consistently had a notch with a maximum amplitude occurring 5–6 msec after the peak of the action potential. The amplitude of the notch measured as the difference between the maximum and the preceding minimum of the membrane potential increased at decreased  $[Cl]_o$ . The notch was  $2.44 \pm 0.59$  mV in a solution containing 59 m equiv  $Cl^-/l$  (33 observations) and  $3.71 \pm 0.62$  mV in 6.5 m equiv  $Cl^-/l$  (41 observations). The relation between peak  $E_A$  and  $E_R$  was unaffected by alterations of  $[Cl]_o$ . As shown previously (p 13) peak  $E_A$  was dependent on  $E_R$  when  $E_R$  was less than about 100 mV.

In other experiments  $[Cl]_o$  was increased to 1.5 or 2 times the normal by adding equivalent amounts of choline chloride. The sodium concentration remained constant in these solutions. The resting membrane potential and negative after potential peak  $E_A$  were unaffected. It was observed however that the negative after potential never began with a plateau or notch in solutions having increased  $[Cl]_o$ .

Measurements of the membrane resistance were made (p 11) with the muscle in solutions in which  $[Cl]$  was reduced by replacement with  $CH_3SO_4^-$  or  $I^-$ . The results from such an experiment are shown in Fig 6. In this experiment all but 4 m equiv  $Cl^-/l$  was replaced by methylsulphate. It was obvious that the membrane resistance change during the after potential remained unaffected by the change in  $[Cl]$ .

The time constant of the decay of the after potential was however affected by changes in  $[Cl]$  i.e.  $\tau_A$  increased when  $[Cl]_o$  was reduced (Table I). Such a change of  $\tau_A$  agrees with the results of Hutter and Noble (1960).

Table I The effect of changes in  $[Na]$  and  $[Cl]$  (means and s.d.)

$[Na]/[Cl]$ m-equiv/l	$E_R$ mV	$i$ mV	$E_A$ mV	Ampl of notch mV	$\tau_A$ msec
116.5/118.5	$88.0 \pm 3.6$	129	$63.1 \pm 3.2$	0	$19.8 \pm 6.1$
210/118.5	$89.7 \pm 5.3$	139	$61.2 \pm 4.9$	$1.55 \pm 0.65$	$23.2 \pm 7.0$
210 / III	$92.3 \pm 5.4$	140	$69.7 \pm 5.4$	$3.8 \pm 0.55$	$27.5 \pm 6.6$
116.5/ 59	$92.6 \pm 6.1$	128	$68.4 \pm 4.8$	$2.44 \pm 0.59$	$40.2 \pm 6.5$
116.5/ 6.5	$91.3 \pm 5.9$	132	$70.0 \pm 5.1$	$3.71 \pm 0.62$	$41.8 \pm 8.1$
58 / 5.9	$87.6 \pm 4.2$	103	$64.8 \pm 4.8$	0	$18.5 \pm 4.6$
10 / 1.0	$89.5 \pm 5.1$	141	$65.2 \pm 6.2$	0	$20.4 \pm 5.8$

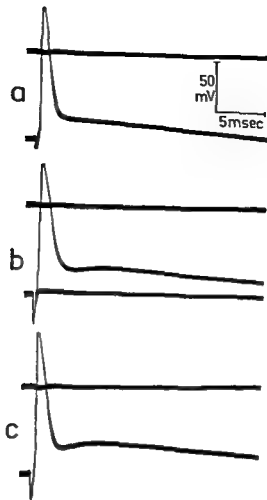


Fig 9 Action potentials in solutions containing different chloride concentrations a) 118  $\mu$  m equiv/l b) 59 m-equiv/l c) 6  $\mu$  m equiv/l

time constant of the resting membrane for corresponding changes in the resting potential (Jenerick 1953)

#### *The effect of changes in external chloride concentration $[Cl]$*

In a paper by Hutter and Noble (1960) it is pointed out that  $Cl^-$  carries a large part of the current during the repolarization. Changes in  $[Cl]$  also alter the shape of the negative after potential especially its beginning. These effects are most pronounced if  $Cl^-$  is replaced by an anion to which the muscle membrane is impermeable. Experiments were made in which chloride was replaced by methylsulphate to various extents. Sodium and potassium concentrations were in all these experiments kept constant. Fig 9 shows action potentials recorded from a fibre in solutions having different external chloride concentrations. The records were taken after

equilibrium had been reached and showed no shift in either resting membrane potential (cf Hodgkin and Horowitz 1959) or in negative after potential peak  $E_A$ . When  $[Cl]_o$  was reduced however the after potential consistently had a notch with a maximum amplitude occurring 5–6 msec after the peak of the action potential. The amplitude of the notch measured as the difference between the maximum and the preceding minimum of the membrane potential increased as decreased  $[Cl]_o$ . The notch was  $2.44 \pm 0.09$  mV in a solution containing 59 m-equiv  $Cl^-/l$  (33 observations) and  $3.71 \pm 0.62$  mV in 6.5 m-equiv  $Cl^-/l$  (41 observations). The relation between peak  $E_A$  and  $E_R$  was unaffected by alterations of  $[Cl]_o$ . As shown previously (p. 13) peak  $E_A$  was dependent on  $E_R$  when  $E_R$  was less than about 100 mV.

In other experiments  $[Cl]$  was increased to 1.5 or 3 times the normal by adding equivalent amounts of choline chloride. The sodium concentration remained constant in these solutions. The resting membrane potential and negative after potential peak  $E_A$  were unaffected. It was observed however that the negative after potential never began with a plateau or notch in solutions having increased  $[Cl]$ .

Measurements of the membrane resistance were made (p. 11) with the muscle in solutions in which  $[Cl]$  was reduced by replacement with  $CH_3SO_3^-$  or  $I^-$ . The results from such an experiment are shown in Fig. 6. In this experiment all but 4 m-equiv  $Cl^-/l$  was replaced by methylsulphate. It was obvious that the membrane resistance change during the after potential remained unaffected by the change in  $[Cl]$ .

The time constant of the decay of the after potential was however affected by changes in  $[Cl]$  i.e.  $\tau_A$  increased when  $[Cl]$  was reduced (Table I). Such a change of  $\tau_A$  agrees with the results of Hutter and Noble (1960).

Table I The effect of changes in  $[Na]$  and  $[Cl]$  (means and S.D.)

$[Na]_o/[Cl]$ m-equiv/l	$E_R$ mV	$I_c$ mV	$E_A$ mV	Ampl of notch mV	$\tau_A$ msec
116.5/118.5	$88.0 \pm 4.6$	109	$65.1 \pm 5.2$	0	$19.8 \pm 6.1$
210 / 118.5	$89.7 \pm 5.3$	179	$61.2 \pm 4.9$	$1.55 \pm 0.65$	$23.2 \pm 7.0$
210 / 59	$92.3 \pm 5.4$	140	$69.7 \pm 5.4$	$3.3 \pm 0.55$	$27.5 \pm 6.6$
116.5/ 59	$92.6 \pm 6.1$	156	$68.4 \pm 4.8$	$2.46 \pm 0.59$	$30.2 \pm 6.5$
116.5/ 0.5	$94.3 \pm 5.9$	132	$70.0 \pm 5.1$	$3.71 \pm 0.62$	$41.8 \pm 8.1$
58 / 59	$87.6 \pm 4.2$	103	$61.8 \pm 4.8$	0	$18.5 \pm 4.6$
10 / 10	$69.5 \pm 5.1$	141	$65.2 \pm 6.2$	0	$20.4 \pm 5.8$

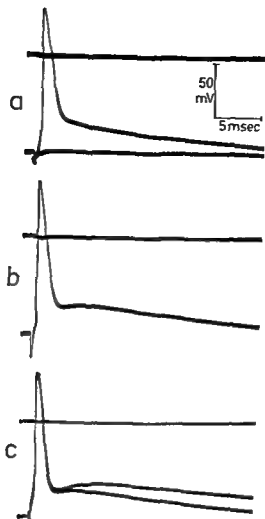


Fig 10 Action potentials in solutions containing a) normal  $[Na]_o$  and  $[Cl]_o$  b) 240 m-equiv/l  $[Na]_o$  and 118.5 m-equiv/l  $[Cl]_o$  c) 240 m-equiv/l  $[Na]_o$  118.5 m-equiv/l  $[Cl]_o$  and 240 m-equiv/l  $[Na]_o$  59 m-equiv/l  $[Cl]_o$  superimposed

#### *The effect of changes in external sodium concentration $[Na]_o$*

The sodium concentration was varied in some experiments while  $[Cl]$  and  $[K]$  were kept constant. In sodium deficient solutions sodium chloride was replaced by choline chloride in sodium rich solutions sodium methyl sulphate or glutamate were added. Reduction of  $[Na]$  to 58 or 33 m-equiv/l had no detectable effect on the peak amplitude of the after potential although a minute effect on the shape of the after potential was observed. The after potential never began with a notch or plateau when the



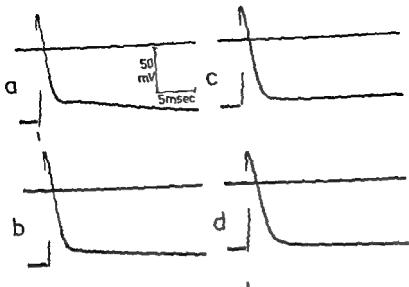


Fig. 11. Action potentials after various times in a Hingst solution containing 0.5 mM DNP. a) 2 min b) 7 min c) 15 min d) 30 min

fibre was in sodium-deficient solutions. When, on the other hand the sodium concentration was increased from 112 to 224 m-equiv/l., the after potential began regularly with a notch or a plateau (Fig. 10) (Persson 1962). The notch reached its maximum 5 msec after the peak of the action potential with an amplitude of  $1.55 \pm 0.65$  mV (mean and s.d.). The time constant  $\tau_A$  was as a rule only little affected by the change in sodium concentration but sometimes  $\tau_A$  increased slightly in high [Na] (cf. Frank 1957). The peak after potential  $E_A$  was not significantly changed in high [Na]. The change in peak amplitude of the action potential was again near to that predicted by Nernst's equation as pointed out by Nastuk and Hodgkin (1950). It might be mentioned that in solutions with low [Cl]<sub>o</sub> and high [Na] a notch of considerable amplitude (4–5 mV) was observed about 5 msec after the peak of the action potential (Fig. 10). In some instances the membrane currents were regenerative so that a second action potential started at this time. This was especially the case in calcium deficient solutions.

The finding that a second action potential could take off from the notch on the after potential in solutions containing high [Na] and low [Ca] clearly

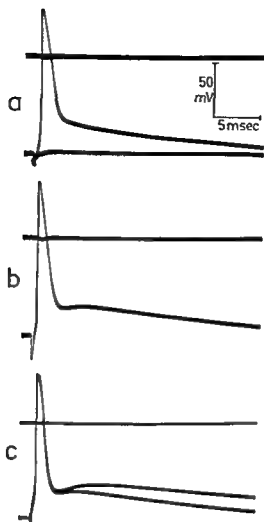


Fig 10 Action potentials in solutions containing a) normal  $[Na]_o$  and  $[Cl]_o$  b) 210 m equiv/l  $[Na]_o$  and 118.5 m-equiv/l  $[Cl]_o$  c) 240 m-equiv/l  $[Na]_o$  118.5 m-equiv/l  $[Cl]_o$  and 240 m-equiv/l  $[Na]_o$  59 m equiv/l  $[Cl]_o$  superimposed

### *The effect of changes in external sodium concentration $[Na]_o$*

The sodium concentration was varied in some experiments while  $[Cl]$  and  $[K]$  were kept constant. In sodium deficient solutions sodium chloride was replaced by choline chloride in sodium rich solutions sodium methyl sulphate or glutamate were added. Reduction of  $[Na]$  to 58 or 33 m equiv/l had no detectable effect on the peak amplitude of the after potential although a minute effect on the shape of the after potential was observed. The after potential never began with a notch or plateau when the

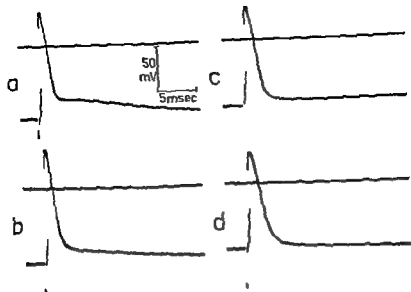


Fig 11 Action potentials after various times in a Ringer's solution containing 0.5 mM DNP  
a) 0 min b) 7 min c) 15 min d) 30 min

fibre was in sodium-deficient solutions. When on the other hand the sodium concentration was increased from 112 to 224  $m\text{-equiv/l.}$ , the after potential began regularly with a notch or a plateau (Fig 10) (Persson 1902). The notch reached its maximum 5 msec after the peak of the action potential with an amplitude of  $1.55 \pm 0.05$  mV (mean and s.d.). The time constant  $\tau_A$  was as a rule only little affected by the change in sodium concentration but sometimes  $\tau_A$  increased slightly in high  $[\text{Na}]_o$  (cf Frank 1907). The peak after potential  $V_A$  was not significantly changed in high  $[\text{Na}]_o$ . The change in peak amplitude of the action potential was again near to that predicted by Nernst's equation as pointed out by Nastuk and Hodgkin (1900). It might be mentioned that in solutions with low  $[\text{Cl}]_o$  and high  $[\text{Na}]_o$  a notch of considerable amplitude (4–5 mV) was observed about 5 msec after the peak of the action potential (Fig 10). In some instances the membrane currents were regenerative so that a second action potential started at this time. This was especially the case in calcium deficient solutions.

The finding that a second action potential could take off from the notch on the after potential in solutions containing high  $[\text{Na}]_o$  and low  $[\text{Ca}]_o$  clearly

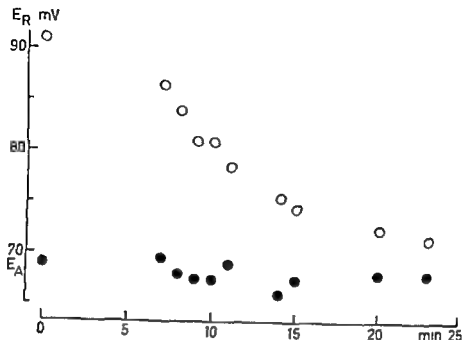


Fig 1:  $F_R$  (O) and  $E_A$  (●) plotted against time in a Ringer's solution containing 0.5 mM DNP

indicates that the after potential was across the excitable membrane and not across some other structure in series with the excitable membrane

The effects of  $[Na]_o$  and  $[Cl]_o$  are summarized in Table I

### *The effect of dinitrophenol*

The action of 2,4-dinitrophenol and other metabolic inhibitors on the peak amplitude of the negative after potential has been studied in detail by Macfarlane and Meires (1958a). They found that the amplitude of the after potential ( $V_A$ ) decreased if the concentration of the inhibitor was large enough and the time of action on the muscle was sufficiently long. These results were confirmed in the present investigation. Fig 11 shows action potentials at various times after a Ringer's solution containing 0.5 mM 2,4-dinitrophenol was applied. The peak amplitude of the negative after potential ( $V_A$ ) was after 15 minutes reduced to about half its initial value and after 30 minutes it was nearly zero. The amplitude of the action potential had decreased by 10–15 mV at 30 minutes and the slope of the falling phase had decreased from 150 V/sec to about 60 V/sec. The plot

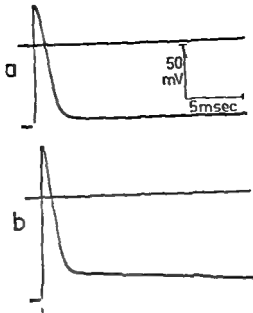


Fig 13 a) Action potentials after 30 min in a 0 mM DNP Ringer's solution b) the same muscle fibre after  $[K]_o$  was reduced to 0.5 m-equiv/l

in Fig 12 shows that the resting potential decreased by about 20–25 mV but the value of the membrane potential at the time of the beginning of the after potential ( $E_A$ ) was but little affected. This clearly appears as a decline of the peak value of  $I_A$ . Note that an increase in  $[K]_o$  decreased  $E_A$  nearly as much as  $E_R$  (see p 13). If the resting potential was increased in a DNP poisoned fibre the negative after potential reappeared. Fig 13 shows action potentials from such an experiment.  $I_A$  was small in normal  $[K]$  and DNP and clearly increased in the solution containing 0.5 m-equiv  $K^+$ /l and DNP. There was no significant change of  $E_A$ .

The time constant of the resting membrane was measured in solutions with and without 0.5 mM DNP as previously described (p 10).  $\tau_m$  decreased to about half its original value in 30 minutes ( $192 \pm 59$  msec in normal Ringer's solution and  $108 \pm 51$  msec in the solution containing DNP). The time constant  $\tau_A$  of the decay of the after potential was however not measurably affected by DNP. This finding contrasted with the effect of altered  $[K]_o$ , because changes in  $[K]$  affected  $\tau_m$  and  $\tau_A$  about equally.

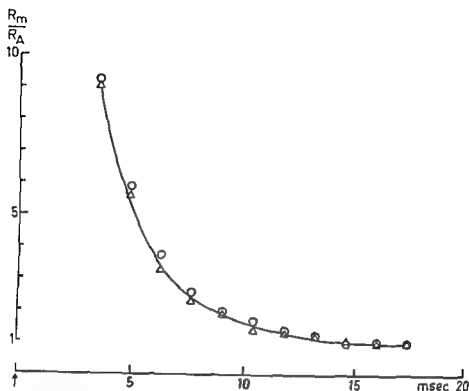


Fig 14  $R_m/R_A$  plotted against time after 30 min in a Ringer's solution without ( $\Delta$ ) and with 0.5 mM DNP (O). The continuous line drawn through the triangles

The membrane resistance during the time of the after potential was also measured on DNP poisoned fibres (see p 11). These measurements (Fig 14) indicated that the change in membrane resistance during the after potential was only negligibly affected by DNP (Persson 1960).

### *The effect of repetitive stimulation*

In the previous section it was shown that a metabolic inhibitor such as dinitrophenol clearly affected the negative after potential. In these experiments it was regularly noted that the contractions of the muscle fibre became weaker during the action of DNP. The findings of Loomis and Lipmann (1948) and Green (1951) that DNP reduces available high energy phosphates might explain the effect on the contractions. Twitch tension also declines progressively during repetitive activity (fatigue). It is known that in prolonged muscular activity energy is consumed from the breakdown of creatine phosphate (CrP) and probably adenosine triphosphate

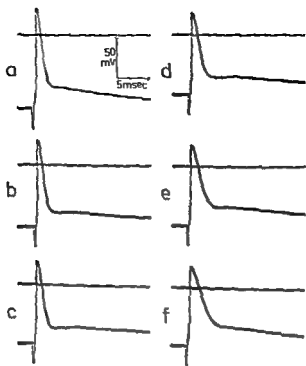


Fig 1 Action potentials recorded at 15 second intervals during repetitive stimulation at 10 impulses/sec

(ATP) The immediate source of energy for a single contraction however is still unknown (Davies and Cain 1961). If lack of metabolic energy is the cause of the reduction in the peak amplitude of the negative after potential in a DVP Ringer's solution then similar changes in the action potential and the negative after potential might appear progressively during repetitive activity.

Muscle fibres were stimulated repetitively for some minutes at a rate of 3 to 30 impulses per second. The membrane potential was as a rule recorded continuously through a micro electrode while the stimuli were applied through extracellular electrodes. Fig 1a shows typical action potential recorded at 15-second intervals during a 75-second period of repetitive stimulation at 10/sec. Small progressive decreases of both resting potential and overshoot of the spike were observed. Resting potential declined some 5 to 10 mV after such stimulation. The rate of decline was greater at

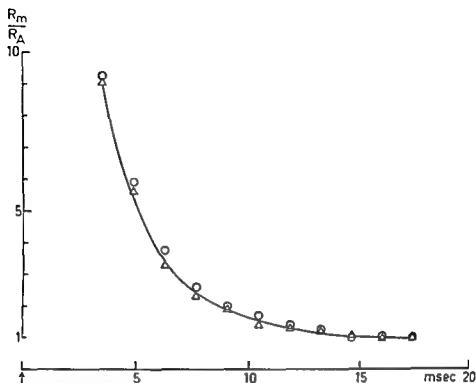


Fig 14  $R_m/R_A$  plotted against time after 30 min in a Ringer's solution without ( $\Delta$ ) and with 0.5 mM DNP ( $O$ ). The continuous line drawn through the triangles

The membrane resistance during the time of the after potential was also measured on DNP poisoned fibres (see p 11). These measurements (Fig 14) indicated that the change in membrane resistance during the after potential was only negligibly affected by DNP (Persson 1960).

### *The effect of repetitive stimulation*

In the previous section it was shown that a metabolic inhibitor such as dinitrophenol clearly affected the negative after potential. In the experiments it was regularly noted that the contractions of the muscle fibre became weaker during the action of DNP. The findings of Loomis and Lipmann (1948) and Green (1951) that DNP reduces available high energy phosphates might explain the effect on the contractions. Twitch tension also declines progressively during repetitive activity (fatigue). It is known that in prolonged muscular activity energy is consumed from the breakdown of creatine phosphate (CrP) and probably adenosine triphosphate



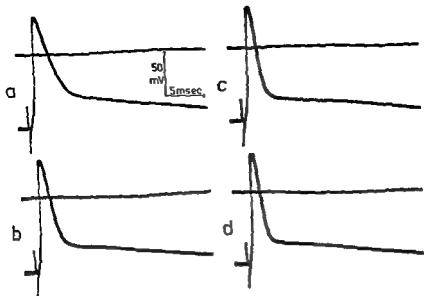


Fig 17 Recovery after 90-sec period of repetitive activity at a stimulation rate of 10 per sec a) fibre impaled just after a 90-sec period of stimulation b) c) d) recorded 1 3 and 6 min respectively after a

activity The most obvious changes in the action potential during repetitive activity were a decrease in the maximum rate of decline of the action potential and an increase in the peak amplitude of the negative after potential ( $I_A$ ) There was also a decrease in  $F_A$  In Fig 16 the maximum rate of decline of the action potential is plotted against the number of preceding impulses Both the maximum rate of decline and  $I_A$  changed continuously with the number of impulses These changes were larger but otherwise similar at higher rates of stimulation (Fig 10) In most of the experiments of this kind the rate of stimulation was 10/sec at other rates the experimental changes were less reversible and the mechanical damage probably greater Results obtained from a number of experiments with various rates of stimulation are summarized in Table II

In addition to the effect of repetitive stimulation on the maximum rate of decline of the action potential and  $I_A$  there was a decrease in the time constant of the decay of the after potential  $\tau_A$  with the number of preceding impulses as described previously by Ishiko and Sato (1956) and Osborne (1958) The change in  $\tau_A$  was however more variable than the changes in the maximum rate of decline and  $I_A$

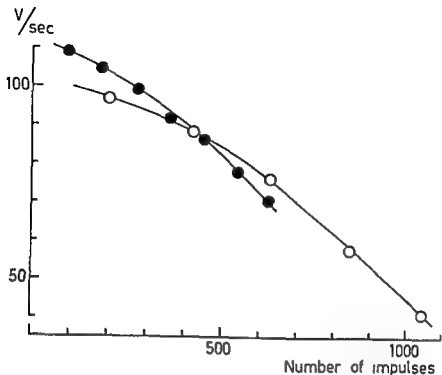


Fig 16 Maximum rate of fall of the action potential plotted against the number of preceding impulses at two different stimulation rates ● at 5 impulses/sec ○ at 1 impulse/sec

the beginning of the stimulation period. Some mechanical damage to the membrane caused by the micro electrode can not be excluded in these experiments, in which the membrane was penetrated before the period of

Table II The effect of repetitive activity at different rates of stimulation after a 60 second period of stimulation (means)

Rate of stim impulses/sec	$E_R - \bar{E}_R$ mV	$V_A - \bar{V}_A$ mV	Max rate of fall V/sec	$\tau_A - \bar{\tau}_A$ msec
5	10	1	90	5.8
10	6	7	76	8.1
15	8.5	12.7	58	7.2

$\bar{E}_R$ ,  $\bar{V}_A$ ,  $\bar{\tau}_A$  indicate the values of  $E_R$ ,  $V_A$  and  $\tau_A$  respectively after a 60 second period of stimulation

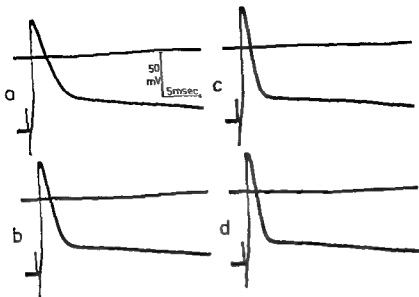


Fig 1 Recovery after 90-sec period of repetitive activity at a stimulation rate of 10 per sec a) fibre impaled just after a 90-sec period of stimulation b) c) d) recorded 1 3 and 6 min respectively after a

activity The most obvious changes in the action potential during repetitive activity were a decrease in the maximum rate of decline of the action potential and an increase in the peak amplitude of the negative after potential ( $I_A$ ). There was also a decrease in  $E_A$ . In Fig 16 the maximum rate of decline of the action potential is plotted against the number of preceding impulses. Both the maximum rate of decline and  $I_A$  changed continuously with the number of impulses. These changes were larger but otherwise similar at higher rates of stimulation (Fig 16). In most of the experiments of this kind the rate of stimulation was 10/sec. at other rates the experimental changes were less reversible and the mechanical damage probably greater. Results obtained from a number of experiments with various rates of stimulation are summarized in Table II.

In addition to the effect of repetitive stimulation on the maximum rate of decline of the action potential and  $I_A$  there was a decrease in the time constant of the decay of the after potential  $\tau_A$  with the number of preceding impulses as described previously by Ishiko and Saito (1956) and Osborne (1958). The change in  $\tau_A$  was however more variable than the changes in the maximum rate of decline and  $I_A$ .

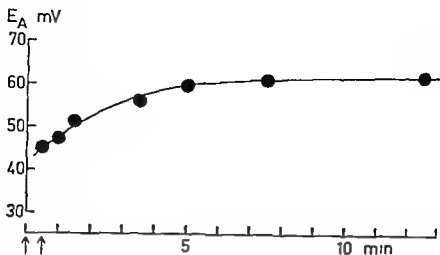


Fig 18  $E_A$  plotted against time after a 90 sec period of activity. The arrows indicate the beginning and end of repetitive activity

The described alterations in the maximum rate of decline of the action potential and  $V_A$  were reversible in several experiments but only partially so in others. How far membrane damage due to the penetrating electrode affected this reversibility was impossible to judge in these experiments. Other experiments were therefore made in which the muscle fibre was activated in a similar way for a period of 90 sec at a rate of 10/sec before the recording electrode was introduced into the fibre (Fig 17). In such a case the contraction of the fibre was weak and the damage caused by the electrode much smaller. The effects of repetitive activity on the resting potential, action potential and after potential were qualitatively the same as in the other experiments. The change in resting potential was a few millivolts less. The time course of the recovery, measured from single impulses every 30 seconds, was found to be 50% complete in about 3 minutes. In Fig 18  $E_A$  is plotted against time after the period of activity.

Changes in the external ionic environment seemed to have very little influence on the effect of repetitive activity on the action potential and the negative after potential. However, when part of the chloride in the Ringer's solution was replaced by methylsulphate the decrease in the maximum rate of decline of the action potential and the increase in  $V_A$  occurred more slowly than in Ringer's solution at the same rate of stimulation. Alteration of neither the sodium nor the potassium concentration in the Ringer's solution had a similar effect.

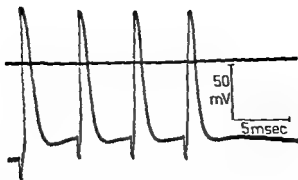


Fig 10 Four action potentials elicited in quick succession on Normal Ringer's solution

Fig 10 shows the record from another type of experiment. Four action potentials were elicited in quick succession the three latest appearing during the time of the after potential of the first action potential. It is clearly seen that the amplitudes of the second and subsequent after potentials ( $F_A$ ) were entirely unaffected by the first action potential.

## DISCUSSION

It has previously been shown that the peak amplitude of the negative after potential is affected by various factors that are known to interfere with muscle metabolism. Findings of this kind might indicate that the after potential is caused by membrane currents of a metabolic origin (McFarlane and Meares 1958a). In the present experiments it was found that the effect of DNP was mainly to reduce the resting potential ( $E_R$ ) without affecting the membrane potential at the time of the beginning of the after potential ( $E_A$ ). Furthermore, the after potential had a normal shape when the solution containing DNP was deficient in KCl, i.e. when the depolarizing effect of DNP was counteracted by the change in KCl concentration (Fig. 13). Moreover, it was shown that the membrane resistance was reduced at the time of the beginning of the after potential and that this reduction in membrane resistance was about the same as occurred in solutions with DNP. These findings indicate that the effect of DNP was mainly on the resting membrane currents and that the membrane permeability changes during the after potential were largely unaffected by DNP. Therefore it cannot be concluded that the after potential is caused by metabolically generated currents.

The studies of Loomis and Lipmann (1948) and Green (1951) have shown that DNP uncouples oxidation from phosphorylation and reduces available high energy phosphates. In the squid nerve it has been shown by Hodgkin and Keynes (1955) that the presence of DNP in low concentrations (0.5–2 mμ) increases the net loss of intracellular potassium and that active absorption of potassium is inhibited by DNP. Keynes and Mäkelä (1954) found that the resting potential of frog muscle decreases somewhat when the muscle is poisoned by DNP (0.2 mμ) while the intracellular potassium concentration was found to be unaffected by DNP. Contrary to this Shaw and Simon (1955) found that the intracellular potassium concentration was reduced after poisoning with DNP. Since Shaw and Simon used a higher concentration of DNP (1 mμ) it is possible that the difference in concentration might explain the discrepancy in results. Calculations indicate that  $[K]_i$  would be reduced to about half its normal value in a poisoned fibre with a resting potential of 75 mV if the change in resting potential were due entirely to a change in  $[K]_i$ . So large a change in  $[K]_i$  seems unlikely. The reason why the resting potential is decreased in a DNP poisoned fibre thus remains obscure.

One possibility is that the negative after potential in the muscle fibre develops in a manner similar to the negative after potential in the squid giant nerve fibre (Frankenhaeuser and Hodgkin 1956) i.e. the potassium concentration in a small limited space outside the active membrane increases during the action potential as a result of the increased net outward flux of potassium (cf. Adrian and Friesang 1962). If this were the case the after potentials of successive impulses ought to be added to each other. The experiments described on p. 25 in which a few action potentials were rapidly elicited indicate that the amplitude of the second and subsequent after potentials were entirely unaffected by the first action potential. This finding is inconsistent with the hypothesis that the negative after potential is dependent on potassium ions accumulated in a limited space outside the active membrane.

It has been suggested that the specific permeability changes which are the cause of the action potential have ceased at the time of the beginning of the after potential (Falk 1961). The after potential would then only indicate the passive recharge of the membrane capacitance through the permeability channel of the resting fibre. The measurements of the membrane resistance during the after potential however indicated that the permeability changes were still appreciable 10 msec after the peak of the action potential i.e. during at least a large fraction of the after potential. This is further supported by the fact that the time course of the first half of the after potential is not simply exponential.

The present experiments indicate therefore that the negative after potential is closely associated with permeability changes in the membrane and that these permeability changes are but little affected by the metabolic inhibitor DNP. For the present it seems likely that as suggested by Doctor B. Frankenhaeuser a small late increase in sodium permeability or a small late increase in a non specific permeability similar to that described by Frankenhaeuser (1962) in the toad nerve fibre might explain most of the properties of the negative after potential. The relatively small effect of changes in  $[Na]$  and  $[Cl]$  are clearly consistent with such a hypothesis. The experiments in which two action potentials were elicited close to each other in time (Fig. 19) are also interesting from another point of view. The second action potential started from a lower value of membrane potential than the first, 67 mV compared to 87 mV. From experiments in which  $E_{Cl}$  was related to resting potential (Fig. 3) it would be expected that the peak amplitude of  $F_{Cl}$  would change by about 10–15 mV if it were the membrane potential preceding the action potential which

affected and determined the peak amplitude of the after potential. The peak value of  $E_A$  was, however, unaffected. This would be expected if it is assumed that it was the current during the after potential that modified the after potential and not the membrane potential preceding the action potential. The large change in peak  $E_A$  when  $[K]$  was increased and resting membrane potential lowered and the absence of changes of  $F_A$  when  $[K]$  was low would be explained in a simple and straightforward manner: the small change in potassium current ( $I_K$ ) at low potassium concentrations is insufficient to affect the membrane potential when the membrane has a low impedance at the time of the after potential but is sufficient to affect the resting membrane which has a much higher impedance.

The specific permeability changes which occur in the muscle fibre are not yet sufficiently understood to permit a quantitative explanation of the after potential. Further information is therefore needed.



## SUMMARY

The negative after potential of frog skeletal muscle fibres has been studied with the micro electrode technique under various experimental conditions

It was found that the peak amplitude of the after potential ( $E_A$ ) was dependent on the resting potential ( $E_R$ ) when the latter was less than 100 mV for  $E_R$  greater than 100 mV  $E_A$  was nearly independent of  $E_R$

Changes in the external sodium or chloride concentrations had a relatively small effect on the amplitude and shape of the beginning of the after potential

At times longer than about 15 msec after the peak of the action potential the decay of the after potential was exponential At shorter times the membrane potential behaved in a more complicated manner

During the first 15 msec of the after potential the membrane resistance was decreased

The effect of DNP on the resting potential and after potential was investigated While DNP decreased the resting potential the membrane potential at the time of the beginning of the after potential was nearly unchanged

The after potential of action potentials elicited in quick succession were not added to each other During repetitive activity the peak amplitude of the after potential ( $E_A$ ) decreased progressively while the resting potential was only little affected

The experiments indicate that the negative after potential is closely associated with permeability changes in the membrane and that the permeability changes are but little affected by the metabolic inhibitor DNP A small late increase in sodium permeability or in a non specific permeability may explain most of the properties of the negative after potential

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I am greatly indebted to Professor RAGNAR GRANIT Director of the Nobel Institute for Neurophysiology, for his constant encouragement and stimulating criticism

To Dr BERNHARD FRANKENHAEUSER my teacher, I should like to express my deep gratitude for many years of guidance, for his invaluable personal support and for all the facilities he has generously placed at my disposal. He has always been ready to share his great knowledge of neurophysiology and electronics

I am very grateful to Laborator LENNART WIDEN my present chief for his great courtesy and readiness to help during the course of this work

I wish to thank Dr BERNARD WAITMAN for his kindness in reading the manuscript and for advising me on the usage of the English language

My deep gratitude is due to the technical staff of the Institute and in particular to Mrs EVA REIGO who prepared the illustrations

Last, but not least, my sincere thanks go to my wife for her patience and encouragement

Acknowledgement is gratefully made for the financial support received from 'Karolinska Institutets reserveringsanslag

# REFERENCES

- ADRIAN R H The effect of internal and external potassium concentration on the membrane potential of frog muscle *J Physiol* 1956 133 631-638
- ADRIAN R H and W H FREYTAG The potassium and chloride conductance of frog muscle membrane *J Physiol* 1961 163 61-103
- BENNETT P H and E CORABOEUF Modifications électrotoniques du potentiel de pointe et du potentiel consécutif de la fibre musculaire striée *Comp rend soc Biol* 1955 149 1435-1438
- BOYLE I J and F J CONWAY Potassium accumulation in muscle and associated changes *J Physiol* 1961 100 1-63
- DAVIES R L and D F CALN The immediate energy source for contraction of muscle. In *Biophysics of Physiological and Pharmacological Actions* A M Shanes Editor pp 453-459 American Association for the Advancement of Science Washington DC 1961
- DEWEEDT J E Electrical activity and intracellular sodium concentration in frog muscle *J Physiol* 1953 121 191-205
- FALK G Electrical activity of skeletal muscle. In *Biophysics of Physiological and Pharmacological Actions* A M Shanes Editor pp 259-269 American Association for the Advancement of Science Washington DC 1961
- FATT P and B KATZ An analysis of the end plate potential recorded with an intracellular electrode *J Physiol* 1951 111 320-340
- FRANK G H Negative after potential of frog's skeletal muscle *J Neurophysiol* 1951 10 605-611
- FRANKENHAETSER B Delayed currents in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis* investigated with voltage clamp technique *J Physiol* 1962 100 40-45
- FRANKENHAETSER B and A L HODGKIN The after-effects of impulses in the giant nerve fibres of *Loligo* *J Physiol* 1956 131 341-376
- GREEN D E The cyclophosphase complex of enzymes *Biol Rev* 1951 26 410-455
- HODGKIN A L and P HOROWITZ The differential action of hypertonic solutions on the twitch and the action potential of a muscle fibre *J Physiol* 1957 156 17 P
- HODGKIN A L and P HOROWITZ The influence of potassium and chloride ions on the membrane potential of single muscle fibres *J Physiol* 1959 145 127-160
- HODGKIN A L and R D KEYNES Active transport of cations in giant axons from *Crinia* and *Loligo* *J Physiol* 1955 123 23-60
- HODGKIN A L and W A H REEVE The electrical constants of a crustacean nerve fibre *Proc Roy Soc B* 1916 133 441-449
- HUTTER O F and D NOBLE The chloride conductance of frog skeletal muscle *J Physiol* 1960 111 89-109

- ISHIO W and M SATO The negative after potential of skeletal muscle fibres  
*Kumamoto Med J* 1956 9 No 3—4
- JENNICK H P Muscle membrane potential resistance and external potassium chloride *J cell comp Physiol* 1953 42 127—148
- KELNES R D and G W MAISEL The energy requirement of sodium extrusion from a frog muscle *Proc Roy Soc B* 1954 142 383—392
- LOOMIS W T and I LILLYMAN Reversible inhibition of the coupling between phosphorylation and oxidation *J Biol Chem* 1948 173 807—808
- LUBIN M The effect of iodide and thiocyanate ions on the mechanical and electrical properties of frog muscle *J cell comp Physiol* 1957 49 335—350
- MACFARLANE W A and J D MERRIS Chemical modification of intracellularly recorded after potentials of frog skeletal muscle *J Physiol* 1958a 147 78—96
- MACFARLANE W A and J D MERRIS Intracellular recording of action and after potentials of frog muscle between 0 and 45 C *J Physiol* 1958b 142 97—109
- NASTUK W L and A L HODGKIN The electrical activity of single muscle fibre *J cell comp Physiol* 1950 35 39—73
- OSBORNE M T Repetitive stimulation of muscle *Nature London* 1958 181 1798
- PERSOON A The negative after potential of frog skeletal muscle fibres *Acta physiol Scandinav* 1960 50 suppl 175 117—118
- PERSOON A Some observations on the negative after potential of frog skeletal muscle fibre *Proceedings of the International Union of Physiological Sciences* 1962 Vol II 868
- SHAW F H and S L SIMON Sodium extrusion in muscle *Nature London* 1955 176 1031—1032

**S M S MEDICAL COLLEGE LIBRARY**  
**DUE DATE SLIP**

*This book is to be returned on or before the date  
marked below —*

A fine of annas four will be charged for each day  
the book is kept overtime

--	--	--



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

*Vol 58 Supplementum 204*

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY AND THE  
DEPARTMENT OF ALCOHOL RESEARCH  
KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET  
STOCKHOLM 60 SWEDEN

CATECHOLAMINES  
AND 5-HYDROXYTRYPTAMINE  
IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE  
AND WITHDRAWAL

BY

LARS M GUNNE

STOCKHOLM 1963





# CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	5
Chapter I EARLIER LITERATURE	7
Chapter II GENERAL METHODS	
1 Experimental procedures	13
2 Estimation of catecholamines	16
A Extraction	17
B Purification	18
C Assay	23
3 Estimation of 5 hydroxytryptamine and 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid ( $\geq$ HIAA)	26
Chapter III GENERAL BEHAVIOR OF DOGS RATS AND CATS IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL	
1 General observations	30
2 Tolerance studies in rats	32
3 Abstinence signs in dogs	35
4 Discussion	36
Chapter IV NORADRENALINE DOPAMINE AND 5 HYDROXYTRYPTAMINE IN THE BRAIN IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL	
1 Special methods	39
2 Results	40
3 Discussion	47
Chapter V ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE IN THE ADRENAL GLANDS IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL	
1 Special methods	52
2 Results	52
3 Discussion	57
Chapter VI URINARY EXCRETION OF ADRENALINE NORADRENALINE AND 5 HYDROXYINDOLEACETIC ACID (5 HIAA) IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL	
1 Results	60
2 Diuresis	67
3 Discussion	69
Chapter VII GENERAL DISCUSSION	73
SUMMARY	80
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	83
REFERENCES	84

*Printed in Sweden*

TRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAGET THULÉ

## INTRODUCTION

It is an old clinical observation that morphine addicts can withstand large amounts of the drug without showing conspicuous manifestations of physical or mental alteration. Withdrawal of morphine however precipitates the characteristic abstinence syndrome, which shows many features indicative of a gross disturbance of the autonomic nervous system, together with excitation which is sometimes exaggerated to the point of delirium. After a few stormy days the recovery process becomes evident and the characteristic syndrome generally subsides in about ten days.

HOLB and HIMMELSBACH (1938) have developed a quantitative method for the coring of all measurable abstinence manifestations in man. Some of these signs and symptoms are restlessness, rise in respiratory rate and pulse rate, rise in blood pressure, fever and rise in basal metabolism, rise in blood sugar, dilated pupils, tremor, pilo-erection, reduced weight and calory intake, insomnia, yawning, rhinorrhea, lacrimation, perspiration, emesis and diarrhea.

An important contribution to the study of abstinence phenomena was offered by the observation of ISBELL and FRASER (1950) that a complete but transient abstinence syndrome was produced in morphine-dependent addicts by injection of N allylnormorphine (nalorphine), thus unmasking the patients dependence on the drug.

Corresponding symptoms of excitation with several autonomic manifestations have been described in dogs and in some rat strains after withdrawal from long term administration of morphine (JOFL and ETTINGER 1926, PLANT and PIERCE 1928).

The vegetative excitation syndrome is a well recognized phenomenon in brain stimulation and ablation studies on various experimental animals. Such experiments have indicated the importance of limbic and hypothalamic brain areas in modulating autonomic and somatic activity during behavioral reactions (for references see KAADA 1951, HESS 1951).

The discovery of a series of biologically active substances in those areas of the brain stem<sup>1</sup> where autonomic functions had been localized stimulated the rapid evolution of neuropharmacology during the last decade. Soon after the localization of high concentrations of noradrenaline (VOGT 1954) and 5 hydroxytryptamine (serotonin) (AMIN, CRAWFORD and GIDDUM

<sup>1</sup> In this paper the brain stem is defined as medulla oblongata, pons, midbrain and diencephalon.



# INTRODUCTION

It is an old clinical observation that morphine addicts can withstand large amounts of the drug without showing conspicuous manifestations of physical or mental alteration. Withdrawal of morphine however precipitates the characteristic abstinence syndrome which shows many features indicative of a gross disturbance of the autonomic nervous system together with excitation which is sometimes exaggerated to the point of delirium. After a few stormy days the recovery process becomes evident and the characteristic syndrome generally subsides in about ten days.

HOLB and HIMMELSBACH (1938) have developed a quantitative method for the scoring of all measurable abstinence manifestations in man. Some of these signs and symptoms are restlessness, rise in respiratory rate and pulse rate, rise in blood pressure, fever and rise in basal metabolism, rise in blood sugar, dilated pupils, tremor, pilo-erection, reduced weight and calory intake, insomnia, yawning, rhinorrhea, lacrimation, perspiration, emesis and diarrhea.

An important contribution to the study of abstinence phenomena was offered by the observation of ISBELL and FRASER (1950) that a complete, but transient abstinence syndrome was produced in morphine dependent addicts by injection of N allylnormorphine (nalorphine) thus unmasking the patients dependence on the drug.

Corresponding symptoms of excitation with several autonomic manifestations have been described in dogs and in some rat strains after withdrawal from long term administration of morphine (JOEL and ETTINGER 1926, PLANT and PIERCE 1928).

The vegetative excitation syndrome is a well recognized phenomenon in brain stimulation and ablation studies on various experimental animals. Such experiments have indicated the importance of limbic and hypothalamic brain areas in modulating autonomic and somatic activity during behavioral reactions (for references see KAWA 1951, HESS 1954).

The discovery of a series of biologically active substances in those areas of the brain stem where autonomic functions had been localized, stimulated the rapid evolution of neuropharmacology during the last decade. Soon after the localization of high concentrations of noradrenaline (VOGT 1954) and 5 hydroxytryptamine (serotonin) (AMIN, CRAWFORD and GADDAU

In this paper the brain stem is defined as medulla oblongata, pons, midbrain and diencephalon.

1954) to certain areas of the brain stem, the discovery was made that the brain content of these monoamines could be influenced by various drugs. The dramatic changes produced by tranquilizers of the reserpine group and the centrally stimulating monoamine oxidase inhibitors have been extensively studied during the last few years, notably with regard to their implications for the function of brain monoamines (for references see BRODIE, SECTOR and SHOFF 1959 a)

The present investigation was prompted by the findings of VOCT (1954) that a single injection of morphine elicits excitation and an increased sympathetic activity in cats, together with a depletion of noradrenaline from the hypothalamic and midbrain stores. These acute effects of morphine in cats actualized the related problem of morphine abstinence and the possible neurochemical mechanisms underlying this syndrome. A series of reports dealing with this problem has appeared earlier from this laboratory (GUNNE 1959, 1960, 1961, 1962 a, b), the present paper is an extension of these earlier studies. It was carried out according to the following general plan.

At first a study was made of the effects of acute and chronic morphine administration, as well as of withdrawal and nalorphine induced abstinence on the general behavior of some laboratory animals. Special attention was paid to species differences observed between dogs, rats and cats (Chapter III). A study was then made of the effects of chronic morphine treatment and abstinence on the brain content of noradrenaline, dopamine and 5 hydroxytryptamine (Chapter IV) and on the adrenal gland content of adrenaline and noradrenaline (Chapter V). In order to obtain additional information concerning the rate of synthesis and liberation of the monoamines, a similar study was finally made of the urinary output of adrenaline, noradrenaline and 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5-HIAA), the main urinary metabolite of 5 hydroxytryptamine (Chapter VI).

# CHAPTER I

## EARLIER LITERATURE

### *Occurrence of catecholamines in brain adrenals and urine*

Adrenaline isolated in 1901 by TAKAMINE is the main active principle in the adrenal medulla of mammals. It was synthesized in 1904 by STOLZ as was also noradrenaline. Adrenaline was long thought to be the main sympathetic transmitter as suggested by ELLIOTT (1905).

The physiological importance of noradrenaline was clarified much later (FÜLLER 1946) when it was shown that the active sympathomimetic principle consists chiefly of noradrenaline. Up to that time all measurements of catecholamines discharged from sympathetic nerve terminals had been measured as adrenaline generally by bioassay methods.

In 1947 HOLTZ GREDER and KROVEBERG discovered the presence of noradrenaline in normal urine. The main source of the urinary noradrenaline secreted under resting conditions is probably the adrenergic nerves while the small amounts of adrenaline originate from the adrenal glands (EILER 1956 p 287). A massive discharge mainly of adrenaline may occur in emergency states.

FÜLLER (1946) first demonstrated the presence of small amounts of catecholamines mainly noradrenaline in the brain. This observation was extended by VOGT (1954) who found that the brain catecholamines were unevenly distributed. The highest concentrations were found in the hypothalamus and somewhat less in the grey stratum around the aqueduct. The concentration of noradrenaline in the grey matter of the telencephalon was only about 5 per cent of that of the hypothalamus, while the medullated fibres contained still less. The very high concentrations of noradrenaline in certain parts of the brain suggested a possible transmitter function of noradrenaline in the brain tissue in addition to its role as a transmitter at vasomotor endings. Recently the catecholamine stores of hypothalamic nuclei have been visualized by histochemical methods through the work of CARLSSON, FALCK and HILLARP (1962).

The presence of dopamine (3 hydroxytyramine) in the mammalian brain was suggested by MONTAGU (1957) and proved through independent work by FÜLLER (1958) and CARLSSON *et al* (1958). BERTLER and

ROSENGREN (1959) investigated the distribution of dopamine in the brain and found high concentrations in the central ganglia of the telencephalon, notably the caudate nucleus. The substance was tentatively correlated with locomotor functions of the extrapyramidal system. It is generally agreed that the dopamine of the brain serves also as a precursor of noradrenaline.

The relative contribution of adrenaline to the mammalian brain "sympathin" has been a matter of differences in opinion. HOLTZ (1950) and VOGT (1954), using bioassay methods, obtained relative values for adrenaline between 8 and 25 per cent (of the sum of noradrenaline and adrenaline). MONTAGU (1956 a) found 34 per cent adrenaline in the rat brain, while BERTLER and ROSENGREN (1959) were unable to verify these high adrenaline levels in mammalian brains and found appreciable amounts only in the brains of amphibia.

#### *Occurrence of 5 hydroxytryptamine in brain and 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid in urine*

The presence of 5 hydroxytryptamine (5 HT, serotonin, enteramine) in the brain was first reported by THAROG and PAGE (1953). AMIN, CRAWFORD and GADDUM (1954) reported a distribution of this substance in the brain very similar to that of noradrenaline, the largest amounts being stored in the hypothalamus. TITUS and UDENFRIEND (1954) and ERSPAMER (1954 a) have investigated the fate of 5 hydroxytryptamine in the organism. They found that the most important metabolic route was the oxidative deamination by *monoamine oxidase*, with 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5 HIAA) as the metabolic end product, appearing in the urine. Most of the 5 hydroxytryptamine in the body is stored in the intestinal mucosa and the blood platelets (FELDBERG and TOH 1953, GADDUM 1954), from which the bulk of the urinary 5 HIAA is derived.

The brain stores of 5 hydroxytryptamine, although quantitatively insignificant, have nevertheless received much attention. It was speculated (GADDUM 1954, WOOLLEY and SHAW 1954), that this substance would have a role in brain function, possibly as a neurohumoral agent (WELSH 1954, BRODIE, PLETSCHE and SHORE 1955). Following the release of 5 hydroxytryptamine, it is attacked by the enzyme *monoamine oxidase*, which is present in the brain and 5 HIAA is formed. Since this acid passes slowly through the blood brain barrier, the 5 HIAA of the brain is a measure of the local release of 5 hydroxytryptamine (ROOS and WERNER 1962).



In 1952 ZELLER and MARSKY, studying the monoamine oxidase inhibiting properties of some hydrazine derivatives suggested that the effect of these drugs on the monoamines might have some relation to the sympathetic and general mental stimulation observed. A few years later, when the monoamines of the brain had been mapped out this suggestion gained new interest.

During the last few years several compounds have been developed which act upon the synthesis, storage and break down of the brain monoamines. By interference with any one of these mechanisms it has been possible to produce states of excitement in various laboratory animals. Corresponding signs have also been found in man (DEGAUWITZ *et al.* 1960).

*Synthesis.* According to a now widely accepted theory first suggested by BLASCHKO 1939 the biosynthesis of the catecholamines occurs according to the following scheme:

tyrosin  $\rightarrow$  DOPA  $\rightarrow$  dopamine  $\rightarrow$  noradrenaline  $\rightarrow$  adrenaline

The enzyme DOPA decarboxylase is present in the brain (HOLTZ and WESTERMAN 1956) where it converts DOPA (3,4-dihydroxyphenyl alanine) to dopamine. Probably the same enzyme (ROSENGREN 1960a) attacks also 5-hydroxytryptophan (5HTP) the precursor of 5-hydroxytryptamine. The decarboxylation is a rapid process (UDELFRIEND 1959) which takes place as soon as the amino acids are present in the brain. The administration of 5-HTP or DOPA thus affords a means of increasing the rate of synthesis of 5-hydroxytryptamine or the catecholamines in the brain (UDELFRIEND, BOGDANSKI and WEISSBACH 1956, CARLSSON *et al.* 1958). The amines themselves do not readily pass the blood-brain barrier (WEIL-MALHERBE, AXELROD and TOMCHICK 1959, WILSON and BRODIE 1961).

When 5-HTP is administered to rats there is an increase in the 5-hydroxytryptamine content of the brain and at the same time a state of excitation is noted (UDELFRIEND, WEISSBACH and BOGDANSKI 1957). Following administration of DOPA a corresponding increase of brain dopamine is seen together with central excitation (CARLSSON *et al.* 1958, BERTLER 1960).

Attempts to decrease the synthesis of brain monoamines by inhibition of the decarboxylating enzyme have not been successful *in vivo* (BRODIE *et al.* 1962). Some of the potent *in vitro* inhibitors have been shown to act by other mechanisms as releasers of central catecholamines (UDELFRIEND, CONNAMYACHER and HESS 1961).

**Storage** The monoamines of the brain are stored in an inactive form. Following liberation they are attacked by the catabolizing enzymes. Four groups of agents which act upon the size of these stores are exemplified.

1) A release can be produced by intense stimulation through nervous mechanisms. This seems to be the mechanism of action of a series of different compounds, like insulin, nicotine and morphine (VOGT 1954). The common denominator of these compounds is the stimulation of sympathetic nerves.

The stimulation effects a reduction of the catecholamine level of the brain, while 5 hydroxytryptamine remains unaffected (PAASONEN and VOGT 1956). The catecholamine level is rapidly restored when the stimulation is ended.

2) Release can be effected by interfering with the amine binding capacity of the tissues. An example of an agent which operates by this mechanism is reserpine. In contrast to the agents in group 1 (above) reserpine produces a long-lasting depletion of the brain content of both 5 hydroxytryptamine (PLETSCHER, SHORI and BRODIE 1956 b, PAASONEN and VOGT 1956), noradrenaline (HOLZBAUER and VOGT 1956) and dopamine (CARLSSON *et al* 1958, WEIL MALHERBE and BONE 1958). It is well known that this depletion is accompanied by marked sedation and loss of spontaneous activity.

The activity can be restored by DOPA but not by 5 hydroxytryptophan (CARLSSON, LINDQVIST and MACNUSSON 1957), thus suggesting that reserpine may act by producing a lack of central transmitter. There are also, however, other theories regarding these mechanisms, which involve 5 hydroxytryptamine (BRODIE *et al* 1957, GESSA *et al* 1962) or its deaminated end product (HOLTZ *et al* 1957) as the centrally acting sedative substance.

3) A third way of releasing the brain stores of monoamines is illustrated by  $\alpha$  methyl DOPA which is known to have mildly sedative and blood pressure reducing properties. This substance is metabolized *in vivo* to  $\alpha$  methylated catecholamines leading eventually to a long lasting displacement of noradrenaline by  $\alpha$  methyl noradrenaline, a substance which is not attacked by monoamine oxidase (CARLSSON and LINDQVIST 1962). Dopamine and 5 hydroxytryptamine are moderately reduced only for a few hours by the  $\alpha$  methylated catechol analogues (SOUVILLE *et al* 1961, PLETSCHER and GESSA 1962).

4) The monoamine oxidase inhibitors have been shown to act not only

the release of the amines from their binding sites in the tissues (AXELROD, HERTTING and PATRICK 1961)

**Catabolism** The major metabolic pathway of the monoamines in the mammalian brain seems to be the oxidative deamination by monoamine oxidase (SPECTOR *et al* 1960, ROSENGREN 1960 b GEX and PLETSCHER 1961) Catecholamines released into the peripheral blood or administered exogenously are inactivated primarily by the catechol O methyltransferase (COMT) of the liver and kidney (AXELROD 1959) This enzyme was shown to occur also in small concentrations in the brain (AXELROD 1958) In a study by CARLSSON and HILLARP (1962) the administration of DOPA to rabbits caused initially an increase in the brain of the monoamine oxidase product 3,4 dihydroxyphenylacetic acid (DOPAC), which was transformed secondarily to the methoxylated COMT product, homovanillic acid This finding supports the view that the catecholamines of the brain are primarily attacked by monoamine oxidase

Administration of monoamine oxidase inhibitors results in an increased brain level of 5 hydroxytryptamine (for which monoamine oxidase is probably the only metabolic pathway) The noradrenaline of the brain increases in some species (rats, dogs) but remains unaffected in others (cats for instance) following administration of monoamine oxidase inhibitors When the noradrenaline level is high there is generally a more or less marked excitement (BRODIE, SPECTOR and SHORE 1959 b) The excitement is increased by administration of DOPA (CARLSSON *et al* 1957), 5 HTP (UDENFRIEND *et al* 1957) and by reserpine (SHORE and BRODIE 1957) or the  $\beta$  methylated catechol analogues (COSTA *et al* 1962) All these substances produce excitement probably by increasing the amount of free amines at synaptic sites Whether dopamine is the most important of the catecholamines in this respect cannot be regarded as settled BERTLER (1960) demonstrated a close correlation in time between the dopamine content of the brain and the signs of excitement after administration of DOPA in rabbits

For 5 hydroxytryptamine the relation to states of excitement is more obscure A central tranquilizing action has been ascribed to it (SULZER and BRODIE 1960 GESSA *et al* 1962)

#### *Effects of morphine on catecholamines and 5 hydroxytryptamine*

ELLIOTT (1912) reported an adrenaline-depleting action of morphine in the adrenal glands of cats and dogs It was noticed that the effect could be prevented by sectioning the splanchnic nerve before the administration of morphine and thus that it was mediated through nervous stimulation

**Storage** The monoamines of the brain are stored in an inactive form. Following liberation they are attacked by the catabolizing enzymes. Four groups of agents which act upon the size of these stores are exemplified.

1) A release can be produced by intense stimulation through nervous mechanisms. This seems to be the mechanism of action of a series of different compounds, like insulin, nicotine and morphine (VOGT 1954). The common denominator of these compounds is the stimulation of sympathetic nerves.

The stimulation effects a reduction of the catecholamine level of the brain, while 5 hydroxytryptamine remains unaffected (PILSONEN and VOGT 1956). The catecholamine level is rapidly restored when the stimulation is ended.

2) Release can be effected by interfering with the amine binding capacity of the tissues. An example of an agent which operates by this mechanism is reserpine. In contrast to the agents in group 1 (above) reserpine produces a long lasting depletion of the brain content of both 5 hydroxytryptamine (PLETSCHER, SHOPE and BRODIE 1956 b, PILSONEN and VOGT 1956), noradrenaline (HOLZBAUER and VOGT 1956) and dopamine (CARLSSON *et al* 1958, WEIL-MALHERBE and BONE 1958). It is well known that this depletion is accompanied by marked sedation and loss of spontaneous activity.

The activity can be restored by DOPA but not by 5 hydroxytryptophan (CARLSSON, LINDQVIST and MAGNUSSON 1957), thus suggesting that reserpine may act by producing a lack of central transmitter. There are also, however, other theories regarding these mechanisms, which involve 5 hydroxytryptamine (BRODIE *et al* 1957, GESSA *et al* 1962) or its deaminated end product (HOLTZ *et al* 1957) as the centrally acting sedative substance.

3) A third way of releasing the brain stores of monoamines is illustrated by  $\alpha$  methyl DOPA which is known to have mildly sedative and blood pressure reducing properties. This substance is metabolized *in vivo* to  $\alpha$  methylated catecholamines leading eventually to a long lasting displacement of noradrenaline by  $\alpha$  methyl noradrenaline, a substance which is not attacked by monoamine oxidase (CARLSSON and LINDQVIST 1962). Dopamine and 5 hydroxytryptamine are moderately reduced only for a few hours by the  $\alpha$  methylated catechol analogues (SOUKES *et al* 1961, PLETCHER and GEL 1962).

4) The monoamine oxidase inhibitors have been shown to act not only on the metabolic break down of the catecholamines, but also by preventing

# CHAPTER II

## GENERAL METHODS

### 1 Experimental procedures

#### *Experimental animals*

Dogs, rats and cats were used in the present investigation. The animals were fed a balanced commercial brand of laboratory food, and were allowed food and tap water *ad libitum*.

In the experiments to be described 45 mongrel *dogs* of either sex were used. The animals ranged in weight from 4 to 15 kg. Approximately the same number of males and females was placed in each experimental group. The *dogs* were sacrificed by a gun shot through the heart.

A total of 330 male albino *rats* of the Sprague Dawley strain (Anticimex, Stockholm) were employed. When possible adult rats weighing 250–300 g were used. The weights of the animals in each group did not vary more than  $\pm 10$  g at the beginning of an experiment. The rats were sacrificed by decapitation.

Fifteen *cats* of either sex weighing 2.5–4.0 kg were used in acute and short term morphine experiments. The cats were sacrificed by decapitation following chloroform anaesthesia.

#### *Administration of morphine and nalorphine*

A 4 per cent solution of morphine hydrochloride rendered isotonic with 0.3 per cent of sodium chloride was used. For stabilization of the morphine hydrochloride 0.1 per cent of 1 N hydrochloric acid was added to obtain a final pH around 4. This solution is referred to as *morphine* throughout this paper.

Nalorphine was given as a 1 per cent solution of nalorphine hydrochloride (Nalorphin, Leo Ltd.).

Dogs and cats were given subcutaneous injections while rats received intraperitoneal injections of morphine and nalorphine.

Rats and cats were used in acute morphine experiments. The injections were given at 9 a.m. and the animals were sacrificed four hours later. In a few experiments rats and cats were treated daily with morphine for only a few days. The rats were injected twice daily at 9 a.m. and 5 p.m. and

The observation that morphine reduces the adrenaline content of the adrenals and/or elevates the catecholamine content of the adrenal vein blood, has been confirmed in cats (STEWART and ROGOFF 1922, EMMELIN and STROMBLAD 1951, VOGT 1954), rabbits (ABE 1929, TADA 1932), rats (OUTSCHOORN 1952) and dogs (SATO and OHMI 1933, WADA *et al* 1938, SIBUTA, ENDO and NAGAKURA 1949)

An increase in the adrenaline concentration of peripheral blood after morphine injection was reported in rabbits (HAYAMA 1932) and dogs (RICHARDSON, WOODS and RICHARDSON 1958) The urinary output of catecholamines increased after morphine injection in rats (CHAMFORD and LAW 1958)

ABE (1929) found an increased amount of adrenaline in the adrenal glands of morphine tolerant rabbits and a disappearance of the adrenaline depleting effect after long term morphine treatment TACHIKAWA (1932) noticed that in the blood of chronically morphine treated dogs "there is a greater amount of adrenaline in the non morphine period" WADA *et al* (1938) reported that the morphine induced output of adrenaline in the adrenal vein blood of dogs was diminished as a result of morphine tolerance

VOGT (1954) reported that, in addition to the catecholamine depletion of the adrenal glands, there was a concomitant reduction of the midbrain and hypothalamic stores of sympathin in cats given 30—60 mg/kg of morphine In dogs there was only a slight corresponding effect QUINN, BLODIE and SHORE (1958) confirmed this observation in cat brains but found no effect of morphine on the catecholamines of rabbit brains

5-Hydroxytryptamine was not changed in the rabbit brain after single morphine doses (BRODIE, SHORE and PLETSCHEK 1956) Long term administration of morphine in rats did not influence the brain 5 hydroxytryptamine (COCHIN and ALEPOND 1959)

No reports dealing with the effects of long term morphine administration or withdrawal on the brain catecholamines seem to have appeared before 1959, when my first paper on this subject was published Some recent reports are discussed later in the present work — No earlier studies except my own 1961 1962 a, b) of the urinary output of catecholamines and 5 HIAA in morphine tolerance and withdrawal are known to the author

phine Dogs were given two consecutive injections of 5 + 5 mg/kg at 9 a m and 11 a m while rats received one injection of 10 mg/kg The animals were sacrificed four hours after the (first) nalorphine injection  
c The animals were withdrawn from the regular morphine injections for 72 hours and rats for 48 hours before sacrifice

One group of *control dogs* was untreated Another control group received two consecutive injections of nalorphine 5 + 5 mg/kg at two hours intervals and was sacrificed four hours after the first injection The *control rats* were given saline in amounts corresponding to the morphine treated animals One group of control rats received in addition a single injection of 10 mg/kg of nalorphine and was sacrificed four hours later

When urine was collected from four morphine tolerant dogs the animals were stabilized on single daily morphine injections 90 mg/kg given at 9 a m This morphine dose was substituted by one injection of nalorphine 10 mg/kg whereafter the morphine administration was resumed

#### *Collection of urine*

When dogs and rats were kept in metabolic cages special precautions had to be taken to avoid fragmentation of food into small particles which might absorb considerable amounts of urine During these periods the dogs were fed only meat while the rats diet was ground and thoroughly mixed with water

Young *dogs* weighing 3—5 kg were housed in individual metabolic cages The floor consisted of cylindrical plexiglass rods 10 mm in diameter inserted at 5 mm distances from each other The urine was collected in glass flasks through plexiglass funnels in which a plug of pyrex wool was placed to filter out fecal solids

Fifty ml of 1 N sulphuric acid were usually added to the bottles every 24 hours to produce an approximate pH of 3 The cages were cleaned daily for 1/2 hour during which time the animals were allowed to move freely For convenience the 23 1/2 hours urine was calculated as 24 hours urine

Since no special measures were observed to avoid leakage of drinking water directly into the funnels the values for the urine volumes may have been too high However, together with the salivation of the dogs the additional volume probably amounted only to a few per cent When vomiting occurred as in one dog during nalorphine induced abstinence the animal was excluded when the mean urine volumes were calculated — Naturally the calculation of the urinary amines was uninfluenced by these sources of error

the cats once daily. These animals were sacrificed four hours after the last injection, given at 9 a.m.

Dogs and rats were given chronic morphine treatment. The initial morphine dose in the dogs was 3 mg/kg given once daily at 9 a.m. This dose was increased at intervals of 7 to 10 days until 40 mg/kg were reached after 6 to 8 weeks. After this the dose was divided and given at 9 a.m. and 5 p.m. The morning dose was half the evening dose. During the first week of split doses, 20 mg/kg were given in the morning and 40 mg/kg in the afternoon, next week the doses were 30 and 60 mg/kg, etc. The final dose was 90 to 120 mg/kg/day and the whole series of injections lasted for 70 to 90 days. In a few instances some dogs were readdicted after withdrawal for three weeks. The second cycle of addiction was shortened to about four weeks.

This schedule of administration is referred to as *chronic morphine treatment* throughout this paper. Dogs given chronic morphine treatment are referred to as *morphine tolerant*.

The rats were injected for three weeks according to two different dosage regimens.

1 *Standard regimen (20—180 mg/kg twice daily)*

Injections were given twice daily at 9 a.m. and 5 p.m. starting with 20 mg/kg/injection. The dose was tripled every seventh day and the dose levels of the three weeks were thus 20, 60 and 180 mg/kg/injection.

2 *Intense regimen (20—300 mg/kg at 4 hours intervals)*

During the first week injections were given twice daily at 9 a.m. and 5 p.m. of 20 mg/kg/injection. From the eighth day five daily injections were given at 7 a.m., 11 a.m., 3 p.m., 7 p.m. and 11 p.m. The dose was increased by 20 mg/kg/injection every day (20, 40, 60, 80 mg/kg/injection). After fourteen days the rats were given six daily injections every fourth hour around the clock until, on the twenty-first day they received 300 mg/kg/injection, corresponding to a daily dose of 1800 mg/kg.

These two schedules of morphine administration are referred to as *chronic treatment* and rats so treated as *morphine tolerant rats*.

When dogs and rats had been rendered morphine tolerant, the following treatments were employed.

a The regular morphine injection at 9 a.m. was substituted by one injection of saline. Dogs were given an additional saline injection at 11 a.m. and the animals were sacrificed four hours after the first saline injection.

b The regular morphine injection at 9 a.m. was substituted by nalor-



phine Dogs were given two consecutive injections of 5 + 5 mg/kg at 9 a m and 11 a m, while rats received one injection of 10 mg/kg The animals were sacrificed four hours after the (first) nalorphine injection

c The animals were withdrawn from the regular morphine injections dogs for 72 hours and rats for 48 hours before sacrifice

One group of *control dogs* was untreated Another control group received two consecutive injections of nalorphine 5 + 5 mg/kg at two hours intervals and was sacrificed four hours after the first injection The *control rats* were given saline in amounts corresponding to the morphine treated animals One group of control rats received in addition a single injection of 10 mg/kg of nalorphine and was sacrificed four hours later

When urine was collected from four morphine tolerant dogs the animals were stabilized on single daily morphine injections, 90 mg/kg given at 9 a m This morphine dose was substituted by one injection of nalorphine, 10 mg/kg whereafter the morphine administration was resumed

#### *Collection of urine*

When dogs and rats were kept in metabolic cages special precautions had to be taken to avoid fragmentation of food into small particles which might absorb considerable amounts of urine During these periods the dogs were fed only meat while the rats diet was ground and thoroughly mixed with water

Young *dogs* weighing 3—5 kg were housed in individual metabolic cages The floor consisted of cylindrical plexiglass rods, 10 mm in diameter inserted at 5 mm distances from each other The urine was collected in glass flasks through plexiglass funnels in which a plug of pyrex wool was placed to filter out fecal solids

Fifty ml of 1 N sulphuric acid were usually added to the bottles every 24 hours to produce an approximate pH of 3 The cages were cleaned daily for 1/2 hour during which time the animals were allowed to move freely For convenience the 23 1/2 hours urine was calculated as 24 hours urine

Since no special measures were observed to avoid leakage of drinking water directly into the funnels the values for the urine volumes may have been too high However together with the salivation of the dogs, the additional volume probably amounted only to a few per cent When vomiting occurred, as in one dog during nalorphine induced abstinence this animal was excluded when the mean urine volumes were calculated — Naturally the calculation of the urinary amines was uninfluenced by these sources of error

Five rats were placed in each metabolic community cage. There were no metal parts in the collecting system. The floor, 50 cm in diameter, was made of perforated plexiglass and placed on a glass funnel with arrangements for separation of fecal solids. Ten ml of 1 N sulphuric acid were added, as a preservative, to the polythene collecting bottles.

## 2 Estimation of catecholamines

Noradrenaline and adrenaline were estimated in the brains and adrenals of dogs, cats and rats and the urine of dogs and rats. Dopamine was estimated in the brains of dogs.

### *Choice of method*

For determination of catecholamines in the brains of dogs and cats a modification of the method of EULER and LISHAJKO (1961) was used. A preliminary study (cf. below) showed that the results with this convenient method were almost identical with those obtained by the somewhat more time consuming method of BERTLER, CARLSSON and ROSENGREN (1958).

Estimation of catecholamines in the rat brain was made by the method of BERTLER *et al.* (1958) for the following reasons — The experiments with rats included administration to the animals of  $\alpha$ -methyl dihydroxyphenylalanine ( $\alpha$ -methyl DOPA) a substance which is converted in the brain to  $\alpha$ -methylated catecholamines (CARLSSON and LINDQVIST 1962).  $\alpha$ -Methyl dopamine, when treated according to the trihydroxyindole (THI) method, gives a strongly fluorescent product, which would invalidate the estimation of noradrenaline. Therefore it was thought advisable to exclude interference from  $\alpha$ -methyl dopamine by the chromatographic separation on Dowex 50. The fluorophore of  $\alpha$ -methyl noradrenaline, on the other hand, which is not separated from noradrenaline by this method, had a weak fluorescence, less than 5 per cent of that of noradrenaline with the filter sets used in the present investigation. This is in accordance with earlier reports (LUND 1949, CARLSSON and LINDQVIST 1962).

Dopamine was estimated in the telencephalon of dogs according to CARLSSON and WALDECK (1958).

The extracts of adrenals were diluted with sodium acetate buffer solution and the determination of adrenaline and noradrenaline was then performed as for brain and urinary eluates.

In the urinary adrenaline and noradrenaline were determined by the method of EULER and LISHAJKO (1961).

## A Extraction

Extraction of brain tissue was performed with 0.4 N perchloric acid. Only one extraction was made and the final catecholamine values were calculated according to BERTLER *et al* (1958), presuming a water content of the tissue of 75 per cent. This implies the following correction factor for the catecholamine values found

$$(\text{Extraction vol} + 75 \% \text{ of wet tissue wt}) / (\text{vol taken for assay})$$

The *dog brain* was dissected out immediately after sacrifice, stripped of the meninges and divided into three parts: 1) telencephalon, 2) cerebellum and 3) brain stem (medulla oblongata, pons, midbrain and diencephalon but excluding the basal ganglia belonging to the telencephalon). Each part was weighed and homogenized (Ultra Turrax homogenizer) in six volumes of cold 0.4 N perchloric acid. The extraction was allowed to proceed for about 30 min at +4° C after homogenization. After centrifugation the supernatant was passed through a filter paper (Munktell density grade 00). Generally 40 ml of the extracts of telencephalon and cerebellum and 15 ml of the brain stem extracts were taken for purification and assay.

The whole *rat brains* were dissected out and put in 0.4 N perchloric acid. Two brains were pooled for each determination, homogenized and extracted in 20 ml (six volumes) of cold acid. The extracts were treated as described above for dog brains. All extracts were stored at -30° C for not more than one week. The whole extract was taken for assay.

The *cat brain* was removed and the brain stem (here defined as medulla oblongata, pons, midbrain and diencephalon) was cut out. It was extracted with six volumes of 0.4 N perchloric acid and treated as described for the dog brains.

The *adrenals* of dogs, rats and cats were dissected out 15 to 30 min after death. The organs were carefully freed from adherent tissue, weighed on a torsion balance and ground in a mortar with quartz sand together with 5 per cent trichloroacetic acid. Adrenals of dogs (one pair) and cats (one pair) were extracted in 50 ml. For the rats adrenals (two pairs) 10 ml were used. After filtration the extracts were generally stored at -30° C for 1 to 7 days before further dilution and fluorimetric estimation.

### *Stability of noradrenaline in perchloric acid extracts*

The pH of the perchloric acid brain extracts was about 0.5. The studies

of WEST (1952) indicate, however, an optimal stability for catecholamines at pH 3.5 to 3.9. In order to study the stability of noradrenaline in the perchloric acid extracts stored at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ , the following experiment was undertaken.

The brain stems of three dogs, with a total tissue weight of 25 g were extracted with 150 ml of 0.4 N perchloric acid. The pooled extract was divided in ten parts of 15 ml each. Two samples were determined on the day of extraction to obtain reference values. Four samples were adjusted to pH 3.8 with 2 N potassium hydroxide, and together with the four extracts at pH 0.5 they were stored at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ . At intervals of one month two samples were taken out, one at pH 3.8 and one at pH 0.5 and determined as above.

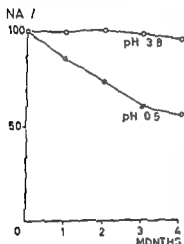


FIG. 1. Stability of noradrenaline (NA) in 0.4 N perchloric acid extract of dog brains (pH 0.5). Part of the pooled extract was adjusted to pH 3.8 before storage at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

The results are given in Fig. 1 from which it is evident that 3.8 is a more favourable pH for storage. At pH 0.5 the noradrenaline content was reduced to about 50 per cent in four months. The gradual reduction of noradrenaline was obviously not prevented by storage at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

In accordance with BERTLER *et al.* (1958), it was found that the samples could be stored for a week without appreciable loss. If the time for storage was extended beyond a week, the samples were adjusted to pH 3.8.

## B Purification

As mentioned previously, the brain extracts were purified according to two different methods. These will be briefly described below.

### *Method of BERTLER, CARLSSON and ROSENGREN (1958)*

A column 42 mm in diameter containing 300 mg of the strongly acid cation exchange resin Dowex 50 W X4 200-400 mesh Na<sup>+</sup> form was used. The resin had been washed with 5 N hydrochloric acid, glass distilled water and 1 N sodium hydroxide. Forty ml of 2 N HCl, redistilled water and 1 N sodium acetate buffer pH 6.0 were passed through the column prior to analysis.

The perchloric acid extracts were thawed and adjusted in pH 4 with 2 N potassium hydroxide. A pH meter (Metrohm) and a magnetic stirrer were used in all titrations. The precipitate of potassium perchlorate was spun down at 0° C and the extract was passed through the column.

After two washings with glass distilled water, elution was performed with 1 N hydrochloric acid in two separate portions: the first 9 ml of the eluate contained noradrenaline and adrenaline. The second portion of the eluate (10 ml) contained approximately 90 per cent of the dopamine content of the sample.

The same column could be used again after rinsing with 2 N hydrochloric acid and regeneration as described in the original method.

### *Method of EULER and LISHAYKO (1959 and 1961)*

The perchloric acid extracts were thawed, adjusted to pH 4 with 2 N potassium hydroxide and the perchlorate was spun down. The pH of the supernatant was adjusted to 8.4 with 0.1 N sodium hydroxide and the extract was passed through a column 0.9 cm in diameter containing 1 g of aluminum oxide (British Drug Houses) previously washed with glass-distilled water to let fine particles pass through the glass filter. After adsorption the column was carefully washed with glass distilled water and elution was performed with 0.25 N acetic acid.

When the extracts were clear and colorless (as for instance dog brain stem and cerebellum extracts) the potassium hydroxide titration and centrifugation steps could be omitted and pH adjusted to 8.4 directly by 1 N sodium hydroxide.

---

Adrenal extracts could be assayed for catecholamines after dilution without purification. The extract was thawed and thoroughly stirred in order to avoid the separation brought about by freezing (the cryoscopic effect RYNGAARD 1961). For dogs' adrenals 0.1 ml of the extract was generally diluted in 9.9 ml 0.15 N sodium acetate buffer at pH 6.5. For the rats' and cats' adrenals 0.5 ml of extracts was diluted in 9.5 ml 1 N sodium acetate buffer at pH 6.8. After dilution the final pH before assay was 6.3 in all extracts.

The urine of dogs and rats was filtered, whereafter 25 ml or less were treated according to the method of EULER and LISHAYKO (1959), including addition to the urine of the disodium salt of ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA).

of WEST (1952) indicate, however, an optimal stability for catecholamines at pH 3.5 to 3.9. In order to study the stability of noradrenaline in the perchloric acid extracts stored at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ , the following experiment was undertaken.

The brain stems of three dogs, with a total tissue weight of 25 g were extracted with 150 ml of 0.4 N perchloric acid. The pooled extract was divided in ten parts of 15 ml each. Two samples were determined on the day of extraction to obtain reference values. Four samples were adjusted to pH 3.8 with 2 N potassium hydroxide, and together with the four extracts at pH 0.5 they were stored at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ . At intervals of one month two samples were taken out, one at pH 3.8 and one at pH 0.5 and determined as above.

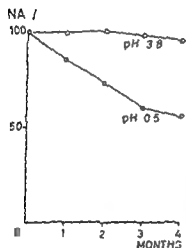


Fig. 1 Stability of noradrenaline (NA) in 0.4 N perchloric acid extract of dog brains (pH 0.5). Part of the pooled extract was adjusted to pH 3.8 before storage at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

The results are given in Fig. 1 from which it is evident that 3.8 is a more favourable pH for storage. At pH 0.5 the noradrenaline content was reduced to about 50 per cent in four months. The gradual reduction of noradrenaline was obviously not prevented by storage at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

In accordance with BERTLER *et al* (1958) it was found that the samples could be stored for a week without appreciable loss. If the time for storage was extended beyond a week the samples were adjusted to pH 3.8.

## B Purification

As mentioned previously, the brain extracts were purified according to two different methods. These will be briefly described below.

*Table II Comparison between purification on Alumina and Dowex 50 of a solution of noradrenaline (NA) 2 µg/10 ml in perchloric acid*

	Alumina NA µg/10 ml	Dowex 50 NA µg/10 ml
	1.68	1.70
	1.69	1.74
	1.73	1.76
	1.78	1.76
	1.78	1.82
Means	1.73	1.76
Recovery	87 %	88 %

*Standard solutions* To a solution of 0.4 N perchloric acid noradrenaline hydrochloride was added 2 µg/10 ml and potassium chloride corresponding to the approximate ion concentration of a brain extract. Five samples of 15 ml of this simulated brain extract were adjusted to pH 4 with a measured volume of 2 N KOH, centrifuged and a 10 ml aliquot of the extract was passed through a column of Dowex 50. (This procedure eliminates the losses normally included in the centrifugation step). Five other samples were adjusted to pH 8.4 by 1 N sodium hydroxide and passed through columns of alumina. The eluates were assayed fluorimetrically as described below.

The values expressed as µg/10 ml of the extract show that both methods gave almost identical results (Table II).

*Table III Comparison between purification on Alumina and Dowex 50 of noradrenaline (NA) in brain stem extracts of dogs. The pooled extract of untreated dogs divided into 10 equal samples*

	Alumina NA µg/g	Dowex 50 NA µg/g
	0.35	0.32
	0.35	0.37
	0.36	0.33
	0.36	0.34
	0.35	0.32
Means	0.35	0.32

### *Addition of EDTA*

When the disodium salt of ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA, Titnplex, Merck) was added to the brain extracts, in amounts corresponding to those recommended for the same volumes of urine (about 140 mg/g of wet tissue), the noradrenaline values were considerably depressed. In order to secure the relationship between the lowered values and the addition of EDTA the following study was undertaken.

The pooled extract of ten rat brains in 100 ml 0.4 N perchloric acid was divided in five equal samples to which various additions of EDTA were made. The samples were purified on alumina and assayed according to EULER and LISHAJKO (1961). It was found that even small amounts of EDTA lowered the noradrenaline values (Table I). Addition of EDTA

*Table I Influence of added amounts of the disodium salt of ethylene diaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) on the noradrenaline (NA) content in rat brains. Extracts of 10 rat brains pooled and divided in 5 equal samples*

EDTA mg/g	NA %
0	100
5	70
10	68
15	50
50	50

was for this reason omitted for brain extracts and was found unnecessary when the extraction volume was sufficiently large to prevent precipitation (of phosphates and other salts) at pH 8.

When treating the urine samples, EDTA could not be dispensed with, unless the urine was either diluted to avoid precipitating salts or centrifuged in order to remove the precipitate at pH 8.4. These steps lowered the recovery yields and were abandoned.

### *Comparison between the methods of EULER and LISHAJKO (1961) and BEUTLER, CARLSSON and ROSENGREN (1958)*

As two different methods of purification of the brain extracts were used, the following studies were undertaken to evaluate the accuracy and specificity of these methods.



levels obtained after purification on Dowex 50. This is in accordance with earlier results (GUANE 1961) when morphine was added to urine and the purification was made on alumina.

*Stability of eluates* Since the pH of the hydrochloric acid eluates of the method of BERTLER *et al* (1958) was found to approximate 0.5 the samples were probably not stable for any length of time (cf Fig 1). For this reason the final assay was made without delay on the day of elution.

The acetic acid eluates of the method of EULER and LISHVJAKO (1961) had a pH around 3.5 and could be stored in the cold for months without appreciable loss.

*These studies indicate that for the purpose of the present investigation, the two methods of purification gave results which were comparable with regard to accuracy and specificity.*

## C Assay

The assay of adrenaline and noradrenaline in the final eluates was performed by fluorimetric technique using the trihydroxyindole (THI) method (CHALKLEN 1948; LUND 1949, 1950; EULER and FLODRIG 1955). This includes oxidation of the catecholamines and rearrangement of the oxidized products in alkaline solution to the corresponding strongly fluorescent lutines using ascorbic acid as a stabilizing agent. Blanks were prepared either by omitting the ascorbic acid until the fluorescence had disappeared (faded blank) or by omitting the oxidation step (non-oxidized blank). Though both methods for preparing the blank gave comparable results the faded blanks were found to be more stable and were chosen for this reason for all eluates. The non-oxidized blanks were used only for analysis of adrenal extracts which presumably contain very little interfering material.

The final determination of noradrenaline and adrenaline was made on a Coleman fluorimeter type 12 C using two sets of monochromatic filters as described by COHEN and GOLDENBERG (1957). The filter set A consisted of a primary monochromatic filter with a peak transmission at 390 nm (the filter was a combination of Schott UG 3 BG 14 CG 13) and as a secondary filter Ilford Bright 623 with peak transmission at 490 nm. The filter set B consisted of a primary monochromatic filter with peak transmission at 436 nm (the filter was a combination of Schott BG 12 GG 15) and as secondary filter Corning 3486 with peak transmission 540 nm.

*Table IV Comparison between purification on Alumina and Dowex 50 of noradrenaline (NA) in brain stem extracts of dogs The dogs had been given chronic morphine (Mo) treatment, final dose 100 mg/kg Three dogs received 5+5 mg/kg of nalorphine before sacrifice*

Treatment	Alumina NA $\mu\text{g/g}$	Dowex NA $\mu\text{g/g}$	Difference
Chronic Mo	0.34	0.35	-0.01
"	0.30	0.30	0
"	0.32	0.30	+0.02
Chronic Mo + Nalorphine	0.24	0.21	+0.03
"	0.12	0.13	-0.01
"	0.25	0.22	+0.03

*Brain extracts of untreated dogs* Two hundred ml of pooled extract from brain stems of untreated dogs were divided in ten samples of 20 ml each. Five of the extracts were treated by the method of BERTLER *et al* (1958) and five according to FULER and LISHAJKO (1961). The results with both methods were practically the same (Table III).

*Brain extracts of chronically morphine treated dogs* The brain stem of three chronically morphine treated dogs were extracted with 0.4 N perchloric acid. From each extract two 15 ml samples were taken for purification and determination by each method. The same experiment was repeated in three other chronically morphine treated dogs who had received in addition two injections of nalorphine, 5 mg/kg, four and two hours before examination. In spite of the different treatments there was still a satisfactory agreement in the results obtained by both methods (Table IV).

*Addition of morphine to brain extract* The pooled extract of eight rat brains was divided in four equal parts. To two of these, morphine hydrochloride was added in amounts corresponding to 40  $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet tissue and the extracts were treated by the method of BERTLER *et al* (1958). Other workers (JOHANNESON 1962 and MILTHEPS 1962) have shown that higher doses of morphine than those used in the present investigation produce brain levels approximating this concentration.

The addition of morphine HCl did not influence the catecholamine

eluates obtained after purification on Dowex 50. This is in accordance with earlier results (GUNNE 1961), when morphine was added to urine and the purification was made on alumina.

*Stability of eluates* Since the pH of the hydrochloric acid eluates of the method of BERTLER *et al* (1958) was found to approximate 0.5 the samples were probably not stable for any length of time (*cf* Fig. 1). For this reason the final assay was made without delay on the day of elution.

The acetic acid eluates of the method of EULER and LISITVJKO (1961) had a pH around 3.5 and could be stored in the cold for months without appreciable loss.

*These studies indicate that, for the purpose of the present investigation the two methods of purification gave results which were comparable with regard to accuracy and specificity.*

## C Assay

The assay of adrenaline and noradrenaline in the final eluates was performed by fluorimetric technique, using the trihydroxyindole (THI) method (EHRLEN 1948, LUND 1949, 1950, EULER and FLODING 1955). This includes oxidation of the catecholamines and rearrangement of the oxidized products in alkaline solution to the corresponding strongly fluorescent lutines using ascorbic acid as a stabilizing agent. Blanks were prepared either by omitting the ascorbic acid until the fluorescence had disappeared (faded blank) or by omitting the oxidation step (non-oxidized blank). Though both methods for preparing the blank gave comparable results the faded blanks were found to be more stable and were chosen for this reason for all eluates. The non-oxidized blanks were used only for analysis of adrenal extracts which presumably contain very little interfering material.

The final determination of noradrenaline and adrenaline was made on a Coleman fluorimeter type 12 C using two sets of monochromatic filters as described by COHEN and GOLDBERG (1957). The filter set *a* consisted of a primary monochromatic filter with a peak transmission at 395 nm (the filter was a combination of Schott UG 3, BG 14, CG 13) and as a secondary filter Ilford Bright 623 with peak transmission at 490 nm. The filter set *b* consisted of a primary monochromatic filter with peak transmission at 436 nm (the filter was a combination of Schott BG 12, GG 15) and as secondary filter Corning 3486 with peak transmission 540 nm.

A plexi-glass rod was used as standard which was repeatedly calibrated

against solutions containing the fluorophores of noradrenaline and adrenaline. A recalibration was required every 2 to 3 weeks.

Using these filter sets the fluorescence of noradrenaline is approximately equal with *a* and *b* filters, while the fluorescence of adrenaline is about three times higher with *b* filters compared with *a* filters.

A slow gradual change was noticed in the sensitivity of the fluorimeter probably as a result of changes in the transmission qualities of the filters. It was found that this gradual change followed a pattern which was to a certain extent predictable. It implied an inherent tendency of the instrument to obtain an increased sensitivity to adrenaline. If the plexiglass standard was not checked against catecholamine standards for some interval the values were biased in the direction of too high adrenaline figures while the noradrenaline values were still approximately correct.

Dopamine was estimated according to CARLSSON and WALDECK (1958). The fluorescence was read in a spectrofluorimeter (Aminco Bowman) at the peak fluorescence wavelengths and compared with known standard solutions.

### *Procedure*

The hydrochloric acid eluates were titrated to pH 6.0–6.5 with 2 N potassium hydroxide, after addition of 0.1 ml 5 N acetic acid to obtain an increased buffer capacity. (Titration with potassium carbonate, as recommended by BEPTLER *et al.* (1958), was not used since it was found difficult to obtain a stable pH in spite of rapid stirring with a magnetic stirrer.) The acetic acid eluates were titrated with 1 N ammonium hydroxide.

*Adrenaline and noradrenaline* 3 ml of the neutralized brain eluates were taken for each determination. The eluates were oxidized by the addition of 0.1 ml of 0.25 per cent potassium ferricyanide solution. Exactly three min later 3 ml of a mixture containing 5 N NaOH (88%) a 2 per cent solution of ascorbic acid in water (10%) and concentrated ethylene diamine (2%), were added to the oxidized eluate. The sample was then diluted to 10 ml with water. Blanks were prepared by omitting the ascorbic acid which was added 5 min later.

In the analysis of urine samples 3 ml of neutralized eluate were used to 4 ml of alkaline ascorbate-EDTA mixture. For extracts of adrenals 1 ml of the diluted extract pH 6.3 was used with 1 ml of the mixture. This mixture remains stable for 3 to 4 hours (EVLIN and LISIJSKO 1961).

The noradrenaline and adrenaline values were calculated by solving the equations

$$m = yN + xA$$

$$n = yN_b + xA_b$$

In these equations  $x$  and  $y$  represent the amounts of adrenaline and noradrenaline respectively  $m$  and  $n$  were the fluorimetric readings (corrected for blanks) for filter sets  $a$  and  $b$  respectively  $A$ ,  $A_b$ ,  $N$  and  $N_b$  were the values for the fluorescence per  $\mu\text{g}$  on filter sets  $a$  and  $b$  for adrenaline and noradrenaline respectively

**Dopamine** The determination of dopamine was made according to CARLSON and WALDECK (1958) Some of these investigations were carried out on the second eluate from columns of Dowex 50 containing mainly dopamine The presence of noradrenaline in eluates from alumina did not interfere This is in agreement with CARLSON and WALDECK (1958) and LEDUC (1961)

### *Adrenaline in the brain*

The relative adrenaline content of mammalian brains is small and its presence has even been questioned This problem was the subject of a special study (GUYE 1962 c) A total chromatographic separation of adrenaline from the other catecholamines was undertaken by the method of KIRSCHNER and GOODALL (1957) using the weak cation exchange resin Amberlite IRC 50 The considerable losses in the procedure were compensated for by pooling a large number of brains In spite of this 4 per cent of adrenaline (of the sum of noradrenaline and adrenaline) was the lowest detectable amount Adrenaline concentrations above 4 per cent were found in brains of rats (4.5 per cent) and pigs (7.5 per cent) Later an improved separation technique using the strongly acid cation exchange resin Amberlite CG 120 (HAGGENDAL 1962) was adopted The use of this resin permitted the detection of even smaller amounts of adrenaline The adrenaline concentration in dog brains was found to approximate 2 to 3 per cent of the sum of adrenaline and noradrenaline (unpublished results)

It was noticed when brain eluates were assayed on the Coleman fluorimeter that negative adrenaline values were often obtained in eluates from the telencephalon of dogs This was probably due to some interfering substance in the brains

By separation of brain eluates from dogs on Amberlite CG 120 a fraction was obtained which gave higher readings with the  $a$  filters than with the  $b$  filters (samples treated by the THI method) A substance with those properties might obscure the presence of small amounts of adrenaline

Considering all the implications involved in the estimation of the small

against solutions containing the fluorophores of noradrenaline and adrenaline. A recalibration was required every 2 to 3 weeks.

Using these filter sets the fluorescence of noradrenaline is approximately equal with *a* and *b* filters while the fluorescence of adrenaline is about three times higher with *b* filters compared with *a* filters.

A slow gradual change was noticed in the sensitivity of the fluorimeter probably as a result of changes in the transmission qualities of the filters. It was found that this gradual change followed a pattern which was to a certain extent predictable. It implied an inherent tendency of the instrument to obtain an increased sensitivity to adrenaline. If the plexiglass standard was not checked against catecholamine standards for some interval the values were biased in the direction of too high adrenaline figures while the noradrenaline values were still approximately correct.

Dopamine was estimated according to CARLSSON and WALDECK (1958). The fluorescence was read in a spectrophotofluorimeter (Aminco Bowman) at the peak fluorescence wavelengths and compared with known standard solutions.

### Procedure

The hydrochloric acid eluates were titrated to pH 6.0–6.5 with 2 N potassium hydroxide, after addition of 0.1 ml 5 N acetic acid to obtain an increased buffer capacity. (Titration with potassium carbonate, as recommended by BERTLER *et al.* (1958), was not used since it was found difficult to obtain a stable pH in spite of rapid stirring with a magnetic stirrer.) The acetic acid eluates were titrated with 1 N ammonium hydroxide.

**Adrenaline and noradrenaline** 3 ml of the neutralized brain eluates were taken for each determination. The eluates were oxidized by the addition of 0.1 ml of 0.25 per cent potassium ferricyanide solution. Exactly three min. later 3 ml of a mixture containing 5 N NaOH (88 %), a 2 per cent solution of ascorbic acid in water (10 %) and concentrated ethylene diamine (25 %), were added to the oxidized eluate. The sample was then diluted to 10 ml with water. Blanks were prepared by omitting the ascorbic acid, which was added 5 min. later.

In the analysis of urine samples 3 ml of neutralized eluate were used to 4 ml of alkaline ascorbate F&D mixture. For extracts of adrenals 1 ml of the diluted extract pH 6.3 was used with 1 ml of the mixture. This mixture remains stable for 3 to 4 hours (EULEI and LISHVSKO 1961).

The noradrenaline and adrenaline values were calculated by solving the equations

The influence of pH on the stability of 5 hydroxytryptamine in perchloric acid extracts was studied in the following way. Nine rat brains were pooled and extracted with 90 ml 0.4 N perchloric acid (six volumes). The extract was homogenized immediately, centrifuged and filtered. The resulting pH was approximately 0.5. The extract was then divided into nine equal samples, four of which were adjusted to pH 4 by 2 N KOH and the perchlorate was spun down. One sample was assayed immediately (starting level). Eight samples (three at pH 4 and five at pH 0.5) were stored at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The samples were taken out at different time intervals, thawed and assayed for 5 hydroxytryptamine (Fig. 2).

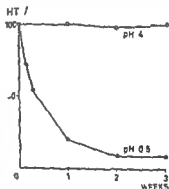


Fig. 2 Stability of 5 hydroxytryptamine (5 HT) in 0.4 N perchloric acid extract of rat brains (pH 0.5). Part of the pooled extract was adjusted to pH 4 before storage at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

**Results** From the figure it is evident that the extracts can not be stored in the strongly acid extraction fluid without considerable losses. An approximate reduction of 50 per cent was found after two days. 5 Hydroxytryptamine was found to be stable at pH 4 (*cf* The Merck Index Ed VII p 932). This study shows that the rapid loss at pH 0.5 can not be prevented by freezing.

For this reason all extracts intended for 5 hydroxytryptamine determination were adjusted to pH 4 by 2 N KOH before storage.

#### *Modification introduced in estimation of catecholamines and 5 hydroxytryptamine in brain extracts*

In summarizing the data presented above the following modifications were introduced:

Extraction was performed according to BERTLER *et al* (1958), with 0.4 N perchloric acid. Immediately after centrifugation and filtration of the brain homogenate the pH of the extract was adjusted to 3.5–4.0 in

amounts of adrenaline in brain tissue, it was not thought feasible to study changes in brain adrenaline in the present investigation

### 3 Estimation of 5-hydroxytryptamine and 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5-HIAA)

5 hydroxytryptamine was estimated in the brain stem of dogs and total brain of rats 5-HIAA was estimated in the urine of dogs and rats

The brain content of 5 hydroxytryptamine was determined according to a method described by BERTLER (1961) Extraction was made with six volumes of 0.4 N perchloric acid After homogenization the extract was centrifuged and filtered 10 ml of the extract of dog brain stem were taken for purification and assay The total extract (approximately 10 ml) of single rat brains were treated the same way

The method of purification and assay is briefly presented here

#### *Method of BERTLER (1961)*

The extract was purified on a column 6 × 25 mm of the weak cation exchange resin Amberlite XE 64 After decantation of the smallest particles the columns were prepared and washed with 2 N hydrochloric acid redistilled water 20 ml of N sodium acetate buffer at pH 6.5 and finally a few ml of redistilled water

The extract was adjusted to pH 6.5 by 2 N potassium hydroxide and the perchlorate spun down at 0°C The sample was then passed through the column After washing with 10 ml of a 0.02 M phosphate buffer pH 6.5 containing 0.2% EDTA followed by a few ml of redistilled water elution was performed by 3 ml of 1.2 N hydrochloric acid Concentrated hydrochloric acid (0.8 ml) was added to the eluate and the fluorescence was read in an Aminco Bowman spectrophotofluorimeter at 295 nm activation, and 550 nm fluorescence wavelengths

5 HIAA in urine was determined according to UNDERFIELD WELLS BACH and CLARK (1955) with the modification of McIVARLAN *et al* (1956)

#### *Stability of 5 hydroxytryptamine in brain extracts*

BERTLER (1961) had noticed that the immediate centrifugation of the homogenate was required in order to preclude losses of 5 hydroxytryptamine It was suggested that the amine might be adsorbed to insoluble tissue residues However, in the present study it was found that 5 hydroxytryptamine was lost whether the extract had been centrifuged or not



The influence of pH on the stability of 5 hydroxytryptamine in perchloric acid extracts was studied in the following way. Nine rat brains were pooled and extracted with 90 ml 0.4 N perchloric acid (six volumes). The extract was homogenized immediately, centrifuged and filtered. The resulting pH was approximately 0.5. The extract was then divided into nine equal samples four of which were adjusted to pH 4 by 2 N KOH and the perchlorate was spun down. One sample was assayed immediately (starting level). Eight samples (three at pH 4 and five at pH 0.5) were stored at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The samples were taken out at different time intervals, thawed and assayed for 5 hydroxytryptamine (Fig. 2).

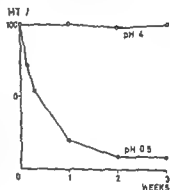


Fig. 2. Stability of 5 hydroxytryptamine (5 HT) in 0.4 N perchloric acid extract of rat brains (pH 0.5). Part of the pooled extract was adjusted to pH 4 before storage at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

**Results.** From the figure it is evident that the extracts can not be stored in the strongly acid extraction fluid without considerable losses. An approximate reduction of 50 per cent was found after two days. 5 Hydroxytryptamine was found to be stable at pH 4 (cf. The Merck Index Ed. VII, p. 932). This study shows that the rapid loss at pH 0.5 can not be prevented by freezing.

For this reason all extracts intended for 5 hydroxytryptamine determination were adjusted to pH 4 by 2 N KOH before storage.

#### *Modification introduced in estimation of catecholamines and 5 hydroxytryptamine in brain extracts*

In summarizing the data presented above, the following modifications were introduced:

Extraction was performed according to BERTLER, *et al.* (1958) with 0.4 N perchloric acid. Immediately after centrifugation and filtration of the brain homogenate the pH of the extract was adjusted to 3.5–4.0 in

Table 1 - Recovery Pooled extracts or urine was divided into 8 equal parts known amounts of noradrenaline (NA) adrenaline (A), dopamine (DA) 5 hydroxytryptamine (5 HT) or 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5 HIAA) were added to six samples in each experiment

Tissue (or urine)	Volume of extract or urine ml	Substance added	Amount added $\mu$ g/sample	Per cent recovered Mean	Per cent recovered Range
Dog telencephalon	40	NA	1-2	98	89-109
	40	A	1-2	76	72-80
	40	DA	1-2	80	75-90
Dog brain stem	15	NA	1	83	77-92
	15	A	0.5-1	70	63-75
	10	5HT	1	88	83-91
Rat brain	20	NA	1-2	89	83-97
	20	A	0.5-2	77	76-87
	20	DA	1-2	86	82-92
Dog urine	25	NA	1-2	71	64-76
	25	A	1-2	68	62-74
	5	5HIAA	50-100	101	86-120
Rat urine	25	NA	1-2	82	75-85
	25	A	0.5-2	65	55-71
Rat adrenals	0.5	NA	0.5-1	98	93-105
	0.5	A	0.2-0.5	99	94-105

the adrenals was expressed as  $\mu$ g/rat and the amounts excreted in the urine as  $\mu$ g/rat/h

Mean standard deviation (S D) and standard error of the mean (S E M) were computed according to ordinary formulae (FISHER 1936)

Significance of means and differences were tested by the t test (FISHER 1936). Levels of significance

5 per cent level  $P=0.05-0.01$  probably significant\*

1 per cent level  $P=0.01-0.001$  significant\*\*

0.1 per cent level  $P<0.001$  highly significant\*\*\*

*Table 1 Recovery. Pooled extracts or urine was divided into 8 equal parts. Known amounts of noradrenaline (NA), adrenaline (A), dopamine (DA), 5-hydroxytryptamine (5HT) or 5-hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5HIAA) were added to six samples in each experiment*

Tissue (or urine)	Volume of extract or urine ml	Substance added	Amount added $\mu\text{g/sample}$	Per cent recovered Mean	Per cent recovered Range
Dog telencephalon	40	NA	1-2	98	89-100
	40	A	1-2	76	72-80
	40	DA	1-2	80	75-90
Dog brain stem	15	NA	1	83	77-92
	15	A	0.5-1	70	63-75
	10	5HT	1	88	83-91
Rat brain	20	NA	1-2	89	83-97
	20	A	0.5-2	77	76-87
	20	DA	1-2	86	82-92
Dog urine	25	NA	1-2	71	64-76
	25	A	1-2	68	62-74
	5	5HIAA	50-100	101	86-120
Rat urine	25	NA	1-2	82	75-85
	25	A	0.5-2	65	55-71
Rat adrenals	0.5	NA	0.5-1	98	93-105
	0.5	A	0.2-0.5	99	94-105

the adrenals was expressed as  $\mu\text{g/rat}$  and the amounts excreted in the urine as  $\mu\text{g/rat/h}$

Mean, standard deviation (S.D.) and standard error of the mean (S.E.M.) were computed according to ordinary formulae (FISHER 1936).

Significance of means and differences were tested by the *t* test (FISHER 1936). Levels of significance:

5 per cent level  $P \sim 0.05-0.01$ , probably significant\*

1 per cent level  $P \sim 0.01-0.001$  significant\*\*

0.1 per cent level  $P < 0.001$  highly significant\*\*\*

## CHAPTER III

### GENERAL BEHAVIOR OF DOGS, RATS AND CATS IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL

#### I General observations

##### *Acute effects of morphine*

In *dogs* administration of 3 mg/kg of morphine generally induced sedation or sleep from which the animals could be briefly aroused. The sedation was occasionally preceded by some degree of motor unrest in combination with vomiting. The sleeping time after the first morphine injection some times amounted to six hours, but signs of sedation could generally be observed for twelve to twenty four hours. No postnarcotic excitement was seen in this species.

When *rats* were given a single injection of 20 mg/kg of morphine, there was an initial sedation consisting of a more or less abolished spontaneous activity. The condition resembled catalepsy with an increased muscular tone and tendency to remain in peculiar postures. A partial Straub phenomenon was present, the tail was lifted and rigidly extended. This stage was succeeded by one of increased activity. Five to six hours after the injection no further effect could be observed in the rats.

*Cats* given 5 to 30 mg/kg of morphine were always excited, with dilated pupils and a greatly increased rather incoordinated activity. The animals were restlessly moving, jumping, rolling on the floor, etc. In some cases general convulsions occurred, sometimes fatal. Some degree of unrest was generally noted for more than twelve hours and was occasionally present even twenty four hours after the administration of morphine.

##### *Long term effects of morphine*

In *dogs* repeated administration of morphine once daily was followed by a gradually diminished and shortened sedative effect. When the dose was raised there was an increased sedation, but three weeks after the start of injections, the drug did not produce sleep in spite of any increment in dosage. A complete tolerance to the emetic action was obtained within ten

days After this no vomiting was noticed as long as morphine was given Salivation was a common finding during the initial two to four weeks of morphine administration It disappeared in some dogs only to return in connection with abstinence After one to two months of morphine administration some dogs became irritable and fought frequently This was regarded as a sign of physical dependence since it occurred only at the end of the twenty four hours between injections and disappeared when the interval was shortened or the dose was raised Throughout the experiments morphine had a sedative action in dogs and no excitement was seen from the injections

The rats were given morphine according to two different dosage schedules (p 14) producing different behavioral effects

The regular dosage regimen with morphine injections twice daily, resulted in a successively shorter stage of sedation after each injection and an increasingly dominant stage of excitement After a week on a constant dose every injection was followed by excitement with increased activity, hyperpyrexia and exophthalmos When the dose was increased, stepwise the signs of sedation reappeared during the first few days of the new dose The same pattern of increasing excitement was then repeated

The intense dosage regimen with morphine injections at four hour intervals modified the behavior of the rats The signs of excitation were not as obvious as with the regular dosage regimen The rats appeared normal but occasional outbursts of increased activity were seen The majority of the rats gained weight and appeared healthy but sudden deaths occurred from convulsions

Cats were given morphine for five days No tolerance to the exciting effect was noticed during these days

### *Withdrawal and nalorphine induced abstinence*

When the chronic morphine administration was withdrawn or the regular morphine injections were substituted by nalorphine a more or less pronounced abstinence excitation was noticed in dogs The maximal symptoms were seen approximately three days after withdrawal and all signs of abstinence had disappeared after eight to ten days Following nalorphine administration to morphine tolerant dogs there was a short lasting state of excitement with a maximal intensity of symptoms one hour after the injection After another hour the symptoms had usually disappeared The pattern of symptoms is described in detail below

In rats the withdrawal or nalorphine reaction was not a purely excitatory one. The condition observed after abrupt withdrawal was characterized

## CHAPTER III

### GENERAL BEHAVIOR OF DOGS, RATS AND CATS IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL

#### I General observations

##### *Acute effects of morphine*

In *dogs* administration of 3 mg/kg of morphine generally induced sedation or sleep from which the animals could be briefly aroused. The sedation was occasionally preceded by some degree of motor unrest in combination with vomiting. The sleeping time after the first morphine injection sometimes amounted to six hours, but signs of sedation could generally be observed for twelve to twenty four hours. No postnarcotic excitement was seen in this species.

When *rats* were given a single injection of 20 mg/kg of morphine there was an initial "sedation" consisting of a more or less abolished spontaneous activity. The condition resembled catalepsy with an increased muscular tone and tendency to remain in peculiar postures. A partial Straub phenomenon was present, the tail was lifted and rigidly extended. This stage was succeeded by one of increased activity. Five to six hours after the injection no further effect could be observed in the rats.

*Cats* given 5 to 30 mg/kg of morphine were always excited with dilated pupils and a greatly increased, rather incoordinated activity. The animals were restlessly moving, jumping, rolling on the floor, etc. In some cases general convulsions occurred, sometimes fatal. Some degree of unrest was generally noted for more than twelve hours and was occasionally present even twenty four hours after the administration of morphine.

##### *Long term effects of morphine*

In *dogs* repeated administration of morphine once daily was followed by a gradually diminished and shortened sedative effect. When the dose was raised there was an increased sedation, but three weeks after the start of injections, the drug did not produce sleep in spite of any increment in dosage. A complete tolerance to the emetic action was obtained within ten

days After this no vomiting was noticed as long as morphine was given Salivation was a common finding during the initial two to four weeks of morphine administration It disappeared in some dogs, only to return in connection with abstinence After one to two months of morphine administration some dogs became irritable and fought frequently This was regarded as a sign of physical dependence since it occurred only at the end of the twenty four hours between injections and disappeared when the interval was shortened or the dose was raised Throughout the experiments morphine had a sedative action in dogs and no excitement was seen from the injections

The rats were given morphine according to two different dosage schedules (p 14) producing different behavioral effects

The regular dosage regimen with morphine injections twice daily resulted in a successively shorter stage of sedation after each injection and an increasingly dominant stage of excitement After a week on a constant dose every injection was followed by excitement, with increased activity hyperpyrexia and exophthalmos When the dose was increased stepwise the signs of sedation reappeared during the first few days of the new dose The same pattern of increasing excitement was then repeated

The intense dosage regimen with morphine injections at four hour interval modified the behavior of the rats The signs of excitation were not as obvious as with the regular dosage regimen The rats appeared normal but occasional outbursts of increased activity were seen The majority of the rats gained weight and appeared healthy but sudden deaths occurred from convulsions

Cats were given morphine for five days No tolerance to the exciting effect was noticed during these days

#### *Withdrawal and nalorphine induced abstinence*

When the chronic morphine administration was withdrawn or the regular morphine injections were substituted by nalorphine a more or less pronounced abstinence excitation was noticed in dogs The maximal symptoms were seen approximately three days after withdrawal and all signs of abstinence had disappeared after eight to ten days Following nalorphine administration to morphine tolerant dogs there was a short lasting state of excitement with a maximal intensity of symptoms one hour after the injection After another hour the symptoms had usually disappeared The pattern of symptoms is described in detail below

In rats the withdrawal or nalorphine reaction was not a purely excitatory one The condition observed after abrupt withdrawal was characterized

by a combination of drowsiness with eyelid ptosis and reduced muscular tone and irritability with hyperalgesia. The animals were difficult to handle, shrieking when lifted by the tail and often trying to bite. During the day time they were lying rather immobile with their eyes closed, but during the night they fought frequently. Piloerection, tremor and diarrhea were present and the animals lost weight. The symptoms were most marked on the second day of withdrawal and disappeared within eight to ten days. Nalorphine induced corresponding signs lasting for two to three hours. Following the intense dosage regimen the abstinence signs became more profuse, but the general pattern of symptoms was the same and no clearcut excitation was noticed.

## 2 Tolerance studies in rats

### *Spontaneous running activity*

**Methods:** The activity cages of DEREK and WANG (1926) were used. These consist of a small living compartment, where the animals can rest, and a revolving drum by which the spontaneous running activity is recorded.

After an acclimation period of two weeks on saline injections, five rats were given chronic morphine treatment according to the standard regimen (20—180 mg/kg twice daily). The cages were artificially illuminated from

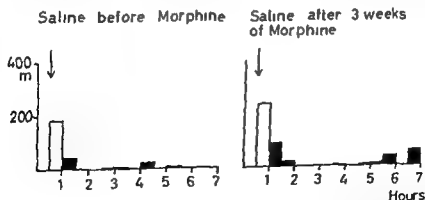


Fig 3 Spontaneous running activity of rats during light hours expressed as distance run in meters (mean of five animals). Arrows indicate saline injections. White columns arousal activity after injections. Black columns activity during the following six hours. Left figure activity before morphine. Right figure activity 24 hours after the last morphine injection.



8 a m to 5 p m Cleaning of the cages was performed daily between 4 and 5 p m The room temperature was between 20° and 22° C

**Results** Fig 3 illustrates the unspecific arousal activity during the first half hour after the saline injections (white columns), followed by a relatively calm period during the light hours This pattern of activity was regularly repeated during the control period before the morphine injections were started (left in Fig 3) and was rapidly resumed after withdrawal of morphine (right in Fig 3)

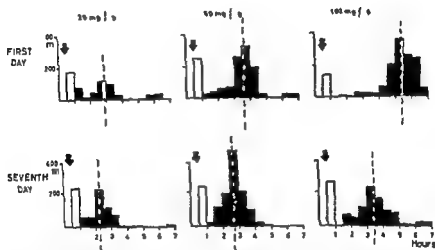


Fig 4 Spontaneous running activity of rats during chronic morphine administration For explanation of symbols consult Fig 3 Doses indicated above Upper figures activity on first day of each morphine dose level Lower figures activity on the last day of corresponding dose levels Broken vertical lines median values of activity (white columns excluded)

During administration of morphine the activity was increased for four to six hours after each injection (Fig 4) For the purpose of calculation the first half hour of unspecific injection activity (white column) was excluded and the following six hours were studied The median values (representing the time when half of the six hours activity had been produced) were reached later on the first day of a certain dose level (Fig 4 upper figures) than on the last day of the same dose (Fig 4 lower figures)

These records show that morphine induced an increase of activity (excitation) in rats and that this activity appeared earlier with increasing tolerance

### *Tolerance to toxic doses*

The approximate LD<sub>50</sub> for the rats was 60 mg/kg, which is unusually low. In order to ascertain to what extent the tolerance to toxic doses could be increased, the following investigation was undertaken.

*Methods:* Ninety two (male) rats weighing 140—170 g at the start of the experiment were used. Ten were left untreated for three weeks (control animals) while eighty two rats were made morphine tolerant by the standard dosage regimen (20—180 mg/kg twice daily). On the twenty first day, with an average weight of 220 g, they received 200 mg/kg in one dose. The controls of an average weight of 240 g, were also given one injection of morphine 200 mg/kg.

*Results:* The mortality in the controls receiving morphine 200 mg/kg was 80 per cent (eight rats). Of the experimental group 12 per cent (ten rats) died. Nine of these died during the three weeks of pretreatment, prior to the challenging dose of 200 mg/kg (six rats succumbed even to the initial injection of 20 mg/kg). — In later long term experiments the mortality rate was about the same (10 to 12 per cent) when the final dose was raised to 300 mg/kg. — These experiments show that the rats had acquired a relative tolerance to otherwise toxic morphine doses.

### *Drug combinations*

When control rats received an i.p. injection of the monoamine oxidase inhibiting substance miamid in a dose of 300 mg/kg they demonstrated drowsiness from which they could be briefly aroused, depression of the righting reflex and eyelid ptosis. This condition lasted for one to two hours and was succeeded by a stage of alertness, increased motor activity and exophthalmos, lasting for more than twenty four hours.

When the same dose of miamid was given to morphine tolerant animals four hours after the last morphine injection, the same symptoms appeared. The initial period of somnolence in these animals was, however considerably longer, generally lasting for three to five hours. After this time the usual alertness appeared.

Following administration of 5 mg/kg i.p. of reserpine there were no noticeable differences between controls and morphine tolerant rats. This drug had a sedative action in both groups of rats.

### 3 Abstinence signs in dogs

#### *Rating scale*

The signs of withdrawal were rated mainly according to PLANT and PIERCE (1928) and grouped into three different grades. The rating scale was well applicable also in nalorphine induced abstinence.

#### **Grade I** Degree of abstinence **SLIGHT**

##### a) *Constant symptoms*

Animals friendly and quiet. Stiff awkward gait. Fine tremors. Retracted belly.

##### b) *Common symptoms*

Sleepiness. Moderate salivation. Diarrhea.

##### c) *Occasional symptoms*

Vomiting.

#### **Grade II** Degree of abstinence **MODERATE**

##### a) *Constant symptoms*

Animals restless but not continuously moving. Tremors. Rigidity with spastic gait. Vomiting. Gnawing at objects.

##### b) *Common symptoms*

Salivation. Pilo-erection. Twitching of muscles. Diarrhea.

##### c) *Occasional symptoms*

Whining (generally not noisy). Hiccough. Panting. Growling but handling possible.

#### **Grade III** Degree of abstinence **MARKED**

##### a) *Constant symptoms*

Restless almost continuously moving. Gnawing and swallowing inedible objects (for instance sawdust). Marked tremors and spastic gait. Pilo-erection. Salivation and vomiting sometimes profuse.

##### b) *Common symptoms*

Hiccough. Diarrhea. At intervals panting jerky respiration.

Howling. Muscular weakness.

##### c) *Occasional symptoms*

Irritable and belligerent. Very noisy.

No dogs in this series showed *very marked* symptoms (grade IV). These were described by PLANT and PIERCE (1928) as *raging wild animals* continuously moving often with general convulsions.

The ratings were made independently by two observers generally on the

day of sacrifice and many days before the estimations of monoamines were completed

**Results** Abrupt withdrawal generally gave less severe symptoms than nalorphine. On withdrawal eight out of ten dogs showed slight (grade I), one moderate (grade II), and one marked symptoms (grade III). In twenty-two dogs subjected to nalorphine-induced abstinence seven were grade I, nine were grade II and six were grade III. No convulsions were observed in these experiments.

There did not appear to be any correlation between the addicting dose and the grade of induced abstinence symptoms, and there were great individual variations between dogs treated similarly. Some breeds of dogs (for example beagles) appeared to develop more intense symptoms than others.

## 4 Discussion

The depressant action of acute morphine administration in dogs and rats, as well as the excitation in cats, are in agreement with earlier observations (KRUFGER, EDDY and SILVERALT 1941, p. 8). A difference between the species was found to exist also with regard to the duration of action, four to six hours in rats but twelve to twenty-four hours in dogs and cats.

Chronic morphine treatment produced the well-known tolerance phenomena in dogs and rats, *viz.* a shortening of the duration and a decrease in intensity of the sedative action. In rats, but not in dogs, the depression was converted into a state of excitation. The exciting effect of chronic morphine administration in rats was reflected in the activity cages. Earlier activity studies in rats (TOMINI, MISERI and BARPINI 1959 and OCURI 1961) seem to have given comparable results. — No tolerance to the exciting effects of morphine was noticed in the cats, in agreement with the findings of earlier workers using doses within the same range (*cf.* KRUFGER *et al.* 1941, p. 69).

Recently MULL and WOODS (1962) reported that the rate of disappearance of free labeled morphine was faster in the brain and blood of morphine-tolerant dogs, as compared with nontolerant animals. ANFROD (1956) demonstrated an enzymatic N-demethylating system in liver microsomes of rats, which interacted with morphine during chronic administration. These findings support the view that there is less morphine available at receptor sites in the morphine-tolerant organism, but opinions differ concerning their significance for tolerance phenomena (TAKEMORI and MANNING 1958, HERRERA, NEUBERT and TRIMLER 1959).

The diminished duration of morphine action in dogs which occurred in a later stage of the addiction cycle necessitated the introduction of two daily injections. In order to produce dependence on a narcotic drug (and consequently abstinence phenomena) the intervals between injections should not be extended beyond a certain limit (cf REYNOLDS and RANDALL 1957 p 111). The proper time interval seemed to vary between species, more frequent doses being necessary for rats than for dogs. This might reasonably be attributed to differences in the rate of destruction of the drug.

Abrupt withdrawal and injection of nalorphine produced an abstinence syndrome in dogs and rats (cats were not studied). In dogs abstinence produced a clearcut excitation while rats exhibited a mixed syndrome (drowsiness and irritability). In both species there were several autonomic manifestations: piloerection, tremor, etc.

It has been pointed out (PLANT and PIERCE 1928, SEFVARS 1936) that a fully developed excitatory syndrome of morphine abstinence with great similarities to that of human addicts can be regularly produced in higher animals like dogs and monkeys.

As far as the abstinence syndrome in rats is concerned, opinions differ. According to some authors (SOLLMAN 1924, MEYERS 1931, KAYMAKÇALAN and WOODS 1956, MAYNERT and KLINCMAN 1962) the abstinence symptoms in this species are either absent or can be described as a 'sedation'. Others have noticed signs of irritability and restlessness (JOEL and ETTINGER 1926, BARLOW 1932, HIMMELSBACH, GERLACH and STANTON 1935, DETRICK and THIENES 1941, GUANNE 1961).

Recently a clearcut excitatory abstinence syndrome was reported also in rats (HANNA 1960, WEEKS 1962) and mice (MAGGIOLLO and HUIDOBORO 1962) when morphine had been administered more or less continuously.

These findings were only partly confirmed in the present study. Following an intense schedule of morphine administration in rats (essentially according to the method of HANNA 1960) the abstinence signs were more pronounced than usual but not purely excitatory.

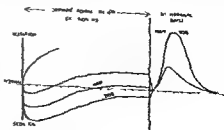


Fig. 5. Schematic representation of the central nervous system excitability in different periods during continuous morphine administration with increasing dose (between the vertical lines: time intervals of weeks, months) and after abrupt withdrawal (to the right: time intervals of days).

Fig 5 ■ ■ schematic illustration of the behavior described in different species, during a hypothetical continuous administration of morphine with gradually increasing doses and after abrupt withdrawal. The corresponding curve for man was drawn essentially according to SEEVERS (1954) but a minor modification was introduced, since it was felt that the response to the drug in the morphine tolerant addict is rather one of slight stimulation than of sedation (unpublished observations). The gradual change of morphine action on the excitability of the central nervous system, thus places man between the dog (which is not excited as long as morphine is given) and the rat (which becomes excited rather soon following the initial sedation) — The excitement produced by morphine administration is complex and in many respects incommensurable with the excitement of withdrawal (ISBELL and FRASER 1950), but Fig 5 may illustrate the approximate species differences also with regard to the withdrawal reaction.

A few morphine tolerance effects were studied separately. It is not generally agreed that rats acquire tolerance to toxic morphine doses (cf SCHAUWMANN 1957, p. 214). In the rats of the present study there was evidently an increasing tolerance to the toxicity of morphine. Since no tolerance to the convulsive effects can be expected, this probably means that the rat strain used has been especially susceptible to the respiratory depressant action of the drug.

The special tolerance effects noted in the experiment with a monoamine oxidase inhibitor, will be discussed later (p. 75).

## CHAPTER IV

### NORADRENALINE DOPAMINE AND 5 HYDROXY TRYPTAMINE IN THE BRAIN IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL

The effects of *acute* morphine administration on the content of noradrenaline in the brain were studied in cats and rats. Dogs and rats were used for studies of *long term* effects of morphine and *abrupt withdrawal* as well as *nalorphine induced abstinence*.

#### I Special methods

Some long term effects of morphine on the noradrenaline content of the rat brain were elucidated by administration of drugs interfering with the storage or metabolism of the catecholamines. The drugs were given after completion of a three weeks series of injections with saline or morphine (standard regimen p. 14) in 112 male rats weighing 250—300 g.

All rats were sacrificed twenty four hours after the last saline or morphine injection. The rats were divided into four groups, each consisting of 12 to 14 controls and 12 to 18 morphine tolerant rats.

1) The first group (controls and morphine tolerant) was given no additional treatment.

2) The second group (controls and morphine tolerant) was given 300 mg/kg i.p. of the monoamine oxidase inhibitor nialamid (Niamid Pfizer) four hours after the last regular morphine or saline injection (twenty hours before sacrifice).

3) The third group (controls and morphine tolerant) was given 150 mg/kg i.p. of  $\alpha$ -methyl DOPA (Aldomet Merck Sharp & Dohme) four hours after the last regular morphine or saline injection (twenty hours before sacrifice).

4) The fourth group (controls and morphine tolerant) received 5 mg/kg i.p. of reserpine (Serpasil Ciba) four hours after the last regular morphine or saline injection (twenty hours before sacrifice).

Fig 5 is a schematic illustration of the behavior described in different species, during a hypothetical continuous administration of morphine with gradually increasing doses and after abrupt withdrawal. The corresponding curve for man was drawn essentially according to SEEVENS (1954) but a minor modification was introduced, since it was felt that the response to the drug in the morphine tolerant addict is rather one of slight stimulation, than of sedation (unpublished observations). The gradual change of morphine action on the excitability of the central nervous system, thus places man between the dog (which is not excited as long as morphine is given) and the rat (which becomes excited rather soon following the initial sedation) — The excitement produced by morphine administration is complex and in many respects incommensurable with the excitement of withdrawal (ISBELI and FRASER 1950), but Fig 5 may illustrate the approximate species differences also with regard to the withdrawal reaction.

A few morphine tolerance effects were studied separately. It is not generally agreed that rats acquire tolerance to toxic morphine doses (cf SCHRAMMANN 1957, p 214). In the rats of the present study there was evidently an increasing tolerance to the toxicity of morphine. Since no tolerance to the convulsive effects can be expected, this probably means that the rat strain used has been especially susceptible to the respiratory depressant action of the drug.

The special tolerance effects noted in the experiment with a monoamine oxidase inhibitor, will be discussed later (p 75).



Table IX Noradrenaline (NA) content in the whole brains of rats (means  $\pm$  S E M) Chronic morphine treatment was given for 3 weeks up to a final dose of 300 mg/kg given 6 times daily at 4 hours intervals (1800 mg/kg/day) The rats were killed 4 hours after the last injection of saline or nalorphine with the exception of the withdrawal group Two brains pooled for each determination (cf Table IV for adrenals of same rats)

Number of rats	Treatment	NA $\mu$ g/g
10	Saline	0.53 $\pm$ 0.012
10	Nalorphine 10 mg/kg	0.56 $\pm$ 0.009
12	Chronic morphine + saline 1 inj	0.61 $\pm$ 0.015
12	Chronic morphine + nalorphine 10mg/kg	0.60 $\pm$ 0.017
6	Chronic morphine + withdrawal 48 h	0.61 $\pm$ 0.016

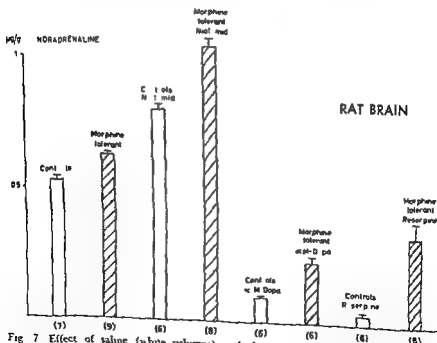


Fig 7 Effect of saline (white volumes) and chronic morphine treatment (shaded columns) on noradrenaline content of rat brains (means  $\pm$  S E M) Controls and morphine tolerant rats were given nialamid 0.00 mg/kg and methyl DOPA 150 mg/kg or reserpine 5 mg/kg twenty hours before sacrifice Number of observations within brackets (one observation = two pooled rat brains)

*Table VIII Noradrenaline (NA) and dopamine (DA) content in dog brain (means  $\pm$  S E M) Nalorphine was given 5 + 5 mg/kg at 2 hours intervals and animals were sacrificed 2 hours after the second injection Chronic morphine (Mo) treatment was given for 70—90 days final dose 90—120 mg/kg Animals sacrificed 20 hours after last injection except in withdrawal group*

Number of dogs	Treatment	Total brain NA $\mu$ g/g	Brain stem NA $\mu$ g/g	Cerebellum NA $\mu$ g/g	Telencephalon	
					NA $\mu$ g/g	DA $\mu$ g/g
10	None	$0.16 \pm 0.009$	$0.37 \pm 0.015$	$0.11 \pm 0.010$	$0.13 \pm 0.009$	$0.20 \pm 0.013$
6	Nalorphine	$0.17 \pm 0.014$	$0.34 \pm 0.023$	$0.11 \pm 0.017$	$0.14 \pm 0.011$	$0.24 \pm 0.020$
11	Chronic Mo	$0.17 \pm 0.008$	$0.35 \pm 0.010$	$0.12 \pm 0.012$	$0.15 \pm 0.009$	$0.19 \pm 0.012$
2	Chronic Mo + withdrawal 72 h	0.08	0.23	0.03	0.06	0.12
16	Chronic Mo + nalorphine	$0.10 \pm 0.009^{***}$	$0.21 \pm 0.020^{***}$	$0.06 \pm 0.004^{***}$	$0.08 \pm 0.008^{***}$	$0.13 \pm 0.014$

Different from chronic Mo  $P < 0.01$

\* Different from chronic Mo  $P < 0.001$

Table IV Noradrenaline (N-A) content in the whole brains of rats (means  $\pm$  S E M) Chronic morphine treatment was given for 3 weeks up to a final dose of 300 mg/kg given 6 times daily at 4 hours intervals (1800 mg/kg/day) The rats were killed 4 hours after the last injection of saline or nalorphine with the exception of the withdrawal group Two brains pooled for each determination (cf Table VI for adrenals of same rats)

Number of rats	Treatment	N-A $\mu$ g/g
10	Saline	0.53 $\pm$ 0.012
10	Nalorphine 10 mg/kg	0.56 $\pm$ 0.009
12	Chronic morphine + saline 1 inj	0.61 $\pm$ 0.015
12	Chronic morphine + nalorphine 10mg/kg	0.60 $\pm$ 0.017
5	Chronic morphine + withdrawal 48 h	0.61 $\pm$ 0.016

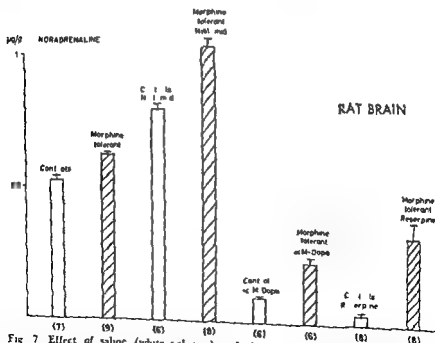


Fig 7 Effect of saline (white columns) and chronic morphine treatment (shaded columns) on noradrenaline content of rat brains (means  $\pm$  SEM) Controls and morphine tolerant rats were given nalorphine 300 mg/kg  $\alpha$ -methyl DOPA 150 mg/kg or reserpine 5 mg/kg twenty hours before sacrifice Number of observations with n brackets (one observation = two pooled rat brains)

### *Long term administration of morphine*

No changes in the content of noradrenaline were found in the investigated parts of the dog brain as a result of long term morphine administration as long as the animals were morphine satiated (Table VIII) There were similarly no changes in the content of dopamine in the telencephalon or of 5 hydroxytryptamine in the brain stem (Fig 8)

In rats the brain content of noradrenaline was increased both when the regular dosage regimen was applied (Fig 7, left) and following the intense dosage regimen (Table IX)

*Table X 5 Hydroxytryptamine (5 HT) content in brain stem of dogs (means  $\pm$  S E M) Nalorphine was given 5+5 mg/kg at 2 hours intervals and animals were sacrificed 2 hours after the second injection Chronic morphine (Mo) treatment was given for 70—90 days, final dose 90—120 mg/kg Animals sacrificed 20 hours after last injection except in withdrawal group*

Nr of dogs	Treatment	5 HT $\mu$ g/g
10	None	0.57 $\pm$ 0.034
4	Nalorphine	0.56 $\pm$ 0.076
6	Chronic morphine	0.52 $\pm$ 0.031
2	Chronic morphine + withdrawal 72 h	0.55
8	Chronic morphine + nalorphine	0.54 $\pm$ 0.020

*Table XI 5 Hydroxytryptamine (5 HT) content in whole brains of rats (means  $\pm$  S E M) Morphine or saline given twice daily The animals were sacrificed 4 hours after the last injection, except in the withdrawal group*

Nr of rats	Treatment	Final dose mg/kg	5 HT $\mu$ g/g
9	Saline 21 days	—	0.43 $\pm$ 0.033
5	Morphine 10 days	60	0.44 $\pm$ 0.091
7	Morphine 21 days	180	0.46 $\pm$ 0.087
10	Morphine 21 days + Withdrawal 48 h	180	0.42 $\pm$ 0.063

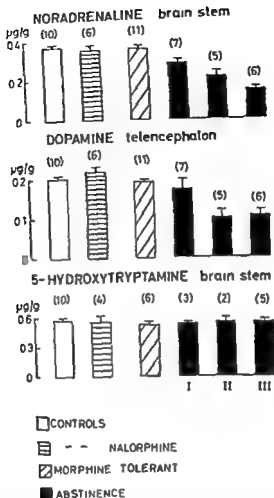


Fig 8 Effect of morphine tolerance and abstinence produced by nalorphine or abrupt withdrawal on the monoamine content in the dog brain (means  $\pm$  S.E.M.) The abstinence group (black columns) was subdivided according to severity of abstinence signs I slight II moderate and III marked Number of animals within brackets

Fig 7 illustrates the effect of drug combinations in morphine tolerant rats and controls. The monoamine oxidase inhibitor nialamid produced an elevation of the noradrenaline level in controls but in morphine tolerant rats there was a significantly larger increase of noradrenaline ( $P < 0.001$ ). Alpha methyl DOPA effected a decrease of the noradrenaline level in controls but in morphine tolerant rats the decrease was smaller ( $P < 0.001$ ).

The same finding was made when the noradrenaline stores were depleted by reserpine. The depletion was significantly smaller in morphine tolerant rats than in controls ( $P < 0.001$ ).

As in dogs, the brain content of 5 hydroxytryptamine in rats was unaltered from chronic morphine administration (Table VI).

#### *Abrupt withdrawal*

In two dogs the withdrawal from chronic morphine administration for 72 hours resulted in abstinence syndromes of grades II and III. The noradrenaline and dopamine values of these dogs were low (Table VIII), while 5 hydroxytryptamine was unaltered (Table X).

In rats the withdrawal for 48 hours did not affect the brain level of noradrenaline (Table IX) or of 5 hydroxytryptamine (Table VI). The abstinence syndrome in the rats was not purely excitatory, but was characterized by a mixture of drowsiness and irritability.

#### *Nalorphine induced abstinence*

In dogs given chronic morphine administration the injection of nalorphine gave rise to abstinence phenomena of various intensity, while in controls there were no obvious effects of nalorphine. The brain noradrenaline of nalorphine injected controls did not differ significantly from untreated controls or morphine tolerant dogs. The abstinence group was subdivided according to the severity of the abstinence phenomena (Grade I—III). In each of these groups there was a significant reduction of the brain stem content of noradrenaline compared with the morphine tolerant group with no signs of abstinence (Fig. 8). The reduction of noradrenaline was 21, 41 and 59 per cent in abstinence of grade I, II and III respectively. The severity of abstinence seemed to be related to the magnitude of the depletion in all parts of the brain. In the telencephalon and cerebellum, however, the relative noradrenaline decrease was even more marked at lower degrees of abstinence (grades I and II) than in the brain stem (Fig. 9).

The dopamine content of the telencephalon was unchanged in controls given nalorphine, but was reduced in connection with abstinence of grade II and III. However, when the abstinence was slight (grade I), there was no significant reduction of the dopamine content (Fig. 8).

The 5 hydroxytryptamine of the brain stem remained unchanged at any degree of abstinence (Fig. 8).

In rats there were no changes in the whole brain content of noradrenaline following nalorphine induced abstinence (Table IX).

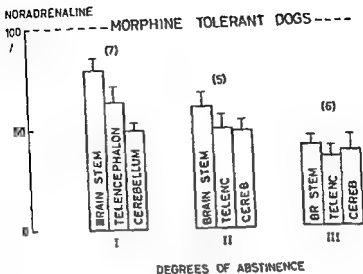


Fig 9 Noradrenaline in the brain stem telencephalon and cerebellum of dogs in various degrees of abstinence I slight II moderate and III marked abstinence signs. Values expressed as per cent (means  $\pm$  S.E.M.) of the corresponding levels in morphine tolerant dogs without abstinence. Number of animals within brackets.

### 3 Discussion

The control levels of catecholamines and 5 hydroxytryptamine in the brains of dogs rats and cats were in agreement with those reported from other laboratories (for instance BERTLER and ROSENGREN 1959 UDELFRIED 1962 p 158). The observation of increasing catecholamine concentrations in the developing rat brain (preliminary report in GUNNE 1962 a) is in agreement with the report of KARL HUNTZMAN and BRODIE (1962).

Seasonal variations in the catecholamines of rat brains were reported by MONTAGU (1956 b) and BEAUVILLET FUGAZZA and SOLIER (1961). These observations were not confirmed in the present study.

The acute administration of morphine has been reported to produce various effects on the brain content of noradrenaline. VOGT (1954) and QUINN *et al* (1958) obtained a decrease in the cat brain in agreement with the present results. GUNNE (1959) reported a decrease in rat brains following 30 mg/kg and an increase from higher doses (60–90 mg/kg). FREEDMAN FRAM and GIARMAN (1961) administered 20 to 60 mg/kg of morphine in rats and found a decrease of noradrenaline after four hours.

followed by an increase after 24 to 48 hours MAYNERT and KLINGMAN (1962) noticed only a decrease of noradrenaline in dog brains from 200 mg/kg and in rat brains from 60—200 mg/kg, while SLOAN *et al* (1962 b) found an increase in the rat brain after a morphine dose of 60 mg/kg. In monkeys, SEGAL and DENEAU (1962) reported a decrease of brain noradrenaline following 3 mg/kg of morphine, but an increase after 30 mg/kg.

From these rather confusing results it may be concluded that morphine exerts a dual action on the brain content of noradrenaline, some doses producing a rise while others have a tissue depleting effect. Experiments on long term administration of morphine have supplied evidence that morphine acts by accelerating the synthesis of brain noradrenaline. Such an action from single injections also, might account for the elevated brain levels obtained in some experiments. The depletion of noradrenaline in other experiments indicates a lag of resynthesis behind the utilization, when excessive demands are made by the stimulated tissue. This is generally associated with more or less obvious signs of excitation and is consequently more readily produced in cats than in rats.

A lack of effect of "analgesics" (PLITSCHER, SHOPE and BRODIE 1956 a) and of acute morphine administration on the brain content of 5 hydroxytryptamine has been reported in rabbits (BRODIE, SHOPE and PLITSCHER 1956), rats and dogs (MAYNERT, KLINGMAN and KAJI 1962). The absence of an effect on 5 hydroxytryptamine together with a depletion of brain catecholamines represents a monoamine response similar to that seen in morphine abstinence in the dog.

After administration of morphine daily for five days the noradrenaline level of the cat's brain stem returned to normal. This indicates a rapid tolerance to the noradrenaline depleting action of morphine.

Following *chronic* morphine administration in dogs the brain content of noradrenaline was normal, in agreement with earlier observations (MAYNERT and KLINGMAN 1962, GUYRE 1962 b). The dog brain content of dopamine and 5 hydroxytryptamine was also unaltered following chronic administration of morphine.

In rats the brain noradrenaline was elevated after 3 weeks of morphine. Approximately the same rise was seen whether morphine was given twice or six times daily.

The species difference observed between dogs and rats with respect to the brain content of noradrenaline in chronic morphine treatment may have some relation to the differences noticed in behavior. Rats were excited from chronic morphine administration while dogs were sedated. Earlier FREEDMAN *et al* (1961) and MAYNERT and KLINGMAN (1962) reported



a corresponding elevation of brain noradrenaline in rats on tolerance dosage schedules

Both in dogs and rats, the chronic morphine treatment had produced tolerance to the noradrenaline depletion of the acute experiment. The origin of the supranormal brain levels in morphine tolerant rats was studied further. The mode of action of this tolerance phenomenon could be an interference with 1) the rate of synthesis, 2) the amine binding capacity of the tissue or 3) the rate of metabolic break-down of the brain noradrenaline. Although alternative pathways should be considered the oxidative deamination by monoamine oxidase is probably the most important route for the metabolic break-down of catecholamines in the brain (p 11). The monoamine oxidase system seemed to be intact in brains of morphine tolerant rats since the 5 hydroxytryptamine levels were normal.

When the monoamine oxidase was blocked by a long acting inhibitor (nialamid) the brain noradrenaline increased more in morphine tolerant than in control rats. MAYNERT and KLINGBEIN (1962) obtained the same result with a different monoamine oxidase inhibitor (JB 516). These findings indicate that the difference in brain noradrenaline between controls and morphine tolerant rats is not found in the rate of metabolic break down.

The possibility that chronic morphine administration had acted on the noradrenaline binding capacity of the brain tissue was tested by administration of two noradrenaline releasing agents  $\alpha$  methyl DOPA and reserpine. These compounds are known to reduce the noradrenaline binding capacity of brain tissue probably by different mechanisms (p 10). Following administration of either of these drugs there were still noticed higher noradrenaline levels in morphine tolerant rats than in controls. This indicates that the elevated noradrenaline content in the brains of morphine tolerant rats is probably not explained solely on the basis of an increased storage capacity but rather by an increased rate of synthesis. On the other hand an alteration of the catecholamine binding properties in brain tissue is not ruled out (cf p 75).

In experiments where combinations of drugs have been used the possibility of a direct interaction and/or competition at receptor sites should also be taken into consideration. That some interaction actually occurs is suggested by the finding of FREEDMAN *et al* (1961) that morphine could partially reverse the noradrenaline releasing action of reserpine in the brains of rats whether morphine was given 24 hours before or after reserpine.

In connection with *nalorphine induced abstinence* there was a reduction

of noradrenaline in the brain stem of dogs. This is in accordance with earlier reports (MAYNERT and KLINGMAN 1962, GUNNE 1962 b).

The present study showed that the severity of the abstinence symptoms was proportional to the depression of noradrenaline. This was true for all parts of the brain, but certain differences seem to exist. The brain stem appeared to be more resistant to the noradrenaline reducing action compared with the cerebellum and telencephalon. Only in cases of marked abstinence were all 3 parts (brain stem, telencephalon and cerebellum) equally depleted. The differences found may reflect different modes of storage. It is known (CARLSSON, FALCK and HILLARP 1962) that the noradrenaline of the brain stem is stored in granules within the nervous tissue. The noradrenaline of cerebellum and telencephalon might be chiefly located at vasomotor nerve endings (*cf.* EULFR 1946, VOCT 1954), and these stores could thus be regarded as located peripherally.

The fact that dopamine is also partially depleted in morphine abstinence in the dog can probably not be explained merely on the basis of an increased utilization of the precursor of noradrenaline. The magnitude of the reduction in the forebrain stores of dopamine indicates that this amine is also directly involved in the release. SEGAL and DENEAU (1962) obtained changes in the brain dopamine levels of monkeys at variance with those seen in dogs in the present report. A decrease was noted in morphine dependence, but an increase followed abrupt and nalorphine induced withdrawal (numerical data were not presented). No explanation for this difference in results can be given at present.

Following *abrupt withdrawal* from chronic morphine administration in dogs, the same general pattern of brain monoamines was noticed as in nalorphine induced abstinence: a reduction of noradrenaline and dopamine, with unaltered 5 hydroxytryptamine levels.

In rat brains there was no reduction of noradrenaline in withdrawal or nalorphine induced abstinence, in accordance with MAYNERT and KLINGMAN (1962). In an earlier study (GUNNE 1959) a slight decrease of noradrenaline was noted also in rats following withdrawal. SLOAN *et al.* (1962 a) obtained a reduction of catecholamines in the heart of rats 48 hours after withdrawal from chronic morphine treatment but found no effect in the brain.

Generally, the effects of morphine abstinence on brain noradrenaline in rats have been small or absent, in contrast with the findings in dogs. The reason for this species difference is not clear but again it is tempting to correlate the difference with the clinical effects of withdrawal in the two species. Dogs were excited, while rats showed a mixed state of drowsiness.

and irritability. If a noradrenaline release actually takes place in the rat brain however, it might be concealed by the rapid resynthesis in morphine tolerance.

GUNNE (1961) and SLOAN *et al* (1962a) reported that morphine withdrawal in rats did not release 5 hydroxytryptamine in the brain. MALVERT *et al* (1962) found no effect on brain 5 hydroxytryptamine following nalorphine administration in morphine tolerant dogs and rats. The present investigation confirmed these observations and further showed that 5 hydroxytryptamine was unchanged irrespective of the degree of abstinence intensity.

## CHAPTER V

### ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE IN THE ADRENAL GLANDS IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL

The effects of *acute* morphine administration on the content of adrenaline and noradrenaline in the adrenal gland were studied in cats and rats. Dogs and rats were used in studies of the effects of *long term* morphine administration and *abrupt withdrawal* as well as *nalorphine induced abstinence*.

#### 1 Special methods

Unilateral sectioning of the splanchnic nerve was performed in a few morphine tolerant dogs. The animals were anaesthetized with pentobarbital (Nembutal, Abbott) 40 mg/kg i.p. and were intubated. Via a midline abdominal incision the left splanchnic nerve was exposed immediately below the diaphragm and was cut. Aseptic conditions were not observed, but 500 000 units of penicillin (Astracillin, Astra Ltd) was given daily for 4 days after the denervation. The animals were sacrificed within 20 days after the denervation, and were then checked for signs of regeneration of the splanchnic nerve. No gross changes in behavior were noted in the operated animals and no infections occurred.

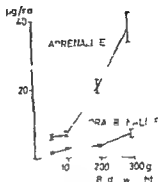
#### 2 Results

##### *Control levels*

The adrenaline and noradrenaline content of the adrenal glands expressed as  $\mu\text{g/pair}$  of adrenals, increased during lifetime in the rats (Fig. 10).

The same tendency was noticed also in adrenal glands of dogs of different age. The material was too small, however, for a statistical treatment and the difference between age groups was diminished when the catecholamine level was expressed per gram of wet tissue weight (p. 28). In spite of this there was a wide range of the adrenaline content in the adrenals of untreated control dogs (and nalorphine injected controls) 0.69–2.88 mg/g of wet tissue weight.

Fig 10 Adrenaline and noradrenaline content of rat adrenals calculated per pair of adrenals Means  $\pm$  S.E.M. of groups of twelve rats of different body weights Two pairs pooled for each determination



#### Acute and 5 days administration of morphine

Administration of a single morphine dose (30 mg/kg) gave a 70 per cent reduction of adrenaline and an 80 per cent reduction of noradrenaline in the adrenal glands of *cats* sacrificed four hours after the injection. Three animals died from convulsions within 2 to 3 hours after the injection. In two of these cats there was no reduction of the content of adrenaline or

Table VII : Adrenaline (A) and noradrenaline (NA) mg/g tissue weight in adrenal glands of *cats* following a single (acute) and 5 days administration of morphine (once daily) 30 mg/kg. Individual values represent means of 2 determinations (For brains cf Table I I)

Controls		Morphine acute		Morphine acute		Morphine for 5 days	
A	NA	A	NA	A	NA	A	NA
0.90	0.90	1.64	2.10	0.46	0.12	0.25	0.48
1.04	0.54	1.34	1.12	0.34	0.15	0.16	0.26
1.03	0.70	0.28	0.04	0.36	0.09	0.21	0.23
1.54	0.84			0.13	0.17	0.17	0.60
Means	1.13 0.75	(1.09)	(1.09)	0.32 *	0.13 <sup>+</sup>	0.20 <sup>++</sup>	0.39*

Died from convulsions 2-3 hours after injection.

<sup>2</sup> Sacrificed 4 hours after (last) injection.

\* Different from controls  $P < 0.05$

<sup>+</sup>  $P < 0.01$

<sup>++</sup>  $P < 0.001$

## ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE IN THE ADRENAL GLANDS IN MORPHINE TOLERANCE AND WITHDRAWAL

The effects of *acute* morphine administration on the content of adrenaline and noradrenaline in the adrenal gland were studied in cats and rats. Dogs and rats were used in studies of the effects of *long term* morphine administration and *abrupt withdrawal* as well as *nalorphine induced abstinence*.

### 1 Special methods

Unilateral sectioning of the splanchnic nerve was performed in a few morphine tolerant dogs. The animals were anaesthetized with pentobarbital (Nembutal, Abbott) 40 mg/kg i.p. and were intubated. Via a midline abdominal incision the left splanchnic nerve was exposed immediately below the diaphragm and was cut. Aseptic conditions were not observed, but 500 000 units of penicillin (Astracillin, Astra Ltd) was given daily for 4 days after the denervation. The animals were sacrificed within 20 days after the denervation, and were then checked for signs of regeneration of the splanchnic nerve. No gross changes in behavior were noted in the operated animals, and no infections occurred.

### 2 Results

#### *Control levels*

The adrenaline and noradrenaline content of the adrenal glands expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/\text{pair}$  of adrenals, increased during lifetime in the rats (Fig. 10).

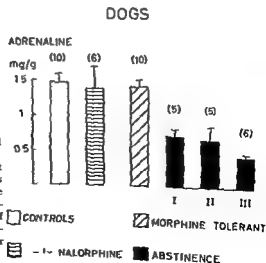
The same tendency was noticed also in adrenal glands of dogs of different age. The material was too small, however, for a statistical treatment and the difference between age groups was diminished when the catecholamine level was expressed per gram of wet tissue weight (p. 28). In spite of this there was a wide range of the adrenaline content in the adrenals of untreated control dogs (and nalorphine injected controls) 0.69–2.88 mg/g of wet tissue weight.

**Table VII** Adrenaline and noradrenaline content and weight of adrenal glands of dogs (means  $\pm$  S.E.M.) Nalorphine was given 5+5 mg/kg at 2 hours intervals and animals were sacrificed 2 hours after the second injection Chronic morphine (Mo) treatment was given for 70–90 days final dose 90–120 mg/kg Animals sacrificed 20 hours after last morphine injection except in the withdrawal group

Number of dogs	Treatment	Weight g	Adrenal ne mg/g	Noradrenaline mg/g
10	None	112 $\pm$ 0.11	137 $\pm$ 0.11	0.23 $\pm$ 0.03
5	Nalorphine	124 $\pm$ 0.11	139 $\pm$ 0.31	0.25 $\pm$ 0.03
10	Chronic Mo	115 $\pm$ 0.13	141 $\pm$ 0.10	0.25 $\pm$ 0.03
2	Chronic Mo+ withdrawal 72 h	130	0.22	0.09
14	Chronic Mo+ nalorphine	136 $\pm$ 0.11	0.60 $\pm$ 0.08***	0.15 $\pm$ 0.02

\* Different from chronic Mo  $P < 0.001$

(p 14) was a combination of drowsiness and irritability The noradrenaline content of the adrenals was mainly unaffected in both species



**Fig 11** Effect of morphine tolerance and abstinence produced by nalorphine or by abrupt withdrawal on the adrenaline content in the adrenal glands of dogs (means  $\pm$  S.E.M.) The abstinence group (black columns) was subdivided according to severity of abstinence signs I slight II moderate and III marked Number of animals within brackets

*Table VIII Adrenaline and noradrenaline content in the adrenal glands of rats (means  $\pm$  S.E.M.) The rats were given one or two injections of morphine and were sacrificed 4 hours after the first injection (Second injection was given 2 hours after the first) The adrenals of two rats were pooled for each determination (For brains cf Table I II)*

Number of rats	Treatment	Dose	Adrenaline $\mu\text{g/rat}$	Noradrenaline $\mu\text{g/rat}$
12	Controls, saline	0.2 ml	$26.1 \pm 2.0$	$3.5 \pm 0.3$
10	Morphine	20 mg/kg	$11.0 \pm 2.7^*$	$2.6 \pm 0.8$
10	"	30 mg/kg	$12.4 \pm 1.8^{**}$	$2.8 \pm 0.6$
10	"	30+30 mg/kg	$3.9 \pm 1.5^{***}$	$1.4 \pm 0.7^*$

\* Different from controls  $P < 0.05$

\*\*  $P < 0.01$

\*\*\*  $P < 0.001$

noradrenaline (Tab XII) When the same morphine dose had been given daily for five days the mean adrenaline level was lower than in the acute experiment while the noradrenaline level showed a beginning return (different from acute experiment  $P < 0.05$ )

When morphine was given to rats in acute experiments there was a reduction of adrenaline with doses of 20 to 60 mg/kg, and a dose-response relationship was established (The last mentioned dose was divided in 30+30 mg/kg) The noradrenaline content was reduced only following the highest dose (Table XIII)

### *Long term administration of morphine*

No changes were found in the adrenaline and noradrenaline content of the adrenal glands in dogs (Fig 11) or rats (Table XV) rendered morphine tolerant by long term administration

### *Abrupt withdrawal*

In dogs an abrupt withdrawal, resulting in abstinence symptoms of grade II and grade III, was accompanied by a reduced adrenaline content (two animals), Table XIV

In rats withdrawal also caused a marked decrease in adrenaline content Forty eight hours after abrupt withdrawal the mean adrenaline content was 48 per cent of that found in adrenals of morphine tolerant rats (Table XV) The abstinence symptoms of these rats treated by the intense regimen



Table VII Adrenaline and noradrenaline content and weight of adrenal glands of dogs (means  $\pm$  S E M) Nalorphine was given 5+5 mg/kg at 2 hours intervals and animals were sacrificed 2 hours after the second injection Chronic morphine (Mo) treatment was given for 70-90 days final dose 90-120 mg/kg Animals sacrificed 20 hours after last morphine injection except in the withdrawal group

Number of dogs	Treatment	Weight g	Adrenaline mg/g	Noradrenaline mg/g
10	None	1.12 $\pm$ 0.11	1.37 $\pm$ 0.11	0.23 $\pm$ 0.03
11	Nalorphine	1.24 $\pm$ 0.11	1.39 $\pm$ 0.31	0.25 $\pm$ 0.03
10	Chronic Mo	1.15 $\pm$ 0.13	1.41 $\pm$ 0.10	0.25 $\pm$ 0.03
2	Chronic Mo+ withdrawal 72 h	1.30	0.22	0.09
14	Chronic Mo+ nalorphine	1.36 $\pm$ 0.11	0.60 $\pm$ 0.08***	0.15 $\pm$ 0.02

\* Different from chronic Mo  $P < 0.001$

(p 14) was a combination of drowsiness and irritability The noradrenaline content of the adrenals was mainly unaffected in both species

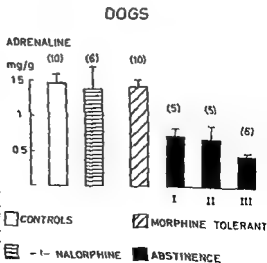


Fig 11 Effect of morphine tolerance and abstinence produced by nalorphine or by abrupt withdrawal on the adrenaline content in the adrenal glands of dogs (means  $\pm$  S E M) The abstinence group (black columns) was subdivided according to severity of abstinence signs I slight II moderate and III marked Number of animals within brackets

### Nalorphine induced abstinence

In morphine tolerant dogs the injection of nalorphine induced abstinence syndromes of various degrees and a marked decrease of adrenaline in the adrenal glands. The noradrenaline content was not significantly decreased. In non tolerant dogs there were no behavioral effects of nalorphine and the adrenaline and noradrenaline content was normal (Table XIV). The

Table XV Adrenaline (A) and noradrenaline (NA) content in the adrenal glands of rats (means  $\pm$  S.E.M.) Chronic morphine treatment was given for 3 weeks, up to a final dose of 300 mg/kg, given 6 times daily, at 4 hours intervals (1800 mg/kg day). The rats were killed 4 hours after the last injection of saline or nalorphine with exception of the withdrawal group. Adrenals of 2 rats pooled for each determination (cf. Table IX for brains of same rats)

Number of rats	Treatment	A $\mu$ g/rat	NA $\mu$ g/rat
10	Saline	24.5 $\pm$ 1.33	4.4 $\pm$ 0.68
10	Nalorphine 10 mg/kg	22.0 $\pm$ 1.58	5.7 $\pm$ 0.45
12	Chronic morphine + saline 1 inj	26.8 $\pm$ 1.73	4.2 $\pm$ 0.77
12	Chronic morphine + nalorphine 10 mg/kg	23.1 $\pm$ 1.86	3.7 $\pm$ 0.52
6	Chronic morphine + withdrawal 48 h	13.9 $\pm$ 1.93**	2.2 $\pm$ 0.52

\*\* Different from chronic morphine  $P < 0.01$

abstinence group was subdivided according to the degree of abstinence and Fig. 11 shows that the largest reduction of adrenaline content occurred in animals which exhibited the most pronounced abstinence symptoms. The reduction of adrenaline was 49, 52 and 68 per cent in abstinence of grades I, II and III respectively.

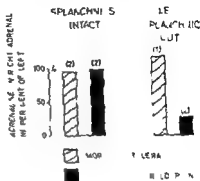
In rats the adrenaline and noradrenaline content was not correspondingly reduced by nalorphine (Table XV). No clearcut excitatory abstinence was seen following nalorphine in morphine tolerant rats.

### Unilateral splanchnic section

Results of experiment, on three morphine tolerant dogs in which the left splanchnic nerve had been cut are shown in Fig. 12. One of these dogs

was given saline and two received nalorphine 5+5 mg/kg with resulting abstinence signs (right in Fig 12) For comparison four non-operated dogs were included, two morphine tolerant and two morphine tolerant + nalorphine (left in Fig 12) The figure demonstrates that the adrenaline con

Fig 12 Adrenaline content of the right adrenal expressed in per cent of adrenaline content of left adrenal gland of dogs Note that after denervation of the left adrenal there is a marked reduction of the adrenaline content only in the innervated (right) adrenal after nalorphine induced abstinence Numbers of dogs within brackets



ent was almost equal on the right and left side in all groups, the only exception being the abstinence group in which the nerve had been cut

In these dogs the adrenaline level was definitely subnormal on the right innervated side (0.16 and 0.18 mg/g) in agreement with the findings reported above for morphine tolerant dogs given nalorphine. In the denervated gland probably no reduction of adrenaline had occurred. The values were essentially normal, although in the lower part of the normal range (0.66 and 0.84 mg/g)

### 3 Discussion

The control values for adrenaline and noradrenaline in adrenal glands of untreated dogs, rats and cats are in fair agreement with earlier reports (cf. EL LFF 1956 p 113—114). HOKFELT (1951) has given an account of the catecholamine content of rats from foetal to adult stage. The present report confirms the finding of a rapid increase especially of adrenaline in the developing rat adrenal. This finding emphasized the importance of using control rats preferably of approximately the same age in every long term morphine experiment.

The acute administration of morphine to cats and rats reduced the adrenal gland content of adrenaline and noradrenaline. This effect appeared after a latent period since two cats which died from convulsions 2 to 3 hours after the morphine administration had normal values for both

amines After four hours, however, all values were depressed VOGT (1954) reported a corresponding lag in the depletion of brain and adrenal catecholamines after administration of various drugs, including morphine, in cats The exact meaning of this lag time is obscure It would appear from this study that the depletion is a rapid process which takes place 3 to 4 hours after the morphine injection

After daily administration of morphine to cats for five days a beginning replenishment of adrenal noradrenaline was observed This is in accordance with the data of BUTTERWORTH and MANN (1957 a, b), and BERTLER, HILLARP and ROSENGREN (1960), who found that stimulation of the adrenal medulla resulted in an increased synthesis of noradrenaline Any stimulation producing an increased output of adrenaline would be likely to cause a rise of the resynthesis of noradrenaline in the adrenal glands This may explain the findings in dogs and rats that when adrenaline was reduced, the noradrenaline level generally remained normal In acute experiments on rats only the intense stimulation of two consecutive morphine injections also produced a decline of noradrenaline

MAYNERT and KLINGMAN (1962), in acute morphine experiments obtained a decrease in the adrenal gland content of adrenaline in dogs and rats only after higher morphine doses (200 mg/kg in dogs, 60—200 mg/kg in rats) The present study demonstrates that there are probably strain differences between rats with respect to the acute effects of morphine, since the rats of this study responded already, in the same way, to doses of 20 and 30 mg/kg of morphine

In morphine tolerant dogs and rats the catecholamine content was normal This finding shows that tolerance had developed to the adrenaline reducing effect of the acute experiments

When abstinence was induced by abrupt withdrawal, there was a marked reduction of the adrenaline content of the adrenals both in dogs and rats Nalorphine induced abstinence reduced the adrenaline content only in dogs in agreement with MAYNERT and KLINGMAN (1962) and GUANE (1962 b) If the abstinence symptoms of the dogs were graded according to severity (grades I—III), it was seen that the catecholamine reduction was largest in the group with the most pronounced symptoms (grade III) Nalorphine was without effect in the adrenals of morphine tolerant rats This need not, however, be interpreted as a principal difference between dogs and rats with regard to the catecholamine response during abstinence It was noted that a depletion of adrenaline actually occurred also in rats, when the chronic morphine treatment was abruptly withdrawn, indicating that an adrenaline release was involved in both species

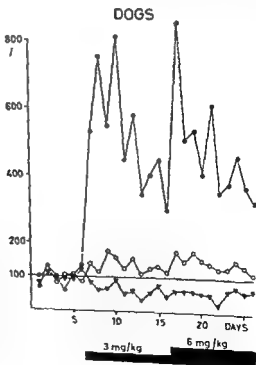
The mechanism of action of the adrenaline depletion in nalorphine induced abstinence in the dog was elucidated by the experiment, in which one adrenal gland had been denervated. Normally the right and left adrenals contain equal amounts of adrenaline as shown in cats (BUTTERWORTH and MALL 1957c) and dogs (GUANE to be publ.). This was found to be true in non-operated dogs both in morphine tolerance and when the adrenaline content had been depleted by abstinence. Unilateral denervation did not seem to influence the adrenal gland content of adrenaline in the morphine tolerant dog without abstinence signs. When nalorphine was given however a depletion was produced on the innervated side. The sectioning of the splanchnic nerve on one side had probably prevented the adrenaline release in the denervated gland during nalorphine induced abstinence.

This finding suggests that the depletion of adrenaline in the adrenal medulla seen in morphine abstinence is produced indirectly through the secretory nerves.

Table XVI Urinary control levels of adrenaline (A), noradrenaline (NA) and 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5 HIAA) in dogs and rats

Species (number of animals)	Number of observa- tions	Excretion product	Urinary output Mean $\pm$ S.E.M	(S.D.)
Dog (4)	24	A	78 $\pm$ 0.8	(4.0) ng/kg/h
	24	NA	316 $\pm$ 1.9	(9.3) ng/kg/h
	24	5 HIAA	62 $\pm$ 0.7	(3.3) $\mu$ g/kg/h
Rat (20)	35	A	49 $\pm$ 0.22	(1.3) ng/rat/h
	35	NA	22 $\pm$ 0.80	(4.8) ng/rat/h
	9	5 HIAA	150 $\pm$ 0.079	(0.24) $\mu$ g/rat/h

Fig 13 Mean urinary excretion of adrenaline  $\bullet$ — $\bullet$  noradrenaline  $\circ$ — $\circ$  and 5-HIAA  $\blacktriangledown$ — $\blacktriangledown$  in four dogs 100  $\mu$  represents the resting level of each substance during an initial control week. Black figure indicates morphine administration at two different dose levels 3 and 6 mg/kg/day



kg/h) lasting for four days. After this the values tended to return and on the tenth day the rise was only three fold (Fig 13). The noradrenaline output followed essentially the same pattern but the percentage changes

were small compared with adrenaline (absolute values 36—56  $\mu\text{g/kg/h}$ ) The urinary 5 HIAA was diminished during morphine administration

In rats the same pattern of excretion was obtained for adrenaline and noradrenaline The first two daily injections of morphine, 20 mg/kg, gave a rise of both catecholamines, but one week later the same dose had a much smaller effect (Fig 14)

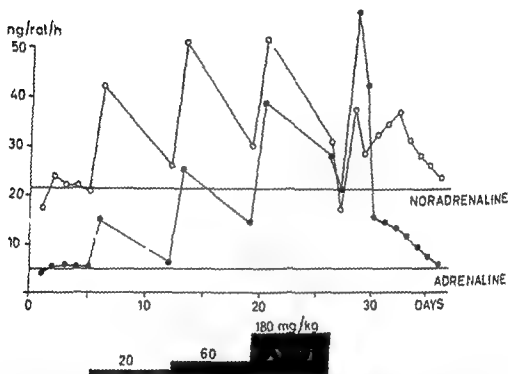


Fig 14 Urinary adrenaline  $\bullet$ — $\bullet$  and noradrenaline  $\circ$ — $\circ$  excretion in rats before during and after a three weeks cycle of morphine Each value represents mean of three groups of rats Control levels indicated by horizontal lines Black figure morphine doses given twice daily

### Stepwise increase of morphine dose

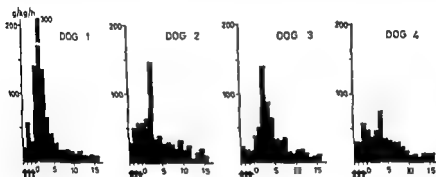
Whenever the morphine dose was raised, stepwise, the same pattern of an initial increase followed by another decrease reappeared in dogs (Fig 13) and rats (Fig 14) There was not, however, a complete normalization of the adrenaline output as long as morphine was given, while the noradrenaline level returned within the normal range both in dogs and rats

The 5-HIAA excretion remained low in dogs but was found to be elevated in rats following chronic morphine administration (see below)

### *Abrupt withdrawal*

When the chronic morphine administration was abruptly withdrawn there was a rise in the urinary output of adrenaline and noradrenaline in dogs. All four dogs showed only slight abstinence symptoms (grade I) and in no case was there any decrease of body weight or rise in body temperature (recorded daily by a thermocouple inserted 5 cm into the rectum). No major differences in symptoms could be seen between the four dogs during withdrawal but the adrenaline rise showed rather great individual variations (75–300 ng/kg/h) (Fig. 15). The noradrenaline rise was more

#### ADRENALINE



#### NORADRENALINE

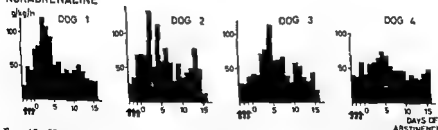


Fig. 15 Urinary excretion of adrenaline (upper figures) and noradrenaline (lower figures) of individual dogs during withdrawal from chronic morphine treatment. Arrows indicate the last three injections of morphine 90 mg/kg

evenly distributed between the dogs (73–135 ng/kg/h). The mean excretion curves (Fig. 16) reached a maximum for adrenaline on the third day of withdrawal followed by a rapid decline. The noradrenaline excretion reached a first maximum on the third day of withdrawal, simultaneously with the adrenaline maximum. On the same day the abstinence symptoms were most prominent.



Fig 17 Mean urinary excretion of 5-HIAA in four dogs during the last three days of a cycle of addiction and ten days of withdrawal. Each arrow indicates injection of morphine 90 mg/kg

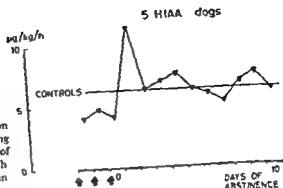
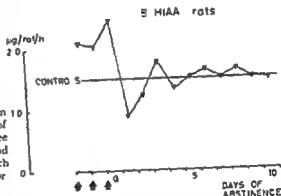


Fig 18 Mean urinary excretion of 5-HIAA in three groups of (five) rats during the last three days of a cycle of addiction and ten days of withdrawal. Each arrow indicates injection of morphine 180 mg/kg



### Nalorphine induced abstinence

In dogs the effect of nalorphine (10 mg/kg) was initially studied in non tolerant animals during the control period. Nalorphine was without effect on the output of noradrenaline and 5-HIAA in non tolerant dogs but gave a rise of adrenaline (to 37\*\* ng/kg/h) on the day of injection. An injection of saline was without effect. No symptoms were noticed following nalorphine in these dogs before morphine treatment.

After chronic morphine administration nalorphine (10 mg/kg) produced a moderate abstinence syndrome (grade II) in all four dogs. Fig 19 (left) illustrates the effect on the daily output of adrenaline, noradrenaline and 5-HIAA. When one daily morphine injection (90 mg/kg) was substituted by nalorphine there was a rise of all three excretion products. Adrenaline increased nine fold on the day of nalorphine, from 29 ng/kg/h (during morphine treatment) to 260 ng/kg/h (= 25 µg/dog/24 h). When the interrupted morphine administration was continued the adrenaline rise dis-

appeared again. The noradrenaline rise was five fold, from 27 ng/kg/h (during morphine treatment) to 130 ng/kg/h (= 12 µg/dog/24 h). When the morphine injections were reinstituted it was found that the noradrenaline rise outlasted the adrenaline rise by two days. The output of 5 HIAA was doubled on the day of nalorphine.

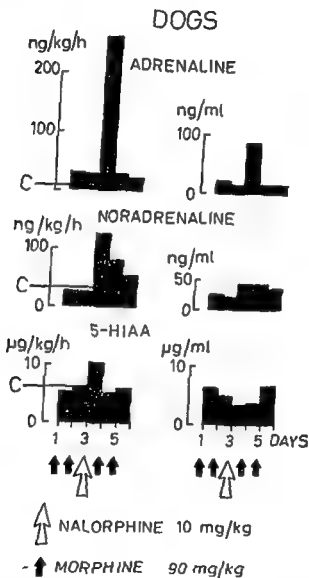


Fig 19 Left figures mean urinary excretion of adrenaline noradrenaline and 5 HIAA in four dogs made tolerant to 90 mg/kg of morphine daily by injections for two months. C=control levels of same animals before morphine treatment. On the third day of experiment the daily morphine injections were substituted by nalorphine 10 mg/kg. Right figures urinary concentration of each substance during the same experiment.

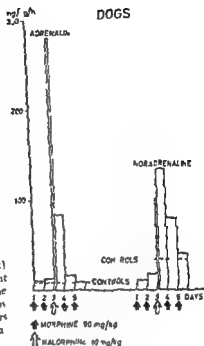


Fig 20 Urinary excretion of adrenaline (left) and noradrenaline (right) in morphine tolerant dog. On the third day of the experiment the daily morphine injections were substituted by 10 mg/kg nalorphine. The first four hours portion of urine following nalorphine was assayed separately.

The concentration (per ml of urine) of adrenaline and noradrenaline rose as a result of nalorphine (Fig 14 right) while there was a decrease of the 5 HIAA concentration. The changes in diuresis are discussed in the following section.

An attempt was made to determine the sequence of events with regard to catecholamine excretion in this nalorphine experiment. The urine of the first four hours following the injection of nalorphine was analyzed separately and the output of the next twenty hours in a second portion. In two of the animals there was a conspicuous rise of adrenaline already in the first portion (exemplified in Fig 20). The noradrenaline rise in all animals was highest during the following twenty hours.

Following nalorphine in morphine tolerant rats there was diarrhea and a great reduction of the urine volumes. This made a satisfactory collection of urine impossible in such experiments on rats).

## 2 Diuresis

The effects of morphine on the urine volumes in dogs are illustrated in Fig 21. The daily morphine injections diminished the output of urine.

appeared again. The noradrenaline rise was five fold, from 27 ng/kg/h (during morphine treatment) to 130 ng/kg/h (= 12  $\mu$ g/dog/24 h). When the morphine injections were reinstituted it was found that the noradrenaline rise outlasted the adrenaline rise by two days. The output of 5 HIAA was doubled on the day of nalorphine.

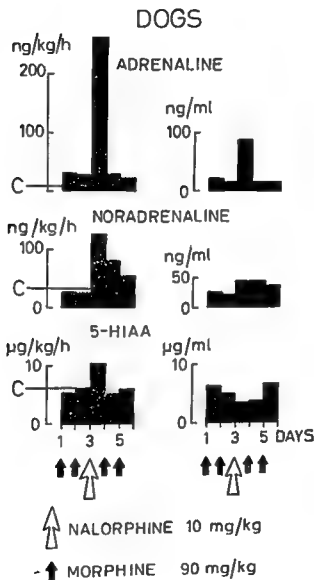


Fig 19 Left figures mean urinary excretion of adrenaline noradrenaline and 5 HIAA in four dogs made tolerant to 90 mg/kg of morphine daily by injections for two months. C= control levels of same animals before morphine treatment. On the third day of experiment the daily morphine injections were substituted by nalorphine 10 mg/kg. Right figures urinary concentration of each substance during the same experiment.

In rats the urine volumes were increased during chronic morphine administration as compared with saline injected controls

After withdrawal there were diminished urine volumes in the rats on the first two days of abstinence followed by another rise (Fig 22) As the rats were gaining weight during the experiments, from 160 to 200 g there was a gradual increase of urine volume also in the controls

### 3 Discussion

Resting levels of adrenaline and noradrenaline in the urine of rats showed a good agreement with earlier reports in which a similar technique was employed (SCHAPIRO 1958 PERMAN 1961 LEDUC 1961) The catecholamine values in dogs were considerably lower (about 1/10) than those reported by LEROY and SCHAEFDRIJVER (1961) These authors used adult dogs while the present study was made on puppies

Earlier reports containing control values for urinary 5 HIAA in non anaesthetized dogs (ERSPAMER and CICERI 1957 REYNOLDS 1960) and rats (ERSPAMER 1954 b BEPTACCINI and ERSPAMER 1962) were in agreement with those of the present paper

The two male dogs excreted consistently less than half the amount of 5 HIAA compared with the two females UDELVIRFUND, TITUS and WEISSBACH (1955) have pointed out that there are great individual variations in the excretion of 5 HIAA in dogs Whether there is an actual sex difference as has been reported for histamine excretion in rats (NETTER COHEN and SHORE 1961) remains an open question

In non tolerant dogs and rats the acute injection of morphine resulted in an increased output of adrenaline and noradrenaline When the same dose had been repeated for some days the excretion of both catecholamines were showing a return towards normal levels The urinary adrenaline remained supranormal as long as morphine was given while noradrenaline decreased to normal levels after long term administration of the drug In both species the same cyclic pattern of excretion a rise followed by another decrease was seen whenever the morphine dose was increased stepwise

The experiments indicate that the catecholamine production and/or release are involved in the mechanisms concerned with adaptation of the organism to morphine Whether there is a decline of the initial release when the morphine injections are repeated or an increased enzymatic destruction of the free amines remains to be settled

After withdrawal from chronic morphine administration there was a

# DOGS

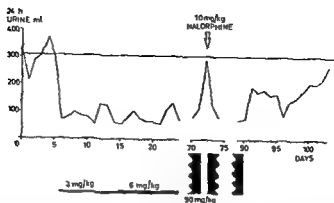


Fig 21 Daily urine volumes ml/dog/24 hours (means of four dogs) before and during chronic morphine administration (black figures daily morphine doses) Effect of nalorphine and abrupt withdrawal when the dogs had been made tolerant to 90 mg/kg of morphine Horizontal line mean control level before treatment

to about one third of the control level No obvious signs of tolerance to this effect were noticed during the ten days when the initial morphine dose was maintained

Nalorphine temporarily inversed the antidiuretic effect of morphine, thus producing a rise of the urine volumes compared with the adjacent days of morphine treatment After withdrawal there was another rise on the first day, but the urine volumes were still subnormal Following another few days of low output there was a return towards the control level

# RATS

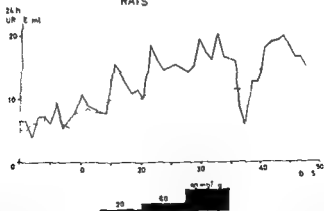


Fig 22 Daily urine volumes ml/rat/24 hours before during and after a three weeks cycle of morphine Broken line saline treated controls (one group of five rats) Solid line morphine treated (means of three groups of rats) Black figure morphine doses given twice daily

line rise by 1 to 2 days. The nalorphine induced abstinence symptoms on the other hand lasted only two hours after the injection. This indicates that part of the noradrenaline may originate from the adrenal glands depleted of their adrenaline stores.

In all experiments on urinary excretion products in morphine administration and withdrawal fluctuations in the urine volumes may imply sources of error. The findings of FULLER (1956 p. 167), PERMAN (1961) and LEDUC (1961) indicate that the daily urinary excretion of catecholamines is largely uninfluenced by physiological variations of the diuresis. Great artificial increases in the urinary flow may however bring about an increased output of catecholamines. LEVON and SCHAEFER (1961), on the other hand, reported a close parallelism between the urine volumes and the output of catecholamines in dogs.

In the present study it was noticed that increases in the urine volumes in dogs and rats during the control period were generally accompanied by reduced catecholamine concentrations. This suggests that the daily excretion of amines was largely uninfluenced by changes in diuresis. Such a view was further supported by a comparison between dogs and rats during chronic morphine treatment and withdrawal. The patterns of catecholamine excretion were mainly identical although the fluctuations in diuresis were moving in opposite directions in the two species.

Recently it has been shown that urinary 5 HIAA can be greatly increased in rats given water by stomach tube and that the excretion of this acid is largely dependent on the diuresis both in rats (PERTACCINI and ERSPAMER 1962) and dogs (LEWIS 1959).

The changes in urine volumes observed in dogs and rats during administration of morphine and during withdrawal are in accordance with earlier reports (the matter is reviewed by SCHULMAN 1957 p. 70). The increased intake of water and the increased urine volumes of morphine tolerant rats (BARBOUR *et al.* 1929) may be connected with the fever produced by the drug in this species (GILLES 1960).

The output of 5 HIAA was decreased in dogs and increased in rats during chronic morphine administration. On the first 1 to 2 days of withdrawal these excretion patterns were reversed: an increase was seen in dogs and a decrease in rats. The concomitant changes in urine volumes support the view that the fluctuations in 5 HIAA were secondary to changes in the diuresis.

The nalorphine induced abstinence in the dog was accompanied by a rise of both catecholamines and 5 HIAA together with an increased diuresis. Despite the large urine volumes the concentration of noradrenaline and

greatly increased output of adrenaline and noradrenaline in dogs and rats. The maximal symptoms of abstinence in both species coincided with the highest adrenaline excretion and a simultaneously appearing first outburst of noradrenaline excretion. The magnitude of the adrenaline secretion was apparently unrelated to the abstinence symptoms of the four dogs. It may be assumed that the differences in adrenaline output reflects merely temporary differences in the size of the stores of the adrenal glands. A wide range was found for adrenaline in the adrenal glands of dogs — a few days later in the withdrawal period there was a second rise of noradrenaline both in dogs and rats. By that time the adrenaline excretion was rapidly declining and the symptoms of abstinence were fading.

The first rise of adrenaline excretion, appearing simultaneously with several obvious signs of increased autonomic activity, is probably to be ascribed to a release at adrenergic nerve terminals throughout the organism. The second increase of noradrenaline may have a different explanation.

As already argued in the previous chapter (p. 58) the intense stimulation of the adreno medullary system, effecting a depletion of the adrenaline content of the adrenal glands, elicits an increased synthesis of its precursor noradrenaline. If the adrenal gland is further stimulated after depletion it would be likely to discharge more noradrenaline than otherwise. Thus the second increase of urinary noradrenaline during withdrawal from morphine, may be derived from the partly exhausted adrenal glands.

Before the morphine administration in non tolerant dogs a single injection of nalorphine only gave a small rise of urinary adrenaline (37 ng/kg/h), while noradrenaline and 5 HIAA were not affected. In morphine tolerant dogs the output of adrenaline rose to a mean of 260 ng/kg/h (controls 7.8 ng/kg/h) and noradrenaline to 130 ng/kg/h (controls 12 ng/kg/h) on the day of nalorphine injection. These high rates of output correspond to a mean of 25 µg adrenaline and 12 µg noradrenaline per dog in one day. Assuming a urinary excretion of 2 to 3 per cent of the adrenaline released from the adrenal glands into the blood stream (FELIX 1976 p. 285), the adrenaline output following nalorphine would correspond to 0.8—1.2 mg adrenaline released in each dog during 24 hours. The adrenals of these dogs were later found to contain on the average 1.1 mg/dog. A release of this magnitude would be likely to exhaust the adrenaline content of the adrenal glands unless the resynthesis were to be very rapid.

The 'immediate' response to nalorphine (first four hours after injection) in some morphine tolerant dogs was dominated by adrenaline while the maximal noradrenaline increase appeared later. Analogously with the findings in withdrawal experiments the noradrenaline rise outlasted the adren-



## CHAPTER VII

### GENERAL DISCUSSION

The results presented have shown that biologically active monoamines in the brain form characteristic patterns of distribution and release both during long term treatment with morphine and after withdrawal. Marked alterations have been found in the catecholamine content of brain, adrenals and urine, whereas the 5-hydroxytryptamine metabolism remained essentially unaffected.

A comparison was performed between two methods for the estimation of catecholamines in brain extracts, *viz.* the method of BERTLER *et al* (1958) and the method of EULER and LISHAJKO (1961). It was found that the extraction fluid (0.4 N perchloric acid) recommended by BERTLER *et al* (1958) for catecholamines and by BERTLER (1961) for 5-hydroxytryptamine was not a suitable medium for the long term storage of the amines. A slow gradual reduction of noradrenaline was noticed when extracts were stored for more than a week at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The disappearance of 5-hydroxytryptamine occurred at a much higher rate and was noticeable already a few hours after extraction. If, however, the pH of the extract was adjusted to 3.5–4.0 the catecholamines were stable for several months and 5-hydroxytryptamine for more than three weeks. In the method of EULER and LISHAJKO (1961) the addition of the disodium salt of ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) to the brain extracts was omitted, since it was found to reduce the noradrenaline values considerably. When these and a few other minor methodological modifications were observed, both methods gave essentially the same results with regard to accuracy and specificity for the purpose of the present investigation.

The acute administration of morphine was associated with a decrease of catecholamines in brain and adrenals (observed in rats and cats) together with an increased urinary output of catecholamine (observed in dogs and rats). These findings confirm earlier reports of a catecholamine releasing action of morphine in acute experiments (*cf.* p. 11). In rats the injection of 20 or 30 mg/kg of morphine gave a reduction of the adrenal gland content of adrenaline. The brain stores of noradrenaline, on the other

adrenaline was increased per ml of urine, indicating that the increased output of these amines could not be explained solely as an effect of diuresis. 5 HIAA, on the other hand, was decreased when calculated per ml of urine. The rise in 5 HIAA might thus have been secondary to the nalorphine induced rise in diuresis.

## CHAPTER VII

### GENERAL DISCUSSION

The results presented have shown that biologically active monoamines in the brain form characteristic patterns of distribution and release both during long term treatment with morphine and after withdrawal. Marked alterations have been found in the catecholamine content of brain, adrenals and urine, whereas the 5-hydroxytryptamine metabolism remained essentially unaffected.

A comparison was performed between two methods for the estimation of catecholamines in brain extracts, viz. the method of BERTLER *et al* (1958) and the method of EULER and LISHAJKO (1961). It was found that the extraction fluid (0.4 N perchloric acid) recommended by BERTLER *et al* (1958) for catecholamines and by BERTLER (1961) for 5-hydroxytryptamine was not a suitable medium for the long term storage of the amines. A slow gradual reduction of noradrenaline was noticed when extracts were stored for more than a week at  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The disappearance of 5-hydroxytryptamine occurred at a much higher rate and was noticeable already a few hours after extraction. If however the pH of the extract was adjusted to 3.5–4.0 the catecholamines were stable for several months and 5-hydroxytryptamine for more than three weeks. In the method of EULER and LISHAJKO (1961) the addition of the disodium salt of ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) to the brain extracts was omitted, since it was found to reduce the noradrenaline values considerably. When these and a few other minor methodological modifications were observed, both methods gave essentially the same results with regard to accuracy and specificity for the purpose of the present investigation.

The acute administration of morphine was associated with a decrease of catecholamines in brain and adrenals (observed in rats and cats) together with an increased urinary output of catecholamine (observed in dogs and rats). These findings confirm earlier reports of a catecholamine-releasing action of morphine in acute experiments (*cf.* p. 11). In rats the injection of 20 or 30 mg/kg of morphine gave a reduction of the adrenal gland content of adrenaline. The brain stores of noradrenaline, on the other

hand, were unaffected by these doses and were reduced only after two consecutive injections of 30 + 30 mg/kg MANNFET and KLINGMAN (1962) have recently reported a correspondingly dissociated catecholamine response in brain and adrenals after acute morphine administration in dogs and rabbits, small doses giving a depression of adrenal but not of brain catecholamines. In rats they noticed only a lack of correlation between the magnitude of change in the two organs. These observations indicate either a greater discharge from the adrenals, or a slower rate of resynthesis compared with the brain.

After administration of morphine and other sympathetic stimulating agents in cats VOGT (1954) found a correlation between the power of a drug to cause loss of noradrenaline from the hypothalamus and loss of amines from the innervated adrenal medulla. The present experiments confirmed these observations in cats, since the acute administration of 30 mg/kg of morphine produced a 50—80 % reduction of catecholamines both in brain and adrenals. After five days of morphine treatment a difference between the relative catecholamine content in brain and adrenals became evident also in this species. A replenishment had occurred in the brain noradrenaline, while the adrenal glands were still depleted of adrenaline. However, as evidence of a beginning replenishment of catecholamines in the adrenal glands as well, there was a slight increase of noradrenaline compared with the acute experiment.

The differences noticed between brain and adrenals in acute (rats) and 5 days experiments (cats), thus may be explained by different turn over rates of catecholamines in the two organs.

There have been differences in opinion concerning the rate of resynthesis of catecholamines both in the brain and in the adrenal glands. Some observers (BUTTERWORTH and MANN 1957 a, b; LADF and WOOD 1958) found the turn over rate of the adrenals to be slow, while others have concluded that it is rapid (*cf.* BLOEDMAN, LULF and HOKFET 1960). The brain was reported to have a rapid turn over of catecholamines (CARLSSON, LINDQVIST and MACNUSON 1959; SPECTOR, MELMON and SJOFFORD 1962), while BRODIE, SPECTOR and SHOPL (1959 b) found it to be relatively slow. BEFTLEY (1961) concluded that the turn over rate of the rabbit brain is faster than that of the adrenals. Whether differences in turn over rates in brain and adrenals represent the only explanation of the present results, remains an open question.

In long term experiments on dogs and rats the catecholamines in brain, adrenals and urine tended to return to control levels.

In rats the noradrenaline depletion of the acute experiment was even converted into an increase of the brain levels. The 5 hydroxytryptamine level remained unchanged however indicating that the monoamine oxidase system is intact. It was shown that the raised level of noradrenaline was still present in morphine tolerant rats (compared with controls) after administration of drugs interfering with the storage capacity ("methyl DOPA and reserpine") and metabolic break down (the monoamine oxidase inhibitor nialamid). These findings seem to suggest that the main difference between controls and morphine tolerant rats is not found in the rate of metabolic break down. Thus one probable explanation of the elevated brain level of noradrenaline in morphine tolerant rats may be an increased rate of synthesis.

On the other hand the possibility of an increased storage capacity should not be disregarded for the following reasons. It was found that nialamid produced a state of alertness and excitation in rats after a lag period of a few hours. This stage of increased alertness is generally ascribed to an overflow of free catecholamines in the brain tissue (BRODIE *et al* 1959b). Since the lag time was prolonged in morphine tolerant rats compared with controls, this would indicate an increased catecholamine binding capacity rather than an increased rate of synthesis in the brains of morphine tolerant animals. Possibly both mechanisms are at work at the same time.

In morphine tolerant dogs there was no corresponding increase in the brain content of catecholamines. This finding may be a correlate to the behavioral differences between the two species. Dogs are sedated while rats are excited from long term morphine administration.

The adrenal gland content of adrenaline was normalized during chronic morphine treatment both in dogs and rats in the present study. MAYER and KLINGMAN (1962) however reported an increase of the adrenal gland content of catecholamines in rats and rabbit during chronic morphine treatment. No explanation for this difference in results can be given at present.

The urinary catecholamines which were elevated by the first morphine injections showed a decline as a result of tolerance. The noradrenaline output gradually became normal and adrenaline was stabilized on a slightly elevated rate of excretion which seemed to be maintained as long as morphine was given. These findings suggest that the adaptation to long term morphine administration is associated with a reduced liberation of catecholamines compared with the acute experiments. The return to normal of the brain and adrenal tissue levels during chronic morphine administration thus may be explained not only on the basis of a stimulated

resynthesis, but partly as the result of a decreased release of catecholamines

The brain level of 5 hydroxytryptamine in dogs and rats was unaffected by chronic morphine administration. Minor fluctuations in the urinary output of 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5-HIAA) might well be explained by changes in the diuresis. The findings seemed to indicate that 5 hydroxytryptamine was not involved in the monoamine release, nor were there any signs of an accelerated production of this substance in chronic morphine administration. This is in agreement with earlier findings in acute and long term morphine experiments (p. 12)

*Abrupt withdrawal and nalorphine induced abstinence* were associated with a rapid mobilization of the catecholamine stores in brain and adrenals. There was a reduction of noradrenaline and dopamine in the brain and of adrenaline in the adrenal glands of dogs, together with an increased urinary output of adrenaline and noradrenaline. The reduction of adrenaline in the adrenal gland was probably prevented by sectioning of the ipsilateral splanchnic nerve (2 dogs) and could thus be regarded as a central effect, mediated through nervous stimulation.

The close relationship between a release of catecholamines in the brain and certain states of excitation with autonomic disturbance has been demonstrated in many earlier investigations (p. 9). In those earlier studies the role of the catecholamines in the observed syndrome was sometimes obscure, owing to the presence of various drugs which may have exerted a direct action on the nervous tissue. In the present investigation a catecholamine release was noticed in two different experimental situations: 1) In acute experiments a release was seen in the non-tolerant organism in the presence of morphine and 2) following abrupt withdrawal a corresponding release was seen in morphine-tolerant animals in the absence of the drug. The symptom pictures were different in these two instances. In the acute experiment there was depression succeeded by excitation in the rats, but only excitation in cats. In non-tolerant dogs given a large dose (200 mg/kg) of morphine MANNERT and KLINGMAN (1962) noticed 'mild convulsions', together with a decrease of catecholamines in brain and adrenals. Thus, the symptoms of the acute experiments vary but generally include some signs of excitation. In the withdrawal experiments on dogs the symptoms are purely excitatory and the catecholamine pattern in brain, adrenals and urine indicates a rapid release. These findings support the view that a central liberation of catecholamines is associated with signs of excitation, but that the presence of a drug can obscure the symptom picture.

The close connection between the catecholamine release in morphine withdrawal and the symptoms of excitation appears from 1) the agreement between the *degree* of abstinence intensity and the degree of reduction of the catecholamines in the brain, and 2) the coincidence in time of the maximal intensity of the abstinence symptoms and the maximal urinary output of catecholamines.

In morphine tolerant rats and dogs the urinary output of adrenaline and noradrenaline was maximal on the second and third days of abrupt withdrawal and at this time the adrenaline content of the adrenal glands was reduced. In dogs the most prominent excitatory symptoms in withdrawal and nalorphine induced abstinence were connected with the most pronounced depletion in the brain catecholamines (noradrenaline and dopamine). In rats there was no depletion of brain noradrenaline in the present abstinence experiments. The symptoms consisted of a combination of drowsiness and irritability together with several autonomic manifestations. In earlier experiments a small reduction of brain noradrenaline was noticed in a different rat strain during withdrawal from chronic morphine administration (GUNNE 1959). A moderate noradrenaline release in the brain of morphine tolerant rats need not deplete the brain stores since the release might well be concealed by the rapid resynthesis of brain noradrenaline. As mentioned previously the long term morphine experiments in rats (including a final injection of mescaline, a methyl DOPA or reserpine) have given evidence of an increased rate of synthesis of noradrenaline in the brain.

Before definite conclusion can be drawn from changes in the tissue levels of monoamines some information must be obtained concerning the rate of metabolism of the substances studied. Such information is furnished by studies of the urinary output which readily reflects changes in the rate of synthesis and liberation (cf EULER 1956 p. 285). The urinary content of catecholamines reflects those changes more dramatically than the total metabolic end products but of course they give no information concerning the catabolic routes. It is true that the monoamines of the brain do not appear in the urine (they do not readily pass the blood brain barrier; furthermore they are quantitatively insignificant). However, second hand information may be obtained also concerning the neurochemical events in the brain since a stimulation of hypothalamic brain centers which liberates the brain catecholamines is generally reflected by a concomitant liberation from adrenals and peripheral adrenergic nerve terminals (VOGT 1959).

MAYNERT and KLINGMAN (1962) reported distinct species differences in the catecholamine response of dogs and rats based on studies of tissue





The close connection between the catecholamine release in morphine withdrawal and the symptoms of excitation appears from 1) the agreement between the *degree* of abstinence intensity and the degree of reduction of the catecholamines in the brain and 2) the coincidence in *time* of the maximal intensity of the abstinence symptoms and the maximal urinary output of catecholamines

In morphine tolerant rats and dogs the urinary output of adrenaline and noradrenaline was maximal on the second and third days of abrupt withdrawal and at this time the adrenaline content of the adrenal glands was reduced. In dogs the most prominent excitatory symptoms in withdrawal and nalorphine induced abstinence were connected with the most pronounced depletion in the brain catecholamines (noradrenaline and dopamine). In rats there was no depletion of brain noradrenaline in the present abstinence experiments. The symptoms consisted of a combination of drowsiness and irritability together with several autonomic manifestations. In earlier experiments a small reduction of brain noradrenaline was noticed in a different rat strain during withdrawal from chronic morphine administration (GILLIS 1959). A moderate noradrenaline release in the brain of morphine tolerant rats need not deplete the brain stores since the release might well be concealed by the rapid resynthesis of brain noradrenaline. As mentioned previously the long term morphine experiments in rats (including a final injection of nalamid,  $\alpha$  methyl DOPA or reserpine) have given evidence of an increased rate of synthesis of noradrenaline in the brain.

Before definite conclusion can be drawn from changes in the tissue levels of monoamines some information must be obtained concerning the rate of metabolism of the substances studied. Such information is furnished by studies of the urinary output which readily reflects changes in the rate of synthesis and liberation (*cf* EULER 1956 p 285). The urinary content of catecholamines reflects those changes more dramatically than the total metabolic end products but of course they give no information concerning the catabolic routes. It is true that the monoamines of the brain do not appear in the urine (they do not readily pass the blood brain barrier furthermore they are quantitatively insignificant). However, second hand information may be obtained also concerning the neurochemical events in the brain since a stimulation of hypothalamic brain centers which liberates the brain catecholamines is generally reflected by a concomitant liberation from adrenals and peripheral adrenergic nerve terminals (VOGT 1959).

MAVNET and KLINGMAN (1962) reported distinct species differences in the catecholamine response of dogs and rats based on studies of tissue

resynthesis, but partly as the result of a decreased release of catecholamines.

The brain level of 5 hydroxytryptamine in dogs and rats was unaffected by chronic morphine administration. Minor fluctuations in the urinary output of 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5 HIAA) might well be explained by changes in the diuresis. The findings seemed to indicate that 5 hydroxytryptamine was not involved in the monoamine release, nor were there any signs of an accelerated production of this substance in chronic morphine administration. This is in agreement with earlier findings in acute and long term morphine experiments (p 12).

*Abrupt withdrawal* and *nalorphine induced abstinence* were associated with a rapid mobilization of the catecholamine stores in brain and adrenals. There was a reduction of noradrenaline and dopamine in the brain and of adrenaline in the adrenal glands of dogs, together with an increased urinary output of adrenaline and noradrenaline. The reduction of adrenaline in the adrenal gland was probably prevented by sectioning of the ipsilateral splanchnic nerve (2 dogs) and could thus be regarded as a central effect, mediated through nervous stimulation.

The close relationship between a release of catecholamines in the brain and certain states of excitation with autonomic disturbance, has been demonstrated in many earlier investigations (p 9). In those earlier studies the role of the catecholamines in the observed syndrome was sometimes obscure, owing to the presence of various drugs which may have exerted a direct action on the nervous tissue. In the present investigation a catecholamine release was noticed in two different experimental situations. 1) In acute experiments a release was seen in the non tolerant organism in the presence of morphine and 2) following abrupt withdrawal a corresponding release was seen in morphine tolerant animals in the absence of the drug. The symptom pictures were different in these two instances. In the acute experiment there was depression succeeded by excitation in the rats but only excitation in cats. In non tolerant dogs given a large dose (200 mg/kg) of morphine MAYAUF and KINGMAN (1962) noticed 'mild convulsions', together with a decrease of catecholamines in brain and adrenals. Thus, the symptoms of the acute experiments vary but generally include some signs of excitation. In the withdrawal experiments on dogs the symptoms are purely excitatory and the catecholamine pattern in brain, adrenals and urine indicates a rapid release. These findings support the view that a central liberation of catecholamines is associated with signs of excitation, but that the presence of a drug can obscure the symptom picture.

brain content of  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid (GABA) was unchanged in morphine abstinence in the dog — It has been shown that the stress of morphine withdrawal involves an increased activity also of the adrenal cortex both in man (EISENMAN *et al* 1958 EISENMAN FRASER and BROOKS 1961) and in rats (PAROLI and MRLCHIORRI 1961) In view of the clinical effects of administered corticosteroids it seems improbable however, that these hormones could explain the symptom pattern in morphine abstinence

HIMMELSBACH (1943) remarked that the symptoms of morphine abstinence are indicative of a disturbance in the function of the vegetative nervous system — the homeostasis of which was connected with autonomic hypothalamic centers — Recently the catecholamine and possibly also the 5-hydroxytryptamine stores of the brain stem nuclei were visualized by histochemical fluorescence technique (FALCK 1962, CARLSSON FALCK and HILLARP 1962) They concluded that adrenergic neurons may exist and noradrenaline may serve as a synaptic transmitter in the central nervous system Their observations provide direct evidence for a transmitter function of the central monoamines and thus strengthen the hypothesis that the specific alterations in brain noradrenaline content during morphine administration and morphine abstinence reflect biochemical neuronal changes in the regions which control autonomic activity It also emerges from the present investigation that in spite of species differences there are several common features in the neurochemical patterns associated with morphine administration and abstinence in dogs and rats and that minor differences may be correlated to behavioral differences This implies a probability that the present results will facilitate an understanding of the corresponding mechanisms in human morphine addicts

levels. They concluded that the adaptations on withdrawal of morphine are not stressful in the rat, but are in the dog. However, the present investigation has shown, mainly by studies of the urinary output, that there are probably no principal species differences between dogs and rats with regard to the catecholamines in morphine abstinence. On the contrary a conspicuous *similarity* was found between the patterns of catecholamine output in the two species during withdrawal from chronic morphine treatment.

5-Hydroxytryptamine seemed to be unaltered also in connection with morphine abstinence. The brain levels were unchanged during abstinence irrespective of the intensity of symptoms. Changes in the urinary 5-HIAA were probably secondary to the great fluctuations in diuresis connected with withdrawal or nalorphine induced abstinence.

The exact role of the catecholamine release in the production of the morphine withdrawal syndrome is difficult to decide at present. Many stressful agents cause an increased activity in the sympathetic nervous system and increase the secretion from the adrenal glands. It should be recalled however, that the drug induced depletion of hypothalamic noradrenaline, first reported by VOCT (1954) was not elicited by all the drugs tested, in spite of the use of sublethal doses. Only when more or less conspicuous symptoms of autonomic activity were evoked, a depletion of brain noradrenaline was found. Thus the drugs active on hypothalamic catecholamines had the common feature of stimulating sympathetic activity. VOCT (1957) showed that nalorphine counteracted the behavioral as well as the noradrenaline depleting effects of morphine in the cat brain. Again the effect on catecholamines was associated with the autonomic and behavioral response. MAYNERT and KLINGMAN (1962) were able to prevent the noradrenaline depletion of nalorphine in the brain of morphine tolerant dogs, when pentobarbital anesthesia was given, in order to abolish the abstinence excitation.

Together with the present results these findings suggest that the release of brain catecholamines in morphine abstinence is secondary to a vigorous stimulation of sympathetic brain centers. However the concept of a nervously mediated stimulation as the cause of the catecholamine depletion does not contradict the view that a liberation of these substances in the brain stem, might have a decisive influence on the symptom pattern in morphine abstinence.

The possible role of other biologically active substances in the brain must be clarified before the relation between brain catecholamines and morphine effects can be finally evaluated. MAYNERT *et al* (1962) reported that the

stem and cerebellum) The magnitude of the reduction was related to the severity of the abstinence symptoms In the brain stem there was a 21, 41 and 59 per cent reduction in abstinence in grades I II and III respectively A concomitant reduction of dopamine was seen in dogs with moderate and marked (grade II and III) abstinence symptoms but did not appear when the symptoms were slight (grade I) The 5 hydroxytryptamine of the brain stem was unaltered at any degree of abstinence — In rats there were no changes of brain noradrenaline or 5 hydroxytryptamine during morphine abstinence

4 *Adrenals* Acute administration of morphine reduced the adrenaline and noradrenaline content of the adrenal glands in rats and cats After five days of morphine administration in cats there was still a reduction of both amines but a beginning replenishment of noradrenaline was noticed After chronic morphine administration in dogs and rats a normal content of adrenaline and noradrenaline was found in the adrenal glands

Following *withdrawal* of chronic morphine administration there was a reduction of adrenaline in the adrenal glands of dogs and rats *Nalorphine* induced abstinence reduced the adrenaline level in the adrenals of dogs There was a 49 52 and 68 per cent reduction in abstinence in grades I, II and III respectively The adrenaline depletion was probably mediated via the splanchnic nerves since after unilateral splanchnic sectioning only the innervated gland contained definitely subnormal amounts of adrenaline (two dogs) — In morphine tolerant rats nalorphine did not influence the catecholamine content of the adrenals

5 *Urine* The first few morphine injections caused an increase of the urinary output of adrenaline and noradrenaline in dogs and rats After repeated injections there was a return of the two catecholamines towards the normal level The noradrenaline output returned to normal while adrenaline remained supranormal in both species as long as morphine was given The output of 5 HIAA during long term morphine administration appeared only to reflect changes in the diuresis both in dogs and rats

Following *abrupt withdrawal* there was a marked rise of urinary adrenaline and noradrenaline in dogs and rats The increase of noradrenaline outlasted the increase of adrenaline by 2 to 3 days in both species A corresponding pattern of catecholamine excretion was also noticed in dogs when abstinence was produced by *nalorphine* — The urinary 5 HIAA rose in morphine tolerant dogs on the first day of withdrawal or administration of nalorphine but a decrease was seen in rats Again the fluctuations of urinary 5 HIAA might have been secondary to changes in diuresis since

## SUMMARY

1 The effects of long term administration of morphine and of abrupt withdrawal as well as of nalorphine induced abstinence have been studied, mainly with reference to the brain content of noradrenaline, dopamine and 5 hydroxytryptamine (serotonin), the adrenal gland content of adrenaline and noradrenaline and the urinary output of adrenaline, noradrenaline and 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid (5 HIAA) The study was carried out on dogs, rats and cats The brain noradrenaline was determined either according to BERGLER, CARLSSON and ROSENGREN (1958) or EULER and LISHAJO (1961) These methods were compared and a few modifications were suggested

2 The general appearance and behavior of the animals were noticed during acute and long term administration of morphine and in abstinence produced by nalorphine or by abrupt withdrawal The abstinence syndrome in rats was found to contain some apparently inconsistent elements: signs of excitation (irritability and disturbed autonomic functions), together with drowsiness and eyelid ptosis The abstinence syndrome in dogs however, was purely excitatory A simple rating scale for abstinence symptoms in dogs was devised The symptoms were scored as slight (grade I), moderate (grade II) or marked (grade III)

3 *Brain* Acute administration of morphine reduced the brain noradrenaline in rats and cats After five daily morphine injections the brain noradrenaline was restored in cats Following *chronic* morphine treatment the brain level of noradrenaline, dopamine and 5 hydroxytryptamine was normal in dogs In rats the noradrenaline level was supernormal after chronic morphine treatment, while the brain content of 5 hydroxytryptamine was unaltered A monoamine oxidase inhibitor (nialamid) caused a greater increase of noradrenaline in morphine tolerant rats than in controls The noradrenaline releasing agents  $\alpha$  methyl DOPA and reserpine produced a smaller noradrenaline decrease in brains of morphine tolerant rats than in controls

During *withdrawal* and *nalorphine induced abstinence* there was in dogs a reduction of noradrenaline in all parts of the brain (telencephalon, brain

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The present investigation was carried out in the years 1958 to 1962 during the tenure of a research fellowship from Karolinska Institutet

I wish to express my sincere gratitude to Professor U S v Euler, head of the Department of Physiology, for his invaluable help and advice during these years

To Professor L Goldberg head of the Department of Alcohol Research my thanks are due for valuable and stimulating discussions and for the financial support generously given me by his institution

I also wish to thank Mr John Jonsson for his invaluable and skilful technical assistance

The determinations of 5 HIAA were carried out by Bengt Pernow M D to whom I wish to express my appreciation

The investigation was supported chiefly by a research grant from the Alcohol Research Committee of the Swedish Medical Research Council I have also received research grants from Svenska Sällskapet för Medicinsk Forskning Stiftelsen Lars Hiertas Minne and Stiftelsen Bror Gadelius Minnesfond All these grants are gratefully acknowledged

I also wish to thank Pfizer Ltd for supplying Niamid, Ciba Ltd for Serpasil and Merck, Sharp & Dohme Ltd for Aldomet

corresponding alterations were noticed in the urine volumes of the two species

6 The following *general conclusions* are drawn from the present findings

a) Acute administration of morphine produces an activation of sympathetic parts of the nervous system, central as well as peripheral, eventually leading to a depletion of brain and adrenal stores of catecholamines in rats and cats. Long term administration of morphine induces an increased rate of resynthesis of catecholamines, probably as a response to the increased demands by the stimulated tissue. Signs of an accelerated resynthesis are found in brain and adrenals of rats and cats and in the adrenals of dogs during chronic morphine treatment.

b) Withdrawal and nalorphine induced abstinence elicits a rapid liberation of brain and adrenal catecholamines and the *intensity* of the abstinence syndrome in dogs is proportional to the depletion of brain catecholamines. Furthermore the maximal symptoms coincide in *time* with the maximal urinary output of catecholamines. There are species differences between dogs and rats with regard to the behavioral manifestations of abstinence. These are reflected by quantitative differences in the catecholamine depletion between the two species. The general patterns of catecholamine output following morphine withdrawal are, however, essentially the same in dogs and rats.

These findings seem to link the appearance and development of the morphine abstinence syndrome with a liberation of brain catecholamines (noradrenaline and dopamine). 5-Hydroxytryptamine appears to remain unaffected by chronic morphine treatment as well as by withdrawal.



- BROOKS B B, R. KUNTZMAN, C. W. HIRSCH and E. COSTA Effects of decarboxylase inhibition on the biosynthesis of brain monoamines *Life Sciences* 1962 1 81-84
- BUTTERWORTH A. R. and M. MANN The adrenaline and noradrenaline content of the adrenal gland of the cat following depletion by acetylcholine *Brit J Pharmacol* 1957a 12 415-421
- BUTTERWORTH A. R. and M. MANN The release of adrenaline and noradrenaline from the adrenal gland of the cat by acetylcholine *Brit J Pharmacol* 1957b 12 421-426
- BUTTERWORTH A. R. and M. MANN A quantitative comparison of the sympathomimetic amine content of the left and right adrenal glands of the cat *J Physiol (Lond)* 1957c 136 94-99
- BRODEMAN S U S, V. ELLER and B. HOKRELT Resynthesis of adrenaline in the rabbit's adrenal medulla during insulin induced hypoglycemia *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 21-28
- CARLSSON A, M. LINDQVIST and T. MAGLSSON 3,4-Dihydroxyphenylalanine and 5-hydroxytryptophan as reserpine antagonists *Nature (Lond)* 1957 180 1200
- CARLSSON A, M. LINDQVIST, T. MAGLSSON and B. WALDECK On the presence of 3-hydroxytyramine in brain. *Science* 1958 127 411
- CARLSSON A and B. WALDECK A fluorimetric method for the determination of dopamine (3-hydroxytyramine) *Acta physiol scand* 1958 44 293-298
- CARLSSON A, M. LINDQVIST and T. MAGLSSON The effect of monoamine oxidase inhibitors on the metabolism of the brain catecholamines *J Soc Ciencias Med Lisboa* 1959 123 Suppl 96
- CARLSSON A and M. LINDQVIST In vivo decarboxylation of  $\alpha$ -methyl DOPA and  $\alpha$ -methyl metatyrosine *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 87-94
- CARLSSON A and N. A. HILLARP Formation of phenolic acids in brain after administration of 3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine *Acta physiol scand* 1962 55 95-100
- CARLSSON A, B. FALCK and N. A. HILLARP Cellular localization of brain monoamines *Acta physiol scand* 1962 56 Suppl 196
- COCHRAN J and J. AXELROD Biochemical and pharmacological changes in the rat following chronic administration of morphine, nalorphine and normorphine *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1959 125 2 103-110
- Cohen C and M. GOLDBERG The simultaneous fluorimetric determination of adrenaline and noradrenaline in plasma - I *J Neurolchem* 1957 2 58-70
- COSTA, E. G. L. GRISA, C. HIRSCH, R. KUNTZMAN and B. BROOKS On current status of serotonin as a brain neurohormone and in action of reserpine-like drugs *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1962 95 118-133
- CRAWFORD T B B and W. LAW The urinary excretion of adrenaline and noradrenaline by rats under various experimental conditions *Brit J Pharmacol* 1958 13 35-43
- DECKWITZ R. H. FROWSTY, C. ALLENKAMPF and U. MORS Über die Wirkungen des L-DOPA beim Menschen und deren Beeinflussung durch Reserpin, Chlorpromazin, Iproniazid und Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> *Klin Wschr* 1960 38 120-123
- DETROCK L. E. and G. H. TATELIS Tissue hydration during morphine addiction and withdrawal in rats on low calcium diet and on high calcium diet with parathyroid hormone injections *Arch int Pharmacodyn* 1941 66 130-137
- ELDER N. R. and D. R. HOOD The release of adrenaline and noradrenaline from the adrenal medulla of the cat during splanchnic stimulation *Brit J Pharmacol* 1958 13 390-394
- IRVING J Fluorimetric determination of adrenaline II *Farm Rev (Stockh)* 1948 47 247-250
- FISCHMAN A. H. FRASER, J. SLOAN and H. ISBELL Urinary 17-ketosteroid excretion during a cycle of addiction to morphine *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1958 124 305-311

## REFERENCES

- ABE T Veränderungen des Adrenalinalgehaltes in der Nebenniere bei akuter und chronischer Morphinvergiftung *Abstr Jap J Med Sci* 1929 4 100—104
- AMIN A H, T B B CRAWFORD and J H GADDUM The distribution of substance P and 5 hydroxytryptamine in the central nervous system of the dog *J Physiol (Lond)* 1954 126 596—618
- AXELROD J A Possible mechanism of tolerance to narcotic drugs *Science* 1956 124 263—264
- AXELROD J A Presence, formation and metabolism of normetanephrine in the brain *Science* 1958 127 754—755
- AXELROD J A Metabolism of epinephrine and other sympathomimetic amines *Physiol Rev* 1959 39 751
- AXELROD J A G HERTTING and R W PATRICK Inhibition of H<sup>3</sup> norepinephrine release by monoamine oxidase inhibitors *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1961 134 325—338
- BARBOUR H G II E RUSSEL S H FLOWERS E S DUNHAM and L G HUNTER The significant redistribution of water between internal and surface tissues and the blood at the height of morphine withdrawal *Amer J Physiol* 1929 90 273—274
- BARLOW O W The tranquilizing potency of morphine pantopon codeine papaverine and narcotine *J Amer Med Ass* 1932 99 986—988
- BEAUVAILLET M J FUGAZZA and M SOLIER Variations saisonieres du taux de la noradrenaline cerebrale chez le rat *C R Soc Biol (Paris)* 1961 155 1465—1466
- BERFACCINI G and V ERSPANER The effect of the administration of water or isotonic NaCl solution on the urinary excretion of 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid in the rat *J Pharm and Pharmacol* 1962 14 687—697
- BERTLER A A CARLSSON and E ROSENGREN Method for the fluorimetric determination of adrenaline and noradrenaline in tissues *Acta physiol scand* 1958 44 273—292
- BERTLER A and E ROSENGREN Occurrence and distribution of catecholamines in brain *Acta physiol scand* 1959 47 350—361
- BERTLER A *Inverkan av reserpin och andra lakemedel pa katekolaminomsattningen* Diss Lund 1960
- BERTLER A N A HILLARP and E ROSENGREN Bound and free catecholamines in the brain *Acta physiol scand* 1960 50 113—118
- BERTLER A Effect of reserpine on the storage of catecholamines in brain and other tissues *Acta physiol scand* 1961 51 75—83
- BLASCHKO H The specific action of l dopa decarboxylase *J Physiol (Lond)* 1939 96 50P—51P
- BRODIE H B A PLETSCHER and P A SHORE Evidence that serotonin has a role in brain function *Science* 1955 127 968
- BRODIE H B P A SHORE and A PLETSCHER Serotonin releasing activity limited to Rauwolfia alkaloids with tranquilizing action *Science* 1956 123 997—999
- BRODIE H B F G TOMICH R KUNTZMAN and P A SHORE On the mechanism of action of reserpine effect of reserpine on capacity of tissues to bind serotonin *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1957 119 461—467
- BRODIE H B M SPECTOR and P A SHORE Interaction of drugs with norepinephrine in the brain *Pharmacol Rev* 1959 a 11 548—564
- BRODIE H B M SPECTOR and P A SHORE Interaction of monoamine oxidase inhibitors with physiological and biochemical mechanisms in brain *Ann New York Acad Sci* 1959 b 80 609—614

- GUNNE L M Catecholamine metabolism in morphine withdrawal in the dog *Nature (Lond)* 1962 b 190 815—816
- GUNNE L M Relative adrenaline content in brain tissue *Acta physiol scand* 1962 c 56 324—333
- HAGGENDAL J On the use of strong exchange resins for determinations of small amounts of catecholamines *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 1967 14 537—544
- HANNA C A demonstration of morphine tolerance and physical dependence *Arch int Pharmacodyn* 1960 124 376—379
- HAYASHI T II Untersuchungen über die Adrenalinsekretion bei Kaninchen *Jap J med Sci* 1937 4 41
- HEALEN H D NEUBERT and R TIMMLER Die enzymatische N-Demethylierung durch Leber Mikrosomen bei der Morphin-Gewohnung *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch exp Path u Pharmacol* 1959 237 319—333
- HESS W R *Das Zwischenhirn* Basel 1954
- HIMMELSBACH C K G H GERLACH and H J STANTON A method for testing addiction tolerance and abstinence in the rat *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1935 53 179—188
- HIMMELSBACH C K IV With reference to physical dependence *Fed Proc* 1943 2 201—203
- HOKFELT H Noradrenaline and adrenaline in mammalian tissues *Acta physiol scand* 1951 25 Suppl 92
- HOLTZ P K CRODNER und G KROEGER Über das sympathicomimetische pressorische Prinzip des Harns (Urosympathin) *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch exp Path Pharmacol* 1947 204 298—243
- HOLTZ P Über die sympathicomimetische Wirksamkeit von Gehirnextrakten *Acta physiol scand* 1950 20 354—362
- HOLTZ P and E WESTERMANN Über die Dopadecarboxylase und Histidyldecarboxylase des Nervengewebes *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch exp Path u Pharmacol* 1956 297 58—546
- HOLTZ P H BALZER III WESTERMANN und E WEZLER Beeinflussung der Evipanarkose durch Reserpin, Iproniazid und biogene Amine *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch exp Path u Pharmacol* 1957 231 333—348
- HOLZBALTER M and M VOOT Depression by reserpine of the noradrenaline concentration in the hypothalamus of the cat *J Neurochem* 1956 1 8—11
- ISBELL H and H F FRASER Addiction to analgesics and barbiturates *Pharmacol Rev* 1950 2 325—397
- JOEL E und A ETTINGER Zur Pathologie der Gewohnung III Mitteilung Experimentelle Studien über Morphingewohnung *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch exp Path u Pharmacol* 1976 115 334—350
- JONAKNEVSON T Morphine as an inhibitor of brain cholinesterases in morphine tolerant and non tolerant rats *Acta pharmacol (Åbh)* 1967 19 23—35
- KANSA B R Somato-motor autonomic and electrocorticographic responses to electrical stimulation of rhinencephalic and other structures in primates cat and dog *Acta physiol scand* 1951 24 Suppl 83
- KARKI N R KUNTZMAN and B B BRODIE Storage synthesis and metabolism of monoamine in the developing brain *J Neurochem* 1967 2 53—58
- KAYMAKALAN S and L A WOODS Nalorphine induced abstinence syndrome in morphine tolerant albino rats *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1956 117 112—116
- KIRKHNER N and McC GOONALE Separation of adrenaline noradrenaline and hydroxytryptamine by ion exchange chromatography *J Biol Chem* 1957 226 207—212
- KOLD L and L HIMMELSBACH Methods of study of the abstinence syndrome *Amer J Psychiat* 1938 94 759—799
- KURTZ H N B EDDY and M SCHWALT The pharmacology of the opium alkaloids *Publ Health Rep* 1941 5 ppl 165

- EISENMAN, A H FRASER and J BROOKS Urinary excretion and plasma levels of 17 hydroxycorticosteroids during a cycle of addiction to morphine *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1961 132 226—231
- ELLIOTT, T R The action of adrenaline *J Physiol (Lond)* 1905 37 401—467
- ELLIOTT, T R The control of the suprarenal glands by the splanchnic nerves *J Physiol (Lond)* 1912 44 374—409
- ENMELIN N and R STROMBLAD Adrenaline and noradrenaline content of the suprarenals of cats in chloralose and morphine ether anaesthesia *Acta physiol scand* 1951 74 260—266
- ERSPAMER V Pharmacology of indolealkylamines *Pharmacol Rev* 1954a 6 425—487
- ERSPAMER V Observations on the metabolism of endogenous 5 hydroxytryptamine (enteramine) in the rat *Experientia (Basel)* 1954b 10 471—472
- ERSPAMER V and C CICERI Action of reserpine on the 5 hydroxytryptamine (enteramine) biosynthesis and metabolism in dogs and rats *Experientia* 1957 13 81—89
- EULER U S v A specific sympathomimetic ergone in adrenergic nerve fibres (sympathin) and its relations to adrenaline and noradrenaline *Acta physiol scand* 1946 12 73—97
- EULER U S v and I FLODING A fluorimetric micromethod for differential estimation of adrenaline and noradrenaline *Acta physiol scand* 1955 33 Suppl 118 45—56
- EULER U S v *Noradrenaline* Thomas Springfield Ill 1956
- EULER U S v Distribution and metabolism of catechol hormones in tissues and axones *Rec Progr Horm Res* 1958 14 483—512
- EULER U S v and F LISHAJKO The estimation of catechol amines in urine *Acta physiol scand* 1959 45 122—132
- EULER U S v and F LISHAJKO Improved technique for the fluorimetric estimation of catecholamines *Acta physiol scand* 1961 51 348—355
- FALCK B Observations on the possibilities of the cellular localization of monoamines by a fluorescence method *Acta physiol scand* 1962 56 Suppl 197
- FELDBERG W and C C TON Distribution of 5 hydroxytryptamine (serotonin enteramine) in the wall of the digestive tract *J Physiol (Lond)* 1933 119 352—367
- FISHER R A *Statistical methods for research workers* Edinburgh 1936
- FREEDMAN D W D H FRAM and N J GIARMAN The effect of morphine on the regeneration of brain norepinephrine after reserpine *Fed Proc* 1961 20 371
- GADDUM J H Drugs antagonistic to 5 hydroxytryptamine *Ciba Foundation Symposium Hypertension* London 1954 p 75—77
- GEISSA G L E COSTA R KANTZMAN and B B BRODIE Evidence that loss of brain catecholamine stores due to blockade of storage does not cause reduction *Life Sciences* 1962 1 441—452
- GEY K F and A PLETSCHER Activity of monoamine oxidase in relation to the 5 hydroxytryptamine and norepinephrine content of the rat brain *J Neurochem* 1961 6 239—243
- GINNE L M Noradrenaline and adrenaline in the rat brain during acute and chronic morphine administration and during withdrawal *Nature (Lond)* 1959 184 1950—1951
- GINNE L M The temperature response in rats during acute and chronic morphine administration A study of morphine tolerance *Arch int Pharmacodyn* 1960 179 416—428
- GINNE L M The excretion of noradrenaline and adrenaline in the urine of rats during chronic morphine administration and during abstinence *Psychopharmacologia (Berl)* 1961 2 214—220
- GINNE L M Catecholamine metabolism and morphine abstinence *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1962a 96 205—210

- PLETSCHER A, F A SHORE and B B BRODIE Release of brain serotonin by reserpine  
*J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1956a 116 46
- PLETSCHER A, F A SHORE and B B BRODIE Serotonin as a mediator of reserpine action in brain *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1956b 116 84-89
- PLETSCHER A and K F GEY Drug induced alterations of the metabolism of cerebral monoamines *Monoamines et système nerveux central* Geneva 1962 p 105-115
- QUTN G P, B B BRODIE and P A SHORE Drug induced release of norepinephrine in cat brain *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1958 122 63A
- RANGAPPA K S Cryoscopic effect of separation and concentration of solutes *Nature (Lond)* 1961 191 1087-1088
- RENOU J Excretion urinaire d'acide 5 hydroxyindolacétique chez le Mammifère irradié  
*J Physiol (Paris)* 1960 52 208-209
- REYNOLDS A H and L O RANDALL *Morphine and allied drugs* University of Toronto Press Toronto 1957
- RICHARDSON J A, E F WOODS A H, RICHARDSON Elevations in plasma catecholamines following morphine *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1958 122 64A
- ROOS B E and B WERDINIS Effect of reserpine on the level of 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid in brain *Life Sciences* 1962 3 105-107
- ROSENCRANZ E Are dihydroxyphenylalanine decarboxylase and 5-hydroxytryptophan decarboxylase identical enzymes? *Acta physiol scand* 1960a 49 364-369
- ROSENCRANZ E On the role of monoamine oxidase for the inactivation of dopamine in brain *Acta physiol scand* 1960b 49 370-375
- SATO H and F OHTANI Action of morphine on the epinephrine output, blood sugar content and blood pressure in dogs *Tohoku J exp Med* 1933 21 411-432
- SCHAPIRO S Effect of a catecholamine blocking agent (dibenzyl ne) on organ content and urine excretion of noradrenaline and adrenaline *Acta physiol scand* 1958 42 371-375
- SCHULMANN O Morphine und morphinähnlich wirkende Verbindungen. *Handbuch d Exp Pharmacol* 1957 12
- SEEVERS M H Opiate addiction in the monkey I Methods of study *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1936 56 147-156
- SEEVERS M H Adaptation to narcotics *Fed Proc* 1954 13 672-684
- SEGAL M and G A DENAL Brain levels of epinephrine (E), norepinephrine (N), dopamine (D) and 5 HT during administration and withdrawal of morphine in monkeys *Fed Proc* 1962 21 327
- SHORE P A and B B BRODIE LSD Like effects elicited by reserpine in rabbits pretreated with iproniazid *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1957 94 433-435
- SHORE P A, J A R. MEAD R C KATZMAN S SPECTOR and B B BRODIE On the physiological significance of monoamine oxidase in brain *Science* 1957 126 1063-1064
- SIBUTA H, K ENDO and G NAGAKURA The increase of epinephrine output under morphine depends upon the integrity of the splanchnic nerves *Tohoku J exp Med* 1949 50 1-6
- SLOAN J A, J EISENMAN J W BROOKS and W R MARTIN Catecholamine and serotonin levels in tissues of morphine addicted rats following abrupt withdrawal  
*Fed Proc* 1962a 21 326 ✓
- SLOAN J J, W BROOKS A J EISENMAN and W R MARTIN Comparison of the effects of single doses of morphine and thebaine on body temperature, activity and brain and heart levels of catecholamines and serotonin *Psychopharmacologia (Berl)* 1962b 3 291-301 ✓
- SOLLMAN T Studies of chronic intoxications on albino rats *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1924 23 449-459
- SOURDIS T L, E F MURPHY H CHAVEZ and M ZIELINSKA The action of some

- LEDG J Catecholamine production and release in exposure and acclimation to cold *Acta physiol scand* 1961 53 Suppl 183
- LEROY, J G and A F de SCHAEFFRYER Urine and catecholamine output in normal and reserpinized dogs *Arch int Pharmacodyn* 1961 130 437—454
- LEWIS C E, The biological actions of vinadum *Arch Industr Health* 1959 20 455—466
- LUND A Fluorimetric determination of adrenaline in blood III A new sensitive and specific method *Acta pharmacol (Kbh)* 1949 5 231—247
- LUND A Simultaneous fluorimetric determinations of adrenaline and noradrenaline in blood *Acta pharmacol (Kbh)* 1950 6 137—146
- MACFARLANE P S G E DALGLIESH R W DUTTON L LENNOX L M NIXON and A N SMITH Endocrine aspects of argentaffinoma with special reference to the use of urinary 5 hydroxyindoleacetic acid estimations in diagnosis *Scot med J* 1956 1 148—155
- ✓ MAGGIOLLO G and F HUIDBORO The influence of some drugs on the abstinence syndrome to morphine in mice *Arch int Pharmacodyn* 1962 138 157—168
- MAYNERT E W G I KLINGMAN Tolerance to morphine I Effects on catecholamines in the brain and adrenal glands *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1962 135 285—295
- MAYNERT E W G I KLINGMAN and H K Kaji Tolerance to morphine II Lack of effects on brain 5 hydroxytryptamine and  $\gamma$  aminobutyric acid *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1962 135 296—299
- MILNERS K N Dealkylation of morphine and nalorphine in the brain of living rats *Nature (Lond)* 1962 195 607
- MONTAGU K A Adrenaline and noradrenaline concentration in rat tissues *Biochem J* 1956 63 559—565
- MONTAGU K A Seasonal variations of noradrenaline and adrenaline concentrations in rat tissues *Nature (Lond)* 1956 178 417—419
- MONTAGU K A Catechol compounds in rat tissues and in brains of different animals *Nature (Lond)* 1957 180 244—245
- MILE S J and L A WOODS Distribution of N-C<sup>14</sup> methyl labeled morphine I In central nervous system of non tolerant and tolerant dogs *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1962 136 232—241
- MYERS H II The effect of chronic morphine poisoning upon growth the oestrus cycle and fertility of the white rat *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1931 41 317—323
- NETTER K J V H CONN and P A SHORE Sex difference in histamine metabolism in the rat *Amer J Physiol* 1961 201 224—226
- OGURI A Quantitative changes of spontaneous activity of rats due to repeated administration and abrupt withdrawal of morphine *Fol pharmacol japon* 1961 57 25—26
- OUTSCHHOORN A ■ The hormones of the adrenal medulla and their release *Brit J Pharmacol* 1952 7 605—615
- PAASONEN M K and M VOOT The effect of drugs on the amounts of substance P and 5 hydroxytryptamine in mammalian brain *J Physiol (Lond)* 1956 131 617—626
- PAROLI E and P MELCHIORRI Urinary excretion of hydroxysteroids 17 ketosteroids and aldosterone in rats during a cycle of treatment with morphine *Biochem pharmacol* 1961 6 1—17
- PERMAN F S Effect of ethanol and hydration on the urinary excretion of adrenaline and noradrenaline and on the blood sugar of rats *Acta physiol scand* 1961 51 68—74
- PLANT O H and I H PIERCE Studies of chronic morphine poisoning in dogs I General symptoms and behavior during addiction and withdrawal *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1928 33 329—357

- WEIL MALHERBE H and A D BONE Effect of reserpine on the intracellular distribution of catecholamines in the brain stem of the rabbit *Nature (Lond)* 1958 181 1474—1476
- WEIL MALHERBE H J AYERBOD and R. TOMCHICK Blood brain barrier for adrenaline *Science* 1959 129 1226—1227
- WEST U B The stability of noradrenaline solutions *J Pharm and Pharmacol* 1957 4 560—565
- WILSON C W M and B H BRODIE The absence of blood brain barrier from certain areas of the central nervous system *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1961 133 330—334
- VOGT M The concentration of sympathin in different parts of the central nervous system under normal conditions and after the administration of drugs *J Physiol (Lond)* 1954 123 451—481
- VOGT M Sympathomimetic amines in the central nervous system *Brit med Bull* 1957 13 166—171
- VOGT M Catecholamines in brain *Pharmacol Rev* 1959 11 483—489
- WOOLLEY D W and E SHAW A biochemical and pharmacological suggestion about certain mental disorders *Proc Natl Acad Sci (Wash)* 1954 40 228—231
- ZELLER E A and J BARSKY In vivo inhibition of liver and brain monoamine oxidase by 1. omicron; 2 isopropyl hydrazine *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1952 81 459—461

a methyl and other amino acids on cerebral catecholamines *J Neurochem* 1961 8 109—115

SPECTOR S R KUNTZMAN P A SIORE and H B BRODIE Evidence for release of brain amines by reserpine in presence of monoamine oxidase inhibitors Implication of monoamine oxidase in norepinephrine metabolism in brain *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1960 130 256—261

SPECTOR S K MELMON and A SJOERDMA Evidence for a rapid turnover of norepinephrine in rat heart and brain *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1962 111 79—81

STEWART G N and J M ROGOFF The action of drugs on the output of epinephrine from the adrenals *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1922 19 59—83

STOIZ F Über Adrenalin und Alkylaminoacetobrenzcatechin *Ber Deutsch Chem Ges* 1904 37 4149—4154

SILSER F and H B BRODIE Is reserpine tranquilization linked to change in brain serotonin or brain norepinephrine? *Science* 1960 131 1440—1441

TACHIKAWA Y Effect of morphine injections on blood sugar and adrenaline in dogs *J Orient Med* 1932 17 521—528

TADA H Effect of morphine upon the blood sugar content of rabbits deprived of either splanchnic nerves or suprarenals *Tohoku J Exp Med* 1932 19 403—410

TAKAYAMA J The isolation of the active principle of the suprarenal gland *J Physiol (Lond)* 1901 27 29P—30P

TAKEKOSHI A E and G J MAYERING Metabolic N and O demethylation of morphine and morphinan type analgesics *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1958 123 171—179

TANABE T and E J CAFRANI Adrenal hypertrophy in rats treated chronically with morphine *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1958 122 148—153

TITUS F and S UDENFRIEND Metabolism of 5 hydroxytryptamine (serotonin) *Fed Proc* 1954 13 411

TONINI G, G MISSERE and M BABBINI Ricerche actografiche ed elettroforetiche sul morfismo nel ratto *Arch ital Sci farmacol* 1959 9 425—456

TRAROG B M and J H PAGE Serotonin content of some mammalian tissues and urine and a method for its determination *Amer J Physiol* 1953 175 157—161

UDENFRIEND S H WEISSBACH and C T CLARK The estimation of 5 hydroxytryptamine (serotonin) in biological tissues *J Biol Chem* 1955 215 337—344

UDENFRIEND S F TITUS and H WEISSBACH The identification of 5 hydroxy 3 in doleacetic acid in normal urine and a method for its assay *J Biol Chem* 1955 216 499—505

UDENFRIEND S, D BOGDANSKI and H WEISSBACH Increase in tissue serotonin by administration of its precursor 5 hydroxytryptophan *Fed Proc* 1956 15 493

UDENFRIEND S H WEISSBACH and D F BOGDANSKI Biochemical findings relating to the action of serotonin *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1957 66 C62—608

UDENFRIEND S Amino metabolism and its pharmacological implications *Neuropharmacology* Transact V's conference Ed Abramson New York 1959

UDENFRIEND S R CONNACHAGER and S M HESS On the mechanism of release of norepinephrine by a methyl in tyrosine and a methyl in tyramine *Biochem Pharmacol* 1961 8 419—424

UDENFRIEND S *Fluorescence assay in biology and medicine* Academic Press New York and London 1962

WADA M H TANAKA T HIRANO and Y TANIGUCHI The effect of morphine administration upon the output rate of epinephrine blood sugar level and blood pressure in normal and tolerant dogs *Tohoku J exp Med* 1938 34 52—71

WEEKS J A Experimental morphine addiction Method for automatic intravenous injections in unrestrained rat *Science* 1962 138 143—144

WELSH J H 5-Hydroxytryptamine a neurohormone in the invertebrates *Fed Proc* 1954 13 162—163









TRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAGET THULÉ  
STOCKHOLM 1969

ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

*Vol 58 Supplementum 206*

FROM THE LABORATORIES OF AVIATION AND NAVAL MEDICINE

DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY

KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET

STOCKHOLM SWEDEN

TIME-COURSES OF CHANGES IN  
VENTILATION AND ARTERIAL GAS  
TENSIONS IN MAN INDUCED  
BY MODERATE EXERCISE

BY

GEORG MATELL

STOCKHOLM 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

*Vol 58 Supplementum 206*

FROM THE LABORATORIES OF AVIATION AND NAVAL MEDICINE

DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY

KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET

STOCKHOLM SWEDEN

TIME-COURSES OF CHANGES IN  
VENTILATION AND ARTERIAL GAS  
TENSIONS IN MAN INDUCED  
BY MODERATE EXERCISE

BY

GEORG MATELL

STOCKHOLM 1963





*/*  
**ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA**

**VOL. 58 SUPPLEMENTUM 206**

**TIME-COURSES OF CHANGES IN  
VENTILATION AND ARTERIAL GAS  
TENSIONS IN MAN INDUCED  
BY MODERATE EXERCISE**

**BY**

**GEORG MATELL**

**STOCKHOLM 1963**



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

*Vol 58 Supplementum 206*

FROM THE LABORATORIES OF AVIATION AND NAVAL MEDICINE

DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY

KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET

STOCKHOLM SWEDEN

TIME-COURSES OF CHANGES IN  
VENTILATION AND ARTERIAL GAS  
TENSIONS IN MAN INDUCED  
BY MODERATE EXERCISE

BY

GEORG MATELL

STOCKHOLM 1963

Stockholm 1963

Kungl. Boktryckeriet P. A. Norstedt & Söner

# CONTENTS

I	PREFACE	5
II	INTRODUCTION	6
	List of Symbols and Abbreviations	7
III	BACAGROUND	8
	Effects of Exercise on Arterial Blood Gases and Acid Base Balance	8
	Interaction of Humoral and Non Humoral Stimuli in the Hyperpnea of Exercise	9
IV	PROBLEMS	13
V	METHODS	14
	Techniques	15
	Laboratory Methods	16
	Calculations	16
	Subjects and Experimental Procedure	17
VI	RESULTS	19
	Introductory Observations	19
	End Tidal $P_{CO_2}$ as a Measure of Arterial $P_{CO_2}$ during Exercise	19
	Effects of Artificially Induced Shifts in the Acid Base Balance on Oxygen Uptake Heart Rate and Blood Bicarbonate	24
	Effects of Acid Base Displacements on the $\Delta V_{O_2}/\Delta [H^+]$ and $\Delta V_{O_2}/\Delta P_{CO_2}$ Slopes Resulting from $CO_2$ Inhalation	24
	Time Courses of Ventilatory and Blood Chemical Responses to Constant Load Exercise	28
	Analysis of Ventilatory Changes at the Start and Cessation of Exercise	34
	Increments in $\dot{V}$ Arterial $[H^+]$ and $P_{CO_2}$ during $CO_2$ Inhalation and during Exercise and Recovery	36
VII	DISCUSSION	38
	The Transition from Rest to Exercise and from Exercise to Rest	38
	The Role of Chemoreflexes during Exercise and Recovery	41
	Interrelationships of Ventilation and Arterial $[H^+]$ and $P_{CO_2}$ during Exercise and Recovery	43
VIII	SUMMARY	46
IX	REFERENCES	48



# I PREFACE

The present investigation is part of a research project dealing with the influences of various stress factors on the pulmonary gas exchange and on the control of respiration. The experimental part of the investigation was carried out in 1961.

It is a pleasure to record my gratitude to Professor U S v EULER, Head of the Department of Physiology I, who originally introduced me to the physiology of respiration and evoked my interest in this field of research. I also wish to convey my sincere thanks to Drs H BJURSTEDT and C M HEYER, who have been my teachers since I joined their research groups in 1958 and who have generously placed the facilities of their laboratories at my disposal.

Finally, I would like to express my heartfelt thanks to members of the laboratory staff whose never failing interest and collaboration made the experiments possible, and to J BRUNAR M K, who assisted in the processing of the experimental data.

Stockholm April 1963

GEORG MATELL

## II INTRODUCTION

Seventy five years have passed since GEPPERT and ZUNTZ in 1888 published their classical studies on the mechanisms involved in the hyperpnea of exercise. The wealth of literature available to day on this engrossing subject has undoubtedly increased our knowledge of the numerous factors and influences which have to be considered. In spite of the efforts devoted to elucidating the nature of exercise hyperpnea, and the greatly increased interest prompted during recent years by the development of new tools for its study, many basic questions pertinent to the basic problem still remain unsettled.

The present investigation is a study of certain dynamic characteristics of ventilatory and blood chemical changes in man resulting from moderate, constant load, dynamic exercise. On the whole, information is lacking as to the interrelations between the time courses of ventilation and arterial  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  tensions during constant load exercise and subsequent recovery. In the present work continuous and simultaneous recordings of  $\dot{V}_E$ , pulmonary ventilation and arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH have been used to permit a study of the above mentioned interrelationships and of the interdependence of ventilation and blood chemical changes. The study has been devoted especially to the changes at the transitions from rest to work and from work to rest, since such changes were expected to be more informative than those observed in the steady state of ventilation.

In order to judge, if possible, the relative importance of the  $H^+ CO_2$  complex, and of its components, in eliciting and maintaining exercise hyperpnea, the changes resulting from a given work load were also compared with those observed during  $CO_2$  inhalation and after the bicarbonate content of blood had been artificially changed by ingestion of ammonium chloride and sodium bicarbonate respectively.



# List of Symbols and Abbreviations

## Primary Symbols

- V Gas volume in general  
 $\dot{V}$  Gas volume per unit time  
P Pressure in general including partial pressure  
S Oxygen saturation of hemoglobin per cent  
F Fractional concentration in dry gas phase

## Suffixes

(a) Gas phase

- I Inspired gas  
A Alveolar gas  
E Expired gas  
T Tidal gas

(b) Blood phase

- a Arterial  
v Venous

The above symbols are those of the Atlantic City Convention (PAPPEVHNER *et al* 1950)

## Some Other Symbols

- STPD Standard temperature and pressure dry (0°C, 760 mm Hg)  
BTPS Body temperature and pressure saturated with water vapor  
BHCO<sub>3s</sub> The plasma bicarbonate content (mM/l) of blood under standard conditions  
i.e. at 37°C pH 7.4 and saturated with oxygen  
NB Normal BHCO<sub>3s</sub>  
HB High BHCO<sub>3s</sub>  
LB Low BHCO<sub>3s</sub>  
BSA Body surface area m<sup>2</sup>

Other symbols are defined in the text as they occur

Gas volumes are expressed in liters at the true volumes in the body (BTPS) except  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  and  $\dot{V}_{CO}$  which are expressed in l/min STPD  $\dot{V}_T$  is expressed in liters BTPS/min/m BSA except when otherwise stated Gas tensions are given in mm Hg at actual body temperature

1 kpm = normal gravitational force on 1 kg

1 kpm/min = 0.163 W = 7.32 ft lb/min

## II INTRODUCTION

Seventy five years have passed since GEPPERT and ZUNTZ in 1888 published their classical studies on the mechanisms involved in the hyperpnea of exercise. The wealth of literature available to day on this engrossing subject has undoubtedly increased our knowledge of the numerous factors and influences which have to be considered. In spite of the efforts devoted to elucidating the nature of exercise hyperpnea, and the greatly increased interest prompted during recent years by the development of new tools for its study, many basic questions pertinent to the basic problem still remain unsettled.

The present investigation is a study of certain dynamic characteristics of ventilatory and blood chemical changes in man resulting from moderate, constant load, dynamic exercise. On the whole, information is lacking as to the interrelations between the time courses of ventilation and arterial  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  tensions during constant load exercise and subsequent recovery. In the present work continuous and simultaneous recordings of  $\dot{V}_E$ , pulmonary ventilation and arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH have been used to permit a study of the above mentioned interrelationships and of the interdependence of ventilation and blood chemical changes. The study has been devoted especially to the changes at the transitions from rest to work and from work to rest, since such changes were expected to be more informative than those observed in the steady state of ventilation.

In order to judge, if possible, the relative importance of the  $H^+ CO_2$  complex, and of its components, in eliciting and maintaining exercise hyperpnea, the changes resulting from a given work load were also compared with those observed during  $CO_2$  inhalation and after the bicarbonate content of blood had been artificially changed by ingestion of ammonium chloride and sodium bicarbonate, respectively.

BARR, HORWICH and GREY demonstrated an increased acidity of the arterial blood during exercise. In recent years with the advent of refined measuring techniques for blood pH several investigators have confirmed the occurrence of acidemia during exercise: spot sampling techniques were used almost exclusively. The bulk of evidence is in favour of a slight shift towards acidosis during moderate exercise (GALSTON and WOLLACK 1947, HICMAN *et al* 1951, FILLEY, GREGOIRE and WRIGHT 1954, BARTELS *et al* 1955, AASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1958, BARR *et al* 1963) the shift being more marked during heavy and exhausting work (MITCHELL, SPROULE and CHAPMAN 1958, HOLMGREN and LINDERHOLM 1958, LAMBERTSEN *et al* 1959).

Opinions also differ with respect to the effects on the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ . An increase during submaximal work has been reported by LILIENTHAL *et al* (1946), FILLEY *et al* (1954), BARTELS *et al* (1955) whereas SUSKIND *et al* (1950) observed a fall in the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ . Direct determinations of the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  have generally shown rather small changes during exercise although there is less agreement as to the direction of the changes. Thus a rise was observed by BARTELS *et al* (1955) and LAMBERTSEN *et al* (1959) while LILIENTHAL *et al* (1946), SUSKIND *et al* (1950), FILLEY *et al* (1954), HOLMGREN and LINDERHOLM (1958) have reported a fall in the arterial  $P_{O_2}$ . AASMUSSEN and NIELSEN (1958) and MITCHELL *et al* (1958) found no significant change in the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  during exercise. For exhausting exercise HOLMGREN and LINDERHOLM (1958) reported an impressive fall in the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  (22 mm Hg).

There are as yet relatively few investigations in which alveolar or arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  and  $P_{O_2}$  or arterial pH have been followed by means of consecutive or continuous measurements during the course of exercise. RASTIN and OTIS (1949) who plotted the alveolar tensions as a function of time on the  $CO_2$ ,  $O_2$  diagram observed an initial lowering of the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and an increase in the alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ . SUSKIND *et al* (1950) described a similar initial course for the arterial gas tensions. BARR *et al* (1963) studied the time courses of blood gas changes during moderate constant load exercise in man using techniques for continuous and simultaneous recordings of arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH. Quantitative ventilatory measurements were avoided in order not to interfere with the normal respiratory pattern. After an initial drop during the first 1-5 min of exercise the calculated arterial  $P_{O_2}$  increased by about 5 mm Hg to reach a plateau in the 3rd-6th min of exercise. The arterial pH was lowered by about 0.04 units. It was noted that the arterial gas tensions and pH remained unchanged during the first half minute of exercise and recovery.

#### *Interaction of Humoral and Non-Humoral Stimuli in the Hyperpnea of Exercise*

**Ventilatory responses to the  $H^+$ ,  $CO_2$  complex.** It is a well known fact that in resting man the ventilatory response to changes in the arterial  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  as produced by inhalation of  $CO_2$  is characteristically linear over a certain range of arterial  $[H^+]$  or  $P_{CO_2}$  values (cf. LAMBERTSEN *et al* 1953, SCHAFER

### III BACKGROUND

As an introduction to the problems dealt with in the present work, a short survey of certain earlier investigations will first be given on changes in arterial blood gas levels during exercise. Subsequently, other investigations will be reviewed which pertain to the interaction of humoral and non humoral stimuli involved in exercise hyperpnea. The text is not intended to supply a detailed account of the numerous investigations dealing with these topics. For the sake of clarity only such contributions are included which were considered essential for the framing of the problems.

The current interest in topics dealing with the mechanisms underlying the hyperpnea of exercise is reflected in several excellent reviews which have appeared during the last few years. For a more detailed analysis of the various aspects of the hyperpnea of exercise the reader may consult the recent reviews presented by DEJOURS (1959 and 1962), and by LAMBERTSEN (1961) and by several authors in 'The Regulation of Human Respiration' (Proceedings of the J. S. Haldane Centenary Meeting in Oxford 1961) and in the British Medical Bulletin (January 1963).

#### *Effects of Exercise on Arterial Blood Gases and Acid Base Balance*

Numerous attempts have been made to evaluate the roles of the known blood borne respiratory stimuli in the initiation and maintenance of exercise hyperpnea. The majority of these investigations have been focussed on changes in the arterial blood, as judged either by analysis of alveolar gas or by direct determination of blood gases and acid base balance following 'spot sampling' of arterial blood.

A perusal of the results obtained by use of the above mentioned methods makes it evident that there is a lack of agreement as to the magnitude and direction of deviations in alveolar or arterial gas tensions resulting from exercise. Thus, in submaximal work several investigators have found an increase in the alveolar  $P_{CO}$  (HALDANE and PRIESTLEY 1905, DOUGLAS and HALDANE 1912, ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1946, SUSKIND *et al* 1950, BANNISTER *et al* 1954) whereas others have observed a fall (*cf* COMROE 1944). A rise in the arterial  $P_{CO}$  was observed by SUSKIND *et al* (1950) and HICKAM *et al* (1951). BARTELS *et al* (1955) reported a fall in the arterial  $P_{CO}$ , whereas other authors have found only slight fluctuations within the normal range of variation (LILIENTHAL *et al* 1946, FILLEY *et al* 1954, ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1958, HOLMGREN and LINDERHOLM 1958).

Direct determinations of the arterial pH during exercise have yielded more consistent results. Already in 1923 ARBORELIUS and LILJESTRAND as well as

BARR HIMWICH and GREEN demonstrated an increased acidity of the arterial blood during exercise. In recent years with the advent of refined measuring techniques for blood pH several investigators have confirmed the occurrence of acidemia during exercise: spot sampling techniques were used almost exclusively. The bulk of evidence is in favour of a slight shift towards acidosis during moderate exercise (GALDSTON and WOLLACK 1947, HICKAM *et al* 1951, FILLEY, GREGOIRE and WRIGHT 1954, BARTELS *et al* 1955, ASVUSSEN and NIELSEN 1958, BARR *et al* 1963) the shift being more marked during heavy and exhausting work (MITCHELL, SPROULE and CHAPMAN 1958, HOLMGREN and LINDERHOLM 1958, LAMBERTSEN *et al* 1959).

Opinions also differ with respect to the effects on the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ . An increase during submaximal work has been reported by LILIENTHAL *et al* (1946), FILLEY *et al* (1954), BARTELS *et al* (1955) whereas SUSKIND *et al* (1950) observed a fall in the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$ . Direct determinations of the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  have generally shown rather small changes during exercise although there is less agreement as to the direction of the changes. Thus a rise was observed by BARTELS *et al* (1955) and LAMBERTSEN *et al* (1959) while LILIENTHAL *et al* (1946), SUSKIND *et al* (1950), FILLEY *et al* (1954), HOLMGREN and LINDERHOLM (1958) have reported a fall in the arterial  $P_{O_2}$ . ASVUSSEN and NIELSEN (1958) and MITCHELL *et al* (1958) found no significant change in the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  during exercise. For exhausting exercise: HOLMGREN and LINDERHOLM (1958) reported an impressive fall in the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  (22 mm Hg).

There are as yet relatively few investigations in which alveolar or arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  and  $P_{O_2}$  or arterial pH have been followed by means of consecutive or continuous measurements during the course of exercise. RAHN and OTIS (1949) who plotted the alveolar tensions as a function of time on the  $CO_2$ ,  $O_2$  diagram observed an initial lowering of the alveolar  $P_{O_2}$  and an increase in the alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ . SUSKIND *et al* (1950) described a similar initial course for the arterial gas tensions. BARR *et al* (1963) studied the time courses of blood gas changes during moderate constant load exercise in man using techniques for continuous and simultaneous recordings of arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH. Quantitative ventilatory measurements were avoided in order not to interfere with the normal respiratory pattern. After an initial drop during the first 1-3 min of exercise the calculated arterial  $P_{O_2}$  increased by about 5 mm Hg to reach a plateau in the 3rd-6th min of exercise. The arterial pH was lowered by about 0.04 units. It was noted that the arterial gas tensions and pH remained unchanged during the first half minute of exercise and recovery.

#### *Interaction of Humoral and Non-Humoral Stimuli in the Hyperpnea of Exercise*

**Ventilatory responses to the  $H^+$ - $CO_2$  complex.** It is a well known fact that in resting man the ventilatory response to changes in the arterial  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  as produced by inhalation of  $CO_2$  is characteristically linear over a certain range of arterial  $[H^+]$  or  $P_{CO_2}$  values (*cf* LAMBERTSEN *et al* 1953, SCHAEFER

1958) The slope of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve, as well as its transposition to the left or right in acid base displacements have been studied extensively by several investigators (NIELSEN 1936b, NIELSEN and SMITH 1951, ALEXANDER *et al* 1955, LERCHE *et al* 1959, CUNNINGHAM *et al* 1961) That the resting  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve becomes steeper under the influence of hypoxia has been shown by NIELSEN and SMITH (1951) and by many others (*cf* LLOYD 1963) although KELLOG *et al* (1957) found the slope to be unchanged in acclimatized subjects

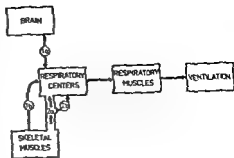
The ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  inhalation has also been investigated during exercise and found to be the same as at rest During exercise, however, the rectilinear part of the stimulus response curve is displaced to the left of the resting curve (NIELSEN 1936b, CRAIG 1955, NIELSEN and ASMUSSEN 1963), the more so the higher the work intensity (ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1957) NIELSEN and ASMUSSEN (1963) have demonstrated evidence for the existence of a  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold during exercise, which must be surpassed before ventilation is stimulated by  $\text{CO}_2$ .

Information is scanty as to the effects of metabolic acid base displacements on the ventilatory response to exercise HALDANE in 1921 noted severe panting during exercise under ammonium chloride acidosis DENNIG *et al* (1930) observed, in one subject, an increased ventilatory response to exercise after ingestion of ammonium chloride, and conversely, a slightly diminished ventilatory response during alkalosis REFSUM (1961) observed, also in one subject, an enormous ventilation in one minute exercise tests after ingestion of ammonium chloride In the mentioned investigations the magnitude of the acid base displacements was considerable however

It is of special interest to consider what the ventilation of a resting man would be if his blood had the same acid base composition as would occur during exercise It would then be possible to quantitatively express the non humoral drive in exercise hyperpnea by subtracting the chemically accountable ventilation from that actually measured during exercise This approach has been used by CUNNINGHAM (1963) Such calculations showed that the average changes reported to occur in the  $\text{H}^+ \text{CO}_2$  complex in exercise of various severities (assuming the arterial oxygen tension to be the same for rest and exercise) could be expected to yield in the resting subject, a ventilation that would amount to about 60 % of the exercise ventilation It was pointed out that this estimate was based on certain assumptions as to the slope of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve and that the effect of raised body temperature was not included in the calculations

Some features of the combined neuro humoral concept The older notions that a single, dominant mechanism was responsible for the hyperpnea of exercise *e.g.* chemical (HALDANE and PRIESTLEY 1905 WINTERSTEIN 1911 DOUGLAS 1914) or neurogenic (reflex or cortical) have gradually been abandoned in favour of the more recent concept of a multiplicity of regulating factors (for

Fig 1 Schematic representation of factors and pathways involved in the mechanism of exercise hyperpnea (modified from DEJOURS 1959) Overriding control functions (1a) interact with reflex influence originating in the muscles (1b) and with blood borne stimuli (chemical as e.g.  $[H^+]$ ,  $CO_2$ ,  $O_2$ , catecholamines and physical as e.g. body temperature and blood pressure) which either act directly on the respiratory centers (2a) or via peripheral chemo- or baroreflexes (2b)



reviews see COMROE 1914 GRAY 1950 GRODINS 1950 WINTERSTEIN 1955 SCHMIDT 1956 DEJOURS 1959 LAMBERTSEN 1961 CUNY GRAM 1963)

Fig 1 shows postulated nervous pathways along which (1a) overriding control is exerted from higher levels in the brain and (1b) reflex influence from musculoskeletal receptors are mediated. Also represented are the pathways through which blood chemical changes caused by the production of metabolites in the working muscles may influence the activity of the centers. These chemical changes (blood borne stimuli) may exert their action directly via the blood perfusing the centers (2a) or by reflex influence (2b) originating in peripheral chemo- or baroreceptors.

That the hyperpnea of exercise cannot be fully explained in terms of the well known stimuli to breathing ( $CO_2$ , blood and tissue acidity and hypoxia) or other known chemical changes related to metabolism has thus long been recognized by different groups of investigators. Certain interrelations between other factors capable of modifying ventilation and some characteristics of exercise hyperpnea are illustrative in this respect.

Thus by using the relatively simple approach of studying the time course of the ventilatory response to exercise it has been possible to draw certain conclusions as to the import of factors other than chemical. This approach was probably first used by KROGH and LINDHARD (1913b) who observed that ventilation rises very quickly at the onset of exercise. They concluded that the initial ventilatory change occurred too rapidly to result from any action of blood borne stimuli on the respiratory center.

The observations of KROGH and LINDHARD have in the main been confirmed by more recent investigations. Thus a sudden onset of light dynamic exercise has been shown to result in an immediate increase in ventilation (ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1948 DEJOURS *et al* 1955a). In its further time course ventilation first remains relatively constant during the 20–30 seconds following the onset of exercise and then shows a secondary increase to a plateau (DEJOURS 1963). With a sudden transition from exercise to rest ventilation again falls abruptly (ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1948 DEJOURS *et al* 1955a) and then

remains essentially constant at a higher than pre exercise level for 20—30 seconds before returning gradually to normal. The sequence of ventilatory changes is characteristic for periods of light to moderate dynamic exercise under constant load.

It is the consensus of opinion that both the initial rise and terminal fall of exercise hyperpnea must be neurogenic in nature ('fast component' of DEJOURS), and that the neurogenic control of ventilation in these phases is at least partially exerted via proprioceptive reflexes from muscles and tendons in the moving limbs (HARRISON, CALHOUN and HARRISON 1932, KAO, SCHLIG and BROOKS 1955, HUTT, HORWATH and SPURR 1958, DEJOURS 1959, DEJOURS, BECHTEL LABROUSSE and RAYNAUD 1961). The rapid ventilatory changes at the start and cessation of exercise have been further investigated on a quantitative basis (for reviews, see DEJOURS 1959 and 1963). In general, the fast component has been found to increase somewhat with increasing work loads and to be greater at the cessation of exercise than at its start.

The slower phases of the changes in ventilation during exercise and recovery have been connected with both cortical control and with reflex and blood borne influences from the working muscles (for reviews, see DEJOURS 1963, KAO 1963, NIELSEN and ASMUSSEN 1963).

Studies of the slow phase of recovery may be rewarding in attempts to distinguish between humoral and non humoral stimuli. By 'autotransfusion of work blood' ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN (1950) obtained evidence that the blood during heavy exercise contained specific substances with a stimulatory effect on ventilation.

In similar experiments DEJOURS, MITHOEFER and TEILLAC (1955b) trapped blood in the legs by inflation of cuffs at the end of light exercise and observed, on release of the cuff pressure during recovery, that hyperpnea occurred sharply after a long delay of 18 seconds: i.e. not before the blood liberated from the occluded limbs had reached the arterial side. Conversely, if cuffs around the thighs were inflated just before exercise ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  about 0.4 l/min) was stopped, ventilation and alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  fell below resting levels, indicating withdrawal of the normal stimulation to respiration in recovery (DEJOURS, MITHOEFER and RAYNAUD 1957b). A final assessment of the relative importance of humoral and non humoral stimuli during exercise and recovery will have to await experimental analysis of the time course of ventilatory and blood chemical changes, as pointed out by TEILLAC and LEFRANÇOIS (1962). With certain assumptions previously mentioned (p. 10) CUNNINGHAM (1963) estimates that hypothetical resting men whose bloods have the same compositions as those of the exercising subjects would, in most cases, have approximately the same ventilations as would be expected a few seconds after the end of exercise, immediately after the completion of the rapid phase of recovery but before change in the composition of the blood in the receptor areas could occur.



## IV PROBLEMS

From the investigations mentioned in the preceding review it is evident that the long standing uncertainty as to the changes in arterial  $P_{CO}$ , pH and  $P_O$  occurring during exercise has been a major source of earlier disagreements as to the possible interdependence of ventilatory and blood chemical responses to exercise. This uncertainty has made it difficult to appraise quantitatively the various neurogenic and chemical factors which may be responsible for e.g. the components postulated by the neuro humoral theory.

1 Recent investigations performed in this laboratory on human subjects by use of continuous recording techniques have shown relatively consistent changes in the arterial blood gases and pH during constant load moderate exercise and ensuing recovery. It became evident that (a) some of the earlier discrepancies may be explained by the observation that the normal oscillations in arterial gas tension levels at rest may be sufficiently great to necessitate caution in drawing conclusions based on results from spot sampling of arterial blood and (b) the arterial pH and  $O_2$  saturation displayed characteristic time courses during the periods of exercise and recovery.

It therefore seemed worthwhile to reinvestigate the interdependence of ventilatory and arterial chemical changes in the different phases of constant load moderate exercise using continuous recording techniques for an analysis of the relations between these changes.

2 The quantitative appraisal of possible chemical and neurogenic stimuli in exercise hyperpnea has also suffered from the lack of consistent data as to the true changes in arterial blood gases and acid base balance. In addition the possible participation of blood borne  $H^+$  and  $CO_2$  in the initiation and maintenance of exercise hyperpnea has been obscured by the scarcity of data relating metabolic ventilatory and blood chemical alterations in a single group of subjects.

Therefore an attempt was made to assess quantitatively the possible stimulating effect of the  $H^+CO_2$  complex in experiments in which the responses of ventilation and arterial  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO}$  to constant load moderate exercise were compared with those observed during inhalation of  $CO_2$  at rest. The study was extended to include an assessment of the  $H^+$  and  $CO_2$  stimuli in both types of hyperpnea after independent changes in their arterial levels by ingestion of ammonium chloride and sodium bicarbonate.

Although the responses in exercise were studied in conditions of normal high and low  $BHCO_3$  it should be stressed that the work was standardized throughout the investigation to 625 kpm/min for 6 min on the bicycle ergometer. The results obtained from the exercise experiments and the discussion of their possible physiological significance can accordingly not be generalized to hold for other work loads or for other types of work.

remains essentially constant at a higher than pre exercise level for 20—30 seconds before returning gradually to normal. The sequence of ventilatory changes is characteristic for periods of light to moderate dynamic exercise under constant load.

It is the consensus of opinion that both the initial rise and terminal fall of exercise hyperpnea must be neurogenic in nature (fast component of DEJOURS), and that the neurogenic control of ventilation in these phases is at least partially exerted via proprioceptive reflexes from muscles and tendons in the moving limbs (HARRISON, CALHOUN and HARRISON 1932, LAO, SCHILIG and BROOKS 1955, HUTT, HORWATH and SPURR 1958, DEJOURS 1959, DEJOURS, BICHTER, LABROUSSE and RAYNAUD 1961). The rapid ventilatory changes at the start and cessation of exercise have been further investigated on a quantitative basis (for reviews, see DEJOURS 1959 and 1963). In general, the fast component has been found to increase somewhat with increasing work loads and to be greater at the cessation of exercise than at its start.

The slower phases of the changes in ventilation during exercise and recovery have been connected with both cortical control and with reflex and blood borne influences from the working muscles (for reviews, see DEJOURS 1963, LAO 1963, NIELSEN and ASMUSSEN 1963).

Studies of the slow phase of recovery may be rewarding in attempts to distinguish between humoral and non humoral stimuli. By 'autotransfusion' of work blood, ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN (1950) obtained evidence that the blood during heavy exercise contained specific substances with a stimulatory effect on ventilation.

In similar experiments, DEJOURS, MITHOEFFER and TEILLAC (1955b) trapped blood in the legs by inflation of cuffs at the end of light exercise and observed, on release of the cuff pressure during recovery, that hyperpnea occurred sharply after a long delay of 18 seconds, i.e. not before the blood liberated from the occluded limbs had reached the arterial side. Conversely, if cuffs around the thighs were inflated just before exercise ( $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  about 0.4 l/min) was stopped, ventilation and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  fell below resting levels, indicating withdrawal of the normal stimulation to respiration in recovery (DEJOURS, MITHOEFFER and RAYNAUD 1957b). A final assessment of the relative importance of humoral and non humoral stimuli during exercise and recovery will have to await experimental analysis of the time course of ventilatory and blood chemical changes as pointed out by TEILLAC and LEFRANÇOIS (1962). With certain assumptions previously mentioned (p. 10), CUNNINGHAM (1963) estimates that hypothetical resting men whose bloods have the same compositions as those of the exercising subjects would in most cases have approximately the same ventilations as would be expected a few seconds after the end of exercise immediately after the completion of the rapid phase of recovery but before change in the composition of the blood in the receptor areas could occur.

## IV PROBLEMS

From the investigations mentioned in the preceding review it is evident that the long standing uncertainty as to the changes in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ , pH and  $P_{O_2}$  occurring during exercise has been a major source of earlier disagreements as to the possible interdependence of ventilatory and blood chemical responses to exercise. This uncertainty has made it difficult to appraise quantitatively the various neurogenic and chemical factors which may be responsible for e.g. the components postulated by the neuro humoral theory.

1 Recent investigations performed in this laboratory on human subjects by use of continuous recording techniques have shown relatively consistent changes in the arterial blood gases and pH during constant load moderate exercise and ensuing recovery. It became evident that (a) some of the earlier discrepancies may be explained by the observation that the normal oscillations in arterial gas tension levels at rest may be sufficiently great to necessitate caution in drawing conclusions based on results from spot sampling of arterial blood and (b) the arterial pH and  $O_2$  saturation displayed characteristic time courses during the periods of exercise and recovery.

It therefore seemed worthwhile to reinvestigate the interdependence of ventilatory and arterial chemical changes in the different phases of constant load moderate exercise using continuous recording techniques for an analysis of the relations between these changes.

2 The quantitative appraisal of possible chemical and neurogenic stimuli in exercise hyperpnea has also suffered from the lack of consistent data as to the true changes in arterial blood gases and acid base balance. In addition the possible participation of blood borne  $H^+$  and  $CO_2$  in the initiation and maintenance of exercise hyperpnea has been obscured by the scarcity of data relating metabolic ventilatory and blood chemical alterations in a single group of subjects.

Therefore an attempt was made to assess quantitatively the possible stimulating effect of the  $H^+$   $CO_2$  complex in experiments in which the responses of ventilation and arterial  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  to constant load moderate exercise were compared with those observed during inhalation of  $CO_2$  at rest. The study was extended to include an assessment of the  $H^+$  and  $CO_2$  stimuli in both types of hyperpnea after independent changes in their arterial levels by ingestion of ammonium chloride and sodium bicarbonate.

Although the responses to exercise were studied in conditions of normal high and low  $BHCO_3$ , it should be stressed that the work was standardized throughout the investigation to 625 kpm/min for 6 min on the bicycle ergometer. The results obtained from the exercise experiments and the discussion of their possible physiological significance can accordingly not be generalized to hold for other work loads or for other types of work.

## V METHODS

The basic feature of the experimental approach was the continuous and simultaneous recording of tidal air and respiratory minute volume as well as arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation and pH during constant load, dynamic exercise and recovery. The ventilatory changes and the simultaneous blood chemical changes were compared with those obtained during CO<sub>2</sub> inhalation. In order to study the effects of changing the buffering capacity of the blood and tissues, the experiments were performed both when buffering capacity was normal ('NB') and after subchronic elevation and lowering of the  $\text{BHCO}_3$ , were artificially induced. These conditions will subsequently be termed *HB* (high  $\text{BHCO}_3$ ) and *LB* (low  $\text{BHCO}_3$ ). The acid base displacements were induced by ingestion of ammonium chloride and sodium bicarbonate (see p. 18) for three days prior to the experiments.

It was decided to use a moderate work load for several reasons. First, with moderate respiratory minute volumes it is possible to keep the breathing resistance of the measuring devices sufficiently low, so that the respiration is not significantly influenced. Second, it seemed desirable to avoid the increasing work of breathing that would accompany an otherwise constant load of heavy exercise (cf. LILJESTRAND 1918, NIELSEN 1936a, McHERROW and OTIS 1956, MARGARIA *et al.* 1960, MARSHALL 1962). Third, it was considered appropriate to avoid accumulation of large amounts of fixed acids in order to maintain as far as possible, the initial acid base condition.

The technique of recording continuously the arterial pH and O<sub>2</sub> saturation involved a loss of blood of about 8 ml per min, i.e. 250 ml for the completion of one experiment. According to GULLBRING *et al.* (1960) this loss would correspond to a decrease in the physical working capacity at pulse rate 170 ( $\text{PWC}_{170}$ ) of about 75 kpm/min. No adverse effects of blood loss of this order of magnitude were observed on heart rate and blood pressure in an earlier investigation, in which the same recording techniques were used during exercise at 400 and 700 kpm/min (BARR *et al.* 1963).

The ventilatory response to CO<sub>2</sub> inhalation is linear over a limited range of CO<sub>2</sub> fractions (for reviews see SCHAEFER 1958, LAUBERTSEN 1961). In the present experiments the CO<sub>2</sub> ventilatory response curves were investigated within this range. Two different CO<sub>2</sub> fractions were used for this purpose, the higher fraction being chosen so as to yield approximately the same  $\dot{V}_1$  in the 9th and 10th minutes as was obtained in exercise during the steady state of ventilation.

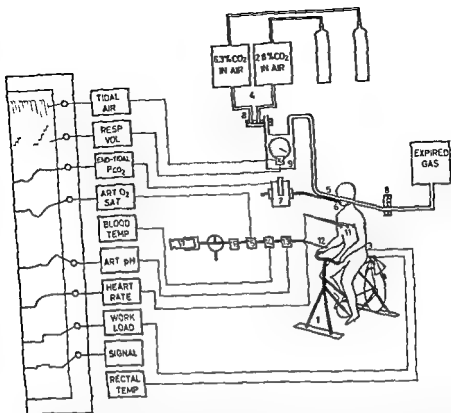


Fig 2 Schematic diagram of experimental set up 1 = bicycle ergometer 2 = braking load 3 = thermistor for rectal temperature 4 = plastic bags for gas mixtures 5 = respiratory mask and mouth piece 6 = end tidal gas sampler 7 = CO analyzer pick up 8 = three way stopcock 9 = gas meter 10 = two-channel photoelectric pulse adding device 11 = electrodes for cardiotachometer 12 = radial artery catheter 13 = pH sensing unit 14 = thermistor 15 = oximeter cuvette 16 = roller pump and 17 = syringe for sampling of arterial blood

### Techniques

The general experimental arrangement is shown in Fig 2. The variables listed below were inscribed continuously and simultaneously on photokymographic records at a paper speed of 1.25 mm/sec.

*Inspired gas volumes* were measured with a standard dry rotary gas meter (Nordgas) equipped with a fast electronic pulse-counting device (Björkstén and Lönn 1960) to permit continuous and accurate recording of tidal volume and respiratory minute volume (staircase curves).

*End tidal  $P_{CO_2}$*  End tidal gas was sampled automatically breath by breath by means of a device described by BRISMAN, HESSER and MATELL (1962) and drawn through a rapid infrared  $CO_2$  analyzer (Beckman Spincor model IB-1) at a constant flow of 100 cc/min. The end tidal sampler was mounted on a low resistance and low dead space breathing valve modified according to v DOBELN (1949). The total external

dead space amounted to 15 ml. The over all external breathing resistance to a flow of 1 l/sec was 2.6 cm H<sub>2</sub>O during inspiration and 0.9 cm H<sub>2</sub>O during expiration. The CO<sub>2</sub> analyzer was calibrated with five known mixtures of CO<sub>2</sub> in air, saturated with water vapor.

pH and O<sub>2</sub> saturation of the arterial blood were recorded by a technique described in detail elsewhere (BARR and BJURSTEDT 1963). Arterial blood was drawn via a Teflon catheter inserted into the radial artery (BARR 1961) through the pH oximeter assembly. The flow of blood was kept constant at a rate of 8 ml/min by means of a roller pump.

The dynamic response of the recording system was adjusted so that a square wave change in arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation and pH at the catheter tip in the radial artery resulted in 90 per cent galvanometer deflection after 6.8 sec for both parameters.

By using a logarithmic amplifier (WIENERHILM 1956) a linear response to changes in arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation was obtained. For each experiment three points on the calibration curve were obtained by equilibrating blood samples from the subject with known gas mixtures at 37° C and by passing these samples through the pH-oximeter sensing units. The galvanometer deflections were recorded and the levels of O<sub>2</sub> saturation calculated from the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958). The drift of the oximeter assembly was virtually nil over the experimental periods. The technique permitted detection of changes in arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation as small as 0.1 %.

Calibration of the pH electrode assembly was performed before and after each experiment using five 1/15 molar phosphate buffers (pH range 7.00–7.60) (the same buffers were used for all the experiments) prepared according to HASTINGS and SENDROY (1924). The drift of the pH electrode assembly was less than 0.001 pH during the experimental period.

The temperature of the blood passing the pH electrode assembly was continuously recorded on an ink writer to permit correction of the arterial pH to actual body temperature using a correction factor of 0.0147 per degree C (ROSENTHAL 1948).

Heart rate was obtained by means of an instantaneous cardi tachometer (STURN and WOOD 1947).

Rectal temperature was followed by use of a thermistor unit.

### Laboratory methods

Expired air was collected in plastic bags. Samples of expired air were withdrawn and stored under mercury for later analysis in duplicate according to SCHOLANDER (1947).

O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> contents of arterial blood having just passed the pH oximeter assembly were measured in duplicate according to VAN SLIKE and NEILL (1924). The maximal difference between duplicates was 0.2 vol %. Corrections were made for syringe dead space.

### Calculations

For calculation of changes in the arterial O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> tensions the recorded intra individual changes in arterial pH and S<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> were first reduced to time averages over half minute periods (first 3 minutes of exercise and first 2 minutes of recovery) and one minute periods (3rd–6th minute of exercise and 2nd–6th minute of recovery). The corresponding arterial O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> tensions were then calculated as follows.

Arterial O<sub>2</sub> tension (P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) (at body temperature) was computed from the values for arterial oxygen saturation, pH<sub>a</sub> and body temperature using the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958).

Table I

Subject	Age (years)	Height (cm)	Weight (kg)	Body surface area (m <sup>2</sup> )	Blood pressure (mm Hg)	
					Supine	Standing
R. H.	22	184	65	1.86	140/90	140/90
J. B.	22	178	75	1.93	130/80	130/80
A. F.	21	174	68	1.82	130/80	130/80
E. T.	22	182	67	1.87	125/80	125/80
B. F.	25	175	61	1.74	105/70	100/70
P. S.	26	190	76	2.02	105/70	105/70
J. F.	23	181	64	1.82	130/90	125/85
M.	23	181	68	1.87	124/80	122/79

From nomogram of DUBOIS and DUBOIS (1916)

Arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  tension ( $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ ) (at body temperature) was computed by means of the HENDERSON-HASSELTBACH equation from values of  $\text{pH}$ , plasma  $\text{CO}_2$  content and serum  $\text{pH}$  for carbonic acid (obtained according to SEVERINGHAUS, STUFFEL and BRADLEY 1956). The solubility coefficient for  $\text{CO}_2$  in plasma was assumed to be 0.57. The plasma  $\text{CO}_2$  content was estimated from whole blood  $\text{CO}_2$  content, the hemoglobin concentration,  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and  $\text{pH}$  of arterial blood using the nomogram of VAN SLAYE and SEVDROY (1928) and due correction factors (see PETERS and VAN SLAYE 1931 p. 939).  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  values thus obtained were transformed to body temperature according to BRADLEY, STUFFEL and SEVERINGHAUS (1956).

The same procedure was used to estimate  $\text{BHCO}_3^-$  (the plasma bicarbonate content of blood under standard conditions) at 37 °C and saturated with oxygen.

In this way the  $\text{BHCO}_3^-$  values at rest during  $\text{CO}_2$  breathing and during the 1st and 5th-6th min of exercise were obtained. The  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  values during the course of the exercise period were then calculated as described above, assuming a linear decrease between the two  $\text{BHCO}_3^-$  values obtained during exercise. For the period of recovery the calculation of  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  was based on the assumption that  $\text{BHCO}_3^-$  again increased inversely with the postulated decay of blood lactic acid (with a half time of 15 min) (cf. DILL *et al.* 1935; HENRY and DE MOOR 1950; HUCKABEE 1958).

For the statistical treatment of data current conventions have been used for the calculation of arithmetical mean ( $\bar{M}$ ), standard deviation ( $S.D.$ ) and standard error ( $S.E.$ ).

The statistical significance of differences between means was evaluated by applying the  $t$ -test to the individual differences (cf. FISHER 1948,  $P < 0.01$ ,  $P < 0.1$ ,  $P < 0.5$  denote highly significant, significant and probably significant differences respectively).

#### Subjects and Experimental Procedure

Seven healthy male medical students served as test subjects. The physical characteristics of the subjects are presented in Table I.

Each subject participated in three experiments in which the procedure was the same. One month's interval was allowed for restoration of hemoglobin lost during the preceding experiment.

dead space amounted to 15 ml. The over all external breathing resistance to a flow of 1 l/sec was 2.6 cm H<sub>2</sub>O during inspiration and 0.9 cm H<sub>2</sub>O during expiration. The CO<sub>2</sub> analyzer was calibrated with five known mixtures of CO<sub>2</sub> in air saturated with water vapor.

pH and O<sub>2</sub> saturation of the arterial blood were recorded by a technique described in detail elsewhere (BARR and BJØRSTEDT 1963). Arterial blood was drawn via a Teflon catheter inserted into the radial artery (BARR 1961) through the pH oximeter assembly. The flow of blood was kept constant at a rate of 8 ml/min by means of a roller pump.

The dynamic response of the recording system was adjusted so that a square wave change in arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation and pH at the catheter tip in the radial artery resulted in 90 per cent galvanometer deflection after 6.8 sec, for both parameters.

By using a logarithmic amplifier (WIEDERHOLM 1956) a linear response to changes in arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation was obtained. For each experiment three points on the calibration curve were obtained by equilibrating blood samples from the subject with known gas mixtures at 37° C and by passing these samples through the pH oximeter sensing units. The galvanometer deflections were recorded and the levels of O<sub>2</sub> saturation calculated from the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958). The drift of the oximeter assembly was virtually nil over the experimental periods. The technique permitted detection of changes in arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation as small as 0.1 %.

Calibration of the pH electrode assembly was performed before and after each experiment using five 1/15 molar phosphate buffers (pH range 7.00–7.60) (the same buffers were used for all the experiments) prepared according to HASTINGS and SENDROY (1924). The drift of the pH electrode assembly was less than 0.001 pH during the experimental period.

The temperature of the blood passing the pH electrode assembly was continuously recorded on an ink writer to permit correction of the arterial pH to actual body temperature using a correction factor of 0.0147 per degree C (ROSENTHAL 1948).

Heart rate was obtained by means of an instantaneous cardi tachometer (STURM and WOOD 1947).

Rectal temperature was followed by use of a thermistor unit.

### Laboratory methods

Expired air was collected in plastic bags. Samples of expired air were withdrawn and stored under mercury for later analysis in duplicate according to SCHOLANDER (1947).

O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> contents of arterial blood having just passed the pH oximeter assembly were measured in duplicate according to VAN DYKE and NEILL (1924). The maximal difference between duplicates was 0.2 vol %. Corrections were made for syringe dead space.

### Calculations

For calculation of changes in the arterial O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> tensions the recorded intra individual changes in arterial pH and S<sub>0</sub> were first reduced to time averages over half minute periods (first 3 minutes of exercise and first 2 minutes of recovery) and one minute periods (3rd–6th minute of exercise and 2nd–6th minute of recovery). The corresponding arterial O<sub>2</sub> and CO<sub>2</sub> tensions were then calculated as follows.

Arterial O<sub>2</sub> tension (P<sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub>) (at body temperature) was computed from the values for arterial oxygen saturation, pH<sub>a</sub> and body temperature using the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958).



## VI RESULTS

### Introductory Observations

Before describing the time courses obtained for ventilation and for various blood chemical parameters it seems appropriate to communicate other relevant observations which were made during the course of the investigation. These concern (1) the validity of end tidal  $P_{CO}$  as a measure of the arterial  $P_{CO}$  in exercise (2) the effects of artificially induced shifts in the acid base balance on blood  $BHCO_{35}$  and on metabolic rate and heart rate and (3) the ventilatory and blood chemical responses to inhalation of  $CO_2$  which will subsequently be compared with those obtaining in exercise and recovery.

#### *End tidal $P_{CO}$ as a Measure of Arterial $P_{CO}$ during Exercise*

End tidal gas is generally considered representative of mean alveolar air in the resting supine position. During motionless standing end tidal  $P_{CO}$  becomes lower than the mean arterial  $P_{CO}$  (ULMER and REICHEL 1961 BJURSTEDT *et al* 1962). Normal gravity thus produces shifts in the ventilation perfusion ratios within the subdivisions of the lung and an alveolar dead space develops secondary to impaired perfusion of apical regions (*cf* RILEY *et al* 1959).

It seems reasonable to expect that sitting on the bicycle at rest would also produce a measurable alveolar dead space effect. That such is the case was borne out by the present experiments in which an average arterial to end tidal  $CO_2$  difference of 2.2 mm Hg was obtained. This difference is somewhat lower than that observed by BJURSTEDT *et al* in motionless standing (2.8 mm Hg).

If  $CO_2$  is added to the inspired air the diluting effect of the alveolar dead space ventilation on the expired alveolar air will be diminished. In the present investigation this was demonstrated by the fact that the arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO}$  difference decreased to practically zero when the subjects sitting quietly on the bicycle inhaled a mixture of 2.8%  $CO_2$  in air. When 6.3%  $CO_2$  in air was administered the end tidal  $P_{CO}$  increased by an average of 15.4 mm Hg whereas the average increase in mean arterial  $P_{CO}$  amounted to 12.3 mm Hg. As a result of the larger increase in end tidal  $P_{CO}$  the arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO}$  difference became negative (-0.9 mm Hg on an average). It is thus evident that the changes in arterial  $P_{CO}$  induced by  $CO_2$  breathing would be overestimated if assessed from the changes in end tidal  $P_{CO}$  in the sitting or erect position.

During exercise the arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO}$  difference was also reversed. This negative difference was larger than during inhalation of 6.3%  $CO_2$ , averaging -3.1 mm Hg at the end of exercise. The increase in end tidal  $P_{CO}$  during the course of exercise averaged 8.4 mm Hg but the concomitant change

In two of these experiments the subject's acid base balance had been altered by ingestion of ammonium chloride and sodium bicarbonate, respectively. Either compound was administered orally for three days the daily dosage being 2.5 meq/kg body weight divided in four doses. The last dose was given in the morning a few hours before the experiment was begun. The average daily dose of ammonium chloride was 9.1 g, the average total dose being 27.0 g. The average daily dose of sodium bicarbonate was 14.4 g the average total dose being 42.4 g. The sequence of experiments was rotated among the subjects.

Four to five days before each experiment the subject's health and physical characteristics were assessed. The subject was then made thoroughly familiar with the course and various phases of the experiment.

All experiments were performed in the morning the subject having previously had a light breakfast. The Teflon catheter was introduced percutaneously into the right radial artery under light infiltration anesthesia (BARR 1961). The catheter caused no pain or other inconvenience to the subject who could move his wrist freely with the catheter in position. The subject rested in the supine position for half an hour and was given 150 mg Heparin (Vitrum) intravenously to prevent clotting in the pH oximeter sensing unit during the ensuing experiment.

The subject then sat up on the bicycle. The cardi tachometer electrodes were taped to his chest and the mouth piece was placed in position. Finally the radial artery catheter was connected with the pH oximeter recording system. The first part of the experiment was devoted to assessing the responses to inhalation of  $\text{CO}_2$  while the subject rested on the bicycle. For this purpose two different gas mixtures saturated with water vapor were inhaled from plastic Douglas bags, continuously being supplied from large gas cylinders (cf. Fig. 2). The composition of the gas mixtures were the same throughout the investigation and the  $\text{PCO}_2$  of the inhaled air was checked at each experiment. The subject first inhaled a mixture of 2.8 %  $\text{CO}_2$  in air for 10 min and was then switched over to a mixture of 6.3 %  $\text{CO}_2$  in air for another 10 min.

The subject then rested for 30 minutes in the supine position breathing air. He then was again seated on the bicycle for the second part of the experiment the exercise test. He first remained at rest for 10–15 min in the sitting position. He was not told when to start working more than a few seconds in advance. The subject breathing air (relative humidity 50 %) then pedalled the bicycle for 6 minutes at 50 rpm with a work load of 625 kpm/min and then rested for 6 min while still seated on the bicycle.

Sampling of expired gas and of arterial blood for analysis (see Laboratory methods p. 16) was performed during the 9th–10th min on each gas mixture in the  $\text{CO}_2$  test during a 3 min period at rest and during the last 2 min of exercise. Blood samples for analysis of  $\text{CO}_2$  content were also drawn during the first minute of exercise.

On completion of the experiment the subject rested supinely for about 20–30 min during which period the radial artery catheter was pulled out and the wrist bandaged. His physical working capacity at pulse rate 170 ( $\text{PWC}_{170}$ ) was then determined according to SJOSTRAND (1947) and WAILUND (1948).

Barometric pressure averaged 756 mm Hg (range 748–763 mm Hg). The room temperature of the laboratory was kept within 1 °C and averaged 24.4 °C the relative humidity being about 50 %.

## Introductory Observations

Before describing the time courses obtained for ventilation and for various blood chemical parameters it seems appropriate to communicate other relevant observations which were made during the course of the investigation. These concern (1) the validity of end tidal  $P_{CO}$  as a measure of the arterial  $P_{CO}$  in exercise (2) the effects of artificially induced shifts in the acid base balance on blood  $BHCO_{2.5}$  and on metabolic rate and heart rate and (3) the ventilatory and blood chemical responses to inhalation of  $CO_2$  which will subsequently be compared with those obtaining in exercise and recovery.

*End tidal  $P_{CO}$  as a Measure of Arterial  $P_{CO}$  during Exercise*

End tidal gas is generally considered representative of mean alveolar air in the resting supine position. During motionless standing end tidal  $P_{CO}$  becomes lower than the mean arterial  $P_{CO}$  (ULMER and REICHEL 1961 BJURSTEDT *et al* 1962). Normal gravity thus produces shifts in the ventilation perfusion ratios within the subdivisions of the lung and an alveolar dead space develops secondary to impaired perfusion of apical regions (*cf* RILEY *et al* 1959).

It seems reasonable to expect that sitting on the bicycle at rest would also produce a measurable alveolar dead space effect. That such is the case was borne out by the present experiments in which an average arterial to end tidal  $CO_2$  difference of 2.2 mm Hg was obtained. This difference is somewhat lower than that observed by BJURSTEDT *et al* in motionless standing (2.8 mm Hg).

If  $CO_2$  is added to the inspired air the diluting effect of the alveolar dead space ventilation on the expired alveolar air will be diminished. In the present investigation this was demonstrated by the fact that the arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO}$  difference decreased to practically zero when the subjects sitting quietly on the bicycle inhaled a mixture of 2.8%  $CO_2$  in air. When 6.3%  $CO_2$  in air was administered the end tidal  $P_{CO}$  increased by an average of 15.4 mm Hg whereas the average increase in mean arterial  $P_{CO}$  amounted to 12.3 mm Hg. As a result of the larger increase in end tidal  $P_{CO}$  the arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO}$  difference became negative (-0.9 mm Hg on an average). It is thus evident that the changes in arterial  $P_{CO}$  induced by  $CO_2$  breathing would be overestimated if assessed from the changes in end tidal  $P_{CO}$  in the sitting or erect position.

During exercise the arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO}$  difference was also reversed. This "negative" difference was larger than during inhalation of 6.3%  $CO_2$  averaging -3.1 mm Hg at the end of exercise. The increase in end tidal  $P_{CO}$  during the course of exercise averaged 8.4 mm Hg but the concomitant change

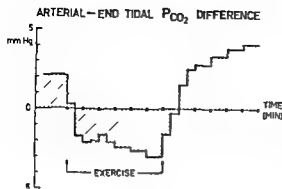


Fig 3 The arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  difference during rest exercise (625 kpm/min for 6 min) and recovery. Data obtained from continuous recordings (from 16 experiments in 7 subjects) have been reduced into group means of individual time averages determined over the first six 30-sec periods in exercise and over the first four 30-sec periods in recovery. Other time averages refer to 60-sec periods.

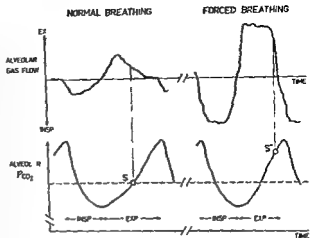
in arterial blood  $P_{CO_2}$  was only 3.1 mm Hg. The time course of the observed mean changes in arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  difference during exercise and recovery is depicted graphically in Fig 3. The reversal of the gradient occurred at the beginning of exercise, during recovery the gradient returned to the pre exercise resting value within 2 min.

It is evident then that even breath by breath recordings of end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  do not give a true picture of the dynamic changes in  $P_{A_{CO_2}}$  resulting from exercise. This observation is in agreement with the statement of KROGH and LINDHARD (1913a) that the direct method of determining the composition of the alveolar air from samples taken at the end of inspiration and expiration becomes untrustworthy during muscular work.

Direct determinations during exercise of both end tidal (end expiratory) and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  in the same individuals have been made by only a few investigators. SUSKIND *et al* (1950) concluded that, on the whole, end tidal and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  changed in a more or less parallel fashion during exercise. In their Table 2, however, it can be seen that the arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  difference was +2.1 mm Hg at rest, and -1.8 mm Hg during exercise ( $V_O = 0.596$  l/min<sup>2</sup>). In a study on the respiratory dead space during exercise ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN (1956) found that during exercise with large tidal volumes (work load 360-1,080 kpm/min) the  $P_{CO_2}$  of end expiratory samples was higher than that of simultaneously drawn arterial blood samples.

The observation of a reversed  $P_{CO_2}$  difference during forced breathing as during  $CO_2$  inhalation and exercise may be explained as follows. The end tidal sampler used in this investigation (BRISMAN, HESLER and MATTEI 1962) as well as that described by RAHN *et al* (1946) automatically delivers a small sample from a portion of expired air just beyond the expiratory valve. The small amount of gas sampled leaves the alveolar compartment within a very short period of time during expiration and its composition relative to the mean alveolar air will thus be dependent both on the moment of sampling and on the concomitant slope of the alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  curve (cf Fig 4) (cf RAHN 1955).

Fig 4 Schematic representation of time-courses of alveolar gas flow and  $P_{CO_2}$  during a respiratory cycle for normal and forced breathing. Hatched areas represent the portion of alveolar gas that fills the dead space at the end of an expiration (including dead space of valve). In normal breathing the  $P_{CO_2}$  of the end tidal sample (S') approximates that of mean alveolar air. In forced breathing the end tidal sample (S) is drawn close to the end of expiration and will thus yield an end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  that is higher than the mean alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ .



The moment of sampling will in turn be dependent on the dead space/tidal volume ratio as well as on the flow pattern during expiration. This is schematically illustrated in Fig 4. The upper part of the figure shows the rate of flow of the alveolar gas as it leaves the alveolar compartment. The lower part of the figure shows the time course of  $P_{ACO_2}$  during a respiratory cycle and its mean value.

During *quiet breathing* the midpoint of the period of sampling (S') falls near the middle of the time interval between minimal and maximal values of  $P_{ACO_2}$ . During *forced breathing* induced e.g. by  $CO_2$  breathing or exercise the pattern of gas flow from the alveolar compartment *versus* time will be changed (TIRSO 1935, CALV and OTIS 1949) so that the time required to fill the dead space with alveolar gas at the end of expiration will be much shorter than during quiet breathing. This is the same as saying that the  $CO_2$  molecules arriving beyond the expiratory valve at the end of the expiration have travelled more rapidly through the dead space. Hence, the interval between the time during which these molecules left the alveolar compartment (S) and the time for maximal  $P_{ACO_2}$  must be shortened. The final result will then be that the end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  becomes higher than the arterial or mean alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  approximating the maximal alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  occurring during the respiratory cycle.

The slope of the alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  curve during expiration is another factor that determines the magnitude of the difference between end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  and mean  $P_{ACO_2}$ . This difference will be intimately related to the magnitude of the cyclic variations of alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  within the respiratory cycle. DEANIS, BRITT and FENN (1932) have described the theoretically expected variations at rest on which the left part of the diagram in Fig 4 is based. During exercise much larger variations do occur as has been theoretically predicted by YAMA

Table II Oxygen uptake, heart rate, standard bicarbonate and respiratory quotient at rest and Conditions NB = normal HB = high  $\text{BHCO}_3\text{St}$  LB = low  $\text{BHCO}_3\text{St}$

	Oxygen uptake (l STPD/min)			Heart rate (beats/min)		
	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise <sup>2</sup>	Difference Exercise— Rest	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise <sup>2</sup>	Difference Exercise— Rest
NB						
M ± S.E.	311 ± 011	1587 ± 044	+ 1275 ± 037	78 ± 4	131 ± 5	+53 ± 4
S.D.	030	115	099	11	13	12
P			< 001			< 001
HB—NB						
M ± S.E.	- 014 ± 017	+ 015 ± 084	+ 030 ± 074	-8 ± 5	-4 ± 6	+5 ± 6
P	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05
LB—NB						
M ± S.E.	+ 009 ± 016	+ 032 ± 034	+ 023 ± 028	+7 ± 3	+5 ± 5	-2 ± 3
P	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05

<sup>1</sup> Mean value over 3 min

<sup>2</sup> Mean of 5th and 6th min after onset of exercise

MOTO (1960) BUHLMANN (1961) has measured the increasing variations in the expired  $P_{\text{CO}}$  during exhausting exercise, and points out the difficulties in assessing the composition of the mean alveolar air during heavy exercise. In the present investigation the arterial to end tidal  $P_{\text{CO}}$  difference amounted to -3.1 mm Hg in the steady state of ventilation during exercise. The tidal and respiratory minute volumes were about the same as in experiments with inhalation of 6.3%  $\text{CO}_2$  (cf. above). Hence, the displacement in time of the alveolar gas sampling ( $S'$ ) would be approximately the same in the exercise and  $\text{CO}_2$  experiments. It may be inferred then that the larger part of the negative arterial to end tidal  $P_{\text{CO}}$  difference during exercise would be due to the increasing variations in  $P_{\text{ACO}}$  within the respiratory cycle.

Theoretical calculations, similar to those of YAMAMOTO (cf. above) have been performed in this investigation using the measured values for ventilation and gas exchange, and assuming the measured end tidal  $P_{\text{CO}}$  to be an approximation of the maximal  $P_{\text{CO}}$  during the respiratory cycle in forced breathing. The calculated difference between mean alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}}$  and the end tidal

during exercise ( $n = 7$  except when otherwise indicated)

Standard bicarbonate (mM/l)			Respiratory quotient		
Rest	Exercise <sup>a</sup>	Difference Exercise— Rest	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise	Difference Exercise— Rest
16.04	24.17	- 1.87	.777	.892	+ .114
± .65	± .87	± .33	± .006	± .073	± .071
1.71	2.29	.88	.015	.060	.055
		< .01			< .01
+ 3.36	+ 2.65	- .71	+ .003	+ .009	+ .005
± .36	± .40	± .28	± .022	± .017	± .019
< .001	< .001	< .05	> .05	> .05	> .05
- 9.51	- 9.52	- .02	- .001	- .019	- .018
± 1.13	± 1.33	± .40	± .015	± .017	± .028
< .001	< .001	> .05	> .05	> .05	> .05

<sup>a</sup> Plasma bicarbonate content of blood under standard condition  $\pm$  s.e. at 37°C, pH 7.40 and saturated with oxygen.  
 $n = 6$

$P_{CO_2}$  was found to be in good agreement with the directly measured arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  difference during inhalation of 6.3%  $CO_2$ , the measured difference was - 0.9 mm Hg and the calculated difference - 1.0 mm Hg. During exercise the measured difference was - 3.1 mm Hg and the calculated difference - 4.6 mm Hg.

It may be said in conclusion that the present observation of a negative arterial to end tidal  $CO_2$  difference during exercise and during inhalation of  $CO_2$ , necessitates caution when attempting to estimate the level of the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  (or mean alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ ) from measurements of the  $P_{CO_2}$  of end tidal samples. This is even more the case in the transition from normal quiet breathing when a positive arterial to end tidal  $CO_2$  difference exists because of an appreciable alveolar dead space. This is one reason why in the present studies of time related changes in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  during exercise and recovery reliance was placed on  $P_{aCO_2}$  values calculated from the arterial pH recordings rather than on end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  recordings.

Table II Oxygen uptake, heart rate, standard bicarbonate and respiratory quotient at rest and Conditions NB = normal, HB = high  $\text{BHCO}_3$ , LB = low  $\text{BHCO}_3$

	Oxygen uptake (l STPD/min)			Heart rate (beats/min)		
	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise <sup>2</sup>	Difference Exercise— Rest	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise <sup>2</sup>	Difference Exercise— Rest
NB						
M ± S.E.	311 ± 011	1587 ± 044	+ 1275 ± 037	78 ± 4	131 ± 5	+53 ± 4
S.D.	030	115	099	11	13	12
P			< 001			< 001
HB — NB						
M ± S.E.	- 014 ± 017	+ 015 ± 084	+ 030 ± 074	-8 ± 5	-4 ± 6	+5 ± 6
P	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05
LB — NB						
M ± S.E.	+ 009 ± 016	+ 032 ± 034	+ 023 ± 028	+7 ± 3	+5 ± 5	-2 ± 3
P	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05	> 05

<sup>1</sup> Mean value over 3 min

<sup>2</sup> Mean of 5th and 6th min after onset of exercise

MOTO (1960) BÜHLMANN (1961) has measured the increasing variations in the expired  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  during exhausting exercise and points out the difficulties in assessing the composition of the mean alveolar air during heavy exercise. In the present investigation the arterial to end tidal  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  difference amounted to -3.1 mm Hg in the steady state of ventilation during exercise. The tidal and respiratory minute volumes were about the same as in experiments with inhalation of 6.3%  $\text{CO}_2$  (cf. above). Hence, the displacement in time of the alveolar gas sampling (S) would be approximately the same in the exercise and  $\text{CO}_2$  experiments. It may be inferred then that the larger part of the negative arterial to end tidal  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  difference during exercise would be due to the increasing variations in  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  within the respiratory cycle.

Theoretical calculations similar to those of YAMAMOTO (cf. above) have been performed in this investigation using the measured values for ventilation and gas exchange and assuming the measured end tidal  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  to be an approximation of the maximal  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  during the respiratory cycle in forced breathing. The calculated difference between mean alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and the end tidal



during exercise ( $n = 7$  except when otherwise indicated)

Standard bicarbonate (mM/l)			Respiratory quotient		
Rest	Exercise*	Difference Exercise— Rest	Rest	Exercise*	Difference Exercise— Rest
26.04 ± .65 1.71	24.17 ± .87 2.29	-1.87 ± .33 88 < .01	.777 ± .006 0.15	.897 ± .023 0.60	+ .114 ± .071 0.55 < .01
+ 3.36 ± .36 < .001	+ 2.65 ± .40 < .001	- .71 ± .28 < .05	+ .003 ± .072 > .05	+ .009 ± .017 > .05	+ .005 ± .019 > .05
- 9.51 ± 1.13 < .001	- 9.32 ± 1.33 < .001	- .19 ± .40 > .05	- .001 ± .015 > .05	- .019 ± .017 > .05	- .018 ± .078 > .05

Plasma bicarbonate content of blood under standard conditions at 37°C, pH 7.40 and saturated with oxygen.  
 $n = 6$

$P_c$  was found to be in good agreement with the directly measured arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  difference during inhalation of 6.3%  $CO_2$  the measured difference was -0.9 mm Hg and the calculated difference -1.0 mm Hg. During exercise the measured difference was -3.1 mm Hg and the calculated difference -4.6 mm Hg.

It may be said in conclusion that the present observation of a negative arterial to end tidal  $CO_2$  difference during exercise and during inhalation of  $CO_2$  necessitates caution when attempting to estimate the level of the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  (or mean alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ ) from measurements of the  $P_{CO_2}$  of end tidal samples. This is even more the case in the transition from normal quiet breathing when a positive arterial to end tidal  $CO_2$  difference exists because of an appreciable alveolar dead space. This is one reason why in the present studies of time related changes in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  during exercise and recovery, reliance was placed on  $P_{ACO_2}$  values calculated from the arterial pH recordings rather than on end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  recordings.

### *Effects of Artificially Induced Shifts in the Acid Base Balance on Oxygen Uptake, Heart Rate and Blood Bicarbonate*

The work load was kept the same throughout the investigation in order to make possible a comparison between the ventilatory and blood chemical responses to exercise in conditions where shifts in the acid base balance had been artificially induced. An account will be given below of the effects on the oxygen uptake, heart rate, standard bicarbonate and respiratory quotient observed in conditions of normal, high and low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$ , here termed 'NB', 'HB' and 'LB', respectively. The changes observed are summarized in Table II.

**Oxygen uptake** The deviations observed in  $\text{O}_2$  uptake at rest in LB and HB were small and statistically insignificant. During the 5th—6th min of exercise the  $\text{O}_2$  uptake had risen to an average of about 1.6 l/min. No significant differences were found between the three conditions. This was the case also for the increases in  $\text{O}_2$  uptake as expressed per  $\text{m}^2$  body surface.

**Heart rate** At rest, the differences between NB and HB and between NB and LB were not statistically significant. The difference between HB and LB, however, was significant (not shown in Table II). By contrast, the increases in heart rate during exercise above resting values were similar in the three conditions.

**Blood Bicarbonate** The shift in  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$  (expressed in mM/l) observed at rest after ingestion of ammonium chloride was more than twice that obtained after ingestion of equivalent amounts of sodium bicarbonate. During exercise a certain amount of lactic acid was presumably produced (cf. HUCKABEE 1958, HOLMÖREN and STROM 1959), which caused a reduction of the  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$  in all three conditions. These reductions were statistically significant. The decrease was slightly larger in HB than in LB and NB. The  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$  was also determined during the first minute of exercise. The average decrease during the first minute in all three conditions was 0.34 mM/l ( $P < 0.001$ ).

From the data presented above it can be concluded that the period of exercise (625 kpm/min for 6 min) involved about the same load in conditions NB, HB and LB. It is probable, however, that if the  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$  shifts had been more pronounced, an impairment in working performance would have resulted (cf. the experiments of DENNIG *et al.* (1930) and RERSUM (1961)).

### *Effects of Acid Base Displacements on the $\Delta V_1/\Delta[H^+]_a$ and $\Delta I_1/\Delta P_{\text{CO}_2}$ Slopes Resulting from $\text{CO}_2$ Inhalation*

The results of inhalation of  $\text{CO}_2$  air mixtures at rest in conditions NB, HB and LB are summarized in Fig. 5. The oxygen fractions in the inspired air were chosen so as to minimize recorded changes in  $\text{O}_2$  saturation of the arterial blood during the hyperpnea that resulted from inhalation of  $\text{CO}_2$  enriched air. The  $\text{O}_2$  fraction was 0.18 in the gas with the low  $\text{CO}_2$  fraction (0.028) and 0.16 in the gas with the higher  $\text{CO}_2$  fraction (0.063). As can be seen in Tables III

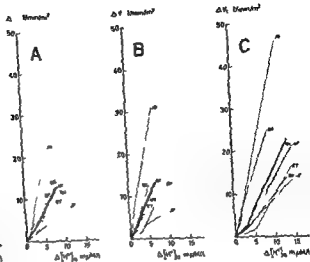
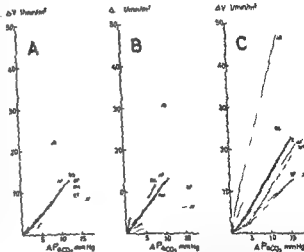


Fig 5 Individual increments (from resting levels) in ventilation plotted against increments in arterial hydrogen ion concentration (upper 3 graphs) and in arterial carbon dioxide tension (lower 3 graphs)

Values were obtained during 9th and 10th min under inhalation of gas mixtures containing 2.8 and 6.3 per cent  $\text{CO}_2$  in air

Dashed lines indicate means of individual  $\Delta V / \Delta [\text{H}^+]$  and  $\Delta V / \Delta P_{\text{aCO}_2}$  slopes (last lines)

A, B and C denote normal, high and low  $\text{BHCO}_3$  respectively



and IV the  $\text{O}_2$  saturation remained almost constant during  $\text{CO}_2$  inhalation, whether studied in the NB, HB or LB conditions. The  $\text{O}_2$  tension however showed greater changes and an increased  $\text{O}_2$  tension was evident during inhalation of 6.3 %  $\text{CO}_2$ .

**$\Delta V / \Delta [\text{H}^+]$  Slopes** (upper graphs in Fig 5) The mean slopes were similar in the three conditions. A closer look at the upper three graphs in Fig 5 reveals that the individual slope was nearly the same in all three conditions although the absolute increments in ventilation and  $[\text{H}^+]$  were greater in HB and more so in LB than in NB. On the average an increase of  $[\text{H}^+]$

### *Effects of Artificially Induced Shifts in the Acid Base Balance on Oxygen Uptake, Heart Rate and Blood Bicarbonate*

The work load was kept the same throughout the investigation in order to make possible a comparison between the ventilatory and blood chemical responses to exercise in conditions where shifts in the acid base balance had been artificially induced. An account will be given below of the effects on the oxygen uptake, heart rate, standard bicarbonate and respiratory quotient observed in conditions of normal, high and low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$ , here termed 'NB', 'HB' and 'LB', respectively. The changes observed are summarized in Table II.

**Oxygen uptake** The deviations observed in  $\text{O}_2$  uptake at rest in LB and HB were small and statistically insignificant. During the 5th–6th min of exercise the  $\text{O}_2$  uptake had risen to an average of about 1.6 l/min. No significant differences were found between the three conditions. This was the case also for the increases in  $\text{O}_2$  uptake as expressed per  $\text{m}^2$  body surface.

**Heart rate** At rest, the differences between NB and HB and between NB and LB were not statistically significant. The difference between HB and LB, however, was significant (not shown in Table II). By contrast, the increases in heart rate during exercise above resting values were similar in the three conditions.

**Blood Bicarbonate** The shift in  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$  (expressed in mM/l) observed at rest after ingestion of ammonium chloride was more than twice that obtained after ingestion of equivalent amounts of sodium bicarbonate. During exercise a certain amount of lactic acid was presumably produced (cf. HUCKABEE 1958, HOLMGREN and STROM 1959), which caused a reduction of the  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$  in all three conditions. These reductions were statistically significant. The decrease was slightly larger in HB than in LB and NB. The  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$  was also determined during the first minute of exercise. The average decrease during the first minute in all three conditions was 0.34 mM/l ( $P < 0.001$ ).

From the data presented above it can be concluded that the period of exercise (625 kpm/min for 6 min) involved about the same load in conditions NB, HB and LB. It is probable, however, that if the  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$  shifts had been more pronounced, an impairment in working performance would have resulted (cf. the experiments of DENNIG *et al.* (1930) and REFSUM (1961)).

### *Effects of Acid Base Displacements on the $\Delta V_I/\Delta[H^+]$ and $\Delta V_I/\Delta P_{\text{CO}_2}$ Slopes Resulting from $\text{CO}_2$ Inhalation*

The results of inhalation of  $\text{CO}_2$  air mixtures at rest in conditions NB, HB and LB are summarized in Fig. 5. The oxygen fractions in the inspired air were chosen so as to minimize recorded changes in  $\text{O}_2$  saturation of the arterial blood during the hyperpnea that resulted from inhalation of  $\text{CO}_2$  enriched air. The  $\text{O}_2$  fraction was 0.18 in the gas with the low  $\text{CO}_2$  fraction (0.020) and 0.16 in the gas with the higher  $\text{CO}_2$  fraction (0.063). As can be seen in Tables III

and 6.3 CO<sub>2</sub> in air)  $n = 7$

[H <sup>+</sup> ] <sup>1.5</sup> (mμV/l)		P <sub>O</sub> <sup>1.5</sup> (mm Hg)		P <sub>CO</sub> <sup>1.5</sup> (mm Hg)	
2.8 CO <sub>2</sub>	6.3 CO	2.8 CO	6.3 CO <sub>2</sub>	2.8 CO	6.3 CO
38.8 ± 6 1.7	45.7 ± 7 1.9	88.8 ± 15 4.0	101.7 ± 2.1 5.4	40.4 ± 1.0 2.7	50.2 ± .8 2.2
36.0 ± 6 1.7	41.5 ± .9 2.3	83.0 ± 1.5 3.3	96.5 ± 2.3 5.9	40.9 ± 1.1 3.0	49.7 ± 1.3 3.3
47.2 ± 1.6 4.2	57.6 ± 1.7 4.5	97.0 ± 2.7 7.1	104.3 ± 3.5 9.2	34.8 ± .6 1.5	47.3 ± .7 1.7
-2.8 ± .5 < .01	-4.1 ± .5 < .001	-5.8 ± 1.6 < .01	-5.2 ± 2.2 > .05	+ .5 ± 1.0 > .05	- .5 ± 1.0 > .05
+ 8.4 ± 1.8 < .01	+ 11.8 ± 1.9 < .001	+ 8.2 ± 4.1 > .05	+ 2.6 ± 5.3 > .05	- 5.6 ± .8 < .001	- 2.9 ± 1.0 < .05

Calculated from O<sub>2</sub>-saturation and pH by use of the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958)  
Computed from the HENDERSON-HASSELBALCH equation

Absolute mean values of the parameters studied in the 9th and 10th min of the CO<sub>2</sub> inhalation experiments are given in Table III

In summary the experiments with CO<sub>2</sub> breathing at two different levels of inhaled P<sub>CO</sub> (2.8 and 6.3 % CO<sub>2</sub> in air) showed that the resulting ventilatory increment as studied in normal high and low BHCO<sub>2.5</sub> was better correlated with the concomitant increment in [H<sup>+</sup>] than with that of P<sub>CO</sub> for the individual as well as for the group

Table III Data obtained in 9th and 10th min of experiments on  $\text{CO}_2$  breathing at rest (28 °). Conditions NB = normal HB = high  $\text{BHCO}_3$ , LB = low  $\text{BHCO}_3$

	$V_I$ (l BTPS/min/m <sup>2</sup> )		$V_T$ (l BTPS/m <sup>2</sup> )		$S_{aO_2}$ (%)	
	28 % $\text{CO}_2$	63 % $\text{CO}_2$	28 % $\text{CO}_2$	63 % $\text{CO}_2$	28 % $\text{CO}_2$	63 % $\text{CO}_2$
<b>NB</b>						
M ± S.E.	6.34 ± 21	17.37 ± 1.71	445 ± 0.22	950 ± 0.74	96.1 ± 1	96.6 ± 1
S.D.	54	4.53	0.59	1.96	3	4
<b>HB</b>						
M ± S.E.	6.15 ± 36	17.08 ± 3.19	471 ± 0.14	1021 ± 0.91	95.9 ± 2	96.6 ± 2
S.D.	95	8.43	0.36	2.42	5	4
<b>LB</b>						
M ± S.E.	7.95 ± 43	27.84 ± 4.16	576 ± 0.43	1357 ± 0.81	96.2 ± 2	96.1 ± 2
S.D.	115	11.0	1.14	2.14	5	6
<b>HB - NB</b>						
M ± S.E.	- 18 ± 39	- 27 ± 1.50	+ 0.26 ± 0.16	+ 0.71 ± 0.23	- 2 ± 2	0 ± 2
P	> 0.5	> 0.5	> 0.5	< 0.5	> 0.5	> 0.5
<b>LB - NB</b>						
M ± S.E.	+ 1.61 ± 41	+ 10.49 ± 2.62	+ 1.31 ± 0.33	+ 4.08 ± 0.38	+ 1 ± 2	- 5 ± 3
P	< 0.1	< 0.1	< 0.1	< 0.01	> 0.5	> 0.5

<sup>1</sup> At body temperature

<sup>2</sup>  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  = hydrogen ion concentration of arterial blood in  $\text{m}\mu\text{M/l}$

35  $\text{m}\mu\text{M/l}$  = pH 7.456 40  $\text{m}\mu\text{M/l}$  = pH 7.398 45  $\text{m}\mu\text{M/l}$  = pH 7.347 50  $\text{m}\mu\text{M/l}$  = pH 7.301

by one  $\text{m}\mu\text{M/l}$  was associated with a ventilatory increase of 2.0  $\text{l/m}^2$  BSA in the three conditions

$\Delta I_1 / \Delta P_{a\text{CO}_2}$  Slopes (lower graphs in Fig. 5) The mean slope was found to be steeper in LB than in the other two conditions. Otherwise it can be seen from the lower graphs in Fig. 5, that the individual slopes show approximately the same sequence in the families of curves for the three conditions. The average ventilatory increase per mm Hg increase in  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  was 1.3  $\text{l/m}^2$  in NB 1.4  $\text{l/m}^2$  in HB and 1.7  $\text{l/m}^2$  in LB.

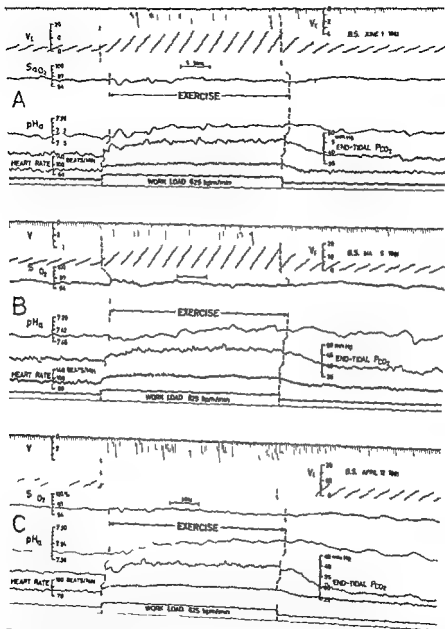


Fig 6 Set of photokymographic recordings of responses in subject BS to constant load exercise (625 kpm/min for 6 minutes) under conditions of normal  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{Na}}$  (A) & high  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{Na}}$  (B) and low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{Na}}$  (C) (length of records = 1/10 of original)  
Dashed lines (not me lines) indicate the delays in the  $\text{SaO}_2$ ,  $\text{pH}_a$  and end tidal  $\text{PCO}_2$  tracings.

## Time-Courses of Ventilatory and Blood Chemical Responses to Constant-Load Exercise

In Fig 7 the time courses of different parameters during constant load, dynamic exercise (625 kpm/min) and recovery are depicted graphically as obtained in the conditions of normal, high and low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{s}}$ . The graphs were based on data gathered from records as exemplified in Fig 6. Absolute values (means) at rest and during exercise are given in Table IV.

*Inspired Minute Volume* At the onset of exercise ventilation increased almost immediately. The initial rise was more rapid in HB and LB than in NB.

The initial rise was followed by a slower secondary increase, which continued until a plateau was attained within 3–4 min. The mean values in the 5th and 6th min (cf Table IV) indicate that the ventilation became significantly greater in LB than in HB or NB, and that the difference between NB and HB was not significant.

At the cessation of exercise there was a sudden fall of ventilation followed by a smooth decay, the shape of which was similar in the three conditions. In the sixth minute of recovery the ventilation was increased less than one liter/ $\text{m}^2$  BSA above its pre-exercise level.

$[\text{H}^+]_a$  Fig 7 shows the time-courses of individual and mean values, which were obtained from the arterial pH recording. During the first minute of exercise  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  remained essentially constant in HB and LB. Subsequently, the general trend was a decrease in all three conditions. The absolute, mean value during the 5th and 6th min of exercise in NB, is given in Table IV.

At the cessation of exercise the mean  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  remained constant or increased somewhat during the first half minute and then decreased at a diminishing rate until the end of the period of recovery when  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  still remained well above resting level.

$\text{S}_{a\text{O}_2}$  and  $\text{P}_{a\text{O}_2}$  In the original recordings the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  was remarkably constant throughout the exercise and recovery. Small but consistent changes could, however, be detected. At the beginning of exercise, the  $\text{S}_{a\text{O}_2}$  first increased somewhat above resting level to a maximum, which was attained after 1 min, then increased again, so that within the 5th and 6th min a plateau was reached (cf Table IV). At the cessation of exercise  $\text{S}_{a\text{O}_2}$  fell for about 30 sec. During recovery  $\text{S}_{a\text{O}_2}$  rose to a maximum above exercise and then declined again. This increase amounted to an average of about 1%.

The time-course of the  $\text{S}_{a\text{O}_2}$  as described above for  $\text{S}_{a\text{O}_2}$  is shown in Fig 7. At the onset of ex-

ercise  
the  
1 -



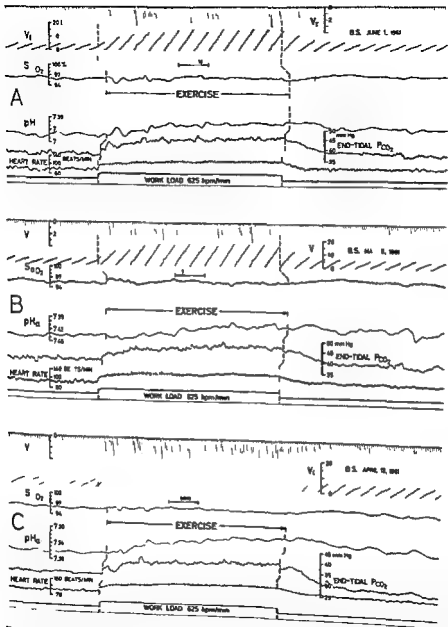


Fig 6 Set of photokymographic recordings of responses in subject BS to constant load exercise (6.75 kpm/min for 6 minutes) under conditions of normal  $\text{BHCO}_3$  (A) high  $\text{BHCO}_3$  (B) and low  $\text{BHCO}_3$  (C) (length of records = 1/10 of original)

Dashed lines (not mentioned) indicate the delays in the  $S_{O_2}$ , pH and end-tidal  $\text{PCO}_2$  tracings

## Time-Courses of Ventilatory and Blood Chemical Responses to Constant-Load Exercise

In Fig 7 the time courses of different parameters during constant load, dynamic exercise (625 kpm/min) and recovery are depicted graphically, as obtained in the conditions of normal, high and low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{s}}$ . The graphs were based on data gathered from records as exemplified in Fig 6. Absolute values (means) at rest and during exercise are given in Table IV.

*Inspired Minute Volume* At the onset of exercise ventilation increased almost immediately. The initial rise was more rapid in HB and LB than in NB.

The initial rise was followed by a slower secondary increase, which continued until a plateau was attained within 3–4 min. The mean values in the 5th and 6th min (cf Table IV) indicate that the ventilation became significantly greater in LB than in HB or NB and that the difference between NB and HB was not significant.

At the cessation of exercise there was a sudden fall of ventilation followed by a smooth decay, the shape of which was similar in the three conditions. In the sixth minute of recovery the ventilation was increased by less than one liter/ $\text{m}^2$  BSA above its pre exercise level.

$[\text{H}^+]_a$  Fig 7 shows the time courses of individual and mean  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  values, which were obtained from the arterial pH recordings. During the first half minute of exercise  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  remained essentially constant in NB as well as in HB and LB. Subsequently, the general trend was towards an acidotic shift in all three conditions. The absolute, mean values for  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  at rest and during the 5th and 6th min of exercise in NB, HB and LB are given in Table IV.

At the cessation of exercise the mean  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  remained essentially constant or increased somewhat during the first half minute in all three conditions, and then decreased at a diminishing rate until the end of the recorded period of recovery when  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  still remained well above the pre exercise level.

$S_{aO_2}$  and  $P_{aO_2}$  In the original recordings, the arterial  $O_2$  saturation remained remarkably constant throughout the exercise and recovery periods (cf Fig 6). Small but consistent changes could, however, be detected. Thus, at the beginning of exercise, the  $S_{aO_2}$  first increased somewhat and then fell below the resting level to a minimum, which was attained after some 60–90 sec.  $S_{aO_2}$  then increased again, so that within the 5th and 6th min the pre exercise level was reached (cf Table IV). At the cessation of exercise  $S_{aO_2}$  remained constant for about 30 sec. During recovery  $S_{aO_2}$  rose to a maximum about 2 minutes after exercise and then declined again. This increase above the resting level amounted to an average of about 1 %.

The time course of the oxygen tension showed the same general pattern as described above for  $S_{aO_2}$ , but the changes were considerably more marked (Fig 7). At the onset of exercise  $P_{aO_2}$  remained unchanged in the first half

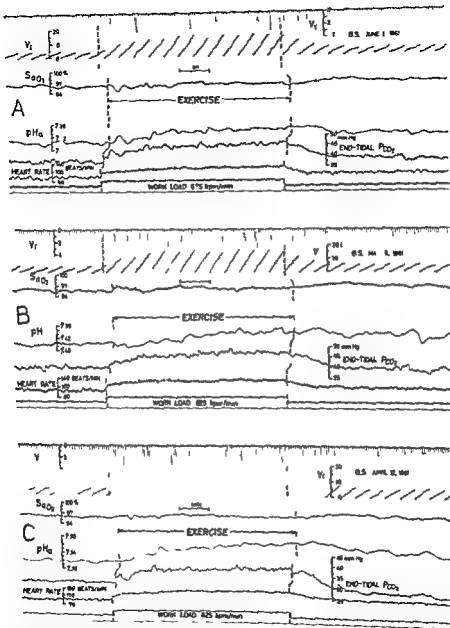


Fig 6 Set of photokymographic recordings of responses in subject BS to constant load exercise (6.5 kpm/min for 6 minutes) under conditions of normal  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{ST}}$  (A), high  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{ST}}$  (B), and low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{ST}}$  (C) (length of records = 1/10 of original)

Dashed lines (isotonic lines) indicate the delays in the  $\text{S}_{\text{aO}_2}$ ,  $\text{pH}_\text{a}$ , and end-tidal  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  tracings

## Time-Courses of Ventilatory and Blood Chemical Responses to Constant-Load Exercise

In Fig 7 the time courses of different parameters during constant load, dynamic exercise (625 kpm/min) and recovery are depicted graphically as obtained in the conditions of normal, high and low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$ . The graphs were based on data gathered from records as exemplified in Fig 6. Absolute values (means) at rest and during exercise are given in Table IV.

*Inspired Minute Volume* At the onset of exercise ventilation increased almost immediately. The initial rise was more rapid in HB and LB than in NB.

The initial rise was followed by a slower secondary increase, which continued until a plateau was attained within 3–4 min. The mean values in the 5th and 6th min (*cf* Table IV) indicate that the ventilation became significantly greater in LB than in HB or NB, and that the difference between NB and HB was not significant.

At the cessation of exercise there was a sudden fall of ventilation followed by a smooth decay, the shape of which was similar in the three conditions. In the sixth minute of recovery the ventilation was increased by less than one liter/ $\text{m}^2$  BSA above its pre exercise level.

$[\text{H}^+]_a$  Fig 7 shows the time courses of individual and mean  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  values, which were obtained from the arterial pH recordings. During the first half minute of exercise  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  remained essentially constant in NB as well as in HB and LB. Subsequently, the general trend was towards an acidotic shift in all three conditions. The absolute, mean values for  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  at rest and during the 5th and 6th min of exercise in NB, HB and LB are given in Table IV.

At the cessation of exercise the mean  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  remained essentially constant or increased somewhat during the first half minute in all three conditions, and then decreased at a diminishing rate until the end of the recorded period of recovery when  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  still remained well above the pre exercise level.

$S_{\text{O}_2}$  and  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  In the original recordings, the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  saturation remained remarkably constant throughout the exercise and recovery periods (*cf* Fig 6). Small but consistent changes could, however, be detected. Thus at the beginning of exercise, the  $S_{\text{O}_2}$  first increased somewhat and then fell below the resting level to a minimum, which was attained after some 60–90 sec.  $S_{\text{O}_2}$  then increased again, so that within the 5th and 6th min the pre exercise level was reached (*cf* Table IV). At the cessation of exercise  $S_{\text{O}_2}$  remained constant for about 30 sec. During recovery  $S_{\text{O}_2}$  rose to a maximum about 2 minutes after exercise and then declined again. This increase above the resting level amounted to an average of about 1 %.

The time course of the oxygen tension showed the same general pattern as described above for  $S_{\text{O}_2}$ , but the changes were considerably more marked (Fig 7). At the onset of exercise  $P_{\text{O}_2}$  remained unchanged in the first half

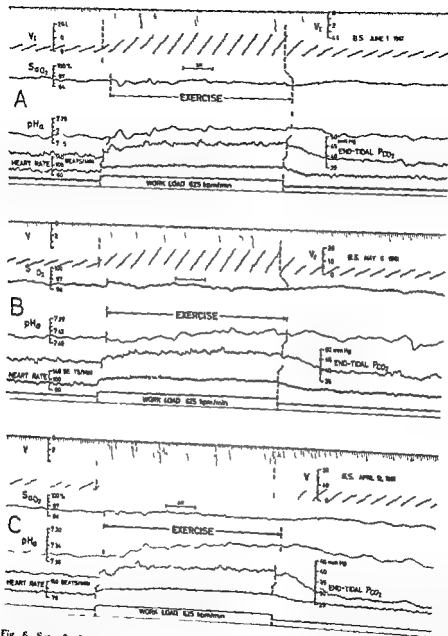


Fig 6 Set of photokymographic recordings of responses in subject BS to constant load exercise (625 kpm/min for 6 minutes) under conditions of normal  $BHCO_{3se}$  (A) high  $BHCO_{3se}$  (B) and low  $BHCO_{3se}$  (C) (length of records = 1/10 of original)

Dashed lines (noting lines) indicate the delays in the  $S_{DO_2}$ ,  $pH_a$  and end-tidal  $PCO_2$  tracings.

## Time-Courses of Ventilatory and Blood Chemical Responses to Constant-Load Exercise

In Fig 7 the time courses of different parameters during constant load, dynamic exercise (625 kpm/min) and recovery are depicted graphically as obtained in the conditions of normal, high and low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{st}}$ . The graphs were based on data gathered from records as exemplified in Fig 6. Absolute values (means) at rest and during exercise are given in Table IV.

*Inspired Minute Volume* At the onset of exercise ventilation increased almost immediately. The initial rise was more rapid in HB and LB than in NB.

The initial rise was followed by a slower secondary increase, which continued until a plateau was attained within 3–4 min. The mean values in the 5th and 6th min (cf Table IV) indicate that the ventilation became significantly greater in LB than in HB or NB, and that the difference between NB and HB was not significant.

At the cessation of exercise there was a sudden fall of ventilation followed by a smooth decay, the shape of which was similar in the three conditions. In the sixth minute of recovery the ventilation was increased by less than one liter/m<sup>2</sup> BSA above its pre exercise level.

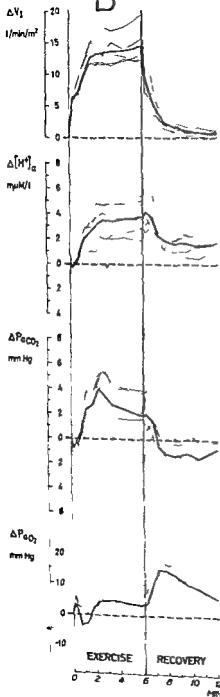
$[\text{H}^+]_a$  Fig 7 shows the time courses of individual and mean  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  values, which were obtained from the arterial pH recordings. During the first half minute of exercise  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  remained essentially constant in NB as well as in HB and LB. Subsequently, the general trend was towards an acidotic shift in all three conditions. The absolute, mean values for  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  at rest and during the 5th and 6th min of exercise in NB, HB and LB are given in Table IV.

At the cessation of exercise the mean  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  remained essentially constant or increased somewhat during the first half minute in all three conditions and then decreased at a diminishing rate until the end of the recorded period of recovery when  $[\text{H}^+]_a$  still remained well above the pre exercise level.

$S_{aO_2}$  and  $P_{aO_2}$  In the original recordings, the arterial  $O_2$  saturation remained remarkably constant throughout the exercise and recovery periods (cf Fig 6). Small but consistent changes could, however, be detected. Thus, at the beginning of exercise, the  $S_{aO_2}$  first increased somewhat and then fell below the resting level to a minimum, which was attained after some 60–90 sec.  $S_{aO_2}$  then increased again, so that within the 5th and 6th min the pre exercise level was reached (cf Table IV). At the cessation of exercise  $S_{aO_2}$  remained constant for about 30 sec. During recovery  $S_{aO_2}$  rose to a maximum about 2 minutes after exercise and then declined again. This increase above the resting level amounted to an average of about 1 %.

The time course of the oxygen tension showed the same general pattern as described above for  $S_{aO_2}$ , but the changes were considerably more marked (Fig 7). At the onset of exercise  $P_{aO_2}$  remained unchanged in the first half

B



C

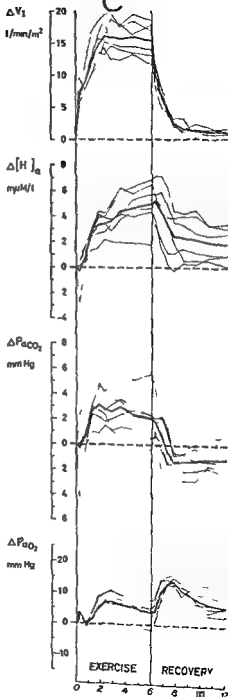
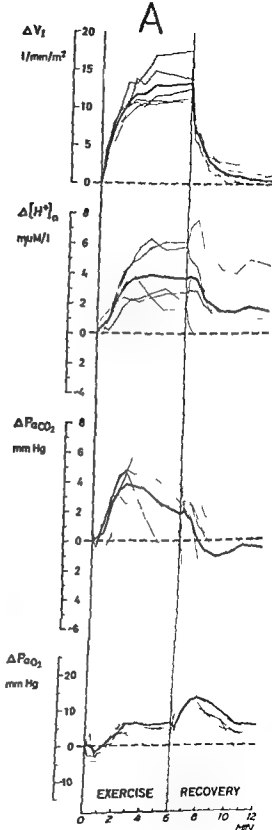


Fig 7 Time courses of deviations from resting values in (from above)  $V_I$  [ $H^+$ ]  $P_{aCO_2}$  and  $P_{aO_2}$  during exercise (625 kpm/min for 6 minutes) and recovery under normal  $BHCO_{3St}$  (A,  $n = 5$ ) high  $BHCO_{3St}$  (B  $n = 5$ ) and low  $BHCO_{3St}$  (C  $n = 6$ )

Heavy lines show means of individual time averages (thin lines) determined over successive 30 sec periods (first 3 min of exercise and first 2 min of recovery) and 60 sec periods (remaining phases of exercise and recovery)

In plotting the time courses for blood chemical changes due allowance has been made for the delays in the recordings (cf Fig 6)





[H <sup>+</sup> ] <sup>3,4</sup> (mM/l)			P <sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> <sup>3,4</sup> (mm Hg)			P <sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> <sup>3,4</sup> (mm Hg)		
Rest	Exercise	Difference— Exercise— Rest	Rest	Exercise	Difference— Exercise— Rest	Rest	Exercise	Difference— Exercise— Rest
373 ± 7 19	413 ± 10 27	+ 40 ± 7 18 < 01	870 ± 18 47	901 ± 24 64	+ 51 ± 19 53 > 05	379 ± 11 29	410 ± 9 24	+ 31 ± 8 21 < 01
347 ± 4 12	383 ± 7 17	+ 38 ± 5 13 < 001	826 ± 19 50	877 ± 23 60	+ 51 ± 19 50 < 05	387 ± 9 25	410 ± 12 30	+ 23 ± 7 18 < 05
412 ± 14 38	498 ± 10 25	+ 56 ± 10 26 < 01	955 ± 15 59	991 ± 25 67	+ 36 ± 15 39 < 05	320 ± 9 24	353 ± 9 25	+ 33 ± 12 32 < 05
- 26 ± 7 < 01	- 27 ± 7 < 01	- 1 ± 2 > 05	- 44 ± 19 > 05	- 44 ± 25 > 05	- 1 ± 17 > 05	+ 8 ± 9 > 05	+ 1 ± 10 > 05	- 8 ± 4 > 05
+ 69 ± 16 < 01	+ 86 ± 14 < 001	+ 17 ± 8 > 05	+ 85 ± 29 < 05	+ 70 ± 37 > 05	+ 15 ± 23 > 05	- 59 ± 6 < 001	- 57 ± 10 < 01	+ 2 ± 11 > 05

[H<sup>+</sup>] = hydrogen ion concentration of arterial blood in mM/l

35 mM/l = pH 7.456    40 mM/l = pH 7.398    45 mM/l = pH 7.347    50 mM/l = pH 7.301

Calculated from O<sub>2</sub> saturation and pH by use of the five charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958)  
Computed from the HENDERSON HASELBALCH equation.

Table II. Data obtained at rest and during exercise ( $n = 7$ )Conditions NB = normal HB = high LB = low  $\text{BHCO}_{3\text{St}}$ 

	$\dot{V}_I$ (l BTPS/min/m <sup>2</sup> )			$\dot{V}_T$ (l BTPS/min)			$S_{aO_2}$ (%)		
	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise <sup>2</sup>	Difference Exercise— Rest	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise <sup>2</sup>	Difference Exercise— Rest	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise <sup>2</sup>	Difference Exercise— Rest
<b>NB</b>									
$M \pm S.E.$	4.33 $\pm 15$	17.19 $\pm 84$	+12.86 $\pm 89$	318 $\pm 020$	943 $\pm 051$	625 $\pm 042$	96.1 $\pm 1$	96.1 $\pm 2$	+1 $\pm 2$
S.D.	39	2.23	2.35	053	1.55	111	2	6	5
P			< 0.01			< 0.01			> 0.05
<b>HB</b>									
$M \pm S.E.$	3.90 $\pm 12$	17.12 $\pm 103$	+13.22 $\pm 97$	315 $\pm 012$	900 $\pm 052$	585 $\pm 053$	95.9 $\pm 2$	96.0 $\pm 2$	+1 $\pm 2$
S.D.	32	2.72	2.56	032	1.38	141	5	6	6
P			< 0.01			< 0.01			> 0.05
<b>LB</b>									
$M \pm S.E.$	5.12 $\pm 36$	20.13 $\pm 87$	+15.00 $\pm 107$	349 $\pm 022$	1033 $\pm 062$	685 $\pm 050$	96.3 $\pm 1$	96.1 $\pm 2$	+2 $\pm 2$
S.D.	95	2.90	2.84	058	1.64	132	3	6	6
P			< 0.01			< 0.01			> 0.05
<b>HB—NB</b>									
$M \pm S.E.$	-43 $\pm 15$	-07 $\pm 68$	+36 $\pm 65$	-003 $\pm 012$	-043 $\pm 065$	-040 $\pm 059$	-1 $\pm 2$	-1 $\pm 2$	0 $\pm 2$
P	< 0.05	> 0.05	> 0.05	> 0.05	> 0.05	> 0.05	> 0.05	> 0.05	> 0.05
<b>LB—NB</b>									
$M \pm S.E.$	+80 $\pm 31$	+2.94 $\pm 62$	+2.14 $\pm 90$	+030 $\pm 030$	+0.90 $\pm 068$	+0.00 $\pm 0.1$	+2 $\pm 2$	0 $\pm 3$	+3 $\pm 2$
P	< 0.05	< 0.01	> 0.05	> 0.05	> 0.05	>			> 0.05

<sup>1</sup> Mean value over 3 min.<sup>2</sup> Mean of 5th–6th min of exercise.<sup>3</sup> At body temperature.

[H <sup>+</sup> ] <sup>2,4</sup> (mM/l)			P <sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> <sup>2,5</sup> (mm Hg)			P <sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> <sup>2,6</sup> (mm Hg)		
Rest	Exercise	Difference Exercise - Rest	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise	Difference Exercise - Rest	Rest <sup>1</sup>	Exercise <sup>2</sup>	Difference Exercise - Rest
373 ± 7 19	413 ± 10 27	+40 ± 7 18 < 01	870 ± 18 47	931 ± 24 64	+51 ± 19 53 < 05	379 ± 11 29	410 ± 9 24	+31 ± 8 21 < 01
347 ± 4 1.2	385 ± 7 17	+38 ± 3 13 < 001	826 ± 19 50	877 ± 23 60	+51 ± 19 50 < 05	387 ± 9 25	410 ± 12 30	+23 ± 7 18 < 05
412 ± 14 38	498 ± 10 25	+56 ± 10 26 < 01	955 ± 15 39	991 ± 25 67	+36 ± 15 39 < 05	320 ± 9 24	353 ± 9 25	+33 ± 12 32 < 05
-26 ± 7 < 01	-27 ± 7 < 01	-1 ± 2 > 05	-44 ± 19 > 05	-44 ± 25 > 05	-1 ± 17 > 05	+8 ± 9 > 05	+1 ± 10 > 05	-8 ± 4 > 05
+69 ± 16 < 01	+86 ± 14 < 001	+17 ± 8 > 05	+85 ± 29 < 05	+70 ± 37 > 05	-15 ± 23 > 05	-59 ± 6 < 001	-57 ± 10 < 01	+2 ± 11 > 05

<sup>2</sup> [H<sup>+</sup>] = hydrogen ion concentration of arterial blood in mM/l  
 35 mM/l = pH 7.40 40 mM/l = pH 7.398 45 mM/l = pH 7.347 50 mM/l = pH 7.301

Calculated from O<sub>2</sub> saturation and pH by use of the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958)  
 Computed from the HENDERSON HASELBALCH equation.

minute, showing a decrease in the second half minute  $P_{aO_2}$  then increased above its pre exercise level and remained 4—5 mm Hg higher than in the pre exercise period. During the first half minute of recovery  $P_{aO_2}$  remained unchanged, and then rose sharply. The rise during recovery was more marked in HB than in NB or LB. After attaining its maximum in the second minute of recovery,  $P_{aO_2}$  again rapidly declined.

$P_{aCO_2}$ : The mean time course of the calculated  $P_{aCO_2}$  approximated that of the arterial  $[H^+]$  at the very beginning of exercise. In their further courses the two variables diverged, however, due to a decrease of the  $BHCO_{3st}$  (cf Calculations p 17). Thus the  $P_{aCO_2}$  reached a peak value in the second and third minutes of exercise, and then declined slowly, as opposed to  $[H^+]_a$  which remained relatively constant after the first 2—3 min of exercise. Although in the 5th and 6th min of exercise  $P_{aCO_2}$  showed a significant increase of about 3 mm Hg in all three conditions (Table IV), there was a rather wide scatter of the individual increments (Fig 7). No relation could be found between the magnitude of increase in  $P_{aCO_2}$  and the working capacity.

In recovery  $P_{aCO_2}$  had a time course similar to  $[H^+]$ . However, due to the diminished buffering capacity,  $P_{aCO_2}$  fell below the pre exercise level although  $[H^+]_a$  remained elevated.

## Analysis of Ventilatory Changes at the Start and Cessation of Exercise

For the first 90 seconds of both exercise and recovery a breath by breath determination of the respiratory minute volume was made from the continuous recordings of the tidal volumes. From estimates of individual values, the group means of the time averages for consecutive 6 sec periods were calculated for the first 42 sec. For the remaining time periods the respiratory minute volume was calculated as time averages over 15 sec periods. The group means have been plotted in Fig 8.

*On Effects* Immediately at the onset of exercise the respiration was increased, and even the very first breath was invariably augmented (cf Fig 6, p 29). This very rapid rise of ventilation in the initial stage nearly doubled the ventilation during the first 6 sec of exercise. The initial rise was larger and more distinct in HB and LB (Fig 8, B and C). In all three conditions the ventilatory increase in the first half minute of exercise corresponded to 40—60 % of the total ventilatory increase in the 5th and 6th min of exercise.

*Off Effects* Immediately at the cessation of exercise there was a sudden decrease in ventilation in all three conditions. The most marked decrease was seen in NB (A). Within the first 2—3 breaths the increase in respiratory minute volume above the resting level was reduced to some two thirds of the increment in the 5th and 6th min of exercise.

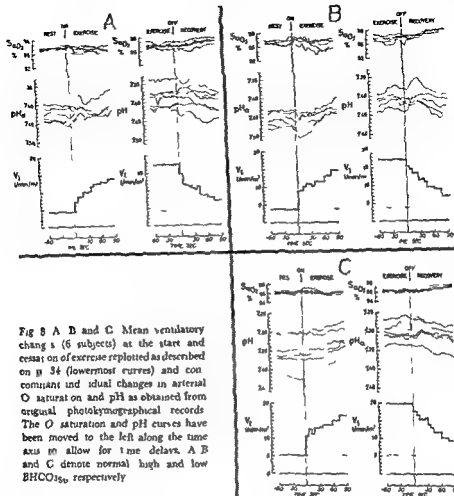


Fig 8 A B and C Mean ventilatory changes (6 subjects) at the start and cessation of exercise replotted as described on p 34 (lowermost curves) and concomitant individual changes in arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH as obtained from original photokymographical records. The  $O_2$  saturation and pH curves have been moved to the left along the time axis to allow for time delays. A B and C denote normal high and low  $BHCO_{30}$  respectively.

After the initial fall there was a stage of a secondary more gradual decrease of ventilation the beginning of which took place some 20 sec after cessation of exercise.

$pH$  and  $S_{O_2}$ . For comparison the original  $S_{O_2}$  and  $pH$  recordings have been replotted on the same coordinates in Fig 8. The recordings were moved to the left along the time axis to allow for inherent time delays.

During the first 20 seconds of exercise and recovery the  $pH_a$  recording showed in general no consistent changes. After about 30 seconds all curves changed in the same direction during exercise in an acid direction in recovery towards the pre-exercise levels.

Some subjects exhibited a peculiar variation in  $\text{pH}_a$  at the onset of exercise, with an alkalotic drop immediately after onset of exercise followed by a transient acid wave. However, the mean level of the individual tracings during the first 30 sec was unchanged or showed a slightly acid shift. The alkalotic drop was especially pronounced in subject JF (lowest pH tracings in Fig 8, B and C).

The individual scatter in  $\dot{S}_{aO_2}$  was very small. The constancy of the individual tracings during the first half minute of exercise and recovery was striking in all three conditions. The slight lowering of  $\dot{S}_{aO_2}$  at the end of the first minute of exercise (p 28) can be especially seen in B and C.

In summary, the analysis of the respiratory changes at the onset and at the cessation of exercise revealed rapid and large changes of  $V_t$  in the initial stages of both exercise and recovery. The magnitude of the changes was considerable, amounting to about 50 per cent of the total ventilatory increment during exercise. No consistent changes occurred in the chemical composition of the arterial blood during these initial changes of ventilation.

### Increments in $V$ , Arterial $[\text{H}^+]$ and $\text{Pco}_2$ during $\text{CO}_2$ Inhalation and during Exercise and Recovery

In the preceding two sections it was shown that pulmonary ventilation during moderate, constant load exercise exhibited an initial rise, followed by a slower secondary increase until a plateau was attained. During recovery, an initial fall occurred, followed by a slower secondary decrease. Furthermore, it was shown that the initial ventilatory changes at the transitions from rest to exercise and from exercise to rest were quite rapid if analyzed on a breath by breath basis. By combining the  $V$  curves of Fig 7 and 8 one arrives at the typical time course of  $V$  showing short lasting plateaus during the very first stages of exercise and recovery before progressing as shown in Fig 7. (The result of this operation is schematically represented by the upper curve in Fig 10 from which the initial fast and secondary slow changes in  $V$  during the periods of exercise and recovery are apparent.)

A close study of the individual response pattern of the arterial pH during the period of exercise revealed a striking similarity to that of  $V$  during what is here referred to as the stage of secondary increase in  $V$  (cf Fig 10). Furthermore, the intra individual relation between the increments in  $V$  and arterial  $[\text{H}^+]$  during this stage seemed to match the individual  $\Delta V_t / \Delta [\text{H}^+]$  slope obtained during  $\text{CO}_2$  inhalation at rest (cf upper graphs in Fig 5). It therefore seemed worthwhile to investigate these relations for the entire group. Fig 9 A shows the mean increments in  $V$  as observed (1) in the stage of secondary increase during exercise ( $\Delta V$  in Fig 10) and (2) during  $\text{CO}_2$  inh.

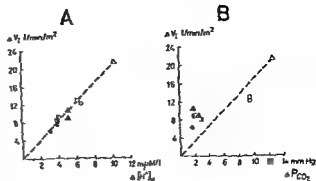
Fig 9 Mean increments in ventilation plotted against those in arterial hydrogen ion concentration (A) and carbon dioxide tension (B) as observed under the following conditions

1 during CO<sub>2</sub> breathing (open symbols) or shifting from 28% CO<sub>2</sub> to 6.3% CO<sub>2</sub> in air (cf Table III absolute values represent time-averages over the 9th and 10th min on each gas mixture)

2 during the stage of secondary increase in exercise (symbols filled on right side)

3 during early recovery (symbols filled on left side)

Circles = normal BHCO<sub>3</sub>, squares = high BHCO<sub>3</sub>, triangles = low BHCO<sub>3</sub>



lation on changing from one CO<sub>2</sub> fraction to another both plotted against the concomitant increments in arterial [H<sup>+</sup>]

The relation between increments in  $\dot{V}$  and arterial [H<sup>+</sup>] was also studied during recovery. As soon as the fast initial fall of ventilation had subsided this relation ( $\Delta \dot{V} / \Delta [H^+]$  in Fig 10) assumed a value that was close to the  $\Delta \dot{V} / \Delta [H^+]$  slope during the stage of secondary increase in exercise and for CO<sub>2</sub> inhalation (cf above). That the mean increments in  $\dot{V}$  and [H<sup>+</sup>] as studied above were well correlated is further demonstrated by the fact that the  $\Delta \dot{V} / \Delta [H^+]$  relationships were found to yield practically the same slope whether studied in the normal high or low BHCO<sub>3</sub> condition (circles squares and triangles in Fig 9). It can be seen from Fig 9 A that a change in the arterial [H<sup>+</sup>] by one unit (1 mM/l) corresponded to a ventilatory change of about 2 l/m<sup>2</sup> body surface.

For comparison all the relations described above have been plotted with arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  substituted for arterial [H<sup>+</sup>] as the abscissa (Fig 9 B). The information contained in Fig 9 A and B indicates that in general, the ventilatory increments during exercise and recovery ( $\Delta \dot{V}$  and  $\Delta \dot{V}'$ ) and CO<sub>2</sub> inhalation under normal as well as under high and low BHCO<sub>3</sub> conditions are better correlated with the concomitant increment in [H<sup>+</sup>] than with that of  $P_{CO_2}$ . Fig 9 also shows that the  $\Delta \dot{V} / \Delta P_{CO_2}$  slope was steeper during exercise and recovery than following inhalation of CO<sub>2</sub>.

Some subjects exhibited a peculiar variation in  $pH_a$  at the onset of exercise, with an alkalotic drop immediately after onset of exercise followed by a transient acid wave. However, the mean level of the individual tracings during the first 30 sec was unchanged or showed a slightly acid shift. The alkalotic drop was especially pronounced in subject JF (lowest pH tracings in Fig. 8, B and C).

The individual scatter in  $S_{aO_2}$  was very small. The constancy of the individual tracings during the first half minute of exercise and recovery was striking in all three conditions. The slight lowering of  $S_{aO_2}$  at the end of the first minute of exercise (p. 28) can be especially seen in B and C.

In summary, the analysis of the respiratory changes at the onset and at the cessation of exercise revealed rapid and large changes of  $V_I$  in the initial stages of both exercise and recovery. The magnitude of the changes was considerable, amounting to about 50 per cent of the total ventilatory increment during exercise. No consistent changes occurred in the chemical composition of the arterial blood during these initial changes of ventilation.

### Increments in $V$ , Arterial $[H^+]$ and $P_{CO_2}$ during $CO_2$ Inhalation and during Exercise and Recovery

In the preceding two sections it was shown that pulmonary ventilation during moderate constant load exercise exhibited an initial rise, followed by a slower secondary increase until a plateau was attained. During recovery, an initial fall occurred, followed by a slower secondary decrease. Furthermore, it was shown that the initial ventilatory changes at the transitions from rest to exercise and from exercise to rest were quite rapid if analyzed on a breath by breath basis. By combining the  $V$  curves of Fig. 7 and 8 one arrives at the typical time course of  $V$  showing short lasting plateaus during the very first stages of exercise and recovery before progressing as shown in Fig. 7. (The result of this operation is schematically represented by the upper curve in Fig. 10 from which the initial fast, and secondary slow changes in  $V$  during the periods of exercise and recovery are apparent.)

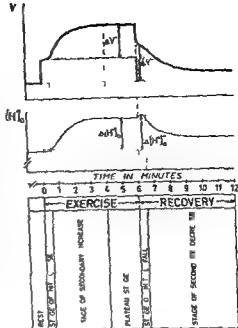
A close study of the individual response pattern of the arterial pH during the period of exercise revealed a striking similarity to that of  $V$  during what is here referred to as the stage of secondary increase in  $V$  (cf. Fig. 10). Furthermore, the intra individual relation between the increments in  $V$  and arterial  $[H^+]$  during this stage seemed to match the individual  $\Delta V_I / \Delta [H^+]_a$  slope obtained during  $CO_2$  inhalation at rest (cf. upper graphs in Fig. 5). It therefore seemed worthwhile to investigate these relations for the entire group. Fig. 9 A shows the mean increments in  $V$  as observed (1) in the stage of secondary increase during exercise ( $\Delta V$  in Fig. 10) and (2) during  $CO_2$  inh.



Fig 10 Basic form of the time-course of ventilation ( $\dot{V}$ ) during exercise and recovery as obtained in the present investigation (heavy line). Also shown schematically is the time-course of arterial  $[H]$  (from arterial pH recordings). The pattern used for the various stages in exercise and recovery refer to the observed changes in  $\dot{V}$ .

$\Delta \dot{V}$  represents the increment of  $\dot{V}$  from its mean value during the stage of initial rise to that in the plateau stage.  $\Delta \dot{V}$  represents the difference between the mean value of  $\dot{V}$  during the stage of initial fall in recovery and its resting level.

Note that the  $\Delta \dot{V} / \Delta [H]$  ratios in the plateau stage were the same as in the stage of initial fall in recovery.



significant changes in these factors do not occur until after the lapse of about 20–30 sec.

The observation that the ventilation at the onset of exercise increases independently of known arterial stimuli confirms the conclusions of BROGH and LINDHARD (1913b), ASHUSSEV and NIELSEN (1948) and DEJOURS (1959). In this connection it should be noted that the dynamic changes in the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  as far as the first 20–30 sec are concerned, have in the past always been estimated indirectly from the measured changes in end-tidal or end-expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$ . The present investigation has demonstrated, however, that end-tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  is only to a limited extent representative of the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  during the various phases of moderate exercise and subsequent recovery. In effect a considerable rise in the end-tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  could be observed at the transition from rest to exercise although the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  still remained unchanged (cf p. 20). Similarly the transition from exercise to rest may show a marked fall in the end-tidal  $P_{CO_2}$ , in the face of an essentially unchanged arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ .

From these observations it can then be concluded that the actual changes in the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  are even less than has earlier been surmised on the basis

## VII DISCUSSION

Some of the more important conclusions that can be drawn from the results of the present investigation rest upon the comparison of ventilatory changes with rather small changes in arterial  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO_2}$ . The validity of the comparisons will accordingly be dependent on the accuracy achieved in the determination of these changes. Even minute errors in the determination of the changes observed in arterial  $[H^+]$  or  $P_{CO_2}$  during exercise will appreciably influence the relations described in the last chapter of the results.

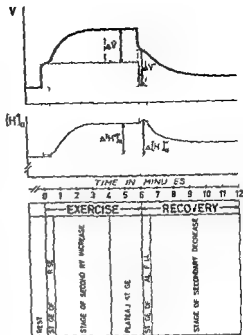
It was therefore considered essential that the intraindividual changes in these parameters should be determined with great accuracy. This requirement was fulfilled by the use of continuous recording techniques for arterial pH and  $S_{O_2}$ , which have been in use for some years in this laboratory. The drift of the recording system was negligible, and the scatter inherent in spot sampling techniques was thus avoided.

In the following discussion the results obtained will be dealt with as they occur in the different stages of the ventilatory response to exercise. The characteristic features of this ventilatory response, which have been schematically illustrated in Fig. 10 (upper tracing), consist of a rapid, almost instantaneous rise of ventilation at the onset of exercise, followed by a more gradual increase to an apparently steady state (ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1948, DEJOURS 1959). At the cessation of exercise there is a sharp drop in ventilation followed by a gradual decrement. In the following discussion the nomenclature indicated in the figure will be used in referring to the different stages of the ventilatory response to exercise.

### The Transition from Rest to Exercise and from Exercise to Rest

*The results of the present investigation clearly demonstrate that the rapid changes in pulmonary ventilation observed at the onset and at the end of the exercise period occurred before any chemical changes in the arterial blood (as recorded or calculated) could have reached central or peripheral chemoreceptors. From the present data, obtained by the use of continuous recording techniques, it seems justified to state that physiologically*

Fig. 10 Basic form of the time-course of ventilation ( $V$ ) during exercise and recovery as obtained in the present investigation (*heavy line*). Also shown schematically is the time course of arterial  $[H^+]$  (from arterial pH recordings). The nomenclature used for the various stages in exercise and recovery refer solely to the observed changes in  $V$ .



$\Delta V$  represents the increment of  $V$  from its mean value during the stage of initial rise to that in the plateau stage.  $\Delta V_{re}$  represents the difference between the mean value of  $V$  during the stage of initial fall in recovery and its resting level.

Note that the  $\Delta V / \Delta [H^+]$  ratios in the plateau stage were the same as in the stage of initial fall in recovery.

significant changes in these factors do not occur until after the lapse of about 20–30 sec.

The observation that the ventilation at the onset of exercise increases independently of known arterial stimuli confirms the conclusions of KROGH and LINDHARD (1913b), ASPLUND and NIELSEN (1948) and DEJOURS (1959). In this connection it should be noted that the dynamic changes in the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  as far as the first 20–30 sec are concerned have in the past always been estimated indirectly from the measured changes in end-tidal or end-expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$ . The present investigation has demonstrated however that end-tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  is only to a limited extent representative of the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  during the various phases of moderate exercise and subsequent recovery. In effect a considerable rise in the end-tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  could be observed at the transition from rest to exercise, although the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  still remained unchanged (cf p. 20). Similarly the transition from exercise to rest may show a marked fall in the end-tidal  $P_{CO_2}$ , in the face of an essentially unchanged arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ .

From these observations it can then be concluded that the actual changes in the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  are even less than has earlier been surmised on the basis

of end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  measurements. Hence, the independence of the initial changes in ventilation with respect to the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  at the transition from rest to exercise and from exercise to rest will be fully revealed only if the latter variable is measured directly.

The relatively long lasting constancy of the arterial gas tensions would imply that the overall ventilation/perfusion ratio of the lung remained constant in early exercise, in spite of the rapid rise in ventilation. This seems to indicate that the rapid ventilatory increase was accompanied by a similar rapid increase of blood flow from the very beginning of exercise. Even a minor phase displacement between the acceleration of circulation and of ventilation would have caused major changes in the composition of the arterial blood.

It thus seems as if the rapid increases in both the circulation and ventilation at the onset of exercise are initiated by neural mechanisms. Because of the close association in time of circulatory and ventilatory changes it is tempting to postulate a common link responsible for the acceleration of both systems, either at the receptor sites, or within the central nervous system. Such a hypothesis does not seem to be incompatible with current knowledge of circulatory adaption to exercise (cf. ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1955).

It has recently been suggested by ARMSTRONG *et al.* (1961) as well as by RILEY (1963) that pulmonary arterial chemoreflexes sensitive to changes in the composition of the mixed venous blood might contribute to the exercise hyperpnea. It appears unlikely, however, that such chemoreflexes should be able to cause an increased ventilatory response within the first seconds of muscular exercise and thus before mixed venous blood of altered composition reaches the pulmonary artery (cf. DEJOURS, MITHOEFER and TEILLAC 1955 b).

The neural stimuli supposed to increase ventilation may be either central or proprioceptive, and evidence has been presented that both types of stimuli may be acting (for review see ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1948, and DEJOURS 1959).

Apart from proprioceptive reflexes, other reflex mechanisms may be involved in the initial stage of ventilatory increase. Hypotension may increase the reflexogenic stimulation to breathing from peripheral arterial baro and chemoreceptors (cf. HEYMANS and NEIL 1958). A contribution of hypotension to the exercise hyperpnea has been suggested by KRAMER and GAUER (1941). An arterial pressure drop at the onset of exercise has been demonstrated in man by HOLMGREN (1956) who reported that the fall began some 3–4 sec after the onset of exercise and lasted for about 15 sec. The fall varied between 0–40 mm Hg, and in most cases the reduction exceeded 10 mm Hg. The findings of HOLMGREN have been confirmed in this laboratory (BARR *et al.* 1963). In view of the fact that the initial rise in ventilation reached its peak before this hypotensive drop occurred it is questionable however if such an influence from peripheral receptors can contribute significantly to the initial rise of ventilation in man.

## The Role of Chemoreflexes during Exercise and Recovery

During moderate exercise there exists a close adjustment of the pulmonary ventilation to the metabolic needs of the body, so that the ventilatory equivalent ( $V_E/V_{O_2}$ ) remains constant. As pointed out by GRODINS (1950) an adequate theory of respiratory control must account for this observed relationship between ventilation and oxygen consumption in addition to qualitatively identifying the stimuli and pathways concerned. In view of this precise adjustment of ventilation to the oxygen needs of the exercising body efforts have logically been made to detect a possible contribution of a hypoxic drive during exercise.

The continuous recording of the oxygen level in the arterial blood revealed a surprising constancy of the arterial oxygen saturation during the course of exercise and recovery. The metabolic alkalosis or acidosis present in conditions HB and LB, respectively, did not change the oxygen saturation significantly although the arterial oxygen tension values were about 4 mm Hg lower in HB and about 8 mm Hg higher in LB than in NB. Otherwise the pattern of the changes in oxygen tension was similar in the three conditions (cf. Fig. 7). The differences in the oxygen tensions in the three conditions and in the course of exercise were balanced by the changes in the arterial blood reaction so that the oxygen saturation remained almost unchanged. The statement by GRODINS cited above on the constancy of the ventilatory equivalent may apparently be extended to include a notable constancy of the oxygen saturation of the arterial blood as being another factor that must be accounted for in any theory concerning the regulation of ventilation during exercise.

The observation that the arterial oxygen tension was somewhat increased rather than decreased in the plateau stage of exercise agrees with recent results obtained by ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN (1958), LAMBERTSEN *et al.* (1959), McILROY and HOLMGREN (1961) and BARR *et al.* (1963). Earlier observations of a fall in  $P_{O_2}$ , especially during heavy exercise (SUSKIND *et al.* 1950, HOLMGREN and LINDERHOLM 1958) might to some extent be explained by the fact that the oxygen tensions were determined at 37°C instead of at the actual body temperature. Another important factor when determining changes in  $P_{O_2}$  is the choice of control level. In the sitting or standing position at rest,  $P_{O_2}$  is a few mm Hg lower than in the supine position due to the effect of posture on the pulmonary gas exchange (cf. ULMER and REICHEL 1961, BJURSTEDT *et al.* 1962). Thus had the control values been obtained with the subjects in the supine position the increase in oxygen tension during exercise would probably have become about half as great as that observed.

The time course of the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  during moderate exercise has been investigated by SUSKIND *et al.* (1950). These authors found the oxygen tension to be significantly lowered in the second and third minutes of exercise but

of end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  measurements. Hence, the independence of the initial changes in ventilation with respect to the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  at the transition from rest to exercise and from exercise to rest will be fully revealed only if the latter variable is measured directly.

The relatively long lasting constancy of the arterial gas tensions would imply that the overall ventilation/perfusion ratio of the lung remained constant in early exercise, in spite of the rapid rise in ventilation. This seems to indicate that the rapid ventilatory increase was accompanied by a similar rapid increase of blood flow from the very beginning of exercise. Even a minor phase displacement between the acceleration of circulation and of ventilation would have caused major changes in the composition of the arterial blood.

It thus seems as if the rapid increases in both the circulation and ventilation at the onset of exercise are initiated by neural mechanisms. Because of the close association in time of circulatory and ventilatory changes it is tempting to postulate a common link responsible for the acceleration of both systems, either at the receptor sites, or within the central nervous system. Such a hypothesis does not seem to be incompatible with current knowledge of circulatory adaption to exercise (cf. ASVUSSEN and NIELSEN 1955).

It has recently been suggested by ARMSTRONG *et al.* (1961) as well as by RILEY (1963) that pulmonary arterial chemoreflexes sensitive to changes in the composition of the mixed venous blood might contribute to the exercise hyperpnea. It appears unlikely, however, that such chemoreflexes should be able to cause an increased ventilatory response within the first seconds of muscular exercise and thus before mixed venous blood of altered composition reaches the pulmonary artery (cf. DEJOURS, MITHOEFFER and TEILLAC 1955 b).

The neural stimuli supposed to increase ventilation may be either central or proprioceptive, and evidence has been presented that both types of stimuli may be acting (for review see ASVUSSEN and NIELSEN 1948 and DEJOURS 1959).

Apart from proprioceptive reflexes other reflex mechanisms may be involved in the initial stage of ventilatory increase. Hypotension may increase the reflexogenic stimulation to breathing from peripheral arterial baro and chemoreceptors (cf. HEYMAN and NEIL 1958). A contribution of hypotension to the exercise hyperpnea has been suggested by KRAMER and GAUER (1941). An arterial pressure drop at the onset of exercise has been demonstrated in man by HOLMGREN (1956) who reported that the fall began some 3–4 sec after the onset of exercise and lasted for about 15 sec. The fall varied between 0–40 mm Hg and in most cases the reduction exceeded 10 mm Hg. The findings of HOLMGREN have been confirmed in this laboratory (BARR *et al.* 1963). In view of the fact that the initial rise in ventilation reached its peak before this hypotensive drop occurred it is questionable however if such an influence from peripheral receptors can contribute significantly to the initial rise of ventilation in man.

(ELLER, LILJESTRAND and ZOTTERMAN 1939) EULER and LILJESTRAND (1946) have also demonstrated a diminution in the ventilatory response to electrically induced exercise in animals after denervation of the chemoreceptors

### Interrelationships of Ventilation and Arterial $[H^+]$ and $P_{CO_2}$ during Exercise and Recovery

*The total exercise hyperpnea vs hypercapnic hyperpnea* In condition NB the hyperpnea induced by inhalation of 6.3%  $CO_2$  in air was of approximately the same magnitude as the hyperpnea in the steady state of exercise. However the increments in arterial  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  during exercise were only about one half and one third respectively of those induced by  $CO_2$  inhalation. It may thus be concluded that the observed changes in the  $H^+ CO_2$  complex were much too small to account for the hyperpnea of exercise.

In condition LB the inhalation of  $CO_2$  caused a more marked hyperpnea. The corresponding changes in  $P_{CO_2}$  and especially in  $[H^+]$  were however also much larger so that the relation between ventilatory increase and increase in  $[H^+]$  remained unchanged. The increments in ventilation and  $[H^+]$  during exercise were somewhat larger than in condition NB whereas the increase in  $P_{CO_2}$  was approximately the same. These observations indicate that during exercise there seems to be a relation between the ventilatory increase and the increase of  $[H^+]$ .

*The stage of secondary increase in  $\dot{V}$*  When the ventilatory increments during the stage of secondary increase in ventilation were plotted against the constant increments in  $[H^+]$  ( $\Delta \dot{V} / \Delta [H^+]$  in Fig 10 p 39) it was found that in all three conditions these points fell close to the  $\Delta \dot{V} / \Delta [H^+]$  response lines obtained during  $CO_2$  inhalation. The slopes of these  $CO_2$  response lines were almost identical in the three conditions (Fig 9 4 p 37). When the same plots were made for the relation between  $\Delta \dot{V}$  and  $\Delta P_{CO_2}$  the points fell to the left of the  $CO_2$  response lines (Fig 9 B).

The remarkably good correlation between changes in ventilation and changes in arterial  $[H^+]$  in all the conditions studied does not seem to have been described previously. From this observation it may be justified to conclude that the response of the respiratory system to changes in arterial  $[H^+]$  is the same whether these changes are induced by exercise or by  $CO_2$  inhalation. It also appears that the observed relations between the ventilatory increase in the secondary stage of exercise hyperpnea and the concomitant increments in  $[H^+]$  give support to those hypotheses which anticipate an interaction of humoral and neural respiratory drives in the generation of the exercise hyperpnea (cf Dejours 1959 LAMBERTSEN 1961 and CUNNINGHAM 1963).

otherwise no significant changes were observed in the 4 min of exercise, and 3 min of recovery studied. In the present investigation a slight decrease was found in the second halfminute of exercise, indicating that  $\dot{V}_{O_2}$  increased somewhat faster than  $\dot{V}_A$ . Thus transient lowering of the oxygen tension appears to be too small to constitute a significant causative factor of the exercise hyperpnea. GALDSTON and WOLLACK (1947) found that the  $P_{aO_2}$  in the first minute of recovery was about 13 mm Hg higher than in the resting supine position. A similar increase was found in the present investigation.

In an earlier investigation from this laboratory (BARR *et al.* 1963) the time courses of arterial pH and  $S_{O_2}$  were investigated during light and moderate exercise without measurement of  $\dot{V}_E$ . The time courses of the two variables were found to be almost identical with those obtained in the present investigation. This indicates that the constancy of  $S_{O_2}$  and the increase in  $P_{aO_2}$  were not caused by any interference with respiration due to increased external breathing resistance. In a study of the changes in cardiac output during exercise, DONALD, BISHOP and WADE (1954) also determined the time courses of the changes in arterial  $S_2$ . As judged from their graphs,  $S_{O_2}$  remained approximately unchanged during the course of exercise and recovery.

The observation that the arterial  $P_{O_2}$  remains unchanged or even shows a small increase during moderate exercise does not necessarily imply an unchanged or decreased hypoxic chemoreflex drive. The hypoxic drive during exercise has been indirectly studied in man in experiments performed at different degrees of hyperoxia. Numerous such investigations (*e.g.* ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1946, 1958; LUNDIN and STROM 1947; BANNISTER and CUNNINGHAM 1954; LAMBERTSEN *et al.* 1959; PERRET 1960) have shown that oxygen inhalation diminishes the ventilatory response to exercise, the more so the heavier the work load. Oxygen administration also lowers the lactic acid level during exercise. Conversely, during moderate hypoxia ventilation is increased in proportion to the increased lactacidemia (*cf.* ASMUSSEN and NIELSEN 1946). However, the effect of high oxygen pressure is not exclusively related to improved oxygenation in the working muscle. Judging from the single breath  $O_2$  test technique, described by DEJOURS *et al.* (1957a, 1958) the hypoxic chemoreflex drive contributes to some 10–15 % of the exercise hyperpnea during air breathing at sea level, and even more during hypoxia (DEJOURS 1959; MILIC-EMILI, RAYNAUD and DEJOURS 1960). It appears that the single breath  $O_2$  test provides quantitative information as to the hypoxic chemoreflex part of the ventilatory drive, since the reduction of ventilation following an ' $O_2$  test' occurs within one circulation time. Actually, the ventilatory reduction at rest is maximal about 7 sec after the pulmonary capillary  $P_{O_2}$  has attained its maximal value (DEJOURS and MATELL 1962, unpublished observations). The demonstration of a certain hypoxic drive in man during air breathing at sea level agrees with observations in animal experiments of a tonic discharge from the chemoreceptors even at normal oxygen pressures.



after the first half minute of exercise has a constant relation to the increase in  $[H^+]$ . The black areas which constitute the remaining part of the total ventilatory increase would thus correspond to the non arterial contributions to the respiratory drive and are believed to include mainly the neural respiratory drives. The fact that these black areas have a rectangular shape gives some support to the view that the neural respiratory drives are acting throughout the exercise period as has been proposed by DEJOURS (1959). This does not imply however that the neurogenic drive remained constant. Such factors as e.g. body temperature and adrenaline levels may also contribute to the exercise hyperpnea. Since the temperature rise observed in the present investigation amounted only to some tenths of a degree it is believed that the rise in temperature contributed but little to the exercise hyperpnea.

*The hyperpnea of recovery* After the initial rapid fall in ventilation the ratio  $\Delta V / \Delta [H^+]$  in early recovery (cf Fig 10 p 39) had the same value as  $\Delta V / \Delta [H^+]$  during exercise. Later in recovery ventilation decreased faster than the hydrogen ion concentration. This may to some part be explained by a probable decrease in hypoxic stimulation during recovery but it also seems that other unknown factors contributed to this ventilatory decrement.

*Concluding remarks* The present investigation has shown that irrespective of the buffering capacity of the blood there was the same relation between changes in  $[H^+]$  and ventilation both during  $CO_2$  inhalation and during the secondary stages of ventilatory changes in response to exercise. No such constant relation was found between changes in  $P_{CO_2}$  and ventilation. This does not necessarily imply however that  $H^+$  is the unique respiratory stimulus. A differentiation between the physiological action of  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  is rendered difficult by the fact that changes in  $P_{CO_2}$  are accompanied by concurrent alterations of  $[H^+]$  if  $BHCO_3$  remains constant.

In this connection it should be emphasized that the observed correlation between ventilation and  $[H^+]$  seems to be valid only in acute experiments. This conclusion is based on the observation that the longlasting acidemia induced by ammonium chloride ingestion was associated with only a slight increase of the resting ventilation which is in agreement with earlier observations of e.g. NIELSEN (1936).

Available data seem to indicate that a number of respiratory stimuli contribute to the hyperpnea of exercise. The coarse adjustment of ventilation appears to be of neural origin and related to the rhythm strength and degree of engagement of the musculo-skeletal system. Humoral stimuli seem to be responsible for the fine and precise adjustment of ventilation to the metabolism apparently in a similar way as in the resting condition.

In this investigation the two main groups of stimuli seemed to be responsible for about equal parts of the hyperpnea during exercise. If the same relation exists for other loads and types of work remains to be investigated.

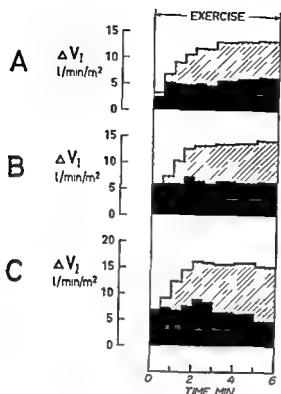


Fig 11 Schematic representation of calculated humoral and non humoral components in exercise hyperpnea

The boundaries of any one graph represent the time course of the ventilatory increase (above pre exercise level) during the period of exercise (*cf* Fig 7). The hatched area has been obtained from the actual increase in  $[H^+]_a$  and the  $\Delta V/\Delta [H^+]_a$  ratio observed during  $CO_2$  inhalation at rest (chemically accountable ventilation). The black area represents the remaining component of respiratory stimulation.

The graphs are based on data from continuous recordings which were reduced into group means of individual time averages determined over the first six 30 sec periods and the ensuing three 60 sec periods during exercise (625 kpm/min for 3 min).

A = Normal  $BHCO_{3t}$  ( $n = 5$ )

B = High  $BHCO_{3t}$  ( $n = 5$ )

C = Low  $BHCO_{3t}$  ( $n = 6$ )

**The plateau stage of exercise** As shown in Fig 7 (p 30) the ventilation and arterial  $[H^+]_a$  remained relatively stable in the 5th and 6th min of exercise. The magnitude of the increase in  $[H^+]_a$  agrees with earlier observations (LAMBERTSEN *et al* 1959, BARR *et al* 1963). The rather inconsistent pattern of the  $P_{aCO_2}$  is also in agreement with findings reported in the literature (*cf* p 8).

**The share of  $[H^+]_a$  in the exercise hyperpnea** The present observation of an essentially unaltered response of the respiratory system to changes in  $[H^+]_a$  warrants a tentative analysis of the average share of  $[H^+]_a$  in the exercise hyperpnea. This has been done by multiplying the observed increments in  $[H^+]_a$  by the value of  $\Delta V/\Delta [H^+]_a$  obtained during  $CO_2$  breathing. In Fig 11 these products are indicated by hatched areas, which thus represent the share in the total ventilatory increase induced by increments in  $[H^+]_a$ . Admittedly, objections may be made against this way of processing the data *in vivo* because (a) the time necessary for establishing equilibrium between the gases in the blood and the chemosensitive areas is not known and (b) a possible additive action of  $P_{aCO_2}$  as an independent respiratory stimulus has not been accounted for. However, the diagram is not intended to be more than an illustration of the possible relation between ventilation and  $[H^+]_a$  obtained in this investigation.

The diagram would then illustrate that the ventilatory increase appearing

after the first half minute of exercise has a constant relation to the increase in  $[H^+]$ . The black areas which constitute the remaining part of the total ventilatory increase would thus correspond to the non arterial contributions to the respiratory drive and are believed to include mainly the neural respiratory drives. The fact that these black areas have a rectangular shape gives some support to the view that the neural respiratory drives are acting throughout the exercise period as has been proposed by Dejours (1959). This does not imply however that the neurogenic drive remained constant. Such factors as e.g. body temperature and adrenaline levels may also contribute to the exercise hyperpnea. Since the temperature rise observed in the present investigation amounted only to some tenths of a degree it is believed that the rise in temperature contributed but little to the exercise hyperpnea.

*The hyperpnea of recovery.* After the initial rapid fall in ventilation the ratio  $\Delta V / \Delta [H^+]$  in early recovery (cf Fig 10 p 39) had the same value as  $\Delta V / \Delta [H^+]$  during exercise. Later in recovery ventilation decreased faster than the hydrogen ion concentration. This may to some part be explained by a probable decrease in hypoxic stimulation during recovery but it also seems that other, unknown factors contributed to this ventilatory decrement.

*Concluding remarks.* The present investigation has shown that irrespective of the buffering capacity of the blood there was the same relation between changes in  $[H^+]$  and ventilation both during  $CO_2$  inhalation and during the secondary stages of ventilatory changes in response to exercise. No such constant relation was found between changes in  $P_{CO_2}$  and ventilation. This does not necessarily imply however that  $H^+$  is the unique respiratory stimulus. A differentiation between the physiological action of  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  is rendered difficult by the fact that changes in  $P_{CO_2}$  are accompanied by concurrent alterations of  $[H^+]$  if  $BHCO_{3st}$  remains constant.

In this connection it should be emphasized that the observed correlation between ventilation and  $[H^+]$  seems to be valid only in acute experiments. This conclusion is based on the observation that the longlasting acidemia induced by ammonium chloride ingestion was associated with only a slight increase of the resting ventilation which is in agreement with earlier observations of e.g. NIELSEN (1936).

Available data seem to indicate that a number of respiratory stimuli contribute to the hyperpnea of exercise. The coarse adjustment of ventilation appears to be of neural origin and related to the rhythm, strength and degree of engagement of the musculo-skeletal system. Humoral stimuli seem to be responsible for the fine and precise adjustment of ventilation to the metabolism apparently in a similar way as in the resting condition.

In this investigation the two main groups of stimuli seemed to be responsible for about equal parts of the hyperpnea during exercise. If the same relation exists for other loads and types of work remains to be investigated.

## VIII SUMMARY

In an attempt to assess quantitatively the role of possible chemical stimuli in the hyperpnea of exercise, the time courses of ventilation, arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH (and concomitant calculated changes in arterial  $P_{O_2}$  and  $P_{CO_2}$ ) were studied in 7 healthy male subjects during moderate, constant load exercise (625 kpm/min for 6 min) and ensuing recovery (6 min), both under normal and under high and low  $BHCO_3$ , the two last mentioned conditions being induced by ingestion of ammonium chloride and sodium bicarbonate, respectively

1 *Ventilatory and blood chemical responses* At the onset of exercise ventilation increased in a stepwise fashion, and after some 20—30 sec showed a secondary increase to attain a plateau after about 3 min of exercise. At the cessation of exercise ventilation first fell steeply and after 20—30 sec showed a secondary, more gradual decrease towards its pre exercise level.

The arterial  $O_2$  saturation remained remarkably constant throughout the period of exercise, whereas the  $O_2$  tension, after a transient drop increased by about 5 mm Hg. In recovery, the  $O_2$  saturation increased by about 1 %, and the  $O_2$  tension by about 15 mm Hg during the first 2 min and then declined.

Arterial  $[H^+]$  and  $P_{CO_2}$  remained essentially constant for the first 20—30 sec following the onset and cessation of exercise. During the remainder of the period of exercise arterial  $[H^+]$  increased gradually to reach a plateau after 3—4 min. The arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  (mean for the group) was elevated at the end of exercise, however some individuals showed a decrease below resting levels.

During the remainder of the period of recovery arterial  $[H^+]$  showed a gradual decrease towards pre exercise levels. The arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  (mean for the group) gradually fell below the pre exercise level.

The observation that the initial rise and fall of ventilation in exercise and recovery, respectively, occurred without significant changes in arterial  $O_2$ ,  $H^+$  or  $CO_2$  levels, suggests that these fast components of exercise hyperpnea are controlled by other factors.

2 *Assessment of  $H^+$  and  $CO_2$  stimuli in exercise hyperpnea* On determining individual and mean responses to  $CO_2$  inhalation at rest and analysing these responses in terms of slopes ( $\Delta V/\Delta[H^+]$  and  $\Delta V/\Delta P_{CO_2}$ ) the mean  $\Delta V/\Delta[H^+]$  slopes during the secondary increase in exercise hyperpnea and during the first half minute of recovery (subtracting the initial decrement in ventilation) were found to coincide with the  $\Delta V/\Delta[H^+]$  slope obtained during  $CO_2$  inhalation ( $2\text{ l/m}^2\text{ BS l/mM/l}$ ).

The  $\Delta V/\Delta[H^+]$  and  $\Delta V/\Delta P_{CO_2}$  slopes as defined above were investigated under normal as well as under high and low  $BHCO_{3\text{eq}}$ . In general the  $\Delta V/\Delta[H^+]$  slopes were about the same in all three conditions whereas the  $\Delta V/\Delta P_{CO_2}$  slopes were steeper in exercise and recovery than under  $CO_2$  inhalation especially in the low  $BHCO_{3\text{eq}}$  condition.

Evidence is presented that the slow ventilatory increase in the secondary stage of exercise hyperpnea is related to the increase in  $[H^+]$ .

**3 Other results** It was observed that during exercise the arterial to end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  difference became reversed (mean  $-3.1$  mm Hg). Also during inhalation of  $6.3\%$   $CO_2$  a small negative difference (mean  $-0.9$  mm Hg) was found. The mechanisms underlying these reversals of the  $P_{CO_2}$  difference have been discussed.

Ingestion of ammonium chloride ( $2.5$  meq/kg body weight for 3 days) lowered the  $BHCO_{3\text{eq}}$  by  $9.5$  mM/l and ingestion of equivalent amounts of sodium bicarbonate increased the  $BHCO_{3\text{eq}}$  by  $3.4$  mM/l the normal value being  $26 \pm$  mM/l. The lowering of the  $BHCO_{3\text{eq}}$  caused by exercise was not markedly different in the three conditions. No significant differences were observed between the three conditions as to oxygen uptake,  $RQ$ , and heart rate at rest or during exercise.

## IX REFERENCES

- ALEXANDER, J. K., J. R. WEST, J. A. WOOD and D. W. RICHARDS. Analysis of the respiratory response to carbon dioxide inhalation in varying clinical states of hypercapnia, anoxia and acid base derangement. *J. clin. Invest.* 1925 31 511—532.
- ARBORELLIUS, M. and G. LILJESTRAND. Muskelarbeit und Bluteinstellung. *Scand. Arch. Physiol.* 1923 41 215—236.
- ARMSTRONG, B. W., H. H. HURT, R. W. BLIDE and J. M. WORKMAN. The humoral regulation of breathing. *Science* 1961 133 1891—1906.
- ASMUSSEN, E. and M. NIELSEN. Studies on the regulation of respiration in heavy work. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1946 19 171—188.
- ASMUSSEN, E. and M. NIELSEN. Studies on the mutual changes in respiration at the transition from rest to work and from work to rest. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1948 16 270—285.
- ASMUSSEN, E. and M. NIELSEN. The effect of auto-transfusion of work blood on the pulmonary ventilation. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1950 20 79—87.
- ASMUSSEN, E. and M. NIELSEN. Cardiac output during muscular work and its regulation. *Physiol. Rev.* 1955 35 778—800.
- ASMUSSEN, E. and M. NIELSEN. Physiological dead space and alveolar gas pressures at rest and during muscular exercise. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1956 38 1—21.
- ASMUSSEN, E. and M. NIELSEN. Ventilatory response to CO<sub>2</sub> during work at normal and at low oxygen tensions. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1957 39 27—35.
- ASMUSSEN, E. and M. NIELSEN. Pulmonary ventilation and effect of oxygen breathing in heavy exercise. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1958 43 365—378.
- BANNISTER, R. G., D. J. C. CUNNINGHAM and C. G. DOUGLAS. The carbon dioxide stimulus to breathing in severe exercise. *J. Physiol. (Lond.)* 1954 125 90—117.
- BANNISTER, R. G. and D. J. C. CUNNINGHAM. The effects on the respiration and performance during exercise of adding oxygen to the inspired air. *J. Physiol. (Lond.)* 1954 125 118—137.
- BARR, D. P., H. L. HUNWICH and R. P. GREEN. Studies in the physiology of muscular exercise. I. Changes in acid base equilibrium following short periods of vigorous muscular exercise. *J. Biol. Chem.* 1923 55 495—515.
- BARR, P. O. Percutaneous puncture of the radial artery with a multi purpose Teflon catheter for indwelling use. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1961 51 343—347.
- BARR, P. O. and H. BJURSTEDT. Technique for continuous recording of blood pH and O<sub>2</sub> saturation in humans. *Rep. Lab. Anat. Med. Karol. Inst. Stockholm* 1963.
- BARR, P. O., M. BECKMAN, H. BJURSTEDT, J. BRISMAN, C. M. HESLER and G. MATELL. Time courses of blood gas changes provoked by light and moderate exercise in man. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1963. In press.
- BARTELS, H., R. BEER, H. P. KOEPFGEN, J. WENNER and I. WITT. Messung der alveolären arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>, Druckdifferenz mit verschiedenen Methoden am Menschen bei Ruhe und Arbeit. *Pflug. Arch. ges. Physiol.* 1955 267 133—151.
- BJURSTEDT, H. and A. LÖNN. Electronic high speed counting as adapted for the continuous recording of respiratory tidal air and minute volume. *Rep. Lab. Anat. Med. Karol. Inst. Stockholm* 1960.
- BJURSTEDT, H., C. M. HESLER, G. LILJESTRAND and G. MATELL. Effects of posture on alveolar arterial CO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub> differences and on alveolar dead space in man. *Acta physiol. scand.* 1962 51 65—82.
- BRADLEY, A. F., M. STUFFEL and J. W. SEVERINGHAUS. Effect of temperature on P<sub>50</sub> and P<sub>50</sub> of blood in vitro. *J. appl. Physiol.* 1956 9 201—204.

- BRISMAN J C M HESSER and G MATELL, Breath by breath sampling of alveolar (end tidal) gas 4 *Isa physiol scand* 1967 56 299—303
- BUTLMANN A. Gasaustausch bei schwerster körperlicher Arbeit In *Physiologie und Pathologie des Gasaustausches in der Lunge* Berlin Göttingen Heidelberg Springer Verlag 1961 p 74—78
- CARY C C and A H ORRIS Some physiological effects resulting from added resistance to respiration *J Anat Med* 1949 90 149—160
- COMRADE J H The hyperpnea of muscular exercise *Physiol Rev* 1944 24 319—339
- CRAIG F N Pulmonary ventilation during exercise and inhalation of carbon dioxide *J appl Physiol* 1955 7 467—471
- CUNNINGHAM D J C D G SHAW S LAHRI and B B LLOYD The effect of maintained ammonium chloride acidosis on the relation between pulmonary ventilation and alveolar oxygen and carbon dioxide in man *Quart J exp Physiol* 1961 4 323—334
- CUNNINGHAM D J C Some quantitative aspects of the regulation of human respiration in exercise *Brit med Bull* 1963 19 25—30
- DEJOURS P J RAYNAUD C L CUEVOD and YVETTE LABROUSSE Modifications instantanées de la ventilation au début et à l'arrêt de l'exercice musculaire Interpretation *J Physiol (Paris)* 1955 a 47 155—159
- DEJOURS P J C MITHOEFFER and A TEILLAC Essai de mise en évidence de chemorecepteurs veineux de ventilation *J Physiol (Paris)* 1955 b 47 160—163
- DEJOURS P F GIRARD YVETTE LABROUSSE and J RAYNAUD Stimulus oxygène chémoréflexe de la ventilation à basse altitude (50 m) chez l'homme II Au cours de l'exercice musculaire *J Physiol (Paris)* 1957 a 49 120—124
- DEJOURS P J C MITHOEFFER and J RAYNAUD Evidence against the existence of specific ventilatory chemoreceptors in the legs *J appl Physiol* 1957 b 10 367—371
- DEJOURS P YVETTE LABROUSSE J RAYNAUD F GIRARD and A TEILLAC Stimulus oxygène de la ventilation au repos et au cours de l'exercice musculaire à basse altitude (50 m) chez l'homme *Rev franç Ét clin biol* 1958 3 105—123
- DEJOURS P La régulation de la ventilation au cours de l'exercice musculaire chez l'homme *J Physiol (Paris)* 1959 51 163—261
- DEJOURS P YVETTE BECHTEL LABROUSSE and J RAYNAUD Étude du contrôle de la fréquence cardiaque et de la ventilation au cours des exercices passif et actif chez l'homme *C R Acad Sc (Paris)* 1961 237 2012—2014
- DEJOURS P Chemoreflexes in breathing *Physiol Rev* 1962 4 333—358
- DEJOURS P The regulation of breathing during muscular exercise in man A neuro humoral theory In *The regulation of human respiration (Proceedings of the J S Haldane Centenary Meeting held in Oxford 1961)* Cunningham D J C & Lloyd B B ed Oxford Blackwell Scientific Publication 1963 533—547
- DEVING H J H TALBOTT H T EDWARDS and D B DILL Effect of acidosis and alkalosis upon capacity for work *J Int Invest* 1930 9 601—613
- DILL D B H T EDWARDS E V NEWMAN and R MARGARIA Analysis of recovery from anaerobic work. *A Brit physiologist* 1935 9 299—307
- DOUGLAS H W J M BISHOP and O L WANE A study of minute to minute changes of arterial-venous oxygen content difference Oxygen uptake and cardiac output and rate of achievement of a steady state during exercise in rheumatic heart disease *J clin Invest* 1954 33 1146—1167
- DOUGLAS C G and J S HALDANE The causes of absorption of oxygen by the lungs *J Physiol (Lond)* 1912 44 305—354
- DOUGLAS C G Die Regulation der Atmung beim Menschen *Erbsen Physiol* 1914 14 338—430
- DUBOIS D and E E DUBOIS A formula to estimate the approximate surface area if height and weight be known *Arch intern Med* 1916 17 867—871

- DUBOIS A M A G BRITT and W O FENN, Alveolar  $\text{CO}_2$  during the respiratory cycle *J appl Physiol* 1952 4 535-548
- DOBELN W von A respiration valve with insignificant dead space *Acta physiol scand* 1949 18 34-35
- EULER U S von G LILJESTRAND and Y ZOTTERMAN The excitation mechanism of the chemoreceptors of the carotid body *Skand Arch Physiol* 1939 87 132-152
- EULER U S von and G LILJESTRAND The regulation of respiration during muscular work *Acta physiol scand* 1946 11-12 268-278
- FILLEY G F F GREGOIRE and G W WRIGHT Alveolar and arterial oxygen tensions and the significance of the alveolar arterial oxygen tension difference in normal men *J clin Invest* 1954 33 517-529
- FISHER R A *Statistical methods for research workers* 10th Ed Edinburgh Oliver and Boyd Ltd 1948 pp 354
- GALDSTON M and A C WOLLACH Oxygen and carbon dioxide tensions of alveolar air and arterial blood in healthy young adults at rest and after exercise *Amer J Physiol* 1917 151 276-281
- GREFFERT J and N ZUNTZ Über die Regulation der Atmung *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1883 42 189-245
- GRAY J S *Pulmonary ventilation and its physiological regulation* Springfield Ill USA Charles C Thomas Publ 1950 pp 82
- GRODINS F S Analysis of factors concerned in regulation of breathing in exercise *Physiol Rev* 1950 30 220-239
- GULLBRING B A HOLMGREN T SJOSTRAND and T STRANDELL The effect of blood volume variations on the pulse rate in supine and upright positions and during exercise *Acta physiol scand* 1960 50 62-71
- HALDANE J S and J G PRIESTLEY The regulation of the lung ventilation *J Physiol (Lond)* 1905 32 225-266
- HALDANE J B S Experiments on the regulation of the blood's alkalinity II *J Physiol (Lond)* 1921 55 265-275
- HARRISON W G JR J A CALHOUN and T R HARRISON Afferent impulses as a cause of increased ventilation during muscular exercise *Amer J Physiol* 1932 100 68-73
- HASTINGS A M and J SENDROY JR Studies of acidosis the colorimetric determination of blood pH at body temperature without buffer standards *J biol Chem* 1924 61 693-710
- HENRY F M and JANICE DEMOOR Metabolic efficiency of exercise in relation to work load at constant speed *J appl Physiol* 1950 2 481-487
- HEYMANS C and L NEIL *Reflexogenic areas of the cardiovascular system* London J and A Churchill L T D 1958 pp 271
- HICAM J B W W PRIOR F B PAGE and R J ATWELL Respiratory regulation during exercise in unconditioned subjects *J clin Invest* 1951 30 503-516
- HOLMGREN A Circulatory changes during muscular work in man *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 1956 8 Suppl 24 1-97
- HOLMGREN A and H IINDEHOLM Oxygen and carbon dioxide tensions of arterial blood during heavy and exhaustive exercise *Acta physiol scand* 1958 44 203-215
- HOLMGREN A and G STROM Blood lactate concentration in relation to absolute and relative work load in normal men and in mitral stenosis atrial septal defect and vasoregulatory asthma *Acta med scand* 1959 163 185-193
- HUCKABEE W E Relationships of pyruvate and lactate during anaerobic metabolism II Exercise and formation of O debt *J clin Invest* 1958 37 255-263
- HUTT H K S M HORVATH and G B SPURR Influence of varying degrees of passive limb movements on respiration and oxygen consumption of man *J appl Physiol* 1958 17 297-300



- KAO F F B B SCHLES and C. McC BROOKS Regulation of respiration during induced muscular work in decerebrate dogs *J appl Physiol* 1955 7 379—386
- KAO F F An experimental study of the pathways involved in exercise hyperpnea employing cross-circulation techniques. In *The regulation of human respiration (Proceedings of the J S Haldane Centenary Meeting held in Oxford 1961)* Cunningham D J C. & Lloyd B H ed Oxford Blackwell Scientific Publications. 1963 461—507
- KELLOGG R H N PAGE E R ARCHIBALD and B E VAUGHAN Respiratory response to inspired CO during acclimatization to an altitude of 12 470 feet *J appl Physiol* 1957 11 65—71
- KRAMER A and O GAUER Über die Regelung der Atmung bei Muskelarbeit *Pflüg Arch ges Physiol* 1941 244 659—686
- KROGH A and J LINDHARD The volume of the dead space in breathing *J Physiol (Lond)* 1913a 47 30—43
- KROGH A. and J LINDHARD The regulation of respiration and circulation during the initial stages of muscular work *J Physiol (Lond)* 1913b 47 112—136
- LAMBERTSEN C J R H KROGH D Y COOPER G L EMMEL H H LOESCHKE and C F SCHMIDT Comparison of relationship of respiratory minute volume to pCO and pH of arterial and internal jugular blood in normal man during hyperventilation produced by low concentrations of CO at 1 atmosphere and by O at 30 atmospheres *J appl Physiol* 1953 5 803—813
- LAMBERTSEN C J S G OWEN H WENDEL M W STROUD A A LURIE W LOCHNER and G F CLARK Respiratory and cerebral circulatory control during exercise at 21 and 20 atmospheres inspired pO<sub>2</sub> *J appl Physiol* 1959 14 966—982
- LAMBERTSEN C J Respiration. In *Bard, P Medical Physiology* 11th Ed. St. Louis, The C V Mosby Company 1961 558—741
- LERCHE D B KATEAROS G LERCHE and H H LOESCHKE Vergleich der Wirkung verschiedener Acidosen (NHCl CaCl<sub>2</sub> Acetazolamid) auf die Lungenbelüftung beim Menschen *Pflüg Arch ges Physiol* 1959 270 450—460
- LILIENTHAL J L R L RILEY B D PROEMMEL and R E FRANK An experimental analysis in man of the oxygen pressure gradient from alveolar air to arterial blood during rest and exercise at sea level and altitude *Amer J Physiol* 1946 147 199—216
- LILJESTRAND G Untersuchungen über die Atmungsarbeit *Skand Arch Physiol* 1918 35 199—294
- LYDD B B The chemical stimulus to breathing *Brit med Bull* 1963 19 10—14
- LUNDQV G and G STROM The concentration of blood lactic acid in man during muscular work in relation to the partial pressure of oxygen of the inspired air *Acta physiol scand* 1947 13 253—266
- MARGARIA R G MILIC-EMILI J M PETTIT and G CAVAGNA Mechanical work of breathing during muscular exercise *J appl Physiol* 1960 15 354—358
- MARSHALL R Relationships between stimulus and work of breathing at different lung volumes *J appl Physiol* 1967 17 917—921
- MCLEROY M H and A HOLMGREN Arterial blood gas tensions during exercise in normal subjects. *Fed Proc* 1961 20 423
- MCKENROW C B and A H OTIS Oxygen cost of hyperventilation *J appl Physiol* 1956 9 375—379
- MILIC-EMILI J J RAYNAUD and P DEJOURS Etude critique d'une méthode de mise en évidence du stimulus oxygène ventilatoire chez l'homme *J Physiol (Paris)* 1960 57 177—178
- MITCHELL J H B J SPEROLLE and C B CHAPMAN Factors influencing respiration during heavy exercise *J Int Test* 1958 37 1693—1701
- MÜLLER M Die Respirationsarbeit bei Körperruhe und bei Muskelarbeit *Skand Arch Physiol* 1932a 74 297—316

- NIELSEN M Untersuchungen über die Atemregulation beim Menschen *Scand Arch Physiol* 1936b 74 Suppl 10 87-208
- NIELSEN M and H SMITH Studies on the regulation of respiration in acute hypoxia *Acta physiol scand* 1951 24 293-313
- NIELSEN M and E ASMUSSEN Humoral and nervous control of breathing in exercise In *The regulation of human respiration (Proceedings of the J S Haldane Centenary Meeting held in Oxford 1961)* Cunningham D J C & Lloyd B H ed Oxford Blackwell Scientific Publications 1963 503-513
- PAPPENHIMER J R *et al* Standardization of definitions and symbols in respiratory physiology *Fed Proc* 1950 9 602-603
- PERRET C Hypoxie et regulation de la ventilation durant l'exercice musculaire *Helv Physiol Acta* 1960 18 72-97
- PETERS J P and D D VAN SLUYKE *Quantitative Clinical Chemistry* Vol 1 London Baillière Tindall and Cox 1931 pp 1264
- RAHN H J MOHNEY, A B OTIS and W O FENN A method for the continuous analysis of alveolar air *J Arter Med* 1946 17 173-178
- RAHN H and A B OTIS Continuous analysis of alveolar gas composition during work hyperpnea hypercapnia and anoxia *J appl Physiol* 1949 1 717-724
- RAHN H, The sampling of alveolar gas In *Studies in Respiratory Physiology* WADC Technical Rep 55-357 Wright Air Development Center Ohio USA 1955 299-308
- REFSUM H E Respiratory response to acute exercise in induced metabolic acidosis *Acta physiol scand* 1961 57 32-35
- RILEY R L S PLUMPTRE S SAID M GODFREY T O CHENG J B L HOWELL and R H SHEPARD Effect of posture on pulmonary dead space in man *J appl Physiol* 1959 14 339-344
- RILEY R I The hyperpnea of exercise In *The Regulation of Human Respiration* Oxford Blackwell Scientific Publications 1963 525-534
- ROSENTHAL T B The effect of temperature on the pH of blood and plasma in vitro *J biol Chem* 1948 173 25-30
- SCHAEFER K E Respiratory pattern and respiratory response to CO<sub>2</sub> *J appl Physiol* 1958 13 1-14
- SCHMIDT C F *The respiration* In Bard P *Medical Physiology* 10th Ed St Louis The C V Mosby Company 1956 282-472
- SCHOLANDER P F Analyzer for accurate estimation of respiratory gases in one-half cubic centimeter samples *J biol Chem* 1947 167 235-250
- SEVERINGHAUS J W M STUPPEL and A F BRADLEY Variation of serum carbonic acid pH with pH and temperature *J appl Physiol* 1956 9 197-200
- SEVERINGHAUS J W In *Handbook of Respiration* National Academy of Sciences National Research Council W B Saunders Co 1958 (p 73)
- SJOSTRAND T Changes in the respiratory organs of workmen at an ore smelting works *Acta med scand* 1947 196 687-699
- STURM R E and E H WOOD An instantaneous recording cardiograph *Res Sci Instr* 1947 18 771-776
- SUSKIND MITZI R A BRUCE MARION E McDOWELL P N G AL and W LOVEJOY JR Normal variations in end tidal air and arterial blood carbon dioxide and oxygen tensions during moderate exercise *J appl Physiol* 1950 3 287-290
- TEILLAC A and R LEFRANÇOIS Analyse des réactions ventilatoires au cours des périodes d'adaptation et de récupération de l'exercice musculaire chez l'homme *J Physiol (Paris)* 1962 54 417-418
- TITSO M Vergleichende Untersuchungen über die Geschwindigkeitskurve der menschlichen Atmung bei Ruhe und Körperarbeit *Arbeitsphysiologie* 1935 9 16-26

- ULMER W T and G REICHEL, Untersuchungen zum alveolar arteriellen Kohlensäuredruck gradienten. In *Physiologie und Pathologie des Gasaustausches in der Lunge* Berlin Göttingen Heidelberg Springer Verlag 1961 53—65
- VAN SLYKE D M and J M NEILL, The determination of gases in blood and other solutions by vacuum extraction and manometric measurement *J Biol Chem* 1924 61 573—573
- VAN SLYKE D M and J SENDROY JR., Studies of gas and electrolyte equilibria in blood. V. Line charts for graphic calculations by the Henderson Hasselbalch equation and for calculating plasma carbon dioxide content from whole blood content *J Biol Chem* 1928 79 781—798
- WAHLUND H, Determination of the physical working capacity *Acta med scand* 1948 Suppl 215 pp 78
- WIEDERHILM G, Amplifier for linear recording of oxygen saturation and dye dilution curves. *Circulat Res* 1956 4 450—455
- WINTERSTEIN H, Die Regulierung der Atmung durch das Blut *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1911 138 167—184
- WINTERSTEIN H, Die chemische Steuerung der Atmung *Exp Physiol* 1950 48 328—528
- YAMAMOTO W S, Mathematical analysis of the time course of alveolar CO<sub>2</sub> *J Appl Physiol* 1960 15 215—219



Experimentelle Untersuchungen  
zur Regulation der Erythropoiese unter  
besonderer Berücksichtigung der  
Bedeutung des Sauerstoffs

*von*

BERNHARD TRIBUKAIT

---

STOCKHOLM 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 58 SUPPLEMENTUM 908

AUS DER KLINISCH PHYSIOLOGISCHEN ABTHEILUNG DES KAROLINSKA SJUKHUSET  
STOCKHOLM SCHWEDEN

Experimentelle Untersuchungen  
zur Regulation der Erythropoiese unter  
besonderer Berücksichtigung der  
Bedeutung des Sauerstoffs

VON

BERNHARD TRIBUKAIT





*Diese Abhandlung stützt sich auf folgende Arbeiten*

- I Eine Methode zur wiederholten Bestimmung der Gesamthämoglobinmenge und des Blutvolumens von Ratten *Acta physiol scand* 1960 48 417—430
- II Hämoglobinmenge und Blutvolumen der Ratte und ihre Beziehung zum Körpergewicht *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 35—41
- III Gesamthämoglobinmenge und Blutvolumen der normalen anatomischen und polycythaemischen Ratte bestimmt mit CO und Cr<sup>3+</sup> *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 139—147 Zusammen mit L Engstedt und B Peric
- IV Verhalten von Gesamthämoglobin und Blutvolumen der Ratte bei akuter Blutungsanämie *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 148—154
- V Die Darstellung von Häm in aus kleinen Blutmengen (0.1—0.2 ml) *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 147—151 Zusammen mit A Forsberg
- VI Bestimmung der Lebenszeit der nach akuter Blutung gebildeten Rattenerythrozyten (C<sup>14</sup>Häm) *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 152—158 Zusammen mit A Forsberg
- VII Der Einfluss chronischer Hypoxie entsprechend 1000—8000 m Höhe auf die Erythropoiese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 57 1—25
- VIII Über den initialen Anstieg der O<sub>2</sub>-Kapazität des Blutes der Ratte bei Hypoxie *Acta physiol scand* 1963 57 90—93
- IX Der Einfluss anhaltender hoher O<sub>2</sub>-Konzentration der Einatemungsluft (30—100%) auf die Erythropoiese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- X Die Readaptation der hohenpolycythaemischen Ratte an Meereshöhe *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- XI Arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Sättigung und alveolarer CO<sub>2</sub>- und O<sub>2</sub>-Druck der Ratte bei Aufenthalt in 2000—7000 m Höhe *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- XII Der Einfluss von Cobalt auf die Erythropoiese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck

Die Arbeiten werden im Text mit den entsprechenden römischen Ziffern referiert

**KLARA CIVILTRYCKERI AB**  
**STOCKHOLM 1963**

*Diese Abhandlung stützt sich auf folgende Arbeiten*

- I Eine Methode zur wiederholten Bestimmung der Gesamthämoglobinmenge und des Blutvolumens von Ratten *Acta physiol scand* 1960 43 417—430
- II Hämoglobinmenge und Blutvolumen der Ratte und ihre Beziehung zum Körpergewicht *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 35—41
- III Gesamthämoglobinmenge und Blutvolumen der normalen anämischen und polycythämischen Ratte bestimmt mit CO und Cr<sup>51</sup> *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 139—147 Zusammen mit L. Engstedt und H. Peric
- IV Verhalten von Gesamthämoglobin und Blutvolumen der Ratte bei akuter Blutung anämie *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 148—154
- V Die Darstellung von Häm in aus kleinen Blutmengen (0.1—0.2 ml) *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 147—151 Zusammen mit A. Forsberg
- VI Bestimmung der Lebenszeit der nach akuter Blutung gebildeten Rattenerythrozyten (C<sup>14</sup>Häm in) *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 152—158 Zusammen mit A. Forsberg
- VII Der Einfluss chronischer Hypoxie entsprechend 1000—8000 m Höhe auf die Erythropoese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 57 1—23
- VIII Über den initialen Anstieg der O<sub>2</sub>-Kapazität des Blutes der Ratte bei Hypoxie *Acta physiol scand* 1963 57 90—98
- IX Der Einfluss anhaltender hoher O<sub>2</sub>-Konzentration der Einatemungsluft (30—100 %) auf die Erythropoese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- X Die Readaptation der hohenpolyzythämischen Ratte an Meereshöhe *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- XI Arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Sättigung und alveolarer CO<sub>2</sub> und O<sub>2</sub>-Druck der Ratte bei Aufenthalt in 2000—7000 m Höhe *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- XII Der Einfluss von Cobalt auf die Erythropoese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck

Die Arbeiten werden im Text mit den entsprechenden römischen Ziffern referiert

KLARA CIVILTRYCKERI AB  
STOCKHOLM 1963

Diese Abhandlung stützt sich auf folgende Arbeiten

- I Eine Methode zur wiederholten Bestimmung der Gesamthämoglobinnmenge und des Blutvolumens von Ratten *Acta physiol scand* 1960 48 417—430
- II Hämoglobinnmenge und Blutvolumen der Ratte und ihre Beziehung zum Körpergewicht *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 35—41
- III Gesamthämoglobinnmenge und Blutvolumen der normalen anämischen und polycythämischen Ratte bestimmt mit CO und Cr<sup>51</sup> *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 139—147 Zusammen mit L Engstedt und H Peric
- IV Verhalten von Gesamthämoglobin und Blutvolumen der Ratte bei akuter Blutungsanämie *Acta physiol scand* 1960 49 118—154
- V Die Darstellung von Häm aus kleinen Blutmengen (0.1—0.2 ml) *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 147—151 Zusammen mit A Forsberg
- VI Bestimmung der Lebenszeit der nach akuter Blutung gebildeten Rattenerythrozyten (C<sup>14</sup>Häm) *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 152—158 Zusammen mit A Forsberg
- VII Der Einfluss chronischer Hypoxie entsprechend 1000—8000 m Höhe auf die Erythropoese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 57 1—25
- VIII Über den initialen Anstieg der O<sub>2</sub>-Kapazität des Blutes der Ratte bei Hypoxie *Acta physiol scand* 1963 57 90—98
- IX Der Einfluss anhaltender hoher O<sub>2</sub>-Konzentration der Einatemungsluft (30—100 %) auf die Erythropoese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- X Die Readaptation der hohenpolycythämischen Ratte an Meereshöhe *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- XI Arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Sättigung und alveolarer CO<sub>2</sub> und O<sub>2</sub>-Druck der Ratte bei Aufenthalt in 2000—7000 m Höhe *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck
- XII Der Einfluss von Cobalt auf die Erythropoese der Ratte *Acta physiol scand* 1963 In Druck

Die Arbeiten werden im Text mit den entsprechenden römischen Ziffern referiert



Unter dem Begriff Erythropoiese können alle Prozesse die zur Bildung eines reifen Erythrozyten führen also Zellteilung und Zellreifung sowie Hb Synthese verstanden werden Untersuchungen der Erythropoiese beschäftigen sich entsprechend primär mit morphologisch biochemischen Problemen des sich bildenden Erythrozyten Einen seinem Wesen nach anderen Fragekomplex bildet die Regulation der Erythropoiese zu deren Verständnis eine funktionelle Betrachtungsweise notwendig ist Während alle Fragen der Erythropoiese prinzipiell an dem Entwicklungsablauf einer einzigen Stammzelle bis zum Erythrozyten studiert werden konnten wenn dieses möglich wäre geht es bei der Regulation der Erythropoiese darum warum gerade eine bestimmte Anzahl von Zellen gebildet wird und wie das erreicht wird

Sowohl die Biochemie der Zellentwicklung wie die Dynamik der Zellteilung und das Ziel umfassender Untersuchungen und Diskussionen gewesen (THOPPEL 1958 ALPER und CRANMORE 1959 LAJTHA und OLIVER 1960) Fragen der Regulation der Erythropoiese sind wesentlich durch die Existenz erythropoiese stimulierender Substanzen — Erythropoietine — und deren Nachweis bestimmt worden Seit REISMANN (1950) zeigen konnte dass bei parabiotischen Ratten Hypoxie des einen Partners eine erhöhte Knochenmarkaktivität des anderen Partners hervorruft sind eine Fülle von Arbeiten über Auftreten Wirkungsweise chemische Zusammensetzung und Metabolismus derartiger Substanzen erschienen (Zusammenfassende Übersichten GORDON 1959 LIVING und BETHELL 1960 Ciba Foundation Symposium on Haemopoiesis 1960 JACOBSON und DOYLE 1962) Der Nachweis erythropoietisch aktiver Substanzen gründet sich ganz überwiegend auf das Verhalten relativer Blutwerte (Hb und Erythrozytenkonzentration Hamatokrit) das Auftreten von Retikulozyten die Höhe der Eiseninkorporation in Erythrozyten oder die Knochenmarkaktivität Nur vereinzelt ist die gesamte Erythrozytenmenge bestimmt worden

Die Studien humoraler Überträgermechanismen sind für das Verständnis der Regulation der Erythropoiese von grosser theoretischer und praktischer Bedeutung Sie zeigen wie die Erythropoiese aktiviert wird eventuell auch welche Organsysteme und andere Faktoren an diesem Aktivierungsprozess beteiligt sind Dabei mag es genügen den erythropoietischen Aktivitätszustand





Unter dem Begriff Erythropoiese können alle Prozesse die zur Bildung eines reifen Erythrozyten führen also Zellteilung und Zellreife sowie Hb-Synthese verstanden werden. Untersuchungen der Erythropoiese beschäftigen sich entsprechend primär mit morphologisch biochemischen Problemen des sich bildenden Erythrozyten. Einen seinem Wesen nach anderen Fragekomplex bildet die Regulation der Erythropoiese zu deren Verständnis eine funktionelle Betrachtungsweise notwendig ist. Während alle Fragen der Erythropoiese prinzipiell an dem Entwicklungsablauf einer einzigen Stammzelle bis zum Erythrozyten studiert werden konnten wenn dieses möglich wäre geht es bei der Regulation der Erythropoiese darum warum gerade eine bestimmte Anzahl von Zellen gebildet wird und wie das erreicht wird.

Sowohl die Biochemie der Zellentwicklung wie die Dynamik der Zellteilung und das Ziel umfassender Untersuchungen und Diskussionen gewesen (THORELL 1958 ALPER und CRAMORE 1959 LASTHA und OLIVER 1960). Fragen der Regulation der Erythropoiese sind letztlich durch die Existenz erythropoiese stimulierender Substanzen — Erythropoetine — und deren Nachweis bestimmt worden. Seit REISSMANN (1950) zeigen konnte dass bei parabiotischen Ratten Hypoxie des einen Partners eine erhöhte Knochenmarksaktivität des anderen Partners hervorruft sind eine Fülle von Arbeiten über Auftreten, Wirkungsweise, chemische Zusammensetzung und Metabolismus derartiger Substanzen erschienen. (Zusammenfassende Übersichten GORDON 1959 LEMAY und BETHELL 1960 Ciba Foundation Symposium on Haemopoiesis 1960 JACOBSON und DOYLE 1962). Der Nachweis erythropoietisch aktiver Substanzen gründet sich ganz überwiegend auf das Verhalten relativer Blutwerte (Hb und Erythrozytenkonzentration Hamatokrit) das Auftreten von Retikulozyten die Höhe der Eiseninkorporation in Erythrozyten oder die Knochenmarkaktivität. Nur vereinzelt ist die gesamte Erythrozytenmenge bestimmt worden.

Die Studien humoraler Überträgermechanismen sind für das Verständnis der Regulation der Erythropoiese von grosser theoretischer und praktischer Bedeutung. Sie zeigen wie die Erythropoiese aktiviert wird eventuell auch welche Organe, Systeme und andere Faktoren an dieser Aktivierungsprozess beteiligt sind. Dabei mag es genügen den erythropoietischen Aktivitätszustand



und vor allem kleinen Versuchstier sind jedoch nur schwer möglich. Es ist weiterhin zu berücksichtigen, dass Änderungen im Plasmaeisenpiegel in der Verteilung und im Zustand des Eisens die Höhe der Eiseninkorporation beeinflussen können, ohne dass die Erythropoiese selbst mitprekonditioniert zu sein braucht (HODGSON et al 1957). Ein veränderter Abstrom von Retikulozyten aus dem Knochenmark ins Blut wie z.B. unter Hypoxie (SAATHOFF 1950 a, VERTENS 1957) oder auch bei fastenden Ratten (MEYER, THEWLIS und RUSCH 1910) kann ebenso wie eine Eiseninkorporation in zirkulierende Retikulozyten zu einer falschen Einschätzung der Erythropoiese führen. Da Eisen auch in nicht an Häm gebundener Form im Erythrozyten vorkommt (FALBE-HANSEN und LÖTJE 1962), sollte die spezifische Aktivität des Hb und nicht die der Erythrozyten gemeint werden. Schließlich kann eine gesteigerte Erythropoiese durch eine vorausgehende Hämolyse ausgelöst werden. GORDON und WEINTRAUB (1962) fanden beispielsweise bei etwa 25% von Tieren, die mit erythropoietisch aktiven Urinproben behandelt waren, hämolytische Reaktionen und empfehlen deshalb gleichzeitig Kontrollen des Hamatokrits.

Für die Beurteilung der Erythropoiese nach der Retikulozytenzahl im peripheren Blut gelten im wesentlichen entsprechende Überlegungen wie für die Eiseninkorporationsmethode. Ein Vorteil ist, dass beliebig oft von kleinen Blutmengen die Retikulozytenzahl bestimmt werden kann. Ein Nachteil ist, dass die Retikulozytenzahl des peripheren Blutes wesentlich vom Verteilungszustand zwischen Knochenmark und zirkulierendem Blut (normalerweise etwa 1:1 — SAATHOFF 1950 b, FRYCH 1959) abhängt und kurzfristig auf verschiedene Reize hin (z.B. Reizung von Hirnpartien — BEER 1942, SEIF 1953, LITKE 1959, Injektion von Ascorbinsäure oder Natriumbicarbonat — MEYER, THEWLIS und RUSCH 1910, Röntgenbestrahlung — TRIBUKAIT nicht veröffentlicht) ansteigen kann. Aber auch langanhaltende Retikulozytenänderungen bei hohem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck und bei Cobaltzufuhr (Arbeit IV, VII) brauchen nicht mit Änderungen des Gesamt-Hb verbunden zu sein.

Messungen der gesamten Erythrozytenmenge mit radioaktiv gezeichneten Erythrozyten ermöglichen zwar in vielen Fällen eine verlässliche Beurteilung der Erythropoiese. Bei kleinen Tieren kann aber bereits bei einer Einzelbestimmung durch Blutentnahmen Injektion der Erythrozyten wählen die Erythropoiese so gestört werden, dass eine Zweibestimmung nicht mehr sinnvoll ist. Untersuchungen am selben Tier sind aber vor allem dann besonders wesentlich, wenn die Erythropoiese nur kurzfristig oder geringfügig verändert wird. Derartige geringe Abweichungen von der Norm lassen sich sonst nur an einem größeren Versuch und Kontrollmaterial nachweisen. Es mag in diesem Zusammenhang von Interesse sein, dass bei Durchsicht von etwa 200 Untersuchungen über erythropoietisch aktive Substanzen die erschienen sind

nach den relativen Blutwerten, den Retikulozytenwerten oder der Eiseninkorporation zu beurteilen. Sie lassen aber die Frage unbeantwortet, warum eine bestimmte Zellzahl gebildet wird.

Die vorliegenden Untersuchungen bilden einen Versuch, Wege aufzuzeigen, wie man zu einem besseren Verständnis dieses zentralen Problems der Regulation der Erythropoiese gelangen kann. Absolute Voraussetzung dafür ist eine quantitative Betrachtungsweise. Wie wesentlich eine solche auch für andere Fragen der Erythropoiese sein kann, soll gleichzeitig an einigen Beispielen gezeigt werden. Für sich betrachtet muss eine konstante Grösse z. B. die Hb-Konzentration oder gesamte Hb-Menge eines Organismus unter Normalbedingungen als gegeben hingenommen werden, wenn es nicht gelingt, sie zu ihrer Funktion und den an sie gestellten funktionellen Anforderungen in Beziehung zu stellen. Entsprechend wird hier auf den Zusammenhang zwischen dem Hb als O<sub>2</sub>-Transportmittel und der O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes eingegangen. Damit lassen sich bereits auch die Grenzen dieser Arbeit erkennen. Der O<sub>2</sub>-Bedarf, die Kapillarisation und Durchblutung des Gewebes zusammen mit dem O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt und dem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck des Blutes bilden ein derartig komplexes Geschehen, dass eine vollständige Analyse weit über den Rahmen dieser Arbeit hinausgeht.

## I Methodik

Ein vollständiges Bild vom Zustand der Erythropoiese gewinnt man aus der Kenntnis der gesamten Erythrozyten bzw. Hb-Menge und der per Zeiteinheit gebildeten und abgebauten Erythrozyten bzw. Hb-Menge. Es ist aus praktischen Gründen schwierig, diese drei Grössen gleichzeitig zu bestimmen. Im allgemeinen hat man sich deshalb darauf beschränkt, den Aktivitätszustand oder Änderungen im Aktivitätszustand der Erythropoiese festzustellen.

Die Hb- und Erythrozytenkonzentration des Blutes bzw. der Hämatokrit sind wesentlich vom Verhalten des Plasmavolumens abhängig und bilden im allgemeinen deshalb nur im Zusammenhang mit einer dritten Grösse wie der Retikulozytenzahl oder der Höhe der Eiseninkorporation eine anwendbare Messgrösse der Erythropoiese.

Die grösste Verbreitung vor allem im Zusammenhang mit der Prüfung erythropoetisch aktiver Substanzen hat die Eiseninkorporationsmethode gefunden. Dabei wird normalen Tieren oder Tieren mit herabgesetzter Erythropoiese infolge Hypophysektomie, Nahrungsentzug, Hypertransfusion mit Erythrozyten oder Röntgenbestrahlung nach Gabe der zu testenden Substanzen radioaktives Eisen ( $^{59}\text{Fe}$ ) injiziert und dessen Auftreten in den Erythrozyten des Blutes nach 12–24 Stunden gemessen. Der Vorteil der  $^{59}\text{Fe}$ -Inkorporationsmethode ist deren einfache Handhabung. Wiederholte Bestimmungen am selben

und vor allem kleinen Versuch tier und jedoch nur schwer möglich Es ist weiterhin zu berücksichtigen dass Änderungen im Plasmaeisenpiegel in der Verteilung und im Zustand des Eisens die Höhe der Eiseneinkorporation beeinflussen können ohne dass die Erythropoiese selbst entsprechend beteiligt zu sein braucht (HODGSON et al 1957) Ein veränderter Abstrom von Retikulozyten aus dem Knochenmark ins Blut wie z.B. unter Hypoxie (SAATHOFF 1950 a MERTEVS 1957) oder auch bei fastenden Ratten (MEYER THEWLIS und RUSCH 1910) kann ebenso wie eine Eiseneinkorporation in zirkulierende Retikulozyten zu einer falschen Einschätzung der Erythropoiese führen Da Eisen auch in nicht an Häm gebundener Form im Erythrozyten vorkommt (FALBE HANSEN und LOTHE 1902) sollte die spezifische Aktivität des Hb und nicht die der Erythrozyten gemeint werden Schliesslich kann eine gesteigerte Erythropoiese durch eine vorausgehende Hämolyse ausgelöst werden GORDON und WEINTRAUB (1962) fanden bei piepelweise bei etwa 25 % von Tieren die mit erythropoietisch aktiven Urinproben behandelt waren hämolytische Reaktionen und empfehlen deshalb gleichzeitig Kontrollen des Hamatokrit

Für die Beurteilung der Erythropoiese nach der Retikulozytenzahl im peripheren Blut gehen im wesentlichen entsprechende Überlegungen wie für die Eiseneinkorporationsmethode Ein Vorteil ist dass beliebig oft von kleinen Blutmengen die Retikulozytenzahl bestimmt werden kann Ein Nachteil ist dass die Retikulozytenzahl des peripheren Blutes wesentlich vom Verteilungszustand zwischen Knochenmark und zirkulierendem Blut (normalerweise etwa 1:1 — SAATHOFF 1950 b FINCH 1959) abhängt und kurzfristig auf verschiedene Reize hin (z.B. Reizung von Hirnpartien — BEER 1942 SEIP 1953 LILKE 1959 Injektion von Ascorbinsäure oder Natriumbicarbonat — MEYER THEWLIS und RUSCH 1910 Röntgenbestrahlung — TRIBUKAIT nicht veröffentlicht) an steigen kann Aber auch langanhaltende Retikulozytenänderungen bei hohem O-Druck und bei Cobaltzufuhr (s. Arbeit IX, XII) brauchen nicht mit Änderungen des Gesamt Hb verbunden zu sein

Messungen der gesamten Erythrozytenmenge mit radioaktiv gezeichneten Erythrozyten ermöglichen zwar in vielen Fällen eine verlässliche Beurteilung der Erythropoiese Bei kleinen Tieren kann aber bereits bei einer Einzelbestimmung durch Blutentnahmen Injektion der Erythrozyten ähnlich die Erythropoiese gestört werden dass eine Zweitbestimmung nicht mehr sinnvoll ist Untersuchungen am selben Tier sind aber vor allem dann besonders wesentlich, wenn die Erythropoiese nur kurzfristig oder geringfügig verändert wird Derartige geringe Abweichungen von der Norm lassen sich sonst nur an einem grossen Versuch und Kontrollmaterial nachweisen Es mag in diesem Zusammenhang von Interesse sein dass bei Durchsicht von etwa 200 Untersuchungen über erythropoietisch aktive Substanzen die erschienen und

nach den relativen Blutwerten den Retikulozytenwerten oder der Eiseninkorporation zu beurteilen. Sie lassen aber die Frage unbeantwortet, warum eine bestimmte Zellzahl gebildet wird.

Die vorliegenden Untersuchungen bilden einen Versuch, Wege aufzuzeigen, wie man zu einem besseren Verständnis dieses zentralen Problems der Regulation der Erythropoiese gelangen kann. Absolute Voraussetzung dafür ist eine quantitative Betrachtungsweise. Wie wesentlich eine solche auch für andere Fragen der Erythropoiese sein kann, soll gleichzeitig an einigen Beispielen gezeigt werden. Für sich betrachtet, muss eine konstante Grösse, z. B. die Hb-Konzentration oder die gesamte Hb-Menge eines Organismus unter Normalbedingungen als gegeben hingenommen werden, wenn es nicht gelingt, sie zu ihrer Funktion und den an sie gestellten funktionellen Anforderungen in Beziehung zu stellen. Entsprechend wird hier auf den Zusammenhang zwischen dem Hb als O<sub>2</sub>-Transportmittel und der O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes eingegangen. Damit lassen sich bereits auch die Grenzen dieser Arbeit erkennen. Der O<sub>2</sub>-Bedarf, die Kapillarisation und Durchblutung des Gewebes zusammen mit dem O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt und dem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck des Blutes bilden ein derartig komplexes Geschehen, dass eine vollständige Analyse weit über den Rahmen dieser Arbeit hinausgeht.

## I Methodik

Ein vollständiges Bild vom Zustand der Erythropoiese gewinnt man aus der Kenntnis der gesamten Erythrozyten bzw. Hb-Menge und der per Zeiteinheit gebildeten und abgebauten Erythrozyten bzw. Hb-Menge. Es ist aus praktischen Gründen schwierig, diese drei Grössen gleichzeitig zu bestimmen. Im allgemeinen hat man sich deshalb darauf beschränkt, den Aktivitätszustand oder Änderungen im Aktivitätszustand der Erythropoiese festzustellen.

Die Hb- und Erythrozytenkonzentration des Blutes bzw. der Hämatokrit sind wesentlich vom Verhalten des Plasmavolumens abhängig und bilden im allgemeinen deshalb nur im Zusammenhang mit einer dritten Grösse wie der Retikulozytenzahl oder der Höhe der Eiseninkorporation eine anwendbare Messgrösse der Erythropoiese.

Die grösste Verbreitung vor allem im Zusammenhang mit der Prüfung erythropoietisch aktiver Substanzen hat die Eiseninkorporationsmethode gefunden. Dabei wird normalen Tieren oder Tieren mit herabgesetzter Erythropoiese infolge Hypophysectomie Nahrungsentzug, Hypertransfusion mit Erythrozyten oder Röntgenbestrahlung nach Gabe der zu testenden Substanzen radioaktives Eisen ( $^{59}\text{Fe}$ ) injiziert und dessen Auftreten in den Erythrozyten des Blutes nach 12–24 Stunden gemessen. Der Vorteil der  $^{59}\text{Fe}$ -Inkorporationsmethode ist deren einfache Handhabung. Wiederholte Bestimmungen am selben

das Gesamt Hb dieser Tiere vor und nach der Blutentnahme bestimmt (Arbeit I) Die gefundene Differenz im Gesamt Hb entspricht der abgenommenen Menge Hb

Eine zufriedenstellende Reproduzierbarkeit der Werte ist auch nach 2—3 jährigem Gebrauch der Methode festzustellen Die Normalwerte von unter schließlich schweren und unter gleichen Leben bedingungen gehaltenen Tieren eines Stammes die während dieser Zeit gemessen und in Arbeit II zusammen gestellt worden und weisen eine relativ geringe Streuung um die berechnete Regressionslinie auf Daraus kann gleichzeitig auch auf eine zufriedenstellende Homogenität des verwendeten Tiermaterials geschlossen werden

## 2 Darstellung von Häm in aus kleinen Blutmengen

Für Bestimmungen der Erythrozytenlebenszeit und zur Feststellung eventuel ler hamolytischer Reaktionen erschien es wünschenswert, nach Injektion von radioaktivem Glycin de sen Aktivität in der Häminkomponente des Hb eines Tieres verfolgen zu können Um bei den dazu notwendigen Blutentnahmen den Blutverlust möglichst gering zu halten wurde eine Mikromethode zur Darstellung von Häm in aus 0,1—0,2 ml Blut entwickelt (Arbeit V)

## 3 Arterielle $O_2$ Hb Sättigung und arterieller $O_2$ Druck der Ratte in Hypoxie

Es war notwendig die unter verschiedenen Hypoxiebedingungen gefundenen Blutwerte der Ratte nicht nur zum  $O_2$  Druck der Einatemungsluft sondern auch zum arteriellen  $O_2$ -Druck und zur arteriellen  $O_2$  Hb Sättigung relatieren zu können Derartige Daten von der Ratte scheinen jedoch zu fehlen Die arterielle  $O_2$  Hb Sättigung vom arteriellen Blut hypoxischer Tiere wurde deshalb nach VAN SLYKE bestimmt (Arbeit XI) Da aus technischen Gründen der arterielle  $O_2$  Druck nicht direkt gemessen werden konnte, wurde indirekt am nichtnarkotisierten Tier der alveolare  $O_2$ -Druck bestimmt (Arbeit XI) und mit Hilfe der alveolaren arteriellen  $O_2$ -Druckdifferenz der arterielle  $O_2$  Druck errechnet Diese Bestimmungsmethode beruht im Prinzip auf dem Verhalten der COHb und  $O_2$  Hb-Sättigung bei Atmen von  $CO$  in einem geschlossenen Atemsystem

## 1 Sonstige Methoden Tiermaterial Statistik

Die sonstigen verwendeten Methoden sind in den jeweiligen Arbeiten in denen auch auf einschlägige Literatur verwiesen ist beschrieben Als Versuchstiere dienten männliche Ratten eines Stammes (Wistar) In einigen Untersuchungen wurden auch Kragensatten (Hooded rats National Institute for Medical Research Mill Hill London) verwendet Statistische Berechnungen

nachdem BERLIN et al 1949 eine für Kleintiere geeignete Messmethode der Gesamterythrozytenmenge mit Hilfe radioaktiv gezeichneter Erythrozyten beschrieben haben, nur in etwa 5 % dieser Untersuchungen das Erythrozytenvolumen bestimmt worden ist

Für quantitative Untersuchungen der Erythropoiese und deren Veränderungen erschien es wünschenswert, über eine Methode zu verfügen mit der wiederholt vom selben Tier absolute Blutwerte gemessen werden können. Darauf wird nachfolgend eingegangen.

#### 1 a) Bestimmung des Gesamthämoglobins und Blutvolumens

Die in Arbeit I beschriebene Methode stellt die Weiterentwicklung eines von GEMZELL und SJOSTRAND (1954) angegebenen Verfahrens zur Bestimmung des Gesamt Hb mit CO dar. Dabei befindet sich das Tier solange in einem geschlossenen zirkulierendem Atemsystem, dem eine bekannte Menge CO zugeführt wird, bis sich ein Gleichgewicht zwischen den Partialdrücken CO und O<sub>2</sub> der Atemluft einerseits und der COHb und O<sub>2</sub>Hb Sättigung andererseits eingestellt hat. Die Partialdrücke O<sub>2</sub> und CO stehen zur O<sub>2</sub>Hb und COHb Sättigung entsprechend der Haldane'schen Gleichung in folgendem Verhältnis  $pO_2/pCO = K \cdot O_2Hb/COHb$  wobei K eine Gleichgewichtskonstante ist. Aus der Analyse der Gase des Atemsystems, der vom Tier aufgenommenen CO Menge und dieser Gleichgewichtskonstanten errechnet sich die COHb Sättigung bzw. Gesamtmenge Hb. Das Blutvolumen ergibt sich aus dem Gesamt Hb und der Hb Konzentration.

#### b) Vergleichsweise Bestimmung des Gesamthämoglobins mit CO und Cr<sup>51</sup> gezeichneten Erythrozyten

Um festzustellen, wie die mit CO bestimmten Werte des Gesamt Hb mit denen übereinstimmen, die mit einer »konventionellen« Methode erhalten werden, sind in Arbeit III Gesamt Hb und Blutvolumen normaler, anämischer und polyzythämischer Ratten jeweils gleichzeitig mit CO und Cr<sup>51</sup> gezeichneten Erythrozyten bestimmt worden. Bei allen drei Gruppen wurden mit der Cr<sup>51</sup> Methode durchschnittlich 10 % niedrigere Werte gefunden. Als Ursache dieser Differenz können neben systematischen Fehlern bei der Bestimmung der CO Konzentrationen oder anderer Größen die Bindung von CO an nichtzirkulierendes Hb und Myoglobin sowie eine nicht vollständige Durchmischung der mit Cr<sup>51</sup> gezeichneten Erythrozyten mit dem Blut des untersuchten Tieres diskutiert werden.

#### c) Weitere Prüfungen der Methode

Um die Messgenauigkeit der Methode auch hinsichtlich absoluter Werte zu überprüfen, wurde Tieren etwa 1/3 der Gesamtblutmenge entnommen und



das Gesamt Hb dieser Tiere vor und nach der Blutentnahme bestimmt (Arbeit I) Die gefundene Differenz im Gesamt Hb entspricht der abgenommenen Menge Hb

Eine zufriedenstellende Reproduzierbarkeit der Werte ist auch nach 2—3 jährigem Gebrauch der Methode festzustellen Die Normalwerte von unterschiedlich schweren und unter gleichen Leben bedingungen gehaltenen Tieren eines Stammes die während dieser Zeit gemessen und in Arbeit II zusammen gestellt worden sind weisen eine relativ geringe Streuung um die berechnete Regressionslinie auf Daraus kann gleichzeitig auch auf eine zufriedenstellende Homogenität des verwendeten Tiermaterials geschlossen werden

## 2 Darstellung von Hamin aus kleinen Blutmengen

Für Bestimmungen der Erythrozytenlebenszeit und zur Feststellung eventueller hamolytischer Reaktionen erschien es wünschenswert, nach Injektion von radioaktivem Glycin dessen Aktivität in der Haminkomponente des Hb eines Tieres verfolgen zu können Um bei den dazu notwendigen Blutentnahmen den Blutverlust möglichst gering zu halten wurde eine Mikromethode zur Darstellung von Hamin aus 0,1—0,2 ml Blut entwickelt (Arbeit V)

## 3 Arterielle O<sub>2</sub>Hb Sättigung und arterieller O<sub>2</sub> Druck der Ratte in Hypoxie

Es war notwendig die unter verschiedenen Hypoxiebedingungen gefundenen Blutwerte der Ratte nicht nur zum O Druck der Einatemungsluft sondern auch zum arteriellen O-Druck und zur arteriellen O Hb Sättigung relatieren zu können Derartige Daten von der Ratte scheinen jedoch zu fehlen Die arterielle O Hb Sättigung vom arteriellen Blut hypotischer Tiere wurde deshalb nach VAN DYKE bestimmt (Arbeit VI) Da aus technischen Gründen der arterielle O Druck nicht direkt gemessen werden konnte wurde indirekt am nichtnarkotisierten Tier der alveolare O-Druck bestimmt (Arbeit XI) und mit Hilfe der alveolaren arteriellen O-Druckdifferenz der arterielle O-Druck errechnet Diese Bestimmungsmethode beruht im Prinzip auf dem Verhalten der COHb und O Hb Sättigung bei Atmen von CO in einem geschlossenen Atemsystem

## 1 Sonstige Methoden Tiermaterial Statistik

Die sonstigen verwendeten Methoden sind in den jeweiligen Arbeiten in denen auch auf einschlägige Literatur verwiesen ist beschrieben Als Versuchstiere dienten männliche Ratten eines Stammes (Wistar) In einigen Untersuchungen wurden auch Krattenratten (Hooded rats National Institute for Medical Research Mill Hill London) verwendet Statistische Berechnungen

wurden nach allgemein üblichen Methoden (SNEDECOR 1956) ausgeführt Als Streuungsmass wurde wenn nicht besonders anders angegeben der mittlere Fehler der Mittelwerte  $\left(\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}\right)$  verwendet Der Methodenfehler ist als Streuung eines einzelnen Wertes bei Doppelbestimmungen angegeben  $\left(\frac{\sigma d}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$  d = Differenz einer Doppelbestimmung)

## Diskussion zu I

Die möglichen Schlussfolgerungen aus Untersuchungen die sich mit Zustandsänderungen der Erythropoiese beschäftigen sind in hohem Grade von der Art der verwendeten Messmethoden abhängig Für gewisse Fragen beispielsweise der qualitativen Prüfung erythropoietisch aktiver Substanzen mögen nicht oder halbquantitative Messverfahren der Erythropoiese genügen Geht es wie hier darum, die Wirkung unterschiedlicher Reizstärken (zB Hypoxie verschiedenen Grades) und Reizformen (zB Anämie Hypoxie) auf die Erythropoiese zu studieren, miteinander zu vergleichen und auf ihre funktionelle Bedeutung hin zu prüfen sind quantitative Messverfahren unumgänglich notwendig

Die verwendete CO Methode ermöglicht es bei einem relativ kleinen Versuchsfehler beliebig oft und ohne Blutentnahmen vom selben Tier das Gesamt Hb zu bestimmen und damit dessen Veränderungen zu verfolgen Vergleichsweise Messungen des Gesamt Hb mit CO und  $\text{Cr}^{51}$  gezeichneten Erythrozyten ergaben für die CO Methode um etwa 10 % höhere Werte Myoglobin vermag nach den in Arbeit I ausgeführten Berechnungen etwa 1—2 % der zugeführten CO Menge aufzunehmen und scheint somit nicht als wesentliche Ursache dieser Differenz in Frage zu kommen Die gemessene Menge des im Knochenmark fixierten Hb vermag etwa 1 % des CO zu binden Hinzu kommt das Hb der fakultativ zirkulierenden Retikulozyten die beim normalen Tier in einer Menge entsprechend 2—3 % der zirkulierenden Blutmenge in den Depots des Knochenmark vorkommen Dieses im Gewebe fixierte Hb mag bei der Berechnung des Blutvolumens aus dem Gesamt Hb und der Hb Konzentration zu einer Überschätzung des Blutvolumens führen

Die Berechnungen der COHb Sättigung aus den Partialdrücken CO und O im Atemsystem und einer Gleichgewichtskonstanten ergeben nur dann korrekte Werte wenn die Gleichgewichtskonstante unter allen Bedingungen gleich ist Die Gleichgewichtskonstante wurde in vitro aus den Partialdrücken CO und O<sub>2</sub> des Atemsystems und der COHb und O Hb Sättigung des Blutes unter der Annahme normaler Ventilationsverhältnisse mit einem alveolaren CO Druck von 10 mm Hg bestimmt Steigt die alveolare Ventilation und damit

der alveoläre O Druck und ist die Größe des Antriegs nicht bekannt muss die Gleichgewichtskonstante neu bestimmt werden. Das ist bei Anwendung der Methode an Tieren deren Atmung infolge Hypoxie verändert worden war geschehen (s. Arbeit VII VIII X). Es ist aber auch möglich aus der bei Normalverhältnissen gefundenen Konstanten der COHb und O Hb Sättigung und dem CO Partialdruck den alveolären O bzw. CO Druck zu berechnen. In Arbeit XI wurde auf die Weise der alveoläre O und CO Druck höhen adaptierter Tiere bestimmt.

## II Ergebnisse

Die Erythropoiese kann experimentell auf folgende Weise stimuliert werden: 1. durch herabgesetzten arteriellen O-Gehalt (Anämie CO Vergiftung Methämoglobinämie) 2. verminderten arteriellen O Druck (Hypoxie) 3. Zufuhr von Cobalt. Die Wirkung dieser drei Reizformen zusammen mit dem Einfluss hohen O Drucks und hohen O Gehalts des Blutes auf die Erythropoiese sind das Ziel einiger quantitativer Analysen gewesen.

Es ist zweckmäßig bei der Untersuchung dieser Stimuli von eventuell bekannten gemeinsamen Angriffspunkten dieser Reize in das Regulationsgeschehen der Erythropoiese auszugehen. Cobalt ist als Reizform mit dem erniedrigten O-Druck bzw. O Gehalt des Blutes nicht ohne weiteres vergleichbar da nach den Untersuchungen von BUCCIERO und ORTEN (1919) Cobalt das O Bindungsvermögen des arteriellen Blutes etwa durch Methämoglobinebildung nicht beeinflusst. Demgegenüber ist für den herabgesetzten arteriellen O Druck wie für den verminderten O-Gehalt die beide auf den O Druck des Gewebes einwirken ein gemeinsamer Angriffspunkt naheliegend. Dabei unterscheiden sich Anämie und Hypoxie voneinander hinsichtlich ihrer Wirkung auf den O Druck des Gewebes etwa folgendermaßen. Bei Anämie sinkt unter der Passage des Blutes durch das Gewebe die O Hb Sättigung auf ein niedrigeres Niveau als normal wobei die rechtsverlagerte O Hb Dissoziationskurve die Freisetzung des O<sub>2</sub> vom Blut begünstigt. In Hypoxie ist neben der O Hb Sättigung der O Druck des Blutes von vorn herein niedriger und somit auch das O-Druckgefälle zum Gewebe geringer. Der erythropoiese stimulierende Effekt von Hypoxie sollte bei vergleichbaren Bedingungen des arteriellen O-Gehalts entsprechend stärker sein als der von Anämie.

Die Auffassungen über die Wirkung von Hypoxie und Anämie stimmen jedoch durchaus nicht mit diesem Bild überein. Erst verschiedentlich betont worden (MUEHLESTROTH-BALER 1959 STOLTMAN 1959) dass Anämie einen stärkeren Reiz auf die Erythropoiese ausübt als Hypoxie. ALTLAND und PARKER

(1955) fanden bei der Schildkröte in Hypoxie bei einem  $O_2$  Druck zwischen 59 und 23 mm Hg wodurch die  $O_2$  Sättigung um etwa 50 % herabgesetzt wird (McCUTCHEON 1917), keine gesteigerte Erythropoiese, wozu jedoch Blutentnahmen führten. STOHLMAN (1959) lehnt auf Grund dessen und der Befunde, dass bereits sehr geringfügige Blutverluste oder chronische Hämolyse ohne nachweislich herabgesetzte Hb Konzentration die Blutbildung stimulieren überhaupt den  $O_2$  Druck des Gewebes als einheitliche Ursache der Erythropoiesesteigerung ab. Eine solche findet sich auch nicht, wenn man mit BARCROFT (1927) annimmt, dass bei Hypoxie der absinkende arterielle  $O_2$ -Druck Ursache der gesteigerten Erythropoiese ist, da bei Anämie der arterielle  $O_2$ -Druck unverändert ist. Im gleichen Sinne mag sprechen, dass die Lebenslänge unter Anämie gebildeter Erythrozyten nach BERLIN und LOTZ (1951) stark verkürzt ist, unter Hypoxie nach FRISERS und BERLIN (1952) jedoch nicht oder nur unbedeutend von der Norm abweicht.

Es muss jedoch hier berücksichtigt werden, dass sich die Vergleiche zwischen Hypoxie und Anämie beim Säugetier im wesentlichen auf Retikulozytenwerte Eiseninkorporation oder indirekte Daten stützen. Vor allem unter Hypoxie verschiedener Stärke fehlen quantitative Studien der Änderungen der Erythropoiese praktisch gänzlich. Da Hypoxie mit Blutvolumenänderungen z.B. initial durch einen Flüssigkeitsverlust, verbunden ist kann auch hier nicht aus der Hb Konzentration auf Änderungen der Erythropoiese geschlossen werden, was bei Anämie in gewissem Grade möglich ist. Die genannten Bestimmungen der Erythrozytenlebenslänge unter Anämie halten ebenfalls nicht einer diesbezüglichen Kritik stand, da sie auf dem Verhalten der spezifischen Aktivität radioaktiv in  $^{51}Cr$  gezeichneten Hb beruhen und nicht die quantitativen Änderungen des Hb berücksichtigen.

Bei der erörterten widerspruchsvollen Situation und um Probleme der Regulation der Erythropoiese auf einer sichereren Basis diskutieren zu können wurden im einzelnen folgende Untersuchungen ausgeführt. Nach akuter Blutungsanämie wurde die Regenerationsgeschwindigkeit des Hb, die täglich gebildete Hb Menge und das Blutvolumen (Arbeit IV) sowie die Lebenszeit unter diesen Bedingungen neugebildeter Erythrozyten (Arbeit VI) bestimmt. Eingehender wurde der Einfluss anhaltenden niedrigen  $O_2$  Drucks entsprechend 1000—8000 m Höhe (Arbeit VII) und im Zusammenhang damit auch hohen  $O_2$  Drucks bei Atmung von 30—100 %  $O_2$  in Meereshöhe (Arbeit IX) untersucht. Eine Spezialstudie gilt dem initialen Anstieg der  $O_2$  Kapazität des Blutes bei Hypoxie (Arbeit VIII). Fragen des Zusammenhangs zwischen der erhöhten Kapillarisation des Gewebes und Änderungen des  $O_2$  Gehalts des arteriellen Blutes als Mittel auf den  $O_2$  Druck des Gewebes einzuwirken werden bei Untersuchungen der Readaptation des hohenpolyzythämischen

Organismus an Meereshöhe beruht (Arbeit V) Entwicklung und Art der Polyzythämie unter dem Einfluss von Cobalt unterchiedlicher Dosierung sind in Arbeit XII untersucht

## 1 ANÄMIE

### a) Anämie als Rez. der Erythropoiese

Etwa am 3 Tag nach Entnahme  $1/3$  des Blutvolumens beginnt das Gesamt Hb zu steigen Nach 10 Tagen sind etwa 60 % nach 20 Tagen 100 % des Hb Verlustes erreicht Die täglich gebildete Hb Menge erreicht zwischen 3 und 4 Tag mit einem etwa verdoppelten Wert ein Maximum und fällt bis zum 23 Tag langsam auf das Ausgangsniveau ab Das Blutvolumen ist unverändert

### b) Lebenszeit der nach akuter Blutung gebildeten Erythrozyten

Nach Entnahme  $1/3$  des Blutvolumens wurde auf der Höhe der Hb Neubildung am 3 Tag Ratten etwa  $10 \mu\text{C C}^{14}$  2 Glycin injiziert und das Verhalten der Gesamtaktivität des Hämin berechnet aus der spezifischen Aktivität und der mit CO gleichzeitig bestimmten Gesamtmenge Hämin verfolgt Die so gemessene Lebenslänge der Erythrozyten von Anämietieren und Normaltieren war mit etwa 55 Tagen gleich

## 2 HYPOXIE UND HYPEROXIE

Eine seit den ersten experimentellen Untersuchungen PALLBERTS (1878) über die Wirkung von Hypoxie auf die Blutbildung vieldiskutierte aber nach wie vor ungeklärte Frage ist wo und wie der O in die Regulation der Erythropoiese eingreift und welche Bedeutung der arterielle O Druck und der arterielle O Gehalt in diesem Zusammenhang haben

BARCROFT (1927) gibt in einer bekannten Monographie über Die Atmungsfunktion des Blutes dem verminderten arteriellen O-Druck vor dem ab sinkenden O-Gehalt klar den Vorrang »Und zwar ist die Begründung dass die Hamoglobinzunahme so gross sein kann dass sie eine wirkliche Vermehrung im Sauerstoffgehalt des arteriellen Blutes bedingt selbst wenn verglichen mit dem Gesamthamoglobin ein Fall im Prozentgehalt des Sauerstoffs vorhanden ist BARCROFT nennt dann jedoch unter Hinweis auf die Steigerung des Hb auch bei unverändertem Druck wie zB bei Kohlenmonoxydvergiftung als den wahrscheinlich wesentlichen Punkt die durch erhöhte Sauerstoffkonzentration im Plasma der Kapillaren HURTADO MENDO und DELAHO (1945) heben den Zusammenhang zwischen dem Grad der Polyzythämie und dem Abfall der arteriellen O Hb Sättigung mit steigender Höhe hervor Sie weisen aber teils auch auf den etwas höheren arteriellen

O<sub>2</sub> Gehalt der Hohenbewohner verglichen mit dem von Menschen bei Meereshöhe teils auf den geringeren Grad der Polyzythämie bei Lungenkranken in Meereshöhe mit gleich niedriger arterieller O<sub>2</sub> Hb Sättigung wie bei Hohenbewohnern hin. Das wesentliche Problem des O<sub>2</sub> Mangels in Höhe erscheint ihnen nicht auf die Menge des im Blute transportierten O<sub>2</sub> beschränkt. VERZAR und Mitarbeiter (1915, 1917) die eingehend die ältere diesbezügliche Literatur diskutiert haben, halten vor allem auf Grund ihrer Untersuchungen in mittleren Höhen den arteriellen O<sub>2</sub> Gehalt die für die Erythropoiese wesentliche Grösse.

Eine vollständige Analyse dieses Problems verlangt sowohl die Kenntnis des Gesamtstatus der Erythropoiese wie auch die der O<sub>2</sub> Druck und Konzentrationsverhältnisse in allen den Abschnitten und Systemen des Organismus die unmittelbar mit der Erythropoiese im Zusammenhang stehen. Das ist praktisch unmöglich. Verhältnismässig einfach ist es jedoch sich eine repräsentative Übersicht über hierbei wichtige hamatologische Daten zu verschaffen. Es wurden hier neben Hb Konzentration und Hamatokrit vor allem auch des Gesamt Hb bestimmt — die Resultante aller Hb Bildungs und Abbauprozesse. Damit wird der Begriff der Erythropoiese zwar stark eingeschränkt jedoch auf einige Grössen die funktionell gesehen und somit für Fragen der Regulation der Erythropoiese von grosstem Interesse sind. Mit Vorteil wählt man dabei Versuchsbedingungen unter denen sich die Erythropoiese in einem relativen Gleichgewichtszustand befindet. In den vorliegenden Versuchen bei O<sub>2</sub> Drucken zwischen 760 und 50 mm Hg betrug die kürzeste Versuchszeit in 1000 m Höhe 21 Tage in 6000 m Höhe hatte sich nach etwa 40 Tagen ein neues Hb Niveau eingestellt. Da Ratten die direkt 7000 m Höhe ausgesetzt wurden nicht längere Zeit überlebten befanden sich diese Tiere zunächst für mindestens 10 Tage in 6000 m Höhe 8000 m Höhe überlebten nur 3 Tiere für 17 Tage. Die Versuchszeit in verschieden hohem O<sub>2</sub> Druck betrug durchschnittlich etwa 7 Wochen.

Ebenfalls über die O<sub>2</sub> Druck und Konzentrationsverhältnisse im arteriellen und gemischten venösen Blut sind zuverlässige Aussagen möglich. Bei der Ratte sind allerdings derartige Messungen aus praktischen Gründen schwieriger und beschränken sich hier nur auf die Werte des arteriellen Blutes. Die Verhältnisse auf dem Gewebesniveau wo das Zusammenspiel von O<sub>2</sub> Bedarf und O<sub>2</sub> Zufuhr ein äusserst komplexes Geschehen bildet und dazwischen kaum zu überblicken. Alle bisherigen Versuche direkter O<sub>2</sub> Messungen dürften bestenfalls nur eine grobe Vorstellung der intrazellulären O<sub>2</sub> Druck und Konzentrationsverhältnisse vermitteln. Auch alle entsprechenden Berechnungen beruhen auf einer Reihe von Annahmen die im Einzelfall nur äusserst schwer zu überprüfen sind.

### a) Gesamthämoglobin bei Änderung des $O_2$ Drucks

In Abb 1 ist als Maß der Erythropoiese das Gesamt Hb/100 g Körpergewicht in Abhängigkeit vom  $O_2$ -Druck aufgetragen worden. Der  $O_2$ -Druck der Einatemungsluft ist dabei innerhalb eines Druckbereichs von 760 bis etwa

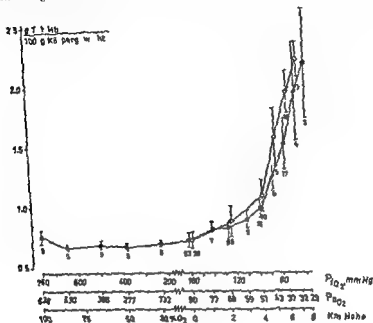


Abb 1

Gesamt Hämoglobin (als Hämoglobin/100 g Körpergewicht) von Ratten zweier Gewichtsklassen nach vielwöchentlichem Aufenthalt in verschiedenem  $O_2$  Druck. Mittelwerte mit  $\pm$  Standardabweichung und Anzahl der Tiere der jeweiligen Versuche. Offene Symbole = Tiere bis zu 350 g, in 1000 m Höhe und darüber bis zu 300 g; geschlossene Symbole = Tiere über 350 g bzw. 301 g. Auf der Abszissenachse sind der arterielle  $O_2$  Druck der Einatemungsluft, der arterielle  $O_2$ -Druck sowie die entsprechende  $O_2$  Konzentration bzw. die Höhe aufgetragen. Änderung des Skalennussstabs bei höherem  $O_2$  Druck als 160 mm Hg.

760 mm Hg entsprechend reiner  $O_2$ -Atmung bei Normaldruck und einem in 1000 m Höhe herrschenden Hypoxiegrad verändert worden. Der arterielle  $O_2$ -Druck wurde aus dem indirekt bestimmten alveolaren  $O_2$  Druck (s. Arbeit XI) und der alveolaren arteriellen  $O_2$  Druckdifferenz berechnet. Für letztere wurde nach FARH und RAHN (1955) bei Meereshöhe und Hypoxie ein Wert von 6 mm Hg und für höhere  $O_2$ -Drücke ein Wert von 35 mm Hg angenommen. Die angegebenen arteriellen  $O_2$ -Drücke entsprechen Durchschnittswerten.

die sich aus dem mittleren arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Druckabfall herleiten. Da sich das Gesamt Hb/100 g Körpergewicht vor allem bei starkerer Hypoxie, als gewichtsabhängig erwies, wurde das verfügbare Tiermaterial in 2 Gruppen verschiedener Gewichtsklassen aufgeteilt. Bis zu 1000 m Höhe liegt die Gewichtsgrenze bei 350 g in 5000 m Höhe und darüber bei 300 g. In 8000 m Höhe wurde das Gesamt Hb/100 g Körpergewicht aus den Gewichtswerten zu Versuchsbeginn berechnet, da hier das Gewicht während des Versuches teilweise stark abfiel. Mit Ausnahme der Versuche in 8000 m Höhe befanden sich die Hb-Werte der Tiere in einem relativen Gleichgewichtszustand.

Aus dem Verhalten des Gesamt Hb/100 g Körpergewicht lässt sich folgendes erkennen: Innerhalb eines weiten O<sub>2</sub>-Druckbereichs von etwa 500 mm Hg ist die Erythropoese praktisch unbeeinflusst. Erst dann, wenn der O<sub>2</sub>-Druck der Lumenluft 150 mm Hg unterschreitet, steigt das Gesamt Hb und zwar bis zu etwa 100 mm Hg entsprechend 1000 m Höhe in relativ mäßigem Umfang. Statistisch zu sichernde Unterschiede des Gesamt Hb zwischen den beiden Gewichtsklassen finden sich nicht. Mit weiter abfallendem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck steigt das Gesamt Hb kräftig und in praktisch gleichem Umfang. Die kleineren Tiere erreichen in 5000 m Höhe bei einem mittleren Gewicht von 282 g ein Gesamt Hb von 1,55 g/100 g Körpergewicht; die größeren Tiere bei einem mittleren Gewicht von 126 g ein Gesamt Hb von 1,23 g/100 g Körpergewicht. In 6000 m Höhe werden Werte von 1,92 g Gesamt Hb/100 g Körpergewicht für Tiere mit einem Durchschnittsgewicht von 264 g und 1,50 g Gesamt Hb/100 g Körpergewicht für durchschnittlich 365 g schwere Tiere gefunden. Die Differenzen im Gesamt Hb/100 g Körpergewicht sind hochsignifikant. Der Anstieg beruht im wesentlichen auf einer Änderung des Gesamt Hb und nicht auf einem Gewichtsabfall, der mit etwa 10% bei Überschreiten von 5000 m Höhe nur eine untergeordnete Rolle spielt. Da die Sterblichkeit in 7000 m Höhe stark ansteigt, ist das zugängliche Material in 7000 und 8000 m sehr begrenzt. Es ist aber dennoch ganz offenbar, dass in 7000 m das Hb-Bildungsvermögen nicht oder nicht wesentlich eingeschränkt ist. Die Differenz zwischen den beiden Gewichtsklassen bleibt weiterhin bestehen. 3 Tiere der 8000 m 17 Tage lang überlebten steigerten weiterhin ihr Gesamt Hb. Es ist bemerkenswert, dass diese Tiere der höheren Gewichtsklasse zugehören und dass bereits in 7000 m Höhe kein Tier der niedrigeren Gewichtsklasse im Gegensatz zu den schweren Tieren 90 Tage überlebt hatte.

#### b) Hämoglobinkonzentration bei Änderung des O<sub>2</sub>-Drucks

Abb. 2 zeigt die Hb-Konzentration in Abhängigkeit vom O<sub>2</sub>-Druck. Die Anzahl der Werte ist hier geringer, aber das prinzipielle Verhalten wird doch deutlich. Auch hier hat hoher O<sub>2</sub>-Druck keinen oder einen äußerst geringen



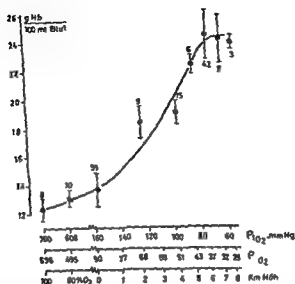


Abb. 2.

Hämoglobinkonzentration nach vielwöchentlichem Aufenthalt in verschiedenem  $O_2$ -Druck. Mittelwerte mit  $\pm$  Standardabweichung und Anzahl der Tiere der jeweiligen Versuche. Einteilung der Abszissenachse entsprechend Abb. 1.

Effekt. Im Gegensatz zum Gesamt Hb ist aber bereits in 2000 m Höhe die Hb-Konzentration stark gestiegen und erreicht in 6000 m mit etwa 24 g% einen offensichtlichen Maximalwert.

### c) Arterieller $O_2$ -Gehalt bei Änderung des $O_2$ -Drucks

Aus den besprochenen Beziehungen zwischen  $O_2$ -Druck und Gesamt Hb bzw. Hb-Konzentration geht hervor, dass sich die Erythropoiese im wesentlichen nur in einem solchen  $O_2$ -Druckbereich verändert, in dem auch gleichzeitig die arterielle  $O_2$ -Hb-Sättigung abnimmt. Es erhebt sich hier die nachfolgend behandelte Frage, wie sich dabei der arterielle  $O_2$ -Gehalt verhält.

Der arterielle  $O_2$ -Gehalt ergibt sich aus der Hb-Konzentration, dem  $O_2$ -Bindungsvermögen des Hb, der  $O_2$ -Hb-Sättigung und der physikalisch gelösten  $O_2$ -Menge. In Abb. 3 ist der arterielle  $O_2$ -Gehalt bei verschiedenem  $O_2$ -Druck dargestellt. Die diesen Berechnungen zugrunde liegenden Einzeldaten sind Tab. 1 zu entnehmen. Die arterielle  $O_2$ -Hb-Sättigung ist mit Ausnahme der Versuche in 20% und 100%  $O_2$  und 8000 m Höhe, für die eine 100%ige bzw. 25%ige  $O_2$ -Hb-Sättigung eingesetzt wurde, direkt bestimmt worden. Die Hb-Konzentration des Schizoplasmas liegt durchschnittlich 13% über der des

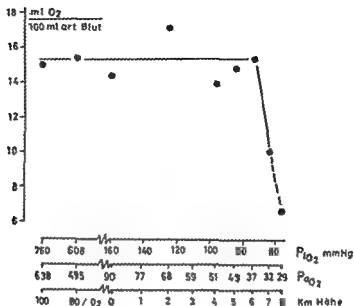


Abb 3

Arterieller  $O_2$  Gehalt von Ratten nach vielwöchentlichem Aufenthalt in verschiedenem  $O_2$  Druck berechnet aus Hamoglobinkonzentration,  $O$  Hb Sättigung und physikalisch gelöstem  $O$ . Für die  $O$  Hb Sättigung in 8000 m Höhe wurde ein (extrapolierter) Wert von 25 % eingesetzt. Einteilung der Abszissenachse entsprechend Abb 1.

Tab I

Mittelwerte des  $O_2$  Drucks, der  $O$  Hb Sättigung und der Hamoglobinkonzentration des arteriellen Blutes und der daraus berechnete chemisch gebundene, physikalisch gelöste und gesamte  $O_2$  Gehalt bei Normaltieren und Ratten nach vielwöchentlichem Aufenthalt in hohem und niedrigem  $O_2$  Druck. Die zugrundeliegenden Werte wurden den Arbeiten VII, IX und XI entnommen. Bei dem arteriellen  $O_2$  Druck wurde vom mittleren Verlauf ausgegangen. Die Hamoglobinkonzentration bei Meereshöhe wurde aus den Ausgangswerten aller Tiere vor Hypoxie bzw. Hyperoxie berechnet.

	$P_{aO_2}$ mm Hg	$S_{aO_2}$ %	Hb Konz g %	$O_2$ ml/100 ml art. Blut		
				chem geb	phys gel	total
100 % $O_2$	638	100	10.7	14.02	1.91	15.93
80 % $O_2$	495	100	11.4	14.93	1.48	16.41
0 m	90	91	11.9	11.18	0.27	11.45
2000 m	68	83	16.0	17.00	0.20	17.20
4000 m	51	65	16.6	13.81	0.15	13.96
5000 m	43	59	19.4	14.65	0.13	14.78
6000 m	37	56	21.2	15.20	0.11	15.31
7000 m	32	39	21.0	10.48	0.10	10.58
8000 m	■	25	20.8	6.66	0.09	6.75

arteriellen Blutes (s. Arbeit I) Da die Hb Konzentrationen vom Schwanzblut bestimmt worden und wurde eine entsprechende Korrektur vorgenommen Für das O Hb Bindungsvermögen von Normaltieren war ein mittlerer Wert von 1,31 ml/g Hb und für das von Hypoxietieren von 1,28 ml/g Hb gefunden worden Die physikalisch gelöste O Menge wurde mit 0,003 ml/ml Blut und 100 mm Hg angenommen

Aus Abb 3 ist klar zu erkennen dass bis zu einem O Druck entsprechend 6000 m Höhe der arterielle O-Gehalt auf einem konstanten Niveau gehalten wird Er sinkt in 7000 m Höhe auf 2/3 des Normalwertes ab und beträgt in 8000 m Höhe nur etwa 1/3 des Normalwertes

#### d) Beziehung zwischen arterieller $O_2$ Hb Sättigung und Gesamthämoglobin

Die Veränderungen der Erythropoiese führen nach dem Besprochenen dazu dass der arterielle O Gehalt bis zu einem Hypoxiegrad entsprechend 6000 m Höhe konstant gehalten wird Liegt das Regulationsziel der Erythropoiese unter Hypoxie lediglich darin einen normalen arteriellen O Gehalt beizubehalten so sollte der Anstieg des Gesamt Hb dem Abfall der O Hb Sättigung entsprechen Sinkt beispielsweise die O Hb Sättigung um 50% so muss das Gesamt Hb um 100% steigen usw In wie weit der gefundene Anstieg des Gesamt Hb mit den Berechnungen übereinstimmt soll nachfolgend behandelt werden

Wie bereits oben gezeigt (Abb 1) steigt das auf das Körpergewicht bezogene Gesamt Hb (g Hb/100 g Körpergewicht) unter Hypoxie von kleinen Tieren stärker als das grosserer Tiere Eine Aufteilung der Werte nach Gewicht klären ist deshalb notwendig Der begrenzte Umfang des Materials macht jedoch eine dazartige Aufteilung in eine grössere Zahl von Einzelklassen unmöglich Die allgemeine Sachlage unter den verschiedenen Versuchsbedingungen lässt sich aber dennoch zeigen wenn man vom mittleren Verhalten des Gesamt Hb in Abhängigkeit vom Körpergewicht das durch lineare Regressionlinien beschrieben werden kann ausgeht und dieses miteinander vergleicht Die Gleichungen derartiger Regressionslinien sind in Tab II zusammengestellt In Abb 4 sind die auf die gleiche Weise von einer grösseren Anzahl von Normaltieren (Arbeit II) berechneten Mittelwerte gleich 100 gesetzt und die prozentuale Abweichung davon unter Hypoxie von 275 g 350 g und 450 g schweren Tieren dargestellt War die Zahl der Einzelwerte wie in 1000 m 3000 m und 8000 m Höhe zu gering um Regressionlinien zu berechnen wurden die Mittelwerte der entsprechenden Tiere der am nächsten liegenden Gewichtgruppe zugeordnet In dieser Abbildung ist ferner ausgehend von der sinkenden arteriellen O Hb Sättigung unter Hypoxie der

Tab II

Korrelation zwischen Gesamt Hb (y) und Körpergewicht (x) bei Meereshöhe und verschiedenen Hypoxiegraden Gleichungen der Regressionslinien mit  $\pm$  Standardabweichung Korrelationskoeffizienten und Signifikanz der Korrelationskoeffizienten. Den Berechnungen in Meereshöhe liegen die Werte von 140–500 g schweren Kontrolltieren zugrunde (Arbeit II) n = Anzahl der Werte

Hohe m	n	$y = a + bx \pm \sigma$	$r \pm \sigma r$	p
0	378	$y = 0.240 + 0.00657 x \pm 0.175$	$0.96 \pm 0.004$	$< 0.001$
2000	16	$y = 1.979 + 0.00338 x \pm 0.350$	$0.45 \pm 0.205$	$0.05-0.01$
4000	26	$y = 1.399 + 0.00632 x \pm 0.318$	$0.76 \pm 0.083$	$< 0.001$
5000	11	$y = 2.528 + 0.00636 x \pm 0.578$	$0.72 \pm 0.150$	$0.01-0.001$
6000	33	$y = 2.706 + 0.00818 x \pm 0.740$	$0.56 \pm 0.139$	$< 0.001$
7000	7	$y = 6.233 - 0.00140 x \pm 0.813$	$-0.07 \pm 0.406$	$> 0.05$

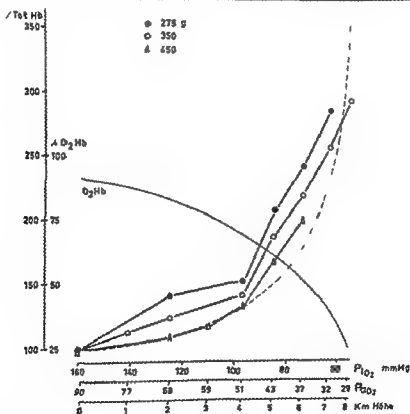


Abb 4

Anstieg des Gesamt-Hämoglobins in " des Ausgangswertes ( $\approx 100$ ) von 275 g 350 g und 450 g schweren Ratten in Hypoxie. Der gestrichelte Kurvenverlauf gibt die Menge Hämoglobin an, die notwendig wäre um das durch den Abfall der O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Sättigung bedingte Absinken des arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalts zu kompensieren. Die Kurve der O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Sättigung entspricht einem mittleren Verlauf. Einteilung der Abszissenachse entsprechend Abb 1

berechnete Kurvenverlauf des Gesamt Hb um den O Hb Sättigungsabfall durch eine gesteigerte Hb Konzentration zu kompensieren wiedergegeben

Aus der Betrachtung des annäherungsweise hyperbolischen Kurvenverlaufs der berechneten Hb Menge geht hervor dass bis zu etwa 6000 m Höhe die Hb Menge etwa verdoppelt werden muss um den Abfall der O Hb Sättigung auszugleichen Darüber hinaus wird mit jedem kleineren Druckabfall die zu bildende Hb Menge immer größer und unabhängig davon dass die Hb Konzentration nicht beliebig ansteigen kann und andere Faktoren determinierend sein mögen lässt sich auch ein endlicher Grenzwert der Hb Bildung absehen

Die gefundenen Werte des Gesamt Hb weichen von dem berechneten Kurvenverlauf teilweise nicht unerheblich und systematisch ab Je kleiner die Tiere sind desto größer ist die Abweichung Lediglich die 450 g schweren Tiere folgen bis zu 4000 m Höhe den Berechnungen zufriedenstellend Die 350 g und 275 g schweren Tiere zeigen bereits bis zu 4000 m um 10—20% höhere Hb Werte In 5000 m weichen die 275 g Tiere mit über 50% und in 6000 m mit über 60% stark vom berechneten Wert ab Auch die 450 g Tiere haben in 5000 m deutlich höhere Werte die 350 g Tiere nehmen eine Mittelstellung ein In 6000 m näherten sich die größten Tiere dem berechneten Wert nicht jedoch die mittleren Tiere und kleinsten Tiere Die 8000 m Werte von 3 nicht volladaptierten Ratten deuten an welche hohe Hb Bildungsleistung diese Tiere bei einer extrem niedrigen O Hb Sättigung (20% — extrapolierter Wert) noch vollbringen

Die Entscheidung darüber ob die gefundenen Werte in ihrem Verlauf am ehesten zusammengesetzten linearen oder gekrümmten Kurven entsprechen muss offen bleiben Dazu sind umfangreichere Untersuchungen notwendig Eine wesentliche Rolle dabei spielen u.a. die Werte in 4000 m Um diese zu sichern sind zu verschiedenen Zeitpunkten (1958 1959 1960) zu sammen 1 Tiergruppen in dieser Höhe untersucht worden Die Resultate waren trotz dieser ausgedehnten Versuchsdauer und der damit verbundenen stärkeren Inhomogenität des Tiermaterials gut reproduzierbar

Dass es tatsächlich sinnvoll sein kann die Frage nach der Art der Kurvenverläufe zu diskutieren wird deutlich wenn man die nachfolgend behandelten Veränderungen des Blutvolumens in Abhängigkeit vom Grad der Hypoxie betrachtet

#### c) Blutvolumen bei Änderung des O<sub>2</sub> Drucks

Das vorhandene Material ist hier relativ so gering dass eine ins einzelne gehende Darstellung nicht möglich ist und in Abb 5 nur das grundsätzliche Verhalten des Blutvolumens in Abhängigkeit vom O-Druck der Einatemungs luft gezeigt werden kann Wie in Abb 4 wurden die Normalwerte bei Meeres

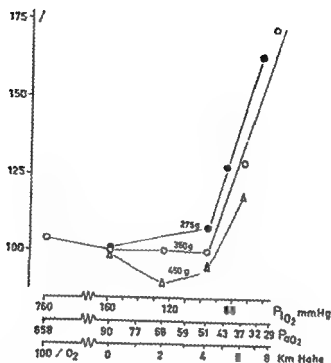


Abb 5

Abweichen des Blutvolumens unterschiedlich schwerer Ratten in % vom Werte bei Meereshöhe (= 100) bei verschiedenem O<sub>2</sub> Druck. Einteilung der Abszissenachse entsprechend Abb 1

Tab III

Korrelation zwischen Blutvolumen (y) und Körpergewicht (x) bei Meereshöhe und verschiedenen Hypoxiegraden. Gleichungen der Regressionslinien mit  $\pm$  Standardabweichung Korrelationskoeffizienten und Signifikanz der Korrelationskoeffizienten. Bei den Normalwerten wurden Tiere unter 200 g Körpergewicht, die eine etwas geringere Hb Konzentration als ältere Tiere haben konnten (Arbeit II) sowie solche mit niedrigerer Hb Konzentration als II g $\mu$  ausgeschlossen. n = Anzahl der Werte

Hohe m	n	$y = a + bx \pm s$	$r \pm s$	p
II	218	$y = 3.51 + 0.0581x \pm 2.28$	$0.87 \pm 0.016$	$< 0.001$
2000	9	$y = 14.37 + 0.0771x \pm 1.13$	$0.50 \pm 0.264$	$0.10-0.05$
4000	15	$y = 9.89 + 0.0404x \pm 1.73$	$0.81 \pm 0.091$	$< 0.001$
6000	29	$y = 15.34 + 0.0435x \pm 2.69$	$0.72 \pm 0.090$	$< 0.001$
7000	7	$y = 25.07 + 0.0247x \pm 2.55$	$0.27 \pm 0.378$	$> 0.05$

hohe gleich 100 gesetzt und die Abweichung davon in Prozent dargestellt. Dabei wurden analog Abb 1 die Regressionslinien vom Blutvolumen in Abhängigkeit vom Körpergewicht berechnet. Diese sind Tab III zu entnehmen.

In Abb 5 sind so erhaltene Werte für 275, 350 und 450 g schwere Tiere dargestellt. In 2000 m Höhe waren nur Tiere von mehr als 350 g Gewicht vorhanden, umgekehrt in 7000 m nur kleinere als 350 g schwere Tiere. In 5000 m lag eine Gruppe von Ratten den 275 g schweren Tieren und in 8000 m den 350 g schweren Tieren am nächsten.

Das Verhalten des Blutvolumens zeigt ein charakteristisches Bild. In hohem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck und in Hypoxie bis zu einer Höhe entsprechend 4000 m sind keine wesentlichen Veränderungen nachzuweisen. In Hypoxie besteht lediglich teilweise eine gewisse Tendenz zu einem Abfall. Mit weiter sinkendem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck steigt dann das Blutvolumen annähernd linear, wobei sich unterschiedlich grosse Tiere deutlich voneinander unterscheiden.

Das vorliegende Material lässt aber noch weitere Einzelheiten erkennen, die auf die biologische Bedeutung der Blutvolumenregulation unter Hypoxie hinweisen. Das wird aus dem Vergleich der Korrelationskoeffizienten deutlich, wenn man vom selben Material gleichzeitig die Regressionslinien für das Gesamthb und das Blutvolumen in Abhängigkeit vom Körpergewicht berechnet. In Meereshöhe ist das Blutvolumen etwas schlechter als das Gesamthb zum Körpergewicht (Korrelationskoeffizient  $r = 0.97$  gegenüber  $0.96$ ) korreliert. Das beruht auf den Schwankungen der Hb-Konzentration (biologische Variationen und Methodenfehler) und damit verbunden des Blutvolumens. Anders in Hypoxie. Die Korrelationskoeffizienten des Blutvolumens sind etwa denen des Gesamthb gleich: in 2000 m 0.50 gegenüber 0.49, in 4000 m 0.81 gegenüber 0.83, in 6000 m 0.72 gegenüber 0.60. In 7000 m findet sich kein Zusammenhang zum Körpergewicht.

#### f) Der Einfluss des Körpergewichts auf Gesamthämoglobin und Blutvolumen

Im Vorangegangenen ist die Einwirkung des O<sub>2</sub>-Drucks also eines exogenen Faktors auf verschiedene Größen der Erythropoiese behandelt worden. Dabei zeigte es sich, dass die Reaktionsweise der Erythropoiese auch von einem endogenen Faktor, dem Alter bzw. der Tiergrösse, abhängt. Es mag nahelegend erscheinen, die relativ stärkere hypoxische Reaktion kleinerer Tiere auf den relativ höheren Stoffwechsel dieser Tiere zurückzuführen. Da der Stoffwechsel dieser Tiere nicht gemessen worden ist, kann sich hier eine solche Auffassung nur auf indirekte Daten stützen. Eine derartige Möglichkeit besteht darin, die gemeinsamen Größen mit anderen Körperparametern zu vergleichen. Folgt die Veränderung des Gesamthb bzw. des Blutvolumens am ehesten dem Körpergewicht, spricht das gegen einen unmittelbaren Einfluss des Stoffwechsels. Folgt aber Gesamthb und Blutvolumen am ehesten der Körperoberfläche, ist ein Einfluss des Stoffwechsels naheliegend, da

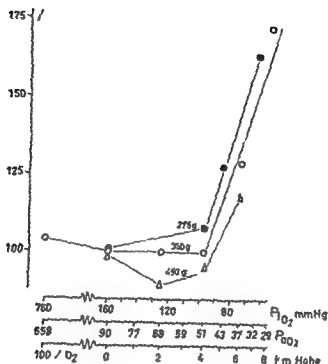


Abb 5

Abweichen des Blutvolumens unterschiedlich schwerer Ratten in % vom Werte bei Meereshöhe ( $\approx 100$ ) bei verschiedenem O Druck Einteilung der Abszissenachse entsprechend Abb 1

Tab III

Korrelation zwischen Blutvolumen ( $y$ ) und Körpergewicht ( $x$ ) bei Meereshöhe und verschiedenen Hypoxiegraden Gleichungen der Regressionslinien mit  $\pm$  Standardabweichung Korrelationskoeffizienten und Signifikanz der Korrelationskoeffizienten Bei den Normalwerten wurden Tiere unter 200 g Körpergewicht die eine etwas geringere Hb Konzentration als ältere Tiere haben konnten (Arbeit II) sowie solche mit niedrigerer Hb Konzentration als 11 g % ausgeschlossen  $n$  = Anzahl der Werte

Hohe m	n	$y = a + bx \pm \sigma$	$r \pm r$	p
0	218	$y = 3.51 + 0.0581x \pm 2.28$	$0.87 \pm 0.016$	$< 0.001$
2000	9	$y = 14.37 + 0.0271x \pm 1.13$	$0.50 \pm 0.61$	$0.10-0.05$
4000	15	$y = 9.89 + 0.0404x \pm 1.73$	$0.81 \pm 0.091$	$< 0.001$
6000	29	$y = 15.34 + 0.043x \pm 2.69$	$0.72 \pm 0.090$	$< 0.001$
7000	7	$y = 25.07 + 0.0747x \pm 2.50$	$0.27 \pm 0.378$	$> 0.05$

hohe gleich 100 gesetzt und die Abweichung davon in Prozent dargestellt Dabei wurden analog Abb 1 die Regressionslinien vom Blutvolumen in Abhängigkeit vom Körpergewicht berechnet Diese sind Tab III zu entnehmen



Tab V

Gesamt Hämoglobin und Blutvolumen von 275 g 350 g und 450 g schweren Ratten in Meereshöhe und verschiedenen Hypoxiegraden bezogen auf Körpergewicht und Körperoberfläche. Die Körperoberfläche wurde nach Litz (1929) berechnet.

Höhe m	Körper gew g	Tot. Hb g	g Tot. Hb 100 g Kör- gew	g Tot. Hb 100 cm <sup>2</sup> Kör ober- fläche	Blutvol ml	ml Blutvol. 100 g Kör- gew	ml Blutvol. 100 cm <sup>2</sup> Kör ober- fläche
0	275	2.06	0.75	0.56	19.5	7.1	5.4
	350	2.55	0.73	0.60	23.9	6.8	5.7
	450	3.21	0.71	0.65	29.7	6.6	6.0
2000	275	2.01	1.06	0.80	—	—	—
	350	3.16	0.90	0.75	23.8	6.8	5.6
	450	3.50	0.78	0.71	26.6	5.9	5.4
4000	275	3.14	1.14	0.86	21.0	7.6	5.8
	350	3.61	1.03	0.86	24.0	6.8	5.7
	450	4.24	0.94	0.86	28.1	6.2	5.7
5000	275	4.28	1.56	1.18	—	—	—
	350	4.75	1.36	1.12	—	—	—
	450	5.39	1.20	1.10	—	—	—
6000	275	4.96	1.80	1.36	27.3	9.9	7.5
	350	5.57	1.59	1.32	30.6	8.7	7.2
	450	6.39	1.42	1.30	44.9	7.8	7.1
7000	250	5.88	2.35	1.72	41.2	12.5	8.1
	300	5.81	1.94	1.51	32.5	10.8	8.5

Allerdings sind in 6000 m Höhe gewisse Abweichungen festzustellen die in 7000 m noch deutlicher hervortreten

#### g) Zur Entwicklung der Polyzythämie bei Hypoxie

Der Entwicklung der Höhenpolyzythämie wie sie am Verlauf der täglich gebildeten Hb-Menge zu verfolgen ist, kommt aus zwei Gründen besonderes Interesse zu. Für sich betrachtet gibt sie einen Einblick in die Dynamik der Hb-Bildung und das Leistungsvermögen des hämatopoietischen Gewebes zusammen mit dem Hb-Bildungsverlauf bei Anämie ermöglicht sie eine vergleichende qualitative und quantitative Beurteilung dieser beiden Stimulationsformen der Erythropoese.

Je nach Hypoxiegrad und in Abhängigkeit davon ob die Erythropoese zuvor durch geringere Hypoxie oder Anämie auf ein höheres Aktivitäts-

auch der Stoffwechsel am besten zur Körperoberfläche, jedenfalls bei einem Material mit sehr verschiedener Tiergrösse korreliert ist

Mit Vorteil kann für solche Untersuchungen die sogenannte allometrische Darstellungsweise verwendet werden. Dabei wird der Zuwachs einer Grösse  $Y$  mit der Änderung einer Grösse  $X$  durch die Gleichung  $Y = a X^b$ , oder anders ausgedrückt  $\log Y = \log a + b \log X$  beschrieben. Das bedeutet, dass  $Y$  und  $X$  bei logarithmischer Darstellungsweise auf einer Geraden liegen vorausgesetzt dass sie in einem konstanten Verhältnis zueinander stehen. Die Konstante  $b$  gibt dabei an in welchem Verhältnis sich  $Y$  in Abhängigkeit von  $X$  ändert.  $b = 1/2, 2/3$  usw. bedeutet also eine Veränderung im Verhältnis 1:1, 2:3 usw.

Tab. IV

Beziehung zwischen Gesamt-Hämoglobin bzw. Blutvolumen ( $y$ ) und Körpergewicht ( $x$ ) entsprechend  $y = a x^b$  bei Meereshöhe und verschiedenen Hypoxiegraden  $n = \text{Anzahl der Bestimmungen}$ . Die 8 Werte für das Gesamt-Hämoglobin in Meereshöhe repräsentieren 378 140–500 g schwere Tiere (Arbeit II) die nach ihrem Gewicht in 8 Gruppen aufgeteilt worden waren.

Hohe m	n	Gesamt Hämoglobin	n	Blutvolumen
0	8	$y = - 6.94 x^{0.88}$	218	$y = - 5.40 x^{0.83}$
2000	16	$y = - 3.67 x^{0.42}$	9	$y = + 1.80 x^{0.44}$
4000	26	$y = - 11.38 x^{0.63}$	15	$y = - 1.34 x^{0.59}$
5000	11	$y = - 2.88 x^{0.45}$	—	—
6000	33	$y = - 2.72 x^{0.46}$	29	$y = + 1.66 x^{0.50}$
7000	7	$y = + 7.63 x^{-0.05}$	7	$y = + 12.48 x^{0.17}$

In Tab. IV sind die allometrischen Gleichungen für die Korrelationen von Gesamt-Hb und Blutvolumen zum Körpergewicht für Tiere in Meereshöhe und verschiedenen Hypoxiegraden zusammengestellt. Aus dem Vergleich der Exponenten  $b$  in Meereshöhe und Hypoxie lassen sich wesentliche Differenzen erkennen.  $b$  fällt von 0.88 bzw. 0.83 in Meereshöhe auf Werte zwischen 0.42–0.63 in 2000–6000 m und in 7000 m auf etwa 0.

Die Bedeutung dieser Änderung wird deutlicher wenn man das Gesamt-Hb bzw. Blutvolumen verschieden grosser Tiere auf Körpergewicht und Körperoberfläche bezieht und die gefundenen Relationswerte miteinander vergleicht. Tab. V zeigt einen derartigen Vergleich. Die Körperoberfläche wurde nach der von LEE (1929) gefundenen Gleichung für die Körperoberfläche in Abhängigkeit vom Gewicht  $\text{Körperoberfläche} = 12.51 \cdot \text{Körpergewicht}^{0.66}$  berechnet. In Meereshöhe mögen Gesamt-Hb und Blutvolumen eher dem Körpergewicht als der Körperoberfläche folgen, die Differenz ist aber nicht gross. In Hypoxie ist dagegen die Körperoberfläche klar der bessere Parameter.

### 3 COBALT

Eine der wenigen Möglichkeiten die Erythropoiese zu stimulieren ohne gleichzeitig den arteriellen O-Druck oder O Gehalt zu vermindern bietet die Zufuhr von Cobalt (Literatur s GRANT und ROOT 1952) Nach den Untersuchungen von GOLDWASSER et al (1957) sowie JACOBSON und GOLDWASSER (1958) bildet Cobalt erythropoietisch aktive Substanzen oderetzt diese frei die ihrerseits den eigentlichen Stimulus der Erythropoiese darstellen. Änderungen im Auftreten dieser Substanzen unter verschiedenen Bedingungen u.a nach Nephrektomie sind von JACOBSON und Mitarbeitern zur Lokalisation der Organe herangezogen worden die diese Substanzen bilden oder freisetzen WHITE et al (1960) haben weiterhin den erythropoiese stimulierenden Effekt von  $5 \mu\text{M CoCl}_2$  gemessen an der Höhe der  $\text{Fe}^{59}$  Inkorporation bei der fastenden Ratte als biologischen Standard für andere erythropoietisch aktive Substanzen verwendet

Der erythropoiese stimulierende Effekt des Plasma von Ratten nach Injektion von  $25 \mu\text{M CoCl}_2$  /100 g Körpergewicht übertrifft den im Plasma nach einer massiven Blutung zu findenden um das Vielfache (JACOBSON und GOLDWASSER 1958) Das ist in sofern bemerkenswert als die Erythrozytenwerte der Ratte nach vielfach wiederholter Injektion von Cobalt nur etwa verdoppelt werden (BERLIN 1951) Hamolytische Reaktionen oder eine verkürzte Lebenszeit unter Cobalt Gabe gebildeter Erythrozyten können jedoch zu einem wesentlich höheren Erythrozytenumsatz führen ohne entsprechenden Anstieg der Gesamterythrozytenmenge Nach den Untersuchungen von VAN DYKE et al (1955) ist die Lebenszeit unter Cobalt Gabe gebildeter Erythrozyten jedoch normal über hamolytische Reaktionen scheint nichts bekannt zu sein

In den eigenen Untersuchungen (Arbeit XII) wurde die Entwicklung der Cobalt Polyzythämie bei einer Dosierung von 0,4 0,6 und 0,8 mg  $\text{CoCl}_2$  /100 g Körpergewicht und Tag verfolgt Aus dem Verhalten der spezifischen bzw gesamten Aktivität zuvor in vivo radioaktiv gezeichneten Hämins wurde außerdem versucht Aufschluss über eventuelle hamolytische Reaktionen zu erhalten 3 wöchentliche Zufuhr von 0,4 mg  $\text{CoCl}_2$  /100 g Körpergewicht führte bei unverändertem Gesamt Hb zu einem signifikanten Anstieg der Hb Konzentration und Retikulozyten Hamolytische Reaktionen waren nicht nachzuweisen Während der nachfolgenden 3 wöchentlichen Periode mit einer täglichen Zufuhr von 0,6 mg  $\text{CoCl}_2$  /100 g Körpergewicht entwickelte sich eine echte Polyzythämie mit maximalen Retikulozytenwerten und einem signifikant erhöhtem Gesamt Hb Nach weiter 6 wöchentlicher Cobalt Behandlung mit 0,8 mg  $\text{CoCl}_2$  /100 g Körpergewicht wurden bei kontinuierlich steigendem Gesamt Hb absolute und relative Blutwerte wie sie bei Tieren

niveau gebracht worden ist, werden unterschiedliche Bildungsverläufe gefunden, die in Arbeit VII beschrieben sind und auf die verwiesen sei. Es sollen hier nur einige qualitative und quantitative Unterschiede zu dem Bildungsverlauf bei Anämie hervorgehoben werden. Auch bei einem geringen hypoxischen Reiz entsprechend 3000 m und 1000 m Höhe erreicht die Hb Bildung auf ihrer Höhe das 3—4 fache der Norm. Bei akuter Anämie wird ein etwa verdoppelter Wert gefunden. In Anämie setzt die Hb Bildung etwa am 3. Tag nach der Blutentnahme ein, in Hypoxie wird bereits nach 2 Tagen ein scharf ausgebildetes Maximum gefunden mit Ausnahme der Versuche, bei denen bereits eine erhöhte Erythropoiese vorlag.

Diese erste Phase der Hypoxie bei der die Hb Konzentration des Blutes kraftig ansteigt, ist in Arbeit VIII näher studiert worden. Aus dem Verhalten der spezifischen Aktivität zuvor *in vivo* radioaktiv gezeichneten Hämins und dem Gesamt Hb kann geschlossen werden, dass während der ersten beiden Tage in Hypoxie trotz dieser kraftigen Hb Synthese kein Hb aus dem Gewebe in die Zirkulation übertritt. Eine hämolytische Reaktion, die VERZAR (1947) als möglichen Bildungsreiz der Erythropoiese diskutiert hat, war nicht zu erkennen.

#### *h) Zur Rückbildung der Polyzythämie nach Hohenaufenthalt*

Die Readaptation eines hohenpolyzythämischen Organismus an Meereshöhe ist mit einer Reihe hämatologischer Fragen beispielsweise den eines vermehrten Zellabbaus oder der Hemmung der Zellproliferation verknüpft. Die Readaptation lässt sich aber auch im Hinblick auf die O<sub>2</sub> Versorgung des Gewebes betrachten. Dabei ergibt sich die interessante Situation, dass die durch Hypoxie hervorgerufene gesteigerte Kapillarisation des Gewebes nach Übergang auf Meereshöhe eine bessere O<sub>2</sub> Versorgung des Gewebes als normal möglich erscheinen lässt. Hingegen die regulatorischen Prozesse der Erythropoiese von der adäquaten O<sub>2</sub> Versorgung des Gewebes ab so sind hier Voraussetzungen dafür gegeben, dass die O<sub>2</sub> Kapazität des Blutes kompensatorisch unter den Normalwert absinkt.

In Arbeit X wurde der Abfall der absoluten und relativen Blutwerte von hohenpolyzythämischen Ratten nach Übergang auf Meereshöhe untersucht. Eine vorübergehende relative Anämie etwa 10 Tage nach Ende des Hohenaufenthalts kann zwar in dem genannten Sinne gedeutet werden. Solange jedoch die kapillare Durchblutung bzw. der O<sub>2</sub> Druck des Gewebes selbst nicht bekannt sind, ist es nicht möglich, daraus mit Sicherheit einen funktionellen Zusammenhang zwischen der Höhe der O<sub>2</sub> Kapazität des Blutes und dem Grad der Kapillarisation des Gewebes herzuleiten.

darin festgehalten, dass die Steigerung der Erythropoiese unter Hypoxie direkt durch den arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Druck ausgelöst wird. BARCROFT begründet dies mit dem beim Höhenbewohner höheren arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt als normal. HURTADO et al (1915) haben diesen Befund bestätigen können. Ein ähnliches Verhalten haben auch OTIS und HUSOV (1956) beim zyanotischen Herzkranken in Meereshöhe bis zu einer reduzierten O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Sättigung von etwa 70 % gefunden.

In den eigenen Untersuchungen erscheint der arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt in 2000 m Höhe ebenfalls ungewöhnlich hoch, im übrigen sind aber keine sicheren Aussagen zu diesem Punkt möglich. Verglichen mit den von Geburt aus in Höhe lebenden bzw. herzkranken Menschen ist hier die Expositionszeit nämlich relativ so kurz, dass ein unmittelbarer Vergleich ausgeschlossen ist und die Möglichkeit offen bleiben muss, ob bei längerer Versuchszeit nicht doch höhere Werte zu finden gewesen wären. In einem etwa 4 wöchentlichen Versuch am Menschen bis zu 6000 m Höhe fanden HOUSTON und RILEY (1957) ebenfalls keinen erhöhten arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt. Nach REYNARFJE, LOZANO und VALDIVIESO (1959) hat der Mensch nach 1-jährigem Aufenthalt in 4500 m Höhe noch nicht eine dem ständigen Höhenbewohner entsprechende maximale Polyzythämie entwickelt.

2. Aus dem offenbar fehlenden direkten Zusammenhang zwischen arteriellem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck und Erythropoiese ergibt sich noch nicht zwingend, dass der O<sub>2</sub> auf die Erythropoiese über Prozesse, die sich im Gewebe abspielen, einwirkt. Es ist nämlich a) denkbar, dass im anoxischen Blut selbst Verbindungen gebildet werden, die die Erythropoiese stimulieren. HIRSJARVI (1953) hat diese Vorstellung für die jedoch endgültige Beweise noch ausstehen, eingehend diskutiert. Es mag aber b) auch die Möglichkeit bestehen, dass im Bereich des venösen Gefäßsystems analog den Chemorezeptoren des arteriellen Gefäßsystems (Carotis, Aorta) O<sub>2</sub>-Druck empfindliche Rezeptoren vorhanden sind, die spezifische Wirkungen auf die Erythropoiese ausüben. Anatomische Befunde lassen prinzipiell auch die Existenz derartiger venöser Chemorezeptoren möglich erscheinen (Glomus pulmonale; KRAHL 1962). Auch der kräftige Anstieg des Herzminutenvolumens bei selektiv herabgesetztem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck des Blutes der A. pulmonalis (HILPERT, BARREY und BAPTELS 1962) mag funktionell gesehen die Vorstellung venöser Chemorezeptoren stützen. Bislang liegen jedoch keinerlei Befunde vor, die auf eine Bedeutung solcher jedenfalls zentraler Chemorezeptoren für die Erythropoiese hinweisen könnten.

3. Im nachfolgenden Abschnitt soll erörtert werden, ob und was dafür spricht, dass die Erythropoiese unmittelbar mit einer adäquaten O<sub>2</sub>-versorgung des Gewebes zusammenhängt. Das wäre einfach, wenn bekannt wäre

in etwa 1000 m Höhe gefunden werden erreicht Trotz dieser unverändert hohen Hb Bildungsleistung fiel die Retikulozytenkonzentration auf Normalwerte ab

### Diskussion zu II

Ziel der vorliegenden Arbeit ist, Aufschluss über Grössen und Prozesse zu erhalten, die die Bildungsleistung der Erythropoese bestimmen. Besonderes Interesse kommt dabei der Funktion des Hb als Beförderungsmittel des O<sub>2</sub> zum Gewebe zu da angenommen werden kann dass die Grosse der Erythropoese davon abhängt, in wie weit die O<sub>2</sub>-Zufuhr zum Gewebe dessen O<sub>2</sub>-Bedarf entspricht. Dieser relativ einfachen Grundkonzeption von der Regulation der Erythropoese stehen jedoch eine Reihe widerspruchsvoller Auffassungen über die Wirkung verschiedener Reize auf die Blutbildung entgegen, die sich allerdings im allgemeinen nicht auf quantitative Messungen stützen können. Einige überwiegend quantitative Studien der Erythropoese unter verschiedenen Bedingungen die derartige Fragen klären mögen, liegen hier vor. Das differenzierteste Bild zeigen dabei die Untersuchungsergebnisse bei verschiedenem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck der Einatemungsluft mit deren Besprechung begonnen werden soll.

1. Bei den Untersuchungen der Erythropoese in Abhängigkeit vom O<sub>2</sub>-Druck der Einatemungsluft ist es zweckmässig zunächst festzustellen ob ein direkter Zusammenhang zwischen der Erythropoese und dem arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Druck besteht. Ist dieses der Fall liegen Problemstellungen vor deren Bearbeitung nach ähnlichen Gesichtspunkten erfolgen kann wie beispielsweise die Behandlung der vom arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Druck abhängigen Atemreaktionen.

Die in einem weiten Bereich hohen O<sub>2</sub>-Drucks unveränderte Hb-Menge und die strenge Zuordnung der Veränderungen der Hb-Menge zur absinkenden O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Sättigung unter Hypoxie sprechen nicht für eine direkte Einwirkung des arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Drucks auf die Erythropoese. Die Vorstellung eines solchen Zusammenhangs wird man ganzlich fallen lassen müssen wenn man die gesteigerte Erythropoese unter Bedingungen in Betracht zieht bei denen der arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Druck unverändert ist der arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt jedoch herabgesetzt ist (Anämie, CO-Vergiftung, Methämoglobinämie) oder wenn man umgekehrt die Hemmung der Erythropoese bei höherem O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt als normal (Readaptation des hohenadaptierten Organismus an Meereshöhe) berücksichtigt.

Obwohl BARCROFT (1927) die letztgenannten Befunde auch als Argument gegen die Vorstellung unmittelbar durch den arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Druck hervorgerufener Veränderungen der Erythropoese genannt hat hat er dennoch

jedoch für eine solche Vorstellung sprechen. Diese Korrelation zur Körperoberfläche in Hypoxie untercheidet sich bemerkenswert von den Verhältnissen bei Meereshöhe. Nach den vorliegenden Daten folgen Gesamt Hb und Blutvolumen von Kontrolltieren eher dem Körpergewicht (Anstieg des Gesamt Hb bzw. Blutvolumens im Verhältnis zum Anstieg des Körpergewichts  $\approx 0.08$  bzw.  $0.83$ ). Bei einem grosseren Material mit verschiedenen Tierespezies wird dieser enge Zusammenhang zum Körpergewicht noch klarer. BRODY (1915) fand für den Anstieg des Blutvolumens im Abhängigkeit vom Körpergewicht einen Zusammenhang entsprechend  $\text{Blutvolumen} \approx 0.0007 \cdot \text{Körpergewicht}^{0.99}$  (Werte von Ratte, Huhn, Hund, Stier). ADOLPH (1919) für das Gesamt Hb bei einem Material ähnlicher Grössenordnung (Ratte, Mensch, halb Pferd) einen Zusammenhang entsprechend  $\text{Total Hb} \approx 0.013 \cdot \text{Körpergewicht}^{0.99}$ .

Da in 6000 m und vor allem in 7000 m Höhe teilweise das Körpergewicht starker absinkt, mag die Körperoberfläche als Mass des Stoffwechsels hier mit einem stärkeren Unsicherheitsmoment behaftet sein. Es muss offen bleiben, ob die schlechtere Relation von Gesamt Hb und Blutvolumen zur berechneten Körperoberfläche in diesen Höhenstufen damit oder mit anderen Faktoren wie Änderungen des Stoffwechsels anderer Tiere unter Hypoxie zusammenhängt, worauf der anhaltende Temperaturabfall solcher Tiere hinweisen mag (FLECHNER und VERZAR 1955).

Es wäre wünschenswert, die allgemeine Gültigkeit des hier gefundenen Zusammenhangs zwischen Gesamt Hb und Blutvolumen zur Körperoberfläche in Hypoxie an verschiedenen Tierespezies zu überprüfen. Die vorliegenden Daten von Hund (REISSMANN 1951, ROTTA et al. 1945) und Mensch (HURTADO et al. 1915, MERINO 1950, REYNAFARJE, LOZANO und VALDIVIESO 1955) zeigen zwar durchweg auf das Körpergewicht bezogene niedrigere Werte als die der Ratte in entsprechender Höhe. Ein direkter Vergleich ist aber vor allem deshalb ausgeschlossen, weil die O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Dissoziationskurve der Ratte gegenüber der des Menschen oder Hundes rechtsverlagert ist. Damit sinkt die O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Sättigung der Ratte bei gegebenem O<sub>2</sub>-Druck wesentlich stärker als die des Menschen oder Hundes, wodurch die Erythropoiese erheblich beeinflusst wird. Die kraftige Stimulation der Erythropoiese des Kaninchens in mittlerer Höhe (1800 m) haben WANG, WINZ und VERZAR (1955) ebenfalls auf die rechtsgelagerte O<sub>2</sub>-Hb-Dissoziationskurve des Kaninchens zurückgeführt.

1. Nach dem bisher Besprochenen kann angenommen werden, dass in Hypoxie die O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung bzw. der O<sub>2</sub>-Druck des Gewebes entscheidend für die regulatorischen Vorgänge der Erythropoiese ist. Damit sollte zwischen

wie hoch unter verschiedenen Bedingungen der O<sub>2</sub>-Druck der Gewebe ist. Was unter »adäquate O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes« verstanden werden kann wird unten ausführlicher besprochen.

Es seien die Änderungen der Erythropoese unter Hypoxie betrachtet. Dabei lassen sich zwei verschiedene Reaktionsformen erkennen. Einmal wird der mit Hypoxie abfallende arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt durch eine erhöhte O<sub>2</sub>-Kapazität des Blutes ausgeglichen. Von dieser Anpassungsweise macht der Organismus bis zu 4000 m Höhe fast ausschliesslich Gebrauch. Bis zu 6000 m Höhe steigt neben der O<sub>2</sub>-Kapazität das Volumen des Gefässsystems für dessen Grösse das Blutvolumen ein Mass bildet und wobei die Kapillarisation entscheidende Bedeutung hat. Bei weiter steigender Hypoxie vergrössert sich schliesslich nur noch das Gefässsystem. Wie unten näher ausgeführt wird, erfolgt der Anstieg des Blutvolumens gleichzeitig mit wesentlichen Umstellungen des Kreislaufs. Diese Kreislaufumstellung bei Unterschreiten eines gewissen O<sub>2</sub>-Drucks im Gewebe dürfte durch eine Gefässdilatation ausgelöst werden. Die Erythropoese wird durch diesen Prozess in sofern stark beteiligt, als sie nun für ein vergrössertes Gesamt Blutvolumen zu sorgen hat, dessen O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt obendrein noch weiter absinkt.

Bei Höhen bis zu 1000 m kann der O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt höher als normal sein. Das spricht dafür, dass es nicht einzig darum geht, einen konstanten arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt aufrecht zu halten. Darauf deuten auch die Befunde in extremer Hypoxie hin. Beim Übergang von 6000 m auf 7000 m Höhe fällt nämlich der arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt und bleibt auf einem niedrigeren Niveau. Wäre der erniedrigte arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt alleinige Ursache der gesteigerten Erythropoese, so sollte in 7000 m Höhe immer mehr Hb gebildet werden. Tatsächlich stellen sich aber auch hier Gesamt Hb und Blutvolumen auf neue Niveaus ein und erst in 8000 m Höhe steigt die Hb-Bildung erneut stark an. Ein Versagen der Erythropoese in 7000 m Höhe ist daher nicht wahrscheinlich, vielmehr ist zu vermuten, dass andere Mechanismen wie die gesteigerte Kapillarisation oder Durchblutung den O<sub>2</sub>-Bedarf des Gewebes befriedigen. Ähnliche Mechanismen müssen aber auch bereits in 5000 m und 6000 m Höhe wirksam sein, da sonst der arterielle O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt wesentlich höher als normal sein sollte, um den unter Hypoxie absinkenden O<sub>2</sub>-Druck des Gewebes auf einem unveränderten Niveau zu halten.

Der Nachweis, dass die Höhe des O<sub>2</sub>-Bedarfs des Gewebes auf die Erythropoese einwirkt, kann als weitere starke Stütze dessen angesehen werden, dass die Veränderungen der Erythropoese tatsächlich von der adäquaten O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes abhängig sind. Die hier beobachtete gute Korrelation des Gesamt Hb bzw. Blutvolumens zur Körperoberfläche d.h. einem indirekten Mass des Stoffwechsels in Hypoxie ist zwar nicht beweisend, mag



ähnliche Verhältnis = vorliegen. Dem widersprechen auch Untersuchungen des Knochenmarks colchicinvergifteter Ratten in Hypoxie und Anämie nach denen an allen teilungsfähigen und vor allem reiferen Zellelementen die Zellproliferation einsetzt (MÖLLER 1960). Erklärt man andererseits diese Latenz mit dem durch die Blutentnahme verbundenen Operationstrauma, so läßt sich ebenfalls nicht verstehen, warum sich bei akuter schwerer Hypoxie die Tiere vielfach an die Grenze der Lebensfähigkeit bringt, nicht eine ebensolche oder längere Latenz findet. Eine Lösung dieser Frage kann darin zu suchen sein, dass der eigentliche erythropoietische Reiz bei Anämie erst dann auftritt, wenn die Hb-Konzentration des Blutes durch den kompensatorischen Anstieg des Plasmavolumens abfällt. In der Literatur werden je nach Tierart, Umfang der Blutung und sonstigen Bedingungen sehr verschiedene Zeitintervalle dafür angegeben. In den eigenen Versuchen wurden teils nach 24 Stunden normale Blutvolumina (Arbeit IV) teils bei etwas kräftigerem Blutverlust nach 48 Stunden noch erniedrigte Blutvolumina gefunden (Arbeit III). Weiterhin ist denkbar, dass je nach der erythropoietischen Reizstärke andere störende Faktoren mehr oder minder zur Geltung kommen. Daraus einen prinzipiellen Unterschied für Anämie und Hypoxie als Reizform der Erythropoiese ableiten zu wollen, erscheint jedoch nicht begründet. Die gefundene normale Lebenslänge unter Anämie gebildeter Erythrozyten stützt ebenfalls nicht die Vorstellung einer Sonderstellung der Blutbildung bei Anämie gegenüber Normalverhältnissen und Hypoxie. Das schließt aber nicht aus, dass bei anhaltenden und schweren Anämien anatomisch und funktionell abnorme Zellen gebildet werden können (ASBENS 1963).

Cobalt erwies sich im Vergleich zu Hypoxie und Anämie als sehr viel schwächerer erythropoietischer Reiz. Die von JACOBSON und GOLDWASSER (1958) beschriebene starke erythropoietinbildende Potenz von Cobalt findet demnach nicht einen entsprechenden Ausdruck in den Blutwerten selbst. Es mag deshalb ratsam erscheinen, nicht allzu weitgehende Schlussfolgerungen aus dem Auftreten derartiger Substanzen für das Regulationsgeschehen der Erythropoiese zu ziehen, zumal auch der als biologischer Standard von WHITE et al. (1960) verwendete erythropoiese-stimulierende Effekt von  $5 \mu\text{M}$   $\text{CoCl}_2$  von KEIGHLEY (1962) nur bei fastenden Ratten eines bestimmten Stammes und Gechlechts gefunden werden konnte. Nach den Untersuchungen von LEVY, LEVISON und SCHADE (1950) soll die Wirkung von Cobalt über die Hemmung gewisser auch an der Zellatmung beteiligter Enzyme erfolgen.

5. Mit der Annahme, dass Änderungen der Erythropoiese von der adäquaten O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes abhängen, tritt die Frage auf, in welchem Verhältnis die verschiedenen Faktoren, die auf den O<sub>2</sub>-Druck des

Anämie und Hypoxie als Reiz der Erythropoese kein prinzipieller Unterschied bestehen. Es ist ebenfalls nicht möglich bei Hypoxie in einem erniedrigten arteriellen  $O_2$ -Druck oder  $O_2$ -Gehalt für sich die auslösende Ursache einer erhöhten Erythropoese zu suchen. Man kann lediglich die jeweilige Bedeutung dieser beiden Komponenten für den  $O_2$ -Druck des Gewebes versuchen abzuschätzen.

Dem nachfolgenden Vergleich der Wirkung von Anämie mit Hypoxie und Cobalt auf die Erythropoese sei eine sehr grobe Übersichtsrechnung des mittleren venösen und mittleren kapillaren  $O_2$ -Drucks bei Hypoxie und Anämie vorausgestellt. Der venöse  $O_2$ -Druck wurde unter der Annahme einer arterio-venösen  $O_2$ -Differenz von 5 Vol-% aus dem arteriellen  $O_2$ -Druck, der arteriellen  $O_2$ -Hb-Sättigung und der von JONES, MÆGRAITH und SCULTHORPE (1950) angegebenen (leicht veränderten)  $O_2$ -Hb-Dissoziationskurve der Ratte berechnet. In Hypoxie wurde die Linksverlagerung der Kurve mit dem verminderten  $CO_2$ -Druck in Rechnung gestellt, nicht jedoch die in ihrem Umfang hier nicht bekannte Rechtsverlagerung der Kurve bei Anämie. Für den mittleren kapillaren  $O_2$ -Druck ( $p_{cO_2}$ ) gilt nach BARCROFT (1931)

approximativ  $p_{cO_2} = p_{vO_2} + \frac{p_{aO_2} - p_{vO_2}}{3}$ ,  $p_{vO_2}$ ,  $p_{aO_2}$  = mittlerer venöser bzw. arterieller  $O_2$ -Druck. Danach beträgt unter Normalbedingungen bei einem arteriellen  $O_2$ -Gehalt von 15 Vol-% der mittlere venöse bzw. kapillare  $O_2$ -Druck 56 bzw. 67 mm Hg. In 4000 m und 6000 m Höhe sinkt die arterielle  $O_2$ -Hb-Sättigung auf 65 % und 56 %, der arterielle  $O_2$ -Gehalt auf 10,7 Vol-% und 9,2 Vol-%, der mittlere venöse  $O_2$ -Druck auf 32 und 24 mm Hg, der mittlere kapillare  $O_2$ -Druck auf 38 und 28 mm Hg. Eine gleiche Senkung des arteriellen  $O_2$ -Gehalts durch Anämie führt zu einem venösen  $O_2$ -Druck von 47 und 42 mm Hg und zu einem mittleren kapillaren  $O_2$ -Druck von 61 und 58 mm Hg.

Vergleicht man auf der Basis dieser mehr qualitativen als quantitativen Berechnungen die Hb-Bildung bei Anämie und Hypoxie, so ist die sehr viel geringere Bildungsleistung bei Anämie leicht verständlich. Die Hb-Bildung bei Anämie wird auf ihrer Höhe etwa verdoppelt, in Hypoxie bei etwa gleich niedrigem arteriellen  $O_2$ -Gehalt etwa vervierfacht. Einige qualitative Unterschiede im Hb-Bildungsverlauf sind demgegenüber nicht ohne weiteres verständlich. Bis zum Hb-Anstieg nach Beginn der Anämie vergehen etwa 72 Stunden, in Hypoxie werden bereits nach 18 Stunden maximale Bildungswerte gefunden. Erklärt man diese Latenz bei Anämie mit ERSLEV (1959) damit, dass der erythropoetische Reiz an den Stammzellen angreift und eine solche Zeit vergeht, bis für eine gesteigerte Hb-Synthese die notwendigen Zellen zur Verfügung stehen, so bleibt unklar, warum in Hypoxie nicht

ähnliche Verhältnisse vorliegen. Dem widersprechen auch Untersuchungen des Knochenmarks colchicinvergifteter Ratten in Hypoxie und Anämie nach denen an allen teilungsfähigen und vor allem reiferen Zellelementen die Zellproliferation einsetzt (MÖLLER 1960). Erklärt man andererseits diese Latenz mit dem durch die Blutentnahme verbundenen Operationstrauma so ist ebenfalls nicht zu verstehen warum sich bei akuter schwerer Hypoxie die die Tiere vielfach an die Grenze der Lebensfähigkeit bringt nicht eine ebensolche oder längere Latenz findet. Eine Lösung dieser Frage kann darin zu suchen sein dass der eigentliche erythropoietische Reiz bei Anämie erst dann auftritt wenn die Hb-Konzentration des Blutes durch den kompensatorischen Anstieg des Plasmavolumens abfällt. In der Literatur werden je nach Tierart und Umfang der Blutung und sonstigen Bedingungen sehr verschiedene Zeitintervalle dafür angegeben. In den eigenen Versuchen wurden teils nach 24 Stunden normale Blutvolumina (Arbeit IV) teils bei etwas kräftigerem Blutverlust nach 48 Stunden noch erniedrigte Blutvolumina gefunden (Arbeit III). Weiterhin ist denkbar dass je nach der erythropoietischen Reizstärke andere fördernde Faktoren mehr oder minder zur Geltung kommen. Daraus einen prinzipiellen Unterschied für Anämie und Hypoxie als Reizform der Erythropoiese ableiten zu wollen erscheint jedoch nicht begründet. Die gefundene normale Lebenslange unter Anämie gebildeter Erythrozyten stützt ebenfalls nicht die Vorstellung einer Sonderstellung der Blutbildung bei Anämie gegenüber Normalverhältnissen und Hypoxie. Das schließt aber nicht aus dass bei anhaltenden und schweren Anämien anatomisch und funktionell abnorme Zellen gebildet werden können (AMBS 1963).

Cobalt erweist sich im Vergleich zu Hypoxie und Anämie als sehr viel schwächerer erythropoietischer Reiz. Die von JACOBSON und GOLDWASSER (1958) beschriebene starke erythropoietinbildende Potenz von Cobalt findet demnach nicht einen entsprechenden Ausdruck in den Blutwerten selbst. Es mag deshalb ratsam erscheinen nicht allzu weitgehende Schlussfolgerungen aus dem Auftreten derartiger Substanzen für das Regulationsgeschehen der Erythropoiese zu ziehen zumal auch der als biologischer Standard von WHITE et al. (1960) verwendete erythropoietin imitierende Effekt von  $5 \mu\text{M CoCl}_2$  von KEICHLIFY (1962) nur bei fastenden Ratten eines bestimmten Stammes und Geschlechts gefunden werden konnte. Nach den Untersuchungen von LEVY LEVISON und SCHADE (1950) soll die Wirkung von Cobalt über die Hemmung gewisser auch an der Zellatmung beteiligter Enzyme erfolgen.

5. Mit der Annahme dass Änderungen der Erythropoiese von der adäquaten O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes abhängen tritt die Frage auf in welchem Verhältnis die verschiedenen Faktoren die auf den O<sub>2</sub>-Druck des

Gewebe einwirken zueinander stehen. Dabei handelt es sich im wesentlichen um folgende Größen: Durchblutung, O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt des Blutes, interkapillärer Abstand, kapillare Diffusionsoberfläche sowie O<sub>2</sub>-Verbrauch des Gewebes. Die Bedeutung einiger dieser Größen für den O<sub>2</sub>-Gewebedruck ist von LETHY (1957) abgeschätzt worden. Der für einen gewissen Punkt eines Normalgewebes berechnete O<sub>2</sub>-Druck von 32 mm Hg steigt danach um etwa 10–15 mm Hg, wenn entweder die Durchblutung um 50 % steigt oder der halbe interkapilläre Abstand um 50 % sinkt. Steigt der O<sub>2</sub>-Verbrauch um 50 %, sinkt umgekehrt der O<sub>2</sub>-Druck um etwa 20 mm Hg. Die Veränderungen des O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalts sind etwa denen einer Durchblutungsänderung vergleichbar. Sie sind allerdings nach oben hin stark beschränkt. Hinzu kommt, daß die Viskosität bei Überschreiten eines Hamatokrits von etwa 60 % stärker ansteigt (GREEN 1950), die Verhältnisse sind aber schwer zu überblicken, da gleichzeitig auch der Kapillardiameter anzusteigen scheint (ORITZ 1952).

Ein intimer Zusammenhang zwischen der Höhe der Kapillarisation und den Änderungen im O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt des Blutes als Mittel, auf den O<sub>2</sub>-Druck des Gewebes einzuwirken, kann wie oben und auch in Arbeit X besprochen worden ist, vermutet werden. Hier soll auf die Bedingungen eingegangen werden, unter denen der O<sub>2</sub>-Bedarf des Gewebes überwiegend durch Durchblutungsänderungen bzw. Änderungen in der O<sub>2</sub>-Kapazität des Blutes befriedigt wird.

In Meereshöhe wird ein gesteigerter O<sub>2</sub>-Bedarf im wesentlichen gänzlich durch eine erhöhte Durchblutung gedeckt. Weder ändert häufig ausgeübte Muskelarbeit die O<sub>2</sub>-Kapazität des Blutes noch kann der verhältnismäßig sehr bescheidene Effekt der Thyreoidea auf die Erythropoiese als spezifisch erythropoietisch angesprochen werden (GRANT und ROOT 1952, VAN DIK et al. 1954, GEMZELL et al. 1963). Auch bei O<sub>2</sub>-Mangel kommt es zu Durchblutungssteigerungen. Charakteristisch für diese ist, daß sie in sehr gute Relation zum venösen O<sub>2</sub>-Druck gestellt werden können (NOELL und SCHNEIDER 1942, NOELL 1944 — Gehirndurchblutung, KORVER 1959 — Herzminutenvolumen). Dabei ist gleichgültig, ob arterielle Hypoxie, Anämie, Oligämie oder CO-Vergiftung vorliegt und um welche Tierart es sich handelt (Mensch, Hund, Kaninchen). Die Durchblutungssteigerung setzt bei einem venösen O<sub>2</sub>-Druck von etwa 35–30 mm Hg ein, entsprechend einem etwa in 1000 m Höhe herrschenden arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Druck oder einem Anämiegrad von etwa 7 g % Hb. Dieser O<sub>2</sub>-Druck stellt auch in den vorliegenden Untersuchungen einen Grenzwert dar, bei dem das Blutvolumen anzusteigen beginnt. Für die Zirkulation in Hypoxie ist ferner bemerkenswert, daß die gesteigerte Pulsfrequenz etwa 1 Woche nach einsetzender Hypoxie wieder auf den Ausgangswert abzusinken pflegt (KORVER 1959). Das Herzminuten

6 Ein vielerortertes Problem ist, wo der  $O_2$  bzw.  $O_2$ -Mangel in die Regulation der Erythropoiese eingreift. Ein direkter Einfluss auf das Knochenmark wird jetzt allgemein abgelehnt. Die Gründe dafür haben GRANT und ROOR (1952) ausführlich besprochen.  $O_2$  wirkt demnach indirekt auf die Erythropoiese über im Gewebe gebildete Zwischenprodukte "sogenannte Hamatopoietine" (CARNOT und DEFLANDRE 1906) oder Erythropoietine (BONSDORFF und JALAVISTO 1918), ein.

Es ist bisher nicht sicher geklärt, welche Gewebe unter  $O_2$ -Mangel diese Erythropoietine bilden. Die verschiedensten endokrinen Organe Leber, Nieren, Thyreoidea, Keimdrüsen und Hypophyse haben zwar einen gewissen modifizierenden Einfluss auf die Erythropoiese, an der prinzipiellen hypoxischen Reaktion eines Organismus ändern sie jedoch nichts (VAN DIKE et al 1951, PILIERO 1959). Auch der Hypothalamus, der mit der endokrinen Regulation eng verbunden ist, hat keine Bedeutung für die Entwicklung der Polyzythämie bei Hypoxie (PILIERO, MEDICI und ORR 1962).

Die von STOHLMAN, RATH und ROSE (1953, 1951) sowie SCHMID und GILBERTSEN (1955) beschriebene kraftige Polyzythämie bei 2 Fällen mit offenstehendem Ductus arteriosus mit hohem Druck im Lungenkreislauf, wodurch die obere Körperhälfte mit normal  $O_2$ -gesättigtem, die untere Körperhälfte mit stark vermindert  $O_2$ -gesättigtem Blut versorgt wird, zeigt, dass das Gehirn nicht der primäre Angriffspunkt von Hypoxie ist. Dies in einem Fall hypoplastische Knochenmark der unteren Körperhälfte und das hyperplastische Knochenmark der oberen Körperhälfte bei beiden Fällen demonstriert weiterhin, dass der herabgesetzte  $O_2$ -Druck nicht primär das Knochenmark stimuliert.

Meerschweinchen ohne Milz reagieren auf Hypoxie ähnlich wie Normaltiere (GORDON und KLEINBERG 1937).

Die reichlichen Untersuchungen über die Bedeutung der Niere ergeben kein eindeutiges Bild. (Für eine eingehende Diskussion s. zusammenfassende Übersichten). Das beruht u. a. darauf, dass nephrektomierte Tiere nur kurze Zeit überleben bzw. durch die sich entwickelnde Uramie stark beeinträchtigt werden. Vielfach sind indirekte Tests herangezogen worden, wobei der erythropoiese-stimulierende Effekt von Plasma nephrektomierter oder ureter unterbundener Tiere an hypophysektomierten, hungernden oder polyzythämischen Tieren geprüft worden ist. In Hypoxie haben GOLDWASSER et al. (1953) keinen gesteigerten erythropoietischen Effekt im Plasma nephrektomierter Tiere im Gegensatz zu ureter unterbundenen oder normalen Tieren gefunden. MIPAND, PRENTICE und SLAUGHWHITE (1959) fanden demgegenüber auch beim nephrektomierten Tier in Hypoxie einen vollen Effekt. LANGE und GALLAGHER (1962) einen abgeschwachten. In Parabioseversuchen, bei denen sich der

eine Hypoxiehypothese gegenübergestellt (OPITZ 1948). Nach den Berechnungen des O Drucks des Gehirns von OPITZ und SCHNEIDER (1950) scheinen für die Reaktionen dieses Organs die Hypoxiehypothese wahrscheinlicher zu sein. Weitere Untersuchungen von HIRSCH et al (1955) und Berechnungen von THEWS (1960) mögen eher die Anoxiehypothese stützen. Ein wesentlicher Fortschritt zur Klärung dieser Frage sind vor allem *in vivo* Messungen des Oxydationszustands der Pyridin Nucleotide. CHANCE, COHEN und SCHÖNER (1962) fanden einen beginnenden Anstieg des Reduktionszustandes der Pyridin Nucleotide der Hirnrinde der Ratte bei einer  $P_{aO_2}$  von 100 mm O Konzentration der Einatemungsluft entsprechend einem intrazellulären O Druck von etwa 1 mm Hg.

Es ist nicht möglich sich definitiv dazu zu äussern, ob die Regulation der Erythropoiese entsprechend der Anoxiehypothese oder Hypoxiehypothese vor sich geht. Wie das Absinken der Erythropoiese bei hohem O-Gehalt des arteriellen Blutes zeigt z.B. beim Übergang eines in Höhe lebenden Organismus auf Meereshöhe, besteht bereits bei Luftatmung ein vom O Druck abhängiger Bildungsreiz. Nach der Anoxiehypothese müsste also bereits hier die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit gewisser Zellen von denen dieser Reiz ausgeht eingeschränkt sein. Die Hypoxiehypothese ermöglicht es nicht nur den erythropoietischen Reiz bei normalem O Druck sondern auch in mittleren Hypoxiegraden, bei dem die Gesamt O Aufnahme offenbar noch keine messbare Einschränkung erfährt zu erklären. Ob der fehlende erythropoietische Reiz bei gezieltem O Bedarf des Gewebes und Atmung in Normalluft mit dem dabei im wesentlichen unveränderten Oxydationszustand zu mindest der terminalen Oxydase der Atmungskette zusammenhängt (CHANCE 1957) muss ebenfalls offen bleiben.

## Zusammenfassung und Schlussfolgerung

Der vorliegende Beitrag zur Frage der Regulation der Erythropoiese wurde besonders im Hinblick auf die funktionelle Bedeutung des Hämoglobins als O-Träger und die O Versorgung des Gewebes ausgeführt. Dabei wurden die Änderungen der gesamten Hämoglobinmenge, der relativen Blutwerte und des Blutvolumens der Ratte bei wochenlangem Aufenthalt in O-Drucken zwischen 760 und 50 mm Hg bei künstlich verändertem O Gehalt des Blutes und unter Cobalt Zufuhr untersucht.

Im ersten methodologischen Teil wurde ein Verfahren beschrieben, mit dessen Hilfe unter Verwendung von CO beliebig oft und vom selben Tier die gesamte Hämoglobinmenge bestimmt und verfolgt werden kann. An

Mangel Hb zu bilden beginnt (FOX und PHEAR 1953) Es ist denkbar, dass der Stimulation der Hb Bildung durch O<sub>2</sub> Mangel bei Saugern und niedrigen Tieren gleiche biochemische Prozesse zugrunde liegen

7 Neben der Frage, wo der O<sub>2</sub> in die Regulation der Erythropoiese ein greift interessiert in hohem Grade wie das geschieht — wahrscheinlich der Kernpunkt des Regulationsproblems der Erythropoiese Dabei sind zwar Folgeerscheinungen von O<sub>2</sub> Mangel bekannt beispielsweise das Auftreten von erythropoiese stimulierenden Substanzen Die primären, mit dem O<sub>2</sub> verbundenen Prozesse sind aber weder bekannt, noch bestehen klare Vorstellungen darüber wie sie aussehen konnten

Als Reiz für Änderungen der Erythropoiese sind oben Abweichungen von der »adaquaten O<sub>2</sub> Versorgung des Gewebes« angenommen worden Darunter kann zweierlei verstanden werden 1 Ein Absinken des O<sub>2</sub> Drucks unter einen kritischen Wert, bei dem die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit abzusinken beginnt Dieser Grenzwert ist manometrisch oder polarographisch in verschiedenen Präparaten bestimmt worden Kugelbakterien (*Micrococcus candidans*) und Hefe (*Torula utilis*) (WARBURG und KUBOWITZ 1929) Backerhefe (WINTZLER 1941), Hirnhomogenat der Ratte (ELLIOTT und HENRY 1946), Herzpräparationen (CHANCE 1952 LONGMUIR 1954) Mitochondrien der Rattenleber (BANDER und KIESE 1955) Rattenleberzellen (LONGMUIR 1957) Mit gewissen Variationen für unterschiedliche Temperatur und Präparate wird ein beginnender Abfall der Atmungsgeschwindigkeit bei rund 5—05 mm Hg gefunden 2 Eine Änderung im Oxydations-Reduktions-Gleichgewicht der terminalen Oxydase (Cytochrom a<sub>3</sub>) und der dieser nahegelegenen Glieder in der Atmungskette ohne Einschränkung der Atmungsgeschwindigkeit Nach CHANCE (1957) ändert sich der Oxydationszustand dieses Teils der Atmungskette bei einer O<sub>2</sub> Konzentration, die 10-fach höher ist als die, bei der die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit abzusinken beginnt Chance schreibt dazu »This phenomenon may afford an explanation for the failure of certain physiological functions at oxygen tensions exceeding the critical value for respiration Such processes might be triggered by the response of the terminal oxidase to oxygen concentrations and not by the net rate of oxygen utilisation«

Seitens der Physiologie ist lebhaft diskutiert worden vor allem im Zusammenhang mit der O<sub>2</sub> Versorgung des Gehirns ob die verschiedenen Reaktionen des Organismus bei O<sub>2</sub> Mangelatmung erst dann auftreten wenn die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit zumindest einiger hinsichtlich der O<sub>2</sub> Versorgung besonders ungünstig gelegener Gewebszellen abzusinken beginnt oder auch dann bereits wenn dieses nicht der Fall ist Einer »Anoxiehypothese« wurde

eine Hypoxiehypothese gegenübergestellt (OPITZ 1948). Nach den Berechnungen des O-Drucks des Gehirns von OPITZ und SCHNEIDER (1950) scheinen für die Reaktionen dieses Organs die Hypoxiehypothese wahrscheinlicher. Neuere Untersuchungen von HIRSCH et al (1955) und Berechnungen von THEWS (1960) mögen eher die Anoxiehypothese stützen. Ein wesentlicher Fortschritt zur Klärung dieser Frage und vor allem in vivo Messungen des Oxydationszustands der Pyridin Nucleotide CHANCE, COHEN und SCHÖNER (1962) fanden einen beginnenden Anstieg des Reduktionszustandes der Pyridin Nucleotide der Hirnrinde der Ratte bei einer 8% igen O Konzentration der Einstatungsluft entsprechend einem intrazellulären O Druck von etwa 1 mm Hg.

Es ist nicht möglich sich definitiv dazu zu äußern ob die Regulation der Erythropoiese entsprechend der Anoxiehypothese oder Hypoxiehypothese vor sich geht. Wie das Abklingen der Erythropoiese bei hohem O Gehalt des arteriellen Blutes zeigt z.B. beim Übergang eines im Hohe lebenden Organismus auf Meereshöhe besteht bereits bei Luftatmung ein vom O-Druck abhängiger Bildungsreiz. Nach der Anoxiehypothese müsste also bereits hier die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit gewisser Zellen von denen dieser Reiz ausgeht eingeschränkt sein. Die Hypoxiehypothese ermöglicht es nicht nur den erythropoietischen Reiz bei normalem O Druck sondern auch in mittleren Hypoxiegraden bei dem die Gesamt O Aufnahme offenbar noch keine messbare Einschränkung erfährt zu erklären. Ob der fehlende erythropoietische Reiz bei gesteigertem O Bedarf des Gewebes und Atmung in Normalluft mit dem dabei im wesentlichen unveränderten Oxydationszustand zu mindest der terminalen Oxydase der Atmungskette zusammenhängt (CHANCE 1957) muss ebenfalls offen bleiben.

## **Zusammenfassung und Schlussfolgerung**

Der vorliegende Beitrag zur Frage der Regulation der Erythropoiese wurde besonders im Hinblick auf die funktionelle Bedeutung des Hämoglobins als O-Träger und die O-Versorgung des Gewebes ausgeführt. Dabei wurden die Änderungen der gesamten Hämoglobinnmenge, der relativen Blutwerte und des Blutvolumens der Ratte bei vielwöchentlichem Aufenthalt in O Drucken zwischen 760 und 50 mm Hg bei künstlich veränderten O-Gehalten des Blutes und unter Cobalt Zufuhr untersucht.

Im ersten methodologischen Teil wird ein Verfahren beschrieben mit dessen Hilfe unter Verwendung von CO beliebig oft und vom selben Tier die gesamte Hämoglobin Menge bestimmt und verfolgt werden kann. An



Mangel Hb zu bilden beginnt (FOX und PHEAR 1953) Es ist denkbar dass der Stimulation der Hb Bildung durch O<sub>2</sub>-Mangel bei Saugern und niedrigen Tieren gleiche biochemische Prozesse zugrunde liegen

7 Neben der Frage, wo der O<sub>2</sub> in die Regulation der Erythropoiese eingreift, interessiert in hohem Grade wie das geschieht — wahrscheinlich der Kernpunkt des Regulationsproblems der Erythropoiese Dabei sind zwar Folgeerscheinungen von O<sub>2</sub>-Mangel bekannt beispielsweise das Auftreten von erythropoiese stimulierenden Substanzen Die primären, mit dem O<sub>2</sub> verbundenen Prozesse sind aber weder bekannt, noch bestehen klare Vorstellungen darüber wie sie aussehen könnten

Als Reiz für Änderungen der Erythropoiese sind oben Abweichungen von der »adaquaten O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes« angenommen worden Darunter kann zweierlei verstanden werden 1 Ein Absinken des O<sub>2</sub>-Drucks unter einen kritischen Wert bei dem die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit abzusinken beginnt Dieser Grenzwert ist manometrisch oder polarographisch in verschiedenen Präparaten bestimmt worden Kugelbakterien (*Micrococcus candidans*) und Hefe (*Torula utilis*) (WARDURF und KUBOWITZ 1929), Backerhefe (WINTLER 1941) Hirnhomogenat der Ratte (ELLIOTT und HENRY 1916) Herzpräparationen (CHANCE 1952 LONGMUIR 1951) Mitochondrien der Rattenleber (BANDER und KIESE 1955) Rattenleberzellen (LONGMUIR 1957) Mit gewissen Variationen für unterschiedliche Temperatur und Präparate wird ein beginnender Abfall der Atmungsgeschwindigkeit bei rund 5—05 mm Hg gefunden 2 Eine Änderung im Oxydations-Reduktions-Gleichgewicht der terminalen Oxydase (Cytochrom a<sub>1</sub>) und der dieser nahegelegenen Glieder in der Atmungskette ohne Einschränkung der Atmungsgeschwindigkeit Nach CHANCE (1957) ändert sich der Oxydationszustand des Teils der Atmungskette bei einer O<sub>2</sub>-Konzentration die 10-fach höher ist als die bei der die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit abzusinken beginnt Chance schreibt dazu »This phenomenon may afford an explanation for the failure of certain physiological functions at oxygen tensions exceeding the critical value for respiration Such processes might be triggered by the response of the terminal oxidase to oxygen concentrations and not by the net rate of oxygen utilisation«

Seitens der Physiologie ist lebhaft diskutiert worden vor allem im Zusammenhang mit der O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gehirns ob die verschiedenen Reaktionen des Organismus bei O<sub>2</sub>-Mangelatmung erst dann auftreten wenn die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit zumindest einiger hinreichend der O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung besonders ungünstig gelegener Gewebszellen abzusinken beginnt oder auch dann bereits wenn dieses nicht der Fall ist Einer »Anoxiehypothese« wurde

eine Hypoxiehypothese gegenübergestellt (ORTIZ 1943). Nach den Berechnungen des O Drucks des Gehirns von ORTIZ und SCHWEIDER (1950) schien für die Reaktionen dieses Organs die Hypoxiehypothese wahrscheinlicher. Neuere Untersuchungen von HIRSCH et al (1955) und Berechnungen von THEWS (1960) mögen eher die Anoxiehypothese stützen. Ein wesentlicher Fortschritt zur Klärung dieser Frage sind vor allem in vivo Messungen des Oxydationszustands der Pyridin Nucleotide. CHANCE, COHEN und SCHOENER (1962) fanden einen beginnenden Anstieg des Reduktionszustandes der Pyridin Nucleotide der Hirnrinde der Ratte bei einer 8% igen O Konzentration der Einatemungsluft entsprechend einem intrazellulären O Druck von etwa 1 mm Hg.

Es ist nicht möglich sich definitiv dazu zu äußern, ob die Regulation der Erythropoiese entsprechend der Anoxiehypothese oder Hypoxiehypothese vor sich geht. Wie das Absinken der Erythropoiese bei hohem O-Gehalt des arteriellen Blutes zeigt, z.B. beim Übergang eines in Höhe lebenden Organismus auf Meereshöhe, besteht bereits bei Luftatmung ein vom O Druck abhängiger Bildungsreiz. Nach der Anoxiehypothese müsste also bereits hier die Atmungsgeschwindigkeit gewisser Zellen von diesem Reiz ausgeht eingeschränkt sein. Die Hypoxiehypothese ermöglicht es nicht nur den erythropoietischen Reiz bei normalem O Druck, sondern auch in mittleren Hypoxiegraden, bei dem die Gesamt O-Aufnahme offenbar noch keine merkbare Einschränkung erfährt, zu erklären. Ob der fehlende erythropoietische Reiz bei gesteigertem O Bedarf des Gewebes und Atmung in Normalluft mit dem dabei im wesentlichen unveränderten Oxydationszustand zu mindest der terminalen Oxydase der Atmungskette zusammenhängt (CHANCE 1967) muss ebenfalls offen bleiben.

## Zusammenfassung und Schlussfolgerung

Der vorliegende Beitrag zur Frage der Regulation der Erythropoiese wurde besonders im Hinblick auf die funktionelle Bedeutung des Hämoglobins als O-Träger und die O-Versorgung des Gewebes ausgeführt. Dabei wurden die Änderungen der gesamten Hämoglobinnmenge, der relativen Blutwerte und des Blutvolumens der Ratte bei vielwöchentlichem Aufenthalt in O-Drucken zwischen 760 und 50 mm Hg bei künstlich veränderten O-Gehalten des Blutes und unter Cobalt-Zufuhr untersucht.

Im ersten methodologischen Teil wird ein Verfahren beschrieben, mit dessen Hilfe unter Verwendung von CO beliebig oft und vom selben Tier die gesamte Hämoglobin-Menge bestimmt und verfolgt werden kann. An

Hand von Vergleichsuntersuchungen der Erythrozytenmenge mit radioaktiv gezeichneten Erythrozyten, Messungen der Hamoglobin Menge vor und nach Entnahme einer bekannten Menge Hamoglobin sowie Erfahrungen nach mehrjährigem Gebrauch werden Fehlermöglichkeiten und Anwendbarkeit der Methode diskutiert Eine entwickelte Mikromethode zur Isolierung von Häm aus kleinen Blutmengen erlaubt es neben der spezifischen Aktivität der Hämkomponente radioaktiv *in vivo* gezeichneten Hamoglobins zusammen mit diesem Verfahren die gesamte Hämaktivität eines Tieres zu verfolgen Unabhängig von Verdünnungseffekten durch neugebildetes Hamoglobin wurde so die Erythrozytenlebenslange nach akuter Blutung neugebildeter Erythrozyten bestimmt Diese kombinierte Methode wurde auch zum Grobnachweis hamolytischer Reaktionen herangezogen

Im zweiten Teil werden die Untersuchungsergebnisse zusammenfassend dargestellt Anämie, Hypoxie und Cobalt als Reizformen der Erythropoiese werden miteinander verglichen Die Resultate werden vor allem in Hinblick auf die Bedeutung des Sauerstoff für die Regulation der Erythropoiese unter Berücksichtigung anderer Untersuchungen und der Vorstellungen dazu besprochen

Als entscheidend für alle regulatorischen Veränderungen der Erythropoiese kann die Höhe des O<sub>2</sub>-Drucks des Gewebes angenommen werden Abweichungen des O<sub>2</sub>-Drucks des Gewebes von der Norm führen jedoch nur dann zu einer veränderten Erythropoiese, wenn diese durch herabgesetzten arteriellen O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt bzw O<sub>2</sub>-Druck (Anämie Hypoxie) oder erhöhten O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt des Blutes (Aufenthalt in Meereshöhe nach Höhenakklimatisation) hervorgerufen werden Ein erhöhter O<sub>2</sub>-Bedarf des Gewebes wird im wesentlichen durch eine gesteigerte Durchblutung gedeckt O<sub>2</sub>-Mangel scheint nicht direkt auf das Knochenmark sondern über im Gewebe gebildete erythropoiese stimulierende Substanzen zu wirken Die offenbaren biochemischen und physiologischen Fragestellungen sind, wie und wo O<sub>2</sub> an der Bildung dieser Substanzen beteiligt ist Ein weiteres Problem ist nach welchen Regeln O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt des Blutes Kapillarisation und kapillare Durchblutung an der O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes teilnehmen Bei der Bearbeitung derartiger Fragen erscheint es zweckmässig den O<sub>2</sub>-Gehalt des Blutes als ein Glied im Prozess der O<sub>2</sub>-Versorgung des Gewebes und nicht im Sinne einer homöostatisch regulierten gegebenen Grösse zu betrachten

Die Arbeit wurde auf Anregung und Einladung Professor TORÖV SJÖSTRANDS klinisch physiologische Abteilung des Karolinska Sjukhuset Stockholm ausgeführt. Ich möchte Herrn Professor SJÖSTRAND der diese Untersuchungen nicht nur großzügig finanziell ermöglicht hat, sondern mich bei allen Problemen und Fragen freundschaftlichst beraten und unterstützt hat meinen herzlichen Dank zum Ausdruck bringen.

Laborator ARNE FORSSBERG und Dozent LARS ENGSTEDT habe ich über eine angenehme und anregende Zusammenarbeit hinaus für deren warmes persönliches Interesse am Fortgang der Arbeit und vielfältige Hilfe zu danken.

Mein Dank gilt auch allen Assistenten und Mitarbeitern: Fräulein M. GOTTWALD, Frau J. GRUNDSTROM, Fräulein V. HAGSAND, Frau I. KRANIER, Frau I. SJÖSTEV und Fräulein CHRISTINA ÖSTERDAHL, ohne deren Hilfsbereitschaft und Sorgfalt diese Untersuchungen nicht möglich gewesen wären.

Allen Kollegen der Abteilung und des klinisch physiologischen Laboratoriums der Thoraxklinik sei gleichfalls für ihre direkte und indirekte Unterstützung gedankt.

Die Untersuchungen wurden finanziell durch das Karolinska Institutet, das Schwedische Atomkomitee sowie durch Professor T. SJÖSTRAND zur Verfügung gestellte Mittel des Riksidrottsförbundets poliklinikkommitte gestützt.

## Literatur

- Adolph E F Quantitative relations in the physiological constitutions of mammals *Science* 1949 109 579-585
- Alpen E L und D Cranmore Observations on the regulation of erythropoiesis and on cellular dynamics by  $Fe^{59}$  autoradiography Aus Stohlman F The kinetics of cellular proliferation Grune & Stratton New York London 1959 290-300
- Altland P D und M Parker Effects of hypoxia upon the box turtle *Amer J Physiol* 1955 180 421-427
- Ambs E Erythropoese Probleme *Folia haemat* (Neue Folge) 1963 1 76-96
- Anthoniussen P E Holst und A A C Thomsen Determination of cardiac output and other haemodynamic data in patients with hyper and hypothyroidism using dye dilution technique *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 1960 1<sup>o</sup> 472-480
- Astola E E Jalavisto O Mustala und L Solantera Total hemoglobin in the chick embryo developing in different oxygen tensions *Acta physiol scand* 1959 47 210-217
- Barcroft J Die Atmungsfunktion des Blutes I Erfahrungen in grossen Höhen Deutsch von W Feldberg Monographien aus dem Gesamtgebiet der Physiologie der Pflanzen und Tier. Band 13 Springer Berlin 1971 S 174 ff
- Barcroft J Features in the architecture of physiological function Cambridge University Press 1934 216-229
- Bander A und M Kiese Die Wirkung des sauerstoffübertragenden Ferments in Mitochondrien aus Rattenlebern bei niedrigen Sauerstoffdrücken *Arch exp Path Pharmacol* 1955 224 312-321
- Beer A G Über die nervös humorale Regulation des Blutes *Folia haemat* 1942 66 222-238
- Berlin N J R L Huff D C Van Dyke und T G Hennessy The blood volume of the adult rat as determined by  $Fe^{59}$  and P labelled red cells *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1949 71 176-178
- Berlin N J The polycythemia produced in the rat by cobalt *Acta haemat (Basel)* 1951 11 30-35
- Berlin N J und C Lotz Life span of the red blood cell of the rat following acute hemorrhage *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1951 78 788-790
- Bert P La pression barometrique Paris 1878
- Bishop J M K W Donald und O L Wade Circulatory dynamics at rest and on exercise in the hyperkinetic states *Clin Sci* 1955 14 329-360
- Bonsdorff E und E Jalavisto A humoral mechanism in anoxic erythrocytosis *Acta physiol scand* 1948 16 150-170
- Brody S Bioenergetics and growth Reinhold New York 1945 S 32 ff
- Bucciero M C und J M Orten The effect of cobalt on the oxygen capacity and the methemoglobin content of blood *Blood* 1949 4 395-397
- Carnot P und C Deslandre Sur l'activité hématopoïétique du sérum au cours de la régénération du sang *C r Acad Sci (Paris)* 1906 143 384-386
- Chance ■ Spectra and reaction kinetics of respiratory pigments of homogenized and intact cells *Nature* 1959 169 215-221
- Chance B Cellular oxygen requirements *Fed Proc* 1957 16 671-680

- Chance B P Cohen und B Schoener Intracellular oxidation reduction states in vivo  
Science 1962 131: 499-508
- Ciba Foundation Symposium on Haemopoiesis J & A Churchill London 1960
- Damon A. und D A Holub Rost factors in polycythemia vera Ann internal Med  
1958 49 43-68
- Damon A. ■ A Holub M M Meloso und A C Usen Polycythemia and renal car-  
cinoma Amer J Med 1958 25 187-191
- Filott, A C und M Henry Studies on th metabolism of brain suspensions III.  
Respiration at low oxygen tension. J biol Chem 1946 163 351-359
- Engel H W und K Sager Polycythemia with fibroids J A M A 1946 159 190-191
- Erdos A J Erythropoietic function in dilution anemia. Blood 1950 10 616-622.
- Erslev A J Erythropoietic factor in the control of red cell production. Ann N Y  
Acad Sci. 1959 77 677-637
- Falbe Hansen I und K Lofte In vivo incorporation of <sup>59</sup>Fe into nonhem iron and  
hemoglobin of red blood cells. Acta physiol scand 1960 34 97-104.
- Fahnestock L E und H Rahm A theoretical analysis of the alveolar arterial O<sub>2</sub> difference  
with special reference to the distribution effect. J appl Physiol 1959 7 699-703
- Finch C A Some quantitative aspects of erythropoiesis Ann N Y Acad. Sci. 1959  
77 410-416
- Fluckiger E und F Verca Lack of adaptation to low oxygen pressure in aged  
animals J Geront. 1955 10 306-311.
- Fox H M und E Phear Factors influencing haemoglobin synthesis by Daphnia  
Proc Roy Soc B 1963 141 179-189
- Fryers G R und N J Berlin Mean red cell life of rats exposed to reduced baro-  
metric pressure Amer J Physiol 1952. 171 465-470
- Gemzell C A und T Sjostrand Method of determination of total amount of haemo-  
globin and blood volume in small animals. Acta physiol scand 1954 30 363-374.
- Gemzell C A A Nilzen T Sjostrand und B Tribukait Der Einfluss von Thyroxin  
auf Gesamt-Hämoglobin und Blutvolumen der normalen und thyreoidektomierten  
Ratte 1963 In Vorbereitung
- Goldwasser E L O J Jacobson W Fried und L Plak Mechanism of the erythro-  
poietic effect of cobalt. Science 1957 125 1085-1086
- Goldwasser E W Fried und L O Jacobson Studies on erythropoiesis VIII The  
effect of nephrectomy on response to hypoxic anoxia J Lab clin Med 1958. 51  
375-378
- Gordon A ■ und W Kleinberg A study of the relation of the spleen to erythropoiesis  
and red cell destruction in the guinea pig. Ame J Physiol 1937 118 757-765
- Gordon A S Hemopoietine Physiol Rev 1959 39 1-48
- Gordon A S und A. H Weintraub Assay of the erythropoietic stimulating factor  
(ESF) Aus Jacobson, L. O und M. Doyle Erythropoiesis. Grune & Stratton, New  
York, London 1962. 1-16
- Grattinge J S J J Muenster L. A. Selverstone und J A Campbell A correlation  
of clinical and haemodynamic studies in patients with hyperthyroidism with and  
without congestive heart failure J clin Invest. 1959 38 1316-1371
- Grant W C und W S Post Fundamental stimulus for erythropoiesis Physiol Rev  
1952 32 419-439
- Gree H D Circulatory system Physical principles. Medical Physics Vol II. Heraus-  
gegeben von O Glasser The year book publishers, Chicago 1960 223-251

## Literatur

- Adolph E F Quantitative relations in the physiological constitutions of mammals, Science 1949 109 579-585
- Alpen E L und D Cranmore Observations on the regulation of erythropoiesis and on cellular dynamics by  $Fe^{59}$  autoradiography Aus Stohliman F The kinetics of cellular proliferation Grune & Stratton New York London 1959 200-200
- Altland P D und M Parker Effects of hypoxia upon the box turtle Amer J Physiol 1955 180 421-427
- Ambs E Erythropoese Probleme Folia haemat (Neue Folge) 1963 II 75-96
- Anthoniensen P E Holst und A A C Thomsen Determination of cardiac output and other haemodynamic data in patients with hyper and hypothyroidism using dye dilution technique Scand J clin Lab Invest 1960 12 472-480
- Astola E E Jalavisto O Mustala und L Solantaera Total hemoglobin in the chick embryo developing in different oxygen tensions Acta physiol scand 1959 47 210-217
- Barcroft J Die Atmungsfunktion des Blutes I Erfahrungen in grossen Höhen Deutsch von W Feldberg Monographien aus dem Gesamtgebiet der Physiologie der Pflanzen und Tiere Band 13 Springer Berlin 1927 S 174 ff
- Barcroft J Features in the architecture of physiological function Cambridge University Press 1934 216-279
- Bander A und M Kiese Die Wirkung des sauerstoffübertragenden Ferments in Mitochondrien aus Rattenlebern bei niedrigen Sauerstoffdrücken Arch exp Path Pharmacol 1965 274 312-321
- Beer A G Über die nervos humorale Regulation des Blutes. Folia haemat 1949 66 222-298
- Berlin N J R L Huff D C Van Dyke und T G Hennessy The blood volume of the adult rat as determined by  $Fe^{59}$  and P labelled red cells Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y) 1949 71 176-178
- Berlin N J The polycythemia produced in the rat by cobalt, Acta haemat (Basel) 1951 5 30-35
- Berlin N J und C Lot. Life span of the red blood cell of the rat following acute hemorrhage Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y) 1951 78 783-790
- Bert P La pression barométrique Paris 1878
- Bishop J M A W Donald und O L Wade Circulatory dynamics at rest and on exercise in the hyperkinetic states Clin Sci 1965 14 379-386
- Bonsdorff E und E Jalavisto A humoral mechanism in anoxic erythrocytosis Acta physiol scand 1948 16 150-160
- Brody S Bioenergetics and growth Reinhold New York 1945 III 352 ff
- Buciero M C und J M Orten The effect of cobalt on the oxygen capacity and the methemoglobin content of blood Blood 1949 4 395-397
- Carnot P und C Deflandre Sur l'activité hématopoïétique du sérum au cours de la régénération du sang C r Acad Sci (Paris) 1906 143 384-396
- Chance II Spectra and reaction kinetics of respiratory pigments of homogenized and intact cells Nature 1952 169 215-221
- Chance II Cellular oxygen requirements Fed Proc 1967 16 671-680

- Linman J W und F H Bethell Factors controlling erythropoiesis Charles C Thomas, Springfield Illinois 1960
- Longmuir I S Respiration rate of bacteria as a function of oxygen concentration. *Biochem J* 1951 57 81-87
- Longmuir I S Respiration rate of rat liver cells at low oxygen concentrations. *Biochem J* 1957 65 378-382.
- McCutcheon F H Specific oxygen affinity of hemoglobin in elasmobranchs and turtles. *J cell comp Physiol* 1947 29 333-344.
- McFadden A J S H Todd und K C Tsang Polycythemia in primary carcinoma of the liver *Blood* 1958 13 427-435
- Merino C F Studies on blood formation and destruction in the polycythemia of high altitude *Blood* 1959 5 1-31
- Mertens U Das Verhalten der Reticulocyten im peripheren Blut bei kurzfristigem Sauerstoffmangel. *Z Zellforsch* 1957 46 484-488
- Meyer O H E W Thewlis und H P Rusch The hypophysis and hemopoiesis *Endocrinology* 1940 27 932-944
- Mirand E A T C Prentice und W R Slawwhite Current studies on the role of erythropoietin on erythropoiesis *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1959 77 677-702.
- Möller C Über die Erythroblastenproliferation bei stimulierter Erythropoiesis. Diss Helsinki 1960
- Meyers J H E S Brannon und B C Holland Correlative study of cardiac output and hepatic circulation in hyperthyroidism. *J clin Invest* 1953 32 1069-1077
- Noell W und M Schneide Über die Durchblutung und die Sauerstoffversorgung des Gehirns im akuten Sauerstoffmangel. III Mitteilung: Die arterio-venöse Sauerstoff und Kohlensäuredifferenz. *Pflug Arch. ges Physiol* 1943. 246 207-249
- Noell W Über die Durchblutung und Sauerstoffversorgung des Gehirns. VI Mitteilung Einfluss der Hypoxämie und Anämie *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1944. 247 553-575
- Opitz E Über die Sauerstoffversorgung des Zentralnervensystems. *Naturwissenschaften* 1948 35 80-88
- Opitz E und M Schneide Über die Sauerstoffversorgung des Gehirns und den Mechanismus von Mangelwirkungen. *Ergeb Physiol* 1950 46 126-260
- Opitz E Hypertrophie der Retinagesasse während chronischer Hypoxie beim Kanarienvogel. *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1952. 54 543-556
- Ons A B und G S Huxson Physiological adaption to chronic hypoxia D Oxygen transport. *USAF Rep Nr 56-26* 1956 1-7
- Piero S J Influence of hypoxic stimuli upon blood formation in the endocrine deficient animals. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1959 77 518-542.
- Pulido H J P T Medes und A Orr Influence of hypoxic stimuli upon erythropoiesis in hypothalamic lesioned animals. Aus Jacobson, L O und M. Doyle Erythropoiesis. Grune & Stratton, New York, London 1967 253-262.
- Reismann K H Studies on the mechanism of erythropoietic stimulation in parabiotic rats during hypoxia *Blood* 1950 5 372-380
- Reismann K H Blood volume in the dog during altitude acclimatization. *Amer J Physiol* 1951. 167 57-58
- Reynafarje C R Lozano und J Velázquez The polycythemia of high altitudes Iron metabolism and related aspects. *Blood* 1979 54 433-455



- Hevesy G und D Lockner Iron metabolism in health and in the neoplastic state  
Arkiv kem: 1962 19 303-385
- Hülpert P A Barbey und H Bartels Der Einfluss des Sauerstoffdrucks im venösen  
Mischblut auf das Herzzeitvolumen und den peripheren Widerstand (Experimente  
an wachen Ziegen) *Naturwissenschaften* 1962 49 546-547
- Hirsch H W Krenkel M Schneider und F Schnellbach r Der Sauerstoffverbrauch  
des Warmblutergehirns bei Sauerstoffmangel durch Ischämie und der Mechanismus  
der Mangelwirkung *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1955 261 402-408
- Hirsjarvi E Erythrocytosis promoting activity in stagnant blood and in blood sub-  
jected to low atmospheric pressure in vitro *Ann Med exp Biol Fenn* 1953 31  
Suppl 3
- Hodgson G I Eskuche D Yudilevich P Hernandez und J Toka Effect of plasma  
from bled and phenylhydrazine treated animals on plasma iron turnover A test  
for hemopoietines *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1957 96 826-829
- Horvath A und W P McKelway Polycythemia associated with uterine myomas  
*J A M A* 1955 158 1360-1361
- Houston C S und R L Riley Respiratory and circulatory changes during acclima-  
tization to high altitude *Amer J Physiol* 1947 149 565-598
- Hurtado A C Mermo und E Delgado Influence of anoxemia on the hemopoietic  
activity *Arch intern Med* 1945 75 284-323
- Jacobson L O und E Goldwasser The dynamic equilibrium of erythropoiesis Brook-  
haven Symposia in Biology Homeostatic mechanisms BNL 474 (C 2a) (Biol a Med)  
1958 119-131
- Jacobson L O und M Doyle Erythropoiesis Grune & Stratton New York London  
1962
- Jones E S H G Macgrath und H H Sculthorpe Pathological progresses in disease  
II Blood of the albino rat approximate physico chemical description *Ann trop  
Med Parasit* 1950 44 168-186
- Keighley G Experiences with assays units and standards of erythropoietin. Aus  
Jacobson L O und M Doyle Erythropoiesis Grune & Stratton New York  
London 1962
- Kety S S Determinants of tissue oxygen tension *Fed Proc* 1957 16 666-670
- Korner P J Circulatory adaptations in hypoxia *Physiol Rev* 1959 39 687-730
- Krahl V E The glomus pulmonale its location and microscopic anatomy Ciba  
Foundation Symposium on Pulmonary Structure and Function J & A Churchill  
Ltd London 1962 53-76
- Lajtha L G und R Oliver Studies on the kinetics of erythropoiesis a model of the  
erythron Ciba Foundation Symposium on Haemopoiesis J & A Churchill Ltd  
London 1960 289-324
- Lange R D und N I Gallagher Clinical and experimental observations on the  
relationship of the kidney to erythropoietin production. Aus Jacobson L O und  
M Doyle Erythropoiesis Grune & Stratton New York London 1962 361-373
- Lee M O Determination of the surface area of the white rat with its application  
to the expression of metabolic results *Amer J Physiol* 1979 69 24-33
- Levy H V Letusan und A L Schade The effect of cobalt on the activity of certain  
enzymes in homogenates of rat tissue *Arch Biochem* 1950 27 34-40
- Linke P G Zentralnervöse Regulierung der Retikulozytenzahl im peripheren Blut.  
*Folia haemat* 1959 76 342-352

- Verzar F Die Regulation der Erythrozytenzahl in grossen Höhen Schweiz. med Wschr 1947 77 6-8
- Waldmann T A und W F Rosse Sites of formation of erythropoietin. Aus Jacobson L O und M Doyle Erythropoiesis. Grune & Stratton, New York London 196 87-92
- Wang S I H W<sub>1</sub> und F Verzar Die O<sub>2</sub> Sättigung des arteriellen Blutes bei Mensch und Kaninchen auf 1800 m u M und ihr Zusammenhang mit der Erythrozytenzunahme Schweiz. med Wschr 1951 81 82-83
- Warburg O und F Kubowitz Atmung bei sehr kleinen Sauerstoffdrücken. Biochem. Z 1929 218 5-18
- Ways P J Huff C Aormaler und L Young Polycythemia and histologically proven renal disease Arch intern Med 1961 101 154-162
- White W F C W Gurney E Goldwasser und L O Jacobson Studies on erythropoietin Recent Progr Hormone Res Vol. 16 Academic Press New York 1960 219-262
- Winler H J The respiration of baker's yeast at low oxygen tension. J cell comp Physiol 1941 17 263-276
- Zilliacus H Polycythaemia associated with uterine fibromyoma Acta obst et gyn 1959 38 737-741

- Rotta A A Canepa A Hurtado T Velasquez und R Chale: Pulmonary circulation at sea level and high altitudes *J appl Physiol* 1956 II 328-335
- Rukenstroth Bauer G Die Regelung der Erythrozytenkonzentration im Blut. Handbuch der gesamten Hamatologie Zweiter Band 2 Teil 1 Halbband Urban & Schwarzenberg Munchen Berlin 1953 58-82
- Saathoff J Über die Latenzzeit des Reticulocytenanstieges bei Sauerstoffmangel (Versuche an Meerschweinchen und Kaninchen) *Virch Arch path Anat* 1953 319 107-115
- Saathoff J Medulläre und extramedulläre Blutbildung unter Sauerstoffmangel. (Untersuchungen an Meerschweinchen) *Virch Arch path Anat* 1953 b 319 116-126
- Schmid R und A S Gilbertsen Fundamental observations on the production of compensatory polycythemia in a case of patent ductus arteriosus with reversed blood flow *Blood* 1955 10 247-251
- Seip M Reticulocyte studies The liberation of red blood corpuscles from the bone marrow into the peripheral blood and the production of erythrocytes elucidated by reticulocyte investigations *Acta med scand* 1953 146 Suppl 283
- Singmaster L Uterine fibroids associated with polycythemia *J A M A* 1937 153 36-37
- Snedecor G W Statistical methods Iowa State University Press 5 Ed 1956
- Starr G F C F Stroebel Jr und T P Kearns Polycythemia with papilledema and infratentorial vascular tumors *Ann internal Med* 1958 48 978-986
- Stohlman F C E Rath und J C Rose Evidence favoring a humoral mechanism for anoremic polycythemia *Clin Res Proc* 1953 I 62
- Stohlman F C E Rath und J C Rose Evidence for a humoral regulation of erythropoiesis - studies on a patient with polycythemia secondary to regional hypoxia *Blood* 1954 9 721-733
- Stohlman F Observations on the physiology of erythropoietin and its role in the regulation of red cell production *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1959 77 710-724
- Theilen E O D & Gregg und A Rotta Exercise and cardiac work response at high altitude *Circulation* 1955 12 383-390
- Thews G Die Sauerstoffdiffusion im Gehirn Ein Beitrag zur Frage der Sauerstoffversorgung der Organe *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1960 271 197-226
- Thomson A P und F G W Marson Polycythaemia with fibroids *Lancet* 1953 263 759-760
- Thorell B Cell studies with microspectrography *Advanc biol med Phys* Vol VI Academic Press New York 1958 95-119
- Van Dyke D C A N Contopoulos B S Williams M E Simpson J H Lawrence und H M Evans Hormonal factors influencing erythropoiesis *Acta haematol (Basel)* 1951 11 203-222
- Van Dyke D C C W Asling N J Berlin und R G Harrison Failure of cobalt to influence the life span of the erythrocyte *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1955 88 488-489
- Van Dyke D C Sources and properties of human urinary erythropoietin Ciba Foundation Symposium on Haemopoiesis J & A Churchill London 1960 337-422
- Verzar F Hohenklima Forschungen des Basler Physiologischen Institutes Basler Schwabe Basel 1945 13-24 (Zusammen mit W Vogli)

CHANGE IN MAN  
D BY  
ATIONAL STRESS

OF BARR

STOCKHOLM 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL. 58 SUPPLEMENTUM 207

PULMONARY GAS EXCHANGE IN MAN  
AS AFFECTED BY  
PROLONGED GRAVITATIONAL STRESS

BY

PER OLOF BARR

STOCKHOLM 1963



# CONTENTS

I	PREFACE	5
II	INTRODUCTION	6
	List of Symbols and Abbreviations	7
III	BACKGROUND	8
	Effects of Gravitational Forces in the Head to Foot Direction	8
	G Forces in the Chest to Back Direction	10
IV	PROBLEMS	11
V	METHODS	12
	Techniques	14
	Calculations	17
	Subjects and Experimental Procedures	18
VI	RESULTS	21
	Periods of Relative Stability	21
	Transitional Effects	26
VII	DISCUSSION	29
	Effects on Respiration Arterial O <sub>2</sub> Saturation and pH	29
	Arterial to End Tidal CO <sub>2</sub> Difference and Dead Spaces	30
	Alveolar to Arterial O <sub>2</sub> Difference and Venous Admixture	32
	Effects of Venous Admixture on Arterial CO <sub>2</sub> Tension Consequences in the Calculation of Venous Admixture Effective	
	Alveolar Ventilation and Dead Spaces	36
	Efficiency of Over All Pulmonary Gas Exchange	36
VIII	COMMENT	38
IX	SUMMARY	41
X	REFERENCES	43



Stockholm 1963  
Kungl Boktryckeriet I A Norstedt & Soner

I	PREFACE	5
II	INTRODUCTION	6
	List of Symbols and Abbreviations	7
III	BACKGROUND	8
	Effects of Gravitational Forces in the Head to Foot Direction	8
	G Forces in the Chest to Back Direction	10
IV	PROBLEMS	11
V	METHODS	12
	Techniques	14
	Calculations	17
	Subjects and Experimental Procedures	18
VI	RESULTS	21
	Periods of Relative Stability	21
	Transitional Effects	26
VII	DISCUSSION	29
	Effects on Respiration Arterial O <sub>2</sub> Saturation and pH	29
	Arterial to End Tidal CO <sub>2</sub> Difference and Dead Spaces	30
	Alveolar to Arterial O <sub>2</sub> Difference and Venous Admixture	32
	Effects of Venous Admixture on Arterial CO <sub>2</sub> Tension, Consequences in the Calculation of Venous Admixture Effective Alveolar Ventilation and Dead Spaces	36
	Efficiency of Over All Pulmonary Gas Exchange	36
VIII	COMMENT	38
IX	SUMMARY	41
X	REFERENCES	43



# I PREFACE

The present work is part of a research program concerning the pulmonary gas exchange as affected by environmental stress factors

*It is a great pleasure for me to extend my heartfelt thanks to Dr H Bjurstedt who has devoted much of his time to introducing me to the essentials of the work and with whom I have had many fruitful and stimulating discussions*

To Professor U S von Euler the pioneer of experimental aeromedicine in Sweden, I wish to pay special tribute for constant support and encouragement throughout my education in this field

To Dr C M Hesser I should like to express my great appreciation for stimulating advice as to the design of the experimental procedures

My thanks are also due to Dr G Rosenhamer for reliable and attentive assistance in the processing and presentation of experimental data

For the excellent assistance they provided throughout the experimental work I am much indebted to the entire technical staff of this laboratory

This investigation was supported in part by a research contract with the Wright Air Development Division of the Air Research and Development Command United States Air Force through its European Office

Stockholm April 1963

PER OLOF BARR



logical significance discussed. A commentary is included on certain applications of the results to problems involved in operator performance and flight safety.

## Last of Symbols and Abbreviations

### Primary Symbols

- V Gas volume in general
- v Gas volume per unit time
- Q Volume flow of blood
- P Pressure in general including partial pressure
- F Fractional concentration in dry gas phase
- C Concentration in blood phase
- S Oxygen saturation of hemoglobin per cent

### Suffixes

#### Gas phase

- I Inspired gas
- E Expired gas
- T Tidal gas
- A Alveolar gas
- D Dead space

#### Blood phase

- a Arterial
- v Mixed venous

### Other Symbols

- R Respiratory exchange ratio (volume CO<sub>2</sub>/volume O<sub>2</sub>)
- STPD Standard temperature and pressure dry (0°C, 760 mm Hg)
- BTPS Body temperature and pressure saturated with water vapor
- ATPS Ambient temperature and pressure saturated with water vapor

For definitions and terminology concerning accelerative and gravitational forces with respect to magnitude, direction and duration, the principles used by GAUER (1961) have been adopted.

For the statistical treatment of data, current conventions have been used.

- n Number of observations
- Range Smallest and greatest observed value
- $\bar{x}$  Arithmetic mean
- $\pm s$  Standard error of the mean
- p Probability

The statistical significance of differences between means was evaluated by applying the t test to the individual differences (cf FISHER 1948).  $p < 0.01$ ,  $p < 0.1$ ,  $p < 0.5$  denote highly significant, significant and probably significant differences, respectively.

## II INTRODUCTION

By exposing the body to forces which are qualitatively equivalent to but considerably stronger than those caused by normal gravity, it is possible to exaggerate the physiological responses that would normally occur when body posture is changed from lying to sitting or standing. Such forces can readily be produced in the laboratory by means of the large centrifuges that are currently being used in aerospace medical research.

The present investigation is an experimental study of certain effects of prolonged gravitational stress on the principal function of the pulmonary circulation, i.e. the exchange of  $O_2$  and  $CO$  between the alveolar spaces and the blood. Earlier results from centrifuge studies in this laboratory on animals and on man, have demonstrated that inertial forces may lead to a marked fall in the arterial  $O_2$  saturation in the face of a considerable increase in the pulmonary ventilation, indicating the development of a large venous admixture (physiological shunt) to the arterialized blood. The present experiments were performed exclusively on human subjects. While exposed to strong gravitational fields for periods up to 2 minutes with the  $G$  force acting in the head to foot direction, the subjects displayed drastic alterations in the pulmonary gas exchange as revealed by continuous and simultaneous recordings of ventilatory and blood chemical variables. In this way some of the mechanisms which normally influence alveolar ventilation and pulmonary blood flow, independently and in relation to each other both throughout the lungs and regionally, could be studied by the relatively simple approach of exaggerating the influence exerted by normal gravity.

It became evident that the pulmonary circulation is highly susceptible to inertial forces: there is probably no influence, environmental or of other origin that is capable of exerting a reversible effect on pulmonary function which is so profound. The extent to which such forces were found to affect the pulmonary gas exchange in standardized exposures was investigated on the basis of relatively recent concepts pertaining to the ventilation-perfusion relationships of the lung.

In the organization of the text it seemed appropriate first to give a short review of earlier findings pertaining to the effects of inertial forces on the pulmonary circulation and gas exchange. The review serves as a background to the problems of the present work which are defined mainly in terms of their fundamental physiological nature. In view of the special and sometimes adverse experimental conditions involved in the methodological approach to the problems, a relatively comprehensive account of the techniques and experimental procedure is given before the results are described and their physio

logical significance discussed. A commentary is included on certain applications of the results to problems involved in operator performance and flight safety.

## List of Symbols and Abbreviations

### *Primary Symbols*

- V Gas volume in general
- v Gas volume per unit time
- Q Volume flow of blood
- P Pressure in general including partial pressure
- F Fractional concentration in dry gas phase
- C Concentration in blood phase
- S Oxygen saturation of hemoglobin per cent

### *Subscripts*

#### Gas phase

- I Inspired gas
- E Expired gas
- T Tidal gas
- A Alveolar gas
- D Dead space

#### Blood phase

- a Arterial
- v Venous

### *Other Symbols*

- R Respiratory exchange ratio (volume CO<sub>2</sub>/volume O<sub>2</sub>)
- STPD Standard temperature and pressure dry (0°C, 760 mm Hg)
- BTPS Body temperature and pressure saturated with water vapor
- ATPS Ambient temperature and pressure saturated with water vapor

For definitions and terminology concerning accelerative and gravitational forces with respect to magnitude, direction and duration, the principles used by GAUER (1961) have been adopted.

For the statistical treatment of data, current conventions have been used.

- n Number of observations
- Range Smallest and greatest observed value
- $\bar{x}$  Arithmetic mean
- $\pm \bar{x}$  Standard error of the mean
- p Probability

The statistical significance of differences between means was evaluated by applying the t test to the individual differences (cf FISHER 1948).  $p < 0.01$ ,  $p < 0.1$ ,  $p < 0.5$  denote highly significant, significant and probably significant differences respectively.



### III BACKGROUND

There is theoretical as well as experimental evidence that the pulmonary circulation and gas exchange are susceptible to the stress of normal gravity, and to the qualitatively equivalent but stronger forces of inertia which occur during flight in high performance aircraft and space vehicles. One may *a priori* expect that the increased 'effective' weight of the blood would be potentially capable of producing gross disturbances in the pulmonary circulation and thus become detrimental to the main function of the lung: that of exchange of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  between the blood and the ambient air. This becomes clear from the simple reasoning that, with an increasing weight of the blood, a condition would eventually be reached in which all the blood in the lung would go to its 'dependent' regions (no ventilation), and all ventilation would go to other regions (no perfusion). Thus even if the total ventilation and blood flow through the lungs were normal, no gas exchange would be possible and asphyxia would rapidly develop.

In the following a brief review is given of some earlier investigations pertaining to the influence of the inertial forces on the pulmonary circulation and gas exchange.

#### Effects of Gravitational Forces in the Head to Foot Direction

*Effects of normal gravity.* MARTIN, CLINE and MARSHALL (1953) observed by sampling alveolar gas simultaneously in man's right upper and lower lobes that in the upright position the  $CO_2/O_2$  ratio was larger in the upper lobe, while in the supine and the head down position the ratio was the same. In later experiments the same investigators (1955) obtained evidence that these differences could be referred to a larger alveolar ventilation/perfusion ratio in the upper lobe while standing. These findings were of considerable interest since they gave the first indication by direct sampling that the alveolar gas composition is not necessarily uniform in different lobes. Thus a difference in ventilation/perfusion ratio was established but the lack of direct measurements of lobar ventilation did not allow predictions as to whether the upper lobe is relatively overventilated or underperfused.

The observations of INADA *et al* (1954) who used differential spirometry for measurements of  $O_2$  uptake and ventilation of each lung in the left and right lateral positions, made it likely that in either lateral position propor

tionally more blood than ventilation is shifted to the dependent lobe MATTSON and CARLÉN (1955) using a similar approach demonstrated a shift in blood flow from the upper to the lower lobe when the position of the subject was changed from supine to standing Together these studies allowed the conclusion that normal gravity can shift the ventilation perfusion ratios in the subdivisions in the lung That a shift from the supine to the erect posture produces apical underperfusion rather than overventilation has later been confirmed by other investigators (MARTIN and YOUNG 1957 RILEY *et al* 1959 WEST and DOLLERY 1960 DOLLERY DYSON and SINCLAIR 1960)

The efficiency of pulmonary gas exchange in the erect posture can also be assessed by direct measurements of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  tension differences between mean alveolar gas and arterial blood BJURSTEDT *et al* (1962) who based their measurements on continuous and simultaneous recordings of arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH and on breath by breath recordings of end tidal  $CO_2$  tension observed a significant rise in the arterial to end tidal  $CO_2$  tension difference (average  $+2.1$  mm Hg) in human subjects when body position was changed from supine to standing A  $CO_2$  difference of the same order of magnitude was obtained by ULMER and REICHEL (1961) BJURSTEDT *et al* also observed an increased effective alveolar to arterial  $O_2$  tension difference (average  $+4.8$  mm Hg) in the erect posture

*Effects of hypergravitational stress* The above mentioned investigations clearly indicate that in the erect position man's pulmonary vasculature is unable to compensate completely for the normal acceleration of gravity Hypergravitational stress as produced in various flight maneuvers and during centrifugation exaggerates normally encountered gravitational effects on the pulmonary circulation This was first observed in X ray motion picture studies (monkey) in which contrast material was slowly infused (GALER 1944 reviewed by GALER and BOUDRIANT 1961) It could be observed that at accelerations higher than  $+2$  G the contrast material was carried only into the pulmonary region below the heart Similar conclusions can be drawn from X ray pictures in man (VAN DIRVINGHOVEN 1942 HERSHOOLD 1960)

That desaturation of arterial blood may develop during headward acceleration was first reported briefly by GAUER *et al* (1949) HENRY (1950) and HENRY *et al* (1951) The implications of these observations were studied in anesthetized dogs by BARR BJURSTEDT and COLERIDGE (1959 b) who recorded respiration arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH under headward acceleration It was observed that application of moderate G forces over several minutes produced severe hypoxemia although 100 %  $O_2$  was breathed and hyperventilation was present indicating a great alveolar arterial  $O_2$  difference and accordingly a large intrapulmonary shunt BARR (1962) extended these studies to man under headward acceleration In these experiments the arterial  $O_2$  saturation was recorded by continuous cuvette oximetry before during and after prolonged exposures to headward acceleration (4 to 5 G) With the subjects

breathing air and wearing an automatically inflated anti G suit the arterial  $O_2$  saturation decreased within the first minute to between 95 and 81 per cent, the arterial pH remaining essentially unchanged although respiratory minute volume was greatly increased. The rate of resaturation on returning to normal gravity was usually slow, especially after repeated exposures. The arterial hypoxemia was interpreted as being mainly a shunt effect, caused by congestion with collapse of alveoli (atelectasis) in dependent regions of the lung.

It has been reported (ERNSTING 1960) that when aviators breathing 100% oxygen and equipped with anti G suits were exposed to headward acceleration in fighter aircraft specific symptoms from the respiratory tract often occurred. The main complaints were substernal pain, coughing attacks and difficulties in breathing. The origin of these effects, at first obscure, was judged from X ray pictures to be congestion of blood with collapse of alveoli in dependent parts of the lung. These changes were not due to effects from  $O_2$  inhalation alone since virtually no symptoms appeared when the aviators were not subjected to high positive accelerations.

### G Forces in the Chest to Back Direction

Due to the rapid development in aerospace technology during the last few years, interest has been focussed on respiratory effects of forward acceleration ('astronaut position'). The end point of tolerance to G forces acting in the direction chest to back is determined by respiratory difficulties (cf CHERNIACK, HYDE and ZECHMAN 1959) and not by failure of cerebral circulation. The respiratory disturbances under forward acceleration have also been investigated by ZECHMAN, CHERNIACK and HYDE (1960), WITSON, CHERNIACK and ZECHMAN (1960), STEINER, MUELLER and CHERNIACK (1961), and STEINER and MUELLER (1961) whereas the advantages of reversing the direction of the G force (backward acceleration) have been described by ROGERS and SMEDAL (1961) and SMEDAL *et al* (1963).

The shunt effect, explaining part of the deterioration of pulmonary function during forward acceleration has been investigated by NOLAN *et al* (1961) and by STEINER and MUELLER (1961). WOOD *et al* (1961) who were the first to report a marked decrease in the arterial  $O_2$  saturation during forward acceleration recorded a fall below 85 per cent at 5 G by use of cuvette oximetry. STEINER and MUELLER reported a decrease to 71 per cent at 11 G with incomplete recovery after 3 min unless  $O_2$  therapy was used. The last mentioned investigators interpreted their findings as a result of alteration in ventilation to blood flow ratios throughout the lung with approximately 50 per cent of the cardiac output shunted through totally non ventilated areas at 8 G.

## IV PROBLEMS

The effects of G forces on pulmonary circulation and gas exchange which were reviewed in the preceding section assume a high degree of significance in relation to the potential hazards of prolonged acceleration in modern high performance aircraft. Visual blackout and loss of consciousness as experienced in fighter aircraft are well known effects of short lasting exposures to headward acceleration until recently concepts of the cardiovascular basis of these phenomena have largely been limited to considerations of systemic circulatory effects alone. Currently the increasing flight speeds and the much longer duration of exposures to G stress have shifted the emphasis from the gross end points of blackout and unconsciousness to the more subtle but increasingly important decline in human performance which may result from acceleration lasting several minutes.

It is therefore important that an understanding be gained of the physiological basis of deterioration in performance under G stress of long duration and of magnitudes below those causing blackout or unconsciousness. Although marked arterial  $O_2$  desaturation is known to occur during prolonged acceleration quantitative information of the magnitude of arterial blood gas changes and their time-courses is largely lacking; this is especially true in the case of headward acceleration in the conventional seated position, i.e. with the G forces acting in the head to foot direction.

It appeared that the information required could be obtained by special techniques previously developed for the continuous and simultaneous measurement of arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH in subjects exposed to accelerative forces on the centrifuge. Furthermore it seemed that the same techniques could be profitably applied to the analysis of alterations in the pulmonary gas exchange if combined with methods for the evaluation of alveolar arterial gas tension differences. It was therefore considered worthwhile to study in a quantitative way the effects of prolonged headward acceleration on alveolar and arterial gas tensions, the time courses of these effects and the mechanisms underlying them.

Apart from their practical interest such studies seemed to be of significance from a more fundamental point of view in that the effects revealed by exaggerating the effective force might facilitate the understanding of adaptive responses of the body to the stress of normal gravity.

Before describing the techniques and procedures used in the present work some general remarks about the experimental approach seem warranted. Previous investigations in this laboratory have demonstrated the advantages of studying the time courses of blood gas changes during exposures to gravitational stress (BARR, BJURSTEDT and COLERIDGE 1959b, BARR 1962), the information obtained by continuous recordings being considerably more complete than would be possible by spot sampling, because of the speed at which these changes occur. The present investigation involved direct, continuous and simultaneous recordings of changes in the arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH (see below, Techniques). End tidal  $CO_2$  tension was also recorded continuously by use of a breath by breath sampling technique in combination with an infrared  $CO_2$  recording system. Quantitative analyses of the disturbances in pulmonary gas exchange evoked by gravitational stress were obtained from the recordings; conventional analyses of expired gas and of arterial blood samples were also made.

In all experiments the subjects were exposed to a force of five times that exerted by normal gravity (in a few instances the effects of 6 G were tested for comparison) and the force vector was directed along the long axis of the body in the head to foot direction (positive G or headward acceleration). The time of exposure was 2 min so that if G were plotted against time one would obtain, for a single experiment the following G time pattern: (A) a control period under the force of normal gravity (+1 G); (B) a rapid rise of the G force to a plateau value of +5 G lasting for 2 min followed by a rapid return to normal gravity; and (C) a subsequent period of continued observation at normal gravity. As will be described below the use of counter pressure over the lower half of the body (anti G suit) was required to prevent loss of consciousness during the exposures to increased G stress.

The above mentioned G time pattern was chosen for several reasons. Preliminary observations showed that exposures to forces exceeding +4 G during air breathing often resulted in marked changes in the arterial  $O_2$  saturation if the anti G suit was activated during centrifuge runs. The rate of fall in the arterial  $O_2$  saturation was such as to generally level off within one minute provided the G level was kept constant over one minute or a somewhat longer period of time. The plateau level of acceleration was therefore maintained for 2 min to permit arterial blood sampling over one minute of relatively stable conditions at the end of the exposure.

The next step in the planning was to decide upon a suitable magnitude of the G force during the exposures. Preliminary experiments showed that rela

tively consistent changes in ventilation and arterial  $O_2$  saturation were obtained if the plateau level of acceleration was kept at  $+5\text{ G}$ . It was therefore decided to use this level as a standard in the present experiments. Another reason for this choice was the desirability of studying the effects of  $G$  stress which are often encountered during routine flight missions and which are perhaps more interesting from the viewpoint of flight safety than is the lower stress of  $+4\text{ G}$ . In consequence it was preferred to use volunteers from an air force wing who were familiar with the stresses of high  $G$  levels.

Although some of the subjects might have tolerated the standard  $C$  time pattern of  $+5\text{ G}$  for 2 min without the protection afforded by counter pressure over the lower half of the body, such protection was considered necessary to avoid accidental loss of consciousness and to ensure uniformity in the experimental conditions. Accordingly the subjects used anti  $G$  suits throughout the experimental series. For comparison Fig 5 (p 22) shows some of the hemo-respiratory effects which accompanied exposure to  $+5\text{ G}$  in an experiment where the anti  $G$  suit was not inflated. Because of imminent risk of loss of consciousness the run had to be terminated before 50 sec had elapsed. A rather insignificant fall in the arterial  $O_2$  saturation can be seen whereas both the end tidal  $CO_2$  tension and arterial hydrogen ion concentration showed a marked fall.

Because of earlier observations (BARK 1962) that repeated exposures to gravitational stress produce residual desaturation of the arterial blood it was considered important to exclude such effects in comparisons of inter individual differences of reaction. Therefore the present results refer to the effects obtained in the first run of the day of experiment.

The withdrawal of 8 ml blood per minute from the radial artery (see p 15) which was required for the continuous recordings of arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH was well tolerated as judged by the fact that the heart rate (group mean) at the end of the experiment did not differ significantly from the pre-run value (cf Table II last column). It is also worth mentioning in this connection that MEEHAN and JACOBS (1959) did not observe any decrease in the  $G$  tolerance in subjects in which total blood volume had been reduced to 72 per cent by prolonged bed rest.

None of the subjects displayed any inconvenience from the indwelling Teflon arterial catheter which was especially designed for the present centrifuge experiments. Nor did any adverse effects result from the administration of heparin which was necessary to prevent clotting in the sensing units of the pH-oximeter recording assembly.

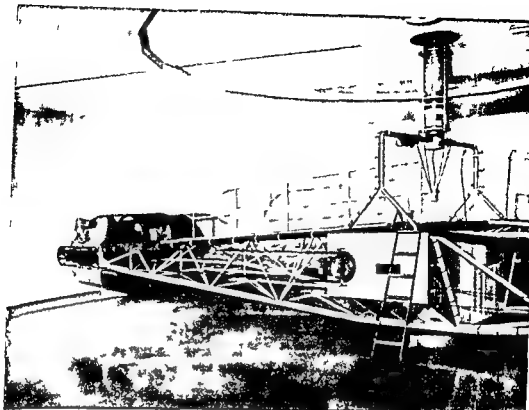


Fig 1 View of gondola and part of the superstructure of the human centrifuge at the Karolinska Institutet

## Techniques

### *Centrifuge*

All trials were run in the human centrifuge (Fig 1) at the Karolinska Institutet the subjects were seated in the gondola that is suspended at one end of the double arm superstructure 7.3 m from the center of rotation. On starting the centrifuge the gondola swings out so that when a constant speed has been attained its floor remains perpendicular to the direction of the resultant vector. For a description of the centrifuge see GOTZLINGER and HELSING (1955).

### *Measuring and Recording System*

A schematic representation of the general experimental set up used in the centrifuge gondola is given in Fig 2. Several recently designed devices were used for the collection of data from the subject in the gondola before, during and after centrifugation. They were all checked in numerous centrifuge runs and redesigned if needed until free from output variations due to electrical, mechanical or other extraneous disturbances during centrifugation.

Arterial pH and  $O_2$  saturation were recorded continuously and simultaneously by means of a pH oximeter assembly. The physical dimensions, dynamic response and electrical circuitry used with this assembly as well as the methods of calibration have been described elsewhere (BARR and BJURSTEDT 1963). The temperature of the blood (about

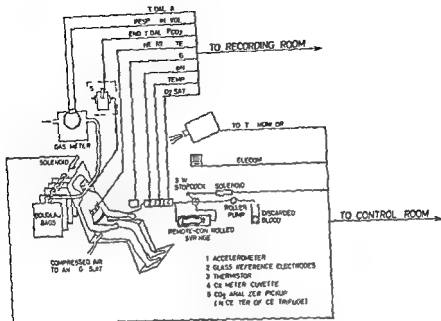


Fig 2 Schematic representation of experimental set up in the centrifuge gondola. All electrical connections between the gondola and the recording and control rooms were accomplished via shielded alloy rings.

34 C) passing through the glass reference electrode part of the assembly was recorded continuously for correction of the arterial pH to 37°C using a factor of 0.0147 per degree C (ROSENTHAL 1948). 1/15 M phosphate buffers for calibration of the pH unit were prepared according to HASTINGS and SENDROY (1924) and VAN SLIKE, WEILAGER and VAN SLIKE (1949). The drift of the pH recording was negligible over a period of several hours. For convenient calibration the phosphate buffer solutions were kept at constant temperature in the centrifuge gondola near the pH-oximeter sensing assembly as shown in Fig 3 (C). For measurement of arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation a cuvette oximeter (WOOD, GERACIN and GROOM 1948) was used in combination with a logarithmic amplifier (WIEDERHILM 1956) and yielded a linear response so that only two points were needed for calibration. Over the recording periods used in the experiments the drift of the oximeter recording was virtually nil. Arterial blood was drawn continuously from the left radial artery via an indwelling Teflon catheter (BARR 1961) through the pH oximeter sensing assembly which was mounted in the gondola in front of the subject. Its position was adjusted to approximately correspond to the level of the subject's diaphragm. In this way changes in the arterial pressure head at the inflow of the assembly during acceleration were minimized (cf. LAWSON 1961).

The rate of blood flow through the assembly was kept constant at 8 ml/min by means of the roller pump. The time from the opening of the stopcock on the arterial catheter prior to the centrifuge run until the end of the run never exceeded 15 min. Thus the blood loss during these periods was limited to 120 ml.



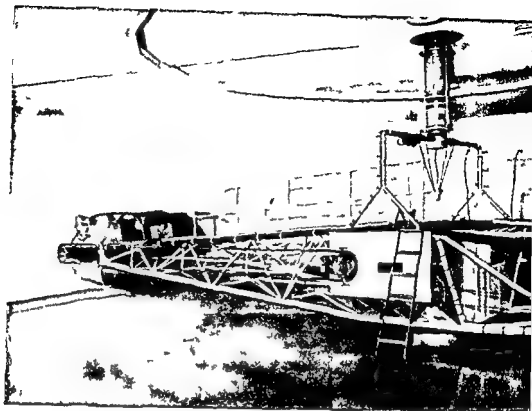


Fig 1 View of gondola and part of the superstructure of the human centrifuge at the Karolinska Institutet

## Techniques

### *Centrifuge*

All trials were run in the human centrifuge (Fig 1) at the Karolinska Institutet the subjects were seated in the gondola that is suspended at one end of the double arm superstructure 7.3 m from the center of rotation. On starting the centrifuge the gondola swings out so that when a constant speed has been attained its floor remains perpendicular to the direction of the resultant vector. For a description of the centrifuge see GOTZLINGER and HELSING (1955).

### *Measuring and Recording System*

A schematic representation of the general experimental set up used in the centrifuge gondola is given in Fig 2. Several recently designed devices were used for the collection of data from the subject in the gondola before, during and after centrifugation. They were all checked in numerous centrifuge runs and redesigned if needed until free from output variations due to electrical, mechanical or other extraneous disturbances during centrifugation.

Arterial pH and  $O_2$  saturation were recorded continuously and simultaneously by means of a pH oximeter assembly. The physical dimensions, dynamic response and electrical circuitry used with this assembly as well as the methods of calibration have been described elsewhere (BARR and BJURSTEDT 1963). The temperature of the blood (about

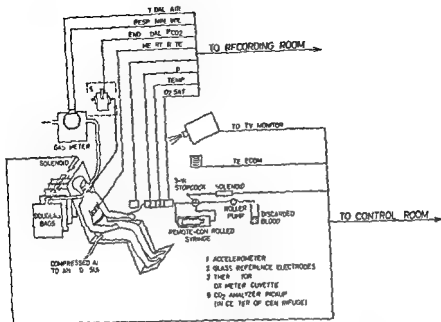


Fig 2 Schematic representation of experimental set up in the centrifuge gondola. All electrical connections between the gondola and the recording and control rooms were accomplished via shielded slip rings.

34 C) passing through the glass reference electrode part of the assembly was recorded continuously for correction of the arterial pH to 37 C using a factor of 0.0147 per degree C (ROSENTHAL 1948). 1/15 M phosphate buffers for calibration of the pH unit were prepared according to HASTINGS and SENDROY (1924) and VAN SLYKE, WEISSBORN and VAN SLYKE (1949). The drift of the pH recording was negligible over a period of several hours. For convenient calibration the phosphate buffer solutions were kept at constant temperature in the centrifuge gondola near the pH-oximeter sensing assembly as shown in Fig 3 (C). For measurement of arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation a cuvette oximeter (WOOD, GERACH and GROOM 1948) was used in combination with a logarithmic amplifier (WIEDERHILM 1956) and yielded a linear response so that only two points were needed for calibration. Over the recording periods used in the experiments the drift of the oximeter recording was virtually nil. Arterial blood was drawn continuously from the left radial artery via an indwelling Teflon catheter (BARR 1961) through the pH-oximeter sensing assembly which was mounted in the gondola in front of the subject. Its position was adjusted to approximately correspond to the level of the subject's diaphragm. In this way changes in the arterial pressure head at the inflow of the assembly during acceleration were minimized (cf LAWTON 1961).

The rate of blood flow through the assembly was kept constant at 8 ml/min by means of the roller pump. The time from the opening of the stopcock on the arterial catheter prior to the centrifuge run until the end of the run never exceeded 15 min. Thus the blood loss during these periods was limited to 120 ml.

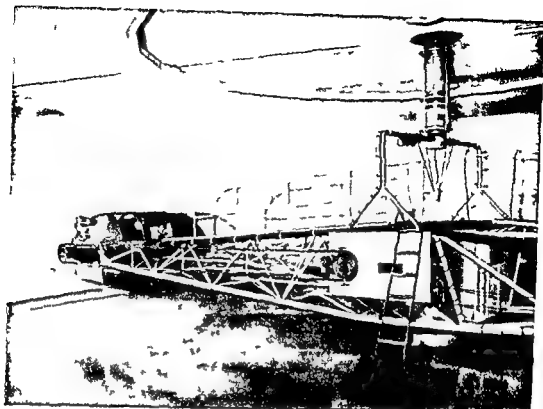


Fig 1 View of gondola and part of the superstructure of the human centrifuge at the Karolinska Institutet

## Techniques

### *Centrifuge*

All trials were run in the human centrifuge (Fig 1) at the Karolinska Institutet, the subjects were seated in the gondola that is suspended at one end of the double arm superstructure 7.3 m from the center of rotation. On starting the centrifuge the gondola swings out so that when a constant speed has been attained its floor remains perpendicular to the direction of the resultant vector. For a description of the centrifuge see GOTZLINGER and HELSING (1955).

### *Measuring and Recording System*

A schematic representation of the general experimental set up used in the centrifuge gondola is given in Fig 2. Several recently designed devices were used for the collection of data from the subject in the gondola before, during and after centrifugation. They were all checked in numerous centrifuge runs and redesigned if needed until free from output variations due to electrical, mechanical or other extraneous disturbances during centrifugation.

Arterial pH and  $O_2$  saturation were recorded continuously and simultaneously by means of a pH oximeter assembly. The physical dimensions, dynamic response and electrical circuitry used with this assembly as well as the methods of calibration have been described elsewhere (BARR and BJURSTEDT 1963). The temperature of the blood (about

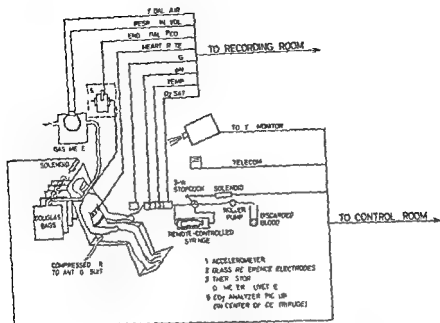


Fig 2 Schematic representation of experimental set up in the centrifuge gondola. All electrical connections between the gondola and the recording and control rooms were accomplished via shielded slip rings

34°C) passing through the glass reference electrode part of the assembly was recorded continuously for correction of the arterial pH to 37°C, using a factor of 0.0147 per degree C (ROSENTHAL 1948). 1/15 M phosphate buffers for calibration of the pH unit were prepared according to HASTINGS and SEYMOUR (1974) and VAN SLUYKE, WEISSIGER and VAN SLUYKE (1949). The drift of the pH recording was negligible over a period of several hours. For convenient calibration the phosphate buffer solutions were kept at constant temperature in the centrifuge gondola near the pH oximeter sensing assembly as shown in Fig 3 (C). For measurement of arterial  $O_2$  saturation a cuvette oximeter (WOOD, GERAGH and GROOM 1948) was used in combination with a logarithmic amplifier (WIEDERHIELM 1956) and yielded a linear response so that only two points were needed for calibration. Over the recording periods used in the experiments the drift of the oximeter recording was virtually nil. Arterial blood was drawn continuously from the left radial artery via an indwelling Teflon catheter (BARR 1961) through the pH-oximeter sensing assembly which was mounted in the gondola in front of the subject. Its position was adjusted to approximately correspond to the level of the subject's diaphragm. In this way changes in the arterial pressure head at the inflow of the assembly during acceleration were minimized (cf LAWTON 1961).

The rate of blood flow through the assembly was kept constant at 8 ml/min by means of the roller pump. The time from the opening of the stopcock on the arterial catheter prior to the centrifuge run until the end of the run never exceeded 15 min. Thus the blood loss during these periods was limited to 120 ml.

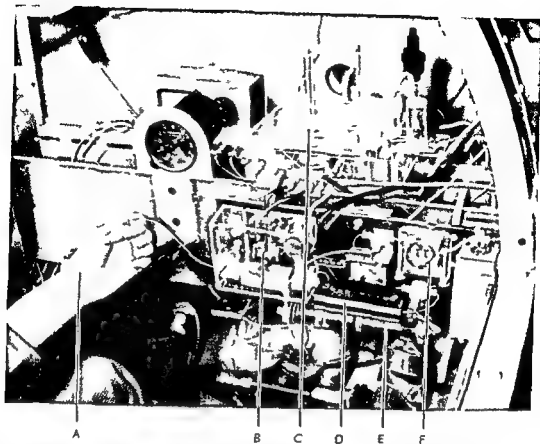


Fig 3 View of the interior of the centrifuge gondola showing part of the instrumentation used for continuous recording of arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH

A Teflon catheter in radial artery B pH sensing unit with shielded glass electrode between reference electrodes in Lucite housing C Thermostat regulated water bath with phosphate buffersolutions D Oximeter cuvette E Remote controlled syringe for blood sampling F Roller pump

The dynamic responses of the two recording systems were adjusted so as to attain 90 % of full deflection in 8 sec when square wave changes in pH and  $O_2$  saturation were produced in blood drawn through the radial artery catheter and sensing units

Inspired gas volumes were recorded quantitatively by connecting the subject (wearing a modified aviator's oxygen mask with a leak proof facepiece) to a modified dry gas meter (Nordgas Co Stockholm). The gas meter was provided with a photocell arrangement which transformed the flow of gas into a train of electrical pulses each pulse representing a constant volume (in the present experiments 25.9 ml) of gas. By an electronic two channel pulse adding device described elsewhere (BJURSTEDT and LONN 1960) (a) each inspiration and (b) the sum of inspired volumes over half minute periods (stair case curve) could thus be recorded. At the actual rates of flow the total resistance through the gas meter tubings and valves did not exceed 40–45 mm  $H_2O$  as measured at the mouth of the subject.

The expired gas was collected in a series of small Douglas bags for subsequent analysis. For these bags a special plastic foil (Cryovac) was used which is less permeable to oxygen, carbon dioxide and water vapor than a polyvinylchloride. These light

weight bags were positioned behind the back rest of the seat and could be successively connected to the expiratory tube by means of a remotely controlled solenoid-operated 5 way stopcock

End tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension was automatically obtained by employing a breath by breath gas sampling device (BRISUAR HESSER and MATELL 1962) and a low resistance valve assembly connected to the aviator's mask

The end tidal samples were drawn through a long fine bore stainless steel tube (length 10 m inside diameter 1.8 mm) to the sensing unit of a  $\text{CO}_2$  infrared analyzer (Beckman Spince model LB-1) which was suspended in the center of the centrifuge because its performance was impaired when used in the gondola during G stress. The flow of gas was kept constant at 100 ml/min. There was a 22 sec delay because of the long tubing before the  $\text{CO}_2$  analyzer revealed changes in the end tidal  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ . However a step change in the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension at the proximal end of the steel tube was 90% reflected in the recordings within an additional 2 sec. The  $\text{CO}_2$  meter was calibrated after each experiment by using a series of known mixtures of  $\text{CO}_2$  in air saturated with water vapor.

Heart rate was recorded from electrodes attached to the chest and connected to an instantaneous cardiometer (STERN and WOOD 1947).

The G level was recorded by an accelerometer of the strain gage transducer type mounted at approximately the subject's heart level.

The information gathered by the instruments on the centrifuge was transmitted via a slip-ring system to mirror galvanometers (Gebrüder Ruhstrat Göttingen West Germany) in a separate recording room. Continuous photokymographic records (40 cm wide) of the galvanometer deflections were taken at a paper speed of 1.25 mm/sec.

The subject's face was watched by a closed circuit TV monitor. A loud speaker communication system was also used as a safety precaution. The subject was instructed not to talk during the experiment except in case of emergency.

### Laboratory methods

Expired air collected in plastic bags by activation of the solenoid-operated 5-way stopcock was analyzed in duplicate for  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  according to SCHOLANDER (1947).

$\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  contents of the arterial blood which was sampled by means of a solenoid operated syringe were analyzed in duplicate using the method of VAN SLIKE and NEILL (1974). The maximal difference between duplicates did not exceed 0.2 vol%.

## Calculations

Expired minute volume ( $V_E$ ) was calculated from the observed inspired minute volume with due correction for  $P_{\text{H}_2\text{O}}$  and the relative humidity of the inspired gas.

Effective alveolar ventilation ( $\text{Eff } V_A$ ) was obtained from the alveolar ventilation equation substituting arterial for alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ .

Anatomical dead space ( $V_{D_{\text{anat}}}$ ) indicates the volume of the conducting airways including the effective external dead space of mask and valve as calculated by the Bohr equation using the end tidal  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  on the understanding that the end tidal gas sample approximates a gas mixture composed of the actual contributions of each alveolus to the expired gas (RILEY and COLNARD 1951).

Table I Individual data

Subject	Age (years)	Height (cm)	Weight (kg)	Blood pressure (mm Hg)	Hb conc (g/100 ml blood)
AS	30	179	82	125/85	147
AL	26	183	81	135/90	145
PL	29	191	111	140/90	153
LL	28	184	76	120/90	138
AO	36	180	76	140/90	150
AJ	26	178	70	125/80	140
CB	22	181	79	125/80	146
NH	28	173	73	115/80	154
AE	23	182	64	145/90	140

*Physiological dead space* ( $V_{D_{PT}}$ ) is used to mean the portion of expired gas which does not remove  $CO_2$  from the pulmonary blood flow. It was calculated using the BOHR formula substituting arterial for alveolar  $CO_2$  (RILEY and COURAND 1951) and thus includes the effective external dead space.

*Alveolar dead space* ( $V_{D_{IV}}$ ) is defined as the difference between the physiological and anatomical dead spaces (cf SEVERINGHAUS and STUPFFEL 1957).

*Effective alveolar  $O_2$  tension* ( $Eff P_{AO_2}$ ) was obtained from the alveolar gas equation substituting arterial for alveolar  $CO_2$  (RILEY *et al.* 1946).

*Arterial  $O_2$  tension* ( $P_{O_2}$ ) was calculated from the recorded arterial  $O_2$  saturation and  $pH_{37}$  using the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958).

*Arterial  $CO_2$  tension* ( $P_{aCO_2}$ ) was computed from the  $pH_{37}$  values and the plasma  $CO_2$  content by means of the Henderson Hasselbalch equation the serum  $pH_{37}$  for carbonic acid being obtained from the nomogram of SEVERINGHAUS STUPFFEL and BRADLEY (1956). The solubility coefficient for  $CO_2$  in plasma was assumed to be 0.521. The plasma  $CO_2$  content was estimated from the observations of  $CO_2$  content, hemoglobin concentration,  $O_2$  saturation and  $pH$  of whole blood using the nomogram of VAN SLYKE and SENDROY (1928) and appropriate correction factors (see PETERS and VAN SLYKE 1931 p. 939). The same procedure was used to estimate  $BHCO_3^-$  (the plasma bicarbonate content of blood under standard conditions i.e. at 37  $^{\circ}C$ ,  $pH$  7.40 and saturated with oxygen).

*Total venous admixture* to the pulmonary veins expressed as percentage of cardiac output was calculated according to BARTELS *et al.* (1959 p. 336). For this purpose the  $a-vO_2$  difference was assumed to be 5 volume per cent during the pre-run period.

## Subjects and Experimental Procedures

The experiments were performed on 9 healthy male subjects. Age and other individual data are given in Table I. All subjects were volunteers from a wing of the R. S. Air Force where they served as fighter aircraft navigators on active duty. They were in good physical condition. Since they all had several hundred flight hours mostly on high

performance aircraft they were all familiar with the subjective effects of headward acceleration

Each subject came to two sessions with a few days interval between. The first session was devoted to acquainting the subject with the experimental conditions and in the doctrination experiment was performed in which the subject had a trial run on the centrifuge

The second session was devoted to the main experiment which was performed in the morning the subject having previously had a light meal. After donning his personal anti G suit the subject was provided with chest electrodes for subsequent use with the cardiograph. He then rested supine on a couch while a Teflon catheter especially designed for use in centrifuge experiments was introduced into the left radial artery. A description of the radial artery catheter as well as directions for its use have been published elsewhere (BARR and SOILA 1960, BARR 1961). Any subjective inconvenience that would normally occur with an indwelling hypodermic needle was avoided even if the subject inadvertently flexed his wrist. The subject was allowed to rest for at least 20–30 min and was given 150 mg heparin intravenously to prevent clotting in the pH-oximeter sensing assembly during the ensuing experiment.

The subject then walked to the centrifuge room where he was tied to the seat of the gondola. The backrest of the seat was inclined backwards 15° from the vertical and the subject's occiput was in contact with a head rest so that the head and neck were afforded minimal support in an approximately vertical position. The anti G suit was connected to the automatic G valve except in experiments where the effects of absence of counter pressure were studied. The modified aviator's mask was then donned and tested until free from leakage. All electrical connections with recording instruments were checked and the radial artery was finally connected to the pH-oximeter assembly. For this purpose the arm was supported with the elbow slightly flexed so that the total length of the tubing needed between artery and sensing units was 25 cm (cf Fig 3).

Once the arrangements and connections in the gondola had been completed the subjects were at ease.

#### *Standard Experiments: Design and Procedure*

Excepting certain additional experiments which are described under Methods (p 12–13) and in Comment (p 38–39) the main results of the present investigation (p 21–78) were obtained from experiments which will subsequently be referred to as standard experiments. These experiments were designed for one single centrifuge run at +5 G for 2 min. Subjects were breathing air throughout the experiment except during the post run calibrations of the pH-oximeter recording system and wore an anti G suit (similar to the USAF Type G 4A) which was automatically inflated to about 770 mm Hg during the period of acceleration. The design and procedure of the standard experiments were as follows.

4. *Pre Run Period* Upon completion of preparations described above the subject first rested for at least 10 min in the gondola during which period the continuous photokymographic recording of arterial  $O_2$  saturation, pH, ventilation and tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  and heart rate was begun. By activation of the solenoid operated devices expired gas was then collected in the first Douglas bag for a period of 2 min, arterial blood being simultaneously sampled for 1 min. The period during which the first arterial blood sample was taken will be referred to as the pre run period.



*B Run Period* After an additional 5 min rest, during which the bag and syringe were removed for analysis and another syringe placed in position the centrifuge was started. The plateau level of acceleration of  $+5\text{ G}$  was attained after 10–12 sec and was maintained for 2 min. After 45–50 sec at  $+5\text{ G}$ , expired air was collected in the second bag during the next minute, arterial blood was let into the syringe for a corresponding period of time. This one minute period at the end of the run will be referred to as the run period.

*C Post Run Period* When the centrifuge had again come to a stand still the subject remained seated in the gondola for the next phase of the experiment. The second bag and syringe were removed for analysis and a third syringe connected. After the subject had rested for about 8 min, expired air was collected in the third bag during a period of 2 min, arterial blood being simultaneously sampled for 1 min. The period during which the third arterial sample was taken will be referred to as the "post run" period.

Note that all values given in Tables II and III, and in Figs 6, 7 and 8 refer to time averages over the pre run, run and post run periods as defined above.

#### *Calibrations of pH Oximeter Recording Systems*

In order to avoid unnecessary blood loss before and during the standard experiments the oximeter was calibrated at the end of each experiment. For this purpose the subject inhaled 10%  $\text{O}_2$  in  $\text{N}_2$  until the fall in the oximeter tracing had begun to level off; arterial blood was sampled and subsequently analyzed in order to obtain the low  $\text{HbO}_2$  point on the calibration curve. After a maximum of 7–8 min on low  $\text{O}_2$  the subject was shifted to 100%  $\text{O}_2$  and instructed to make several deep inspirations to prevent any residual desaturation due to persisting collapse of alveoli.

Upon completion of the oximeter calibration the subject was disconnected from the instruments. The pH sensing unit was calibrated against the buffer solutions kept at constant temperature in the gondola.

## VI RESULTS

The major part of the results are described below under two headings (1) Periods of Relative Stability and (2) Transitional Effects. The primary information was obtained from continuous photokymographic records and from analyses of expired air and arterial samples collected as described under Standard Experiments Design and Procedure (see p 19). A segment of a typical record obtained during the standard experiment (a single exposure to + 2 G for 11 min) is shown in Fig 4.

### Periods of Relative Stability

For the various parameters studied group means of individual time averages over one minute periods were computed for (A) pre run (about 5 min prior to acceleration) (B) run (last minute of acceleration) and (C) post run periods (at the end of 8–10 min post acceleration). These one minute periods were assumed to represent periods of relative stability under the control condition during acceleration and during a phase suitable for studying possible after-effects respectively. The data obtained for the three periods are summarized in Table II.

*Pulmonary ventilation.* The expired minute volume  $V_E$  increased markedly in all subjects during the period of acceleration. The group mean increased from 8.6 to 20.8 l BTPS (increase = 142 per cent). In the post acceleration period the mean  $V_E$  had again decreased to slightly below the pre acceleration control level, this difference not being statistically significant.

*Tidal volume and respiratory rate.* Both parameters were found to increase with acceleration. The mean tidal volume  $V_T$  reached 1.033 ml from a control value of 639 ml (the increment was significant  $p < 0.1$ ). The respiratory rate  $f$  rose by 50 per cent, the mean rate increasing from 13.5 to 20.9 breaths per min during the run period.

In the post run period  $V_T$  was somewhat below its pre run value, whereas  $f$  was essentially the same as during the pre run period.

*The alveolar ventilation ( $V_A$ ).* It showed a somewhat greater increase during acceleration (mean increment = 160 per cent) than  $V_E$ . By contrast the effective alveolar ventilation Eff  $V_A$  obtained by substituting arterial for alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  in the alveolar ventilation equation did not increase by more than 93 per cent.

In the post run period both  $V_A$  and Eff  $V_A$  fell to values significantly below the pre run averages.

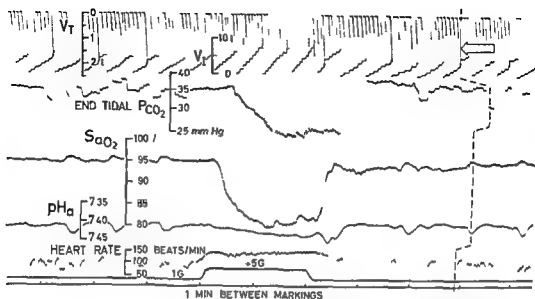


Fig 4 Segment of photokymographic record (scale = 1/6 of original) typifying the primary information from which main results of the investigation were deduced. Note the marked lowering of the arterial  $O_2$  saturation during the standardized exposure to + 5 G for 2 min with anti G suit in spite of concomitant increase in ventilation. Note also the slight alkalotic shift in the arterial pH indicating that the shunt effect with regard to  $CO_2$  is masked by state of relative hyperventilation. Dashed line indicates lags after which pulmonary events (exemplified by deep inspiration at arrow) are reflected in the tracings.

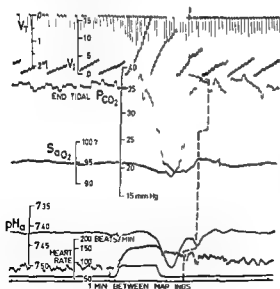


Fig 5 Photokymographic recording of the responses of ventilatory parameters, arterial  $O_2$  saturation, arterial pH and heart rate during exposure of healthy man to acceleration of + 5 G for about 45 sec without inflation of the anti G suit. Note that the  $O_2$  saturation falls only slightly. Ventilation increases greatly and is associated with a marked fall in end-tidal  $CO_2$  tension. The run was terminated because of blackout and impending loss of consciousness.

**Arterial  $O_2$  saturation and  $O_2$  tension.** Recorded group means for  $S_{aO_2}$  and for calculated  $P_{aO_2}$  decreased during the run period by 8.8 per cent to 87.4 per cent (lowest recorded individual one minute mean value 81.0 per cent) and by 32.1 mm Hg to 58.0 mm Hg (lowest one minute mean value 44 mm Hg).

In the post run period all individual time averages for arterial  $S_{O_2}$  and  $P_{O_2}$  were below pre run values. Group means were 94.8 per cent and 79.4 mm Hg respectively both decrements being significant ( $p < 0.1$ ).

**Effective alveolar  $O_2$  tension** The mean Eff  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  was found to increase from 103.2 to 112.0 mm Hg during acceleration the increment being highly significant ( $p < 0.01$ ). For the post run period practically the same value was obtained as for the pre run period.

**Arterial pH** The individual records showed relatively small changes during the course of the run. The normal mean control value of 7.407 gives objective confirmation of the relaxed state of the subjects. A small but statistically significant shift towards alkalosis was observed during the run (mean change =  $+0.027$  of a pH unit  $p < 0.1$ ). In the post run period the mean value was 0.014 of a pH unit more acid than in the pre run period ( $p < 0.01$ ).

**End tidal  $CO_2$  tension** The breath by breath recordings of end tidal  $P_{CO_2}$  showed a gradual decrement during acceleration. The mean pre run control value was 34.5 mm Hg and the mean during acceleration 23.9 mm Hg. During the post run period the group mean (32.1 mm Hg) was slightly but significantly lower than in the pre run period ( $p < 0.1$ ).

**Arterial  $CO_2$  tension and  $BHCO_{3.5}$**  During acceleration there was a decrease in the calculated arterial  $CO_2$  tension  $P_{CO_2}$  from an average of 38.1 to 30.5 mm Hg ( $p < 0.05$ ). The standard bicarbonate  $BHCO_{3.5}$  remained constant during acceleration. During the post run period  $P_{CO_2}$  returned to the mean pre run value whereas the buffering capacity of the arterial blood was slightly decreased as compared with the pre run and run values.

## Notes to Table II (p 24—25)

Calculated as  $(\bar{V}_{E_{O_2}} \times 863) / \text{End tidal } P_{CO_2}$

Calculated as  $(\bar{V}_{CO_2} \times 863) / P_{CO_2}$

Computed from the Bohr formula, substituting arterial for alveolar  $CO_2$  (Effective external dead space of 70 ml included)

Calculated as  $(\bar{V}_E - \bar{V}_A) / f$  (Effective external dead space of 70 ml included)

Calculated as  $\bar{V}_{D_{pH_{7.38}}} - \bar{V}_{D_{A_{7.38}}}$

$BHCO_{3.5}$  = plasma bicarbonate content of blood under standard condition, i.e. at 37°C, pH 7.40 and saturated with oxygen.

Computed from the HENDERSON HASELBALCH equation.

Calculated from arterial  $O_2$  saturation and pH by use of the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958)

Calculated as  $P_{I_{O_2}} - P_{A_{CO_2}} \left( F_{I_{O_2}} + \frac{1 - F_{I_{O_2}}}{R} \right)$

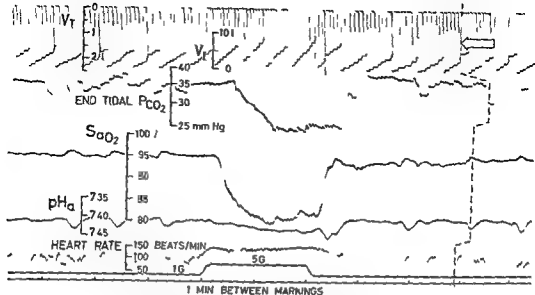


Fig 4 Segment of photokymographic record (scale = 1/6 of original) typifying the primary information from which main results of the investigation were deduced. Note the marked lowering of the arterial  $O_2$  saturation during the standardized exposure to +5 G for 2 min with anti G suit in spite of concomitant increase in ventilation. Note also the slight alkalotic shift in the arterial pH indicating that the shunt effect with regard to  $CO_2$  is masked by state of relative hyperventilation. Dashed line indicates lags after which pulmonary events (exemplified by deep inspiration at arrow) are reflected in the tracings.

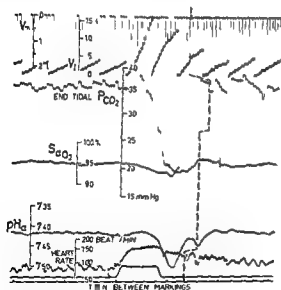


Fig 5 Photokymographic recording of the responses of ventilatory parameters, arterial  $O_2$  saturation, arterial pH and heart rate during exposure of healthy man to acceleration of +5 G for about 45 sec without inflation of the anti G suit. Note that the  $O_2$  saturation falls only slightly. Ventilation increases greatly and is associated with a marked fall in end tidal  $CO_2$  tension. The run was terminated because of blackout and impending loss of consciousness.

**Arterial  $O_2$  saturation and  $O_2$  tension** Recorded group means for  $S_{O_2}$  and for calculated  $P_{O_2}$  decreased during the run period by 8.8 per cent to 87.4 per cent (lowest recorded individual one minute mean value 81.0 per cent) and by 32.1 mm Hg to 58.0 mm Hg (lowest one minute mean value 44 mm Hg) respectively.

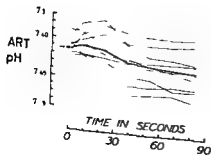
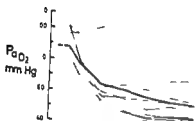
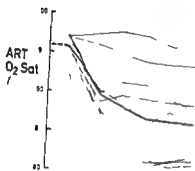
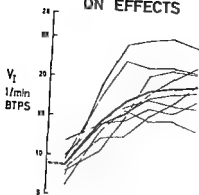
$V_{D1}$ (ml BTTS)	$V_{D1}$ $\frac{V_{D1}}{V_T - V_{D1}} \times 100$	Art pH	BicO <sub>3</sub> (mM/l)	Art O <sub>2</sub> ( )	P CO <sub>2</sub> (mm Hg)	End tidal PCO <sub>2</sub> (mm Hg)	P CO <sub>2</sub> - End tidal PCO <sub>2</sub> (mm Hg)	P <sub>a</sub> (mm Hg)	Diff P <sub>aO2</sub> (mm Hg)	Diff P <sub>aO2</sub> - P <sub>o</sub> (mm Hg)	Heart rate (beats/min)
9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	8
37	9	7.407	24.2	96.2	39.1	34.5	3.6	90.1	103.2	13.1	78
±6	±1	±.005	±5	±1	±7	±8	±6	±7	±13	±14	±3
6	2	7.381	20.9	95.8	35.3	30.4	8	86.5	97.3	6.6	67
-68	-14	-7.425	-26.3	-96.7	-41.7	-37.4	-5.7	-94.7	-107.2	-19.6	-89
9	9	9	7	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	8
216	32	7.434	24.5	87.4	35.5	23.9	11.6	58.0	112.0	54.2	132
±14	±2	±.009	±6	±19	±11	±6	±10	±5.3	±19	±44	±8
152	18	7.388	21.6	81.0	30.3	21.4	5.4	44.4	99.2	25.8	104
-273	-39	-7.467	-26.7	-97.0	-43.1	-27.2	-15.9	-97.3	-118.1	-68.1	-172
6	6	7	7	7	6	7	7	7	6	6	8
49	14	7.395	23.0	94.8	37.5	32.1	5.8	79.4	107.6	24.3	80
±10	±3	±.006	±6	±2	±4	±8	±9	±2.2	±9	±2.2	±5
14	3	7.368	20.7	94.0	35.6	28.4	3.4	72.4	99.2	15.9	63
-83	-24	-7.420	-25.2	-95.5	-38.2	-34.8	-9.1	-86.5	-104.9	-29.1	-103
9	9	9	7	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	8
+179	+23	+0.07	+3	+8.8	+2.6	+10.6	+8.0	+32.1	+8.8	+41.1	+44
±18	±3	±.005	±2	±1.9	±8	±8	±10	±5.1	±1.6	±4.7	±7
< .001	< .001	< .01	> .05	< .01	< .05	< .001	< .001	< .001	< .001	< .001	< .001
6	6	7	7	7	6	7	6	7	6	6	8
+10	+6	+0.14	+9	+1.5	+6	+1.9	+2.3	+10.9	+2.1	+10.3	+2
±3	±2	±.007	±3	±3	±4	±4	±2	±2.4	±9	±1.7	±3
< .05	< .05	< .001	< .05	< .01	> .05	< .01	< .001	< .01	> .05	< .001	> .05

Table II Pre run run (+5G, with anti G suit) and post run periods

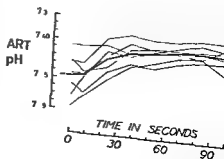
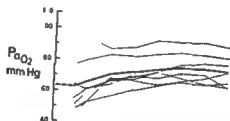
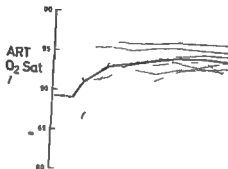
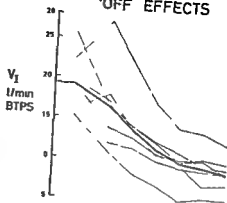
Pre run (A)	$\dot{V}_E$ (l/min BTPS)	$\dot{V}_T$ (ml BTPS)	f (breaths/min)	$\dot{V}_{O_2}$ (ml/min STPD)	$\dot{V}_{CO_2}$ (ml/min STPD)	R	$\dot{V}_{A^*}$ (l/min BTPS)	Eff $\dot{V}_{A^*}$ (l/min BTPS)	Eff $\dot{V}_A \times 100$ $\dot{V}_E$	$\dot{V}_{D_{phys}^*}$ (ml BTPS)	$\dot{V}_{D_{a^*}^*}$ (ml BTPS)
n	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	855 $\pm 49$	639 $\pm 40$	13.5 $\pm 6$	269 $\pm 15$	216 $\pm 13$	80 $\pm 02$	5.40 $\pm 32$	4.90 $\pm 31$	57 $\pm 2$	270 $\pm 19$	233 $\pm 18$
Range	6.32 -10.56	527 -841	11.6 -16.6	224 -342	158 -277	71 -91	4.27 -6.71	3.78 -6.49	48 -66	182 -360	145 -310
Run (B)											
n	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	20.81 $\pm 1.24$	1033 $\pm 99$	20.9 $\pm 1.3$	410 $\pm 39$	391 $\pm 34$	96 $\pm 03$	14.03 $\pm 1.02$	9.59 $\pm 0.94$	45 $\pm 3$	543 $\pm 29$	398 $\pm 14$
Range	15.66 -29.00	719 -1688	14.1 -26.5	254 -572	273 -553	83 -109	9.98 -19.17	6.92 -15.33	38 -64	400 -656	249 -385
Post run (C)											
n	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	6	6	6	7
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	8.30 $\pm 0.52$	559 $\pm 39$	15.1 $\pm 1.1$	252 $\pm 20$	195 $\pm 14$	78 $\pm 02$	5.23 $\pm 0.34$	4.63 $\pm 0.33$	54 $\pm 4$	254 $\pm 18$	202 $\pm 15$
Range	6.25 -9.61	447 -723	12.8 -21.5	196 -337	148 -249	74 -86	3.89 -6.29	3.41 -5.63	35 -61	205 -315	150 -256
Difference (B-A)											
n	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	+12.26 $\pm 1.17$	+394 $\pm 88$	+7.4 $\pm 0.8$	+141 $\pm 34$	+175 $\pm 29$	+16 $\pm 03$	+8.63 $\pm 0.95$	+4.69 $\pm 0.84$	-12 $\pm 2$	+273 $\pm 30$	+93 $\pm 19$
p	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01	< 0.01
Difference (C-A)											
n	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	6	6	6	7
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	-12 $\pm 37$	-71 $\pm 23$	+1.6 $\pm 0.8$	-14 $\pm 6$	-21 $\pm 5$	-03 $\pm 02$	-26 $\pm 11$	-54 $\pm 11$	-6 $\pm 1$	-4 $\pm 15$	-15 $\pm 11$
p	> 0.5	< 0.5	> 0.5	< 0.5	< 0.01	> 0.5	< 0.5	< 0.01	< 0.01	> 0.5	> 0.5

1-9 see page 23

# ON EFFECTS



# 'OFF EFFECTS





*O<sub>2</sub> uptake, CO<sub>2</sub> elimination and respiratory exchange ratio* Acceleration provoked an increase in the oxygen uptake,  $V_{O_2}$ , averaging 52 per cent, and a concomitant increase of 81 per cent in the CO<sub>2</sub> output,  $V_{CO_2}$ . These values indicate an elevation in the respiratory exchange ratio,  $R$ , from 0.80 to 0.96. During the post acceleration period  $R$  returned to the pre run level. During this period  $V_{O_2}$  and  $V_{CO_2}$  decreased to values slightly below their pre run values.

## Transitional Effects

In order to study more closely the rates of change in the pulmonary ventilation and in the arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation, O<sub>2</sub> tension and pH occurring after the rise ('on' effects) and fall ('off' effects) of the G force in standard exposures to + 5 G for 2 min, the following analysis was made.

Beginning at the moments of starting and stopping the centrifuge, the individual time averages over consecutive 15 sec periods were computed for each parameter. The values for  $V_1$ , arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation and pH were obtained from the continuous photokymographic tracings, whereas those for the arterial O<sub>2</sub> tension were calculated from O<sub>2</sub> saturation and pH<sub>7.38</sub>, using the line charts of SEVERINGHAUS (1958). Before plotting these values against time, the values for ventilation were smoothed by determining for every 15 sec, the mean of three consecutive values. Furthermore, the values obtained for blood chemical factors were moved along the time axis to allow for the time taken for events in the pulmonary capillaries to be reflected in the O<sub>2</sub> and pH recordings.

Fig. 6 illustrates the results of these operations, individual values being connected by thin lines, and mean values by heavy lines.

Inspired minute volume ( $V_1$ ) started to increase almost immediately after onset of acceleration, 90 per cent of the final mean change being attained within less than one minute. It was noted that two of the subjects showed a much more marked increase in ventilation than did the rest of the group. Inspection

---

Fig. 6. On and off effects in (from above) pulmonary ventilation and arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation, O<sub>2</sub> tension and pH following the fast rise and fall of the G force in standard exposures to + 5 G for 2 min with anti G suit (time for attaining the + 5 G plateau as well as for the return was about 12 sec). On effects: 9 subjects; off effects: 7 subjects.

Heavy lines show means of individual time averages (thin lines) which were determined over successive 15 sec periods.

Dashed lines represent group means immediately prior to starting and stopping the centrifuge. Note that all blood chemical changes have been processed from continuous recordings of arterial O<sub>2</sub> saturation and pH after subtracting the time taken for passage of blood from the lungs to the pH oximeter assembly.

## VII DISCUSSION

### *Effects on Respiration Arterial $O_2$ Saturation and pH*

It is well known that changes in gravitational vectors normally produce alterations in the respiratory activity in man so that *e.g.* a change from the supine to the up right position produces an increase in the respiratory minute volume (for reviews see BROGDON FRANSEEN and HELLEBRANDT 1943 BJURSTEDT *et al* 1962). A marked increase in respiratory activity has also been observed in man during exposures to headward acceleration (GAUER 1938 LOMBARD ROTH and DRURY 1948, BROWNE 1958 ROSSANIGO and MEINER 1961 BARR 1962).

In the present experiments the mean expired minute volume increased from 8.6 to 20.8 l/min during acceleration (*cf* Table II). The mean values for expired minute volume during the pre run run and post run periods are graphically depicted in Fig. 7 which also shows the concomitant alterations in the effective alveolar ventilation (for discussion of the relations between the two quantities see below p. 36).

The hyperpnea was associated with a marked decrease in the  $O_2$  saturation level from a mean of 96.2 to 87.4 per cent (Table II). Such acceleration induced unsaturation has been briefly reported in earlier investigations (p. 9-10). The finding of an increased respiratory minute volume in combination with arterial unsaturation indicates an increase in the alveolar arterial  $O_2$  difference the significance of which will be discussed below in a separate section (p. 32-36).

The observation that the marked increase in the respiratory minute volume and the concomitant arterial unsaturation were associated with only a small increase in the mean arterial pH (from 7.407 to 7.434) complicates the analysis of the mechanism underlying the respiratory stimulation. Although it is well known that assuming the up right position under normal gravity calls forth an increase in the pulmonary ventilation the cause of postural hyperventilation is not fully understood. The concomitant lowering of the alveolar  $CO_2$  tension is in part due to an increased arterial to end tidal  $CO_2$  difference (BJURSTEDT *et al* 1962) the postural decrease in alveolar  $CO_2$  tension thus being only in part due to the lowering in arterial  $CO_2$  tension that normally accompanies increased ventilation.

The strong respiratory stimulation seen during headward acceleration may be due to a number of influences. Thus the fall in arterial blood pressure that occurs in the upper part of the body when exposed to gravitational stress (*cf* WOOD *et al* 1946) may stimulate respiration by direct influence on the medullary centers by changes in the local blood flow (for review see SCHMIDT

of the original recordings also showed a more marked alkalotic trend in the two cases

The ventilatory 'off' effect was less rapid, especially during the first half-minute. The mean curve returned to the pre run level within 90 sec.

*Arterial  $O_2$  saturation* The mean level decreased immediately upon onset of acceleration and reached 90 per cent of the maximal fall within 60 sec. During the last 30 sec of the 2 min exposure (not shown in Fig. 6) the mean  $O_2$  saturation curve again rose by a few per cent. Two of the subjects showed only a small decrease in  $O_2$  saturation during the run.

On stopping the centrifuge the return of the mean arterial  $O_2$  saturation was relatively rapid in the beginning, but after about 30–45 sec became gradually slower. The return to pre run level was not completed before 90 sec had elapsed.

*Arterial  $O_2$  tension* The alterations in the  $O_2$  tension followed a pattern similar to that of the  $O_2$  saturation. Because of the slight change towards alkalosis, the mean  $O_2$  tension fell more than what would otherwise be expected from the decrement in  $O_2$  saturation.

The return to normal level after acceleration was relatively slower for mean  $O_2$  tension than for saturation, especially in the beginning and was not completed within the time period studied.

*Arterial pH* Fig. 6 demonstrates some advantages of using continuous recording techniques for arterial pH. As can be seen the subjects generally showed greater inter individual than intra individual differences during the periods studied. It is evident that the individual pH levels remained remarkably stable in spite of the great changes in ventilation. Since pH is the negative logarithm of  $[H^+]$  the calculation of mean pH values by standard methods would ordinarily not appear correct. However, since in this case the differences between the values did not exceed 0.1 of a pH unit the error introduced was considered negligible. The general trend as described by the mean curve, was towards a slight acidotic shift during the first 30 sec of acceleration and a subsequent more persistent alkalotic change during the remainder of the run.

The mean pH 'off' effect was a relatively rapid return to the pre run level with a slight but somewhat protracted overshoot.

In summing up the transient changes described and illustrated in the present section, it can be stated that with the standard exposure used in the present experiments (+ 5 G for 2 min), most of the changes seen in  $V_D$  and in arterial  $O_2$  saturation and  $O_2$  tension were completed within 60 sec, whereas the return to pre run levels after stopping the centrifuge was not complete at the end of the time period studied except for arterial pH.

The changes in alveolar arterial gas tension differences that were observed in the present experiments are graphically depicted in Fig 8 The arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference increased by an average of 8.0 mm Hg (cf Table II) Assuming the transmembrane  $\text{CO}_2$  gradient to be negligible the observed rise may be ascribed to at least three factors (1) underperfusion or overventilation of alveoli (2) underventilation or overperfusion of alveoli and (3) extra alveolar shunts Theoretically all three factors may have contributed to establishing the increment in the  $\text{CO}_2$  difference There is evidence that normal gravity produces regional (apical) underperfusion rather than overventilation (MATTSON and CARLENS 1955 MARTIN and YOUNG 1957 RILEY *et al* 1959 WEST and DOLLERY 1960)

The mechanism underlying the present results is however to some extent obscured by the fact that information on the changes in cardiac output during acceleration is as yet limited Considering that the arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference is also affected by changes in total flow to the lungs (RILEY *et al* 1959) the extent to which a decrease in cardiac output might have contributed to the  $\text{CO}_2$  difference thus remains open to question The relative importance of changes in cardiac output is clearly illustrated by the experiments of GERST RATTENBORG and HOLADAY (1959) who observed a substantial increase in the alveolar dead space in supine anesthetized dogs after the total blood flow had been diminished by hemorrhage

Since both a regional decrease in the pulmonary blood flow and a diffuse closing of capillaries throughout the lungs are capable of producing a  $\text{CO}_2$  difference and both these effects may theoretically be produced by gravitational stress one may conclude that much larger  $\text{CO}_2$  differences would have been obtained had the present experiments been performed at high G levels but without the use of anti G suits This is borne out by the observation of HOWARD (1959) that cardiac output decreased by about 40 per cent in a subject exposed to headward acceleration of 2.4 G with the legs extended Unfortunately cardiac output measurements at higher levels of acceleration and with the use of anti G suits have indicated wide variations Thus LINDBERG *et al* (1960) with the dye dilution technique obtained a mean decrease of 22 (range 4 to 45) per cent after 20–40 seconds of headward acceleration at 4 G Inflating a G 3A suit increased the range of alterations in cardiac output but did not change the average figures significantly

The use of the anti G suit in the present experiments presumably prevented a precipitous fall in cardiac output during the runs However it is likely that cardiac output was reduced because of the rather inefficient protection afforded by this device It can therefore not be excluded that a diffuse closing of capillaries throughout the lungs secondary to decreased cardiac output contributed to the observed arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference

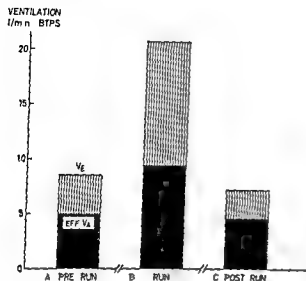


Fig 7 Expired minute volumes ( $V_E$ , total height of columns) and effective alveolar ventilation ( $\text{Eff } V_A$ , black part of columns) before during and after exposure to  $\pm 5$  G during 2 min (mean values of the ensemble of time averages over one minute periods). For statistical data see Table II

1956) Also, hypotension at the level of the carotid sinus region may give rise to respiratory reflexes of chemoceptive or baroreceptive origin (cf EULER and LILJESTRAND 1937, HEYMANS and NEIL 1958). Such stimulation may well become more intense through ischemic excitation of carotid chemoreceptors secondary to reduced blood flow to these structures (cf LANDOREN and NEIL 1951). Evidence that carotid chemoreflexes may be responsible for most of the hyperventilation seen in anesthetized dogs was obtained by BARR, BJURSTEDT and COLERIDGE (1959a), who found that respiration decreased during headward acceleration after denervation of the carotid chemoreceptors.

In general, the arterial pH remained remarkably constant during acceleration (cf Table II). As will be discussed in a subsequent section, a considerable deterioration occurred in the efficiency of the overall pulmonary gas exchange, which tended to counteract the respiratory alkalosis that would otherwise be expected from the great increase in total pulmonary ventilation. It is likely that such reduction of the arterial alkalosis contributed to increasing any respiratory stimulation caused by concomitant arterial hypoxemia (cf NIELSEN and SWITH 1951).

#### Arterial to End Tidal $\text{CO}_2$ Difference and Dead Spaces

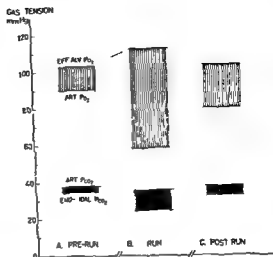
Variations of  $V/Q$  ratio among alveoli should result in an alveolar arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  difference (RILEY and COURVAND 1951, SEARINGHAM and STUFFEL 1957). That such variations occur as a result of the action of normal gravity was first made likely by the use of differential spirometry (cf p 8-9). The occurrence of a significant  $\text{CO}_2$  difference in the standing position has only recently been demonstrated independently by ULNER and REICHEL (1961) and by BJURSTEDT *et al* (1962).

Fig 8 Alveolar arterial  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$  differences before during and after exposure to  $+5 G_x$  for 7 min (mean values of the ensemble of time averages over one minute period)

Height of stippled areas equals  $EFF\ PAO_2 - P_{aO_2}$

Height of black areas equals  $P_{aCO_2} - \text{end tidal } PCO_2$

For statistical data see Table II



end tidal to arterial  $O_2$  difference was found to increase from a mean value of 18.1 to 67.0 mm Hg

This overall  $O_2$  difference can basically be referred to the same three factors (cf p 31) which were responsible for the  $CO_2$  difference (FARHI and RAHN 1955 BARTELS *et al* 1959 HAAB PIPER and RAHN 1960) provided the transmembrane gradient for  $O_2$  is negligible during air breathing (cf RILEY and COLRVAND 1951) During centrifugation the  $CO_2$  difference was mainly the result of impaired apical perfusion of the lungs with the development of a considerable alveolar dead space. However the increment in the alveolar dead space contributed only to a minor part to the increase in the overall  $O_2$  difference (about 10 mm Hg). The greater part of the overall  $O_2$  difference was due to the effective alveolar to arterial  $O_2$  difference (averaging 54.2 mm Hg Table II) which represents that portion of the  $O_2$  difference which is caused by the addition of venous blood to the arterialized blood.

The complex picture of pulmonary gas exchange during acceleration may be visualized schematically by assuming that headward acceleration results in regional  $V/Q$  ratios of the following main types and locations: (1) an upper region which is ventilated but not perfused, (2) a middle region ideally ventilated and perfused, and (3) a dependent region which is perfused but not ventilated.

The large increase in the effective alveolar to arterial  $O_2$  difference graphically depicted in Fig 8 does not necessarily imply a corresponding increase in the total venous admixture since the desaturation of the arterial blood is the result of both the volume of the venous blood admixed and its oxygen content. To estimate the relative importance of the latter

Accordingly, there are reasons to believe that the substantial increase in the  $\text{CO}_2$  difference during G stress in the present experiments was not only due to downward displacement of blood in the pulmonary circulation but also to similar events in the systemic circulation, thereby reducing the effective volume of blood available for the circulation. It may be noted in passing that gravitational displacement of blood volume within the systemic circulation can readily be avoided if the body is submerged in water while exposed to G stress. Since cardiac output would then be wholly unaffected, any increase in the arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference must be referred solely to regional displacement of blood within the lungs. Immersion experiments would thus be ideal for studies of gravitational rearrangement of pulmonary  $\text{V/Q}$  ratios.

Exposure to G forces acting perpendicular to the long axis of the body (e.g. in the 'astronaut position') would offer a situation similar to that of headward acceleration with the body submerged in water. In the first mentioned condition neither cardiac output nor over all alveolar ventilation are significantly changed (cf. HERSH GOLD and STEINER 1960, STEINER, MUELLER and TAYLOR 1960, WOOD *et al.* 1961, ZECHMAN, CHERNICK and HYDE 1960). To date, no information is available on the  $\text{CO}_2$  difference under transverse acceleration. Theoretically, any discrepancy between end tidal and arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  tension in this situation would reflect purely regional alterations of  $\text{V/Q}$  ratios within the lungs.

The physiological dead space, as calculated from the BOHR formula, increased during acceleration by 273 ml on an average whereas the alveolar dead space was enlarged by 179 ml (cf. Table II). This portion of the dead space, i.e. the alveolar volume that did not exchange with blood, increased to nearly six times its pre-run value. The increase in the alveolar dead space may be ascribed to alterations in the ventilation-perfusion relationships both throughout the lungs and regionally. If all alveoli are arbitrarily divided in two groups, one with ideal exchange with the blood, the other unperfused, and if the distribution of the ventilation is assumed to remain unchanged (cf. SEVERINGHAUS and STUFFEL 1957), it is possible to calculate that the increment in the gravitational vector blocked the perfusion to roughly one third of the total number of alveoli (cf. Table II  $V_D / (V_T - V_D)$ ).

#### *Alveolar to Arterial $\text{O}_2$ Difference and Venous admixture*

The lowering of the oxygen saturation in the mixed arterial blood observed in this investigation under G stress was not the result of an alveolar hypoventilation. In fact a relative alveolar hyperventilation was present as judged by the slight alkalotic trend in the arterial pH. This implies that the arterial hypoxemia was associated with a considerable alveolar to arterial  $\text{O}_2$  difference. Assuming end tidal gas to have the same R as mixed expired gas the

In practice available data do not permit any conclusions as to the magnitude of this decrease in cardiac output. Therefore the total venous admixture has been calculated at three different levels of cardiac output during acceleration (Table III). It is believed that the most reasonable values are those given in column (b) assuming a 20 per cent reduction of  $Q$  during acceleration. The total venous admixture in the run period would then amount to about 1/5 of the total blood flow and in consequence cause a considerable  $O_2$  deficit in the mixed arterial blood. The concomitant arterial  $O_2$  deficit thus amounted to about 25 per cent of the measured oxygen uptake (Table III).

The total venous admixture as calculated in the present investigation includes the blood flow through extra alveolar (anatomical) shunts as well as the flow from underventilated or overperfused alveoli. Since there are no obvious reasons to assume an increased blood flow through existing anatomical shunts in healthy individuals during acceleration it is felt that the major part of the increment in venous admixture is due to alveolar shunts. Such shunts seem likely to develop in the dependent parts of the lung as a result of the increased effective weight of the blood. Direct evidence for such displacement of blood has been presented in X ray studies (p. 10).

The use of the anti G suit during acceleration would tend to counteract excessive pooling of blood in dependent and distensible portions of the systemic circulation. It can thus be anticipated that the prevention of such pooling e.g. by submerging the body in water or by applying the G force perpendicular to the long axis of the body would result in considerably larger shunts than in the extreme case of subjecting the body to headward acceleration without anti G suit and with the legs extended. By the same token it may be assumed that the use of anti G suits in the present experiments exaggerated the shunt effect that would otherwise have developed as the consequence of increasing the effective force of normal gravity. During exposure to transverse G where no reduction of the blood flow occurs a 50 per cent "shunt effect" was demonstrated at 11 G (STEINER and MUELLER 1961).

The above considerations regarding the establishment of a large  $O_2$  difference during acceleration rest on the assumption of a negligible alveolar transmembrane  $O_2$  gradient. The validity of this assumption can however be questioned. In the lowermost regions of the lung the intracapillary hydrostatic pressure may be sufficiently increased to cause a local edema resulting in impaired gas diffusion. The methods used in the present investigation do not permit differentiation between regional rearrangements of  $V/Q$  ratios and regional diffusion impairment in the production of alveolar arterial  $O_2$  differences.

Congestion in the lowermost subdivisions of the lung during headward acceleration especially if combined with regional pulmonary edema would likely cause atelectasis in these regions. X ray studies suggest such changes following headward acceleration (EASTING 1960). The reported subjective symptoms



Table III Calculated total venous admixture and arterial  $O_2$  deficit resulting from exposure to + 5 G for 2 min. Columns (a), (b) and (c) show values at an assumed cardiac output ( $Q$ ) of 100, 80 and 60 % of  $^1$  Pre run  $Q$ <sup>1</sup>, respectively.

	Total venous admixture <sup>a</sup> (%)			Arterial oxygen deficit <sup>a</sup> (ml $O_2$ /min STPD)		
<i>Pre run (A)</i>						
n	9			9		
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	5.8 $\pm$ .9			17 $\pm$ 2		
Range	3.7-12.1			9-33		
	(a)	(b)	(c)	(a)	(b)	(c)
<i>Run (B)</i>						
n	9	9	9	9	9	9
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	23.4 $\pm$ 3.6	19.8 $\pm$ 3.1	15.9 $\pm$ 2.6	130 $\pm$ 27	103 $\pm$ 21	78 $\pm$ 16
Range	3.7-41.8	3.1-36.3	2.3-30.2	22-269	17-213	13-163
<i>Post run (C)</i>						
n	6	6	—	6	6	—
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	11.3 $\pm$ 1.3	8.9 $\pm$ .8	—	33 $\pm$ 5	26 $\pm$ 4	—
Range	7.4-16.8	6.0-11.4	—	16-54	13-43	—
<i>Difference (B-A)</i>						
n	9	9	9	9	9	9
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	17.6 $\pm$ 3.7	14.0 $\pm$ 3.2	10.1 $\pm$ 2.7	113 $\pm$ 26	86 $\pm$ 21	61 $\pm$ 16
p	< .01	< .01	< .01	< .001	< .001	< .001
<i>Difference (C-1)</i>						
n	6	6	—	6	6	—
$\bar{x} \pm s\bar{x}$	6.5 $\pm$ 1.1	4.0 $\pm$ .7	—	18 $\pm$ 3	12 $\pm$ 3	—
p	< .01	< .01	—	< .001	< .001	—

<sup>1</sup> Pre run  $Q$  calculated as  $\frac{V_{O_2}}{a-v O_2 \text{ diff}}$  assuming the  $a-v O_2$  difference to be 50 ml/l.

<sup>a</sup> Calculated as  $100 \times \frac{C_a - C_v}{C_a - C_v}$

Calculated as  $Q (C_a - C_v)$

components in the establishment of the  $O_2$  difference, it is necessary to assume values either for the cardiac output or for the composition of the mixed venous blood. In view of the considerations put forward above in connection with the discussion of the  $CO_2$  difference it is likely that a decrease occurred in the cardiac output during acceleration.

In practice available data do not permit any conclusions as to the magnitude of this decrease in cardiac output. Therefore the total venous admixture has been calculated at three different levels of cardiac output during acceleration (Table III). It is believed that the most reasonable values are those given in column (b) assuming a 20 per cent reduction of  $Q$  during acceleration. The total venous admixture in the run period would then amount to about 1/5 of the total blood flow and in consequence cause a considerable  $O_2$  deficit in the mixed arterial blood. The concomitant arterial  $O_2$  deficit thus amounted to about 25 per cent of the measured oxygen uptake (Table III).

The total venous admixture as calculated in the present investigation includes the blood flow through extra alveolar (anatomical) shunts as well as the flow from underventilated or overperfused alveoli. Since there are no obvious reasons to assume an increased blood flow through existing anatomical shunts in healthy individuals during acceleration it is felt that the major part of the increment in venous admixture is due to alveolar shunts. Such shunts seem likely to develop in the dependent parts of the lung as a result of the increased effective weight of the blood. Direct evidence for such displacement of blood has been presented in X-ray studies (p. 10).

The use of the anti G suit during acceleration would tend to counteract excessive pooling of blood in dependent and distensible portions of the systemic circulation. It can thus be anticipated that the prevention of such pooling e.g. by submerging the body in water or by applying the G force perpendicular to the long axis of the body would result in considerably larger shunts than in the extreme case of subjecting the body to headward acceleration without anti G suit and with the legs extended. By the same token it may be assumed that the use of anti G suits in the present experiments exaggerated the shunt effect that would otherwise have developed as the consequence of increasing the effective force of normal gravity. During exposure to transverse G where no reduction of the blood flow occurs a 50 per cent shunt effect was demonstrated at 8 G (STEINER and MUELLER 1961).

The above considerations regarding the establishment of a large  $O_2$  difference during acceleration rest on the assumption of a negligible alveolar transmembrane  $O_2$  gradient. The validity of this assumption can however be questioned. In the lowermost regions of the lung the intracapillary hydrostatic pressure may be sufficiently increased to cause a local edema resulting in impaired gas diffusion. The methods used in the present investigation do not permit differentiation between regional rearrangements of  $V/Q$  ratios and regional diffusion impairment in the production of alveolar arterial  $O_2$  differences.

Congestion in the lowermost subdivisions of the lung during headward acceleration, especially if combined with regional pulmonary edema would likely cause atelectasis in these regions. X-ray studies suggest such changes following headward acceleration (ERASTO 1960). The reported subjective symptoms

such as coughing and substernal pain experienced by writers, have also been ascribed to the development of atelectasis or edema during acceleration (LANGDON and REYNOLDS 1961). In the present investigation the persistence of a relatively large effective alveolar to arterial  $O_2$  difference in the post run period (Fig. 8) may be taken as an indication of long lasting disturbances in the pulmonary circulation, possibly in part due to residual atelectasis.

#### *Effects of Venous Admixture on Arterial $CO$ Tension. Consequences in the Calculation of Venous Admixture, Effective Alveolar Ventilation and Dead Spaces*

In the calculations of the Eff  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  and venous admixture, the pulmonary end capillary  $P_{CO_2}$  was assumed to be identical with the measured arterial  $P_{CO_2}$ . This approximation is permissible when the venous admixture is lower than 20 per cent of  $Q$  (cf. BARTELS *et al.* 1959). It was found, however, that the venous admixture was of this order of magnitude during acceleration (cf. 'Run' in Table III). It was therefore considered important to evaluate (a) the influence of venous admixture on the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  and (b) the influence of using a corrected end capillary  $P_{CO_2}$  in the calculations of Eff  $V_A$ , dead spaces, Eff  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  and venous admixture.

In the run period the venous admixture as calculated in Table III, was found to raise  $P_{CO_2}$  by 2.2 mm Hg (group average), irrespective of the assumed value for  $Q$ . Accordingly, the run period value in Table II for Eff  $V_A$  was somewhat underestimated and those for physiological and alveolar dead spaces somewhat overestimated. Using a corrected end capillary  $P_{CO_2}$  (measured  $P_{CO_2}$  reduced by 2.2 mm Hg) the Eff  $P_{A_{O_2}}$  was calculated to be 114 mm Hg instead of 112 mm Hg (group means). The values for venous admixture remained, on the other hand essentially unaffected by these corrections.

#### *Efficiency of Over All Pulmonary Gas Exchange*

During acceleration both the expired minute volume  $V_E$  and the alveolar ventilation,  $V_A$ , increased (average  $+12.3$  and  $+8.6$  l/min BTPS respectively). The effective alveolar ventilation, Eff  $V_A$ , calculated from the arterial  $CO_2$  tension, also increased but relatively less than  $V_E$ , the average increment being only 4.7 l/min. This is apparent from Table II which also shows that the mean value for the Eff  $V_A/V$  ratio decreased from 57 to 45 per cent. The relations between the mean values of effective alveolar ventilation and total pulmonary ventilation in the pre run, run and post run periods are graphically depicted in Fig. 7.

The total  $O_2$  uptake increased during the runs from an average of 269 to 410 ml/min, whereas the value was 252 ml/min in the post run period (8–10 min after the exposure). Since it was surmised that an  $O_2$  debt might have occurred during acceleration, additional data were gathered on the behavior

OXYGEN UPTAKE  
ml/min STPS

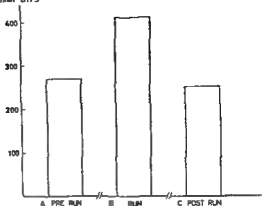


Fig 9 Oxygen uptake per min ( $\dot{V}_O$ ) before during and after exposure to + 5 G for 2 min (mean values of the ensemble of turn averages over two- one and two-minute periods respectively) For statistical data see Table II

of the  $O_2$  uptake immediately following the exposure. The data obtained showed for the group a statistically significant rise of the  $O_2$  uptake during the first minute after acceleration as compared with the group mean during acceleration. The decrease in  $BHCO_3$  in the post run period indicating the production of acid metabolites during the period of G stress is further evidence for the development of an  $O_2$  debt (Table II). Thus it is evident that the increase in  $O_2$  uptake graphically depicted in Fig 9 was insufficient to prevent the development of an  $O_2$  debt.

This  $O_2$  debt may be caused by (1) an increase in the metabolic need for  $O_2$  from the extra work associated with respiration and maintenance of posture under acceleration and (2) insufficient supply of  $O_2$  to the tissues secondary to local circulatory disturbances in the dependent regions of the body and/or the presence of arterial hypoxemia. Since STEINER, MUELLER and CHERNIACK (1961) have shown that extra work load during exposures to high gravitational stress is associated with an additional uptake of  $O_2$ , it is not likely that the present observation of an  $O_2$  debt is due to an incapability on the part of the lungs to increase the  $O_2$  uptake.

## VIII COMMENT

The advent of jet propelled high performance aircraft introduced G time flight patterns with much longer durations of G maneuvers than had previously been technically possible. After some of the mechanisms behind the phenomena of blackout and loss of consciousness experienced by aviators during headward acceleration were settled, physiologists soon became aware of a new group of problems pertaining to effects of headward acceleration. Breathlessness, substernal pain and mental as well as physical fatigue became common symptoms after strenuous flight missions, especially when 100 per cent  $O_2$  had been supplied. As a consequence, tolerance limits could no longer be expressed in terms of thresholds such as blackout or unconsciousness.

Certain effects of headward acceleration on pulmonary gas exchange under air breathing have been reported in earlier papers from this laboratory. The decrements originally observed in the arterial  $O_2$  saturation were characterized by much longer time constants than those known to exist for changes in the systemic circulation, and were accordingly thought to be of interest in connection with aviation safety problems. It therefore seemed worthwhile to look further into the significance of the observed changes.

The present investigation has demonstrated that the arterial  $O_2$  tension also becomes markedly and rapidly decreased under G time stresses often encountered in routine flight missions. When interpreting the data presented, it should be kept in mind that the values for arterial  $O_2$  tension in Table II and in Fig. 8 represent mean values for several subjects who do not all have the same reaction patterns. When analyzing biological observations the main attention is usually paid to statistical means. However, when discussing tolerance limits related to safety problems, mean values are not suitable as yard sticks since due consideration must be given to the worst case. This means that the individual susceptibility to gravitational stress becomes the tolerance limiting factor.

In the present work the group mean of individual one minute time averages for the arterial  $O_2$  tension was found to be 58 mm Hg in the run period (cf. Table II). This value is certainly remarkably low especially when considering its implications for the  $O_2$  supply of the brain. If the lowest recorded individual values for arterial  $O_2$  tension are also taken into consideration, these implications become more alarming. As can be seen in Fig. 10 in which the lowest individual 15 sec time averages of  $O_2$  tension have been plotted, seven of the nine subjects showed values which were lower than 58 mm Hg, four of the subjects going below 50 mm Hg. One case had a 15 sec value below 45 mm Hg.

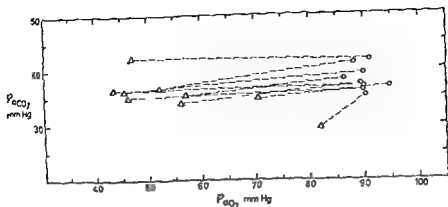
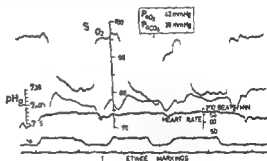


Fig 10 Maximal individual changes in the arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{O}_2$  tensions resulting from exposure to +5 G for 2 min plotted on the  $\text{CO}_2$ - $\text{O}_2$  diagram. Circles indicate individual time averages over 7 min prior to starting the centrifuge. Triangles indicate lowest individual values during the course of run (time averages over 15 sec).

Fig 11 Effects of short lasting exposures to +6 G (anti G suit inflated during runs) on arterial  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and pH. Arterial  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  tensions calculated at point of lowest  $\text{O}_2$  saturation value.

Note the rapid fall of arterial  $\text{O}_2$  saturation in repeated exposures.



It goes without saying that such decrements in arterial  $\text{O}_2$  tensions are not compatible with undisturbed brain function even if the blood flow to the brain should be normal. Moreover, the risk for deterioration of cerebral performance might become accentuated by the rapid fall of the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  tension the lowermost values being reached within less than one minute after the beginning of the exposure. For comparison Fig 11 shows blood gas changes produced by repeated short lasting exposures to G levels somewhat higher than those dealt with previously in the present work. The rapid decrements in the  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and the trend towards greater rates of fall with repeated exposures are illustrated (*cf* BARR 1962).

## VIII COMMENT

The advent of jet propelled high performance aircraft introduced G time flight patterns with much longer durations of "G maneuvers" than had previously been technically possible. After some of the mechanisms behind the phenomena of blackout and loss of consciousness experienced by aviators during headward acceleration were settled, physiologists soon became aware of a new group of problems pertaining to effects of headward acceleration. Breathlessness, substernal pain and mental as well as physical fatigue became common symptoms after strenuous flight missions, especially when 100 per cent  $O_2$  had been supplied. As a consequence, tolerance limits could no longer be expressed in terms of thresholds such as blackout or unconsciousness.

Certain effects of headward acceleration on pulmonary gas exchange under air breathing have been reported in earlier papers from this laboratory. The decrements originally observed in the arterial  $O_2$  saturation were characterized by much longer time constants than those known to exist for changes in the systemic circulation, and were accordingly thought to be of interest in connection with aviation safety problems. It therefore seemed worthwhile to look further into the significance of the observed changes.

The present investigation has demonstrated that the arterial  $O_2$  tension also becomes markedly and rapidly decreased under G time stresses often encountered in routine flight missions. When interpreting the data presented, it should be kept in mind that the values for arterial  $O_2$  tension in Table II and in Fig. 11 represent mean values for several subjects who do not all have the same reaction patterns. When analyzing biological observations the main attention is usually paid to statistical means. However when discussing tolerance limits related to safety problems, mean values are not suitable as yard sticks since due consideration must be given to the worst case. This means that the individual susceptibility to gravitational stress becomes the tolerance limiting factor.

In the present work the group mean and individual one minute time averages for the arterial  $O_2$  tension was found to be 58 mm Hg in the run period (cf. Table II). This value is certainly remarkably low, especially when considering its implications for the  $O_2$  supply of the brain. If the lowest recorded individual values for arterial  $O_2$  tension are also taken into consideration these implications become more alarming. As can be seen in Fig. 10 in which the lowest individual 15 sec time averages of  $O_2$  tension have been plotted, seven of the nine subjects showed values which were lower than 58 mm Hg, four of the subjects going below 50 mm Hg. One case had a 15 sec value below 45 mm Hg.

## IX SUMMARY

The normal postural alterations in the total and regional ventilation perfusion relationships in the lungs were exaggerated by exposing healthy subjects to prolonged hypergravitational stress in centrifuge runs ( $+5\text{ G}$  for 2 min with anti G suit). For evaluation of these alterations respiratory minute volume end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension and arterial  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and pH were recorded continuously over the pre run run and post run periods.

During the course of the runs expired minute volume increased from 8.6 to 20.8 l/min and "effective" alveolar ventilation from 4.9 to 11.1 l/min (BTPS means of 9 subjects). The arterial pH showed a concomitant increase by 0.03 of a pH unit from a pre run value of 7.41 and the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  tension a decrease from 90.1 to 58.0 mm Hg (calculated from recorded  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and pH).

End tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension decreased from 34.5 to 23.9 mm Hg and the arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  tension from 38.1 to 35.5 mm Hg indicating an increase in the arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference by 8.0 mm Hg. An increased arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference was thus responsible for the major part of the decrement in end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension. The concomitant effective alveolar to arterial  $\text{O}_2$  difference showed a substantial rise of 41.1 mm Hg.

All dead spaces increased the alveolar dead space (= the physiological minus the anatomical dead space) by an average of 170 ml. Assuming a decrease in cardiac output to 80 and 60 per cent of its pre run level, venous admixture increased to 19.8 and 15.9 per cent respectively from a pre run value of 5.8 per cent.

$\text{O}_2$  uptake increased from a pre run value of 269 to 410 ml/min whereas  $\text{CO}_2$  elimination increased from 216 to 391 ml/min resulting in an increment in the respiratory exchange ratio from 0.80 to 0.96.

In the post run recovery period (8—10 min after the completion of the run) the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  tension showed a residual decrease of 10.9 mm Hg as compared with the pre run level the effective alveolar to arterial  $\text{O}_2$  difference remaining 10.3 mm Hg greater than during the pre run period.

The continuous recordings of arterial  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and pH showed that 90 per cent of the final change in arterial  $\text{O}_2$  tension during the course of a run was completed within 60 sec. The lowest individual 15 sec time average value was 43 mm Hg.

The results indicate the development of gross disturbances in pulmonary gas exchange during exposure to headward acceleration. The mechanisms underlying these disturbances have been discussed and may briefly be described as follows.



The hazards due to this type of hypoxemia must be considered more serious than a similar degree of hypoxemia induced by low  $O_2$  pressure in the inspired air (e.g. during high altitude flying) because of the reduction in total cerebral blood flow accompanying headward acceleration at levels higher than 4 G (cf HENRY *et al* 1951). For, if the arterial  $O_2$  tension is lowered and the blood flow is already much reduced, the blood passing through the brain capillaries will soon become depleted of its oxygen to an extent that may cause loss of consciousness, without being preceded by noticeable subjective warning symptoms.

## IX SUMMARY

The normal postural alterations in the total and regional ventilation perfusion relationships in the lungs were exaggerated by exposing healthy subjects to prolonged hypergravitational stress in centrifuge runs (+ 5 G for 2 min with anti G suit). For evaluation of these alterations, respiratory minute volume, end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension, and arterial  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and pH were recorded continuously over the pre run run and post run periods.

During the course of the runs expired minute volume increased from 8.6 to 20.8 l/min and effective alveolar ventilation from 4.9 to 9.6 l/min (BTPS, means of 9 subjects). The arterial pH showed a concomitant increase by 0.03 of a pH unit from a pre run value of 7.41 and the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  tension a decrease from 90.1 to 58.0 mm Hg (calculated from recorded  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and pH).

End tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension decreased from 34.5 to 23.9 mm Hg and the arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  tension from 38.1 to 35.5 mm Hg indicating an increase in the arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference by 8.0 mm Hg. An increased arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference was thus responsible for the major part of the decrement in end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension. The concomitant effective alveolar to arterial  $\text{O}_2$  difference showed a substantial rise of 41.1 mm Hg.

All dead spaces increased the alveolar dead space (= the physiological minus the anatomical dead space) by an average of 170 ml. Assuming a decrease in cardiac output to 80 and 60 per cent of its pre run level venous admixture increased to 19.8 and 15.9 per cent respectively from a pre run value of 5.8 per cent.

$\text{O}_2$  uptake increased from a pre run value of 269 to 410 ml/min whereas  $\text{CO}_2$  elimination increased from 216 to 391 ml/min resulting in an increment in the respiratory exchange ratio from 0.80 to 0.96.

In the post run recovery period (8–10 min after the completion of the run) the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  tension showed a residual decrease of 10.9 mm Hg as compared with the pre run level the effective alveolar to arterial  $\text{O}_2$  difference remaining 10.5 mm Hg greater than during the pre run period.

The continuous recordings of arterial  $\text{O}_2$  saturation and pH showed that 90 per cent of the final change in arterial  $\text{O}_2$  tension during the course of a run was completed within 60 sec. The lowest individual 15 sec time average value was 43 mm Hg.

The results indicate the development of gross disturbances in pulmonary gas exchange during exposure to headward acceleration. The mechanisms underlying these disturbances have been discussed and may briefly be described as follows.

The hazards due to this type of hypoxemia must be considered more serious than a similar degree of hypoxemia induced by low  $O_2$  pressure in the inspired air (e.g. during high altitude flying) because of the reduction in total cerebral blood flow accompanying headward acceleration at levels higher than 4 G (cf HENRY *et al* 1951). For, if the arterial  $O_2$  tension is lowered and the blood flow is already much reduced, the blood passing through the brain capillaries will soon become depleted of its oxygen to an extent that may cause loss of consciousness without being preceded by noticeable subjective warning symptoms.

# X REFERENCES

- BARR P O Percutaneous puncture of the radial artery with a multi purpose Teflon catheter for indwelling use *Acta physiol scand* 1961 *51* 343—347
- BARR P O Hypoxemia induced by prolonged acceleration *Acta physiol scand* 1967 *51* 128—137
- BARR P O and H BJURSTEDT Technique for continuous recording of blood pH and O<sub>2</sub> saturation in human *Rep Lab Anat Med Karol Inst Stockh* 1963
- BARR P O H BJURSTEDT and J C G COLERIDGE Reflex control of respiration in the anaesthetized dog during prolonged exposure to positive radial acceleration *Acta physiol scand* 1959a *47* 1—15
- BARR P O H BJURSTEDT and J C G COLERIDGE Blood gas changes in the anesthetized dog during prolonged exposure to positive radial acceleration *Acta physiol scand* 1959b *47* 16—27
- BARR P O and P SOILA Introduction of soft cannula into artery by direct percutaneous puncture *Angiology* 1960 *11* 168—172
- BARTELS H E BUCHNER, C W HERTZ G RODEWALD and M SCHWAB *Lungenfunktionsprüfungen* Springer Verlag Berlin Göttingen Heidelberg 1959 pp 496
- BJURSTEDT H C M HESSER G LILJESTRAND and G MATELL Effects of posture on alveolar arterial CO<sub>2</sub> and O<sub>2</sub> differences and on alveolar dead space in man *Acta physiol scand* 1962 *54* 65—82
- BJURSTEDT H and A LOVÉN Electromechanical high speed counting as adapted for the continuous recording of respiratory tidal and minute volume *Rep Lab Anat Med Karol Inst Stockh* 1960
- BRISMAN J C M HESSER and G MATELL Breath by breath sampling of alveolar (end tidal) gas *Acta physiol scand* 1967 *51* 299—305
- BROGDON FRANKLIN E and F A HELLEBRANDT Postural changes in respiration *Amer J Physiol* 1943 *138* 364—369
- BROWN M K. Summary on flight III Effect of breathing pure oxygen at atmospheric pressure on tolerance to acceleration Flying personnel research committee (Great Britain) Rep No 1043 (RAF Inst Aviat Med 1958)
- CHERNIACK N S A S HYDE and F W ZECHMAN Jr Effect of transverse acceleration on pulmonary function *J appl Physiol* 1959 *14* 914—916
- DIRKSHOFEN H von Die Wirkung von Fliehkraften auf den Blutkreislauf des im Flugzeug stehenden Menschen *Luftfahrtmed* 1947 *6* 152—165
- DOLLERY C T N A DYSON and J D SWEETMAN Regional variations in uptake of radioactive CO<sub>2</sub> in the normal lung *J appl Physiol* 1960 *15* 411—417
- ERNSTING J Some effects of oxygen breathing on man *Proc Roy Soc Med* 1960 *53* 96—98
- ELLER U S V and G LILJESTRAND Arterial blood pressure and respiratory reflexes from the carotid sinus region *Stand J Physiol* 1937 *77* 191—207
- FARAH L M and H RAJAN A theoretical analysis of the alveolar arterial O<sub>2</sub> difference with special reference to the distribution effect. *J appl Physiol* 1955 *7* 699—703
- FISHER R A *Statistical Methods for Research Workers* 10th Ed Edinburgh Oliver and Boyd Ltd 1948 pp 354
- GAUER O Die Atemmechanik unter Beschleunigung *Luftfahrtmedizin* 1938 *2* 291—294
- GAUER, O Röntgenrheumatographische Darstellung der Fliehkraftwirkung *Luftfahrtmedizin* 1944 *9* 109—120

Due to the increased effective weight of the blood during acceleration, downward displacement of blood occurred in the pulmonary and systemic circuits with concomitant reduction of total flow. In consequence, the equivalent of one third of the total number of alveoli was completely deprived of blood flow. The alveolar ventilation of a corresponding portion of the lungs, being in effect a dead space ventilation, produced a large arterial to end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  difference. In the lower parts of the lungs congestion caused a large shunt (one fifth of cardiac output), which is mainly ascribed to low  $V/Q$  ratios but also to impaired transmembrane gas diffusion. This shunt is regarded as the main cause of the large alveolar to arterial  $\text{O}_2$  difference, with a consequent severe arterial hypoxemia in spite of relative alveolar hyperventilation.

A commentary is given on some applications of the result to problems of human performance under prolonged headward acceleration.

1. J. H. I. JONES, *Release of arterial partial pressures*, *Am Rev Resp Dis* 38-663 Jan 1970 pp 11 Wright & Co. New York  
2. L. H. SIEG, Studies on the regulation of ventilation, *J Appl Physiol* 1973-3113  
3. C. H. W. MARSHALL, LESLIE COOPER and E. H. WOOD The effect of forward motion on arterial oxygen saturation, *The Physiol J* 1961 4  
4. D. B. VAN SLYKE, Quantitative Chemical Analysis Vol. I 1st ed. Ed by G. C. 1931 pp 1-54  
5. A. A. CORNISON Analysis of factors affecting partial pressures of oxygen at rest in gas and blood of lungs, *Thorax J* 1961 10-101  
6. J. J. LEVITT JR., D. D. PROHOFER and R. E. FRANK On the relationship between pulmonary pressure of oxygen and carbon dioxide in a closed system, *J Biol Chem* 191-193  
7. S. PIERCE, S. SAID, M. GODFREY, T. O. CHENEY, J. B. L. HOWELL and H. H. Effect of posture on pulmonary dead space in man, *J Appl Physiol* 1970 11-14  
8. T. A. and H. A. SWEDAL, The ventilatory advantage of backward transverse air flow, *Respiratory J* 1961 3-37-140  
9. T. B. The effect of temperature on the pH of blood and plasma in vitro, *J Biol Chem* 1970 30-30  
10. F. and G. VERZARI Comportamento di alcuni grandezze respiratorie durante accelerazioni secondo di equazioni cinetiche, *Rivista di Medicina* 1961 1-10  
11. C. F. The respiration In *Medical Physiology* Th. C. V. Mosby Company St. Louis Edited by P. Ba 10th Edition 1956 287-477  
12. P. F. Analyzer for accurate estimation of respiratory gases in one half cubic centimeter samples, *J Biol Chem* 1917 167 235-250  
13. J. W. In *Handbook of Respiration* National Academy of Sciences-National Council on Health and Human Resources Saunders Co 1958 (p 73)  
14. J. W. and M. STUTTELL Alveolar dead space as an index of distribution of blood pulmonary capillaries, *J Appl Physiol* 1957 10 335-348  
15. J. W., M. STUTTELL and A. F. BRADLEY Variations of serum carbonic acid pH and temperature, *J Appl Physiol* 1969 9 197-200  
16. A. T. A. ROOZE, T. D. DEANE, G. R. HOLDEMAN and J. R. SMITH Jr The physiological performance during acceleration, *Aerospace Medicine* 1963 34 48-55  
17. H. and G. C. E. MILLER Pulmonary arterial hunting in man during forward motion, *J Appl Physiol* 1961 16 1081-1086  
18. H. G. C. E. MILLER and A. S. CHERNIACK Pulmonary gas transport as influenced by hyperbaric environment, *J Appl Physiol* 1961 16 641-645  
19. H. G. C. E. MILLER and J. L. TAYLOR Jr Hemodynamic changes during forward motion, *Aviation Space Medicine* 1960 31 907-914  
20. E. and E. H. WOOD An instantaneous recording cardiostethometer, *Rev Sci Instrum* 1971-7  
21. T. and G. RECHT, Untersuchungen zum alveolaren Kohlendioxidpartialdruck, *Physiologie und Pathologie des Gasaustausches in der Lunge* ed by H. Bartels Berlin-Göttingen-Heidelberg Springer Verlag 1961 53-64  
22. J. M. VALE, The determination of gases in blood and other solutions by a manometric measurement, *J Biol Chem* 1904 11 523-573  
23. J. H. SIEG, Studies of gas and electrolyte equilibrium in blood, *Calculations by the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation and for calcium content from whole blood contents*, *J Biol Chem* 1922 72

- GAUER O H Definitions Magnitude direction and time course of accelerative forces. In Gauer O H and G D Zuidema *Gravitational Stress in Aerospace Medicine* Boston Little Brown & Co 1961 10—15
- GAUER O H and S BONDURANT Effect of acceleration on respiration. In Gauer O H and G D Zuidema *Gravitational Stress in Aerospace Medicine* Boston Little Brown & Co 1961 61—69
- GAUER O J I HENRY E E MARTIN and P J MAHER Arterial oxygen saturation and intracardiac pressures during acceleration in relation to cardiac damage *Fed Proc* 1949 8 428
- GERST P H C RATTENBORG and D A HOLADAY The effects of hemorrhage on pulmonary circulation and respiratory gas exchange *J clin Invest* 1959 39 524—538
- GOTZLINGER J and E HELSING A human centrifuge for research into physiological flight stresses *Medd Flyg o Natarmed Lam* Stockholm 1955 4 5—13
- HAAB P J PIPER and H RAHN Attempt to demonstrate the distribution component of the alveolar arterial oxygen pressure difference *J appl Physiol* 1960 15 235—240
- HASTINGS A B and J SENDROY Jr Studies of acidosis the colorimetric determination of blood pH at body temperature without buffer standards *J biol Chem* 1924 61 695—710
- HENRY J P *Studies of the Physiology of Negative Acceleration* Air Force Techn Rep 5933 Oct 1950 pp 59 Wright Air Development Center Ohio U S A
- HENRY J P O H GAUER S S KETY and K KRAMER Factors maintaining cerebral circulation during gravitational stress *J clin Invest* 1951 30 292—300
- HERSHGOLD E J Roentgenographic study of human subjects during transverse accelerations *Aerospace Medicine* 1960 31 213—219
- HERSHGOLD E J and S H STEINER Cardiovascular changes during acceleration stress in dogs *J appl Physiol* 1960 15 1065—1068
- HEYMANS C and E NEIL *Reflexogenic Areas of the Cardiovascular System* Churchill London 1958 pp 271
- HOWARD P Changes in the cardiac output during positive radial acceleration *J Physiol (Lond)* 1959 147 49P—50P
- INADA K S KISHIMOTO A SATO and T WATANABE Bronchospirrometry with the Carlens double lumen catheter *J thorac Surg* 1954 27 173—186
- LANDGREN S and E NEIL, Chemoreceptor Impulse Activity following haemorrhage *Acta physiol scand* 1951 23 158—167
- LANGDON D E and G E REYNOLDS Postflight respiratory symptoms associated with 100 per cent oxygen and G-forces *Aerospace Medicine* 1961 32 713—718
- LAWTON R W Arterial blood pressure responses to positive acceleration in animals. In Gauer O H and G D Zuidema *Gravitational Stress in Aerospace Medicine* Boston Little Brown & Co 1961 28—38
- LINDBERG E F W F SUTTERER H W MARSHALL R N HEADLEY and E H WOOD Measurement of cardiac output during headward acceleration using the dye-dilution technique *Aerospace Medicine* 1960 31 817—834
- LOWBARD C F H P ROOTH and D R DELRY The influence of radial acceleration (centrifugal force) on respiration in human beings *J Aviat Med* 1948 19 355—364
- MARTIN C J F CLIVE Jr and HELEN MARSHALL, Lobar alveolar gas concentrations effect of body position *J clin Invest* 1953 32 617—621
- MARTIN C J F CLIVE Jr and HELEN MARSHALL Lobar alveolar gas concentration after pneumonectomy *J clin Invest* 1955 34 875—878
- MARTIN C J and A C YOUNG Ventilation perfusion variations within the lung *J appl Physiol* 1957 11 371—376
- MATTSOV S H and E CARLENS Lobar ventilation and oxygen uptake in man influence of body position *J thorac Surg* 1955 30 676—682

- MEEHAN J P and H I JACOBS *Relation of several physiologic parameters to positive G tolerance* WADC Techn Rep 58-665 Jan 1959 pp 11 Wright Patterson Air Force Base Ohio
- NIELSEN M and H SMITH *Studies on the regulation of respiration in acute hypoxia* *Acta Physiol scand* 1951 24 293-313
- NOLAN A C H W MARSHALL LUCILLE CROWIN and E H WOOD *The effect of forward (+G) acceleration on arterial oxygen saturation* *The Physiologist* 1961 4
- PETERS J P and D B VAN SLIKE *Quantitative Clinical Chemistry* Vol 1 London Ballière Tindall and Cox 1931 pp 1264
- RILEY R L and A. COURMANT *Analysis of factors affecting partial pressures of oxygen and carbon dioxide in gas and blood of lungs theory* *J appl Physiol* 1951 4 77-101
- RILEY R L J L LILIENTHAL Jr M M PROEMMEL and R E FRANK *On the determination of the physiologically effective pressures of oxygen and carbon dioxide in alveolar air* *Amer J Physiol* 1946 147 191-198
- RILEY R L S PERVITT S SAID M GODFREY T O CHENG J M L HOWELL and R H SHEPARD *Effect of posture on pulmonary dead space in man* *J appl Physiol* 1959 14 339-344
- ROGERS T A and H A SVEDAL *The ventilatory advantage of backward transverse acceleration* *Aviation Medicine* 1961 32 737-740
- ROSENTHAL T B *The effect of temperature on the pH of blood and plasma in vitro* *J Biol Chem* 1948 173 29-30
- ROMANIO F and G MEINERT *Comportamento di alcune grandezze respiratorie in soggetti sottoposti ad accelerazioni secondo diversi assi corporei* *Riv Med Aeron e Sp* 1961 24 483-500
- SCHMIDT C F *The respiration* In *Medical Physiology* The C V Mosby Company St Louis USA Edited by H Bard 10th Edition 1956 282-472
- SCHOLANDER P F *Analyzer for accurate estimation of respiratory gases in one half cubic centimeter samples* *J Biol Chem* 1947 167 235-250
- SEVERINGHAUS J W *In Handbook of Respiration* National Academy of Sciences-National Research Council W B Saunders Co 1958 (p 73)
- SEVERINGHAUS J W and M STUTTEL *Alveolar dead space as an index of distribution of blood flow in pulmonary capillaries* *J appl Physiol* 1957 10 335-348
- SEVERINGHAUS J W M STUTTEL and A F BRADLEY *Variations of serum carbonic acid pH with pH and temperature* *J appl Physiol* 1956 9 197-200
- SVEDAL H A T A ROGERS T D DUANE G R HOLDEE and J R SMITH Jr *The physiological limitations of performance during acceleration at sea* *Aviation Medicine* 1963 34 48-55
- STEINER S H and G C E MUELLER *Pulmonary arterial shunting in man during forward acceleration* *J appl Physiol* 1961 16 1081-1086
- STEINER S H G C E MUELLER and N S CHERNIACK *Pulmonary gas transport as influenced by a hypergravity environment* *J appl Physiol* 1961 16 641-643
- STEINER S H G C E MUELLER and J L TAYLOR Jr *Hemodynamic changes during forward acceleration* *Aviation Medicine* 1960 31 907-914
- STURM R E and E H WOOD *An instantaneous recording cardiostachometer* *Rev Sci Instrum* 1947 18 771-776
- ULMER W T and G REISCHL *Untersuchungen zum alveolaren arteriellen Kohlendioxidpartialdruck* In *Physiologie und Pathologie des Gasaustausches in der Lunge* ed. by H Bartels and E Witzleb, Berlin Göttingen Heidelberg Springer Verlag 1961 53-62
- VAN SLIKE D D and J M NEILL *The determination of gases in blood and other solutions by vacuum extraction and manometric measurement* *J Biol Chem* 1924 61 523-573
- VAN SLIKE D D and J SEMROW J *Studies of gas and electrolyte equilibria in blood* *XX Line charts for graphic calculations by the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation and for calculating plasma carbon dioxide content from whole blood content* *J Biol Chem* 1928 79 781-798



- VAN SLYKE D D, J R WEISSIGER and K K VAN SLYKE Photometric measurement of plasma pH *J biol Chem* 1949 179 743—756
- WATSON J F, N S CHERNIACK and F W ZECHMAN Respiratory mechanics during forward acceleration *J clin Invest* 1960 39 1737—1747
- WEST, J B and C T DOLLERY Distribution of blood flow and ventilation perfusion ratio in the lung measured with radioactive CO<sub>2</sub> *J appl Physiol* 1960 15 405—410
- WIEDERHIELM C Amplifier for linear recording of oxygen saturation and dye dilution curves *Circulat Res* 1956 4 450—455
- WOOD E H, J E GERACHI and D L GROOM Photoelectric determination of blood oxygen saturation in man *Fed Proc* 1948 7 137
- WOOD E H, F H LANBERT, E J BALDES and C F CODE Effects of acceleration in relation to aviation *Fed Proc* 1946 5 327—344
- WOOD E H, W F SUTTERER, H W MARSHALL, E F LINDBERG and R N HEADLEY Effect of headward and forward accelerations on the cardiovascular system WADD Techn Rep 60—634 Jan 1961 pp 48 Wright Air Dev Div Ohio, U S A
- ZECHMAN F W, N S CHERNIACK and A S HYDE Ventilatory response to forward acceleration *J appl Physiol* 1960 15 907—910





**ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA**  
**VOL. 29 SUPPLEMENTUM 409**

**RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS IN MAN**

**BY**  
**KNUT BÜLOW**

**STOCKHOLM 1963**



**ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA**

**VOL. 59 SUPPLEMENTUM 209**

---

FROM THE LABORATORY OF CLINICAL NEUROPHYSIOLOGY (HEAD D H INGVAR, M D),  
DEPARTMENT OF NEUROLOGY UNIVERSITY HOSPITAL, LUND AND THE DEPARTMENT OF  
PULMONARY DISEASES (HEAD G DAHLSTRÖM M D), MÄLMÖ GENERAL HOSPITAL  
AND FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF MEDICINE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF LUND  
(HEAD PROFESSOR J WALDENSTRÖM, M D), MÄLMÖ GENERAL HOSPITAL MÄLMÖ

**RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS IN MAN**

BY

**KNUT BÜLOW**

**STOCKHOLM 1963**



# CONTENTS

Symbols and Definitions	5
Chapter I INTRODUCTION	7
Background	7
Aim of the investigation	8
Previous work on respiration during sleep	8
Chapter II MATERIAL AND METHODS	10
1 Material	11
II Recording equipment	13
a Spirometer	14
b Capnograph	15
c EEG amplifier	15
3 Examination procedure	18
4 Relationship between $P_{ACO_2}$ measured as expiratory end plateau gas tension and ideal alveolar $P_{CO_2}$	19
5 Classification of level of wakefulness	22
6 Controls	22
Alveolo-arterial $CO_2$ tension	23
Oxygen content of inspiratory gas and of arterial blood	23
7 Calculation of the ventilatory response to carbon dioxide	25
a Time delay between a transient change in $P_{ACO_2}$ and in ventilation	25
b Correlation of level of wakefulness ventilation ( $\dot{V}$ ) and $P_{ACO_2}$	26
c Calculation of $\dot{V}_{TST}$ and $\dot{V}_{TCT}$ from the $CO_2$ tests	28
8 Evaluation of the respiratory stability	28
a Criteria applied	29
b Controls of ventilatory response to an increase of $P_{ACO_2}$ at different rate	29
c Controls of ventilatory response to increased $P_{ACO_2}$ values of long duration	29
RESULTS	31
Chapter III RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS DURING AIR BREATHING	31
A Respiration at different EEG stages of wakefulness	31
General findings	31
Respiration and wakefulness during "steady state"	33
Pattern of ventilation during sleep	39
II Respiration during ten different states	41
C Variations in respiration during a complete period of recording	41
II Carbon dioxide output, oxygen uptake, alveolar ventilation and respiratory dead space at different levels of wakefulness	42
Chapter IV RESPIRATORY VARIATIONS DURING ONSET OF SLEEP	46
A Onset of sleep and periodic breathing	46
The period of onset of sleep	46
B Observations on $P_{ACO_2}$ at low levels of wakefulness	47
$CO_2$ arousal threshold	47
$CO_2$ rebreathing during onset of sleep and during continuous sleep	49
Chapter V VENTILATORY RESPONSE TO CARBON DIOXIDE ("CARBON DIOXIDE SENSITIVITY") AND WAKEFULNESS	
A Threshold and slope of the $CO_2$ response curve during wakefulness at rest (EEG	



MALMÖ 1963  
SYDSVEANSKA DAGBLADETS AB

# SYMBOLS AND DEFINITIONS

The following symbols used in the text conform to standards adopted by pulmonary physiologists (Fed Proc 1950 9 602)

$V$	gas volume (in ml)
$V_T$	ventilatory volume (tidal volume) (in ml)
$V_I$	inspiratory volume (in ml)
$V_E$	expiratory volume (in ml)
$V_D$	dead space volume
$\dot{V}$	ventilation per unit time (in L/min)
$\dot{V}_A$	alveolar ventilation (in L/min)
$\dot{V}_D$	dead space ventilation (in L/min)
$\dot{V}_{ECO_2}$	expired volume carbon dioxide per unit time (in ml/min)
$\dot{V}_O$	volume oxygen uptake per unit time (in ml/min)
$R$	respiratory exchange ratio $\dot{V}_{ECO_2} / \dot{V}_O$
$f$	respiratory frequency (in breaths/min)
$P_{ACO_2}$	alveolar $CO_2$ tension (in mm Hg)
$P_{ACO}$	arterial $CO_2$ tension (in mm Hg)
$P_{ICO}$	the $CO_2$ tension of inspiratory gas (in mm Hg)
$P_{IO_2}$	the $O_2$ tension of inspiratory gas (in mm Hg)
$P_{VCO_2}$	mixed venous $CO_2$ tension (in the lungs) (in mm Hg)
$P_B$	ambient atmospheric gas pressure (in mm Hg)
BTPS	body temperature and pressure saturated with water vapor
STPD	standard temperature and pressure dry ( $0^\circ C$ 760 mm Hg)
BMR	basal metabolic rate
BSA	body surface area (in $m^2$ ) (calculated according to DUBOIS & DUBOIS Arch int Med 1915 15 868)

Dash (—) above a symbol indicates a mean value Dot (·) above a symbol indicates a time derivative

In the present paper the following symbols have been used furthermore

$T$	threshold value of $P_{ACO}$ ( $CO$ threshold) indicating the point above which a ventilatory response appears when $P_{ACO_2}$ is gradually increased
$s\dot{V}$	standard ventilation (3.5 L/min/ $m^2$ BSA) This value expresses mean ventilation of all the investigated subjects during wakefulness at rest breathing (oxygen enriched) air
$sT$	standard threshold of $P_{ACO_2}$ as measured at the intersection between the $s\dot{V}$ line and the rectilinear part of the ventilation $P_{ACO_2}$ response curve The value is indicated as $sT_A$ $sT_B$ $sT_C$ etc according to the EEG stage of wakefulness

<b>Chapter VI INTERINDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES IN RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING CHANGES IN WAKEFULNESS</b>	
A Distinct and periodic breathing	61
B The stable and the unstable group	62
C Correlation between respiratory stability and other variables	63
<b>Chapter VII RESPIRATION DURING THE RAPID EYE MOVEMENT STAGE OF SLEEP</b>	
A Respiratory pattern	68
B Ventilation $\text{CO}_2$ response	68
<b>Chapter VIII RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS DURING BREATHING AIR WITH DIFFERENT CONCENTRATIONS OF OXYGEN</b>	
A Inspiration of atmospheric air and of pure oxygen	71
B Moderate hypoxaemia	71
<b>Chapter IX INFLUENCE OF 24 HOUR SLEEP WAKEFULNESS RHYTHM AND OF SLEEP DEPRIVATION ON RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING ONSET OF SLEEP</b>	75
<b>Chapter X RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS IN SOME DISORDERS OF WAKEFULNESS (CONSCIOUSNESS) FUNCTION</b>	
1 Petit mal epilepsy	76
2 Narcolepsy	76
3 Obesity cardiopulmonary syndrome	77
<b>Chapter XI DISCUSSION</b>	
The methods used	78
Technical considerations	81
Expiratory end plateau $\text{PA CO}_2$ measurement during sleep	81
Respiratory equilibrium	82
Time delay between a change in $\text{PA CO}_2$ and in ventilation	83
Mechanics of the lungs and thorax during sleep	84
Hypoxic drive on ventilation	84
Cerebral blood flow	84
$\text{CO}_2$ threshold	85
General comments	86
1 Ventilation and wakefulness	86
2 Ventilation $\text{CO}_2$ response ( $\text{CO}_2$ sensitivity ) during sleep	87
Threshold and slope of the $\text{CO}_2$ response curve during sleep	88
3 Respiratory stability during sleep onset	89
Periodic breathing	91
The mechanism underlying the process of falling asleep as interpreted from the changes in respiration and EEG	92
4 $\text{PA CO}_2$ and the maintenance of sleep	94
Rapid eye movement sleep	94
5 Tense alertness	95
6 Clinical and pharmacological aspects	95
<b>Chapter XII SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS</b>	97
<b>Acknowledgements</b>	99
<b>REFERENCES</b>	100

## SYMBOLS AND DEFINITIONS

The following symbols used in the text conform to standards adopted by pulmonary physiologists (Fed Proc 1950 9 602)

$V$	gas volume (in ml)
$V_T$	ventilatory volume (tidal volume) (in ml)
$V_I$	inspiratory volume (in ml)
$V_E$	expiratory volume (in ml)
$V_D$	dead space volume
$\dot{V}$	ventilation per unit time (in L/min)
$\dot{V}_A$	alveolar ventilation (in L/min)
$\dot{V}_D$	dead space ventilation (in L/min)
$V_{E/O_2}$	expired volume carbon dioxide per unit time (in ml/min)
$\dot{V}_{O_2}$	volume oxygen uptake per unit time (in ml/min)
$R$	respiratory exchange ratio $\dot{V}_{ECO_2}/\dot{V}_{O_2}$
$f$	respiratory frequency (in breaths/min)
$P_{ACO_2}$	alveolar $CO_2$ tension (in mm Hg)
$P_{aCO_2}$	arterial $CO_2$ tension (in mm Hg)
$P_{ICO_2}$	the $CO_2$ tension of inspiratory gas (in mm Hg)
$P_{IO_2}$	the $O_2$ tension of inspiratory gas (in mm Hg)
$P_{vCO}$	mixed venous $CO_2$ tension (in the lungs) (in mm Hg)
$P_p$	ambient atmospheric gas pressure (in mm Hg)
BTPS	body temperature and pressure saturated with water vapor
STPD	standard temperature and pressure dry ( $0^\circ C$ 760 mm Hg)
BMR	basal metabolic rate
BSA	body surface area (in m <sup>2</sup> ) (calculated according to DUBOIS & DUBOIS Arch int Med 1915 15 868)
$D_n h$ (—)	above a symbol indicates a mean value Dot (·) above a symbol indicates a time derivative
In the present paper the following symbols have been used furthermore	
$T$	threshold value of $P_{ACO_2}$ ( $CO_2$ threshold) indicating the point above which a ventilatory response appears when $P_{ACO_2}$ is gradually increased
$s\dot{V}$	standard ventilation (3.5 L/min/m <sup>2</sup> BSA) This value expresses mean ventilation of all the investigated subjects during wakefulness at rest breathing (oxygen enriched) air
$sT$	standard threshold of $P_{ACO_2}$ as measured at the intersection between the $s\dot{V}$ line and the rectilinear part of the ventilation $P_{ACO_2}$ response curve The value is indicated as $sT_A$ , $sT_B$ , $sT_C$ etc according to the EEG stage of wakefulness

## Chapter VI INTERINDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES IN RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING CHANGES IN WAKEFULNESS

- A DesTA c and periodic breathing 61
- B The stable and the unstable group 62
- C Correlation between respiratory stability and other variables 63

## Chapter VII RESPIRATION DURING THE RAPID EYE MOVEMENT STAGE OF SLEEP

- A Respiratory pattern 68
- B Ventilation CO<sub>2</sub> response 68

## Chapter VIII RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS DURING BREATHING AIR WITH DIFFERENT CONCENTRATIONS OF OXYGEN

- A Inspiration of atmospheric air and of pure oxygen 71
- B Moderate hypoxaemia 71

## Chapter IX INFLUENCE OF 24 HOUR SLEEP WAKEFULNESS RHYTHM AND OF SLEEP DEPRIVATION ON RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING ONSET OF SLEEP 75

## Chapter X RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS IN SOME DISORDERS OF WAKEFULNESS (CONSCIOUSNESS) FUNCTION

- 1 Petit mal epilepsy 76
- 2 Narcolepsy 76
- 3 Obesity cardiopulmonary syndrome 77

## Chapter XI DISCUSSION

- The methods used 78
- Technical considerations 81
  - Expiratory end plateau PA CO<sub>2</sub> measurement during sleep 81
  - Respiratory equilibrium 82
  - Time delay between a change in PA CO<sub>2</sub> and in ventilation 83
  - Mechanics of the lungs and thorax during sleep 84
  - Hypoxic drive on ventilation 84
  - Cerebral blood flow 84
  - CO<sub>2</sub> threshold 85
- General comments 86
  - 1 Ventilation and wakefulness 86
  - 2 Ventilation CO<sub>2</sub> response ( CO<sub>2</sub> sensitivity ) during sleep 87
  - 3 Threshold and slope of the CO<sub>2</sub> response curve during sleep 88
  - 4 Respiratory stability during sleep onset 89
  - Periodic breathing 91
    - The mechanism underlying the process of falling asleep as interpreted from the change in respiration and EEG 92
    - 5 PA CO<sub>2</sub> and the maintenance of sleep 94
    - Rapid eye movement sleep 94
    - 6 Tense alertness 95
    - 7 Clinical and pharmacological aspects 95

## Chapter XII SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS 97

## Acknowledgements 99

## REFERENCES 100

## INTRODUCTION

*Background*

It has become increasingly clear that changes in wakefulness are normally linked to changes in several basic functions of the body. Since the introduction of electroencephalography (EEG) as a method for clinical use it has also been obvious that the EEG record mirrors wakefulness in a very characteristic way. The discovery of the reticular system of the brain stem (MORUZZI & MAGOUN 1949) and the many ensuing studies of its properties has made it likely that this system is the one mainly responsible for the coordination of EEG changes with autonomic and other bodily changes during variations in level of wakefulness (MAGOUN 1952 DELL 1952 HUGGIN 1956).

In general however our knowledge of the central regulation of "the cortical excitatory state" (JASPER 1936 *cf* BOYVALLET *et al* 1954) and of other functional systems of the body is still very limited. Numerous data in the literature suggest a correlation between certain autonomic — such as respiratory, circulatory and muscular — fundamental functions and general changes of the EEG. Amongst these the respiratory ones should be given a prominent position since they represent one of the most basic activities of the body.

The point of departure for the present study is the old observation that respiration changes when a person falls asleep. This phenomenon has been brought into new light by a series of recent investigations which demonstrate an anatomical overlap within the brain stem between the so called respiratory centres and the reticular system. There is also physiological evidence suggesting a close functional relationship between mechanisms regulating respiration and wakefulness (For references see below.)

*Aim of the investigation*

The primary aim of the present work is to correlate in detail in a large group of normals respiratory and EEG variables at various levels of wakefulness. Two main respiratory variables were measured: the ventilation  $V$  and the alveolar carbon dioxide tension  $P_{A\text{CO}_2}$ . The level of wakefulness was estimated with the aid of electroencephalography (EEG) in which six different levels were differentiated between deep sleep and tense alertness.

- DsT** difference (in mm Hg) between sT values of two different stages of wakefulness,  $DsT_{A\ B}$ ,  $DsT_{A\ C}$ ,  $DsT_{A\ D}$  etc
- SQ** stimulus response quotient ("sensitivity" index), indicating the increase in ventilation per mm Hg increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$  at the rectilinear part of the ventilation  $CO_2$  response curve The value is given in L/min/mm Hg/m BSA
- V P point**=ventilation, V, and  $P_{ACO_2}$ , expressed by the mean values from 5 consecutive breaths, when plotted in a ventilation  $P_{ACO_2}$  diagram
- PB** periodic breathing

A diagrammatic illustration of the symbols mentioned above is given in Fig 6 on page 27

For classification and symbols of the electroencephalographic (EEG) stages (levels) of wakefulness (including sleep and tense alertness) see page 21

# INTRODUCTION

## *Background*

It has become increasingly clear that changes in wakefulness are normally linked to changes in several basic functions of the body. Since the introduction of electroencephalography (EEG) as a method for clinical use it has also been obvious that the EEG record mirrors wakefulness in a very characteristic way. The discovery of the reticular system of the brain stem (MORLIZZI & MACGOWN 1949) and the many ensuing studies of its properties has made it likely that this system is the one mainly responsible for the coordination of EEG changes with autonomic and other bodily changes during variations in level of wakefulness (MACGOWN 1952, DELL 1952, HUGELIN 1956).

In general however our knowledge of the central regulation of "the cortical excitatory state" (JASPER 1936 cf. BOYVALLET *et al.* 1954) and of other functional systems of the body is still very limited. Numerous data in the literature suggest a correlation between certain autonomic — such as respiratory, circulatory and muscular — fundamental functions and general changes of the EEG. Amongst these the respiratory ones should be given a prominent position since they represent one of the most basic activities of the body.

The point of departure for the present study is the old observation that respiration changes when a person falls asleep. This phenomenon has been brought into new light by a series of recent investigations which demonstrate an anatomical overlap within the brain stem between the so called respiratory centres and the reticular system. There is also physiological evidence suggesting a close functional relationship between mechanisms regulating respiration and wakefulness. (For references see below.)

## *Aim of the investigation*

The primary aim of the present work is to correlate in detail in a large group of normals respiratory and EEG variables at various levels of wakefulness. Two main respiratory variables were measured: the ventilation  $V$  and the alveolar carbon dioxide tension,  $P_{ACO_2}$ . The level of wakefulness was estimated with the aid of electroencephalography (EEG) in which six different levels were differentiated between deep sleep and tense alertness.



A characteristic, close relationship between respiration and EEG was observed early in the course of the present study, as previously reported in a brief paper (BULOW & INGVAR 1961). The findings suggested that carbon dioxide — or factors closely connected with its ventilatory action — play an important role for the changes in ventilation which accompany changes in wakefulness. The role of carbon dioxide in the sleep/wakefulness regulation has therefore been especially emphasized in this study. Attempts have also been made to compare the findings in normals with those in diseases which involve the wakefulness function. The latter results will be published in detail elsewhere (BULOW 1963 a and b) and only a brief summary is given in the present paper.

### *Previous work on respiration during sleep*

The Danish chemist SCHARLING was one of the first to investigate quantitatively changes in respiratory functions during sleep. In 1813 he reported diurnal variations in the expired amount of carbon dioxide. SMITH (1860) demonstrated a decreased ventilation during sleep and MOSO (1878) and CZERNY (1892) reported differences in respiratory pattern between wakefulness and sleep. Later, SHEPARD (1914) and REED & KLEITMAN (1926) observed that ventilation is very regular during deep sleep. For technical reasons many of the early investigations gave contradictory results concerning the difference in degree as well as in pattern of ventilation between wakefulness and sleep.

LOEWY (1890), by measuring the expired amount of  $\text{CO}_2$ , made the first evaluation of the  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity of the respiratory centres. He also studied this sensitivity in sleeping subjects. The discovery by HALDANE & PRISTLEY (1905) of the importance of the alveolar  $\text{CO}$  concentration for the respiratory regulation initiated several later investigations of the  $\text{CO}$  sensitivity of the respiratory centres (LINDHARD 1911, and others). STRAUB (1915) found that the alveolar  $\text{CO}$  tension ( $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ ) is higher immediately after awakening in the night than when awake in daytime. From this observation he concluded that the  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity of the respiratory centres is decreased during sleep in the night.

In a classical study in normals MAGNUSSEN (1944) used a refined technique for measuring respiration during sleep. He demonstrated changes in the expiratory pressure even during transient periods of (behavioural) sleep. During continuous sleep ventilation was decreased and alveolar  $\text{CO}$  tension increased. In 2 cases MAGNUSSEN studied the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  and found this response to be lowered during sleep. From 2 experiments with spontaneous sleep ØSTERGAARD (1944) made a similar statement when studying the respiratory effects of Evipan anaesthesia.

The EEG technique made it possible to measure certain general changes in the cerebral electrical activity which correlate with different levels of wakefulness (JASPER 1936 LOOMIS *et al* 1937 BLAKE & GERARD 1937 DAVIS *et al* 1938 GIBBS & GIBBS 1951 and others)

Besides the 'classical' sleep stages a special state of sleep (rapid eye movement (REM) activated or paradoxical rhombencephalic sleep) has been described characterized by a low voltage fast activity in the EEG similar to that during wakefulness and furthermore by eye movements and by frequent dreaming (DEMENT & KLEITMAN 1957 JOUVET & MICHEL 1960 JOUVET 1962) Very recent studies of this state of sleep emphasize however that in man the EEG pattern is less distinctive containing a varying amount of slower wave forms (SCHWARTZ 1962 and others)

MANGOLD *et al* (1955) found a slight increase in cerebral blood flow during sleep They also reported that an increased arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  tension normally preceded the onset of sleep This gave new support to the suggestion that hypercapnia is an important sleep promoting factor (KETY 1961)

In the last few years some further studies on respiration during sleep have been reported by ROBIN *et al* (1958) and by BIRCHFIELD *et al* (1959) In contrast to MANGOLD *et al* (1955) these authors did not find a definite increase in arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  tension until the onset of sleep The findings of MAGNUSSEN (1944) were largely confirmed They presented experimental results from a limited number of subjects and demonstrated a marked decrease in the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  ( $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity) of the respiratory centres during sleep Other recent studies of this latter problem have however given contradictory results When investigating the influence of sleep on the respiratory function at low and high altitudes REED & KELLOGG (1958) demonstrated displacement of the ventilation -  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve (implying an increase of the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold page 51) but no certain change in the slope of the curve With the aid of EEG BELLVILLE *et al* (1959) reached a similar conclusion

The investigations quoted above have all shown that respiratory changes do take place during (or closely preceding the onset of) sleep It has however not been clarified 1) how closely such changes are correlated with changes in the EEG Furthermore 2) the question of the changes in carbon dioxide sensitivity or threshold during shifts in the level of wakefulness is still a matter of conjecture In addition 3) the intra and inter individual variations in respiration wakefulness pattern have not yet been studied The e problems constitute the subject of the present investigation

## MATERIAL AND METHODS

### 1 Material

The total material consisted of all together 70 apparently healthy subjects, of whom 30 were females (aged 18—60) and 40 males (aged 18—57). Routine examination which also included chest X ray revealed no symptoms or signs of disease of the respiratory, circulatory or nervous systems.

Pulmonary function was studied in all of the subjects. As a rule the following variables were measured: lung volumes, functional residual capacity, respiratory frequency and minute volume, maximal breathing capacity, oxygen uptake, as well as the distribution of inspiratory air.

The distribution of the inspiratory air was estimated by rebreathing helium in a closed system with a catapherometer. The ventilatory volume necessary to get the inert gas homogeneously mixed when the subject was connected to the system was measured and divided by the functional residual capacity. When the quotient obtained was below 9 it was considered normal (BUTOW unpublished material). Occurrence of pathological ventilation-perfusion relationship between different parts of the lungs was judged from this value and from the slope of the alveolar part normally a plateau of the expiratory curve of carbon dioxide concentration as measured by a capnograph (page 14) from normal and from maximal expirations (ULMER & REICHEL 1960).

In 55 of the subjects obvious changes in level of wakefulness were registered during the recording periods. In 2 males however the analysis of pulmonary function revealed obvious signs of (functional) emphysema. Since the measurements from these 2 persons were therefore excluded the number of subjects upon which the results were based was 53, of which 22 were females (aged 20—60) and 31 males (aged 18—49).

Routine EEG examinations were made in 51 of these 53 subjects. There were no gross abnormalities found nor any focal or paroxysmal discharges. The EEG controls showed a distribution similar to other normal materials such as that of Clinks & Clinks (1951).

In 41 cases the record showed normal conditions. In 11 of the cases there was a marked tendency to drowsiness. 5 additional cases demonstrated a markedly low voltage record which was otherwise not noteworthy. 11 of the 41 cases demonstrated a very light diffuse or episodic admixture of 4—7 cycle/sec waves which was considered within normal limits. The records of the last 5 subjects were more noteworthy. S.L. showed a poor alpha development and some low voltage theta episode with a slight right sided dominance. S.F. showed a mild diffuse admixture of low voltage 3—5 cycle/sec wave. A.P. showed some 4—7 cycle/sec episodes in the temporal region on the right side.

A R showed a symmetrical record when awake but a rightsided predominance of slow waves in drowsiness. I P showed intertemporal low voltage episodes of 3-6 cycles/sec waves with a leftsided dominance.

In none of the cases were any EEG abnormalities observed during sleep.

A detailed analysis of the subjects of the present study including further EEG investigations is at present in progress (BLOW & INGVAR 1963 c).

The above mentioned pulmonary function tests were made in all the 53 subjects with the exception of 3 subjects which, however, showed a normal slope (plateau) of the alveolar part of the end expiratory CO<sub>2</sub> curve during capnography and also normal vital and maximal breathing capacities.

In 4 subjects (M L, A A, I F and Y T) the maximal breathing capacity was reduced by somewhat more than 20 per cent of predicted normal value in 5 of the subjects (P B, I P, I F, L H, and K B) the residual volume in per cent of the total lung capacity exceeded the predicted normal value by slightly more than 6 units.

In 9 subjects (A T and V R) the difference between end expiratory and maximal expiratory  $\text{PCO}_2$  by capnography slightly exceeded 6 mm Hg. During spontaneous breathing at rest however there were distinct end expiratory plateaux. In 1 subject (I D) the index estimated from the bell-shaped distribution was 9.7. In all other subjects the value was below 9.

Of the 53 subjects who slept during the recording periods all except 3 (I O A H and S I) were examined shortly after they had left off work in the morning when they otherwise went to bed 37 of them were used to night work for more than a year usually without any periods of day work. The remaining 13 subjects (I O A H and S I not included) were occasionally on night work (mostly hospital staff, medical students members of the armed forces telephone operators and cab drivers) I O A H and S I had not had any night work.

Several of the subjects were studied repeatedly in the morning after night work as well as after several consecutive nights of sleep 6 subjects were studied on one occasion in the morning and on another occasion during the night 6 subjects were investigated in the afternoon

## 2 Recording equipment

The investigations were carried out in a dark quiet room with the subject in a comfortable supine position (Fig. 1). The carbon dioxide content of the respiratory air, the ventilation and the EEG were recorded continuously. The main recording equipment consisted of a *spirometer* (INSTRUMENTA Lund) modified for the purpose of the investigation, an *infra red light absorption gas analyzer* which continuously recorded the carbon dioxide content of the ventilatory air (CAPNOGRAPH GODARD type CG/58003 coupled to a direct writer OMNISCRIPTOR GODARD) as well as a four channel ELENA MINGOGRAPH recorder (Type M42 B) including EEG.

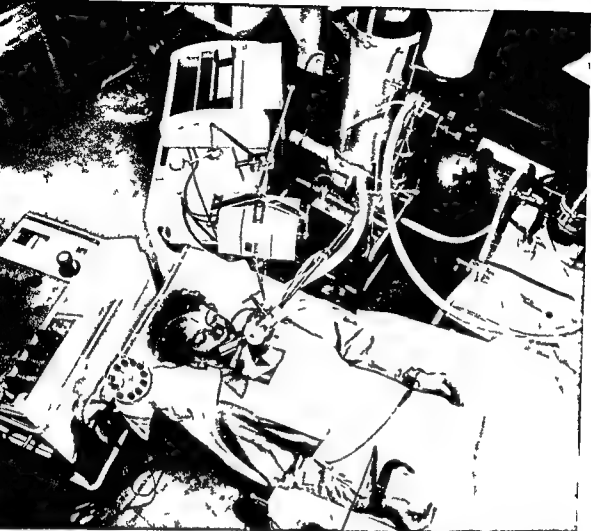


Fig 1 Experimental arrangements (To the left the Mingograph and above the Capno graph and the spirometer )

A schematic drawing of the recording arrangements is given in Fig 2 Letters in the following section refer to Fig 2

Via a four way cock (A) close to the mouthpiece oxygen enriched air was conducted via a pump (B) and a soda lime absorber of carbon dioxide (C) round the closed spirometric system. The variations in the volume were recorded directly by a three speed (30, 300 and 3000 mm/sec) kymograph (D) and usually also on the same paper as the EFG on the MINGOGRAPH by means of resistance variations in a potentiometer (F) mounted on a moving part of the spirometer. A short tube (E) conducted a small portion of the respiratory gas which was sucked continuously from the oral cavity through the mouthpiece to the  $\text{CO}_2$  analyzer cell. This gas was then conducted via the pump of the capnograph back into the spirometric system via a small three way cock (G). With the subject connected the capnograph was thus shunted to that part of the rebreathing circuit which conducted the respiratory gases from the subject to the spirometer bell. Variations in the carbon dioxide content

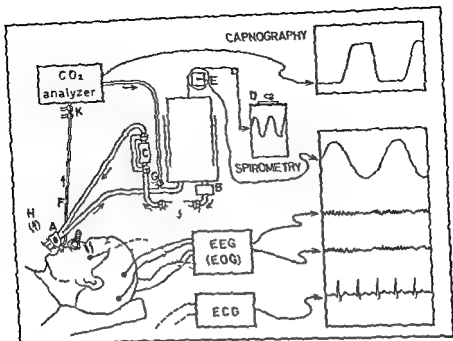


Fig. 9. Principal recording equipment. See text on this page.

were recorded by the OMNISCRIPTOR and also often on one of the channels of the MINGO GRAPH on the same paper as the EEG and the ventilation. The EEG was recorded by conventional technique from 4 electrode-plated parieto-occipitaly according to the international system (positions left side C<sup>3</sup>, D<sup>1</sup>, right side C<sup>4</sup>, D<sup>2</sup>) (JASPER 1959).

In some cases the movements of the eyes were also recorded on the Mingograph from two leads placed at the outer angles of the eyes (electro-oculography). In addition in many cases the electrocardiogram was recorded from one of the conventional body leads.

*Apparatus.* The following parts were constructed especially for the examination.

1) A four way cock (A) was mounted which could be manipulated at a distance without the subject noticing anything. The instrumental dead space including that of the mouth piece was reduced to 70 ml. 2) The inlet for inspiratory air could be switched from the spirometric system or from room air to a bronch valve (modified according to 1954 DOBELL 1949) which was integrally attached to the cock and which only gave a negligible addition of dead space. The expiratory air could by this arrangement easily be collected in another spirometer (B) for determination of the CO<sub>2</sub> output (usually for 30 seconds to one minute). For determination of the mixed venous carbon dioxide tension (P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub>) the re-piratory air could by the four way cock (A) also be connected to a rubber bag in which expired air was re-breathed.

4) The circulating re-piratory gas in the spirometer could readily be shunted past the carbon dioxide filter (C) by means of three way cocks with consequent accumulation of the expired carbon dioxide in the system. Usually an extra volume of about 20 L was then connected in the system. 5) This added volume could readily be disconnected by

2 other three way cocks (J) so that the circulating respiratory air could be distributed along two loops connected in parallel one of which conducted the gas through a separate CO filter. The ordinary filter was meanwhile removed from the circuit. By manual regulation of the flow through the loop with the CO filter the CO<sub>2</sub> content in the system could be maintained at different levels between 0 and 3 per cent. The CO<sub>2</sub> content of the inspiratory air was then checked visually on the direct writer. If necessary CO<sub>2</sub> was added to the system from a steel tube via a reducing valve and a flow meter. From another tube pure oxygen was conducted continuously through a flow meter (ROTAMETER CROYDON) to compensate for the amount consumed by the subject. A constant oxygen content in the spirometer was maintained by adjusting the flow so that the tracing of the end tidal air level on the kymograph was horizontal. The rotameter was calibrated with an accuracy of  $\pm 10$  ml O/min by the manufacturers (ROTAMETER Manufact Ltd CROYDON).

The spirometer bell was balanced in all positions. It was made of thin (0.3 mm) copper and suspended on the spirometer stand with a chain over the pulley which was mounted on ball bearings. The potentiometer (E Fig 2) was mounted on the axis of this pulley. It had a negligibly small friction resistance.

*Calibration of spirometer.* The temperature of the gas in the spirometer bell which varied between 26° 0 and 29° 0 C was read intermittently during each examination. The temperature increased somewhat every time the CO absorber was reconnected in the circuit after the CO<sub>2</sub> had been collected in the system. All respiratory volumes measured were corrected to BTPS (body temperature atmospheric pressure saturated with water vapour). The ambient atmospheric pressure was read from a barometer calibrated at regular intervals.

The respiratory volumes were read from the spirographic paper on which 5 mm deflexion corresponded to 100 ml. The apparatus was calibrated with small known volumes of gas. The amount of deflexion per 100 ml was the same irrespective of the start level in the spirometer bell. The spirometer was also checked with the aid of an electric pump for stroke volumes (tidal air) of 250 to 900 ml and ventilatory frequencies of 10–20 per minute.

The air flow resistance measured at the site of the connection of the spirometer to the mouthpiece was negligibly small (pressure variations less than  $\pm 3$  mm water) even for such high respiratory frequencies as up to 20 breaths/minute and for tidal volumes of up to 1 liter (i.e. at the upper limits reached under the conditions used in the present investigation).

The rate of the spirometer paper was calibrated and correction factors for changes in the rate were calculated to permit an accuracy of  $\pm 0.15$  sec through the entire course of the registration.

The constant gas flow independent of respiratory movements through the shunted capnograph was low 1.2 L/min. Thus even when the differences between inspiratory and expiratory flow were substantial the effect of the shunt flow on the shape of the spirographic recording of the breath could be ignored.

II *Capnograph.* The volume of the analyzer cell of the capnograph was 0.4 ml and the volume of the 40 cm long tube (inside diameter 3 mm) between the mouthpiece and the analyzer was 2.8 ml. The flow rate of 1.2 L/min was adjusted by means of a flow meter which was repeatedly calibrated.

With the aid of two small three way cocks (K) (with the same inner diameter as the supply tube) the analyzer could easily be switched over for calibration with different test gases or for connection with the extra spirometer (for measurement of mean  $\frac{1}{2}$  CO<sub>2</sub> of expired air). Turning the large four way cock at the mouthpiece (1) the flow of gas

from the capno graph hose could also be conducted either to the atmospheric air to the main spirometer or in the extra spirometer via the cock (G) near the spirometer bell

The highest value noted for the plateau of the end expiratory carbon dioxide content was read from the thermocouple recording paper of the Omniscriptor and measured as percentage alveolar carbon dioxide. This value was expressed in the conventional way in mm Hg by multiplying with the ambient atmospheric pressure corrected for water vapour (P<sub>B</sub> 47)

The response time of the capnograph and the direct writer (90 per cent deflexion) for a momentary change from 0 per cent to 5 per cent of carbon dioxide at the mouth piece was found to be 0.3 sec with the flow rate used i.e. 12 L/min

*Calibration of capnograph and direct writer* The capnograph was calibrated repeatedly against 4 to 6 gas mixtures containing N<sub>2</sub> and different amounts (2–7.5 per cent) of CO<sub>2</sub> in 40 per cent O<sub>2</sub>. The mixtures were analysed by the micro-Scholander technique (SCHOLANDER 1947). Within the measuring range of 30 to 45 mm Hg the accuracy of the capnograph was  $\pm 0.5$  mm Hg. The drift of the capnograph and of the writer was low together at most  $\pm 0.1$  mm Hg per hour. By means of repeated calibrations during the examination the baseline as well as the deflection accuracy in the measuring range was readjusted. Hence the error from the drift was substantially compensated and the accuracy was improved to  $\pm 0.3$  mm Hg within the measuring range of 30–45 mm Hg.

A small constant deviation from linearity of the Omniscriptor recording — a slight S shape — was noted and its effect on the measuring values was eliminated. The records were read (under a magnifying glass) with an accuracy of  $\pm 0.2$  mm Hg.

*EEG amplifier* The frequency response of the EEG amplifier was linear from 1.5 up to 60 cycle/sec. The sensitivity was 50  $\mu$ V/cm. In general an amplification of 50  $\mu$ V/cm was used for the records. The amplifier had a time constant of 0.1 sec which permitted recording of rapid ocular movements by electro-oculography (EOG).

The Wingograph had a linear frequency response up to 700 cycles/sec. Its amplitude linearity was  $\pm 0.5$  mm its base line linearity  $\pm 1$  mm. In most experiments the EEG was recorded in two of the channels and the capnograph record and/or ventilation alternating with electrocardiography in the remaining two. By simultaneous recording of the EEG, capnogram and ventilation on the same paper it was always possible to achieve a close analysis of the time relationship between the three variables. The records traced by the omniscriptor and the pneumo were correlated with the Wingograph record and each breath was given a number on all records.

At some examinations oculography and EEG (each through 2 channels) were done also on an extra EEG machine to secure more space for recording the sequences of other events on the Wingograph.

### 3 Examination procedure

*Preparation of subject* All of the subjects to be examined were requested to abstain from the use of all drugs for 2 days before the examination. None of them was accustomed to hypnotics. All the subjects were informed that the remuneration given for participation (Sw. Cr. 30 —) would be granted even if they could not sleep during the examination. As an extra precaution it was alleged that any intake of drugs would be revealed by the EFG. Stimulating beverages (alcoholic drinks, coffee or tea) and smoking were forbidden for 8 hours before the examination. All the subjects had a light meal rich in carbohydrates 3 to 4 hours before the beginning of the recording period.

When the recording was started the subjects were allowed to rest comfortably during at least 40 minutes in the supine position with a pillow under the head on the examination



2 other three way cocks (J) so that the circulating respiratory air could be distributed along two loops connected in parallel one of which conducted the gas through a separate CO<sub>2</sub> filter. The ordinary filter was meanwhile removed from the circuit. By manual regulation of the flow through the loop with the CO<sub>2</sub> filter the CO<sub>2</sub> content in the system could be maintained at different levels between 0 and 3 per cent. The CO<sub>2</sub> content of the inspiratory air was then checked visually on the direct writer. If necessary CO<sub>2</sub> was added to the system from a steel tube via a reducing valve and a flow meter. From another tube pure oxygen was conducted continuously through a flow meter (ROTAMETER CROYDON) to compensate for the amount consumed by the subject. A constant oxygen content in the spirometer was maintained by adjusting the flow so that the tracing of the end tidal air level on the kymograph was horizontal. The rotameter was calibrated with an accuracy of  $\pm 10$  ml O<sub>2</sub>/min by the manufacturers (ROTAMETER Manufact Ltd CROYDON).

The spirometer bell was balanced in all positions. It was made of thin (0.3 mm) copper and suspended on the spirometer stand with a chain over the pulley which was mounted on ball bearings. The potentiometer (E, Fig. 2) was mounted on the axis of this pulley. It had a negligibly small friction resistance.

**Calibration of spirometer.** The temperature of the gas in the spirometer bell which varied between 26° C and 29° C was read intermittently during each examination. The temperature increased somewhat every time the CO absorber was reconnected in the circuit after the CO<sub>2</sub> had been collected in the system. All respiratory volumes measured were corrected to BTPS (body temperature, atmospheric pressure, saturated with water vapour). The ambient atmospheric pressure was read from a barometer calibrated at regular intervals.

The respiratory volumes were read from the spirographic paper on which 5 mm deflexion corresponded to 100 ml. The apparatus was calibrated with small known volumes of gas. The amount of deflexion per 100 ml was the same irrespective of the start level in the spirometer bell. The spirometer was also checked with the aid of an electric pump for stroke volumes (tidal air) of 250 to 900 ml and ventilatory frequencies of 10–20 per minute.

The air flow resistance measured at the site of the connection of the spirometer to the mouthpiece was negligibly small (pressure variations less than  $\pm 3$  mm water) even for such high respiratory frequencies as up to 20 breaths/minute and for tidal volumes of up to 1 liter (i.e. at the upper limits reached under the conditions used in the present investigation).

The rate of the spirometer paper was calibrated and correction factors for changes in the rate were calculated to permit an accuracy of  $\pm 0.15$  sec through the entire course of the registration.

The constant gas flow independent of respiratory movements through the shunted capnograph was low 1.1 L/min. Thus even when the differences between inspiratory and expiratory flow were substantial the effect of the shunt flow on the shape of the spirographic recording of the breath could be ignored.

**b. Capnograph.** The volume of the analyzer cell of the capnograph was 0.4 ml and the volume of the 40 cm long tube (inside diameter 3 mm) between the mouthpiece and the analyzer was 2.8 ml. The flow rate of 1.2 L/min was adjusted by means of a flow meter which was repeatedly calibrated.

With the aid of two small three way cocks (K) (with the same inner diameter as the supply tube) the analyzer could easily be switched over for calibration with different test gases or for connection with the extra spirometer (for measurement of mean P<sub>CO<sub>2</sub></sub> of expired air). Turning the large four way cock at the mouthpiece (A) the flow of gas

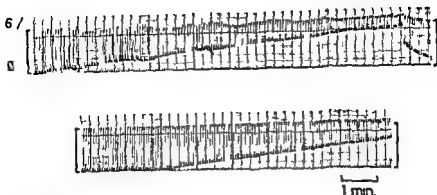


Fig 3 Subj H B male aged 23 Capnographic record of two  $\text{CO}_2$  tests Above Typical periodic breathing (PB) at the beginning gradually disappearing towards the end of the test Below 15 min later The subject is in profound stable sleep (EEG stage D) Very even breathing without any signs of periodicity

was measured repeatedly by letting the subject rebreathe the expired carbon dioxide in the closed system of 30 L volume (page 13) For convenience this measurement will be called  $\text{CO}_2$  test

A  $\text{CO}_2$  test was started without the subject being aware of it by conducting the circulating gas in the system through the shunt past the  $\text{CO}_2$  absorber (C Fig 2) There occurred a gradual increase of the inspiratory as well as the alveolar  $\text{CO}_2$  tension (Fig 3) After about 10 minutes when the  $\text{CO}_2$  content of the inspiratory air reached about 5 per cent the  $\text{CO}_2$  filter was replaced into the circuit and the accumulated  $\text{CO}_2$  eliminated In order to restore a reasonable respiratory steady state the time interval between the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests was as a rule more than 10 minutes

$\dot{V}_{\text{ECO}_2}$ ,  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ ,  $\dot{V}_A$  and  $\dot{V}_D$  In addition to the three main variables ventilation  $\dot{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  and EEG determinations were made of the  $\dot{V}_{\text{ECO}_2}$ ,  $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ ,  $\dot{V}_A$  and  $\dot{V}_D$  repeatedly and at different levels of wakefulness

$\dot{V}_{\text{ECO}_2}$  (the  $\text{CO}_2$  output) was calculated when expiratory air was collected and measured in the external spirometer (H Fig 2) the fan of which mixed the gas homogeneously A small portion was tapped for a few seconds through the capnograph for determination of the  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration From  $\dot{V}_{\text{ECO}_2}$  and prevailing  $\dot{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  the  $\dot{V}_A$  and  $\dot{V}_D$  were calculated according to the usual formulae

$$\dot{V}_A = \dot{V}_{\text{ECO}_2} \cdot k / \dot{P}_{\text{ACO}_2} \quad (1)$$

and

$$\dot{V}_D = (\dot{V}_T - \dot{V}_A) / f \quad (2)$$

where  $f$  = respiratory frequency/min and  $k$  is a constant (Symbols see page 5) In the calculation of  $\dot{V}_D$  the instrumental dead space (20 ml) was subtracted

$\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$  (the oxygen uptake) was determined closely before or after the  $\dot{V}_{\text{ECO}_2}$  from the slope of the spirogram after the supply of oxygen to the spirometer had been shut off

couch. The subjects were not allowed to lie on the side in order to avoid the effect of change in posture on the distribution of ventilation and perfusion in the lungs (SILVERMAN 1957).

*Mouthpiece* A well fitting mouthpiece as well as a nose clip were selected. Anaesthetic ointment (Elycam Ointment 5 per cent) was applied in and around the nostrils. Care was taken that the mouthpiece and the spirometer connection were in proper position and that the mouthpiece fitted well between the lips and the teeth so that it would remain in proper position even when the tone of the facial muscles and chin decreased during sleep. The position of the body and of the head contributed to prevent the lower jaw from falling as much as it would in the sitting posture and thereby decreased the risk of leakage.

*Leakage* In some cases leakage occurred while the subject was sleeping and then generally through the nose. When leakage occurred it always did so at first during expirations only. It could be readily detected on the spirogram because the horizontal tidal level began to rise when the spirometric volume decreased during each expiration. During such leakage it was seldom necessary to touch the sleeping subject or to interrupt the recording. The decrease in volume in the spirometer was then compensated for by continuous supply of air-oxygen mixture. Measurements of the ventilatory volumes were always done from the inspirations (see below). Therefore when the leakage was compensated the volume of gas added during each inspiration (usually less than 0.3 L/min) was subtracted from the inspiratory volumes measured. In the event of leakage the tightness of the system during the inspiration was tested by disconnecting the carbon dioxide absorber for a short time. Then some CO<sub>2</sub> was collected in the system. If there was an admixture of room air to the inspired gas this gave a short downward spike on the capnograph record during the very first part of the expiration (during which pure dead space air from the subject was measured). Leakage very rarely occurred during inspiration and when it did it was usually due to the mouthpiece having slipped out of the mouth. No ventilatory calculations were made from tracings during inspiratory leakage.

*Recording procedure* The examinations usually lasted 4 to 6 hours, during which the subject's eyes were closed. The air within the closed re-breathing system contained 40 per cent oxygen. This prevented stimulation of ventilation by hypoxia.

During the beginning of the recording period the subject was usually awake. There then followed a period with signs of increasing drowsiness in the EEG. In most cases this period was followed sooner or later by sleep, sometimes however not until after some hours. In some cases uninterrupted periods of sleep could be recorded for more than one hour, though usually of somewhat shorter duration. The level of wakefulness varied several times during the examination. Periods of varying duration of deep and of light sleep changed with drowsiness and wakefulness. Towards the end of the recording period the sleeping subjects usually woke up spontaneously and remained awake. In several cases recording was also made for a longer period while the subjects were in an alert state.

*"CO<sub>2</sub> tests"* During different stages of wakefulness, as monitored in the EEG, the ventilatory response to increased alveolar carbon dioxide tensions

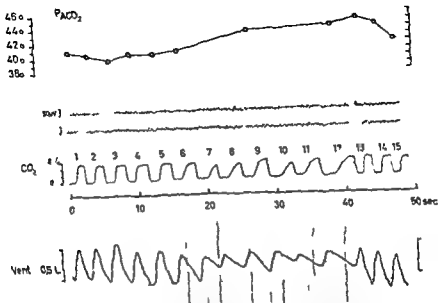


FIG. 4 Subj. L. II male aged 22. From above: Measured values of (end plateau)  $P_{ACO_2}$ , FEC capnographic and pirographic records (all on the same scale). At expirations Nos 7, 8, 10 and 11 no end plateau is reached on the capnographic record. At Nos 9 and 12 however a short plateau is recognizable. From the upper tracing it is evident that these  $P_{ACO_2}$  values are reliable. The large expiration 13 followed by an only small inspiration (of the same order as in No 12, about 300 ml) shows only slight further increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$  measured (at the beginning and end of the record there are typical end expiratory plateaux).

for determining  $P_{ACO_2}$ ). On the basis of calculated normal relations between alveolar and tidal volumes and respiratory dead space being at least 100–125 ml the following criteria for acceptable end expiratory  $P_{ACO_2}$  values were used:

- $V_I$  exceeds  $3/4$  of the average tidal volume for the subject and is not less than 300 ml.  $V_E$  is not less than  $V_I$ .
- When  $V_E$  is high (at least  $1/3$  higher than the mean tidal volume) it is accepted even when slightly less than  $V_I$ . (This difference may be greater when  $V_I$  is great but never more than 100–150 ml.)
- When both  $V_I$  and  $V_E$  have fallen below 300 ml for several consecutive breaths the end expiratory  $P_{ACO_2}$  is again accepted if it reaches a (short) plateau.

### c) Classification of level of wakefulness

With the exception of the states of tense alertness and REM sleep (see below) the various levels of wakefulness were classified entirely from the EEG record. In general stages A to E according to the system of LOOMIS *et al* (1937) and with the criteria given by GIBBS & GIBBS (1951).

for some minutes. The fall (a few per cent) in the oxygen content of the system was compensated immediately afterwards by increased addition of oxygen.

#### 4 Relationship between $P_{CO_2}$ measured as expiratory end plateau gas tension and 'ideal' alveolar $P_{CO_2}$

In general the presence of an end expiratory plateau was considered a prerequisite for the measurement by capnography of the  $P_{ACO_2}$  of a single breath. The peak of the end plateau corresponds closely to the mean alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ , provided that the ventilation-perfusion relationships of the lungs are normal and that there is no abnormal blood shunting past the pulmonary alveoli (COLLIER *et al.* 1955, GOFFERT & HENNEBERG 1956).

Conditions for an approximate agreement between the alveolar and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  are normally favourable in the supine position when the perfusion of the blood is more evenly distributed to the different parts of the lungs. Sometimes, especially when the subject was falling asleep, transitory changes were seen in the ventilatory pattern with a very low tidal air and hence no end expiratory plateaux were recorded. Sometimes even when the respiratory volumes were high the end expiratory plateau was missing owing to changes in rate of expiration. On the other hand, a false plateau was sometimes observed when the expiration was interrupted before reaching the end tidal level. Such false plateaux were excluded from the calculations (see below).

It has long been known (KROGH & LINDHARD 1913) that the respiratory volume  $V_E$  should be more than twice as large as  $V_D$  for the end expiratory portion to contain representative alveolar air. However  $V_D$  may decrease somewhat when  $V_T$  falls to a lower level such as during sleep (see page 00). The close dependance of the measured  $P_{ACO_2}$  upon the degree of ventilation (measured by the aid of the inspiratory volume) was always apparent on breath by breath comparison (Fig. 1) between the ventilation ( $V$ ) and the end expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  ( $V$  per breath is expressed as  $V_E/t$  where  $t$  gives the duration of the breath, from the beginning of inspiration until the beginning of the following inspiration). Provided that the end tidal level is largely stable, the end expiratory  $P_{ACO_2}$  always varies inversely to the  $V$ .

When respiratory volume falls suddenly to less than about 300 ml (i.e. to a value which is less than twice the ordinary dead space  $V_D$ ) the expiratory  $CO_2$  curve will however not reach an alveolar plateau during the first breaths after the decrease in volume. During these breaths however the end expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  increases markedly and often reaches a short end plateau (Fig. 4). The  $P_{CO_2}$  values then follow the variations in ventilation in a normal (inverse) way breath by breath. This was usually observed provided that the respiratory volume was larger than about 250 ml. (If the respiratory volumes were smaller there would usually be no alveolar plateau and such breaths could therefore not be used

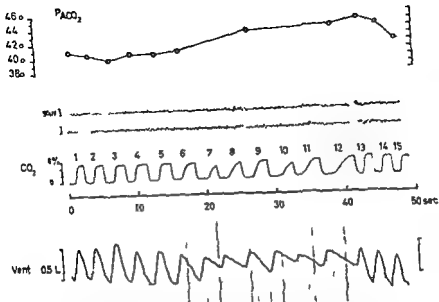


Fig 4 Subj L H male aged 22 From above Measured values of (end expiratory plateau)  $P_{ACO_2}$  FEG capnographic and spiographic records (all on the same scale) At expirations Nos 7 8 10 and 11 no end plateau is reached on the capnographic record At Nos 9 and 12 however a short plateau is recognizable From the upper tracing it is evident that these  $P_{ACO_2}$  values are reliable The large expiration 13 following an only small inspiration (of the same order as in No 1 about 300 ml) shows only slight further increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$  measured (At the beginning and end of the record there are typical end-expiratory plateaux)

for determining  $P_{ACO_2}$  On the basis of calculated normal relations between alveolar and tidal volumes respiratory dead space being at least 100–120 ml the following criteria for acceptable end expiratory  $P_{ACO_2}$  values were used

- $V_E$  exceeds  $3/4$  of the average tidal volume for the subject and is not less than 300 ml  $V_E$  is not less than  $V_I$
- When  $V_E$  is  $h_o h$  (at least  $1/3$  higher than the mean tidal volume) it is accepted even when  $V_I$  is less than  $V_E$  (This difference may be greater when  $V_I$  is greater but never more than 100–150 ml)
- When both  $V_I$  and  $V_E$  have fallen below 300 ml for several consecutive breaths the end expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  is accepted if it reaches a (short) plateau.

### 5 Classification of level of wakefulness

With the exception of the states of tension alertness and REM sleep (see below) the various levels of wakefulness were classified entirely from the EEG record In general stages A to E according to the system of Loomis et al (1937) and with the criteria given by Gibbs & Gibbs (1941)

for some minutes. The fall (a few per cent) in the oxygen content of the system was compensated immediately afterwards by increased addition of oxygen.

#### 4 Relationship between $P_{CO_2}$ measured as expiratory end plateau gas tension and "ideal" alveolar $P_{CO_2}$

In general the presence of an end expiratory plateau was considered a prerequisite for the measurement by capnography of the  $P_{ACO_2}$  of a single breath. The peak of the end plateau corresponds closely to the mean alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ , provided that the ventilation-perfusion relationships of the lungs are normal and that there is no abnormal blood shunting past the pulmonary alveoli (COLLIER *et al* 1955, GOFFERT & HENNEBERG 1956).

Conditions for an approximate agreement between the alveolar and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  are normally favourable in the supine position when the perfusion of the blood is more evenly distributed to the different parts of the lungs. Sometimes, especially when the subject was falling asleep, transitory changes were seen in the ventilatory pattern with a very low tidal air and hence no end expiratory plateau were recorded. Sometimes even when the respiratory volumes were high the end expiratory plateau was missing owing to changes in rate of expiration. On the other hand, a false plateau was sometimes observed when the expiration was interrupted before reaching the end tidal level. Such false plateaux were excluded from the calculations (see below).

It has long been known (KROGH & LINDHARD 1913) that the respiratory volume  $V_E$  should be more than twice as large as  $V_D$  for the end expiratory portion to contain representative alveolar air. However  $V_D$  may decrease somewhat when  $V_T$  falls to a lower level such as during sleep (see page 00). The close dependence of the measured  $P_{ACO_2}$  upon the degree of ventilation (measured by the aid of the inspiratory volume) was always apparent on breath by breath comparison (Fig. 4) between the ventilation ( $V$ ) and the end expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  ( $V$  per breath is expressed as  $V_1/t$  where  $t$  gives the duration of the breath, from the beginning of inspiration until the beginning of the following inspiration). Provided that the end tidal level is largely stable, the end expiratory  $P_{ACO_2}$  always varies inversely to the  $V$ .

When respiratory volume falls suddenly to less than about 300 ml (i.e. to a value which is less than twice the ordinary dead space  $V_D$ ) the expiratory  $CO_2$  curve will however not reach an alveolar plateau during the first breaths after the decrease in volume. During the next breath however the end expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  increases markedly and often reaches a short end plateau (Fig. 4). The  $P_{CO_2}$  values then follow the variations in ventilation in a normal (inverse) way breath by breath. This was usually observed provided that the respiratory volume was larger than about 250 ml. (If the respiratory volumes were smaller there would usually be no alveolar plateau and such breaths could therefore not be used).

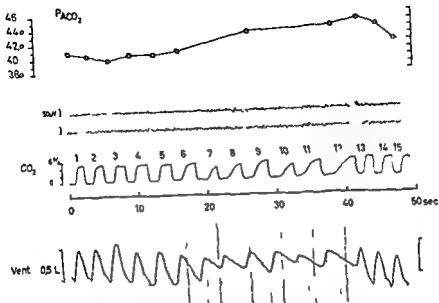


Fig 4 Subj L H male aged 22 From above Measured values of (end plateau)  $P_{ACO_2}$ , EEG capnographic and spirometric records (all on the same scale) At expirations Nos 7 8 10 and 11 no end plateau is reached on the capnographic record At Nos 9 and 11 however a short plateau is recognizable From the upper tracing it is evident that these  $P_{ACO_2}$  values are reliable The large expiration 13 following an only small inspiration (of the same order as in No 12 about 300 ml) shows only slight further increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$  measured (At the beginning and end of the record there are typical end-expiratory plateaux.)

for determining  $P_{ACO_2}$ ) On the basis of calculated normal relations between alveolar and tidal volumes respiratory dead space being at least 100–125 ml the following criteria for acceptable end-expiratory  $P_{ACO_2}$  values were used

- $V_E$  exceeds  $2/3$  of the average tidal volume for the subject and is not less than 300 ml  $V_E$  is not less than  $V_I$
- When  $V_E$  is high (at least  $1/3$  higher than the mean tidal volume) it is accepted even when slightly less than  $V_I$  (This difference may be greater when  $V_I$  is greater but never more than 100–150 ml)
- When both  $V_I$  and  $V_E$  have fallen below 300 ml for several consecutive breaths the end-expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  is again accepted if it reaches a (short) plateau

### 5 Classification of level of wakefulness

With the exception of the states of tense alertness and REM sleep (see below) the various levels of wakefulness were classified entirely from the EEG record In general stages A to E according to the system of LOONIS *et al* (1937) and with the criteria given by GIBBS & GIBBS (1951)



for some minutes. The fall (a few per cent) in the oxygen content of the system was compensated immediately afterwards by increased addition of oxygen.

#### 4 Relationship between $P_{CO_2}$ measured as expiratory end plateau gas tension and "ideal" alveolar $P_{CO_2}$

In general the presence of an end expiratory plateau was considered a prerequisite for the measurement by capnography of the  $P_{ACO_2}$  of a single breath. The peak of the end plateau corresponds closely to the mean alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$ , provided that the ventilation-perfusion relationships of the lungs are normal and that there is no abnormal blood shunting past the pulmonary alveoli (COLLIER *et al.* 1955, GOFFERT & HENNEBERG 1956).

Conditions for an approximate agreement between the alveolar and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  are normally favourable in the supine position when the perfusion of the blood is more evenly distributed to the different parts of the lungs. Sometimes especially when the subject was falling asleep, transitory changes were seen in the ventilatory pattern with a very low tidal air and hence no end expiratory plateau was recorded. Sometimes even when the respiratory volumes were high the end expiratory plateau was missing owing to changes in rate of expiration. On the other hand a false plateau was sometimes observed when the expiration was interrupted before reaching the end-tidal level. Such false plateaux were excluded from the calculations (see below).

It has long been known (KROGH & LINDHARD 1913) that the respiratory volume  $V_E$  should be more than twice as large as  $V_D$  for the end expiratory portion to contain representative alveolar air. However  $V_D$  may decrease somewhat when  $V_T$  falls to a lower level such as during sleep (see page 00). The close dependance of the measured  $P_{ACO_2}$  upon the degree of ventilation (measured by the aid of the inspiratory volume) was always apparent on breath-by-breath comparison (Fig. 4) between the ventilation ( $V$ ) and the end expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  ( $V$  per breath is expressed as  $V_1/t$ , where  $t$  gives the duration of the breath, from the beginning of inspiration until the beginning of the following inspiration). Provided that the end-tidal level is largely stable the end expiratory  $P_{ACO_2}$  always varies inversely to the  $V$ .

When respiratory volume falls suddenly to less than about 300 ml (i.e. to a value which is less than twice the ordinary dead space  $V_D$ ) the expiratory  $CO_2$  curve will however not reach an alveolar plateau during the first breaths after the decrease in volume. During the next breaths however the end expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  increases markedly and often reaches a short end plateau (Fig. 4). The  $P_{CO_2}$  values then follow the variations in ventilation in a normal (inverse) way breath-by-breath. This was usually observed provided that the respiratory volume was larger than about 250 ml (if the respiratory volumes were smaller there would usually be no alveolar plateau and such breaths could therefore not be used

were used (They imply a modification of the border between stages A and B) The five stages are illustrated in Fig 5

*Stage A Wakefulness* The record was dominated by modulated alpha activity (25—75  $\mu$  V in parieto occipital leads 8—12 cycles/sec) without any appreciable admixture of lower frequencies This corresponds to wakefulness at rest with closed eyes

*Stage B Drowsiness* The background activity is of smaller amplitude with episodes of a more continuous activity of frequencies from the theta band (4—7 cycles/sec) The alpha activity is only sporadic or completely absent *Stage B<sub>1</sub>* was introduced in a few cases in which no clearcut stage B was observed *B<sub>1</sub>* represents an intermediate stage between A and B since it contained some alpha activity which however was clearly reduced in voltage and amount as compared with stage A and did not exceed one third of the EEG period measured

*Stage C Light sleep* There is usually a distinct tendency to 'sleep spindles' of 12—14 cycles/sec The background activity is dominated by theta waves usually of somewhat lower frequencies than in stage II and a moderate occurrence of delta waves The amplitudes are greater than in stage B If sleep is very light biparietal humps may occur This stage is also characterized by the appearance of K complexes

*Stage D Deep sleep* : There is mainly delta activity of 1—3 cycles/sec of larger amplitude than in stage C Sparse spindles are also seen which are of lower frequency than in stage C

*Stage E Very deep sleep* The EEG is dominated by high voltage slow delta waves with frequencies of often less than one cycle/sec

*Rapid eye movement sleep (REM sleep)* is usually characterized by frequent and rapid movements of the eyes recognized on the electro-oculogram and by a low voltage fast background activity in EEG (DEMENT & KLEITMAN 1957 JOUVER & MICHEL 1960) Usually however a distinct tendency to somewhat slower waves in the theta band are observed (SCHWARZ 1962 OSWALD 1962) This stage can therefore often resemble stage II in the EEG and sometimes even a stage between B and C

In a certain number of subjects who were already wide awake and with an alpha pattern in the EEG a condition of *tense alertness* here called *stage A<sub>0</sub>* was obtained in one of the following ways

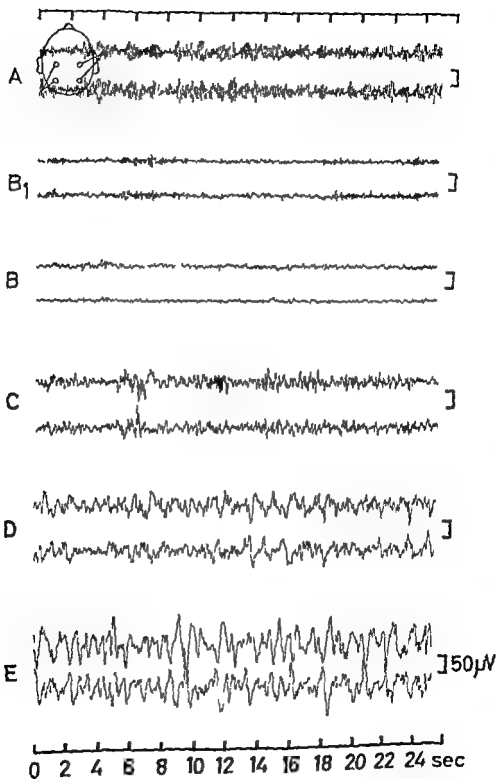


Fig 5 Typical EEG stages of scalefulness (in one subject  $\square$  I male aged 21) For classification and criteria see text

(40 determinations) was  $3.2 (\pm 0.2)$  mm Hg when the  $\text{CO}_2$  content of inspiratory air was below 2.5 per cent. There was no change in this a-A difference between wakefulness and sleep. Nor was there any change in this difference when the values were separated according to the size of the tidal volume into two groups of equal size or between samples with high and low  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  when instead the values were separated according to  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  in equally sized groups. Neither did any obvious change occur in this difference between  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  and  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  during arousal reactions. For the later part of the  $\text{CO}_2$  test when the inspiratory air contained 2.5 to 5.0 per cent  $\text{CO}_2$ , the difference between  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  and  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  was slightly reduced to  $2.5 (\pm 0.3)$  mm Hg (14 determinations). Thus the mean decrease of this a-A difference was 0.7 mm Hg.

The pH varied largely inversely with the  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  while the standard bicarbonate did not vary with the  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$ .

$\text{P}_{\text{VCO}_2}$  The mixed venous  $\text{CO}_2$  tension ( $\text{P}_{\text{VCO}_2}$ ) was repeatedly measured with the capnograph in 16 studies on 15 subjects by means of rebreathing for 30 to 40 seconds in a rubber bag of about 1 L volume containing somewhat more than 7 per cent  $\text{CO}_2$  in  $\text{O}_2$  (COLLIER 1956). Within 15–20 seconds a plateau was reached. Then the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension of the inspiratory air was the same as that of the expiratory air. This plateau value indicated the (oxygenated)  $\text{P}_{\text{VCO}_2}$ . For the calculation of  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  by this indirect method of measurement 6 mm Hg was subtracted from the values obtained during a respiratory steady state (COLLIER 1956; CAMPBELL & HOWELL 1959).

The results are given in Table II. The mean difference between the calculated  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  and the  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  measured half a minute before this  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing was  $3.0 (\pm 0.1)$  mm Hg.

Both control methods indicated that the expiratory end plateau value measured was about 3 mm Hg lower than the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  of the arterial blood. The interindividual variations found by both methods were roughly of the same magnitude. The scatter around the mean a-A differences found was somewhat wider when the direct arterial control method was used. However, two quite different methods were here compared with each other. The error of the direct measurement on the arterial blood (SIGGAARD ANDERSEN *et al.* 1960) might be responsible for a large part of this scatter.

It should be stressed that there are no reasons to believe that the mean difference of about 3 mm is not due mainly to methodological differences, since a lot of data from literature support the assumption that arterial and mean alveolar  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  are approximately identical in normals.

a) The subject who had his eyes open was repeatedly requested to concentrate sharply on some problems or interesting recent incidents. At the same time he was repeatedly disturbed by auditory and visual impulses of most varying type, intensity and frequency.

b) The subject was repeatedly given mental tasks to perform either arithmetic problems or a so called Sterzinger test (i.e. a long series of random combinations of letters of which certain constellations should be crossed out).

## 6 Controls

### *Alveolar arterial CO<sub>2</sub> tension*

$P_{aCO_2}$  The arterial carbon dioxide tension ( $P_{aCO_2}$ ) as well as pH and standard bicarbonate were measured by the micromethod according to SIGGAARD ANDERSEN *et al* (1960) in 5 subjects, whose EEG showed periods of alertness and of sleep. Several arterial samples from an indwelling catheter in one brachial artery were taken during the state awake, during sleep, as well as during the period of sleep onset when there was marked periodic breathing (page 46). The  $P_{aCO_2}$  was also measured at the moments when the EEG showed typical arousal reactions, and during CO<sub>2</sub> tests. The  $P_{aCO_2}$  values were correlated with the end expiratory  $P_{ACO_2}$  values measured approximately 10 seconds earlier, i.e. a period roughly equal to the circulation time from the lungs to the peripheral artery.

The results are given in Table I. The mean difference  $P_{aCO_2} - P_{ACO_2}$

Table I Differences between arterial and alveolar (end expiratory)  $P_{CO_2}$   
(Within brackets the number of determinations)

Subj	Level of wakefulness			Tidal volume (V <sub>T</sub> )		Arterial CO <sub>2</sub> tension	
	Awake	Drowsy	Asleep	Low	High	Low	High
B H III	(2)		(4)	(2)	(4)	(3)	(3)
	28		32	35	28	25	36
K A N II	(5)	(1)	(4)	(5)	(5)	(5)	(5)
	44	51	33	40	41	41	40
K V I	(3)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(4)	(4)	(1)
	19	13	22	16	21	15	22
V A II	(2)	(3)	(3)	(4)	(4)	(4)	(4)
	21	24	29	26	24	20	31
K H II	(2)	(3)	(3)	(4)	(1)	(4)	(1)
	46	37	44	40	44	43	41
mean	32	31	32	31	32	29	34

## *Oxygen content of inspiratory gas and of arterial blood*

In order to ensure that the oxygen content of the inspiratory air was maintained during the recording periods the spirometric system was checked for any leakage before and after every examination. This was often done by adding carbon dioxide to the spirometer with the fan on and the  $\text{CO}_2$  absorber disconnected. The carbon dioxide content was found to be stable after several hours' checking with capnography. In some of the examinations during sleep helium was added. The content of this gas was followed continuously on a CAMBRIDGE catapherometer. A very slight decrease (less than 1 per cent) occurred in the course of a few hours.

Oxygen saturation of arterialized capillary blood was followed continuously photometrically with an oximeter (KIFA Stockholm type BRAC B3) with an ear pierce according to MILLICAN (1942) in ten examinations mainly on subjects who showed marked periodic respiration during decreased wakefulness often with periods of apnoea. The arterial blood was considered saturated with oxygen during inspiration of 40 per cent oxygen since further increase in the oxygen content produced no further increase of the deflexion of the oximeter. The variations in oxygen saturation never exceeded 2 to 3 per cent not even during the widest variations in ventilation including periods of apnoea.

### *7 Calculation of the ventilatory response to carbon dioxide*

#### *a Time delay between a transient change in $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ and in ventilation*

This delay was measured in two different ways:

1 The subjects inspired 7 per cent  $\text{CO}_2$  for about 40 seconds. The time was measured between the first inspiration following the end of the  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing and the moment when a definite decrease in ventilation was registered. The time lag varied between 21–27 seconds (Table III left).

2 The subjects breathed 7 to 14 per cent  $\text{CO}_2$  for 2 or 3 breaths and the time lag to maximal ventilatory increase was measured. This time lag varied somewhat more between 18–28 seconds (Table III right). The ventilatory changes were here small and it was sometimes not possible to define the maximal ventilation response to a  $\text{CO}_2$  stimulus from spontaneous variations in single breaths. This was usually the case when air mixtures with a  $\text{CO}_2$  content of less than 5 per cent were used.

The results obtained by both methods suggest that when a sudden or transient change in alveolar carbon dioxide pressure causes a ventilatory response its maximum can be recorded after about 25 seconds.

#### *b Correlation of level of wakefulness, ventilation ( $\dot{V}$ ) and $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$*

For these correlations periods of 5 consecutive breaths were used and  $\dot{V}$  and  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  were measured from each of the 5 breaths and their mean values gave a  $\dot{V}$ – $P$  point in a  $\dot{V}$ – $P$  diagram.  $\dot{V}$  was always calculated as the quotient between inspiratory volume and duration of the breath. Every  $\dot{V}$  value was divided by the body surface area (BSA) of the subject.

Table II Differences between  $P_{\text{vCO}_2}-6$  as measured by  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing and alveolar (end expiratory)  $P_{\text{CO}}$

Subj	[ $P_{\text{vCO}}-6$ ] (above)		[ $P_{\text{vCO}_2}-6$ ] - $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ (below)		V	mean
	I	II	III	IV		
I O	38.5 3.3	39.3 3.3	40.2 3.4			
I F	37.4 3.2	37.4 3.2	42.1 2.9	40.2 3.4		3.3
S F	39.4 3.0	38.0 3.0	37.5 3.0	38.5 3.0	36.7 3.1	3.2
T S	39.2 2.7	40.1 2.4				3.0
F N I	39.1 3.3	39.1 4.4				2.6
L K	40.6 2.8	41.5 3.1				3.9
L H	38.8 2.7	37.3 2.2				3.0
I S	40.3 3.1	40.3 3.2				2.5
K B I	40.8 1.8	40.8 2.1				3.2
V R	40.4 4.0	39.1 3.7				2.0
B H III	37.1 2.3	36.7 2.8	38.1 2.9			3.9
K A N II	41.4 3.3	40.9 3.0	40.5 2.9			2.7
K N I	33.8 2.9	34.3 3.5	32.3 3.2			3.1
V A II	40.1 2.4	36.9 3.6				3.2
K B II	42.1 2.6	43.0 2.3	42.1 2.1	40.2 3.5		3.0
R T	35.5 2.9	35.9 2.7	35.9 3.1	33.6 3.2	31.4 3.2	2.6
						3.0

In the foregoing principal observations were presented (page 18) which show that the expiratory end plateau measurement (under the defined conditions) sensitively reflects the variations in alveolar  $P_{\text{ACO}}$ . The controls here reported render further evidence.

*The results support the conclusion that breath by breath variations in expiratory end plateau  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  satisfactorily reproduce corresponding changes in the arterial blood*

## Oxygen content of inspiratory gas and of arterial blood

In order to ensure that the oxygen content of the inspiratory air was maintained during the recording periods the spirometric system was checked for any leakage before and after every examination. This was often done by adding carbon dioxide to the spirometer with the fan on and the  $\text{CO}_2$  absorber disconnected. The carbon dioxide content was found to be stable after several hours' checking with capnography. In some of the examinations during sleep helium was added. The content of this gas was followed continuously on a CAMBRIDGE catapherometer. A very slight decrease (less than 1 per cent) occurred in the course of a few hours.

Oxygen saturation of arterialised capillary blood was followed continuously photometrically with an oximeter (KIFA Stockholm type BENC B3) with an ear piece according to MILLICAN (1941) in ten examinations mainly on subjects who showed marked periodic respiration during decreased wakefulness, often with periods of apnoea. The arterial blood was considered saturated with oxygen during inspiration of 40 per cent oxygen, since further increase in the oxygen content produced no further increase of the deflexion of the oximeter. The variations in oxygen saturation never exceeded 2 to 3 per cent, not even during the widest variations in ventilation, including periods of apnoea.

## 7 Calculation of the ventilatory response to carbon dioxide

### a Time delay between a transient change in $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ and in ventilation

This delay was measured in two different ways.

1 The subjects inspired 7 per cent  $\text{CO}_2$  for about 40 seconds. The time was measured between the first inspiration following the end of the  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing and the moment when a definite decrease in ventilation was registered. The time lag varied between 21–27 seconds (Table III left).

2 The subjects breathed 7 to 14 per cent  $\text{CO}_2$  for 2 or 3 breaths and the time lag to maximal ventilatory increase was measured. This time lag varied somewhat more between 18–23 seconds (Table III right). The ventilatory changes were here small and it was sometimes not possible to define the maximal ventilation response to a  $\text{CO}_2$  stimulus from spontaneous variations in single breaths. This was usually the case when air mixtures with a  $\text{CO}_2$  content of less than 5 per cent were used.

The results obtained by both methods suggest that when a sudden or transient change in alveolar carbon dioxide pressure causes a ventilatory response its maximum can be recorded after about 25 seconds.

### b Correlation of level of wakefulness, ventilation ( $V$ ) and $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$

For these correlations periods of 5 consecutive breaths were used.  $V$  and  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  were measured from each of the 5 breaths and their mean values gave a  $V$ – $P$  point in a  $V$ – $P$  diagram.  $V$  was always calculated as the quotient between inspiratory volume and duration of the breath. Every  $V$  value was divided by the body surface area (BSA) of the subject.



Table III *Time delay for a ventilatory response to a transient change in  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$*   
(Within brackets the number of determinations)

A		II	
Subject	From end of 40 sec $\text{CO}_2$ rebreathing	Subject	From onset of 2 or 3 single breaths of $\text{CO}_2$ rebreathing
	(6)		(2)
H F	22.1	I A	20.8
	(4)		(2)
E H	26.3	E W	18.3
	(3)		(2)
E A	25.4	K B B	27.6
	(4)		(2)
K B I	26.0	A K B	26.5
	(4)		(4)
K B II	26.8	I Sd	17.4
	(1)		(3)
V R	22.5	R T	25.8
	(3)		
B H III	20.7	mean	22.7
	(3)		
K A N II	25.9		
	(3)		
K N I	22.5		
	(3)		
A H II	24.2		
	(2)		
I S	26.8		
	(3)		
S I II	22.3		
mean	24.3		

According to the above mentioned time delay,  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  was estimated from the five breaths occurring approximately 25 seconds before the breaths for V measurements of the V—P point. The stage of wakefulness was judged from the EEG pertaining to the period during which the ventilation was measured and to this time the V—P point was referred.

#### c Calculation of SQ, sT and DsT from the CO tests

In all the CO tests every other V—P point was calculated. For each investigation all these points were plotted in a V—P diagram (cf Fig. 19). In this way each test usually consisted of 10 to 15 V—P points.

For each individual the scatter of the V—P points representing identical EEG stages of wakefulness was narrow. Above a "threshold" value (T) of

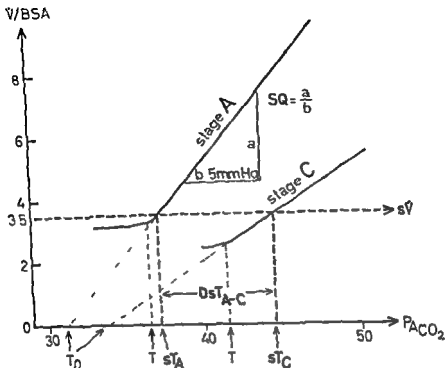


Fig 6 D ■ mm illustrating main symbols used in the text For explanation see this page and page 6

$P_{ACO_2}$  the curve formed by the  $V-P$  points was approximately rectilinear. For each stage of wakefulness the slope of this line  $SQ$  (stimulus response quotient or sensitivity quotient) was expressed as  $V/BSA/P_{ACO_2}$  in  $L/min/m^2/mm\ Hg$ . Fig 6 schematically illustrates the main symbols described here.

During wakefulness at rest (EEG stage A) and at respiratory steady state the mean  $V/BSA$  for all the subjects was approximately  $3.5\ L/min/m^2$ . A line representing this standard ventilation  $sV$  was drawn in every  $V-P$  diagram. The  $P_{ACO_2}$  value at which a slope line crossed the  $sV$  line was termed the standard threshold  $sT$  for respective stages of wakefulness. Accordingly the difference in  $sT$  between two slope lines was named  $DsT$  (i.e. the difference in  $P_{ACO_2}$  in  $mm\ Hg$  at the  $sV$ ). Between EEG stages C and A it was designated as  $DsT_{A-C}$  between stages D and A as  $DsT_{A-D}$  and so on.

As a rule the slopes of the response curves of each stage of wakefulness in every subject reached the  $sV$  line. The threshold value  $T$  for  $P_{ACO_2}$

Table III Time delay for a ventilatory response to a transient change in  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$   
(Within brackets the number of determinations)

A		II	
Subject	From end of 40 sec $\text{CO}_2$ rebreathing	Subject	From onset of 2 or 3 single breaths of $\text{CO}_2$ rebreathing
	(6)		(2)
H F	22.1	F A	20.8
	(4)		(2)
E H	20.3	E W	18.3
	(3)		(2)
E A	25.4	K B B	27.6
	(4)		(?)
K B I	26.0	A K B	26.5
	(1)		(4)
K B II	26.8	I Sd	17.4
	(1)		(3)
V R	22.5	R T	25.8
	(3)		
B H III	20.7	mean	22.7
	(3)		
K A N II	25.9		
	(3)		
K N I	22.5		
	(3)		
A H II	24.2		
	(2)		
I S	26.8		
	(3)		
S I II	22.3		
mean	24.3		

According to the above mentioned time delay,  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  was estimated from the five breaths occurring approximately 25 seconds before the breaths for V measurements of the V-P point. The stage of wakefulness was judged from the EEG pertaining to the period during which the ventilation was measured, and to this time the V-P point was referred.

#### c Calculation of $SQ \cdot sT$ and $DsT$ from the $\text{CO}_2$ tests

In all the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests every other V-P point was calculated. For each investigation all these points were plotted in a V-P diagram (cf. Fig. 19). In this way each test usually consisted of 10 to 15 V-P points.

For each individual the scatter of the V-P points representing identical EEG stages of wakefulness was narrow. Above a threshold value (T) of

or at the beginning of the test stable respiration ( $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  change not exceeding  $\pm 1$  mm Hg) and stable FEG for an equally long period (3–4 min)

Marked sudden changes in ventilation occurred in some of the subjects concomitant with rapid changes of wakefulness V–P points falling during such substantial transient deviations from a stable respiration were not included in the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response measurements

### B Controls of ventilatory response to an increase of $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ of different rate

The response was checked when the rebreathing volume in the spirometer system was lower as well as when it was higher than during the ordinary  $\text{CO}_2$  test This changed the rate of increase of the  $\text{CO}_2$  content of the inspiratory air as well as alveolar air The position and slope of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve was studied during stable EEG levels

With a low rebreathing volume of 13.5 L (compared with ordinary 30 L) a moderate shift of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve to the right was noted in 4 of 6 subjects studied and in 2 of them also a small decrease in the slope compared with the ordinary  $\text{CO}_2$  test

Twice the normal rebreathing volume 60 L produced no clear difference in position or slope of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve in 6 subjects studied In 2 of the cases an inconsiderably increased slope (SQ) was noted in a few of the 60 L-tests while sT was slightly lower in 3 of the subjects and slightly higher in 2

The rate of increase of the inspiratory  $\text{CO}_2$  tension during these  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing tests was expressed by the quotient of inspiratory  $\text{CO}_2$  tension at the end of the test and the duration of the test In the 13.5 L-tests (10 tests) the rate varied between 8 and 15 mm Hg/min in the ordinary (30 L)  $\text{CO}_2$  tests only between 3.6 and 4.7 mm Hg/min In the 60 L tests (8 tests) the corresponding variation was 1.8 to 2.3 mm Hg/min

To conclude during the ordinary  $\text{CO}_2$  test (with rebreathing in 30 L volume) there seemed to occur a "dynamic" balance between  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  and V not differing clearly from what occurred with half as fast an increase of the inspiratory  $\text{CO}_2$  tension in twice the rebreathing volume

### C Controls of ventilatory response to increased $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ values of long duration

In 12 of the examinations different levels of increased  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  were maintained for periods of 10 to 20 minutes with  $\text{CO}_2$  shut tests as described on page 14 This was performed at different levels of wakefulness of the subjects For each individual and level of wakefulness the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response was compared with the results from the ordinary  $\text{CO}_2$  tests in the V–P diagram

At each level of wakefulness there was as a rule a slight to moderate shift to the left of the V–P points from the "shut test" as compared to those from the ordinary  $\text{CO}_2$  test Furthermore a slight increase in slope SQ was noted The shift in sT as well as in SQ was however approximately the same at different levels of wakefulness

Figs 23 and 24 (page 59 and 60) illustrate the shift in two typical cases It is evident that the differences between two EEG stages in sT and in SQ

(above which the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve was approximately linear), usually lay close to the corresponding  $\text{CT}$  value

The use of  $\dot{V}-P$  points 'suppressed the effects of sudden transient respiratory changes during single breaths on the measured relationship between  $\dot{V}$  and  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ . Even when the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  could not always be measured from every expiration the mean  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  of the  $\dot{V}-P$  point could usually be determined. It was always based on at least 3 end expiratory measurements. Only exceptionally such as during marked hypopnoea was it necessary to apply interpolation.

There was also another advantage of the 5 breath system. The duration of 5 breaths, about 25 seconds generally allowed a definite classification of the level of wakefulness from the prevailing pattern in the EEG. During some such periods however the EEG pattern was too unstable to allow classification. This complication occurred especially during transitions between two levels of wakefulness.

Besides a correlation to body surface area two other common methods were tried in order to enable an inter individual comparison of the ventilatory values. The ventilation was expressed either per volume oxygen taken up ( $\dot{V}_{\text{O}_2}$ ) or per volume of ventilation during respiration at rest "ventilatory ratio" (dividends in both cases determined at steady state for EFG stage A). Neither alternative proved superior to the body surface method.

## B Evaluation of the respiratory stability

### A Criteria applied

During normal night sleep there are frequent, and often quite large spontaneous changes in the depth of sleep (cf. KLEITMAN 1939, DEMIENT & KLEITMAN 1957) as well as in ventilation and in alveolo arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  tension (see under Results Chapter III). This fact, as well as the repeated ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response measurements made it necessary to apply certain criteria on a respiratory "steady state".

During the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests the gradually increasing  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  causes a state of respiratory imbalance. However the rate of change of the two main respiratory variables  $\dot{V}$  and  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  was fairly low and stable even between different individuals. A further decrease in this rate had little influence upon the ventilatory response measured (see further under B below). On the basis of these observations, the following criteria for stable respiration ("steady state") were set up for the present study.

- 1 Respiration between the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests (i.e. during oxygen enriched air breathing). Stable EEG pattern (level of wakefulness) as well as stable respiration since at least 3 to 5 minutes. The examination conditions completely unchanged for at least 5 to 7 minutes.  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  varying less than  $\pm 1 \text{ mm Hg}$ .

- 2 Respiration during  $\text{CO}_2$  tests. Stable EEG (level of wakefulness) and respiratory values steadily rising since 3 or 4 minutes (see Fig. 3, page 17).

## RESULTS

## RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS DURING AIR BREATHING

A *Respiration at different EEG stages of wakefulness*

*General findings* — Changes in EEG between wakefulness drowsiness and sleep were invariably accompanied by changes in ventilation as well as in alveolar carbon dioxide tension. The respiratory changes during transition between wakefulness drowsiness and sleep were recorded on more than 1 000 occasions.

A fall in wakefulness from stage A to stage B or from B to C or further to still deeper sleep was regularly accompanied by a decrease in ventilation and an increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$ . A rise in wakefulness on the other hand was accompanied by an increase in ventilation and a reduction in  $P_{ACO_2}$ . These respiratory changes also occurred during abrupt transient shifts in wakefulness as judged from the EEG. They appeared even during only a few seconds or less during parts of an expiration or an inspiration. In contrast to the change in ventilation the change in  $P_{ACO_2}$  was always more gradual during the course of some breaths.

Figs 7 and 8 show typical changes in ventilation ( $V$ ) and  $P_{ACO_2}$  between consecutive breaths during a period in which the EEG pattern fluctuated between various levels of wakefulness. When the alpha activity in the EEG disappeared and theta waves developed ventilation decreased. When the alpha activity reappeared sporadically ventilation again increased. The accompanying change in  $P_{ACO_2}$  was more successive.

Figs 9 and 10 show the changes when the subjects awoke from deep sleep. With the occurrence of more rapid frequencies in the EEG which became dominated more and more by alpha activity the ventilation increased abruptly. The following decrease in  $P_{ACO_2}$  occurred more slowly. After a few breaths the initial marked increase in ventilation showed a slight reduction. The respiration then gradually became stable around values normal for wakefulness.

Figs 8 and 9 show another characteristic difference between the changes noted when the subject was falling asleep and when he was waking up. The transition from wakefulness stage A to uninterrupted sleep (stage C or lower) was never abrupt. When the subject was *falling asleep* there was a long period of fluctuating wakefulness with repeated periods of signs

were not substantially altered during the respiratory stabilization during the "CO<sub>2</sub> shunt tests"

Standard errors of the main values measured are given (within parentheses) together with the corresponding mean values. A convenient formula was used

For obvious reasons a study of the present type could not be scheduled beforehand with stringent demands on statistical trials of significances. Stable sleep of various depth and duration cannot be induced at will. Reinvestigations were made in several but — for practical reasons — not in all subjects. In some cases several reinvestigations were made.

In the calculation of standard error the mean values for all investigations of each subject were used. It should therefore be stressed that the errors here given are in reality smaller since the increased accuracy with use of the mean values of repeated investigations in each subject is not considered in the calculations.

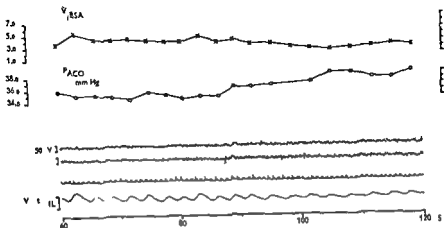


Fig 8 Subj B H male aged 23 A phase of gradual decrease in wakefulness during the period of onset of sleep. Concomitant changes in respiration.

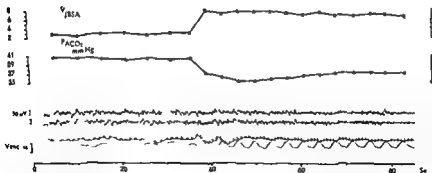


Fig 9 Subj F A male aged 39 Typical (pontaneous) arousal from deep stable sleep. Note the sudden increase in ventilation (see also the spiographic record lowermost) and the somewhat slower change in  $P_{aCO_2}$ . A gradual stabilization in respiration follows. (The first signs of alpha activity in the EEG usually preceded the change in ventilation by one or two seconds during awakening.)



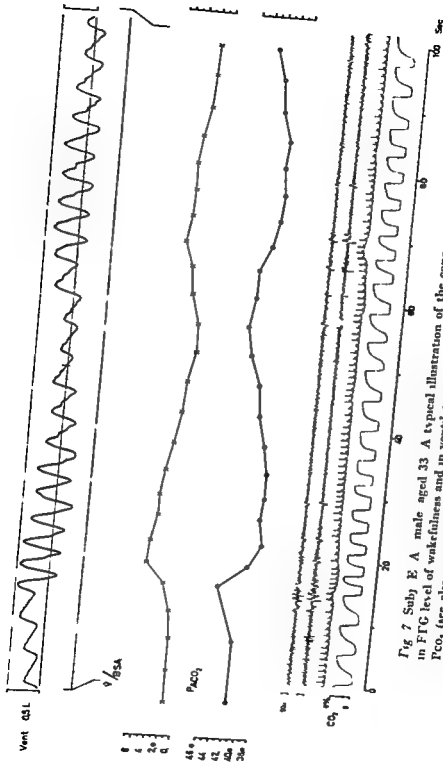


Fig 7 Subj E A male aged 33 A typical illustration of the concomitant variations in FFG level of wakefulness and in ventilation (spiographic record above) and alveolar  $PCO_2$  (see also capnographic record lowermost) during the period of onset of sleep The periodic breathing (PB) is here of moderate degree

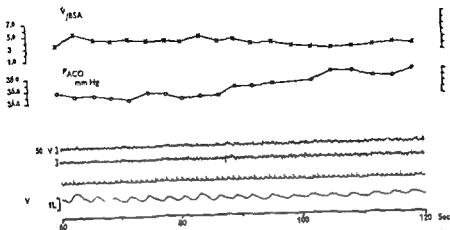


Fig 8 Subj B II male a ed 23 A phase of gradual decrease in wakefulness during the period of onset of sleep. Concomitant changes in respiration

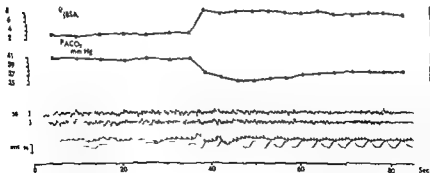


Fig 9 Subj III A male a ed 39 Typical (pontaneous) arousal from deep stable sleep. Note the sudden increase in ventilation (see also the spirographic record lowermost) and the somewhat slower change in  $P_{ACO_2}$ . A gradual stabilization in respiration follows. (The first sign of alpha activity in the EEG usually preceded the change in ventilation by one or two seconds during awakening.)

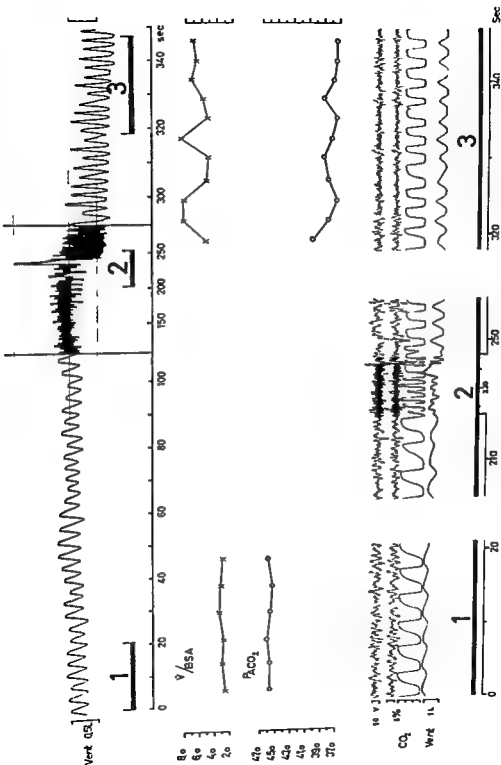


Fig 10 Subj K, 31 N male aged 31 Typical respiratory pattern during a period of about 6 min showing deep sleep heavy arousal reaction and ensuing wakefulness Three sections of the spirographic record (above) are also illustrated by a simultaneous I.G. and a capnographic record (on a larger time scale below)

of drowsiness or sleep in the EEG which were accompanied by a decrease in ventilation and an increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$ . These periods were interrupted by periods of higher level of wakefulness characterized by alpha activity and an increase in ventilation.

The process of *awakening* was always shorter than that of falling asleep. Already within the first or second breath during an arousal reaction with occurrence of alpha waves in the EEG the marked increase in ventilation was usually maximal (Fig 9). In contrast to what was seen when the subject was falling asleep prominent undulations in level of wakefulness were seldom observed following arousal. Both EEG and respiration became stable more rapidly. When the subject awoke only for a short time a new unstable period followed with the typical variations in wakefulness and respiration. Very transient arousal reactions were usually followed more quickly by definite sleep.

Fig 9 also illustrates that during arousal from deep sleep the first sign of alpha activity often preceded the increase in ventilation by 1 to 2 sec.

During shifts from light to moderately deep sleep the same principal changes in respiration as described were also observed. They were invariably present in association with the occurrence of  $\delta$  complexes in the EEG. During deep sleep (stage D and E) respiration was in general more stable. Small or low changes in the pattern of deep sleep were not always accompanied by demonstrable respiratory changes.

*Respiration and level of wakefulness during steady state*: Fig 11 represents one of the principal findings in the subjects studied. When the EEG showed a stable pattern at lower levels of wakefulness respiration was also stable with only slight breath to breath variation in  $\dot{V}/BSA \pm 0.5 \text{ L/m}^2$  and  $P_{ACO_2} \pm 0.5 \text{ mm Hg}$  indicating the occurrence of a new respiratory equilibrium between the low ventilation and the high  $P_{ACO_2}$ . In prolonged sleep of constant depth the ventilation was always very uniform from breath to breath.

The figure shows the consecutive breath by breath variations in respiration in a  $\dot{V}$ - $P$  diagram for one subject. The diagram covers 3 periods of different level of wakefulness (stages A awake, B drowsy and D, deep sleep). During all 3 stages the EEG pattern was stable. The simultaneously measured  $\dot{V}$ -values of each single breath during sleep are clearly separated from those during wakefulness, the former being situated in the lower right part of the diagram. Stage B is an intermediate stage in the EEG and as is clear from the diagram also in the respiration. In all 3 stages the variations between consecutive breaths are very small in ventilation and  $P_{ACO_2}$ .

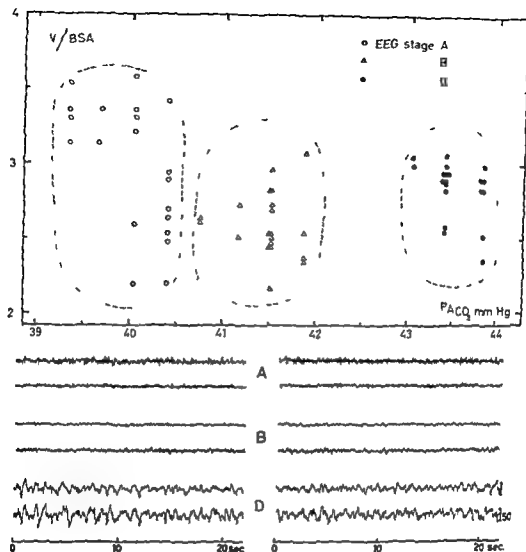


Fig 11 Subj B B male aged 23 Breath by breath variations in ventilation and  $PACO_2$  during three separate periods (each of 77 seconds duration) representing stages A (arale) B (drowsy) and D (deep sleep) respectively The EEG records below refer to the first and the last 22 seconds of each period Note the clear separation in the diagram of points belonging to different stages of wakefulness each stage with a stable EEG pattern Points representing sleep are all situated below to the right as compared to during wakefulness (stage A) the points during drowsiness situated in between Drowsiness is however often less stable in EEG as well as in respiration

(In this diagram  $V$  and  $PACO_2$  of each breath represent simultaneous measurements without the time delay used for  $V_P$  points )

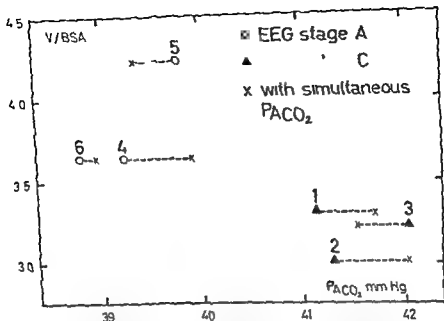


Fig 12 A Subj T S male aged 18 V P points from wakefulness and sleep. The points are numbered chronologically (Between point 3 asleep and point 4 awake the time interval is more than 2 hours). The broken lines denote the differences in  $P_{ACO_2}$  between measurements made simultaneously and at the routine interval of 25 sec in relation to the ventilation measured. The small differences indicate a stable respiration. Note that points during stable sleep are situated below to the right of points during wakefulness stage A.

Similar stable conditions in respiration and in EEG pattern are illustrated in Fig 12 A and B. Each diagram shows V P points from widely different parts of a 5 hour recording period of one investigation and during different levels of wakefulness. For each stage of sleep (stages C and D respectively) the plottings lie close together. The spread is somewhat larger for stage A.

The size of change in respiration between wakefulness and sleep was usually of similar order in the same individual. This too is demonstrated in Fig 12.

Sometimes, as is shown in Fig 13, some shift was observed in the position of the V P points in the diagram — from wakefulness as well as sleep — between various sections of a record traced for several hours. The principal change in position of the V P points between two levels of wakefulness was, however, always distinct for each such part of a given recording.

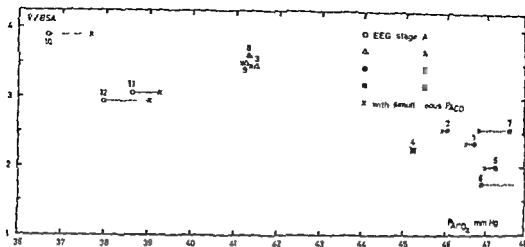


Fig 12 B A 1 N male aged 27 V P points from four separate stages of wakefulness (including tense alertness stage A<sub>1</sub>) during a 5 hour recording period. The points are numbered chronologically. As in Fig 12 A the  $P_{aCO_2}$  values measured simultaneously with the ventilation are also included in order to illustrate the degree of respiratory stability at each V P point. (Since the two  $P_{aCO_2}$  values coincide in point 8 stage A the open triangle is indistinct in the reproduction.)

Note that with a decrease in wakefulness the points are shifted downwards to the right.

It should be stressed that changes in position of the plottings for identical EEG stages between different periods of a given investigation can not be attributed to technical errors of the  $CO_2$  analyzer which had very small drift and was repeatedly checked during the recording periods by gas calibrations (page 15). It seems however possible that these changes in position of V P points between different parts of one recording period are largely due to protracted differences in the  $CO_2$  output (see below page 43).

During longer periods of stable wakefulness or sleep as reflected in the EEG V P points were determined at the beginning, middle and end of the period. Fig 13 shows that in each group the corresponding points in the V P diagram coincided well indicating stable respiration.

When profound and stable sleep had lasted for a long time a slight diminution of the change in respiration was sometimes observed. The carbon dioxide output and the respiratory exchange ratio had then increased indicating more stable respiratory conditions. The principal difference in position in the V P diagram compared with that of wakefulness however always persisted.

Measurements of the quantitative changes in the respiratory variables between wakefulness and sleep will be reported in detail in chapters V and VI. The average ventilation per  $m^2$  body surface area decreased by 0.9 ( $\pm 0.1$ ) L/min, the  $P_{aCO_2}$  increased by 3.1 ( $\pm 0.3$ ) mm Hg between the EEG stages A and C in an analysis of 29 subjects, all of whom showed periods of stable sleep (see also Table VIII, page 67).

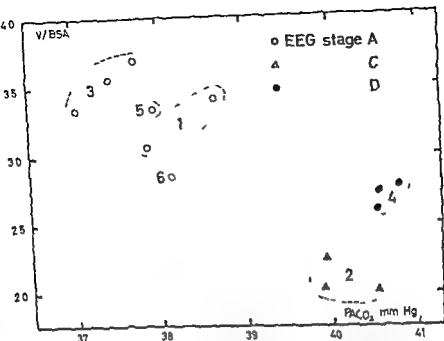


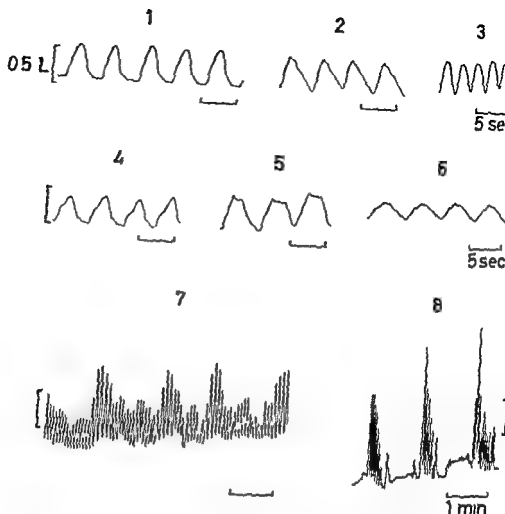
Fig 13 Subj 1 A female aged 27 V/P points from widely separated periods of stable EEG level of wakefulness during a 5 hour recording period. For each period the points are circumscribed by a broken line. In group 4 (deep sleep) there was a well developed respiratory steady state apparently more marked than in group 2 (light sleep). The groups are numbered chronologically. See text.

The quotient between  $V/BSA$  and  $P_{ACO_2}$  decreased gradually between stages A, B and C. Taking the stage A quotient as unity, the mean value for stage C in the 6 subjects was  $0.70 (\pm 0.02)$ .

**Pattern of ventilation during sleep.** During sleep the type of ventilation as judged from the individual breaths on the spirogram was found to be characteristically changed. When the EEG showed a stable pattern, the breaths showed only small variations in volume and frequency. In addition, the interindividual variations in ventilatory frequency proved to be reduced (Table VII column 5 page 66). Consequently, during sleep the differences in ventilation between the subjects were mainly reflected in the tidal volume.

The ratio between the duration of inspiration and of expiration was usually decreased during sleep, most markedly at the onset of drowsiness or sleep. This implied that the average volume expired per unit time was





*Fig 14 Pattern of ventilation during sleep 1 Typical spirographical tracing during wakefulness (stage A) There is often a distinct expiratory pause 2 The most common pattern during light and moderately deep sleep There are slight undulations already early during expiration 3 One variant (stage C) 4 Less common form moderately deep sleep The ratio inspiration time/expiration time is here increased (not decreased as in 2) 5 and 6 Deep sleep (stages D or E) 7 Typical periodic breathing (PB) of slight to moderate degree concomitant to variations in wakefulness 8 Marked PB with phases of apnoea or marked hypopnoea In each period the ventilatory maximum is reached during the first one or two breaths following an arousal*

decreased In some individuals the ratio was however reversed when the EEG showed deep sleep In a few individuals such an increase of the ratio occurred already at the onset of sleep During deep sleep of long duration (30 min or more) the difference in this ratio compared with that in wakefulness was often less marked

A further characteristic phenomenon was the disappearance of the end

expiratory pause at onset of sleep. The transition between inspiration and expiration was also more sharply defined. The curve during expiration showed a smoother gradient indicating that the maximal (resting) expiratory flow rate was reduced. There was usually a slight undulation at the middle of the expiration. Typical sleep breaths are illustrated in Fig 14 compared with typical breaths during wakefulness. In some individuals there were transitory changes of the end tidal level (usually a rise in some subjects alternating with a decrease) when wakefulness decreased rapidly (Figs 7 and 14 15).

Since the characteristic changes in the pattern as well as in the degree of ventilation were most pronounced at the onset of sleep it was always possible to recognize even very transient periods of sleep from the spirographic record alone.

During deep sleep expiration sometimes showed a marked dissociation in time between an initial movement of the abdominal wall (diaphragm) and a contraction of the chest first later in the expiration. The initial phase produced only a slight change in volume in the spirometer and was followed by a distinct pause (Fig 14 5).

Snoring occurred at different sleep levels. It was often associated with EEG changes indicating a fluctuating wakefulness.

Also during deep sleep with a stable EEG irregular changes occurred in the shape of a parate snoring breath. This occasionally produced transient changes in the degree of ventilation and in  $P_{aCO_2}$  but the respiration remained stable in between.

## II Respiration during tense alertness

During a state of tense alertness a slight mean increase occurred in ventilation and also a slight decrease in alveolar carbon dioxide tension.

A stable state of alertness was difficult to maintain. During repeated attempts to hold the alert level for several minutes the respiratory variations were sometimes appreciable. It was therefore often not possible to secure respiratory stability at fixing the criteria otherwise applied (page 28). The studies of alertness are reported further in Chapter V (page 57).

## C Variations in respiration during a complete period of recording

Fig 15 shows how V P point values for  $P_{aCO_2}$  and V varied throughout the examination period in 1 subject. These V P points were determined from respiration in (oxygenated) air at 5 minute intervals. (All values which fell within 5 minutes after a  $CO_2$  test or within 3 minutes after a transient change in the composition of the inspiratory gas such as after determination of  $P_{vCO_2}$  were excluded). Since the V P points were thus selected irrespective of the degree of stability of the EEG level of wakefulness i.e. including also points during transitions between the EEG stages the pread at

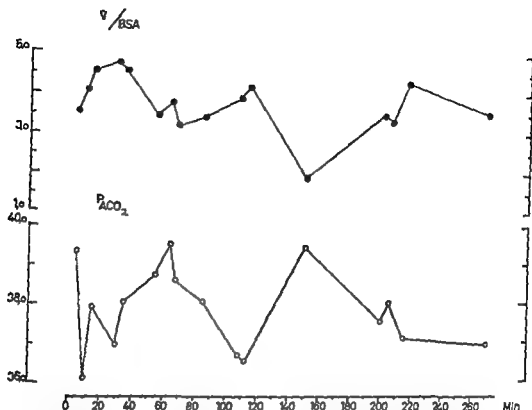


Fig 15 Subj E N male aged 39 Variations in ventilation and  $P_{ACO_2}$  from V P points measured at 5 minute intervals during one recording period (For values excluded see text) The points at the beginning around 60 and at 150 minutes represent sleep periods At 10 around 110 and after 210 minutes the subject was awake

different levels of wakefulness is here fairly wide. It was however clear that the variation in respiration largely followed the EEG level of wakefulness. During wakefulness stage A the ventilation is high the  $P_{ACO_2}$  low, during sleep the reverse is noted.

Fig 16 shows the  $\dot{V}$  and  $P_{ACO_2}$  distribution among the V P points (selected in the way just described) for 4 other subjects who, like the case in Fig 15, slept for substantial parts of the recording period. Each solid square corresponds to  $\dot{V}$  and  $P_{ACO_2}$ , respectively, of a V P point. The spread of  $\dot{V}$  and  $P_{ACO_2}$  which differs from person to person, is commented upon in Chapter VI.

#### D Carbon dioxide output, oxygen uptake, alveolar ventilation and respiratory dead space at different levels of wakefulness

$\dot{V}_{ECO_2}$ . The  $CO_2$  output at different levels of wakefulness is summarized in Table IV. During the early phases of the onset of sleep with a particularly low ventilation, the  $\dot{V}_{ECO_2}$  was also at its lowest.

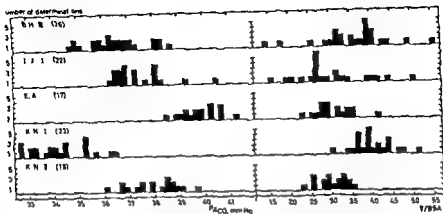


Fig 16 Distribution of values for ventilation and  $P_{ACO_2}$  from V P points measured at 5 minute intervals (see text) in 5 investigations (3 subjects) The number of V P points in each investigation is given in brackets Each recording period lasted 4 to 5 hours and contained comparable lengths of sleep

The scatter is somewhat wider in the two uppermost cases They belonged to the "unstable" group (page 62) while the remaining two cases were "stable"

In some subjects this occurred already during light drowsiness (stage B<sub>1</sub>) when there were sporadic but still distinct short alpha periods in the EEG In more cases however the  $V_{ECO_2}$  was lowest during clear cut stage II with a dominating low voltage theta and no alpha activity in others the decrease in  $\dot{V}$  and  $V_{ECO_2}$  was greatest during the initial period of very light sleep corresponding to stage C or a transitional stage between B and C.

With the stabilization of respiration during uninterrupted sleep the  $V_{ECO_2}$  again increased and approached that of stable wakefulness

$V_{O_2}$  It was observed (Table IV) that the oxygen uptake changed less than the carbon dioxide output during the onset of sleep as well as between different more stable stages of wakefulness In some cases the  $V_{O_2}$  was measured repeatedly during periods of continuous sleep The values were then somewhat lower towards the end of the period

R. It is clear from the foregoing that the quotient between  $CO_2$  output and  $O_2$  uptake R always decreased when the subject was falling asleep to rise again gradually as respiration became more stable during uninterrupted sleep With the establishment of a new respiratory equilibrium, the respiratory quotient approached the same value as during wakefulness

$V_A$  and  $V_D$  The alveolar ventilation  $V_A$  was found to be lowered during sleep (Table IV) The reduction was roughly proportional to the decrease in ventilation and in tidal volume The calculated mean decrease in respiratory dead space was only small and not a certain

Table IV CO<sub>2</sub> output O<sub>2</sub> uptake dead space volume alveolar ventilation and alveolar/total ventilation ratio in subjects awake drowsy and asleep

Subject	V <sub>ECO<sub>2</sub></sub> ml/min			V <sub>O<sub>2</sub></sub> ml/min			V <sub>D</sub> ml			V <sub>A</sub> L/min			V <sub>A</sub> /V		
	stage A	stage B	stage C	stage A	stage B	stage C	stage A	stage B	stage C	stage A	stage B	stage C	stage A	stage B	stage C
A A	190	160	140	240	220	220	150	100	120	3.6	3.2	2.7	0.64	0.66	0.60
I B A	220	190	190	240	250	240	140	110	120	4.4	3.5	3.6	0.65	0.64	0.59
G H	170	180		230	230		120	120		3.1	3.3		0.64	0.70	
F A	200	170		270	280		110	110		3.6	3.0		0.73	0.65	
S F	260	240		300	340		140	120		1.9	1.7		0.66	0.71	
P N I	200		180	230		240	130		140	3.8		3.3	0.63		0.77
L A	240	170	240	290	260	290	130	120	110	4.5	3.3	4.5	0.71	0.66	0.72
L H	280	250		310	330		150	150		5.1	4.6		0.60	0.57	
R T	210	150		280	290		130	140		4.1	3.1		0.66	0.62	
V H	190	190		210	210		160	150		3.7	3.5		0.60	0.60	
I A I	190		160	200		220	100		120	3.6		2.7	0.73		0.63
I J I	1.0	170		210	210		120	120		3.4	3.3		0.62	0.65	
K N II		150	180	200	200	200	100	100	90		3.0	3.5		0.58	0.64
K N II	340	150	170	290	250	250	160	120	130	6.1	2.5	3.0	0.69	0.64	0.68
mean	220	180	180	250	260	240	130	120	120	4.0	3.4	3.3	0.66	0.64	0.66

The mean quotient  $\dot{V}_D/\dot{V}_I$  was 0.34 ( $\pm 0.01$ ) during wakefulness and 0.34 ( $\pm 0.02$ ) during sleep. Thus the quotient did not change noticeably between wakefulness and sleep and there was only moderate scatter between the subjects.

As shown in the previous chapter (page 23) the  $P_{ACO_2}$  determined by capnography was on the average 3 mm lower than the  $P_{CO_2}$  as measured in arterial blood. This fact should be taken into account when comparing the values given for both  $\dot{V}_A$ ,  $\dot{V}_D$  and the quotient  $\dot{V}_D/\dot{V}_I$  for these values were calculated with the aid of the capnographically determined  $P_{ACO_2}$  (see formula on page 17).

## RESPIRATORY VARIATIONS DURING ONSET OF SLEEP

*A Onset of sleep and periodic breathing*

The process of falling asleep was invariably accompanied by repeated periods of decrease in the EEG level of wakefulness. In more than two thirds of the subjects there was during the periods of onset of sleep periodic breathing (PB) of a more or less pronounced degree, implying undulations in ventilation ( $V$ ) and  $P_{ACO_2}$  as measured breath by breath. This type of breathing (PB) (Figs 3, 7 and 14) often lasted for 10–20 minutes, sometimes even longer. The "wave length" of each breathing period for  $V$  as well as for  $P_{ACO_2}$  was usually between 60 and 75 seconds. It rarely fell below 40 seconds, and then only slightly.

As mentioned in the previous chapter a decrease in wakefulness was invariably accompanied by a decrease in ventilation. The latter decrease was rapid and often became maximal within the first few breaths, sometimes even developed into transient apnoea. The more rapid and marked the initial fall in level of wakefulness, the more pronounced was the reduction in ventilation and the ensuing increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$ , as well as the degree of PB.

*The period of onset of sleep.* Onset of sleep was accompanied by periods of irregular, frequent variations, as well as of regular undulations in wakefulness and in respiration.

As a rule onset of sleep was initiated by a period of frequent variations in both wakefulness and respiration. This *introductory phase* was followed by an *intermediate phase* with reduced frequency of wakefulness changes in the EEG and a more regular periodicity of breathing and of wakefulness. There occurred a further decrease in wakefulness and increase in mean  $P_{ACO_2}$ . Usually a *final phase* could be recognized, during which definite sleep occurred. There was then a gradual decrease in the PB while the  $P_{ACO_2}$  became stable at a higher level.

In several subjects the ventilatory changes during periodic breathing were so marked and regular that they closely resembled CHEYNE STOKES breathing. As a rule however the changes in ventilation were more abrupt than in CHEYNE STOKES' breathing, especially in the presence of con-

mutant periodic arousal reactions in the EEG (Fig 14 a) In some cases periods of total apnoea for 10 to 20 seconds or more occurred occasionally for more than 1 minute Usually however, there was hypoventilation instead of apnoea

Marked irregular changes in ventilatory pattern (even resembling Biot's breathing) were noted in some subjects during the introductory phase of the onset of sleep concomitant to variations in the EEG pattern of wakefulness Some characteristic respiratory patterns during onset of sleep are shown in Figs 7 8 and 14 c

### B Observations on $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ at low levels of wakefulness

Apnoea or pronounced hypopnoea occurred only in the introductory phase of the onset of sleep and then only when the preceding  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  was relatively low situated in the V P diagram far to the left of the rectilinear part of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve for the lower stage of wakefulness during the hypopnoic phase When during a phase of apnoea or marked hypoventilation the successively increasing  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  reached values around the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold (T) of the response curve the ventilation usually started or increased anew It was then often followed by elevation of the level of wakefulness In some cases however the threshold was first markedly exceeded and then a sudden ventilatory increase appeared concomitant with an arousal reaction in the EEG

**$\text{CO}_2$  arousal threshold** In 13 subjects all with obvious periodicity in respiration and wakefulness while slowly falling asleep the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  values were measured immediately preceding or (when not measurable then) at the very beginning of arousal reactions in the EEG These  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  values were noted from periods during breathing (oxygen enriched) air as well as during  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing Apparently spontaneous awakenings from sound sleep were not included

All the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  values were grouped according to the level of wakefulness just before the arousal For every recording period and level of wakefulness the variation in the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  values was small the range usually less than  $\pm 1$  mm Hg The lower the level of wakefulness the higher was the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  at the time of the arousal Table V summarizes these results

**Comment** The comparatively small variation in these  $\text{CO}_2$  values of an individual at each wakefulness level may suggest a causal relationship between the high  $\text{CO}_2$  tension and the occurrence of the arousal On this account the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  values were regarded as ' $\text{CO}_2$  arousal thresholds' (see further under Discussion)



## RESPIRATORY VARIATIONS DURING ONSET OF SLEEP

*A Onset of sleep and periodic breathing*

The process of falling asleep was invariably accompanied by repeated periods of decrease in the EEG level of wakefulness. In more than two thirds of the subjects there was during the periods of onset of sleep periodic breathing (PB) of a more or less pronounced degree, implying undulations in ventilation ( $V$ ) and  $P_{ACO_2}$ , as measured breath by breath. This type of breathing (PB) (Figs 3, 7 and 14) often lasted for 10–20 minutes, some times even longer. The "wave length" of each breathing period for  $V$  as well as for  $P_{ACO_2}$  was usually between 60 and 75 seconds. It rarely fell below 40 seconds and then only slightly.

As mentioned in the previous chapter, a decrease in wakefulness was invariably accompanied by a decrease in ventilation. The latter decrease was rapid and often became maximal within the first few breaths, some times even developed into transient apnoea. The more rapid and marked the initial fall in level of wakefulness, the more pronounced was the reduction in ventilation and the ensuing increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$  as well as the degree of PB.

*The period of onset of sleep.* Onset of sleep was accompanied by periods of irregular, frequent variations as well as of regular undulations in wakefulness and in respiration.

As a rule, onset of sleep was initiated by a period of frequent variations in both wakefulness and respiration. This *introductory phase* was followed by an *intermediate phase* with reduced frequency of wakefulness changes in the EEG and a more regular periodicity of breathing and of wakefulness. There occurred a further decrease in wakefulness and increase in mean  $P_{ACO_2}$ . Usually a *final phase* could be recognized, during which definite sleep occurred. There was then a gradual decrease in the PB while the  $P_{ACO_2}$  became stable at a higher level.

In several subjects the ventilatory changes during periodic breathing were so marked and regular that they closely resembled CHEYNE STOKES' breathing. As a rule, however, the changes in ventilation were more abrupt than in CHEYNE STOKES' breathing, especially in the presence of conco

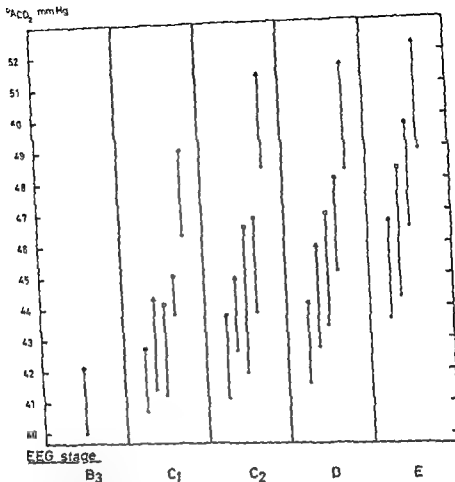


Fig. 17 Range of variation in  $P_{ACO_2}$  in five subjects (K. N. female aged 21; S. I. male aged 21; B. B. male aged 38; A. N. male aged 27 and K. B. female aged 42) for five stages of sleep (B<sub>3</sub> denotes very light sleep and stage C<sub>1</sub> divided into two subgroups C<sub>1</sub> and C<sub>2</sub> indicating slightly increasing depths of sleep). Upper value in each case and stage mark the  $CO_2$  at arousal threshold (see text).

shifts to slightly lower EEG levels of wakefulness (here called stages B<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>) implied some increase of the  $P_{ACO_2}$  values as is apparent from the figure.

$CO_2$  rebreathing during onset of sleep and during continuous sleep. The successive increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$  during the  $CO_2$  tests included a gradual

Table V  $\text{CO}_2$  arousal thresholds at different EEG stages of sleep  
(Within brackets the number of determinations)

$B_3$  denotes very light sleep Stage C is divided into two subgroups  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  indicating slightly increasing depths of sleep

Subj	stage $B_3$	stage $C_1$	stage $C_2$	stage D	stage E
		(5)	(30)	(9)	
M L		45.4	46.9	48.6	
	(2)	(9)	(5)	(2)	
F A	42.2	43.0	44.9	46.6	
		(2)	(4)	(5)	( <sup>a</sup> )
K A N I		45.0	46.8	48.0	49.7
		(6)	(13)	(3)	(2)
B B II		44.1	46.5	46.9	48.3
		(2)	(14)	(3)	(1)
M W		43.7	44.1	45.0	49.0
	(1)	(8)	(14)	(3)	(2)
B H III	39.8	40.8	41.9	42.4	44.1
		(9)	(25)	(7)	(2)
K B II		49.0	51.3	51.6	52.2
	(4)	(11)	(3)	(2)	
A H I	36.5	37.7	38.8	40.8	
		(5)	(7)	(3)	(11)
S I I		44.3	44.9	45.9	46.7
	(1)	(19)	(6)	(4)	
I A II	39.5	40.1	40.3	41.9	
		(10)	(17)	(4)	(1)
I J II		40.5	41.4	42.1	42.0
	(26)	(53)	(19)		
E N II	42.1	43.3	44.0		
	(6)	(9)	(6)	(3)	
K N III	42.1	42.7	43.7	44.1	

The range of variability in  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  for each stage of sleep was narrow and the limits were fairly stable during one and the same recording period. In deep sleep (stages D and E) the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  sometimes exceeded 50 mm Hg before an arousal reaction or a change in that direction appeared in the EEG, accompanied by a marked increase in ventilation. On reinvestigation of the same subject the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  range for each stage of sleep sometimes shifted somewhat, always however in the same direction and to the same degree.

Fig. 17 shows the  $\text{CO}_2$  ranges of 5 representative subjects. For obvious reasons the arousal reactions observed from deep sleep were few in each investigation. However, within the limits of the EEG stages B to C even

ACO<sub>2</sub> mmHg

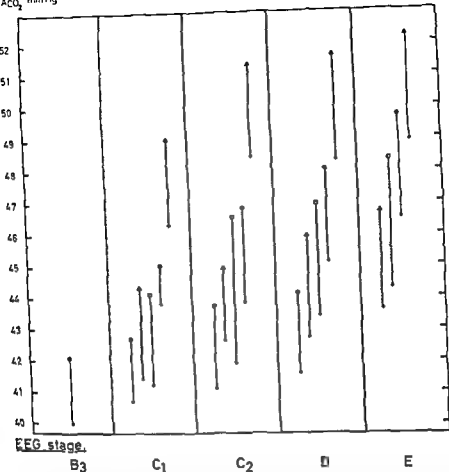


Fig 17 Range of variation in PACO<sub>2</sub> in five subjects (● N female aged 21 ■ I male aged 21 ◻ M male aged 23 △ N male aged 27 and ◼ female aged 46) for five stages of sleep (B<sub>3</sub> denotes very light sleep and stage C<sub>1</sub> is divided into two subgroups C<sub>1</sub> and C<sub>2</sub> indicating lightly increasing depths of sleep) Upper value in each case and stage marks the CO<sub>2</sub> arousal threshold (see text)

shifts to lightly lower EEG levels of wakefulness (here called stages B<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>) implied some increase of the PACO<sub>2</sub> values as is apparent from the figure

CO<sub>2</sub> rebreathing during onset of sleep and during continuous sleep The successive increase in PACO<sub>2</sub> during the CO<sub>2</sub> tests included a gradual decrease of PB The wave length of the respiratory undulations however

showed no definite tendency to change. Somewhat later the concomitant EEG variations in wakefulness showed a tendency to disappear, too.

A drowsy subject often fell asleep very easily during a CO test. This phenomenon appeared to be due to the fact that as, during the CO<sub>2</sub> rebreathing, the respiratory periodicity became less accentuated, the increased  $P_{ACO_2}$  became more rapidly stable within the above mentioned  $P_{CO_2}$  range for the sleep stage. If, during the further course of the CO test the  $P_{ACO_2}$  exceeded the "arousal threshold", the subject woke up and remained awake during the rest of the test. When, however, the depth of sleep increased further during the test, sleep often continued through and after termination of the test. During the following rapid fall in inspiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  the ventilation then gradually decreased and became stable without any prominent undulations. If, however, during a CO<sub>2</sub> test, the  $P_{ACO_2}$  exceeded about 50 mm Hg the subject always woke up even if he was in a deep sleep.

At other times, particularly when the subject was in the initial phase of sleep onset, he became clearly awake when the PB variations ceased during the CO<sub>2</sub> test. This often followed upon a strong arousal reaction, preceded by a phase of hypoventilation and high  $P_{ACO_2}$ . In these cases a distinct PB usually reappeared one or a few minutes after discontinuation of the test. There were then typical fluctuations in the EEG level of wakefulness, too.

## VENTILATORY RESPONSE TO CARBON DIOXIDE (CARBON DIOXIDE SENSITIVITY) AND WAKEFULNESS

The response of ventilation to gradually augmented  $P_{ACO_2}$  during different EEG levels of wakefulness was studied in more than 300  $CO_2$  tests. As described on page 26 the results of the tests were plotted in V-P diagrams as response curves.

In many cases the slope of the  $CO_2$  response curve approached the horizontal level at low  $P_{ACO_2}$  values (page 26). This was the fact irrespective of the prevailing level of wakefulness. Above a limited range of  $P_{ACO_2}$  values however there was a distinct slope (SQ) and this part of the curve was roughly rectilinear (Figs 6-18). This was especially obvious in situations with regular even undisturbed breathing and a stable EEG pattern.

During every recording period the position as well as the slope of the rectilinear part of the response curve in the V-P diagram was largely unchanged for identical levels of wakefulness. It was also found that when the investigation was repeated in the same subject after an interval of months or even 1-3 years the slope of the response curve remained strikingly constant. The position however of the response curve in the V-P diagram could have changed but always in the same direction and to about the same degree for all stages of wakefulness (Fig. 29).

The slope as well as the position of the ventilation  $CO_2$  response curves for identical levels of wakefulness varied widely from one individual to another. These quantitative interindividual differences are evaluated in the next chapter.

### A *Threshold and slope of the $CO_2$ response curve during wakefulness at rest (EEG stage A)*

As described on page 27 the position of a  $CO_2$  response curve in the V-P diagram was defined by the  $CO_2$  standard threshold  $sT$  and the slope of the rectilinear part of the response curve by the stimulus response quotient SQ. The mean SQ of all stage A response curves was 0.8 ( $\pm 0.0$ ) L/min/m<sup>3</sup>/mm Hg; the mean  $sT_A$  was 38.6 ( $\pm 0.4$ ) mm Hg.

The interrelationship of position and slope of the response curves was studied for all the subjects during wakefulness (stage A). When the subjects

showed no definite tendency to change. Somewhat later the concomitant EEG variations in wakefulness showed a tendency to disappear, too.

A drowsy subject often fell asleep very easily during a  $\text{CO}_2$  test. This phenomenon appeared to be due to the fact that as during the  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing, the respiratory periodicity became less accentuated, the increased  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  became more rapidly stable within the above mentioned  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  range for the sleep stage. If, during the further course of the  $\text{CO}_2$  test the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  exceeded the "arousal threshold", the subject woke up and remained awake during the rest of the test. When, however, the depth of sleep increased further during the test, sleep often continued through and after termination of the test. During the following rapid fall in inspiratory  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ , the ventilation then gradually decreased and became stable without any prominent undulations. If, however, during a  $\text{CO}_2$  test, the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  exceeded about 50 mm Hg, the subject always woke up even if he was in a deep sleep.

At other times, particularly when the subject was in the initial phase of sleep onset, he became clearly awake when the PB variations ceased during the  $\text{CO}_2$  test. This often followed upon a strong arousal reaction preceded by a phase of hypoventilation and high  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ . In these cases a distinct PB usually reappeared one or a few minutes after discontinuation of the test. There were then typical fluctuations in the EEG level of wakefulness, too.

$sT_A$  The scatter of these two values between the individuals was appreciable in both groups and there was a wide overlapping in  $sT_A$

### B Ventilatory response to $CO_2$ during lower levels of wakefulness

A fall in wakefulness was invariably accompanied by a downward shift to the right in the position of the  $CO_2$  response curve in the V P diagram. This implies that the ventilation for a given  $P_{ACO_2}$  value was always lower at a lower level of wakefulness.

Any arousal reaction or change in that direction was immediately followed by an increase of ventilation  $P_{CO_2}$  response and then the response curve shifted upwards and to the left in the V P diagram. The more marked the change in the EEG the greater was this upward shift of the curve to the left. It was therefore especially pronounced following arousal from deep sleep.

During comparable states of respiratory stability the largest shift in position ( $sT$ ) of the  $CO_2$  response curve was in general found between stage A awake and stage C light sleep. As a rule however the shift was evident already between stage A and stage B (drowsiness).

For 2 of the subjects the V P points of  $CO_2$  tests during different EEG stages are shown in Figs 18 and 19. The shift of the ventilatory response to  $CO_2$  with the EEG stage is obvious. (For clarity only two  $CO_2$  response lines have been drawn for each individual.)

Between light and deep sleep (EEG stages C and D or E respectively) the shift downwards to the right of the ventilation  $CO_2$  response was as a rule obvious too. During deep sleep (stages D and E) respiration was often very stable. As mentioned in Chapter III slow transitions between the two stages were sometimes not demonstrable in the respiration. The difference in  $sT$  between the two stages  $\Delta sT_{D-E}$  was usually small and sometimes uncertain.

It is clear from the foregoing that the close interrelationship existing between the shift of the response curve and the corresponding change in the EEG stage of wakefulness does not imply also a quantitative correlation between the  $\Delta sT$  value and the shift from one EEG stage to another. Between e.g. stages C and E the  $\Delta sT$  was usually smaller than between stages A and C.

In several subjects there was a slight to moderate decrease of the slope  $SQ$  of the ventilation  $CO_2$  response curve during sleep. For several other cases however a decrease in slope was not very clear. In no case was an increase in  $SQ$  noted during sleep.



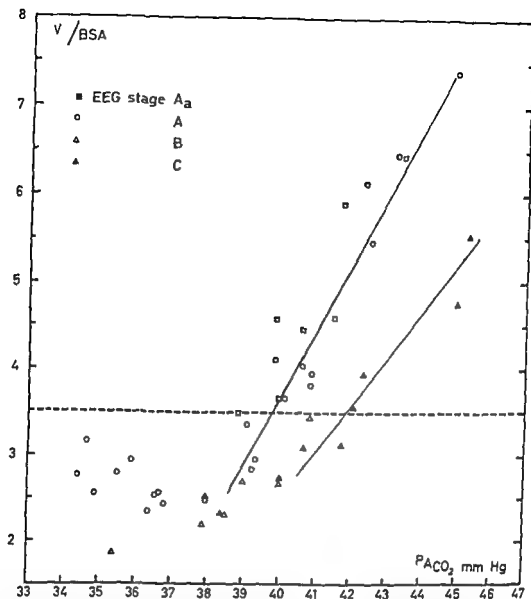


Fig 18 A O female aged 26 Ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response lines for stages A and C from  $\text{CO}_2$  (rebreathing) tests. At values below about 39 mm Hg (  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold T) ventilation in stage A is apparently independent of the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension and the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve approaches a horizontal line ( subthreshold ventilation).

Note the shift of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response line to the right with decrease in wakefulness. (The broken horizontal line is the standard ventilation (sV) line.)

were divided according to the slope,  $\text{SQ}$ , for stage A into 2 groups of equal number, the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves of the group with the lower  $\text{SQ}$  had an  $\text{sT}_A$  of  $38.9 (\pm 0.6)$  and in the other group the value was  $38.3 (\pm 0.6)$ . Therefore no apparent correlation was found between  $\text{SQ}$  and

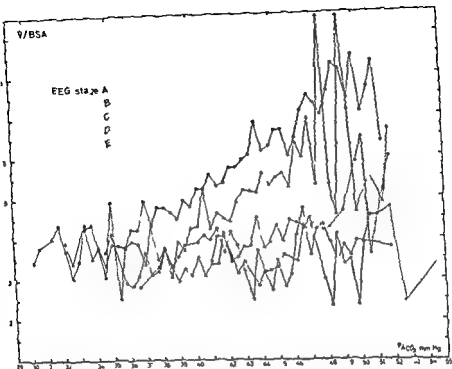


Fig. 20 Mean ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves for the different stages of wakefulness of the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests from the first 3/4 of all the investigations (For details see text.) There is a clear shift downwards to the right of the response curves with decrease in wakefulness but there is overlapping between adjacent EEG stages

### C. Mean ventilation $\text{CO}_2$ response curves during different levels of wakefulness

In the  $\Delta P$  diagram in Fig. 20 the " $\Delta P$  points" of the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests (from the first three fourths of all the investigations) have been grouped in steps of 0.4 mm Hg of  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  and according to EEG stage of wakefulness. Each point in the diagram shows the mean ventilation/m BSA for each EEG stage and each step of  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ . Points belonging to corresponding EEG stages are joined to show the mean  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves. It is obvious from the diagram that the response curves of adjacent stages of wakefulness overlapped. However the diagram shows a clear tendency to a shift of the response curve downwards to the right with a decrease in wakefulness.

In Fig. 21 the mean changes in position as well as in slope of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves with changes in wakefulness are given quantitatively.

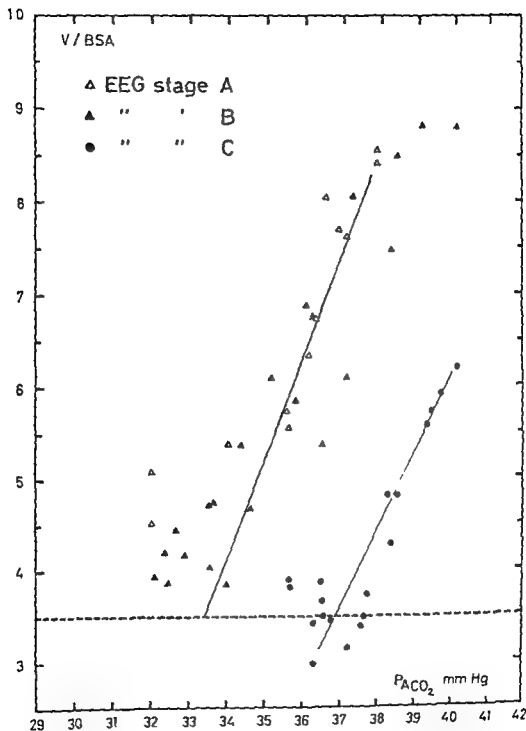


Fig 19 Subj B H male 23 years The diagram shows the same principal findings as in Fig 18 The shift between wakefulness and sleep of the  $CO_2$  response line is here larger

This diagram was constructed in the following way. For all 73 separate investigations in which  $\text{CO}_2$  tests were performed also during drowsiness and/or sleep the slopes (of the linear part) of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves for wakefulness stage A were converted into one common reference mean slope. This was obtained by multiplying  $\dot{V}/\text{BSA}$  of each  $\dot{V}/P$  point by the quotient [mean  $\text{SQ}/\text{SQ}$  for the individual]. Then all stage A curves with a common slope were transformed into one common reference mean curve for all the investigations by adding to the  $\text{PACO}_2$  value of each  $\dot{V}/P$  point the difference in position (calculated in mm Hg at zero ventilation on the x axis of the  $\dot{V}/P$  diagram) as compared with the common mean curve.

Then for each investigation the values for  $\dot{V}/\text{BSA}$  as well as for  $\text{PACO}_2$  of all the other  $\dot{V}/P$  points representing other stages of wakefulness were corrected by the same factors as those used for stage A. The points in the diagram represent the means of the converted values for each step of 0.4 mm Hg for each EEG stage of wakefulness (as in the diagram in Fig. 20). The diagram is based upon more than 3 000  $\dot{V}/P$  points. Points during sleep situated clearly below the prevailing  $\text{aT}$  value were not included.

*In brief this means that all the response curves were scaled to one common reference curve (stage A) for all the individuals.*

It is evident from the diagram that there was a clear difference in position of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve between wakefulness (stage A) and light to moderately deep sleep (stage C) or between stage C and deep sleep (stages D and E). For drowsiness (stage B) the curve was situated between stages A and C. The scatter of the points was somewhat wider for drowsiness than for other stages, a finding explained by the usually unstable respiration and EEG in this transitory stage between wakefulness and sleep.

The diagram in Fig. 21 also shows a slight decrease in the slope of the curves during sleep. This is most obvious during the stages of deep sleep.

The extension to the right of the response curves for sleep stages is limited in the diagram to about 50 mm Hg. Therefore the curves for stages D and E are rather short. In addition the number of  $\dot{V}/P$  points at the highest  $\text{PACO}_2$  values is relatively small during sleep. This is due to the fact that a  $\text{PACO}_2$  of 50 mm Hg or more was incompatible with sleep, as mentioned in the foregoing chapter.

The  $\dot{V}/P$  diagram in Fig. 22 illustrates schematically the main differences described between the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves of different EEG stages.

The diagram also shows for each stage the extrapolated "apnoea threshold" (LINDHARD 1933) if  $\dot{V}/P$  (of the used  $\text{Hv}$  regression of the rectilinear parts of the curve to the zero line of the y axis).

#### D Ventilatory response to $\text{CO}_2$ during tense alertness

During tense alertness  $A_4$  there was a slight mean shift of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve to the left (Figs 21 and 22). The mean  $\text{D T}_{A_4}$  was

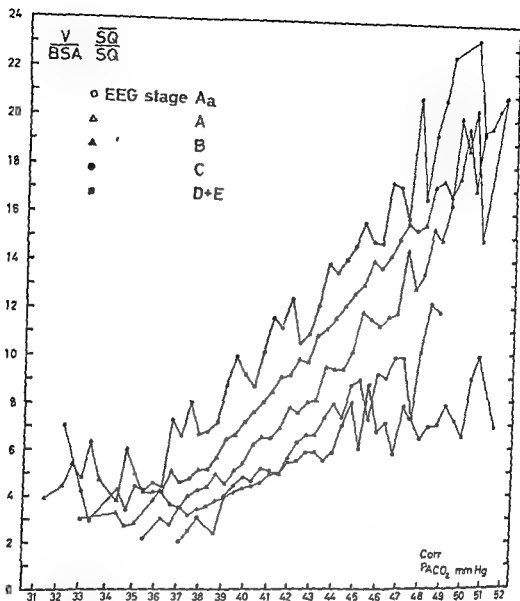


Fig 21 Mean ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response of all  $\text{CO}_2$  tests from all the investigations (based upon more than 3 000 V P points). The mean differences in the position and slope of the response curves between different levels of wakefulness (including stage Aa) are here given quantitatively. All points are scaled to one common reference curve stage A. For the calculation procedures and detailed comments see text.

There is a clear shift downwards to the right but also a decrease in the slope of the response curve with decreasing wakefulness. For tense alertness a mean shift to the left is seen (without obvious change in slope).

This diagram was constructed in the following way. For all 73 separate investigations in which  $\text{CO}_2$  tests were performed also during drowsiness and/or sleep the slopes (of the linear part) of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves for wakefulness stage A, were converted into one common reference mean slope. This was obtained by multiplying  $\dot{V}/\text{BSA}$  of each  $\dot{V}/P$  point by the quotient [mean  $\text{SQ}/\text{SQ}$  for the individual]. Then all stage A curves with a common slope were transformed into one common reference mean curve for all the investigations by adding to the  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  value of each  $\dot{V}/P$  point the difference in position (calculated in mm Hg at zero ventilation on the x axis of the  $\dot{V}/P$  diagram) as compared with the common mean curve.

Then for each investigation the values for  $\dot{V}/\text{BSA}$  as well as for  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  of all the other  $\dot{V}/P$  points representing other stages of wakefulness were corrected by the same factors as those used for stage A. The points in the diagram represent the means of the converted values for each step of 0.4 mm Hg for each FEG stage of wakefulness (as in the diagram in Fig. 20). The diagram is based upon more than 3 000  $\dot{V}/P$  points. Points during sleep situated clearly below the prevailing  $\Delta T$  value were not included.

*In brief this means that all the response curves were scaled in one common reference curve (stage A) for all the individuals.*

It is evident from the diagram that there was a clear difference in position of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve between wakefulness (stage A) and light to moderately deep sleep (stage C) or between stage C and deep sleep (stages D and E). For drowsiness (stage B) the curve was situated between stages A and C. The scatter of the points was somewhat wider for drowsiness than for other stages, a finding explained by the usually unstable respiration and EEG in this transitory stage between wakefulness and sleep.

The diagram in Fig. 21 also shows a slight decrease in the slope of the curves during sleep. This is most obvious during the stages of deep sleep.

The extension to the right of the response curves for sleep stages is limited in the diagram to about 50 mm Hg. Therefore the curves for stages D and E are rather short. In addition the number of  $\dot{V}/P$  points at the highest  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  values is relatively small during sleep. This is due to the fact that a  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  of 50 mm Hg or more was incompatible with sleep, as mentioned in the foregoing chapter.

The  $\dot{V}/P$  diagram in Fig. 22 illustrates schematically the main differences described between the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves of different FEG stages.

The diagram also shows for each stage the extrapolated "apnoea threshold" (LINDHARD 1933) of  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  (obtained by regression of the rectilinear parts of the curves to the zero line of the x axis).

#### D Ventilatory response to $\text{CO}_2$ during tense alertness

During tense alertness  $A_{\Delta}$  there was a slight mean shift of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve to the left (Figs 21 and 22). The mean  $D_{\Delta}T_{A_{\Delta}}$  was

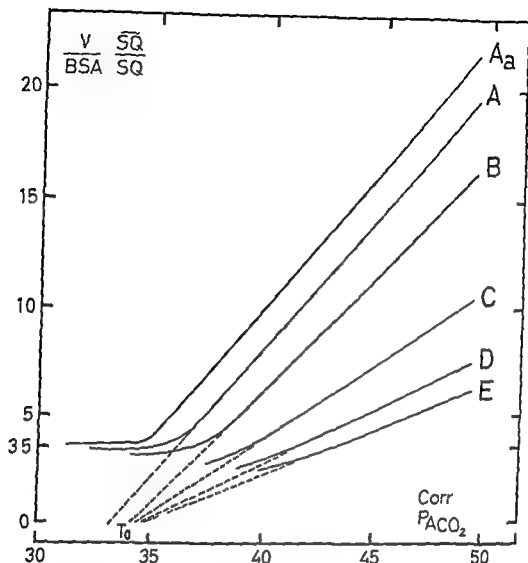


Fig 22 Schematic drawing showing the principal findings from Fig 21 See text

14 ( $\pm 0.2$ ) mm Hg. It is evident from Fig 21 that the scatter of the values around the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve was wide. In 3 of the 30 investigations, where  $\text{CO}_2$  tests were performed during stage  $A_a$ , the position of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve did not differ clearly from that for stage A. In other investigations, however, the  $\text{DsT}_{A_a}$  was high and the SQ clearly increased (Fig 23). A typical very slight change is shown in Fig 24.

There was no clear change observed in mean SQ when all the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests of stage  $A_a$  were scaled to the common reference curve of stage A (Fig 21).

No correlation was found between the extent of the shift of an individual's response curve from wakefulness to sleep ( $\text{DsT}_{A_c}$ ), and from wakefulness to tense alertness, ( $\text{DsT}_{A_a}$ ).

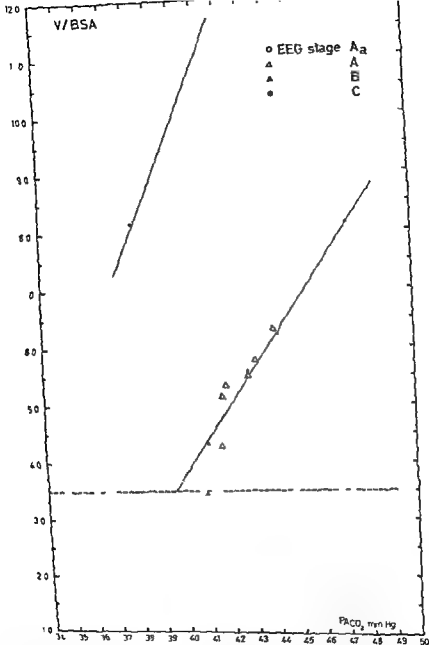


Fig. 3 Subj. L. II male aged 49. Ventilar on  $CO_2$  repon. lines for wakefulness (stage A) and for tense alertness (stage Aa). There is a marked shift to the left and also increased slope of the repon. line during stage Aa in this case. Usually however the change was only slight or moderate without any certain change in the slope.

Large symbols represent V.P. points from  $CO_2$  shunt tests (page 9). In this case the greater stability of the respiratory balance during prolonged  $CO_2$  rebreathing had no clear influence on the position of the response line of stage A.



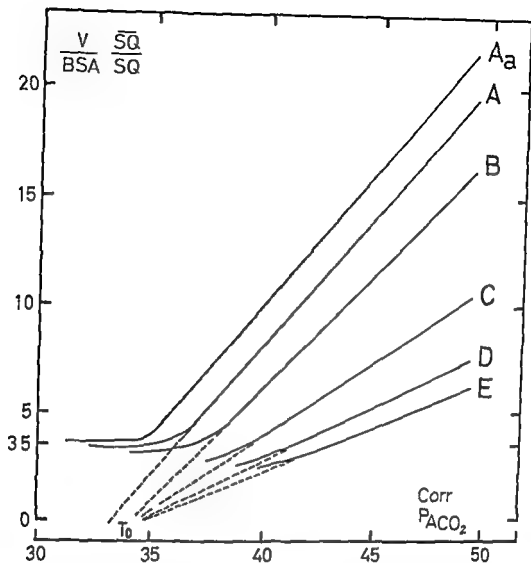


Fig 22 Schematic drawing showing the principal findings from Fig 21 See text

1.4 ( $\pm 0.2$ ) mm Hg. It is evident from Fig 21 that the scatter of the values around the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve was wide. In 3 of the 30 investigations, where  $\text{CO}_2$  tests were performed during stage  $A_a$ , the position of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve did not differ clearly from that for stage A. In other investigations, however, the  $DsT_{Aa}$  was high and the SQ clearly increased (Fig 23). A typical very slight change is shown in Fig 21.

There was no clear change observed in mean SQ when all the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests of stage  $A_a$  were scaled to the common reference curve of stage A (Fig 21).

No correlation was found between the extent of the shift of an individual's response curve from wakefulness to sleep ( $DsT_{Ac}$ ), and from wakefulness to tense alertness ( $DsT_{Aa}$ ).

## INTERINDIVIDUAL DIFFERENCES IN RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING CHANGES IN WAKEFULNESS

### A $DsT_{AE}$ and periodic breathing

In the preceding chapter it was shown that the change in respiration with level of wakefulness was particularly marked between stages A and C. This stage (C) of light sleep was noted in most of the subjects. The difference in 'standard threshold' of  $P_{ACO_2}$  between these stages the  $DsT_{AC}$  was therefore used for comparison between individuals regarding respiration in wakefulness and sleep.

The variation in an individual's  $DsT_{AC}$  on repeated occasions was usually small. The interindividual variation of the  $DsT_{AC}$  was however considerable and ranged between 0.0 and 8.6 mm Hg.

Table VI (after text) gives the main data on  $SQ$ ,  $sT_A$  and also the  $DsT$  between different EEG stages obtained during all investigations where  $CO_2$  tests could be performed during stage A as well as during sleep and/or drowsiness. In addition the degree of PB during onset of sleep in all these investigations is classified according to the following criteria:

+++ Very marked PB during usually repeated sections of at least 15 minutes duration. In the phases of hypoventilation  $V$  is for several breaths less than 1/4 of that during the hyperventilation phase. Sometimes even apnoea appears and the PB may closely resemble Cheyne Stokes breathing. The concomitant variations in alveolar  $CO_2$  concentration is 1 per cent or more (this corresponds to  $P_{ACO_2}$  differences of more than 5 mm Hg).

++ Prolonged PB (for more than 10–15 minutes) when  $V$  in the hypoventilation phase is less than about 1/3 of  $V$  during hyperventilation and the corresponding  $P_{ACO_2}$  variations are at least 5 mm Hg.

+ Distinct PB for at least 5–10 minutes but with less pronounced variation in  $V$  and  $P_{ACO_2}$ .

0 Very light or no PB.

A close agreement was found between the  $DsT_{AE}$  and the degree of PB in all the subjects (Fig. 2c). When the  $DsT_{AC}$  of an individual was high respiratory periodicity regularly occurred while he was falling asleep. Subjects with Cheyne Stokes' like breathing showed the largest  $DsT_{AC}$ . Like the  $DsT_{AC}$  the type and degree of PB were fairly constant in each subject.

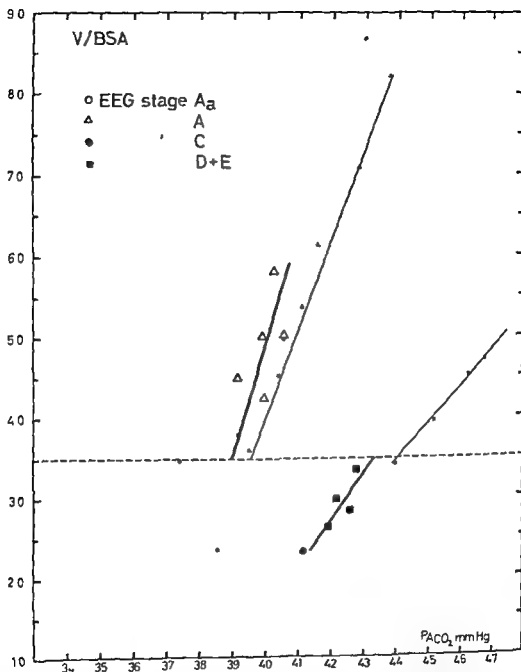


Fig. 24 Subj. J A female aged 22. This diagram illustrates a slight change in  $CO_2$  response (shift of the curve to the left and probably also a slight increase in slope) during prolonged  $CO_2$  rebreathing ( $CO_2$  shunt tests - see page 29). Large symbols refer to  $V/P$  values from  $CO_2$  shunt tests. It is apparent that the differences between wakefulness and sleep in position and in slope of the response curve are largely the same during the routine  $CO_2$  tests and during the prolonged  $CO_2$  rebreathing at constantly increased  $PACO_2$  value.

The former group was designated the 'unstable' group because of the prominent lability in respiration with a change in wakefulness. In contrast hereto the latter group was called the stable one.

In some cases it was not possible to calculate  $sT_C$  with accuracy. This was usually due to too small a number of  $\dot{V}_P$  points during sleep in 1 case because stage C passed so rapidly that  $CO_2$  tests for sleep were not practicable until during a deeper sleep stage. In some cases only  $sT_B$  could be calculated. It is clear from Table VI that like the  $DsT_{A-C}$  the  $DsT_{A-B}$  was higher in patients with marked PB. Therefore such cases were grouped above or below 1.5 according to stability with the aid of  $SQ$ .  $DsT_{A-B}$ .

In a few subjects the EEG level of wakefulness invariably passed from stage A to stage C so quickly that  $sT$  could not be determined for a typical stage B. In these cases  $sT$  is given for the transitional stage  $B_1$  between A and B (page 21).

When the subjects were divided according to  $DsT_{A-B}$  and not according to the product of  $SQ$   $DsT_{A-C}$  only 1 borderline case (IS Table VI) was found to have changed from one group to the other. It is thus clear that the variation in  $SQ$  (0.4 to 1.4) had no substantial influence on the degree of PB or assignment of a patient to the 'unstable' or 'stable' group. This was determined mainly by the  $DsT_{A-C}$ . The  $DsT_{A-C}$  was in these normals thus not only representative of the change in position of the  $O_2$  response curve (increase of  $CO_2$  threshold value) but mainly also for the change in the ventilatory response to  $P_{ACO_2}$  between wakefulness and sleep.

The two  $\dot{V}_P$  diagrams in Figs 26 and 27 are based upon the same values as in Fig 21 but separated according to the two groups of stability. (Both groups thus are referred to the same reference curve of stage A.) For the stable group there is only a small shift from wakefulness to drowsiness (stage B) in the position of the ventilation  $CO_2$  response curve. The shift is however demonstrable with certainty for definite sleep (stage C). Furthermore no definite decrease in slope  $SQ$  is demonstrable in this group.

The two groups of stability differed slightly in  $SQ$  and in  $sT_A$  namely for the former value 0.66 ( $\pm 0.03$ ) and 0.83 ( $\pm 0.03$ ) and for the latter value 40.1 ( $\pm 0.2$ ) and 37.8 ( $\pm 0.4$ ) respectively (Table VI). The stable group showed the lower  $SQ$  and the higher  $sT_A$ . The differences were however not ascertainable.

### C. Correlation between respiratory stability and other variables

The two groups of respiratory stability were correlated with some other variable respiratory (measured during stable respiration) as well as non respiratory.

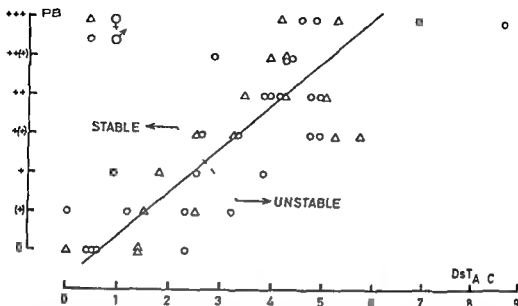


Fig 25 Correlation between degree of periodic breathing (PB) and magnitude of shift of  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve ( $\text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  in mm Hg) between wakefulness and sleep in all the 44 subjects in whom  $\text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  was measured

In those subjects in whom  $\text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  was measured also during reinvestigation, the mean values are given. In these cases the variations in  $\text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  on different occasions were small (see Table VI). For grading criteria of PB see page 61.

### B The "stable" and the "unstable" group

In subjects with low SQ, a given shift in  $\text{DsT}$  implies a larger change in ventilation than in subjects with a high SQ. In order to assess the change in the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$ ,  $\text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  was also multiplied by the subject's SQ. This product,  $\text{SQ} \cdot \text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  (also given in Table VI) might be supposed to reflect the degree of PB. However, the correlation to PB proved to be quite as good for  $\text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  as for  $\text{SQ} \cdot \text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$ .

With the aid of  $\text{SQ} \cdot \text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  the subjects were divided into 2 main groups (see Table VI), one characterized by disposition for PB when falling asleep, the other with at most a slight tendency to PB. In the former group including slightly more than two thirds of the subjects the  $\text{SQ} \cdot \text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  was larger than 2.5. At the onset of definite sleep, these individuals usually reached a larger difference in  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  as well as in  $\dot{V}$  from the values when awake, also when breathing the ordinary air mixture (without carbon dioxide, Table VIII). In the deeper stages of sleep, too, this group showed a larger increase in  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  than the other group. The  $\text{SQ} \cdot \text{DsT}_{\text{Ac}}$  of the latter group varied between 0.0 and 2.5.

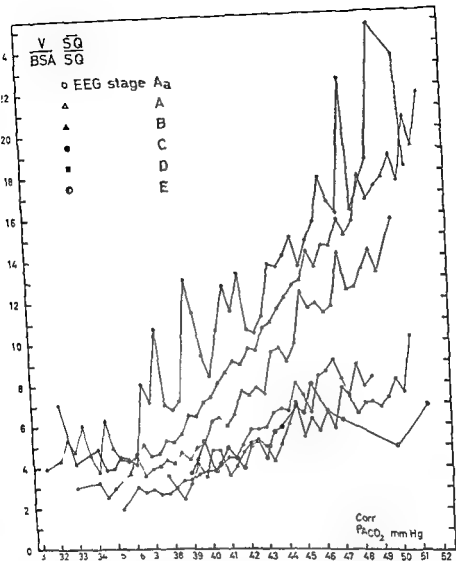


Fig. Mean relation on  $CO_2$  response at different levels of wakefulness of all "unstable" subjects (3 cases, 48 investigations). As in Fig. 6 the diagram is based upon scaled  $\square$  used for Fig. 1. Therefore the reference line (stage A) has the same position and slope as in Figs. 1 and 6.

There is a prominent shift downwards to the right and a clear decrease in the slope of the  $CO_2$  response curve with each decrease in wakefulness. The change between different levels of sleep is smaller than between stages A, B and C. For stage Aa there is large scatter of the points but only slight overlapping of stage A.

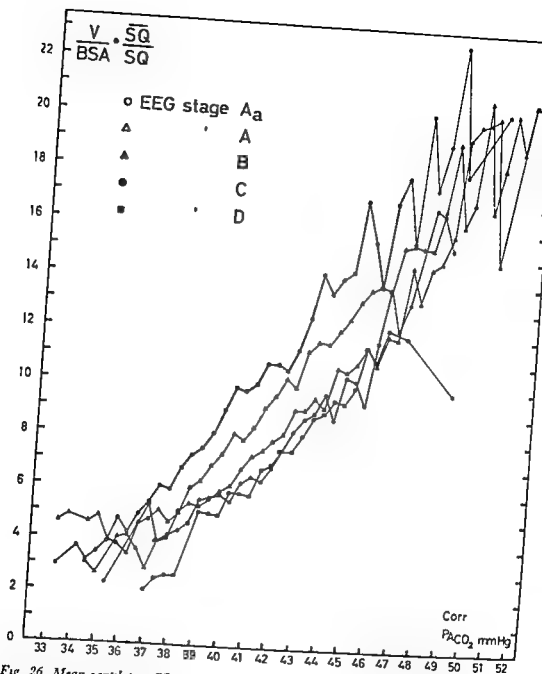


Fig 26 Mean ventilation  $CO_2$  response at different levels of wakefulness of all stable subjects (18 cases 25 investigation) The diagram is founded on values calculated for Fig 21 with a common reference line for stage A

There is only a slight shift of the curve (downwards to the right) with decreasing wakefulness and no clear decrease in slope

Table VIII Ventilation and  $\text{PACO}_2$  awake (stage A) and asleep (stage C) in the "stable" and the unstable group

	V/BSA			$\text{PACO}_2$			$\frac{\dot{V}_{\text{stage C}}}{\dot{V}_{\text{stage A}}}$	$\frac{[\dot{V}/\text{PACO}_2]_{\text{stage C}}}{[\dot{V}/\text{PACO}_2]_{\text{stage A}}}$
	stage A	stage C	Diff	stage A	stage C	Diff		
Stable group (12 subjects)	3.4 ( $\pm 0.2$ )	2.7 ( $\pm 0.2$ )	0.7 ( $\pm 0.1$ )	37.7 ( $\pm 0.8$ )	39.8 ( $\pm 0.7$ )	2.1 ( $\pm 0.3$ )	0.80 ( $\pm 0.07$ )	0.76 ( $\pm 0.03$ )
Unstable group (17 subjects)	3.4 ( $\pm 0.2$ )	2.5 ( $\pm 0.1$ )	1.0 ( $\pm 0.1$ )	36.8 ( $\pm 0.4$ )	40.5 ( $\pm 0.8$ )	3.8 ( $\pm 0.4$ )	0.73 ( $\pm 0.02$ )	0.66 ( $\pm 0.03$ )

Both Table VII and Table VIII are founded on mean values from several separate V-P points in each subject and stage of wakefulness (stages A and C)

There was no noteworthy difference in any of the pulmonary capacities measured (vital capacity, functional residual capacity and maximal breathing capacity) between the two groups of stability.

The body surface area BSA was  $1.8 (\pm 0.0) \text{ m}^2$  in both groups. The two groups did not differ in respect of the oxygen uptake during a steady state in stage A (the basal metabolic rate). This was also the case regarding age and sex distribution (Table VI).

The two groups of stability were also compared as to differences in the EEG pattern during the routine examinations (p. c. 10). Subjects belonging to the unstable group showed a stronger tendency to minor deviations from a very regular alpha pattern than did the stable cases (BLOW & JACOBSEN 1963 c).



Table VII *Tidal volume and respiratory frequency awake (EEG stage A) and asleep (EEG stage C) in the stable and the unstable group*

	$V_T$			$f$			$\frac{V_T}{f \cdot 10}$		
	stage A	stage C	Diff A-C	stage A	stage C	Diff A-C	stage A	stage C	Diff A-C
Stable group (12 subjects)	490 ( $\pm 40$ )	310 ( $\pm 20$ )	150 ( $\pm 30$ )	13.0 ( $\pm 0.6$ )	15.0 ( $\pm 0.5$ )	-2.0 ( $\pm 0.8$ )	3.9 ( $\pm 0.4$ )	2.4 ( $\pm 0.1$ )	1.6 ( $\pm 0.4$ )
Unstable group (19 subjects)	430 ( $\pm 20$ )	310 ( $\pm 20$ )	110 ( $\pm 20$ )	15.4 ( $\pm 0.9$ )	15.1 ( $\pm 0.6$ )	0.3 ( $\pm 0.6$ )	3.0 ( $\pm 0.3$ )	2.2 ( $\pm 0.1$ )	0.9 ( $\pm 0.2$ )

Table VII gives the main data of frequency and volume of breathing in 31 subjects in which a satisfactorily stable respiration occurred in sleep during (oxygen enriched) air breathing. In both groups the interindividual range of variation in frequency of breathing during wakefulness (stage A) was wide. The mean ventilatory frequency was, however, lower in the stable group than in the unstable one 13.0 ( $\pm 0.6$ )/min and 15.4 ( $\pm 0.9$ )/min respectively. During sleep no difference in mean ventilatory frequency was found between the groups (15 breaths/min in each group). Thus there was a mean increase in frequency of breathing between wakefulness and sleep in the stable group but an inconsiderable decrease in the unstable group.

As to the tidal volume the decrease between wakefulness and sleep was clearly present in both groups, 150 ( $\pm 30$ ) ml/min in the stable group and 110 ( $\pm 20$ ) in the unstable group.

Thus in the subjects belonging to the stable group the decrease in tidal volume in sleep was largely compensated by the increase in respiratory frequency resulting in only a small reduction of the total ventilation. In the unstable group, however, the decrease in tidal volume during sleep was roughly proportional to the reduction in the ventilation. Therefore the change in the quotient tidal volume/respiratory frequency was larger in the stable group.

Table VIII summarizes the mean data for ventilation and  $P_{ACO_2}$  in stage A and C of the same subjects as in Table VII (except for 2 cases where not a sufficient number of accurate  $P_{ACO_2}$  values was available from a stable stage C). The mean ventilation during (oxygen enriched) air breathing and EEG stage A was 3.4 ( $\pm 0.2$ ) L/min/m<sup>2</sup> for both the stable group and for the unstable one. The corresponding values for alveolar CO<sub>2</sub> tension were 37.7 ( $\pm 0.8$ ) and 36.8 ( $\pm 0.4$ ) mm Hg respectively. (The difference in  $P_{ACO_2}$  between the groups cannot be considered established).

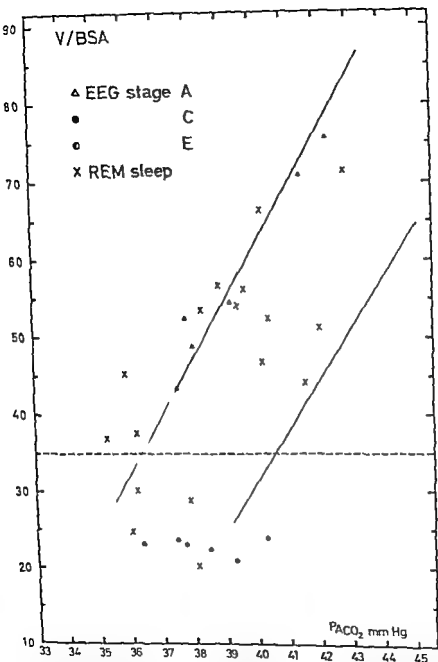


Fig. 8. Subject 1 J, female, aged 20. Ventilation CO<sub>2</sub> response estimation from REM sleep. For comparison the CO<sub>2</sub> response lines for stage A (awake) and C (light sleep) are drawn. There is a large scatter of the V/P point throughout the CO<sub>2</sub> test during REM sleep. However, the mean CO<sub>2</sub> response line seems to be situated between the two lines in the diagram and therefore close to that for stage B. (For clarity the V/P points from stage B also showing a rather large scatter were excluded in the diagram.)

## RESPIRATION DURING THE "RAPID EYE MOVEMENT" STAGE OF SLEEP

Electro oculography was performed in 14 of the investigations (on 12 subjects), simultaneously with EEG in order to detect the REM (rapid eye movement) stage of sleep. Although periods of sleep of varying depth occurred during most of the investigations, only a few periods of REM sleep were long enough to permit detailed evaluation of the respiratory pattern and the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response.

### A Respiratory pattern

During all the periods of REM sleep a *pronounced respiratory instability* was observed. In contrast to what was usually seen while the subjects were falling asleep, the respiratory variations during REM sleep appeared entirely irregular, without any obvious tendency to undulate as during PB.

In REM sleep during air breathing  $V$  and  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  varied around the same mean values as in stage B. There were no characteristic differences in the spirographic pattern of the individual breaths compared with stage B. The striking general irregularity in respiration was particularly obvious when the eye movements were very frequent.

Variations in the EEG pattern during REM sleep showed no close correlation with those in the pattern or degree of ventilation. In general, however, when during this REM stage theta frequencies were prominent and the EEG pattern therefore resembled stage C, ventilation was somewhat lower than during periods when low voltage fast activity dominated the EEG.

### B Ventilation $\text{CO}_2$ response

In some subjects episodes of REM sleep occurred during parts of  $\text{CO}_2$  tests, but during other parts of the test the sleep stage was changed or in the absence of repeated eye movements not recognizable with certainty. In at least 1 subject, however, the main part of the  $\text{CO}_2$  test was carried out during the REM stage of sleep (Fig 28). In this test there was a very wide scatter of the V/P points. The scatter was even wider than that for stage B of the subject. The position and slope of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$

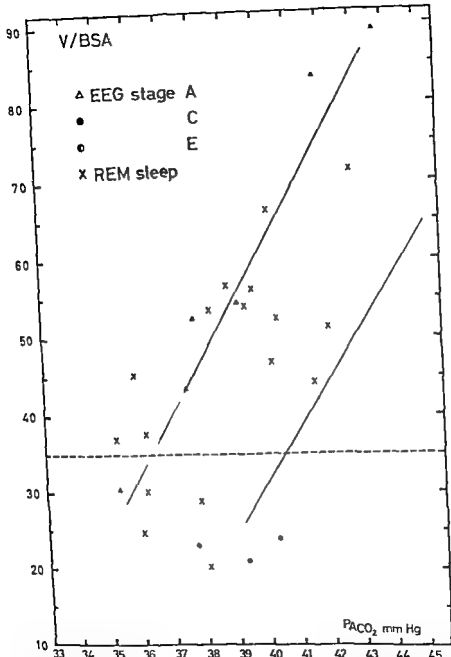


Fig. 3. Subject I J, female, aged 2. Tentative CO<sub>2</sub> response estimation from REM sleep. For comparison the CO<sub>2</sub> response lines for stages A (awake) and B (light sleep) are drawn. There is a large scatter of the V/P points throughout the CO<sub>2</sub> test during REM sleep. However, the mean CO<sub>2</sub> response line seems to be situated between the two lines in the diagram and therefore close to that for stage B. (For clarity the V/P points from stage B also showing a rather large scatter were excluded in the diagram.)

response curve were judged as largely the same as for stage B. From the periods of REM sleep during  $\text{CO}_2$  tests in the other subjects, nothing was found that argued against the assumption that *during REM sleep, the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response is of about the same magnitude as for stage B*. However, the marked instability in respiration during REM sleep usually makes evaluation of the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  difficult.

## RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS DURING BREATHING AIR WITH DIFFERENT CONCENTRATIONS OF OXYGEN

Control experiments were performed in order to study whether inspiration of the gas mixture with 40 per cent oxygen instead of the 21 per cent of room air implied any remarkable influence upon the main results presented. In addition some measurements were made of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response in wakefulness and in sleep during moderate hypoxaemia. The measurements are few and therefore do not permit accurate quantitative evaluations.

### *I Inspiration of atmospheric air and of pure oxygen*

In 6 investigations (in 5 of the subjects) the oxygen concentration of the inspiratory air was altered for periods of 40 minutes up to a few hours from the usual level of 40 per cent either to pure oxygen (3 cases) or to the 21 per cent level of atmospheric air (3 cases).

In all cases the close interrelationship was preserved between the respiration and the EFG pattern. The type and the degree of respiratory changes between the levels of wakefulness in an individual were the same at both oxygen concentrations. So was the degree of PB. The position and slope of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve for a given individual and stage of wakefulness were furthermore largely the same whether he was breathing ordinary air, pure oxygen or 40 per cent oxygen.

### *II Moderate hypoxaemia*

In 7 of the investigations the oxygen concentration in the closed system was successively decreased from that of atmospheric air to between 13–15 per cent (i.e. roughly 100 mm Hg  $\text{P}_{\text{O}_2}$ ). (This was obtained by shutting off the oxygen supply for about 10 minutes. The oxygen concentration was then calculated from the volumetric changes in the system.)

In 3 individual the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response for both wakefulness and sleep could be measured from  $\text{CO}_2$  tests when breathing 14 (13–15) per cent oxygen and compared with the results from breathing the ordinary 40 per cent oxygen during other parts of the same investigation period for each subject. The results demonstrated that there was no substantial

response curve were judged as largely the same as for stage II. From the periods of REM sleep during  $\text{CO}_2$  tests in the other subjects, nothing was found that argued against the assumption that *during REM sleep, the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response is of about the same magnitude as for stage B*. However, the marked instability in respiration during REM sleep usually makes evaluation of the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  difficult.

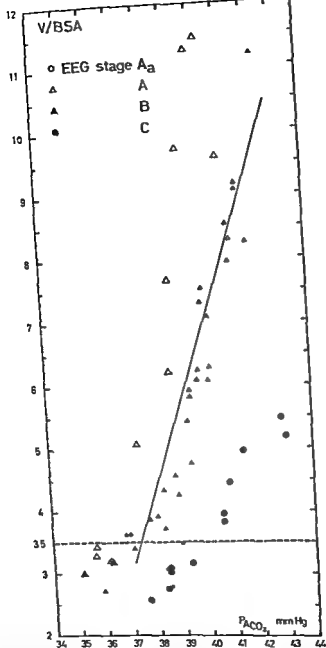


Fig. 30. Subject I A. Relationship between  $\dot{V}_E/\dot{V}_B$  and  $P_{ACO_2}$  response during wakefulness and sleep when breathing 15 per cent oxygen. Large symbols refer to  $\dot{V}_E/\dot{V}_B$  points from hypoxia. For sleep (stage C) the same likely tendency to a further decrease in  $\dot{V}_E/\dot{V}_B$  response during hypoxia as in Fig. 9 is seen. During wakefulness (stage A) however there appears an increase in the  $\dot{V}_E/\dot{V}_B$  response during hypoxia. The change in position and slope is comparable to that for stage A<sub>2</sub> in this subject.



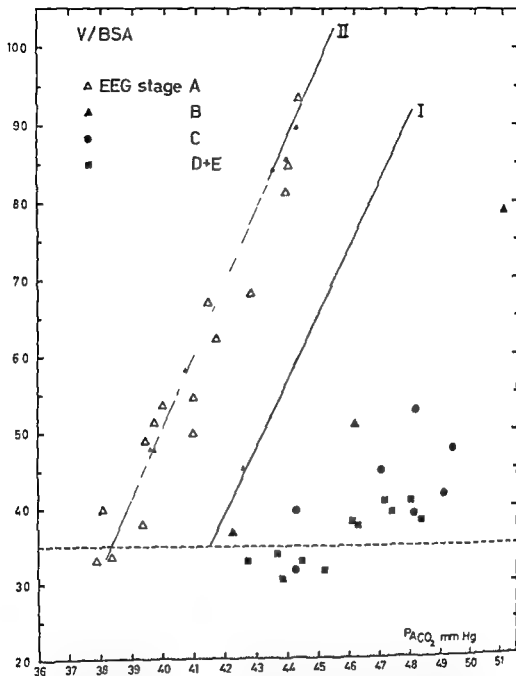


Fig 29 Subj S I male aged 21 Ventilation CO<sub>2</sub> response during wakefulness and sleep when breathing 15 per cent oxygen. Large symbols refer to V P points from hypoxia. All points along the stage A line marked I and to the right of this line refer to the first investigation on this subject. No CO<sub>2</sub> test during hypoxia was then performed for stage A. All points around stage A line II refer to a reinvestigation not preceded by deprivation of sleep. In investigation I the shift in position as well as decrease in slope of the CO<sub>2</sub> response line is prominent during hypoxia (compare the small dots for the same sleep stage from breathing oxygen enriched air).

During wakefulness (investig II) there is in this case no certain difference in CO<sub>2</sub> response between hypoxia and O<sub>2</sub> air breathing.

## INFLUENCE OF 24 HOUR SLEEP—WAKEFULNESS RHYTHM AND OF SLEEP DEPRIVATION ON RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING ONSET OF SIFFP

Some of the reinvestigations were performed in order to study whether the respiratory 'stability' during changes in wakefulness (Chapter VI) was influenced to any marked extent by the 24 hour sleep—wakefulness rhythm. In some other reinvestigations the influence of sleep deprivation was likewise studied.

Of the regular night workers (all of which were examined in the morning after they had been on night work for several nights in succession) 3 subjects (I A, B B and E N) were re-examined during the night after they had slept during day time for several preceding days while 3 (S B, A O and M F) were re-examined in the forenoon after they had slept for several consecutive nights.

Among those subjects who were more occasionally on night work 3 (D F, M A and B H) were re-examined at the same time in the morning but after they had slept several nights in succession. Of the non night worker 2 (A H and B I) were re-examined in the night.

It is clear from Table VI (page 107) that the intra individual variations of  $DsT$  and  $SQ$  in all 11 subjects were fairly small and of about the same order as in other reinvestigated subjects. The series of the different examination conditions in question are small and allow no definite conclusions. However, no obvious relationships were found between on one hand  $DsT_A$ ,  $SQ$  or  $sT$  and on the other hand the time of the investigation or the presence of sleep deprivation.

change in  $sT$  for identical sleep stages of an individual between breathing in 14 per cent and in 40 per cent oxygen. This also holds for  $SQ$  for 1 of the subjects. In the other 2 cases the  $SQ$  seemed, indeed, somewhat further decreased during the low oxygen breathing (Figs 29 and 30).

During wakefulness, stage A,  $SQ$  was moderately increased in the hypoxaemic state. No prominent change in  $sT_A$  was observed. In one of the subjects the ventilation  $CO_2$  response during hypoxia could also be compared to that during tense alertness (stage  $A_n$ ) when breathing 40 per cent oxygen.  $sT$  as well as  $SQ$  of this stage  $A_n$  was almost the same as that of stage A during the hypoxic state (Fig. 30). To conclude, when the subjects were breathing about 14 per cent oxygen, the difference in  $SQ$  between wakefulness and sleep appeared slightly larger than when the arterial blood was saturated with oxygen. In spite of a moderately increased ventilatory responsiveness to  $CO_2$  during the hypoxaemic state when awake, no such change was recognized during sleep. It should, however, be pointed out that the number of observations was small.

## INFLUENCE OF 24 HOUR SLEEP—WAKEFULNESS RHYTHM AND OF SLEEP DEPRIVATION ON RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING ONSET OF SLEEP

Some of the reinvestigations were performed in order to study whether the respiratory "stability" during changes in wakefulness (Chapter VI) was influenced to any marked extent by the 24 hour sleep—wakefulness rhythm. In some other reinvestigations the influence of sleep deprivation was likewise studied.

Of the regular night workers (all of which were examined in the morning after they had been on night work for several nights in succession) 3 subjects (I A, B B and E N) were re examined during the night after they had slept during day time for several preceding days while 3 (S B, A O and M F) were re examined in the forenoon after they had slept for several consecutive nights.

Among those subjects who were more occasionally on night work, 3 (D F, V A and B H) were re examined at the same time in the morning but after they had slept several nights in succession. Of the non night worker 2 (A H and B I) were re examined in the night.

It is clear from Table VI (page 107) that the intra individual variations of  $DsT$  and  $SQ$  in all 11 subjects were fairly small and of about the same order as in other reinvestigated subjects. The series of the different examination conditions in question are small and allow no definite conclusions. However, no obvious relationships were found between on one hand  $DsT_{Ac}$ ,  $SQ$  or  $sT$  and on the other hand the time of the investigation or the presence of sleep deprivation.

## RESPIRATION AND WAKEFULNESS IN SOME DISORDERS OF WAKEFULNESS (CONSCIOUSNESS) FUNCTION

The method described lends itself to clinical investigations. It was used in some studies of respiration in disorders of the wakefulness (consciousness) function. The investigations will be published separately (BULOW & INGVAR 1963 a and b, BULOW 1963 a, for references see these papers). Some other series are in progress, comprising the dumping syndrome and also heart and anxiety neurosis with respiratory symptoms. Only a brief survey of the main findings in three of the series is given below, including patients with petit mal epilepsy, narcolepsy and the obesity cardiopulmonary syndrome ("pickwickian syndrome").

1 *Petit mal epilepsy* In the petit mal group (3 c/sec "spike and wave" epilepsy) it was found that the onset of the seizures does not primarily involve brain stem structures normally regulating wakefulness and respiration. The seizures occurred whether the  $P_{aCO_2}$  was high or low. Only an uncharacteristic usually very slight unevenness in ventilation was observed before, during, or after the attacks (BULOW & INGVAR 1963 a). The normal linkage between respiration and wakefulness was preserved.

The ventilatory response to  $CO_2$  varied within normal limits as did the change in the response during sleep. A close analysis of seizures occurring during  $CO_2$  rebreathing tests did, however, reveal a definite increase in the ventilation  $CO_2$  response during the seizure episodes. The results implicate that an increased  $CO_2$  sensitivity develops during petit mal attacks (BULOW 1963 a). During (oxygen enriched) air breathing at rest the change in sensitivity could not be demonstrated since the  $CO_2$  drive on ventilation was then usually absent. At low  $CO_2$  tensions there was a reduced ventilation; at very low tensions complete apnoea appeared shortly after the onset of the seizure.

■ *Narcolepsy* It was demonstrated that the imperative attacks of drowsiness and sleep—with the corresponding normal sleep changes in the EEG pattern—characterizing the narcolepsy syndrome, are regularly accompanied by changes in respiration in the typical manner described here for normals. Thus the narcoleptic episodes did not differ qualitatively

from what normally occurs during periods of onset of sleep (BULOW & INGVAR 1963 b) The sleep attacks were only more rapid and frequent than what was observed in normals under similar experimental conditions  $P_{ACO}$  was normal when the patients were awake as judged from the EEG pattern No abnormalities in  $CO_2$  regulation of respiration were observed (BULOW 1963 a)

The results supported the opinion that—contrarily to what was observed in petit mal epilepsy—a primary defect is situated within regions of the reticular system participating in both wakefulness and respiration regulation

**3 Obesity cardiopulmonary syndrome** As in the two above mentioned group the normal linkage between respiration and wakefulness function was preserved in the three cases studied which clinically belonged to the obesity cardiopulmonary or 'pickwickian' syndrome In this group which is also characterized by hypoventilation a periodic somnolence was found which was concomitant to a very marked periodic breathing closely resembling CHEYNE STOKES breathing In one of the patients with narcolepsy whose symptoms were very marked similar results were obtained Some further findings in common for the two groups narcolepsy and the pickwickian syndrome suggested a weakness in both groups of a mechanism in the brain stem as the cause of the disturbance of wakefulness This in turn contributes to the development of periodic breathing (BULOW 1963 a)

Patients with obesity but without the cardiopulmonary syndrome were also studied In cases without any obvious disturbance of wakefulness regulation the respiratory variations during changes in wakefulness showed no tendency to deviation from the normal mean In two other obese subjects who had minor signs and symptoms of wakefulness disturbance a prominent respiratory periodicity was present during variations in wakefulness These observations are however at present too limited to admit definite conclusions

In conclusion the present technique which allows evaluation of the ventilation  $CO_2$  response even for rather brief periods as in petit mal or narcolepsy attacks (which usually last for only a minute or less) has enabled elucidation of pathological events presumably occurring within the reticular system of the brain stem

## DISCUSSION

In the present investigation changes between different levels of wakefulness in the EEG were correlated with respiratory variables. Two approaches were used. Firstly, spontaneous changes in the variables were studied. Secondly, a load was put on the respiration (during the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests) at various levels of wakefulness, in order to examine the responsiveness of the respiratory centres during wakefulness and sleep.

In the following discussion attention will be given first to methodological questions including the choice of methods for measuring respiration and the ventilation- $\text{CO}_2$  response at various levels of wakefulness.

## THE METHODS USED

**Carbon dioxide sensitivity** In the present investigation the term "CO<sub>2</sub> sensitivity" refers to the responsiveness of the respiratory centres in a broad sense of the term *i.e.* the respiratory control system including all cerebral structures specifically sensitive to  $\text{CO}_2$ , as well as all peripheral receptors participating in the respiratory regulation. It is not possible to say to what extent these different parts influence ventilation and the arterial carbon dioxide tension under the conditions used in the present study. It is, however, commonly believed that the peripheral chemoreceptors, sensitive to  $\text{CO}_2$ , in the circulatory system, normally play a subordinate role in the respiratory regulation (GESELL *et al.* 1940, SCHMIDT & CORNOR 1940, HESSER 1949, KAO *et al.* 1962). The activity of these receptors cannot be measured directly in man. According to G. C. LOESCHKE (1953) such receptors are responsible for about 14 per cent of the total  $\text{CO}_2$  drive of ventilation in man (*cf.* HEYMAN & NEIL 1958).

**$\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}^+$**  The aim of the present work was not to evaluate the part played by the hydrogen ion  $\text{H}^+$  in the ventilatory regulation. Since the changes in arterial  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  between wakefulness and sleep were obvious, caused by the changes in total (and alveolar) ventilation, the change in arterial  $\text{H}^+$  (or pH) must be considered secondary to the changes in  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$ . Also during the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests the increase in  $\text{H}^+$  drive on ventilation is dependent upon the increasing  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$ . Under the conditions the variations in  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $\text{H}^+$  may be roughly parallel. As their effects on ventilation are commonly considered to be additive to each other (GRAY 1950, NIELSEN & SMITH 1952) distinction between the two factors seemed to

be of less importance in the present investigation. The stimulus studied may be properly defined as *les propriétés du sang liées à  $\text{CO}_2$*  (DEJOURS *et al* 1958).

For practical purposes the alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}}$  was measured instead of the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ . Capnography permits measurement of even rapid breath to breath variations. In Chapter II control experiments were described which showed a parallelism between the expiratory end plateau  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  and the arterial  $P_{\text{CO}}$ ; the absolute capnographic value being about 3 mm Hg below that of the arterial blood. The end expiratory  $P_{\text{ACO}}$  can therefore be used as an index of the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension acting upon the respiratory centres. The dependence of the 'true'  $\text{CO}_2$  tension on the cerebral blood flow will be discussed later.

It may be recollected that even small and transient ventilatory changes are recognisable in the arterial blood with the aid of continuous measurements of arterial pH and  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  (HILSER 1949, GLEICHMANN & LÜBBERS 1960, BJURSTEDT *et al* 1962).

The response to the  $\text{CO}_2$  stimulus was measured from the total ventilation. There are surely several intermediate links in the chain from the respiratory centres in the brain stem via the efferent neuronal pathways, the neuromuscular junction, the respiratory muscles and finally to the ventilatory air flow which was measured during each breath. Recording of the electric activity in the phrenic nerve has been extensively used in animal experiments. Electro-myographic recording from the respiratory muscles represents measurement at a site nearer to the target of the stimulus. However, electromyography measures the activity of the ventilatory muscles in relative terms only. Furthermore, the method is painful and it could therefore not be used in the present investigation. There are also methods for measuring the ventilatory work as well as its oxygen cost (CAMPELL *et al* 1971, BRODOVSKY *et al* 1960). They are however not accurate enough. It was therefore decided to use measurement of the ventilation in the present study.

The question whether total or alveolar ventilation should be used in a study of the present type should also be considered. Total ventilation seems to provide a better mirror of the end result produced by the neuronal volleys to the respiratory muscles (LINDHARD 1933, NIELSEN 1936, SCHAEFER 1958, LAMBERTSEN 1960, LOESCHKE 1960). The alveolar ventilation and the alveolar  $\text{CO}_2$  content together provide a direct measure of the pulmonary  $\text{CO}_2$  output and during a steady state also of the total body metabolism (cf CLAY *et al* 1956, BELLVILLE & SEED 1960). During such a steady state the correlation between the stimulus index  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  and  $V_A$  is presumably close. The frequent changes in rate and volume of breathing observed may however influence the ratio between alveolar and total ventilation. Furthermore, at present no method is available by which breath by breath variations in the alveolar ventilation can be measured as accurately as the total ventilation can be in spirometry.

It should be pointed out that only concomitant measurement of both respiratory frequency and volume can give accurate information on the degree of ventilation. As mentioned above both values normally vary



## DISCUSSION

In the present investigation changes between different levels of wakefulness in the EEG were correlated with respiratory variables. Two approaches were used. Firstly, spontaneous changes in the variables were studied. Secondly, a load was put on the respiration (during the CO tests) at various levels of wakefulness, in order to examine the responsiveness of the respiratory centres during wakefulness and sleep.

In the following discussion attention will be given first to methodological questions, including the choice of methods for measuring respiration and the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response at various levels of wakefulness.

## THE METHODS USED

*Carbon dioxide sensitivity:* In the present investigation the term " $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity" refers to the responsiveness of the respiratory centres in a broad sense of the term *i.e.* the respiratory control system, including all cerebral structures specifically sensitive to  $\text{CO}_2$ , as well as all peripheral receptors participating in the respiratory regulation. It is not possible to say to what extent these different parts influence ventilation and the arterial carbon dioxide tension under the conditions used in the present study. It is however, commonly believed that the peripheral chemoreceptors sensitive to  $\text{CO}_2$  in the circulatory system normally play a subordinate role in the respiratory regulation (GESELL *et al.* 1940, SCHMIDT & COVINO 1940, HESSER 1949, KAO *et al.* 1962). The activity of these receptors cannot be measured directly in man. According to G. C. LOESCHKE (1953) such receptors are responsible for about 14 per cent of the total  $\text{CO}_2$  drive of ventilation in man (cf. HEYMAN & NEIL 1958).

*$\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}^+$ :* The aim of the present work was not to evaluate the part played by the hydrogen ion  $\text{H}^+$  in the ventilatory regulation. Since the changes in arterial  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  between wakefulness and sleep were obviously caused by the changes in total (and alveolar) ventilation the change in arterial  $\text{H}^+$  (or pH) must be considered secondary to the changes in  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$ . Also during the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests the increase in  $\text{H}^+$  drive on ventilation is dependent upon the increasing  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$ . Under the conditions the variations in  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  and  $\text{H}^+$  may be roughly parallel. As their effects on ventilation are commonly considered to be additive to each other (GRAY 1930, NIELSEN & SMITH 1932) distinction between the two factors seemed to

ness. There is general agreement that these stages are easily identified from the EEG tracing by the trained eye (cf GIBBS & GIBBS 1951). The main stages of wakefulness, drowsiness and sleep used here show good agreement with behavioural tests and also with the increase in the arousal threshold to auditory stimuli (JUNG 1954, DEMENT & KLEITMAN 1957, ROTH 1962, FISHCOLD & SCHWARTZ 1961, OSWALD 1962 and others).

It should be observed, however, that it is sometimes difficult to classify EEG patterns recorded during transitions from one level of wakefulness to another. This may partly be attributed to individual but also to age differences in the EEG pattern. Such transitional stages have for reasons outlined elsewhere (page 78) received much less attention in the quantitative analysis.

Frequency analysis enables quantitative resolution of the EEG pattern. This method is, however, of a very limited value during rapid variations in the EEG pattern as e.g. during onset of sleep (FISHCOLD & SCHWARTZ 1961).

The "rapid eye movement" (REM) stage of sleep is identified by simultaneous use of electro-oculography and EEG (DEMENT & KLEITMAN 1957, SCHWARTZ 1962).

Other methods for estimation of level of wakefulness comprise recording of various autonomic functions such as electrodermatography (galvanic skin response), plethysmography (cf MILROD 1960), arterial blood pressure, heart frequency, as well as electromyography and measurements of body movements and body temperature.

Among the methods the electric resistance of the skin has proved to be correlated to some extent with EEG stage of sleep (JUNG 1954), including REM sleep (HAWKINS *et al* 1963). Electromyographic findings, on the other hand, are difficult to correlate with sleep since the activity of different muscles is often largely dependent upon changes in posture. During REM sleep there does not seem to be such a good correlation between the EEG and the activity of neck muscles in man as in animals (JOLVER *et al* 1960).

A state of tense alertness (stage  $A_0$ ) is for obvious reasons difficult to control and to uphold at a constant level. It is also difficult to judge from the EEG even in experiments including analyses of 'happa rhythm' (CHAPMAN *et al* 1962). The respiratory measurements from stage  $A_2$  therefore only permit crude estimations.

## TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS

### EXPIRATORY END PLATEAU $P_{ACO_2}$ MEASUREMENT DURING SLEEP

No increase in dead space was observed during sleep but rather if anything, a very slight decrease. The ratio  $V_D/V_T$  was largely unchanged. This suggests that sleep is not accompanied by any noteworthy change in the ventilation/perfusion ratio for different parts of the lung. Furthermore, the pirographical end tidal level was largely unchanged indicating a stable functional residual capacity. Consequently also during sleep the expiratory end plateau measurement of  $P_{ACO_2}$  was considered reliable as were changes

widely. Furthermore, in the series investigated, changes in frequency and in tidal volume proved to be prominent during shifts in wakefulness. It is thus not possible to use pneumographical measurements of chest wall movements or thermosensitive measurements of ventilatory air flow (cf MARTIN 1960). These methods only give a qualitative measurement of the ventilation.

Reliable measurement of the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  requires many  $\dot{V}-P$  points (page 26) corresponding to ever increasing  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  (JULICH 1951, PAULI et al 1959). Careful determination of the response curve by a substantial number of points turned out to be definitely necessary for recognition of slight shifts in the position or in the slope of the curve. A stepwise increase of  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  by administration of gas mixture with increasing amounts of  $\text{CO}_2$  would have entailed undue extension of the time necessary for a complete test. Every step would have required a long time for the development of a steady state.

The main reasons for using  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing in the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests were given in the final paragraph under 'Methods'. It was stressed that during undisturbed whole night sleep regular, rhythmical and prominent undulations occur between the EEG stages of sleep (ASERINSKY & KLEITMAN 1953, DEWENT & KLEITMAN 1957, SHAPIRO 1962). These variations were always found to be accompanied by respiratory changes too. Obviously, therefore, it is not possible to place stringent demands on a complete respiratory 'steady state' for the repeated estimation of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curves at various levels of wakefulness.

It was shown (Method, page 29) that the increase rate of  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  with the  $\text{CO}_2$  test used provided a satisfactory dynamic balance in the ventilation  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$  relationship, permitting comparison between individuals. Such comparison was, however, not possible for transient periods of marked changes in wakefulness with concomitant marked respiratory instability.

The rate of increase in  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  during  $\text{CO}_2$  test was not substantially changed between wakefulness and sleep. (The decrease in ventilation during sleep tended to increase the rate, whereas the decrease in  $\dot{V}_{\text{ECO}_2}$  had the opposite effect by reducing the increase in respiratory  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ .)

The  $\text{CO}_2$  test permitted rapid and repeated measurements of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response for various levels of wakefulness during each investigation period. The number of available  $\dot{V}-P$  points thus became sufficiently large to yield response curves (and their  $\text{ST}$  values) at various EEG levels. Furthermore, in order to avoid  $\text{CO}_2$  induced arousal reaction, the  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing could easily be interrupted whenever the EEG recorded howed signs of disturbed sleep.

*Evaluation of the EEG.* Neither the level of wakefulness nor the 'depth of sleep' can be quantitatively defined. The EEG is, however, at present the most reliable method for classifying separate stages of wakeful

output. The following principal observation during these respiratory changes has to be stressed.

When following a decrease in wakefulness successive V—P points" during a  $\text{CO}_2$  test were plotted in a V—P diagram they fell around the ventilation— $\text{CO}_2$  response curve of the prevailing EEG level. The scatter along the response curve was not found to be substantially dependant on deviations from a respiratory steady state. The gradual readjustment of the two respiratory variables  $V$  and  $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$  entailed a shift upwards to the right but largely along the same  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve.

Within half an hour or so a slight shift sometimes occurred in the position of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve. Evaluation of the course of this late and always moderate adjustment is beyond the scope of the present study. There are various regulation mechanisms—humoral, circulatory and neuronal—secondarily involved in the final adjustment of adaptation of respiration at a new level of equilibrium such as the one during uninterrupted sleep. This combined effect was studied by the prolonged " $\text{CO}_2$  shunt tests". It should be recalled that the change in position of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve between wakefulness and sleep the  $\Delta T_{4.0}$  was then largely unchanged (page 29).

Deep sleep generally takes a long time to develop. It is a matter of conjecture whether the comparatively small respiratory variations during changes between deeper sleep stages may not be partly attributed to the fact that adaptive mechanisms of the type discussed above have had more time to develop. However, even the EEG changes between deep sleep stages (D and E) are usually less striking than between stages A, B and C. The "true" change in wakefulness between the EEG stages of deep sleep (D and E) is perhaps also relatively small.

To conclude measurements of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response at different levels of wakefulness were largely unaffected by deviations from a respiratory steady state in the strict sense of the word.

It should be pointed out that for marked arousal reactions or periods immediately following them no attempt was made to evaluate the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response. The concept of "level of wakefulness" is difficult to apply during such events characterized by rapid marked changes in various functions as well as in the EEG pattern (Juvic 1954).

#### TIME DELAY BETWEEN A CHANGE IN $P_{\text{ACO}_2}$ AND IN VENTILATION

The 2.5 second delay measured in the present study (page 23) represents the lag noted for the initial  $\text{CO}_2$  effect upon ventilation caused by a moderate and transient change in alveolar  $P_{\text{CO}_2}$ .

This delay is not identical with the time necessary for a stabilized (optimal) ventilatory change to a permanent change of the  $\text{CO}_2$  stimulus. According to HESSER (1949) and ÅSTRÖM (1951) the complete ventilatory response of the medullary respiratory centres requires some minutes which is of the same order as in measurements of the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  mixtures containing fixed  $\text{CO}_2$  concentrations (cf. NIELSEN 1952).

in  $P_{aCO_2}$  between wakefulness and sleep. This conclusion was supported by the control measurements of arterial and mixed venous  $P_{CO_2}$  (page 22).

During the  $CO_2$  tests rebreathing of higher  $CO_2$  concentration than about 2.5 per cent was accompanied by a reduction of the difference between  $P_{aCO_2}$  and  $P_{ACO_2}$ . Presumably, a normally occurring admixture of some (alveolar?) dead space to the end plateau portion as being the cause of the  $a-A$  difference in  $P_{CO_2}$  observed, this difference should decrease when  $CO_2$  is added to the inspiratory and consequently also to the dead space gas. This might cause a slight decrease in slope  $SQ$  of the  $CO_2$  response curve. Assuming an  $SQ$  of 1.1 and an  $a-A$  difference of 2.5 mm Hg at the beginning and of 1.75 at the end of the  $CO_2$  test (when the inspired  $CO_2$  content had increased from 0 to 5 per cent) an observed increase in  $P_{aCO_2}$  of 6.5 mm Hg during the test would then imply an increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$  of 5.75 mm Hg. If the slope  $SQ$  is calculated from this true change in arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  it should be corrected from 1.1 to 1.2(4). It should be stressed however that such an error would not noticeably influence the relative changes in slope ( $SQ$ ) from wakefulness to sleep, since the decrease in  $a-A$  difference during a test was about the same on repeated tests in a given individual irrespective of level of wakefulness. The  $ST$  values would not be affected since they were measured from the very first part of the response curves (when the inspiratory  $CO_2$  content was below 1 per cent).

The decrease in the  $a-A$  difference for  $P_{CO_2}$  during a  $CO_2$  test might be expected to be somewhat different between individual according to their  $a-A$  difference when breathing the  $CO_2$  free gas mixture. However, as found in the controls with arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  (page 23) the decrease in  $a-A$  difference was far less than what would have been expected if it was caused only by dead space admixture. This observation is further supported by a recent report by HAAB & PIIPER (1961) who found that only half of the gradient between end expiratory and arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  in dogs could be ascribed to the alveolar dead space admixture, the other half remaining unexplicable.

In conclusion, the reduction in the  $a-A$  difference during  $CO_2$  tests apparently had only a very little influence on the  $SQ$  measured.

The action of a moderately increased amount of  $CO_2$  on the pulmonary airways and gas distribution as well as blood flow, in normal man has not been satisfactorily clarified. According to FISHMAN *et al* (1960), such changes during inhalation of 5 per cent  $CO_2$  are slight and without any definite influence on pulmonary vascular resistance and blood flow. Consequently, the local pulmonary action of  $CO_2$  may be neglected in the present measurements of the ventilation  $CO_2$  response.

#### RESPIRATORY EQUILIBRIUM

In the present study there were sudden transient, as well as more or less gradual respiratory changes which occurred throughout every recording period. They were either concomitant with changes in wakefulness or caused by  $CO_2$  rebreathing. Following a fall in wakefulness, a discrepancy often appeared between 1) the largely unchanged metabolic production (as measured from the  $O_2$  uptake) and 2) the decreased ventilatory output of  $CO_2$ . This was followed by a gradual restitution of an appropriate  $CO_2$

output. The following principal observation during these respiratory changes has to be stressed.

When following a decrease in wakefulness successive "V—P points" during a  $\text{CO}_2$  test were plotted in a V—P diagram they fell around the ventilation— $\text{CO}_2$  response curve of the prevailing EEG level. The scatter along the response curve was not found to be substantially dependant on deviations from a respiratory steady state. The gradual readjustment of the two respiratory variables V and  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  entailed a shift upwards to the right but largely along the same  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve.

Within half an hour or so a slight shift sometimes occurred in the position of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve. Evaluation of the course of this late and always moderate adjustment is beyond the scope of the present study. There are various regulation mechanisms—humoral, circulatory and neuronal—secondarily involved in the final adjustment of adaptation of respiration at a new level of equilibrium such as the one during uninterrupted sleep. This combined effect was studied by the prolonged  $\text{CO}_2$  shunt tests. It should be recalled that the change in position of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve between wakefulness and sleep the  $\text{D}_{\text{STAC}}$  was then largely unchanged (page 29).

Deep sleep generally takes a long time to develop. It is a matter of conjecture whether the comparatively small respiratory variation during changes between deeper sleep stages may not be partly attributed to the fact that adaptive mechanisms of the type discussed above have had more time to develop. However, even the EEG changes between deep sleep stages (D and E) are usually less striking than between stages A, B and E. The "true" change in wakefulness between the EEG stages of deep sleep (D and E) is perhaps also relatively small.

To conclude measurements of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response at different levels of wakefulness were largely unaffected by deviations from a respiratory steady state in the strict sense of the word.

It should be pointed out that for marked arousal reactions or periods immediately following them no attempt was made to evaluate the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response. The concept of level of wakefulness is difficult to apply during such events characterized by rapid marked changes in various functions as well as in the EEG pattern (JUNG 1954).

#### TIME DELAY BETWEEN A CHANGE IN $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$ AND IN VENTILATION

The 20 second delay measured in the present study (page 20) represents the lag noted for the initial  $\text{CO}_2$  effect upon ventilation caused by a moderate and transient change in alveolar  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$ .

This delay is not identical with the time necessary for a stabilized (optimal) ventilatory change to a permanent change of the  $\text{CO}_2$  stimulus. According to HESSEN (1919) and ÅSTRÖM (1933) the complete ventilatory response of the medullary respiratory centres requires some minutes which is of the same order as in measurements of the ventilatory response to gas mixtures containing fixed  $\text{CO}_2$  concentrations (cf. JUNG 1954).

According to ÅSTRÖM (1952), the peripheral chemoreceptors react promptly — within a few seconds — to a change in pulmonary arterial oxygen tension. Considering this, it seems likely, in contrast to a recent report by BOUVEROT *et al* (1962), that the CO<sub>2</sub> action is mediated mainly via the central nervous chemoreceptors (*cf* DEJOURS *et al* 1958). It should, however, be recollected that a delay caused by the circulation time lung cerebrum (ear) is only about 6–7 seconds (BROBEIL *et al* 1957).

In a few cases 7 per cent CO<sub>2</sub> was given during 2 or 3 breaths to sleeping subjects. No obvious change in the time delay could be recognized compared with that in wakefulness.

#### MECHANICS OF THE LUNGS AND THORAX DURING SLEEP

When judging the reliability of the measurement of the ventilatory response, the mechanics of the lungs and the thorax must also be considered. The present spirographical technique had only a negligibly small influence upon the respiratory variables measured. The added instrumental dead space was small and so was the resistance to the rather low maximal ventilatory flow rate during the present experiments.

ROBIN *et al* (1958), in 3 normal subjects found no clear change in pulmonary compliance but a slight decrease in air way resistance during sleep. In view hereof, the observed decrease in slope of the CO<sub>2</sub> response curve during sleep might possibly have been slightly underestimated in the present study. However, a decrease in air way resistance must be much larger if it is to cause a noticeable increase in slope of the response curve.

#### HYPOXIC DRIVE ON VENTILATION

By maintaining inspiratory oxygen concentration at about 40 per cent any noteworthy hypoxic drive of ventilation was avoided (LOESCHKE & GERTZ 1958). In addition, at this moderate oxygen concentration, the increased ventilation during high oxygen tension (YAMADA 1918, SHOCK & SOLEY 1940, LAMBERTSEN *et al* 1953), seems not to have been of any importance.

#### CEREBRAL BLOOD FLOW

In the discussion above it was stressed that the alveolo-arterial  $P_{CO}$  was used only as an index of the stimulus of the ventilation—CO<sub>2</sub> response measured. It certainly cannot be concluded that this CO<sub>2</sub> tension is identical with that acting upon the respiratory centres.

LAMBERTSEN *et al* (1953) and LANDMESSER *et al* (1957) have claimed that preference should be given to measurements of the cerebral venous instead of the arterial  $P_{CO_2}$  in studies of ventilation  $P_{CO_2}$  response. For the

venous  $P_{CO}$  should more closely reflect the cerebral tissue  $P_{CO}$ . It seems however that this view needs reconsideration. Recent work on carbon dioxide diffusion (GLEICHMANN *et al* 1962, STENSSJO 1962) has clarified the relationship between the arterial mean tissue and venous  $P_{CO}$  of the cerebral cortex. The differences between these values are dependent on the regional blood flow and regional metabolic rate, the tissue  $P_{CO}$  being approximately the mean of the corresponding arterial and venous  $P_{CO}$ . Little is known of the regional blood flow in the brain stem (cf SOKOLOFF 1961). It seems at present not possible to judge whether the tissue  $P_{CO}$  of the respiratory centres lies closer to the arterial or to the cerebral mean venous  $P_{CO_2}$  of the internal jugular vein.

In sleep the mean cerebral metabolic rate is mainly unchanged (MANGOLD *et al* 1955). It might be supposed that this also holds true for the respiratory regulating structures. It is not known whether the probably direct vasodilatory action of  $CO_2$  on the cerebral vessels (SCHWIDT 1950, SOKOLOFF 1959) is influenced by sleep wakefulness changes. Provided there is no such influence of any importance, the increase in the  $P_{ACO}$  during sleep may most likely be the cause of the roughly 9 per cent increase in cerebral blood flow observed by MANGOLD *et al* (1955). This increased blood flow would then slightly reduce the cerebral arterio-venous and artery to tissue  $P_{CO}$  differences. When therefore during sleep the arterial and the cerebral tissue  $P_{CO}$  approach each other with increasing tensions, this also means that the "ventilation - cerebral tissue  $P_{CO_2}$ " response curve is not only situated somewhat to the right of the alveolar  $P_{CO}$  response curve measured, but that it is also somewhat steeper. During sleep this difference in position should be reduced by about 0.7 mm Hg, assuming a cerebral arterio-venous  $P_{CO_2}$  difference of 15 mm Hg and a 9 per cent increase in blood flow.

It should be stressed that the considerations set forth above do not take into account any possible change during sleep in the proportions between the  $CO_2$  effect on the central and on the peripheral chemoreceptors.

#### *$CO_2$ threshold*

In several individuals the  $CO_2$  threshold (T) for a ventilatory response to  $P_{ACO_2}$  (NIELSEN & SMITH 1952, LOESCHKE & GERTZ 1958) was not exceeded during air breathing. During  $CO_2$  rebreathing this threshold was present whether arterial or end expiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  was measured and even during a respiratory steady state (during  $CO_2$  "bump tests"). The threshold phenomenon cannot therefore be explained solely by an increased admixture of dead space to the end expiratory portion at low tidal volumes.



The reaction time of a ventilatory response to a change in  $P_{ACO_2}$  was of a fairly constant magnitude. It was not related to the threshold phenomenon since the difference between the  $P_{ACO_2}$  value at the onset of a CO test and that expressing the  $CO_2$  threshold varied widely. The difference was sometimes very slight or non-existent.  $CO_2$  rebreathing then gave an approximately rectilinear ascent of the response curve within half a minute from the onset of the test. This finding seems not to be compatible with the recent suggestion of RILEY *et al* (1963) and of ARISTROV *et al* (1961) who proposed a  $CO_2$  drive on ventilation mediated mainly by chemoreceptors in the pulmonary arteries. Such a mechanism would have caused a longer time delay from the onset of CO rebreathing until a ventilatory increase took place.

There are thus reasons to believe that in many subjects (breathing air) the carbon dioxide tension of the blood plays only a subordinate role in the ventilatory regulation (BOOTHBY 1912, MILLS 1946, RAMSAY 1959, FINE 1961). Since hypoxic drive on ventilation was avoided in the present study, the blood gases may be excluded as the cause of this "subthreshold" drive on ventilation. The problem will be considered further below.

In view of the above discussion (pages 81–86) it may here be concluded that the observed decrease of the ventilatory response to  $CO_2$  (including the change in threshold and slope) during sleep cannot be ascribed to methodological or technical errors.

## GENERAL COMMENTS

### 1 VENTILATION AND WAKEFULNESS

The results clearly demonstrate that in normals any decrease in wakefulness (with disintegration of alpha rhythm and appearance of theta waves in the EEG) is always accompanied by a decrease in ventilation. During arousal the opposite change takes place. Some preliminary observations in a small group of normal subjects (BULOW & INGVAR 1961) have thus been confirmed. The present series shows that these findings have general validity, even for very transient changes in wakefulness, during a few seconds or less. In general the changes in ventilation showed a very close time relation to the EEG changes: the  $P_{ACO_2}$  changes always following more gradually as an expression of the simultaneous change in the alveolar ventilation and the  $CO_2$  output. The EEG changes during arousal from deep sleep, however, were observed to precede the ventilatory reaction by one second or two.

The findings include definite differences in respiration even during stabilized respiratory conditions ("steady state") between various levels of decreased wakefulness. Furthermore, an increase in ventilation is observed with an increase in level of wakefulness during tense alertness (see further page 95).

The findings summarized above give further support to the assumption that the brain structures which regulate wakefulness (MORUZZI & MACGOWN 1949 MACGOWN 1952 DELL 1952 HUGFLIN 1956) and the "cortical excitatory state" (JASPER 1936 cf BONYALLET *et al* 1954) (as reflected in the EEG) and the commonly called the respiratory centres (PITTS 1946 WISS 1951 LILJESTRAND 1958 SALMOIRAGHI & BURNS 1960 and others) are closely functionally interrelated. The existence of such a relationship is supported by much recent work on the functional organization of the so-called reticular system (BONYALLET *et al* 1955 ROSSI and ZANCHETTI 1957 and others cf also HESS 1938 and INGVAR 1958).

### III VENTILATION $\text{CO}_2$ RESPONSE ( $\text{CO}$ SENSITIVITY ) DURING SLEEP

A shift of the response curve during the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests does not necessarily imply a change in the sensitivity of the respiratory control system to the very testing agent the  $\text{CO}_2$ . The  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity of the specific chemo-receptors might be unchanged. The decreased ventilatory responsiveness as manifested by the increase of the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold during sleep may be caused by a reduction of various other ventilatory stimuli neuronal or humoral exerting a direct or indirect action upon the respiratory centres within the brain stem. The role of the proprioceptive afferents (from the body as a whole and from the respiratory muscles) should here be kept in mind (see further below page 88).

It seems more likely that the decrease in the slope of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve during sleep should represent a real change in  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity (GRAY 1950). Even this change in slope may however be caused by a reduction of other stimuli which interfere with or modulate the action of  $\text{CO}_2$  upon the respiratory centre.

It should be pointed out that not only the change in ventilation but even the change in ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  developed very rapidly during a change in wakefulness (cf page 53). Such a rapid change is most likely of neuronal nature. It cannot be explained by an acute change in total body or total cerebral metabolic rate.

The change in cerebral blood flow during sleep (MARGOLD *et al* 1955) as mentioned above probably secondary to the increase in arterial  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$ . Changes in humoral factors in the blood stream affecting respiration such as catecholamine hormones and electrolytes may all be presumed to have a comparatively slower action on the respiratory control system.

Thus the present indirect study of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response (  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity ) does not permit any definite conclusions concerning the site and the mode of the change in respiratory action of  $\text{CO}_2$  during sleep.

present evidence favours mostly a neuronal mechanism. Brain stem structures, sensitive to  $\text{CO}_2$  (VON EULER & SODERBERG 1952 a and b) may be suggested as the primary site of this mechanism.

#### THRESHOLD AND SLOPE OF THE $\text{CO}_2$ RESPONSE CURVE DURING SLEEP

Previous investigators have found a prominent decrease in "CO sensitivity" during sleep (MACNUSSEN, 1944, in 2 cases, ROBIN *et al* 1958, 3 cases, and BIRCHFIELD *et al* 1959, 4 cases). This was concluded from measurements of the ventilatory response to one or two gas mixtures containing an increased amount of  $\text{CO}_2$ . In these studies however, no consideration was given to the possibility that the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension measured during air breathing might be situated below the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold (page 51). This fact very likely explains the marked decrease in slope of the response curve during sleep, which the authors mentioned reported. On the other hand REED & KELLOGG (1958) (in 3 subjects) and BELLVILLE *et al* (1959) (5 subjects) determining more points on their V-P curves, found a displacement (to the right) of the curve in sleep but no certain change in slope ("sensitivity"). The present results are principally in accordance with those of the two latter groups of authors. The moderate decrease in slope found in the present series could obviously not have been established from a few cases only.

The frequent lack of any noticeable  $\text{CO}_2$  drive upon ventilation during (oxygen enriched) air breathing — the "subthreshold" ventilation — was demonstrable in several subjects also during steady sleep. Therefore, the subthreshold drive cannot be ascribed only to the presence of the wakeful state or consciousness as suggested by FINK (1961). In contrast to what here was shown for physiological sleep, the subthreshold drive is absent during general anesthesia (HANKS *et al* 1961) — a fact indicating a preservation of certain integrated brain functions in normal sleep.

It seems likely that an influence from higher brain centres is partly responsible for the ventilatory drive in the waking state. It should be recalled that telencephalic structures including certain cortical areas have been shown to have an influence on respiration (KAADA & JASPER 1952). However, the basic ventilatory drive may as well be due to afferent "collateral" neuronal inflow (GRANT 1955, ELDRFD & FUJIMORI 1958).

It seems indeed possible that the gamma motor system and the afferent pathways from the muscle spindles play an important role for the events during sleep onset. Sleep is as is well known also accompanied by a reduction of muscle tone (HOFFMAN *et al* 1956, JOUVER *et al* 1960). This is most likely caused by a loss of the supraspinal drive of the gamma

motor neurons (GRANIT & KAADA 1952; HANIMOND *et al* 1956; cf GRANIT 1955). Thereby the afferent flow from the muscle spindles must decrease and a secondary reduction of the proprioceptive drive upon the reticular system (including respiratory centres) will then ensue. The loop described thus forms a feedback circuit which may participate in sleep onset. Probably the proprioceptive system of the respiratory muscles is involved in the events discussed above in a more complex way. This question is, however, at present unclear and it lies mainly outside the scope of the present investigation (cf CAMPBELL & HOWELL 1963).

A decrease in the neuronal stimuli mentioned above may contribute to the change in the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold with a decrease in wakefulness. It is, however, also possible that such factors may affect the slope of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve.

### 3 RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING SLEEP ONSET

A close correlation was found between the displacement during sleep of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve  $\text{DST}_{\text{AC}}$  and the amount of respiratory oscillation PB during sleep onset. Between the subjects the variations of the two factors were large. In each individual, however, the variations were small even on different examinations.

The present results do not support the findings of MANGOLD *et al* (1955) who in 6 fatigued subjects found only an insignificant increase in  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  during sleep from high values when awake during the period just preceding sleep. In other fatigued subjects who failed to fall to sleep, the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  was clearly lower. One might question whether the subjects who fell asleep represented a selection of 'stable' subjects (page 62) among which continuous sleep pattern in the EEG more rapidly follows the initial signs of sleep.

It was shown that not only the amount of ventilatory change but also the change of ventilatory pattern in sleep is characteristic in a given subject. Differences in ventilatory pattern were found between the two groups of stability. In the 'stable' group the ventilatory frequency was low when the subject was awake and increased during sleep; in the 'unstable' group the rate was somewhat higher when awake than when asleep. These observations may possibly have a bearing on the recent findings of COHEN & HILGELIN (1961). In nonanesthetized, curarized and vagotomized spinal cats they found two different patterns of activity in the phrenic nerve following electrical stimulation of the reticular system (i.e. arousal). In all cases arousal was accompanied by an increased inspiratory discharge. The more common type was characterized by an increased respiratory rate; the less frequent one by a reduced rate, mainly owing to a prolongation of the expiratory pause. In man awake, prominent expiratory pauses often appear during slow breathing.

present evidence favours mostly a neuronal mechanism. Brain stem structures sensitive to  $\text{CO}_2$  (VON EULER & SODERBERG 1952 a and b) may be suggested as the primary site of this mechanism.

#### THRESHOLD AND SLOPE OF THE $\text{CO}_2$ RESPONSE CURVE DURING SLEEP

Previous investigators have found a prominent decrease in " $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity" during sleep (MAGNUSSEN, 1944, in 2 cases, ROBIN *et al* 1958 3 cases and BIRCHFIELD *et al* 1959, 4 cases). This was concluded from measurements of the ventilatory response to one or two gas mixtures containing an increased amount of  $\text{CO}_2$ . In these studies however, no consideration was given to the possibility that the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension measured during air breathing might be situated below the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold (page 51). This fact very likely explains the marked decrease in slope of the response curve during sleep, which the authors mentioned reported. On the other hand REED & KELLOGG (1958) (in 3 subjects) and BELLVILLE *et al* (1959) (5 subjects) determining more points on their  $V-P$  curves, found a displacement (to the right) of the curve in sleep but no certain change in slope ("sensitivity"). The present results are principally in accordance with those of the two latter groups of authors. The moderate decrease in slope found in the present series could obviously not have been established from a few cases only.

The frequent lack of any noticeable  $\text{CO}_2$  drive upon ventilation during (oxygen enriched) air breathing — the "subthreshold" ventilation — was demonstrable in several subjects also during steady sleep. Therefore, the subthreshold drive cannot be ascribed only to the presence of the wakeful state or consciousness as suggested by FINK (1961). In contrast to what here was shown for physiological sleep the subthreshold drive is absent during general anesthesia (HANKS *et al* 1961) a fact indicating a preservation of certain integrated brain functions in normal sleep.

It seems likely that an influence from higher brain centres is partly responsible for the ventilatory drive in the waking state. It should be recalled that telencephalic structures including certain cortical areas have been shown to have an influence on respiration (KAADA & JASPER 1952). However the basic ventilatory drive may as well be due to afferent "collateral" neuronal inflow (GRANIT 1955, ELDRED & FUJIMORI 1958).

It seems indeed possible that the gamma motor system and the afferent pathways from the muscle spindles play an important role for the events during sleep onset. Sleep is as is well known also accompanied by a reduction of muscle tone (HOFFMAN *et al* 1956, JOUVER *et al* 1960). This is most likely caused by a loss of the supraspinal drive of the gamma

motor neurons (GRANIT & KAADA 1952; HAMMOND *et al* 1956, cf GRANIT 1955). Thereby the afferent flow from the muscle spindles must decrease and a secondary reduction of the proprioceptive drive upon the reticular system (including respiratory centres) will then ensue. The loop described thus forms a feedback circuit which may participate in sleep onset. Probably the proprioceptive system of the respiratory muscles is involved in the events discussed above in a more complex way. This question is however at present unclear and it lies mainly outside the scope of the present investigation (cf CAMPBELL & HOWELL 1963).

A decrease in the neuronal stimuli mentioned above may contribute to the change in the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold with a decrease in wakefulness. It is however also possible that such factors may affect the slope of the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve.

### 3 RESPIRATORY STABILITY DURING SLEEP ONSET

A close correlation was found between the displacement during sleep of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve  $\text{D}\dot{\text{V}}_{\text{TAC}}$  and the amount of respiratory oscillations  $\text{PB}$  during sleep onset. Between the subjects the variations of the two factors were large. In each individual however the variations were small even on different examinations.

The present results do not support the findings of MARGOLD *et al* (1955) who in 6 fatigued subjects found only a insignificant increase in  $\dot{\text{V}}_{\text{CO}}$  during sleep from high values when awake during the period just preceding sleep. In other fatigued subjects who failed to fall asleep the  $\dot{\text{V}}_{\text{CO}}$  was clearly lower. On the question whether the subjects who fell asleep represented a selection of "stable" subjects (page 69) among which continuous sleep pattern in the FEG more rapidly follows the initial stages of sleep.

It was shown that not only the amount of ventilatory change but also the change of ventilatory pattern in sleep is characteristic in a given subject. Differences in ventilatory pattern were found between the two groups of stability. In the 'stable' group the ventilatory frequency was low when the subject was awake and increased during sleep; in the 'unstable' group the rate was somewhat higher when awake than when asleep. These observations may possibly have a bearing on the recent findings of CONEY & HUGELIN (1961). In nonanesthetized curarized and vagotomized spinal cats they found two different patterns of activity in the phrenic nerve following electrical stimulation of the reticular system (see arousal). In all cases arousal was accompanied by an increased inspiratory discharge. The more common type was characterized by an increased respiratory rate; the less frequent one by a reduced rate mainly owing to a prolongation of the expiratory pause. In man awake prominent expiratory pauses often appear during slow breathing.

present evidence favours mostly a neuronal mechanism. Brain stem structures, sensitive to  $\text{CO}_2$  (VON EULER & SODERBERG 1952 a and b) may be suggested as the primary site of this mechanism.

#### THRESHOLD AND SLOPE OF THE $\text{CO}_2$ RESPONSE CURVE DURING SLEEP

Previous investigators have found a prominent decrease in " $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity" during sleep (MAGNUSSEN, 1944, in 2 cases, ROBIN *et al*, 1958, 3 cases, and BIRCHFIELD *et al* 1959, 4 cases). This was concluded from measurements of the ventilatory response to one or two gas mixtures containing an increased amount of  $\text{CO}_2$ . In these studies however, no consideration was given to the possibility that the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension measured during air breathing might be situated below the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold (page 51). This fact very likely explains the marked decrease in slope of the response curve during sleep, which the authors mentioned reported. On the other hand REED & KELLOGG (1958) (in 3 subjects) and BELLVILLE *et al* (1959) (5 subjects) determining more points on their  $V-P$  curves, found a displacement (to the right) of the curve in sleep but no certain change in slope ("sensitivity"). The present results are principally in accordance with those of the two latter groups of authors. The moderate decrease in slope found in the present series could obviously not have been established from a few cases only.

The frequent lack of any noticeable  $\text{CO}_2$  drive upon ventilation during (oxygen enriched) air breathing — the "subthreshold" ventilation — was demonstrable in several subjects also during steady sleep. Therefore, the subthreshold drive cannot be ascribed only to the presence of the wakeful state or consciousness as suggested by FINK (1961). In contrast to what here was shown for physiological sleep the subthreshold drive is absent during general anaesthesia (HANKS *et al* 1961) — a fact indicating a preservation of certain integrated brain functions in normal sleep.

It seems likely that an influence from higher brain centres is partly responsible for the ventilatory drive in the waking state. It should be recalled that telencephalic structures including certain cortical areas have been shown to have an influence on respiration (KAADA & JASPER 1952). However, the basic ventilatory drive may as well be due to afferent "collateral" neuronal inflow (GRANIT 1955, ELDRED & FUJIMORI 1958).

It seems indeed possible that the gamma motor system and the afferent pathways from the muscle spindles play an important role for the events during sleep onset. Sleep is as is well known, also accompanied by a reduction of muscle tone (HOFFMAN *et al* 1956, JOUVET *et al* 1960). This is most likely caused by a loss of the supraspinal drive of the gamma

ness such as during the period of onset of sleep are less prominent and less regular and also more transitory than the respiratory changes. The heart rate was not linked so intimately to wakefulness function as was the respiratory function.

During the  $\text{CO}_2$  tests the change in heart rate was very small irrespective of the level of wakefulness. This also applies to measurements of arterial blood pressure. These observations may indicate that the type of  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing in the low concentrations used has no marked cardiovascular effect.

### PERIODIC BREATHING

The results show that periodic breathing (PB) is a normal and common phenomenon during sleep onset. During established sleep with a stable EEG pattern PB did not occur. It might, however, reappear during changes in the depth of sleep.

In spite of the fact that periodic breathing during sleep has long been known (BROADBENT 1871; MOORE 1886) the phenomenon has not been the subject of much attention. MACVETTER (1944) however, stressed its occurrence during periods of alternating sleep and wakefulness. ROBINSON *et al.* (1958) also observed a PB during sleep but regarded it as a very transient phenomenon only present in a few of the 12 subjects. BELLVILLE *et al.* (1959) on the other hand considered a respiratory instability to be a characteristic of the very sleep function.

The PB during sleep onset often closely resembled the classical CHEYNE STOKES' breathing. This type of breathing is commonly considered a sign of a serious organic disturbance of the cardiovascular and/or the central nervous system (cf. PRIOR 1951; TALBOT *et al.* 1954). In the present investigation the normal PB however usually showed less regular undulations in degree of ventilation ( $V$ ). The phase of hyperpnoea often showed a sudden onset with a maximum occurring within one or two breaths (see Fig. 14a). As a rule the hypoventilation phases did not lead to complete apnoea. Furthermore a mean hyperventilation and a mean decrease in  $P_{\text{aCO}_2}$  have been demonstrated in classical CHEYNE STOKES' breathing (BROWN & PLUM 1961; KARP *et al.* 1961). During the normal PB however there was a gradual mean change in respiration in the opposite direction. Finally the hypoxic drive on ventilation which plays a prominent part in CHEYNE STOKES' respiration proved to be of no essential importance in the PB during sleep onset.

The two classical hypotheses the 'humoral' and the 'neuronal' of the origin of CHEYNE STOKES' respiration variations in the blood gases (DOUGLAS & HALDANE 1909) or central nervous (supramedullary) regulatory changes (HOFF & BRIDGEMAN 1954) may be applied in combination in an attempt to explain the occurrence of PB during sleep onset as will be discussed below.



The two groups of 'stability' may possibly be related to the high and low ventilation groups proposed by SCHAEFER (1958). These groups differed as to respiratory pattern in a manner resembling the stable and the unstable groups. In contrast to the groups of SCHAEFER no clear differences were found between the present groups concerning the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  ( $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity) nor as to the  $\text{P}_{\text{CO}_2}$  during wakefulness at rest. It may however be mentioned that the means of  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  in steady state and of  $\text{S}\dot{\text{Q}}$  in stage A for the stable and unstable groups both diverged but only to a small degree in the same way as in the groups referred to.

A marked variation in  $\text{S}\dot{\text{Q}}$  and  $\text{sT}_A$  was found in both groups of stability. There was no apparent correlation between these two values in an individual. The difference in  $\text{S}\dot{\text{Q}}$  between the two groups was only small. The findings thus suggest that the respiratory "stability" during changes in wakefulness is largely independent of  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity. It is therefore, not surprising that no differences in blood pH and standard bicarbonate were found between the two groups.

No difference was found between the two groups of stability regarding the occurrence of subthreshold ventilation at rest during wakefulness or during sleep. However in the most unstable cases the subthreshold drive markedly decreased during phases of rapid decrease in wakefulness when apnoea or marked hypopnoea occurred. One might question whether this indicates individual differences in the relative reduction of the non chemical (i.e. subthreshold) drive as compared with the change in  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity.

The following explanation of the individual variations in "stability" is suggested. In the "stable" group there is only a small decrease in " $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity" of the respiratory centres during sleep onset and therefore the degree of respiratory changes as well as that of oscillations (PB) is very small. In the "unstable" group, the change in sensitivity is relatively large, causing marked oscillations and also marked definite changes in respiration with the onset of sleep.

The two stability groups did not differ in pulmonary capacities. Furthermore, neither sleep deprivation nor the time of measurement during the 24 hour cycle had any obvious influence upon the pattern shown by a given individual. It is thus concluded that the degree of respiratory stability is a fundamental quality related to the (autonomic) constitution of the individual.

This conclusion seems to be supported by the observation of an apparently larger tendency to deviation from completely normal EFG pattern among the unstable subjects as compared with the stable ones. Investigations are in progress on this subject (BULOW & INGVAR 1963 c).

In many of the present investigations the electrocardiogram (ECG) was recorded simultaneously with EFG and respiration. In this way the variations in heart rate were correlated with the variations in level of wakefulness and in the respiratory variables. Also the groups of stability and the changes in ventilatory pattern during sleep were here studied for heart rate. The results of this study will be published separately (Bulow 1963 b). It was demonstrated that the changes in heart rate during variation in wakeful

of rapid decrease in wakefulness is explained by a marked inhibition of the neuronal 'non chemical' drive on ventilation. The hypothesis is extended to include also a concomitant decrease in sensitivity to  $\text{CO}_2$  of the respiratory centres. The reduction of ventilation is thus due partly to a transient neuronal inhibition partly to a definite decrease in  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity. At sub threshold  $\text{CO}_2$  tensions the degree of reduction in the former drive determines the decrease in ventilation whereas at  $\text{CO}_2$  tensions above the threshold the reduction in  $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity is the decisive factor.

2 In the *intermediate phase* of the period of sleep onset a fairly regular periodicity in breathing and in wakefulness appears. The present hypothesis explains this fact by the appearance of a more stabilized resetting of the reticular balance mechanisms mentioned in the direction of deactivation and EEG synchronization. The continuation of the PB was observed to be especially favoured by the periodic arousal reactions which in its turn apparently were related to the periodically increased  $\text{CO}_2$  tensions the ' $\text{CO}_2$  arousal thresholds'.

When the increased ventilation during arousal lowers the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension to levels below the arousal threshold the prevailing tendency to decreased wakefulness can again make itself felt.

The sleep inducing mechanism may perhaps be enhanced by the periodically increased  $\text{CO}_2$  stimuli in the same manner as during habituation to monotonously repeated stimuli of other origin.

3 In the further course of sleep onset ventilation and wakefulness gradually decrease and  $P_{a\text{CO}_2}$  and its 'arousal thresholds' increase. In the *final phase* the repeated arousals and the PB disappear with a stabilization of the increased  $\text{CO}_2$  tension during sleep.

In summary the events in the brain stem (and higher centres) during sleep onset still remain a matter of conjecture. The widely accepted concept of the reticular system has however provided a basis for hypotheses in line with those presented above.

The present investigation is limited to the question how one of the basic functions of the body respiration varies with wakefulness. In view of our present knowledge of the reticular system of the brain stem it seems very likely that other functional entities within the body such as the systemic circulation, the muscle tone and the gastrointestinal function should also show certain functional patterns pertaining to different levels of wakefulness. This large problem complex which is of primary importance for our understanding of the sleep/wakefulness phenomena will require much work to be clarified. There is also evidence suggesting that the muscle tone (the gamma motor activity) varies with wakefulness (104 EULER & SODERBERG).

# THE MECHANISM UNDERLYING THE PROCESS OF FALLING ASLEEP, AS INTERPRETED FROM THE CHANGES IN RESPIRATION AND EEG

In the following some further suggestions will be made as to the mechanism of sleep onset

Attempts to describe the neuronal mechanism responsible for the sudden repeated decreases in wakefulness and in ventilation at sleep onset must be purely hypothetical. Nothing is known of possible changes during sleep in the physicochemical properties of the nerve cells including the sensitivity of the central or peripheral chemoreceptors to specific stimuli such as  $\text{CO}_2$ . In a recent thorough survey MORUZZI (1960) points out that the classical views of PAWLOW (1923) of an active internal inhibition and that of MORUZZI & MAGOUN (1919) (cf BREUER 1935 and also KLEITMAN 1939) of a reduced sensory inflow (passive unspecific deafferentation) should both be included in a concept of the production of normal sleep. Furthermore recent findings suggest that the inhibitory bulbopontine centres which have an EEG synchronizing effect may quite possibly participate in sleep induction. MORUZZI (1960) has also proposed the suprabulbar reciprocal control of the two antagonistic systems of the brain stem — the reticular activating and the synchronizing ones — in order to explain the onset and the progressively increasing depth of sleep. The influence of the corticofugal impulses mediated by the neuronal negative feedback mechanism between the reticular activating system and the cortex should also be taken into account (HUGELIN & BOYVALET 1957). Sleep inducing changes in such reticular mechanisms are very likely favoured by a monotonous non arousing sensory input to which the individual slowly may be habituated. The unspecific deafferentation of the reticular activating system could be more subordinate for the onset but essential for the maintenance of sleep.

The REM sleep rhombencephalic sleep according to JOLIVET (1962) differs principally from the above mentioned sleep mechanisms as it is supposed to involve a different neuronal system. REM sleep is assumed to be governed by an active pontine sleep mechanism closely related to the lumbar system and responsible for the rapid cortical activity present during this phase of sleep. This type of sleep was not observed during periods of sleep onset but only later following periods of ordinary deep sleep.

The following hypothesis is advanced, explaining the events during sleep onset, in which usually three phases were distinguished

1. Initially, the balance between "activating" and "inhibitory" systems in the reticular system of the brain stem changes rapidly and frequently. This corresponds to the introductory phase (Chapter IV) with its frequent often irregular variations in the EEG level of wakefulness as well as in respiration.

The primary cause of this change in balance is at present completely unknown. The present results do not support the suggestion by LETHY (1961) that an increase of the arterial  $\text{PCO}_2$  is of fundamental importance for the initiation of normal sleep. But the amount of change in respiration during the early phases of decrease in wakefulness was apparently dependent on the prevailing  $\text{CO}_2$  tension. This was best seen among the unstable subjects and then particularly when the  $\text{PACO}_2$  during wakefulness (stage V) was situated clearly below the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold (page 47).

According to the hypothesis the ventilatory change during the phases

## 5 TENSE ALERTNESS

Some general suggestions will be put forth concerning the cause of the change observed in the ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response during the state of tense alertness. As shown by NIELSEN (1936) and ASMUSSEN & NIELSEN (1957) there is a parallel shift of the response curve to the left (i.e. a lowering of the  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold) during muscular exercise at steady state. A change in a similar manner may be assumed for the state of continuous tense alertness (mental work) the large variations in the present observations however preventing definite conclusions. During muscular work a neuronal drive on ventilation is of importance (ASMUSSEN & NIELSEN 1949 KAO 1956 for a recent survey see symposium edited by CUNNINGHAM & LLOYD 1963). During tense alertness there may supposedly be an increase in the afferent flow from the muscular proprioceptors as well as in corticofugal volleys, the latter mediating facilitating as well as inhibiting effects on ventilation (cf MORUZZI 1960). Variations in these two effects were probably the main cause of the substantial ventilatory variations during stage A<sub>2</sub>.

## 6 CLINICAL AND PHARMACOLOGICAL ASPECTS

From the clinical viewpoint the establishment of normal reaction patterns of respiration in sleep as well as the statement that a proper  $\text{CO}_2$  homeostasis is necessary for stable sleep both have practical implications. Conditions characterized by sleep (wakefulness/consciousness) disturbances can be evaluated in respiratory terms. So far a few such states have been analyzed.

In the three clinical groups examined petit mal epilepsy narcolepsy and the pickwickian syndrome the principal close coupling between EFG and respiration was preserved. Each group showed however characteristic deviations from the normal range of variation stated in the present study.

The pathological states thus investigated represent defects mainly of the central nervous system. It is evident that sleep disturbances due to pulmonary diseases may also be investigated in a similar manner.

Some pharmacological investigations have also been performed with the present method. An extreme dissociation between level of wakefulness and respiration was demonstrated with a new drug phenopendine used for neurolept analgesia (BLUM *et al* 1963). In spite of a marked respiratory depression as demonstrated by increased  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold wakefulness was preserved behaviourally as well as in the FEG pattern (stage A).

It is apparent from the present study that the changes in respiration

1957) Also the systemic circulation shows certain patterns in sleep (Hoffman *et al* 1956, ASAHINA & MATSUI 1962, and others) distinct from those in wakefulness

#### 4 $P_{ACO_2}$ AND THE MAINTENANCE OF SLEEP

Definite sleep never occurred until  $P_{ACO_2}$  remained within the limits that existed for each stage of sleep. When during  $CO_2$  rebreathing the upper limit was exceeded, arousal — or a change in that direction — occurred. At each level of wakefulness this upper limit showed only small variations. The upper limits were therefore considered to implicate “ $CO_2$  arousal thresholds”, which increased with the depth of sleep.

It is concluded that prominent variations in the  $CO_2$  tension of the blood — and therefore also the brain tissue — are not compatible with a stable level of sleep. A proper  $CO_2$  homeostasis is thus a prerequisite for stable normal sleep.

When  $P_{ACO_2}$  increased gradually during the  $CO_2$  tests no influence on the EEG level of wakefulness was observed until the “arousal threshold” for the prevailing EEG stage was exceeded. At  $CO_2$  tensions below these thresholds,  $CO_2$  rebreathing had, on the contrary, a clear stabilizing effect on any existing PB and also on the concomitant variations in wakefulness. The gradual increase in  $P_{ACO_2}$ , induced by the  $CO_2$  rebreathing, often proved to enhance the onset of definite, stable sleep. This observation may be explained by the fact that each periodic increase in ventilation following an arousal has an ever decreasing influence on  $P_{ACO_2}$  when the inspiratory  $P_{CO_2}$  is gradually increased.

It should be mentioned that PITT *et al* (1967) observed that  $CO_2$  admixture to inspiratory air tends to remove the typical signs of CHEYNE STOKES breathing.

#### “RAPID EYE MOVEMENT” SLEEP

During REM sleep the linkage between EEG pattern and degree of ventilation appeared to be less distinct. However no clear difference in the linkage as compared with the classical sleep stages could be demonstrated from the present limited number of observations. This also holds for the ventilation  $CO_2$  response which roughly corresponded to that during stage B, when the EEG of the REM state and the stage B showed similar amounts of theta activity. The possibility of varying cortical influences on respiration during this state, characterized frequently by dreaming should also be taken into consideration.

REM sleep has so far not been systematically explored in man (JOUVET *et al* 1960, SCHWARTZ 1962). Its relation to respiration and other basic functions of the body requires further investigation.

## SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

1 In seventy normal subjects the respiration during wakefulness and sleep was studied. Continuous records were made of the EEG, the ventilation and the alveolar carbon dioxide tension for periods of three to six hours. Various levels of wakefulness were studied including tense alertness, wakefulness at rest, drowsiness and various levels of sleep.

2 Normally there exists a close linkage between respiration and level of wakefulness as measured by the EEG. This conclusion is based upon more than 1,000 observations. A decrease or an increase in wakefulness, including tense alertness, is accompanied by a change in the corresponding direction in ventilation.

The close linkage is present even during sudden or very transient wakefulness changes of a few seconds or less. Even such short periods of sleep are generally recognizable on a spirogram from the very onset of sleep.

During respiratory steady state the principal difference in degree of ventilation between various levels of wakefulness is preserved.

When the level of wakefulness is stable, respiration is stable too.

The results give further support to the assumption that brain structures regulating wakefulness and respiration are closely interrelated functionally.

3 A change in respiration with wakefulness is accompanied by a change in the ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$ . This was found in more than 300  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing tests with a technique developed especially for the purpose. It allowed repeated measurements of the ventilation  $\text{P}_{\text{ACO}_2}$  response curves with a large number of points for various levels of wakefulness.

The decrease in ventilatory response to  $\text{CO}_2$  with wakefulness is characterized by an increased  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold. A moderate decrease in slope of the response curve in sleep is also demonstrated. This is interpreted as an indication of a decreased "sensitivity" of the respiratory control system to the  $\text{CO}_2$  stimulus. The results support the suggestion that the reduced  $\text{CO}_2$  response in sleep (the changed setting of the respiratory chemostat) is due both to a decreased "sensitivity" of the respiratory centres to the  $\text{CO}_2$  stimulus per se and to a decreased neuronal drive on the respiratory centres.

with wakefulness should be taken into account in clinical routine examinations of pulmonary functions

In conclusion, a proposal for further clinical research may be made. It seems that a continuous analysis of EEG and respiration and probably some other bodily functions, as outlined in the present study, will provide a basis for increased understanding not only of various sleep disturbances but also of mental disorders, characterized by a defective wakefulness regulation. In this respect, cases usually diagnosed as "neurosis" are of special interest. Many of these show symptoms of tension restlessness (NILSSON 1960) and anxiety in combination with different cardiovascular, as well as respiratory symptoms (SODERSTROM 1954, BULOW 1961). This view is supported by some preliminary observations with the present technique in patients belonging to the clinical groups mentioned (BULOW & INGVAR 1963 c).

It is stressed that the level of wakefulness should be taken into account in every routine analysis of pulmonary functions

Investigations in progress favour the view that continuous measurement of EEG respiration and probably also some other variables representing basic bodily functions will provide a basis for increased understanding of sleep disturbances but also of various mental (neurotic) syndromes characterized by tension, anxiety or respiratory and cardiocirculatory symptoms. The stability factor in the respiration wakefulness mechanism may then presumably be used as an index of basic functional properties of an individual.

### *Acknowledgements*

The present investigation was started in collaboration with Docent DAVID H. INGVAR M.D. Department of Neurology, University of Lund, to whom I offer my sincere gratitude for the generous help given throughout the investigation as well as for expert advice and criticism especially on the neurophysiological aspects of the investigation.

The late Dr EILFRT SELANDER head of the Department of Pulmonary Diseases Malmö General Hospital Malmö provided the necessary laboratory facilities within his Department and supported my work in every possible way.

Sincere thanks go to Professor JAN WALDENSTROM M.D. head of the Department of Medicine Malmö University of Lund not only for his great interest shown during the course of the investigation but also for invaluable criticism and advice especially on the clinical studies on internal diseases relevant to the subject of the investigation.

I thank Docent GUNNAR LUNDIN and Dr CLAES LUNDGREN of the Aero Medical Laboratory, Institute of Physiology University of Lund, for fruitful discussions on respiration. Dr MÅNS ARBORELIUS kindly assisted in control experiments of the technique. Valuable technical support was given by Mrs M. NILSSON, Miss R. THYREN and Miss I. STRAND. Miss B. SÖRENSSON assisted in the preparation of the illustrations.

To my wife Dr KATARINA BÜLOW I am greatly indebted for good help throughout the investigation.

The investigation was supported by grants from the Swedish National Association against Heart and Chest Diseases from the United States Office of Naval Research (contract No. N 62558-2580) and from the Medical Faculty of the University of Lund.

BO ISRAELSSON Ph.D. assisted in the statistical work.

The English text was checked by Mr L. JAMES BROWN.



During wakefulness as well as during sleep, respiration is often governed by factors other than  $\text{CO}_2$  as implicated by the presence of a  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold below which the variations in  $\text{CO}_2$  tension has no certain effect on ventilation

The "rapid eye movement" (REM) sleep resembled drowsiness as to ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response

During tense alertness there was a moderate mean decrease in  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold. No certain change in slope was demonstrable

4 The period of onset of sleep is characterized by concomitant oscillations in wakefulness and respiration. The degree of periodic breathing (PB) is related to the degree of change in ventilation  $\text{CO}_2$  response between wakefulness and sleep

The degree of PB and change in  $\text{CO}_2$  response vary widely between the individuals, but are characteristic for the individual. Two groups are distinguished, one "stable" and one "unstable", according to the respiratory stability during changes in wakefulness. The former group, with the larger change in  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold, shows also a clear decrease in slope of the  $\text{CO}_2$  response curve (" $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity"), in the latter group no clear decrease in slope is demonstrable. The results suggest that the changes from wakefulness to sleep in  $\text{CO}_2$  threshold and in slope are probably interrelated.

The two groups of stability differ in respiratory rate and in the change in this rate between wakefulness and sleep. No differences between the two groups were found regarding various other respiratory parameters or age, sex, and body surface area or diurnal rhythm or presence of sleep deprivation.

The mechanism of onset of sleep is discussed. The initial phase of sleep onset is characterized by rapid and frequent fluctuation presumably in nervous balance mechanisms and also by concomitant changes in " $\text{CO}_2$  sensitivity" of the respiratory centres. Definite sleep is accompanied by a stabilization of the change in the setting of the balance mechanism.

5 Appropriate  $\text{CO}_2$  homeostasis is a prerequisite for stable sleep. Stable sleep only appears when the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension is increased and then kept within narrow limits. This can sometimes be enhanced by  $\text{CO}_2$  rebreathing.

When the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension exceeds an upper limit, an increase in level of wakefulness occurs. This upper limit is therefore interpreted as a " $\text{CO}_2$  arousal threshold". It increases with the depth of sleep.

6 Some clinical applications of the method presented are mentioned. In some central nervous or pulmonary mechanical dysfunction the close respiration wakefulness linkage was preserved though differing in various respects from the normal range stated here.

It is stressed that the level of wakefulness should be taken into account in every routine analysis of pulmonary functions

Investigations in progress favour the view that continuous measurement of EEG respiration and probably also some other variables representing basic bodily functions will provide a basis for increased understanding of sleep disturbances but also of various mental (neurotic) syndromes characterized by tension anxiety, or respiratory and cardiovascular symptoms. The 'stability' factor in the respiration wakefulness mechanism may then presumably be used as an index of basic functional properties of an individual.

### *Acknowledgements*

The present investigation was started in collaboration with Docent DAVID H. INGVAR M.D. Department of Neurology University of Lund to whom I offer my sincere gratitude for the generous help given throughout the investigation as well as for expert advice and criticism especially on the neurophysiological aspects of the investigation.

The late Dr EILFRT SELANDER head of the Department of Pulmonary Diseases Malmö General Hospital Malmö provided the necessary laboratory facilities within his Department and supported my work in every possible way.

Sincere thanks go to Professor JAN WALDEYSTROM M.D. head of the Department of Medicine Malmö University of Lund not only for his great interest shown during the course of the investigation but also for invaluable criticism and advice especially on the clinical studies on internal diseases relevant to the subject of the investigation.

I thank Docent GUNNAR LUNDIN and Dr CLAES LUNDGREN of the Aero Medical Laboratory Institute of Physiology University of Lund for fruitful discussions on respiration. Dr MÅNS ARBORELIUS kindly assisted in control experiments of the technique. Valuable technical support was given by Mrs M. NILSSON, Mrs R. THYREN and Miss I. STRAND. Miss B. SÖRENGREN assisted in the preparation of the illustrations.

To my wife Dr KATARINA BILZOW I am greatly indebted for good help throughout the investigation.

The investigation was supported by grants from the Swedish National Association against Heart and Chest Diseases from the United States Office of Naval Research (contract No. N 62558-2580) and from the Medical Faculty of the University of Lund.

BO ISRAELSSON Ph.D. assisted in the statistical work.  
The English text was checked by Mr L. JAMES BROWN.

## REFERENCES

- ARMSTRONG B W H H HURT R W BLIDE and J M WORKMAN The humoral regulation of breathing *Science* 1961 133 1897-1906
- ASAHINA K and R MATSUI Relationship between sleep FEG and circulatory activities *Jap J Physiol* 1962 12 124-128
- ASERINSKY E and N KLEITMAN Regularly occurring periods of eye motility and concomitant phenomena during sleep *Science* 1953 118 273-274
- ASMUSSEN E and M NIELSEN Studies on the initial changes in respiration at the transition from rest to work and from work to rest *Acta physiol scand* 1949 16 270-283
- Ventilatory response to CO during work at normal and at low oxygen tensions *Acta physiol scand* 1957 39 27-35
- BELLVILLE J W S W HOWLAND J C SEED and R W HOWDE The effect of sleep on the respiratory response to carbon dioxide *Anesthesiology* 1959 20 628-634
- BELLVILLE J W and J C SEED The effect of drugs on the respiratory response to carbon dioxide *Anesthesiology* 1960 21 727-741
- BIRCHFIELD R I H O SIEKER and A HEYMAN Alterations in respiratory function during natural sleep *J Lab clin Med* 1959 54 216-222
- BJURSTEDT H, C M HESSER G LILJSTRAND and G MATELL Effects of posture on alveolar arterial CO and O<sub>2</sub> differences and on alveolar dead space in man *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 65-82
- BLAKE H and R W GERARD Brain potentials during sleep *Amer J Physiol* 1937 119 692-703
- BONVALLET M P DELL and G RIEBEL Tonus sympathique et activité électrique corticale *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1951 6 119-144
- BONVALLET M A HUGELIN and P DELL Sensibilité comparée du système réticulaire activateur à l'acide et du centre respiratoire aux gaz du sang et à l'adrénaline *J Physiol (Paris)* 1955 47 651-654
- BOOTHBY W M Absence of apnoea after forced breathing *J Physiol (Lond)* 1912 15 328-337
- BOUYEROT P R FLANDROIS H PUCCINELLI and C BANGE Mise en évidence d'un mécanisme d'action chémoréflexe du stimulus CO<sub>2</sub> de la respiration chez le chien éveillé *J Physiol (Paris)* 1962 54 301-302
- BREMER F Cerveau isolé et physiologie de sommeil *C R Soc Biol (Paris)* 1935 118 1235-1241
- BROADBENT W H On Cheyne Stokes respiration in cerebral haemorrhage *Lancet* 1871 1 307-309
- BROBEIL A O HARTER E HERRMAN and A J NILSSON Messungen von cerebralen Kreislaufzeiten am Menschen und ihre Beziehung zur Gehirndurchblutung *Acta physiol scand* 1957 40 121-129
- BRODOVSKY H J A MACDONELL and R W CHERNIACK The respiratory response to carbon dioxide in health and in emphysema *J clin Invest* 1960 39 721-729
- BROWN H W and F PILLM The neurologic basis of Cheyne Stokes respiration *Amer J Med* 1961 30 849-860

- BLOW K Lung function in cardiac neurosis *Acta med scand* 1961 169 1-1  
 — 1963 a To be published  
 — 1963 b To be published
- BLOW K and D H INGVAR Respiration and state of wakefulness in normals studied by spirometry capnography and EEG A preliminary report *Acta physiol scand* 1961 51 230-238  
 — Respiration in petit mal epilepsy 1963 a *Neurology* In press  
 — Respiration and electroencephalography in narcolepsy 1963 b *Neurology* In press  
 — 1963 c To be published
- BLOW K, D H INGVAR and E NILSSON 1963 To be published
- CAMPBELL E J M and J B L HOWELL The determination of mixed venous and arterial  $\text{CO}_2$  tension by rebreathing techniques *In A symposium on pH and blood gas measurement* Ed by R E Woolmer London Churchill Ltd 1959 101-118
- CAMPBELL E J M and J B L HOWELL The sensation of breathlessness *Brit med Bull* 1963 19 36-40
- CAMPBELL E J M, E H WESTLAKE and R M CHERNIACK Simple methods of estimating oxygen consumption and efficiency of the muscles of breathing *J appl Physiol* 1957 11 303-308
- CHAPMAN R M, J C ARMINGTON and H R BRADDOCK A quantitative survey of kappa and alpha EEG activity *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1962 14 858-868
- COHEN M I and A HUGELIN Excitation reticulatrice et activité du nerf phrénique *J Physiol (Paris)* 1961 3 303-304
- COLLIER C R Determination of mixed venous  $\text{CO}_2$  tensions by rebreathing *J appl Physiol* 1956 9 1-29
- COLLIER C R, J E AFFELDT and A F FARR Continuous rapid infrared  $\text{CO}_2$  analysis. Fractional sampling and accuracy in determining alveolar  $\text{CO}_2$  *J Lab clin Med* 1955 45 526-539
- CUNNINGHAM D J C and B B LLOYD (Ed) *The regulation of human respiration* Proceed of the J S Haldane Centen Symp Oxford Blackwell 1963 pp 591
- CZERNY A Beobachtungsnubes den Schlaf im Kindesalter unter physioloschen Verhältnissen *Jahrb Kinderheilk* 1897 33 1-28
- DAVIS H P, A DAVIS A L, LOMIS E N, HARVEY and C HOBART Human brain potentials during the onset of sleep *J Neurophysiol* 1938 1 24-38
- DEJOURS P, J LABROUSSE, J RAYNAUD and R FLANDROIS Etude du stimulus gazeux carbonique de l'activité chez l'homme *J Physiol (Paris)* 1958 50 239-243
- DELL P Correlations entre le système végétatif et le système de la vie de relation. Mesencephale et cortex cérébral *J Physiol (Paris)* 1952 44 471-557
- DEMANT W and A KLEITMAN Cyclic variations in EEG during sleep and their relation to eye movement, body motility and dreaming *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1957 9 63-690
- DEGLAS C and J S HALDANE The cause of periodic or Cheyne Stokes breathing *J Physiol (Lond)* 1909 38 401-419
- DOUGLAS W V A re-breathon valve with insignificant dead space *Acta physiol scand* 1919 18 34-3
- EDRED E and B FLJEMORF Relations of the reticular formation to muscle spindle activation *In Reticular Formation of the Brain* Ed by Jasper H H et al London Churchill Ltd 1958 5-83

- EULER C v and U SODENBERG Medullary chemosensitive receptors *J Physiol (Lond)* 1952 a 118 545-554
- Slow potentials in the respiratory centers *J Physiol (Lond)* 1952 b 118 555-564
- The influence of hypothalamic thermoceptive structures on the electroencephalogram and gamma motor activity *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1957 9 391-408
- FRANK H R Influence of cerebral activity in wakefulness on regulation of breathing *J appl Physiol* 1961 16 15-20
- FISCHGOLD H and H A SCHWARTZ A clinical electroencephalographic and polygraphic study of sleep in the human adult *In* Ciba Foundation Symposium on The Nature of Sleep Ed by G F W Wolstenholme and M O Conner London Churchill Ltd 1961 209-236
- FISHMAN A P H W FRITTS Jr and A COURVAND Effects of breathing carbon dioxide upon the pulmonary circulation *Circulation* 1960 22 220-225
- GESELL R J LAPIDES and M LEVIN Interaction of central and peripheral chemical control of breathing *Amer J Physiol* 1940 130 155-170
- GIBBS F A and E L GIBBS Atlas of electroencephalography Reading Addison Wesley Co 1951 1 pp 321
- GLEICHMANN U D H INGVAR D W LÜBBERS B K STRÖJO and G THEWS Time  $pO_2$  and  $pCO_2$  of the cerebral cortex related to blood gas tensions *Acta physiol scand* 1962 55 127-138
- GLEICHMANN U and D W LÜBBERS Die Messung des Kohlensäuredruckes in Geweben und Flüssigkeiten mit der  $pCO_2$  Elektrode unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der gleichzeitigen Messung von  $pO_2$ ,  $pCO_2$  und pH im Blut *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1960 271 456-472
- GRANIT R Receptors and sensory reception New Haven Yale Univ Press 1955 pp 369
- GRANIT R and H R KAADA Influence of stimulation of central nervous structures on muscle spindle in cat *Acta physiol scand* 1952 27 130-160
- GRAY J S Pulmonary ventilation and its physiological regulation Springfield Ill Ch C Thomas Publ 1950 pp 82
- GRAY J E F S GRODINS and E T CARTER Alveolar and total ventilation and the dead space problem *J appl Physiol* 1956 9 307-320
- GOFFERT H and U HENNEBERG Der Anstieg der  $CO_2$  Konzentration in der Expirationsluft im Verlauf einzelner Atemzüge *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1956 263 1-22
- HAAB P and J PIPER Analyse du gradient alvéoloartériel de gaz carbonique *Helv physiol pharmacol Acta* 1961 19 25-27
- HALDANE J S and J G PRISTELLY The regulation of the lung ventilation *J Physiol (Lond)* 1905 32 225-266
- HAMMOND P H P A MERTON and G G SUTTON Nervous gradation of muscular contraction *Brit med Bull* 1956 12 211-218
- HANKS E C S H NGAI and B R FRANK The respiratory threshold for carbon dioxide in anesthetized man *Anesthesiology* 1961 22 393-397
- HAWKINS D R H B PURYEAR C D WALLACE W B DEAL and I S THOMAS Basal skin resistance during sleep and dreaming *Science* 1962 136 321-322
- HESS W R Das Zwischenhirn und die Regulation von Kreislauf und Atmung Beiträge zur Physiologie des menschlichen II Teil Leipzig Georg Thieme Verlag 1938 pl 127
- HESSER C M Central and chemoreflex components in the respiratory activity during acid base displacements in the blood *Acta physiol scand* 1949 18 Suppl 61 1-69
- HEYMANS C and E NEIL Reflexogenic areas of the cardiovascular system London Churchill Ltd 1958 pp 271

- HOFF H E and C G BRECKENRIDGE, Intrinsic mechanisms in periodic breathing A M A Arch Neurol Psychiat. 1954 7 11-49
- HOFFMAN B F E E SECKING C MCC BROOKS F H KOENIG K E COLEMAN and H J TRULMAN Quantitative evaluation of sleep J appl Physiol 1956 8 361-368
- HUGELIN A Les bases physiologiques de la vigilance L'Encephale 1956 45 767-799
- HUGELIN A and M BONVALLET Etude experimentale des interrelations reticulo-corticales Proposition d'une theorie de l'arretement reticulaire à un système diffus cortical J Physiol (Paris) 1957 49 1201-1223
- JANSEN D H Cortical state of excitability and cortical circulation In Reticular Formation of the Brain Internat Symp Ed by H H JASPER et al Boston Little Brown & Co 1958 381-408
- JANSEN H H Cortical excitatory state and synchronism in the control of bioelectrical and autonomous rhythms Cold Spr Harb Symp quant Biol 1956 4 320-338
- The twenty electrode system of the international federation Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol 1958 10 371-375
- JOUVET M Recherches sur les structures nerveuses et les mecanismes responsables des differentes phases du sommeil physiologique Arch ital Biol 1960 100 1-206
- JOUVET M and F MICHEL, Sur les voies nerveuses responsables de l'activité rapide corticale au cours du sommeil physiologique chez le chat (phase paradoxale) C. R. Soc Biol 1960 154 99-99.
- JOUVET M F MICHEL and D MOLNIER Analyse electroencephalographique comparee du sommeil physiologique chez le chat et chez l'homme Rev Neurol 1960 103 189-90
- JURICH H Die Veränderung der Erregbarkeit des Atemzentrums durch erregbarkeits senkende Arzneimittel mit einem Beitrag zur Methodik der Erregbarkeitsbestimmung Z ges exp Med 1951 117 539-558
- JUNG R Correlation of bioelectrical and autonomic phenomena with alterations of consciousness and arousal in man In Brain Mechanisms and Consciousness Ed by J F Desautels New York Oxford Blackwell 1954 310-334
- KANDA B R and H H JASPER, Respiratory responses to stimulation of temporal pole in ul and hippocampal and limbic gyrus in man A M A Arch. Neurol Psychiat. 1959 68 609-619
- KAO F F Regulation of respiration during muscular activity Amer J Physiol 1956 185 14-151
- KAO F F R G SLATTERY and W K LI Respiratory sensitivity to carbon dioxide in unanesthetized dogs Amer J Physiol 1960 9 1041-1048
- KARP H R H O SIEKER and A HEYMAN Cerebral circulation and function in Cheyne-Stokes respiration Amer J Med 1961 30 861-870
- KETY S S Sleep and the energy metabolism of the brain In The Nature of Sleep Ed by C F W Wolstenholme and M O'Connor London Churchill Ltd 1961 37-396
- KLEITMAN S Sleep and Wakesleeps Chicago Univ of Chicago Press 1939 pp 638
- KROGH A and LINDBARD J The volume of the "dead space" in breathing J Physiol (Lond) 1913 47 39-43
- LAMBERTSEN C J Carbon dioxide and respiration in acid base homeostasis Anesthesiology 1960 1 61-651

- LAMBERTSEN C J R H ROUGH D Y COOPER G L EMMEL H H LOE SCHCKE and C F SCHMIDT Comparison of relation ship of re spiratory minute volume to  $P_{CO_2}$  and pH of arterial and internal jugular blood in normal man during hyperventilation produced by low concentrations of CO at 1 atmo sphere and by O at 3.0 atmo spheres J appl Physiol 1953 5 803-813
- LANDMESSER C M S COBB A S PECK and J G CONVERSE Re spiratory re pon ses to carbon dioxide transients in normal volunteers Anesthesiology 1957 18 807-830
- LILJESTRAND A Neural control of re piration Physiol Rev 1958 38 691-708
- LINDHARD J On the excitability of the respiratory centre J Physiol (Paris) 1911 4<sup>e</sup> 337-358
- Über die Erregbarkeit des Atmungszentrums bei Muskelarbeit Arbeit physiologie 1933 7 72-82
- LOESCHCKE G C Spielen für die Ruheatmung des Men schen vom O<sub>2</sub> Druck unabhängige Erregungen der Chemoreceptoren eine Rolle? Pflug Arch ges Physiol 1953 257 349-362
- LOESCHCKE H H Beziehungen zwischen CO und Atmung Anaesthet 1960 9 38-46
- LOESCHCKE H H and K H GERTZ Einfluss des O Druckes in der Finatmung luft auf die Atemtätigkeit des Menschen geprüft unter Konstanzhaltung des alveolaren CO<sub>2</sub> Druckes Pflug Arch ges Physiol 1958 267 460-477
- LOEWY A Zur Kenntnisse der Erregbarkeit des Athemzentrum Pflug Arch ges Physiol 1890 47 601-621
- LOOMIS A L E N HARVEY and G HOBART Cerebral states during sleep as studied by human brain potentials J Exp Psychol 1937 21 127-144
- MAGNUSSEN G Studies on the respiration during sleep A contribution to the physiology of the sleep function London Lewis & Co Ltd 1944 pp 276
- MAGOUN H W The waking brain Springfield Charles C Thomas Publ 1958 pp 138
- An ascending reticular activating system in the brain stem AMA Arch Neurol Psychiat 1952 67 145-154
- MANGOLD R L SOKOLOFF E CONNER J KLEINERMAN P O G THIERNAN and S S KETY The effects of sleep and lack of sleep on the cerebral circulation and metabolism of normal young men J clin Invest 1955 34 1092-1100
- MARTIN I Somatic reactivity In Handbook of Abnormal Psychology Ed by H J Eysenck London Pitman Ltd 1960 417-456
- MILLIGAN G A Oximeter instrument for measuring continuously oxygen saturation of arterial blood in man Rev Scient Instr 1942 13 434-444
- MILLS J N Hyperpnoea induced by forced breathing J Physiol (Lond) 1916 105 95-116
- MORUZZI G Synchronizing influences of the brain stem and the inhibitory mechanisms underlying the production of sleep by sensory stimulation Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol 1960 Suppl 13 231-256
- MORUZZI G and H W MAGOUN Brain stem reticular formation and activating of EEG Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol 1949 1 455-473
- MOSSO A Über die gegenseitigen Beziehungen der Bauch und Brustathmung Arch Anat Physiol 1878 441-468
- Periodische Athmung und Luxus Athmung Arch Anat Physiol 1886 3 -116
- NIELSEN M Untersuchungen über die Atemregulation beim Men schen Skand Arch Physiol 1936 74 Suppl 10 83-208
- NIELSEN M and H SMITH Studies on regulation of re piration in acute hypoxia Acta physiol scand 1957 24 293-313

- NILS OY L. Physiologic and biochemic representation of some psychiatric variables  
Stockholm Almqvist & Wiksell 1960 pp 108
- OSWALD I. Sleeping and waking Amsterdam Elsevier 1960 pp 33
- PAULI H G F F NOE and E H COATES Die zentrale Atemregulation bei Herzpatenten  
Cardiologia 1959 31 114-120
- PAWLOW I. Innere Hemmung der bedingten Reflexe unter der Schlaf — ein und derselbe  
Prozess Skand Arch Physiol 1923 44 42-58
- PITT G N M S PEMBREY and R W ALLEN Observations upon Cheyne Stokes respiration  
on Trans med chir Soc Edinb 1907 90 49-82
- PITTS R F Organization of the respiratory center Physiol Rev 1946 26 609-630
- PRYOR W W Cheyne Stokes respiration in patients with cardiac enlargement and prolonged circulation time Circulation 1951 4 233-238
- RAMDAV A C Effects of metabolism and anesthesia on pulmonary ventilation J appl  
Physiol 1959 14 100-101
- REED C J and N KLYTMAV Effect of sleep on respiration Amer J Physiol 1956 93  
600-608
- REED D J and R H KELLOGG Changes in respiratory response to carbon dioxide during  
natural sleep at sea level and at altitude J appl Physiol 1958 13 324-330
- RILEY R L R E DUTTON F J D FULFRAV S NATH H H HUNT C Y O HINOTO  
and J H SIPPLE Regulation of respiration and blood gases Report at the Conference  
on Regulation of Respiration Ann N Y Acad Sci 1963 To be published
- ROBIN E D R D WHELFY C H CRUMP and D M TRAVIS Alveolar gas tension  
pulmonary ventilation and blood pH during physiologic sleep in normal subjects  
J clin Invest 1958 37 981-989
- ROSSI G F and A ZANCHETTI The brain stem reticular formation Anatomy and physiology  
Arch Ital Biol 1957 95 199-43
- ROTH M Narkolepsie und Hypersomnie Berlin VEB Verlag Volk und Gesundheit 1962  
pp 48
- SALMOTRAGHI G C and B D BURNS Localization and patterns of discharge of respiratory  
neurons in brain stem of cat J Neurophysiol 1960 23 2-13
- SCHAEFER K E Respiratory pattern and respiratory response to CO<sub>2</sub> J appl Physiol  
1958 13 1-14
- SCHLÄRING E A Versuche über die Quantität der von einem Menschen in 24 Stunden  
an geathmeten Kohlenstoffe Ann Chem Pharm 1843 45 214-232
- SIMMONS C F The cerebral circulation in health and disease Springfield, Ill. Charles  
C Thomas Publ 1950 pp 83
- SCHMIDT C F and J H COMBES Jr Functions of carotid and aortic bodies Physiol. Rev  
1940 20 11-157
- SCHOLANDER P F J Analyzer for accurate estimation of respiratory gases in one half  
cubic centimeter samples J biol Chem 1941 167 235-250
- SCHWARTZ B A EEG et mouvements oculaires dans le sommeil de nuit Electroenceph  
clin Neurophysiol 1962 14 16-18
- SHAPIRO A Observation on some periodic and nonperiodic phenomena in normal human  
sleep Ann N Y Acad Sci 1960 98 1139-1143
- SHEPARD J F The circulation and sleep Univ of Michigan Studies Scientific Series  
2 New York, MacMillan 1914 pp 83
- SHOCK N W and M H SOLEY Effect of oxygen tension of inspired air on respiratory  
response of normal subjects to carbon dioxide Amer J Physiol 1940 130 117-183



- SIESJO B K On the bicarbonate/carbonic acid buffer system of the cerebral cortex  
Thesis Univ of Lund 1962 pp 28
- SIGGAARD ANDERSEN O K ENGEL K JØRGENSEN and P ASTRUP A micro method for determination of pH carbon dioxide tension base excess and standard bicarbonate in capillary blood *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 1960 12 172-176
- SMITH C Resume des recherches experimentales sur la respiration *J Physiol de l'homme et des animaux* 1860 3 506-521 632-645 (Cited from MACNABSEN 1911)
- SOKOLOFF L The action of drugs on the cerebral circulation *Pharmacol Rev* 1959 11 1-85
- ~ Local cerebral circulation at rest and during altered cerebral activity induced by anaesthesia or visual stimulation *In The Regional Chemistry Physiology and Pharmacology of the Nervous System* Ed by S S Kety and J Elkes Oxford Pergamon Press Ltd 1961 pp 107-117
- STRAUB H Über Schwankungen in der Tätigkeit des Atemzentrums speziell im Schlaf *Deutsches Arch klin Med* 1915 117 397-418
- SVANBERG L Influence of posture on the lung volumes ventilation and circulation in normals *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 1957 9 Suppl 25 pp 195
- SODERSTROM N Suckandning och suckdyspne *Nord Med* 1954 52 940-945
- TALBERT O R J CURRENS and M F COREN Cheyne Stokes respiration observations in 17 patients (clinical experimental pathological) on role of nervous system *Trans Amer neurol Ass* 1954 79 226-228
- ULMER W T and G REICHEL Untersuchungen zum alveolar/arteriellen Kohlen saure druckgradienten Bad Oeynha Gespr 14 über Physiol und Pathol des Gasaustausches in der Lunge Berlin Springer Verl 1960 53-65
- WYSS O A M Respiratory centre and reflex control of breathing I The mode of functioning of the respiratory centre *Helv physiol pharmacol Acta* 1954 12 Suppl 10 5-25
- YAMADA M Metodische Untersuchungen über das Haldane Hendersonsche Verfahren der Bestimmung der alveolären  $\text{CO}_2$  Spannung und über den Einfluss von Sauerstoff auf die Erregbarkeit des Atemzentrums *Biochem Z Berlin* 1918 89 37-47
- ÅSTRÖM A On the action of combined carbon dioxide excess and oxygen deficiency in the regulation of breathing *Acta physiol scand* 1952 27 Suppl 98 1-59
- ØSTERGAARD T The excitability of the respiratory centre during sleep and during Evipan anaesthesia *Acta physiol scand* 1944 8 1-15

Subject	Sex	Age	In c lip %	In c lip type (see below)	PB	RSA	SQ	ST <sub>A</sub>	D <sub>1</sub> T <sub>A</sub> A	D <sub>1</sub> T <sub>A</sub> B	D <sub>1</sub> T <sub>A</sub> C	D <sub>1</sub> T <sub>A</sub> D	D <sub>1</sub> T <sub>A</sub> E	SQ D <sub>1</sub> T <sub>A</sub> C	SQ D <sub>1</sub> T <sub>A</sub> D
A O	f	25	I	D +	0	1 ■	08	365	06	13 <sup>1</sup>	14	18		1 ■	14
				D +	-	199	07	178		08 <sup>1</sup>	10 <sup>1</sup>			08 <sup>1</sup>	
				D +	0	199	08	431 <sup>1</sup>			18			13	
				D +	0	197	07	409	10			18		11 <sup>1</sup>	
K N	mean f	0	I	D +	(+)	16	05	332 <sup>2</sup>	16 <sup>1</sup>	13 <sup>1</sup>	21 <sup>2</sup>			15 <sup>1</sup>	
				D +	(+)	16	07	383 <sup>1</sup>			21 <sup>1</sup>			15 <sup>1</sup>	
				D +	(+)	161	07	384 <sup>1</sup>			13	20		09	
				D +	(+)	16	06	366	16	13	18	20		14	
D F	mean m	22	I	(D) <sup>2</sup>	(+)	06	07	385	14		00			00	
				D	(+)	206	08	385	14		00			00	
W J	mean f	24	I	D +	(+)	206	08	385	14		25			25	
				D +	(+)	177	10	401	14		25			25	
mean	f	24	II	D +	(+)	177	09	414	07		25			25	
				D +	(+)	177	10	408	12		25			25	
				D +	(+)	149	12	397	17		25			25	
				(D) <sup>2</sup>	(+)	195	05	337 <sup>4</sup>			25			25	
A A	f	31	II	D +	(+)	155	07	367			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	380			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	04	411			25			25	
				D +	(+)	195	08	431			25			25	
G H	f	36	II	D +	(+)	179	04	411			25			25	
				D +	(+)	195	08	431			25			25	
				D +	(+)	184	04	418			25			25	
				D +	(+)	175	11	429			25			25	
I I	m	40	II	D +	(+)	185	06	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
K C	m	40	II	D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
I W	m	40	II	D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
I A	m	40	II	D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
G S	m	40	II	D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
T S	m	40	II	D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
I S	m	40	II	D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
I W	m	40	II	D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	
				D +	(+)	179	05	399			25			25	
				D +	(+)	198	04	398			25			25	

Subject	UNSTABLE GROUP		Age	Investing	Investing (see below)	P B	BSA	SO	*TA	DsTA <sup>a</sup>	DsTA <sup>b</sup>	DsTA <sup>c</sup>	DsTA <sup>d</sup>	DsTA <sup>e</sup>	SQ DsTA <sup>c</sup>	SQ DsTA <sup>e</sup>	801
	Sex	GROUP															
B H	m	UNSTABLE GROUP	23	I	D	++(+)	214	11	336			33			40		
			24	II	D	—	214	14	361	00							
			25	III	(D)	++	214	10	370 <sup>a</sup>								
			26	IV	(N)	++(+)	214	09	363								
S B	f	mean	28	I	D+	++(+)	214	11	358	00		24			24		
			29	II	D+	++	174	12	368			26			23		
			30	III	Ds+	++(+)	174	11	356			28			29		
						++	174	12	380			28 <sup>a</sup>			31		
B B	m	mean	23	I	D+	++	174	12	368			34			30		
			23	II	D+	++	204	07	404			49			34		
			25	III	Ns+	+(+)	204	06	412			48			34		
						++	204	07	408			49			34		
V A	f	mean	22	I	(D)*	++	170	13	406	14		49			34		
			22	II	D	++	170	08	359			48			34		
						++	170	11	383			46			34		
						++	195	06	377			50			34		
K A	m	mean	47	I	D+	++	195	06	377			35			54		
			48	II	D+	++	195	07	377 <sup>a</sup>			33			21		
						++	195	07	377			42 <sup>a</sup>			291		
						++	195	08	409			39			25		
E. N	m	mean	27	I	D+	++	195	09	407			48 <sup>a</sup>			38 <sup>a</sup>		
			28	II	D+	++	196	09	408			88			70		
						++	160	11	385			88			43 <sup>a</sup>		
						++	160	09	379			88			41		
K B	f	mean	41	I	Ns+	++	160	10	382			45			50		
			42	I	D+	++	195	06	430 <sup>a</sup>			45			41		
			42	II	D+	++	195	06	417			82			46		
						++	195	06	417			81 <sup>a</sup>			23		
I A	f	mean	22	I	D+	++	195	06	439			44			26		
			23	II	Ns+	++	151	11	398			41			25		
						++	151	12	373			42			49		
						++	151	12	386			41 <sup>a</sup>			16		
mean	mean	mean				++	151	12	386			25			30		
						++	151	12	386			25			30		
						++	151	12	386			25			30		
						++	151	12	386			25			30		

Subj	Sex	Age	Inver lig %	In e lig type (see below)	PB	BSA	SQ	ST <sub>A</sub>	D <sub>ST A</sub>	D <sub>ST B</sub>	D <sub>ST C</sub>	D <sub>ST AB</sub>	D <sub>ST AC</sub>	D <sub>ST AD</sub>	D <sub>ST AE</sub>	SQ D <sub>ST A</sub>
I J	f	1	11	D+	+	177	06	391	00	19	43	73				26
				D+	+	177	07	364		15	40	58			58	28
				D+	+	177	07	378	00	17	4	73			58	27
mean	f	1	11	(N)	+	1	05	352 <sup>4</sup>		14	57					29
				(D)	-	172	05	316	22							
		24	11	(N)	+	172	05	349	00	14	57					29
S J	m	21	1	(N)	+	188	09	415		17	45	45			15	41
		1	11	(D)	+	188	10	384		19	48					48
					+	188	10	400		16	47	45			45	45
mean	f	5		D+	+	153	12	372	00	17	32					30
		41		D+	+	166	11	361 <sup>4</sup>		17	32					57
		69		D	+	199	07	332		1	52					30
J C	f	60		D	+	152	05	400		1	52	105 <sup>2</sup>				26
M L	f	39		D+	+	190	05	369	21	19	86	86				13
F A	m	37		D	+	1	09	357	14	15 <sup>2</sup>						53 <sup>1</sup>
H B	f	33		D+	+	191	08	360		17	41 <sup>1</sup>					33 <sup>1</sup>
S L	m	29		D+	+	191	09	368	04	09 <sup>3</sup>	49					44
G S	m	26		D+	+	180	10	378	08	26	38					38
A K	m	13		D+	+	191	10	370		16 <sup>1</sup>	46	46 <sup>2</sup>				26
I B	m	39		D+	+	165	11	428	21	17 <sup>3</sup>	39	60				43
M W	f	59		D+	+	176	05	383	03	15	12					66
A T	f	59		D+	+	165	11	372		15	12					46
A L	f	42		D+	+	175	06	379	06	14 <sup>1</sup>	44 <sup>1</sup>					45 <sup>1</sup>
M F	m	44		D+	+	211	07	400		—						
E. H	m	45		D+	+	195	08	383	22	30	44 <sup>2</sup>					38 <sup>1</sup>
S I	m	27		D+	+	195	08	370		0 <sup>1</sup>	68					18
Y T	m	39		D	+	145	07	370	14	15	38					27
I H	m	39		D	+	193	07	396		21	33					46
H T	m	39		B	+	173	08	338	03	21	33					36
mean	m	39			+	173	08	338	03	21	33					36

# Explanation of symbols in the table

- 1 sT based on only 3 or 4 points
- 2 sT based on only 1 or 2 points (near the sV line)
- 3 measured during EEG stage B<sub>1</sub>
- 4 measured during a stage between EEG stage A and B<sub>1</sub>
- not possible to estimate (because the subject was awake most of the time)

For classification of degree of PB (periodic breathing) see page 61

3 subjects were not included in the table since the signs of drowsiness and sleep were of too short duration to allow estimation from CO<sub>2</sub> tests of sT<sub>B</sub> or sT during sleep

- D investigated during day time
- N investigated during night
- Ds slept during next preceeding night
- Ns slept during next preceeding day time
- ( ) not night worker or no night work for several weeks
- + following one of the above mentioned signs means subjects who were used to night work

were of too short duration to allow estimation from CO<sub>2</sub> tests





SINGLE UNIT ACTIVITY  
IN THE PERIPHERAL  
AUDITORY SYSTEM OF  
A TELEOST FISH

BY  
PER STOCKFLETH ENGER





SINGLE UNIT ACTIVITY  
IN THE PERIPHERAL  
AUDITORY SYSTEM OF  
A TELEOST FISH



GLE UNIT ACTIVITY  
THE PERIPHERAL  
DITORY SYSTEM OF  
A TELEOST FISH

BY

PER STOCKFLETH ENGER

OSLO 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 59 SUPPLEMENTUM 210

FROM THE INSTITUTE OF ZOOPHYSIOLOGY, UNIVERSITY OF OSLO  
BLINDERN OSLO NORWAY

---

SINGLE UNIT ACTIVITY  
IN THE PERIPHERAL  
AUDITORY SYSTEM OF  
A TELEOST FISH

BY  
PER STOCKFLETH ENGER

OSLO 1963



## Acknowledgements

The present investigation has been carried out mainly at the Institute of Zoophysiology, University of Oslo, Norway, and in part at Kristineberg Zoological Station, Fiskebackskil, Sweden, with financial support from the National Institutes of Health, U. S. Public Health Service (grant no. B 3402), the Norwegian Research Council for Science and the Humanities, and from Fiskeritæringens forsøksfond.

I am greatly indebted to Mr. O. Iversen of the Institute of Zoophysiology for the expert construction of the mechanical part of the experimental set up, to Assistant Professor C. Arnesen of the Physics Department for help in the vibration measurements, and to Dr. med. J. Jansen, Jr. for valuable suggestions and criticism during the preparation of the manuscript.

I wish also to express my thanks to Miss E. Furst and Mr. G. Lilleheil for technical assistance, to Mr. F. Walvig of the Biological Station, Drøbak, for supplying live fish, to Miss I. Gjoen and Mr. O. Brynhildsrud for the illustrations, to Mrs. J. Haavie for help with the English manuscript, and to Mrs. A. Moe for patient typing of the many versions.



© The Norwegian Research Council for Science and the Humanities 1963  
(Norges almenntvitenskapelige forskningsråd)  
Section D 603—17 T

Printing arrangements by  
UNIVERSITETSFORLAGET

PRINTED IN NORWAY BY  
A. W. BROGGERS BOKTRYKKFRIKS - OSLO

## Contents

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	5
INTRODUCTION	9
MATERIALS AND METHODS	12
RESULTS	17
I General	17
II Spontaneous activity	21
III Response to sound stimulation	24
A General	24
B Pattern of response	26
C Effects of previous stimulation on the response and post-stimulatory depression of spontaneous activity	28
D Relationship between sound intensity and response	30
E Relation between sound frequency and response	31
DISCUSSION	38
SUMMARY	44
REFERENCES	46



## Introduction

Most of our knowledge of the hearing or vibratory sense in teleost fishes is based on the results of conditioning experiments. From studies where conditioned reflexes have been formed followed by operative elimination of different parts of the labyrinth it is well established that the pars inferior (sacculus and lagena) is the chief organ for sound perception in teleosts (VON FRISCH and STETTER 1932, VON FRISCH 1936, 1938, DIJKGRAAF 1949) and that the vestibular function resides in the pars superior (utricle and semicircular canals). This does not necessarily mean that each part of the labyrinth functions as either an equilibrium or hearing organ exclusively. In fact DIJKGRAAF (1949) has shown that the utricle also perceives sound and SCHÖEN and VON HOLST (1950) that the lagena also plays a part in the maintenance of equilibrium in bony fishes. In elasmobranchs this is the main function of the lagena as shown by LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS (1949, 1951) who studied the nerve response of their labyrinth. Using isolated preparations they found that part of the macula sacculi, the macula neglecta and the lacinia of the macula utriculi responded to vibrations whereas the otolith bearing part of the macula utriculi, the posterior portion of the macula sacculi and the macula lagena did not respond. The latter contained gravity receptors only.

The question of absolute sound pressure threshold is barely treated in the literature. GRIFIN (1950) calculated from actual measurements that the minnow had a threshold of response to underwater sounds of about 21-32 decibels (db) above  $2 \cdot 10^{-4}$   $\mu$ Bar ( $\mu$ B) i.e. 0.002-0.01  $\mu$ B and the eel 50-60 db i.e. 0.06-0.2  $\mu$ B. AUTRUM and POGGENDORF (1951) and POGGENDORF (1952) found sound pressures of 0.003-1 and 0.001-0.01  $\mu$ B sufficient to elicit response in the catfish (*Ameiurus nebulosus*).

The ranges of sound frequencies that can be perceived are known for a large number of species but information on pitch discrimination is available for only a few. Table 1 lists these data for several species of fish. More extensive reviews of the literature are given by VON FRISCH



## Introduction

Most of our knowledge of the hearing or vibratory sense in teleost fishes is based on the results of conditioning experiments. From studies where conditioned reflexes have been formed followed by operative elimination of different parts of the labyrinth it is well established that the pars inferior (sacculus and lagena) is the chief organ for sound perception in teleosts (VON FRISCH and STETTER 1932, VON FRISCH 1936, 1939, DIJKGRAAF 1949) and that the vestibular function resides in the pars superior (utricle and semicircular canals). This does not necessarily mean that each part of the labyrinth functions as either an equilibrium or hearing organ exclusively. In fact, DIJKGRAAF (1949) has shown that the utricle also perceives sound and SCHÖEV and VON HOLST (1950) that the lagena also plays a part in the maintenance of equilibrium in bony fishes. In elasmobranchs this is the main function of the lagena as shown by LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS (1949, 1951) who studied the nerve response of their labyrinth. Using isolated preparations they found that part of the macula sacculi, the macula neglecta and the lacinia of the macula utriculi responded to vibrations whereas the otolith-bearing part of the macula utriculi, the posterior portion of the macula sacculi and the macula lagena did not respond. The latter contained gravity receptors only.

The question of absolute sound pressure threshold is barely treated in the literature. GÖTTMANN (1950) calculated from actual measurements that the minnow had a threshold of response to underwater sounds of about 21-35 decibels (db) above  $2 \cdot 10^{-4} \mu\text{Bar}$  ( $\mu\text{B}$ ) i.e. 0.002-0.01  $\mu\text{B}$  and the eel 50-60 db i.e. 0.06-0.2  $\mu\text{B}$ . AUTRUM and PUGGENDORF (1951) and PUGGENDORF (1952) found sound pressures of 0.003-1 and 0.001-0.01  $\mu\text{B}$  sufficient to elicit response in the catfish (*Ameiurus nebulosus*).

The ranges of sound frequencies that can be perceived are known for a large number of species but information on pitch discrimination is available for only a few. Table I lists these data for several species of fish. More extensive reviews of the literature are given by VON FRISCH

(1938) KLEEREKOPER and CHAGNON (1954) LOWENSTEIN (1957) and SCHWARZKOPFF (1960) With regard to both upper frequency limit perceived and to pitch discrimination Ostariophysi fishes hear much better than nonostariophysids due to the presence in the former of a morphological connection between the swimbladder and the inner ear through the three pairs of Weberian ossicles (VON FRISCH 1936 POGGENDORF 1952) Perception of sound frequencies up to 13 000 cps has been reported for the catfish (STETTER 1929 VON FRISCH 1936) although in most of these species the upper hearing limit lies around 5000-7000 cps

For most nonostariophysids the upper limit is well below 1000 cps Some species however which possess swimbladder extrusions contacting some part of the labyrinth (Sparidae) or air-filled cavities around the inner ear (Mormyridae Anabantidae) are sensitive to tone frequencies up to 1250 and 3000 cps respectively

Pitch discrimination in Ostariophysi was studied by STETTER (1929) who found minnows (*Phoxinus phoxinus*) able to discriminate two tones one octave apart (100 per cent frequency difference) and in one case even a minor third apart (19 per cent) However these values concern absolute pitch since the experimental fish was not presented with two different tones in immediate succession but had to remember the first tone for some time before the next one sounded WOHLFAHRT (1939) investigated relative pitch discrimination in minnows and found it to be approximately 6 per cent for tones around 1000 cps DIJKGRAAF and VERHEIJEN (1950) improving Wohlfahrt's technique found the threshold for pitch discrimination to be 3 per cent in the 400-800 cps range With the same methods DIJKGRAAF (1952) found the best pitch discrimination for nonostariophysids to be 9 per cent

The basis for pitch discrimination in teleosts is still unknown Their labyrinth has no obvious morphological frequency analysers all three otolith organs are calcite structures embedded in cavities filled with endolymph and covered by membranes which in certain areas are lined with sensory epithelia There would seem to be two possible mechanisms upon which pitch discrimination can rest in the absence of a morphological discriminator namely 1) synchronization between sound frequency and frequency of impulse discharge and 2) use of different sensory units for different sound frequency ranges

Electrophysiological data on the sense of hearing in teleosts are scarce ADRIAN CRAIK and STURDY (1938) obtained microphonic responses from the ear but no action potentials ZOTTERMAN (1943) succeeded in

Table I

Upper hearing limit and pitch discrimination in some teleost fishes

Family	Species	Upper frequency limit of hearing (cps)	frequency discrimination for given pitch (cps)	Author
OSTARIOPHYSI				
Cyprinidae	<i>Phoxinus phoxinus</i>	5000-7000	19 6    1000 3    400-800	STETTER 1929 WOHLFAHRT 1939 DIJKGRAAF and VERHEIJEN 1950 STETTER 1929
	<i>Carassius auratus</i>	3480		
Characridae	3 species	6960		v BOUTEVILLE 1935
Siluridae	<i>A. eunus</i> <i>reticulatus</i>	13 000		STETTER 1929 v FRISCH 1938
NON-OSTARIOPHYSI				
Anguillidae	<i>Anguilla anguilla</i>	488-650	100	DIESSELHORST 1938
Gobiidae	<i>Gobius pagellus</i>	600-800		DIJKGRAAF 1949
	<i>G. niger</i>	800	9    150 12    300	DIJKGRAAF 1952
Sciaenidae	<i>Corvina nigra</i>	1000	12    395	—
Sparidae	<i>Sparus aurata</i>	1250	under 9    150 12°    300-450 over 30    600	—
Mimidae	<i>C. atheniensis</i> sp	2794-3136	12	STIPETIC 1939
	<i>Marcusenius</i> sp	2899-3100	25	DIESSELHORST 1938
Anabantidae (Labyrinthici)	3 species	2637-4699		SCHNEIDER 1942

recording, conducted impulses from the saccular nerve of isolated labyrinths of burbot (*Lota lota*) and pike (*Esox lucius*) but made no detailed study of the nerve response.

The aim of the present investigation was to elucidate the mechanism of pitch discrimination by recording the electrical activity of single neurons of the acoustic nerve and to study the response to pure tone



(1938), KLEEREKOPER and CHAGNON (1954) LOWENSTEIN (1957) and SCHWARZKOPF (1960) With regard to both upper frequency limit perceived and to pitch discrimination Ostariophysid fishes hear much better than nonostariophysids due to the presence in the former of a morphological connection between the swimbladder and the inner ear through the three pairs of Weberian ossicles (VON FRISCH 1936 POGGENDORF 1952) Perception of sound frequencies up to 13 000 cps has been reported for the catfish (STETTER 1929 VON FRISCH 1936) although in most of these species the upper hearing limit lies around 5000-7000 cps

For most nonostariophysids the upper limit is well below 1000 cps Some species, however which possess swimbladder extrusions contacting some part of the labyrinth (Sparidae) or air-filled cavities around the inner ear (Mormyridae Anabantidae) are sensitive to tone frequencies up to 1250 and 3000 cps respectively

Pitch discrimination in Ostariophysid was studied by STETTER (1929) who found minnows (*Phoxinus phoxinus*) able to discriminate two tones one octave apart (100 per cent frequency difference) and in one case even a minor third apart (19 per cent) However these values concern absolute pitch since the experimental fish was not presented with two different tones in immediate succession but had to remember the first tone for some time before the next one sounded WOHLFAHRT (1939) investigated relative pitch discrimination in minnows and found it to be approximately 6 per cent for tones around 1000 cps DIJKGRAAF and VERHEIJEN (1950) improving Wohlfahrt's technique found the threshold for pitch discrimination to be 3 per cent in the 400-800 cps range With the same methods DIJKGRAAF (1952) found the best pitch discrimination for nonostariophysids to be 9 per cent

The basis for pitch discrimination in teleosts is still unknown Their labyrinth has no obvious morphological frequency analysers all three otolith organs are calcite structures embedded in cavities filled with endolymph and covered by membranes which in certain areas are lined with sensory epithelia There would seem to be two possible mechanisms upon which pitch discrimination can rest in the absence of a morphological discriminator namely 1) synchronization between sound frequency and frequency of impulse discharge and 2) use of different sensory units for different sound frequency ranges

Electrophysiological data on the sense of hearing in teleosts are scarce ADRIAN CRAIK and STURDY (1938) obtained microphonic responses from the eel but no action potentials ZOTTERMAN (1943) succeeded in

In preliminary experiments some 30 isolated labyrinths of sculpin codfish goby perch pike eel catfish and roach were also prepared, but except for two of pike did not survive. Such preparations have the advantage that the different branches of the acoustic nerve can be followed visually to where they spread out over the sensory epithelia whereas in intact preparations with many species it is difficult to determine even the major subdivision of the acoustic nerve into which the electrode has been put.

The general pattern of response to sound stimulation could be studied in isolated preparations but because the sound conducting system in the skull is gravely interfered with results concerning the quantitative relation between sound frequency and response would hardly be trustworthy. For this purpose the least possible interference with the fish is required. In addition to those with the sculpin therefore experiments with 40 intact preparations of the other species mentioned above were performed but results were not satisfactory and will not be included in this paper.

**FISH HANDLING AND OPERATION** The fish was initially anaesthetized by being placed for a few minutes in a solution of 1 part ethyl m-aminobenzoate (MS 222 Sandoz Ltd. Basle) in 5000 parts sea water and then was clamped in a holder (Fig. 2) consisting of two parallel rectangular perspex pieces (length 20 cm) separated by a stainless steel rod. A number of thin steel rods mounted opposite each other through holes in the perspex pieces clamped the fish securely at the base of the dorsal fin and at intervals along the trunk. An additional pair of adjustable rods held the fish above the eyes and kept its head in place. An alternate arrangement was also used in which the eye bars were released and the fish's head held loosely in place with rubber bands attached to a screw in the nasal bone. Although the general pattern of response was the same with both arrangements the head clamp did influence skull vibration. Therefore results pertaining to the relation between sound frequency and response are based exclusively on data from 15 experiments with the rubber band arrangement.

The holder was fixed so that only the dorsal part of the skull, trunk and dorsal fin was above the water surface. The holder itself was out of water (except for the clamping bar tips) to prevent undesirable stimulation by transmission of vibration from the water through the holder into the fish. The water temperature was kept at 10-14°C.

stimulation in general and to different tone frequencies in particular. Experiments were performed with intact specimens of a nonostariophysid fish, the sculpin (*Cottus scorpius*). Similar experiments on Ostariophysid species were not successful.

This paper will describe first the types of spontaneous activity encountered and then the general pattern of response to acoustic stimulation, concluding with a more specific analysis of the relationships between response and sound intensity and frequency.

## Materials and Methods

**FISH.** The sculpin *Cottus scorpius* was chosen as the experimental animal because of its broad head and well-branched acoustic nerve, the utricular, saccular and lagenar divisions of which were all easily accessible with microelectrodes (Fig. 1). Forty-three adult fishes between 18 and 25 cm long were used.

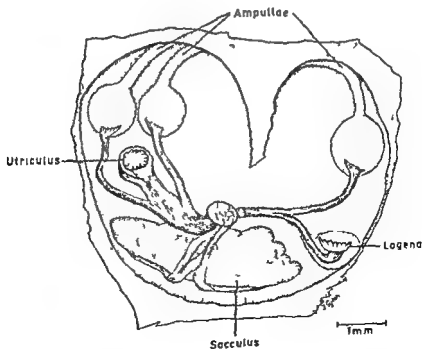


Fig. 1. Dorsomedial view of right labyrinth of *Cottus scorpius*. Brain and left part of skull removed.

In preliminary experiments some 30 isolated labyrinths of sculpin codfish goby perch pike eel catfish and roach were also prepared but except for two of pike did not survive. Such preparations have the advantage that the different branches of the acoustic nerve can be followed visually to where they spread out over the sensory epithelia whereas in intact preparations with many species it is difficult to determine even the major subdivision of the acoustic nerve into which the electrode has been put.

The general pattern of response to sound stimulation could be studied in isolated preparations but because the sound conducting system in the skull is gravely interfered with results concerning the quantitative relation between sound frequency and response would hardly be trustworthy. For this purpose the least possible interference with the fish is required. In addition to those with the sculpin, therefore experiments with 40 intact preparations of the other species mentioned above were performed but results were not satisfactory and will not be included in this paper.

**FISH HANDLING AND OPERATION** The fish was initially anaesthetized by being placed for a few minutes in a solution of 1 part ethyl m-aminobenzoate (MS 222 Sandoz Ltd Basle) in 5000 parts sea water and then was clamped in a holder (Fig. 2) consisting of two parallel rectangular perspex pieces (length 20 cm) separated by a stainless steel rod. A number of thin steel rods mounted opposite each other through holes in the perspex pieces clamped the fish securely at the base of the dorsal fin and at intervals along the trunk. An additional pair of adjustable rods held the fish above the eyes and kept its head in place. An alternate arrangement was also used in which the eye bars were released and the fish's head held loosely in place with rubber bands attached to a screw in the nasal bone. Although the general pattern of response was the same with both arrangements the head clamp did influence skull vibration. Therefore results pertaining to the relation between sound frequency and response are based exclusively on data from 15 experiments with the rubber band arrangement.

The holder was fixed so that only the dorsal part of the skull trunk and dorsal fin was above the water surface. The holder itself was out of water (except for the clamping bar tips) to prevent undesirable stimulation by transmission of vibration from the water through the holder into the fish. The water temperature was kept at 10-14°C.

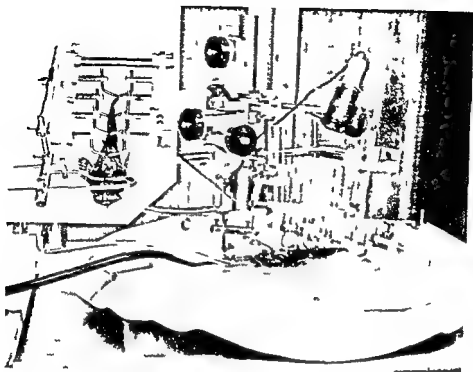


Fig 2 Fish holder and experimental set-up The fish is somewhat elevated for photographic purposes Fish holder and micromanipulator are fixed to steel rods supported by a rectangular iron frame resting on the experimental table A glass capillary microelectrode is seen lowered into the acoustic nerve by means of the micromanipulator The thick black cable leads to the hydrophone seen near the fish's head

With the fish under MS-222 narcosis the left caudal part of the brain and the left trigeminal vagal and stato-acoustic nerve roots were exposed Before the recording the fish was immobilized by an intramuscular injection of 0.2–0.3 mg tubocurarine chloride (Nygård & Co Oslo) per 100 g body weight The gills were continuously supplied with running water through plastic tubing from an elevated vessel

THE EXPERIMENTAL TANK WAS made of soft plastic sheeting (thickness 0.5 mm) shaped much like a hat (upside down) with top and bottom diameters 30 and 23 cm respectively and height 15 cm At the top the plastic extended outwards to a circular 15-cm-broad rim nailed to a plywood rim, which in turn rested on a tyre inner tube and foam plastic The hat's crown passed through a hole in the experimental table and the bottom also rested on foam plastic and inner tubing The loud-

speaker was mounted to a central opening in the bottom. The designing of a suitable tank constituted one of the main technical difficulties and several types were tried with the arrangement outlined above no vibrations (as measured by a vibration pick up Bruel and Kjaer Copenhagen) were transmitted from the tank to the fish holder or electrode-holder and no pronounced resonance frequencies were found in the range studied. A slight modification of this set up equally satisfactory was also used namely an elongated container ( $60 \times 30 \times 12$  cm) of soft plastic sheeting welded to an air filled plastic tube.

**SOUND STIMULATION AND RECORDING** The loudspeaker was a Philips EL 7050/01 10 W with watertight diaphragm (diameter 6 cm). Only pure tone stimulation was applied delivered by an RC-generator (Philips GM 2317) and an audio power amplifier (either one locally built or a Quad II Huntingdon England). No measurements of distortion or harmonic content were made sound waves recorded by the hydrophone were judged as being sinusoidal from their appearance on an oscilloscope. The output from the loudspeaker was frequency-dependent as seen from Fig. 3 which shows sound pressures measured at different frequencies for three fixed a.c. voltage input values.

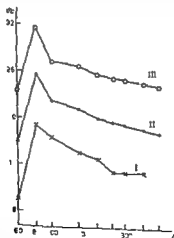


Fig. 3 Relation between sound pressure and frequency for constant input voltage to the power amplifier. Curves I, II and III represent relative input voltages of 1, 2 and 4 respectively. Sound pressures in this and subsequent figures are given in db above  $1 \mu\text{B}$ .

Sound pressures were measured in absolute values by a calibrated barium titanate transducer (Hydrophone Model LC-34 Atlantic Research Corp Alexandria Va) with linear response characteristics in the 10-15 000-cps-range and a sensitivity of -95 decibels (db) referred to 1V/dyne/cm (1 V/ $\mu$  Bar). Signals from the hydrophone were fed into an a  $\pi$  cathode follower with effective input impedance of over 500 M  $\Omega$  and a tested gain of 0.9 from 20 to 20 000 cps.

Sound pressures in this paper are given in db above 1  $\mu$ Bar a common reference level for underwater sounds (KINSLER and FREY 1950 pp 435-436) and were measured with the hydrophone placed horizontally just below the water surface in the place of the fish's head. For any given frequency sound pressures did not vary more than 3 db when measured horizontally within and in the immediate vicinity of the space occupied by the rostral two-thirds of the fish during the experiment. Vertically however variations in sound pressures were around 6 db/cm just below the surface and roughly 3 db/cm at a depth of 3 cm. The pressure gradient experienced by the fish was thus probably 10-12 db from its ventral side to the water surface which was 2-3 mm below the top of the skull. However the neurocranium experienced a pressure gradient of around 6 db as it is only 1.5 cm high.

The background noise level in the water amounted to 1  $\mu$ B (= 0 db) for frequencies above 100 cps and could for lower frequencies be 1-2 db higher.

Sound stimuli were delivered usually as tone pips of 1-2 sec duration. The shortest intervals between pips were 5-10 sec during which frequency and/or intensity were changed. Standard frequencies used were 60 80 100 150 200 250 300 400 and 500 cps each one delivered at as many intensities and as many times as possible until the neuron was lost. The 100-500-cps- (or 500-100-) range was tested first the 60- and 80-cps-tones second since the lower frequencies were more apt to destroy the neuron. To neurons which responded for sufficiently long periods sound stimuli of up to one minute's duration were also delivered.

**RECORDING OF NERVOUS ACTIVITY** Experiments lasted from one to six hours during which only from one to six successful recordings could be obtained. Microelectrodes were used for the recording of single unit activity in the utricular saccular and lagenar branches of the acoustic nerve. They either were micropipettes (filled with 3M KCl) or occasionally were made of tungsten (HUBEL 1957) diameters were less than

1  $\mu$  and 1-2  $\mu$  respectively. Action potentials were recorded single-sidedly or differentially (with the indifferent electrode on the medulla oblongata) through a d c cathode follower input stage with input impedance greater than 200 M $\Omega$  and grid current less than  $10^{-11}$  A. Frequency response was limited by the resistance (10-30 M $\Omega$ ) and capacitance (not measured) of the microelectrodes not by the amplifying system. The preparation was grounded through the stainless steel eye bars or the dorsal fin bars.

Nerve action potentials and signals from the hydrophone were amplified by two d c amplifiers (251 A American Electronics Lab) displayed simultaneously on a chopped beam oscilloscope (Tektronix 532) and photographed on running film (Grass Kymograph Camera). For recording of nervous activity the amplifier was usually RC-coupled with a time constant of 0.001 - 1 sec. In later stages of the work the amplifiers and the chopped beam oscilloscope were substituted by a dual-beam high gain oscilloscope (Tektronix 502).

Some of these experiments were also recorded on a two-channel tape recorder (Tandberg Model 6 Oslo) and later (if necessary) played back on the oscilloscope for photographing. The resulting distortion of the action potentials was unimportant for the determination of discharge rates.

## Results

### 1 General

On introduction of the microelectrode into the acoustic nerve electrical activity was usually obtained from single neurons lasting from a few seconds to more than an hour. A large proportion of the single units showed spontaneous discharge. On the basis of the general appearance of this discharge the neural units could be classified into three groups: those with irregular, those with regular and those with burst activity. A fourth type of unit showed no activity (Fig. 4).

More than half of the units responded to pure tone stimulation. The response consisted of the initiation of action potentials in units without spontaneous activity (Fig. 4 D) and of an increase in discharge rate in units with irregular (Fig. 4 A, B, C, D) or regular spontaneous activity. In units with spontaneous burst activity sound stimulation caused a disruption of this activity into a regular discharge of the same frequency as the stimulus tone (Fig. 4 B, 8 A, B).



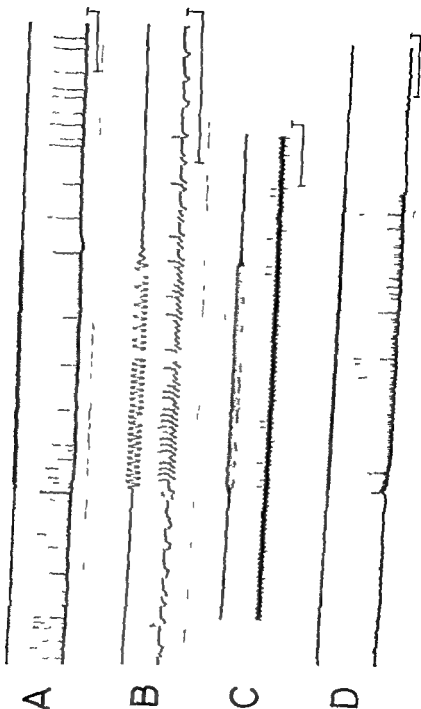


Fig. 4. Spontaneous activity records of the four main types of units in the acoustic nerve and their responses to a 100-cps tone 29 db above 1  $\mu$ B. Vertical bar 2mV; horizontal bar 250 msec. Top tracing in each record is signal from hydrophone. Upward deflections represent positive voltages in this and following records.

A. Irregular spontaneous activity averaging 20-30 spikes/sec. (apical branch).

B. Spontaneous burst activity, utricular branch. Record interrupted for 1 sec.

C. Regular spontaneous activity, utricular branch. No response.

Occasionally activity was obtained from a number of units simultaneously. The spikes were negative and of low amplitudes in such records and a detailed analysis of the response could not be made.

Action potentials from single units were usually monophasic positive spikes but occasionally were positive negative spikes with the positive phase the highest. The criteria for identifying a particular discharge as being recorded from a single unit have been enumerated by several investigators (ADRIAN and BRONK 1928, BROOKHART, MORUZZI and SNIDER 1950, AMASSIAN 1953, MOUNTCASTLE, DAVIES and BERMAN 1957). The most important features are that spikes are alike in appearance, have constant amplitudes, bear an all- or- none relationship to stimulus intensity, and disappear immediately upon a slight movement of the recording electrode. In the present experiments amplitudes were from less than 1 to 12 mV and durations were from 1 to 2 msec. The exact time courses of the rising and falling phases cannot be given due to capacitative shunting to ground which varied with depth of electrode and amount of spinal fluid covering the brain. Significant abrupt d.c. potentials were not recorded before the appearance of single unit activity. A shoulder on the rising phase of the action potential was frequently seen and sometimes the rising phase did not exceed the shoulder (Fig. 5) probably indicating a conduction block at the recording locus. These two phenomena indicate that the action potentials were recorded extracellularly and were probably picked up at or close to the somata of the bipolar neurons of the acoustic nerve.

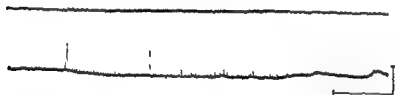


Fig. 5. Single unit response to a 100-cps tone. Half-size action potentials probably indicate conduction block at the recording site. Vertical bar 4 mV, time bar 20 msec.

The perikarya of the neurons in the acoustic nerve of *Cat* are 15–30  $\mu$  in diameter (KRISTOFFERSEN and LUGER in preparation). Therefore the continuous registration of electrical activity for more than 20 hours seems inconsistent with intracellular recording (considering the experimental set-up) as do also the low amplitude action potentials. Furthermore two units, both with positive spikes, were

occasionally observed simultaneously indicating that the recording was extracellular. Lowering or heightening the electrode did not – except in a few cases – change the polarity of the action potentials whereas the amplitude changed from several millivolts to the microvolt level. Returning the electrode to the previous position could often bring the spikes back again. Obviously in such cases the electrode passed the neuron while in those instances where the neuron lay under the electrode tip an electrode lowering caused injury discharge.

Visual inspection can determine only in which of the three nerve branches utricular, saccular or lagenar the electrode was placed. Upon penetration of the nerve with the electrode activity was successively obtained from a few units only and sometimes from none at all. Histologically the acoustic nerve is composed of bipolar neurons whose cell bodies are scattered throughout the nerve, not clustered into definite nuclei (KRISTOFFERSEN and ENGER in preparation). If it is assumed therefore that the electrode picked up spikes from cell bodies only, one should expect to get no more than a few units on record each time the electrode was slowly and carefully pushed through the nerve.

Positive and positive-negative extracellular spikes have been reported by a number of authors and there seems to be general agreement that they are picked up at or very close to active neurons. GRANT and PHILLIPS (1956) and PHILLIPS (1959) reached this conclusion from experiments with Purkinje cells of the cerebellum and Betz cells of the cerebrum of cats respectively as did LI, CULLEN and JASPER (1956) and MOUNTCASTLE. DAVIES and BERMAN (1957) from microelectrode studies of somatosensory cortical potentials and TASAKI, POLLEY and ORRIGO (1954) and FREYGANG (1958) from investigation of single neurons in the lateral geniculate nucleus. On the other hand TASAKI (1954) using ultrafine glass micro pipettes recorded activity in single auditory nerve fibres of guinea pigs and got positive action potentials both before and after the appearance of a resting potential. KATSUKI et al. (1958) reported the same from experiments with cats. These authors assumed the electrode tip to have been situated in the myelin sheath and this may have also happened in the present experiments as in *Cottus* the cell bodies seem to have a thin myelin sheath. In this investigation however the question of exact recording site constitutes a minor problem and will not be considered further.

Injury potentials were frequently encountered and were recognized by an initial high-frequency train of impulses which quickly decreased both in frequency and amplitude and abruptly stopped. Such potentials appeared both during movement of the electrode with the micromanipulator and during actual recording from single units. In the latter case they were probably caused by the electrode penetrating a cell as a result of a slight movement of the fish. Direct current recordings showed that injury potentials were usually preceded by a d.c. shift of more than 10 mV which probably indicated penetration of the cell membrane by the recording electrode.

Units which were systematically investigated did not react to the

electrode at all or gave at most a short burst of impulses with no immediate decrease in spike voltage. These impulses were probably initiated mechanically as was also reported by ALANIS and MATTHEWS (1952) from ventral horn cells of the frog. There was no indication that such mechanical factors had any prolonged influence on the spontaneous activity. Changes from one type of activity to another or long-term changes in average values of discharge rates were not observed.

## *II Spontaneous activity*

As described above the spontaneous activity demonstrated by the majority of units was of three types: irregular activity, burst activity and regular activity. Fig. 6 shows a histogram analysis of spike intervals typical for each type.

*Irregular activity* (Fig. 4 A, 8 C, D, 12 A) was characterized by average discharge rates of from fewer than 5 to 80 spikes/sec depending on the unit. Fig. 6 A shows the spike interval distribution of one such unit; the intervals are irregularly scattered and there are no obvious preferred interval durations.

Occasionally the mean interval frequency of a unit could fluctuate but the causes for this were not systematically studied. Sometimes fluctuations seemed to be brought about by opercular movements when these were large as during light anaesthesia. This would not necessarily mean that activity was caused by mechanical stimulation (such as movement of the electrode against the cell membrane) but rather that the water could produce sound by flowing over the gills. Such fluctuations were namely greatly enhanced when air bubbles had entered the mouth cavity through the plastic tubing. Even the smallest respiratory movements would then cause marked bursts of impulses which were never observed when recording from the ampullae of the semicircular canals or the lateral line nerve.

Irregular spontaneous activity was the type most frequently encountered. In the utricular and lagenar nerves about half of the units showed activity of this type and in the saccular nerve about one-third (Table II) but the difference is not statistically significant.

In units with low sound thresholds at least part of the irregular spontaneous activity was apparently not spontaneous but represented response to low frequency background noise (see below).

*Burst activity* was characterized by a grouping of impulse discharge into bursts of generally 2-4 impulses (Fig. 4 B, 8 A, B, 13); the number varying even for the same unit with numerous single discharges between bursts. Each burst lasted up to 20 msec and burst frequency lay

within 20–70/sec. The total discharge frequency never went below 50 or exceeded 200 action potentials/sec. The spike frequency in individual bursts was 300–400/sec. In rare cases up to 10 impulses per burst were recorded with a correspondingly longer burst duration of 25 msec.

Fig. 6B illustrates how the spike intervals of a unit with burst activity occur in two definite modes: the one around 3 msec corresponding to the spike intervals within each burst and the other around 10 msec corresponding to a mixture of intervals between bursts and between bursts and single spikes.

*Regular activity* was characterized by a regular discharge at rates of 15–60 spikes/sec (Fig. 4C). Fig. 6C shows a typical interval-distribution of a unit whose mean discharge frequency was 58 spikes/sec. Twelve per cent of the units studied showed regular spontaneous activity and were slightly more common in the utricular than in the saccular and lagenar nerves, but this difference was not statistically significant. No specific statistical criteria were necessary to distinguish regular from irregular activity, because they were always so clearly differentiated.

Table II summarizes the distribution of units with the three types of spontaneous activity and without spontaneous activity in the utricular, saccular and lagenar nerves. Only those units were tabulated for which it was possible to obtain satisfactory records of a reasonable duration both of spontaneous activity and sound response. Short-lasting units which simply have been classified as sound-responsive or non-responsive are not included, which may introduce a selection bias in favour of larger neurons. It should be noted, however, that the recording conditions were the same in the three nerve branches as they all ran horizontally in the region of recording and that the somata of the neurons have diameters of 15–30  $\mu$  and are scattered throughout the nerves. For units not showing spontaneous activity there is also a possibility of a systematic error in that their number may be under-represented compared with units showing spontaneous activity. It is easier to pass a silent neuron than one with spontaneous discharge and silent neurons which do not respond to sound will of course not be registered. Except for these limitations, however, the distribution of neuron types given in Table II is probably fairly representative of the acoustic system of the fish.

The probability that this entire distribution is random, as determined by the  $\chi^2$ -test is 0.02. From the individual probability values given in

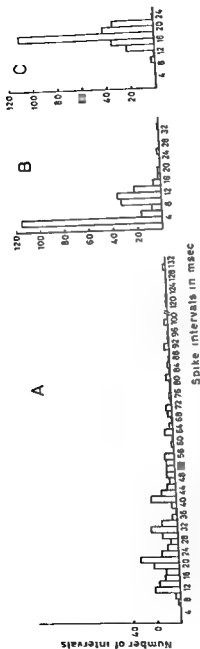


Fig. 6 Spike interval distribution of the three types of spontaneous activity  
 A Irregular activity averaging 28 spikes/sec B Burst activity with 48 bursts/sec  
 C Regular activity with an average of 145 spikes/sec and an average of 2.4 spikes/burst  
 58 spikes/sec

Table II

*Distribution of neurons classified by type of spontaneous activity in the three branches of the acoustic nerve*

Nerve branch	Utriclar		Saccular		Lagenar		Probability for random distribution (%)
	Total	(Sound-responsive) (13)	Total	(Sound-responsive) (46)	Total	(Sound-responsive) (42)	
No. of units	22		50		52		
Irregular activity	11	(6)	17	(16)	27	(23)	0.3
Burst activity	5	(5)	12	(12)	2	(2)	0.02
Regular activity	4	(0)	4	(1)	7	(1)	0.5
No activity	2	(2)	17	(17)	16	(16)	0.2

the table for the even distribution of activity types it can be concluded that units with regular and irregular activity, as well as units without spontaneous discharge may well be evenly distributed among the three nerve branches while units with burst activity are probably rare in the lagenar as compared with the utricular and saccular branches

### *III Response to sound stimulation*

#### A GENERAL

Over half of the units obtained responded to pure tone stimulation as shown in Table II. In a final series of experiments on 12 fishes activity was obtained from 33 utricular, 37 saccular and 37 lagenar units and respectively 12, 35 and 23 (36, 95 and 62 per cent) responded to acoustic stimulation. Each time a unit was obtained it was immediately tested with a 100-cps tone at a moderate sound pressure and then at successively higher intensities if no response was recorded. Unfortunately many of these units were shortlasting, were not classified with respect to type of spontaneous activity and thus were not included in Table II. However all units which lasted for at least 10 sec. were included in the second calculations and the proportion of sound responsive units did not deviate significantly from those given in Table II.

The great majority of the saccular units responded to sound whereas only one-third and two-thirds of the utricular and lagenar units did so. This difference between the saccular and the two other receptor areas is statistically significant at the 1 per cent level while the difference

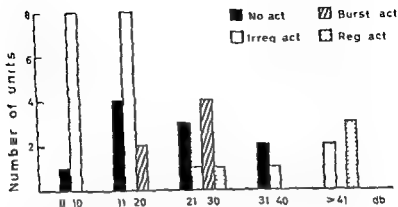


Fig 7 Frequency and type of nerve unit in different sound threshold ranges Stimulus tone 100 cps Units with thresholds above 41 db were non responsive for sound pressures up to 50 db

between utricular and lagenar units is not as tested by the  $\chi^2$ -test Units with spontaneous burst activity never failed to respond to sound (units without spontaneous activity are of course in the same class) Irregular activity units were partly responsive partly non-responsive to sound stimulation and regular activity units responded only to low frequency high-intensity tones if at all

The sound threshold defined here as the minimum sound pressure necessary to change the firing pattern of a unit was determined either directly or by extrapolation from suprathreshold response values The latter procedure was used only when the lowest sound pressure delivered elicited a weak response (as in the unit plotted in Fig 17 a p 37) Fig 7 shows the four types of units arranged according to thresholds for a 100-cps tone (data from experiments where the fish's head was held by rubber bands) There was great variation even within types Units with irregular spontaneous activity covered the entire sound pressure range but those among them which were sound responsive (threshold below 40 db) had on the average a lower threshold (12 db) than any other type of unit Individual units without spontaneous activity could have low thresholds but the average value was the same as for burst activity units (21 db) Units with regular spontaneous activity were almost always non responsive Since the highest sound pressure delivered was 50 db above 1  $\mu$ B it is possible that units listed as non-responsive might have been responsive for still higher intensities



Only units which gave response to sound stimulation will from now on be considered. Those regular-activity units which responded to sound stimulation behaved like high-threshold-responsive irregular activity units and will not be dealt with separately.

## B PATTERN OF RESPONSE

The response to pure tone stimulation shown in Fig. 4, 8, 9, 12 and 13 was of two patterns: the *adaptive* and the *non-adaptive*. In the first the response consisted of an increase in rate of discharge which was highest during the initial phase of stimulation and gradually decreased or adapted (Fig. 4 D, 8 C D, 9 4, 10 C-G). The initial high firing rate was of the same frequency as the stimulus tone (here called *following response*) or a multiple thereof. The adaptation occurred in one or two steps: a fast one completed within 200 msec (Fig. 10 C-F) and a slow one if present lasting even through the longest stimulation periods tried, namely 1 minute (Fig. 11). The slow adaptation was present only when the firing rate was considerably above the spontaneous level. As the action potentials had a definite phase relation to the sound waves (easily seen by comparison with the sine-wave recording from the hydrophone) adaptation did not involve a smooth increase in time intervals between successive spikes but rather the dropping out of an increasing number of spikes from the following response pattern. The adaptive response was found in all units except those with spontaneous burst activity.

The second type of response pattern — the *non-adaptive* — was found in neurons with spontaneous burst activity only. Sinusoidal sound waves disrupted this activity into the following response (in some cases double following) and there was little or no adaptation (Fig. 8 4 B, 10 4 B, 13).

Units with irregular spontaneous firing rates above 50–60/sec might show weak adaptation simply because the level of spontaneous activity was high. In one case a unit with spontaneous burst activity showed moderate adaptation. This unit had only 2 or 3 spikes per burst and under 20 bursts/sec which is fewer than any other unit with spontaneous burst activity.

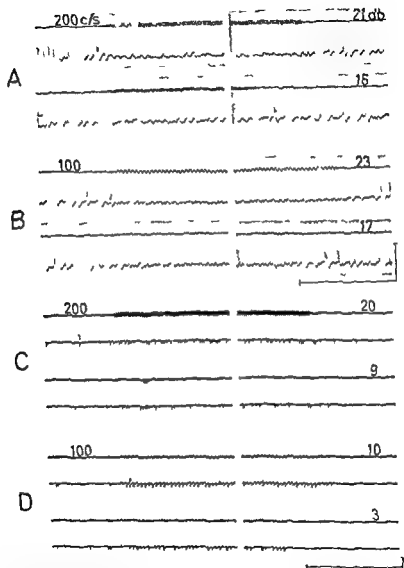


Fig. 8. Response to acoustic stimulation of two sensory units. A: non adaptive response; B: adaptive response; C, D: adaptive response; utricle. Sound frequency and pressure are given on the left and right respectively of each record. Vertical bar: 4 mV; time bar: 250 msec. Records cut for 1 sec (A top; B bottom) or 0.5 sec (all others).

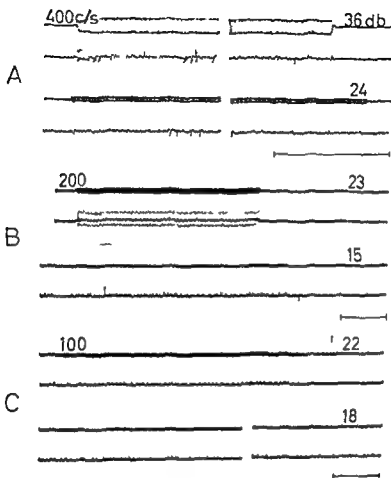


Fig 9 Adaptive responses in a unit whose discharge rate did not exceed the sound frequency utricular nerve branch. Records played back from a tape recorder therefore no voltage calibration given. Time bar 250 msec. Record A cut for 1 sec. C. (bottom) for 0.5 sec.

#### C EFFECTS OF PREVIOUS STIMULATION ON THE RESPONSE AND POST-STIMULATORY DEPRESSION OF SPONTANEOUS ACTIVITY

The usual stimulus duration of 1-2 seconds elicited the same response to each of two successive stimuli separated in time by at least a couple of seconds. A longer lasting stimulus however caused a definite reduction (measured as impulses/sec) in the response to a second stimulus. An example is shown in Fig 11 where an irregular-activity unit was stimulated with a 100-cps tone for 60 sec. It can be seen that the slow adaptation lasted throughout the stimulation period. After the end of this initial

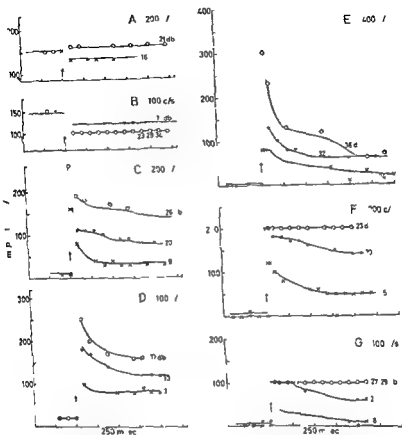


Fig III Adaptation rates and relation between response and sound intensity A B a non adaptive unit C, D and F G two adaptive units Most points represent no impulses per 100 msec times 10 Dotted lines indicate that points represent no impulses per 25 or 50 msec times 40 or 20 Arrows indicate start of stimulation Responses are of units represented in Fig 8 and 9

and intensity were delivered. The initial phase (first 100 msec) of the response to short pips reached its normal state in about 15 sec while the adapted phase required about 60 sec to reach its stable level (compare with the first part of the response to the 60-sec stimulus in Fig 11). There was a striking correspondence between the recovery time for the full-sized normal response and the recovery time for the spontaneous activity. The latter always showed a post stimulatory depression (Fig 4 A B) as also reported by LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS (1951) for elasmobranchs.

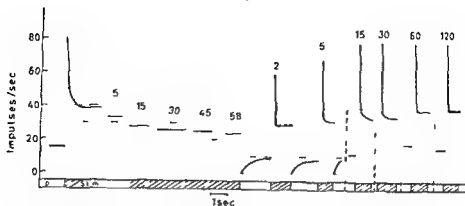


Fig 11 Response to a 60-sec stimulus tone (100 cps) and subsequent responses to 1-sec tone pips of the same frequency and intensity Lagunar unit. Numbers on graph give time in seconds after start of stimulation (left half of figure) and after end of the 60-sec stimulation period (right half of figure). Vertical broken lines (right half of figure) indicate breaks in record. Stimulation periods indicated by hatched areas at the bottom.

#### D. RELATION BETWEEN SOUND INTENSITY AND RESPONSE

In *adaptive units* the threshold response consisted of a slight initial increase in firing rate (units with spontaneous activity) or a few action potentials during the first phase of stimulation (units without spontaneous activity). As sound pressure increased the initial phase of the response had a few impulses and upon further increase a train of impulses at or above following frequency. At higher pressures sound frequencies up to 150 cps could give following response for more than 1 second whereas 300 cps and above never elicited more than a few spikes at following rate.

Two types of adaptive units could be distinguished: 1) those where the initial phase had 2-3 spikes per sine-wave for frequencies of 100-200 cps at high intensities such units always showing higher initial than steady discharge rates (Fig 8 D, 10 C, D) and 2) those where the discharge rate never exceeded the frequency of the stimulating sound. As intensity increased these latter units failed to show adaptation but prolonged their initial phase of following response and at sufficiently high pressures reached a plateau of steady following discharge (Fig 9, 10 E-G) indicating that the adaptation is probably not a matter of nerve fibre accommodation but of the mechanical properties of the sensory cells.

The relation between discharge rates and the logarithm of the sound

pressure was approximately linear over a considerable range of intensities to which a unit responded with the curve often flattening out at the highest and lowest intensities (Fig 17 p 37) As intensity increased the spike frequency finally reached a level above which further increase in sound pressure had no effect - at least not up to 50 db above 1  $\mu$ B which was maximum for sinusoidal output from the loudspeaker This maximal response was ordinarily reached at sound pressures 10-30 db above threshold For frequencies of 300 cps and above maximal response has never been reached as the output from the loudspeaker was insufficient

In the non adaptive units the threshold was determined as the minimum sound pressure disrupting the spontaneous burst activity At low intensities this happened for short intermittent periods in which trains of spikes at following frequency were seen then as intensity increased to about 10 db above threshold the following response became complete (Fig 8 4 B 10 A B) Even a 20 db increase above threshold the highest tried had no further effect on the response Occasionally burst activity units showed some double following response (Fig 4 B) but this occurred at various sound pressures and was not a result of high intensity stimulation

#### E. RELATION BETWEEN SOUND FREQUENCY AND RESPONSE

Sound responsive units in all three nerve branches responded to pure tone stimulation of low frequencies but as frequency increased three different types of units were clearly distinguishable namely 1) units not showing spontaneous activity which responded only up to about 200 cps (Fig 12 B) 2) units with irregular spontaneous activity which responded to frequencies up to 300-500 cps (Fig 12 A) and exceptionally 700 cps and 3) spontaneous-burst activity units which showed following response up to 200-300 cps (Fig 13 B) In Fig 14 the firing rate during the adapted state of the two units shown in Fig 12 is plotted in relation to the sound frequency Plotting of the initial response showed the same relationship but displaced to higher levels of discharge rates Exactly equal sound pressures were not delivered for all frequencies for each unit but by rough interpolation a curve could be drawn for responses expected to tones 30 db above reference level There was a clear distinction between the two units While one was sharply refractive to frequencies above 200 cps the other responded to all frequencies

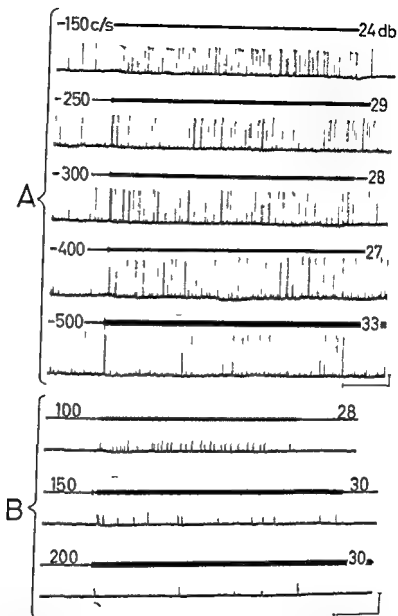


Fig 12 Relation between sound frequency and response. *A* Lagunar unit with irregular spontaneous activity averaging 20–30 spikes/sec. *B* Saccular unit with out spontaneous activity. Vertical bar 4 mV. time bar 250 msec.

up to 500 cps. For a further analysis of this phenomenon two parameters have to be considered namely the *threshold sound pressure* and the *sensitivity*.

The *threshold intensity* varied considerably for different units as already shown in Fig 7 but for units with the same type of spontaneous

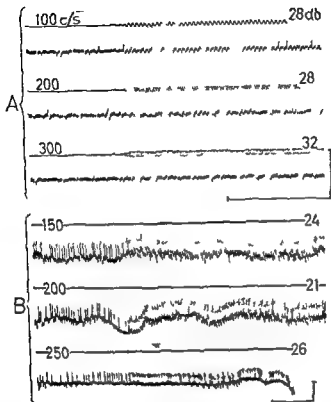


Fig 13 Two sacular units with spontaneous burst activity and different thresholds. The non adaptive nature of the responses is clearly seen except for a slow and weak adaptation to 200 cps in B. In A 300 cps at 32 db barely elicits a response. B is a d.c. recording and fluctuations of the baseline were caused by movements of the fish. Vertical bar 2 mV, time bar 200 msec.

activity the curves for frequency-dependent threshold alterations ran rather parallel as seen from Fig 15. In units without spontaneous activity (Fig 15 A) the threshold rose by 6–14 db per 100 cps increase in sound frequency and in units with irregular spontaneous activity (Fig 15 B) by 3–8 db per 100 cps. (These values represent extremes and do not express a linear relationship between increase of threshold and increase of sound frequency.) Units with spontaneous burst activity had threshold minima around 150 cps i.e. both lower and higher frequencies required higher intensities to elicit a response (Fig 15 C).

In Fig 16 is plotted the rate of threshold increase versus the rate of



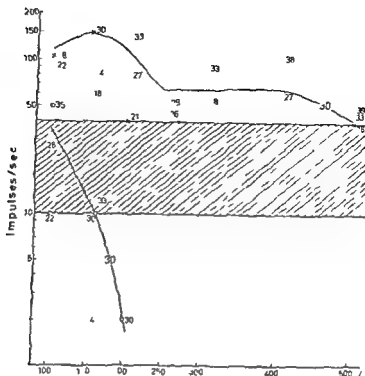


Fig 14 Relation between rate of adapted response and sound frequency for the two units in Fig 12 x = Unit A irregular spontaneous discharge averaging 20-30 spikes/sec Hatched area represents extremes obtained by counting impulses/100 msec o = Unit B no spontaneous activity Nos on points = sound pressure in db above 1  $\mu$ B Curves = estimated response at 30 db intensity at each frequency

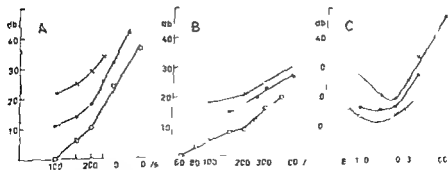


Fig 15 Relation between sound frequency and threshold A no spontaneous activity B irregular activity C burst activity Bottom curve of A was a unit with a low rate of spontaneous discharge

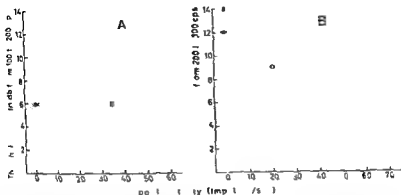


Fig 16 Relation between spontaneous discharge rates and threshold increase per 100 cps increase in sound frequency  $\bullet$  = units without spontaneous activity  $\times$  = units with irregular activity  $\circ$  = units with irregular activity and low thresholds

spontaneous discharge for two frequency steps namely 100 to 200 (A) and 200 to 300 (B) cps. The rise of threshold per 100 cps was greatest for units without spontaneous activity and became gradually lower with increasing spontaneous discharge rates. But between units with and units without spontaneous activity the transition was abrupt and a distinction between the two types seems consequently also valid from a functional point of view. For units without spontaneous activity the average rise in threshold was 6.8 and 12.0 db for a frequency increase from 100 to 200 and from 200 to 300 cps respectively. For units with irregular spontaneous activity the corresponding values were 3.8 and 6.1. The difference between the two types of units was statistically highly significant ( $p < 0.005$ ) as tested by the method of WELCH (1951) assuming that the threshold rises for both types were independent and normally distributed.

At moderate sound pressures units with spontaneous discharge responded to both low and high frequencies while units without spontaneous activity responded to low frequencies only as already shown in Fig 12 and 14. However the two cannot really be distinguished on the basis of spontaneous discharge rates alone since what is here called spontaneous activity was in many cases fully or partly response to low frequency background noise. The slope of the threshold curves (Fig 15 A B) or the threshold rise per 100 cps increase in frequency (Fig 16)

seems to be a better criterion for differentiating the two types of units. In Fig. 15 *A* the bottom curve represents a unit with a low rate of spontaneous discharge and the upper curves units without spontaneous activity. One would not hesitate to assume that they were of the same type but that the bottom unit responded spontaneously to background vibrations due to its low threshold. Likewise part of the spontaneous activity of the bottom unit in Fig. 15 *B* was response to background noise.

This view is also supported by Fig. 16 in which the open circles denote values for increase of threshold per 100 cps in units with thresholds below 10 db. These values correspond to those for units without spontaneous activity or with spontaneous discharge rates far below those actually recorded indicating that the spontaneous activity – fully or partly – was response to background vibration. Complete absence of background noise would probably reveal a clear distinction between the two types of units namely those with *no* spontaneous activity and those with *true* spontaneous activity.

The lowest threshold ever obtained for a 100-cps tone was about 4–6 db below reference level. In Fig. 15 *A* and *B* are plotted units which had thresholds just at reference level for 100 and 60 cps respectively.

Inasmuch as the dorsal side of the fish's skull was above the water surface and the total sound pressure gradient encountered by the fish's head was 10–12 db any estimate of the absolute threshold sound pressure might seem to be of no value. However the extra-cranial structures seem to be unimportant as sound conductors. When the fish was elevated so that the neurocranium was out of water the sound response was abolished or drastically reduced. The neurocranium is around 1.5 cm high and encountered a pressure gradient of roughly 6 db not counting the top part of the skull which was above the water. The hydrophone presumably measured the sound pressure at 1 cm depth (it lay just under the surface and had a diameter of 2 cm) which was the same as the depth of the otoliths. Whether this measured sound pressure was really the same as the average sound pressure through the skull is hard to tell but the difference between the two was probably not more than 2–6 db the measured pressure being the greater. On this basis the threshold for *C. lunus* to sound frequencies of 60–100 cps is estimated to be 7–12 db below 1  $\mu$ B i.e. 0.5–0.3  $\mu$ B which is about 6 db above that found for the eel (Griffin 1950).

The sensitivity defined here as the increase in discharge rate per db increase in sound pressure is a parameter applicable only to units without spontaneous activity and units with irregular activity because burst activity units displayed the following response. Its range was 2–14

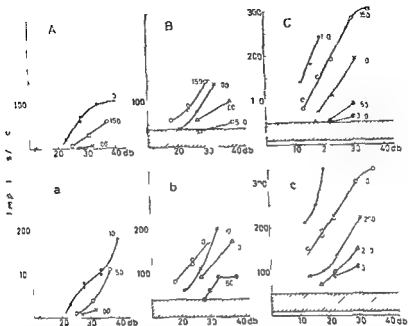


Fig. 17 Relation between discharge rates and sound intensity at different frequencies (indicated on each curve) A a unit without spontaneous activity B b and C c units with irregular spontaneous activity A-C adapted responses a-c the corresponding initial responses during the first 100 msec of stimulation. Note that unit C, c has low threshold.

impulses/db/sec for the adapted response the lower sound frequencies having the higher values (Fig. 17). The sensitivity decreased with increasing frequency but less rapidly in units with than in units without spontaneous activity as seen in A and B. In C is plotted a unit whose spontaneous activity must have been due at least partly to background noise because its threshold was low. Its sensitivity to low frequencies was high but with increasing frequencies rapidly dropped to values below those of irregular activity units with higher thresholds seen by comparing B and C. This unit was exceptional in its high discharge rates. A 150-cps tone elicited a prolonged double following response which makes B the more remarkable that the response to 300 cps was rather weak. On the other hand this shows 1) that the sensitivity was independent of the spike frequency as such as B also illustrated in Fig. 17 B and C where the slopes of curves for 150 cps are equal but dis-

charge rates different and 2) that the rate of decrease in sensitivity with increasing frequency was not dependent upon the spontaneous discharge rates actually recorded but on *true* spontaneous activity. Thus the distinction between the two made on the basis of threshold differences is supported by the data on sensitivity.

To show that the changes in sensitivity were not a matter of varying rates of adaptation the initial phases of the responses counted as number of impulses during the first 100 msec were plotted in Fig. 17 *a*, *b* and *c*. It can be seen that except for the higher frequencies the slopes of the curves are approximately the same for the initial as for the adapted responses and the difference between units with and without spontaneous activity becomes even more pronounced in the initial phase of the response (Fig. 17 compare *A* with *a* and *B* with *b*).

## Discussion

**CLASSIFICATION OF SENSORY UNITS** The sensory units of the acoustic nerve have been classified into four groups: 1) units showing irregular spontaneous activity; 2) units showing spontaneous burst activity; 3) units showing regular spontaneous activity, and 4) units showing no spontaneous activity. This classification was made according to the general appearance of the spontaneous activity but has also been justified by the analysis of the response to pure tone stimulation in which the four types of units showed different patterns of adaptation and different sound thresholds and sensitivities in relation to sound frequency.

With the exception of burst-activity units the same categories have been used by TASAKI (1954) for guinea pig auditory nerve fibres by GALAMBOS and DAVIS (1943) and KATSUAI et al (1958) for cat and by LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS (1949-1951) for elasmobranch labyrinth nerve fibres. The discharge rates were as high as 200 spikes/sec for the cat and 100/sec for the guinea pig while for the ray there were seldom more than 30/sec. This corresponds nicely with the present results on *Comus* where discharge rates were usually below 40/sec although they could go up to 80/sec and in burst-activity units to 150/sec.

The validity of this spontaneous burst activity has been carefully considered as one could suspect it of being caused by injury. TASAKI (1954) mentioned burst activity but classified it as injury discharge. His units lasted only a fraction of a minute however and the burst-activity units

were unresponsive to sound stimulation. In the present investigation all types of units could last as long as an hour with no sign of deterioration. If burst activity had been an injury discharge one would expect it occasionally to have been initiated during the recording from other types of units by accidental small movements of the electrode or the fish but this was never observed. Burst activity is virtually absent in records from the lagenar units as compared with saccular and utricular units although the recording conditions were the same in all three nerve branches. Furthermore the response of burst-activity units to sound is strikingly different from that of other units both with respect to adaptation and to threshold variations as a function of sound frequency. Finally units with burst activity respond without exception to sound stimulation which is not the case with any other type of units. Thus it must be concluded that spontaneous burst activity represents physiological activity in neurons associated with particular receptors in the teleost labyrinth.

The origin and possible functional significance of the spontaneous activity in primary sensory neurons is of considerable interest (GRANT 1955) and one of the present observations has a possible bearing upon this problem. The similarity in time course between the recovery of the response to sound and the recovery of the spontaneous activity after prolonged stimulation suggests that these activities were generated by the same elements presumably the sensory cells.

Histologically the sensory cells are of the same type in sacculus and lagena and it is tempting to correlate the lack of burst activity in the lagenar nerve with the fibre-diameter spectrum. KRISTOFFERSEN and ENGER (in preparation) show that most of the fibres in this nerve were  $4\ \mu$  or less in diameter while the saccular has about equal amounts of 2, 4, 6- and  $8\text{-}\mu$  fibres. If one assumes that comparatively thick fibres mediate the spontaneous burst activity (frequency of individual bursts 300-400 spikes/sec) burst activity would be rare in the lagenar nerve. A similar argument does not hold true for the utricular nerve because its fibre spectrum is like the one for the lagena. However the total number of fibres in the utricular branch is around 2000 in contrast to 1000 in the saccular and lagenar nerves. Furthermore the sensory cells in the utricle are of two types, one like the cells of the sacculus and lagena and the other like the cells of the cupulae of the semicircular canals. Unfortunately the fibre diameter spectra of the two sensory areas are not known.

KATSUKI YOSHINO and CHEN (1950) found a correlation between fibre diameter and rate of spontaneous activity in the lateral line nerve of the Japanese eel (*Anguilla japonica*), thin fibres had higher spontaneous discharge rates and lower threshold to stimulation than thick fibres. This contradicts the argument given above for the burst-activity units in *Cottus* but is in agreement with the finding that units with irregular activity had on the average a lower sound threshold than units without spontaneous activity. The spontaneous discharge rates in the Japanese eel are comparable to irregular discharge rates in *Cottus* but the present study tells nothing about the fibre diameters.

**SOUND RESPONSE AND FREQUENCY DISCRIMINATION** The fact that response to sound stimulation has been obtained both from pars inferior i.e. lagena and sacculus and pars superior i.e. utriculus is in agreement with results from previous conditioning experiments as described in the introduction. The fact that relatively few (1/3) utricular units responded to sound while practically all saccular and most (2/3) lagenar units did so indicate it reasonable to regard the acoustic nerve response as a sign of activity in pathways associated with sound perception. The present investigation thus provides additional support for the notion of the primary importance of the pars inferior in this function and at the same time supports the view that all labyrinthine end-organs are potential vibratory receptors and manifest themselves as such in fishes (DE BURLET 1935; LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS 1951).

Although the present study does not elucidate the function of non-acoustic units it seems reasonable to regard these as having at least partly a vestibular function. In elasmobranchs LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS (1949) showed that units with a regular spontaneous discharge responded to positional changes and in *Cottus* it has here been shown that the same type of unit responded if at all only to low-frequency high-intensity sounds.

The adaptation found in all but burst-activity units and the post-stimulatory depression of spontaneous activity found in all spontaneous-activity units have been seen also in mammalian and elasmobranchian auditory nerve fibres. In mammals GALAMBOS and DAVIS (1943) found the depression or silent period to be followed by an after-discharge upon high intensity stimulation a phenomenon not observed by LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS (1951) in elasmobranchs or by the present author. However this discrepancy may very well be due to the fact that

GALAMBOS and DAVIS (1943-1948) recorded from second order neurons

The lack of adaptation observed in all burst activity units can possibly be a function of their generally high spontaneous discharge rates although some units with irregular spontaneous activity were also non adaptive for low-frequency high-intensity sounds. LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS (1951) point out the probability that adaptation is not shown by all sense endings to an equal degree. Differences in adaptation rates could possibly rest on differences in the mechanical properties of the sensory cells. Each neuron of the acoustic nerve innervates several receptor cells (RAMON CAJAL 1908) and it is probable therefore that the response recorded from a sensory neuron is the composite response of a group of receptor cells.

Whether or not there are any such differences in mechanical properties within such a group of cells is not known. However in the tympanic organ of a noctuid moth there are two types of cells one of which adapts rather quickly and the other slowly during stimulation (SUGA 1961). AUTRUM (1960) found a phasic and a tonic component of the response to sound stimulation in the tympanic nerve of a grasshopper. It could be possible that a similar mechanism operates in fishes (and other vertebrates) in such a way that the initial phase of the response is a phasic component initiated by one type of sensory cell and the adapted phase originates in another type of cell. The fact that the recovery times for the initial and the adapted responses were different in *Cottus* may support this view. Depending on which of the two types are in the majority in a given group of receptor cells one would record different adaptation rates (or no adaptation) in the corresponding sensory neuron.

Previous work has indicated the probability that pitch discrimination in fishes is based upon a synchronization between sound frequency and frequency of impulse discharge. LOWENSTEIN and ROBERTS (1951) found following response up to 120 cps and no response at higher frequencies in the elasmobranch labyrinth. DUDOK VAN HEEL (1956) showed that pitch discrimination in minnows improved with an increase in temperature which he thought was due to a shorter refractory period of nerve fibres at higher temperatures and a consequent increase in ability to follow higher sound frequencies. SCHWARTZKOPFF (1962) suggests that all vertebrates below mammals discriminate low and medium tone frequencies by synchronization of nerve impulses with sound frequency, a theory originally proposed for mammals by WEVER (1933-1949). This volley theory seeks to explain pitch discrimination



as an interplay between several neurons each one firing with a definite phase relation to the sound waves. The discharge rate would depend upon both frequency and intensity but a number of neurons should together impose on the central nervous system a complete following response.

From the present work there is no doubt that such a synchronization takes place in all types of units either during the initial or the adapted phase of the response (adapting units) or throughout the stimulation period (non-adapting units). Two or three spikes per sine-wave occurring at low frequencies and high intensities or the dropping out of impulses from a following response probably does not mask the synchrony pattern. The non-adaptive burst-activity units illustrate the volley theory nicely as they show complete following responses up to 200–300 cps at moderate sound pressures as do also those irregular-activity units whose discharge rates never exceeded the frequency of the sound but it remains to be demonstrated that the frequency-analyzing structures of the central nervous system of fish employ the following response as such.

On the other hand frequency discrimination based on the volley mechanism does not seem to be very elaborate in fish. In Ostariophysi species pitch distinction is absent above 1000–1200 cps (DIJKRAAF and VERHEIJEN 1950). In nonostariophysids it is reduced from a 9 per cent to a 12–15 per cent frequency difference when pitch increases from 150 to 300 cps and to more than a 33 per cent frequency difference above 600 cps (DIJKRAAF 1952). This reduction cannot be explained by the volley theory unless one assumes that the central nervous system is so poorly developed that it can handle only a complete following response in one or each of several peripheral neurons.

The results of the present investigation also suggest that additional mechanisms have to be taken into consideration in attempts to account for the pitch discrimination of teleosts. The response to sound stimulation seems more complicated than one would expect from the morphology of the fish ear and more complicated than necessary for a pitch discrimination based on the volley principle. It has been shown here that two types of units those without spontaneous activity and those with irregular activity cover different frequency ranges. Both responded to low frequencies but only units with spontaneous activity responded to high frequencies in such a way that those units with the highest spontaneous discharge rates most likely respond

to the highest frequencies perceived by the sculpin (which by comparison with other comparable nonostariophysids are probably 500-800 cps). It has also been shown moreover that the rate of rise in threshold per 100-cps increase in sound frequency is a better criterion for differentiation of the two types than the presence or absence of spontaneous activity alone (The response to background noise may namely mask the true spontaneous activity or absence thereof). Of two given units - one of each type - with the same threshold for a 100-cps tone - neither will respond to a 300-cps tone of the same intensity and only the irregular activity unit will respond if sound pressure is increased by 10-20 db. More than 20 db increase in intensity is required to elicit a response in the unit without spontaneous discharge.

It seems obvious then that these two types of units together could provide information on the frequency of sound. The frequency area of each unit is broad as is also the case in mammals (TASAKI 1954 KATSUKI et al 1958). The sharpening of the response areas is performed centrally in mammals and it is likely that a similar although far less developed mechanism is at play in fishes. It is difficult to understand why units with irregular spontaneous activity *per se* should respond to higher tones than those without but KATSUKI et al (1958) also reported that in the cat units with high spontaneous discharge rates responded to high tones whereas units with low-frequency spontaneous activity responded to low tones. In mammals with a well developed cochlea as a peripheral frequency analyzer the necessity for such a mechanism seems obscure and leads one to speculate whether it has simply persisted after the evolution of more effective ones.

The great difference in the hearing range between the Ostariophysii (and other fish with special sound conducting structures) and the non-ostariophysids is due to the presence of elaborate resonators and sound conductors in the former. VON FRISCH (1938) states that the swim-bladder labyrinth connection increases the acuity of hearing. SCHNEIDER (1942) reports that the upper limit of hearing is reduced from 2607-4645 to 652 cps on elimination of the resonator of anabantid fishes. The extirpation of the malleus of the Weberian ossicles reduces the sensitivity by 30-40 db (POGGENDORF 1952) in the catfish and mutilation of the swimbladder reduces the sensitivity from 13 db (at 330-750 cps) to 30 db (at 1500 cps) (KLEERKOPER and ROGGENKAMP 1959).

However the superior ability of the Ostariophysii to discriminate pitch cannot be explained by their extra labyrinthine hearing structures

nor can one suggest that they have a morphological discriminator. Their labyrinth deviates from that of other fish mainly in the relative size of sacculus and lagena which is apparently of no importance for tone discrimination. VON FRISCH (1938) found that both these receptor areas responded to the entire sound frequency range in two Ostariophysids and in the present study irregular-activity units (which responded to all frequencies assumed to be perceived by *Cottus*) were found in the saccular, lagenar and utricular nerve branches. (There remains a possibility that pitch discrimination could take place between sacculus-lagena and utriculus as the latter responds only to low frequencies (VON FRISCH 1938, DIJKRAAF 1952) but it is unlikely that a structure whose main function is equilibrial should play an important role in tone distinction.)

On anatomical grounds then it seems very probable that the peripheral neural mechanisms for pitch discrimination are similar in both Ostariophysids and nonostariophysids but that units with irregular spontaneous activity cover a much broader frequency range in the former. One would expect such units with high discharge rates to respond to all frequencies perceived while units with low discharge rates would cover low frequencies only. For both types of fish, the peripheral tone distinction will be crude and finer discrimination must then take place centrally. The presence of generally well-developed acoustic lobes in the Ostariophysids supports such a hypothesis.

## Summary

The purpose of this investigation has been to analyse the electrical activity of single sensory neurons in the acoustic nerve of the sculpin (*Cottus scorpius*) in order to elucidate the neural mechanism underlying hearing and pitch discrimination in teleosts.

A specially designed fish-holder and a non-resonant experimental tank allowed extracellular single unit recordings with microelectrodes from the acoustic nerve of the fish. Stimuli were usually delivered as tone pips of 1-2 sec duration with frequencies of 60 to 500 cps.

Single neurons have been classified into four groups according to the general appearance of their spontaneous activity: 1) irregular- 2) burst- and 3) regular-activity units and 4) units not showing spontaneous activity. All four types were found in each of the three nerve branches (utricular, saccular and lagenar) but burst-activity units were rare in the lagenar branch.

Response to pure tone stimulation was obtained from almost all saccular units from two-thirds of the lagenar and one third of the utricular units. Units with regular spontaneous activity generally did not respond to sound. All units with burst activity and units without spontaneous discharge responded to sound while irregular activity units might be either responsive or non responsive. The average sound pressure threshold was lower for responsive irregular-activity units (12 db above 1  $\mu$ B) than for units with burst activity or no activity (21 db).

In all but burst activity units the response consisted of an increase in discharge rate which was highest during the initial phase of stimulation and adapted to a fairly steady level within 200 msec. Burst activity units showed no adaptation.

Tone pips separated by a 2 sec interval elicited the same response each time but after a 1 min stimulus spontaneous discharge rates and the subsequent response to 1 sec tone pips were depressed. Recovery times for the spontaneous activity and the adapted phase of the response were similar while the initial phase of the response reached its normal level in a shorter time.

The size of the response measured as impulses/sec was within certain limits proportional to the logarithm of the sound pressure in adaptive units which were of 2 types: 1) those discharging up to 2-3 spikes per sine wave period and 2) those whose discharge rates never exceeded the frequency of the stimulating sound. In non adaptive units the response consisted of a disruption of the spontaneous burst activity into a following pattern.

The relation between sound frequency and response differed among the three types of sound-responsive units. Units not showing spontaneous activity responded to sound frequencies up to 200 cps, units with irregular spontaneous activity responded to 300-500 cps and units with spontaneous burst activity showed following response up to 200-300 cps.

It is concluded that pitch discrimination in teleosts is based partly upon a following response mechanism according to the volley theory and partly upon a peripheral physiological analyser consisting of two types of sensory neurons: those responding to low frequencies only and those responding to the whole range of frequencies perceived by the fish.

## References

- ADRIAN E D and D W BRONK The discharge of impulses in motor nerve fibres Part I Impulses in single fibres of the phrenic nerve *J Physiol* 1928 66 81-101
- ADRIAN E D K J W CRAIK and R S STURDY The electrical response of the auditory mechanism in cold-blooded vertebrates *Proc Roy Soc Ser B* 1938 125 435-455
- ALANIS J and B H C MATTHEWS The mechano-receptor properties of central neurons *J Physiol* 1952 117 59P-60P
- AMASSIAN V E Evoked single cortical unit activity in the somatic sensory areas *EEG Clin Neurophysiol* 1953 5 415-440
- AUTRUM H Phasische und tonische Antworten vom Tympanalorgan von *Tettogonia viridissima* *Acustica* 1960 10 339-348
- AUTRUM H und D POGENDORF Messung der absoluten Hörschwelle bei Fischen (*Amiurus nebulosus*) *Naturwissenschaften* 1951 38 434-435
- BOUTTEVILLE KARLA F VON Untersuchungen über den Gehörsinn bei Characinen und Gymnotiden und den Bau ihres Labyrinthes *Z vergl Physiol* 1935 22 162-191
- BROOKHART J M G MORUZZI and R S SNIDER Spike discharges of single units in the cerebellar cortex *J Neurophysiol* 1950 13 465-486
- BURLET H M DE Vergleichend Anatomisches über endolymphatische und perilymphatische Sinnesendstellen des Labyrinthes *Acta Oto-Laryng* 1935 22 287-305
- DIESSELHORST GERD Hörversuche an Fischen ohne Weberschen Apparat *Z vergl Physiol* 1938 25 748-783
- DIJGRAAF S Untersuchungen über die Funktionen des Ohrlabyrinths bei Meeresfischen *Physiol comp* 1949 2 81-106
- DIJGRAAF S Über die Schallwahrnehmung bei Meeresfischen *Z vergl Physiol* 1952 34 104-122
- DIJGRAAF S und F J VERHEIJEN Neue Versuche über das Tonunterscheidungsvermögen der Elritze *Z vergl Physiol* 1950 32 244-256
- DUDOK VAN HEEL W H Pitch discrimination in the minnow (*Phoxinus phoxinus*) at different temperature levels *Experientia* 1951 12 75-79
- FREYKANG W H Jr An analysis of extracellular potentials from single neurons in the lateral geniculate nucleus of the cat *J gen Physiol* 1958 41 543-564
- FRISCH K VON Über den Gehörsinn der Fische *Biol Rev* 1934 11 210-246
- FRISCH K VON Über die Bedeutung des Sacculus und der Lagena für den Gehörsinn der Fische *Z vergl Physiol* 1938 25 703-747

- FISCH A. VON und H. STETTER Untersuchungen über den Sitz des Gehörssinnes bei der Ellritze *Z. vergl. Physiol.* 1932. 17: 686-801
- GALAMBOS R. and H. DAVIS The response of single auditory nerve fibers to acoustic stimulation *J. Neurophysiol.* 1943. 6: 39-57
- GALAMBOS R. and H. DAVIS Action potentials from single auditory nerve fibers *Science* 1948. 103: 513
- GRANT H. *Receptors and sensory perception* New Haven: Yale University Press 1950. pp. 369
- GRANT H. and C. G. PHILLIPS Excitatory and inhibitory processes acting upon individual Purkinje cells of the cerebellum of cats *J. Physiol.* 1956. 133: 520-547
- GRIFFIN D. R. Underwater sounds and the orientation of marine animals (mimeographed report pp. 37) 1950. Quoted from Kleerekoper and Chagnon *J. Fish Res. Bd. Can.* 1954. 11: 130-157
- HUBEL D. H. Tungsten microelectrode for recording from single units *Science* 1957. 125: 549-550
- KATSLER Y. T. SUMI H. UCHIYAMA and T. WATANABE Electric responses of auditory neurons in cat to sound stimulation *J. Neurophysiol.* 1958. 21: 569-588
- KATSLER Y. S. YOSHINO and J. CHEN Action currents of the single lateral-line nerve fiber of fish. I. On the spontaneous discharge *Jap. J. Physiol.* 1950. 1: 87-97
- KATSLER Y. S. YOSHINO and J. CHEN Action currents of the single lateral line nerve fiber of fish. II. On the discharge due to stimulation *Jap. J. Physiol.* 1950. 1: 179-194
- KINSLER L. E. and A. R. FREY *Fundamental Acoustic* N. Y. Wiley & Sons, Lond. Chapman & Hall, 1950. pp. 516
- KLEEREKOPER H. and E. C. CHAGNON Hearing in fish with special reference to *Semotilus atromaculatus atromaculatus* (Mitchill) *J. Fish Res. Bd. Can.* 1954. 11: 130-157
- KLEEREKOPER H. and P. A. ROGGENKAMP An experimental study on the effect of the swimbladder on the hearing sensitivity in *Atheresthes obsoletus obsoletus* (Lesueur) *Canad. J. Zool.* 1959. 37: 1-8
- KRISTOFFERSEN A. and P. S. ENGER Quantitative analysis of peripheral labyrinthine nerve fibres and sensory cells in fishes (In preparation)
- LE C. L. C. CULLEN and H. H. JASPER Laminar microelectrode studies of specific somatosensory cortical potentials *J. Neurophysiol.* 1956. 19: 111-130
- LOWENSTEIN O. The sense organs. The acoustico-lateralis system pp. 155-186 in Brown Margaret E. ed. *The physiology of fishes* vol. II N. Y. Academic Press 1957. pp. 576
- LOWENSTEIN O. and T. D. M. ROBERTS The equilibrium function of the otolith organs of the thornback ray (*Raja daurica*) *J. Physiol.* 1949. 110: 392-415
- LOWENSTEIN O. and T. D. M. ROBERTS The localization and analysis of the responses to vibration from the isolated elasmobranch labyrinth. A contribution to the problem of the evolution of hearing in vertebrates *J. Physiol.* 1951. 114: 471-499

- MOUNTCASTLE V B P W DAVIES and A L Berman Response properties of neurons of cat's somatic sensory cortex to peripheral stimuli *J Neurophysiol* 1957 20 374-407
- PHILLIPS C G Actions of antidromic pyramidal volleys on single Betz cells in the cat *Quart J exp Physiol* 1959 44 1-25
- POGGENDORF D Die absoluten Hörschwellen des Zwergweibes (*Ammius nebulosus*) und Beiträge zur Physik des Weberschen Apparates der Ostariophyzen *Z vergl Physiol* 1952 34 222-257
- RAMON CAJAL S Sur un noyau spécial du nerf vestibulaire des poissons et des oiseaux *Trab Lab Invest biol Univ Mil* 1908 6 1-20
- SCHNEIDER HILTRUDE Die Bedeutung der Atemhöhle der Labyrinthfische für ihr Hörvermögen *Z vergl Physiol* 1942 29 172-194
- SCHOEN LORE und E VON HOLST Das Zusammenspiel von Lagena und Utriculus bei der Lageorientierung der Knochenfische *Z vergl Physiol* 1950 32 552-571
- SCHWARTZKOPFF J Vergleichende Physiologie des Gehörs *Fortschr Zool* 1960 12 206-264
- SCHWARTZKOPFF J Der Gehörsinn bei Insekten und Wirbeltieren *Rev suisse Zool* 1962 69 256-284
- STETTER H Untersuchungen über den Gehörsinn der Fische besonders von *Phyllonotus laevis* L und *Ammius nebulosus* Raf *Z vergl Physiol* 1929 9 339-477
- STIPETIC ELISABETH Über das Gehörorgan der Mormyriden *Z vergl Physiol* 1939 26 740-752
- SUGA N Functional organization of two tympanic neurons in noctuid moths *Jap J Physiol* 1961 11 566-677
- TASAKI I Nerve impulses in individual auditory nerve fibers of guinea pig *J Neurophysiol* 1954 17 97-122
- TASAKI I E H POLLEY and F ORREGO Action potentials from individual elements in cat geniculate and striate cortex *J Neurophysiol* 1954 17 454-474
- WELCH B L On the comparison of several mean values. An alternative approach *Biometrika* 1951 38 330-336
- WEVER E G *Theory of hearing* N Y J Wiley & Sons Lond Chapman & Hall 1949 pp 484
- WEVER E G The physiology of hearing The nature of response in the cochlea *Physiol Rev* 1933 13 400-425
- WOHLFARTH T A Untersuchungen über das Tonunterscheidungsvermögen der Elritze (*Phrynosoma laevis* Agass) *Z vergl Physiol* 1932 26 570-604
- ZOTTERMAN Y The microphonic effect of intact labyrinths and its biological significance *J Physiol* 1943 102 313-319

ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

Vol. 59 Supplementum 211

---

# CORPUS STRIATUM

BY

ARNE MOSFELDT LAURSEN

COPENHAGEN

1963









ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

Vol. 59 Supplementum 211

---

*From the Institute of Neurophysiology Møhaelsen Institute  
University of Copenhagen Denmark*

# CORPUS STRIATUM

BY

ARNE MOSFELDT LAURSEN

COPENHAGEN

1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

Vol. 59 Supplementum 211

---

*From the Institute of Neurophysiology Michaelsen Institute  
University of Copenhagen Denmark*

# CORPUS STRIATUM

BY

ARNE MOSFELDT LAURSEN

COPENHAGEN



## CORPUS STRIATUM





## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This study was carried out in the Institute of Neurophysiology University of Copenhagen. To my teacher Professor Fritz Buchthal I wish to express my sincere gratitude for his unremitting encouragement and for ideal working conditions.

Mrs *Annelise Rosenfalck E E* and Mr *Christian Guld E E* designed most of the electronic equipment and instructed me in its use. Dr *Margaret Lennox Buchthal* offered helpful advice and constructive criticism in the preparation of the manuscript. My thanks are due to them and to the other members of the institute for stimulating discussions.

Thanks are due to Mr *Vagn Ousager Andersen* who solved mechanical problems, to Mr *Benny Knifstrøm* who constructed electronic devices, to Mr *Flemming Rus* who expertly prepared the figures, to Mrs *Bente Trampe Brock* and Miss *Bente Mikkelsen* who prepared the histological sections, to Miss *Karen Madsen* and Mr *Thomas Nissen* who trained animals, and to Mrs *Else Marie Fischer* who typed the drafts and the manuscript.

I wish to thank Dr *Poul C Bucy* and the Journal of Neuropathology and Experimental Neurology for permission to reproduce Fig. 1, Dr *Denise Albe Fessard*, Dr *George H Krauthamer* and the Comptes Rendu de la Société de Biologie Paris for permission to reproduce Fig. 8.

The study was made possible through the support and sponsorship of the U.S. Department of Army through its European Research Office. The work was furthermore supported by grants from the Michaelsen Foundation, Copenhagen and the Foundation's Fund for Research in Psychiatry, New Haven.



# CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	11
TERMINOLOGY	12
<i>Chapter 1</i>	
THE "EXTRAPYRAMIDAL SYSTEM"	13
A Deductions from clinicopathological investigations	13
■ Development of the concept of the extrapyramidal system	15
<i>Chapter 2</i>	
MOTOR FUNCTION	18
A Historical outline	18
B Ablation studies since about 1940	21
C Simulation studies since about 1940	23
1 Movements	23
2 Inhibition of movements	26
3 Effects on spinal reflexes	27
SUMMARY	29
<i>Chapter 3</i>	
HISTOLOGY	31
A Cells and synapses	31
B Earlier investigations of connections	32
C Investigations of connections since about 1940	33
1 Fibers within the corpus striatum	33
2 Connections with the cerebral cortex	34
3 Connections with the thalamus	35
4 Connections with the hypothalamus	38
5 Connections with the nucleus niger	38
6 Connections with the subthalamus	39
7 Connections with the mesencephalic tegmentum including the red nucleus	39
8 Connections with the brainstem below mesencephalon	40
SUMMARY	41
<i>Chapter 4</i>	
ELECTRICAL SIGNS OF CONNECTIONS BETWEEN THE CORPUS STRIATUM AND OTHER PARTS OF THE BRAIN	42
A Stimulation of corpus striatum	47
1 Effect on spontaneous cortical activity (electrocortical activation)	47
2 Gross responses in the cerebral cortex	43
3 Facilitation and inhibition of cortical responses	50
4 Inhibition of electrical seizure activity	52
5 Single unit responses in the cerebral cortex	52
6 Effects on subcortical activity	57

II Recording from corpus striatum	53
1 Spontaneous activity	53
2 Evoked responses	54
SUMMARY	56

### Chapter 5

SENSORY FUNCTION	58
SUMMARY	59

### Chapter 6

BEHAVIORAL STUDIES	60
A General observation	60
B Hyperkinesia	61
C Classical conditioned responses	62
D Conditioned instrumental responses	62
1 Definitions	62
2 Reinforcement by intracranial stimulation	62
3 Reinforcement by food or avoidance of a shock	63
SUMMARY	66

### Chapter 7

BIOCHEMICAL STUDIES	67
A Possible transmitters	67
1 Choline acetyltransferase acetylcholine and acetylcholin esterase	67
2 Dopamin	68
3 Noradrenaline and adrenaline	69
4 Gamma aminobutyric acid	69
5 Serotonin	70
6 Histamine	70
7 Piperidine	70
II Metabolism	70
C Metals	71
1 Copper	71
2 Iron	72
3 Manganese	72
SUMMARY	73

### Chapter 8

PALLIDOTOMY IN HUMANS	74
A Site of lesions alleviating tremor and rigidity	74
II Deep stimulation	76
C Mental changes	76
SUMMARY	77

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS	78
SAMMENDRAG	81
REFERENCES	84
INDEX	103

## INTRODUCTION

In the eighteen thirties *Magendie* (1839) demonstrated to his audience that a probe inserted into the basal brain ganglia of a rabbit made it run forwards. Towards the end of the century experiments with the newly developed method of electrical stimulation of discrete brain regions in anesthetized animals were interpreted to indicate that the caudate nucleus has no motor function. However the corpus striatum was again generally assumed to have a motor function after the hepato-lenticular syndrome was described by *Wilson* (1912). Other nuclei were believed to work together with the corpus striatum to form the striatal (*Vogt and Vogt* 1919) or extrapyramidal system (*Jacob* 1923). The results of research on the corpus striatum since then are difficult to integrate into a concept or theory. I have brought together in this survey the evidence from animal experiments. As a general conclusion I can however state vaguely that the corpus striatum seems to function on the highest level of nervous integration. Those who in the future may elucidate the function of the corpus striatum will be a long way towards understanding the most subtle mechanisms of the brain.

## TERMINOLOGY

In the literature the following terms are used as synonyms of corpus striatum or its parts

*Basal ganglia* May or may not include the amygdala or thalamus or both

*Striatum* May refer to the caudate nucleus putamen and globus pallidus, but may also refer to only the caudate nucleus and putamen as opposed to the histologically different *pallidum*

*Striopallidum* is synonymous with corpus striatum

*Neostriatum* May refer to the caudate nucleus and putamen in mammals as opposed to the phylogenetically older *paleostriatum* i.e. globus pallidus. Neostriatum and paleostriatum may also refer to homologous structures in reptiles and birds

*Lenticular nucleus* Putamen and globus pallidus

*Striatal system* May be a synonym of corpus striatum. May also include a number of other, usually unspecified brain structures. In the last usage it is interchangeable with the extrapyramidal system

*Striate* May refer to corpus striatum, the striatal system or area striata in cortex

The term corpus striatum in this survey denotes the caudate nucleus putamen and globus pallidus of mammals

## Chapter I

# THE 'EXTRAPYRAMIDAL SYSTEM'

An outline of clinicopathological investigations of the corpus striatum up to about 1930 may clarify the development of the concept of the extrapyramidal system. Reviews of clinicopathological studies were presented by *Jung and Hassler* (1960) and *Denny Brown* (1962)

### A. DEDUCTIONS FROM CLINICOPATHOLOGICAL INVESTIGATIONS

Theories about the function of the corpus striatum were mentioned by *Charcot* (1877) but in his opinion reliable evidence was lacking. *Ferrier* (1876) including the peduncular fibers in the corpus striatum stated that lesions of these structures in man "produce hemiplegia of the opposite side sensation remaining unimpaired". According to *Gowers* (1887) however lesions of corpus striatum cause no lasting symptoms if limited to the grey matter.

The first case of what became known later as the syndrome of the corpus striatum was published by *Anton* (1896) a boy with involuntary movements of all parts of the body had at autopsy, bilateral lesions confined to the putamen. In the years to follow many attempts to define a syndrome of the corpus striatum failed because the reported cases were not clear cut clinically or anatomically (for references see *Wilson* (1912)). The syndrome of the corpus striatum in the still current sense (*Grinker and Bucy* 1951 p. 296) was described by *C. Vogt* (1911) as athetose double and by *Wilson* (1912) as progressive lenticular degeneration. In both conditions there were involuntary movements, spasmodic contractions, dysarthria and emotionalism without true paralysis or sensory change. In *Wilson's* disease the involuntary movement was tremor rather than athetosis and involuntary associated movements were absent. *Wilson* (1912) noted that paralysis agitans resembled the syndrome of the corpus striatum. Although Huntington's chorea is characterized by both wide spread cortical lesions and lesions in corpus striatum (*Altzheimer* 1911) the dyskinesia of the disease was attributed to the lesion in corpus striatum (*Vogt and Vogt* 1920).

The aim of later investigations was to establish in detail the relationship



between different sites and types of lesions in the corpus striatum and clinical manifestations. However, the lesions were not confined to the corpus striatum in cases similar to those described by *Vogt* and *Wilson* in other respects. The damaged structures were believed to constitute a system, and lesions in corpus striatum or the 'striatal' system were believed to be the cause of involuntary movements. Assuming that abnormal movements are caused by lesions in the 'striatal system' there are two ways the movements may arise: abnormal impulses may be discharged by the damaged neurones producing chorea, athetosis etc (*Kahler* and *Pick* 1879), or the neurones may have been inhibitory before they were damaged, the resultant release accounts for the abnormal movements (*Jackson* 1884), *Anton* (1896), *Pineles* (1899), *Bonhoeffer* (1901), *von Economo* (1910), *Wilson* (1912), *Kleist* (1918) and *Vogt* and *Vogt* (1920) believed that chorea and athetosis were too well coordinated to be the result of random nervous impulses. Furthermore the symptoms often remain unchanged during decades while the necrobiotic process progresses. Therefore it was generally believed that the normal function of corpus striatum was to inhibit movement.

Other theories of the pathophysiology of extrapyramidal motor disease were proposed. *Bonhoeffer* (1901) and *von Economo* (1910) suggested that chorea is due to imbalance of pyramidal and other motor impulses. *Wilson* (1912) concluded that corpus striatum has a steadying effect on the action of the corticospinal system and suggested that tremor is normally prevented via the rubrospinal tract and that rigidity is prevented via thalamus and cortex. *Kleist* (1918) revived the idea of *Pineles* (1899) of a possible role of the cerebellum in the mechanism of chorea, and proposed an inhibitory circuit from cerebellum through the red nucleus to thalamus and corpus striatum, an interruption of this circuit producing chorea. From a study of 34 cases of striatal disease *Vogt* and *Vogt* (1919, 1920) concluded that globus pallidus, in agreement with its simple structure, was a simple motor center emitting excitatory impulses whereas the caudate nucleus and putamen were believed to be coordinating centers emitting inhibitory as well as excitatory impulses (compare histology p. 32). Lack of inhibitory impulses from the caudate nucleus and putamen to globus pallidus were thought to produce tremor when the damage was slight, chorea when the damage was severe. Akinesia on the other hand was explained by lack of excitatory impulses from the caudate nucleus and putamen to globus pallidus or by destruction of the globus pallidus itself. *Foerster* (1921) too maintained that specific clinical pictures corresponded to lesions in different parts of the 'striatal' system although the etiology could differ in cases with the same signs.

With Jacob (1923 1925) the theory of extrapyramidal disease became rigid and elaborate. The syndrome of the corpus striatum was split up into striatumsyndrome and a pallidumsyndrome. Damage to the caudate nucleus and putamen was claimed to produce chorea if mainly the small cells were destroyed, rigidity if the large cells degenerated as well. Partial destruction of globus pallidus was held responsible for athetosis, complete destruction for severe rigidity with contractures. Parkinson's disease was believed to be a syndrome of the nucleus nigra. As regards normal physiology Jacob assumed that the caudate nucleus and putamen were centers of emotional expression, fear and flight, orientation and attention reactions, automatic adjustments of posture and position, automatic associated movements, sitting, standing, walking, mastication, swallowing and speech. The globus pallidus was thought to be the center of synergies of smaller groups of muscles. Jacob's presentation was based on the work of Vogt and Vogt (1919 1920) but unlike the Vogts Jacob mixed facts and speculations.

Lewy (1921) criticized current theories of the pathophysiology of the dyskinesias and stated that the ideas of most authors were *viel zu grob und einfach*. The evidence behind the theories was insufficient because patients with well-defined syndromes have different lesions at autopsy and lesions confined to the corpus striatum may lead to different clinical signs (for further references see Spatz 1927, Wilson 1929, Riech 1940, Meyers 1953, Greenfield 1957).

## B DEVELOPMENT OF THE CONCEPT OF THE "EXTRAPYRAMIDAL SYSTEM"

The concept of the extrapyramidal system has developed gradually; no single author invented it<sup>1)</sup>. Wilson (1912) introduced the term *extrapyramidal motor disease* with the following remark: "It is unfortunate that there is no expression in common use to indicate extrapyramidal motor disease. It referred to diseases of corpus striatum and its efferent pathways via the red nucleus, thalamus and cortex. In this and later studies the hypothesis was implied that the involuntary motor activity of normal individuals can be subdivided into components each governed by a special extrapyramidal nucleus. Wilson (1929) realized this view was too simple. "Voluntary" movements were assigned to the pyramidal system because lesions in the internal capsule produced hemiplegia. Aleist (1918) described a *subcortical motor system* which in

<sup>1)</sup> Prus (1898) introduced "*Extrapiramidenbahnen*" to designate corticospinal pathways outside the pyramidal tract.

cluded the dentate nucleus *Vogt and Vogt* (1920) defined a *striatal system* as a system of brain structures so intimately interrelated with corpus striatum that lesions in any part of the system evoke the syndrome of the corpus striatum. In its widest sense the *striatal system* of the *Vogts* consisted of the corpus striatum, the nucleus ruber, subthalamus niger, interstitialis and Darkschewitschi, and part of the thalamus. *Jacob* (1923) first used the term *extrapyramidal system* defined by the appearance of extrapyramidal disturbances of movement when the system was damaged. The argument was circular in that extrapyramidal disturbances of movement were defined as symptoms that appeared in diseases of certain parts of the basal ganglia. Despite the critical attitudes of *Spatz* (1927) and *Wilson* (1929) the extrapyramidal system continued to be a hazy concept based on speculation rather than evidence. The subdivision of the motor functions of the brain into pyramidal and extrapyramidal functions has lost its foundation because damage to the pyramidal tract does not elicit the pyramidal syndrome of clinical neurology. Homolateral spasticity is produced by hemidecerebration in cats (*Sherrington* 1898) and after section of the medullary pyramid in cat, dog, monkey and chimpanzee (*Schiff* 1858, *Starlinger* 1896, *Rothmann* 1907, *Marshall* 1933, 1936, *Tower* 1944) or the cerebral peduncle in monkey (*Cannon, Magoun and Windle* 1944, *Bucy and Keplinger* 1961) and man (*Walker* 1952, *Meyers* 1956, *Bucy* 1957, *Bucy and Keplinger* 1961) spastic hemiplegia is absent.

An anatomical definition of the extrapyramidal system depends on the definition chosen for the pyramidal system. Literally the pyramidal tract is the lengthwise running fibers on the ventral side of the medulla oblongata. But cortico-bulbar fibers outside the pyramid may play a role similar to that of the cortico-spinal tract and fibers from the pyramids terminate in the reticular formation (for references see *Patton and Amassian* 1960). Nevertheless the term pyramidal tract could mean the corticospinal tract without leading to confusion (*Tower* 1944). The cortical region of origin of the tract is included in the concept of the pyramidal system. Nearly all the fibers in the pyramids degenerate after ablation of the anterior third of the cerebral cortex in cats (*van Crevel* 1958) and areas 4 and parietal cortex in monkeys (*Russell and de Myer* 1961). But the motor cortex has also extrapyramidal projections (*Rothmann* 1907). Thus pyramidal and extrapyramidal systems overlap. A further difficulty is that the extrapyramidal system defined as central motor mechanisms excluding the pyramidal system or tract has vague boundaries (*Jung and Hassler* 1960). Motor mechanisms cannot be delineated anatomically and motor effects are obtained from the whole brain if it is not anesthetized.

To assign a specific meaning to the term extrapyramidal system *Rioch* (1940) suggested that it be used for fiber systems that originate in the forebrain and terminate within the brain. In contrast pyramidal fiber systems terminate at the level of the anterior horn cell. Extrapyramidal systems are thus interrelated high upstream from the final common path (*Rioch* 1940). The functional significance of this distinction is unknown. Therefore and as the terms pyramidal and extrapyramidal have strong older connotations, a redefinition does not seem appropriate.

*Mejers* (1953) recommended that the term extrapyramidal system be discarded claiming that the concept from its beginning was a violation of logic and common sense. Others use the term extrapyramidal system without a specific definition with reference only to convention (*Jung and Hassler* 1960).

In short the concept of the extrapyramidal system in its original sense is no longer useful because the hypothesis it referred to has not been confirmed. To redefine the extrapyramidal system may lead to misunderstandings since older definitions although vague are in common use.

On the other hand the dichotomy expressed by the terms pyramidal and extrapyramidal motor disease is real (*Wilson* 1912). Motor syndromes caused by diseases of the brain are usually either spastic hemiplegia with hyperactive tendon reflexes, the sign of Babinski and absent abdominal reflexes or they consist of various combinations of chorea, athetosis, tremor and rigidity. Referring to these syndromes as pyramidal and extrapyramidal has lost its original meaning. Correct anatomical or pathophysiological names probably cannot be found because the damaged mechanisms are too complex. Artificial names rarely catch on. To abandon the concept of the extrapyramidal system while we continue to speak about the extrapyramidal syndrome will present difficulties but we may have no realistic choice.

cluded the dentate nucleus *Vogt and Vogt* (1920) defined a *striatal system* as a system of brain structures so intimately interrelated with corpus striatum that lesions in any part of the system evoke the syndrome of the corpus striatum. In its widest sense the *striatal system* of the *Vogts* consisted of the corpus striatum, the nuclei ruber, subthalamicus, niger, interstitialis and Darkschewitschi and part of the thalamus. *Jacob* (1923) first used the term extrapyramidal system, defined by the appearance of extrapyramidal disturbances of movement when the system was damaged. The argument was circular in that extrapyramidal disturbances of movement were defined as symptoms that appeared in diseases of certain parts of the basal ganglia. Despite the critical attitudes of *Spatz* (1927) and *Wilson* (1929) the extrapyramidal system continued to be a hazy concept based on speculation rather than evidence. The subdivision of the motor functions of the brain into pyramidal and extrapyramidal functions has lost its foundation because damage to the pyramidal tract does not elicit the pyramidal syndrome of clinical neurology. Homolateral spasticity is produced by hemidecerebration in cats (*Sherrington* 1898) and after section of the medullary pyramid in cat, dog, monkey and chimpanzee (*Schuff* 1858, *Starlinger* 1896, *Rothmann* 1907, *Marshall* 1933, 1936, *Tower* 1944) or the cerebral peduncle in monkey (*Cannon Magoun* and *Windle* 1944, *Bucy and Keplinger* 1961) and man (*Walker* 1952, *Meyers* 1956, *Bucy* 1957, *Bucy and Keplinger* 1961) spastic hemiplegia is absent.

An anatomical definition of the extrapyramidal system depends on the definition chosen for the pyramidal system. Literally the *pyramidal tract* is the lengthwise running fibers on the ventral side of the medulla oblongata. But cortico-bulbar fibers outside the pyramid may play a role similar to that of the cortico-spinal tract and fibers from the pyramids terminate in the reticular formation (for references see *Patton and Amar* 1960). Nevertheless the term *pyramidal tract* could mean the corticospinal tract without leading to confusion (*Tower* 1944). The cortical region of origin of the tract is included in the concept of the *pyramidal system*. Nearly all the fibers in the pyramids degenerate after ablation of the anterior third of the cerebral cortex in cats (*van Crevel* 1958) and areas 4, 6 and parietal cortex in monkeys (*Russell and de Myer* 1961). But the motor cortex has also extrapyramidal projections (*Rothmann* 1907). Thus pyramidal and extrapyramidal systems overlap. A further difficulty is that the *extrapyramidal system* defined as central motor mechanisms excluding the pyramidal system or tract has vague boundaries (*Jung and Hassler* 1960). Motor mechanisms cannot be delineated anatomically and motor effects are obtained from the whole brain if it is not anesthetized.



## Chapter 2

# MOTOR FUNCTION

Both clinicopathological observations and animal experiments have been interpreted to indicate a motor function of the corpus striatum. This survey deals with animal experiments. Investigations from before about 1940 are reviewed only briefly.

## A HISTORICAL OUTLINE

Before about 1880 a distinction was usually not made between the internal capsule and what is now designated corpus striatum. *Magendie* (1839) found that destruction of 'corpus striatum' bilaterally in rabbits produced forward running movements. Running backwards occurred after ablation of the cerebellum. *Magendie's* observation was repeatedly confirmed and *Nothnagel* (1873) termed the running center in the caudate nucleus 'nodus cursorius'. *Ferrier* (1876) elicited general muscular contraction on the opposite side of the body by electrical stimulation of the corpus striatum in a number of animals anesthetized with chloroform. The body became flexed so that the head approximated the tail and the corpus striatum was believed to integrate the centers which were differentiated in the cortex. The stimuli used by *Ferrier* may have spread to the internal capsule since *Glik* (1976) found that the caudate nucleus of rabbits anesthetized with morphine and ether was electrically inexcitable and that movements were elicited by stimulation of the internal capsule. This observation was independently made by *Franck* (1878) and confirmed by *Minor* (1882), *Ziehen* (1890), *Wieting* (1891), *Schuller* (1901) and *von Bechterew* (1909). Putamen was considered functionally analogous to the caudate nucleus. *Von Bechterew* assigned a motor function to the globus pallidus because stimulation of this nucleus produced convulsive attacks even when the internal capsule had degenerated. Blood pressure and respiration could be altered by stimulation of the globus pallidus and putamen. Other autonomic effects ascribed to globus pallidus by previous authors were found to be due to activation of or damage to neighbouring structures (*von Bechterew* 1909). *Wilson* (1914) found that

implanted in the caudate nucleus. This response looks like a natural movement in contrast to the stereotyped motor responses elicited from the internal capsule and it has recently been proved to be of truly caudate origin (*Laurson 1962 a*). This and other responses in alert animals are discussed on p. 23.

#### B ABLATION STUDIES SINCE ABOUT 1940

In chimpanzee *Kennard (1944)* found no effect of unilateral and bilateral lesions confined to the caudate nucleus or of bilateral lesions confined to putamen or globus pallidus or both. Bilateral lesions in globus pallidus had no effect on motor performance in monkey (*Ranson and Berry 1941*) and only transient effect in cat (*Laurson 1962 c 1963*). On the other hand *Liddell and Phillips (1940)* described contralateral extensor hypertonia and ipsilateral flexor hypertonia in cats with unilateral caudate lesions disclosed only when the cat was lifted off the ground. With bilateral lesions this latent extensor hypertonia could be demonstrated on both sides. Flexor reflexes were delayed, placing reactions abnormal and Sprungbereitschaft (*Magnus 1924*) was present. These signs are similar to those described in decorticate cats (*Bard and Ruch 1937*). In cats whose medullary pyramids were sectioned lesions in corpus striatum produced a further increase in tone and *Liddell and Phillips (1946)* concluded that the hypertonia was not due to injury of the capsular fibres adjacent to or traversing the lateral part of the caudate nucleus. However this possibility is not excluded since stretch reflexes are inhibited through fibers which descend in the internal capsule and continue outside as well as within the medullary pyramids (for references see *Magoun and Rhines 1947*). Thus there is no conclusive evidence of change of motor performance as a result of lesions confined to corpus striatum.

Lesions in corpus striatum combined with lesions in neighbouring structures have been reported to produce various motor effects. Chronic carbon disulphide poisoning in monkeys produced bilateral necrosis of the globus pallidus and lesions in the nucleus niger, subthalamic nucleus, hypothalamus and dentate nucleus. The monkeys were spastic, had intention tremor and sat in abnormal postures (*Richter 1945*). Molten paraffin injected into the caudate nuclei of rabbits and dogs compressed adjoining structures as would a brain tumor and produced disturbances in motor coordination, cutaneous and deep sensation and conditioned reflexes (*Romanowskaya 1957*). Bilateral removal of the caudate nucleus in a monkey by suction through area 8 produced hyperkinesia in the presence of other monkeys or of the observer (*Denny Brown 1962*).





21  
implanted in the caudate nucleus. This response looks like a natural movement in contrast to the stereotyped motor responses elicited from the internal capsule and it has recently been proved to be of truly caudate origin (Laurson 1962 a). This and other responses in alert animals are discussed on p. 23.

## B ABLATION STUDIES SINCE ABOUT 1940

In chimpanzee Kennard (1944) found no effect of unilateral and bilateral lesions confined to the caudate nucleus or of bilateral lesions confined to putamen or globus pallidus or both. Bilateral lesions in globus pallidus had no effect on motor performance in monkey (Ranson and Berry 1941) and only transient effect in cat (Laurson 1962 c 1963). On the other hand Liddell and Phillips (1940) described contralateral extensor hypertonia and ipsilateral flexor hypertonia in cats with unilateral caudate lesions disclosed only when the cat was lifted off the ground. With bilateral lesions this latent extensor hypertonia could be demonstrated on both sides. Flexor reflexes were delayed, placing reactions abnormal and Sprungbereitschaft (Maignus 1924) was present. These signs are similar to those described in decorticate cats (Bard and Rioch 1937). In cats whose medullary pyramids were sectioned lesions in corpus striatum produced a further increase in tone and Liddell and Phillips (1946) concluded that the hypertonia was not due to injury of the capsular fibres adjacent to or traversing the lateral part of the caudate nucleus. However this possibility is not excluded since stretch reflexes are inhibited through fibers which descend in the internal capsule and continue outside as well as within the medullary pyramids (for references see Magoun and Rhines 1947). Thus there is no conclusive evidence of change of motor performance as a result of lesions confined to corpus striatum.

Lesions in corpus striatum combined with lesions in neighbouring structures have been reported to produce various motor effects. Chronic carbon disulphide poisoning in monkeys produced bilateral necrosis of the globus pallidus and lesions in the nucleus niger, subthalamic nucleus, hypothalamus and dentate nucleus. The monkeys were spastic, had intention tremor and sat in abnormal postures (Richter 1945). Molten paraffin injected into the caudate nuclei of rabbits and dogs compressed adjoining structures as would a brain tumor and produced disturbances in motor coordination, cutaneous and deep sensation and conditioned reflexes (Romanovskaya 1957). Bilateral removal of the caudate nucleus in a monkey by suction through area 8 produced hyperkinesia in the presence of other monkeys or of the observer (Denny Brown 1962).



implanted in the caudate nucleus. This response looks like a natural movement in contrast to the stereotyped motor responses elicited from the internal capsule and it has recently been proved to be of truly caudate origin (*Laurson 1962 a*). This and other responses in alert animals are discussed on p. 23.

## B ABLATION STUDIES SINCE ABOUT 1940

In chimpanzee *Kennard (1944)* found no effect of unilateral and bilateral lesions confined to the caudate nucleus or of bilateral lesions confined to putamen or globus pallidus or both. Bilateral lesions in globus pallidus had no effect on motor performance in monkey (*Ranson and Berry 1941*) and only transient effect in cat (*Laurson 1962 = 1963*). On the other hand *Liddell and Phillips (1940)* described contralateral extensor hypertonia and ipsilateral flexor hypertonia in cats with unilateral caudate lesions disclosed only when the cat was lifted off the ground. With bilateral lesions this latent extensor hypertonia could be demonstrated on both sides. Flexor reflexes were delayed, placing reactions abnormal and Sprungbereitschaft (*Magnus 1924*) was present. These signs are similar to those described in decorticate cats (*Bard and Rioch 1937*). In cats in which medullary pyramids were sectioned lesions in corpus striatum produced a further increase in tone and *Liddell and Phillips (1946)* concluded that the hypertonia was not due to injury of the capsular fibres adjacent to or traversing the lateral part of the caudate nucleus. However, this possibility is not excluded since stretch reflexes are inhibited through fibers which descend in the internal capsule and continue outside as well as within the medullary pyramids (for references see *Magoun and Rhines 1947*). Thus there is no conclusive evidence of change of motor performance as a result of lesions confined to corpus striatum.

Lesions in corpus striatum combined with lesions in neighbouring structures have been reported to produce various motor effects. Chronic carbon disulphide poisoning in monkeys produced bilateral necrosis of the globus pallidus and lesions in the nucleus nigra, subthalamic nucleus, hypothalamus and dentate nucleus. The monkeys were spastic, had intention tremor and sat in abnormal postures (*Richter 1945*). Molten paraffin injected into the caudate nuclei of rabbits and dogs compressed adjoining structures as would a brain tumor and produced disturbances in motor coordination, cutaneous and deep sensation and conditioned reflexes (*Romanovskaya 1957*). Bilateral removal of the caudate nucleus in a monkey by suction through area 8 produced hyperkinesia in the presence of other monkeys or of the observer (*Denny Brown 1962*).

Bilateral electrolytic lesions in the putamen of two monkeys produced a soft, yielding rigidity, poor placing and grasping reflexes and hyperactive righting reflexes. In nine monkeys bilateral electrolytic lesions in globus pallidus, ansa lenticularis and the frontopontine tract produced a plastic rather than springy resistance to passive movements and absence of placing and righting reflexes. These 'examples of reasonably restricted lesions' did not produce tremor (Denny-Brown 1962).

Combined lesions of cortex and corpus striatum have been reported to produce motor effects, but there is no extrapyramidal syndrome as seen in patients. In monkeys cerebral cortical lesions combined with lesions in the ipsilateral corpus striatum increased spasticity and abolished feeding movements in contralateral extremities (Mettler 1943). Bilateral lesions of the caudate nucleus added to bilateral ablations of cortex rostral to area 4 increased ambulatory hyperkinesia, and produced an increased tendency to climb. The previously hyperactive, curious animal was transformed into an overactive 'automaton devoid of curiosity' (Mettler 1945 a). When the globus pallidus was included in the lesion, associated movements disappeared, particularly those 'called forth by proprioceptive stimulation'. In monkey J 71 M both globi pallidi were included in the lesions, hyperkinesia was absent and the monkey did not alter a strange position it was passively placed in (Mettler 1943, 1945 a). Kennard (1944) too, found that spasticity produced by a cortical lesion was greater and more enduring when corpus striatum was damaged as well. In addition there was bilateral tremor after uni and bilateral lesions in corpus striatum when these were combined with different cortical lesions regardless of whether area 6, 8 or insular cortex were damaged. Tremor was more pronounced and enduring in chimpanzee than in monkey. Kennard (1944) did not report histological findings and it is therefore not known whether there was damage to mesencephalic areas which might account for the tremor (Ward, McCulloch and Magoun 1948).

Rioch and Brenner (1938) investigated chronic decorticate cats, guinea pigs and opossums and found no new functional deficit when lesions were made in the corpus striatum. A similar study by Mettler and Mettler (1942) described several abnormalities in cats with combined lesions of cortex and corpus striatum but the animals died within 5 days after the operation. In a note Heath, Friedman and Mettler (1947) indicated that removal of up to 75 per cent of corpus striatum through different cortical lesions produced constant abnormalities, the cats were dull and assumed 'bizarre postural patterns' but muscle tone was normal. This was interpreted to indicate loss of contact with the environment and disturbances in proprioception.

## C STIMULATION STUDIES SINCE ABOUT 1940

### 1 Movements

Stimulation of the exposed ventricular surface of the caudate nucleus in a human anesthetized with nitrous oxide and pethidine evoked no movements (Bates 1954). This is in agreement with the results of experiments on anesthetized animals (p. 18).

Stimulation of the caudate nucleus in alert animals has been reported to evoke movements of two kinds: 1) contraversive head turning and circling (Delmat Marsalet 1925 Hassler 1956 Buchwald and Ervin 1957 White and Himwich 1957 Stevens Kim and McLean 1961 Ruckebusch and Barone 1961) and 2) flexion of contralateral extremities combined with contraversive head turning (Forman and Ward 1957).

It is not excluded that current spread to the internal capsule caused the flexion of the contralateral extremities elicited by stimulating electrodes in the caudate. Forman and Ward concluded that contralateral movements could still be elicited after ablation of the motor cortex on the side of stimulation but they did state (p. 237) that flexion responses of the fore and hind limbs of the sort seen in animals with an intact cerebrum were absent in sensorimotor decorticate cats.

It further remained uncertain whether contraversive head turning and circling were elicited by activation of the caudate nucleus or a neighbouring structure (thalamus septum cortical efferent from areas outside the sensorimotor cortex).

When electrical stimuli are delivered to the corpus striatum spread of current to adjoining structures is unavoidable. The caudate nucleus is situated between the internal capsule, the nucleus ventralis anterior and nucleus reticularis of the thalamus, the corpus callosum and area septalis. Activation of these structures produces responses in other parts of the brain. In cat and rhesus monkey the tip of an electrode in the caudate nucleus is at most 2 mm distant from one of its borders. The putamen and globus pallidus are so small that an electrode inserted in these structures is within about 1 mm of the internal capsule or the amygdala. Thus unless special precautions are taken it is difficult to ascertain whether responses in other parts of the brain are due to activation of the corpus striatum or of adjacent structures.

I have reinvestigated the movements elicited by stimulation of the caudate nucleus in alert cats before and after hemidecortication and before and after lesions in the caudate nucleus (Laurson 1962a). The effect of spread of current to the internal capsule was furthermore determined with a 14-lead electrode: thresholds were determined at points known distances apart without intervening displacements of brain tissue. Contralateral flexion movements were elicited by stimulation between two adjacent electrodes of the multicathode inserted through the caudate

Bilateral electrolytic lesions in the putamen of two monkeys produced a soft, yielding rigidity, poor placing and grasping reflexes and hyperactive righting reflexes. In nine monkeys bilateral electrolytic lesions in globus pallidus, ansa lenticularis and the frontopontine tract produced a plastic rather than springy resistance to passive movements and absence of placing and righting reflexes. These 'examples of reasonably restricted lesions' did not produce tremor (*Denny Brown 1962*)

Combined lesions of cortex and corpus striatum have been reported to produce motor effects, but there is no extrapyramidal syndrome as seen in patients. In monkeys cerebral cortical lesions combined with lesions in the ipsilateral corpus striatum increased spasticity and abolished feeding movements in contralateral extremities (*Mettler 1943*). Bilateral lesions of the caudate nucleus added to bilateral ablations of cortex rostral to area 4 increased ambulatory hyperkinesia, and produced an increased tendency to climb. The previously hyperactive, curious animal was transformed into an overactive automaton devoid of curiosity (*Mettler 1945 a*). When the globus pallidus was included in the lesion associated movements disappeared, particularly those 'called forth by proprioceptive stimulation'. In monkey J 71 M both globi pallidi were included in the lesions hyperkinesia was absent and the monkey did not alter a strange position it was passively placed in (*Mettler 1943, 1945 a*). *Kennard (1944)* too, found that spasticity produced by a cortical lesion was greater and more enduring when corpus striatum was damaged as well. In addition there was bilateral tremor after uni- and bilateral lesions in corpus striatum when these were combined with different cortical lesions regardless of whether area 6, 8 or insular cortex were damaged. Tremor was more pronounced and enduring in chimpanzee than in monkey. *Kennard (1944)* did not report histological findings and it is therefore not known whether there was damage to mesencephalic areas which might account for the tremor (*Ward McCulloch and Magoun 1948*).

*Rioch and Brenner (1938)* investigated chronic decorticate cats, guinea pigs and opossums and found no new functional deficit when lesions were made in the corpus striatum. A similar study by *Mettler and Mettler (1942)* described several abnormalities in cats with combined lesions of cortex and corpus striatum but the animals died within 5 days after the operation. In a note *Heath, Freedman and Mettler (1947)* indicated that removal of up to 75 per cent of corpus striatum through different cortical lesions produced constant abnormalities: the cats were dull and assumed bizarre postural patterns but muscle tone was normal. This was interpreted to indicate loss of contact with the environment and disturbances in proprioception.

### 1 Movements

Stimulation of the exposed ventricular surface of the caudate nucleus in a human anesthetized with nitrous oxide and pethidine evoked no movements (Bates 1954) This is in agreement with the results of experiments on anesthetized animals (p 18)

Stimulation of the caudate nucleus in alert animals has been reported to evoke movements of two kinds 1) contraversive head turning and circling (Delmat Marsalet 1925 Hassler 1956 Buchwald and Ervin 1957 White and Himwich 1957 Stevens Kim and McLean 1961 Ruckebusch and Barone 1961) and 2) flexion of contralateral extremities combined with contraversive head turning (Forman and Ward 1957)

It is not excluded that current spread to the internal capsule caused the flexion of the contralateral extremities elicited by stimulating electrodes in the caudate Forman and Ward concluded that contralateral movements could still be elicited after ablation of the motor cortex on the side of stimulation but they did state (p 237) that flexion responses of the fore and hind limbs of the sort seen in animals with an intact cerebrum were absent in sensorimotor decorticate cats

It further remained uncertain whether contraversive head turning and circling were elicited by activation of the caudate nucleus or a neighbouring structure (thalamus septum cortical efferent from areas outside the sensorimotor cortex)

When electrical stimuli are delivered to the corpus striatum spread of current to adjoining structures is unavoidable The caudate nucleus is situated between the internal capsule the nucleus ventralis anterior and nucleus reticularis of the thalamus the corpus callosum and area septalis Activation of these structures produces responses in other parts of the brain In cat and rhesus monkey the tip of an electrode in the caudate nucleus is at most 2 mm distant from one of its borders The putamen and globus pallidus are so small that an electrode inserted in these structures is within about 1 mm of the internal capsule or the amygdala Thus, unless special precautions are taken it is difficult to ascertain whether responses in other parts of the brain are due to activation of the corpus striatum or of adjacent structures

I have reinvestigated the movements elicited by stimulation of the caudate nucleus in alert cats before and after hemidecortication and before and after lesions in the caudate nucleus (Laurser 1962 a) The effect of spread of current to the internal capsule was furthermore determined with a 14 lead electrode thresholds were determined at points known distances apart without intervening displacements of brain tissue Contralateral flexion movements were elicited by stimulation between two adjacent electrodes of the multicathode inserted through the caudate



nucleus and the internal capsule. In the center of the head of the caudate nucleus the threshold was five times the threshold in the internal capsule. Contraversive head turning and circling could not be elicited by stimulation between two adjacent electrodes of the multielectrode probably because too little of the tissue was stimulated (interelectrode distance 0.6 mm). This response together with contralateral flexion movements could be elicited by stimulation between the tips of two electrodes 2 mm apart. After electrolytic lesions made with these electrodes contraversive head turning and circling were abolished, contralateral flexion movements could still be elicited. After decortication flexion responses were abolished whereas the head turning and circling response were unaffected.

These results indicate that contraversive head turning and circling are elicited by stimulation confined to the caudate nucleus and that contralateral flexion responses are due to spread of current to the internal capsule. Stimulation at different frequencies also indicates that the head turning circling and the flexion response are elicited from different structures. Flexion responses had the lowest threshold at 150/sec, contraversive circling at 50/sec. Therefore either response could be obtained in the same animal without change in electrode position or in stimulus intensity (Fig. 2). The above findings are in accordance with the effect of acetylcholine and diisopropylfluorophosphate applied to the caudate nucleus: contraversive head turning and circling were elicited, not contralateral flexion responses (White and Himwich 1957, Stevens, Kim and McLean 1961). In agreement with earlier investigations (p. 18), the caudate nucleus was inexcitable one month after decortication in cats anesthetized with Nembutal® (Hendley and Hodes 1953).

Somatotopic organization of the corpus striatum was inferred from clinicopathological studies (for references see Davidson and Goodhard 1940) but was not confirmed in monkeys and apes (Kennard 1944). The somatotopic organization of the caudate nucleus observed by Forman and Ward (1957) in cats was probably the somatotopic organization of the internal capsule (Laursen 1962 a).

Recently Montanelli and Hassler (1962) found contraversive head turning and circling and movements of the contralateral legs elicited by stimulation of the globus pallidus and entopeduncular nucleus in alert cats. Evaluation of this experiment must await publication of a full report.

\* The homologue in carnivores of the medial segment of the globus pallidus in primates

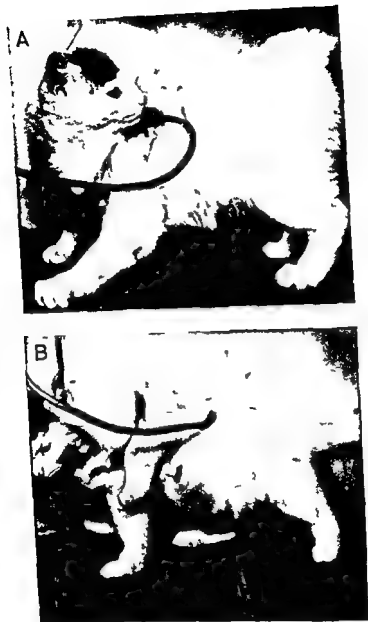


Fig 2

Differentiation of head turning and flexion responses by variation of the stimulation frequency (Laurzen 1962 a) Implanted bipolar electrode in the right caudate nucleus Stimulation by pulse trains of 5 sec - A. Contraversive (left) head turning without flexion of contralateral extremities stimulus strength 1.2 mA at 50 sec - B Flexion of contralateral (left) foreleg without head turning Stimulus strength 1.2 mA at 150 sec

## 2 Inhibition of movements

Two types of inhibitory reactions have been described as due to stimulation of the corpus striatum 1) immediate cessation of movement, 2) diminution or abolition of spontaneous movements after a latency of several minutes

1) In acute experiments electrical stimulation of the caudate nucleus and globus pallidus inhibited movements evoked from the cerebral cortex (Mettler et al 1939, Freeman and Krasno 1940, Mettler and Mettler 1941, Gerebtzoff 1941, Hodes Peacock and Heath 1951) However, Peacock (1954) showed that inhibition in nembutalized cats was elicited with weaker stimuli from the internal capsule than from the caudate In alert animals Buchwald and Erwin (1957) and Buchwald et al (1961 b) elicited immediate inhibition of motion by stimulation at 30–40/sec through electrodes in the caudate nucleus without, however, ascertaining that stimulation was confined to this nucleus Forman and Ward (1957) did not find inhibitory phenomena in alert cats

Because the evidence in the literature is conflicting I have investigated whether immediate inhibition of movements can be elicited in alert cats by stimulation confined to the caudate nucleus The cats were trained to perform an escape or avoidance jump over a hurdle separating the two compartments of a shuttle box (Laurson 1962 b) Inhibition was thus studied on a standard background of motor activity Using an implanted multielectrode for stimulation the threshold of arrest of hurdle crossing was lower in the internal capsule than in the caudate nucleus, the threshold increased with increasing separation from the internal capsule Hemidecortication on the side of stimulation abolished the inhibitory response Muscle action potentials evoked by stretch or by cortical stimulation in anesthetized and encephale isole cats were inhibited only when stimulating through electrode pairs situated in the internal capsule Thus there was no evidence of an inhibitory effect of caudate origin Immediate inhibition of movement can be elicited by stimulation of the thalamus (Hunter and Jasper 1949) or the amygdala (for references see Gloor 1960, p 1404) During this arrest response the animal remains standing on its feet as if it were frozen When stimulation is interrupted the animal resumes movement with no appreciable delay

In pigeons movements induced by strychninization of the optic lobes were inhibited by stimulation of the neostriatum the homologue of the caudate nucleus and putamen in mammals (Machne 1952)

2) There are many reports of inhibitory effects after stimulation of the caudate nucleus in cats at rates of 1–12/sec (Hess 1928 Akert and Andersson 1951, Akert 1952, Stevens Kim and McLean 1961, Buch

wald et al 1961 b) The evoked behavior was described variously as sleep an inactivation syndrome or a state of quietness and the latency was several minutes *Heath and Hodes* (1952) in a brief note described sleep in monkeys and in man induced by caudate stimulation An attempt to quantitate the inhibitory effect in cats was made by *Buchwald et al* (1961 b) caudate stimulation produced slowing and cessation of bar pressing *Knott Ingram and Correll* (1960) found no effect of caudate stimulation on bar pressing in cats

Experiments on delayed inhibitory effects are difficult to interpret because the response is non specific Sleep or sleep-like states may be elicited also by rhythmic low frequency stimulation of the basal forebrain areas (cat *Sterman and Clemente* 1962) the diencephalon (cat *Hess* 1928 1948) the brain stem reticular formation (cat *Favale Loeb Rossi and Sacco* 1961) the region of the solitary tract (cat *Magnes Moruzzi and Pompeiano* 1961) peripheral nerves (cat *Pompeiano and Sweet* 1962) and somatic receptors (dogs *Pavlov* 1928)

Delayed inhibitory effects have also been observed after chemical stimulation (1) To avoid stimulation of fibers crystalline choline esters were deposited in the caudate nucleus Quietness and drowsiness were induced after five or more minutes (*Stevens Kim and McLean* 1961) This experiment is difficult to interpret because small doses of acetyl choline have an excitatory larger doses a blocking effect (*Buchthal and Lindhard* 1937) (2) Four to seven days after alumina cream was injected into the caudate nucleus in cats (*Spiegel and Szekely* 1961) the animals lapsed into a catatonic state this could be prevented by extirpation of the amygdala not by removal of the sensorimotor cortex nor by lesions in the globus pallidus This was interpreted to indicate an inhibitory pathway from the caudate nucleus to the periphery via the amygdala There is no anatomical evidence for such connections An alternative explanation might be that catatonia was produced by stimulation of the nucleus ventralis anterior of the thalamus and that this nucleus in conjunction with the amygdala was responsible for the phenomenon This interpretation is supported by the long latency of the catatonic state and by the fact that arrest reactions resembling this state can be elicited by electrical stimulation of nucleus ventralis anterior of the thalamus (*Hunter and Jasper* 1949) the amygdala (*Kaada* 1951) and the internal capsule (*Laurson* 1962 b)

### 3 Effects on spinal reflexes

a) *Gamma efferents and root to root reflex response* Stimulation of the medial part of the caudate nucleus accelerated spontaneous discharge

from muscle spindles (*Granit and Kaada 1953*), whereas internal capsule stimulation was inhibitory. The cats were anesthetized with 10 mg Dial® and 20 mg chloralose per kg (*Eldred Granit and Merton 1953*). Stimulation of the posterior part of the globus pallidus in lightly nembutalized cats (dose not reported) enhanced stretch reflexes and movements evoked from cortex (*Peacock and Hodes 1951*). In agreement with this repetitive or single shock stimulation of all parts of the corpus striatum (and claustrum) increased the amplitude of the contralateral root to root reflex response in cats immobilized with Flaxedil®. Potentials produced in ventral roots by systemic application of strychnine were increased as well (*Segundo Migliaro and Roig 1958*). These authors investigated the possible role of spread of stimulating current to the internal capsule in two cats partially decorticated three weeks previously and found essentially the same as in intact animals. In deteriorated preparations stimulation occasionally produced a decrease in response amplitude as did small doses of barbiturates (2 mg/kg barpentel<sup>3)</sup>), larger doses (10 mg/kg) abolished spinal effects of stimulation of corpus striatum. These observations were confirmed by *Stern and Ward (1962)* who found the same effect of stimulation of globus pallidus and nucleus ventralis lateralis of the thalamus; the possible effect of spread of current to the internal capsule was not investigated. The spindle afferent discharge from extensors of the hind foot of nembutalized cats (30 mg/kg) was inhibited by stimulation of contralateral globus pallidus and nucleus ventralis lateralis of the contralateral thalamus (150/sec *Stern and Ward 1960*). In lightly nembutalized cats (15–25 mg/kg) spindle afferent discharges from both flexors and extensors were enhanced by stimulation of the contralateral globus pallidus, internal capsule, and caudate nucleus. In anesthesia of moderate depth (after an additional dose of 7 mg/kg) the discharge from flexors was still enhanced but in agreement with *Stern and Ward (1960)* the discharge from extensors was inhibited (*Shimazu Hongo and Kubota 1962*).

Contrary to the above results *Sasaki, Namikawa and Matsunaga (1960)* reported a decrease of the root to root reflex response and hyperpolarization of both flexor and extensor motoneurons elicited by stimulation of the caudate nucleus and globus pallidus. The cats were anesthetized 5 to 7 hours before the experiment with 25 mg/kg of Nembutal®. The stimulus consisted of brief trains of 0.05 to 0.10 msec rectangular pulses at a frequency of 5000 to 10000/sec.

In his book on the neurophysiology and neurochemistry of convulsion *Hayashi (1959)* mentions that extensor hypertonus, produced in dogs by damage to the grey substance around the aqueduct was abolished by

<sup>3)</sup> Sodium 5 ethyl 5 (1 methylbutyl) barbiturate

shocks from an induction coil or injection of nicotine in the caudate nucleus. Other details of the method are not given.

b) *Autonomic reflexes*. The galvanic skin response to stimulation of the central stump of a cut nerve was reported to be reduced during monopolar stimulation of the caudate nucleus (Wang and Brown 1956). The cats were decorticated at the beginning of the experiment but spread of current to the internal capsule was not excluded because time was not allowed for degeneration of fibers. The gastro-intestinal tract and the bladder in cats responded to stimulation of a number of structures at the base of the brain including the globus pallidus and putamen. The role of spread of current was not evaluated (Strom and Uvnas 1950). Autonomic responses attributed to stimulation of the caudate nucleus by Strom and Uvnas (1950), Akert and Andersson (1951), Wall, Gleebs and Fulton (1951), Buchwald and Ervin (1957), Wang (1960) and S. ekely Kirby and Spiegel (1961) are probably due to activation of area septalis (Laurson 1962 a).

Although stimulation confined to the corpus striatum thus may be without immediately observable autonomic effects, globus pallidus may have a function related to metabolism: cats with bilateral lesions in the globus pallidus become sluggish (Laurson 1962 c, 1963). They do not eat and hardly move the first four or five days after the operation. About two weeks after the lesions are made the cat's behavior is again normal without the apprehensiveness which some show before the operation. The slow recovery is not a non specific effect of the surgical intervention because cats with bilateral thalamic lesions behave normally two days after the operation. Similarly rats do not eat or drink after lesions in the pallido-fugal tracts (Morgare 1961) and caudate nucleus (Whitner and Orr 1962) and monkeys recover slowly after amygdala lesions (amygdala hangover, Weiskrantz, 1956).

#### SUMMARY

Lesions confined to the corpus striatum have no effect on motor activity in animals including primates. Lesions in the corpus striatum combined with lesions in the cortex or internal capsule produce spasticity, akinesia and tremor. Associated damage in the mesencephalic tegmentum may be responsible for the tremor.

Stimulation of the head of the caudate nucleus produced head turning and circling to the side opposite the side of stimulation. The cat looks as if it were searching something. Stereotyped contralateral flexion responses are elicited by stimulation through electrodes in the caudate nucleus by

spread of current to the internal capsule. The somatotopic organization assumed from the finding of foreleg responses or hindleg responses is in the internal capsule, not in the caudate nucleus.

Immediate inhibition of movements (arrest reaction) elicited by stimulation through electrodes in the caudate nucleus is also due to spread of current to the internal capsule. Delayed inhibitory effects (sleep sleep like states) have been evoked by stimulation of the caudate nucleus at low rates. Whether the response was due to spread of current to neighbouring structures has not been investigated. The response is non specific: it is elicited by stimulation of the diencephalon, brain stem, peripheral nerves and receptors.

In unanesthetized cats spinal root to root reflexes and spindle afferent discharges are enhanced by stimulation of the caudate nucleus, globus pallidus and nucleus ventralis anterior of thalamus. After moderate doses of nembutal, stimulation of the above regions inhibits root to root reflexes and afferent discharges from extensor muscles.

### Chapter 3

## HISTOLOGY

Lesions and stimulation in the different parts of corpus striatum indicate that a discrete function cannot be assigned to any individual nucleus. Normal function is the result of interactions within the corpus striatum and between it and other portions of the brain. The cells and fibers within the corpus striatum and the pathways that connect corpus striatum with other brain regions are considered in this chapter and the next.

### A. CELLS AND SYNAPSES

The following description is based on *Bielschowsky's* (1919) detailed study of the normal histology of the corpus striatum in man. The classical descriptions still provide most of our knowledge of the cytology of the corpus striatum. To my knowledge the corpus striatum has not been investigated by electronmicroscopy.

The caudate nucleus and putamen have the same structure with cells of two types.

1) Most cells are small (8–10  $\mu$ ) and polymorphic of Golgi type II; they are slightly larger in putamen than in the caudate nucleus (*Cajal* 1911). The axons are short with terminal arborizations close to the cell body and the numerous dendrites are short and thin. Nissl substance is absent in both cell bodies and dendrites.

2) The larger cells are either of Golgi type I with axons that make contact with neurones in other parts of the brain or of Golgi type II with axons forming terminal arborizations close to the cell body. In *Cajal's* drawing the diameter of the larger cells is about two times that of the small cells (*Cajal* 1911 fig. 325). The axons of the large type II cells arborize farther from their cell bodies than the axons of the small cells. Axon hillocks are small or absent. The strongly branched dendrites contain fascicles of neurofibrils and little or no Nissl substance. Nissl substance and inclusions of lipid pigment are scattered in the heavily staining cytoplasm of the cell body. The nucleus is often placed eccentrically. Cell bodies and dendrites are covered with one or more concentric layers of satellite cells. Other glia cells are rare (*Vogt and Vogt* 1920).



Most fibers in the caudate nucleus and putamen are unmyelinated they are arranged in a dense network around the cells and, as in the cortex, synaptic structures are not visible

*Globus pallidus* contains large, multipolar cells all alike, Golgi type I. They are 20–50  $\mu$  (Koelliker 1896), probably the giant cells (cellules géantes, étoilées) of up to 40–50  $\mu$  in diameter described by Cajal (1911). The cell bodies appear spindle shaped or triangular on sections. The axons look like the axons of pyramidal cells in the cortex and motoneurons in the spinal cord with a long axon hillock tapering gradually to the point where the myelin sheath begins. There is no evidence of axon collaterals inside the globus pallidus. In a section of globus pallidus the dendrites appear as small spindle shaped 'cells' without nuclei. Nissl substance is ample in the cell bodies and in the initial portions of the dendrites. The nucleus is situated in the middle of the cell body, it stains lightly and has a dense central nucleolus. Glial stains indicate that cell bodies and dendrites are covered with a sheath of a homogenous substance. Numerous glia cells are distributed evenly throughout the globus pallidus (Vogt and Vogt 1920).

Myelinated fibers are numerous and of larger caliber than in the caudate nucleus and putamen. Cell bodies and dendrites are covered with ring-shaped terminal boutons. One fiber often makes contact with the same cell through many terminal boutons.

## II EARLIER INVESTIGATIONS OF CONNECTIONS

Forel (1877) described the nuclear configurations of the upper brainstem (Hirnenregion) and found fibers ascending from the red nucleus to globus pallidus. Ferrier (1876) considered the corpus striatum a relay between the cortex and the brain stem. Gowers (1887) interpreted his experience with brains at autopsy to indicate that the corpus striatum had no connections with the cerebral cortex, he believed that cerebellum of the opposite side received fibers from and projected back to the corpus striatum. Connections between the corpus striatum and the thalamus were found by Edinger (1911). Projections from the caudate nucleus to nucleus niger were suggested by Holmes (1901) and confirmed by Edinger (1911). Cajal (1911) described axon collaterals to the corpus striatum of cortical efferents passing through the nucleus. Wilson (1914) in a histological study of monkey brains found no direct connections between the corpus striatum and cortex. He believed that the corpus striatum as the head ganglion of an independent motor system received impulses from the thalamus and projected to the periphery via the rubrospinal

tract *Wilson* suggested an influence via thalamus on the corticospinal system

Conclusions about fiber connections appeared abundantly in the clinicopathological literature on the extrapyramidal system but the difficulty of distinguishing between primary lesions and secondary degeneration makes such results uncertain. *Wilson's* finding that the corpus striatum has no direct connections with the cerebral cortex was generally confirmed (*Vogt and Vogt* 1919 1920 *Riese* 1924 *von Monakow* 1926 *Kodama* 1929). But the *Vogts* stressed that impulses could be exchanged between the cortex and corpus striatum via thalamus. Corpus striatum was believed to send impulses to the periphery via the interconnected nuclei of the extrapyramidal system.

The suppressor circuit area 4s → caudate nucleus → globus pallidus → thalamus → area 4 proposed by *Dusser de Barenne* and *McCulloch* (1938) inspired anatomists to reinvestigate connections between corpus striatum and cerebral cortex. The capsular axon collaterals of *Cajal* (1911) were confirmed (see p. 32) and a path from the globus pallidus to cortex via nucleus ventralis anterior and lateralis was described (see p. 34). The concept of an old motor system topped by the corpus striatum (*Wilson* 1924) was replaced by the concept of the suppressor circuit. This concept implied that the corpus striatum and cortex functioned as a unit.

In 1942 the connections of the corpus striatum were fully reviewed by *Papez*.

## C INVESTIGATIONS OF CONNECTIONS SINCE ABOUT 1940

### 1 *Fibers within the corpus striatum*

After lesions in the caudate nucleus or putamen in monkey and cat, degenerated myelin sheaths (*Ranson* *Ranson* and *Ranson* 1941 a *Mettler* 1945 b) and axons (*Johnson* and *Clemente* 1959 *Voneida* 1960 *Johnson* 1961 *Szabo* 1962) can be followed into globus pallidus. Lateral areas of the caudate nucleus are mainly connected to the lateral segment of globus pallidus and medial areas of the caudate nucleus are mainly connected to the medial segment of globus pallidus; both segments of globus pallidus receive fibers from all parts of putamen (*Szabo* 1962).

Globus pallidus does not project to the caudate nucleus or putamen (*Ranson* *Ranson* and *Ranson* 1941 a) the caudate nucleus does not project to putamen (*Voneida* 1960 *Johnson* 1961) and fibers from putamen to the caudate nucleus have not been reported.

Fibers from the medial to the lateral segment of the globus pallidus were described in Marchi material from monkey (*Ranson* *Ranson* and

Ranson 1941 a Laursen 1955) and in Glee-stained material from man (Martinez 1961) Fibers conducting from the lateral to the medial segment (Kodama 1929) were denied by the Ransons and have not been reported in studies using the Glee or Nauta staining methods for degenerated axons

## 2 Connections with the cerebral cortex

*Fibers from cortex to corpus striatum* Unmyelinated collaterals from descending fibers in the internal capsule (Cajal 1911) were confirmed by Glee (1944) using silver impregnation of degenerated fibers after cortical ablations In cat the primary motor areas, part of the somatosensory projection areas and strip areas 2s, 3s and 8s were removed In rabbit the cortical ablations were more extensive Descriptions of the putamen and globus pallidus were not included in Glee's report In monkeys degenerated axons occurred in the caudate nucleus after lesions in the posterior orbital gyrus Degenerated fibers were not found in putamen and globus pallidus (Wall Glee and Fulton 1951, Glee stain) Cortical projections to the corpus striatum have been found in Marchi studies In goat frontal dorsolateral cortex projected to the caudate nucleus, putamen and globus pallidus (Igarasi 1940) In monkey Glee (1945) described projections from area 6 to the globus pallidus and from area 4 to putamen In primates half of the axons from the cortex to corpus striatum came from frontal cortex and one fifth of those fibers from area 4 (Mettler 1943) In a later publication Mettler (1947) denied connections from area 4 to the corpus striatum but confirmed connections from area 6 to the caudate nucleus and globus pallidus and from area 4s and the caudal part of area 6 to the caudate nucleus, putamen and globus pallidus

*Fibers from corpus striatum to cortex* Three months after the frontal cortex of monkeys was removed the volume of the caudate nucleus was reduced This finding not reported in detail, was interpreted to indicate a well defined pathway from the caudate nucleus to neocortex (Mettler Grundfest and Hovde 1952 Harman Tankard Hovde and Mettler 1954 Tankard and Harman 1955) On the other hand degenerated caudate cortical axons were absent after lesions in the caudate nucleus (Voneida 1960) and Burandt French and Alert (1962) found no retrograde degeneration in the caudate nucleus of monkeys after bilateral removal of area 6 area 9 or all cortex

There is thus insufficient evidence of a direct striato-cortical pathway An indirect path via globus pallidus and nucleus ventralis anterior and lateralis of the thalamus is well documented in monkey and cat (Ranson

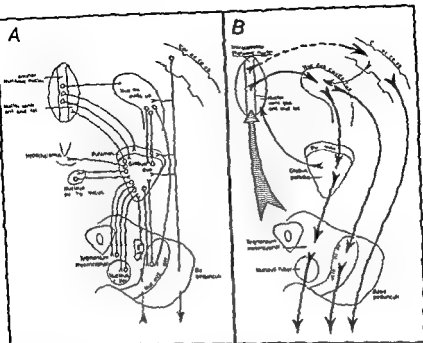


Fig 3

*A Connections of the corpus striatum* Open circles indicate cell bodies Lm, lemniscus medialis - *B Simplified diagram* indicating that sensory impulses relayed by the brain stem may via the intralaminar thalamic nuclei go through either or both of two arcs one involves the corpus striatum the other the cerebral cortex. The cortex projects directly to the caudate nucleus there are no direct connections from the corpus striatum to cortex. An indirect pathway from the globus pallidus to cortex is via nucleus ventralis anterior or lateralis of the thalamus - For simplicity the connections of the putamen are not indicated they are similar to those of the caudate nucleus.

Ranson and Ranson 1941 a b Papez 1942 Woodburne Crosby and McCotter 1946 Glees 1945 Hassler 1949 Johnson and Clemente 1959 Nauta and Mehler 1961)

The recent anatomical findings that direct connections from the corpus striatum to cerebral cortex are absent are in accordance with electrophysiological results (Laurson 1961 a b)

### 3 Connections with the thalamus

*Fibers from thalamus to corpus striatum* The intralaminar and midline groups of thalamic nuclei project to the corpus striatum. This was found in a number of species with different anatomical methods (Table 1) and was indicated by studies of pathological material from humans (Vogt and Vogt

Table 1

*Connections from the thalamus to corpus striatum*

	Rat		Rabbit	Cat		Monkey
	Nauta	Retrograde degeneration		Nauta	Marchi	
Centralis medialis paracentralis and centralis lateralis to caudate nucleus		Powell & Cowan (1954)  (no description of spatial organi- zation)	Droogleever Fortuyn & Stefens (1951) Stefens & Droogleever Fortuyn (1953) Cowan & Powell (1955)	Nauta & Whitlock (1954)		Powell & Cowan (1956)
Centrum medianum and  parafascicularis to putamen	Hiddema & Droogleever Fortuyn (1960)		Droogleever Fortuyn & Stefens (1951)  Stefens & Droogleever Fortuyn (1953) Cowan & Powell (1955)	Nauta & Whitlock (1954)  Johnson (1961)	Burgi & Bucher (1960)  (also to the caudate nucleus)	Metzler (1947) Powell & Cowan (1956)
Centrum medianum to globus pallidus				Nauta & Mehler (1961) Johnson (1961)	Burgi & Bucher (1960)	

1941 *Freeman and Watts* 1947 *McLardy* 1948 *Hassler* 1949 *Simma* 1951) The fibers from midline and intralaminar nuclei fan out in an orderly fashion neighbouring points in the thalamus from midline through intralaminar nuclei send fibers to neighbouring points in structures extending from infralimbic cortex through nucleus accumbens fundus of the caudate nucleus head of the caudate nucleus putamen and globus pallidus The pattern is clearest in rodents (*Stefens and Droogleever Fortuyn* 1953) because their internal capsule is relatively small With development from rat to monkey the midline nuclei with their infralimbic connections decrease in relative volume and the nuclei centrum medianum and parafascicularis increase This phylogenetic shift appears in the corpus striatum as the increased relative size of the putamen (*Harman and Carpenter* 1950) and globus pallidus (*von Bonin and Shariff* 1951) in primates

The anatomical basis of the diffuse electrocortical effects elicited from the intralaminar nuclei (*Morison Dempsey and Morison* 1941) is unknown the arousal not the recruiting response is blocked by mesencephalic transection (*Schlag and Chaillet* 1963) Direct cortical projections from the intralaminar nuclei could not be demonstrated with the Nauta method in cats (*Nauta and Whitlock* 1954) and rats (*Hiddema and Droogleever Fortuyn* 1960) the Marchi method in cats (*LeGros Clark and Boggon* 1933) or retrograde degeneration in cats (*LeGros Clark and Boggon* 1933) rats (*Rose and Woolsey* 1949) rabbits (*Stefens and Droogleever Fortuyn* 1955) and monkeys (*Powell and Cowan* 1956)

Only *Nashold Hanbery and Olsenski* (1955) interpreted retrograde cell changes in the thalamus of cats and monkeys to indicate cortical projections from the intralaminar nuclei whether projections to the corpus striatum were absent or consisted of collaterals from thalamo-cortical fibers could not be determined

In short the midline and intralaminar thalamic nuclei project to the corpus striatum Whether these thalamic nuclei project directly to the cortex is unsettled

*Fibers from corpus striatum to thalamus* Fibers from the globus pallidus can be traced through subthalamic regions  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  as a hook shaped bundle ending in the nucleus ventralis anterior and lateralis of the thalamus (for references see p 34) In addition *Nauta and Mehler* (1961) found fibers ending in the centrum medianum in both cat and monkey

The caudate nucleus and putamen project to the thalamus indirectly via the globus pallidus (see p 33)

Direct fibers from the caudate nucleus to thalamus were reported in Nauta stained material from monkey (*Schulman and Auer* 1957) but were

Table 1  
Connections from the thalamus to corpus striatum

	Rat		Rabbit	Cat		Monkey
	Nauta	Retrograde degeneration		Nauta	Marchi	
Centralis medialis		Powell & Cowan (1954)	Droogleever Fortuyn & Stefens (1951) Stefens & Droogleever Fortuyn (1953) Cowan & Powell (1955)	Nauta & Whitlock (1954)		Powell & Cowan (1956)
paracentralis and						
centralis lateralis to caudate nucleus		(no description of spatial organization)				
Centrum medianum and	Hiddema & Droogleever Fortuyn (1960)		Droogleever Fortuyn & Stefens (1951)  Stefens & Droogleever Fortuyn (1953) Cowan & Powell (1955)	Nauta & Whitlock (1954)  Johnson (1961)	Burgi & Bucher (1960)  (also to the caudate nucleus)	Mettler (1947) Powell & Cowan (1956)
parafascicularis to putamen						
Centrum medianum to globus pallidus				Nauta & Mehler (1961) Johnson (1961)	Burgi & Bucher (1960)	

terial from man and monkey (Papez 1942 Verhaart 1950 1952) and after lesions in putamen in monkeys (Nauta and Mehler 1961 S.abo 1962) but were denied in other reports (monkey Ranson Ranson and Ranson 1941 a cat Johnson and Clemente 1959)

In summary the caudate nucleus and globus pallidus send unmyelinated fibers to the zona reticulata of nucleus niger Direct fibers from the putamen to nucleus niger are controversial

*Fibers from nucleus niger to corpus striatum* Fibers from the nucleus niger to globus pallidus described in normal material (Papez 1942) were confirmed in Marchi preparations from cat and monkey (Kimmel 1942 Mettler 1945 b Ranson and Ranson 1941) The origin of the fibers appeared to be the zona compacta (Kimmel 1942 Mettler 1945 b) fibers from the lateral part of zona reticulata went to putamen and fibers from the medial part of zona reticulata went to the caudate nucleus (Mettler 1945 b) Rosegay (1944) on the other hand found no evidence of nigropallidal fibers He interpreted his findings as indicating a nigrocaudate connection because of retrograde degeneration found in the nucleus niger after caudate lesions It is difficult however to distinguish between trans synaptic and retrograde degeneration (Jacob 1957) In summary the presence of nigropallidal connections is well documented The existence of fibers from the nucleus niger to putamen and to caudate nucleus requires confirmation

## 6 Connections with the subthalamus

*Nucleus subthalamicus* The fasciculus subthalamicus contains fibers which conduct from the globus pallidus to nucleus subthalamicus (Ranson Ranson and Ranson 1941 a Glees 1945 Mettler 1945 b Woodburne Crosby and McCotter 1946 Whittier and Mettler 1949 Verhaart 1950 1952 Laursen 1955 Johnson and Clemente 1959 Nauta and Mehler 1961) as well as fibers which conduct from nucleus subthalamicus to globus pallidus (Glees and Wall 1946 Whittier and Mettler 1949)

*Zona incerta* Pallido-incertal fibers (Kodama 1929) were confirmed after lesions in the globus pallidus in cat and monkey (Woodburne Crosby and McCotter 1946 Laursen 1955 Johnson and Clemente 1959)

## 7 Connections with the mesencephalic tegmentum including the red nucleus

*Fibers from corpus striatum to mesencephalon* In Marchi preparations from monkey Ranson and Ranson (1941) found no evidence of pallidal efferents beyond the mesencephalon Investigation of the normal brain



not confirmed in cat and monkey (Voneida 1960, Johnson 1961, Nauta and Mehler 1961, Szabo 1962) In rat some evidence was found of fibers from putamen to nuclei parafascicularis and reticularis (Hiddema and Droogleever Fortuyn 1960) Direct fibers from the caudate nucleus or putamen to thalamus via globus pallidus are unlikely because fibers of the unmyelinated type characteristic of the caudate nucleus and putamen were not found in fields of Forel H and H<sub>1</sub> (Verhaart 1950)

#### 4 Connections with the hypothalamus

Such connections were described in older studies (for references see Papez 1942) A well defined pallido-hypothalamic tract can be traced to the ventromedial nucleus of the ipsilateral hypothalamus (Vidal 1940, Ranson Ranson and Ranson 1941 a, Glees 1944, 1945, Mettler 1945 b, Laur sen 1955, Johnson and Clemente 1959) Furthermore efferent fibers from the globus pallidus have been traced to the supraoptic nucleus (Mettler 1945 b) the periventricular grey substance (Woodburne Crosby and McCotter 1946) and the perifornical region (Johnson and Clemente 1959) The origin of the tract to hypothalamus was the globus pallidus Glees (1944) in addition found fibers which had their origin in the contralateral putamen This 'striohypothalamic tract' crossed the midline as a part of Gansers commissure

#### 5 Connections with the nucleus niger

The polarity and origin of fibers which connect the corpus striatum with the nucleus niger (the comb bundle) has been debated Studies of fiber degeneration after experimental lesions indicate that fibers pass between the two structures in both directions

*Fibers from corpus striatum to nucleus niger* In Nauta stained material from cat and monkey fibers from the caudate nucleus or putamen traversed the internal capsule and basis pedunculi to end in the zona reticulata of the nucleus niger (Voneida 1960 Johnson 1961 Nauta and Mehler 1961 Szabo 1962) Fibers from the globus pallidus to zona reticulata of nucleus niger (for references see Papez 1942) were denied on the basis of Marchi material from monkey (Ranson Ranson and Ranson 1941 a) and in normal material (Verhaart 1950) but pallidonigral connections were confirmed in material from cat stained with the Nauta method (Johnson and Clemente 1959 Nauta and Mehler 1961) Direct fibers from the putamen to nucleus niger were described in normal ma

exist to structures in the rhombencephalon and in the spinal cord. The zona incerta, nucleus niger, tegmentum of the midbrain and inferior olivary nucleus (Papez, 1942; Woodburne, Crosby and McCotter, 1946) as well as nucleus reticularis, tegmenti ventralis and nucleus pretectalis of Zieher (Ogawa, 1952) were proposed as relays from the corpus striatum to cerebellum.

*Fibers from the lower brain stem to corpus striatum.* Fibers from the medial lemniscus to the globus pallidus (Spitzer and Karplus, 1907) were confirmed by Glees (1944). The fibers crossed the midline in the ventral part of Gansers commissure. In pathological material Hassler (1949) found fibers ascending to the globus pallidus from medial lemniscus, spinothalamic tracts and interstitial nucleus.

### SUMMARY

The main source of fibers to the corpus striatum is the intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus. These fibers transmit impulses from the sensory relay nuclei of the thalamus and from the reticular formation of mesencephalon and rhombencephalon. Other fibers to the corpus striatum arise in the cerebral cortex and in the mesencephalon, particularly in nucleus niger.

Corpus striatum sends fibers to nucleus ventralis anterior and lateralis and possibly to centrum medianum of the thalamus. Furthermore the corpus striatum projects to hypothalamus, nucleus subthalamicus, zona incerta, nucleus niger, nucleus ruber and the midbrain tegmentum. By way of these connections the corpus striatum indirectly projects to all structures of mesencephalon and rhombencephalon and to the spinal cord. The corpus striatum and cerebral cortex form two internuncial arcs between the intralaminar nuclear group of thalamus and the descending tracts of the brain stem (fig. 3). The cortex and corpus striatum may be looked upon as a) internuncial systems coordinating the activity of the thalamic nuclei and b) the only significant pathways from the thalamus to the efferent system (McCulloch, 1944).

of a Sumatra gibbon disclosed no pallidal fibers to the red nucleus (*Verhaart* 1950 1952) In a study of normal material and some Marchi preparations from monkey *Woodburne Crosby and McCotter* (1946) found fibers from the corpus striatum to the midbrain tegmentum *Laur sen* (1955) in Marchi material from monkey traced fibers from the fasciculus lenticularis to the dorsomedial part of the red nucleus and to the tegmentum dorsal to the red nucleus (nucleus mesencephalicus profundus pars dorsalis) These mesencephalic connections were confirmed in Marchi (*Burgi and Bucher* 1960) and Nauta stained cats brains (*Johnson and Clemente* 1959) In addition terminal degeneration occurred in the nucleus interstitialis of the medial longitudinal fasciculus the nucleus of Darkschewitsch and in other parts of the periventricular grey substance (*Johnson and Clemente* 1959)

In two human brains stained with the Gles silver technique 4 and 17 days after pallidectomy terminal degeneration was found in the red nucleus and adjacent tegmentum (*Martinez* 1961)

In summary studies using the Marchi the Nauta and the Gles techniques indicate direct pallidal efferents to the mesencephalon In addition indirect routes are available via synapses in the field H of Forel zona incerta, nucleus subthalamicus and nucleus niger (see p 38)

*Fibers from mesencephalon to corpus striatum* Fibers ascending from the red nucleus to globus pallidus were described in Marchi material from monkey (*Carpenter* 1956) and in Nauta stained material from cat (*Johnson and Clemente* 1959, *Hinman and Carpenter* 1959) The connection arose from both rostral and caudal halves of the red nucleus and was mainly uncrossed (*Carpenter* 1956) In addition direct projections to the corpus striatum originated in the rostral midbrain tegmentum near the red nucleus (*Nauta and Kuypers* 1958 *Burgi and Bucher* 1960) In Golgi stained material from young mice some reticulothalamic axons went beyond the reticular nucleus of the thalamus, they appeared to continue into corpus striatum (*Scheibel and Scheibel* 1958)

## 8 Connections with the brain stem below mesencephalon

*Fibers from corpus striatum to the lower brain stem* Lesions in the caudate nucleus and globus pallidus produced terminal degeneration in the inferior olive (*Gles and Nauta* 1956, *Walberg* 1956) That all lesions extended into the internal capsule was believed not to invalidate the results because the author assumed that cortex and corpus striatum project to separate regions of the inferior olive Other direct fibers to the lower brain stem (*Morgan* 1927) have not been confirmed Indirect routes

exist to structures in the rhombencephalon and in the spinal cord. The zona incerta, nucleus niger, tegmentum of the midbrain and inferior olivary nucleus (Papez, 1942; Woodburne, Crosby and McCotter, 1946) as well as nucleus reticularis tegmenti ventralis and nucleus precursorius of Ziehen (Ogawa, 1952) were proposed as relays from the corpus striatum to cerebellum.

*Fibers from the lower brain stem to corpus striatum.* Fibers from the medial lemniscus to the globus pallidus (Spitzer and Karplus, 1907) were confirmed by Clees (1944). The fibers crossed the midline in the ventral part of Ganser's commissure. In pathological material Hassler (1949) found fibers ascending to the globus pallidus from medial lemniscus, spinothalamic tracts and interstitial nucleus.

#### SUMMARY

The main source of fibers to the corpus striatum is the intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus. These fibers transmit impulses from the sensory relay nuclei of the thalamus and from the reticular formation of mesencephalon and rhombencephalon. Other fibers to the corpus striatum arise in the cerebral cortex and in the mesencephalon, particularly in nucleus niger.

Corpus striatum sends fibers to nucleus ventralis anterior and lateralis and possibly to centrum medianum of the thalamus. Furthermore the corpus striatum projects to hypothalamus, nucleus subthalamicus, zona incerta, nucleus niger, nucleus ruber and the midbrain tegmentum. By way of these connections the corpus striatum indirectly projects to all structures of mesencephalon and rhombencephalon and to the spinal cord. The corpus striatum and cerebral cortex form two internuncial arcs between the intralaminar nuclear group of thalamus and the descending tracts of the brain stem (fig. 3). The cortex and corpus striatum may be looked upon as a) internuncial systems coordinating the activity of the thalamic nuclei and b) the only significant pathways from the thalamus to the efferent system (McCulloch, 1944).

## Chapter 4

# ELECTRICAL SIGNS OF CONNECTIONS BETWEEN THE CORPUS STRIATUM AND OTHER PARTS OF THE BRAIN

### A STIMULATION OF CORPUS STRIATUM

#### 1 *Effect on spontaneous cortical activity (electrocortical activation)*

Repetitive stimulation of the caudate nucleus has been reported to decrease the amplitude and to increase the frequency of the electrocortico-gram (Morison Dempsey and Morison 1941, Gerebtzoff 1941, Ferro Milone Lusso and Terzuolo 1953 ■ b, Stoupe! and Terzuolo 1954, Shimamoto and Verzeano 1954, Tokizane Kawakami and Gellhorn 1957, Heuser et al 1961) Starzl Taylor and Magoun (1951) in a study of the diencephalic extension of the reticular activating system stated that the internal capsule rather than the basal ganglia appeared to be the excitable focus Demetrescu and Demetrescu (1960) claimed that electrocortical activation elicited from the caudate nucleus was due to spread of current to the thalamus

I have used stimulation through the lead pairs of the 14 lead electrode (100-200/sec) to localize the regions in and around the caudate nucleus responsible for electrocortical arousal Stimulation of the reticular nucleus of the thalamus and of the internal capsule evoked arousal arousal was absent when the caudate nucleus was stimulated (Fig 4) The failure to find electrocortical arousal during stimulation of the head of the caudate nucleus was not due to damage produced in it by the multilead electrode 1) electrocortical arousal was elicited from the thalamus where the damage produced by the electrode was the same as in the caudate nucleus 2) The absence of electrocortical arousal was confirmed by stimulation between a thin needle electrode and a distant indifferent electrode The needle inflicted a minimum of damage due to the small volume of its pointed tip Stimulation of the reticular nucleus of the thalamus with the same electrodes elicited electrocortical arousal Stimulation in the center of the head of the caudate nucleus at the same strength and at a strength up to three times the threshold found in the thalamus did not evoke electrocortical arousal

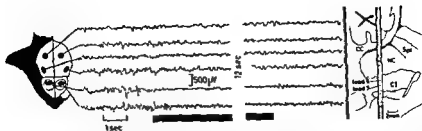


Fig 4

*Electrocortical arousal produced by stimulation of the right internal capsule through the multielectrode (electrode pair 8-9 1 msec pulses at 200 sec indicated by black line) - An identical response was elicited by stimulation through the electrode pair 7-8. Stimulation through other adjacent electrode pairs did not elicit electrocortical arousal. Cat, encephale isole. Extradural unipolar recording. Recording sites shown to the left. Stimulation sites to the right. The strength of stimulation was 2.5 times the threshold for ipsilateral pericruciate arousal. The flattening outlasted the stimulus about 5 sec and was most pronounced in the ipsilateral pericruciate region, slightly less pronounced in the contralateral pericruciate region and just detectable in the other lead. - CC Corpus callosum, CI Capsula interna, NC Nucleus caudatus, Spt Area septalis (Laurson 1961b).*

Thus electrocortical activation evoked from the caudate nucleus may be ascribed to spread of current from the commonly used stimulating electrodes. There is no evidence to support the view expressed by Jung and Hassler (1960) that the caudate nucleus is a part of or closely related to the ascending reticular activating system.

After stimulation of the caudate nucleus (120/sec) the electrical activity recorded from the hippocampus was increased in amplitude and the predominant frequency shifted from 2.5 to 4/sec (Tokizane, Kawakami and Gellhorn 1959). The possible role of spread of current to the internal capsule or thalamus was not investigated. During arousal in neocortex associated with behavioral alertness, waves of high amplitude can be recorded from the hippocampus and the predominant frequency shifts from 3-6/sec to 5-7/sec (Green and Arduini 1954).

In monkeys observed for two years, unilateral and bilateral lesions in the caudate nucleus, in putamen or in both produced hypersynchrony of brain waves: bursts of 5-10/sec waves of large amplitude appeared in all leads and 15-20/sec activity became rare or disappeared. When ablation of areas 4 or 6 was added to the lesions in corpus striatum, the cortical electrical changes were more pronounced (Kennard and Nims 1942).

## 2 Gross responses in the cerebral cortex

The effect of electrical stimulation of the caudate nucleus depends on the frequency of stimulation.

■ *Short latency responses* In cats single shocks are reported to elicit cortical responses of short latency (*Jung and Tonnes 1950 Wieck et al 1960*), interpreted to indicate transmission to the cortex by a direct pathway (*Shimamoto and Verzeano 1954, Purpura Hausepian and Grundfest 1958*) *Purpura et al* believed that the stimulating current did not spread to the internal capsule because no potential change was recorded in the medullary pyramid. However, the threshold of cortical afferents in the internal capsule may be lower than that of efferents. *StoupeI and Terzuolo (1954)* showed that the threshold of the short latency cortical responses was lower in the internal capsule than in the caudate nucleus and this indicates activation of cortical afferents in the internal capsule (*StoupeI and Terzuolo 1954*). However these workers used thyatron generated stimuli and the thresholds were given in arbitrary units. Therefore the observed differences in threshold may have been due to differences in impedance even with the same electrode inserted successively in the caudate nucleus and internal capsule.

To exclude this possible source of error I have measured both stimulating current and stimulating voltage. Threshold currents were calculated from the voltage drop over a ten ohm resistor in series with the stimulating leads and recorded on one beam of a two beam oscilloscope. The voltage was displayed on the other beam. To reduce artefact, the floating output of the stimulator was isolated from the amplifier used to measure threshold currents by a double screened transformer (*Buchthal, Guld and Rosenfalck 1955, Guld 1961 Fig 5*)<sup>4</sup>). With one msec rectangular pulses the impedance ( $\left|\frac{V}{I}\right|$ ) of adjacent lead pairs of the electrode was 20–30 kohms, with no systematic difference between the caudate nucleus and internal capsule. In this way *StoupeI and Terzuolo's* result was confirmed that the threshold of short latency cortical responses was higher in the caudate nucleus than in the internal capsule (Fig s 6–7). The threshold in the internal capsule was as low as 0.1 mA. In the caudate nucleus it was up to 20 times higher. Similarly a larger cortical response was evoked from the internal capsule and thalamus than from the caudate nucleus (*Laursen 1961 a*). The complex potentials recorded from the cortex after caudate stimulation by *Purpura Hausepian and Grundfest (1958)* outlasted the cortical response to stimulation of the internal capsule. Spread of the stimulus to thalamus or corpus callosum may explain this finding.

<sup>4</sup>) The isolation transformer is not necessary if the stimulating current is measured with a difference amplifier with high common mode rejection at the stimulating voltage. Conventional difference amplifiers however do not sufficiently reject more than one volt.

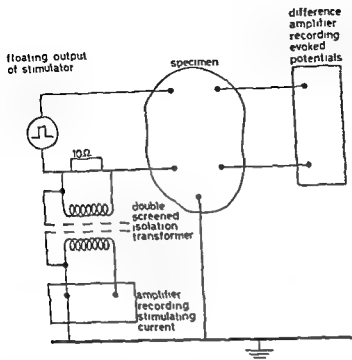


Fig 5

*Recording of evoked potentials with measurement of stimulating current and voltage*  
To reduce artefact the output of the stimulator is made to float with respect to ground (Guld 1961) The stimulating current is measured via a double screened transformer The stimulating voltage is indicated on the dial of the stimulator

The results of Stoupe and Terzuolo (1954) and Laursen (1961 a) indicate that stimulation confined to the caudate nucleus does not evoke a cortical response. This is in agreement with recent anatomical evidence that there are no direct caudate-cortical fibers (Voneida 1960, Burandt, French and Akert 1962) and with the absence of spikes in recordings from the cortex after injection of strychnine into the caudate nucleus (Dusser de Barenne and McCulloch 1938, Dusser de Barenne, Garol and McCulloch 1942, Garol and McCulloch 1944).

In a recent note Goldring et al (1963) compared caudate stimulation in cat and monkey. Short latency responses were evoked in the cortex of cats but were absent in monkeys. In monkeys thalamocortical fibers to the sensorimotor cortex lie more caudally than in cats and at a greater distance from the caudate nucleus. Therefore the authors attributed the results in cats to spread of current to the internal capsule. This confirms the findings of Stoupe and Terzuolo (1954) and Laursen (1961 a).

Stimulation of the caudate nucleus may evoke a potential at the site



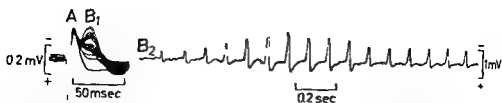


Fig 6

*Cortical responses to stimulation in the region of the caudate nucleus* (cat chloralose anesthesia 80 mg/kg) – Fifteen superimposed traces of the short latency response (A) and recruiting response (B<sub>1</sub>) elicited in ipsilateral anterior sigmoid gyrus. Stimulation through an electrode pair in the lateral part of the caudate nucleus (Laursen 1961 a). The thresholds indicate that both responses are elicited by spread of current to the internal capsule (Fig 7). A continuously recorded recruiting response (B<sub>2</sub>) elicited from the thalamus is shown for comparison.

of the stimulating electrodes (p. 54) and this potential may be recorded from the perisigmoid cortex with a distant electrode used as reference (Laursen 1961 a).

*b. Evoked spindles and recruiting responses* In a recruiting response (Fig 6) each potential is preceded by a stimulus (1–15/sec) whereas in a “spindle response” the whole series of potentials is evoked by a single shock. The following findings indicate that recruiting responses and evoked or “spontaneous spindles” have their origin in the same functional system in the brain (Morison, Dempsey and Morison 1941; Morison and Dempsey 1942).

- 1) Both recruiting responses and spindles are elicited from intralaminar thalamic nuclei
- 2) Both can be recorded from widespread cortical areas
- 3) Individual potentials in a recruiting series are similar to individual potentials of a spindle with a large negative and a small positive phase
- 4) Waxing and waning of recruiting responses is similar to the smooth increase and decrease in the amplitude of a spindle
- 5) Phase reversal of recruiting responses and of spindles often occurs at the same depth in the cortex (Li, Cullen and Jasper 1956)

Many workers have reported that stimulation of the caudate nucleus evokes cortical recruiting responses (Stoupe and Terzuolo 1954; Umbach 1959; Demetrescu and Demetrescu 1960) and spindles (Jung and Tonies 1950; Shimamoto and Verzeano 1954; Stoupe and Terzuolo 1954; Tokizane, Kawakami and Gellhorn 1957; Umbach 1959; Wieck et al 1960; Demetrescu and Demetrescu 1960; Buchwald et al 1961 a). Umbach (1959) used stimulating currents of 2.5–25 mA. In my experiments with the multielectrode the threshold of cortical recruiting responses was low (0.04–0.1 mA) when elicited from the internal capsule and 10–20 times higher when elicited from the head of the caudate nucleus (Fig 7). Similarly cortical recruiting responses were larger when elicited by stimulation through electrode pairs in the internal capsule and thalamus.

(Laurson 1961 a) than when elicited through electrode pairs in the caudate nucleus. Thus recruiting responses too are elicited by spread of current to the internal capsule rather than by stimulation of the caudate nucleus.

Heuser et al (1961) and Buchwald et al (1961 b) assumed that afferent impulses upon reaching the thalamus pass to the caudate nucleus and back to thalamus before they proceed to cortex (caudate loop). This hypothesis is based on the assumption that activation of the caudate nucleus may evoke cortical spindles via thalamus. My attempts to determine the true site from which cortical spindles are triggered when stimuli are applied through an electrode in the caudate nucleus have not been successful. Even in Nembutal® induced sleep the threshold of spindles varied so much that thresholds to stimulation in the caudate nucleus and in adjacent structures could not be compared. Tokiane Kanakami and Gellhorn (1957) and Buchwald et al (1961 d) did not have this difficulty in awake paralyzed cats (Intocostin® Flaxedil®).

After lesions in nucleus ventralis anterior of the thalamus cortical spindle responses could not be evoked from the caudate nucleus (Shimamoto and Verelano 1954, Buchwald et al 1961 d). To the authors this finding indicated a pathway from caudate nucleus to cortex via nucleus ventralis anterior of the thalamus. An alternative explanation is that cortical spindles were elicited by spread of current from the caudate nucleus to nucleus ventralis anterior. Cortical spindles were abolished after a metal hook had been pulled between the head of the caudate nucleus and the thalamus (Heuser et al 1961) and this too was interpreted to indicate a pathway from the caudate nucleus to cortex via thalamus. In my opinion the hook may have injured those projections which take a rostral course from nucleus ventralis anterior through the internal capsule to cortex (Nashold, Hanbery and Olszewski 1955).

In monkeys caudate stimulation did not evoke cortical recruiting responses (Goldring et al 1963). For the interpretation of this result see p 45.

After injection of physostigmine into the caudate nucleus stimulation of this nucleus did not elicit cortical spindle responses but generalized convulsions (Rakic, Buchwald and Wyers 1962). This experiment is difficult to interpret because the diffusion of physostigmine from the site of injection cannot be predicted and because small doses of acetylcholine have an excitatory effect, larger doses a blocking effect (Buchthal and Lindhard 1937).

Lesions in the globus pallidus did not abolish cortical recruiting re-

<sup>9</sup>) Cortical recruiting responses were evoked by stimulation through an electrode situated in the caudate nucleus in man. Spindle responses were absent. Histological verification was not, of course possible (Häasepää and Purpura 1963 p 76).

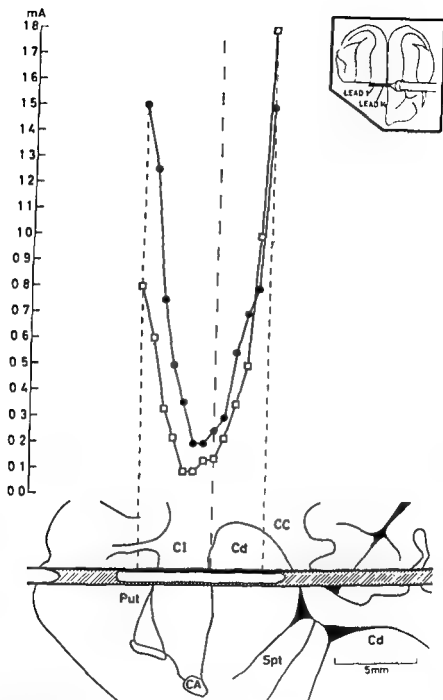
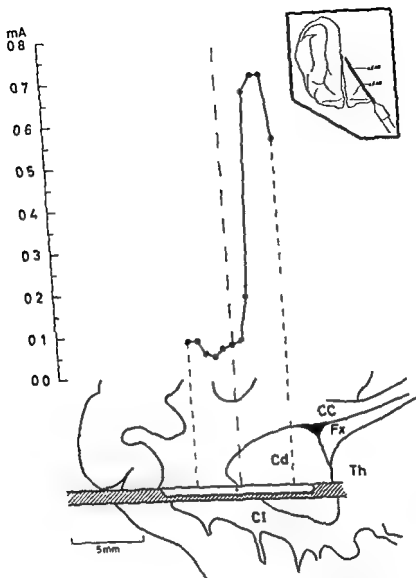


Fig 7

Thresholds of cortical responses to stimulation of the caudate nucleus and internal capsule (Cat Nembutal @ 40 mg/kg) - Stimulation through different adjacent electrode pairs of a multielectrode (1 msec pulses at 7/sec) elicited a short latency response (Fig 6 A) and a recruiting response (Fig 6 B<sub>1</sub>) in the ipsilateral anterior



sigmoid gyrus. The thresholds (in mA s) of the short latency response (open squares) and of the recruiting response (filled circles) were about 20 times higher in the middle of the caudate nucleus (Cd) than in the internal capsule (CI). The short latency response was elicited by excitation of the specific the recruiting response by excitation of the unspecific cortical afferents in the internal capsule. - A and B represent brains with different planes of insertion of the multi-electrode (see inset). - CC Corpus callosum, Fx Fornix, Put Putamen, Spt Area septalis, Th Thalamus.

sponses elicited by stimulation of the thalamus (Szekely 1957) This result is to be expected (see p 37)

### 3 Facilitation and inhibition of cortical responses

Several workers have stimulated the caudate nucleus immediately before or together with another region Depending on the experimental conditions caudate stimulation increases or decreases evoked potentials in the cerebral cortex of cats

a A conditioning shock to the caudate nucleus in alert animals increased the amplitude of the cortical response to a flash of light or to electrical stimulation along the visual pathway when the interval between the stimuli was 50 to 200 msec Nembutal® (6 mg/kg) or chloralose (50 mg/kg) abolished the effect (Buchwald et al 1962, Fox and O'Brien 1962), at intervals of 20 to 50 msec the amplitude of the cortical response to a flash of light or a thalamic stimulus was decreased (centrum medianum, Fox and O'Brien 1962)

b In *cerveau isole* electrocortical activation elicited by stimulation of nucleus ventralis anterior of thalamus was prevented or abbreviated by caudate stimulation of low intensity (100/sec) Caudate stimulation reduced cortical responses to stimulation of thalamic sensory relay nuclei

c In barbiturate anesthesia cortical responses increased during the first one to three seconds of caudate stimulation then decreased After transection of the mesencephalon evoked cortical responses were decreased in the beginning of caudate stimulation as well (Demetrescu and Demetrescu 1960 1961, 1962) In chloralose anesthesia stimulation of the corpus striatum internal capsule and corpus callosum reduced cortical responses to stimulation of the contralateral foreleg, the threshold of this effect was lower in the internal capsule than in the caudate nucleus (Fig 8, Krauthamer and Albe Fessard 1961)

In brief, evoked cortical responses were increased by caudate stimulation in intact alert animals in anesthetized animals and after transection of the mesencephalon caudate stimulation reduced evoked cortical responses

These results have been interpreted to indicate a facilitatory or an inhibitory action of the caudate nucleus on neurons in the cortex However there is evidence that the amplitude of evoked cortical potentials is not a measure of diffuse cortical facilitation or inhibition Electrocortical arousal increases the cortical response to stimulation of thalamic sensory relay nuclei and decreases the cortical response to stimulation of receptors (Gauthier Parma and Zanchetti 1956 Dumont and Dell 1958, Bremer and Stoupe 1959)

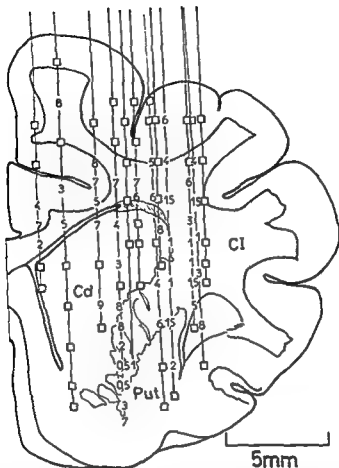


Fig 8

*Thresholds of inhibition of cortical responses elicited by sensory stimulation (Krauthamer and Albe Fessard 1961 cats anesthetized with chloralose) - Potentials evoked in the posterior suprasylvian gyrus by stimulation of a contralateral leg were diminished by subcortical trains of stimuli (0.5 msec pulses at 200 sec for 25 msec). The numbers (threshold in volts) or an open square (ineffective site or a threshold of more than 8 volts) indicate sites of stimulation. Single shocks did not diminish the cortical response. Cd Nucleus caudatus CI Internal capsule Put Putamen*

Krauthamer and Albe Fessard (1961) found lower thresholds of cortical inhibition in the internal capsule than in the caudate nucleus. This is consistent with my interpretation that the inhibition was elicited by spread of current to specific or non specific cortical afferents in the internal capsule.

#### 4 Inhibition of electrical seizure activity

Stimulation of the caudate nucleus with single shocks of moderate intensity reduced the frequency of continuous seizure discharges in the cortex (Umbach 1959), high intensity shocks and repetitive stimulation were less effective. This was believed to be due either to blocking of the caudate nucleus or activation of adjacent structures by current spread. Even the weakest stimulating currents used in these experiments (2.5 mA) are sufficient to activate adjacent structures.

#### 5 Single unit responses in the cerebral cortex

Single shocks and repetitive stimulation (3–100/sec) of the caudate nucleus inhibited the spontaneous activity of 97 out of 101 single units in the motor cortex of cats prepared as encephale isole. Inhibition often outlasted stimulation and was elicited from the caudate nuclei of both sides. Only 10 out of 78 units discharged in response to stimulation of the ipsilateral caudate nucleus; none responded to contralateral stimulation. Signs of spread of stimulating current to the internal capsule, such as a short latency gross potential in cortex or evoked activity in the medullary pyramids, were absent (Spehlman, Creutzfeldt and Jung 1960). Single units in the visual cortex were inhibited by single shocks to the caudate nucleus but discharged by 50 or 100/sec stimulation (Lehmann, Kouklou and Spehlmann 1962). The intracellularly recorded spontaneous action potentials of 54 cortical interneurons and Betz cells were inhibited by caudate stimuli separated more than 300 msec; this was accompanied by hyperpolarization of the cells (Klee and Lux 1962). The possibility of spread of current to the thalamus was not considered in these studies.

#### 6 Effects on subcortical activity

A multitude of responses have been described by different workers. Stimulation by single shocks with an electrode in the thalamus of cats (Nembutal® Shimamoto and Verzeano 1954; encephale isole Umbach 1959; Flaxedil® Buchwald et al 1961 d). With stimulation at 4–8/sec recruiting responses were observed in intralaminar thalamic nuclei (Umbach 1959) and Fernentladungen (possibly recruiting responses) in medial thalamus and cornu Ammonis (Pernocton® or Dial® Jung and Tonnes 1950). In the entopeduncular nucleus, subthalamic nucleus, substantia nigra and midbrain, biphasic waves appeared after a latency of about 6 msec (Shimamoto and Verzeano 1954). On the other hand Mettler, Grundfest and Hovde (1952) and Hovde and Mettler (1953) reported

in brief notes that single shocks delivered to the caudate nucleus and putamen evoked short latency spikes or large amplitude activity lasting up to 100 msec or both in different subcortical structures (internal capsule globus pallidus ansa and fasciculus lenticularis thalamus substantia nigra red nucleus tectum and tegmentum) Responses in different subcortical nuclei were also found by *Ferro Milone Foresto and Lusso* (1953) *Ferro Milone Lusso and Terzuolo* (1953 b nembutalized cats) *Buchwald and Ervin* (1957 alert cats) *Sabo and Auer* (1958 cats and monkeys) and *Levy Monnier and Krupp* (1959 alert rabbits)

The potential recorded from the medullary pyramid of cats was reduced by caudate stimulation (*Buser Encabo and Borenstein* 1961) A possible interpretation of this result is that fibers in the internal capsule were activated by current spread and that reduced pyramidal discharge is associated with the arrest reaction (p 26 *Laurson* 1962 b) In a short note *Wick Buchwald and Wyers* (1959) reported that responses in the cortex and midbrain evoked by stimulation of globus pallidus were inhibited or facilitated by a preceding caudate stimulus depending on the length of the interval between stimuli Cortical and midbrain responses to a caudate stimulus were not changed by a preceding stimulus to globus pallidus

The above experiments were thought to indicate anatomical and functional interrelations between the different structures However precautions to detect the effect of spread of stimulating current or of action currents were not reported

## B RECORDING FROM CORPUS STRIATUM

### 1 Spontaneous activity

In encephale isole cats the electrical activity recorded from the caudate nucleus and cortex with gross electrodes had the same frequency (*Stoupeř and Terzuolo* 1954) In rabbit and cat spontaneous spindles recorded from the caudate nucleus appeared concomitantly with spindles recorded from frontal cortex (*Jung and Kornmüller* 1939 *Stoupeř and Terzuolo* 1945) In unanesthetized rabbits loud noises reduced the amplitude of activity recorded from the caudate nucleus (*Jung and Kornmüller* 1939) Spontaneous electrical activity in the caudate nucleus was also depressed when a motor response to sound was established by applying a constant current to the cortical motor area (rabbit *Naumova* 1957) In Dial® anesthesia bursts of large spikes appeared in the caudate nucleus in acute and chronic decorticate monkeys (*Kennard* 1943) and in chronic decorticate cats (*Morison and Basset* 1945)



Attempts have been made to identify subcortical structures by the electrical activity recorded with stereotactically inserted electrodes. In cats awake and anesthetized with nitrous oxide, *Jung and Kornmüller* (1939) recorded faster activity from the caudate nucleus than from lateral thalamus. In cats anesthetized with chloralose small but statistically significant differences in the mean amplitude of the spontaneous activity were found in the entopeduncular nucleus, ansa lenticularis and optic tract, these differences were absent when Nembutal® was the anesthetic (*Levine et al* 1958). The spontaneous activity of the corpus striatum recorded with depth electrodes in awake humans was similar to that of surrounding structures though the predominant frequency in the putamen and globus pallidus was higher (11–14/sec) than in cortex (*Haynes Meyers and Knott* 1949, *Hassler et al* 1960). Cross correlation analysis showed that activity in the corpus striatum preceded that in cerebral cortex (*Brazier and Barlow* 1957).

*Mihailovic and Jankovic* (1961) abolished the electrical activity of the caudate nucleus in cats by intraventricular injection of gamma globulin from rabbits treated with homogenates of caudate tissue from cats. Gamma globulin from untreated rabbits had no effect.

## 2 Evoked responses

*a Stimulation in the caudate nucleus* Stimulation of the caudate nucleus (*Umbach* 1959, *Wieck et al* 1961) evoked a positive potential in it with a short latency and a stimulus to peak time of 18 msec. The subsequent negative phase was larger and it was followed by a number of inconstant oscillations of low amplitude and a spindle response. Stimulation and recording was with concentric electrodes. The initial phases of the local caudate response were more resistant to anoxia than cortical potentials evoked by caudate (internal capsule, p. 44) stimulation (*Wieck et al* 1961). I have stimulated the caudate nucleus discretely through a stereotactically inserted bipolar electrode (two  $100 \times 140 \mu$  areas 0.5 mm apart) and recorded the evoked potential with the same type of electrode placed in the caudate nucleus at a distance of 2 mm from the stimulating electrode. A single deflection of short duration was produced by a rectangular pulse (0.5 msec and 2mA). The stimulus to peak time was 4 msec (Fig. 9 D). The difference in shape and duration between this response and that described by *Umbach* (1959) and *Wieck et al* (1961) can be attributed to my use of bipolar recording. With paired stimuli of equal strength and intervals of 2 to 10 msec the potential evoked by the second stimulus was facilitated (Fig. 9 E). Caudate seizure activity rarely occurred even after strong stimulation of the caudate nucleus (*Umbach* 1959). Potentials elicited in the caudate nucleus by caudate stimulation

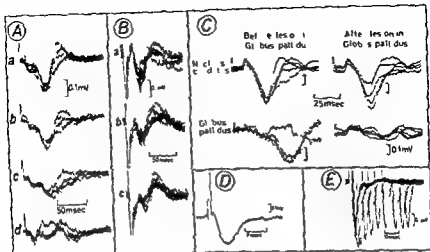


Fig 9

Potentials evoked in the corpus striatum by stimulation of the paws the cortex and the caudate nucleus (cats chloralose 80 mg/kg) - A Potentials evoked in the caudate nucleus by electrical stimulation of the ipsilateral forepaw with single shocks (1 msec 10 V) Recording with a concentric electrode. Five superimposed sweeps. The potentials are smaller when the interval between stimuli is reduced. The intervals were a 3 sec b 2 sec c 1 sec d 0.5 sec - B Recording as in A Stimulation of ipsilateral posterior sigmoid gyrus with rectangular pulses (0.1 msec 20 V) between two steel needles 4 mm apart. The first negative and the positive component of the response are smaller the second negative component larger when the interval between stimuli is reduced. The intervals were a 3 sec b 1 sec c 0.5 sec - C Potentials evoked in the caudate nucleus and in globus pallidus by electrical stimulation of the contralateral hindleg. Recording as in A. A lesion in the globus pallidus did not abolish the potential evoked in the caudate nucleus. Therefore the sensory impulses must reach the caudate nucleus via the thalamus (see Fig 3) - D Potential evoked in the caudate nucleus by stimulation of the caudate nucleus with a single shock (0.5 msec, 2 mA). Recording and stimulating electrodes were 2 mm apart each was bipolar with 0.5 mm interelectrode distance - E Recording and stimulating electrodes as in B. Paired rectangular stimuli of equal strength two times threshold (2 mA pulse duration 0.5 msec) with different intervals. At intervals of 2 to 10 msec the second response is facilitated.

spread by volume conduction to pericruciate cortex (Laurson 1961 a)

Single units in the globus pallidus discharged when Carbachol<sup>®</sup> champhor or streptomycin was injected into the caudate nucleus (Spiegel Wycis Szekely and Spuler 1961). Six of 24 units in alert monkeys discharged in synchrony with a tremor produced by a mesencephalic lesion (Cordeau 1961).

b Stimulation outside the corpus striatum. Spikes were evoked in the globus pallidus when strychnine was applied to dorsal column nuclei in monkey (Dusser de Barenne Garol and McCulloch 1942) cortical areas 6, 4 and 5 in chimpanzee (Garol and McCulloch 1944) and the

Attempts have been made to identify subcortical structures by the electrical activity recorded with stereotactically inserted electrodes. In cats, awake and anesthetized with nitrous oxide, *Jung and Kornmüller* (1939) recorded faster activity from the caudate nucleus than from lateral thalamus. In cats anesthetized with chloralose small but statistically significant differences in the mean amplitude of the spontaneous activity were found in the entopeduncular nucleus, ansa lenticularis and optic tract; these differences were absent when Nembutal® was the anesthetic (*Levine et al* 1958). The spontaneous activity of the corpus striatum recorded with depth electrodes in awake humans was similar to that of surrounding structures though the predominant frequency in the putamen and globus pallidus was higher (11–14/sec) than in cortex (*Haynes Meyers and Knott* 1949, *Hassler et al* 1960). Cross correlation analysis showed that activity in the corpus striatum preceded that in cerebral cortex (*Brazier and Barlow* 1957).

*Mihailovic and Jankovic* (1961) abolished the electrical activity of the caudate nucleus in cats by intraventricular injection of gamma globulin from rabbits treated with homogenates of caudate tissue from cats. Gamma globulin from untreated rabbits had no effect.

## 2 Evoked responses

*a Stimulation in the caudate nucleus* Stimulation of the caudate nucleus (*Umbach* 1959, *Wieck et al* 1961) evoked a positive potential in it with a short latency and a stimulus to peak time of 18 msec. The subsequent negative phase was larger and it was followed by a number of inconstant oscillations of low amplitude and a spindle response. Stimulation and recording was with concentric electrodes. The initial phases of the local caudate response were more resistant to anoxia than cortical potentials evoked by caudate (internal capsule, p. 44) stimulation (*Wieck et al* 1961). I have stimulated the caudate nucleus discretely through a stereotactically inserted bipolar electrode (two  $100 \times 140 \mu$  areas, 0.5 mm apart) and recorded the evoked potential with the same type of electrode placed in the caudate nucleus at a distance of 2 mm from the stimulating electrode. A single deflection of short duration was produced by a rectangular pulse (0.5 msec and 2 mA). The stimulus to peak time was 4 msec (Fig. 9 D). The difference in shape and duration between this response and that described by *Umbach* (1959) and *Wieck et al* (1961) can be attributed to my use of bipolar recording. With paired stimuli of equal strength and intervals of 2 to 10 msec the potential evoked by the second stimulus was facilitated (Fig. 9 E). Caudate seizure activity rarely occurred even after strong stimulation of the caudate nucleus (*Umbach* 1959). Potentials elicited in the caudate nucleus by caudate stimulation

The results in the literature and my own results are interpreted to indicate that stimulation confined to the caudate nucleus does not change cortical electrical activity. The absence of short latency cortical potentials is in agreement with recent anatomical findings that the caudate nucleus does not project directly to the cortex. Cortico-caudate projections well documented in anatomical studies have been confirmed using gross and single unit recording from the caudate nucleus.

Studies of interactions of the corpus striatum with other subcortical structures cannot be interpreted until the role of spread of current in these experiments has been determined. So far there is no evidence to indicate that the caudate nucleus is either a part of or antagonistic to the ascending reticular activating system.

thalamic nuclei dorsomedialis and ventralis anterior in cat (*Spiegel Szekely and Baker 1957*) Strychnine applied to cortical areas 6, 4 and 1 in chimpanzee (*Garol and McCulloch 1944*) and posterior orbital gyrus in monkey (*Sachs Brendler and Fulton 1949*) evoked spikes in putamen. From the caudate nucleus spikes were recorded when strychnine was applied to areas 8, 4s, 2 and 24 in chimpanzee (*Garol and McCulloch 1944*), posterior orbital gyrus in monkey (*Sachs Brendler and Fulton 1949*) and nucleus dorsomedialis of thalamus in cat (*Spiegel Szekely and Baker 1957*) Electrical stimulation of the dorsomedial nucleus of the thalamus with single shocks evoked single or multiple waves in the caudate nucleus or in globus pallidus or in both. 'Spindles' in these nuclei were most easily elicited by stimulation of nucleus ventralis anterior, when stimulation was repetitive at 4–10/sec recruiting waves appeared (*Jung and Tonnies 1950*) Large lesions in the ipsilateral caudate nucleus or ablation of the ipsilateral frontal pole of the hemisphere did not abolish responses in the globus pallidus to stimulation of thalamus (*Spiegel Szekely and Baker 1957*) Cortical stimulation evoked gross potentials in the caudate nucleus with latencies so short that a direct pathway seemed to be involved (*Albe Fessard et al 1960 a*, *Miranda 1961*) In awake cats immobilized with Flaxedil® stimuli were effective only if delivered at intervals of 15 seconds in chloralose anesthesia however 3 sec intervals were satisfactory. I have confirmed this in experiments on cats anesthetized with chloralose (Fig. 9 B) I have furthermore confirmed that single units in the head of the caudate nucleus respond to single shock stimulation (2 or 3 sec intervals) of the ipsilateral motor cortex (*Albe Fessard et al 1960 b*) Stimulation at a constant intensity above that which resulted in movement produced one or two spikes (*Laursen 1961 a*) The first spike had a latency of between 15 and 45 msec of the same order as that found by *Albe Fessard et al (1960 b)* who attributed the long delay to synapses within the caudate nucleus.

### SUMMARY

Electrical and chemical stimulation and recording of electrical potentials may supplement anatomical studies of connections between the corpus striatum and other regions of the brain. The use of conditioning and testing stimuli may provide information about complex interactions. Unfortunately too few investigators have proved that their results were due to activation of the structure where the electrodes were inserted rather than to spread of current to other structures.

1956) In the caudate nucleus too a single unit often responded to peripheral stimuli of different modalities. Single units in the caudate nucleus were spontaneously active in cats, awake and anesthetized with Nembutal® but not in cats anesthetized with chloralose. Inhibition of spontaneous firing was not elicited by stimulation of receptors. Caudate unit responses like gross responses were evoked only by stimuli separated by more than 20 sec. chloralose reduced this interval to three seconds (Albe Fessard et al 1960 b Miranda 1961). Units in the putamen had refractory periods of up to 1700 msec (Segundo and Machine 1956).

I have explored the caudate nucleus with stainless steel microelectrodes in twelve cats in light nitrous oxide anesthesia. The electrodes were inserted through a steel socket chronically implanted in the cat's skull and were advanced by a small motor-driven device (Andersen and Laurson 1959). Each cat was used in 1 to 5 experimental sessions and in each session 1 to 5 electrode tracts were explored. After the last experimental session the electrode tip was marked *ad modum* Marshall (1940). Of 60 spontaneously active units 30 discharged at a rate of less than 25/sec 8 at more than 100/sec. None responded to touch or electrical stimulation of the skin loud noises or flashes of light. Intervals between the stimuli longer than 20 sec as used by Albe Fessard et al (1960 a b) were not systematically employed but single stimuli delivered after a pause of several minutes failed to evoke discharges.

Chloralose anesthesia abolished spontaneous unit activity in the caudate nucleus and made the units respond to skin stimuli separated by more than three seconds as described by Albe Fessard et al (1960 b).

#### SUMMARY

Gross responses have been reported to occur in all parts of the corpus striatum. They were evoked by different sensory stimuli and in cats immobilized with Flaxedil® or anesthetized with Nembutal® only stimuli separated by more than 20 sec evoked constant responses in chloralose anesthesia 3 sec intervals were sufficient. Responses in the caudate nucleus were evoked by clicks at 1/sec if they had been paired repeatedly with shocks to the feet.

Unit responses were evoked in all parts of the corpus striatum by different sensory stimuli in awake paralyzed cats. Twenty second intervals between the stimuli were necessary to avoid fatigue of caudate unit responses. With units in the putamen in awake cats and with caudate units in cats anesthetized with chloralose the intervals could be reduced to a few seconds. In my experiments on cats anesthetized with nitrous oxide responses to sensory stimuli in the caudate nucleus were absent.

## Chapter 5

# SENSORY FUNCTION

Anatomical evidence indicates that impulses from receptors may reach the corpus striatum via thalamus or cortex and that globus pallidus receives impulses from the medial lemniscus (p 41, Fig 3)

*Gross responses* Somatic, visual, auditory and olfactory stimuli evoked gross responses of large amplitude and long latency in the caudate nucleus, putamen and globus pallidus of cats, awake or anesthetized with Nembutal® or chloralose (Bonvallet Dell and Hugelin 1952, Albe Fessard et al 1960 a Miranda 1961) Galambos (1960) in unrestrained cats found either no or only small, inconstant responses in the caudate nucleus to clicks (1/sec) unless these stimuli had been paired repeatedly with shocks to the feet before the experiment and thus were significant to the animal In Albe Fessard et al s experiments only stimuli separated by more than 20 sec from the preceding stimulus evoked responses of constant amplitude in unanesthetized or nembutalized animals In chloralose anesthesia (80 mg/kg) 3 sec intervals were sufficient to avoid fatigue of the responses Section of both the dorsal and the lateral columns in the spinal cord blocked responses whereas section of one or the other column did not In the reticular formation, zona incerta centrum medianum and nucleus ventralis lateralis of the thalamus responses were evoked with shorter latencies than in the caudate nucleus This was interpreted to indicate that impulses went to the caudate nucleus via these structures A somatotopic organization of the caudate nucleus was not found (Albe Fessard et al 1960 a, Miranda 1961)

In six cats anesthetized with chloralose I have confirmed that somatic visual and auditory stimuli evoke gross responses in the caudate nucleus and globus pallidus Stimuli separated by less than 3 sec from the preceding stimulus evoked reduced responses (Fig 9 A) Since an electrolytic lesion in the globus pallidus did not abolish the response the impulses reached the caudate nucleus via thalamus (Fig s 3 and 9 C)

*Single units* in the globus pallidus putamen and claustrum in awake curarized cats responded to peripheral stimuli of different modalities with convergence of two or more modalities on one unit In putamen, in addition, peripheral stimuli inhibited spontaneous firing (Segundo and Machine

was unaffected by unilateral decerebration (Rogers 1922). These findings were confirmed by Beach (1952) who used an improved method of observation partially adopted from Carpenter (1933). Large bilateral lesions in the accessory hyperstriatum and neostriatum eliminated mating behavior. After the administration of androgens many birds resumed the copulatory activity and Beach concluded that the role of the forebrain in the pigeon's sexual behavior was to maintain a high level of responsiveness to sexual stimuli. There is no evidence to indicate that the corpus striatum in mammals has a similar function.

## B HYPERKINESIA

### 1 Quantitative recording

Ambulatory hyperkinesia was recorded after frontal lobe lesions (caudate nucleus and cortex) in monkeys (Richter and Hines 1938). The same effect was produced in monkeys with lesions confined to the frontal areas 8 and 12 (Kennard, Spencer and Fountain 1941) or to area 9 (French 1959). Dean and Davis (1959) reported absence of hyperactivity in a monkey with bilateral lesions of the frontal cortex but cortex in the depth of sulcus principalis was spared.

Hyperactivity after lesions confined to the caudate nucleus was observed by Turner (1954), Rosvold and Delgado (1956), Davis (1958) and Dean and Davis (1959); it was denied by Kennard, Spencer and Fountain (1941).

In rats spontaneous activity in an activity cage was unaltered by lesions in corpus striatum (Beach 1941). On the other hand Whittier and Orr (1962) reported an increase in running activity for 30 days after caudate lesions followed by a gradual decrease to preoperative levels.

### 2 General observation

In earlier studies of the effect of discrete lesions in the caudate nucleus in cats and monkeys hyperactivity was not reported (Wilson 1914, Liddell and Phillips 1940) possibly because it may be difficult to detect by simple inspection. After lesions confined to the frontal cortex hyperactivity in response to stimuli could be directly observed in monkeys; the animals were hyperactive regardless of stimuli after additional lesions in corpus striatum. In addition to ambulatory hyperkinesia monkeys with combined lesions pushed obstinately against immovable objects, climbed excessively and followed after moving objects in a stereotyped fashion (Mettler 1945 a). In summary both lesions of the frontal cortex and of the



## Chapter 6

# BEHAVIORAL STUDIES

### A GENERAL OBSERVATION

Behavioral changes were not observed after unilateral and bilateral lesions in the corpus striatum in monkeys (*Wilson 1914 Ranson and Berry 1941, Kennard 1944*) and cats (*Liddell and Phillips 1940*) though subtle changes may have gone unnoticed since conditioning techniques were not used

Puppies whose caudate nuclei were removed without ablation of cerebral cortex ran and jumped well but growth was retarded. Some animals were aggressive and others passive with slow movements; not all dogs responded to their names though all could find their feeding place and kennels (*Klosowski and Voljina 1956*)

Comparison of chronic decorticate and decerebrate cats and dogs led *Rioch (1942)* to conclude that none of the reaction patterns which were lost could be localized unequivocally to the corpus striatum. On the other hand *Wang and Akert (1962)* attributed a number of behavioral changes in high decerebrate cats to damage to the corpus striatum: the failure to exit spontaneously to groom themselves and other cats and to engage in sexual activities as well as general hyperactivity, aggressiveness and increased galvanic skin reflexes. The authors did not believe that the severely damaged and deafferented limbic structures could account for the observed changes in behavior.

Stimulation of the globus pallidus and of the caudate nucleus through implanted electrodes in alert cats and monkeys elicited exploratory behavior, feeding and defense reactions, eye and ear movements, various autonomic responses and inhibition of movements (*Rozhanski and Lagutina 1957*). This diversity of responses suggests activation of several nearby structures (area septalis, hypothalamus and amygdala).

The bird provides an opportunity to study the function of a homologue of the corpus striatum in a brain with very little neocortex: the bulk of the forebrain corresponds to the mammalian corpus striatum and neocortex is represented by only a thin corticoid layer. Mating behavior in pigeons was eliminated by bilateral removal of the hyperstriatum and

Nielsen Doty and Ruthledge 1958 Brady and Conrad 1960 a globus pallidus in monkeys Brady and Conrad 1960 a b) In another study a fear response was elicited and the animal could be trained to avoid stimulation (external lamina and posterior part of globus pallidus in monkeys Delgado Rosvold and Looney 1956) That negatively and positively reinforcing regions should exist side by side in the globus pallidus is less likely than that current spread to hypothalamus is responsible for one or the other or for both effects To be positively reinforcing stimulation must be strong (20 to 30 mA Brady and Conrad 1960 a) and current spread is unavoidable

Bar pressing reinforced with stimulation of the caudate nucleus in cat and globus pallidus in monkey was not suppressed by clicks presented as warning stimuli for a shock to the feet (Brady and Conrad 1960 a) Bar pressing reinforced with food (without intracranial stimulation) is suppressed by a warning stimulus (Estes and Skinner 1941) Monkeys trained to press a lever after intervals of 20 seconds since the previous response (5 p 62) to obtain food or stimulation of anterior thalamus most often spaced their responses only 10 seconds when reinforced with stimulation of globus pallidus This effect is similar to the effect of amphetamine (Brady and Conrad 1960 b) That globus pallidus is essential for the timing of responses was not confirmed in cats with lesions in globus pallidus performance in pressing a lever at given intervals for food was affected for only 2-3 weeks after the operation (Hodos Laursen and Nissen unpublished results)

### 3 Reinforcement by food or avoidance of a shock

a *Delayed alternation and delayed response* Damage to the frontal lobes in apes and monkeys reduced the number of correct choices in delayed alternation tests (2 p 62) without affecting visual discrimination (Jacobsen 1936 Miles and Rosvold 1956) The same effect and impairment of delayed response learning (3 p 62) was produced both by lesions confined to the frontal cortex and to caudate nucleus (Rosvold and Delgado 1956 Rosvold Mishkin and Szwed 1958 Dean and Davis 1959 Battig Rosvold and Mishkin 1960) Battig Rosvold and Mishkin (1962) found impairment of delayed response learning and of visual and auditory discrimination after lesions in the frontal cortex and after lesions in the caudate nucleus The normal performance in visual discrimination tests in previous experiments was ascribed to transfer of the response ("go—no go") from delayed response to visual discrimination learning Stimulation of the caudate nucleus in monkeys had the same effect as lesions delayed alternation was impaired and visual discrimina-

caudate nucleus alone and in combination, produce hyperactivity in monkeys

In cats with combined lesions of the caudate nucleus and dorsolateral cortex hyperactivity was observed but it disappeared 10 to 15 days after the operation (Thompson 1959)

## C CLASSICAL CONDITIONED RESPONSES

In pigeons the frequency of respiration and heart beat increased in response to light or sound stimuli which had been repeatedly paired with shocks to a leg. This conditioned response could be established after bilateral removal of the forebrain except the paleostriatum and ectostriatum. Inhibition of responses to light required an intact forebrain (Tuge and Shima 1959)

## D CONDITIONED INSTRUMENTAL RESPONSES

### 1 Definitions

In *instrumental (operant) conditioning* rewards and punishments are made to occur as a consequence of the subject's response or failure to respond. The following procedures have been used in investigations of corpus striatum

1) *Avoidance conditioning* The animal must make a response to avoid the stimulus e.g. jump out of a compartment to avoid a shock to the feet or press a lever to interrupt punishing brain stimulation

2) *Delayed alternation* The animal has a choice of two responses and one or the other is rewarded on alternate trials. The animal is prevented from making the next response for a certain time (delay) usually 15 seconds. The procedure can be varied by reinforcing the same response two (double alternation) or more times before reversal of reward to the other response is made

3) *Delayed response* The animal has a choice of two responses and a stimulus indicates whether one or the other is rewarded. When the animal is trained a delay (e.g. 15 seconds) is introduced between stimulus and response. During this delay the stimulus is not present

4) *Intracranial self stimulation* Stimulation of many brain areas acts as reward or punishment and may thus reinforce a response. If the response (e.g. bar pressing) turns on a rewarding stimulus the animal repeats self stimulation

5) *Spaced responding* A response is only rewarded if a certain time (e.g. 20 seconds) has elapsed since the preceding response. If a response is made too early the waiting period starts anew. In this way the animal is trained to respond at a low rate

6) *Visual discrimination* The animal must respond differently to different visual stimuli

### 2 Reinforcement by intracranial stimulation

Stimulation of the caudate nucleus did not reinforce intracranial self stimulation in rats (Olds 1956). In cats and monkeys stimulation of the corpus striatum was rewarding (caudate nucleus in cats Bradly et al 1957)

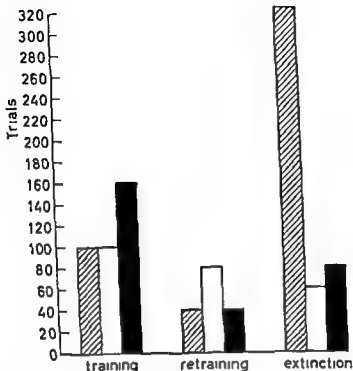


Fig 10

Avoidance learning and extinction in cats with bilateral lesions in the globus pallidus (number of cats in brackets) /// Unoperated cats (14) sham operated cats (7 electrode inserted no electrolytic lesion) and control operated cats (10 thalamic lesions) □ Cats with lesions in the globus pallidus trained before and retrained 30 days after the operation (6) ■ Cats with bilateral lesions in globus pallidus trained 30 days and retrained more than 60 days after the operation (6) Extinction occurred more rapidly after lesions in the globus pallidus. This indicates reduced fear because the cats performed normally during retraining 60 days after the operation (Laursen 1963)

The nucleus niger and globus pallidus are projection areas of the caudate nucleus (Voneida 1960 S.abo 1962). I placed lesions (Laursen 1962 = 1963) in nucleus niger but they damaged adjacent structures and resulted in generalized muscular weakness. These cats were unsuitable for behavioral experiments. Although lesions in globus pallidus included the lateral part of the genu of the internal capsule, motor signs did not appear.

After both unilateral and bilateral lesions in globus pallidus, conditioned avoidance responses were extinguished more rapidly than in normal and control operated cats. This was observed at a time when retention had returned to normal. Animals with bilateral lesions in globus pallidus tested 30 days after the operation learned the avoidance response slower than normal and control operated cats. Retention tested 30 days after

tion was intact (*Rosvold and Delgado 1956*) In four cats, stimulation impaired delayed alternation learning where reversal (see 2 p 62) was made only if the cat chose correctly in 4 out of 5 trials and the delay was 30 seconds In one cat learning was facilitated by caudate stimulation (*Thompson 1958*)

b *Discrimination studies* Rats trained to avoid a shock by choosing an alley sloped upward in favor of one sloped downward lost this ability after bilateral lesions in the globus pallidus (or nucleus ventralis posterior of thalamus) Brain stem lesions had no effect (*Thompson Malin and Hawkins 1961*)

Brightness discrimination in rats was unaffected by bilateral lesions in the caudate nucleus or globus pallidus (or hippocampus amygdala and most thalamic nuclei), brightness discrimination was abolished by lesions of thalamus (medial to the geniculate nuclei) of prefrontal and of certain hypothalamic nuclei (*Thompson and Massopust 1960*) Light dark and flicker frequency discriminations (1 and 10/sec) in cats were unaffected by bilateral stimulation through electrodes in the caudate nucleus provided training to a 100 per cent criterion was completed, during training stimulated cats made more errors than unstimulated cats The stimuli were strong enough to evoke spindle responses in the cortex Furthermore caudate stimulation at 5/sec made the cats hesitate in moving to the food cups (*Buchwald et al 1961 c*) this might be a trace of the arrest reaction fully produced by stimulation at frequencies of 20 to 30 pulses per second (p 26) Cats trained to press a lever to get food decreased their response rate when the caudate nucleus was stimulated at a low frequency when lever pressing was no longer followed by food (extinction) caudate stimulation increased the response rate (*Wyers Buchwald Rakic and Lauprecht 1962*) Evaluation of this interesting experiment must await publication of a detailed report

c *Avoidance conditioning* Conditioned avoidance behavior (1 p 62) was investigated in cats with dorsolateral cortical and subsequent caudate lesions (*Thompson 1959*) The added caudate lesions reduced the number of trials to extinction of the avoidance response The number of trials to relearn and the latency of the response were increased when training was completed before caudate lesions were made If caudate lesions were made before training this effect did not appear either because more time had elapsed since the operation or because the lesion damaged mechanisms related to retention of the response

Although the effect on behavior of combined caudate and cortical lesions was absent after isolated cortical lesions it was undecided whether lesions confined to the caudate nucleus could be responsible for the observed change in conditioned avoidance behavior

## Chapter 7

# BIOCHEMICAL STUDIES

Transmission in central synapses is chemical rather than electrical (Eccles 1953 1957) but a central synaptic transmitter has not been identified with certainty. Acetylcholine is probably the transmitter between motor axon collaterals and Renshaw cells (Curtis and Eccles 1958) the membrane of motoneurons is unaffected by acetylcholine (Eccles Fatt and Koketsu 1954) and another transmitter presumably acts here. Whether inhibition is mediated by a special transmitter is uncertain in snail (Tauc and Gerschenfeld 1960 a) and *Aplysia* (Tauc and Gerschenfeld 1960 b Strumwasser 1962) acetylcholine excites and inhibits different neurons within the same ganglion.

Some of the substances mentioned in this chapter may be transmitters in the brain. Other substances may continuously regulate neuron excitability as suggested for gamma aminobutyric acid (GABA Elliott and Jasper 1959). Furthermore the brain and spinal cord contain metabolites which may or may not influence the excitation of neurons.

These different substances and the enzymes forming and inactivating them are not equally distributed throughout the brain (for references see Kety and Elkes 1961). This cannot be explained solely by differences in the relative volume occupied by neuron somata dendrites axons glia or other components. Histochemical studies indicate that the composition of neurons differ from region to region (Gerebtzoff 1959 Shute and Lewis 1961). Since the significance of these regional differences is unknown this chapter can be no more than an enumeration of substances and enzyme activities investigated in tissue from the corpus striatum. Substances with relatively high concentrations in corpus striatum are mentioned first.

## A POSSIBLE TRANSMITTERS

### 1 Choline acetyltransferase acetylcholine and acetylcholinesterase

The activity of acetylcholine forming enzymes (Acetyl CoA: choline O-acetyltransferase\*) in the caudate nucleus is high exceeded only in the

\*) Systematic names of enzymes according to the "Report of the commission on enzymes of the international union of biochemistry" IUB Symposium series vol. 0 Pergamon Press Oxford 1961

bilateral lesions in globus pallidus was impaired as compared with normal and control operated cats, sixty days postoperatively retention was normal (Fig 10) Therefore a memory defect cannot account for the rapid extinction observed more than 60 days postoperatively *Weiskrantz* (1956) and *Waterhouse* (1957) attributed rapid extinction of avoidance responses to diminished anxiety and fear The same interpretation is consistent with the observation in this study that cats with lesions in globus pallidus did not show signs of fear during transfer from the cage to the experimental box, normal and control operated cats vocalized struggled to escape, defecated etc

The effect of electrical stimulation or of crystalline Carbachol® placed in the caudate nucleus, on conditioned avoidance behavior was inconsistent three of seven cats were inattentive to the sound of the buzzer, two failed to cross the barrier and one sometimes raised a forepaw as though about to go through the doorway, but then stopped, looked about and failed to cross (*Stevens Kim and MacLean* 1961)

## SUMMARY

Behavioral changes in cats and monkeys with lesions confined to the corpus striatum have been observed only when conditioning procedures were used Marked behavioral changes occur in studies comparing decorticate with decerebrate animals It is difficult however, to attribute certain of these changes to damage to the corpus striatum widespread degeneration occurs after extensive mutilation of the brain and some of the accompanying behavioral changes are non specific

Quantitative assessment of the spontaneous activity of monkeys and rats under standardized conditions shows that lesions confined to the caudate nucleus or to frontal cortex or to both produce hyperkinesia

Stimulation through electrodes implanted in the corpus striatum in cats and monkeys acts as reward and may reinforce a response But only strong stimulation is reinforcing and spread of current is therefore unavoidable

Performance of delayed responses is impaired after lesions and during stimulation of the caudate nucleus in monkeys and during stimulation of the caudate nucleus in cats Defects in recent memory occur also after lesions in the frontal neocortex Extinction of a conditioned avoidance response in cats is rapid after combined caudate and cortical lesions and after lesions in globus pallidus This can be observed two months after lesions are made in the globus pallidus when a memory defect can no longer be detected The rapid extinction is interpreted to indicate reduced fear of the warning stimulus for the shock

forming dopamine from DOPA (3,4-dihydroxy L-phenylalanine) has a high activity in the caudate nucleus (Holtz and Westermann 1956 Kuntzman Shore Bogdanski and Brodie 1961). Unlike dopamine DOPA passes the blood brain barrier and is evenly distributed in grey matter (Sano et al 1959).

Dopamine  $\beta$  oxidase transforming dopamine to noradrenaline has a high activity in the caudate nucleus and hypothalamus (Udenfriend and Creveling 1959). The caudate nucleus contains more dopamine and less noradrenaline and adrenaline than the hypothalamus (Vogt 1954). Therefore apart from being a precursor of noradrenaline dopamine in the caudate nucleus and putamen may have another function.

Dopamine, noradrenaline and adrenaline are inactivated by O-methylation (Axelrod Albers and Clemente 1959) and in addition deaminated (Goldstein Friedhoff and Simmons 1959). The activity of monoamine oxidase (monoamine O-oxidoreductase (deaminating)) is high in the corpus striatum (Holtz and Westermann 1956 Weiner 1960).

Dopamine is excreted in the urine in abnormally large amounts in Wilson's disease and dystonia. In Parkinson's disease the dopamine excretion is abnormally small. In Huntington's chorea the excretion is normal (Barbeau 1960, 1961 Barbeau Murphy and Sourkes 1961 Barbeau and Sourkes 1961).

### 3 Noradrenaline and adrenaline

occur in the caudate nucleus in low concentrations. In the dog there is about six times as much noradrenaline as adrenaline. The caudate nucleus in dogs contains 0.06  $\mu\text{g/g}$  noradrenaline (Vogt 1954). 6 per cent of the concentration in hypothalamus (Adam 1961).

### 4 $\gamma$ aminobutyric acid

The concentration of GABA in caudate tissue from rats is 31 mg/100 g tissue. Higher concentrations occur in the colliculi, diencephalon and olfactory bulbs, lower concentrations in cortex cerebri and medulla oblongata (Baxter and Roberts 1960). Glutamate decarboxylase (L-glutamate l-carboxy lyase) forms GABA from glutamic acid and this enzyme has a higher activity in the globus pallidus than in other parts of the brain (Müller and Langemann 1962). The concentration of GABA in the globus pallidus has not been reported. GABA forms a shunt to the transformation of glutamic acid to  $\alpha$  ketoglutaric acid in the Krebs cycle (for references see McIlwain 1959). GABA has an inhibitory action on various tissues (for references see Florey 1961) but is not an inhibitory



ventral roots, the anterior horns and the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves (Feldberg and Vogt 1948, Hebb and Silver 1956) Feldberg and Vogt suggested that both afferent and efferent pathways often consisted of alternating cholinergic and non cholinergic neurons Stimulation of the anterior sigmoid gyrus and of the caudate nucleus (Traczyk and Sadowski 1962) in cats increased the content of acetylcholine in this nucleus and in fluid it was perfused with through the push pull cannulae of Gaddum (1961, Mitchell and Szerb 1962) This indicates that the caudate nucleus contains cholinergic neurons The concentration of acetylcholine in the 'basal ganglia' is higher than in other parts of the brain (MacIntosh 1941)

The cholinesterase activity of the caudate nucleus is high (Nachmansohn 1940)

Two acetylcholinesterases (acetylcholine acetyl hydrolase) with different electrophoretic mobilities and one cholinesterase (acetylcholine acyl hydrolase) were found in the caudate nucleus and putamen dissected from human brains *post mortem* (Bernsohn Barron and Hess 1962) The proportion of choline acetyltransferase acetylcholine and acetylcholinesterase is roughly the same in the different regions of the brain (dog Burgen and Chipman 1951)

Acetylcholinesterase in the corpus striatum of rats and rabbits is localized in the neuropile and on the surface of the cells Corpus striatum is stained less than the amygdala (Gerebtzoff 1959) Similarly Shute and Lewis (1961) found fewer cholinergic fibers in the corpus striatum than in limbic structures However manometric and bioassay determinations of acetylcholinesterase showed higher activities in the corpus striatum than in hippocampus and cingulate gyrus (Burgen and Chipman 1951)

## 2 Dopamin

Corpus striatum contains more dopamin (3,4 dihydroxy phenylethylamine) than other brain regions The concentration in dog corpus striatum is 6.5  $\mu\text{g/g}$  tissue, the average concentration in dog brain is 0.19  $\mu\text{g/g}$  tissue (Bertler and Rosengren 1959) In human *post mortem* material the concentration of dopamin in putamen ( $8.25 \pm 0.82$   $\mu\text{g/g}$  tissue) was higher than in the caudate nucleus ( $5.74 \pm 0.41$   $\mu\text{g/g}$  tissue) The concentration in the globus pallidus was low ( $1.01 \pm 0.17$   $\mu\text{g/g}$  tissue) of the same magnitude as in the hypothalamus Cerebellum does not contain dopamin (Sano et al 1959) Lower concentrations but the same proportions were reported by Bertler (1961)

DOPA decarboxylase (3,4-dihydroxy L-phenylalanine carboxylase)

forming dopamine from DOPA (3,4-dihydroxy L-phenylalanine) has a high activity in the caudate nucleus (Holtz and Westermann 1956 Kuntzman Shore Bogdanski and Brodie 1961) Unlike dopamine DOPA passes the blood brain barrier and is evenly distributed in grey matter (Sano et al 1959)

Dopamine  $\beta$  oxidase transforming dopamine to noradrenaline has a high activity in the caudate nucleus and hypothalamus (Udenfriend and Creveling 1959) The caudate nucleus contains more dopamine and less noradrenaline and adrenaline than the hypothalamus (Vogt 1954) Therefore apart from being a precursor of noradrenaline dopamine in the caudate nucleus and putamen may have another function

Dopamine noradrenaline and adrenaline are inactivated by O methylation (Axelrod Albers and Clemente 1959) and in addition deaminated (Goldstein Friedhoff and Simmons 1959) The activity of monoamine oxidase (monoamine O oxidoreductase (deaminating)) is high in the corpus striatum (Holtz and Westermann 1956 Weiner 1960)

Dopamine is excreted in the urine in abnormally large amounts in Wilson's disease and dystonia. In Parkinson's disease the dopamine excretion is abnormally small. In Huntington's chorea the excretion is normal (Barbeau 1960 1961 Barbeau Murphy and Sourkes 1961 Barbeau and Sourkes 1961)

### 3 Noradrenaline and adrenaline

occur in the caudate nucleus in low concentrations. In the dog there is about six times as much noradrenaline as adrenaline. The caudate nucleus in dogs contains 0.06  $\mu\text{g/g}$  noradrenaline (Vogt 1954) 6 per cent of the concentration in hypothalamus (Adam 1961)

### 4 $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid

The concentration of GABA in caudate tissue from rats is 31 mg/100 g tissue. Higher concentrations occur in the colliculi, diencephalon and olfactory bulbs, lower concentrations in cortex cerebri and medulla oblongata (Baxter and Roberts 1960). Glutamate decarboxylase (L-glutamate L-carboxylase) forms GABA from glutamic acid and this enzyme has a higher activity in the globus pallidus than in other parts of the brain (Muller and Langemann 1962). The concentration of GABA in the globus pallidus has not been reported. GABA forms a shunt to the transformation of glutamic acid to  $\alpha$ -ketoglutaric acid in the Krebs cycle (for references see McIlwain 1959). GABA has an inhibitory action on various tissues (for references see Florey 1961) but is not an inhibitory

transmitter in the spinal cord (Curtis and Phillis 1958, Curtis Phillis and Watkins 1959, 1960 Eccles 1961)

### 5 Serotonin

The serotonin (5-hydroxy tryptamine) concentration in the caudate nucleus in cats and dogs is  $0.72 \pm 0.2 \mu\text{g/g}$ . Higher concentrations are found in limbic structures and hypothalamus, lower in cerebellum and cerebral cortex (Bogdanski, Weissbach and Udenfriend 1957). The concentrations of serotonin found in dogs by Paasonen, McLean and Giarman (1957) were lower than those referred to above, but the proportions were the same. In the human brain Bertler (1961) found  $0.27 \mu\text{g/g}$  in the caudate nucleus,  $0.23 \mu\text{g/g}$  in putamen and  $0.08 \mu\text{g/g}$  in globus pallidus.

### 6 Histamine

The histamine content of the caudate nucleus in dogs is 100–180 ng/g only 13 per cent of the concentration in hypothalamus (Adam 1961).

### 7 Piperidine

In rat brain the concentration of piperidine is  $0.05 \mu\text{g/g}$  (Honegger and Honegger 1960). The regional distribution is unknown. Tritium labelled piperidine injected intravenously in rabbits is found 30 minutes later with the highest concentration in the caudate nucleus. The neocortex has the second highest uptake and the lowest uptake is in thalamus and white matter. Piperidine has been tested in psychiatric disorders because it antagonizes the psychotomimetic action of piperidine glycolates (Aboud Rinaldi and Eagleton 1961).

## II METABOLISM

The metabolic rate of the corpus striatum is high. The caudate nucleus of adult dogs consumes  $0.135 \text{ ml O}_2/100 \text{ g tissue/hour}$  (Himwich and Fazekas 1941) and the corpus striatum of rabbits  $0.123 \text{ ml O}_2/100 \text{ g tissue/hour}$  (Leeman and Pichler 1941). This is more than other regions of the brain consume. Similarly the capacity for anaerobic metabolism indicated by the rate of glycolysis is higher in the caudate nucleus and cortex cerebri than in other brain regions (Chesler and Himwich 1944). Autoradiography of the brains of alert cats, after inhalation of a radioactive, inert gas showed that the perfusion rate of the caudate nucleus

( $1.10 \pm 0.08$  ml/g/mm) was exceeded only by cortical and thalamic sensory receiving areas (Sokoloff 1961)

In agreement with this high metabolic rate and despite its high capacity for anaerobic metabolism the corpus striatum is destroyed quickly in anoxia about as quickly as the cerebral cortex (Courville 1936 Weinberger Gibbon and Gibbon 1940) After carbon monoxide poisoning degeneration is most pronounced in the cortex and globus pallidus Why the globus pallidus is more often affected than the rest of corpus striatum is unknown (Courville 1953 Kormey 1955)

The content of riboflavin in the caudate nucleus from man and guinea pig ( $4 \mu\text{g/g}$  Leeman and Pichler 1941) and the activity of succinate dehydrogenase (succinate (acceptor) oxidoreductase) in caudate tissue from dogs are higher than in other parts of the brain (Burgen and Chipman 1951)

The thiamine content in the caudate nucleus of rats is intermediate between high values in the cerebellum and low values in thalamus (Dreyfus 1959)

The content and the turnover of nucleic acid and free nucleotides (Mandel Hart and Borkowski 1961) and of glycogen (Chesler and Himwich 1943) in corpus striatum is intermediate between the high values found in the cerebral cortex and the low values in the brain stem.

## C METALS

### 1 Copper

The copper content of corpus striatum is of interest because a disturbance in copper metabolism is believed to be present in Wilson's disease (Cartwright et al 1954 Walshe and Cumings 1961) The normal corpus striatum contains more copper than the cerebral cortex less than substantia nigra and locus coeruleus (Tingey 1937 Cumings 1948 Warren Earl and Thompson 1960) The different workers found different concentrations in the corpus striatum from normal human brain Cumings (1948) reported the highest figures similar to those found in guinea pig by Holbrook (1961) caudate nucleus  $5 \pm 1.7 \mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dried tissue putamen and globus pallidus  $8 \pm 2.25 \mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  All copper in the brain is bound to protein This protein can be separated into three fractions (Porter and Folch 1957)

Copper-containing enzymes transform DOPA to melanin and the highest concentrations of copper occur in the pigmented regions nucleus niger and locus coeruleus In Wilson's disease the copper content of all

transmitter in the spinal cord (Curtis and Phillis 1958, Curtis, Phillis and Watkins 1959, 1960, Eccles 1961)

### 5 Serotonin

The serotonin (5-hydroxy tryptamine) concentration in the caudate nucleus in cats and dogs is  $0.72 \pm 0.2$   $\mu\text{g/g}$ . Higher concentrations are found in limbic structures and hypothalamus, lower in cerebellum and cerebral cortex (Bogdanski, Weissbach and Udenfriend 1957). The concentrations of serotonin found in dogs by Paasonen, McLean and Giarman (1957) were lower than those referred to above, but the proportions were the same. In the human brain Bertler (1961) found 0.27  $\mu\text{g/g}$  in the caudate nucleus, 0.23  $\mu\text{g/g}$  in putamen and 0.08  $\mu\text{g/g}$  in globus pallidus.

### 6 Histamine

The histamine content of the caudate nucleus in dogs is 100–180 ng/g, only 13 per cent of the concentration in hypothalamus (Adam 1961).

### 7 Piperidine

In rat brain the concentration of piperidine is 0.05  $\mu\text{g/g}$  (Honegger and Honegger 1960). The regional distribution is unknown. Tritium labelled piperidine injected intravenously in rabbits is found 30 minutes later with the highest concentration in the caudate nucleus. The neocortex has the second highest uptake and the lowest uptake is in thalamus and white matter. Piperidine has been tested in psychiatric disorders because it antagonizes the psychotomimetic action of piperidine glycolates (Abood, Rinaldi and Eagleton 1961).

## B METABOLISM

The metabolic rate of the corpus striatum is high. The caudate nucleus of adult dogs consumes 0.135 ml O<sub>2</sub>/100 g tissue/hour (Himwich and Fazekas 1941) and the corpus striatum of rabbits 0.123 ml O<sub>2</sub>/100 g tissue/hour (Leeman and Pichler 1941), this is more than other regions of the brain consume. Similarly the capacity for anaerobic metabolism indicated by the rate of glycolysis is higher in the caudate nucleus and cortex cerebri than in other brain regions (Chesler and Himwich 1944). Autoradiography of the brains of alert cats, after inhalation of a radioactive, inert gas, showed that the perfusion rate of the caudate nucleus

## SUMMARY

This chapter is an enumeration of substances occurring in the corpus striatum. The caudate nucleus and putamen have higher activities of enzymes which form and destroy acetylcholine and a higher concentration of dopamine than other parts of the brain. The caudate nucleus contains less serotonin than the limbic structures and hypothalamus and less  $\gamma$  aminobutyric acid than the diencephalon and the colliculi. The caudate nucleus contains less noradrenaline, adrenaline and histamine than other regions of the brain. The functions that the above substances may have in the corpus striatum are unknown.

The corpus striatum has a high rate of metabolism of the same order as the cerebral cortex. The activity of succinate dehydrogenase and the concentration of riboflavin is higher in corpus striatum than in other regions of the brain. Nucleic acid and free nucleotides and glycogen occur in higher concentrations in the cerebral cortex. The concentration of thiamine in the corpus striatum is lower than in the cerebellum.

Corpus striatum contains more iron and manganese than other brain regions but only moderate amounts of copper. Wilson's disease is associated with abnormal deposits of copper in all tissues; the deposit in the putamen is higher than in other regions of the brain.

Future studies may show whether the enzyme activities and the contents of the different substances are the same in 1) nuclei of the same histological structure as the caudate nucleus and putamen (p. 31) 2) Regions with different structure but with the same or closely related function as the caudate nucleus and the frontal neocortex in primates (p. 61).

tissues is increased with an especially marked increase in the putamen (Cumings 1948)

Copper intoxication in cats does not produce a syndrome resembling Wilson's disease. Copper injected intraventricularly was not selectively taken up in any brain region, neurons were destroyed and the cats became quadriplegic and died (Vogel and Evans 1961)

In guinea pigs on a copper rich diet increased serum copper concentrations were accompanied by increased concentrations in the globus pallidus and putamen only up to a certain level. The largest uptake was in the caudate nucleus and cerebellar cortex. Hypercupremia, induced by tranquilizers of the phenothiazine group, produced a greater uptake of copper than the same hypercupremia induced by a copper rich diet. Changes in the behavior of the animals were not reported (Holbrook 1961)

## 2 Iron

The globus pallidus and nucleus niger have the highest iron content in the brain (Spatz 1922). Corpus striatum in human *post mortem* material contains 55 mg iron in 100 g dried tissue, 5 mg/100 g is bound in hematin (10 mg/100 g fresh tissue, with a water content of 80 per cent is not bound in hematin). Globus pallidus contains 85 mg non hematin iron in 100 g dried tissue (22 mg/100 g fresh tissue water content 74 per cent Tingley 1937). Only one to two per cent of the iron in the brain is bound to the cytochromes (McIlwain 1959 p 101)

## 3 Manganese

Corpus striatum contains more manganese (0.53  $\mu\text{g/g}$  fresh tissue) than any other part of the brain and has more than double the concentration of the cerebral cortex. Manganese is a cofactor in certain metabolic reactions (for references see McIlwain 1959). Whether this can account for the distribution of manganese is not known.

Manganese poisoning has been claimed to produce extrapyramidal symptoms. The symptoms are stiff muscles, spastic gait, intention tremor, involuntary laughter and a mask-like face without sensory or mental changes apart from dullness of mind. The syndrome has been claimed to simulate each of the following states: Parkinson's disease, Wilson's disease, multiple sclerosis, epidemic encephalitis, mesencephalitis and carbon monoxide poisoning. In animals treated with manganese lesions can be found in all parts of the brain (for references see von Oettingen 1935). In a human lesions were most pronounced in the brain stem and the liver (Kober and Hanson 1918).

Table 2  
Autopsies after pallido-ansotomy in 23 patients

Number of lesions	Structures damaged in addition to the globus pallidus and nucleus subthalamicus	Rigidity and tremor diminished	Authors	Microscopic examination performed
1	None	Yes	Spiegel & Wycis 1958	+
1	None	Yes	Hausepian & Pool 1958	?
1	None	No	White McCarthy & Balin 1960	+
1	None	Yes	Smith 1962	0
1	Putamen	Yes	Smith 1962	0
1	Amygdala	Yes	Spiegel & Wycis 1958	0
1	Internal capsule	Yes	Bertrand Martinez, Poirier & Gauthier 1958	?
1	Internal capsule	Yes	Spiegel & Wycis 1958	0
1	Internal capsule	Yes	Guot et al. 1959	?
1	Internal capsule	No	Smith 1962	0
2	Internal capsule	Yes	Nørholm & Tystrup 1962	+
2	Internal capsule	No	Nørholm & Tystrup 1962	+
1	Internal capsule & thalamus	Yes	Nørholm & Tystrup 1962	+
2	Internal capsule & putamen	No	Nørholm & Tystrup 1962	+
1	Internal capsule putamen & thalamus	No	Smith 1962	0
1	Internal capsule & nucleus subthalamicus	No )	Bertrand 1958	+
1	Internal capsule thalamus & nucleus subthalamicus	No	Nørholm & Tystrup 1962	+
4	Internal capsule thalamus zona incerta & nucleus subthalamicus	Yes	Smith 1962	0
1	Internal capsule thalamus, zona incerta & nucleus subthalamicus	No	Smith 1962	0

) produced by lateral choreo-athetosis.



## Chapter 8

# PALLIDO-ANSOTOMY IN HUMANS

Lesions in the region of the globus pallidus alleviate rigidity and tremor in 60 to 80 per cent of patients with Parkinson's disease (*Guiot and Brion 1952, Narabayashi and Okuma 1953, Spiegel and Wycis 1954, Guiot et al 1959 Taarnhøj, Arnois and Donahue 1960, Bertrand and Martinez 1961, Broager and Nørholm 1961, Cooper 1961 Levin et al 1961*) Autopsy studies of these lesions may shed light on the pathophysiology of rigidity and tremor Not all neurons in the globus pallidus are degenerated in Parkinsonism (*Davison 1942*), and a functional deficit may result from pallidotomy Whether the surgical elimination of the remaining neurons is responsible for the subtle mental changes observed after operations for Parkinson's disease is unknown (*Riklan and Diller 1958 Riklan et al 1960 a b, Riklan 1961, Fortin Vanier and Boucher 1961*)

## A SITE OF LESIONS ALLEVIATING TREMOR AND RIGIDITY

Operations aimed at the globus pallidus and ansa lenticularis have been in use for only ten years and the death rate has been low

Autopsy studies of 23 brains with unilateral and two brains with bilateral lesions in the globus pallidus have been published and correlated with the effect on rigidity and tremor (Table 2) In most cases neighbouring structures were damaged in addition to the globus pallidus *Nørholm and Tygstrup (1962)* reported seven cases *Smith (1962)* nine cases The remaining publications concern one or two cases each The study by *Smith (1962)* is preliminary and the results of the microscopic examination are not yet available

Of lesions extending into the internal capsule three caused lasting hemiplegia, one was at a coronal level as far caudal as the red nucleus (*Smith 1962*), two in brains with far advanced disease and diffuse degeneration in the corpus striatum and brain stem (*Nørholm and Tygstrup 1962*)

Rigidity and tremor were reduced by lesions small or large located in widely scattered sites A histologically verified lesion confined to the

changes seemed to be present but were not statistically significant in the 51 patients investigated. The changes detected by the Rorschach test were described as follows (Riklan 1961) :—there is a suggestion of a slight continuing decline in the motivational aspects of intelligence for both groups (left and right sided operations) and a significant deficit in somatic or body efficiency for the right brain group. The personality pattern revealed no essential changes for the left brain group while those undergoing surgery for the right hemisphere tended to increase in emotional expansion but decrease in total productivity and in accuracy of perceptual structuring as compared with their preoperative functioning. Quantitative methods used for assessment of mental changes in animal studies may be adaptable to humans.

A detailed study of the mental effects of bilateral lesions is not yet available.

#### SUMMARY

A histologically verified lesion confined to the globus pallidus alleviated the rigidity and tremor of Parkinson's disease in one case and did not alleviate the symptoms in one. Lesions situated mainly in the internal capsule diminished rigidity and tremor without causing lasting hemiplegia. It has not been established whether the globus pallidus and its efferent connections or the corticospinal tract must be damaged to diminish rigidity and tremor. Subtle personality changes were reported after unilateral operations for Parkinsonism but apparently the changes were difficult to quantify. Investigation of the mental effects of bilateral lesions are not yet available.

globus pallidus in one case alleviated (*Spiegel and Wycis 1958*) and in a second case did not alleviate rigidity and tremor (*White, McCarthy and Balin 1960*) Hence it has not been established whether the globus pallidus and its efferent fibers (*Meyers 1942*), or the corticospinal tract, (*Bucy 1958, 1961*), or both must be destroyed to diminish rigidity and tremor That lesions in the internal capsule reduce rigidity and tremor without producing paralysis was anticipated by *Browder (1948)*, *Browder, Kaplan and Rabiner (1953)*, *Guiot et al (1959)*, *Mullan (1960)* and *Taarnhøj, Arnois and Donahue (1960)*

## B DEEP STIMULATION

Electrical stimulation through the electrode which is used subsequently to make the lesion helps to ensure reproducible results (*Walker 1957 Guiot et al 1959 Hassler et al 1960 Alberts et al 1961 Guiot 1961 Hausepian and Purpura 1963*) It may be difficult to determine where in the brain the tip of the electrode is situated The internal capsule cannot be used as a landmark Stimulation of many of its tracts cannot be expected to produce movements (cortical afferents interconnections between the cerebral cortex and the cerebellum and brain stem) and the topography of the tracts that produce movements is unknown The corticospinal tract is generally believed to be the most important motor tract However section of the medullary pyramids does not paralyse cats dogs monkeys and chimpanzees (p 16) Where in the internal capsule the corticospinal tract is situated is unsettled (*Hirayama et al 1962*)

The use of threshold stimuli (*Guiot et al 1959 Guiot 1961 Alberts et al 1961*) does not prevent spread of current it does not ensure that the electrode is at the site of the excited structure The threshold might be lower in a unexplored neighbouring position

## C. MENTAL CHANGES

In animals lesions in the corpus striatum produced changes in memory and emotion (p 63 66)

In most patients attention wanes when the lesion is placed (*Bertrand 1958*) According to *Fortin Vanier and Boucher (1961)* somnolence frequently occurs after the operation, presumably not due to medication *Cooper (1961)* reported somnolence mental confusion and dulling of the intellect lasting for a week in only 8 per cent of the patients The patient's families report that sleep occurs more easily and more frequently than before the operation (*Fortin et al 1961*) The immediate postoperative changes are most pronounced after bilateral lesions Psychological testing about 22 days after unilateral lesions showed a general decline in intellectual functioning 10 months later preoperative performance was regained (*Wechsler Bellevue Bender Gestalt, Barbeau Pinard, Fortin et al 1961, Riklan et al 1960 a b Riklan 1961*) Personality

pathophysiology of involuntary movements and rigidity and to speculations about the normal physiology of the striatal or extrapyramidal system. The corpus striatum was believed to inhibit brain regions directly concerned with movement. Abnormal involuntary movements were attributed to release from striatal inhibition. Autopsy findings were interpreted to indicate that the corpus striatum was a center of automatic and instinctive movements associated movements etc (Jacob 1923)

In the nineteen forties concepts of the function of the corpus striatum were again based on animal experiments. Inhibition of movements was elicited by stimulation through electrodes placed in the corpus striatum (Mettler et al 1939) and strychnine neuronography led Dusser de Barenne and McCulloch (1938) to suggest a suppressor circuit: area 4s → nucleus caudatus → globus pallidus → thalamus → area 4. These findings were consistent with clinicopathological conclusions and were the basis of new ideas about the mechanism of tremor and choreo-athetosis (Bucy 1942)

#### PRESENT CONCEPT

The idea of the suppressor circuit has been abandoned. The suppression described by Dusser de Barenne and McCulloch resembled the "spreading depression" of Leno (1944). Inhibition of movement is due to spread of current to the internal capsule in anesthetized (Peacock 1954) as well as in alert cats (Laurson 1962 b)

There is no anatomical evidence to indicate direct projections from the caudate nucleus to the cerebral cortex (Voneida 1960, S. Lado 1962). The results of electrical stimulation and recording have been interpreted to indicate direct and indirect connections between the caudate nucleus and cerebral cortex (for references see chapter 4). Precautions to detect spread of current to the structures surrounding the caudate nucleus indicate however that cortical responses to stimulation of the caudate nucleus are absent. Previous findings may be attributed to spread of current to either the corpus callosum, internal capsule or thalamus. Similarly, electrocortical arousal is absent after stimulation confined to the caudate nucleus. Corpus striatum is not a part of the reticular activating system (Laurson 1961 a b)

On the other hand there is anatomical evidence that the cerebral cortex projects to the corpus striatum and gross and single unit responses in the caudate nucleus are evoked by stimulation of the cortex (Albe Fessard et al 1960 a b, Laurson 1961 a)

Sensory stimuli of different modalities evoke gross and single unit responses in the corpus striatum (for references see chapter 5). Stimulation

## SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

### PREVIOUS CONCEPTS

Systematic investigation of the corpus striatum began with *Magendie* (1839). Neither he nor *Ferrier* (1876) distinguished between the grey substance of the caudate nucleus, putamen and globus pallidus and the white substance of the internal capsule. A contralateral paresis was produced when these structures were destroyed, stimulation elicited flexion movements of contralateral extremities. Bilateral ablation of the corpus striatum produced running forwards, running backwards occurred after ablation of the cerebellum.

The next period (1880-1910) was characterized by attempts to sort out the functions of the corpus striatum from those of the internal capsule. The main results were that movements could not be elicited by electrical stimulation of the caudate nucleus when the internal capsule had degenerated and that motor defects were absent after lesions confined to the caudate nucleus. Nor could effects on the autonomic nervous system which had been attributed to the corpus striatum be confirmed. Solely globus pallidus was believed to have motor function, since electrical stimulation of it evoked convulsions even when the internal capsule had degenerated (*Bechterew* 1909). Ideas about the function of the corpus striatum changed completely in the clinicopathological epoch initiated by *Cecile Vogt* (1911) and *Wilson* (1912). They described the syndrome of the corpus striatum characterized by involuntary movements and disturbances in muscle tone without defects in sensation and intelligence. Since the internal capsule (pyramidal tract) was intact in patients with the syndrome of the corpus striatum *Wilson* stated that it is unfortunate that there is no expression in common use to indicate extrapyramidal motor disease. However, matters were more complicated than originally assumed because regions outside the corpus striatum were damaged as well in cases resembling *Vogt's* and *Wilson's* syndrome in other respects. These different regions together with the corpus striatum were thought to be an interconnected, integrated motor system called the striatal system by *Vogt* and *Vogt* (1919-1920) and the extrapyramidal system by *Jacob* (1923).

The clinicopathological observations led to attempts to deduce the

## ■AMMENDRAG

### TIDLIGERE OPFATTELSE

De første systematiske undersøgelser af corpus striatum funktion blev foretaget af *Magendie* (1839) Hverken han eller *Ferrier* (1876) skelnede mellem den grå substans i nucleus caudatus putamen og globus pallidus og den hvide substans i capsula interna Ødelæggelse af disse strukturer lammede benene på den modsatte side af kroppen elektrisk stimulation af de samme strukturer fremkaldte bøjningsbevægelser af benene på modsat side Når corpus striatum på begge sider var fjernet løb dyret fremad løb baglæns kunne fremkaldes ved ødelæggelse af cerebellum

I den næste periode (1880–1910) forsøgte man at skelne mellem corpus striatum og capsula internas funktioner Det viste sig at bevægelser ikke kunne fremkaldes ved elektrisk stimulation af nucleus caudatus når capsula interna var degenereret samt at læsioner begrænsede til corpus striatum ikke fremkaldte ændringer i dyrenes bevægelser og adfærd Heller ikke virkninger på det autonome nervesystem som man tidligere havde tilskrevet corpus striatum kunne bekræftes kun globus pallidus blev af *Bechterew* (1909) anset for at have en motorisk funktion idet stimulation af denne kerne fremkaldte kramper selv når capsula interna var degenereret

Forestillingerne om corpus striatum funktion ændrede sig ganske i den klinisk patologiske epoke som blev indledt af *Cecile Vogt* (1911) og *Wilson* (1912) med beskrivelsen af corpus striatum syndromet. Dette syndrom var karakteriseret ved abnorme involuntære bevægelser og tonus forstyrrelser uden forstyrrelser af sensibilitet og intelligens Corpus striatum var degenereret og capsula interna ( tractus pyramidalis ) var intakt hos patienter med dette syndrom og *Wilson* erklærede "It is unfortunate that there is no expression in common use to indicate extrapyramidal motor disease" Sagen var imidlertid mere indviklet end man havde tænkt sig til at begynde med det viste sig at også områder udenfor corpus striatum var beskadigede i tilfælde som klinisk lignede det syndrom *Vogt* og *Wilson* havde beskrevet Disse forskellige områder blev sammen med corpus striatum opfattet som et system af indbyrdes forbundne strukturer med en fælles funktion *Vogt* og *Vogt* (1919 1920) indførte navnet det striære system *Jacob* (1923) navnet det extrapyramidale system

of the caudate nucleus evokes turning of the head to the contralateral side and running in circles as if the cat were searching for something. Stereotyped flexion movements of contralateral extremities, elicited through electrodes in the caudate nucleus, can be attributed to excitation of the internal capsule (*Laurson 1962 a*). In unanesthetized cats spinal root to root reflexes and spindle afferent discharges are enhanced by stimulation of the caudate nucleus and globus pallidus. Moderate doses of Nembutal® make the effect of stimulation inhibitory.

Lesions in the caudate nucleus reduce a monkey's ability to remember whether or not food is placed in a covered cup (*Battig Rosvold and Mishkin 1960*). Lesions in the globus pallidus produce rapid extinction of conditioned avoidance responses in cats at a time after the operation when retention of the response has returned to normal; this indicates diminished fear (*Laurson 1963*).

The function of the corpus striatum is on a high level of integration

modaliteter (referencer findes i kapitel 5) Stimulation af nucleus caudatus fremkalder hoveddrejning og løb i cirkler til modsat side som om katten ledte efter noget. Stereotype bøjningsbevægelser i modsidige ben kan også fremkaldes med en elektrode i nucleus caudatus men det skyldes stimulation af capsula interna (Laurson 1962 a) Hos ubedøvede katte faciliteres spinal reflexer og muskeltene ved stimulation af nucleus caudatus og globus pallidus Moderate doser Nembutal® gør virkningen af stimulationen inhibitorisk.

Læsioner i nucleus caudatus nedsætter en abes evne til at huske om mad er eller ikke er blevet anbragt i en tildækket kop (Battig Rosvold and Mishkin 1960) Efter læsioner i globus pallidus kan et betinget undvigelsessvar afbetinges hurtigere end hos normale katte Dette forekommer på et tidspunkt efter operationen hvor hukommelsen for undvigelsessvaret er normal Den hurtige afbetingning skyldes formentlig nedsat frygt hos katte med læsioner i globus pallidus (Laurson 1963)

Corpus striatum's funktion er således på et højt integrationsniveau



De klinisk-pathologiske iagttagelser førte til forsøg på at udlede rigtigheden og de abnorme, involuntære bevægelers pathofysiologi. Man antog at corpus striatum hæmmede de områder i hjernen som direkte havde at gøre med bevægelser, unormale, ufrivillige bevægelser kunne så forklares ved frigørelse fra 'striær hæmning'. Desuden spekulerede man over det 'striære' eller 'extrapyramidale' systems normale funktion, de klinisk pathologiske iagttagelser viste, mente man at corpus striatum var centrum for automatiske og instinktive bevægelser, medbevægelser etc (Jacob 1923).

I fyrretne blev dyreforsøg igen grundlaget for opfattelsen af corpus striatums funktion. Hæmning af bevægelser kunne udløses ved stimulation med elektroder placeret i corpus striatum (Mettler et al 1939) og på grundlag af forsøg med strychnin neuronografi foreslog Dusser de Barenne og McCulloch (1938) en suppressor kredsløb: area 4s → nucleus caudatus → globus pallidus → thalamus → area 4. Disse fund stemte med klinisk pathologiske konklusioner og førte til nye forestillinger om tremorens og choreo-athetosens pathofysiologi (Bucy 1942).

#### DEN NUVÆRENDE OPFATTELSE

Suppressor kredsløbet er forladt fordi 'suppression' i virkeligheden er transcortical 'spreading depression' (Leão 1944). Motorisk hæmning, udløst fra corpus striatum skyldes spredning af strøm til capsula interna i bedøvede (Peacock 1954) såvel som i vagne dyr (Laursen 1962b).

Anatomiske undersøgelser viser at nucleus caudatus ikke sender direkte forbindelser til cortex cerebri (Voneida 1960 Szabo 1962). Forsøg med elektrisk stimulation og registrering er blevet tydet som tegn på direkte og indirekte forbindelser mellem nucleus caudatus og cortex cerebri (referencer findes i kapitel 4). Forholdsregler som kan afsløre spredning af strøm til strukturer omkring nucleus caudatus har imidlertid vist at der ikke findes svar i cortex på stimulation af nucleus caudatus. Resultater af tidligere undersøgelser kan tilskrives spredning af strøm til corpus callosum, capsula interna eller thalamus. Tilsvarende kan aktivering af electrocorticogrammet ikke fremkaldes af stimulation begrænset til nucleus caudatus, corpus striatum er ikke en del af det reticulære aktiveringssystem (Laursen 1961 a, b).

Forbindelser fra cortex cerebri til corpus striatum er påvist i mange anatomiske undersøgelser. I overensstemmelse med dette svarer neuroner i nucleus caudatus på elektrisk stimulation af cortex cerebri (Albe Fessard et al 1960 b Laursen 1961 a).

Neuroner i corpus striatum svarer på sensorisk stimulation af forskellige

- Bard P and D McK. Ruch A study of four cats deprived of neocortex and additional portions of the forebrain *Bull Johns Hopk Hosp* 1937 60 73-147 (19 21)
- Bates J A V A comparison between movements produced by stimulation of the motor cortex and the internal capsule in the same individual *J Physiol (Lond)* 1954 123 49 P-50 P (73)
- Battig K H E Rosvold and M Mishkin Comparison of the effects of frontal and caudate lesions on delayed response and alternation in monkeys *J comp physiol Psychol* 1960 11 400-404 (63 80 83)
- Battig K H E Rosvold and M Mishkin Comparison of the effects of frontal and caudate lesions on discrimination learning in monkeys *J comp physiol Psychol* 1962 55 458-471 (63)
- Baxter C F and F Roberts Demonstration of thiosemicarbazide induced convulsions on rats with elevated brain levels of  $\gamma$  aminobutyric acid *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1960 104 426-427 (69)
- Beach F A Effects of lesions to corpus striatum upon spontaneous activity in the male rat *J Neurophysiol* 1941 4 191-195 (61)
- Beach F A Effects of forebrain injury upon mating behavior in male pigeons *Behaviour* 1952 4 36-59 (61)
- von Bechterew W *Die Funktionen der Nervencentra* Gustav Fischer Jena 1909 3 vols 2 vol Cit 11 1232-1255 (18 78 81)
- Bernsohn J K D Barron and A R Hess Multiple nature of acetylcholinesterase in nerve tissue *Nature (Lond)* 1962 195 785 286 (68)
- Bertler A Occurrence and localization of catechol amines in the human brain *Acta physiol Scand* 1961 51 97-107 (68 70)
- Bertler A and E Rosengren Occurrence and distribution of dopamine in brain and other tissues *Experientia (Basel)* 1959 15 10-11 (63)
- Bertrand C A pneumotoxic technique for producing localized cerebral lesions *J Neurosurg* 1958 15 251-264 (75 76)
- Bertrand C and N Martinez Basal ganglia versus cortico spinal tract lesions their relative importance in the relief of tremor and rigidity *Rev canad Biol* 1961 20 365-375 (74)
- Bertrand C S N Martinez L Poirier and C Gauthier Experimental studies and surgical treatment of extrapyramidal diseases W S Fields Pathogenesis and treatment of parkinsonism C C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1958 p 299-316 (75)
- Bielschowsky M Einige Bemerkungen zur normalen und pathologischen Histologie des Schweiß und Linsenhirne *J Psychol Neurol (Lpz)* 1919 25 1-11 (31)
- Bogdanski E F H Weissbach and S Udenfriend The distribution of serotonin 5 hydroxytryptophan decarboxylase and monoamine oxidase in brain *J Neurochem* 1957 1 277-278 (70)
- Bonhoeffer K Zur Auffassung der posthemiplegischen Bewegungsstörungen *Mischr Psychiat Neurol* 1901 10 383 393 (14)
- von Bonin G and G A Shariff Extrapyramidal nuclei among mammals *J comp Neurol* 1951 94 4 7-438 (37)
- Bonvallet M P Deil and A Hugelin Projections olfactives gustatives viscerales vagales visuelles et auditives au niveau des formations grises du cerveau antérieur du chat *J Physiol (Paris)* 1954 44 222-224 (58)
- Brady J V and D G Conrad Some Effects of limbic system self-stimulation upon conditioned emotional behavior *J comp physiol Psychol* 1960a 53 1 8-137 (61)
- Brady J V and D G Conrad Some effects of brain stimulation on timing behavior *J exp Anal Behav* 1960b 3 93-106 (63)
- Brady J V J J Boren D G Conrad and M Sidman The effect of food and water deprivation upon intracranial self stimulation *J comp physiol Psychol* 1957 50 134-137 (62)

## REFERENCES

The authors are quoted on the pages indicated in brackets. Journals are abbreviated according to World Medical Periodicals 3ed World med Ass N Y 1961

- Abood L G F Rinaldi and V Eagleton Distribution of piperidine in the brain and its possible significance in behavior *Nature* (Lond) 1961 191 201-202 (70)
- Adam H H Histamine in the central nervous system and hypophysis of the dog *Regional neurochemistry* p 293-306 Pergamon press Oxford London N Y Paris 1961 (69 70)
- Akert K Zur Funktion des Nucleus caudatus experimentell physiologischer Beitrag *Schweiz Arch Neurol Psychiat* 1952 68 394-396 (26)
- Akert K and B Andersson Experimenteller Beitrag zur Physiologie des Nucleus caudatus *Acta physiol Scand* 1951 22 281-298 (26 29)
- Albe Fessard D E Oswaldo Crus and C Rocha Miranda Activites évoquées dans le noyau caudé du chat en reponse a des types divers d'afferences I Etude macrophysiologique *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1960 a 12 405-420 (56 58 59)
- Albe Fessard D C Rocha Miranda and E Oswaldo Crus Activites évoquées dans le noyau caudé du chat en reponse a des types divers d'afferences II Etude microphysiologique *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1960 b 12 649-661 (56 59 79 82)
- Alberts W W E W Wright G Levin B Feinstein and M Mueller Threshold stimulation of the lateral thalamus and globus pallidus in the waking human *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1961 13 68-74 (76)
- Andersen V O and A M Laursen Automatic transport device for microelectrodes *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1959 11 172-173 (59)
- Alzheimer A Über die anatomische Grundlage der Huntingtonschen Chorea und der choreatischen Bewegungen überhaupt *Z ges Neurol Psychiat* 1911 3 566-567 (13)
- Anton G Über die Beteiligung der grossen basalen Gehirnganglien bei Bewegungsstörungen und insbesondere bei Chorea *Jb Psychiat* 1896 14 141-181 (13 14)
- Ashizawa R and F H Lewy Folgen isolierter Reizung und Ausschaltung des Streifenkugelhauptes bei der Katze *Z ges exp Med* 1929 66 157-170 (19)
- Axelrod J W Albers and C D Clemente Distribution of catechol O methyl transferase in the nervous system and other tissues *J Neurochem* 1959 5 68-72 (69)
- Barbeau A Preliminary observations on abnormal catecholamine metabolism in basal ganglia disease *Neurology* (Minneapolis) 1960 10 446-451 (69)
- Barbeau A Dopamine and basal ganglia disease *Arch Neurol* (Chic) 1961 4 97-102 (69)
- Barbeau A and T L Sourkes Some biochemical aspects of extrapyramidal diseases *Rev canad Biol* 1961 20 197-206 (69)
- Barbeau A G F Murphy and T L Sourkes Excretion of dopamine in diseases of basal ganglia *Science* 1961 133 1706-1707 (69)

- Cannon B W H W Magoun and W F Windle Paralysis with hypotonicity and hyperreflexia subsequent to section of basis pedunculi in monkeys *J Neurophysiol* 1944 7 425-437 (16)
- Carpenter C ■ Psychobiological studies of social behavior in Aves I The effect of complete and incomplete gonadectomy on the primary sexual activity of the male pigeon *J comp Psychol* 1933 16 25-96 (61)
- Carpenter M B A study of the red nucleus in the rhesus monkey Anatomic degenerations and physiologic effects resulting from localized lesions of the red nucleus *J comp Neurol* 1956 105 195-250 (40)
- Cartwright, G E R E Hodges C J Gubler J P Mahoney K Daum M M Wintrobe and W ■ Bean Studies on copper metabolism XIII Hepatolenticular degeneration *J clin Invest* 1954 33 1487-1501 (71)
- Charcot, J M *Lectures on the diseases of the nervous system* The new sydenham society London 1877 vol 72 cit p 254 (13)
- Chesler A and H E Himwich The glycogen content of various parts of the central nervous system of dogs and cats at different ages *Arch Biochem* 1943 2 175-181 (71)
- Chesler A and H E Himwich Glycolysis in the parts of the central nervous system of cats and dogs during growth *Amer J Physiol* 1944 142 544-549 (70)
- Cooper I S Parkinsonism *Its medical and surgical therapy* C C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1961 1 vol cit p 112 (74 76)
- Cordeau J P Microelectrode studies in monkeys with a postural tremor *Rev canad Biol* 1961 20 147-157 (55)
- Courville C ■ Asphyxia as a consequence of nitrous oxide anesthesia. *Medicine* 1936 15 129-245 (71)
- Courville C B Contributions to the study of cerebral anoxia *San Lucas Press* Los Angeles 1953 1 vol cit p 100-105 (71)
- Cowan W M and T P S Powell The projection of the midline and intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus of the rabbit *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiat* 1955 18 266-279 (36)
- van Crevel H *The rate of secondary degeneration in the central nervous system* Diss Leiden 1958 Cit. p 63 (16)
- Cumings, J N The copper and iron content of brain and liver in the normal and in hepato-lenticular degeneration *Brain* 1948 71 410-415 (71 72)
- Curtis D R and R M Eccles The excitation of Renshaw cells by pharmacological agents. *J Physiol (Lond)* 1958 141 435-445 (67)
- Curtis D R and J W Phillis Gamma amino-n butyric acid and spinal synaptic transmission *Nature (Lond)* 1958 182 323 only (70)
- Curtis D R J W Phillis and J C Watkins The depression of spinal neurones by  $\gamma$  amino-n butyric acid and  $\beta$  alanine *J Physiol (Lond)* 1959 146 185-203 (70)
- Curtis, D ■ J W Phillis and J C Watkins The chemical excitation of spinal neurones by certain acidic amino acids *J Physiol (Lond)* 1960 150 656-682 (70)
- Davis, ■ D Caudate lesions and spontaneous locomotion in the monkey *Neurology (Minneapolis)* 1958 8 135-139 (61)
- Davison C The role of the globus pallidus and substantia nigra in the production of rigidity and tremor *Res Publ Ass nerv ment Dis* 1942 ■ 267-333 (74)
- Davison C and S P Goodhart Monochorea and somatotopic localization *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1940 43 792-803 (24)
- Dean W ■ and ■ D Davi Behavior changes following caudate lesions in rhesus monkey *J Neurophysiol* 1959 22 524-537 (61 63)
- Delgado J M R ■ E Rosvold and E Looney Evoking conditioned fear by

- Brazier M A and J S Barlow Correlation analysis of depth recordings from the basal ganglia *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1957 9 171 only (54)
- Bremer F and N Stoupe Facilitation et inhibition des potentiels évoqués corticaux dans l'éveil cérébral *Arch int Physiol Biochem* 1959 67 240-275 (50)
- Broager B and T Nørholm Chemopallidotomy and chemothalamotomy in Parkinson's disease *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiat* 1961 24 297-298 (74)
- Browder J Section of the fibres of the anterior limb of the internal capsule in parkinsonism *Amer J Surg* 1948 75 264-268 (76)
- Browder J H A Kaplan and A M Rabiner The capsular operation for parkinsonism Attendant functional changes *Ann Surg* 1953 138 502-508 (76)
- Brown M H Effects of cortical and striatal lesions on motor performance in macaques *Yale J Biol Med* 1939 12 79-95 (19)
- Buchthal F and J Lindhard Direct application of acetylcholine to motor end plates of voluntary muscle *J Physiol (Lond)* 1937 90 82 P-83 P (27 47)
- Buchthal F C Guld and P Rosenfalck Propagation velocity of electrically activated muscle fibers in man *Acta physiol Scand* 1955 34 75-89 (44)
- Buchwald N A and F R Ervin Evoked potentials and behavior A study of responses to subcortical stimulation in the awake unrestrained animal *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1957 9 477-496 (23 26 29 53)
- Buchwald N A G Heuser E J Wyers and C W Lauprecht The caudate spindle III Inhibition by high frequency stimulation of subcortical structures *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1961 a 13 525-530 (46)
- Buchwald N A E J Wyers C W Lauprecht and G Heuser The caudate spindle IV A behavioral index of caudate induced inhibition *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1961 b 13 531-537 (26 27 47)
- Buchwald N A E J Wyers J Carlin and R E Farley Effects of caudate stimulation on visual discrimination *Exp Neurol* 1961 c 4 23-36 (64)
- Buchwald N A E Rakic E J Wyers C Hull and G Heuser Integration of visual II Electrophysiological properties *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1961 d 13 509-518 (47 52)
- Buchwald N A E Rakic E J Wyers C Hull and G Heuser Integration of visual impulses and the caudate loop *Exp Neurol* 1962 5 1-20 (50)
- Bucy P C The neural mechanisms of athetosis and tremor *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 1942 1 224-239 (19 20 79 82)
- Bucy P C Is there a pyramidal tract? *Brain* 1957 80 376-392 (16)
- Bucy P C The cortico spinal tract and tremor W S Fields *Pathogenesis and treatment of parkinsonism* C C Thomas Springfield Illinois 1958 p 271-293 (76)
- Bucy P C Parkinsonism and its treatment *Rev canad Biol* 1961 20 335-343 (76)
- Bucy P C and J E Keplinger Section of the cerebral peduncles *Arch Neurol (Chic)* 1961 5 132-139 (16)
- Burandt D C G M French and B Akert Relationships between the caudate nucleus and the frontal cortex in Macaca Mulatta *Confin neurol (Basel)* 1961 21 289-306 (34 45)
- Burgen A S V and L M Chipman Cholinesterase and succinic dehydrogenase in the central nervous system of the dog *J Physiol (Lond)* 1951 114 295-305 (68 71)
- Buser P H Encabo and P Borenstein Action suppressive du noyau caudé sur la reactivité réflexe du système pyramidal chez le chat *C R Acad Sci (Paris)* 1961 253 538-540 (53)
- Burgi S and V M Bucher Markhaltige Faserverbindungen im Hirnstamm der Katze *Monogr ges Neurol Psychiat* Springer Verlag Berlin Göttingen Heidelberg 1960 Heft 87 1-127 cit p 73-79 (36 40)
- Cajal S Ramon y *Histologie du système nerveux de l'homme et des vertébrés* Maloine Paris 1909-II 2 vols cit vol 2 p 504-515 (31 32 33 34)

- Ferro Milone F E Foresto and A G B Lusso Contributo sperimentale alla fisiologia del corpo striato (II Nucleo caudato) *Neurone* 1953 1 336-338 (53)
- Ferro Milone F A G B Lusso and C Terzuolo Contributo sperimentale alla fisiologia del corpo striato (I Nucleo caudato) *Minerva med* (Torino) 1953 a 19 255-259 (42)
- Ferro Milone F A G B Lusso and C Terzuolo Un ipotesi sul meccanismo dell'azione striata nei riguardi dell'attività elettrica cerebrale *Neurone* 1953 b 1 333-336 (42 53)
- Florey J (Ed) *Nervous Inhibition Proc of the sec Friday Harbor Symposium* Pergamon press Oxford London N Y Paris 1961 1 vol III 1-475 (69)
- Foerster O Zur Analyse und Pathophysiologie der striären Bewegungsstörungen *Z ges Neurol Psychiat* 1921 73 1-169 (14)
- Forel A Untersuchungen über die Haubenregion und ihre oberen Verknüpfungen im Gehirn des Menschen und einiger Säugetiere mit Beiträgen zu den Methoden der Gehirnuntersuchung *Arch Psychiat Nervenkr* 1877 7 393-495 (32)
- Forman D and J W Ward Responses to electrical stimulation of caudate nucleus in cats in chronic experiments *J Neurophysiol* 1957 20 230-244 (23 24 26)
- Fortin J N N Vanier and P Boucher Psychological and social aspects of Parkinsonians before and after surgery *Rev canad Biol* 1961 20 297-304 (74 76)
- Fox S and J H O'Brien Inhibition and facilitation of afferent information by the caudate nucleus *Science* 1962 137 473-475 (50)
- Franck M Francois and M Pires Resultats d'expériences sur l'excitabilité de noyau intra ventriculaire du corps strié et sur l'excitabilité de la capsule interne *C R Soc Biol (Paris)* 1878 30 34-35 (18)
- Freeman G L and L Krasno Inhibitory function of the corpus striatum *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1940 44 323-327 (6)
- Freeman W and J W W Watts Retrograde degeneration of the thalamus following prefrontal lobotomy *J comp Neurol* 1947 86 65-93 (37)
- French G M Locomotor effect of regional ablations of frontal cortex in rhesus monkeys *J comp physiol Psychol* 1959 52 18-24 (61)
- Gaddum J H Push pull cannulae *J Physiol (Lond)* 1961 155 1 P-2 P (68)
- Calambos R Some neural correlates of conditioning and learning *Electrical studies on the unanesthetized brain* Paul B Hoeber Inc N Y 1960 1 vol Chapter 6 III 170-182 (58)
- Garol H W and W S McCulloch Physiological neuronography of some cortico-subcortical connections in the chimpanzee *J Neurophysiol* 1944 7 199 (45 55 56)
- Gauthier C M Parma and A Zanchetti Effect of electrocortical arousal upon development and configuration of specific evoked potentials *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1956 8 237-243 (50)
- Gerebizoff M A Contribution à la physiologie du corps strié *Arch int Physiol* 1941 51 333-352 (26 47)
- Gerebizoff M A *Cholinesterases A histochemical contribution to the solution of some functional problems* Pergamon London N Y Paris L A International series of monographs on pure and applied biology Modern trends in physiological sciences 1919 3 1-195 cit III 97 (67)
- Glees P The anatomical basis of cortico-striate connexions *J Anat (Lond)* 1944 III 4 4-51 (34 38 41)
- Glees P The interrelation of the strio-pallidum and the thalamus in the macaque monkey *Br J* 1945 68 331-346 (34 38 39)
- Glees P and P D Wall Fibre connections of the subthalamic region and the centro-median nucleus of the thalamus *Brain* 1946 69 195-208 (39)
- Glik V Translated title *On the problem of the electrical excitability of the brain* D ss Moscow 1876 Cit p 21 121 (18)

- electrical stimulation of subcortical structures in the monkey brain *J comp physiol Psychol* 1956 49 373-380 (63)
- Delmat Marsalet V A P *Contribution experimentale a l'etude des fonctions du noyau caude* These de l'Universite de Bordeaux (20 23)
- Demetrescu M and M Demetrescu Kortikale Beziehungen zwischen der aktivieren den Wirkung des diffusen Thalamussystems und der hemmenden Wirkung des Nucleus caudatus *Rev Sci med (Buc)* 1960 5 139-143 (42 46 50)
- Demetrescu M and M Demetrescu The functional balance between the diffuse thalamus and the nucleus caudatus *Rum med Rev* 1961 5 132-141 (50)
- Demetrescu M and M Demetrescu The inhibitory action of the caudate nucleus in cortical primary receiving areas in the cat *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1962 14 37-52 (50)
- Denny Brown D *The basal ganglia* Oxford Neurological monographs Oxford Univ Press London 1962 1 vol cit p 105-118 (13 21 22)
- Dreyfus P M The quantitative histochemical distribution of thiamine in normal rat brain *J Neurochem* 1959 4 183-190 (71)
- Droogleever Fortuyn J and R Stefens On the anatomical relations of the intra laminar and midline cells of the thalamus *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1951 3 393-400 (36)
- Dumont S and P Dell Facilitations specifiques et non specifiques des reponses visuelles corticales *J Physiol (Paris)* 1958 50 261-264 (50)
- Dusser de Barenne J G and W S McCulloch Sensorimotor cortex nucleus caudatus and thalamus opticus *J Neurophysiol* 1938 1 364-377 (19 20 33 45 79 82)
- Dusser de Barenne J G H W Garol and W S McCulloch Physiological neurography of the cortico striatal connections *Res Publ Ass nerv ment Dis* 1942 21 246-266 (45 55)
- Eccles J C *The neurophysiological basis of mind The principles of neurophysiology* Oxford University press N Y 1953 1 vol cit p 143 166 (67)
- Eccles J C *The physiology of nerve cells* The Johns Hopkins Press Baltimore 1957 1 vol cit p 180-181 (67)
- Eccles J C The mechanism of synaptic transmission *Ergebn Physiol* 1961 51 300-430 (70)
- Eccles J C P Fatt and K Koketsu Cholinergic and inhibitory synapses in a pathway from motor axon collaterals to motoneurons *J Physiol (Lond)* 1954 126 524-562 (67)
- von Economo K Beitrag zur Kasuistik und zur Erklärung der posthemiplegischen Chorea *Wien klin Wschr* 1910 23 429-431 (14)
- Edinger L *Vorlesungen über den Bau der nervösen Zentralorgane des Menschen und der Tiere* F C W Vogel Leipzig 1911 2 vols cit vol 1 p 406 (32)
- Edwards D J and H J Baggs Lesions of the corpus striatum by radium emanation tubes and the accompanying structural and functional changes *Amer J Physiol* 1923 65 162-173 (19)
- Eldred E R Grant and P A Merton Supraspinal control of the muscle spindles and its significance *J Physiol (Lond)* 1953 122 498-523 (28)
- Elliot K A C and H H Jasper Gamma aminobutyric acid *Physiol Rev* 1959 39 383-406 (67)
- Estes W K and B F Skinner Some quantitative properties of anxiety *J exp Psychol* 1941 29 390-400 (63)
- Favale E C Loeb C F Rossi and G Sacco EEG synchronization and behavioral signs of sleep following low frequency stimulation of the brain stem reticular formation *Arch Ital Biol* 1961 99 1-22 (27)
- Feldberg W and M Vogt Acetylcholine synthesis in different regions of the central nervous system *J Physiol (Lond)* 1948 107 372-381 (68)
- Fernier David *The functions of the brain* Smith Elder & Co London 1876 1 vol cit p 161-237 (13 18 32 78 81)

- cortical ablation release disorientation metabolic disturbance *Fed Proc* 1947 6 126 only (22)
- Hebb C O and A. Silver Choline acetylase in the central nervous system of man and some other mammals *J Physiol (Lond)* 1956 134 718-728 (68)
- Hendley C II and R. Hodes Effects of lesions on subcortically evoked movements in the cat *J Neurophysiol* 1953 16 587-594 (24)
- Hess W R Stammganglien-Keuzersuche Vortr Deutsche Physiol Ges / Bonn 1927 *Ber ges Physiol* 1928 42 554-555 (26 27)
- Hess W R *Die funktionelle Organisation des vegetativen Nervensystems* Schwabe & Co Basel 1948 1 vol cit p 134 (27)
- Heuser G N A Buchwald and E J Wyers The Caudate spindle II Facilitation and inhibitory caudate-cortical pathways *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1961 13 519-524 (42 47)
- Hiddema, F and J Drogolever Fortuyn The projection of the intermediary nuclear system of the thalamus and the paratenial and the paraventricular nucleus in the rat *Psychiat Neurol Neurochir (Amst)* 1960 63 8-16 (36 37 38)
- Hunwisch H E and J F Fazekas Comparative studies of the metabolism of the brain of infant and adult dogs *Amer J Physiol* 1941 132 454-459 (70)
- Humman A and M B Carpenter Efferent fiber projections of the red nucleus in the cat *J comp Neurol* 1959 113 61-82 (40)
- Hurayama K, T Tsubaki Y Toyokura and S Okinaka The representation of the pyramidal tract in the internal capsule and basis pedunculi *Neurology (Minneapolis)* 1962 12 337-342 (76)
- Hodes R S M Peacock Jr and E G Heath Influence of forebrain on somatomotor activity I Inhibition *J comp Neurol* 1951 94 381-408 (26)
- Holbrook, J R Effect of alterations in serum copper levels upon the liver basal ganglia and cerebellar cortex in the guinea pig *J Neurochem* 1961 7 60-68 (71 72)
- Holmes G M The nervous system of a dog without a forebrain *J Physiol (Lond)* 1901 27 1-25 (32)
- Holtz P and E Westermann Über die Dopadecarboxylase und Histidindecaboxylase des Nervengewebes *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch exp Pathol Pharmacol* 1956 227 538-546 (69)
- Honegger C G and R Honegger Volatile amines in the brain *Nature (Lond)* 1960 185 530-532 (70)
- Horde C A and F A Mettler Distant electrical potentials evoked by stimulation of the putamen *Anal Rec* 1953 115 324-325 (52)
- Hunter J and H H Jasper Effects of thalamic stimulation in unanesthetized animals *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1919 1 305-324 (26 27)
- Igarasi Y Über die Faserbindung des vorderen Teiles der lateralen Grosshirnhemisphärenfläche bei der Ziege *Morp Jb* 1940 84 108-153 (34)
- Jackson J Hughlings The Croonian Lectures on evolution and dissolution of the nervous system *Brit med J* 1884 p 591-593 (14)
- Jacob A Die Extrapyramidalen Erkrankungen *Monogr ges Neurol Psychiat* 1923 37 1-419 (11 15 16 78 79 81 82)
- Jacob A The anatomy clinical syndromes and physiology of the extrapyramidal system *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1925 13 596-620 (15)
- Jacob H Sekundäre retrograde und transsynaptische Degeneration *Handbuch der speziellen pathologischen Anatomie und Histologie* Springer Verlag Berlin 1957 13 vols cit vol 13 part 1 A p 1070 (39)
- Jacobsen C F Studies in cerebral function in primates I The function of the frontal association areas in monkeys *Comp Psychol Monogr* 1936 13 no 63 3-60 (63)
- Johnson T N Fiber connections between the dorsal thalamus and corpus striatum in the cat *Exp Neurol* 1961 3 556-569 (33 36 38)
- Johnson T N and C D Clemente An experimental study of the fiber connections



- Gloor P Amygdala *Handbook of Physiology* Vol II Chapter 57, p 1395-1420  
Amer Physiol Soc Washington D C 1960 (26)
- Goldring S Anthony L U Stohr P E and J L O'Leary Caudate-induced  
cortical potentials: comparison between monkey and cat *Science* 1963 139  
772 only (45 47)
- Goldstein M A J Friedhoff and C Simmons Metabolic pathways of 3 hydroxy  
tyramine *Biochim biophys Acta* (Amst) 1959 33 572-574 (69)
- Gowers W R *Lectures on the diagnosis of diseases of the brain* J and A  
Churchill London 1887 1 vol 2nd ed cit p 38 182 (13 32)
- Granit R and B Kaada Influence of stimulation of central nervous structures on  
muscle spindles in cat *Acta physiol Scand* 1953 27 130-160 (28)
- Green J C and A A Arduini Hippocampal electrical activity in arousal *J*  
*Neurophysiol* 1954 17 533-557 (43)
- Greenfield J G The anatomopathology of the extrapyramidal system *Premier*  
*congres international des sciences neurologique* Bruxelles 1957 vol I p  
39-48 (15)
- Grinker R R and P C Bucy *Neurology* C C Thomas Springfield Illinois  
1951 1 vol 4th ed cit p 296 (13)
- Guiot G Renseignement fournis par la stimulation électrique au cours de la  
chirurgie stéréotaxique des dyskinésies *Rev canad Biol* 1961 20 359-363  
(76)
- Guiot G and S Brion Traitement neuro chirurgical des syndromes choréo athé  
tosiques et parkinsoniens *Sem Hop Paris* 1952 28 2095-2099 (74)
- Guiot G M Sachs E Hertzog S Brion J Rougere J C Dalloz and F  
Napoleone Stimulation électrique et lésions chirurgicales de la capsule interne  
*Neuro chirurgie* 1959 5 17-42 (74 75 76)
- Guld C The reduction of stimulus interference in electrophysiology *Proc 3 Int*  
*Conf Med Electronics* 1961 1 103-105 (44 45)
- Harman P J and H B Carpenter Volumetric comparisons of the basal ganglia  
of various primates including man *J comp Neurol* 1950 93 125-137 (37)
- Harman P J M Tankard C A Hovde and F A Mettler An experimental  
anatomical analysis of the topography and polarity of the caudate neocortex  
interrelationship in the primate *Anat Rec* 1954 118 307-308 (34)
- Hassler R Über die Rinden und Stammhirnanteile des menschlichen Thalamus  
*Psychiat Neurol med Psychol* (Lpz) 1949 1 181-187 (35 37 41)
- Hassler R Die zentralen Apparate der Wendebewegungen I Ipsiversive Wendun  
gen durch Reizung einer direkten vestibulo-thalamischen Bahn im Hirnstamm  
der Katze *Arch Psychiat Nervenkr* 1956 194 456-480 (23)
- Hassler R T Reichert F Mundinger W Umbach and J A Ganglberger Phys  
iological observations in stereotaxic operations in extrapyramidal motor disturb  
ances *Brain* 1960 83 337-350 (54 76)
- Hausepian E M and J L Pool An evaluation of pallido ansal surgery W S  
Fields *Pathogenesis and treatment of parkinsonism* C C Thomas Spring  
field Illinois 1958 1 vol p 317-324 (75)
- Hausepian E M and D P Purpura Electrophysiological studies of subcortical  
cortical relations in man *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1963 15 20-28  
(47)
- Hayashi T *Neurophysiology and neurochemistry of convulsion* Daihichi Tosho  
Co Ltd Tokyo 1959 1 vol cit p 118 (28)
- Haynes R A R Meyers and J R Knott Characteristics of the electrical activity  
of the human corpus striatum and neighbouring structures *J Neurophysiol*  
1949 12 185-195 (54)
- Heath R G and R Hodes Induction of sleep by stimulation of the caudate nucleus  
in Macacus rhesus and man *Trans Amer Neurol Ass* 1952 77 204-210  
(27)
- Heath R G D A Freedman and F A Mettler Striatal removal without previous

- Kornyei S *Histopathologie und klinische Symptomatologie der anoxisch vasalen Hirnschädigungen* Akademiai Kiado Budapest 2 Aufl 1955 I vol Cit p 83-85 (71)
- Laursen A M An experimental study of pathways from the basal ganglia *J comp Neurol* 1955 102 1-26 (34 38 39 40)
- Laursen A M Electrical signs of the relation between caudate nucleus and cerebral cortex in cats *Acta physiol Scand* 1961 a 53 218-232 (35 44 45 46 47 55 56 79 82)
- Laursen A M Caudate nucleus and electrocortical activation in cats *Acta physiol Scand* 1961 b 53 233-238 (35 79 82)
- Laursen A M Movements evoked from the region of the caudate nucleus in cats *Acta physiol Scand* 1962 a 54 175-184 (21 23 24 25 29 III 83)
- Laursen A M Inhibition evoked from the region of the caudate nucleus in cats *Acta physiol Scand* 1962 b 54 185-190 (26 27 53 79 82)
- Laursen A M Conditioned avoidance behavior of cats with pallidal lesions *Dan Med Bull* 1962 c 9 21-22 (21 29 64)
- Laursen A M Conditioned avoidance behavior of cats with lesions in globus pallidus *Acta physiol Scand* 1963 57 81-89 (21 29 64 80 83)
- Leao A A P Spreading depression of activity in the cerebral cortex *J Neurophysiol* 1944 7 359-390 (20 79 82)
- Leeman H and E Pichler Über Lactoflavinegehalt und Gewebsatmung im Gehirn *Klin Wschr* 1941 20 36-40 (70 71)
- Le Gros Clark W E and R H Boggon On the connections of the medial cell groups of the thalamus *Brain* 1933 56 83-98 (37)
- Lehman D M Koukkou and R Spehlmann Neuronal effects of caudate stimulation in the visual cortex *Proc internat union physiol sci* Leiden 1962 vol 2 Abstr 1099 (52)
- Levin G B Feinstein E J Kreul W W Alberts and E W Wright Jr Stereotaxic surgery for Parkinsonism A method of evaluation and clinical results *J Neurosurg* 1961 III 210-216 (74)
- Levine R H F Retzlaff H Handa and K Till Electrical identification of certain nuclei and fiber tracts in brain of cat *J Neurophysiol* 1958 21 138-147 (54)
- Levy A., M Monnier and P Krupp Elektrophysiologische Analyse funktioneller Verbindungen zwischen den Hauptstrukturen des extrapyramidalen Systems *Confin neurol* (Basel) 1949 19 334-348 (53)
- Lewy F H Zur pathologisch anatomischen Differentialdiagnose der Paralysis agitans und der Huntington'schen Chorea *Z ges Neurol Psychiat* 1921 73 170-187 (15)
- Li C L C Cullen and H H Jasper Laminar microelectrode analysis of cortical unspecific recruiting responses and spontaneous rhythms *J Neurophysiol* 1956 III 131-143 (46)
- Liddell E G T and C G Phillips Experimental lesions in the basal ganglia of the cat *Brain* 1940 III 264-274 (21 60 61)
- Liddell E G T and C G Phillips Striatal and pyramidal lesions in the cat *Brain* 1946 69 264-279 (21)
- MacIntosh I C The distribution of acetylcholine in the peripheral and the central nervous system *J Physiol (Lond)* 1941 99 436-442 (68)
- Machne X La funzione inibitrice del neostriato negli ucelli *Arch Sci biol* (Bologna) 1952 36 1-9 (26)
- Mandel P S Hart and T Borkowski Metabolism of the nucleic acids in various zones of the brain *Regional Neurochemistry* Pergamon Press Oxford London N Y Paris 1961 I vol p 160-174 (71)
- Magendie M *Leçons sur les fonctions et les maladies du système nerveux* Chez Erhard Libraire Editeur Paris 1839 2 vols cit. vol 1 p 217 248 280 (11 18 78 81)
- Magnes J G Moruzzi and D Pompeiano Synchronization of the EEG produced

- between the putamen globus pallidus ventral thalamus and midbrain tegmentum in cat *J comp Neurol* 1959 113 83-101 (33 35 38 39 40)
- Jung R and R Hassler The extrapyramidal motor system *Handbook of physiology* Amer Physiol Soc Washington D C 1960 cit vol 2 chapter 35 p 863-927 (13 16 17 43)
- Jung R and A E Kornmüller Eine Methodik der Ableitung lokalisierter Potentialschwankungen aus subkortikalen Hirngebieten *Arch Psychiat Nervenkr* 1939 109 1-30 (53 54)
- Jung R and J R Tonnies Hirnelektrische Untersuchungen über Entstehung und Erhaltung von Krampfentladungen Die Vorgänge am Reizort und die Bremsfähigkeit des Gehirns *Arch Psychiat Nervenkr* 1950 185 701-735 (44 46 52 56)
- Kaada B R Somato motor autonomic and electrocorticographic responses to electrical stimulation of rhinencephalic and other structures in primates cat and dog *Acta physiol Scand* 1951 (Suppl 83) 24 1-285 cit p 101-110 (27)
- Kahler O and A Pick Beiträge zur Pathologie und pathologischen Anatomie des Centralnervensystems *Vjschr prakt Heilk* 1879 1 1-86 2 1-101 (14)
- Kennard M A Electroencephalogram of decorticate monkeys *J Neurophysiol* 1943 6 233-242 (53)
- Kennard M A Experimental analysis of the functions of the basal ganglia in monkeys and chimpanzees *J Neurophysiol* 1944 7 127-149 (21 22 24 60)
- Kennard M A and L F Nims Effect on electroencephalogram of lesions of cerebral cortex and basal ganglia in Macaca Mulatta *J Neurophysiol* 1942 5 335-348 (43)
- Kennard M A S Spencer and G Fountain Hyperactivity in monkeys following lesions of the frontal lobes *J Neurophysiol* 1941 4 512-524 (61)
- Kety S S and J Elkes (Eds) Regional neurochemistry *Proc of the 4 internat neurochem symp* Pergamon Press Oxford London N Y Paris 1961 1 vol p 1-540 (67)
- Kimmel L D Nigrostriatal fibers in the cat *Anat Rec* 1942 82 425 only (39)
- Klee M R and H O Lux Intracellular records of motor cortex units during stimulation of the caudatum *Proc internat union physiol sci* Leiden 1962 vol II Abstr no 1047 (52)
- Kleist K Zur Auffassung der subkortikalen Bewegungsstörungen *Arch Psychiat Nervenkr* 1918 59 790-803 (14 15)
- Klovoski B N and N S Volzhina The growth and behavior of puppies with an intact cerebral cortex after extirpation of the basal ganglia (caudate nuclei) *Origin Arkh Patol* 1956 18 35-42 Abstr 162 in *Wild Med* 1957 21 48 only (60)
- Knott J R W R Ingram and R E Correll Some effects of subcortical stimulation on the bar press response *Arch Neurol* 1960 2 130-138 (27)
- Kober G M and W C Hanson *Diseases of occupation and vocational hygiene* William Heinemann (Medical Books) Ltd London 1918 1 vol cit p 122 (72)
- Kodama S Über die sogenannten Basalganglien und ihre Adnexe (Morphogenetisch und pathologisch anatomische Untersuchungen) *Schweiz Arch Neur Psychiat* 1929 23 38-100 179-265 (33 34 39)
- Koelliker A *Handbuch der Gewebelehre des Menschen* Engelmann Lpz 8 Aufl 1896 2 vols cit 2nd vol p 617 (32)
- Krauthamer G and D Albe Fessard Inhibition d'activités évoquées corticales et sous corticales par la stimulation des noyaux de la base et des régions limitrophes de la capsule interne *C R Soc Biol (Paris)* 1961 155 1443-1450 (50 51)
- Kuntzman R I A Shore D Bogdanski and B H Brodie Microanalytical procedures for fluorometric assay of brain DOPA 5HTP decarboxylase norepinephrine and serotonin and a detailed mapping of decarboxylase activity in brain *J Neurochem* 1961 6 226-232 (69)

- Mitchell J F and J C Szerb The spontaneous and evoked release of acetyl choline from the caudate nucleus *Proc internat union physiol sci* Leiden 1962 vol 2 Abstr 819 (68)
- von Monakow C Experimentell und pathologisch anatomische sowie Entwicklungsgeschichtliche Untersuchungen über die Beziehungen des Corpus striatum und des Linsenkernes zu den übrigen Hirnteilen Schweiz Arch Neurol Psychiat 1925 11 225-234 (33)
- Montanelli R P and R Hassler Stimulation effects of the globus pallidus and nucleus entopeduncularis of the cat *Proc internat union physiol sci* Leiden 1962 vol 2 Abstr 1090 (24)
- Morison, R S and H L Basset Electrical activity of the thalamus and basal ganglia in decorticate cats *J Neurophysiol* 1945 18 309-314 (53)
- Morison R H and E W Dempsey A study of thalamocortical relations *Amer J Physiol* 1947 135 281-292 (46)
- Morison R S, E W Dempsey and B R Morison Cortical responses from electrical stimulation of the brain stem *Amer J Physiol* 1941 131 732-743 (37 42 46)
- Morgan L O The corpus striatum A study of secondary degeneration following lesions in man and of symptoms and acute degenerations following experimental lesions in cats *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1927 18 495-549 (19 40)
- Morgane P J Medial forebrain bundle and "feeding centers" of the hypothalamus *J comp Neurol* 1961 117 1-26 (29)
- Mullan S Observations on deep cerebral localization of the tremor in Parkinson's disease *Arch Neurol (Chic)* 1960 2 274-280 (76)
- Müller P B and H Langemann Distribution of glutamic acid decarboxylase activity in human brain *J Neurochem* 1962 9 399-401 (69)
- Nachmansohn H Choline esterase in brain and spinal cord of sheep embryos *J Neurophysiol* 1940 3 396-407 (68)
- Narabayashi H and T Okuma Procaine oil blocking of the globus pallidus for the treatment of rigidity and tremor of parkinsonism *Proc Jap Acad* 1953 29 134-137 (74)
- Nashold B S J Hanbery and J Olszewski Observations on the diffuse thalamic projections *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1955 7 609-670 (37 47)
- Naumova T S Changes in the electrical activity of the caudate nucleus due to the establishment of a temporary relationship (coupling) between auditory and motor analysers *Fiziol* 7 1957 43 14-21 (53)
- Nauta W J H and W R Mehler Some efferent connections of the lentiform nucleus in monkey and cat *Anat Rec* 1961 139 260 only (35 36 37 38 39)
- Nauta W J H and H C J M Kuypers Some ascending pathways in the brain stem reticular formation *Reticular formation of the brain* Little Brown & Co Boston Toronto 1 ed 1958 1 vol II 3-31 (40)
- Nauta W J H and D G Whitlock An anatomical analysis of the nonspecific thalamic projection system *Brain mechanisms and consciousness* Blackwell Scientific publications Oxford 1954 1 vol p 81-116 (36 37)
- Nelson H C R W Doty and L T Ruthledge Motivational and perceptual aspects of subcortical stimulation in cats *Amer J Physiol* 1958 194 427-432 (63)
- Nothnagel H Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Funktionen des Gehirns *Furchows Arch path Anat* 1873 57 184-214 (18)
- Nordholm T and J Tygstrup Correlation between the clinical effect of stereotactic operations and brain autopsy findings *Proc 16th scand Congr Neurol* 1962 In press (74 75)
- von Oettingen W F Manganese its distribution pharmacology and health hazards *Physiol Rev* 1935 15 175-201 (72)

- by low frequency electrical stimulation of the region of the solitary tract *Arch Ital Biol* 1961 99 33-67 (27)
- Magnus R. *Korperstellung* J Springer Berlin 1924 1 vol Cit p 22 455 (21)
- Magoun H W and R Rhines *Spasticity The stretch reflex and extrapyramidal systems* C C Thomas Springfield Ill 1947 1 ed 1 vol Cit p 16-20 (21)
- Marshall C Lesions in the pyramidal tracts in cats *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1933 31 68-70 (16)
- Marshall C The functions of the pyramidal tracts *Quart Rev Biol* 1936 11 35-56 (16)
- Marshall W H An application of the frozen sectioning technic for cutting serial sections through the brain *Stain Technol* 1940 15 133-138 (59)
- Martinez A Fiber connections of the globus pallidus in man *J comp Neurol* 1961 117 37-41 (34 40)
- McCulloch W S The functional organization of the cerebral cortex *Physiol Rev* 1944 24 390-407 (41)
- McIlwain H *Biochemistry and the central nervous system* J and A Churchill Ltd London 2nd ed 1959 1 vol cit p 112 (69 72)
- McLardy T Projection of the centromedian nucleus of the human thalamus *Brain* 1948 71 290-303 (37)
- Mettler F A Extensive unilateral cerebral removals in the primate physiologic effects and resultant degeneration *J comp Neurol* 1943 79 185-245 (22 34)
- Mettler F A Effects of bilateral simultaneous subcortical lesions in the primate *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 1945 a 4 99-122 (22 61)
- Mettler F A Fiber connections of the corpus striatum of the monkey and baboon *J comp Neurol* 1945 b 82 169-204 (33 38 39)
- Mettler F A Extracortical connections of the primate frontal cerebral cortex II Corticofugal connections *J comp Neurol* 1947 86 119-155 (34 36)
- Mettler F A and C C Mettler Role of the neostriatum *Amer J Physiol* 1941 133 594-601 (26)
- Mettler F A and C C Mettler The effects of striatal injury *Brain* 1942 65 242-255 (22)
- Mettler F A H Grundfest and C A Hovde Distant electrical potentials evoked by stimulation of the caudate nucleus *Anat Rec* 1952 112 359 only (34 52)
- Mettler F A H W Ades E Lipman and E A Culler The extrapyramidal system an experimental demonstration of function *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1939 41 984-995 (20 26 79 82)
- Meyers R The modification of alternating tremors rigidity and festination by surgery of the basal ganglia *Res Publ Ass nerv ment Dis* 1942 21 602-665 (76)
- Meyers R The extrapyramidal system An inquiry into the validity of the concept *Neurology (Minneap)* 1953 3 627-655 (15 17)
- Meyers R Results of bilateral intermediate midbrain crurotomy in seven cases of severe athetotic and dystonic quadripareisis *Amer J phys Med* 1956 35 84-105 (16)
- Mihailović L and D B Janković Effects of intraventricularly injected anti n caudatus antibody on the electrical activity of the cat brain *Nature (Lond)* 1961 192 665-666 (54)
- Miles J E and H E Rosvold The effect of prefrontal lobotomy in rhesus monkeys on delayed response performance motivated by pain shock *J comp physiol Psychol* 1956 49 286-292 (63)
- Miller F R The excitability of the caudate nucleus *J Physiol (Lond)* 1936 86 56 P-57 P (19)
- Minor L Translated title *On the problem of the function of the corpus striatum* Diss Moscow 1882 Cit p 143 (18)
- Miranda C E Rocha *Eletrofisiologia do nucleo caudato* Diss Univ of Brasil 1961 Cit p 72 73 96 103 116 (56 58 59)

- Riklan M Psychological studies on chemosurgery of the basal ganglia *Rev canad Biol* 1961 20 305-319 (74 76 77)
- Riklan M and L Diller Follow up studies in chemo-pallidectomy for paralysis agitans *J Amer med Ass* 1958 167 13-17 (74)
- Riklan M L Diller and H Weiner Psychological studies on the effects of chemosurgery of the basal ganglia in parkinsonism *Arch gen Psychiat* 1960 a 3 267-275 (74 76)
- Riklan M L Diller H Weiner and I J Cooper Psychological studies on effects of chemosurgery of the basal ganglia in parkinsonism *Arch gen Psychiat* 1960 b 2 22-32 (74 76)
- Rioch D McK Neurophysiology of the corpus striatum and globus pallidus *Psychiatry* 1940 3 119-139 (15 17)
- Rioch D McK Functions of the brain stem in preparations with extensive lesions of the neocortex *Res Publ Ass nerv ment Dis* 1942 21 133-149 (60)
- Rioch D McK and C Brenner Experiments on the corpus striatum and rhinencephalon *J comp Neurol* 1938 68 491-507 (22)
- Rogers F T Studies of the brain stem VI An experimental study of the corpus striatum of the pigeon as related to various instructive types of behavior *J comp Neurol* 1922 35 21-59 (61)
- Rogers F T An experimental study of the cerebral physiology of the virginian opossum *J comp Neurol* 1924 37 265-315 (19)
- Romanovskaya F A Certain consequences of destroying the caudate nuclei in rabbits and dogs *Bull exp Biol Med* 1957 44 1066-1069 (21)
- Rose J E and C N Woolsey Organization of the mammalian thalamus and its relationships to the cerebral cortex *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1949 1 391-404 (37)
- Rosegay H An experimental investigation of the connections between the corpus striatum and the substantia nigra in the cat *J comp Neurol* 1944 80 293-371 (39)
- Rosvold H E and J M R Delgado The effect on delayed alternation test performance of stimulating or destroying electrically structures within the frontal lobes of the monkey brain *J comp physiol Psychol* 1956 49 365-372 (61 63 64)
- Rosvold H E M Mishkin and M K Szwedbart Effects of subcortical lesions in monkeys on visual-discrimination and single alternation performance *J comp physiol Psychol* 1958 51 437-444 (63)
- Rothmann Mac Über die physiologische Wertung der kortikospinalen (Pyramiden) Bahn *Arch Anat Physiol Physiol Abt* 1907 31 216-275 (16)
- Rozhanskii N A and N I Laguzina Significance of the nuclei of the strio-pallidal system *Sechenov Physiol J U S S R* 1957 43 581-587 (60)
- Ruckebush Y and L Barone Stimulation et destruction stereotaxiques du noyau caudé et du pallidum chez les solipedes et chez les carnivores *C R Soc Sci Vet Med comp (Lyon)* 1961 2 129-138 (73)
- Russell J R and W DeMyer The quantitative cortical origin of the pyramidal axons of macacus rhesus with some remarks on the slow rate of axolysis *Neurology (Minneapolis)* 1961 11 96-108 (16)
- Sachs Jr M S J Brendler and J F Fulton The orbital gyrus *Brain* 1949 72 227-40 (56)
- Sano I, T Gamo Y Kakimoto K Taniguchi M Takesada and K Nishinuma Distribution of catechol compounds in human brain *Biochem biophys Acta (Amst)* 1959 32 586-587 (68 69)
- Sasaki K A Namikawa and M Matsunaga Effect of stimulations of the pyramidal tract and striate body upon spinal motoneurons *Jap J Physiol* 1960 10 405-413 (28)
- Scheibel M E and A B Scheibel Structural substrates for integrative patterns

- Ogawa T. Eine neue Auffassung über die Faserverbindungen des Corpus striatum *J nerv ment Dis* 1952 116 555-571 (41)
- Olds J. A preliminary mapping of electrical reinforcing effects in the rat brain *J comp physiol Psychol* 1956 49 281-285 (62)
- Paasonen M. K. P. D. MacLean and N. J. Giarmar. 5-Hydroxytryptamine (serotonin enteramine) content of structures of the limbic system *J Neurochem* 1957 1 326-333 (70)
- Papez J. W. A summary of fiber connections of the basal ganglia with each other and with other portions of the brain *Res Publ Ass nerv ment Dis* 1942 21 21-68 (35 38 39 41)
- Patton H. D. and V. E. Amassian. The pyramidal tract: its excitation and functions *Handbook of physiology* Amer Physiol Soc Washington D. C. 1960 Cit vol 2 chapter 34 p 837 (16)
- Pavlov I. P. *Lectures on conditioned reflexes* Liveright publishing corp N. Y. 1928 1 vol cit p 309 (27)
- Peacock S. M. Jr. Studies on subcortical motor activity I. Motor activity and inhibition from identical anatomical points *J Neurophysiol* 1954 17 144-154 (20 26 79 82)
- Peacock S. M. Jr. and E. Hodes. Influence of forebrain on somato motor activity II. Facilitation *J comp Neurol* 1951 94 409-426 (28)
- Pineles F. Zur Lehre von den Funktionen des Kleinhirns *Jb Psychiat* 1899 18 182-224 (14)
- Pompeiano O. and J. E. Swett. EEG and behavioral manifestations of sleep induced by cutaneous nerve stimulation in normal cats *Arch ital Biol* 1962 100 311-342 (27)
- Porter H. and J. Folch. Brain copper protein fractions in the normal and in Wilson's disease *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1957 77 8-16 (71)
- Powell T. P. S. and W. M. Cowan. The connexions of the midline and intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus of the rat *J Anat (Lond)* 1954 88 307-319 (36)
- Powell T. P. S. and W. M. Cowan. A study of thalamo striate relations in the monkey *Brain* 1956 79 364-390 (36 37)
- Prus J. Über die Leitungsbahnen und Pathogenese der Rindenepilepsie *Wien klin Wschr* 1898 11 857-863 (15)
- Purpura D. P. E. M. Hausepian and H. Grundfest. Analysis of caudate-cortical connections in neuraxially intact and telencephalic isolate cats *Arch ital Biol* 1958 96 145-167 (44)
- Rakic L. N. A. Buchwald and E. J. Wyers. The caudate nucleus and inhibition A. Biochemical aspects of caudate inhibition *Proc internat union physiol sci* Leiden 1962 vol 2 Abstr 1100 (47)
- Ranson S. W. and C. Berry. Observations on monkeys with bilateral lesions in the globus pallidus *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1941 46 504-508 (21 60)
- Ranson S. W. and S. W. Ranson. Efferent fibers of the corpus striatum *Res Publ Ass nerv ment Dis* 1942 21 69-76 (39)
- Ranson S. W. S. W. Ranson and M. Ranson. Fiber connections of corpus striatum as seen in marchi preparations *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1941 a 46 230-249 (33 34 38 39)
- Ranson S. W. S. W. Ranson and M. Ranson. Corpus striatum and thalamus of a partially decorticate monkey *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1941 b 46 402-415 (34)
- Richter R. Degeneration of the basal ganglia in monkeys from chronic carbon disulfide poisoning *J Neuropath exp Neurol* 1945 4 324-353 (21)
- Richter C. F. and M. Hines. Increased spontaneous activity produced in monkeys by brain lesions *Brain* 1938 61 1-16 (61)
- Riese W. Beiträge zur Faseranatomie der Stammganglien *J Psychol Neurol (Lpz)* 1924 31 81-122 (33)

- the strio pallidum and the thalamus in relation to extrapyramidal disorders  
*Rev canad Biol* 1961 20 351-357 (55)
- Spitzer A and J P Karplus Über experimentelle Läsionen an der Gehirnbasis  
(Anatomische Ergebnisse nebst einigen physiologischen Bemerkungen) *Arch  
neurol Inst Univ Wien* 1907 16 348-436 (41)
- Starlinger J Die Durchschneidung beider Pyramiden beim Hunde *Neurol Zblt*  
1895 14 390-394 (16)
- Starzl T E C W Taylor and H W Magoun Ascending conduction in reticular  
activating system with special reference to the diencephalon *J Neurophysiol*  
1951 14 461-477 (42)
- Stefens R and J Droogleever Fortuyn Contribution a l'étude de la structure et  
de quelques connexions des noyaux intermédiaires du thalamus chez le lapin  
*Schweiz Arch Neurol Psychiat* 1953 72 299-318 (36 37)
- Sterman M B and C D Clemente Forebrain inhibitory mechanisms sleep pat-  
terns induced by basal forebrain stimulation in the behaving cat *Exp Neurol*  
1962 6 103-117 (27)
- Stern J and A Ward Inhibition of the muscle spindle discharge by ventrolateral  
thalamic stimulation *Arch Neurol (Chic)* 1960 3 193-204 (28)
- Stern J and A Ward Supraspinal and drug modulation of the alpha motor  
system *Arch Neurol (Chic)* 1962 6 82-91 (28)
- Stevens J R C Kim and H D McLean Stimulation of caudate nucleus *Arch  
Neurol (Chic)* 1961 4 47-54 (23 24 26 27 66)
- Stoupe N and C Terzuolo Étude des connexions et de la physiologie du noyau  
caudé *Acta neurol psychiat Belg* 1954 54 239-248 (42 44 45 46 53)
- Strumwasser F Postsynaptic inhibition and excitation produced by different  
branches of a single neuron and the common transmitter involved *Proc  
internat union physiol sci Leiden* 1962 vol 2 Abstr 801 (67)
- Strom G and H Uvnäs Motor responses of gastrointestinal tract and bladder to  
topical stimulation of the frontal lobe basal ganglia and hypothalamus in the  
cat *Acta physiol Scand* 1950 21 90-104 (29)
- Szabo J Topical distribution of the striatal efferents in the monkey *Exp Neurol*  
1967 5 21-36 (33 38 39 65 79 82)
- Szabo J and J Auer Potentials from the caudate nucleus to unspecific thalamic  
nuclei *Anat Rec* 1958 130 380 only (53)
- Szekely E G Cortical recruiting on thalamic stimulation after elimination of the  
pallidum *Confin Neurol (Basel)* 1957 III 243-249 (50)
- Szekely E G A R Kirby and E A Spiegel The effect of stimulation of the  
caudate nucleus upon liver potentials *Trans Amer Neurol Ass* 1961 86 247-  
249 (29)
- Taarnhøj P D-C Arnois and L A Donahue Chemopallidectomy as a treatment  
for Parkinson's disease Evaluation of results in 118 patients *J Neurosurg*  
1960 17 459-468 (74 76)
- Tankard M G and P J Harman Statistical verification of a caudate-orbitofrontal  
tract in the monkey brain *Anat Rec* 1955 121 419 only (34)
- Tauc L and H Gerschenfeld Effet inhibiteur *J Physiol (Paris)* 1960 a 52 236  
only (67)
- Tauc L and H Gerschenfeld L'acétylcholine comme transmetteur possible de l'in-  
hibition synaptique de l'Aplysie *C R Acad Sci (Paris)* 1960 b 251 3076-  
3078 (67)
- Thompson H The effect of intracranial stimulation on memory in cats *J comp  
physiol Psychol* 1958 51 421-476 (54)
- Thompson R L Effects of lesions in the caudate nuclei and dorsofrontal cortex  
on conditioned avoidance behavior in cats *J comp physiol Psychol* 1959  
52 650-659 (62 64)
- Thompson R and L C Massopust Jr The effect of subcortical lesions on reten-



- in the brainstem reticular core *Reticular formation of the brain* Little Brown & Co Toronto Boston 1 ed 1958 1 vol p 31-55 cit p 49 (40)
- Schiff J M *Lehrbuch der Physiologie des Menschen* Schauenburg Lahr 1858 1 vol cit p 305 (16)
- Schlag J D and F Chaillet Thalamic mechanisms involved in cortical desynchronization and recruiting responses *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1963 15 39-62 (37)
- Schulman E and J Auer Caudate efferents to the thalamus *Anat Rec* 1957 127 363 only (38)
- Schuller A Reizversuche am Nucleus caudatus des Hundes *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1902 91 477-508 (18)
- Segundo J P and X Machne Unitary responses to afferent volleys in lenticular nucleus and claustrum *J Neurophysiol* 1956 19 325-339 (58 59)
- Segundo J P E F Migliaro and J A Roig Effect of striatal and claustral stimulation upon spinal reflex and strychnine activity *J Neurophysiol* 1958 21 391-399 (28)
- Sherrington C S Decerebrate rigidity and reflex coordination of movements *J Physiol (Lond)* 1898 22 319-332 (16)
- Shimamoto T and M Verzeano Relation between caudate and diffusely projecting thalamic nuclei *J Neurophysiol* 1954 17 278-288 (42 44 46 47 52)
- Shimazu H T Hongo and K Kubota Two types of central influences on gamma motor system *J Neurophysiol* 1962 25 309-323 (28)
- Shute C C D and P R Lewis Cholinergic nervous pathways in the forebrain *Nature (Lond)* 1961 189 332-333 (67)
- Simma K Zur Projektion des Centrum medianum and Nucleus parafascicularis thalami beim Menschen *Msschr Psychiat Neurol* 1951 122 32-46 (37)
- Sloan N and H Jasper The identity of spreading depression and suppression *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1950 2 59-78 (20)
- Smith M C Location of stereotactic lesions confirmed at necropsy *Brit Med J* 1962 vol 1 p 900-906 (74 75)
- Sokoloff L Local cerebral circulation at rest and during altered cerebral activity induced by anesthesia or visual stimulation *Regional Neurochemistry* Pergamon Press Oxford London N Y Paris 1961 p 107-117 (71)
- Spatz H Über den Eisennachweis im Gehirn besonders in Zentren des extrapyramidal motorischen Systems *Z ges Neurol Psychiat* 1922 77 261-388 (72)
- Spatz H *Physiologie und Pathologie der Stammganglien* Handbuch der normalen und pathologischen Physiologie Springer Berlin 17 vols Cit vol 10 1927 p 320 377 (15 16)
- Spehlmann R O D Creutzfeldt and R Jung Neuronale Hemmung im motorischen Cortex nach elektrischer Reizung des Caudatum *Arch Psychiat Nervenkr* 1960 201 332-354 (52)
- Spiegel E A and E G Szekely Prolonged stimulation of the head of the caudate nucleus *Arch Neurol (Chic)* 1961 4 55-65 (27)
- Spiegel E A and K Takano Zur Analyse der vom Streifenhugel erhaltenen Reizwirkungen *Z ges Neurol Psychiat* 1929 118 429-432 (19)
- Spiegel E A and H T Wycis Anotomy in paralysis agitans *Arch Neurol (Chic)* 1954 71 598-614 (74)
- Spiegel E A and H T Wycis Pallido anotomy anatomic physiologic foundation and histopathologic control W S Fields *Pathogenesis and treatment of parkinsonism* C C Thomas Springfield Ill 1958 1 vol p 86-105 (75 76)
- Spiegel E A E G Szekely and W W Baker Electrographic study of thalamic impulses to striatum and pallidum *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1957 9 291-299 (56)
- Spiegel E A H T Wycis E G Szekely and H Spuler Some recent studies of

- Walker A F Cerebral pedunculotomy for the relief of involuntary movements parkinsonian tremor *J nerv ment Dis* 1952 116 766-775 (16)
- Walker A E Physiological principles and results of neurosurgical interventions in extrapyramidal diseases *Premier congrès internat sci neurol Bruxelles* 1957 1 118-137 (76)
- Walshe J M and J N Cumings *Wilson's disease Some current concepts* Blackwell Scientific Publ Oxford 1961 1 vol cit p 4-105 (71)
- Wang Pai yang The vegetative functions of the corpus striatum *Sci sinica* 1960 9 434-441 (9)
- Wang G H and K Akert Behavior and reflexes of chronic striatal cats *Arch ital Biol* 1967 100 48-85 (60)
- Wang G H and V W Brown Suprasegmental inhibition of an autonomic reflex *J Neurophysiol* 1956 19 564-572 (79)
- Ward A A Jr W M McCulloch and H W Magoun Production of an alternating tremor at rest in monkeys *J Neurophysiol* 1948 11 317-330 (72)
- Warren P J C J Fari and R H S Thompson The distribution of copper in human brain *Brain* 1960 83 709-717 (71)
- Waterhouse I K Effects of prefrontal lobotomy on conditioned fear and food responses in monkeys *J comp physiol Psychol* 1957 50 81-88 (66)
- Weinberger L M H M Gibbon and J H Gibbon Jr Temporary arrest of the circulation to the central nervous system I Physiologic effects *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1940 43 615-634 (71)
- Weiner N The distribution of monoamine oxidase and succinic oxidase in brain *J Neurochem* 1960 6 79-86 (69)
- Weiskrantz L Behavioral changes associated with ablation of the amygdaloid complex in monkeys *J comp physiol Psychol* 1956 49 381-391 (29 66)
- White R P and H E Himwich Circus movements and excitation of striatal and mesodiencephalic centers in rabbits *J Neurophysiol* 1957 20 81-90 (23 24)
- White R J S MacCarthy and R C Bain Neuropathologic review of brain lesions and inherent dangers in chemopallidectomy *Arch Neurol (Chic)* 1960 2 17-18 (75 76)
- Whitner J R and F A Mettler Studies on the subthalamus of the rhesus monkey I Anatomy and fiber connections of the subthalamic nucleus of Luys *J comp Neurol* 1949 90 281-317 (39)
- Whitner J R and A Orr Hyperkinesia and other physiologic effects of caudate deficit in the adult albino rat *Neurology (Minneapolis)* 1962 12 529-533 (79 61)
- Wieck H H N A Buchwald and E Wyers Einwirkung der Nucleus caudatus Reizung auf die Reizpotentiale vom Globus pallidus *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1959 270 6-7 (53)
- Wieck H H A Stammier G Hoffmann F J Kuhn and F W Kohlmann Untersuchungen über die Rindenpotentiale nach Reizung des Nucleus caudatus bei der Katze *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1960 272 146-160 (44 46)
- Wieck H H F J Kuhn F W Kohlmann C Huffman and A Stammier Elektrophysiologische Untersuchungen über die Aktivität des Nucleus caudatus bei der Katze *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1961 272 434-441 (54)
- Wieting T Zur Physiologie der infrakortikalen Ganglien und über die Beziehungen derselben zum epileptischen Anfall Inaug Diss Dorpat 1891 p 1-63 cit p 27 (18)
- Wilson S A Kinnier Progressive lenticular degeneration A familial nervous disease associated with cirrhosis of the liver *Brain* 1912 34 295-509 (11 13 14 15 17 78 83)
- Wilson S A Kinnier An experimental research into the anatomy and physiology of the corpus striatum *Brain* 1914 36 427-497 (18 32 60 61)
- Wilson S A Kinnier The old motor system and the new *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1974 11 384-404 (33)

tion of a brightness discrimination in rats *J comp physiol Psychol* 1960 53 488-496 (64)

Thompson R C F Malin and W F Hawkins Effect of subcortical lesions on retention of a kinesthetic discrimination habit *Exp Neurol* 1961 3 367-374 (64)

Tingey A H The iron copper and manganese content of the human brain *J ment Sci* 1937 83 452-460 (71 72)

Tokizane T M Kawakami and E Gellhorn On the relation between the activating and the recruiting systems *Arch int Physiol Biochem* 1957 65 415-432 (42 46 47)

Tokizane T M Kawakami and E Gellhorn Hippocampal and neocortical activity in different experimental conditions *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1959 11 431-437 (43)

Tower S S The pyramidal tract P C Bucy *The precentral motor cortex* Univ Ill Press Urbana Ill 1st ed 1944 1 vol p 149-172 (16)

Traczyk W and B Sadowski Acetylcholine content of stimulated caudate nucleus in relation to muscle tonus and brain electrical activity *Proc internat union physiol sci* Leiden 1962 2 vol Abstr 820 (68)

Tuge H and I Shima Defensive conditioned reflex after destruction of the fore brain in pigeons *J comp Neurol* 1959 111 427-445 (62)

Turner E A Cerebral control of respiration *Brain* 1954 77 448-486 (61)

Udenfriend S and C R Creveling Localization of dopamine  $\beta$  oxidase in brain *J Neurochem* 1959 4 350-352 (69)

Umbach W Zur Elektrophysiologie des Caudatum der Katze Elektrische Reizung und Krampfauslösung in verschiedenen Grosshirnstrukturen und ihre Beziehung zum Nucleus caudatus *Arch Psychiat Nervenkr* 1959 199 553-575 (46 52 54)

Verhaart W J C Fiber analysis of the basal ganglia *J comp Neurol* 1950 83 425-440 (38 39 40)

Verhaart W J C Vezelsystemen in de stamganglia *Ned T Geneesk* 1952 96 1045-1046 (39 40)

Vidal F Pallidohypothalamic tract or X bundle of Meynert in the rhesus monkey *Arch Neurol Psychiat (Chic)* 1940 44 1219-1223 (38)

Vogel F B and J W Evans Morphologic alterations produced by copper in neural tissues with consideration of the role of the metal in the pathogenesis of Wilson's disease *J exp Med* 1961 113 997-1004 (72)

Vogt C Demonstration anatomischer Präparate (Syndrom des Corpus striatum) *Neurol Zbl* 1911 30 397-399 (13 78 81)

Vogt C and O Vogt Zur Kenntnis der pathologischen Veränderungen des Striatum und des Pallidum und zur Pathophysiologie der dabei auftretenden Krankheitserscheinungen S B Heidelberger Akad Wiss 1919 math nat Kl Abt B Biol Wiss Abh 14 p 3-56 (11 15 33 78 81)

Vogt C and O Vogt Zur Lehre der Erkrankungen des striären Systems *J Psychol Neurol (Lpz)* 1920 25 628-846 (13 14 15 16 31 32 33 78 81)

Vogt C and O Vogt Thalamusstudien I-III *J Psychol Neurol (Lpz)* 1941 50 32-153 (35)

Vogt M The concentration of sympathin in different parts of the central nervous system under normal conditions and after the administration of drugs *J Physiol (Lond)* 1954 123 451-481 (69)

Voneida T J An experimental study of the course and destination of fibers arising in the head of the caudate nucleus in the cat and monkey *J comp Neurol* 1960 115 75-87 (33 34 38 45 65 79 82)

Walberg F Descending connections to the inferior olive *J comp Neurol* 1956 104 77-172 (40)

Wall P D P Glees and J F Fulton Corticofugal connexions of posterior orbital surface in rhesus monkey *Brain* 1951 74 66-71 (29 34)

# INDEX

- Activity cage 61
- Acetylcholine 24 47 67
- Acetylcholinesterase 67
- Adrenaline 69
- Aggressiveness 60
- Alumina cream 27
- Anoxia 71
- Amygdala 26 27 64
- Amygdala hangover 29
- Area septalis 23
- Arrest reaction 26 27 53 64
- Artefact from stimulus 44
- Associated movements 13 22
- Ascending reticular activating system 41 57
- Athétose double 13
- Autopsy after pallidotomy 74 75
- Autonomic reflexes 29
- Autoradiography 70
- Avoidance conditioning 26 62 64
  
- Bar pressing 27 62
- Basal ganglia 12 42 68
- Behavior studies 60
- Biochemical studies 67
- Birds (see also pigeons) 60
- Bladder 29
- Brightness discrimination 64
  
- Caudate loop 47
- Caudate nucleus
  - acetylcholine in 67
  - autonomic function of 29
  - connections of 37
  - dopamine in 68
  - electrical stimulation of 23 26 42 60 67
  - GABA in 69
  - injection in 27 47
  - lesions in 18 19 1 43 60 67 64
  - local response in 45 54
  - metabolic rate of 70
  - role in involuntary movements 18
- selfstimulation in 62
- serotonin in 70
- spontaneous electrical activity of 53
- structure of 31
- strychnization of 19 45
- Carbachol 55 66
- Carbon disulfide poisoning 21
- Carbon monoxide poisoning 71
- Catatonia 27
- Centrum medianum 36 37
- Cerebellum 14 68
- Chemical stimulation 19 27 47 54 66
- Chimpanzee 21 22 55
- Choline acetyltransferase 67
- Choline esterase 67
- Chronic decerebrate cats and dogs 60
- Chronic decerebrate pigeons 62
- Chronic decorticate cats and dogs 53 60
- Chronic decorticate monkeys 53
- Circling movements 20 23 25
- Chorea 13 15 17
- Click stimuli 48
- Clinicopathological investigations 13
- Collaterals from internal capsule 34
- Comb bundle 38
- Conditioned response
  - classical 62
  - instrumental 62
- Copper 71
- Corticospinal system 15 16 33
- Corticospinal tract 16 76
- Combined lesions of caudate nucleus and cortex 22 64
  
- D amputation 69
- Deep stimulation 76
- Defence reaction 60
- Delayed inhibition 26
- Delayed alternation 63 63
- Delayed response 62 63
- Depth electrodes 54
- Discrimination learning 62 64
- Dusopropyl fluorophosphate 24
- DOPA 61 71

- Wilson S A Kinnier *Modern problems in neurology* William Woods & Co  
N Y 1929 1 vol Cit p 136 141 143 (15 16)
- Woodburne R T E C Crosby and R E McCotter The mammalian isthmus and  
midbrain regions Part II The fiber connections A The relation of the  
tegmentum of the midbrain with the basal ganglia in *Macaca Mulatta* *J*  
*comp Neurol* 1946 85 67-92 (35 39 40 41)
- Wyers E J N A Buchwald L Rakic and C W Lauprecht The caudate nucleus  
and inhibition II Caudate inhibition and extinction *Proc internat union*  
*physiol sci* Leiden 1962 vol 2 Abstr 1101 (64)
- Ziehen T Zur Physiologie der infrakortikalen Ganglien und über ihre Beziehun-  
gen zum epileptischen Anfall *Arch Psychiat Nervenkr* 1890 21 863-896  
(18)

Nucleic acid and free nucleotides 71

Nucleus caudatus

autonomic function of 29

connections of 33

electrical stimulation of 18 20 23

42 44 46 63

lesions of 19 21 60 63

role in involuntary movements 14 20

single unit responses in 56 59

spontaneous electrical activity of 53

structure of 31

strychnine spikes in 56

Nucleus of Darkschewitch 40

Nucleus lenticularis 12

Nucleus niger 15 38 65

Nucleus ruber 16 39

Nucleus ventralis anterior thalami 34

47

Nucleus ventralis lateralis thalami 34

28 58

O methylation 69

Opossum 19 22

Paleostriatum 12 62

Pallido-ansotomy 74

Pallidum 12

Pallidum syndrome 15

Parkinson's disease 13 74

Pathophysiology of extrapyramidal

motor disease 14 16 74

Personality changes 77

Piperidine 70

Pigeons 26 60 62

Physostigmine 47

Placing reactions 21 22

Proprioception 22

Progressive lenticular degeneration 13

Psychology ■ testing 76

Putamen

autonomic function of 18 29

connections of 33

electrical stimulation of 18 53

lesions of (animals) 19 21

lesions of (man) 13

role in involuntary movements 14

single unit responses in 48

spontaneous electrical activity of 54

structure of 31

strychnine spikes in 56

Pyramidal

impulses 14

responses 44 53

section 16

system 15 16

tract, see corticospinal tract

Radium tubes 19

Recruiting responses in

cortex 46 48 49

corpus striatum 56

Relative size of caudate nucleus

putamen and globus pallidus 37

Renshaw cells 67

Reticular activating system 42 57

Retrograde degeneration 34 39

Retention of avoidance responses 65

Reversal of reward 62 64

Riboflavin 71

Rigidity in

man 14 74 75

monkey 22

Root to root reflex 27

Rorschach test 77

Rubrospinal tract 14 32

Running movements 18

Satellite cells 31

Selfstimulation 62

Sensory stimuli 58

Serotonin 70

Sexual behavior in pigeons 61

Short latency response in cortex 44

Significant stimuli 58

Single unit responses

in cortex 52

in caudate nucleus 56 59

in globus pallidus and putamen 55 58

Sleep 27 76

Slow recovery after lesions in globus

pallidus 29

Somatotopic organization 24 58

Somnolence 76

Spaced responding 62 63

Spasticity 21 22

Spinal reflexes 27

Spindle responses

in cortex 46 64

in caudate nucleus and globus  
pallidus 56

Spikes in caudate nucleus 53

Spread of current 23 24 28 43 45

47 51 63

Spreading depression 20

State of quietness 27

Streptomycin 55

Dopamin 68  
 Double alternation 62  
 Drowsiness 27

Ectoatrium 62

Electrical activity of  
   caudate nucleus 53  
   putamen 54  
   globus pallidus 54

Electrocortical activation 42 50

Electronmicroscopy 31

Entopeduncular nucleus 24 52

Extensor hypertonia 21 28

Extinction 64 65

Extrapyramidal  
   motor disease 16 17  
   system 13 15 17

Facilitation of cortical responses 50

Fatigue of caudate responses 58

Fear in avoidance conditioning 66

Flexion movements 23

GABA 67 69

Galvanic skin response 29 60

Gama globulin 54

Gastrointestinal tract 29

General observation 60 61

Glia 31 32

Globus pallidus

  autonomic function of 18 29  
   connections of 33  
   electrical stimulation of 24 53 60  
   in anoxia 71  
   iron in 72  
   gross responses in 53 56  
   lesions in (animals) 19 21 64 65  
   lesions in (man) 74  
   role in involuntary movements 14  
   selfstimulation in 62  
   single unit responses in 55 58  
   spontaneous electrical activity 54  
   structure 32  
   strychnine spikes in 55

Glutamate decarboxylase 69

Goat connections in 34

Head turning and circling 23 25

Hippocampus 43 64 68

Histamine 70

Histochemical studies 67 68

Histology 31

History

  connections 32  
   clinicopathology 13  
   extrapyramidal system 15  
   motor function 18

Huntingtons chorea 13 69

Hyperkinesia 21 22 61

Identification of subcortical structures  
   by their electrical activity 54

Immediate cessation of movements 26

Impedance measurement 44

Inactivation syndrome 27

Inferior olive 40

Inhibition

  of cortical responses 50  
   delayed inhibition 27  
   of movements 14 20 26  
   release from inhibition 14  
   of seizure activity 52  
   of single unit responses 52 58

Inhibitory impulses 14

Intellectual functioning 76

Intelligence testing 76

Intracranial selfstimulation 62

Intralaminar nuclei 35 36 46

Iron 72

Krebs cycle 69

Lenticular nucleus 12

Manganese 72

Mating behavior see pigeons

Medial lemniscus fibers

  from 35 41 58

Metabolism 29 70

Metals 71

Midline nuclei 35

Monoamine oxidase 69

Motor function

  historical 18  
   ablation studies 21  
   stimulation studies 23

Multielectrode 24 42 46

Muscle spindles 28

Neostriatum 12 26

Nicotine 29

Nodus cursorius 18

Noradrenaline 69







**ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA**

**VOL. 59 SUPPLEMENTUM 212**



**EXPERIMENTAL STUDIES ON  
PRESSURE AND CONTRACTILITY  
IN THE URETER**

**BY**

**LARS BÄCKLUND**

---

**UPPSALA 1963**



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL 59 SUPPLEMENTUM 212

FROM THE INSTITUTE OF PHYSIOLOGY UNIVERSITY OF UPPSALA SWEDEN

EXPERIMENTAL STUDIES ON  
PRESSURE AND CONTRACTILITY  
IN THE URETER

BY

LARS BACKLUND

---

UPPSALA 1963



# CONTENTS

CHAPTER I Introduction	5
Historical review	5
Modern views regarding ureteric function	6
CHAPTER II Perfusion of the ureter <i>in situ</i>	8
Material and methods	9
Results	11
With intact pelviureteric connections	11
Perfusion at low pressures	11
Perfusion at high pressures	13
Discussion	18
Peristaltic patterns	18
The damping effect of the renal pelvis	19
Peristalsis at high pressures	21
The relation between perfusion pressure and contractile response	22
CHAPTER III The contractility at high intraureteric pressures with intact pelviureteric connections	24
Material and methods	24
Results	27
Discussion	33
Fluorurography at high intraureteric pressures	33
The effect of intravenous NaCl infusions on the ureteric pressure	36
Ureteric peristalsis at high intraluminal pressures	37
The effects of the experimental procedure	37
Lacemakers in the ureter	39
CHAPTER IV Ureteric diameter variations and electromyograms at low intraluminal pressure levels	41
Material and methods	41
Result	42
Pressure variation	The occurrence of diaphasic pressure waves
with peristalsis	43
Diameter variations during the passage of the peristaltic waves	44
Velocity of propagation and frequency of contraction	46

*Translated by*  
**MAUD MARSDEN**

*Almqvist & Wiksells*  
**BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG**  
UPPSALA 1963

## Introduction

### Historical review

The study of the physiology of the ureter has a long history but it was not until the 19th century that the investigations took a more definite form. At first very simple methods were used but keen observations were nevertheless often made. In 1869 ENGELMANN's first extensive reports on studies of the physiology of the rabbit ureter were published. ENGELMANN's study was limited to visual observations of the ureter but in spite of this he was able to draw conclusions some of which are still valid today.

The further development was partly due to improved technique. Intraluminal pressure measurement came into use at the beginning of this century and a pioneer in this field was LUCAS (1903, 1906) who used an open water manometer. TRATTNER's hydrophoragraph (1924, 1932) which was used in a more or less modified form by several other workers represented another milestone. One of these workers was LAPIDES who in 1948 carried out investigations on the intact human ureter. In more recent years new potentialities for measurement have been introduced by advances in the field of electronics. It will suffice to mention here the great improvements resulting from the use of pressure transducers of different types. Further reference may be made to a review by FRY (1960) in which he discussed modern physiological recording instruments with particular regard to pressure measurement.

Electroureterography may be mentioned as one of the other methods of studying the physiology of the ureter. The first to record action currents from the ureteric musculature were ORBELL and von BAUME (1910) who used external electrodes. Remarkably enough there was for a long time little interest in electro



Discussion	47
Diameter variations in contraction of the ureter	47
Pressure variations with ureteric contraction	49
Arrhythmias in the peristalsis	50
The propagation velocity of the ureteric contractions	51
CHAPTER V The peristalsis in an anastomosed ureter	53
Material and methods	53
Results	55
Variations in pressure and diameter in anastomosed ureters	55
The contraction frequency at low intraureteric pressures	57
The contraction frequency at high intraureteric pressures	58
The velocity of the contraction waves	60
Discussion	61
The regulation of ureteric peristalsis	61
The peristalsis in anastomosed ureters	62
The effect of dilatation proximally to a stenosis	64
The importance of regenerative power to ureteric function after anastomosis	65
Changes in function due to transection	66
The passage of fluid through the anastomosis tube	66
CHAPTER VI The conduction mechanism in the smooth muscle of the ureter	69
Theories regarding the conduction mechanism	69
Nerves	69
Transmitter substances	70
Electrical current spread	70
Mechanical distortion	71
The relationship between electrical transmission and mechanical distortion	74
GENERAL SUMMARY	76
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	80
REFERENCES	81

Other essential problems in the field of ureteric physiology have concerned the origin of the peristaltic contraction wave in the upper urinary tract and the conditions under which peristalsis is maintained. Some authors in particular NARATH (1951) have concluded that the contraction wave starts in the calyces of the kidney and passes downwards as a coordinated contraction wave along the pelvis and ureter. Others have doubted this view especially in consideration of the fact that the calyces and pelvis or the pelvis and ureter appear to contract independently of one another. The existence of a regular pacemaker for ureteric peristalsis has also been claimed by several authors.

The pressure levels within which ureteric peristalsis can occur have been considered to be fairly limited and the increase in pressure necessary for the initiation of a ureteric contraction has been assessed at varying levels (see further chapter II). Most of the authors who have studied the effects of high intraureteric pressures seem to be of the opinion that when there is a sufficient degree of distension the contractile ability of the ureter ceases. The pressure level required to produce such critical distension has been reported differently in different experiments. RISHOLM *et al* (1959) expressed very interesting views on the relationship between high pressure and ureteric dilatation. They stated that the decrease in amplitude in the contraction induced pressure waves with increase in the resting pressure was due to pressure damping in the fluid filled renal pelvis. It has been one of the aims of the present investigation to consider further this hypothesis. Intraureteric pressure, ureteric diameter and electromyograms have been recorded in the dog and problems concerning the relationship between intraureteric pressure and contractility under different conditions have been studied. Perfused ureters *in situ* and also ureters with intact pelvoureteric communications have been studied. Investigations have also been made with divided and re-anastomosed ureters *in situ* with the purpose of studying the conduction mechanism in the smooth muscle of the ureter.

myography of the ureter *in situ*, and it was not until the 1950's that this method became more generally adopted intraluminal electrodes mainly being used. Classical studies on isolated segments had already been made earlier by BOZLER (1942).

Considerable interest has long been paid to the anatomy of the ureter, and knowledge of the morphological conditions has to a certain extent influenced the interpretation of certain physiological events especially as regards the conduction mechanism. SATANI (1919 c) made a classical study of the microscopic anatomy. During recent years electron microscopy has been used mainly perhaps in the search for an anatomical basis of a postulated conduction mechanism from cell to cell. As yet, however, certain problems, especially with regard to the innervation of the ureter have not been completely solved. A review of the anatomical, physiological and pharmacodynamic factors which affect the activity of the ureter was made by FINALE and SMITH (1955). Reference should also be made to a forthcoming review by KNU (1963).

### Modern views regarding ureteric function

Certain details concerning the function of the ureter were clarified at an early date. The occurrence of peristalsis has long been known and similarly that peristalsis may be stimulated by urinary flow or other mechanical factors such as pinching and stretching. The possibility of stimulating the ureter electrically was also discovered early. On the other hand there has long been some doubt as to the way in which peristalsis is regulated and how the fluid transport is mediated. While the majority of workers have considered justifiably that the ureteric contents are driven forward by a propagating contraction wave some have held the view that the ureter functions as a suction pump in which active dilatations produce the necessary under pressure. The role of innervation in ureteric peristalsis seems to have been overestimated earlier and in a series of studies with isolated segments BOZLER, PROSSER, BURSTOCK and others have shown that the conduction mechanism at least is independent of the nerve supply. The role played normally by the nervous components of the ureter must still be considered however as somewhat unclear.

Other essential problems in the field of ureteric physiology have concerned the origin of the peristaltic contraction wave in the upper urinary tract and the conditions under which peristalsis is maintained. Some authors in particular NARATH (1951) have concluded that the contraction wave starts in the calyces of the kidney and passes downwards as a coordinated contraction wave along the pelvis and ureter. Others have doubted this view especially in consideration of the fact that the calyces and pelvis or the pelvis and ureter appear to contract independently of one another. The existence of a regular pacemaker for ureteric peristalsis has also been claimed by several authors.

The pressure levels within which ureteric peristalsis can occur have been considered to be fairly limited and the increase in pressure necessary for the initiation of a ureteric contraction has been assessed at varying levels (see further chapter II). Most of the authors who have studied the effects of high intraureteric pressures seem to be of the opinion that when there is a sufficient degree of distension the contractile ability of the ureter ceases. The pressure level required to produce such critical distension has been reported differently in different experiments. RICHOLDS *et al* (1949) expressed very interesting views on the relationship between high pressure and ureteric dilatation. They stated that the decrease in amplitude in the contraction induced pressure waves with increase in the resting pressure was due to pressure damping in the fluid filled renal pelvis. It has been one of the aims of the present investigation to consider further this hypothesis. Intraureteric pressure, ureteric diameter and electromyograms have been recorded in the dog and problems concerning the relationship between intraureteric pressure and contractility under different conditions have been studied. Perfused ureters *in situ* and also ureters with intact pelvoureteric communications have been studied. Investigations have also been made with divided and reanastomosed ureters *in situ* with the purpose of studying the conduction mechanism in the smooth muscle of the ureter.

## CHAPTER II

### Perfusion of the ureter *in situ*

There have been relatively few modern studies concerning muscular contractility during perfusion of the ureter. Isolated ureters or ureteric segments have been generally used. MURKIGHAN (1957) studied the dynamics in isolated ureters from human beings and pigs at low and moderate perfusion pressures. GOULD *et al* (1955 *a*) used isolated ureters from water buffaloes and ATWELL and BORGSTEDT (1960) investigated the peristaltic reflex in isolated dog ureters. SATANI (1919 *b*) and SLEVATOR and BUTCHER (1955) perfused the dog ureter *in situ*. The latter simultaneously recorded action potentials with intraluminal electrodes. No investigations appear to have been made on the maximal height to which the intraureteric pressure can be forced while yet retaining contractile activity in the ureter. There appears to be some divergence of opinion as regards both the magnitude of the resting pressure in the renal pelvis and the ureter and the pressure level required to induce peristalsis. Pressure levels between 0-2 cm and 12-15 cm of water respectively have been claimed (DURAN and DESCOTES 1932, DAVIS 1954, MURKIGHAN 1957, KIM 1957, FINK and MURPHY 1957, WEINBERG and SILBERG 1958, ATWELL and BORGSTEDT 1960, WEINBERG and MALETTA 1961). In those cases where both man and dog have been investigated with the same methods fairly similar conditions have been found in these two species. No studies appear to have been made on the other hand as to whether the rate at which the peristalsis inducing pressure level is reached is of any importance in hastening or delaying the commencement of peristalsis. Since however an ability of the ureteric tissue to exhibit adaptation with a slowly rising intraluminal pressure cannot be excluded *a priori* one aim of the present investigation was to determine whether there is any difference in the induction mechanism for peristalsis when the perfusion pressure is increased at two different rates. Intact com

munication between the renal pelvis and the rest of the ureter probably plays an important part in normal peristaltic function but for reasons given below it has been considered of value to test the activity of the ureter when isolated from direct connection with the renal pelvis. The investigation has also aimed at studying the reactions of the ureter when the pressure rise is continued above the level at which peristalsis is induced and the extent to which the contractile responses are altered with increasing pressure. The generally accepted view that the ureteric contractions cease on high intraureteric pressure appears to be a consequence of the partial unsuitability of the older methods. With these older methods it was not possible to identify the ureteric contractions in conditions of ureteric dilatation and open communication with the renal pelvis. This motivated perfusion studies with as little pressure-damping effect as possible in the perfusion system.

### Material and methods

Fifteen adult mongrel dogs of both sexes and weighing between 10.5 and 28 kg were used in the experiments. The anaesthetic used was sodium pentobarbitone (veterinary Nembutal® Abbott) 30 mg/kg body weight being injected intravenously followed by tracheal intubation. For the administration of diuretics and in case further anaesthetic was required to maintain the required depth of anaesthesia a catheter was inserted routinely into a femoral vein. The abdomen was opened with a mid line incision and both ureters were cannulated distally near to the bladder with polythene catheters with an outer diameter of either 1.5 or 1.6 mm and a lumen of either 0.9 or 1.1 mm depending on the ureteric dimension. After cannulation the abdomen was closed. In the majority of the experiments the arterial pressure was recorded with a pressure transducer connected to a catheter in the left femoral artery and the respiration was recorded intermittently by connecting the tracheal tube to a Krogh spirometer filled with oxygen. The movements of the oxygen clock were transformed by means of a rotatory potentiometer to electrical potential differences. The ureteric pressure was recorded through the catheters by pressure transducers the outflow from the ureter

being obstructed. The transducer used was an Elema Type No EMT 472a (Elema Schonander, Solna Sweden), which has a volume displacement of  $0.3 \text{ mm}^3/100 \text{ mm Hg}$  and is linear in the region 0–300 mm Hg.

As a rule only one ureter was studied in each experiment, the other serving as a control for the extent of the diuresis. In the first part of the experiment the pressure and peristalsis were studied in ureters where communication with the kidney was intact. Sodium chloride solution 0.9% was given intravenously as a diuretic in doses of 10–40 ml, sometimes repeated. The abdomen was then reopened and the "experimental" ureter divided close to the renal pelvis. A perfusion catheter was inserted into the distal side of the cut ureter (i.e. the proximal end of the now isolated ureteric segment), care being taken to minimize damage to the vascular supply of the ureter. In order to protect the catheter as far as possible from movement artifacts it was passed through a slit in the flank. In its course through the belly wall the catheter ran loosely through a short rigid plastic tube of greater diameter. The mid line incision in the abdomen was then again closed. The perfusion catheter was connected via a long non elastic tube to a glass burette placed horizontally which at the commencement of the experiment was adjusted exactly to the level of the ureter. The burette could be raised by an elevator at two different rates, i.e. 13.2 mm/min or 82 mm/min. This made it possible to increase the perfusion pressure at rates of 0.97 mm Hg/min and 6.05 mm Hg/min respectively. Sodium chloride solution 0.9% at room temperature (22–24 °C) served as the perfusion fluid. During the passage through the perfusion catheter however the solution became warmed, since the abdomen was closed and the rate of flow was low. The flow from the burette was closed off intermittently by means of a tap. This tap was situated in the burette and was closed by turning 45°. No volume displacement in the perfusion system occurred on closing the tap.

In the majority of experiments the perfusion pressure was recorded with a transducer which was connected to the perfusion catheter by a three way tap. In the remaining cases the hydrostatic pressure was determined by measuring the difference in level between the burette and the ureter. An optical oscillograph was used for recording with mirror galvanometers (Rubstrat)

and two cameras one with a slow film speed for continuous and one with a high film speed for intermittent rapid recording. In the experiments where the arterial blood pressure was not measured an ink writer (Varian G 10) was used for the ureteric pressure recordings together with a D C amplifier (pH meter PHM 22 Radiometer Copenhagen with specially modified input and output connections)

## Results

### *With intact perireteric connections*

Eighteen experiments were performed in all. In two cases satisfactory ureteric activity was not obtained. In the other sixteen cases the experiments were performed with the technique described above. When a ureter with intact renal communication was occluded it was a constant finding that when the basal pressure rose the amplitude of the pressure waves increased first followed later by an increase in the frequency. With a progressively increasing basal pressure the amplitude of the pressure waves decreased and finally became so low that the contractile activity in the ureteric muscles could no longer be identified as peristaltic pressure waves. With a sufficiently high pressure only pulse synchronous pressure oscillations were observed in the ureter. This condition usually occurred at an intraureteric pressure level of 25-30 mm Hg. In exceptional cases large pressure wave amplitudes due to contractions were found even with higher pressures. This appeared to be more common in young dogs and puppies. A typical course in the ureteric pressure curve after occlusion may be seen in Fig. 1. After intravenous infusion of sodium chloride the ureteric pressure rose regularly but no other important change was noted in the pressure curve.

### *Perfusion at low pressures (below 15-20 mm Hg)*

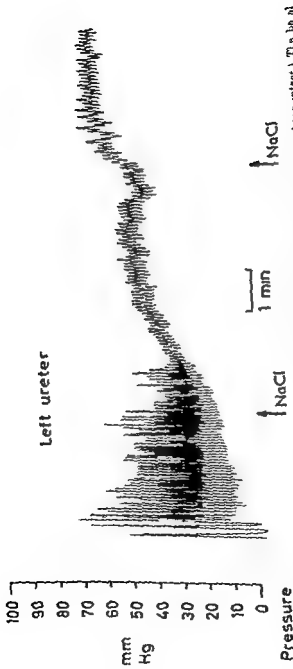
In the perfusion experiments the pressure increase was not started until any residual fluid had been emptied out of the ureter. In half of all the experiments contractions which may have been provoked by irritation caused by the indwelling catheters were observed. In two cases these contractions could not be stopped even after a long waiting period. There appeared



being obstructed. The transducer used was an Elema Type No EMT 472 a (Elema Schonander, Solna, Sweden), which has a volume displacement of  $0.3 \text{ mm}^3/100 \text{ mm Hg}$  and is linear in the region 0-300 mm Hg.

As a rule only one ureter was studied in each experiment, the other serving as a control for the extent of the diuresis. In the first part of the experiment the pressure and peristalsis were studied in ureters where communication with the kidney was intact. Sodium chloride solution 0.9% was given intravenously as a diuretic in doses of 10-40 ml sometimes repeated. The abdomen was then reopened and the "experimental" ureter divided close to the renal pelvis. A perfusion catheter was inserted into the distal side of the cut ureter (i.e. the proximal end of the now isolated ureteric segment), care being taken to minimize damage to the vascular supply of the ureter. In order to protect the catheter as far as possible from movement artifacts it was passed through a slit in the flank. In its course through the belly wall the catheter ran loosely through a short rigid plastic tube of greater diameter. The mid line incision in the abdomen was then again closed. The perfusion catheter was connected via a long non elastic tube to a glass burette placed horizontally which at the commencement of the experiment was adjusted exactly to the level of the ureter. The burette could be raised by an elevator at two different rates, i.e. 13.2 mm/min or 8.2 mm/min. This made it possible to increase the perfusion pressure at rates of 0.97 mm Hg/min and 0.65 mm Hg/min respectively. Sodium chloride solution 0.9% at room temperature (22-24 °C) served as the perfusion fluid. During the passage through the perfusion catheter however the solution became warmed since the abdomen was closed and the rate of flow was low. The flow from the burette was closed off intermittently by means of a tap. This tap was situated in the burette and was closed by turning 45°. No volume displacement in the perfusion system occurred on closing the tap.

In the majority of experiments the perfusion pressure was recorded with a transducer which was connected to the perfusion catheter by a three way tap. In the remaining cases the hydrostatic pressure was determined by measuring the difference in level between the burette and the ureter. An optical oscillograph was used for recording with mirror galvanometers (Ruhstrat)



Pressure

Fig. 1. Ureteral pressure variations for total occlusion of the distal end of the ureter (Polyurethane connections intact). The basal pressure which is represented by the minimum value of each pressure wave is approximately 15 mm Hg. The character of the contractions is highly irregular. The character of the contractions becomes too small to be measured when the pressure is about 30 mm Hg. When the amplitude of the pressure wave is induced by the contractions, the arterial pressure which are not recorded in the picture but were observed visually. The increase in pressure is alternating from intravenous injections of 0.9% NaCl solution.

to be no correlation in this respect between the size of the ureter and that of the catheter inserted. Large ureters often reacted to a catheter which in other experiments had been inserted into a smaller ureter without causing irritation. With the slow pressure increase (0.97 mm Hg/min) it was found that in all cases except three, which will be described separately below, *ureteric peristalsis commenced at pressures between 1-2 and 16 mm Hg*. As soon as peristalsis had definitely started and with regular frequency, the experiment was discontinued and the perfusion pressure reduced again to zero, after which the ureter was allowed to empty itself freely. Only small quantities of fluid (0.4-1 ml) ran from the burette into the ureter during the experiments. When the ureteric activity appeared to have ceased once more a new perfusion was commenced with a rapid increase of pressure (6.05 mm Hg/min). There again the peristalsis started at approximately the same pressure level as with the slow pressure increase. In several cases there was no difference and on a few occasions the peristalsis was produced at lower pressures during the slow increase in pressure. The three cases that had reacted differently with the slow increase also deviated from the typical response to a rapid increase of pressure. On the whole they reacted more slowly, with a rapid rise in pressure the contractions did not start until the pressures reached 20, 25 and 30 mm Hg respectively, and with the slow rise 40, 30 and 70 mm Hg respectively. The ureter that did not start contracting until the pressure had reached the considerably raised level of 50 mm Hg, was found on examination at the end of the experiment to have thickening of the muscle layer and pronounced trabeculation and a thickened mucosa in the bladder. In the subsequent part of the experiments however none of these three ureters differed from the rest of the ureters included in the material.

### *Perfusion at high pressures*

On continued increase of pressure above the level at which the ureteric contractions had begun *two principal activity patterns were observed*. Either the contractions occurred regularly with frequencies of about 5-10/min or 6-8 contractions were observed to alternate with inactive phases of varying length. The latter was most commonly seen regardless of the pattern exhibited by

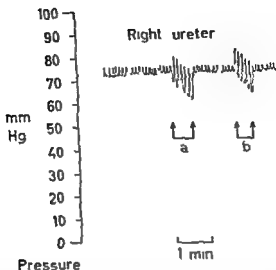
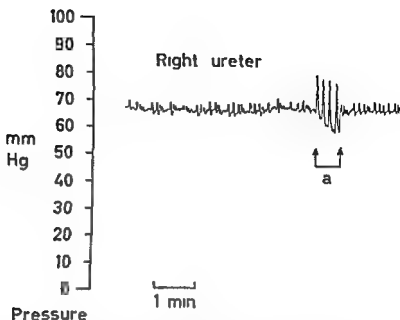


Fig. 3 The same experiment as in Fig. 2 but with a higher pressure and later. There has been a station of long duration with a perfusion pressure maintained at about 40 mm Hg for 60 minutes. There were regular contractions the pressure wave amplitudes of which rose markedly during the two periods when the perfusion burette was closed (a, b). When the burette was closed the basal pressure fell due to leakage from the catheter.

wave amplitude increased when the tap was closed. Fig. 3 illustrates the persistence of contractility even on prolonged intraluminal hypertonia. Fig. 4 shows a perfusion experiment with a rapid pressure increase. The amplitudes of the pressure waves are seen to decrease on rising pressure and are hardly distinguishable at 90 mm Hg before the burette is closed off (Fig. 4b).

During the periods when the respiration frequency was recorded, no relationship between respiratory movements and ureteric peristalsis could be shown. The frequencies sometimes coincided without this changing the peristaltic pattern or shortening the phases of inactivity.

With the system used, perfusion pressures higher than 150 mm Hg could not be applied and any remaining pressure variations due to contraction could not be distinguished with certainty from artifacts due to respiratory movement or other external disturbances exerting pressure against the ureter or the indwelling catheter. In tests to find out how high a pressure dog ureters can



*Fig 2 Pressure recording from an experiment in which the ureter was perfused in situ. There are small somewhat irregular pressure variations, their amplitude was increased markedly during the time the burette used for perfusion was closed (a) Recorded with an ink writer*

the individual ureter, both the frequency and the amplitude of the pressure waves decreased with increasing perfusion pressure. When the pressure was again reduced the contraction frequency and the amplitude increased again. In several cases, however, both the amplitude and the frequency were lower while the pressure was being reduced than at the corresponding level during pressure increase. The maximal perfusion pressure that could be applied without loss of the contractile power varied between 50 and 125 mm Hg. In five cases the pressure was 100 mm Hg or more. The ureters were thus capable of functioning for a fairly long period with high intraluminal pressures. In the majority of the experiments the perfusion pressures were maintained for an hour or more.

At different pressure levels the burette tap was closed and the ureteric pressure wave could not then be transmitted to the free fluid surface of the burette. It was found constantly that the pressure wave amplitudes then increased markedly. Fig. 2 shows the ureteric pressure curve before and after closing of the tap. The contraction frequency was unchanged but the pressure

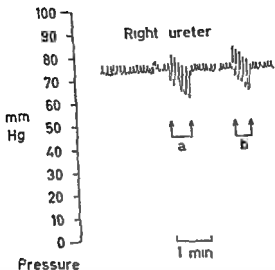
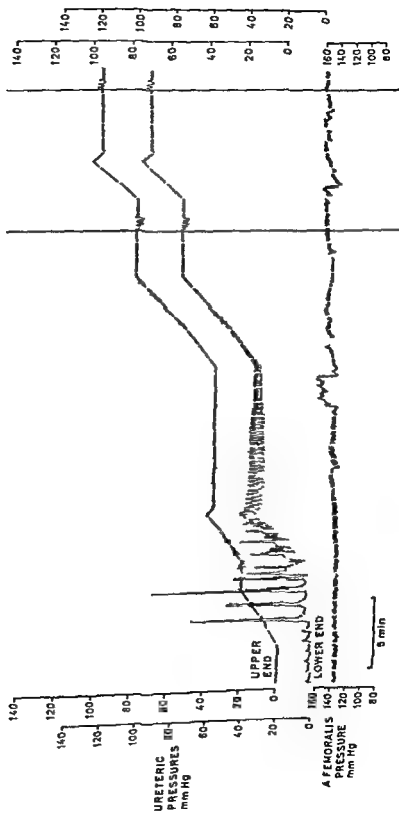


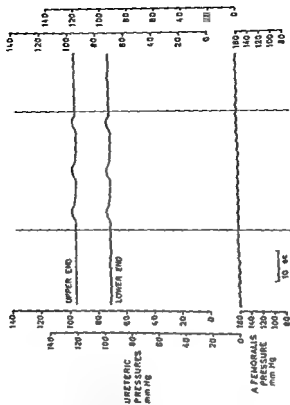
Fig 3 The same experiment as in Fig 2 b i with a higher pressure and later. There has been a state of long duration with a perfusion pressure maintained at over 40 mm Hg for 60 minutes. There were regular contractions. The pressure wave amplitudes of which rose markedly during the two periods when the perfusion burette was closed (a b). When the burette was closed the basal pressure fell due to leakage from the catheter.

Wave amplitude increased when the tap was closed. Fig 3 illustrates the persistence of contractility even on prolonged intraureteric hypertonia. Fig 4 shows a perfusion experiment with a rapid pressure increase. The amplitudes of the pressure waves are seen to decrease on rising pressure and are hardly distinguishable at 110 mm Hg before the burette is closed off (Fig 4 b).

During the periods when the respiration frequency was recorded, no relationship between respiratory movements and ureteric peristalsis could be shown. The frequencies sometimes coincided without this changing the peristaltic pattern or shortening the phases of inactivity.

With the system used perfusion pressures higher than 150 mm Hg could not be applied and any remaining pressure variations due to contraction could not be distinguished with certainty from artifacts due to respiratory movement or other external disturbances exerting pressure against the ureter or the indwelling catheter. In tests to find out how high a pressure dog ureters can



[illegible]

4



tolerate without rupture, a fluid pressure corresponding to 370 mm Hg was applied in two cases without any leakage or macroscopic damage being caused. Not until the pressure was increased to a level well beyond the response range of the transducer did the ureteric walls rupture.

## Discussion

### *Peristaltic patterns*

The peristaltic pattern of the ureter after acute total occlusion and with intact pelviureteric communication involves firstly an increasing basal pressure, followed by increase in the amplitude and the frequency of the pressure waves. The latter increase especially at pressures of about 10–15 mm Hg. Similar observations have been made by several other authors. Initial increases in frequency and amplitude are described by GOULD *et al* (1955b), among others. It has been discussed whether increased ureteric flow results in an increase in tone alone (MORALES *et al* 1952) or also in an increase of frequency (HAWLEY 1953). With further rise in pressure the amplitude of the pressure waves decreases progressively (TRATTNER 1932, LAPIDES 1948, KIL 1957, RISHOLM *et al* 1959, BOJARSKI and MARTINEZ 1962 and others). The interpretation offered by most authors for this finding is that the activity of the ureteric musculature gradually ceases with increasing distension, and that under normal conditions the urine would flow out of such a ureter by virtue of the pelvic pressure. MORALES *et al* (1952), who studied the reactions of the ureter at different flow rates, stated that with a high flow the ureter is so dilated that no contractions are possible. With sufficiently high intraluminal pressure the whole ureter becomes dilated and free fluid communication is established with the renal pelvis. BOJARSKI and MARTINEZ (1962) have demonstrated this by means of urography. It has been often found that when there was an open fluid communication in the upper urinary tract ureteric pressure oscillations were completely synchronous with the arterial pulse and there were no visible pressure peaks due to contraction. This phenomenon has been described previously by several authors and will be discussed in more detail in chapter III. This free fluid

communication occurs fairly constantly at 25-30 mm Hg in dogs. This agrees with the conclusion of HENDERSON (1905) that in dogs the ureteric contractions disappear at pressures corresponding to 26-32 mm Hg.

A few workers however, have also described ureteric contractility at higher intraluminal pressure levels. TRATTNER (1932), in experiments with his hydrophoragraph found that contractions died out at a level of 38-70 cm water. GOULD *et al* (1955b) noted ureteric contractions at 50 cm water when the pressure was forced to increase by manual compression of the urinary bladder. SLEATOR and BUTCHER (1955) recorded action potentials from ureters during perfusion with pressures up to 25-30 cm water. The peristaltic waves were then at a maximum and tended to come in groups. DAVIS (1957) stated that the peristaltic waves disappeared completely at pressures above 54 mm Hg. Reports on the contraction ability in isolated perfused ureters at still higher pressures have been published by LUCAS (1908), who observed that a segment of a dog ureter was capable of raising a column of Ringer's solution 92 cm and MURTAGHAN (1958) who demonstrated the activity in a megaureter at pressures of up to 80 cm water.

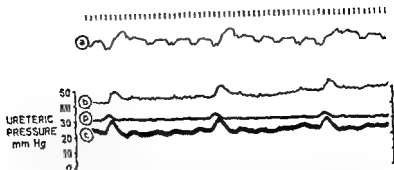
#### *The damping effect of the renal pelvis*

RICHOLM *et al* (1959) observed strong ureteric activity at pressures of about 40-45 mm Hg when the open communication between the renal pelvis and the ureter was interrupted with a ligature. They considered that the ligation simply eliminated a damping effect of the pelvis. The procedure of closing off communication with the pelvis by a ligature involved however some displacement of fluid into the ureter. It is conceivable that this might involve a trigger effect by causing extension of the ureteric walls. It is thus not precluded that a temporarily extinguished peristalsis can be re-started in this way. Closing off with the burette tap does not change the fluid content in the ureter and is therefore a better method. After closing the ureter appeared to retain its tension since the pressure recorded in the perfusion system remained unaltered or decreased only very insignificantly.

The damping theory put forward by RICHOLM seems to agree well with the present results. If the natural renal pelvis is eli-

minated and perfusion is carried out from an artificial "renal pelvis" with rigid walls in the form of a glass burette, it should be expected that pressure variations due to contractions would be found at pressure levels where no pressure waves can normally be identified in the ureter. The results found in the experiments are in agreement with this supposition. It is true that the amplitudes decrease progressively, but the damping had not been completely eliminated in the system. In closing off the burette with the tap, however, damping should be decreased further even if it does not disappear entirely, and the results obtained with an increased pressure wave amplitude at the moment when the burette was closed, clearly confirm this assumption. It is thus clear that on perfusion of an isolated ureter pressure waves due to contraction can still be found at 100-125 mm Hg. If the ureter were in free fluid communication with the renal pelvis, however, it would exhibit the classical reaction of decreasing pressure wave amplitudes and, at 25-30 mm Hg, "cessation of peristalsis". The muscularly weak renal pelvis does not appear to be able to resist large pressure increases and a damping effect due to regurgitation of fluid is therefore obtained as soon as an open communication has been established.

A certain degree of damping, however, must also take place in the ureter. Since the whole organ does not contract simultaneously, a rapid pressure wave distribution takes place in the fluid-filled dilated ureter, and the temporarily inactive parts become able to distend further. A perfusion technique such as that used here with pressure measurement alone is therefore not perfect for determining the level to which the pressure can be raised with retention of contraction ability. The boundary line as regards the power of the ureteric muscles to contract against progressively increasing pressure has not yet been determined. It is clear, however, that it exceeds that pressure that may possibly occur in the ureter in physiological or pathological conditions. Further, there must be a considerable margin between the pressure which can be overcome by the muscles and that which the muscular and elastic elements in the ureteric wall resist in a purely passive way before rupture and macroscopic breaks occur. In two control experiments a pressure of 370 mm Hg. was exerted without any rupture of the ureter. Corresponding experiments



*Fig. 5. Recording of ureteric peristalsis during ureteric perfusion. Simultaneous recording of the ureteric diameter at three different points (a, b and c). Point (a) was situated nearest to the kidney and (c) nearest to the bladder. The large upward deflections indicate contractions. (b) is the pressure in the ureter distal to (c). The pressure increases begin before the contractions at (c) which in their turn appear before the contractions at (b) etc. There are small respiration induced variations in ureteric diameter. The time intervals in seconds are marked in the uppermost part of the figure. Recording with a kymocorder.*

on human ureters (BOONE and SMITH 1944) showed pressure tolerances up to 200 mm Hg without any change in the elastic properties of the ureteric wall.

### *Peristalsis at high pressures*

The question of whether the contractions shown by the ureter at high pressures constitute a peristaltic wave running the length of the whole organ or an antiperistaltic wave or whether these are merely local strong contractions cannot be answered using the method described. At low pressures there is probably a normally propagated peristaltic wave since fluid movement was constantly observed in the glass burette a few seconds before the pressure increase was recorded in the distal part of the ureter. It is probable that the pelviureteric communication is of great importance for the initiation of normal peristaltic waves. The existence of a pacemaker for the peristalsis has been suggested by many authors and will be discussed in detail in Chapter III. In perfusion experiments on the rabbit (BICKLAND unpublished data) it was found difficult to produce peristalsis when the communication between the pelvis and ureter was broken. In dogs it is clearly possible to initiate a contraction wave merely by a

minated and perfusion is carried out from an artificial "renal pelvis" with rigid walls in the form of a glass burette, it should be expected that pressure variations due to contractions would be found at pressure levels where no pressure waves can normally be identified in the ureter. The results found in the experiments are in agreement with this supposition. It is true that the amplitudes decrease progressively but the damping had not been completely eliminated in the system. In closing off the burette with the tap, however, damping should be decreased further even if it does not disappear entirely, and the results obtained with an increased pressure wave amplitude at the moment when the burette was closed, clearly confirm this assumption. It is thus clear that on perfusion of an isolated ureter pressure waves due to contraction can still be found at 100-125 mm Hg. If this ureter were in free fluid communication with the renal pelvis, however, it would exhibit the classical reaction of decreasing pressure wave amplitudes and, at 25-30 mm Hg, "cessation of peristalsis". The muscularly weak renal pelvis does not appear to be able to resist large pressure increases and a damping effect due to regurgitation of fluid is therefore obtained as soon as an open communication has been established.

A certain degree of damping however must also take place in the ureter. Since the whole organ does not contract simultaneously a rapid pressure wave distribution takes place in the fluid filled dilated ureter and the temporarily inactive parts become able to distend further. A perfusion technique such as that used here with pressure measurement alone is therefore not perfect for determining the level to which the pressure can be raised with retention of contraction ability. The boundary line as regards the power of the ureteric muscles to contract against progressively increasing pressure has not yet been determined. It is clear however, that it exceeds that pressure that may possibly occur in the ureter in physiological or pathological conditions. Further there must be a considerable margin between the pressure which can be overcome by the muscles and that which the muscular and elastic elements in the ureteric wall will resist in a purely passive way before rupture and macroscopic breaks occur. In two control experiments a pressure of 370 mm Hg. was exerted without any rupture of the ureter. Corresponding experiments

pared with the rapid increase. It is possible that a difference would be observed if a pressure increase were induced at a rate of for example 0.1 mm Hg/min and that the muscle cells would then have time to become 'adapted'. The effect in this case would be that contraction would appear first after a greater amount of distension than when a rapid but small pressure increase was produced. This will be discussed further in chapter VI.

proximal pressure increase. At high pressures there is a dilated ureter with free fluid communication between the two pressure transducers and the pressure wave is therefore recorded at practically the same time in both places. In some experiments there was, however, a tendency towards an earlier rise in pressure distally, which either indicated antiperistalsis or that only the distal part was contracting. Many authors have also maintained that the distal third of the ureter is last in ceasing to contract on rising pressure (LAVIGES 1948, MURNAUGHAN 1957). Fig. 5 shows a perfusion experiment with a modified technique in which the ureteric diameter was recorded in three different places. For the method reference may be made to Chapter III. The contractions appear to travel in a *retrograde* direction. Observations of peristalsis after division of the ureter were made by SHIRATORI and KINOSHITA (1961b). They found that when the ureter was divided at the pelvoureteric junction retrograde peristaltic waves running through the whole ureter occurred.

*The relation between perfusion pressure and contractile response*

The magnitude of the perfusion pressure at the commencement of peristalsis in the individual ureters varied. In the two cases where there was spontaneous peristalsis, it is possible that the catheters caused irritation that stimulated contractions. The effect of an indwelling catheter on ureteric peristalsis has often been discussed, and it has been questioned especially whether free flow and normal peristalsis can remain undisturbed under these conditions (see KIL 1957 for further references). TRATTNER (1932) described spasms after the insertion of catheters. The spasms ceased within a few minutes however either spontaneously or on intraureteric injections of sodium chloride. It seems reasonable to believe that irritation from catheters was of secondary significance in these perfusion experiments. In the great majority of cases an intraluminal rise in pressure and ureteric distension are required to produce peristalsis. There are individual variations in the magnitude of the contractile response and this probably partly explains the relatively wide distribution obtained in this investigation and also the divergent results obtained in previous studies. Neither does extension sensitivity appear to be noticeably different in the slow pressure increase used com-

minimize damage to the vascular supply to the ureter. Polythene tubes with terminal holes and with an external diameter of either 1.5 mm or 1.6 mm and an inner diameter of 0.9 mm or 1.1 mm respectively were used as catheters. The catheters were inserted about 1 cm proximally and were secured with a ligature. After cannulation the ureters were allowed to drain for a few minutes for estimation of the diuresis on each side. In the case of very slow ureteric flow rates 0.9% sodium chloride solution was administered intravenously in doses of 10-40 ml to increase diuresis. When a satisfactory flow of urine was obtained one of the ureters was connected to a pressure transducer (Elema EMT 472 a see page 10) and the ureteric pressure was recorded during a few minutes occlusion to assess the ureteric activity. The stasis was then released and an electrode inserted into the wall of the ureter 0.5-2.5 cm above the tip of the ureteric catheter. In a number of experiments a piece of silver wire about 0.1 mm thick isolated but for the tip surface in a glass capillary the outer diameter of which varied between 0.2 and 0.35 mm was used as an electrode. A small piece of fine mesh earthed iron net placed under the ureter served as a reference electrode. In the remainder of the experiments a concentric needle electrode (13 A 51 Disa Elektronik A/S Herlev Denmark) was used. The Disa electrode was 30 mm long with an outer steel sheath of 0.45 mm diameter and an inner isolated platinum wire the active area of which was approximately 0.04 mm<sup>2</sup>. The steel sheath served as the reference electrode and was earthed. In all of the experiments a special earthed electrode was also inserted into the left hind leg of the animal.

Eighteen experiments were performed altogether and in thirteen of the changes in the ureteric diameter were recorded with an indicator constructed specially for the purpose (Fig 6a). The claws of the indicator were placed around the ureter at the level where the electrode had been inserted (Fig 6b). In two experiments a further indicator was also placed 2-30 mm proximally to the electrode. Both the electrode and the diameter indicators were held in position by being clamped to rigid bars and in order that the abdominal viscera should not displace the measuring instruments the viscera were packed in muslin compresses wet with sodium chloride and held aside by hooks.



### CHAPTER III

## The contractility at high intraureteric pressures with intact pelviureteric connections

As already mentioned in the previous chapter, the decrease in amplitude of the ureteric pressure waves associated with increase in intraluminal pressure has been interpreted by the majority of workers as due to a weakening and finally an inhibition of peristalsis. Since, however, the perfusion experiments showed that muscular contractility can occur even at very high intra-ureteric pressures a series of experiments was performed the purpose of which was to study the relationship between pressure and ureteric muscular activity when the pelviureteric connections were intact, and where more criteria for ureteric contractions than pressure waves alone were required.

### *Material and methods*

Altogether sixteen adult dogs of both sexes and weighing between 8.5 and 25 kg were used for the experiments. They were anesthetized with intravenous injections of veterinary Nembutal® (Abbott) in a dosage of 30 mg/kg body weight. The left femoral vein was cannulated to facilitate intravenous infusions. A catheter was inserted into the right femoral artery for recording the arterial pressure with a pressure transducer or a mercury manometer. Either an oxygen filled Krogh spirometer adapted as described in chapter II or a balloon placed under the diaphragm and connected to a pressure transducer for marking abdominal pressure variations were used for pneumotachography.

The abdomen was opened with a long mid line incision from the ensiform process to the symphysis pubis. After puncturing and emptying the urinary bladder both ureters were cannulated as near to the bladder as possible great care being taken to

munication between the renal pelvis and the ureteric catheter. When necessary the diuresis was stimulated with sodium chloride infusions. In seven of the experiments succinylcholine iodide (Celocurin® iodide Vitrum) in a dose of 1 mg/kg body weight was administered intravenously to produce total blockade of the striated muscle.

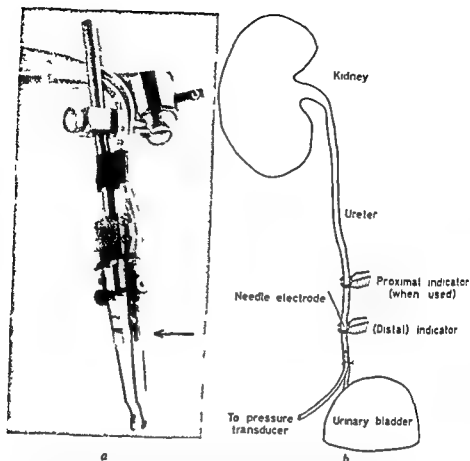
The recording apparatus varied somewhat. The electromyogram was recorded via a cathode follower either on a two channel oscilloscope with or without simultaneous recording of the diameter variations and photographed with a Du Mont Polaroid I and camera type 2620 or together with all the rest of the traces on a multichannel recorder. The input time constant of the cathode follower was  $\frac{1}{2}$   $\mu$ sec and the amplification factor 0.83. The active electrode was connected by a double shielded cable to the grid of the cathode follower tube and the inner cable shield to its cathode. The outer shield was connected to the reference electrode and earthed. By using a shield connected to the cathode the capacitative effects in the electrode cable are kept as low as possible thus improving the signal reproduction.

In most of the experiments an optic oscillograph (described in chapter II) was used as a writer. In the other experiments a fourteen channel oscillograph of the Honeywell Visicorder type 906 A-1 was used with DC amplifiers (Grass Low Level Pre amplifiers) for the ureteric pressure transducer and diameter indicators.

## Results

The time course of the ureteric peristalsis after occlusion showed the same pattern as in the experiments described in chapter II. After a period of increasing frequency and amplitude the amplitude of the pressure waves again decreased with increasing pressure. As a rule when there was free fluid communication between the renal pelvis and the ureter only pressure oscillations synchronous with the arterial pulse and other arterial pressure variations were obtained.

An action potential occurred constantly before each pressure wave and as an expression of ureteric contraction a decrease in the diameter of the ureter was obtained after each action potential. The close relationships between action potentials, ureteric



**Fig 1** Indicator for measuring variations in ureteric diameter (a) It consists of two tongues of phosphor bronze 10 cm long and 0.8 cm broad. They are attached at one end to a wedge shaped brass block. Their free ends are narrower and shaped so that together they resemble a claw. At the arrow the tongues are ground thin so that they are very flexible. Strain gauges coupled as part of a bridge are mounted on the thin regions of both tongues. The tongues have some resilience but very little force is required to move them and all bending occurs at the thin regions. The movements are thus transduced via the strain gauges into electrical information. With the aid of two screws placed just above the thin regions the claws can be adjusted so that they just enclose and very lightly touch the ureter. The instrument thus subsequently follows radial variations in the ureter. The schematic diagram (b) shows where these indicators were placed.

When all preparations were complete the ureter was totally occluded by connecting the catheter to the pressure transducer and the ureteric pressure, action potentials (AP) and diameter variations were studied at the same time as also were the arterial pressure and respiration. An attempt was made to obtain an intraureteric pressure sufficiently high to ensure free fluid com

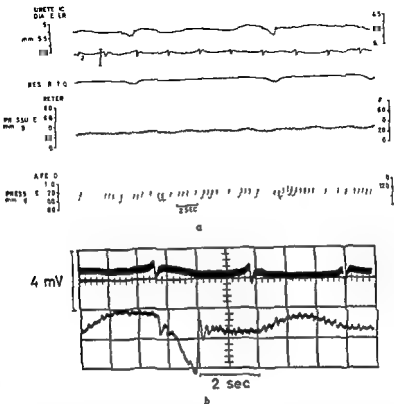


Fig 8 Rg 1a to 1c in a ureter with a fast polycrystalline con. also a and a pressure of 25-30 mm Hg. There are small pressure variations synchronous with the arterial pulse together with a small and regular increase after each action potential. The diameter recording also shows respiration dependent changes (Optical occlusion graph). Fig 8b shows cathode ray oscilloscope traces of action potential (bottom) and its afterpotentials at the time of the second respiratory movement in Fig 8.

contractions and pressure increases at moderate intraureteric pressures (10-20 mm Hg) were studied separately and are treated in chapter IV.

With pressures of over 20-30 mm Hg the pressure wave amplitudes became so small that they could not be identified with certainty. The action potentials and ureteric contractions however continued to occur with an essentially unchanged appearance. The different parts of Fig 7 show the ureteric activity at different intraluminal pressures. With low pressures (Fig 7a)

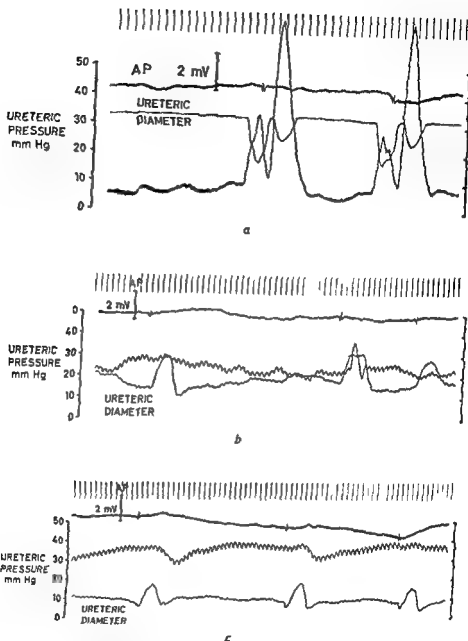


Fig. 7 The relationship between the action potential and the variations in ureteric diameter and pressure (Pelviureteric connections intact). Upward deviations in the diameter recording, indicate contraction and downward deviations dilatation. The curve in Fig. 7a is discussed in more detail in Chapter IV. Note that in 7b the ureteric pressure rises with the second contraction (incomplete damping). In both 7b and 7c the ureteric pressure varies asynchronously with the arterial pulse and respiration. The latter were studied visually and are not recorded here. The large periodic decreases in ureteric pressure in 7c are due to respiration. The uppermost marks are time intervals in seconds. Recordings with Visicorder.

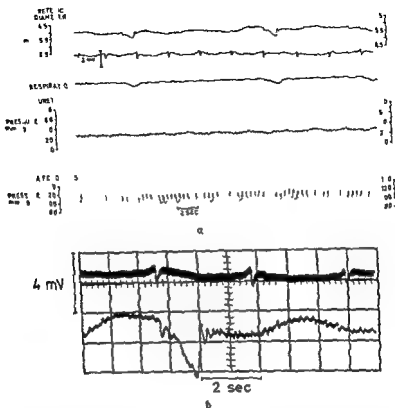


Fig 8 Regula contraction in a rat with intact portal-systemic connections and a pressure of 25-30 mm Hg. The traces are small pressure variations synchronous with the arterial pulse together with a small and regular increase after each action potential. The diaphragm recording also shows respiratory dependent change (Optical oscillograph). Fig 8b shows cathode ray oscilloscope traces of action potentials (top) and pressure variations at the time of the second respiratory movement in Fig 8a.

contractions and pressure increases at moderate intrauterine pressures ( $>20$  mm Hg) were studied separately and are treated in chapter IV.

With pressures of over 25-30 mm Hg the pressure wave amplitudes became so small that they could not be identified with certainty. The action potentials and areteric contractions however continued to occur with an essentially unchanged appearance. The different parts of Fig 7 show the areteric activity at different intraluminal pressures. With low pressures (Fig 7a)

TABLE 1 *The frequency of ureteric contractions immediately after the beginning of occlusion (initial frequency) and then after two consecutive periods*

Experiment No	Initial frequency per min	Occlusion time in min	Final pressure in mm Hg	Final frequency per min	Occlusion time in min	Final pressure in mm Hg	Final frequency per min
1	17	34	30	20	70	50	15
2	10	23	30	8			
3	18	28	40	10	43	50	9
4	9	3	35	20	17	45	20
5	8	32	30	24	56	45	10
6	12	50	30	10	90	30	6
7	30	60	55	20	150	60	6
8	17	30	45	17	90	75	13
9	9	30	50	15	60	60	12
10	8	60	30	13	90	35	13
11	17	80	60	12	160	50	12
12	24	30	25	24	60	35	24
13	17	32	25	15	50	50	10
14a	15	70	40	11	110	60	12
14b	10	45	40	12	60	60	5
15	6	85	35	5	150	55	4
16	3	30	35	3	50	40	3
17	7	35	50	7	50	50	6
18	8	60	25	10	100	40	10

For example in experiment No 1 the frequency was 20 cycles/min after 34 minutes when the pressure was 30 mm Hg and later (70 minutes after occlusion) with a pressure of 50 mm Hg the frequency was 15 cycles/min. Experiment No 14b was carried out on the same ureter as 14a and was begun 10 minutes after the conclusion of 14a.

large pressure amplitudes during and after every action potential are seen. At high pressures these pressure waves are reduced and disappear while the action potentials remain (Figs 7b and c) at the same time contractions can be seen clearly in the diameter recording.

Fig 8 shows the contractility in conditions of free communication between the pelvis and ureter, and the oscillations synchronous with the arterial pulse. The diameter variations in

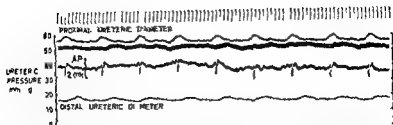


Fig 9 For a d more g peristalsis with a u t r e c pressure of 50 mm Hg (Pelvi ureteri connections intact) The ureteric pressure curve shows slow waves due to respiration with superimposed very small oscillations synchronous with the arterial pulse. The electromyogram was recorded from the same level as was the distal ureteric diameter. The course of events is as follows (from left to right): First a proximal ureteric contraction is seen followed by an action potential (distal) preceding the distal contraction. A few seconds later a second proximal contraction takes place and the chain of events is repeated etc. Upper most time marking in seconds. Recorded with kymograph.

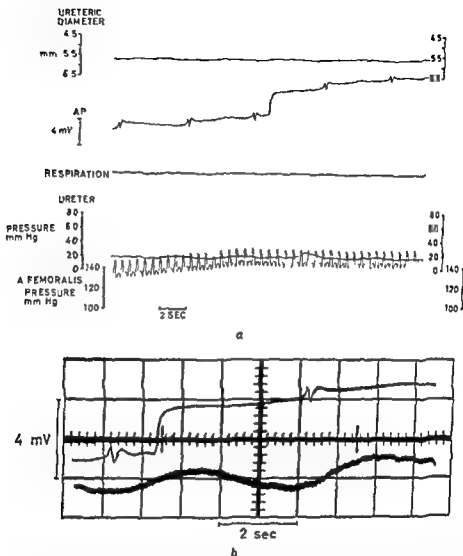
Fig 8 are rather unclear due to the low sensitivity of the recording system used. The diameter recordings were therefore displayed simultaneously on a cathode ray oscilloscope with high amplification and distinct contractions were observed. During the recording of Fig 8 b a respiration artifact unfortunately appeared so that one ureteric contraction was completely obliterated.

The relationship between the action potentials and contractions may also be seen in Figs 9 and 10 b which were recorded under conditions similar to those in Fig 8.

The frequency showed a tendency to decrease on continued increase in pressure or on prolonged stasis (at the same pressure). The difference was small however in several cases. The highest pressure reached was 75 mm Hg and ureteric activity was still retained at this level the frequency being 13 contractions per minute and the period of total occlusion 90 minutes. A summary of the data regarding frequencies ureteric pressure and occlusion periods may be seen in Table 1.

The duration of the individual contractions varied between 2 and 5 seconds. The amplitude of the action potential was as a rule 1-2 mV with extreme values of 0.5 and 4 mV and a duration between 0.25 and 0.60 seconds (Figs 13 c 14 b and 16 c chapter V). The latent period between the beginning of the action potential and that of the ureteric contraction (measured as incipient





*Fig 10 Ureteric activity four minutes after Celocurin administration (P h ureteric connections intact) There are regular ureteric contractions but no pressure increase (Fig 10a Optical oscillograph) In Fig 10b the third and fourth contractions with their preceding action potentials (abxv) are illustrated with the cathode ray oscilloscope traces in order to demonstrate more clearly the variations in ureteric diameter (lower curve)*

diameter reduction) was 0.4–0.5 seconds. The latent period showed a tendency to increase in prolonged experiments when the action potential also tended to decrease in amplitude and change in form.

In several cases there was no difficulty in observing visually the downwardly propagated peristaltic waves in spite of high

intraureteric pressures. There was good correlation between the passage of a visibly propagated peristaltic wave past the electrode site and the appearance of an action potential. In the two cases where two diameter indicators were used a contraction was constantly recorded at the proximal indicator before the action potential and contraction at the distal indicator (Fig 9). A similar sequence of the contractions was observed in a few experiments of similar type in which three diameter indicators and no action potential recording were used.

In all cases where Celcurin was used the dog was allowed to breathe pure oxygen for 20-30 minutes before the Celcurin was administered and in this way no respiratory assistance was required during the few minutes immediately following the commencement of paresis (apnoeic oxygenation). Recordings were made when all striated muscle activity including respiratory movement had ceased. In all cases except one the ureter remained entirely unaffected and no alteration occurred in the frequency pressure or electromyogram. Fig 10 shows the ureteric activity after the commencement of apnoea. The diameter variation on the oscillograph recording (Fig 10a) are small and appear more clearly in the oscilloscope picture (Fig 10b). In one case there was a pronounced rise in arterial pressure (vasoconstriction) following the Celcurin administration and the ureteric pressure decreased simultaneously. When the ureteric pressure dropped below 20 mm Hg distinct pressure variations due to contractions occurred.

No relationship between the respiratory movements or the abdominal pressure variations due to them and the ureteric activity was found apart from mechanical artifacts. Nor was there any relationship between the arterial pressure variations and the ureteric activity.

## Discussion

### *Electromyography at high intraureteric pressures*

Electroureterograms have been used by several previous workers as a means of studying ureteric function. Intraluminal electrodes have been used most frequently (HAWLEY 1953, FRANKSON and PETERSEN 1953, CALAFATI et al 1954, SLEATOR and

BUTCHER 1955, BUTCHER and SLEATOR 1955, BUTCHER and SLEATOR 1956, COREY *et al* 1956, BUTCHER *et al* 1957, and WEINBERG and SIEBENS 1958), while in a few investigations electrodes have been applied to the adventitia (ORBELI and v. BRUCKE 1910, WEINBERG and HOFFMAN 1961, WEINBERG 1962) or inserted intramuscularly (BAKER and HUFFER 1953, GARG *et al* 1959, SHIRATORI *et al* 1959, SHIRATORI and KINOSHITA 1961 *a* and *b*, SHIRATORI and CHIMA 1961). An intraluminal electrode technique is very liable to artifacts since good contact with the ureteric epithelium should be maintained, and at the same time distension by a catheter that is too large must be avoided. The different types of extraluminal electrodes give more exact information about the action potentials and are thus to be preferred. It is true that an intramuscular electrode damages the ureteric tissue locally, but the recording is made the whole time from a well defined static point in contrast to juxta adventitial electrodes over which the ureter is able to slide.

The present technique is very similar to that used by SHIRATORI and his collaborators, and appears to give almost identical results in dogs with respect to the form, amplitude and duration of the action potentials. SHIRATORI described three types of waves with amplitudes varying between 0.5 and 1.5 mV and durations of 0.2–0.4 seconds. BAKER and HUFFER (1953) used another technique. A needle (hypodermic needle No. 28) was used as an active electrode and the indifferent electrode was placed in the skin of the abdomen. The action potentials obtained in this way had an amplitude of about 0.2 mV, thus lower than those found by SHIRATORI. The duration was also shorter, i.e. about 0.1 second. The different results appear to be due to differences in the method of recording. Under good conditions action potentials similar to those of SHIRATORI are obtained with an intraluminal technique (SLEATOR and BUTCHER 1955) and with adventitial electrodes (WEINBERG and HOFFMAN 1961).

The two most common types of action potentials in the Japanese material were also most common in the present investigation while the third form of wave (Fig. 14b) which has the lowest amplitude and was observed by SHIRATORI and collaborators especially in conditions when the peristalsis was weak occurred most often with high pressures or in prolonged occlusion experiments.

The form of the action potentials thus seems to vary with the condition of the muscle cells but the recording of electromyograms does not *per se* necessarily involve serious reduction in function. The most prolonged experiment in this material extended over 150 minutes while SHIRATORI stated that it was possible to obtain the spikes unchanged in appearance for three hours. The position of the electrode in the ureteric wall seems to be an essential factor as regards the appearance of the action potentials. Electromyograms with different types of electrodes give fairly divergent results and it is reasonable to suppose that a varying intramural electrode position might give variations in the form of the action potentials. The appearance of the individual spike is therefore probably less important than the fact of its existence. The occurrence of potential variations alone is not however necessarily evidence of ureteric contractility. It only indicates that localized depolarizations (or very local non propagated contractions) occur in the smooth muscle but whether regular contractions arise can only be determined by some form of simultaneous diameter indication. *If both an action potential and a subsequent decrease in diameter are recorded, this must be regarded as proof that a contraction has taken place.* The experiments showed that even when the intraureteric pressure rose to a height such that the amplitude of the contraction dependent pressure variations decreased and finally ceased because of damping the contractions remained. *The most usual way of identifying the ureteric activity i.e. the measurement of ureteric pressure changes alone must thus be regarded as inadequate at such intraureteric pressure levels when there is open communication with the renal pelvis and the damping effect of the latter influences the observed pressure changes.*

Roentgen contrast investigations of the ureter (BENJAMIN *et al* 1956) also appear to be unreliable when a certain degree of distension has been exceeded. This is to be expected since with high pressure and pronounced dilatation the lumen of the ureter is not completely closed during contraction (GRAVES and DAVIDOFF 1927). It is probably quite difficult to identify on a roentgenogram partial decreases in diameter on ureteric contractions. On the other hand the contractions can be observed when the degree of dilatation is more moderate. BENJAMIN *et al* (1956) demon-

strated ureteric contractions with cinefluorography in obstructed dog ureters in the presence of moderate dilatation

*The effect of intravenous NaCl infusions on the ureteric pressure*

As shown in chapter II ureteric activity can be demonstrated in perfusion experiments at high hydrostatic pressure levels. In experiments with intact pelviureteric communications the ureteric pressure seldom rises spontaneously above 45 mm Hg. After a more or less rapid pressure increase, the pressure required to dilate the ureter and establish free communication between the ureter and pelvis is reached. In addition, if the diuresis is sufficient, the pressure increases further to a level which should correspond approximately to the filtration pressure in the glomeruli. The "pattern of free communication" which is shown in these cases by the ureteric pressure recording completely reflects the changes in arterial pressure. With every pulse beat the pressure rises and falls to some degree, and slow arterial pressure oscillations and variations in the arterial pressure synchronous with respiration are very well reflected. These phenomena have been described by several authors (RISHOLM *et al* 1959, TAYLOR and ULLMAN 1961, KIL and AUKLAND 1961 *b*, BOJARSKI and MARTINEZ 1962 and others). Because of the stasis in the ureter the kidney is affected by the increased pelvic pressure, and the diuresis decreases (SELKURT *et al* 1952, KIL and AUKLAND 1961 *b*). If a diuretic is given the pressure can be forced higher than 45–50 mm Hg even without change in the arterial blood pressure. TAYLOR and ULLMAN obtained maximal pressures of 148 mm Hg after intravenous injections of 23% mannitol in normal saline. If infusions of isotonic NaCl are repeated in moderate amounts the ureteric pressure increases sharply within  $\frac{1}{2}$ –1 minute after each infusion and can be raised to 100 mm Hg without difficulty. It seems to be predominantly a local intrarenal reaction that causes the high pressures after the administration of normal NaCl. Infusions of hypotonic NaCl also probably have this effect. KIL and AUKLAND (1961 *a*) gave 0.45% NaCl intravenously in quantities of 4–8 ml/min and obtained maximal pelvic pressures of 134 cm water. If the diuresis was maintained with repeated infusion of 5% glucose the pelvic pressure increased but not in sharp steps or if a fluid with hypernormal colloid

osmotic pressure but containing no electrolytes is administered ( $10^6$  Dextran) a transient reduction of the pelvic pressure is obtained (BICKLE and NORMAN to be published). Since it is improbable that pressures above 100 mm Hg occur in the urinary tract either physiologically or under pathological conditions it has not been considered worthwhile to attempt to reach such pressure levels experimentally. The study of the ureteric activity has therefore been mainly confined to the pressure region of 30-60 mm Hg.

### *Ureteric peristalsis at high intraluminal pressures*

Only the lower part of the ureter was studied. In the majority of the experiments the ureteric diameter was only measured at one place and it is possible that the activity which was observed was local to the distal ureter and therefore simulated peristalsis. As mentioned in chapter II it has been claimed that the power of contraction ceases last in the lower third. In several experiments however a fully visible peristaltic wave was observed and in the cases where several diameter indicators were used a distal contraction was preceded by a proximal one (Fig. 9). Antiperistalsis was not demonstrated with certainty in this series of experiments but it probably occurred. It has been observed among others by TRATTNER (1932), SEATOR and BUTCHER (1955) and WELICK *et al* (1962). The latter studied human ureters. On the other hand SHIRATORI and KINOSHITA (1961a) did not observe any anti-peristaltic discharges in normal dog ureters.

The fluid transport along an occluded ureter does not cease even if there is total distal occlusion. The continually persistent contractions produce a circulation of fluid within the closed system. Furthermore return transport from the renal pelvis to the blood can take place (RISCHOW and ØRRSKOV 1958) apparently predominantly via the lymphatics (FOULI *et al* 1959).

### *The effects of the experimental procedure*

Of especial interest is the contraction frequency in the occluded ureter. A slowly decreasing frequency was found when the pressure was high and/or the occlusion was maintained for a long period. This was probably a result of the experimental procedure. At the same time a decrease in the amplitude of the potentials

strated ureteric contractions with cinefluorography in obstructed dog ureters in the presence of moderate dilatation

*The effect of intravenous NaCl infusions on the ureteric pressure*

As shown in chapter II ureteric activity can be demonstrated in perfusion experiments at high hydrostatic pressure levels. In experiments with intact pelvoureteric communications the ureteric pressure seldom rises spontaneously above 45 mm Hg. After a more or less rapid pressure increase, the pressure required to dilate the ureter and establish free communication between the ureter and pelvis is reached. In addition, if the diuresis is sufficient, the pressure increases further to a level which should correspond approximately to the filtration pressure in the glomeruli. The 'pattern of free communication' which is shown in these cases by the ureteric pressure recording completely reflects the changes in arterial pressure. With every pulse beat the pressure rises and falls to some degree, and slow arterial pressure oscillations and variations in the arterial pressure synchronous with respiration are very well reflected. These phenomena have been described by several authors (RISUOLAN *et al* 1939, TAYLOR and ULLMAN 1961, KIL and AUKLAND 1961 b, BOJARSKI and MARTINEZ 1962, and others). Because of the stasis in the ureter the kidney is affected by the increased pelvic pressure, and the diuresis decreases (SELHAUT *et al* 1952, KIL and AUKLAND 1961 b). If a diuretic is given the pressure can be forced higher than 45-50 mm Hg even without change in the arterial blood pressure. TAYLOR and ULLMAN obtained maximal pressures of 148 mm Hg after intravenous injections of 23% mannitol in normal saline. If infusions of isotonic NaCl are repeated in moderate amounts the ureteric pressure increases sharply within  $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 minute after each infusion, and can be raised to 100 mm Hg without difficulty. It seems to be predominantly a local intrarenal reaction that causes the high pressures after the administration of normal NaCl. Infusions of hypotonic NaCl also probably have this effect. KIL and AUKLAND (1961 a) gave 0.45% NaCl intravenously in quantities of 4-8 ml/min and obtained maximal pelvic pressures of 134 cm water. If the diuresis was maintained with repeated infusion of 5% glucose the pelvic pressure increased but not in sharp steps or if a fluid with hypernormal colloid

observed that the ureteric muscles can hypertrophy proximally to a ureteric stone (WILDBOLZ 1952), and after partial ureteric occlusion with dilatation (BENJAMIN *et al* 1956)

### *Pacemakers in the ureter*

The existence of a pacemaker for ureteric peristalsis has been discussed and VARATH (1951) and MORALES *et al* (1952) among others held the view that the contraction waves began in the calyces and were propagated to the ureter via the renal pelvis. SLEATOR and BUTCHER (1955) also described this finding but considered it hazardous to conclude from their results that a renal pacemaker normally exists. BOZLER (1942) on the other hand found in the extreme renal end of isolated ureters a small region with high spontaneous activity from which the propagated ureteric contractions arose. BOZLER regarded this as a pacemaker situated at the pelvoureteric junction. It was not the intention in the present investigation however to determine from what part of the urinary tract the propagated ureteric contractions usually originate but to study whether the respiratory movements or changes in the arterial pressure can constitute a trigger mechanism. In a few cases the frequencies of respiration and peristalsis coincided but no definite relationship was found. FREIFER (1949) with roentgen contrast investigations of the renal pelvis found good correlation between the respiratory movements and the filling variations of the renal pelvis. According to FREIFER deep inspiration could provoke a peristaltic wave. If this occurs it is probably only an occasional coincidental occurrence. One of the aims of the experiments with Celocurin was to eliminate any possible respiratory stimulation of the ureter. In no case did total respiratory paresis result in any change in the ureteric activity. Nor did Celocurin affect the electromyogram. The same results were also obtained by SINGARONI and CHINI (1961) who after the administration of succinylcholine chloride in doses of 1 mg/kg body weight found no change in the electromyogram from dog ureters.

The part played by the arterial pressure in ureteric peristalsis is indirect. It may be considered to be a 'supply pressure' for diuresis and also determines the appearance of the communication pattern. If the effect of the arterial pressure on the kidney



was seen in a number of cases, and also sometimes a protrusion of the latent period between the action potential and the commencement of contraction. The latent period was considerably longer than that described by SLEATOR and BUTCHER (1955). Using another technique in which the electrical and mechanical activity were not measured at the same place they calculated a latent period of 0.1 second from the action potential to the beginning of mechanical activity. In the present investigation, however the ureter was not in its natural milieu. Both cooling and drying may contribute to a tendency to a slower reaction, and such effects are additive to the effect exerted by operation trauma and increase in pressure. The anaesthetic used, on the other hand probably exerted no untoward effect on the ureter. Care was taken to produce an adequate depth of anaesthesia. Too light an anaesthesia can lead to profuse recording artifacts, a phenomenon which has also been described by BAKER and HUFFER (1953). These authors studied the electromyogram from dog ureters under anaesthesia with ether or intravenous sodium secenal, and also the importance of anaesthetic depth. No effect on the electromyogram was shown in any of the cases studied.

The durations of the individual contractions varied, but the range was similar to that found by BOJARSKY and MARTINEZ (1962). With low diastolic pressures they recorded a systolic duration of 2-5 seconds and in studies on man BORN and BLANK (1955) found a variation of the ureteric systole of between 1.5 and 4 seconds.

In spite of the unfavourable external conditions the ureters were able to contract for long periods at high intraluminal pressures. No definite conclusions can be drawn however regarding the length of time that an occluded ureter is able to maintain peristalsis but a period of several hours seems a reasonable minimum estimate. In a series of experiments with partially obstructed and dilated dog ureters BAKER and HUFFER (1953) found only small electromyographic changes after 2-4 months. The peristalsis was reported as being forceful with a normal rate but the intraureteric pressure was not determined. No great degree of muscular atrophy occurs in chronically obstructed ureters; there is predominantly an increase in the amount of fibrous tissue (STEIN and WEINBERG 1962). It has also been

## CHAPTER IV

### Ureteric diameter variations and electromyograms at low intraluminal pressure levels

A number of studies of ureteric peristalsis at low and moderate intraureteric pressures have been reported in the literature. In recent years electromyography most frequently with intraluminal electrodes and with simultaneous pressure recording without occlusion of the ureter has been used to study the point of origin and the rate of propagation and also the importance of the rate of flow. Both roentgenograms and intraluminal detectors sensitive to diametric changes have been used to study ureteric contractions. A combination of pressure measurements, diameter recordings and electromyography does not appear to have been utilized however for the analysis of ureteric function at physiological pressure levels. In order therefore to study more closely the local electrical and mechanical events accompanying the passage of a peristaltic wave a series of experiments with measurement of the intraureteric pressure and simultaneous recording of electro-ureterograms and diameter changes has been performed.

#### Material and methods

Nineteen adult dogs of both sexes and weighing between 8.5 and 31 kg were used for the experiments. The same operative technique was used as described in chapter III. In those cases however where several diameter indicators were used a larger portion of the ureter was freed in order to ensure the best conditions for the indicators placed at the selected site. A ureter which has been inadequately dissected out cannot move freely and the diameter recording is then made considerably more difficult.

The ureters were cannulated in the same way and with the same types of catheter as described in chapter III. The ureteric pressure, arterial pressure and respiration were also recorded with

is decreased by vasoconstrictors or by compressing the renal artery the pressure falls abruptly in the pelvoureteric system and contraction dependent pressure waves are seen, probably as an expression of the fact that free fluid communication between the pelvis and ureter has been interrupted in some way (BACKLUND and NORDGREN, to be published) With the exception of these effects the arterial pressure does not appear to influence the ureter, and no relationship has been shown between the contraction frequency and the variations in arterial pressure

## CHAPTER IV

### Ureteric diameter variations and electromyograms at low intraluminal pressure levels

A number of studies of ureteric peristalsis at low and moderate intraureteric pressures have been reported in the literature. In recent years electromyography most frequently with intraluminal electrodes and with simultaneous pressure recording without occlusion of the ureter has been used to study the point of origin and the rate of propagation and also the importance of the rate of flow. Both roentgenograms and intraluminal detectors sensitive to diametric changes have been used to study ureteric contractions. A combination of pressure measurements, diameter recordings and electromyography does not appear to have been utilized however for the analysis of ureteric function at physiological pressure levels. In order therefore to study more closely the local electrical and mechanical events accompanying the passage of a peristaltic wave a series of experiments with measurement of the intraureteric pressure and simultaneous recording of electroretrograms and diameter changes has been performed.

#### Material and methods

Nineteen adult dogs of both sexes and weighing between 8.5 and 33 kg were used for the experiments. The same operative technique was used as described in chapter III. In those cases however where several diameter indicators were used a larger portion of the ureter was freed in order to ensure the best conditions for the indicators placed at the selected site. A ureter which has been inadequately dissected out cannot move freely and the diameter recording is then made considerably more difficult.

The ureters were cannulated in the same way and with the same types of catheter as described in chapter III. The ureteric pressure, arterial pressure and respiration were also recorded with

the same methods as before. Intravenous injections of 0.9% sodium chloride solutions were given as a diuretic when required.

Altogether twenty two experiments were performed, and in fourteen a single indicator of the type described in chapter III was used for diameter recordings. In two experiments two indicators placed 25 mm and 30 mm apart, respectively, were used, and in the remaining six experiments three indicators were used, the distance between the proximal and intermediate indicators was 15-23 mm, and between the intermediate and the distal 16-38 mm. The distance between the tip of the ureteric catheter and the distal diameter indicator varied between 5 and 25 mm. The greatest distance, measured from the tip of the catheter to the most proximally placed indicator, was 75 mm.

For recordings of the electromyogram an electrode was inserted into the wall of the ureter between the claws of the most distal diameter indicator. In a few cases however, the electrode was placed somewhat proximally or distally to this level. A silver electrode was used in ten cases and a platinum electrode in the remaining twelve. The electrodes were constructed as described in chapter III. The electromyogram was also recorded as described in the previous chapter.

In ten experiments the optic oscillograph described in chapter II was used for recording, and in the remainder a Visicorder 906 A 1 with D.C. amplifiers (Grass Low Level Pre-amplifiers) for the ureteric pressure and diameter detectors. The experiments were performed in such a way that before the recordings from a ureter were commenced, the urine was allowed to run freely from the ureteric catheter. During this time the diuresis was estimated roughly, and the action potentials and diameter variations were assessed. The ureteric catheter was then connected to a pressure transducer (Elema EMT 472 a) no urine being allowed to escape from the ureter. An attempt was made to obtain moderate pressure levels (5-20 mm Hg) so that the relationship between the action potentials, ureteric contractions and pressure rises could be studied.

## Results

There were certain constantly recurring difficulties. Careful preparation was required to obtain good electromyographic re-

cordings and at the same time satisfactory diameter measurements from two or three levels. It was sometimes impossible to complete an experiment without making slight adjustments of the ureteric position in the indicator claws. As in the investigations described in chapter III the placing of an electrode in the ureteric wall at the site of an indicator resulted in a local decrease of movement. In control experiments when the electrode was removed the diameter variations increased. In spite of the presence of the electrode however the deflections were usually sufficiently large for the diameter change to be identified with certainty.

The form, amplitude and duration of the action potentials were the same as described in chapter III. The range of variation of these parameters as recorded was large and by changing the position of the electrode in cases where the potentials were small a considerably higher amplitude was often obtained.

*Pressure variations. The occurrence of diphasic pressure waves with peristalsis*

The pressure waves were of two principal types. Either a single pressure wave occurred after each action potential or as in the vast majority of cases there was a pair of pressure waves. In the latter case the first wave was as a rule of lower amplitude and shorter duration than the second wave (Fig. 11). The interval between the waves varied considerably and was sometimes so great that they appeared entirely separate. In other cases the interval was so small that the waves were almost confluent. In some cases the first wave had a greater amplitude than the second but it was never of longer duration. The action potential belonging to the wave complex always appeared during the first wave. Its precise localization could vary but it was never earlier than the beginning of the first wave. In some cases a triphasic pressure wave complex appeared. To judge from wave form and time relationship to the action potential the first of these three waves was an extra wave while the next two corresponded to the ordinary diphasic complex. Thus the action potential occurred at the same time as the second wave of the triphasic complex.

These different types of peristaltic waves were not unique for this experimental series but were observed in all the present

the same methods as before. Intravenous injections of 0.9% sodium chloride solutions were given as a diuretic when required.

Altogether twenty two experiments were performed, and in fourteen a single indicator of the type described in chapter III was used for diameter recordings. In two experiments two indicators placed 25 mm and 30 mm apart, respectively, were used, and in the remaining six experiments three indicators were used, the distance between the proximal and intermediate indicators was 15-23 mm, and between the intermediate and the distal 16-38 mm. The distance between the tip of the ureteric catheter and the distal diameter indicator varied between 5 and 25 mm. The greatest distance, measured from the tip of the catheter to the most proximally placed indicator was 75 mm.

For recordings of the electromyogram an electrode was inserted into the wall of the ureter between the claws of the most distal diameter indicator. In a few cases however, the electrode was placed somewhat proximally or distally to this level. A silver electrode was used in ten cases and a platinum electrode in the remaining twelve. The electrodes were constructed as described in chapter III. The electromyogram was also recorded as described in the previous chapter.

In ten experiments the optic oscillograph described in chapter II was used for recording, and in the remainder a Visicorder 906 A 1 with D.C. amplifiers (Grass Low Level Pre-amplifiers) for the ureteric pressure and diameter detectors. The experiments were performed in such a way that before the recordings from a ureter were commenced, the urine was allowed to run freely from the ureteric catheter. During this time the diuresis was estimated roughly and the action potentials and diameter variations were assessed. The ureteric catheter was then connected to a pressure transducer (Elema EMT 472 a) no urine being allowed to escape from the ureter. An attempt was made to obtain moderate pressure levels (5-20 mm Hg) so that the relationship between the action potentials, ureteric contractions and pressure rises could be studied.

## Results

There were certain constantly recurring difficulties. Careful preparation was required to obtain good electromyographic re-

cordings and at the same time satisfactory diameter measurements from two or three levels. It was sometimes impossible to complete an experiment without making slight adjustments of the ureteric position in the indicator claws. As in the investigations described in chapter III the placing of an electrode in the ureteric wall at the site of an indicator resulted in a local decrease of movement. In control experiments when the electrode was removed the diameter variations increased. In spite of the presence of the electrode however the deflections were usually sufficiently large for the diameter change to be identified with certainty.

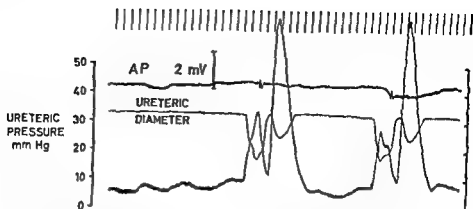
The form, amplitude and duration of the action potential were the same as described in chapter III. The range of variation of these parameters as recorded was large and by changing the position of the electrode in cases where the potentials were small a considerably higher amplitude was often obtained.

*Pressure variations. The occurrence of diphasic pressure waves with peristalsis*

The pressure waves were of two principal types. Either a single pressure wave occurred after each action potential or as in the vast majority of cases there was a pair of pressure waves. In the latter case the first wave was as a rule of lower amplitude and shorter duration than the second wave (Fig. 11). The interval between the waves varied considerably and was sometimes so great that they appeared entirely separate. In other cases the interval was so small that the waves were almost confluent. In some cases the first wave had a greater amplitude than the second but it was never of longer duration. The action potential belonging to the wave complex always appeared during the first wave. Its precise localization could vary but it was never earlier than the beginning of the first wave. In some cases a triphasic pressure wave complex appeared. To judge from wave form and time relationship to the action potential the first of these three waves was an extra wave while the next two corresponded to the ordinary diphasic complex. Thus the action potential occurred at the same time as the second wave of the triphasic complex.

These different types of peristaltic waves were not unique for this experimental series but were observed in all the present





*Fig 11 The diphasic pressure wave associated with peristalsis in a ureter with its connection to the pelvis intact. During the first smaller pressure peak there occurs an action potential and at the same time (at the distal site of measurement) the ureteric diameter is increased (down going deflection). The second pressure peak is due to contraction at and distal to the level at which the electrode is situated. In spite of the muscular contraction the ureter dilates appreciably even simultaneously with the maximum of the second pressure peak. This is a result of the obstruction in outflow. Uppermost time marking in seconds. Recorded with a Visucorder (The picture is the same as Fig 7a.)*

ureteric studies when a recorder with a sufficiently fast paper speed was used.

With increasing ureteric pressure the amplitude of the pressure waves decreased independently of whether they appeared single or in pairs. As a rule the first wave of a pair disappeared before free fluid communication between the ureter and pelvis was established.

#### *Diameter variations during the passage of the peristaltic waves*

Ureteric diameter recordings showed different patterns depending on the type of peristaltic wave and also on the intraureteric pressure.

At pressures up to about 10 mm Hg the ureteric diameter was so little increased during inactivity compared with the collapsed resting state at zero pressure that a contraction was unable to produce any measurable diminution in diameter. In the distal ureter the fluid already present inhibited compression and thus the contraction occurring was almost isometric. It was therefore very usual that the ureter became somewhat dilated during a contraction at the distal measuring point. At higher pressures

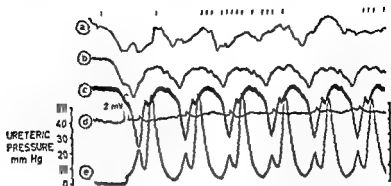


Fig. 1 Regular contractions in a ureter with intact peristaltic connections. *R. cordis g.* with three diameter indicators at different sites (a) proximal (b) somewhat more distal (c) at the electrode level (d) is the electromyogram and (e) the intraureteric pressure. Note the successive dilatation phases in a, b and c. An action potential and a small pressure rise occur simultaneously with the dilatation at (c). Uppermost time in seconds. Recorded with a V.L. recorder.

the ureter became more and more dilated and the contractions became more clearly manifest.

In peristalsis with biphasic pressure waves the first wave coincided with a marked dilatation of the ureter during which period the action potential also occurred (Fig. 11). Only exceptionally was this dilatation so small that it could not be identified with certainty. Dilatations were also observed when the ureter was not occluded and there was no obstruction to emptying. The second, longer pressure wave occurred together with a significantly smaller dilatation (at low pressures) or with a contraction (at higher pressures).

The propagation could be studied when two or three diameter indicators were used. The propagated change consisted first of a larger dilatation followed immediately by a smaller dilatation or a diminution of the ureteric diameter (Fig. 12). As a rule the first pressure wave (pressure measured at the distal end of the ureter) in the biphasic curves coincided with the diminution at the upper or middle diameter indicators (see Fig. 14a chapter V).

When the basal pressure was increased the dilatation in parallel with the first wave disappeared while the action potential remained unaffected.

In those cases where the peristalsis was accompanied by only a

single pressure wave it was nevertheless observed that a dilatation of the ureter preceded the pressure wave, the action potential occurring with the dilatation. With low pressures there was also an additional but much smaller dilatation which occurred at the same time as the pressure rise.

Only in exceptional cases were neither ureteric dilatation nor a pressure rise observed at the time of the action potential.

### *Velocity of propagation and frequency of contraction*

The velocity of propagation in the ureter was determined in the eight experiments where two or three diameter indicators were used. In all cases the velocity was constant in a particular experiment and in different experiments varied between 12 mm and 20 mm per second. The distance between which the measurements were made varied between 25 mm and 75 mm.

The use of more than one diameter indicator made it possible to determine the contraction frequency in different parts of the ureter. It was a common finding in at least some part of an experiment that the, or those, indicators which were placed proximal to the electrode showed a frequency double that of the action potential recording. The difference could also occur between the proximal and intermediate indicators while thus the latter and the distal indicators had the same frequency. The frequency change sometimes occurred very suddenly and was of relatively short duration. In a few recordings the frequency in the distal segment was only  $1/3$ – $1/4$  of that in the proximal part. These frequency differences were not associated with any particular pressure level.

The occurrence of antiperistalsis was also studied. Retrograde peristaltic waves were unusual but they did sometimes occur. As a rule they were occasional waves which turned at the ureteric catheter and then went backwards.

The action potential frequency was observed in some experiments to alter so that when the pressure rose to 10–20 mm Hg the spikes appeared not only before the pressure waves but also in their terminations and without a further pressure rise. Another type of arrhythmia was the appearance of spikes in pairs shortly before a contraction. This variation was unusual and occurred at higher intraureteric pressures.

## Discussion

### *Diameter variations in contraction of the ureter*

A peristaltic contraction wave in the ureter as a rule means a wave of contraction of the ureteric musculature propagated from the pelvis down to the urinary bladder. The circular musculature in contracting produces mainly a narrowing of the ureteric lumen while contraction in the longitudinal muscles produces a shortening of the ureter but probably not a complete occlusion of the lumen. According to SARVIS (1919 c) there are in the ureteric wall an outer and an inner layer of longitudinal musculature and an intermediate layer of circular muscles. The circular muscles predominate in the middle third of the ureter and while diminishing in the distal third are nevertheless present right down to the entrance in the bladder wall.

The anatomical distribution of the circular and longitudinal muscles in different regions of the ureter produces variations in the forces available for the compression of the lumen and thus it is probable that the ability to propagate the ureteric contents also varies from place to place. With such a situation there may be a tendency for the formation of pools in certain parts of the ureter. At least with low intraureteric pressures the lumen is pressed together completely with ureteric contraction and the ureteric contents are pressed as a bolus in a distal direction. Since however the ureteric lumen in rest is entirely collapsed the downward displacement of a bolus must mean that the ureteric walls are forced apart and thus a local intraluminal pressure rise must occur. MELICK *et al* (1962) have by cinefluorography and simultaneous pressure measurement followed the passage of boluses in human ureters. They observed that the ureteric walls both above and below the bolus were completely collapsed and that a pressure rise could be recorded only where the walls were distended by the bolus. The cinefluorographic technique was also used by BENJAMIN *et al* (1956) and SWENSON *et al* (1959) who also found that the ureteric lumen was completely compressed during contraction. BENJAMIN *et al* stated that after contraction the lumen was opened again by the next contrast injection arriving from above. The dilatation of the ureter that occurs in front of a contraction wave has been described earlier (PROTOPO-

POW 1897, ORBELI and v BRUCKE 1910, ANDERSON 1951, and others), and has been of importance in the theory that the ureter functions as a suction pump (LUCAS 1908, SLEATOR and BUTCHER 1955)

If the ureteric diameter is measured continuously the passage of the bolus should be recorded as a dilatation, and when the ureteric contraction passes the measuring point the lumen is again obliterated and the diameter regains the resting dimension, with the assumption that the entire ureteric content can be emptied distally. This is exactly the situation which was found in the experiments with the diameter indicators placed proximal to the electrode and at such a level that allowed a urine bolus to be pushed past in its entirety.

The conditions are different if the ureter is in stasis at a measuring point (e.g. distally near the catheter). When a contraction wave arrives, the bolus cannot be pushed on further and the ureteric lumen cannot be collapsed again completely. It must therefore be expected that after the initial dilatation there is a reduction in diameter, corresponding to the contraction, which cannot become total or subtotal before the muscular contraction in the ureteric segment immediately above has subsided sufficiently to allow the urine to be pressed backwards. When the ureter is slowly filled through diuresis an increasingly great part of the distal ureter becomes unable to obliterate the lumen completely. In this way free fluid communication through the whole of this part is obtained and when a muscular contraction occurs in the distal part the fluid column can be pushed backwards through this dilated region to a part of the ureter since no ureteric occlusion hinders its passage. Contraction of the ureteric musculature distally should then be manifested as a small but distinct diameter reduction as compared with the value between contractions. This also occurred at pressures of about 10-20 mm Hg. At the same time the initial dilatation phase became smaller and disappeared. This also seems reasonable since it is difficult to believe that an observable bolus can be pushed into the dilated and fluid filled ureteric tube. Thus the effect of muscular contraction in this region should be manifest only as a pressure rise, probably small and damped. Nevertheless it is possible that there was a small dilatation although none was

recorded. This might be due to the low sensitivity of the indicators. VAN CITTERS (1960) was able to show in model experiments that in a fluid filled elastic tube of the dimension of the aorta the front of a pulse wave is associated with a dilatation of the walls of the tube. The ureteric contractions were however propagated and possible mechanisms to explain this will be discussed below.

### *Pressure variations with ureteric contraction*

As mentioned above on the passage of a urine bolus into an empty ureter a certain intraluminal rise in pressure should occur when the ureteric walls dilate. This event corresponds to the course in the diphasic peristaltic wave pattern which constituted the most common finding in the investigation. When the stream of urine is injected downwards into an empty ureteric segment the bolus jet should give a rapid moderate rise in pressure (bolus jet wave) varying with the power causing it and being succeeded by a more pronounced pressure wave when the contraction arrives at the tip of the ureteric catheter. A bolus jet can probably be very forceful. In experiments with exteriorized bladders MORALES *et al* (1952) observed that the urine could spurt more than 100 cm high from the ureter.

The latent period between a bolus jet wave and a pressure wave (rise in pressure due to contraction at the same level) probably varies with the excitability of the smooth musculature, the velocity of the bolus propagation and the ability of the ureter to dilate rapidly on intraluminal pressure increases (i.e. volume-pressure relationship). The fact that the mutual relationships between a bolus jet wave and a pressure wave showed such great differences can be explained by differences in anatomic structure, predominance of circular or longitudinal musculature, possible tissue damage or other factors. In some cases there was no bolus jet wave and in these conditions the monophasic peristaltic pattern appeared. Since as a rule however there was an initial dilatation the monophasic pattern appears to be only an extreme variant of the normal diphasic pattern. Diphasic and triphasic waves were recorded together with single waves by RATTNER *et al* (1957) in man. They obtained diphasic waves in all parts of the ureter. Small pressure rises preceding the contractions were also

LOW 1897, ORBELI and v. BRUCKE 1910, ANDERSON 1951, and others), and has been of importance in the theory that the ureter functions as a suction pump (LUCAS 1908, SLEATOR and BUTCHER 1955)

If the ureteric diameter is measured continuously the passage of the bolus should be recorded as a dilatation, and when the ureteric contraction passes the measuring point the lumen is again obliterated and the diameter regains the resting dimension, with the assumption that the entire ureteric content can be emptied distally. This is exactly the situation which was found in the experiments with the diameter indicators placed proximal to the electrode and at such a level that allowed a urine bolus to be pushed past in its entirety.

The conditions are different if the ureter is in stasis at a measuring point (e.g. distally near the catheter). When a contraction wave arrives, the bolus cannot be pushed on further and the ureteric lumen cannot be collapsed again completely. It must therefore be expected that after the initial dilatation there is a reduction in diameter, corresponding to the contraction, which cannot become total or subtotal before the muscular contraction in the ureteric segment immediately above has subsided sufficiently to allow the urine to be pressed backwards. When the ureter is slowly filled through diuresis an increasingly great part of the distal ureter becomes unable to obliterate the lumen completely. In this way free fluid communication through the whole of this part is obtained and when a muscular contraction occurs in the distal part the fluid column can be pushed backwards through this dilated region to a part of the ureter since no ureteric occlusion hinders its passage. Contraction of the ureteric musculature distally should then be manifested as a small but distinct diameter reduction as compared with the value between contractions. This also occurred at pressures of about 10-20 mm Hg. At the same time the initial dilatation phase became smaller and disappeared. This also seems reasonable since it is difficult to believe that an observable bolus can be pushed into the dilated and fluid filled ureteric tube. Thus the effect of muscular contraction in this region should be manifest only as a pressure rise, probably small and damped. Nevertheless it is possible that there was a small dilatation although none was

of the diameter measurements. Such a sequence was never definitely observed but cannot be excluded since electromyographic information from a proximal site is also required to establish it. Spontaneously higher activity in the uppermost part of the ureter has been described however by several authors (BOZLER 1942, GOLD *et al* 1955b) and could play some role at least in part in the varying frequency. The ability of different ureteric segments to contract completely independently of one another, observed by TRATNER (1932) may constitute yet another factor.

The action potentials exhibited another form of arrhythmia with high pressures in certain cases they appeared either in pairs before a contraction or an extra action potential appeared at the end of a prolonged pressure wave before the basal pressure had been regained. It is probable in both cases that the prevailing tension in the ureteric wall produced extra depolarizations. On the whole at high intraureteric pressures the ureteric activity may be related to the continuous stimulation of the musculature provided by the internal tension. Whether propagation occurs because the ureter behaves as though it were a syncytium or is mechanically induced either by means of extension in the neighbouring cell on contraction or provoked by a small local rise in pressure will not be discussed here but will be treated in more detail in chapters V and VI.

#### *The propagation velocity of the ureteric contractions*

The propagation velocity in the ureteric musculature has been mainly investigated previously by electromyography. In dogs SHIRATORI *et al* (1959) found a variation between 33 and 56 mm/sec while SHIRATORI and KUROKI (1960a) reported higher velocities in the middle part of the ureter than in the remaining areas. According to these authors the distal propagation velocity of the peristaltic wave was between 21.4 and 29.7 mm/sec. They found velocities of 20-45 mm/sec in antiperistaltic waves which had arisen after division at the pelvoureteric junction (1960b). PROSSER *et al* (1955) found a velocity of 30-40 mm/sec in dog ureters while CALAFATI *et al* (1954) noted 20-30 mm/sec. Cooling and drying may be mentioned as possible explanations for the lower velocity in the present study. BAKER and HUFFER (1953) and BUTCHER *et al* (1957) obtained a reduced velocity under



described in man by Kim (1957), who used pressure measurement catheters which did not obstruct the urinary flow.

When the ureteric pressure rises the bolus jet wave would also, as is the case with the dilatation phase, be expected to disappear. This was found to be so, and similarly, the pressure wave itself also disappeared gradually. This phenomenon has already been discussed in chapter III and will therefore not be discussed further here.

The occurrence of the action potential during the dilatation phase and bolus jet wave at lower pressures was constant. *It is thus only on occasions with increased tension in the smooth muscles (as a rule due to increased intraluminal pressure) that a spike appears and a contraction is provoked.* In certain experiments where the frequency was higher at a proximal than at a distal measuring point, stronger dilatations and/or greater bolus jet waves were seen when the contraction was provoked distally than in those cases in which the lowermost segment remained inactive (see Fig 13 a, chapter V). *This seems to indicate that the smooth muscle cell need to be stimulated with a certain minimal degree of extension if they are to respond with contraction.*

#### *Arrhythmias in the peristalsis*

Different forms of arrhythmia were observed. The fact that the frequency was sometimes higher in the proximal region has already been mentioned. Another additional possible reason for this is that when the ureteric content is pressed backwards by a distal contraction this produces by extension of the ureteric wall a new peristaltic wave that is able to continue forwards until it encounters a refractory region. The refractory period for the ureteric musculature has been stated by PROSSER *et al* (1955) to be 1-3 seconds and by ICHIMAWA and IIEDA (1960) as 15 seconds. It is possible that this period may be longer in a region that has been damaged by experimental preparations and the electrode puncture. Cooling of the ureter may also have similar effects. Reasons such as these do not explain however why for example frequency ratios between two indicators could suddenly change to 2:1, 3:1 or 4:1. If these integral frequency ratios were due to antiperistaltic waves provoked from the distal part, it would be possible to determine this by the time sequence

## CHAPTER V

### The peristalsis in an anastomosed ureter

It was mentioned in chapter IV that peristaltic propagation in the ureter is possibly maintained by the excitation of distal muscle cells by means of extension or intraluminal pressure increase on contraction in the more proximal muscle cells. In order to study this problem more closely and to eliminate all myogenic, nervous or humoral influences coming from above a series of experiments were performed in which the ureter was divided and reanastomosed via a short catheter without direct contact between the two cut surfaces.

#### Material and methods

Thirteen adult dogs of both sexes weighing between 10 and 33 kg were used for the experiments. They were anaesthetized with intravenous injections of veterinary Nembutal® (Abbott) in doses of 30 mg/kg body weight. In prolonged experiments the Nembutal dose was repeated to retain an unchanged depth of anaesthesia.

The same operative technique was used as in the experiments described in chapter IV. Recordings of respiratory movements and the arterial blood pressure were made as described in chapter III. For cannulating the ureters the same type of polythene catheters were used as before. The tip of the catheter was inserted 5-10 mm proximally from an incision made near to the urinary bladder. Care was taken to minimize damage to the vascular supply of the ureter.

Altogether sixteen experiments were performed in ten cases the ureteric peristalsis was also studied before division and reanastomosis. These experiments are included among those described in chapter IV. In the remaining six experiments the ureters were divided straight away. The ureter was transected at a distance of 16-16 mm from the tip of the ureteric catheter.

similar circumstances ICHIKAWA and IKEDA (1960) also made similar observations on isolated guinea pig ureters. They obtained a propagation velocity in the action potentials of  $24.1 \pm 9.1$  mm/sec at  $32^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The peristaltic frequency probably also plays a part. ICHIKAWA and IKEDA and also SLEATOR and BUTCHER (1955) stated that the propagation velocity was lower if a stimulus reached the ureteric muscles during a relative refractory period.

That the velocity can vary between different parts of the ureter was also stated by GRAVES and DAVIDOFF (1923). In rabbit ureters they found a contraction velocity of 18.3 mm/sec in the upper third, 15.4 in the middle third and 13.3 mm/sec in the lower third. Whether there was any definite difference in velocity in different parts of the ureter in the present material cannot be determined, since the diameter recording is not a sufficiently exact method for determining small differences.

## Results

The method used involved considerable difficulties with regard to the maintenance of a satisfactory blood supply to the distal ureteric stump. It was at times impossible not to damage the arterial blood supply and in several cases ligation of the vessels on anastomosis sooner or later produced venous stasis in the distal stump as evidenced by swelling and signs of increased stiffness of the walls. The period of observation in which conditions were favourable was thus in these cases relatively short (15-42 minutes) while in the remaining experiments the duration of the experiment could be extended to one hour or longer. In four experiments the peristalsis could be observed for two hours or more after anastomosis. In three cases the experiment could not be completed either because of inactivity in the whole ureter or because of technical failures.

### *Variations in pressure and diameter in anastomosed ureters*

In altogether thirteen experiments satisfactory observation conditions were obtained and peristalsis and contractility were observed in both ureteric stumps. In seven of the cases recordings were also made before the ureter was divided.

The pressure and diameter variations in contraction waves were in principle the same as in the experiments described in chapter IV (p. 43). Thus as a rule a ureteric dilatation corresponding to a rapid moderate pressure increase (bolus jet wave) was seen before each contraction followed by a more protracted pressure wave. If the ureteric pressure did not exceed 10 mm Hg the ureteric diameter diminution corresponding to the contraction appeared to be rather weak or absent. The action potentials occurred during the dilatation phase at the passage of the bolus jet wave and had the same appearance as described previously. In seven of the thirteen anastomosis experiments two or three bolus jet waves appeared in succession in the distal ureteric stump before its contraction. The bolus jet waves always occurred with dilatations distally. In the proximal segment they were synchronous at first with the dilatation at one or both

and the blood vessels were ligated. A short polythene catheter, varying in length between 15 and 20 mm and with an external diameter suited to the lumen of the ureter, i.e. such that no distension or constriction should occur, was inserted with one end in each ureteric stump, and secured with ligatures. The sectioned surfaces were not allowed to touch one another, but were isolated by a piece of rubber which had been threaded on to the anastomosis catheter before insertion. Two diameter indicators of the type previously described were placed proximally to the anastomosis the distance between them varying between 9 and 25 mm and that between the more distal indicator and the anastomosis varying between 10 and 21 mm. A platinum electrode (see page 25) was inserted intramurally into the distal ureteric stump 6-24 mm from the anastomosis, and a third diameter indicator was placed at the same level or very close to it. The technique for the recording of electromyograms was the same as described in chapter III. In some of the cases in which the peristalsis was studied before division, it was possible to perform the anastomosis without displacing the electrode or the diameter indicators. The recordings before and after anastomosis were therefore made from exactly the same levels. In one case only two diameter indicators were used, one being placed proximally to the anastomosis and the other distally at the site of the electrode.

The aim of the experiments was to study the peristalsis after total occlusion of the ureters in particular at intraureteric pressure levels between 0 and 20 mm Hg. When the diuresis was poor with an insignificant or absent pressure rise after ureteric occlusion, intravenous injections of 0.9% sodium chloride solution were administered to increase diuresis.

For simultaneous intermittent recordings of ureteric diameters pressure and electromyograms a Visicorder type 906 A 1 was used. The D.C. amplifiers used both for the diameter indicators and for the ureteric pressure transducer (Elema EMT 472 a) were Grass Low Level Preamplifiers. In between the periods when recordings were made with the Visicorder the electromyogram was followed continuously and the diameter changes in the distal ureteric stump intermittently on a two channel oscilloscope. A polaroid camera was used for photographing the oscilloscope picture.

of the two diameter indicators later they also came with the contraction somewhere in the proximal stump. The bolus jet thus appeared to be able to affect a large part of the ureter simultaneously. The jet wave extended further in an anastomosed ureter than in an intact ureter, the apparent reason for this being that fluid transport is facilitated in the permanently open anastomosis tube. The bolus jet waves increased in amplitude with decrease in the distance between the site of contraction and that of the pressure measurement. The action potential appeared during the last or in rare cases the penultimate wave. Fig. 13 shows the ureteric activity before (13a) and after (13b) anastomosis. Before the transection the contractile frequency of the proximal part of the ureter was twice that of the distal part. This may possibly have been due to insufficient stimulation (less pronounced dilatation phases) every alternate period or to the fact that distally the ureter was refractory. After anastomosis the frequencies were the same in both parts. All contractions were propagated and each complex included a small and a large bolus jet wave and analogous dilatation phases (13b).

#### *The contraction frequency at low intraureteric pressures*

It was a general condition that with low intraureteric pressures a sufficiently large bolus jet wave and/or dilatation had to appear in the distal ureteric stump to provoke a contraction there. If the contractions proximal to the anastomosis only gave small bolus jet waves or moderate dilatations of the wall no contractile response was obtained. In nine experiments with basal pressures between 0 and 10 mm Hg a pressure wave of sufficient magnitude was obtained at each proximal contraction to provoke contraction in the distal stump. The peristaltic waves were thus seen to propagate unhindered over the anastomosis (Figs. 14 and 15). Fig. 14 shows the recordings from intact ureters. Dilatations and also very large bolus jet waves were observed at all measuring sites before the contractions. Fig. 15 shows the sequences from the same experiment after anastomosis. Lower frequencies and marked respiration dependent artifacts are seen.

In four cases the frequency was higher in the proximal part and contractions occurred distally only after large bolus jet

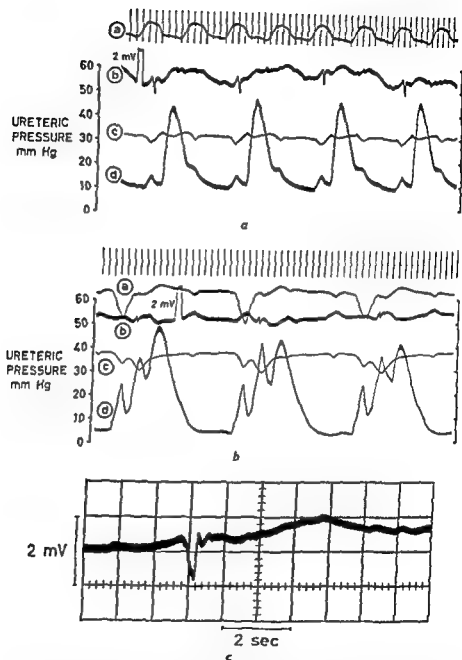


Fig 13 Ureteric contractions before (13a) and after (13b) transection and reanastomosis. In both figures time in seconds is indicated uppermost and then the proximal ureteric diameter (a), electromyogram (b), distal ureteric diameter (c) and ureteric pressure (d). (b) and (c) were recorded at the same level. Note that in 13a each proximal contraction results in a distal dilatation and rise in pressure but only each alternate proximal contraction is followed by a distal contraction. In 13b the basal pressure in the ureter is lower and thus the contractions are not so marked. There are respiration artifacts in (a), (b) and (c) in Fig 13b. Recorded with a Visucorder. Fig 13c shows an action potential recorded with an oscilloscope somewhat later than 13a.

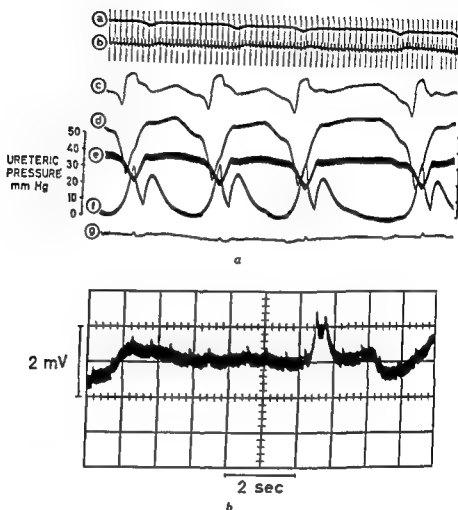
of the two diameter indicators later they also came with the contraction somewhere in the proximal stump. The bolus jet thus appeared to be able to affect a large part of the ureter simultaneously. The jet wave extended further in an anastomosed ureter than in an intact ureter the apparent reason for this being that fluid transport is facilitated in the permanently open anastomosis tube. The bolus jet waves increased in amplitude with decrease in the distance between the site of contraction and that of the pressure measurement. The action potential appeared during the last or in rare cases the penultimate wave. Fig. 13 shows the ureteric activity before (13a) and after (13b) anastomosis. Before the transection the contractile frequency of the proximal part of the ureter was twice that of the distal part. This may possibly have been due to insufficient stimulation (less pronounced dilatation phases) every alternate period or to the fact that distally the ureter was refractory. After anastomosis the frequencies were the same in both parts. All contractions were propagated and each complex included a small and a large bolus jet wave and analogous dilatation phases (13b).

#### *The contraction frequency at low intraureteric pressures*

It was a general condition that with low intraureteric pressures a sufficiently large bolus jet wave and/or dilatation had to appear in the distal ureteric stump to provoke a contraction there. If the contractions proximal to the anastomosis only gave small bolus jet waves or moderate dilatations of the wall no contractile response was obtained. In nine experiments with basal pressures between 0 and 10 mm Hg a pressure wave of sufficient magnitude was obtained at each proximal contraction to provoke contraction in the distal stump. The peristaltic waves were thus seen to propagate unhindered over the anastomosis (Figs. 14 and 15). Fig. 14 shows the recordings from intact ureters. Dilatations and also very large bolus jet waves were observed at all measuring sites before the contractions. Fig. 15 shows the sequences from the same experiment after anastomosis. Lower frequencies and marked respiration dependent artifacts are seen.

In four cases the frequency was higher in the proximal part and contractions occurred distally only after large bolus jet





*Fig 14 Peristalsis in a ureter with intact pelviureteric connections From above the time marking in seconds, respiration (a) arterial pressure (b) (mean pressure 150 mm Hg) diameter recording from three sites (c) nearest to the kidney (d) 23 mm distal to (c) and (e) 38 mm distal to (d) ureteric pressure (f) and electromyogram (g) (e) and (g) were recorded at the same level The appearance of the action potential can be seen best on the oscilloscope picture (14b) The regular small disturbances in the electromyogram are due to a superimposed electrocardiogram*

waves and/or dilatations Intermittently the contractions were propagated so that the frequency ratios were 2:1, 3:1 or 4:1

#### *The contraction frequency at high intraureteric pressures*

At high basal pressures (15–30 mm Hg) the correlation between the activity in the two ureteric segments obviously de-

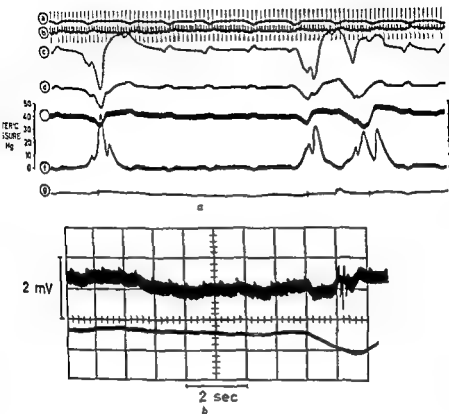
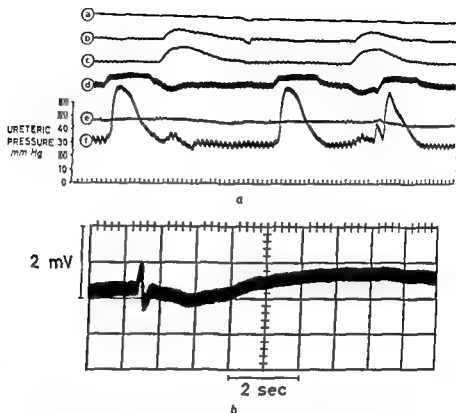


Fig 15 The same experiment as in Fig 14 after transection and re-anastomosis between (d) and (e). The notation is as in Fig 14a. The oscilloscope picture (15b) shows the electromyogram (above e) and diameter measurements from site (e). It is evident that the action potential appears during a distal latent phase. The electrocardiogram is superimposed. The second contraction in Fig 15a seems to arise from a site near the anastomosis [late distal latent phase in curve (e)] while the third contraction starts proximal to (c).

riorated and the distal stump functioned more or less independently. Both high and low frequencies were noted in the distal part but lower frequencies were more predominant than in the proximal region. A proximal contraction was still able, however, to function as a trigger for the distal part (Fig 16).

At high basal pressures a volley of contractions was sometimes provoked distally. A new action potential appeared here at the end of a contraction and at the end of the new contraction a further action potential appeared etc. Every pressure wave how



*Fig 16 The activity in an anastomosed ureter with high intraluminal pressure. In Fig 16a are seen from above respiration (a) proximal diameter (b) diameter just above anastomosis (c) and (d) below anastomosis (e) electromyogram (f) and ureteric pressure. Below: time in seconds. There are three contractions in the lower segment but only two in the upper. During both (retrograde) contractions in the upper segment the lower segment dilates and the pressure rises. But only with the second contraction is the stimulation adequate to excite the lower segment. Fig 16b shows the oscilloscope picture of a simultaneous action potential.*

ever, had a lower amplitude than its predecessor and finally the contractions faded out.

Signs of retrograde peristalsis were observed on several occasions. In particular a stimulus wave seemed to be able to turn at the anastomosis, but antiperistalsis produced from the distal part could also occur after a normal peristaltic wave had turned at the distal ureteric catheter.

#### *The velocity of the contraction waves*

The propagation velocity was similar to that found earlier but varied over a somewhat greater range i.e. 9–24 mm/sec.

instead of 12-20 mm/sec. As a rule the velocity between the proximal and intermediate indicators appeared to be the same as between the intermediate and distal indicators (across the anastomosis). Occasionally propagation was more rapid across the anastomosis. Velocity determinations could only be made when clear contractions were recorded at all measuring points. This required an intraureteric pressure of more than 10 mm Hg which was reached in only eight cases. At low pressures the contractions are not manifested as diameter reductions. This has been discussed in more detail in chapter IV.

## Discussion

### *The regulation of ureteric peristalsis*

The question of the nature of propagation in smooth muscle has been extensively investigated. Different types of organs have been studied (oesophagus, taenia coli, uterus, vascular walls, ureter, *inter alia*) with different techniques. Opinions have varied regarding the importance of an autonomous innervation in the case of the ureter, but the majority oppose the view that ureteric peristalsis is governed or influenced by autonomous nerves (ENGELMANN 1869, BOZLER 1938, DAVLOS 1947, LAPIDES 1948, MORALES *et al* 1952, RICHOLM 1954, SLEATOR and BUTCHER 1955, COREY *et al* 1956, O'CONNOR and DAWSON-EDWARDS 1959, O'CONNOR 1961, MELICK *et al* 1961b, HAMM and WEINBERG 1962). There have been some dissident voices however. BAKER and HILFFER (1953) and GOULD *et al* (1955a) considered that the ureter had a double autonomous regulation in which the sympathetic impulses decreased and parasympathetic impulses increased the motility or tone. HANLEY (1953) reported in clinical material that spastic ureteritis showed improvement after denervation. SATANI (1919a) and DURAND and DESCHOTES (1952) demonstrated certain effects of nerve stimulation on the ureter, while KINARIYONOV (1957) claimed he was able to inhibit ureteric peristalsis neuroreflexly. There seem to be no advocates at present for the theory of a humoral regulation of the ureter. The question of mechanical extension or stimulation from cell to cell has been discussed with great interest and evidence for the occurrence of

both types of stimuli has been claimed. It has often been postulated that the smooth muscle cells in the ureter form a sort of syncytium. It has also been suggested that an excitatory stimulus passes between the cells over intercellular bridges (BAKER and HUFFER 1953). BERGMAN (1958), in an electron microscopic investigation of the ureter in white rats, found intercellular bridges, which he believed could transmit stimuli between the cells. The smooth muscle of the ureter would thus constitute a functional syncytium (BERGMAN 1958). The modern theories for conduction are discussed in more detail in chapter VI.

The results obtained from investigations of smooth muscle do not provide an unequivocal answer to the question regarding the propagation of stimuli, but the microscopic structure of the ureter seems to provide a possible basis for electrical activation from cell to cell. *The present investigation shows, however, that mechanical stimulation alone is sufficient to propagate a peristaltic wave over an interruption in the continuity of the ureter.* There seems further, to be a relationship between the magnitude of the stimulus and the response produced, since a stimulus that is too small results in no contraction. This conclusion has been drawn previously (PROTOPOPOV 1897, ANDERSON 1951, *inter alia*). The fact that a peristaltic wave can fade out in the ureter can also be explained in this way. This has been especially observed where a pool has formed in the ureter and where an incoming urine bolus is not always able to provoke a contraction but where the whole pool sometimes empties (GOULD *et al* 1955 b). KIL (1957) described similar findings in man. He considered it possible that the contraction in a pool differs from an ordinary peristaltic wave, and that a distension of the pool can provoke a contraction that empties the whole pool. MURKIOJA (1958) also held similar views. The ureter regarded as a unit, should thus be able to function according to the all or none law although the individual muscle cells probably do not function in this way.

#### *The peristalsis in anastomosed ureters*

In other investigations also with anastomosis of the ureter the results seem to fit in with a hypothesis that conduction is de-

pendent on mechanical stimulation. If an adequate healing time is taken into consideration, the results have shown that propagation can occur unhindered over an anastomosis. WEINBERG and SIEBENS (1953) in electromyographic studies of the peristaltic frequency before and after transection and end-to-end anastomosis found a considerably lower frequency distally immediately after the anastomosis had been performed. On examination 4-8 months later no obvious difference was seen and neither was there any retardation across the anastomosis itself as BUTCHER and SLEATOR (1956) claimed after similar experiments. The reason for the lower ureteric activity immediately after transection must be due at least partly to non-specific factors e.g. tissue oedema, haematoma and obstruction which prevent the passage of urine and render impossible adequate distension distally. The importance of careful surgical technique to avoid strictures was pointed out by DAVILLO (1947) among others. The frequently observed finding of moderate hydronephrosis proximal to an anastomosis during the first 2-3 weeks post-operatively before the return of adequate peristalsis may possibly be due to mechanical obstruction during the healing period. The role of stenosis in the occurrence of hydroureters was discussed by ISELIN (1929) who considered that *the stenosis and not the discontinuity in the musculature was the deciding factor*. Mobilization of the ureter has also often been described as sufficient to temporarily inhibit the ureteric activity and may probably contribute to an initial reduction in peristaltic frequency.

WEINBERG and SIEBENS attempted to explain the retardation across the anastomosis found by BUTCHER and SLEATOR in their chronic experiments by differences in surgical technique. There was also another difference. BUTCHER and SLEATOR stimulated the ureter with an intraluminal balloon and there was no fluid available to distend the ureter distally to the anastomosis. It seems plausible that in a scarred and empty ureter with muscular discontinuity the contraction wave will be delayed in the region of the scar. If there is however a fluid bolus advancing in front of the contraction wave this should be able to activate the muscles on the other side of the scar, thus perhaps eliminating the contraction delay.

BENJAMIN *et al* (1956) carried out a series of anastomosis ex-

periments with a polyethylene tube 5 cm long. A defect was either bridged with the tube alone or half of the circumference of the ureter was retained. After healing, contractions were observed both above and below the defect in both types of experiment. No synchronization was found, however, between the two parts of the ureter. If the conduction were purely myogenic, at least some of the contractions should have been propagated in those cases where half of the ureteric circumference remained. Experiments with transectioning of half of the circumference were also reported by ALKANE (1907), who found that a contraction ceased at the site of incision if the latter extended into the lumen but continued unhindered if the mucosa was intact. WEINBERG (1962) made a corresponding observation on the relationship between flow and activity in studies of the peristalsis after diversion of urine through a vertical ureterotomy. WEINBERG recorded electromyograms both proximally and distally to the ureterotomy and found that action potentials appeared only proximally, while the distal part, to which no urine penetrated, remained inactive. WEINBERG found a return of normal peristalsis after healing. If the conduction takes place only by means of myogenic spread, a linear vertical ureterotomy should not have a blocking effect.

#### *The effect of dilatation proximally to a stenosis*

In the anastomosis experiments of BENJAMIN *et al* described above, a dilatation was recorded in the upper ureteric segment. BENJAMIN considered that there was flow resistance in the rather narrow prosthesis. It is conceivable that in situations with ureteric dilatation proximally to a stenosis or other forms of flow impediment a damping occurs such that with the proximal contractions a bolus jet wave sufficiently large to excite the musculature does not reach the post stenotic region. Perhaps not until a certain degree of fluid filling occurs in the distal segment is there sufficient distension to provoke a contraction. An apparent inactivity might thus be due to mechanical factors and the ureter would be assessed as atonic since the proximal contractions were masked by damping and the distal contractions were only seldom provoked.

### *The importance of regenerative power to ureteric function after anastomosis*

The ureteric muscles have been considered to have good regenerative powers, especially if there is some form of contact between the cut surfaces. The good results obtained after long periods of observation could therefore be due to complete healing in the operation region but good propagation has also been demonstrated when prostheses separate the sectioned surfaces. Studies of the power of regeneration in the ureter were made by OPTENHEIMER and HILMAN (1955) and HILMAN and OPTENHEIMER (1956) *inter alia*. They found good healing in parts where half of the circumference had been excised and it was best if no splint had been used. The mucosa regenerated within a week and the smooth muscle within 4-6 weeks. The flow of urine through the operation region delayed healing. Similar results were obtained by DEWIZ *et al* (1962) who found good but not complete healing of the circular musculature and also that free urinary flow could cause extensive fibrosis. HANNA and WERNBERG (1956) performed experiments with linear ureterotomy and other longitudinal defects and also found good healing. KOČVARA and ZAL (1962) obtained good healing in dog ureters with teflon prostheses and in cases in which a central ureteric segment had been substituted a normal ureteric passage was also evident on excretory urography after transient reduction in function and stasis as well as normal ureteric dimensions both above and below the prosthesis.

In man observations have been made mainly during operations on hydronephroses. MELICK *et al* (1962) observed that with low pressure and pronounced dilatation human ureters after transplantation from bladder to skin reacquired normal size and regained reasonably normal intraluminal pressure in a number of cases. SWERSON and SMITH (1953) made similar findings on children with megaloureters. After cutaneous ureterostomy aperistaltic ureters to a large extent regained good peristaltic function. The likelihood of this occurring can depend on the pre-existing grade of ureteric enlargement (SWERSON *et al* 1953).

In spite of the good power of regeneration in the smooth muscle of the ureter complete healing has never been described. According to ISLER (1929) and others this is not however



necessary for good peristaltic function. The results of previous investigations with prolonged experiments without more severe grades of stenosis should therefore, in principal, be similar to those of the present acute experiments. Difficulties with regard to the blood supply in these latter experiments seem to have as their counterparts the stenosis, dilatation and other disturbances in short term chronic experiments. The circulatory disturbances as a rule probably have only a transient effect on ureteric function, even if in acute experiments they can render the observations impossible. The blood vessels running along the ureter should, however, be adequate for the nutrition of a stripped or transplanted ureter (O'Connor 1961).

#### *Changes in function due to transection*

In the anastomosis experiments the principal findings were the same as with intact ureters (chapter IV). *It is clear that depolarization in the muscle cells occurs at the same time as and is dependent on the distension, regardless of whether the peristaltic propagation is provoked mechanically and/or synchronally.* The trigger effect represented by the extension of the ureteric wall must be sufficiently large on anastomosis to prevent a peristaltic wave from fading out. Whether a presumptive propagation from cell to cell changes the sensitivity to the trigger effect and thus an anastomosis would reduce the excitability cannot be determined from the present study. In most cases the lower segment had the same peristaltic frequency as the upper, both before and after transection and anastomosis. In other cases the activity was reduced distally after the division. Operational trauma certainly plays some part but it is highly probable that the ureter functions more satisfactorily if there is physiological contact between the muscle cells. An example of this was seen in the perfusion experiments on rabbits discussed in chapter II where the peristalsis deteriorated considerably when the ureter was divided at the renal pelvis. The sensitivity can probably vary both between different parts of the ureter and between different animal species.

#### *The passage of fluid through the anastomosis tube*

The insertion of an anastomosis tube that keeps a part of the ureter open even when no fluid is distending the lumen can

have several effects. As mentioned in chapter II the local static tension in the wall at the place of insertion of the tube might be expected to result in the appearance of spontaneous propagated contractions even at low intraureteric pressure levels. This was not observed in the present series of experiments. An open communication should allow more rapid passage of fluid and at the same time result in a pressure effect over a larger part of the ureter than when the urine bolus itself has to open the lumen as it progresses along the ureter. The existence of several bolus jet waves preceding a contraction showed that the latter effect occurred. Each bolus jet wave was more extensive and a summation was obtained in certain cases with 2-3 successive higher pressure steps in the ureteric pressure recording. The correlation between the proximal contraction and the passage of the dilatation and bolus jet wave distally was good and well illustrated the origin of this pressure increase.

As regards the more rapid fluid transport through an open tube there was a greater velocity of the bolus front across the anastomosis in a few experiments. The anastomosis tube however cannot be dilated by the passage of fluid and if a large bolus is to be pressed forward it is not certain that the open rigid connection has always a lower resistance to flow than an elastic walled organ which is initially closed. Furthermore the number of observations giving indirect information on this point was very small and the sensitivity of the diameter indicators somewhat inadequate so that with regard to the divergent results no definite conclusions can be drawn.

At high intraureteric pressures the correlation between the contractions on either side of the anastomosis deteriorated. The two ureteric stumps contracted to a large extent independently of one another and it would seem reasonable to assume that the intraureteric pressure was the provoking factor. If the prevailing conditions are sufficient for stimulation no extra pressure increases are required in the form of a bolus jet wave to provoke activity and the frequency then becomes dependent on the strength of the pressure stimulation and the condition of the ureter. In an intact ureter however it is not presumably advantageous to have different frequencies in different parts of the ureter. As has been described in chapter III no frequency

necessary for good peristaltic function. The results of previous investigations with prolonged experiments without more severe grades of stenosis should therefore, in principal, be similar to those of the present acute experiments. Difficulties with regard to the blood supply in these latter experiments seem to have as their counterparts the stenosis, dilatation and other disturbances in short term chronic experiments. The circulatory disturbances as a rule probably have only a transient effect on ureteric function, even if in acute experiments they can render the observations impossible. The blood vessels running along the ureter should, however, be adequate for the nutrition of a stripped or transplanted ureter (O'Connor 1961).

#### *Changes in function due to transection*

In the anastomosis experiments the principal findings were the same as with intact ureters (chapter IV). *It is clear that depolarization in the muscle cells occurs at the same time as and is dependent on the distension, regardless of whether the peristaltic propagation is provoked mechanically and/or syncretically.* The trigger effect represented by the extension of the ureteric wall must be sufficiently large on anastomosis to prevent a peristaltic wave from fading out. Whether a presumptive propagation from cell to cell changes the sensitivity to the trigger effect and thus an anastomosis would reduce the excitability cannot be determined from the present study. In most cases the lower segment had the same peristaltic frequency as the upper both before and after transection and anastomosis. In other cases the activity was reduced distally after the division. Operational trauma certainly plays some part but it is highly probable that the ureter functions more satisfactorily if there is physiological contact between the muscle cells. An example of this was seen in the perfusion experiments on rabbits discussed in chapter II where the peristalsis deteriorated considerably when the ureter was divided at the renal pelvis. The sensitivity can probably vary both between different parts of the ureter and between different animal species.

#### *The passage of fluid through the anastomosis tube*

The insertion of an anastomosis tube that keeps a part of the ureter open even when no fluid is distending the lumen, can

## CHAPTER VI

### The conduction mechanism in the smooth muscle of the ureter

As is evident from the discussions in chapters IV and V there is some disagreement as regards the conduction mechanism in the ureteric musculature. No general rules for conduction in smooth muscle can be laid down since different types of smooth muscle show obviously different patterns of behaviour. BOZLER (1948) classified smooth muscle into two groups: multiunit muscles in which the conduction was assumed to be transmitted by nerves and unitary muscles in which the conduction was said to take place by the spread of stimuli from muscle fibre to muscle fibre. The former category includes for example the pupillary, ciliary, pilomotor and vascular muscles. There is some disagreement however concerning the conduction in the muscles of the vascular walls (BURSTOCK and PROSSER 1960a, ROBBIE 1962a and b). The visceral muscles are included in the unitary group but they are not however an entirely homogenous group. Thus for example the excitability of the uterine musculature is affected by some hormones and the intestinal and the ureteric muscles react differently both to the influence of some drugs and to nervous stimulation. Because of the differences between the various types of muscle therefore the following discussion will mainly be limited to the ureter.

#### Theories regarding the conduction mechanism

According to the four principal current theories conduction can be mediated by (a) nerves, (b) transmitter substances liberated between the muscle cells, (c) electrical current spread from cell to cell or (d) mechanical distortion.

(a) *Nerves*. While in older investigations it was considered as a rule that the ureter was governed by nerves, it is now generally

difference was found in the experiments with high pressure and free pelvoureteric communication in the few cases where several diameter indicators were used. The fact that the frequency is the same at different levels in an intact ureter is probably due to the fact that somewhere in the musculature there is a pacemaker, the frequency of which dominates the entire organ by the physiological connection between the muscle cells. If the ureter is divided by an anastomosis the muscular connection is interrupted, and an impulse emanating from the pacemaker cannot directly bridge the anastomosis. If the ureter is dilated and the intraluminal pressure high, a functional pacemaker may then be present in each part of the ureter. It is highly probable in this case that the frequencies differ, since the spontaneous contraction frequency has been found to be different in different parts of the ureter (SHIRATORI and KINOSHITA 1961 b, and others). In agreement with this, different frequencies in both parts of the ureter were also recorded in the present anastomosis experiments with high pressures.

As in the series of experiments described in chapter IV signs of antiperistalsis were observed. No decisive evidence of this was obtained, however, since neither electromyograms nor pressure were recorded in the upper part of the ureter. In experiments with pig ureters, however, MELICK *et al* (1961 a and b) showed that normal peristaltic propagation could be obtained in a ureter even when a segment had been excised, subsequently reversed in direction and reanastomosed. Thus in the transplanted segment the contractions moved in an opposite direction to the preoperative contractions in that segment and the ureter functioned well. For a definite solution of the problem regarding the occurrence of antiperistalsis under different conditions, further investigations are required with measurements at several points of the electromyogram, diameter and pressure.

muscles constitute a *syncytium* (ENGELMANN 1869 BOZLER 1935) or the stimuli are transmitted through the intercellular space to adjacent cells. In this case the impulse might either pass over intercellular bridges (=functional syncytium) via overlapping muscle fibers (=ephaptic conduction) or through non excitable material. The hypothesis that some form of electrical conduction occurs has many advocates (PROSSER *et al* 1955 BULBRING *et al* 1958 ICHIMAWA and IKEDA 1960 and others). PROSSER *et al* (1960) showed in comparative studies that there was a clear relationship between the size of the intercellular space and the conduction velocity. The greater the distance between the individual muscle fibres in an organ the lower was the conduction velocity observed. The excitation should thus be propagated more rapidly if the distance between the cells is small.

Like other visceral musculature the ureteric muscles exhibit two types of membrane potential variations. Both slow small potential changes and spike potentials have been shown. The former are accompanied by tone changes in the muscle cell (BOZLER 1942 and 1945) the latter by regular contractions. The slow potentials are propagated only to an insignificant degree and have been related to a pacemaker function (BOZLER 1942 ICHIMAWA and IKEDA 1960 BLAKSTOCK and PROSSER 1960 & BULBRING 1961 and others). There appears to be no clear idea of the optimal contraction frequency of the ureter. In consideration of the long absolute refractory period of the ureter (1-3 seconds) the characteristic frequency should be fairly low and it seems in fact to vary within broad limits. Experiments with electrical stimulation reported up to the present time have not cleared up this problem fully. PROSSER *et al* (1955) found that the spontaneous rhythm in the ureter varied and was sometimes higher than that to which the ureter could be driven electrically. The highest frequency that PROSSER could get a rat ureter to follow was about 1 c/s.

(d) *Mechanical distortion*. There seems to be no doubt that an increase in tension in the ureter is an adequate stimulus for initiating contraction. A large number of investigations agree on this point. Intraluminal balloons and injections of fluid and also pinching and stretching have been used. The same response was produced regardless of the manner of distension. Isolated prepara-

held that the ureteric musculature is fairly autonomous. The "extrinsic" nervous influences on ureteric peristalsis have been discussed in chapter V. As regards the hypothesis that conduction is mediated by nerves, this is clearly not supported for example, by the low propagation velocity and low sensitivity to nerve and synaptic blocking drugs (BOZLER 1938, LAPIDES 1948, SLEATOR and BUTCHER 1955, PROSSER *et al* 1955, BORSTEDT 1960, MAZELLA and SCHROEDER 1960). Nerve tissue does exist in the ureter but its role in normal peristaltic function is still unclear.

(b) *Transmitter substances* The question of a transmitter substance has been much discussed in the literature, and attempts have been made to demonstrate its existence. The role of histamine in ureteric function has attracted particular attention (see BORSTEDT *et al* 1962 for further references). BUTCHER and SLEATOR (1956), in experiments with re-anastomosed ureters, found a delay in conduction across the anastomosis, which they considered was possibly due to the slowness of penetration of a presumptive transmitter substance through the scar tissue. BUTCHER *et al* (1957) also came to similar conclusions.

The occurrence of cholinesterase in the urine has aroused especial interest. BENJAMIN *et al* (1956) found higher concentrations of the enzyme in dogs than in man but no difference between normal and pathological ureters in the same species. DE KLERK (1954) also studied the cholinesterase in dog ureters and found that perfusion with a cholinesterase inhibitor could abolish peristalsis. He discussed the existence of an inhibitory substance in the urine and its possible significance in the occurrence of ureteric structures.

(c) *Electrical current spread* A large number of investigations have been performed especially with isolated preparations and varying electromyographic techniques in order to shed light on the problem of whether conduction takes place by means of the transmission of action currents from cell to cell. Several workers have shown that electrical stimulation of the ureter provokes contractions (e.g. ENGELMANN 1870, BOZLER 1938, SLEATOR and BUTCHER 1955, ICHIKAWA and IIDA 1960). It seems reasonable, also, to suppose that the cell membranes might be depolarized by an electric shock.

Two types of transmission are possible. Either the ureteric

muscles constitute a *synectium* (FÄGELMAN 1869 BOZLER 1938) or the stimuli are transmitted through the intercellular space to adjacent cells. In this case the impulse might either pass over intercellular bridges (=functional synectium) via overlapping muscle fibers (=ephaptic conduction) or through non excitable material. The hypothesis that some form of electrical conduction occurs has many advocates (ROSSER *et al* 1955 BLAIRING *et al* 1958 ICHIKAWA and IKEDA 1960 and others). PROSSER *et al* (1960) showed in comparative studies that there was a clear relationship between the size of the intercellular space and the conduction velocity. The greater the distance between the individual muscle fibres in an organ the lower was the conduction velocity observed. The excitation should thus be propagated more rapidly if the distance between the cells is small.

Like other visceral musculature the ureteric muscles exhibit two types of membrane potential variations. Both slow small potential changes and spike potentials have been shown. The former are accompanied by tone changes in the muscle cell (BOZLER 1947 and 1948) the latter by regular contractions. The slow potentials are propagated only to an insignificant degree and have been related to a pacemaker function (BOZLER 1942 ICHIKAWA and IKEDA 1960 BURSTOCK and PROSSER 1960 b BLAIRING 1961 and others). There appears to be no clear idea of the optimal contraction frequency of the ureter. In consideration of the long absolute refractory period of the ureter (1-3 seconds) the characteristic frequency should be fairly low and it seems in fact to vary within broad limits. Experiments with electrical stimulation reported up to the present time have not cleared up this problem fully. PROSSER *et al* (1955) found that the spontaneous rhythm in the ureter varied and was sometimes higher than that to which the ureter could be driven electrically. The highest frequency that PROSSER could get a rat ureter to follow was about 1 c/s.

(d) *Mechanical distortion* There seems to be no doubt that an increase in tension in the ureter is an adequate stimulus for initiating contraction. A large number of investigations agree on this point. Intraluminal balloons and injections of fluid and also pinching and stretching have been used. The same response was produced regardless of the manner of distension. Isolated prepara-



tions also react in a similar way. Several authors have shown that there is a relationship between the degree of tension and the membrane potential in a muscle cell (BULBRING 1955, BURNSTOCK and PROSSER 1960 *a*, GILLESPIE 1962 *a* and *b*). Increased stretching gives (sometimes after an initial, single spike) increasing depolarization, and with sufficiently high excitability the cell discharges a spike potential occurs and contraction follows. GILLESPIE (1962 *a*), in experiments with colon muscle, found a depolarization corresponding to 55 mV when the preparation was only lightly stretched. This difference from the resting potential in an unstretched state was stated as being statistically highly significant. BURNSTOCK and PROSSER (1960 *a*) found the same order of magnitude on depolarization with rapid stretching of the ureter in rats and guinea pigs. Guinea pig ureters responded to an extension of 1 mm per 12 mm muscle length. BOZLER (1947) investigated the effect of stretching in dog ureters and found that distension above a certain limit provoked slow transient potential changes. The response was related to the distension applied. On further stretching a conducted response arose from the local response.

There thus appears to be a distinct relationship between the degree of stretching in the muscle cell and membrane polarization and also therefore the excitability, but the rate at which an increase in tension occurs is probably important. In model experiments with a pressure sensitive cell analog which was subjected to one particular pressure rise but initiated with different velocities, TEORELL (1959) found that a certain minimal velocity in the pressure increase was required to obtain a potential response. Static and dynamic pressure in the carotid sinus and also the firing frequency of potentials in the carotid sinus nerve were studied by WARNER (1958) who formulated a relationship between these factors.<sup>1</sup> TEORELL (1962) examined this relationship

<sup>1</sup> WARNER used an electronic analog of the carotid sinus and the following equation was used to describe its function

$$n = K_1 (P - P') - K_2 \frac{dp}{dt}$$

where  $n$  is the frequency of action potential at a point on the carotid sinus nerve,  $P$  is the pressure in the carotid artery,  $P'$  is the minimum static pressure capable of eliciting action potential and  $dp/dt$  is the rate of change of pressure in the artery.  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  are constants.

with an analog computer and found that apart from the application of a minimal pressure a certain velocity in the pressure increase (dynamic pressure) was also required to initiate a potential spike. High pressure applied with a velocity that was too low could thus be insufficient while a lower pressure with more rapid rise sufficed to give a potential spike. One of the aims of the perfusion experiments described in chapter II was to investigate these circumstances in biological material. The velocities chosen here however produced no differences in response which must mean that both lay above the critical threshold. BURSTOCK and PROSSER (1960a) however observed differences in the response between rapid and slow stretching of smooth muscle.

It is thus clear that increase in tension in the ureter gives rise to increased excitability. Conduction might therefore occur by the mechanism that one cell in contracting distorts an adjacent cell sufficiently for this cell in its turn to be depolarized. It is also possible that the intraluminal rise in pressure occurring distally to a contraction acts as a depolarizing extension (GOLLO *et al* 1955a, HAMM and WEINBERG 1962 and others). Ureteric muscle contractions without simultaneous fluid transport have been described however by several workers and the passage of urine therefore does not seem to be necessary but is probably responsible normally for a very important part of the distension. The experiments described in chapters IV and V gave clear evidence that adequate distension was required to prevent the peristaltic wave from fading out. The importance of mechanical distortion in the conduction in smooth muscle has been questioned (SPERELAKIS and PROSSER 1959, BURSTOCK and PROSSER 1960b). The knowledge of the effect of distortion on the excitability makes it difficult however to minimize the importance of the stimulus produced by an extension caused by contraction of the adjacent cells. The bridges observed between the ureteric muscle cells (BERGMAN 1958, PROSSER *et al* 1960) might in consideration of the lack of protoplasmic continuity between the cells have a high electrical resistance. It must therefore be asked whether such connections can in fact constitute a transmission path for action currents. It is not precluded that these bridges may be purely mechanical connecting links (PROSSER *et al* 1960).

## The relationship between electrical transmission and mechanical distortion

It must be considered proven that electrical transmission can take place between the cells. It is reasonable to assume, however, that it is not solely responsible for the conduction in the ureter. The phenomena of frequency differences, pool formation and inactivity at low pressures support this hypothesis. An electrical impulse alone often seems to be insufficient to depolarize the cell membranes to such a degree that a spike potential occurs and the contraction wave then dies out. *For the persistence of normal propagation, therefore, a simultaneous mechanical component is probably required.* This mechanical component involves an adequate degree of stretching, provided this stretching takes place at a sufficiently rapid rate. The degree of stretching caused by a given stimulus (a urine bolus or stretching from the adjacent cells) is dependent on the tone of the individual ureter and its power to change the volume for a given tension increase. That which may be an adequate stimulus in one case can possibly be below the stimulation threshold in another. The magnitude of the static pressure induced seems to be of the greatest importance here since the perfusion experiments described in chapter II allow us to suppose that the threshold rate of the pressure increase does not need to be fast and is probably usually attained.

The view discussed above is similar to that of BURSTOCK and PROSSER (1960 b). They concluded that propagation in smooth muscle depends on more than one factor. They considered that the transmission seems to be electrical but propagates best if the muscle has become excitable by stretching or chemical transmitters. The results of the present experiments are not in disharmony with this view. The required excitation is apparently obtained by distension provoked by the bolus jet (or at higher intraluminal pressures by the prevailing tension in the wall). Under special conditions—the anastomosis experiments—it was shown that the distension alone without obvious delay was capable of provoking a continued contraction wave. The fact that direct muscular continuity normally plays a part in the propagation, however, was indicated by the lack of contraction asynchrony at

high intraureteric pressures when the ureter was intact whereas on the other hand different frequencies were recorded in the different segments after anastomosis. *The regular activity in the intact ureter could thus be due to spike potentials, emanating from a pacemaker somewhere in the organ and propagated along the ureter as long as this is made excitable by adequate distension*

## The relationship between electrical transmission and mechanical distortion

It must be considered proven that electrical transmission can take place between the cells. It is reasonable to assume, however, that it is not solely responsible for the conduction in the ureter. The phenomena of frequency differences, pool formation and inactivity at low pressures support this hypothesis. An electrical impulse alone often seems to be insufficient to depolarize the cell membranes to such a degree that a spike potential occurs and the contraction wave then dies out. *For the persistence of normal propagation, therefore, a simultaneous mechanical component is probably required.* This mechanical component involves an adequate degree of stretching, provided this stretching takes place at a sufficiently rapid rate. The degree of stretching caused by a given stimulus (a urine bolus or stretching from the adjacent cells) is dependent on the tone of the individual ureter and its power to change the volume for a given tension increase. That which may be an adequate stimulus in one case can possibly be below the stimulation threshold in another. The magnitude of the static pressure induced seems to be of the greatest importance here, since the perfusion experiments described in chapter II allow us to suppose that the threshold rate of the pressure increase does not need to be fast and is probably usually attained.

The view discussed above is similar to that of BURSTOCK and PROSSER (1960 b). They concluded that propagation in smooth muscle depends on more than one factor. They considered that the transmission seems to be electrical but propagates best if the muscle has become excitable by stretching or chemical transmitters. The results of the present experiments are not in disharmony with this view. The required excitation is apparently obtained by distension provoked by the bolus jet (or at higher intraluminal pressures by the prevailing tension in the wall). Under special conditions—the anastomosis experiments—it was shown that the distension alone, without obvious delay, was capable of provoking a continued contraction wave. The fact that direct muscular continuity normally plays a part in the propagation, however, was indicated by the lack of contraction asynchrony at

There was no difference in the stimulation effect between the two rates of pressure increase used

The contractile power at intraureteric pressures higher than 120 mm Hg was studied by increasing the perfusion pressure up to a maximum of 155 mm Hg. Pressure variations due to contractions were shown up to 125 mm Hg. The degree of damping in the perfusion system could be decreased intermittently, the amplitude of the pressure waves thereby always increasing. It was concluded that if a ureter with intact connection with the pelvis dilated after obstruction to such an extent that open fluid communication with the pelvis and therefore regurgitation occurs, the peristaltic pressure waves are damped considerably. In the perfusion system used the degree of pressure damping was fairly low and the pressure waves could therefore be identified even with very high intraureteric pressures.

### *Chapter III The contractility at high intraureteric pressures with intact pelviureteric connections*

Ureteric peristalsis was studied in a series of experiments with intact pelviureteric connections. The intraluminal pressure was measured distally after total occlusion, and the electromyogram and ureteric diameter just proximal to the tip of the ureteric catheter were recorded at the same time. On increase of the basal pressure in the ureter the character of the pressure waves changed and when there was open fluid communication with the pelvis the only important pressure oscillations observed were synchronous with the arterial pulse. Action potentials and ureteric contractions accompanied the peristaltic waves at lower intraluminal pressures. The action potentials and ureteric contractions did not change in character when the pressure became so high that the damping in the pelvis eliminated the pressure waves. The contraction frequency however showed a slight tendency to decrease. No relationship between respiration frequency and ureteric activity was shown. It is concluded that the earlier views that the ureteric contractions cease on high pressure are dependent on the fact that neither pressure measurement alone nor contrast roentgenography is sufficient to demonstrate ureteric activity when the upper urinary tract is dilated.

## General summary

The aim of the present work was to study the relationship between the intraluminal pressure and the contractility in the ureter. Dogs were used for the experiments. The effect of different high intraureteric pressures was studied on ureters *in situ* both with perfusion methods and with retention of the physiological connection between the renal pelvis and the ureter. A series of experiments with transection and reanastomosis of the ureter was performed in order to study the propagation mechanism of the peristalsis.

### *Chapter I Introduction*

A short history of the physiology of the ureter is presented, and some general problems of interest to this investigation are mentioned.

### *Chapter II Perfusion of the ureter in situ*

For measurement of the intraluminal pressure a polythene catheter was inserted distally in the ureter close to the urinary bladder. The ureter was totally occluded and the peristalsis was studied. An attempt was made to obtain an intraluminal pressure of more than 25–30 mm Hg and diuretics were given when necessary. With a progressively increasing intraluminal pressure (above 15–20 mm Hg) the contraction dependent pressure variations in the ureter decreased gradually and finally became immeasurably small. In a second part of the experiments perfusion was carried out via a polythene catheter which was inserted into the ureter near to the renal pelvis. There was thus no fluid communication between the pelvis and the perfusion system but the nervous and vascular connections between the pelvis and the perfused meter were left as intact as possible. The perfusion pressure was raised at two constant rates first at 0.97 mm Hg/min and subsequently at 6.05 mm Hg/min. The ureteric peristalsis started at pressure levels between 1–2 and 16 mm Hg.

is increased above 15–20 mm Hg spontaneous contractions occur in both parts of the ureter, but the distal part usually has a lower frequency

The regulation of ureteric peristalsis is discussed and the effect of an anastomosis examined. Comparisons are made with anastomosis experiments previously reported. The conduction mechanism in the ureter is discussed briefly and it is concluded that *mechanical distortion plays an important part as regards peristaltic propagation*

#### *Chapter VI The conduction mechanism in the smooth muscle of the ureter*

The modern theories on the conduction mechanism are reviewed. Experimental data from studies of the ureteric muscles in particular are discussed. It is concluded that the conduction mechanism seems to consist of two components: (a) an electrical and (b) a mechanical one. (a) *There is probably electrical transmission from cell to cell*. (b) *A mechanical distortion of the muscle cells may be required to produce a sufficiently high degree of excitability making possible the electrical transmission*. The way in which this distortion is produced in the ureter with normal peristalsis and at raised pressures is discussed.



### *Chapter IV Ureteric diameter variations and electromyograms at low intraluminal pressure levels*

Ureteric peristalsis was studied at pressures lower than 15-20 mm Hg and with the pelvoureteric connections intact. The ureteric diameter was recorded at two or three different levels and action potentials were measured from a point somewhat proximal to the pressure measurement catheter which was situated distally. The pressure was measured after total occlusion. Diphasic pressure waves as a rule appeared with the peristaltic contractions. The first phase in each pressure wave coincided with a contraction at a more proximal measuring site, and was apparently due to a urine bolus pressed forwards. The forward penetration of a urine bolus distended the ureter, and at the same time an action potential appeared in the dilated region. The second phase in the pressure wave occurred when the muscle contraction reached the measurement site as manifested by a diameter reduction which started after the action potential. When the basal pressure of the ureter became higher the first phase in the pressure wave gradually decreased, and the simultaneous ureteric dilatation also decreased at the same time. The relationship between the pressure waves, diameter variations and action potentials are discussed and it is concluded that *the ureter probably has to be excited by a certain degree of stretching before a peristaltic wave is able to propagate*.

### *Chapter V The peristalsis in an anastomosed ureter*

The same technique was used as described in chapter IV. The peristalsis was studied before and after transection and reanastomosis with a short polythene catheter. The same peristaltic findings with diphasic pressure waves, dilatation-contraction and action potentials were made as described in chapter IV. *After anastomosis of the ureter it was shown that a peristaltic wave could propagate unhindered over the site of division even though there was no myogenous or nervous connection between the two parts of the ureter. A prerequisite here is that a bolus jet (advancing in front of a contraction wave proximally) should induce a distension, distally to the anastomosis sufficiently strong to stimulate contraction of the muscles. If the intraluminal pressure*

# References

- ALABINE J Ein Beitrag zur normalen und pathologischen Physiologie des Ureter *Folia urol* 1907 1 335-360
- ANDERSON J C Abnormal function of the upper urinary tract *Proc Roy Soc Med* 1901 41 925-933
- ATWELL V E and H H BORGSTEDT The peristaltic reflex of the isolated dog ureter *Fed Proc* 1960 19 194
- BAKER R and J HIFFER Electromyography in the normal dilated transected and transplanted ureter *Am J Physiol* 1963 174 381-390
- BENJAMIN J A J J BIRZELL V M EMMEL G H RAMSER and J S WATSON Observations on ureteral obstruction and contractility in man and dog *J Urol* 1956 75 20-42
- BERGMAN H A Intercellular bridges in ureteral smooth muscle *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 1908 102 190-202
- BOONE A W and V G SMITH The elastic properties of normal ureter *J Urol* 1900 73 481-486
- BORGSTEDT H H Effects of some local anaesthetics ganglion and NMJ blockers on the electrically stimulated isolated dog ureter *Fed Proc* 1960 19 194
- BORGSTEDT H H J A BENJAMIN and V M EMMEL The role of histamine in ureteral function *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1962 136 386-390
- BORG E and H A BLUM A new method of recording ureteral peristalsis Ureteral kymography *J Urol* 1900 74 322-330
- BOTARKEY S and J MARTINEZ Ureteral peristaltic pressures in dogs with changing urine flows *J Urol* 1962 87 2-32
- BOZLER E Electric stimulation and conduction of excitation in smooth muscle *Am J Physiol* 1938 122 614-623
- BOZLER E The activity of the pacemaker previous to the discharge of a muscular impulse *Am J Physiol* 1942 136 543-552
- BOZLER E The response of smooth muscle to stretch *Am J Physiol* 1947 149 299-301
- BOZLER E Conduction automaticity and tones of visceral muscles *Experientia* 1948 4 213-218
- BURSTOCK G and C L PROSSER Responses of smooth muscles to quick stretch relation of stretch to conduction *Am J Physiol* 1960 a 198 911-920
- BURSTOCK G and C L PROSSER Conduction in smooth muscles comparative electrical properties *Am J Physiol* 1960 b 199 553-560

## Acknowledgements

I want to thank the members of the staff of the Institute of Physiology, University of Uppsala, for many valuable discussions and much useful advice

I would also like to thank Miss Karin Larsson and Miss Inger Adolfson for skilful technical assistance, Mr Stig Norberg for help with the construction of some apparatus and Mr Olof Wistrand for photographic work

Financial support was provided by the Medical Faculty of the University of Uppsala, the Swedish Medical Research Council, the Swedish Society for Medical Research, Magnus Bergwall's Foundation and Vera and Carl J. Michaelsen's Donation Fund

- FRANKSON C and I PETERSEN Electromyographich recording from the normal human urinary bladder internal urethral sphincter and ureter *Acta Physiol Scand* 1953 29 Suppl 106 150-156
- FRY D L Physiological recording by modern instruments with particular reference to pressure recording *Physiol Rev* 1960 40 753-789
- FOLDI M V PAPP and T ZOLTANORS Resorption von mit <sup>131</sup>I markiertem Serumalbumin aus dem Nierenbecken nach Ureterverschluss *Zeitschr ges experl Med* 1950 131 440-442
- GABR S K R C SHALALA and V M BHATNAGAR A study of normal peristaltic action potentials in ureter (electro-ureterogram) *Indian J Physiol Pharmacol* 1959 3 5-8
- GILLESPIE J S Spontaneous mechanical and electrical activity of stretched and unstretched intestinal smooth muscle cells and their response to sympathetic nerve stimulation *J Physiol* 1962a 162 54-65
- GILLESPIE J S The electrical and mechanical response of intestinal smooth muscle cells to stimulation of their extrinsic parasympathetic nerves *J Physiol* 1962b 162 76-92
- GOULD D W A C L HSIEH and L F TRICKLER The behaviour of the isolated water buffalo ureter *J Physiol* 1955a 129 425-435
- GOULD D W A C L HSIEH and L F TRICKLER The behaviour of the intact ureter in dogs rabbits and rats *J Physiol* 1955b 129 436-447
- GRIVES R C and L M DAVIDOFF Studies on the ureter and bladder with especial reference to regurgitation of the vesical content *J Urol* 1923 10 185-231
- HAMM F C and S R WEINBERG Experimental studies of regeneration of the ureter without intubation *J Urol* 1956 75 43-51
- HAMM F C and S R WEINBERG *Urology in Medical Practice* Philadelphia 1962
- HANLEY H G The electro ureterogram *Brit J Urol* 1953 25 358-365
- HENDERSON V E The factors of the ureter pressure *J Physiol* 1905-06 33 155-188
- HINMAN F JR and H OPPENHEIMER Smooth muscle regeneration in repair of experimental ureteral defects the significance of the double lumen *J Urol* 1956 77 428-432
- ICHIKAWA Y and O IKEDA Recovery curve and conduction of action potentials in the ureter of the guinea pig *Jap J Physiol* 1960 10 117
- ICELIN M Temporary diversion of the urine by pyelostomy in repair of the ureter *Surg Gynec & Obst* 1959 49 503-509
- KHARITONOV I F Neuroreflex regulation of the motor function of the ureters *Ekspierim Khirurgiya* 1957 1957(4) 48-53
- IMM F *The Function of the Ureter and Renal Pelvis* Oslo 1957

- BUTCHER, H R and W SIFATOR A study of the electrical activity of intact and partially mobilized human ureters *J Urol* 1955 73 970-986
- BUTCHER H R and W SIFATOR The effect of ureteral anastomosis upon conduction of peristaltic waves: an electro-ureterographic study *J Urol* 1956 75 650-658
- BUTCHER H R, W SLEATOR and W P SCHWARTZ A study of the peristaltic conduction mechanism in the canine ureter *J Urol* 1957 78 221-231
- BULBRING F Correlation between membrane potential, spike discharge and tension in smooth muscle *J Physiol* 1955 123 200-221
- BULLBRING F, G BURKSTOCK and M F HOJMAN Excitation and conduction in the smooth muscle of the isolated taenia coli of the guinea pig *J Physiol* 1958 112 420-437
- BULBRING F Die Physiologie des glatten Muskels *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1961 273 1-17
- CALAFATI F, P GATTI and A AGNOFFITO Possibilità offerte dalla elettrografia per la maggior conoscenza della motilità ureterale *Arch Ital Urol* 1954 27 375-394
- CITTEFS R L and Longitudinal waves in the walls of fluid filled elastic tubes *Circulation Res* 1960 8 1145-1148
- CORRY F I, E H FITE JR and S A WEST Electropotential changes in the normal human ureter *J Urol* 1956 75 244-249
- DAVISON, A Ureteral anastomosis: Experimental studies preliminary report *J Urol* 1947 58 22-28
- DAVIS D M The hydrodynamics of the upper urinary tract *Ann Surg* 1954 140 839-849
- DAVIS H A *Principles of Surgical Physiology* New York 1957
- DE KLERK J Type and distribution of cholinesterase of urinary collecting system of dog: their relationship to ureteral peristalsis and possible role in congenital anomalies *J Urol* 1954 72 759-798
- DE LUCA F, O SWENSON and H SMITH The effect of chronic mechanical obstruction on ureteral peristalsis *J Urol* 1961 85 497-501
- DEMEZ F, J A CALANCA and J H McDONALD Repair of total defect of ureter with a single pedicle ureteral flap *J Urol* 1962 88 191-196
- DURAND I and J DESCOTES Etude expérimentale de l'innervation pyloro-urétérale *Lyon chir* 1952 47 709-728
- INCELMANN, TH W Zur Physiologie des Ureter *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1869 2 243-293
- INCELMANN TH W Beiträge zur allgemeinen Muskel und Nervenphysiologie *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1870 3 247-326
- FINKLE A I and D R SMITH Concepts of ureteral physiology *J Urol* 1955 74 312-321

- FRANSSON C and I PETERSEN Electromyographical recording from the normal human urinary bladder internal urethral sphincter and ureter *Acta Physiol Scand* 1953 29 Suppl 106 150-156
- FRY D L Physiological recording by modern instruments with particular reference to pressure recording *Physiol Rev* 1960 40 753-768
- FUJDI M, V PAPP and T ZOLTANORS Adsorption von mit I<sup>131</sup> markiertem Serumalbumin aus dem Nierenbecken nach Ureterverschluss *Zeitschr ges experl Med* 1959 131 410-442
- GALL S H, P C BIRKELA and V M BHATTAGAR A study of normal peristaltic action potentials in ureter (electro-ureterogram) *Indian J Physiol Pharmacol* 1959 3 5-8
- GILLESPIE J S Spontaneous mechanical and electrical activity of stretched and unstretched intestinal smooth muscle cells and their response to sympathetic nerve stimulation *J Physiol* 1962a 162 54-70
- GILLESPIE J S The electrical and mechanical responses of intestinal smooth muscle cells to stimulation of their extrinsic parasympathetic nerves *J Physiol* 1962b 162 76-92
- GOULD D W, A C L HENRI and L F TRICKLER The behaviour of the isolated water buffalo ureter *J Physiol* 1955a 129 425-430
- GOULD D W, A C L HENRI and L F TRICKLER The behaviour of the intact ureter in dogs rabbits and rats *J Physiol* 1955b 129 436-447
- GRAVES R C and L M DAWDSON Studies on the ureter and bladder with especial reference to reurgitation of the vesical contents *J Urol* 1923 10 185-231
- HAMM F C and S R WEINBERG Experimental studies of regeneration of the ureter without intubation *J Urol* 1956 75 43-51
- HAMM F C and S R WEINBERG Urology in Medical Practice Philadelphia 1962.
- HANLEY H C The electro-ureterogram *Brit J Urol* 1953 25 358-360
- HENDERSON V F The factors of the ureter pressure *J Physiol* 1905 66 93 175-188
- HINMAN F JR and R OPPENHEIMER Smooth muscle regeneration in repair of experimental ureteral defects: the significance of the double lumen *J Urol* 1956 75 422-432
- IRIKAWA S and O IKEDA Recovery curve and conduction of action potentials in the ureter of the guinea pig *Jap J Physiol* 1960 10 1-1
- ISCLIN M Temporary diversion of the urine by pyelostomy in repair of the ureter *Surg Gynec & Obst* 1929 49 503-509
- KHARITONOV I F Neuroreflex regulation of the motor function of the ureters *Ekspierim Khirurgia* 1957 1957(4) 48-53
- KUL F *The Function of the Ureter and Renal Pelvis* Oslo 1957

- KIL, F and K AUKLAND Effect of high ureteral pressure on urine concentration during water diuresis *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 1961 a 13 268-275
- KIL, F and K AUKLAND Renal concentration mechanism and hemodynamics at increased ureteral pressure during osmotic and saline diuresis *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 1961 b 13 276-287
- KIL, F In *Campbell's Urology* Philadelphia 1963 (In press)
- KOČIAR, S and F ŽÁK Ureteral substitution with dieron and teflon prostheses *J Urol* 1962 88 365-376
- LAPIDES, J The physiology of the intact human ureter *J Urol* 1949 59 501-537
- LUCAS, D R On intraureteral pressure and its relation to the peristaltic movements of the ureter *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1904-05 2 61-63
- LUCAS, D R Studies on the peristalsis of the ureter of dogs by the graphic method *Am J Physiol* 1906-07 17 392-407
- LUCAS, D R Physiological and pharmacological studies of the ureter, III *Am J Physiol* 1908 22 245-278
- MAZEHLA, H and G SCHROEDER Ureteral contractility in the dog and the influence of drugs *Arch int Pharmacodyn* 1960 128 291-299
- MELICK W F, J J NARYKA and J H SCHMIDT Experimental studies of ureteral peristaltic patterns in the pig I Similarity of pig and human ureter and bladder physiology *J Urol* 1961 a 85 145-148
- MELICK W F, J J NARYKA and J H SCHMIDT Experimental studies of ureteral peristaltic patterns in the pig II Myogenic activity of the pig ureter *J Urol* 1961 b 86 46-50
- MELICK W F, A E BRODFUR, D N KARFILOS and J J NARYKA Abnormal hydrodynamics of the bladder and ureters as a cause of ureteral reflux *J Urol* 1962 89 38-41
- MORALES, P A, C H CROWDER, A P FISHMAN and M H MAXWELL The response of the ureter and pelvis to changing urine flows *J Urol* 1952 67 484-491
- MURAGHAN, G F Experimental investigation of the dynamics of the normal and dilated ureter *Brit J Urol* 1957 29 403-409
- MURNAHAN, G F The physiology of megaureter *Proc Roy Soc Med* 1958 51 776-779
- NARATH P A *Renal Pelvis and Ureter* New York 1951
- O'CONNOR V J, JR and P DAWSON EDWARDS Role of ureter in renal transplantation I Studies of denervated ureter with particular reference to ureteroureteral anastomosis *J Urol* 1959 82 566-572
- O'CONNOR V J, JR The role of the ureter in renal transplantation II A full length transplant *J Urol* 1961 86 51-53

- OPPENHEIMER H and F HILMAN JR Ureteral regeneration. Contraction vs hyperplasia of smooth muscle *J Urol* 1953 74 476-481
- ORSELI L and E TH V BRÜCKE Beiträge zur Physiologie der autonomen innervierten Muskulatur II Die Aktionsströme der Uretermuskulatur während des Ablaufes spontaner Wellen *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1910 133 341-364
- PFEIDER W *Grundlagen der funktionellen urologischen Röntgendiagnostik* Stuttgart 1949
- PROSSER C L C E SMITH and C E MELTON Conduction of action potentials in the ureter of the rat *Am J Physiol* 1955 181 641-660
- ROSSER C L G BRANSTOCK and J KAHN Conduction in smooth muscle comparative structural properties *Am J Physiol* 1960 199 545-552
- ТРОПОПОВ С А Beiträge zur Anatomie und Physiologie der Ureteren *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1897 66 1-113
- RATTNER W H S FINE and J J MURPHY Pressure studies in the human ureter and renal pelvis *J Urol* 1957 78 359-367
- RODDIE I C The rate of propagation of contraction waves in turtle arterial muscle *J Physiol* 1962a 164 32P
- RODDIE I C The transmembrane potential changes associated with smooth muscle activity in turtle arteries and veins *J Physiol* 1962b 163 138-150
- RISHOLM L Studies on renal colic and its treatment by posterior splanchnic block *Acta Chir Scand* 1951 Suppl 181
- RISHOLM L and K J ÖLSSON Pyelorenal backflow in man *Acta Chir Scand* 1958 115 144-148
- RISHOLM L H R ULFENDAHL and K J ÖLSSON Pressure and peristalsis in the upper urinary tract of the dog in experimental ureteric occlusion *Acta Chir Scand* 1959/60 118 304-311
- SATANI Y Experimental studies of the ureter *Am J Physiol* 1919a 39 474-495
- SATANI Y Experimental studies of the ureter The cause of the ureteral contractions *Am J Physiol* 1919-b 50 342-351
- SATANI Y Histologic study of the ureter *J Urol* 1919c 3 24-26
- SHIRATORI T H KATAYOSE Y SETAKE S KAWAMATA H KINOSHITA K TAKAKURA K ENOKIDO R SHIGA T NOMURA G USUDA and I CHIBA Electromyographic studies on urinary tract I Fundamental studies on EMG of animal and human ureters *Tohoku J exp Med* 1953 69 175-184
- SHIRATORI T and H KINOSHITA Electromyographic studies on urinary tract II Electromyographic study on the genesis of peristaltic movement of the dogs ureter *Tohoku J exp Med* 1961a 73 103-117



- SHIRATORI, T and H KINOSHITA Electromyographic studies on urinary tract III Influence of pinching and cutting the ureters of dog on their FMGs *Tohoku J exp Med* 1961 **73** 159-169
- SHIRATORI, T and K CHIRAI Electromyographic studies on urinary tract IV The effects of muscular restraints on the FMG of the human and canine ureters *Tohoku J exp Med* 1961 **74** 149-160
- SLEATOR, W and H R BUTCHER Action potentials and pressure changes in ureteral peristaltic waves *Am J Physiol* 1955 **180** 261-276
- SELKOFF, E E, M BRANDFORSBERGER and H M GELLER Effects of ureteral pressure increase on renal hemodynamics and the handling of electrolytes and water *Am J Physiol* 1952 **170** 61-71
- SERELAKIS, N and C L PROSSER Mechanical and electrical activity in intestinal smooth muscle *Am J Physiol* 1959 **196** 850-856
- STEIN, J and S R WEINBERG A histologic study of the normal and dilated ureter *J Urol* 1962 **87** 33-38
- SWENSON, O, J H FISHER and B T SMITH Studies of normal and abnormal ureteral peristalsis *Med J Indr* 1959 **11** 803-806
- SWENSON, O and B T SMITH Aperistaltic megaloureter Treatment by bilateral cutaneous ureterostomy using a new technique pre lumbar communication *J Urol* 1959 **92** 62-67
- TAYLOR M G and F ULLMAN Glomerular filtration after obstruction of the ureter *J Physiol* 1961 **11** 38-63
- TEOPELI, T Biophysical aspects on mechanical stimulation of excitable tissues *Acta Soc Med Upsal* 1959 **61** 341-352
- TEORELL, T Some biophysical considerations on pressure receptors *Arch int Pharmacodyn* 1962 **140** 563-576
- TRATTNER H R A method for recording contractions of the intact human ureter *J Urol* 1924 **11** 477-487
- TRATTNER H R Graphic registration of the function of the human ureter with the hydrophorograph *J Urol* 1932 **25** 1-33
- WARNER H R The frequency-dependent nature of blood pressure regulation by the carotid sinus studied with an electric analog *Circulation Res* 1958 **6** 35-40
- WEINBERG, S R and A A SIEBELS Activity of the ureter after surgery *J Urol* 1958 **80** 326-336
- WEINBERG, S R and T J MALETTA Measurement of peristalsis of the ureter and its relation to drugs *J Am U* 1961 **175** 15-18
- WEINBERG, S R and B F HOFFMAN Extraluminal electrode for recording action potential of ureter *in situ* *J Appl Physiol* 1961 **16** 933-934
- WEINBERG, S R Application of physiologic principles to surgery of the ureter *Am J Surg* 1962 **103** 549-554
- WILDEOLZ H *Lehrbuch der Urologie* Berlin 1952





ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
Vol 59 Supplementum 213

XI SCANDINAVIAN  
PHYSIOLOGICAL CONGRESS  
IN COPENHAGEN  
1963

*Abstracts of Communications*

---

COPENHAGEN 1963

Uppsala 1965 Almqvist & Wiksell B tryckeri AB 623010

XI SCANDINAVIAN  
PHYSIOLOGICAL CONGRESS  
IN COPENHAGEN  
1963

LIBRARY,

CS,  
JAIPUR

*Abstracts of Communications*

---

COPENHAGEN 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

Vol 59 : Supplementum 213

XI SCANDINAVIAN  
PHYSIOLOGICAL CONGRESS  
IN COPENHAGEN  
1963

*Abstracts of Communications*

---

COPENHAGEN 1963





# INDEX

- Aarslog D 151  
 Aars H 5  
 Ahrens K 6 8  
 Alnæs E 75  
 Anden N E 10 13<sup>7</sup> 161  
 Andersen C E 11  
 Andersen H T 12  
 Andersen S A 13 14  
 Andersen E O 15  
 Appelberg E 16  
 Areskog N H 17  
 Arstila M 18  
 Arturson G 17  
 Asmussen E 19  
 Bergstrom L 21  
 Bergstrom R M 21  
 Bernhard C G 22  
 Brummerstedt Hansen E 23  
 Buchthal F 193  
 Bygdeman S 24  
 Carlsen F 25 27  
 Christensen S 28  
 Crone C 29  
 Cuddy T 30  
 Doving K B 31  
 Edman K A P 37  
 Eisenman J 33  
 Ekblom B 35  
 Feklund G 36  
 Elwin C E 37  
 Engberg I 118  
 Euler C von 36  
 Euler U S von 39  
 Fenichel I R 40  
 Fex J 41  
 Folkow B 42 44  
 Frankenhaeuser B 45  
 From E 33  
 Fuchs F 25  
 Gemne E 31  
 Gestrup E 46  
 Giacobini E 48  
 Gidfot A 50  
 Gjone R 52  
 Grampp W 54  
 Grant R 56  
 Grotte G 17  
 Guld C 57  
 Hakulinen A 121  
 Hansson E 59  
 Harttala K 63 125  
 Hedner P 129  
 Hesser C M 60  
 Hunt, H C 61  
 Hirvonen L 18 83  
 Horowitz E 40  
 Haggendal J 62  
 Hanninen O 63  
 Jacobsohn, E 65  
 Jacobson E 66  
 Jahn S al A 67  
 Jansen J K S 69  
 Jansson G 71  
 Jóhannesson T 72  
 Johansen S H 19 74  
 Jørgensen M 19 74  
 Kaada E R 75  
 Kahlson G 147  
 Kjellmer I 66 77 78  
 Klausen K 79  
 Knappes G G 25 27  
 Knutsson E 81  
 Koivikko A 83  
 Kontinen K 119  
 Kosary I Z 16  
 Kozłowski S 139  
 Kristensen B 15  
 Krog I 84  
 Kruhoffer P 85  
 Landgren S 33  
 Lang H 86 157  
 Larsen V 87  
 Laurent, T C 168  
 Laursen A M 164  
 Lewis D 42  
 Liehnecker S 88 92  
 Lindgren I 137  
 Lindquist M 62  
 Linna M 121  
 Lishajko F 39  
 Lowy J 89  
 Lundberg A 91



**Aars Harald** (Nuffield Department of Surgery Radcliffe Infirmary Oxford England and the Institute for Experimental Medical Research University of Oslo Norway) **EXPERIMENTAL POST STENOTIC DILATATION OF THE ASCENDING AORTA IN RABBITS**

Previous experimental studies of post stenotic dilatation have been hampered by unsatisfactory constriction techniques

A new method is described whereby acute constrictions of the intrapericardial part of the ascending aorta in rabbits are induced by a tapered nylon ring. The inside diameter of the ring is known and the internal diameter of the aorta is measured on angiocardiograms taken prior to the opening of the chest. This method thus provides opportunities for relating the eventual vascular and hemodynamic changes to a known degree of stenosis. Directly under the ring the vessel wall will gradually get thinner but the rabbits have tolerated well a 70-80 per cent reduction of the inside cross sectional area of the aorta for 10 months.

Provided a severe stenosis is present a post-stenotic dilatation is formed after a few days as illustrated by angiocardiography. The dilatation is comprised of the rest of the ascending aorta, the whole of the arch and the first few centimeters of the descending aorta. Occasionally the adjoining parts of the cervico-brachial vessels are involved. Histological examination reveals corresponding degenerative changes in the intima and media. In rabbits on a normal diet thrombi are not formed in the dilated area in any significant number.

This experimental model is presently used in studying the effect of the dilatation on thrombi and cholesterol deposits in rabbits fed a high fat diet and the effect on the function of baroreceptors in the dilated aortic arch.

Lundgren C 92	Rubinstein L 6 8
Lundgren O 42 93	Rudjord T 69
Lundin G 88 94	Rutkowski S 36
Lundquist F 95 153 167	Raiha C E 128
Luostarinen E 121	Raiha N 135
Magnusson T 10	Saarimaa H 122
Manninen K 97	Salmi H A 137
Marsden N V II 98 100	Saltn B 30 35 138 139
Martinson J 71	Samuelsson B 170
Matell G 60	Sandberg N 140
Mellander S 42 101	Sedvall G 141
Molbeck S 74 103	Seteklev J 52 142
Maenpaa M 97	Skadhauge E 143
Møller Aa 105	Skoglund C R 81 111
Møller J V 106	Smith R S 144
Neville A C 107	Sourander C 122
Nielsen K H 109	Steg G 145
Nielsen M 19	Stenberg J 30 35
Nienstedt W 110	Sten Knudsen O 89
Nilsson G 37	Strømer Rasmussen P 146
Nilsson B Y 111	Støa K F 151
Nissen O I 85	Suomalainen H 119
Norn S 72	Svahn D 147
Norrsell U 13 14	Svensmark O 148
Novin D 33	Soderberg U 50
Nyman R 135	Thomas F 75
Odelram H 78	Thomson D 94
Ofstad H 113	Thorn N A 150 166
Oro L 115	Thorsen T 151
Oscarsson O 116	Thunberg B 147
Ottoson D 118	Tuovinen, T 157
Oura E 119	Tygstrup N 95 153 167
Pekkarinen A 97 120 121 122	Ulfendal H B 100
Peltonen T 18 83	Ussing H H 155
Pulkkinen M O 124	Valleala P 157
Putkonen B 21	Vyklicky L 91
Rausti M 125	Wahlstrom G 158
Refsum H E 126	Wallentin I 42 93
Reite O B 84 127	Weis Fogh T 159
Relander A 128	Werdinius B 132 161
Rerup C 129	Wester K 75
Richter A W 130	Wiesendanger M 162 164
Rinne U 122	Willumsen N B S 150 166
Roos II E 132 161	Winkler K 95 153 167
Rosén I 116	Zade Oppen A M M 168
Rosenfalck A 133	Zimmermann Nielsen C 169
Rosengren E 147	Ånggård E 170
Royce J 35	Öberg B 171
Rubinstein E H 44	Åstrand P-O 30 35

Thus FSH stimulates the rate of protein synthesis in at least some of the ovarian cells an effect which might be due at least in part to a stimulation of the rate of entry of amino acids into the intracellular amino acid pool

Ahrén K and J L Kostyo *Excerpta Medica Int Congr Ser* no 48  
1962 Abstract no 526

Ahren K and J L Kostyo *Endocrinology* 1963 In press

Manchester K L and F G Young *Biochem J* 1958 70 353

**Ahren, Kurt and Lidia Rubinstein\*** (Department of Physiology, University of Goteborg, Sweden) **STIMULATION OF GLYCINE 2-T INCORPORATION INTO THE PROTEIN OF ISOLATED RAT OVARIES BY FOLLICLE STIMULATING HORMONE (FSH)**

Injection of FSH into prepubertal rats in one intravenous dose 2-4 h before removal of the ovaries stimulated the accumulation of the non utilizable amino acid,  $\alpha$  aminoisobutyric acid (AIB) in the ovaries (Ahren and Kostyo 1962, 1963). In the present experiments the effect of FSH on the incorporation of glycine 2-T into the protein of isolated rat ovaries and the accumulation of AIB  $C^{14}$  was studied.

Ovaries from six prepubertal rats (24-26 days old) were pooled for each determination. The ovaries were divided into two groups with one ovary from each rat in each group. One group of six ovaries was incubated for 2 h in Krebs phosphate or bicarbonate buffer containing 0.1 mM glycine-2-T and 5.6 mM glucose, and the other group of six ovaries was incubated in a medium where glycine-2-T was replaced by 0.1 mM AIB  $C^{14}$ . At the end of the incubation period the ovaries were homogenized in 10 per cent trichloroacetic acid (TCA) and the accumulation of soluble radioactive material was measured. The protein was prepared as described by Manchester and Young (1958) dissolved in 1 M Hyamine and counted in a liquid scintillation spectrometer.

With glycine-2-T in the medium the incorporation of tritium into the protein (calculated as cpm/mg protein) was significantly greater in ovaries from rats which had received one intravenous injection of ovine FSH (5  $\mu$ g/g body weight) 4 h before removal of the ovaries than in simultaneously incubated ovaries from control rats. In addition, the accumulation of TCA soluble radioactive material by the isolated ovaries was stimulated by the injection of FSH.

As in the previous study (Ahren and Kostyo 1962, 1963) AIB  $C^{14}$  was not incorporated into the protein of the ovaries and injection of FSH 4 h before removal of the ovaries stimulated the accumulation of this non utilizable amino acid by the isolated ovaries.

\* Fellow of the Consejo Nacional de Investigaciones (Argentina)

graft. In the rats with 4 grafts alveolar development was slightly stimulated by testosterone but alveoli were still scarce as compared with normal controls.

Thus there is a deficiency of growth hormone in hypophysectomized rats also when these rats have 4 pituitary glands transplanted under the kidney capsule. This indicates that a normal connection between the hypothalamus and the hypophysis is essential for the secretion of STH.

Ahren K., Acta endocr (Kbh) 1962 39 338

Hertz H. Endocrinology 1959 65 926



**Ahren, Kurt and Lidia Rubinstein\*** (Department of Physiology  
University of Goteborg Sweden) **STUDIES ON GROWTH  
HORMONE PRODUCTION BY THE TRANSPLANTED  
HYPOPHYSIS**

When the anterior pituitary gland is transplanted to a site in the body remote from the hypothalamus it does not produce significant amounts of follicle stimulating hormone, luteinizing hormone, thyroid stimulating hormone or adrenocorticotrophic hormone, but is able to secrete considerable amounts of luteotrophic hormone. It is uncertain whether the grafts produce growth hormone (somatotrophic hormone STH).

The capacity of the rat mammary gland to respond to testosterone stimulation with lobule-alveolar development only when STH is present, was used to study the secretion of STH by the pituitary gland autotransplanted under the kidney capsule (Ahren 1962). These experiments indicate that there is a considerable deficiency of STH in rats with pituitary autografts. The results, however, could be attributed to the lack of sufficient functional tissue, since Hertz (1959) reported somatic growth at about two thirds of the normal rate in hypophysectomized rats bearing four whole pituitary glands under the kidney capsule. It was therefore decided to compare the somatic growth and the mammary gland response to testosterone in rats with one and four hypophyses transplanted under the kidney capsule.

Male rats were castrated at 4 weeks of age. Three weeks later the anterior pituitary gland was transplanted and 3 days later one group received in addition 3 pituitary glands from male rats 4 weeks old.

The body weight and length were studied for 15-17 weeks. During this period the increase of body weight in rats with one transplant was 6-20 per cent, in rats with 4 transplants 26-45 per cent and in the normal controls 135-200 per cent.

After 11 weeks without treatment the mammary gland response to testosterone stimulation was studied. As in previous studies (Ahren 1962), testosterone produced only a few alveoli in the rats with one

\* Fellow of the Consejo Nacional de Investigaciones (Argentina)

Andersen, Carl E (Institute of Biochemistry University of Aarhus Denmark) KINETIC STUDIES ON THE ELIMINATION OF ISONICOTINIC ACID HYDRAZIDE

The elimination of isonicotinic acid hydrazide (INH) was investigated after intravenous injection in 20 subjects. The method of Maher *et al* (1957) was used to determine free and acetylated INH in plasma and urine.

The rate of elimination was proportional to plasma concentration. In one group of subjects the average half-life of INH was  $55 \pm 6$  min, in another group  $152 \pm 20$  min in accordance with the results of Jenne *et al* (1961).

Determination of the drug alone shows elimination as a whole; the determination of the metabolites allows a differentiation between some of the routes of elimination viz excretion through the kidneys, acetylation and other forms of elimination. Assuming that elimination follows first order kinetics, different elimination constants ( $k$ ) may be calculated:  $k_e$  (excretion calculated from renal clearance and distribution volume) and  $k_a$  (other forms of elimination) show a normal distribution among the 20 subjects, and only  $k_a$  (acetylation) has a bimodal pattern. 12 of the subjects having an average  $k_a$  of  $0.01013 \pm 0.00170$  and 8 subjects  $0.00186 \pm 0.00025$ . Thus one group acetylates the drug more than 5 times as fast as the other group. Based on the  $k$  values, the participation of the different types of elimination in total elimination was calculated and compared with the findings in 24 h urine; there was relatively good agreement between calculated and experimental values.

Maher J K *et al* Amer Rev Tuberc 1957 76 852  
Jenne J W *et al* Amer Rev resp Dis 1961 84 371

**Anden, N-E and T Magnusson (Department of Pharmacology,  
University of Goteborg Sweden) EFFECT OF NORADREN-  
ALINE DEPLETION BY ALPHA METHYL META  
TYROSINE, METARAMINOL AND d ADRENALINE**

Reserpine blocks the effects of adrenergic, sympathetic nerve stimulation and decreases the content of noradrenaline in tissues. With metaraminol or d adrenaline the noradrenaline content of peripheral tissues could be reduced by more than 95 per cent. The injected amines were recovered in tissues in a molar concentration of 50 to 100 per cent of the missing noradrenaline. As sympathomimetic agents they are more than ten times weaker than 1 noradrenaline. Reduction in noradrenaline could also be produced by  $\alpha$ -methyl meta tyrosine which is partly converted to metaraminol *in vivo*. After the reduction of noradrenaline by these agents the following observations were made in rats and cats which had undergone unilateral cervical sympathectomy:

- 1) There was no ptosis (rats) nictitating membrane relaxation (cats) or miosis (cats) on the intact side, while these signs were observed on the denervated side.
- 2) The nictitating membrane was contracted (cats) the pupil dilated (cats and rats) and the eye protruded (cats and rats) during stimulation ( $< 10/\text{sec}$ ) of the cervical sympathetic trunk. The responses did not deviate significantly from those observed in untreated animals.
- 3) The blood pressure responses in cats after bilateral carotid occlusion, tyramine (0.5 mg/kg) and atropine plus carbacholine (0.2 mg/kg) were within the normal range.

Thus displacement of more than 95 per cent of tissue noradrenaline by these less active analogues did not cause any detectable disturbance of adrenergic nerve functions.

Andersen, Carl E (Institute of Biochemistry University of Aarhus  
Denmark) KINETIC STUDIES ON THE ELIMINATION  
OF ISONICOTINIC ACID HYDRAZIDE

The elimination of isonicotinic acid hydrazide (INH) was investigated after intravenous injection in 20 subjects. The method of Maher *et al* (1957) was used to determine free and acetylated INH in plasma and urine.

The rate of elimination was proportional to plasma concentration. In one group of subjects the average half-life of INH was  $55 \pm 6$  min; in another group  $152 \pm 20$  min, in accordance with the results of Jenne *et al* (1961).

Determination of the drug alone shows elimination as a whole; the determination of the metabolites allow a differentiation between some of the routes of elimination, viz. excretion through the kidneys, acetylation and other forms of elimination. Assuming that elimination follows first order kinetics, different elimination constants ( $k$ ) may be calculated:  $k_e$  (excretion calculated from renal clearance and distribution volume) and  $k_x$  (other forms of elimination) show a normal distribution among the 20 subjects, and only  $k_a$  (acetylation) has a bimodal pattern. 12 of the subjects having an average  $k_a$  of  $0.01013 \pm 0.00170$  and 8 subjects  $0.00186 \pm 0.00025$ . Thus one group acetylates the drug more than 5 times as fast as the other group. Based on the  $k$  values, the participation of the different types of elimination in total elimination was calculated and compared with the findings in 24 h urine; there was relatively good agreement between calculated and experimental values.

Maher J R *et al* Amer Rev Tuberc 1957 76 852  
Jenne J W *et al* Amer Rev resp Dis 1961 84 371

**Andersen, Harald T** (Institute of Zoophysiology, University of Oslo, Norway, and Department of Physiology Kungl Veterinarhögskolan Stockholm Sweden) **THE REFLEX NATURE OF THE PHYSIOLOGICAL ADJUSTMENTS TO DIVING AND THEIR AFFERENT PATHWAY**

The elicitation of submersion apnoea and bradycardia was investigated in intact and decerebrated ducks with and without various trigeminal lesions, to study the reflex nature of the diving characteristics, and to explore their afferent pathway. The circulatory as well as the respiratory adjustments to water immersion of the head are medullary reflexes independent of higher levels of the central nervous system, although the basic reflex may be influenced by activity in higher centers.

The trigeminal nerve constitutes the afferent pathway of the reflex arc by which the reactions to diving are induced upon submersion. Its ophthalmic division is the most important branch in this respect but the mandibular portion is an element in the afferent limb of the reflex arc as well. The maxillary nerve does not serve such function.

**Andersson, Sven A and Ulf NorrSELL (Institute of Physiology University of Göteborg Sweden) THE LOCALIZED ALPHA ACTIVITY IN THE SOMATOSENSORY CORTEX AND ITS ACTIVATION VIA AN ASCENDING VENTRAL SPINAL PATHWAY**

In the spinal cord of the cat the specific projection system consists of the dorsal columns and a pathway ascending in the dorso-medial part of the lateral funiculus. An interruption of this projection system caused the appearance of regular high voltage slow waves in the somatosensory cortex (*Andersson 1962 a*). The spontaneous frequency of these slow waves was 8-12/sec i.e. within the limits of the cortical alpha rhythm. This slow wave activity was strictly localized to the parts of the somatosensory areas that correspond to peripheral fields situated below the level of the lesion. A continuity in the slow waves could be observed only when recording below the cortical surface with maximum amplitude at a depth of 800-1000  $\mu$ . In surface recordings the slow wave activity appeared as an increased frequency of spindle bursts.

Strong stimuli applied to peripheral fields anywhere below the level of the spinal lesion induced an increase in both the amplitude and frequency of the slow waves (*Andersson 1962 b*). This effect depended on a suitable depth of anaesthesia. A stimulus which caused this effect on the slow waves suppressed spindle bursts and induced a low voltage high frequency activity in other cortical areas. The bilateral ventral flexor reflex tract mediates these effects (*Lundberg and Oscarsson 1962*).

Andersson S A. *Med exp (Basel)* 1962 a 11 21-24

Andersson S A. *Med exp (Basel)* 1962 b 6 25-28

Lundberg A and O Oscarsson. *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 270-286

**Andersson, Sven A and Ulf Norrsell (Institute of Physiology, University of Goteborg, Sweden) THE SUPPRESSION OF ALPHA ACTIVITY IN A CORTICAL RECEIVING AREA BY ACTIVITY IN ITS SPECIFIC PROJECTON PATHWAYS**

Interruption of the specific projection pathways in the spinal cord caused the appearance of regular slow waves within the frequency limits of the alpha rhythm in the somatosensory cortex (*Andersson 1962*) This slow wave activity could be obtained also by partial lesions of these pathways In preparations with such lesions microelectrode recordings indicated that different effects on the slow waves could be induced from different peripheral fields situated below the level of the lesion Thus, in the presence of cells that can be activated with short latency by light stimuli applied in small contralateral fields, the slow waves were abolished when these cells were activated However, strong stimuli, applied in peripheral fields from which no such cell activation could be elicited induced an increase in the amplitude and frequency of the slow waves

The present observations suggest that the activity in the specific projection pathways prevents the appearance of slow waves in their cortical receiving areas in the intact animal

Andersson S A *Med exp (Basel)* 1962 6 21-25

**Andersen, Svend Olav and Berit Kristensen (Zoophysiological Laboratory B University of Copenhagen, Denmark) INCORPORATION OF PHENYLALANINE AND TYROSINE IN THE CROSS-LINKAGES OF A PROTEIN RESILIN**

The rubber like protein resilin present in some parts of the cuticle of insects contains some very stable cross linkages between the peptide chains (Weis Fogh 1960) Two fluorescent compounds have been isolated from hydrolysates of locust resilin and although their chemical structure is still unknown it has been shown that one of them is a diaminodicarboxylic acid and the other a triaminotricarboxylic acid (Andersen 1963) There is evidence that these compounds constitute the cross linkages in resilin

As both compounds are aromatic and contain at least one phenolic group it was thought probable that phenylalanine and/or tyrosine could act as precursors in the animals Experiments were performed where locusts (*Schistocerca gregaria*) were injected one day after emergence with tyrosine or phenylalanine generally marked with  $C^{14}$  When the animals were given radioactive phenylalanine the activity incorporated in resilin could afterwards be found distributed between phenylalanine tyrosine and the two fluorescent compounds When radioactive tyrosine was used the activity was restricted to tyrosine and the two compounds but nothing was present in phenylalanine

This indicates the following sequence in the synthesis of the cross linkages in resilin



The specific activities of the isolated compounds were so much higher than that of the isolated tyrosine that it can be assumed that more than one tyrosine residue is involved in the biosynthesis of one cross linkage

The incorporation of radioactive tyrosine into resilin has also been studied by means of autoradiography which shows that the incorporation is very rapid



**Appelberg, H and I Z Kosary** (Department of Physiology, Kungl Veterinärhögskolan, Stockholm, Sverige) **RECIPROCAL FUSIMOTOR INFLUENCE FROM THE RED NUCLEUS**

The experiments were performed on cats lightly anaesthetized with Nembutal®. The effect was studied of electrical stimulation in the region of the red nucleus upon the activity in contralateral fusimotor efferent fibres and in muscle spindle afferents from the gastrocnemius (extensor) and tibialis anterior (flexor) muscles. The activity in most fusimotor fibres was inhibited from a region comprising the dorsal part of and extending slightly dorsally to the red nucleus. From the same region the response to static stretch was diminished in extensor as well as flexor muscle spindle afferents. From the ventral part of the red nucleus the activity in many fusimotor fibres was facilitated and the static response of flexor spindles was increased. Extensor spindle discharge was inhibited also from this region. The reciprocal effect on muscle spindles from the ventral part of the red nucleus was often accompanied by a contraction in the flexor muscle under study. The elicitation of the contraction was independent of whether the ipsilateral dorsal roots were intact or not, and thus due to concomitant activation of alpha motoneurons to flexor muscles. *Sasaki, Namikawa and Hashimoto (1960)* have shown that rubral stimulation influences alpha motoneurons in a reciprocal way, i.e. facilitation of flexor and inhibition of extensor neurones. Fusimotor neurones to flexor and extensor muscle spindles are controlled in a similar manner. The area the stimulation of which yielded the reciprocal effect was the same as the part of the red nucleus previously shown to have anatomical connections with the lumbar spinal cord (*Pompeiano and Brodal 1957*). The dorsal part of the nucleus which, according to these authors, mainly has fore limb connections exerted an inhibitory influence on both flexor and extensor spindles in hind limb muscles indicating some sort of reciprocity of rubral effects on fore and hind limbs.

*Pompeiano O and A Brodal* Experimental demonstration of a somatotopical origin of rubrospinal fibres in the cat *J comp Neur* 1957 **108** 225-252

*Sasaki K, A Namikawa and S Hashimoto* The effect of midbrain stimulation upon alpha motoneurons in lumbar spinal cord *Jap J Physiol* 1960 **10** 303-316

Areskog N H, G Arturson and G Grotte (Departments of Clinical Physiology Physiology and Surgery University of Uppsala Sweden) STUDIES ON HEART LYMPH KINETICS OF  $^{131}\text{I}$  ALBUMIN IN THE DOG HEART LUNG PREPARATION

The transport of  $^{131}\text{I}$  albumin from plasma to lymph was studied in dog heart lung preparations. Cannulation of a lymph vessel mainly draining the left ventricle was performed. After injection of the labelled substance plasma mixing was complete within a few minutes. The plasma concentration of the tracer was steady for two to three hours. During this time plasma and heart lymph samples were collected. The concentration increase of the labelled substance in heart lymph showed a time course indicating that the substance from the *intra* vascular compartment was mainly distributed to a single *extra* vascular compartment. The data could thus be fully explained by a two compartment model and the permeability constants as well as the approximate size of the extravascular albumin space (drained by the lymphatic cannula) could be calculated.

In one out of seven successful experiments the data were as follows: heart weight 88 g total extravascular albumin space 119 ml extravascular albumin space drained by the lymphatic cannula 61 ml amount of albumin from the *intra*vascular compartment filtered across the cardiac capillaries (rate constant) 0.00014 per min amount of albumin from the *extra*vascular compartment transported away by the lymphatics (rate constant) 0.0067 per min turnover time or average time of albumin molecules in the extravascular space 150 min.

The present experimental approach therefore allowed *quantitative* determination of certain aspects of lymph flow and compartmental distribution of the cardiac extravascular space drained by the cannulated lymph vessel. The extravascular fluid and the lymph of the dog's heart may be regarded as identical fluids as reflected by the albumin concentration.

**Arstila, M., L. Hirvonen and T. Peltonen (Department of Physiology, University of Turku, Finland) DUCTUS VENOSUS AND THE VEGETATIVE NERVES**

The *ductus venosus* in the lamb remains open for 3 to 4 days after birth. According to *Barron* (1942) there is a sphincter in the ductus which is innervated by the vagus. The flow of radiopaque injected into the portal sinus through the umbilical vein was recorded with cineradiography in newborn lambs anesthetized with chloralose. Aortic and right ventricular or atrial pressures were recorded simultaneously. During unilateral vagal stimulation the *ductus venosus* opened or widened in 9 of 12 lambs. In three there were no essential changes in the calibre of the ductus. The calibre of the ductus varied during sympathetic stimulation elicited either by bilateral carotid clamping or by intravenous injection of epinephrine. Acetylcholine and norepinephrine never closed the ductus when administered intravenously, after intraumbilical injection the calibre of the ductus increased.

*Barron Anat Rec 1942 82 398*

Asmussen Erling, S H Johansen, Mogens Jørgensen and Marius Nielsen (Laboratory for the Theory of Gymnastics Zoophysiological Laboratory A University of Copenhagen and Gentofte County Hospital Denmark) **THE NEUROGENIC FACTORS IN THE REGULATION OF RESPIRATION AND CIRCULATION DURING MUSCULAR EXERCISE**

It has been demonstrated that neurogenic factors are of importance for the regulation of respiration and circulation during muscular exercise. We have performed a series of experiments in which these nervous influences have been varied in two different ways while maintaining a constant rate of work. 1) Blocking the circulation to the working muscles and 2) giving small doses of curare to the exercising subject. In the former case the ensuing anaerobiosis in the blocked muscles will diminish the work output of every single active muscle fiber thus necessitating the recruitment of an increasing number of active muscle fibers for the maintenance of the work. In the second case the curare will block the transmission at a certain number of motor endplates and thus necessitate the spreading of the excitation to a larger number of motor units. In both cases pulmonary ventilation increased considerably when the alveolar  $P_{CO_2}$  was maintained constant by adding  $CO_2$  to the inspired air. Pulse rate and arterial blood pressure behaved differently in the two cases. With blocked circulation both increased considerably whereas in the curare experiments they only showed small changes.

In both series of experiments it can be excluded that the observed increase in respiratory and circulatory functions were due to changes in the composition of the circulating arterial blood. But the observed effects might be interpreted by the action or interaction of nervous factors viz. 1) afferent impulses from intramuscular chemoreceptors 2) mechanoreceptors or 3) spread of excitation from the higher motor centers to the regulatory centers.

As the increase in respiration in the curare experiments where no local anaerobiosis was present was of the same magnitude as in the blocking experiments it seems justifiable to assume that the observed respiratory changes were not due to a stimulation of local chemoreceptors.

Since pulse rate and blood pressure were considerably more in

creased in the blocking experiments than in the curare experiments it can not be excluded that intramuscular chemoreceptors take part in the regulation of these functions. Work experiments with artificial stimulation of the muscles in humans or animals have shown that the higher motor centers are not of primary importance for the adaptation of respiration and circulation to work. In spite of the fact that the rate of work was maintained constant in the present series of experiments an increased activity in the mechanoreceptors can be assumed if the gamma loop is involved in this kind of exercise.

**Bergstrom R M, Lea Bergstrom and P Putkonen (Institute of Physiology University of Helsinki Finland) THE EFFECT OF THALIDOMIDE ON THE ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM (EEG) OF THE INTRAUTERINE GUINEA PIG FOETUS**

Brain waves were recorded in intrauterine guinea pig foetuses in acute and chronic preparations (Bergstrom 1962) during the administration of thalidomide ( $\alpha$  N phthalimidoglutarimid perorally up to 300 mg/kg to the pregnant animal intracardially in propyleneglycol up to 4 mg/kg to the foetus or the pregnant animal) The EEG and the electrocorticogram of the pregnant animal and of the foetus were recorded simultaneously Doses of thalidomide (100 mg/kg perorally or 2-3 mg/kg intracardially) which just increased the alpha activity in the electrocorticogram of the pregnant animal depressed the foetal EEG most pronounced in young foetuses

Bergstrom R M Prenatal development of motor functions *Ann Chir Gynaec Fenn* 1962 51 Suppl 112 1-48

**Bernhard, Carl Gustaf** (Department of Physiology II, Karolinska  
Institutet, Stockholm, and the Rockefeller Institute, New York)  
**ON THE FUNCTIONAL SIGNIFICANCE OF THE PIG-  
MENT MIGRATION IN THE COMPOUND EYE**

The present study represents a continuation of the comparative electrophysiological and histological investigations on the functional significance of the positional changes of the secondary iris pigment in the compound eye of superposition type (*Bernhard and Ottoson* 1959, 1960, 1961, 1962) Local illumination of a night moth's (*Prodenia eridiana*) dark-adapted eye is followed by a migration of the secondary iris pigment from dark to light position which is restricted to the ommatidia illuminated and to the surrounding ommatidia The lack of contralateral effects as well as the spatial limitation of the effect of light on the eye illuminated show the local character of the pigment migration induced by light in nocturnal Lepidoptera

- Bernhard C G and D Ottoson *Acta physiol scand* 1959 47 383  
Bernhard C G and D Ottoson *J gen Physiol* 1960 44 205  
Bernhard C G and D Ottoson *Acta physiol scand* 1961 52 99  
Bernhard C G and D Ottoson *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 95

**Brummerstedt Hansen, E** (Department of Physiology Endocrinology and Bloodgrouping The Royal Veterinary and Agricultural College Copenhagen) **IMMUNOELECTROPHORETIC INVESTIGATIONS ON SERUM PROTEINS IN PIG FETUSES**

Fetal pig serum was studied by means of immunoelectrophoresis using microimmunoelectrophoresis (Scheidegger 1955) with veronal buffer pH 8.6 containing calcium lactate (Hirschfeld 1960) and an electric field of 5 V/cm for 90 minutes. The antibody was serum from rabbits immunized with serum from adult pigs. The youngest fetuses from which sufficient blood could be obtained were 25 days old and weighed on the average 0.5 g. At this age there were three distinct arcs designated 1, 2 and 3, with the same mobility as albumin  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  globulins in adult serum. In addition there were two or three smaller arcs, one of them placed laterally to arc no. 1 stained with Sudan black. From the youngest age group to the next (35 days old) the number of arcs increased by four or five smaller arcs. The number of arcs at the age of 40 days was less than at 35 days, possibly due to individual variations from one litter to another. In the next six age groups up to 112 days old the variations were small from one group to the following. New small arcs appeared during fetal life and at 112 days there were about fifteen as compared with about 20 in adult pigs. As expected the most essential difference was the absence of  $\gamma$  globulin in the fetal serum. To determine to which components in the adult serum arcs no. 1, 2 and 3 were related combined diffusion experiments (Clausen and Heremans 1960) were made. Arc no. 3 corresponded to a distinct arc in the  $\beta$  field of the adult serum, a small arc in the curvature of no. 1 was immunologically identical with albumin while no. 1 itself was related to a small arc on the anodic part of the albumin arc. Some of the arcs in the curvature of no. 2 corresponded to arcs in the  $\alpha$  field whereas no. 2 itself could not be identified.

Scheidegger J J *Int. Arch. Allergy* 1955 7 103-110

Hirschfeld J *Science Tools* 1960 7 18-25

Clausen J and J Heremans J *Immunol* 1960 84 128-134



**Bygdeman, S** (Department of Physiology Karolinska Institutet, Stockholm, Sweden) **REACTIVITY OF CAT SKELETAL MUSCLE VESSELS TO NORADRENALINE DURING INDUCED CHANGES IN ACID BASE BALANCE OF THE BLOOD**

The effect of noradrenaline administration on peripheral vascular resistance has been followed both before and during experimentally induced changes in the acid base balance of the blood. The vascular resistance in skeletal muscles was studied in a skinned hind leg perfused with the cat's own blood, employing a constant outflow pump. Systemic blood pressure, perfusion pressure, arterial blood pH and CO<sub>2</sub> tension in end tidal air were recorded continuously.

The increase in perfusion pressure, normally induced by an intra arterial injection of noradrenaline, was moderately diminished 17 per cent or 40 per cent, by ventilation with 10 or 20 per cent CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. To maintain a constant response it was found necessary to increase the noradrenaline dose by a factor of either 1.9 or 3.3. After sympathetic denervation the values were 11 or 39 per cent and 1.4 or 1.9.

During respiratory alkalosis the peripheral noradrenaline response increased by 14 per cent at pH 7.56 and 32 per cent at pH 7.80, in the denervated, skinned leg. The dose necessary to elicit an unchanged response could at the same time, be decreased to 0.71 and 0.45 of the control dose. The mean CO<sub>2</sub> tension in end tidal air decreased from 40 to 19 and 13 mm Hg respectively. A corresponding fall in CO<sub>2</sub> tension at a constant pH on the other hand did not cause the same increase in peripheral response suggesting that this increase was primarily due to the pH change and not to the concomitant decrease in CO<sub>2</sub> tension.

It has previously been shown (Bygdeman and Euler 1962) that acidosis also diminishes the noradrenaline effect in an unskinned leg. Moreover, the effect of the acidosis is more pronounced in this preparation than in the skinned leg. This difference can be explained by a redistribution of blood from areas of less reduced reactivity (muscular vessels) to those of more reduced reactivity (skin vessels) during respiratory acidosis.

Carlsen F, F Fuchs\* and G G Knappes (Laboratory of Biophysics and Institute of Neurophysiology University of Copenhagen Denmark) SARCOMERE LENGTH AND CONTRACTILITY IN GLYCEROL EXTRACTED MUSCLE FIBRES

According to the sliding filament model of contraction (*H E Huxley and Hanson 1954* and *A F Huxley and Niedergerke 1954*) the ability of vertebrate skeletal muscle to generate tension and shorten should fail at a sarcomere length of  $\sim 3.5 \mu$ , this being the length at which there is no longer any overlap of A and I filaments. Attempts to confirm this prediction using living isolated frog fibres have led to conflicting conclusions (*Carlsen et al 1961*, *A F Huxley and Peachey 1961*). Interpretation of these experiments is complicated by the fact that distensibility of the living fibre is greater in the middle than at the tendon ends, this difference being reflected in a corresponding inhomogeneity in sarcomere length. Also the elastic recoil of the stretched living fibre makes it impossible to study the behavior of the fibre with forces less than the applied stretching force. Both of these difficulties can be avoided by the use of glycerol extracted fibres. A preliminary attempt in this direction using thin fibre bundles has been reported by *Edman (1962)*. The results reported here are based on measurements of isotonic shortening as a function of sarcomere length in lightly loaded (100–200 g/cm) single glycerol extracted rabbit psoas fibres.

Psoas bundles stretched in the living state were extracted with a 50 per cent glycerol water mixture containing 1 mM phosphate pH 7.0. A single fibre of about 50  $\mu$  diameter with a platinum weight attached to one end was suspended freely in a buffer solution contained in a glass cuvette mounted on the stage of a horizontal measuring microscope. In each experiment the sarcomere length and fibre diameter were measured at successive points along the fibre by means of an ocular micrometer with movable cobweb. Following the measurement of fibre length adenosine triphosphate (ATP 5 mM) was added and the new length determined at measured time intervals. The magnitude and homogeneous distribution of sar

\* Post-doctoral Fellow of the U.S. Public Health Service

comere lengths in both transverse and longitudinal directions has been verified by light and electron microscopy of fibres from the same bundles as the fibres used in the isotonic experiments as well as by photometric tracings of microphotographs

Experiments have been performed with fibres of initial sarcomere length of  $2.6\text{--}4.5\ \mu$ . That the overlap of filaments disappears at a sarcomere length of  $3.4\text{--}3.5\ \mu$  has been confirmed by electron microscopy. The results show that for the range of loads employed the degree of shortening was essentially invariant (75–85 per cent) up to a sarcomere length of  $\sim 4.2\ \mu$ . Beyond this length there was great variability (shortening 15–85 per cent).

Electron micrographs of highly stretched fibres made before and after ATP induced shortening indicate that shortening in this situation occurs through a curling or disorganization of the I filaments, no evidence being found for a movement of I filaments into the A band. These findings would suggest that as far as glycerol extracted muscle is concerned, the fundamental contractile event is some structural reorganization within the I filaments.

Carlson F. G. G. Knappes and F. Buchthal *J. biophys. biochem. Cytol.* 1961 *11* 95

Edman K. A. P. Conference on the Chemistry of Muscle Contraction Dedham Mass 1962

Huxley A. F. and R. Niedergerke *Nature (Lond.)* 1954 *173* 971

Huxley A. F. and L. D. Peachey *J. Physiol. (Lond.)* 1961 *156* 150

Huxley H. E. and J. Hanson *Nature (Lond.)* 1954 *173* 973

Carlsen, F and G G Knappes (Laboratory of Biophysics and  
Institute of Neurophysiology University of Copenhagen Den  
mark) FURTHER INVESTIGATIONS OF THE ULTRA-  
STRUCTURE OF THE Z DISC IN SKELETAL MUS  
CLE

In a recent paper (Knappes and Carlsen 1962) we have put forward a model of the Z disc in cross striated muscle. The model is based on observations in the electron microscope of both longitudinal and cross sections of frog muscle. The Z disc consists of filaments forming pyramids the I filaments being attached to the peaks of the pyramids. In longitudinal sections an I filament on one side of the Z disc is situated in between two I filaments on the opposite side. In cross sections through the Z region the I filaments are arranged in a tetragonal pattern in cross sections through the zone of overlap they are arranged in a hexagonal pattern. We have calculated the displacement of the I filaments during their course from the zone of overlap to the Z disc which would account for the transition from a hexagonal to a tetragonal pattern.

Based on the regularity with which the filaments are arranged elsewhere in the fibre we have assumed that the tetragons are regular squares. A displacement of each I filament of 90 Å along their course would account for a change of the square arrangement to a hexagonal one. However the hexagons obtained in this way were not exactly regular.

An analysis in cross sections of the Z disc where the cutting direction could be traced by knife marks and where these marks were perpendicular to one of the arrays in the tetragonal lattice revealed that the lattice in fact is not square but rhombic with angles deviating from orthogonality by 8 to 9 degrees. A rearrangement of the I filaments from a rhombic lattice to a regular hexagonal lattice by a displacement of the I filaments requires that the rhombic lattice deviates from orthogonality by an angle of 8.2 degrees.

comere lengths in both transverse and longitudinal directions has been verified by light and electron microscopy of fibres from the same bundles as the fibres used in the isotonic experiments as well as by photometric tracings of microphotographs

Experiments have been performed with fibres of initial sarcomere length of  $2.6-4.5 \mu$ . That the overlap of filaments disappears at a sarcomere length of  $3.4-3.5 \mu$  has been confirmed by electron microscopy. The results show that for the range of loads employed the degree of shortening was essentially invariant (75-85 per cent) up to a sarcomere length of  $\sim 4.2 \mu$ . Beyond this length there was great variability (shortening 15-85 per cent).

Electron micrographs of highly stretched fibres made before and after ATP-induced shortening indicate that shortening in this situation occurs through a curling or disorganization of the I filaments, no evidence being found for a movement of I filaments into the A band. These findings would suggest that as far as glycerol extracted muscle is concerned, the fundamental contractile event is some structural reorganization within the I filaments.

Carlsen F. G. G. Knappers and F. Buchthal *J. biophys. biochem. Cytol.* 1961 11 95

Edman K. A. E. Conference on the Chemistry of Muscle Contraction, Dedham, Mass. 1962

Huxley A. F. and R. Niedergerke *Nature (Lond.)* 1954 173 971

Huxley A. F. and L. D. Peachey *J. Physiol. (Lond.)* 1961 156 150

Huxley H. E. and J. Hanson *Nature (Lond.)* 1954 173 973

Crone, Christian (Physiological Laboratory University of Cambridge England) \* WHICH PART OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM ACTIVATES THE ADRENAL MEDULLA DURING HYPOGLYCEMIA?

Transection of the splanchnic nerves abolishes the adrenal response to stimuli such as hypoglycemia or anoxia. An increased output of catecholamines therefore reflects activity in the central part of the sympathetic system. I have investigated whether certain parts of the central nervous system elicit the adrenal response by comparing the release of catecholamines in intact decerebrate and spinal animals (Welsh Mountain and Border Leicester sheep anaesthetized with either Nembutal® or chloralose).

Decerebration was performed at the superior collicular level; transection of the spinal cord immediately beneath the foramen magnum. Effluent blood was collected from the left adrenal gland. Hypoglycemia was induced by intravenous injection of insulin. Catecholamines were determined by fluorimetry on plasma eluates.

In intact animals an increased output of adrenaline occurred within 30–60 min after injection of insulin. A definite but much smaller increase in the rate of secretion of noradrenaline was observed in many experiments, notably when chloralose was used. Decerebration in itself elicits a secretion of catecholamines, but a supervening hypoglycemia amplified the response which then became of the same order of magnitude as in intact animals. The output of adrenaline and noradrenaline in hypoglycemic spinal sheep was not significantly different from the resting secretion in intact animals with normal blood sugar.

The experiments show that the parts of the central nervous system which remain after decerebration can activate the adrenal medulla in hypoglycemia. The region responsible for this activation is some part of the brain stem as the isolated spinal cord is incapable of activating the adrenal medulla in hypoglycemia. Whether the hypothalamus plays any role in the activation pattern in intact animals cannot be deduced from these experiments.

\* Present address: Institute of Medical Physiology, University of Copenhagen, Denmark. The work was carried out on leave of absence from the University of Copenhagen.

**Christensen, S** (Department of Physiology, University of Aarhus Denmark) **TRANSFER OF LABELLED CHOLESTEROL FROM PLASMA TO AORTIC INTIMA-MEDIA**

Controls and cholesterol fed cockerels were given an intravenous injection of 5 ml of blood which had previously been incubated for two hours at 42°C with 10  $\mu$ C of 4-C<sup>14</sup> cholesterol. The birds received their own blood.

The radioactivity per cm<sup>2</sup> of an aortic intima media layer after 1 to 24 hours was expressed as a function of time and of average lipid C<sup>14</sup> concentration in the plasma during the experiment. The resulting expression has the dimension volume/area/time. The average value from experiments with 25 cholesterol fed birds was  $0.046 \pm 0.005$   $\mu$ l/cm<sup>2</sup>/h. When divided into groups according to experimental time (1-2, 4, 5 and 24 hours) no significant differences were found. The average value for five control birds was  $0.09 \pm 0.02$   $\mu$ l/cm<sup>2</sup>/h in experiments lasting four hours.

The rates of transfer of plasma cholesterol across the intimal surface were calculated for the individual birds as the product of the plasma cholesterol concentration ( $\mu$ g/ $\mu$ l) and the 'intimal clearance' ( $\mu$ l/cm<sup>2</sup>/h), the latter being taken as a measure of the plasma volume containing as much cholesterol as was transferred from the plasma across one cm<sup>2</sup> of intimal surface in one hour. The transfer rates thus obtained showed a significant, positive co-variation with the cholesterol concentrations of the various aortic intima media layers ( $P < 0.001$ ,  $n = 25$ ).

The transfer of labelled cholesterol is believed to depend mainly upon a transfer of whole plasma lipoprotein molecules (Christensen 1961, 1962).

Crone, Christian (Physiological Laboratory University of Cambridge England) \* WHICH PART OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM ACTIVATES THE ADRENAL MEDULLA DURING HYPOGLYCEMIA?

Transection of the splanchnic nerves abolishes the adrenal response to stimuli such as hypoglycemia or anoxia. An increased output of catecholamines, therefore, reflects activity in the central part of the sympathetic system. I have investigated whether certain parts of the central nervous system elicit the adrenal response by comparing the release of catecholamines in intact decerebrate and spinal animals (Welsh Mountain and Border Leicester sheep anesthetized with either Nembutal® or chloralose).

Decerebration was performed at the superior collicular level; transection of the spinal cord immediately beneath the foramen magnum. Effluent blood was collected from the left adrenal gland. Hypoglycemia was induced by intravenous injection of insulin. Catecholamines were determined by fluorimetry on plasma eluates.

In intact animals an increased output of adrenaline occurred within 30-60 min after injection of insulin. A definite but much smaller increase in the rate of secretion of noradrenaline was observed in many experiments, notably when chloralose was used. Decerebration in itself elicits a secretion of catecholamines but a supervening hypoglycemia amplified the response which then became of the same order of magnitude as in intact animals. The output of adrenaline and noradrenaline in hypoglycemic spinal sheep was not significantly different from the resting secretion in intact animals with normal blood sugar.

The experiments show that the parts of the central nervous system which remain after decerebration can activate the adrenal medulla in hypoglycemia. The region responsible for this activation is some part of the brain stem as the isolated spinal cord is incapable of activating the adrenal medulla in hypoglycemia. Whether the hypothalamus plays any role in the activation pattern in intact animals cannot be deduced from these experiments.



**Cuddy, T, J Stenberg, P-O Astrand and B Saltin (Department of Physiology Gymnastiska Centralinstitutet, Stockholm Sweden) CARDIAC OUTPUT DURING SUBMAXIMAL AND MAXIMAL EXERCISE**

In the present study oxygen uptake, oxygen content of arterial blood, cardiac output and stroke volume were determined by the dye dilution technique of Steward Hamilton in 11 women and 12 men, 20 to 31 years of age, at rest and during submaximal and maximal work. At rest, plasma volume (T-1824) and heart volume were determined. Sitting on the bicycle ergometer the stroke volume was 40 to 90 per cent of the maximum value attained during exercise. Maximal stroke volume was reached at a work load with an oxygen uptake of about 40 per cent of the maximum and a heart rate of about 110. No tendency to a decrease in stroke volume was noticed with maximal work. The variation in stroke volume was  $\pm 4$  per cent during exercise in the range from 40 to 100 per cent of aerobic capacity. The correlation between heart and stroke volume on the one hand and cardiac output on the other was high and as expected from the dimensions of the individual. With submaximal and maximal exercise women had a higher cardiac output per liter oxygen uptake than men, explicable by the lower concentration of hemoglobin in female blood.

- Astrand P O and B Saltin Oxygen uptake during the first minutes of heavy muscular exercise *J appl Physiol* 1961 16 971  
Dow P Estimation of cardiac output and central blood volume by dye dilution *Physiol Rev* 1956 36 77  
Asmussen E and M Nielsen The cardiac output in rest and work *Acta physiol scand* 1953 27 217  
Asmussen E and M Nielsen The cardiac output in rest and work at low and high oxygen pressures *Acta physiol scand* 1955 35 73  
Grimby G and N J Nilsson Cardiac output during exercise pyrogen induced fever *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 15 (suppl 69)  
Wang Y R J Marshall and J T Shephard The effect of changes in posture and of graded exercise on stroke volume in man *J clin Invest* 1960 39 1051  
Wang Y J T Shephard R J Marshall L Rowell and H L Taylor Cardiac response to exercise in unconditioned young men and in athletes *Circulation* 1961 24 1064  
Jonzell S Determination of the heart size *Acta radiol (Stockh)* 1939 20 325

Doving Kjell H and Gösta Gemne (Department of Physiology II  
Karolinska Institutet Stockholm Sweden) FIBER SPECTRA  
AND COMPOUND ACTION POTENTIAL OF THE  
OLFACTORY TRACT IN FISH (*Lota lota* L.)

The olfactory tract of the burbot has been studied by histological and electrophysiological methods. Electrical stimulation of the olfactory nerve and the contralateral tract showed that the major part of the tract is made up by afferent fibers. Evidence was also obtained for the presence of efferent fibers. Thus confirms earlier histological findings of efferent fibers in the olfactory tract of bony fishes (Sheldon 1912 Holmgren 1920).

Before entering the telencephalon the tract splits into a lateral and a medial fiber bundle each of which consists of two portions. Histological examinations showed that the two main fiber bundles contained myelinated nerve fibers from about  $1\ \mu$  to  $6\ \mu$  in diameter. The majority of the fibers in the lateral portion of the medial bundle were smaller than  $1\ \mu$ .

The compound action potential of the olfactory tract had three peaks with conduction velocities of 2.7, 1.5 and 0.14 m/sec at  $10^{\circ}$  C. The action potential exhibited the first two peaks in each of the four different portions while the third elevation was present only in the lateral portion of the medial bundle.

The absolute refractory periods of the three elevations of the compound action potentials were about 3.5, 8 and 15 msec. The after potentials were studied by trains of electric shocks. Repetitive stimulation of the bundles yielding the first two elevations gave prolonged positive after potentials after cessation of stimulation. The third component of the compound action potential was not followed by a positive after potential but had a negative after potential which increased in amplitude upon tetanization.

Sheldon R. E. The olfactory tracts and centers in teleosts. J comp Neurol 1912 27: 177-340.

Holmgren N. Zur Anatomie und Histologie des Vorder- und Zwischenhirns der Knochenfische. Acta zool 1920 1: 137-315.

**Cuddy, T, J Stenberg, P O Astrand and B Saltin** (Department of Physiology, Gymnastiska Centralinstitutet, Stockholm Sweden) **CARDIAC OUTPUT DURING SUBMAXIMAL AND MAXIMAL EXERCISE**

In the present study oxygen uptake, oxygen content of arterial blood, cardiac output and stroke volume were determined by the dye dilution technique of Steward-Hamilton in 11 women and 12 men, 20 to 31 years of age, at rest and during submaximal and maximal work. At rest, plasma volume (T-1824) and heart volume were determined. Sitting on the bicycle ergometer the stroke volume was 40 to 90 per cent of the maximum value attained during exercise. Maximal stroke volume was reached at a work load with an oxygen uptake of about 40 per cent of the maximum and a heart rate of about 110. No tendency to a decrease in stroke volume was noticed with maximal work. The variation in stroke volume was  $\pm 4$  per cent during exercise in the range from 40 to 100 per cent of aerobic capacity. The correlation between heart and stroke volume on the one hand and cardiac output on the other was high and as expected from the dimensions of the individual. With submaximal and maximal exercise women had a higher cardiac output per liter oxygen uptake than men, explicable by the lower concentration of hemoglobin in female blood.

Astrand P O and B Saltin Oxygen uptake during the first minutes of heavy muscular exercise *J appl Physiol* 1961 16 971

Dow P Estimation of cardiac output and central blood volume by dye dilution *Physiol Rev* 1956 36 77

Asmussen E and M Nielsen The cardiac output in rest and work *Acta physiol scand* 1953 27 217

Asmussen E and M Nielsen The cardiac output in rest and work at low and high oxygen pressures *Acta physiol scand* 1955 35 73

Grimby G and N J Nilsson Cardiac output during exercise pyrogen induced fever *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 15 (suppl 69)

Wang Y R J Marshall and J T Shephard The effect of changes in posture and of graded exercise on stroke volume in man *J clin Invest* 1960 39 1051

Wang Y J T Shephard R J Marshall L Rowell and H L Taylor Cardiac response to exercise in unconditioned young men and in athletes *Circulation* 1961 24 1064

Jonsell S Determination of the heart size *Acta radiol (Stockh)* 1939 20 325

Eisenman, J., G From, S Landgren and U Novin (Institute of Physiology University of Goteborg Sweden) THE ASCENDING PROJECTIONS OF CELLS IN THE MAIN SENSORY TRIGEMINAL NUCLEUS AND IN THE ROSTRAL SUBDIVISION OF THE NUCLEUS OF THE SPINAL TRIGEMINAL TRACT IN THE CAT

The ascending projections of cells in the caudal part of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract in the cat were investigated by Gordon Landgren and Seed (1961) In the present series a similar investigation was carried out in the rostral subdivision of this nucleus and in the main sensory trigeminal nucleus of the cat anaesthetized with sodium pentobarbital The extracellular action potentials were obtained from single cells with a conventional microelectrode technique The location of their receptive fields and the types of effective physiological stimuli were recorded The region of the contralateral trigeminal lemniscus and the ipsilateral dorsal ascending trigeminal tract were stimulated electrically with a grid of tungsten electrodes at the mesencephalic level Responses with short and constant latency and with ability to follow stimulating frequencies of 1000/sec were considered antidromic The location of the stimulating electrodes and the recording position within the trigeminal nucleus were determined histologically

Trigeminal cells responding to light mechanical stimulation with small receptive fields were localized to a dorsal and lateral shell within the nucleus There was a precise somatotopic organization within this part of the nucleus

A high incidence of upward projection (50-60 per cent) was found among the cells belonging to the group described above Cells with perioral and periorbital receptive fields always projected up the contralateral trigeminal lemniscus and those with oral receptive fields without exception projected into the ipsilateral ascending trigeminal tract

An upward projection was less common (25 per cent) in another group of cells with large receptive fields and responding to nociceptive stimuli These cells were located medially and centrally in the trigeminal nucleus

There was no principal difference between the organization of

**Edman, K A P** (Department of Pharmacology, Medical School  
Umea Sweden) **ON THE ROLE OF CALCIUM IN THE  
EXCITATION CONTRACTION PROCESS OF SKELE  
TAL MUSCLE**

Removal of calcium from the extracellular fluid produces a gradual decline of the resting potentials of individual frog sartorius fibres, sufficiently deep to bring all fibres in the muscle into an inexcitable state. The resting potential level at which excitability is lost (about 60 mV at 0-1°C) in the absence of calcium, is not significantly different from the level at which fibres become electrically inexcitable when calcium is present in the bath in a physiological concentration. However, instead of an all or nothing failure as in the presence of calcium, there is a progressive decline of both the amplitude of the action potential and the size of the twitch response of individual fibres in parallel with the lowering of the resting potential in the calcium free Ringer's solution. Calcium lack furthermore produces decremental propagation of the action potential as established by intracellular recording with a glass capillary electrode at various distances from the site of stimulation in frog sartorius fibres (Edman and Grieve 1963 a, 1963 b).

It is concluded that calcium is needed in the mechanisms governing the maintenance of the resting potential of the fibre membrane, the production of the action potential and also the normal propagation of the action potential along the fibre. The complete mechanical failure of individual fibres and the whole muscle in response to electrical stimulation in calcium free medium can be accounted for by inexcitability of the cell membrane. The progressive reduction of the twitch output of individual fibres before they become inexcitable is probably, to a great extent, due to deficient activation of the contractile system by the affected action potential.

Evidence in favour of a calcium dependent step in the contraction process of skeletal muscle beyond the excitation of the cell membrane has been obtained in the denervated rat diaphragm. This preparation still responds with contracture to acetylcholine at a stage where the twitch response to electrical stimulation and the contracture response to complete depolarization with potassium have been lost.

**Ekblom, B., J Royce, B Saltin, J Stenberg and P O Åstrand**  
(Department of Physiology, Gymnastiska Centralinstitutet  
Stockholm Sweden) **CARDIAC OUTPUT DURING EXER-  
CISE WITH SMALL AND LARGE MUSCLE GROUPS**

Cardiac output (dye dilution technique) oxygen uptake heart rate blood lactates and arterial blood pressure were determined in subjects performing (i) arm work (cranking) (ii) leg work (cycling) and (iii) arm plus leg work (cranking + cycling) in (I) sitting and (II) supine position. Submaximal as well as maximal work load were performed.

the main sensory nucleus and the rostral subdivision of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. The results suggest that the cells relaying precise tactile information to the thalamus form longitudinal columns extending along the dorsal and lateral border of the trigeminal nucleus of the cat.

*Gordon G. S. Lundgren and W. A. Seed: The functional characteristics of single cells in the caudal part of the spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve of the cat. J. Physiol. (London) 1961 158: 533-559.*

**Elwin C E and G Nilsson (Department of Pharmacology Karolinska Institutet Stockholm Sweden) COMPARISON OF THE EFFECT ON GASTRIC ACID SECRETION OF SOME PROTEIN COMPOUNDS RELEASING GASTRIN**

Release of gastrin is supposed to occur when meat extracts polypeptides alcohols and other substances are in contact with the antrum mucosa. The release of gastrin has been reported to depend partly on the molecular size of the polypeptides.

The acid secretion in Heidenhain pouch dogs was followed during instillation of substances of different molecular size and structure in isolated innervated antrum pouches. Both polypeptides and some simple amino acids activated the gastrin mechanism. The effect of different substances was studied with respect to concentration pH and local anesthesia of the antrum mucosa. The lowest concentrations of peptone and glycine causing the corresponding secretion were compared. The secretory responses remained high and constant as long as the test substances were left in the antrum pouch. For both substances maximal stimulation occurred at pH 7. At pH 5 it was lower and at pH 3 it almost ceased. Anesthesia of the mucosa with 2-4 per cent cocaine completely abolished the secretory response to peptone and glycine. Since a polypeptide and a simple amino acid cause a similar secretory pattern the molecular size seems to be of secondary importance. Therefore the significance of the chemical structure of the stimulants was investigated. The stimulatory power of some simple amino acids dipeptides and some of their derivatives was compared viz glycine sarcosine d and l- $\alpha$  alanine  $\beta$ -alanine and glycyl glycine. Glycine and  $\beta$ -alanine were the most active and caused the same secretory response. With sarcosine (N methylated glycine) the secretory response was reduced. Both d and l- $\alpha$  alanine caused a low secretory response in contrast to  $\beta$  alanine. The effect of glycyl glycine corresponds to that of glycine. The findings suggest that the structure of protein compounds especially the position of the amino groups is of importance for the release of gastrin.



**Eklund, Goran, Curt von Euler and Slawomir Rutkowski** (Nobel  
Institute for Neurophysiology, Karolinska Institutet Stockholm  
Sweden) **PROPRIOCEPTIVE CONTROL OF RESPIRATORY  
MOVEMENTS**

The activity of intercostal muscle spindles is driven largely by their  $\gamma$ -efferent fibres both tonically and rhythmically in phase with respiration. Both in the inspiratory and in the expiratory portions of the intercostal musculature the intrafusal muscle fibres of the muscle spindles were activated together with the main extrafusal muscle fibres (Critchlow and Euler 1963). Rhythmic activation of the intrafusal muscle fibres was driven from supraspinal, probably medullary structures (Sears 1963, Eklund, Euler and Rutkowski 1963). Proprioceptive reflexes were able to drive the intercostal  $\gamma$  motoneurons in phase with the movements of the chest wall.

A sudden increase of the load of the respiratory muscles by tracheal occlusion augmented the  $\alpha$  motoneurone discharge in the vagotomized preparation reflexly. This supports the hypothesis that the impulse output from the respiratory integrating mechanism in the medulla to the spinal segments signals the demand for a certain tidal volume, i.e. for a certain length of the respiratory muscles. Changes in the external load of these muscles cause misalignments between intra- and extrafusal muscle length which are signalled by the muscle spindle afferents to the  $\alpha$  motoneurons (Eccles, Sears and Shaly 1962). These changes in afferent input to the  $\alpha$  motoneurons in turn increase or decrease the power of contraction of the main muscle fibres in such a way that the demand will be achieved in spite of the variations of the external load.

- Critchlow V and C von Euler J Physiol (Lond) 1963 In press  
Eccles R M, T A Sears and C N Shealy Nature (Lond) 1962 193  
844-846  
Eklund G., C von Euler and S Rutkowski Acta physiol scand 1963 In  
press  
Sears T A Nature (Lond) 1963 197 1013

Elwin, C E and G Nilsson (Department of Pharmacology Karolinska Institutet Stockholm Sweden) COMPARISON OF THE EFFECT ON GASTRIC ACID SECRETION OF SOME PROTEIN COMPOUNDS RELEASING GASTRIN

Release of gastrin is supposed to occur when meat extracts polypeptides alcohols and other substances are in contact with the antrum mucosa. The release of gastrin has been reported to depend partly on the molecular size of the polypeptides.

The acid secretion in Heidenhain pouch dogs was followed during instillation of substances of different molecular size and structure in isolated innervated antrum pouches. Both polypeptides and some simple amino acids activated the gastrin mechanism. The effect of different substances was studied with respect to concentration pH and local anesthesia of the antrum mucosa. The lowest concentrations of peptone and glycine causing the corresponding secretion were compared. The secretory responses remained high and constant as long as the test substances were left in the antrum pouch. For both substances maximal stimulation occurred at pH 7. At pH 5 it was lower and at pH 3 it almost ceased. Anesthesia of the mucosa with 2-4 per cent cocaine completely abolished the secretory response to peptone and glycine. Since a polypeptide and a simple amino acid cause a similar secretory pattern the molecular size seems to be of secondary importance. Therefore the significance of the chemical structure of the stimulants was investigated. The stimulatory power of some simple amino acids dipeptides and some of their derivatives was compared viz glycine sarcosine  $\delta$  and  $\text{l}\alpha$  alanine  $\beta$ -alanine and glycyl glycine. Glycine and  $\beta$ -alanine were the most active and caused the same secretory response. With sarcosine (N methylated glycine) the secretory response was reduced. Both  $\delta$  and  $\text{l}\alpha$  alanine caused a low secretory response in contrast to  $\beta$  alanine. The effect of glycyl glycine corresponds to that of glycine. The findings suggest that the structure of protein compounds especially the position of the amino groups is of importance for the release of gastrin.

**Engberg, I (Department of Physiology University of Goteborg  
Sweden) EFFECTS FROM THE PYRAMIDAL TRACT  
ON PLANTAR REFLEXES IN THE CAT**

It has been postulated that the pyramidal tract exerts an action on motoneurons in the cat by exciting interneurons of various spinal reflex arcs (Lundberg and Voorhoeve 1962). A reflex excitation of toe extensors (plantar flexors) can be evoked by pressure on the central pad of the cat's hind foot (Engberg 1963). Stimulation of the sensorimotor cortex gives excitatory action to the motor nucleus of *Flexor digitorum brevis* (FDB). By contrast other extensor motor nuclei are inhibited from the cortex in parallel with the strong inhibition of the flexion reflex. There is spatial facilitation between the excitatory paths to FDB from the cortex and from the pad. It is concluded that impulses in the pyramidal tract excite interneurons of the reflex path from the pad to FDB motoneurons.

Lundberg A and P Voorhoeve: Effects from the pyramidal tract on spinal reflex arcs. *Acta physiol scand* 1962 56: 201-219.  
Engberg I: Plantar reflex in cat. *Experientia* (Basel) 1963. In press.

von Euler, U ■ and F Lishajko (Department of Physiology Karolinska Institutet, Stockholm Sweden) SOME FACTORS DETERMINING THE RELEASE AND UPTAKE OF AMINES IN NERVE GRANULES

Adrenergic nerve granules suspended in isotonic potassium phosphate release noradrenaline at a rapid rate. In the presence of noradrenaline 10 µg/ml in the incubation fluid no loss of noradrenaline is observed. Experiments with C<sup>14</sup> labelled noradrenaline indicate that an exchange takes place between labelled and unlabelled amine (Euler Lishajko and Stjärne to be published). Addition of adrenaline 10 µg/ml to the incubation fluid does not prevent the loss of noradrenaline from nerve granules.

After addition of 1.5–5 mM ATP the noradrenaline content of the granules remains unaltered for a period depending on the presence of a sufficient concentration of ATP in the incubation fluid.

As shown previously release is greatly retarded by reserpine (10<sup>-6</sup> M) and phenoxybenzamine (10<sup>-4</sup> M) and enhanced by tyramine.

Uptake of amines in undepleted nerve granules can be shown for adrenaline and dopamine concomitantly with a release of noradrenaline. In partially depleted granules noradrenaline is also taken up.

Reserpine does not prevent the amine uptake in partially depleted granules but prevents the uptake of adrenaline in undepleted granules owing to lack of binding sites.

The uptake of amines in partially depleted granules increases when pH is increased from 6 to 8.5. ATP markedly enhances the amine uptake and allows an uptake even when amines are present in concentrations of 1 µg/ml or less. The ATP-dependent amine uptake is prevented by reserpine in contrast to the uptake without added ATP.

The specificity of the ATP-dependent uptake mechanism is indicated by the finding that the uptake of *d* noradrenaline is small in comparison with that of the *l* isomer. The mechanism of uptake and release will be discussed.

**Fenichel, I R and S H Horowitz (Institute of Physiology, University of Uppsala Sweden) THE DIFFUSION OF ORGANIC NONELECTROLYTES IN HYDROGEN BONDING SYSTEMS**

If diffusion in cytoplasm proper were the rate limiting process in the cellular transport of simple organic nonelectrolytes a number of recent experimental facts could be reconciled. Such diffusion would of necessity show coefficients in the range of  $10^8$  to  $10^9$  cm<sup>2</sup>/sec and would manifest marked chemical specificity of the type described by the *Overton-Collander* lipid solubility correlation. A study of molecular transport in hydrogen bonded systems has been undertaken to determine whether these requirements are consistent with the known physical properties of cytoplasm. The preliminary results of this study are presented. The conclusions drawn cast doubt on the existence of a lipid membrane permeation process in nonelectrolyte transport and seem to provide insight into the molecular structure of protoplasm.

**Fex, J (Nobel Institute for Neurophysiology Karolinska Institutet  
Stockholm Sweden) CROSSED COCHLEAR EFFERENTS  
ACTIVATED BY SOUND THROUGH BOTH EARS**

The course of the crossed olivo-cochlear fibres was first described in a histological study by *Rasmussen* (1946) When these fibres are electrically stimulated they influence inner ear activity (*Galambos* 1956 *Fex* 1959 1962)

Crossed olivo-cochlear fibres are activated by sound as demonstrated in a previous single fibre analysis (*Fex* 1962) The ear innervated by the fibres under study had been put out of function as part of the preparation Decerebrate cats with both ears intact were used in the present work The activity of single crossed olivo-cochlear fibres was recorded with the microelectrode tips in the midline of the floor of the fourth ventricle The values of the best frequencies (cf *Fex* 1962) for the crossed olivo-cochlear fibres were independent of whether sound was presented to the right ear or to the left The crossed olivo-cochlear fibres could be activated at a lower sound pressure and/or to a higher firing rate through the ear to which they were running than through the opposite ear

*Fex J* Augmentation of the cochlear microphonics by stimulation of efferent fibres to cochlea *Acta oto-laryng (Stockh)* 1959 50 540-541

*Fex J* Auditory activity in centrifugal and centripetal cochlear fibres in cat *Acta physiol scand* 1962 55 Suppl 189

*Galambos R* Suppression of auditory nerve activity by stimulation of efferent fibers to cochlea *J Neurophysiol* 1956 19 424-437

*Rasmussen G L* The olivary peduncle and other fiber projections of the superior olivary complex *J comp Neurol* 1946 84 141-220

**Folkow, B., D Lewis, O Lundgren, S Mellander and I Wallentin**  
(Department of Physiology University of Goteborg, Sweden)  
**THE EFFECT OF VASOCONSTRICTOR NERVE STIMULATION ON CONSECUTIVE SECTIONS OF THE INTESTINAL VASCULAR BED**

A method which permits continuous and simultaneous recording of the reactions in the resistance and capacitance vessels and in the precapillary sphincters of the intestinal vascular bed, was used to study the effects of regional vasoconstrictor nerve fibre stimulation. Both splanchnic nerves were stimulated at frequencies of 1 to 16 impulses per sec. During stimulation there was an initial pronounced constriction of the resistance and the capacitance vessels and concomitantly, a decrease of the capillary filtration coefficient (CFC), indicating closure of a number of the precapillary sphincters. The maximum response of the capacitance vessels was reached at a lower stimulation frequency than that of the resistance vessels. After 30 to 60 sec the resistance and capacitance responses markedly declined in spite of maintained stimulation. This decline seemed to be more pronounced for the resistance than for the capacitance vessels at all rates of stimulation. For the resistance vessels in turn the extent of this decline was related to the stimulation frequency. Thus at high rates (exceeding 4/sec) blood flow in fact returned to the prestimulatory level during maintained stimulation while at lower frequencies the initially induced constrictor response did not fade away entirely. On the other hand, the decrease of CFC produced by nerve stimulation was maintained at roughly the same level even if the stimulation period was prolonged for 10 to 15 min. When stimulation was stopped there was an immediate and pronounced dilatation of all three vascular sections beyond the prestimulatory level and then a gradual return to normal. A marked poststimulatory increase of blood flow was noticed even in those experiments where flow had returned to the resting value already during stimulation.

The experiments indicate that vasomotor fibre stimulation evokes a vascular response pattern which is differentiated with regard to the three consecutive sections. Local autoregulatory mechanisms seem to modify the neurogenic induced responses par

ticularly within the resistance vascular section. The fact that during stimulation CFC is maintained at a decreased value in the face of a gradual restoration of blood flow to normal suggests a redistribution of blood from nutritional vessels to shunts. Such a redistribution during stimulation may further be supported by the existence of a poststimulatory hyperemia and a simultaneous increase of CFC above normal.



**Folkow, B., D Lewis, O Lundgren, S Mellander and I Wallentin**  
(Department of Physiology University of Goteborg Sweden)  
**THE EFFECT OF VASOCONSTRICTOR NERVE STIMULATION ON CONSECUTIVE SECTIONS OF THE INTESTINAL VASCULAR BED**

A method which permits continuous and simultaneous recording of the reactions in the resistance and capacitance vessels and in the precapillary sphincters of the intestinal vascular bed, was used to study the effects of regional vasoconstrictor nerve fibre stimulation. Both splanchnic nerves were stimulated at frequencies of 1 to 16 impulses per sec. During stimulation there was an initial pronounced constriction of the resistance and the capacitance vessels and concomitantly, a decrease of the capillary filtration coefficient (CFC), indicating closure of a number of the precapillary sphincters. The maximum response of the capacitance vessels was reached at a lower stimulation frequency than that of the resistance vessels. After 30 to 60 sec the resistance and capacitance responses markedly declined in spite of maintained stimulation. This decline seemed to be more pronounced for the resistance than for the capacitance vessels at all rates of stimulation. For the resistance vessels in turn the extent of this decline was related to the stimulation frequency. Thus, at high rates (exceeding 4/sec) blood flow in fact returned to the prestimulatory level during maintained stimulation while at lower frequencies the initially induced constrictor response did not fade away entirely. On the other hand the decrease of CFC produced by nerve stimulation was maintained at roughly the same level even if the stimulation period was prolonged for 10 to 15 min. When stimulation was stopped there was an immediate and pronounced dilatation of all three vascular sections beyond the prestimulatory level and then a gradual return to normal. A marked poststimulatory increase of blood flow was noticed even in those experiments where flow had returned to the resting value already during stimulation.

The experiments indicate that vasomotor fibre stimulation evokes a vascular response pattern which is differentiated with regard to the three consecutive sections. Local autoregulatory mechanisms seem to modify the neurogenic induced responses par-

**Frankenhaeuser, B (Nobel Institute for Neurophysiology Karolinska Institutet Stockholm Sweden) THE IONIC CURRENTS AND THE MEMBRANE ACTION POTENTIAL IN MYELINATED NERVE FIBRES OF XENOPUS LAEVIS**

The membrane action potential in the myelinated nerve fibre has been calculated on the basis of the data obtained in voltage clamp experiments (see references below) Figures of the membrane currents and of the action potential will be shown

- Dodge F A and B Frankenhaeuser Membrane currents in isolated frog nerve fibre under voltage clamp conditions *J Physiol (Lond)* 1958 **143** 76-90
- Dodge F A and B Frankenhaeuser Sodium currents in the myelinated nerve fibre of *Xenopus laevis* investigated with the voltage clamp technique *J Physiol (Lond)* 1959 **148** 188-200
- Frankenhaeuser B Steady state inactivation of sodium permeability in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis* *J Physiol (Lond)* 1959 **148** 671-6 6
- Frankenhaeuser B Quantitative description of sodium currents in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis* *J Physiol (Lond)* 1960 **151** 491-501
- Frankenhaeuser B Delayed currents in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis* investigated with voltage clamp technique *J Physiol (Lond)* 1962 a **160** 40-45
- Frankenhaeuser B Instantaneous potassium currents in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis* *J Physiol (Lond)* 1962 b **160** 46-53
- Frankenhaeuser B Potassium permeability in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis* *J Physiol (Lond)* 1962 c **160** 54-61
- Frankenhaeuser B A quantitative description of potassium currents in myelinated nerve fibres of *Xenopus laevis* *J Physiol (Lond)* 1963 In press

**Folkow, Bjorn and Eduardo H Rubinstein\*** (Department of Physiology, University of Goteborg, Sweden) **BEHAVIORAL AND GASTROINTESTINAL CHANGES (MOTILITY AND BLOOD FLOW) INDUCED BY ELECTRICAL STIMULATION OF THE LATERAL HYPOTHALAMUS IN CATS**

In view of the reported food oriented behavioral activity elicited by stimulation of the lateral hypothalamus the possibility was explored of gastrointestinal changes associated with those stimulus bound effects

Fifteen cats were studied under chloralose anesthesia, recording blood pressure, gastric or intestinal motility or both muscular and intestinal blood flow Stimulation was performed laterally to the ventromedial hypothalamic nucleus using negative square wave pulses of 1 msec duration 100 cps and 0.05 to 0.7 mA

Two types of autonomic responses were observed *Pattern A* (at the more dorsal points) increased gastrointestinal motility moderate blood pressure increase, marked vasoconstriction in muscle and moderate vasoconstriction in intestine *Pattern B* (at the more ventral points) marked blood pressure increase inhibition of gastrointestinal motility, pronounced vasoconstriction in intestine and moderate vasoconstriction in muscle

Another 12 cats were aseptically implanted with two seven lead electrodes at the same coordinates (A 11, lateral 3) from where the former patterns were induced

Four types of behavioral responses were evoked by the stimulation depending on the dorsoventral height in H C coordinates (H) *Rage* (4 cats) typical defense-attack reaction at H -1 to H -3

*Exploratory* (12 cats) searching activity without eating or drinking at H -2 to H -5,

*Alimentary* (3 cats) consummatory activity only during stimulation at H -2 to H 4

*Flight* (3 cats) typical escape reaction at H -5 to H -7

After the behavioral studies the animals were explored under anesthesia recording the same variables as in the first group

In these conditions a correlation was found between the leads that determined alimentary and exploratory attitudes and the autonomic pattern A and also a consistent relation between the leads that elicited rage and flight reactions and the autonomic pattern B

\* Fellow of the Consejo Nacional de Investigaciones Argentina

So far there is no evidence that the animal makes use of information carried by the first impulse but it is tempting to explain the constant sequence of muscle contractions during flight (Wilson and Weis Fogh 1962) as the result of a stabilizing influence of the exact timing of the first impulse relative to the movement since the timing of motor events becomes irregular after abolishment of the latter. Another result of cauterization is a reduction of the flight frequency to 6-8 /sec compared to 17 /sec in the intact animal (Gettrup 1962). The sense organs are supposed to couple the mechanical part of the flight system to the central nervous system but experiments failed to prove that the activity is built up within simple reflex arcs (Wilson and Gettrup 1963).

Armett, C. J. and R. Hunsberger. Excitation of receptors in the pad of the cat by single and double mechanical pulses. *J. Physiol. (Lond.)* 1961 158: 15.

Armett, C. J., J. A. B. Gray, R. X. Hunsberger and S. Lal. The transmission of information in primary receptor neurones and second order neurones of a phasic system. *J. Physiol. (Lond.)* 1962 164: 395.

Gettrup, E. Thoracic proprioceptors in the flight system of locusts. *Nature (Lond.)* 1962 293: 498.

Wilson, D. M. and E. Gettrup. A stretch reflex controlling wing beat frequency in grasshoppers. *J. exp. Biol.* 1963 40: 171.

Wilson, D. M. and T. Weis-Fogh. Patterned activity of coordinated motor units, studied in flying locusts. *J. exp. Biol.* 1962 39: 643.

**Gettrup, Erik (Zoophysiological Laboratory B, University of Copenhagen, Denmark) INFORMATION CARRIED BY SINGLE IMPULSES FROM A UNICELLULAR STRETCH RECEPTOR**

In the last few years attention has been paid to the coding of mechanical stimuli in populations of phasic receptors the response of each of which consists of a single impulse per deformation (*Armett and Hunsberger 1961, Armett and al 1962*) A response of this kind does not offer much opportunity for making use of the time dimension and the system was found to operate according to a collective principle, i.e. coding of stimulus intensity by means of the number of active units within the population

Recently, a stretch receptor has been found at the wing hinge in grasshoppers which under the conditions of normal flight fires only 1-3 times per wing stroke cycle (*Gettrup 1962*) The receptor is of the phasic tonic type and is able to transform stimulus intensity into impulse frequency under tonic as well as under certain phasic conditions However, under natural conditions frequency coding cannot be essential since there is often only one impulse per wing stroke Since the receptor is anatomically isolated, it was of interest to investigate which information if any, the response could contain with respect to the deformations normally encountered during flight

The stretch receptor was stimulated phasically in particular by sinusoidal stretching amounting to 50-500  $\mu$  The response was analysed with respect to the main parameters of the stimulus At any constant frequency the first impulse of the response always occurred at the same phase of the stretching movement regardless of the amplitude of deformation provided that the maximum displacement exceeded 100  $\mu$  which is the case in the flying animal (100-200  $\mu$ ) At smaller deformations (50-100  $\mu$ ) the phase angle increased with decreasing amplitude Also within the frequency range 5-50/sec, the impulse occurred later as the frequency increased but since the locust has a rather constant stroke frequency this is of little consequence to the animal On the other hand the total number of potentials in a response increased with maximum velocity of stretch and of displacement

of  $1 \times 10^{-5}$  to  $1 \times 10^{-4}$  M where they inhibit the transport of sodium a marked fall in oxygen consumption was recorded. A part of the O<sub>2</sub> consumption was unaffected by ouabain. Above this level the oxygen uptake was related to the impulse activity.

The effect of other metabolic inhibitors (moniodo acetate, 2-deoxyglucose, disodium arsenate, 2-4 dinitrophenol, oligomycin, chlorpromazine, protoveratrine etc.) will be discussed together with the effect of different substrates (glucose, pyruvate, glutamate, malate, fumarate, citrate, oxalacetate, ketoglutarate, lactate), ATP, ADP, AMP, arginine phosphate and phosphate ions on the metabolism of the isolated cell preparation.

Chance B, P. Cohen, F. Jolles and B. Schoener. Intracellular oxidation-reduction states *in vivo*. Science 1962 137: 499-508.

Giacobini E, E. Handelman and C. Terzuolo. An isolated neurone preparation for studies of metabolic events at rest and during impulse activity. Science 1963 140: 74.

Giacobini E. Microdetermination of DPN in single cells. 1963. In press.

Giacobini E, E. Handelman and C. Terzuolo. 1963. To be published.

Lowry H. A quartz fiber balance. J. Biol. Chem. 1941 140: 183-186.

**Giacobini, E** (Department of Pharmacology Karolinska Institute Stockholm, Sweden) **THE EFFECT OF METABOLIC INHIBITORS ON THE RESPIRATION OF AN ISOLATED NEURONE PREPARATION**

Two major approaches have been used to correlate the electrical activity and the metabolism of nervous tissue the manometric measurement of the metabolism of slices of cortex maintained *in vitro* (for references see *McIlwain and Rodnight* 1962), and the fluorometric recording of oxidation-reduction levels in the nerve tissue *in situ* (*Chance et al* 1962) A modification of the Cartesian diver technique provides a third possibility An advantage of this technique is that a single living cell can be tested several times under different conditions without apparent damage

This study was performed on the isolated living nerve cell of the slow-adapting crustacean stretch receptor By microdissection the cell was reduced to the minimal dimensions compatible with normal impulse activity (*Giacobini Handelman and Terzuolo* 1963) The preparation consisted of the cell body of the neurone (50–75  $\mu$  in diameter), a segment of the axon (600 to 750  $\mu$  in length) and a portion (400 to 500  $\mu$  in length) of the muscle bundle in which the dendrites of the neurone are imbedded The preparation could be kept alive up to 18–24 h and its impulse activity recorded by a metal electrode applied to the axon After the experiments the lipid free dry weight of the cell was determined using a quartz fiber micro balance (*Lowry* 1941)

The technique has been used in studies of respiration, different enzyme activities (respiratory enzymes cholinesterases phospholipases proteinases) and diphosphopyridine nucleotide content (*Giacobini* 1963) Furthermore we have studied the effect on respiration of K Na Ca Cl and Mg all of which modify membrane permeability and polarization (*Giacobini Handelman and Terzuolo* 1963)

An increased impulse activity is accompanied by significant changes in the total O uptake (endogenous respiration) suggesting that more than 25 per cent of the cell respiration is related to selective permeability and active transport processes This conclusion is supported by the results obtained with specific inhibitors of transport mechanisms ■ g ouabain and digoxin In concentrations

reflecting a property of either a recovery process or of some trigger mechanism initiating spontaneous activity. On the other hand, the relationships of the alpha waves and of the state of wakefulness to temperature described in the literature cannot be purely cortical events. Since the activity of the cortex is a function of the temperature with a rather flat maximum at body temperature, cortical thermosensitivity can hardly be of great importance for thermoregulation.



**Gidlöf, A and U Söderberg** (Nobel Institute for Neurophysiology, Karolinska Institutet Stockholm, Sweden) **THE RELATION OF ACTIVITY TO TEMPERATURE IN THE NEURONALLY ISOLATED CEREBRAL CORTEX OF THE CAT**

The electroencephalogram was recorded from neuronally isolated cortical slabs of cats with brain stem lesions after recovery from the operation and anesthesia. The slab was large and spontaneously active in bursts of high frequency waves. The frequency within each burst of activity was constant at all temperatures ( $25^{\circ}$  to  $40^{\circ}$  C), and the length of the bursts was largely invariable though short bursts were slightly more common at the extreme temperatures. Around  $38^{\circ}$  C the interburst intervals were short and of uniform duration. They became longer and more variable with falling temperature and also somewhat longer above  $38^{\circ}$  C. From  $25^{\circ}$  C to  $38^{\circ}$  C there was a linear relationship between temperature and the percentage of time taken up by activity. The wave amplitudes were constant above  $32^{\circ}$  C. Below this temperature, they declined progressively. In intact parts of the cortex with uninterrupted connections to remaining regions of the thalamus and hypothalamus sudden changes in activity appeared during heating or cooling. They seemed to be related to the effects on the cortical excitatory state that have been seen in the intact brain of animals with unimpaired thermoregulation and were not related with the changes in activity of the isolated cortex. If the undercut cortex was not properly isolated, slow wave activity sometimes invaded the slab over remaining bridges. This activity was also sensitive to temperature but there was no simple relation between the two variables.

The isolated cortex preparation made it possible to exclude the effects of anesthesia and the influence from thermoregulatory structures on cortical activity. Further, the electrical activity of the isolated cortex showed a stereotyped pattern that could be divided into independent variables such as amplitude and frequency of waves, duration of bursts and periods of silence. For these reasons the relation of temperature to activity could be more readily investigated in this preparation than in the intact brain. The interburst intervals showed the highest temperature dependence thereby

In agreement with previous observations both excitatory and inhibitory bladder responses were elicited from the first somatic sensory motor area. In addition similar effects were obtained from the somatic sensory motor area II (the anterior ectosylvian and the anterior sylvian gyri). Further exclusively excitatory responses were induced from the supracallosal part of the anterior cingulate gyrus and exclusively inhibitory responses from the subcallosal part of the cingulate cortex and the orbital gyrus.

**Gjone, R and J Seteklev** (Neurophysiological Laboratory The Anatomical Institute, University of Oslo Norway) **INFLUENCE OF CEREBRAL CORTEX ON THE URINARY BLADDER**

Experimental evidence of bladder contractions elicited from the pericruciate cortex in dogs was presented nearly 90 years ago by *Bochefontaine*. Later systematic studies have confirmed his observations and revealed excitatory influence on the bladder activity from several cortical regions. Our knowledge about bladder inhibition from the cortical level is more fragmentary probably because the recording technique as a rule has interfered with the sphincter reflex mechanism. For the study of bladder inhibition it is of particular importance to have a sufficient background activity and also to include the dynamics of micturition, thus enabling demonstration of interruption of the voiding act.

In the present experiments in 22 cats a Nelaton catheter no 12 was inserted into the fundus region through a cystostomy. Leaving the urethral outlet fully intact a continuous intravesical pressure recording was established by means of a Statham transducer connected to a Grass polygraph with DC amplifiers. After replacing the urine by saline solution at body temperature the bladder volume could be checked through the three way tube connecting the catheter to the transducer.

Rhythmic variations of the intravesical pressure were constantly recorded, representing detrusor contractions in response to distension of the bladder. Excitatory responses to cerebral cortical stimulation included three stages of increased bladder activity: (i) augmentation of the amplitude of the rhythmic spontaneous contractions; (ii) dribbling urination with incomplete emptying of the bladder; and (iii) the complete micturition act. Inhibitory responses were recorded as: (i) diminution or abolition of the rhythmic bladder contractions; (ii) interruption of the micturition act; and (iii) prevention of the onset of urination. Any degree of increased detrusor activity could be produced from all cortical areas yielding excitatory responses. Inhibitory stimulation effects were however often significant only when demonstrated by the interruption of urination.

In agreement with previous observations both excitatory and inhibitory bladder responses were elicited from the first somatic sensory motor area. In addition similar effects were obtained from the somatic sensory motor area II (the anterior ectosylvian and the anterior sylvian gyri). Further exclusively excitatory responses were induced from the supracallosal part of the anterior cingulate gyrus and exclusively inhibitory responses from the subcallosal part of the cingulate cortex and the orbital gyrus.

**W Grampp** (Institute of Neurobiology, University of Goteborg Sweden) **MULTIPLE SPIKE DISCHARGES OF THE SLOWLY ADAPTING NEURONE OF THE ISOLATED CRUSTACEAN STRETCH RECEPTOR ORGAN**

Slowly adapting neurones of isolated lobster stretch receptors fire multiple spike discharges at temperatures above 22–25° C. The number of spikes per discharge increases with increasing temperature. Up to 5–7 spikes, each increase by one in number of spikes per discharge, takes place within an interval of 0.2–0.4° C at temperatures, which vary only a few tenths of a degree in any experiment lasting 4–6 hours. Transitions from  $n$  spike to  $(n+1)$  spike discharges occur at successively higher temperatures as depolarization of the cell due to stretch is increased. At higher temperatures the number of spikes per discharge increases rapidly and at 30–33° C most cells fire bursts of several hundred spikes. The frequency of bursts decreases but the spike frequency within each burst increases with increasing temperatures approaching 600/sec in bursts lasting about 500 msec. All phenomena occurring below 33° C are reversible.

Extracellular recording shows that all spikes of a multiple spike discharge are initiated in the initial segment of the axon having there the same size independent of the frequency within a burst. Except for the first, only a few spikes of a high frequency burst reach full height in the soma, most being reduced in size, however all are associated with triphasic extracellular potentials.

Extracellular recording from the dendritic region shows diphasic responses with an initial positivity at the same time as the invasion of the soma followed by a slow negativity. The latency between soma and dendrite negativity corresponds to an average conduction velocity of 0.1–0.2 m/sec.

As temperature increases an afterdepolarization becomes more and more apparent on the initial rapidly falling phase of the spike and may even produce a small hump. It precedes the second spike in a two-spike discharge. The afterdepolarization as recorded intracellularly from the soma corresponds in time with the negativity of the extracellular record from the dendrites. Simultaneous intracellular records from the soma and dendritic region show correspondence in time between soma afterdepolarization and full grown 'dendrite spike'.

At high temperatures, when regenerative processes are fast in axon and soma a slow depolarization in the dendritic region may provide the generator potential for multiple discharges in the initial segment of the axon

**Granit, R** (Nobel Institute for Neurophysiology, Karolinska Institutet, Stockholm 60, Sweden) TRANSMEMBRANE STIMULATION OF MOTONEURONES TO REPETITIVE ACTIVITY

Together with *Daniel Kernell George K Shortess* and *Richard S Smith* the author has studied the effect of inside stimulation of rat and cat motoneurones through the microelectrode tip in order to measure the quantitative relation between current strength and discharge frequency. The results of such measurements will be presented. The work has been accepted for publication in full (*J Physiol (Lond)*)

**Guld C (Institute of Neurophysiology University of Copenhagen Denmark) A GLASS COVERED PLATINUM MICRO ELECTRODE**

*Wolbarsht MacNichol and Wagner (1960)* described a glass insulated platinum micro-electrode. The method of preparing this electrode has been improved by controlling each step of the procedure quantitatively.

Electrolytic sharpening was controlled by measuring the electrolyzing current. A 50 cps a.c. voltage was applied between the platinum electrode and a carbon electrode (area  $> 5 \text{ cm}^2$ ) in a 10 M NaCN solution. The initial current (about 0.8 A for 0.25 mm platinum wire) indicated the depth of the wire in the solution. The current decreased as the electrode was etched. When the current was about 0.3 A the minimum tip diameter was obtained, i.e. about  $1 \mu$  for the 0.25 mm electrode. Stirring of the solution was not necessary. The electrode was cleaned immediately in distilled water and stored in distilled water.

The electrodes were coated with 7570 Corning glass by moving the tip of the electrode upward through a molten drop of the glass held in a current heated platinum wire of  $\Omega$  shape. The electrode was transported by a small motor drive at a constant rate of 1 cm/min. Coating of the tip of the electrode required a narrow temperature interval. A measure of the temperature of the heating wire was obtained by measurement of its resistance in a Wheatstone bridge. When the tip had passed through the surface of the glass drop (as observed through a microscope) the temperature was gradually increased to ascertain a smooth coating of the tapered tip and of the shaft.

The impedance was measured between the platinum core and the outer fluid. A completely insulated electrode tip and shaft represents a pure capacitance of less than  $2 \mu\text{F/mm}$ . The capacitance was measured by means of a negative input capacitance with 10 M $\Omega$  between input and ground (*Guld 1962*). The coated electrode was stored in air.

To remove the glass from the tip of the microelectrode and to platinate the tip the electrode was placed in 0.1 per cent chloroplatinic acid and a negative rectangular pulse of 0.1 sec duration



applied to the electrode. Eight to fifteen volt pulses resulted in electrode impedances of about 20 to 1 MΩ. The impedance was measured with a ramp impulse of 1 msec duration applied to the electrode through a small condenser (Guld 1962).

In cerebral cortex the platinum electrodes found more units per electrode than the glass pipette electrodes, and more of the units had amplitudes larger than 1 mV. Metal electrodes with high impedance could hold more units for longer than five minutes than could glass pipette electrodes with high impedance.

Wolbarsht M. L., E. F. MacNichol Jr. and H. G. Wagner. Glass insulated platinum microelectrode. *Science* 1960 132: 1309-1310.

Guld C. Cathode follower and negative capacitance as high input impedance circuits. *Proc. IRE* 1962 50: 1912-1927.

**Hansson Eskil (Department of Pharmacology Royal Veterinary College Stockholm Sweden) INCORPORATION OF Se SELENOMETHIONINE INTO PANCREATIC JUICE PROTEINS IN VIVO**

The concept that protein structure is not absolutely fixed and immutable has been supported by studies on the incorporation of amino acid analogues into proteins. Thus the analogues ethionine and p fluorophenylalanine were incorporated into the pancreatic juice proteins (Hansson and Garzo 1962). It was investigated whether selenomethionine could be incorporated in the same way.

Se<sup>75</sup> methionine was prepared by yeast biosynthesis. Whole body autoradiography in mice with S<sup>35</sup> methionine and Se<sup>75</sup> selenomethionine showed identical distribution patterns. A high uptake of the amino acids was observed in protein forming organs like the pancreas, the liver and the intestinal mucosa, and most of the Se<sup>75</sup> was found to be associated with the protein fraction. Se<sup>75</sup> selenomethionine was incorporated into the pancreatic juice proteins to the same degree as S<sup>35</sup> methionine. Chromatographic analysis of digested pancreatic proteins showed that the selenomethionine was incorporated into the pancreatic juice proteins without any prior metabolic changes. Pretreatment with methionine reduced the incorporation of selenomethionine, indicating a competition between methionine and selenomethionine. The results suggest that the pancreas can use selenomethionine in place of the sulphur amino acid for syntheses of proteins.

Hansson, E. and T. Garzo. Amino acid analogue incorporation into pancreatic juice proteins *in vivo*. *Biochem biophys Acta* 1962 61: 121-128.

**Hesser, C M and G Matell** (Laboratories of Aviation and Naval Medicine, Department of Physiology, Karolinska Institutet Stockholm, Sweden) **THE ALVEOLO ARTERIAL O<sub>2</sub> DIFFERENCE DURING LIGHT AND MODERATE EXERCISE IN MAN**

The alveolar and arterial gas tensions (sitting position) were determined in healthy young male subjects at rest and in the 5th and 6th min of exercise in two series of experiments. In the first series (work load 625 kpm/min) the respiratory minute volume and exchange ratio (R) were also determined whereas in the second series (400 and 700 kpm/min) no ventilatory measurements were made in order to avoid interference with free respiration. Arterial gas tensions were computed from arterial  $\text{SO}_2$ , pH and blood temperature as obtained by continuous analyses. The effective alveolar  $\text{P}_{\text{O}_2}$  was calculated using the alveolar gas equation substituting arterial for alveolar  $\text{CO}_2$ . In the first series of experiments the alveolo-arterial  $\text{P}_{\text{O}_2}$  difference decreased from a mean value of 14.7 mm Hg at rest to 11.0 mm Hg during exercise. In the second series of experiments it was found that, for the range of possible R values, the alveolo-arterial  $\text{P}_{\text{O}_2}$  difference remained unchanged or decreased somewhat during exercise. The decrease in the  $\text{P}_{\text{O}_2}$  difference during exercise was due to the fact that arterial  $\text{P}_{\text{O}_2}$  showed a larger increment than did alveolar  $\text{P}_{\text{O}_2}$ .

**Hint, H C (Research Division AB Pharmacia Uppsala Sweden)**  
**SOME FACTORS INFLUENCING THE COLLOID OSMOTIC EFFECT OF DEXTRAN IN THE ISOLATED PERFUSED RABBIT'S EAR**

The colloid osmotic effect of dextran was studied by weighing the isolated rabbit's ear during perfusion experiments. Perfusion with saline or with colloid hypotonic dextran solutions in saline causes edema of the isolated ear. Perfusion with colloid hypertonic dextran solutions causes dehydration of the ear and later an edema. If perfusion was performed in alternating short periods with hypertonic dextran and saline respectively, the ear was held in normal condition for long periods of time. Some factors of interest regarding colloid osmotic effects on microcirculation will be discussed.

**Haggendal, J and M Lindqvist (Department of Pharmacology,  
University of Goteborg Sweden) BRAIN MONOAMINE  
LEVELS AND BEHAVIOUR DURING LONG TERM  
ADMINISTRATION OF RESERPINE**

In previous work we have shown that after the administration of small daily doses of reserpine to rabbits (0.1 and 0.2 mg per kg body weight) the brain levels of noradrenaline, dopamine, and 5-hydroxytryptamine were less than 20 per cent of normal. The levels remained low for several weeks, as long as the administration continued. After every daily dose the rabbits were sedated for some hours with signs of reserpine intoxication. About 24 h after the daily reserpine injection, the animals had recovered and looked almost normal. The low levels of monoamines in the brain were found 24 h after the daily injection. Four hours after the daily dose, when the rabbits showed signs of reserpine intoxication, their brain monoamines were still lower.

In rabbits which had received 0.2 mg reserpine per kg body weight daily for eight weeks the brain monoamine levels and the behaviour were studied after the daily injections had been discontinued. From very low levels the monoamines increased slowly and were normal after 4 to 5 weeks. After three days, when the monoamine levels still were low the animals looked normal and continued to behave normally. The levels of the brain monoamines can thus not be correlated to the behaviour. The sedation after reserpine is interpreted as being due to a lack of active brain monoamines.

**Hanninen O and K. Hartala (Department of Physiology University of Turku Finland) ACTIVITIES OF ALKALINE NON SPECIFIC PHOSPHOMONOESTERASE ADENOSINE TRIPHOSPHATE HYDROLYZING ENZYME SYSTEM AND INORGANIC PYROPHOSPHATASE AND CONTENT OF INORGANIC REACTING PHOSPHATE IN THE MUCOSA OF RAT SMALL INTESTINES \***

The earlier hypothesis of the phosphorylation mechanism in active hexose absorption has proved untenable. However the active absorption mechanisms of nutrients consume energy. This energy originates from oxidation of substrates via ATP and perhaps other energy rich compounds. The upper end of the mucosa of the small intestines contains more ATP than the lower parts (Hanninen et al 1963). The concentration of phosphocreatine is highest in the first third and likewise diminishes downwards (Hanninen and Hartala 1963). Inorganic phosphate must be available in cells for the free continuation of oxidative phosphorylation.

The hydrolytic enzymes studied split esters of phosphoric acid. The activity of alkaline nonspecific phosphomonoesterase has its maximum in the very upper end of the small intestines; the activity decreases sharply in the first third of the small intestines and then more slowly to about 1/100 of the activity in the upper end. The activity of the adenosine triphosphate hydrolyzing enzyme system has its maximum likewise in the upper end but the activity diminishes more slowly downwards and about 50 per cent of the upper end activity is still left at the mid point of the small intestines. In the lower end of the small intestines the activity is less than one fourth of the upper end activity. The activity of inorganic pyrophosphatase remains about the same in the first sixth of the length of the small intestines and then the activity decreases roughly linearly to about one fifth of the upper end activity in the lower end. The content of inorganic reacting phosphate is about 10  $\mu$ moles/g dry weight and is about the same in different regions of the small intestines.

Possibly the mucosal cells have a certain urge to maintain a

**Haggendal, J. and M Lindqvist (Department of Pharmacology,  
University of Goteborg Sweden) BRAIN MONOAMINE  
LEVELS AND BEHAVIOUR DURING LONG-TERM  
ADMINISTRATION OF RESERPINE**

In previous work we have shown that after the administration of small daily doses of reserpine to rabbits (0.1 and 0.2 mg per kg body weight) the brain levels of noradrenaline, dopamine, and 5 hydroxytryptamine were less than 20 per cent of normal. The levels remained low for several weeks as long as the administration continued. After every daily dose the rabbits were sedated for some hours with signs of reserpine intoxication. About 24 h after the daily reserpine injection, the animals had recovered and looked almost normal. The low levels of monoamines in the brain were found 24 h after the daily injection. Four hours after the daily dose, when the rabbits showed signs of reserpine intoxication, their brain monoamines were still lower.

In rabbits which had received 0.2 mg reserpine per kg body weight daily for eight weeks the brain monoamine levels and the behaviour were studied after the daily injections had been discontinued. From very low levels the monoamines increased slowly and were normal after 4 to 5 weeks. After three days, when the monoamine levels still were low, the animals looked normal and continued to behave normally. The levels of the brain monoamines can thus not be correlated to the behaviour. The sedation after reserpine is interpreted as being due to a lack of active brain monoamines.

**Jacobsohn, Dora (Institute of Physiology University of Lund Sweden) EFFECTS OF TESTOSTERONE AND RELATED SUBSTANCES ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF REPRODUCTIVE FUNCTIONS IN FEMALE RATS**

Recent investigations have shown that female rats given one injection of testosterone during the neonatal period become permanently sterile. Vaginal opening occurs earlier than normally. Vaginal smears indicate constant oestrus. Numerous large follicles but no corpora lutea are present in the ovaries. Different investigations indicate that testosterone interferes in an unknown manner with the differentiation of cerebral structures necessary for the cyclic production or release of luteinizing hormone (LH) in the pituitary gland. The previous studies have been carried out on rats of mature age (Barraclough and Gorski 1961, Takewaki 1962).

In the present work testosterone was injected into 5-day-old rats and the reproductive organs were studied from the 10th day until about 2 months of age. The ovaries of the injected rats were smaller than those of litter mate controls. The impairment of ovarian growth observed before puberty indicates that testosterone affected the output of luteinizing hormone and of other gonadotrophic hormones. A direct inhibitory effect of testosterone on the ovary cannot be excluded. Other substances with biological actions related to those of testosterone (17 $\beta$ -hydroxy 17 $\alpha$  methyl 14 androstadiene 3-one, 19 nor testosterone, 17 $\beta$ -phenylpropionate and 1-methyl $\Delta^1$  5- $\alpha$  androstene 17 $\beta$ -ol 3-one 17 $\beta$ -enanthate) were tested in a similar way and in addition vaginal smears were taken during 2 to 3 months. The rats were then caged together with intact males and births and nursing of young were recorded.



constant concentration of inorganic phosphate. To make this possible, the upper end of the small intestines would need more hydrolytic enzymes for its higher metabolic rate. The distribution of the activity of inorganic pyrophosphatase in duodenal mucosa may signify a uniform distribution of some synthesizing inorganic phosphate producing processes in this region and that these syntheses decrease almost linearly towards the lower parts of the small intestines.

Hanninen O, K. Harttala and V. Nurmikko 1963 To be published  
Hanninen O. and K. Harttala 1963 To be published

**Jahn, Samia Al Azharia (Institute of Neurophysiology University of Copenhagen Denmark) PHYSIOLOGICAL PROPERTIES OF ISOLATED NEUROMUSCULAR SPINDLES**

The response to mechanical deformation of isolated muscle spindles from the frog was studied by leading off action potentials from the equatorial zone. The amplitude and rate of deformation could be varied independently and the movements of the driving system were correlated with microscopical measurement of the displacement of a graphite granule placed on the surface of the equatorial zone.

There exists a minimum deformation of  $8 \pm 2 \mu$  which must be exceeded in order to elicit a response. The threshold deformation is independent of the deformation rates (0.1–6.5 mm/sec) and of the initial elongation (10–20 per cent). This observation agrees with those obtained from Pacinian corpuscles (Gray and Matthews 1951) and amphibian touch receptors (Hoglund and Lindblom 1961).

With threshold deformation and deformation rates of 4–6.5 mm/sec the latency of the response was 6 msec (20°C). The minimum latency of 3 msec was obtained with deformation rates higher than 7 mm/sec and deformations exceeding 3 times threshold. With deformations exceeding 2 times threshold double firing occurred, the interval between responses decreasing with increasing rate of deformation to a minimum interval of 2 msec.

The excitability of the spindle was investigated by applying paired stretches of equal size. With threshold deformation and stretch durations of 2 and 5 msec and a time interval between the two stretches of the pair exceeding 40 and 50 msec respectively there was a response to every test stimulus. With decreasing intervals not every test stimulus evoked a response with an interval of 25 and 40 msec respectively half of the test stimuli evoked a response. For intervals of less than 15 msec there was no longer a response. With deformations of 5 times threshold and a stretch duration of 2 msec each test stretch evoked a response when the interval between stretches was 6 msec or more the latency of the test response being delayed by 1 msec.

When exposed to a train of deformations (duration 3 sec) the maximum frequency at which the spindle still responded to each

**Jacobsson, S and I Kjellmer** (Department of Plastic Surgery, University Hospital Malmö, and Department of Physiology, University of Göteborg Sweden) **RELATION BETWEEN LYMPH FLOW AND ACCUMULATION OF CAPILLARY FILTRATE IN EXERCISING MUSCLE**

Lymph flow from resting calf muscles of cats was found to be negligible. Standardized passive movements of the ankle joint produced a lymph flow of 0.03 ml/min/100 g muscle. With superimposed muscular contractions lymph flow increased to 0.05 ml/min/100 g muscle. This flow amounts to 10 to 20 per cent of the capillary filtration rate in exercising muscle, but seems great enough to return the proteins of the capillary filtrate to the blood circulation. Since lymph flow cannot keep pace with the formation of capillary filtrate an accumulation of fluid occurs in the exercising muscle. With time the rate of net outward capillary filtration declines and finally stops.

The outward filtration during muscular exercise is due to a rise in capillary hydrostatic pressure upsetting the 'Starling equilibrium'. The fact that outward filtration gradually declines implies a restoration of this equilibrium. A return of hydrostatic capillary pressure to normal during maintained exercise seems unlikely, while an increase of the effective colloid osmotic pressure gradient across the capillary membrane could to some extent contribute to the limitation of outward filtration. The main limiting factor, however, must be an increase of tissue pressure.

**Jansen, Jan K S and Torstein Rodjord (Neurophysiological Laboratory The Anatomical Institute University of Oslo Norway) THE SILENT PERIOD DURING TWITCH CONTRACTION OF THE SOLEUS OF THE DECEREBRATE CAT**

The silent period during contraction of skeletal muscles has been investigated repeatedly: Three different spinal mechanisms contribute to a varying degree to this phenomenon (1) the recurrent Renshaw inhibition (early part of silent period) (2) the pause of the excitatory Ia afferents from the muscle (3) the inhibition due to activation of the Golgi tendon organs. As emphasized by Merton (1951) the duration of the silent period is of particular importance for the control of movement. Recently Hufschmidt (1960) claimed that the duration of the silent period during voluntary activity is determined by the inhibitory effects of tendon organ afferents. This prompted the present reinvestigation in the decerebrate cat as a study of the silent period under isometric and nearly isotonic twitches would differentiate between the effects of the spindle pause and the tendon organ inhibition.

The experiments were performed on intercollicularly decerebrated cats with sustained stretch reflexes in soleus. The electromyogram of the soleus was recorded by belly tendon leads. The background activity was the stretch reflex produced by varying degrees of static extension of the muscle by a pull to its isolated tendon. The muscle tension was recorded by an isometric myograph. Twitches superimposed on the steady stretch reflex were produced by nerve stimulation of intensities from a threshold to a maximum. Nearly isotonic conditions were obtained by the insertion of weak springs between the muscle and myograph.

In different preparations the duration of the silent period varies considerably (80–200 msec) it remains fairly stable however in any one preparation. The level of initial tension does not appreciably influence the duration of the silent period. Under isometric conditions the increase in tension during a twitch elicited by an maximal shock was usually several hundred grams. With a weak spring in series the muscle shortens and the tension increment during the twitch might be only 2–3 per cent of the isometric twitch tension.

stimulus was 16–20 stretches per second at threshold and 60–70 per second with deformations of 2 times threshold

A spontaneous contraction of intrafusal muscle fibres (Buchthal and Jahn 1957) caused a transient increase in responsiveness of the spindle to frequencies which otherwise were ineffective in evoking a response to every stimulus

Buchthal F and U Jahn Spontaneous activity in isolated muscle spindles  
*Acta physiol scand* 1957 42 Suppl 145

Gray J A II and P II C Matthews A comparison of the adaptation of the Pacinian corpuscle with the accommodation of its own axon  
*J Physiol (Lond)* 1951 114 454–464

Hoglund G and U Lindblom The discharge in single touch receptors elicited by defined mechanical stimuli  
*Acta physiol scand* 1961 52 108–119

**Jansson Gunnar and Jan Martinson (Department of Physiology  
University of Goteborg Sweden) RELEASE OF A PLASMA  
KININ FORMING ENZYME FROM THE STOMACH  
OF THE CAT**

Recent findings indicate that two different types of efferent vagal nerve fibres affect gastric functions (Martinson 1962 Martinson and Muren 1963) These two efferent fibre groups have different stimulation thresholds and can therefore be stimulated more or less selectively. Fibres with relatively low stimulation threshold increase gastric motility whereas fibres with higher stimulation threshold elicit secretion of HCl and pepsin. The latter fibre group also evokes vasodilatation in the stomach and inhibition of gastric motility. These effects might be elicited by a plasma kinin mechanism of importance for the functional vasodilatation during secretory activity as proposed for other glandular tissues (Hilton 1960).

The plasma kinin forming activity of neutralized gastric juice and of Tyrode solution perfused through the gastric vascular bed has been tested with the method described by Hilton and Lewis (1956).

Gastric juice contains a plasma kinin forming enzyme with properties of kallikrein. Perfusate collected during stimulation of the high threshold fibres of the vagus contains small amounts of a similar or identical enzyme. Further quantitative and qualitative aspects concerning this enzyme will be presented.

Hilton S M, M Schachter. Polypeptides which affect smooth muscles and blood vessels. Pergamon Press 1960 258-262.

Hilton S M and G P Lewis. *J Physiol (Lond)* 1956 134 471-483.

Martinson J. *Intern Congress Series* 1967 48 381.

Martinson J and A Muren. *Acta physiol scand* 1963 57 309-316.

Even so, the total duration of the silent period was not changed greatly. The peak time of the 'isotonic' twitches (90 msec) was however, appreciably longer than the isometric ones (70 msec) indicating that the motoneurones resume firing earlier during the falling phase of the 'isotonic' twitches.

Thus, these experiments indicate that the Golgi tendon organs do not play an essential part in the determination of the duration of the silent period. Presumably the pause of Ia spindle afferents is the most important factor.

Hufschmidt H J *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1960 271 35-39  
Merton P A *J Physiol (Lond)* 1951 114 183-198

found in the brain and skin of normal rats. Single injections of morphine into normal rats both in toxic and analgesic doses, did not alter the histamine content in the brain or in the skin.

The *in vitro* experiments show that morphine liberates histamine only when very high concentrations are applied. Therefore neither the development of morphine tolerance nor the analgesic action of morphine in rats is connected with liberation of histamine.

Mongar I. L. Measurement of histamine releasing activity. In Histamine Ciba Found Symp. Churchill London 1956 ■ 74-91



**Johannesson, Torkell and Svend Norn** (Department of Pharmacology, University of Copenhagen, Denmark) **THE INFLUENCE OF MORPHINE ON THE HISTAMINE CONTENT IN THE BRAIN AND SKIN OF THE RAT**

Morphine has been considered to liberate histamine (Mongar 1956), we have investigated its effect on the histamine content of rat brain and skin. Furthermore, the histamine liberating capacity of Compound 48/80 Polymyxin B and morphine was studied *in vitro* in a suspension of mast cells derived from the rat peritoneum.

For the histamine analyses we used the whole brain (excluding the pituitary gland) and approximately 1 g of skin which, after depilation, was excised from the forepart of the back of the animal. Histamine was coupled to dinitrofluorobenzene and determined photometrically.

Morphine tolerance in the rats was produced by daily subcutaneous injections of morphine in increasing doses for 25 days. The last daily dose was about 150 mg/kg.

Twenty one morphine tolerant rats were killed 48 hours after the last daily dose of morphine. For comparison, 21 normal rats were killed without any previous administration of drugs. The histamine content in the brain of rats in the tolerant animals averaged 8.0  $\mu\text{g/g}$  ( $\text{S.D.} = 1.2$ ) and in the control group 8.0  $\mu\text{g/g}$  ( $\text{S.D.} = 0.8$ ). In the skin the concentration averaged 31  $\mu\text{g/g}$  in the tolerant rats ( $\text{S.D.} = 7$ ) and 27  $\mu\text{g/g}$  in the normal rats ( $\text{S.D.} = 5$ ).

Single intraperitoneal injections of 150 mg/kg or 8 mg/kg morphine into normal rats did not alter the histamine content in the brain or in the skin either when the animals were killed 48 hours or 30 minutes after the injections.

When Compound 48/80 and Polymyxin B (0.5  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) were added to the mast cell suspension Compound 48/80 liberated 72 per cent and Polymyxin B 66 per cent of the total amount of histamine in the suspension. In a concentration of 100  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  morphine released 39 per cent of the total amount of histamine in the suspension. When the morphine concentration was increased to 1000  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ , all histamine was released.

The results indicate that the amounts of histamine in the brain and skin of morphine tolerant rats are not different from those

Kaada B R, F Thomas, E. Alnæs and K. Wester (Neurophysiological Laboratory The Anatomical Institute University of Oslo Norway) **SYNCHRONIZATION IN THE ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAM (EEG) INDUCED BY HIGH FREQUENCY STIMULATION OF THE MIDBRAIN RETICULAR FORMATION IN ANESTHETIZED CATS**

*High frequency stimulation of the brain stem reticular formation produces a generalized desynchronization of the electrocortical waves. Low frequency stimulation of the same structures may under certain conditions induce EEG synchronization mainly consisting of increased spindle activity.*

In a study of the EEG effects of midbrain electrical stimulation in anesthetized cats it was discovered that *high frequency stimulation* occasionally produced an immediate and widespread increase in cortical slow wave activity. The conditions for obtaining this type of synchronization have been investigated. Further the response has been mapped with respect to its origin in the brain stem and to its cortical distribution.

The synchronizing effect in response to high frequency stimulation was present only in animals under a relatively light anesthesia. In non anesthetized cats either curarized or after postcollicular transection high frequency midbrain reticular stimulation resulted in the typical desynchronization with fast activity of low amplitude. Under light chloralose urethane or Nembutal® anesthesia desynchronization by reticular stimulation was frequently replaced by (i) regular slow waves of high amplitude and of frequency 1-4/sec (ii) a marked increase and regularization of the randomly occurring chloralose waves or (iii) sometimes an increase in spindle activity. At still deeper anesthesia the threshold for obtaining synchronization increased and finally the response disappeared.

The optimal stimulation frequency for producing synchronization under anesthesia was around 100-300/sec but clear-cut effects were usually also obtained at frequencies down to about 30/sec and occasionally at rates as low as 10/sec.

EEG synchronization under anesthesia was elicited from the entire reticular formation of the midbrain which was explored in steps of one millimeter with bipolar stimulating electrodes. At

*Abstr XI Scand Physiol Congr Copenhagen 1963*  
*Acta physiol scand 1963 59 Suppl no 213*

**Johansen, S H, Mogens Jørgensen and Sv Molbech** (Department of Anaesthesia, and the Cardio Respiratory Laboratory, Gentofte County Hospital, and Danish National Association for Infantile Paralysis, Hellerup, Denmark) **EFFECT OF CURARE ON RESPIRATORY AND NON RESPIRATORY MUSCLE POWER IN MAN**

The ability of patients to lift their heads postoperatively when neuromuscular block had been induced during anaesthesia is commonly used as a test of restitution of muscle power. Neuromuscular block was produced by tubocurarine, and muscular depression in respiratory power and in hand grip strength related quantitatively to the ability of raising the head.

In six experiments on five subjects (20-23 years old) the course of restitution after maximal depression of head lifting was compared with restitution of the hand grip and the maximal inspiratory and expiratory flows. To obtain isometric conditions in all of the three muscle groups examined measurements of maximal inspiratory and expiratory pressures replaced those of maximal flows in four experiments on four subjects. In all experiments the respiratory functions were less affected than head lifting and hand grip, head lifting being most affected.

**Kjellmer, Ingemar (Department of Physiology University of Göteborg Sweden) AN INDIRECT METHOD FOR ESTIMATING TISSUE PRESSURE IN SKELETAL MUSCLE**

Direct measurement of the hydrostatic pressure in the interstitial fluid is impossible because of the minute dimensions of the spaces and the gel character of the fluid. Since tissue pressure is one of the determinants of capillary filtration and since it might be a major limiting factor for filtration exchange during muscular exercise it was considered of interest to develop a method for indirect estimation of tissue pressure.

The method is based on the following considerations. In collapsible vessels the intravascular pressure must be at least as high as the extravascular pressure to permit passage of blood. The veins are collapsible vessels and therefore the pressure inside patent veins can never be less than tissue pressure. If the tissue pressure = 10 mm Hg the pressure in the veins inside the organ (local venous pressure LVP) is at least 10 mm Hg in spite of the fact that the pressure in the veins just outside the organ (central venous pressure CVP) may be considerably lower. Hence a steep pressure drop can exist where the vein leaves the boundaries of the organ described as the waterfall phenomenon (Permutt *et al* 1961). This implies that a rise of CVP does not influence LVP until CVP has reached tissue pressure. Thus the level at which a gradual rise of CVP begins to increase LVP is used to estimate the tissue pressure. Since the veins constitute the main capacitance vessels even a slight increase of LVP produces an increase in regional blood volume. In these experiments the volume of the calf of the cat was recorded with a plethysmograph permitting accurate measurement of even small changes of regional blood volume. CVP was measured and could be increased stepwise. The estimated tissue pressure during rest was close to zero and rose during exercise by 5–10 mm Hg.

Permutt, Bromberger Barnea and Bane (1961) *cit in* Riley R L. Effect of lung inflation upon the pulmonary vascular bed. Ciba Foundation Symposium on Pulmonary Structure and Function. Churchill Ltd London 1962.

caudal levels a low threshold area was found in the midline in the region of the decussation of the brachium conjunctivum. The response was, however, independent of this structure, being present also in chronic decerebellectomized cats. At rostral levels of the midbrain the optimum zone was located ventrolateral to the central grey substance. When present on midbrain stimulation EEG synchronization could also be produced by high frequency stimulation of thalamic midline or intralaminar nuclei.

Synchronization in response to high frequency reticular stimulation was recorded from the entire neocortex and the slow waves were bilaterally synchronous. Depending on the site of stimulation the greatest amplitude was frequently recorded over the parieto-occipital or anterior cortical regions. The same stimulus sometimes produced synchronization in some leads and desynchronization in others. The response was absent in the hippocampus.

**hjellmer, Ingemar (Department of Physiology University of Goteborg Sweden) AN INDIRECT METHOD FOR ESTIMATING TISSUE PRESSURE IN SKELETAL MUSCLE**

Direct measurement of the hydrostatic pressure in the interstitial fluid is impossible because of the minute dimensions of the spaces and the gel character of the fluid. Since tissue pressure is one of the determinants of capillary filtration and since it might be a major limiting factor for filtration exchange during muscular exercise it was considered of interest to develop a method for indirect estimation of tissue pressure.

The method is based on the following considerations. In collapsible vessels the intravascular pressure must be at least as high as the extravascular pressure to permit passage of blood. The veins are collapsible vessels and therefore the pressure inside patent veins can never be less than tissue pressure. If the tissue pressure is 10 mm Hg the pressure in the veins inside the organ (local venous pressure LVP) is at least 10 mm Hg in spite of the fact that the pressure in the veins just outside the organ (central venous pressure CVP) may be considerably lower. Hence a steep pressure drop can exist where the vein leaves the boundaries of the organ described as the waterfall phenomenon (Permutt *et al* 1961). This implies that a rise of CVP does not influence LVP until CVP has reached tissue pressure. Thus the level at which a gradual rise of CVP begins to increase LVP is used to estimate the tissue pressure. Since the veins constitute the main capacitance vessels even a slight increase of LVP produces an increase in regional blood volume. In these experiments the volume of the calf of the cat was recorded with a plethysmograph permitting accurate measurement of even small changes of regional blood volume. CVP was measured and could be increased stepwise. The estimated tissue pressure during rest was close to zero and rose during exercise by 5-10 mm Hg.

Permutt, Bromberger-Barnea and Bane (1961) cit in Riley R L. Effect of lung inflation upon the pulmonary vascular bed. Ciba Foundation Symposium on Pulmonary Structure and Function. Churchill Ltd London 1967.

**Kjellmer, I and H Odelram** (Department of Physiology University of Goteborg, Sweden) **COMPARATIVE EFFECTS OF HISTAMINE, BRADYKININ AND ACETYLCHOLINE ON CAPILLARY FILTRATION IN SKELETAL MUSCLE**

Histamine and bradykinin, proposed to act as vasodilator substances under physiological conditions, increase capillary permeability when applied in fairly high concentrations intradermally. It was investigated whether a change of capillary permeability occurred even when the two substances were infused intraarterially in amounts which just barely produced a maximum vasodilatation.

The experiments were performed on the calf muscles of cats. Regional blood flow, controlled with a constant perfusion pump, perfusion pressure and muscle volume were recorded. With this technique the capillary filtration coefficient (CFC) could be determined. Variations in CFC reflect changes of capillary permeability and size of capillary surface area. Acetylcholine was used as a reference substance since it was considered to increase CFC only by relaxing precapillary sphincters and thus enlarging capillary surface area.

Acetylcholine raised CFC two to three times. With equivalent doses histamine and bradykinin produced a greater increase of CFC than acetylcholine. Histamine and bradykinin in doses producing a large increase of CFC caused a swelling of the muscle, due to a net outward fluid transfer. This swelling was irreversible, indicating an escape of plasma proteins into the extravascular compartment. Contrary to this, acetylcholine produced only a slight and transient increase in volume.

Thus both bradykinin and histamine increase capillary permeability even in such low doses as barely elicit maximum vasodilatation. If these substances are physiological vasodilators it then remains to be explained how they can act without producing tissue oedema owing to leakage of plasma proteins.

**Klausen, K** (Laboratory for the Theory of Gymnastics University of Copenhagen Denmark) **CARDIAC OUTPUT IN EXERCISE DETERMINED BY A CO METHOD AND THE ACETYLENE METHOD A COMPARATIVE STUDY**

In 1961 *Defares et al* described a new CO-method for the determination of cardiac output. The purpose of the present experiments was to study the applicability of this method during exercise and to compare it with the acetylene method.

The work experiments were performed on the *Krogh* bicycle ergometer. After a steady state had been reached the  $\dot{Q}$ -uptake and the  $\text{CO}_2$ -output were determined by the *Douglas* bag method. The CO method was performed as follows. At the end of a deep expiration the subject was connected by means of a three way stopcock to a *Grollman* bag containing 2-2.5 l of an oxygen-carbon dioxide mixture (about 6 per cent CO and 94 per cent O<sub>2</sub>) and rebreathed for a period not exceeding 8-12 sec depending on the work level. Samples of air from the bag were taken during each inspiration by means of evacuated sampling tubes. The respiratory cycles were registered by a strain gauge. The samples were analysed on *Scholander's* gas analysis apparatus. The CO content in the five samples was plotted against time and the best fitting line drawn. The abscissa was subdivided into equal arbitrary time intervals and the corresponding CO-percentages converted into CO-tensions ( $\text{PCO}_2$ ). The first  $\text{PCO}_2$  was then plotted against the second, the second against the third etc. After the first few points a straight line was obtained and the point of intersection between this line and the 45 line gave the mixed venous  $\text{PCO}_2$ . The arterial  $\text{PCO}_2$  was assumed to be equal to the alveolar  $\text{PCO}_2$ . The latter was calculated using the *Bohr* formula and a physiological dead space estimated according to *Asmussen and Nielsen* (1956). The  $\text{CO}_2$  content of arterial and venous blood was determined from a standard CO dissociation curve of oxygenated blood. The  $\text{CO}_2$ -output divided by the venous-arterial  $\text{CO}_2$ -difference gives the cardiac output. At the end of each experiment the acetylene method was applied. The results determined by this method and the CO method were almost identical.



**Kjellmer, I and H Odelram (Department of Physiology University of Goteborg Sweden) COMPARATIVE EFFECTS OF HISTAMINE, BRADYKININ AND ACETYLCHOLINE ON CAPILLARY FILTRATION IN SKELETAL MUSCLE**

Histamine and bradykinin, proposed to act as vasodilator substances under physiological conditions, increase capillary permeability when applied in fairly high concentrations intradermally. It was investigated whether a change of capillary permeability occurred even when the two substances were infused intraarterially in amounts which just barely produced a maximum vasodilatation.

The experiments were performed on the calf muscles of cats. Regional blood flow, controlled with a constant perfusion pump, perfusion pressure and muscle volume were recorded. With this technique the capillary filtration coefficient (CFC) could be determined. Variations in CFC reflect changes of capillary permeability and size of capillary surface area. Acetylcholine was used as a reference substance since it was considered to increase CFC only by relaxing precapillary sphincters and thus enlarging capillary surface area.

Acetylcholine raised CFC two to three times. With equivalent doses histamine and bradykinin produced a greater increase of CFC than acetylcholine. Histamine and bradykinin in doses producing a large increase of CFC caused a swelling of the muscle, due to a net outward fluid transfer. This swelling was irreversible indicating an escape of plasma proteins into the extravascular compartment. Contrary to this, acetylcholine produced only a slight and transient increase in volume.

Thus both bradykinin and histamine increase capillary permeability even in such low doses as barely elicit maximum vasodilatation. If these substances are physiological vasodilators it then remains to be explained how they can act without producing tissue oedema owing to leakage of plasma proteins.

**Knutsson, E. and C R. Skoglund (Department of Physiology Karolinska Institutet Stockholm Sweden) RESPONSES OF FROG MUSCLE FIBERS TO SLOWLY RISING CURRENTS**

Linearly rising currents of different gradients were applied to frog sartorius muscles by a capillary electrode inserted at the nerve free end of the muscle and the responses were recorded by another internal electrode placed about 50  $\mu$  farther away. The firing level, spike amplitude and stimulus threshold were analyzed under different experimental conditions. The subthreshold membrane potential changes will be dealt with in a separate work by Knutsson (1963).

In 95 per cent of the fibers the responses were uniform as follows. The firing level as determined by different methods was found to be constant over a wide range of stimulus gradients corresponding to spike latencies up to 1 sec. At latencies of more than 40 msec the spike amplitude was successively reduced with diminishing rates of rise of the stimulating current while the spike duration remained unaffected. The threshold of stimulation in terms of current strength at the moment of spike discharge decreased with diminishing stimulus gradient (negative accommodation cf Skoglund 1945).

In a series of experiments the membrane potential was preset at various levels above and below the resting potential. Hyperpolarization of up to 40 mV did not affect threshold, firing level or spike amplitude of the spikes elicited by linearly rising currents. Depolarization caused a shift of the firing level towards zero with diminishing stimulus gradients the spike amplitude decreased and the spike duration increased resulting in graded responses. At a certain minimal gradient the spike mechanism failed completely and only rectification was observed.

Increase of the extracellular Ca-concentration resulted, in a change of the critical membrane potential towards zero level (30 mV at 30 mEq/l) and in the occurrence of various types of graded spike responses. Comparative studies of the effects of a decreased Ca-concentration were also made.

The atypical responses to slowly rising currents found in 5 per cent of the fibers consisted in graded responses and the occurrence

Asmussen E and M Nielsen Physiological dead space and alveolar gas pressures at rest and during muscular exercise *Acta physiol scand* 1956 38 1-21

Defares J G M E Wise and J W Duyff New indirect Fick procedure for the determination of cardiac output *Nature (Lond)* 1961 192 760-761

**Koivikko, A., T Pellonen and L. Hirvonen (Department of Physiology Turku University Finland) BLOOD CIRCULATION TIME IN DOGS OF DIFFERENT AGES**

Adaptation of the circulation after birth is not complete after closure of the foetal short circuits. Studies on the blood circulation time at different ages generally do not include simultaneous determination of blood volume and cardiac output. The present investigation includes studies of 18 dogs of different ages from 1-12 months. Blood circulation time from the femoral vein to the paw of the hind leg was determined with fluorescein. Blood volume was measured by the dye dilution technique and cardiac output by the direct Fick method. The blood circulation time increased with increasing age, body weight, length of animal (from the anterior tip of the sternum to the paw of the hind leg), blood volume and cardiac output, the correlation to these factors being somewhat irregular. When circulation time was plotted against the ratio of blood volume to cardiac output a linear relationship was obtained.

of a minimal gradient. In most cases the phenomena could be referred to a pre-existent depolarization, on some occasions slow muscle fibers may have been impaired.

Knutsson E. 1963. To be published.

Skoglund C. R. Kungl. Sv. Vet. Akad. Handl. 1945. 21. Serie III. No. 9.

Kruhøffer P and O I Nissen (Institute of Medical Physiology  
University of Copenhagen Denmark) HANDLING OF  
GLYCEROL IN THE KIDNEY

In experiments in cats the tubular reabsorption of glycerol was found to be essentially complete (and the urine/plasma ratio less than one) at low filtered loads. At increasing filtered loads the rate of reabsorption continued to rise and the reabsorption fraction tended to converge to a limiting value of about 0.4.

In some experiments simultaneous determinations were made of the rate of metabolic conversion of glycerol in the kidneys: a differential pressure flowmeter introduced without interrupting the renal blood circulation was used to measure the renal (venous) blood flow (RBF). The rate of conversion was calculated as  $\text{RBF} \times (\text{arterial glycerol conc} - \text{renal venous glycerol conc}) - \text{rate of glycerol excretion}$ . This rate was found to rise to an apparent maximum with increasing arterial plasma concentrations up to about 150-300 mg/l, and at this saturation level it amounted to about 20 per cent of the rate of conversion in the body as a whole or to about 0.09 mg per minute per gram of kidney. At low filtered loads the rate of conversion exceeded the reabsorption rate, but at high loads (corresponding roughly to arterial plasma concentrations of 500-1000 mg/l) the relation is undoubtedly reversed. Stop-flow experiments indicated that the most distal parts of the nephron are sparsely permeable to glycerol and that concentrations below that of arterial plasma may arise in proximal parts.

The observations may be accounted for on the assumptions that reabsorption at low filtered loads is predominantly a conversion reabsorption (diffusion from the tubular lumen into tubular cells maintained by a metabolic conversion inside the cytoplasm) and that at high filtered loads well above the level of saturation of the glycerol converting enzymes it is essentially due to transcellular back-diffusion through the (proximal) tubular cells.

The pattern of renal excretion of glycerol may thus be interpreted without resorting to special transmembrane transfer mechanisms.

**Krog, John and Ole B Riste (Institute for Experimental Medical Research Ullevål Hospital, Oslo, Norway) THE CIRCULATORY EFFECT OF BRADYKININ IN BIRDS**

The circulatory effect of bradykinin in birds was investigated in domestic ducks and chickens. Intravenous infusion of 1  $\mu$ g of synthetic bradykinin caused only small variations in blood pressure. This is in contrast to the effect in mammals from a similar dosage, where a marked fall in blood pressure was obtained. The possible causes of this difference will be discussed.

**Larsen Valdemar (Dumex Ltd : Copenhagen Denmark) THE  
TERATOGENIC EFFECTS OF THALIDOMIDE IMIPRA-  
MINE HCL AND IMIPRAMINE N OXIDE HCL ON  
WHITE DANISH RABBITS**

Forty female rabbits of the white Danish breed were used in this investigation. After mating, 14 were given thalidomide daily for a certain period, 10 received imipramine HCl, 10 received imipramine N-oxide, and 6 controls received saline solution. All injections were subcutaneous.

Macroscopic examination showed that 22 of 35 young of thalidomide treated rabbits were abnormal in some way, one of 53 young of imipramine treated rabbits, and one of 59 young of imipramine N-oxide treated rabbits were abnormal, while none of the 25 young from the control group was abnormal. The effect of thalidomide depended on the time elapsed after mating and start of administration. Thalidomide in a dose of 100 mg/kg markedly reduced the fertility, while imipramine HCl or imipramine N-oxide (15 mg or 25 mg per kg daily) did not reduce fertility. Thus, the white Danish rabbit can be used in the search for teratogenic effects of thalidomide like substances.



**Lang, H** (Department of Physiology, University of Turku Finland) **TEMPORAL ASPECTS OF THE GALVANIC SKIN RESPONSE (GSR)**

In determinations of the GSR (a sweat gland reaction controlled by the sympathetic nervous system), main attention has been paid to its amplitude. When recording the GSR by the *Tarchanoff's* potential method with the use of a DC amplifier, marked variations have been observed in the duration of the GSR evoked by local stimulation of the cat's brain. Before quantitative studies can be made on the temporal properties of the centrally evoked GSR, it is necessary to determine the laws controlling the long lasting GSR evoked by peripheral efferent nerve stimulation.

By repetitive direct electrical stimulation of the lumbar sympathetic chain, a long-lasting negative skin potential can be recorded from the central pad of the cat's ipsilateral hind limb. Shocks applied at a rate of about 2/sec produced complete fusion of the GSR. This fused or tonic GSR had the following characteristics. After a short latency there was a rapid rising phase of 2-6 sec duration. During repetitive stimulation there was a pronounced slow linear decrease, and, after termination of the stimulation, the potential decreased roughly exponentially, slowly approaching the base line. The maximum of the frequency-response curve was obtained at a stimulus rate of 3-25/sec.

The drop of the GSR during repetitive stimulation of  $\approx$  20 sec averaged 30 per cent of its peak amplitude. This represents the greatest tonicity of the GSR which the peripheral gland mechanism on an average is able to produce. The effect of (i) the intensity of the stimuli, (ii) their frequency and (iii) of the interval between trains of stimuli on the decline of the GSR, was analysed.

In summary, by its sensitivity, speed of reactions and regularity of shape the GSR represents a useful autonomic criterion also for the temporal properties of the efferent action of the central nervous system. Preliminary results will be presented regarding the GSR of varied tonicities evoked by differently localized central stimulations (see abstract, p 157, this volume).

Larsen, Valdemar (Dumex Ltd Copenhagen Denmark) THE  
TERATOGENIC EFFECTS OF THALIDOMIDE IMIPRA  
MINE HCL AND IMIPRAMINE N OXIDE HCL ON  
WHITE DANISH RABBITS

Forty female rabbits of the white Danish breed were used in this investigation. After mating 14 were given thalidomide daily for a certain period, 10 received imipramine HCl, 10 received imipramine N-oxide and 6 controls received saline solution. All injections were subcutaneous.

Macroscopic examination showed that 22 of 35 young of thalidomide treated rabbits were abnormal in some way, one of 53 young of imipramine treated rabbits and one of 59 young of imipramine N-oxide treated rabbits were abnormal while none of the 25 young from the control group was abnormal. The effect of thalidomide depended on the time elapsed after mating and start of administration. Thalidomide in a dose of 100 mg/kg markedly reduced the fertility while imipramine HCl or imipramine N-oxide (15 mg or 25 mg per kg daily) did not reduce fertility. Thus the white Danish rabbit can be used in the search for teratogenic effects of thalidomide like substances.

**Lichtneckert, S and G Lundin (Institute of Physiology, University of Lund, Sweden) DEMONSTRATION OF NON VENTILATED PARTS IN NORMAL LUNGS**

The nitrogen elimination technique was used to determine the functional residual capacity. The use of maximal tidal volumes mobilized a nitrogen volume not usually involved in ventilation. This amount of trapped air varied with body posture and age of the subjects.

**Lowy, J and O Sten Knudsen (Institute of Neurophysiology University of Copenhagen Denmark) LATENCY RELAXATION IN INVERTEBRATE MUSCLES**

Latency relaxation is the small drop in tension which precedes isometric contraction was first observed in frog muscle (*Rauh* 1922 *Sandow* 1944) and later in other vertebrate skeletal muscles (*Abbott and Ritchie* 1951) Under conditions resembling those under which latency relaxation occurs in vertebrate muscle *Abbott and Ritchie* (1956) were unable to demonstrate a latency relaxation in certain invertebrate muscles. We have studied the same invertebrate muscles with improved technique and found a latency relaxation in all of them.

In the obliquely striated cephalopod muscles (the funnel retractor of *Loligo* and *Octopus*) latency relaxation was only present over a narrow region of muscle lengths i.e. up to 1.15 times equilibrium length. The latency duration and amplitude of latency relaxation were almost identical with those in frog muscle at the same temperature (20° C).

In the smooth anterior byssus retractor muscle (ABRM) from *Mytilus* a latency relaxation did not occur in response to a single shock but it appeared after two shocks given at intervals of less than 10 sec. When the muscle was stimulated with successive shocks at constant intervals of 2-10 sec we found that as the amount of tension held by the muscles increased from one shock to the next so did the latency relaxation. The latency relaxation showed no relation to the amount of tension developed after each shock.

The rate of tension drop of latency relaxation remained the same during the successive stimulation at constant intervals i.e. it was independent of amount of tension acting at the moment of stimulation. With short intervals between successive shocks (e.g. 2 sec) both the rate and the amount of tension drop of the latency relaxation were higher than at 5 sec intervals. At 15 sec intervals the latency relaxation was small regardless of the amounts of initial and subsequently developed tension. In the ABRM the amount of contractile activity present is known to be greater after 2 sec than after 5 sec following a shock and after 15 sec very little activity can be detected (*Lowy and Millman* 1963).

**Lichtneckert, S and G Lundin (Institute of Physiology, University of Lund, Sweden) DEMONSTRATION OF NON VENTILATED PARTS IN NORMAL LUNGS**

The nitrogen elimination technique was used to determine the functional residual capacity. The use of maximal tidal volumes mobilized a nitrogen volume not usually involved in ventilation. This amount of trapped air varied with body posture and age of the subjects.

**Lundberg A and L Vyklický (Institute of Physiology University  
of Göteborg Sweden) BRAIN STEM CONTROL OF RE  
FLEX PATHS TO PRIMARY AFFERENTS**

A large negative dorsal root potential (DRP) can be evoked in the lumbar cord on stimulation of different regions in the brain stem (*Carpenter et al 1962*) This negative DRP is caused by primary afferent depolarization With other parameters of stimulation (in particular low frequency) a positive DRP could be evoked from the lower brain stem It is suggested that the positive DRP is caused by a primary afferent hyperpolarization The effect is possibly due to removal of a tonic depolarization evoked by reflex action because the same stimulation of the brain stem inhibits transmission in spinal reflex paths to primary afferents

Carpenter D I Engherg and A Lundberg *Experientia* 1962 18 450

The time from the stimulus to the first sign of tension drop (30 msec at 20° C) was independent both of the intervals between stimulation and of the muscle length. In a muscle developing a maximum tetanic tension of about 20 g the largest latency relaxation was about 3 mg.

The results are interpreted on the assumption that stimulation initiates two opposing processes: one causing the drop in tension (A) and another which generates positive tension (B). The amount of tension drop of the latency relaxation will thus be determined by (1) the rate of process A which is dependent upon the amount of contractile activity present in the muscle at the time of stimulation, (2) the time of onset of process B and (3) the rate of process B.

Abbott B C and J M Ritchie, *J Physiol (Lond)* 1951 113 330

Abbott B C and J Lowy *J Physiol (Lond)* 1956 133 8p

Lowy J and B M Millman *Phil Trans R Soc Lond B* 1963 246 105

Rauh F *Z Biol* 1922 76 25

Sandow A *J cell comp Physiol* 1944 24 221

**Lundgren, Ove and Ingemar Wallentin (Department of Physiology  
University of Goteborg Sweden) FLOW RESISTANCE CA  
PILLARY FILTRATION COEFFICIENT AND RE  
GIONAL BLOOD VOLUME IN LYMPH GLANDS OF  
THE CAT**

Circulatory changes in the mesenteric lymph glands have been investigated in the cat. Changes in blood flow and capillary filtration coefficient (CFC) were studied at different levels of vascular tone induced by constant infusion of isopropyl noradrenaline and by stimulation of the regional sympathetic vasoconstrictor fibres. During resting conditions blood flow ranged between 20 and 60 ml/min/100 g tissue and CFC between 0.01 and 0.05 ml/min/mm Hg/100 g tissue. Infusion of isopropyl noradrenaline increased the flow to 180 ml/min/100 g tissue and CFC to about 0.10 ml/min/mm Hg/100 g tissue. The maximum values for blood flow and CFC were about three times greater than those reported for skeletal muscle of the cat. This implies a difference in vascularization of the two tissues. The data also indicate a wide range of control of blood flow and CFC which may be related to the varying metabolic demands of the lymphatic tissue during different physiological and pathological conditions.

The regional blood volume during resting conditions was greater than that of skeletal muscle indicating a richer vascularization. The changes of blood volume induced by injections of different vasodilating and vasoconstricting substances and by regional sympathetic stimulation were of the same relative magnitude as those reported for skeletal muscle.



**Lundgren, C and S Lichtneckert** (Institute of Physiology, University of Lund Sweden) **DISTRIBUTION OF INSPIRED GAS DURING VENTILATION WITHOUT RESPIRATORY MOVEMENTS**

The relative importance of elastic and flow resistance for the uneven distribution of inspired gas in the lungs has so far been difficult to evaluate. Lung ventilation in a 'barospirator' (Thunberg 1924) was studied by means of the nitrogen elimination technique (Lichtneckert and Lundgren 1963) because it offers a possibility for cyclical ventilation without respiratory movements so that the elasticity component can be disregarded.

Thunberg T *Hyg Revy* 1924 13 142

Lichtneckert S J A and C E G Lundgren *J appl Physiol* 1963 in press

Lundquist, F, N Tygstrup and K Winkler (Department of Biochemistry and Cardiologic Laboratory of the Medical Department B Rigshospitalet University of Copenhagen Denmark)  
**THE INFLUENCE OF FRUCTOSE ON ETHANOL METABOLISM IN MAN**

Large doses of fructose are known to increase the rate of ethanol disappearance from the circulating blood to nearly twice the value found when only ethanol is given. The experimental material and procedure used in an attempt to explain the mechanism of this effect has been described (Winkler Tygstrup and Lundquist 1963 Tygstrup Winkler and Lundquist 1963). The amount of ethanol metabolized by the liver increased from 1.52 mmoles/min in experiments with ethanol alone and to 2.78 mmoles/min in experiments with ethanol plus fructose. The rate of formation of free acetate by the liver was increased in proportion to the ethanol metabolism (from 1.27 to 2.48 mmoles/min). The arterial ethanol concentration was kept constant around 3.5 mM while the arterial acetate concentration rose from 0.84 mM in experiments with ethanol alone to 1.40 in experiments with ethanol plus fructose.

In an attempt to explain the increase in the capacity of the liver for ethanol dehydrogenation, Holzer has suggested two mechanisms: 1. Oxidation of the alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) - NADH complex\* formed during ethanol dehydrogenation by glyceraldehyde, known to be formed in the liver from fructose. In this way the rate limiting step in the overall process is circumvented. 2. Oxidation of NADH (formed from ethanol and NAD)\* by fructose catalysed by polyol dehydrogenase. These two mechanisms should result in increased levels of glycerol and sorbitol respectively in the hepatic venous blood. Measurement of the relevant substances showed that sorbitol and glycerol formation could account for about 28 per cent of the increased ethanol oxidation.

A third mechanism is now suggested whereby increased amounts of NAD are made available for ethanol dehydrogenation through increased oxidation of the NADH formed in the cytoplasm. The mediator of this increase in NADH oxidation is glycerophosphate

NADH reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide  
NAD nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide

**Lundin, G and D Thomson** (Institute of Physiology University  
of Lund, Sweden) **STUDIES OF CARDIAC OUTPUT  
DURING INTERMITTENT AND CONTINUOUS WORK**

The cardiac output was determined by a CO rebreathing method during intermittent and continuous work. The total work load during an experimental period was the same in both types of work. The experiments are of interest when comparing the training effects of the two types of work.

Manninen, Kimmo, Matti Maenpaa and Aimo Pekkarinen (Department of Pharmacology University of Turku Finland)  
EFFECT OF DRUGS INFLUENCING THE SYMPATHETIC NERVOUS SYSTEM UPON THE BLOOD GLUCOSE REGULATION IN RATS DURING ETHER ANESTHESIA

The blood glucose content of normal rats ( $1.06 \pm 0.03$  g/l) rose in ether anesthesia to at most  $1.34 \pm 0.06$  g/l in 30 min and decreased in spite of the anesthesia within 2.5 h to  $1.04 \pm 0.09$  g/l. Administration of adrenaline (1 mg/kg) during prolonged ether anesthesia produced an increase in blood glucose to  $1.72 \pm 0.10$  g/l within 90 min indicating abundant glycogen stores. After hydrocortisone treatment for four days (5 mg/kg/24 h) ether anesthesia caused an initial increase in blood glucose in 30 min to  $1.40 \pm 0.08$  g/l persisting for 90 min ( $1.50 \pm 0.11$  g/l). The prolonged increase in blood glucose might be due to the increase in gluconeogenesis as well as to a retardation of glucose oxidation caused by hydrocortisone. The average rise in blood glucose was not as pronounced as after adrenaline administration.

In rats treated for four days with large doses of reserpine (1 mg/kg/24 h) the blood glucose was above the control level and increased slowly during ether anesthesia as long as the anesthesia lasted (within 2.5 h to  $1.58 \pm 0.10$  g/l). Large reserpine doses increased the glucocorticoid secretion and thereby the storage of glycogen (Balzer *et al.* 1962) but decreased the reserves of noradrenaline and adrenaline. This may explain the slow rise in blood glucose during ether anesthesia after reserpine treatment.

With drugs that (1) decrease the noradrenaline and adrenaline content (guanethidine 20 mg/kg/day or methyldopa 25 mg/kg/day) (2) inhibit the secretions of these transmitters from the sympathetic nerve endings (bretylum 25 mg/kg/day guanethidine) or (3) block their synthesis ( $\alpha$ -methyldopa) the initial increase of the blood glucose before and during ether anesthesia is somewhat less than in normal rats but was later somewhat higher than in the control group.

formed from fructose via glyceraldehyde Glycerophosphate is known to be oxidized intramitochondrially with formation of dihydroxyacetone phosphate which in turn is reduced by NADH in the cytoplasm

This hypothesis is supported by experiments with rats in which intraperitoneal injection of fructose + ethanol gave rise to a significant increase in hepatic glycerophosphate compared to control experiments with ethanol or fructose alone These experiments also confirm the absence of glycogen formation from fructose when ethanol was given simultaneously (Tygstrup Winkler and Lundquist 1963)

Tygstrup N K Winkler and F Lundquist 1963 This volume p 153-154  
Winkler K N Tygstrup and F Lundquist 1963 This volume p 167

chamber so that it was virtually divided. In this case the two parts hemolyzed slowly at slightly different times or at different rates. Even with such damage there was no hole as would be evidenced by hemoglobin escape within fraction of a second. These results do not contradict the concept of the red cell as an internally structureless sac bounded by a thin membrane (cf. Teitel-Bernard 1932).

Ling, G. N. A. *Physical Theory of the Living State*. New York 1967.

Marsden, N. and R. Neihof. *Acta Soc. Med. Upsalien* 1957 62: 11.

Rockwood, R. J. *Lab. Clin. Med.* 1924 10: 19.

Teitel-Bernard, A. *Arch. Roum. Path. Exp.* 1932 5: 389.

**Marsden, N V B** (Institute of Physiology, University of Uppsala Sweden) **HEMOLYSIS INDUCED BY MICRO NEEDLES**

Red blood cells held in a micro-holder in isotonic solution were impaled with micro-needles (tip diameter about  $0.1 \mu$ ). The observations were made in a shallow chamber at  $25^{\circ}\text{C}$  by means of an inverted microscope with water immersed condenser and phase contrast.

Hemolysis generally occurred within varying periods up to about 11 minutes after the micro-needle had impaled the cell. The cell became spherical before hemolysis. Sometimes hemolysis did not occur even after several impalements (cf. Rockwood 1924). Proof that the cell can be resistant at least after contact with a glass micro-electrode was found by Marsden and Neihof (1957), who recorded repeatedly a potential of about  $-8 \text{ mV}$  when a capillary electrode was pushed against the same cell on successive occasions.

The hemolytic process took several seconds before it was complete. Escape of refractile material from the region of the micro-needle was never seen (although, the slowness of hemolysis might make this difficult to observe). However, hemoglobin may leak at least macroscopically, evenly over the cell surface. If this is the case, local trauma produced by the micro-needle presumably induces either a general change over the surface or some effect in discrete distal sites (cf. Ling 1962). Removal of the micro-needle before the onset of hemolysis was without effect.

The spherical ghost was difficult to dislodge from the needle but when this was successful it remained spherical. If a ghost attached to a micro-needle was pushed against an unhemolyzed cell secured by the microholder, the cell was distorted, the ghost remaining spherical. This suggests that the ghost is more rigid than the red blood cell, in agreement with the observation that hemoglobin liberation did not occur only at the micro-needle site, i.e. that a ghost so produced is not a sac with a hole in its wall. These ghosts can be maltreated between two micro-needles resulting in small irregular clumps of debris.

Attempts to produce a hole in the cell so that hemoglobin would escape with great rapidity failed even with bigger needles or when a needle was drawn across a cell lying on the floor of the

**Mellander, Stefan (Department of Physiology University of Goteborg Sweden) TRANSCAPILLARY FLUID EXCHANGE IN EXPERIMENTAL BURN AND AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF 48/80**

Acute circulatory changes produced by second degree burn in the hind paw of cat were studied by quantitative methods. The reactions of the resistance vessels were followed continuously (pressure—flow measurement). The rate of net transcapillary movement of fluid was measured by continuous recording of the paw volume. Changes in capillary fluid permeability were followed by determination of the capillary filtration coefficient (CFC). Second degree burn was produced by exposing the paw to hot water (75° C) for 30 sec. The thermic lesion produced a pronounced long lasting dilatation of the regional resistance vessels. Immediately after burn there was a rapid loss of intravascular fluid to the injured tissue (oedema formation) amounting to 10 to 15 ml/min/100 g tissue. With time the rate of transfer gradually declined. CFC increased about 30 per cent during the phase of rapid fluid transfer indicating that capillary permeability was only little changed. From these data the magnitude of the driving force required for producing the recorded net transcapillary movement of fluid could be calculated and it comprised as much as 200 to 250 mm Hg shortly after the lesion. Since the changes in effective filtration and plasma colloid osmotic pressures can hardly account for more than 1/10 of this value it was assumed that extravascular osmolality was increased by some mechanism. If so fluid would rapidly be lost from the circulation and since transcapillary diffusion of small molecules is much more rapid than plasma flow an approximate transcapillary osmotic equilibrium would be established rapidly. Cryoscopic measurements on plasma drained from the burnt region showed an increased osmolality compared to normal amounting to 10 to 15 mOsm immediately after burn or 170 to 255 mm Hg and then a gradual decline. Simultaneously there was an increase of local tissue osmotic pressure. The oedema formation therefore seems to be dependent mainly upon a diffusion process due to a transcapillary osmotic pressure gradient established during burn. Instead of selectively damaging the capillary membrane as is generally assumed burn



**Marsden, N V B and H R Ulfendahl** (Institute of Physiology  
University of Uppsala Sweden) **HALIDE AND PROTEIN  
SEPARATION BY GEL FILTRATION**

In experiments on renal function using bromide and iodide it is necessary, since chloride is a normal cell constituent, to determine individual halide concentrations when more than one halide is present. Analyses of such mixtures present certain difficulties (Öbrink and Ulfendahl 1959)

It is advantageous to separate the halides before their determination which can then be made by the same method for all halides. A tightly cross-linked dextran gel\* (Sephadex) exhibits considerable selectivity to chloride, bromide and iodide which were separated completely in that order on a column 70 cm long (Marsden 1963). The peaks of chloride and iodide and bromide and iodide, were so widely separated that collection of the eluted halides was possible in single samples. With bromide and chloride or with the three halides the peaks were rather close together so that serial sampling was necessary to resolve these components.

The gel filtration has two additional advantages. The degree of dilution especially for iodine is much less than with Dowex 1×10 for example with which the halides can be separated (Riemann 1954). Renal tubular fluids often contain proteins including hemoglobin under the conditions of the experiments which may interfere with halide determinations. With gel filtration proteins were eluted well in advance of the first halide peak (chloride) and thus eliminated (Flodin 1962). This method thus combines halide separation and deproteinization in a single step.

Flodin P. Dextran Gels and their applications in gel filtration. Uppsala 1962

Marsden N V B. 1963. Unpublished observations

Öbrink K J and Maj Ulfendahl. Acta Soc Med upsalien 1959 64 384-391

Riemann W. Rec chem Progr 1954 15 85

\* Our thanks are due to AB Pharmacia Uppsala for the synthesis of the gel

Molbech Svend (The Danish National Association for Infantile Paralysis Tuborgvej 5 Hellerup Denmark) AVERAGE PER CENTAGE FORCE AT REPEATED MAXIMAL ISOMETRIC MUSCLE CONTRACTIONS AT DIFFERENT FREQUENCIES

Maximal isometric force in four different muscle groups was determined by using strain gauge dynamometers and an automatic measuring bridge. The muscle groups tested were those used for the following attempted movements: 1 thumb pressure (up of thumb against side of second finger), 2 handgrip (suitable grip size), 3 horizontal pull (elbow flexed 90 degrees) and 4 leg extension with one leg (knees slightly bent). The highest value obtained in three attempts was considered to be the maximum value.

The subjects worked after a metronome at varying frequencies performing from 6 to 29 maximal isometric muscle contractions/min. A total of 74 series of experiments were carried out. The working time was 10 min and after 2 to 6 min the force of the contractions usually reached a steady state, i.e. levelled off at an average value. The individual variations in the force of the contractions were rather large and in some tests it was difficult to determine the average force even of those contractions made in the last few minutes of the working period. The level chosen in each test is taken to represent the force which on an average can be mobilized over a long period (cf. steady state) at the frequency in question. The subjects had no opportunity to see their own scores while working. It was attempted to keep the motivation at a high level on all occasions.

At a frequency of 6 maximal isometric contractions/min about 85 per cent of the maximal force could be mobilized. When the frequency was increased the average percentage of maximal force that could be mobilized decreased almost rectilinearly and at a frequency of 29 contractions/min about 60 per cent of the maximal force could be produced. No clear cut difference in the percentage for the different muscle groups was found although thumb pressure was somewhat lower than that of the others. The standard error of force for all muscle groups at about corresponding frequencies varied from 2.66–4.43 per cent.

might mainly affect the cellular membranes, permitting release of intracellular molecules which directly or after enzymatic decomposition temporarily tend to raise extravascular osmolality. To judge from preliminary experiments in which the histamine liberator 48/80 was administered it appears that also other types of rapid oedema formation (*e g* in allergic manifestations) might be dependent upon an increase of tissue osmolality.

Molbech, Svend (The Danish National Association for Infantile Paralysis Tuborgvej 5 Hellerup Denmark) AVERAGE PERCENTAGE FORCE AT REPEATED MAXIMAL ISOMETRIC MUSCLE CONTRACTIONS AT DIFFERENT FREQUENCIES

Maximal isometric force in four different muscle groups was determined by using strain gauge dynamometers and an automatic measuring bridge. The muscle groups tested were those used for the following attempted movements: 1 thumb pressure (tip of thumb against side of second finger), 2 handgrip (suitable grip size), 3 horizontal pull (elbow flexed 90 degrees) and 4 leg extension with one leg (knees slightly bent). The highest value obtained in three attempts was considered to be the maximum value.

The subjects worked after a metronome at varying frequencies performing from 6 to 29 maximal isometric muscle contractions/min. A total of 74 series of experiments were carried out. The working time was 10 min and after 2 to 6 min the force of the contractions usually reached a steady state, i.e. levelled off at an average value. The individual variations in the force of the contractions were rather large and in some tests it was difficult to determine the average force even of those contractions made in the last few minutes of the working period. The level chosen in each test is taken to represent the force which on an average can be mobilized over a long period (cf. steady state) at the frequency in question. The subjects had no opportunity to see their own scores while working. It was attempted to keep the motivation at a high level on all occasions.

At a frequency of 6 maximal isometric contractions/min about 85 per cent of the maximal force could be mobilized. When the frequency was increased the average percentage of maximal force that could be mobilized decreased almost rectilinearly and at a frequency of 29 contractions/min about 60 per cent of the maximal force could be produced. No clear cut difference in the percentage for the different muscle groups was found although thumb pressure was somewhat lower than that of the others. The standard error of force for all muscle groups at about corresponding frequencies varied from 2.66–4.43 per cent.

As expected the pulse rate was unstable in each test, when leg extension was excluded there was little correlation between pulse increase and increase in contraction frequency. Only at higher frequencies the pulse rate increased significantly with the size of the muscle group.

**Møller, Aage (Department of Physiology II Karolinska Institutet  
Stockholm Sweden) ON THE TRANSMISSION CHARACTERISTIC OF THE MIDDLE EAR**

The function of the middle ear of anesthetized cats was investigated. The amplitude and phase angle of the vibration of the malleus, the incus and the round window for constant sound pressure level at the eardrum were measured by a capacitive probe. By comparing the inverse acoustic impedance at the eardrum with the velocity of the vibration of the malleus at constant sound pressure at the eardrum it was found that the eardrum acts as a rigid piston up to about 4 kcps. A comparison of the amplitude of vibration of the malleus and of the round window indicates that the coupling between the malleus and the cochlear fluid is tight.

A mathematical model of the transfer function from sound pressure at the eardrum to volume displacement at the round window was developed. Thereby the transfer function of the middle ear could be estimated solely from the acoustic impedance at the eardrum which can be measured in human subjects.

Møller, J V (Department of Biochemistry, University of Aarhus  
Denmark) EXPERIMENTS ON THE RENAL HAND-  
LING OF URATE IN THE RABBIT

In a previous study urate clearance ratios ( $C_{ur}/C_{cr}$ ) greater than one were reported (Møller 1962). On the other hand, urine/plasma ratios less than one were found in some experiments during infusion of lactate. To investigate whether uric acid is simultaneously secreted and reabsorbed by active mechanisms in the rabbit we have studied the effect of probenecid on the renal excretion of uric acid during urate infusion. In agreement with Poulsen (1955), we found that probenecid exerts a depressing effect on uric acid clearance, in contrast to the uricosuria encountered in man and mongrel dog. In 7 experiments  $C_{ur}/C_{cr}$  fell from a mean of 1.82 to 0.88 (0.81–0.94). The fall in the clearance ratios was not influenced by addition of mannitol to the infusion fluid. Even during excessive osmotic diuresis urate clearance did not equal the creatinine clearance. The fall in urate clearance to a value slightly below glomerular filtration is consistent with the view that at least a part of uric acid is reabsorbed by a probenecid insensitive mechanism.

We have furthermore studied the secretory and reabsorptive processes in experiments in which the plasma urate concentration ( $P_{ur}$ ) was varied. The curves relating net secretion to plasma uric acid concentration showed an initial dip below zero – indicating net reabsorption at low plasma levels – and then rose linearly when the plasma urate concentration was raised from 15 to 175  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ . This would be expected if the true secretion of uric acid is proportional to  $P_{ur}$  and counteracted by an active reabsorption having a maximum capacity ( $T_m$ ). On the basis of these assumptions  $T_m$  was calculated for the active reabsorption from the interception of the secretory limb of the graph with the Y-axis. The slope of the graph is a measure of the true secretory rate. From these values excretion curves can be constructed which fit the observed values.

Neville, A C (Zoophysiological Laboratory B University of Copenhagen Denmark) **DAILY GROWTH ZONES IN INSECT SKELETONS**

The two main types of insect cuticle solid and rubber like cuticle (Reis Fogh 1960) both grow by daily increments giving rise to daily growth zones (Neville 1963 a b) So far skeletal growth zones have been proved to be the expression of a daily growth rhythm only in locusts and grasshoppers (Orthoptera) but zones of similar appearance occur in the solid cuticle of cockroaches (Dictyoptera) bugs (Hemiptera Heteroptera) frog hoppers (Hemiptera Homoptera) dragonflies (Odonata) earwigs (Dermaptera) and spiders (Arachnida)

The zonation in the locust skeleton is due to differences in diurnal and nocturnal deposits one pair of zones being deposited every 24 hours Locusts reared in double rhythm (6 hours day 6 hours night) or halved rhythm (24 hours day 24 hours night) produce both solid and rubber like cuticles with twice or half as many zones as control reared animals (12 hours day 12 hours night)

Since the physical and chemical properties of the two sorts of cuticle are distinct it is not surprising to find differences in chemistry structure and mode of formation of their growth layers In rubber like cuticle the zonation is due to layered variations in fluorescence of the rubber like protein resilin brightly fluorescent day zones alternate with faintly fluorescent night zones In solid cuticle the layering is due to the polysaccharide chitin nocturnal zones have the chitin crystallites organized into lamellae whereas diurnal zones have not

The daily zonation of resilin in rubber like cuticle has to be driven by a temperature rhythm a light-dark rhythm by itself proved inadequate By contrast the chitin lamellation rhythm in solid cuticle is driven endogenously being present in locusts reared in constant dark at 35 °C It can only be inhibited by constant light and constant temperature (35 °C) acting together being unaffected when only one factor is constant Rubber like cuticle also contains chitin lamellae but here lamellation cannot be inhibited by varying external factors Similarly chitin lamellation in solid exocuticle which is all deposited before ecdysis cannot be inhibited yet chitin



Møller, J V (Department of Biochemistry University of Aarhus  
Denmark) EXPERIMENTS ON THE RENAL HAND-  
LING OF URATE IN THE RABBIT

In a previous study urate clearance ratios ( $C_{ur}/C_{cr}$ ) greater than one were reported (Møller 1962). On the other hand, urine/plasma ratios less than one were found in some experiments during infusion of lactate. To investigate whether uric acid is simultaneously secreted and reabsorbed by active mechanisms in the rabbit we have studied the effect of probenecid on the renal excretion of uric acid during urate infusion. In agreement with Poulsen (1955), we found that probenecid exerts a depressing effect on uric acid clearance, in contrast to the uricosuria encountered in man and mongrel dog. In 7 experiments  $C_{ur}/C_{cr}$  fell from a mean of 1.82 to 0.88 (0.81–0.94). The fall in the clearance ratios was not influenced by addition of mannitol to the infusion fluid. Even during excessive osmotic diuresis urate clearance did not equal the creatinine clearance. The fall in urate clearance to a value slightly below glomerular filtration is consistent with the view that at least a part of uric acid is reabsorbed by a probenecid insensitive mechanism.

We have furthermore studied the secretory and reabsorptive processes in experiments in which the plasma urate concentration ( $P_{ur}$ ) was varied. The curves relating net secretion to plasma uric acid concentration showed an initial dip below zero – indicating net reabsorption at low plasma levels – and then rose linearly when the plasma urate concentration was raised from 15 to 175  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ . This would be expected if the true secretion of uric acid is proportional to  $P_{ur}$  and counteracted by an active reabsorption having a maximum capacity ( $T_m$ ). On the basis of these assumptions  $T_m$  was calculated for the active reabsorption from the interception of the secretory limb of the graph with the Y axis. The slope of the graph is a measure of the true secretory rate. From these values excretion curves can be constructed which fit the observed values.

**Nielsen, Klaus II** (Institute of Biochemistry University of Aarhus Denmark) **DETERMINATION OF AROMATIC ACIDS IN URINE FROM RATS LOADED WITH L-PHENYLALANINE AND PHENYLPYRUVIC ACID**

Paper chromatographic methods have been developed for the quantitative determination of aromatic  $\alpha$  keto acids and phenolic acids in urine. The aromatic  $\alpha$  keto acids were converted to 3-alkyl quinoxalins by reaction with o-phenylenediamine. The quinoxalins were then separated by two-dimensional paper chromatography and the quantities determined by ultraviolet spectrophotometry. The phenolic acids were extracted from urine and separated by two-dimensional chromatography. The chromatograms were sprayed with aqueous formaldehyde and diazotized p-nitroaniline and the quantities of the azo dyes determined spectrophotometrically.

The methods were applied in studies of the effect of continuous subcutaneous infusion of L-phenylalanine and phenylpyruvic acid into rats. The infusion produced an increased urinary excretion of the aromatic acids usually found in urine from phenylketonurics.

lamellation in solid endocuticle, deposited by the same cells after ecdysis, can be inhibited

Daily growth zones are being used as a field method for finding the exact age of an insect, and as an experimental method for the comparative investigation of growth and deposition of solid cuticle and resilin, and of chitin lamellogenesis

Neville A C Daily growth layers in locust rubber like cuticle influenced by an external rhythm J Insect Physiol 1963 ■ 9 177-186

Neville A C Growth and deposition of resilin and chitin in locust rubber like cuticle J Insect Physiol 1963 b In press

Weis Fogh T A rubber like protein in insect cuticle J exp Biol 1960 37 889-907

Nilsson, B Y and C R Skoglund (Department of Physiology Karolinska Institutet Stockholm Sweden) STUDIES OF THE TACTILE HAIRS AND ADJACENT PACINIAN CORPUSCLES ON THE CAT'S FORELEG

In addition to the vibrissae on the upper lip most mammalian species have scattered tactile hairs also on other parts of the body. At the wrist of the cat's forelimb there is thus regularly a tuft of 5-6 vibrissae like hairs protruding from a small easily palpable elevation in the skin formed by the hair follicles each of which contains a blood sinus. Contrary to earlier described tactile hairs these have a number of Pacinian corpuscles situated close to the blood sinus. Since the whole structure is innervated by a separate branch of the ulnar nerve and gets its main blood supply via a small branch from the ulnar artery it is well suited for a functional analysis of the receptors under controlled milieu conditions.

In contrast to the characteristic fast adapting discharges elicited by touching ordinary hairs in the same area bending of a tactile hair produced a very slowly adapting discharge. After a transient initial discharge of more than 200 per sec a steady frequency level of 20 to 40 per sec was usually maintained for several minutes without appreciable decline. Continuing discharges without pronounced fatigue were recorded during observation periods of up to 10 min. Certain signs of directional sensitivity were observed. Some units exhibited spontaneous discharges which could not be stopped by changing the position of the hair. After activation of such units a silent period occurred the length of which depended on the duration of the stimulus. In these and in certain other respects the tactile hair receptors reacted like those of the vibrissae of the lips (Fitzgerald 1940).

Some of the units observed by recording from nerve filaments showed rapidly adapting discharges to vibratory stimuli e.g. tapping on the experimental table and these could be traced to Pacinian corpuscles by direct recording from the nerve fiber of a single corpuscle. Pulse synchronous discharges often occurred as a result of the high mechanical sensitivity of these receptors the general response patterns of which were found to be similar to those described for

Nienstedt, Walter (Department of Physiology University of Turku  
Finland) A RAPID METHOD FOR PLASMA PROGES  
TERONE DETERMINATION

A new method for plasma progesterone determination is presented that reduces the time required for an assay from 36 hours to about 4 hours (for references see *Short 1961*) The method uses a preliminary purification procedure on Florisil followed by a final assay by gas chromatography and is based on the following observations of the mobility of twenty reference steroids on Florisil

In contrast to what is reported of most liquid liquid or other liquid solid chromatography systems a ketone group often has a greater retention effect than a hydroxyl group Thus, progesterone is eluted after e.g. pregnanediol, together with polar compounds facilitating its separation from interfering non polar material Only the most non polar steroids (e.g. pregnanedione) share the property of the plasma lipids of being less strongly adsorbed when Florisil is deactivated with water (*Carroll 1961*) The polar steroids, e.g. cortisol are retained more The mobility of progesterone is not appreciably influenced The treatment of water-equilibrated Florisil with 10 per cent acetic acid (5 min) has only a slight influence on the mobility of steroids but purer fractions can be obtained when plasma lipids are chromatographed

Twenty ml of plasma is deproteinized with 60 ml of ethanol filtered through glass wool and the precipitate washed twice with 10 ml of ethanol After adding 4 ml of butanol the filtrate is evaporated under reduced pressure in a rotating evaporator The residue is washed three times with 3 to 5 ml of ethyl ether and the washings are successively applied to a column (17.5 cm x 0.3 cm) packed with acid treated Florisil washed five times with acetone and twice with ether, and more ether (up to 25 ml) is added to the column The ether eluate containing most of the plasma lipids is discarded Progesterone is eluted with 7 ml of 50 per cent acetone in ether The fraction is evaporated dissolved in ether and rechromatographed on a smaller column (7.5 cm x 0.2 cm) packed with water equilibrated, acetone and ether-washed Florisil After discarding 10 ml of ether, progesterone is eluted with 10 ml of 15 per cent acetone in ether

Nilsson, B Y and C R Skoglund (Department of Physiology Karolinska Institutet Stockholm Sweden) STUDIES OF THE TACTILE HAIRS AND ADJACENT PACINIAN CORPUSCLES ON THE CAT'S FORELEG

In addition to the vibrissae on the upper lip most mammalian species have scattered tactile hairs also on other parts of the body. At the wrist of the cat's forelimb there is thus regularly a tuft of 5-6 vibrissae like hairs protruding from a small easily palpable elevation in the skin formed by the hair follicles each of which contains a blood sinus. Contrary to earlier described tactile hairs these have a number of Pacinian corpuscles situated close to the blood sinus. Since the whole structure is innervated by a separate branch of the ulnar nerve and gets its main blood supply via a small branch from the ulnar artery it is well suited for a functional analysis of the receptors under controlled milieu conditions.

In contrast to the characteristic fast adapting discharges elicited by touching ordinary hairs in the same area bending of a tactile hair produced a very slowly adapting discharge. After a transient initial discharge of more than 200 per sec a steady frequency level of 20 to 40 per sec was usually maintained for several minutes without appreciable decline; continuing discharges without pronounced fatigue were recorded during observation periods of up to 10 min. Certain signs of directional sensitivity were observed. Some units exhibited spontaneous discharges which could not be stopped by changing the position of the hair. After activation of such units a silent period occurred the length of which depended on the duration of the stimulus. In these and in certain other respects the tactile hair receptors reacted like those of the vibrissae of the lips (Fitzgerald 1940).

Some of the units observed by recording from nerve filaments showed rapidly adapting discharges to vibratory stimuli e.g. tapping on the experimental table and these could be traced to Pacinian corpuscles by direct recording from the nerve fiber of a single corpuscle. Pulse synchronous discharges often occurred as a result of the high mechanical sensitivity of these receptors the general response patterns of which were found to be similar to those described for

Pacinian corpuscles at other loci, *e g* deeper in the cat's foreleg (Skoglund 1960)

The functional significance of the combination of the two different receptor types in this structure will be discussed

Fitzgerald O J *Physiol (Lond)* 1940 98 163

Skoglund C E *Acta physiol scand* 1960 50 385

Ofstad, J (The Chr Michelsen Institute and the School of Medicine  
(Department A) University of Bergen Norway) HAEMO-  
GLOBIN CONCENTRATION IN THE HUMAN RENAL  
VEIN IN THE SUPINE AND IN THE TILTED (HEAD  
UP) POSITION AND DURING THE VALSALVA MA-  
NOEUVRE

The increase in renal weight with increasing arterial pressure cannot be explained by the vasoconstrictor theory of the autoregulation of the renal vascular resistance but is consistent with the theory of intrarenal vascular compression (Hinshaw 1961). Assuming that the weight increases not only due to an increase in the pre-venous vascular bed but to increased capillary filtration as well changes in renal vascular resistance may be expected to be followed by transient variations in the haemoglobin concentration in the renal vein.

Continuous recording of the oxygen saturation and of the haemoglobin concentration (light transmission at 805 m $\mu$ ) in the renal vein and ordinary spectrophotometric determinations were performed. The investigation comprised 127 experiments on 70 individuals with normal or diseased kidneys.

In two out of 19 experiments oscillating haemoglobin concentration variations of 3 per cent were observed in the tilted position spontaneous concentration changes did not occur in the supine position.

During the Valsalva manoeuvre an immediate repeatable transient and parallel reduction in the haemoglobin concentration and the oxygen saturation occurred. The minimal values were reached in 13 sec the whole period of reduction lasting about 30–40 sec. The maximal reductions were 40 per cent for haemoglobin and 30 per cent for the oxygen saturation. Assuming that the haemoglobin concentration changes were caused by dilution of the venous blood with a haemoglobin free fluid the composition of this diluting fluid was calculated from analyses of blood sampled before and during the Valsalva manoeuvre. On the average the protein and chloride concentrations in the diluting fluid were 1.9 per cent and 125 mEq/l respectively. The albumin/globulin ratio, the freezing point depression and the concentrations of sodium, potassium and urea did not



differ significantly from the corresponding values in renal serum the *inulin* and *para-amino hippurate* concentrations were lower

Application of the Hamilton principle to the recorded curves showed that the renal blood flow was greatly reduced during the Valsalva manoeuvre, probably the renal interstitial fluid is transported into the circulating blood from which it is later reabsorbed. The mechanism of this process remains obscure.

Hinshaw L. B. and D. M. Worthen *Circ Res* 1961 9 1156

Oro, Lars (Department of Internal Medicine Karolinska Sjukhuset  
and King Gustaf V Research Institute Stockholm Sweden)  
**THE EFFECT OF CAROTID OCCLUSION AND CENTRAL VAGUS STIMULATION ON THE PLASMA FREE FATTY ACIDS (FFA) AND THE BLOOD PRESSURE IN THE DOG**

The role of the sympathetic nervous system for the regulation of the plasma free fatty acids has become evident in recent years. An increased activity in the sympathetic nervous system is frequently associated with a rise in the plasma FFA concentration. To study the possible role of baroreceptor reflexes for the regulation of the plasma FFA, dogs were anesthetized with pentobarbital. In one series of experiments the two common carotid arteries were occluded during two periods of 30 min duration, 60 min apart. The mean blood pressure increased markedly during the two occlusions, from 127 to 197 and from 120 to 173 mm Hg respectively. The mean plasma FFA concentration increased only slightly during the two periods, from 0.33 to 0.46 and from 0.37 to 0.47 mEq/l respectively. In a second series of experiments the two vagus nerves were cut. The central ends were stimulated electrically during two periods of 30 min duration and 40 min apart (35 impulses/sec, 15-20 volt duration 7 msec). Because of respiratory arrest during the stimulation the dogs were artificially ventilated during the whole experiment. The mean blood pressure increased from 110 to 163 and from 115 to 176 mm Hg during the two periods. The mean plasma FFA concentration was unchanged. In a third series of experiments different doses of catecholamines were infused i.v. for 30 min. A two- to three fold increase of the FFA concentration occurred with norepinephrine as well as with epinephrine (0.04-0.08  $\mu$ g/kg/min) without any rise of the blood pressure.

Thus pressor reflexes could be activated in the anesthetized dog, markedly increasing the blood pressure without changing the plasma FFA concentration. This suggests that the baroreceptors are of no importance for the FFA regulation. The central parts of the sympathetic nervous system seem to be differentiated with respect to the regulation of the blood pressure and the FFA metabolism.

**Oscarsson, O and I Rosen** (Institute of Physiology University of Lund, Sweden) **PROJECTION TO CEREBRAL CORTEX OF GROUP I AFFERENTS FROM STRETCH RECEPTORS IN FORELIMB MUSCLES OF THE CAT**

It has been concluded from studies on the cat that group I muscle afferents do not project to the cerebral cortex (*Mountcastle Covian and Harrison 1952*) This has been confirmed with respect to hindlimb afferents by *McIntyre (1953, 1962)* However, *Amassian and Berlin (1958)* reported that stimulation of group I muscle afferents in contralateral forelimb nerves evoked surface positive potentials in the first somatic area

Our experiments were made on cats under deep pentobarbitone anaesthesia Stimulation of group I muscle afferents in contralateral forelimb nerves evoked surface positive potentials with a short latency in the first, but not in the second somatic area The responsible pathway was disynaptic and identified as the dorsal column medial lemniscus system The group I evoked potentials were restricted to an anterior part of the first somatic (SI) area usually considered as having a motor function Potentials evoked from cutaneous afferents appeared in two distinct parts of the SI area one posterior part corresponding to the classical somatosensory receiving area and one anterior part which coincided with that responding to stimulation of group I afferents It is suggested that the forelimb region of the SI area is differentiated into one motor area receiving a projection from group I muscle afferents and cutaneous afferents and one sensory area receiving a projection from cutaneous but not group I afferents

The group I afferents responsible for the cortical potential originated in slowly adapting muscle stretch receptors which had a low threshold for stretch and could be activated by succinylcholine Thus muscle spindle afferents with primary endings were responsible for the cortical potential though in addition there may be a cortical projection path from tendon organ afferents

*Amassian V E and L Berlin Early cortical projection of Group I afferents in the forelimb muscle nerves of cat J Physiol (Lond) 1958 143 61P*

- McIntyre A K. Cortical projection of afferent impulses in muscle nerves  
Proc Univ Otago med Sch 1953 31 5-6
- McIntyre A K. Central projection of impulses from receptors activated  
by muscle stretch. Symposium on Muscle Receptors  
Barker (editor) Hong Kong 1962 19-30
- Mountcastle V B. M R Covian and C R Harrison. The central repre-  
sentation of some forms of deep sensibility. Proc Ass Res Nerv Ment  
Diseases 1952 30 339-370

**Ottoson, D** (Department of Physiology, Karolinska Institutet Stockholm, Sweden) **ACTIVITY OF MUSCLE SPINDLE AND SODIUM CONCENTRATION**

The effect of changes in the external sodium concentration on the impulse discharge and the receptor potential of the muscle spindle has been investigated in isolated spindles of the frog *■* toe muscle (*m ext dig long IV*). Reduction of the sodium concentration of the bathing fluid was followed by *■* gradual fall of the spontaneous activity and a decrease of the response evoked by stretch. The spontaneous activity was extinguished within 1–2 min after the sodium chloride was removed and replaced by choline chloride. The impulse discharge evoked by stretch was abolished after 4 to 8 min in sodium-free solution leaving the receptor potential uncovered. The effect of sodium lack on the receptor potential was studied after blocking of the impulse activity with local anaesthetics. The amplitude of the receptor potential dropped to about 20 per cent of its original value in about 10 min after complete removal of the sodium of the bathing fluid. Prolonged soaking (30–60 min) caused only a slight additional decline. The conclusion is drawn that sodium ions play an essential role for the production of the receptor potential but that other ions are involved as well.

**Oura, Erkki, Kaaja Kontinen and Heikki Suomalainen (Research Laboratories of the State Alcohol Monopoly Alko Helsinki Finland) THE INFLUENCE OF ALCOHOL INTAKE ON VITAMIN EXCRETION IN THE RAT**

In our studies on vitamin deficiencies caused by alcohol consumption the aim was to investigate how alcohol affects the vitamin composition of different tissues. To establish the main picture, our first experimental series followed the effect of short time alcohol intake on the vitamin composition of the urine of the rat.

In these experiments water was substituted by 10 per cent ethanol for about a week and then again replaced by water. During these periods of alcohol intake the urine was examined for thiamine, nicotinic acid, methylnicotinamide, pyridoxine, pantothenic acid, cobalamin, folic acid, biotin, choline and an amino acid, methionine. On shift from water to alcohol a clear peak was observed in the daily excretion of thiamine, pyridoxine and pantothenic acid. When shifting back to water the excretion of these vitamins—except that of pantothenic acid—rapidly decreased to the same level as before alcohol intake. With the change from water to alcohol the excretion of nicotinic acid decreased but the excretion of methylnicotinamide increased to such an extent that the total excretion of these two vitamins rose markedly during the period of alcohol intake. On the return to a water regimen the excretion of these two compounds rapidly returned to normal. The biotin excretion decreased during the alcohol period and towards the end of the period the excreted amount of folic acid decreased as well. For the other vitamins investigated for cobalamin, choline as well as for methionine no clear excretional changes could be observed.

**Pekkarinen, Aimo** (Department of Pharmacology, University of Turku Finland) **BIOLOGICAL STANDARDIZATION OF CORTICOTROPIN ON THE BASIS OF THE CORTICOSTEROID INCREASE IN THE PLASMA OF LIVING GUINEA PIGS**

Previously in the bioassay of corticotropin, the rise in the plasma corticosteroid was measured colorimetrically, several guinea pigs being used for each bioassay (Pekkarinen and Tala 1960). In the new procedure used in this study a blood sample was taken from the shoulder vein after morphine-pentobarbital medication in Fluothane® anesthesia. The corticosteroid content was determined in 0.1 ml plasma samples by a modification (Pekkarinen and Tala unpublished) of the fluorometric method of Sweat (1954). With repeated blood sampling the basal corticosteroid content increased in male and especially in female animals. Therefore, the neurogenic increase of corticosteroid after several blood samplings was prevented by intraperitoneal application of methylprednisolone (Depo-Medrol®, Upjohn Co.) as depot preparation on the previous day. After methylprednisolone and a large dose of methadone the sample could be taken without Fluothane® (ICI) anesthesia. This procedure has the advantage that the blood sampling can be repeated with a few weeks interval. The administration of methylprednisolone does not prevent the increase of corticosteroid due to corticotropin. Psychopharmaca could not prevent the neurogenic increase of the corticosteroids. hydroxyzine (Atarax® UBC) in large doses had only a slight inhibiting effect.

The biological standardization of several different corticotropin preparations was investigated by the new corticotropin assay. If the concentration of corticosteroids in plasma was less than 1 mg/l corticotropin caused a linear rise in plasma corticosteroids. If the basal content of corticosteroids rose to a high level due to stress without pretreatment with methylprednisolone corticotropin no longer caused a linear increase of the corticosteroid content. The most suitable rise in the corticosteroid content was usually obtained with corticotropin doses ranging from 0.015 to 0.3 IU per kg of body weight injected into the inner side of the thigh.

**Pekkarinen, Aimo, Mikko Linna, Enni Luostarinen and Alpo Hakulinen (Department of Pharmacology and the Surgical Clinic University of Turku Finland) ON THE EXCRETION OF VANILMANDELIC ACID (VMA) BEFORE AND AFTER MAJOR OPERATIONS AS WELL AS DURING THE MENTAL STRESS OF EXAMINATION**

After gastric and pulmonary operations the excretion of adrenaline noradrenaline and total 17 hydroxycorticosteroids increased (Halme *et al* 1957 Pekkarinen *et al* 1957 Pekkarinen 1960) An increase in adrenaline excretion was observed also during the stress of matriculation examination (Pekkarinen *et al* 1961) The excretion into the urine of vanilmandelic acid the main metabolic product of adrenaline and noradrenaline was studied during stress using a micromodification of Pisano's method (Pekkarinen unpublished) The standard error of the mean for added vanilmandelic acid was 4.3 per cent in the urine and in individual series 2.4 per cent

In 75 surgical patients (subjected to 33 gastric and 10 pulmonary and heart operations) the excretion of VMA during two days before the operation was about doubled during 1 to 3 days after the operation After 4 to 5 days it was slightly above the preoperative values In 9 biliary operations and 6 other laparotomies the increase of VMA excretion was small In half the patients the postoperative VMA excretion was above 10 mg/24 h The most pronounced excretion (30 mg/24 h) appeared in a patient with rectal carcinoma on the second day after the operation The excretion maximum occurred more often on the second and third postoperative days than on the first day

In two groups of matriculation examination students the VMA excretion into the urine increased only occasionally The normal excretion was higher in the students than in the surgical patients before operation

Halme A, A Pekkarinen and M Turunen *Acta endocrinol (Lbh)* 1957 24 Suppl 32

Pekkarinen, A, S Vuokari and M Turunen *Ann Med. exp Fenn.* 1957 35 Suppl 7

Pekkarinen A in *The biochemical response to injury II* B Stoner (editor) Symp of CIOIMS 1960 217-268

Pekkarinen A, O Castrén, E Iivä, M Korvutalo, A Laihonen, P E



**Pekkarinen, Aimo** (Department of Pharmacology University of Turku, Finland) **BIOLOGICAL STANDARDIZATION OF CORTICOTROPIN ON THE BASIS OF THE CORTICOSTEROID INCREASE IN THE PLASMA OF LIVING GUINEA PIGS**

Previously in the bioassay of corticotropin the rise in the plasma corticosteroid was measured colorimetrically: several guinea pigs being used for each bioassay (Pekkarinen and Tala 1960). In the new procedure used in this study a blood sample was taken from the shoulder vein after morphine pentobarbital medication in Fluothane® anesthesia. The corticosteroid content was determined in 0.1 ml plasma samples by a modification (Pekkarinen and Tala unpublished) of the fluorometric method of Sweat (1954). With repeated blood sampling the basal corticosteroid content increased in male and especially in female animals. Therefore the neurogenic increase of corticosteroid after several blood samplings was prevented by intraperitoneal application of methylprednisolone (Depo-Medrol®, Upjohn Co) as depot preparation on the previous day. After methylprednisolone and a large dose of methadone the sample could be taken without Fluothane® (ICI) anesthesia. This procedure has the advantage that the blood sampling can be repeated with a few weeks interval. The administration of methylprednisolone does not prevent the increase of corticosteroid due to corticotropin. Psychopharmaca could not prevent the neurogenic increase of the corticosteroids, hydroxyzine (Atarax®, UBC) in large doses had only a slight inhibiting effect.

The biological standardization of several different corticotropin preparations was investigated by the new corticotropin assay. If the concentration of corticosteroids in plasma was less than 1 mg/l corticotropin caused a linear rise in plasma corticosteroids. If the basal content of corticosteroids rose to a high level due to stress without pretreatment with methylprednisolone corticotropin no longer caused a linear increase of the corticosteroid content. The most suitable rise in the corticosteroid content was usually obtained with corticotropin doses ranging from 0.015 to 0.3 IU per kg of body weight injected into the inner side of the thigh.

trophic hormone in which the responses of ketogenic and of total 17 OHCS are equally distinct

After two weeks of chlorpromazine treatment (100 mg 3 times daily) the average pituitary corticotrophin reserve remained almost unchanged in 10 patients during a one day metyrapone test. The average excretion of the ketogenic 17 OHCS was 30.7 mg/24 h on the test day — slight decrease appeared in 5 patients. After one month treatment with Sordinol® (3×10 mg) and Trilafon® (3×8 mg) the average steroid excretions were about the same during a two-day metyrapone test as when the neuroleptic drugs were given alone. The mean excretion of the ketogenic 17 OHCS rose from 21.4 to 30.7 mg/24 h during the first day to 51.1 mg/24 h on the second day and to 52.1 mg/24 h on the following day. In a small group of females steroid excretion decreased. Old patients had pituitary corticotrophin reserves as large as the younger ones. The excretion of the ketogenic 17 OHCS rose to at most 154 mg/24 h and was above 100 mg/24 h in 4 patients. In 5 patients there was a small rise in excretion of the three groups of steroids indicating a low metyrapone reserve.

Side effects (vomiting or dizziness) appeared in 11 patients. The metyrapone treatment was therefore not repeated in 3 patients. In the first metyrapone test the rise of the steroid excretion was small in two, pronounced in one.

Appleby J I, G Gibson, J K Norymberski and R D Stubbs *Biochem J* 1955 60 453

Halme A, A Pelkkariinen and M Turunen, *Acta endocrinol (kbh)* 1957 24 suppl 32

Jenkins H, P H Forsham, J C Laidlaw, W Reddy and G W Thorn *Amer J Med* 1955 18 1

Porter C C and R H Silber *Biochem J* 1950 185 201

**Pekkarinen, A., U. Rinne, H. Saarimaa and C. Sourander** (Department of Pharmacology, University of Turku, and the Psychiatric Hospital of Turku, Finland) **THE DETERMINATION OF THE PITUITARY CORTICOTROPHIN RESERVE BY A TWO DAY METYRAPONE (METOPIRONE®) TEST IN PSYCHIATRIC PATIENTS**

Metyrapone (4.5 g/24 h, one dose every 4th hour) was given orally to 35 patients with chronic schizophrenia. 10 patients received the drug for one day, and 25 patients for two days. Treatment with psychotropic drugs was discontinued 2 weeks earlier. Ketogenic 17-hydroxycorticosteroids (OHCS) were determined by a modification of the method of Appleby *et al.* (1955), total 17 OHCS according to the method of Porter and Silber (1950) as modified by Jenkins *et al.* (1955) and Halme *et al.* (1957), and 17-ketosteroids by a modification of the methods of Zimmermann and of Callow (for references see Halme *et al.* 1957).

In the one-day test the average excretion of ketogenic 17-OHCS rose from 24.1 mg/24 h to 36.2 mg/24 h, and on the following day the excretion decreased to 32.3 mg/24 h. Correspondingly the average excretion of total 17 OHCS increased from 6.0 to 10.3 mg/24 h and decreased to 9.8 mg/24 h on the following day. The excretion of 17-ketosteroids rose from 10.4 to 12.3 and 13.1 mg/24 h respectively.

In the two-day test the average excretion of ketogenic 17 OHCS rose from 28.5 mg/24 h to 36.1 mg/24 h on the first day to 57.7 mg/24 h on the second day, and to 53.2 mg/24 h on the third day. The average excretion of total 17-OHCS rose correspondingly from 8.7 to 11.6, 15.2 and 12.5 mg/24 h, and that of 17 ketosteroids from 11.1 to 13.6, 20.2 and 17.4 mg/24 h.

The pituitary corticotrophin reserve of psychiatric patients appears to be within limits of normal. On the second metyrapone-day and the following day the level of these steroids was about twice normal, the increase appearing most clearly in the excretion of ketogenic 17 OHCS. The rise in total 17 OHCS was less pronounced. This indicates that other steroid metabolites are excreted into the urine during a metyrapone test than during a test with adrenocortico-

**Rausst, M and K. Harttala** (Department of Physiology University of Turku Finland) **THE EFFECT OF SALICYLAMIDE ON THE FORMATION OF SALICYLAMIDE GLUCURONIDE IN DOGS**

Eugenol is a mucicogue and desquamatory agent in the stomach. Since the synthesis of neutral mucopolysaccharides (mucus) partly depends on the same energy and enzyme systems as the glucuronide conjugation process the effect of eugenol on the conjugation of a glucuronogenic substance salicylamide was studied.

Fifty mg/kg salicylamide was given to 12 female dogs by intragastric feeding and the levels of salicylamide glucuronide and free salicylamide in plasma were determined. After 7 days the dogs were fed the same dose of salicylamide together with a 200 mg/kg dose of eugenol in a water emulsion. One hour after the feeding the level of salicylamide glucuronide in plasma was  $11 \pm 6$  mg/l without eugenol and  $4 \pm 4$  mg/l with eugenol. The difference is statistically significant ( $P < 0.005$ ). There was no difference in the levels of free salicylamide in plasma after 1 h.

Thus eugenol has an inhibiting effect on the conjugation of salicylamide in the stomach. Earlier studies (Ball, Harttala and Pulkkinen unpublished) have shown that eugenol inhibits the action of glucuronyltransferase.

**Pulkkinen, Martti O** (Department of Physiology, University of Turku, Finland) **HORMONE SULPHATASE RELATIONSHIPS AND SULPHATE CONJUGATION IN THE FOETUS AND PLACENTA**

The activities of arylsulphatase (I and II) and steroidsulphatase in the liver and kidneys of rats and mice were determined by a modification of the method of Roy (1957) Sulphate conjugation was studied by a slight modification of the method of Nose and Lipman (1959) A fraction containing the enzymes necessary for sulphate conjugation was precipitated by ammonium sulphate (1.5–2.3 M) from a high speed supernatant of homogenates of foetal liver, kidney and placenta from human and rat

The anabolic steroid, methandrostenolone, and testosterone increased the level of arylsulphatase type II, especially in the kidney The arylsulphatase level in the kidney was decreased by castration, and the gonadotrophins of human placenta or pituitary gland did not affect the level Tyroxine increased the activity of renal arylsulphatase type II Oestradiol decreased the level of sulphatase type II in the kidney but increased the levels of type I in both liver and kidney The level of steroidsulphatase in the liver was slightly decreased by oestradiol and methandrostenolone

Human rat and guinea-pig placentas did not conjugate p nitrophenol, dehydroepiandrosterone or oestrone with sulphate whereas human foetal liver kidney, suprarenal gland, lung and intestines were able to accomplish this conjugation in that order of decreasing effectiveness

The rat foetus could conjugate sulphate only toward the end of the gestation period The sulphate conjugation in newborn was weaker than in adult rats when related to the tissue protein level (biuret method) and wet weight Pregnancy does not produce significant changes in this conjugation in rat liver Of 12 steroids examined dehydroepiandrosterone underwent conjugation at the highest rate also in the human foetus

Nose Y and F Lipman Separation of Steroid Sulfokinases *J biol Chem* 1959 233 1348–1351

Roy A B The Sulfatase of ox liver 6 Steroid Sulphatase *Biochem J* 1957 66 700–703

**Rausi M and K Hartala (Department of Physiology University of Turku Finland) THE EFFECT OF SALICYLAMIDE ON THE FORMATION OF SALICYLAMIDE GLUCURONIDE IN DOGS**

Eugenol is a mucicogue and desquamatory agent in the stomach. Since the synthesis of neutral mucopolysaccharides (mucus) partly depends on the same energy and enzyme systems as the glucuronide conjugation process, the effect of eugenol on the conjugation of a glucuronogenic substance, salicylamide, was studied.

Fifty mg/kg salicylamide was given to 12 female dogs by intragastric feeding and the levels of salicylamide glucuronide and free salicylamide in plasma were determined. After 7 days the dogs were fed the same dose of salicylamide together with a 200 mg/kg dose of eugenol in a water emulsion. One hour after the feeding the level of salicylamide glucuronide in plasma was  $11 \pm 6$  mg/l without eugenol and  $4 \pm 4$  mg/l with eugenol. The difference is statistically significant ( $P < 0.005$ ). There was no difference in the levels of free salicylamide in plasma after 1 h.

Thus eugenol has an inhibiting effect on the conjugation of salicylamide in the stomach. Earlier studies (Ball, Hartala and Puukkinen unpublished) have shown that eugenol inhibits the action of glucuronyltransferase.

**Refsum, Harald, E** (The University Institute for Respiratory Physiology, Dept III, Ullevål Hospital, Oslo, Norway) **THE PLASMA  $p\text{CO}_2$  - pH -  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  RELATIONSHIP AT INCREASED  $p\text{CO}_2$  AND DECREASED  $p\text{O}_2$**

To determine the average extent of the renal compensation for chronic  $\text{CO}_2$  retention at various levels of  $\text{CO}_2$  tension, the arterial  $\text{O}_2$  and  $\text{CO}_2$  tension ( $p\text{O}_2$ ,  $p\text{CO}_2$ ), pH and plasma  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentration were determined in 240 patients with pulmonary insufficiency, all breathing air.  $p\text{CO}_2$  ranged from 50 to 95 mm Hg, and  $p\text{O}_2$  from 65 to 20 mm Hg. When the data were grouped according to increasing  $p\text{CO}_2$ , the pH decreased progressively, but average values below the lower limit of normal were not met until  $p\text{CO}_2$  exceeded 70 mm Hg. Correspondingly, in the  $p\text{CO}_2$  range of 50–70 mm Hg the increase in plasma  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentration with increasing  $p\text{CO}_2$  exceeded that observed in blood equilibrated *in vitro* with different  $\text{CO}_2$  tensions. At  $p\text{CO}_2$  above 70 mm Hg the increase in  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  concentration with increasing  $p\text{CO}_2$  corresponded to that of *in vitro* equilibrations.

The failure of the preservation of normal pH at  $p\text{CO}_2$  above 70 mm Hg was influenced only to a small degree by the hypoxemia. The average  $p\text{CO}_2$ —pH— $\text{HCO}_3^-$  relationship in patients with  $p\text{CO}_2$  above 80 mm Hg was similar to that found in dogs during prolonged exposure to a 12 per cent  $\text{CO}_2$ , 20 per cent  $\text{O}_2$  atmosphere (Van Ypersele de Strihou, Gulyassy and Schwartz 1962).

Van Ypersele de Strihou C, P F Gulyassy and W B Schwartz. Effects of chronic hypercapnia on electrolyte and acid base equilibrium. III. Characteristics of the adaptive and recovery process as evaluated by provision of alkali. *J clin Invest* 1962 41 2246–2253.

Reite, Ø II (Institute for Experimental Medical Research Ullevål  
Hospital Oslo Norway) **BLOOD VESSEL RESPONSES TO  
ADRENALINE AND NORADRENALINE IN TISSUES  
PREVIOUSLY EXPOSED TO COLD**

Rabbit ears subjected to two different types of cold exposure cold adaptation and frostbite were tested for vascular reactivity to adrenaline and noradrenaline. Some rabbits were housed in outdoor cages for several weeks during the winter with one ear covered while the other ear was unprotected against the cold. Other animals were kept indoors and had one ear experimentally frostbitten in a freezing bath at 10° C. Changes in local blood flow following intravascular injections of adrenaline or noradrenaline were estimated by means of polarographic oxygen electrodes. With one electrode in each ear the unaffected ear served as control.

In cold adapted animals the blood vessels of the cold exposed ear showed a marked decrease in its response to adrenaline and noradrenaline as compared to the ear which had been protected. The degree of vasoconstriction as well as its duration were significantly reduced.

Frostbite produced an inflammatory reaction. The blood vessels of the frostbitten ear responded to adrenaline and noradrenaline as did the vessels of the control ear, however vasoconstriction in the affected ear always disappeared more rapidly than in the control.



**Relander, Arvo and Carl Erik Raiha (Pediatric Clinics University Hospital, Helsinki, Finland) HEXOSES IN THE ERYTHROCYTE STROMA**

A method has been developed to estimate galactose, mannose and glucose in the erythrocyte stroma

The amount of glucose found in the untreated erythrocytes was always less than the sum of that found in washed erythrocytes and the NaCl solution used for washing. This was followed by a decrease in the protein-bound hexoses in the erythrocyte stroma. When erythrocytes were incubated in Ringer solution containing increasing amounts of glucose, the increase in the hexose content of the stroma was greatest when the transport of glucose across the erythrocyte membrane was greatest. The results using inhibitors of glucose transport will be discussed.

Erythrocytes from patients subjected to insulin shock showed an increase in stroma bound hexoses. Glucagon administration had an opposite effect on the erythrocytes. During glucose tolerance tests the amount of stroma hexoses increased considerably, this increase being greatest in the galactose fraction. In cord blood the amount of stroma hexoses was about half that in adult blood.

**Rerup, Claus and Pavo Hedner (Department of Pharmacology  
University of Lund Sweden) THE ASSAY OF CORTICO  
TROPHIN IN MICE**

The assay of corticotrophin could be performed in mice by means of small sample analysis of free plasma corticosteroids. Hypophysectomy was replaced by dexamethasone pretreatment. The response was measured preferably in single mice weighing 20 g or more. When mice of lower body weight were used the plasma of two randomly assigned mice was pooled. Corticosteroids (mainly corticosterone) were determined fluorometrically in 0.25 (0.20) ml samples of plasma from heparinized blood. Valid corticotrophin assays could be performed in mice both by the intravenous and subcutaneous route. Compared with the adrenal ascorbic acid depletion method or the plasma corticosteroid method in the rat the assay in mice was at least five times more sensitive. Forty micro-units of corticotrophin were consistently detectable. Precision was dependent upon the route of administration, the mean index of precision being 0.20 in the intravenous and 0.12 in the subcutaneous assay. The difference was due to a steeper slope of the log-dose response line after subcutaneous administration.

Contrary to the findings in the rat, corticotrophin A (purified oxycel) did not differ significantly in potency estimated from subcutaneous and intravenous assays in mice when compared with crude corticotrophin (U.S.P. corticotrophin reference standard). Accordingly, results of subcutaneous assays of corticotrophin A samples in terms of the U.S.P. standard were lower in mice than in rats. The use of gelatine instead of saline as diluent in subcutaneous assays yielded slightly but not significantly higher potency estimates (25 per cent).

For intravenous corticotrophin assays the mouse method is comparable to the rat assay. For subcutaneous pharmacopoeial corticotrophin assays the mouse method is unsuitable if crude corticotrophin (U.S.P. standard) is the basis of comparison but if corticotrophin A (purified oxycel) is the standard of reference (e.g. the Third International Standard for Corticotrophin) the mouse method may be used legitimately for potency determinations of corticotrophin A samples.

**Richter, A W** (Research Division, AB Pharmacia, Uppsala, Sweden) **ERYTHROCYTE AGGREGATION, LETHAL DOSE, AND MOLECULAR STRUCTURE OF HYDROPHILIC COLLOIDS**

Two hydrophilic colloids, Cellosize® (hydroxyethylcellulose) and Ficoll® (a sucrose polymer), provided additional evidence regarding the influence of molecular size and structure on erythrocyte aggregation. Because of their physico chemical properties, the two colloids represent extreme examples of the influence of both highly asymmetrical and highly symmetrical molecules on the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR). The *in vitro* erythrocyte aggregating effect was determined and expressed as critical concentration, using *Thorsen* and *Hints* method. Fibrinogen, the most powerful ESR increasing plasma colloid with highly asymmetrical molecules and a molecular weight of 400,000, has a critical concentration of 0.2–0.3 per cent, the critical concentration of Cellosize® of a molecular weight of 250,000 was about 0.01 per cent. This strong erythrocyte aggregating effect is probably due to the highly asymmetrical and non-flexible Cellosize® molecules. The critical concentration of a fraction of Ficoll® with highly symmetrical molecules and a molecular weight of 2,000,000 was about 0.4 per cent. Thus increased ESR may be produced clinically by the presence in plasma of low concentrations of highly asymmetrical and rigid molecules.

It was investigated whether the *in vitro* erythrocyte aggregating power of colloids was correlated to their lethal dose in mice. By a constant infusion technique the *in vivo* mean lethal dose was estimated for a series of hydrophilic colloids including dextran fractions, Cellosize® fractions, fibrinogen and thrombin. Thrombin was included as a reference compound because it is a powerful intravascular erythrocyte aggregating agent. The lethal dose of other erythrocyte aggregating colloids were expressed relative to that of thrombin. Relative toxicities of 1–10 per cent of that of thrombin were found for five of the most toxic compounds which also proved to possess the most powerful *in vitro* aggregating effect on human erythrocytes. The concentration of five of the strongest aggregating colloid fractions necessary to produce acute lethality in mice was roughly 100 times greater than the critical

concentration required for *in vitro* ESR increasing effect and about 5 times greater than that necessary to produce maximal *in vitro* ESR increase. After infusion of half the lethal dose in mice a typical syndrome was observed comprising loss of righting reflexes and resembling general anesthesia. This may be due to cerebral hypoxia following severe intravascular erythrocyte aggregation. The fact that the lethal dose of non-erythrocyte aggregating colloid fractions is much higher than that of aggregating colloids suggests that excessive intravascular erythrocyte aggregation may contribute to the toxicity of such colloids. However other factors such as increased viscosity interference with coagulation mechanisms etc make it difficult to assess the toxic effect of severe erythrocyte aggregation *per se*.

**Roos, B E, N E Anden and B Werdinius** (Department of Pharmacology, University of Goteborg Sweden) **EFFECT OF DRUGS ON THE LEVEL OF INDOLE AND PHENOLIC ACIDS IN THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM**

A method for determining 5 hydroxy indole acetic acid (5 HIAA) in brain has been described recently. In the absence of any direct method for measuring free 5 hydroxytryptamine (5 HT) we have studied with this method the effect of reserpine and other drugs on the level of 5 HIAA in rabbit brain. Six hours after injection of reserpine the value of 5-HT decreased to about 1 per cent of normal and the corresponding value of 5 HIAA rose to about 90 per cent above normal. This high level was still found 24 h after the injection. After 36 h the level of 5-HIAA was again normal. Using a modification of this method the content of 3,4 dihydroxyphenylacetic acid (Dopac) was determined in the corpus striatum of the rabbit. Two hours after a single injection of reserpine the Dopac level was at least twice normal; after 12 h the level again had reached normal values. Three hours after injection of  $\alpha$  methyl DOPA into rabbits both 5 HT and 5-HIAA decreased to about 50 per cent of normal, suggesting inhibition of 5 HT synthesis. Simultaneous determination of the amine and its acid oxidation product might be of value in the study of the metabolism of both catechol and indole amines.

**Rosenfalck, Annelise and Fritz Buchthal (Institute of Neurophysiology University of Copenhagen Denmark) ACTION POTENTIALS FROM SENSORY NERVE**

The small action potentials from sensory nerve have been recorded by superposition in humans (Dawson 1956 Gilliatt and Sears 1958) The aim of our study was to develop a technique which would allow the small action potentials to be discriminated from noise even at a large distance from the point of stimulation and to measure conduction velocity

The digital nerves were stimulated with supramaximal pulses (12-15 mA threshold 3-5 mA) The action potentials were led off with insulated needle electrodes bared 1-3 mm at the tip and inserted close to the median nerve at the wrist, the elbow and near the axilla and recorded with single sweeps The indifferent electrodes were placed at a transverse distance of at least 25 mm from each active electrode By means of an input transformer (Nightingale 1958) the signal to noise ratio was improved 6.5 times (frequency range 15-5000 cps)

The amplitude of the action potential depends on the distance between the electrode and the nerve This distance was determined from the plot of amplitude as a function of depth of insertion With stimulation of the thumb the amplitude recorded unipolarly 2-3 mm from the median nerve at wrist, elbow and axilla averaged 31  $\mu$ V (18-50  $\mu$ V) 9.5  $\mu$ V (4-17  $\mu$ V) and 3.7 V (1.5-6 V) (10 subjects) by simultaneous stimulation of fingers I, II and III with a delay of the stimulus to finger I to give maximum response the amplitude was increased to 51  $\mu$ V (26-88  $\mu$ V) 18  $\mu$ V (7.5-29  $\mu$ V) and 9  $\mu$ V (3-12 V) respectively (6 subjects)

The conduction time was measured to the intersection of the positive-negative deflection of the action potential with the baseline The conduction velocity averaged  $63.5 \pm 0.9$  m/sec (10 subjects) and was identical between wrist and elbow and elbow and axilla Additional peaks in the action potential recorded at the elbow indicated the presence of fibres with 10-30 per cent lower velocities

The conduction time to the wrist corresponded to a 15-30 per cent slower conduction velocity than that to the elbow

**Roos, H E, N E Anden and B Werdinius** (Department of Pharmacology University of Goteborg Sweden) **EFFECT OF DRUGS ON THE LEVEL OF INDOLE AND PHENOLIC ACIDS IN THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM**

A method for determining 5-hydroxy indole acetic acid (5 HIAA) in brain has been described recently. In the absence of any direct method for measuring free 5 hydroxytryptamine (5 HT) we have studied with this method the effect of reserpine and other drugs on the level of 5 HIAA in rabbit brain. Six hours after injection of reserpine the value of 5 HT decreased to about 1 per cent of normal and the corresponding value of 5 HIAA rose to about 90 per cent above normal. This high level was still found 24 h after the injection. After 36 h the level of 5 HIAA was again normal. Using a modification of this method the content of 3,4 dihydroxyphenylacetic acid (Dopac) was determined in the corpus striatum of the rabbit. Two hours after a single injection of reserpine the Dopac level was at least twice normal, after 12 h the level again had reached normal values. Three hours after injection of a methyl DOPA into rabbits both 5-HT and 5 HIAA decreased to about 50 per cent of normal, suggesting inhibition of 5 HT synthesis. Simultaneous determination of the amine and its acid oxidation product might be of value in the study of the metabolism of both catechol and indole amines.

**Raiha Niels and Rolf Nyman (Research Laboratories of the State Alcohol Monopoly Alko Helsinki Finland) EFFECT OF ETHANOL AND NEUROGENIC STRESS ON THE ACTIVITY OF HYPOTHALAMIC CENTERS IN THE RAT**

*Rothballer (1953) Mirsky et al (1954 a b) and Saffran (1959)* have shown close interrelations between corticotrophin stimulating factors and neurohypophysial antidiuretic factors. We have examined the effect of neurogenic stimuli on the activity of the neurosecretory ganglion cells of the hypothalamus known to be activated by osmotic stimuli (*Eichner 1952*). The effect of ethanol intoxication in combination with neurogenic stress was studied as well. Changes in the activity of the ganglion cells were measured as change in the volume of the cell nucleus (*Eichner 1952*). Neurogenic stress decreased the gain in weight of the growing rats. It produced a hypertrophy of the adrenal gland presumably by a central activation of corticotrophin release. The activity of the cells in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei which were easily activated by osmotic stimuli showed no response to the neurogenic stimuli. Ethanol which has an inhibitory effect on changes in the ganglion cells of this area produced by osmotic stress (*Raiha 1960*) and which because of its central depressing action might affect also the stress reaction produced by neurogenic stimuli had no effect on adrenal hypertrophy produced by neurogenic stress.

The results obtained are similar to those found by *Rinne (1960)* and suggest that the release of corticotrophin under the influence of neurogenic stimuli takes place without the changes in the cells of the hypothalamo-neurohypophysial system which indicate increased activity.

*Rothballer A B* Changes in the rat neurohypophysis induced by painful stimuli with particular reference to neurosecretory material. *Anat Rec* 1953 115 71

*Mirsky I A M Stem and G Paulish* The secretion of an antidiuretic substance into the circulation of rats exposed to noxious stimuli. *Endocrinology* 1954 54 491-505

*Mirsky I A C Paulish and M Stem* The antidiuretic activity of the plasma of adrenalectomized hypophysectomized and adrenalectomized hypophysectomized rats. *Endocrinology* 1954 54 691-697

*Saffran M* Activation of ACTH release by neurohypophysial peptides. *Canad J Biochem* 1959 37 319-379



axilla The slowing was not due solely to distal displacement of the point of stimulation and was localized mainly in the fingers, since the velocity in the hand was of the same order as in the arm

Dawson G D The relative excitability and conduction velocity of sensory and motor nerve fibres in man *J Physiol (Lond)* 1956 *131* 436-451

Gillhott R W and T A Sears Sensory nerve action potentials in patients with peripheral nerve lesion *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiat* 1958 *21* 109-118

Nightingale A The sensitivity of low frequency valve amplifiers for electromyography *J sci Instrum* 1958 *35* 366-371

**Salmi, Heikka A and Ilmari Lindgren (Department of Pathological Anatomy and Department of Physiology, University of Turku Finland) THE LOCALIZATION OF RADIOVITAMIN B<sub>12</sub> <sup>5</sup> Co IN RAT KIDNEY**

In a recent study of the metabolism of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> in the foetal organism (Salmi 1963) it was observed by autoradiography that radiovitamin B<sub>12</sub> had a characteristic localization in the proximal convoluted tubuli of rat kidney. We have investigated whether this occurs only in the foetal kidney or also in the adult renal tissue.

Adult rats were injected with 10  $\mu$ C vitamin B<sub>12</sub> <sup>5</sup> Co (specific activity 81  $\mu$ C/ $\mu$ g) and the rats sacrificed at different intervals up to 4 weeks. Scintillation counting was performed on kidney homogenates. Samples were taken for high resolution autoradiography and ordinary stripping film technique was employed.

The radioactivity increased during the first hours after injection. Then it decreased continuously in agreement with results obtained from foetal kidney. The autoradiography showed no differences between the adult and foetal kidney. The activity was localized in the vicinity of the glomeruli and in the proximal convoluted tubuli. As the activity was localized in fairly large zones near the glomeruli it also covered the juxtaglomerular cells. The areas of high activity in the proximal tubuli diminished with time and after 4 weeks there was only uniform activity throughout. The distal convoluted tubuli did not show any pronounced activity.

The localization of radiovitamin in the proximal tubuli is of interest in view of the relationship between proximal tubular cells and vitamin B<sub>12</sub> metabolism (Jones *et al* 1955 Newberne and O'Dell 1959).

Jones, C. C., S. O. Brown, L. R. Richardson and J. G. Sinclair. Tissue abnormalities in newborn rats from vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficient mothers. *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1955 90 135-140.

Newberne, P. M. and B. L. O'Dell. Pathology of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency in infant rats. *J Nutr* 1959 68 343-358.

Salmi, H. A. Comparative studies on vitamin B<sub>12</sub> in developing organism and placenta. Human and animal investigations with reference to the effects of low vitamin B<sub>12</sub> diet on tissue vitamin B<sub>12</sub> concentrations in rat. *Ann Acad Sci fenn Ser A* 1963 No 103.

- Eichner D Über functionelle Kernschwellung in den Nuclei Supraoptici und Paraventriculares des Hundes bei experimentellen Durstzuständen  
Z Zellforsch 1952 37 406-414
- Raiha N Effect of ethanol on cytological changes induced by salt load in nucleus supraopticus of rat Proc Soc exp Biol (NY) 1960 103 387-389
- Rinne U K Neurosecretory material around the hypophysial portal vessels in the median eminence of the rat Acta endocrin (Kbh) 1960 35 Suppl 57

**Saltin B and S Kozlowski (Department of Physiology Gymnastiska  
Centralinstitutet and Department of Endocrinology Karolinska  
Sjukhuset, Stockholm Sweden) EFFECT OF DEHYDRATION ON THE BODY FLUIDS**

Six healthy men were studied under normal conditions and after dehydration caused by sweating produced (i) in a sauna at 70–90° C (ii) by hard muscular work at 17.5–20.0° C and (iii) by light work at 36–40° C. The dehydration periods lasted for 2–4 h. Body weight, Evans blue space and thiosulfate space were determined before and about 90 min after the dehydration period.

After the work period in the hot environment (iii) Evans blue space decreased to the same extent as previously shown by Adolph (1947) but after the stay in the sauna (i) the Evans blue space and thiosulfate space were reduced more. After the hard work (ii) little or no decrease was found in thiosulfate space and Evans blue space in spite of a water deficit of about 6 per cent of the body weight.

Water liberated from combustion of fat and carbohydrates plus water previously stored with glycogen can account for up to about 2 l of the water loss.

An increase in blood potassium during and after the exercise suggests a further water leakage from the cells.

Adolph, E. F. (editor) *Physiology of Man in the Desert*, Interscience  
New York 1947 Chapter X

**Saltin, B (Department of Physiology Gymnastiska Centralinstitutet, Stockholm, Sweden) CIRCULATORY RESPONSE TO STANDARD EXERCISE BEFORE AND AFTER EXPOSURE TO HEAVY EXERCISE OR HEAT**

In the morning before heat exposure in a sauna oxygen uptake, heart rate, cardiac output (acetylene method) and blood lactic acid were measured on subjects working with two standard loads demanding an oxygen uptake of about 45 and 70 per cent respectively of the subject's maximum

I After the dehydration period the subjects rested until rectal temperature had decreased to resting value ( $37.2^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) The same measurements were repeated with the standard loads and a maximal load

II In another study 5 subjects were examined during work for three hours with a load corresponding to about 70 per cent of their maximal aerobic capacity After 60-90 min rest the measurements were repeated with both the submaximal load and a maximal one Cardiac output was determined by a dye dilution technique By comparing the data obtained in studies after work or heat exposure with the 'normal' values no difference in oxygen uptake was found with submaximal loads With maximal loads the decrease in maximal oxygen uptake was insignificant Heart rate was increased with the submaximal loads, most pronounced in series II Maximal heart rate was unchanged Cardiac output did not change significantly either on submaximal or on maximal loads Hence the stroke volume was diminished during submaximal loads but unchanged during maximal exercise Work time and blood lactate level in the maximal exercise test were significantly reduced in both series

**Sedvall, Goran (Department of Pharmacology Karolinska Institutet  
Stockholm Sweden) NORADRENALINE CONTENT OF  
CAT SKELETAL MUSCLE FOLLOWING PRE AND  
POSTGANGLIONIC SYMPATHETIC DENERVATION**

Noradrenaline levels in extracts of cat skeletal muscle purified by cation exchange chromatography were determined fluorimetrically. Removal of the lumbosacral sympathetic chain caused a slow increase in noradrenaline content of the muscles in the hind limbs during the first two days. Then muscle noradrenaline decreased abruptly and was depressed considerably after four days. Fourteen days after sympathectomy the muscles were practically devoid of noradrenaline indicating that skeletal muscle noradrenaline is stored predominantly in sympathetic nerves. Transection of the sympathetic chain at the level of L4 and L5 (preganglionic denervation) caused an increase in muscle noradrenaline during the first five days, the average content being about 30 per cent above the normal level. Fourteen days after preganglionic denervation control and denervated muscles had about the same amount of noradrenaline. The raised noradrenaline levels in the muscles during the first days after sympathetic denervations indicate that the transmitter store of the sympathetic nerves in muscle normally is in a state of slight functional depletion.

**Sandberg, Nils (Department of Physiology University of Lund  
Sweden) SOME ASPECTS OF THE EFFECT OF COR  
TISONE ON WOUND HEALING**

The time relationship between administration of cortisone and healing of wounds in rats and the effect of cortisone on the rate of histamine formation in skin and skin wounds were studied

Cortisone (11-dehydro-17 hydroxycorticosterone acetate) was given in water suspension intramuscularly in a daily single dose of 40 mg/kg body weight. The tensile strength of healing skin wounds was reduced on the 7th day, when cortisone was given during the healing period with the first injection on the day of wound infliction or one day later. When the wounds were allowed to heal for the first 2 days or longer without administration of cortisone to the rats, the tensile strength was not reduced in 7 day old skin wounds. Treatment for 3 days with cortisone before infliction of wounds reduced the tensile strength of 5 and 7 day old skin wounds. Pre-treatment with cortisone decreased the concentration and total amount of the collagen constituent hydroxyproline in granulation tissue of polyvinyl sponges subcutaneously implanted for 5 and 7 days. Thus cortisone exerts its effects during the very early course of healing.

The rate of histamine formation was determined by isotope dilution in 24 and 48 h old wound tissue consisting of excised dorsal wounds in rat skin. Cortisone given for 3 days before infliction of the wounds reduced the elevated rate of histamine formation in wound tissue as compared with wound tissue from the same rat before treatment with cortisone. The rate of histamine formation of intact skin decreased after cortisone treatment. The results suggest that the effect of cortisone on wound healing is due, at least in part to the reduced rate of histamine formation.

**Skadhauge, E (Institute of Medical Physiology University of Copenhagen Denmark) DOES ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE ACT ON KIDNEY CELLS FROM THE BLOOD SIDE OR FROM THE URINE SIDE?**

To investigate whether the antidiuretic hormone acts on the distal part of the nephron when reaching it from the blood or the urine side synthetic arginine vasotocin was injected into the one renal portal circulation of conscious hens lightly sedated with phenobarbital. The fowls were hydrated intravenously with a one third isotonic NaCl NaHCO<sub>3</sub>-glucose solution which resulted in a control urine flow of 0.6-0.8 ml/min from each ureter with a pH of 7-8 and without glucose. The urine was collected in a time controlled fraction collector through small polyethylene funnels sewn over the ureters with the animals in their normal sitting position. To avoid influence of the peristaltic movements collection periods were 5 min or more.

A greater antidiuresis (i.e. decrease in diuresis and increase in urine osmolality) was found on the side where the injection was performed indicating that antidiuretic hormone acts when delivered to the tubular cells from the blood side.

Five to ten ng of arginine vasotocin caused an antidiuresis identical with or lower than that caused by the pain involved in venipunctures. With such doses no changes of the glomerular filtration rate or the renal blood flow occurred as determined by the inulin and p-aminohippuric acid clearance. Higher doses however depressed both filtration rate and blood flow. It was confirmed that the glomerular filtration rate increased with increasing hydration.



Smith, R S (Nobel Institute for Neurophysiology, Karolinska Institutet, Stockholm, Sweden) INTRAFUSAL MUSCULATURE IN *XENOPUS LAEVIS*

The electrical activity of the intrafusal musculature in *Xenopus laevis* was investigated in semi isolated muscle spindle preparations (Koketsu and Nishi 1957) by the technique of recording across the spindle capsule with a microelectrode (Buchthal and Jahn 1957) Movement of the intrafusal muscles was observed microscopically

Examination of the electrode geometry showed that the membrane current integrated over some length of fibre would be recorded The capsular membrane had a resistivity of about 4000 cm and a characteristic length of about 0.7 mm

Threshold stimulation of the nerve was associated with a twitch like movement of the intrafusal muscle bundle and a triphasic, short latency, electrical response Supramaximal stimulation of the nerve with the large motor fibres anodally blocked was associated with a markedly slower movement of the intrafusal muscle bundle and a long latency triphasic electrical response of smaller amplitude than the short latency response Conduction velocities of the nerves giving a short latency muscle response were estimated at 10–27 m/sec and for those giving the long latency response 1–5 m/sec The amplitudes and latencies of the electrical responses were not altered when both types were allowed to occur following a single supramaximal stimulus

A single supramaximal nerve stimulus produced either three or two electrical responses of muscle two of the short latency type and one long latency, or one of each type Histological examination of the muscle spindles revealed that they contained either three (diameters approximately 15 $\mu$ , 15 $\mu$  and 7 $\mu$ ) or two (diameters approximately 15 $\mu$  and 7 $\mu$ ) muscle fibres

It is concluded that the muscle spindles of *Xenopus* contain large twitch and small slowly contracting muscle fibres with separate innervation from large and small diameter motor axons

Buchthal F and U Jahn Spontaneous activity in isolated muscle spindles  
*Acta physiol scand 1957 42 Suppl 145 25–27*

Koketsu K and S Nishi Action potentials of single intrafusal muscle fibres of frogs *J Physiol (Lond)* 1957 137 193–209

**Sjahn, David\*, G Kahlson, Elsa Rosengren and R Thunberg (Institute of Physiology University of Lund Sweden) MOBILIZATION AND INCREASED RATE OF FORMATION OF HISTAMINE IN THE GASTRIC MUCOSA ELICITED BY GASTRIN AND FOOD**

Histidine decarboxylase has been found in the gastric mucosa of all species investigated in this laboratory man dog cat rat guinea pig mouse and frog The histamine forming capacity (HFC) is much higher in the regions containing HCl secreting cells than in the pyloric region A correlation between parietal cells and HFC has been seen in horizontal frozen sections of human mucosa

On injecting gastrin in a fasted rat a mobilization of pre formed mucosal histamine ensued as shown by a reduction in the mucosal content of histamine Feeding or injecting gastrin in fasted animals evoked a striking elevation of the mucosal HFC as determined isotopically This effect has been seen in the three species so far investigated rat mouse and frog Injections of histamine had no such effect If on feeding olive oil was added to the standard meal the elevation of HFC was of lesser magnitude than without oil

**Strøjer Rasmussen, P (Biochemical Institute, University of Aarhus, Denmark)\* CHROMATOGRAPHIC FRACTIONATION OF PROTAMINE ON AMBERLITE IRC 50 COLUMNS WITH GUANIDINIUM CHLORIDE**

In the studies to be reported protamine was fractionated chromatographically by the technique previously applied to histone (for references see, *Strøjer Rasmussen Murray and Murray Luck 1962*)

By chromatography clupeine from herring was fractionated into two main fractions (I and II) The shape of fraction I indicates that it is heterogeneous The ascending and descending parts of the two eluate peaks were each desalted on Sephadex G 25 columns and the protamine fractions were lyophilized

Analysis of the amino acid composition of the two parts of clupeine fraction I likewise indicated heterogeneity The amino acid composition of the ascending and descending parts of clupeine fraction II were identical Calculated with respect to the smallest number of whole amino acid molecules, clupeine fraction II contains 20 (20.3) arginine, 2 (2.2) serine 2 (2.1) proline 3 (2.9) alanine and 2 (1.9) valine residues (experimental values in brackets) Based on the amino acid composition the minimum molecular weight is 3922

Strøjer Rasmussen P K. Murray and J. Murray Luck Biochemistry 1962 1 79

\* Part of this work was carried out at the Department of Chemistry Stanford University California U.S.A. and supported by a grant from the National Institute of Health United States Public Health Service (Grant C-484)

Svensmark, O., Human serum cholinesterase as a sialo-protein *Acta physiol scand* 1961 52 267-275

Svensmark, O and P Kristensen, Isoelectric point of native and sialidase treated human serum cholinesterase *Biochim biophys Acta* 1963 67 441-452

**Svensmark, O** (Institute of Neurophysiology, University of Copenhagen, Denmark) **PRECURSORS OF SERUM CHOLIN ESTERASE IN HUMAN LIVER**

It is generally assumed that serum cholinesterase (acetylcholine acyl hydrolase, EC 3.1.1.8) is produced in the liver as liver damage and certain liver diseases cause a decrease in serum cholinesterase activity. To investigate whether liver contains the same type of enzyme as serum, liver cholinesterases were studied with respect to enzymatic properties, electrophoretic mobility (Svensmark and Arstensen 1963), and effect of neuraminidase on the enzymes (Svensmark 1961).

Two main fractions of cholinesterase (I and II) were separated by diethylaminoethyl-cellulose chromatography of aqueous extracts of human liver tissue from which the blood was thoroughly removed. One of these fractions (I) was subdivided into two fractions by gel filtration on Sephadex G-200. One fraction (Id) appeared immediately after the void volume, as did human serum cholinesterase, another fraction (Ie) was retarded on the column which indicates a molecular weight for the protein lower than that of serum cholinesterase. All three fractions were identical with serum cholinesterase with respect to substrate and inhibitor specificity, pH dependence and activation by ammonium ions.

The electrophoretic mobilities at pH 4-9 of fraction II and serum cholinesterase were identical. After enzymatic removal of sialic acid the mobility of fraction II was increased as was that of serum cholinesterase. This indicates that the enzyme is a sialo-protein. The electrophoretic mobilities of fraction Id and Ie were unaffected by treatment with neuraminidase showing that these enzymes are not sialo-proteins. The mobilities of both fractions differed from those of native and sialic acid free serum cholinesterase.

It is unlikely that fraction I originates from a degradation of fraction II since the relative activity of the fraction did not increase after standing of the homogenate at 25° C for 10 days. The findings are therefore consistent with the assumption that serum cholinesterase is produced in the liver with fraction Id and Ie as precursors, and fraction II as the final product.

Thorsen, T., K. F. Sjøa and O. Aarskog (Hormone Laboratory University of Bergen Norway) URINARY ALPHA KETOLIC OESTROGENS IN THE NEWBORN

Oestrogenic substances occur in the urine of newborns as shown by biological and chemical methods. The main oestrogenic steroid excreted during the first 4-5 days of life is oestrinol whereas oestrone and  $17\beta$ -oestradiol are present in hardly detectable amounts even following intramuscular injection of relatively high doses of  $17\beta$ -oestradiol (Diczfalusy et al 1957 Barr et al 1961). The role of the foetal oestrogen metabolism in pregnancy has been studied by the same group of investigators (Diczfalusy et al 1961) and the influence of foetal liver and brain damage or of the foeto-placental circulation on the maternal oestrogen excretion is well recognized (Cassmer 1959 Frandsen and Stakemann 1960 Coyle 1962). This indicates that the intermediary metabolism of  $17\beta$ -oestradiol in the foetus and newborn is qualitatively different from that observed in the adult and that the foetal contribution to the oestrogen biosynthesis and metabolism is of importance in normal pregnancy.

In most of these studies the method of Brown (1955) was used. Consequently the interest has been mainly centered on oestrone,  $17\beta$ -oestradiol and oestrinol. However a number of other phenolic steroids enter into the metabolic sequence of the oestrogenic hormones. The most important of these metabolites are 16-epioestrinol and the ring D  $\alpha$  ketolic oestrogens (Hobkirk 1963). By means of a spectrofluorimetric technique (Sjøa and Thorsen 1962) combined with column and paper chromatography determination of the total  $\alpha$  ketolic fraction in separate 24 h urine samples as well as identification of 16 $\alpha$  hydroxy-oestrone and 16-oxo- $17\beta$ -oestradiol in pooled urine from newborn infants have been carried out. The results obtained confirm previous investigations on the oestrogen metabolism of the foetus and the newborn.

- Barr H. E. Diczfalusy and A.-G. Tällinger Acta endocr (Kbh) 1961 37  
41  
Brown J. B., Biochem J 1955 60 183  
Cassmer O. Acta endocr (Kbh) 1959 Suppl 45  
Coyle M. G. J Endocrin 1962 25 VIII

**Thorn, N A and N B S Willumsen** (Institute of Medical Physiology, University of Copenhagen, Denmark) **DIRECT AND INDIRECT EFFECTS OF HIGH CONCENTRATIONS OF UREA ON THE PERMEABILITY OF RAT KIDNEY CELLS TO WATER**

During dehydration the concentration of urea in the inner zones of kidney papillae may reach values approaching those of the urine. The maximum urinary concentrations reported were 1.7 M for rats and 2.5 M for carnivora. We have investigated the effect of high concentrations of urea on the inactivation of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) by renal papillary tissue and on the water content of such tissue.

The white papillary zones were isolated from kidney slices (0.4 mm thick) and transferred to Warburg vessels containing Robinson's medium (1956) to which various concentrations of urea were added. Parallel sets of slices kept in media without urea served as controls. Urea in concentrations above 0.5 M consistently increased the water content of papillary slices incubated without hormone. In other experiments 0.2 IU of a commercial preparation of arginine vasopressin was added to each vessel and incubated aerobically with slices for 2 h. The amount of hormone inactivated was determined by bioassay after the incubation. Increasing concentrations of urea caused increasing inhibition of the inactivation with 0.5 M and 1 M urea the inhibition being 10 and 50 per cent. With these concentrations and short time exposure the inhibition was reversible. These findings indicate an inhibition of the ADH inactivating enzyme system. A corresponding effect of urea (in concentrations lower than those causing denaturation) on other enzyme systems has been reported (Rajagopalan Fridovich and Handler 1961).

It is generally assumed that urea merely plays a passive role in the concentrating mechanism by its contribution to the osmolality of the urine depending on the permeability characteristics of the different parts of the nephron. In addition to this effect urea in high concentration may interfere with the permeability to water in the most distal part of the nephron, directly and by changing the metabolism of the antidiuretic hormone.

Tygstrup N, A Winkler and F Lundquist (Department of Biochemistry and Cardiologic Laboratory of the Medical Department II Rigshospitalet University of Copenhagen Denmark)  
**THE INFLUENCE OF ETHANOL ON THE HEPATIC FRUCTOSE METABOLISM IN MAN**

The hepatic fructose metabolism was examined in six subjects by hepatic venous catheterization. After a control period infusion of 10 mmoles fructose per min was started. The splanchnic uptake of fructose averaged 2.30 mmoles/min. This uptake could be partly accounted for by the following changes. An increase in the output of lactate corresponding to 1.03 mmoles/min of fructose, of pyruvate corresponding to 0.16 mmoles/min and of glucose corresponding to 0.15 mmoles/min. There was an uptake of sorbitol of 0.20 mmoles/min and the arterio-venous difference of glycerol was not significant. Thus 1.22 mmoles of fructose per min must have been either metabolized to carbon dioxide and water or stored in the liver probably as glycogen.

Fructose was added to an infusion of ethanol in 8 subjects. On the average 3.01 mmoles were taken up in the splanchnic organs per min. The increase in lactate output corresponded to 0.34 mmoles, the output of pyruvate decreased corresponding to 0.02 mmoles and the output of glucose rose by 1.40 mmoles per min. 0.69 mmoles were given off as sorbitol and 0.10 mmoles as glycerol. Thus 0.48 mmoles must have been oxidized completely or stored.

As judged from the increase in the splanchnic production of carbon dioxide only a minor part is completely metabolized unless the carbon dioxide produced arises from nothing but fructose. In the latter case about half of the fructose uptake not accounted for by metabolites is oxidized. This applies to both types of experiment.

Comparison between the two types of experiment shows the following effects of ethanol on fructose metabolism:

- 1) The sum of reduced metabolites (sorbitol + lactate + glycerol) and the ratio lactate/pyruvate are increased.
- 2) The output of lactate, pyruvate and carbon dioxide is reduced.
- 3) The output of glucose is increased.



- Diczfalusy E O Cassmer C Alonso and M De Miquel *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1961 37 353
- Diczfalusy E K G Tillinger and A Westman, *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1957 26 303
- Frandsen V A and G Stakemann *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1961 38 383
- Hobkirk ■ *J clin Endocr* 1963 23 279
- Støa K F and T Thorsen *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1962 41 481

Ussing H H (Institute of Biological Chemistry University of Copenhagen Denmark) EFFECTS OF HYPERTONICITY PRODUCED BY UREA ON ACTIVE TRANSPORT AND PASSIVE DIFFUSION THROUGH THE ISOLATED FROG SKIN

Recent studies of the electrical potential profile across the frog skin epithelium using *Ling Gerard* micro-electrodes (Ussing and Windhager 1963) are essentially in agreement with the model proposed by Ussing and Koefoed Johnsen (1956) and Hoshiko and Engbæk (1956) but the model has to be modified in certain respects

Thus the sodium permeable and potassium impermeable membrane must be located immediately underneath the very thin cornified layer. The nature of the potential profile can best be explained if it is assumed that all the living cells of the epithelium are connected through the intercellular bridges in a syncytium like fashion allowing active sodium transport inward by the cellular path whereas the interspaces allow a certain shunting of the sodium battery by diffusion of anions inward and sodium outward

That such an arrangement exists receives support from observations on the responses of the skin when the outside medium is made hypertonic by addition of urea. If a skin is suspended with sulphate Ringer on both sides and urea is then added to the outside compartment to make the solution twice isotonic the d.c. resistance of the skin may drop to one fifth in less than one hour. Tracer experiments show that the drop in resistance is due to an enormous increase in the passive diffusion of sulphate as well as sodium. At the same time the short-circuit current (which is a measure of the active sodium transport) usually remains practically constant. That the shunt conductance of the skin and the shunt by passive leakage of sodium in particular can be increased so dramatically without influencing the active sodium transport markedly makes it unlikely that the shunt is established through the actively transporting cells. Urea may be assumed to reduce reversibly the resistance of a barrier which normally impedes the access to the interspaces between the epithelial cells. The same barrier may cover the whole outer face of the epithelium since urea elicits an increase in the water permeability of the outer barrier of the epithelium cells as evidenced

4) The calculated storage as glycogen is reduced

5) The splanchnic oxygen consumption is increased more than can be accounted for by the metabolites examined

The first two and in part the third observation may be explained on the basis of an increased NADH/NAD ratio)\* in the liver. Formation of glycerol phosphate probably plays an important role

\* Reduced nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide/nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide ratio

**Valleala, P., H Lang and T Tuovinen (Department of Physiology  
University of Turku Finland) AMYGDALOID AFTER DIS-  
CHARGE AND GALVANIC SKIN RESPONSE**

This investigation was carried out on lightly anesthetized cats immobilized by succinyl choline. Stimulation of amygdala and recording of the amygdaloid after discharge (AA) were made in the basolateral part of this nucleus. Galvanic skin response (GSR) was recorded from the volar surface of the fore paw by a DC amplifier. The term phasic GSR is used for a reaction of short duration and sinusoidal form. Tonic GSR indicates a response of long duration and steady flat form. In animals under light anesthesia there is also spontaneous undulation of the skin potential which in this study is called background galvanic skin activity (GSA).

When the amygdaloid stimulation was subliminal for AA, GSR was phasic or absent. In amygdaloid stimulations in which AA occurred GSR was tonic.

The final phases of AA and tonic GSR showed a certain temporal relation. Attempts were made to abolish this relationship by pharmacological means. Xylocaine® (3 mg/kg i.v.) was without influence in that it shortened the amygdaloid after-discharge and GSR equally. The latency, amplitude and tonic character of GSR remained unchanged. The shortening of tonic GSR was in this case the immediate outcome of the reduced duration of the amygdaloid discharge. Nembutal® disrupted the temporal relationship between the final phases of AA and GSR in that it shortened the duration of AA less than Xylocaine® but had a pronounced effect on GSR. Its duration was shortened, amplitude decreased and latency lengthened. The results after Nembutal® represent the only cases in which tonic GSR was absent although there was an amygdaloid after-discharge. The possibility that the tonic GSR is a secondary phenomenon caused by projections of AA to the brain stem is discussed.

by their osmotic behaviour measured by the technique of *MacRobbie* and *Ussing* (1961)

Ussing H H and V Kofoed Johnsen Abstr Intern Physiol Congr  
Brussels 1956

Hoshiko T and L Engbæk Abstr Intern Physiol Congr Brussels 1956

MacRobbie E A C and H H Ussing Acta physiol scand 1961 53  
348-365

Ussing H H and E E Windhager 1963 In preparation

Weis Fogh, Torkel (Zoophysiological Laboratory B University of  
Copenhagen Denmark) DIFFUSION IN INSECT WING  
MUSCLE

The fibres of insect wing muscle are striated and they often approach giant dimensions. Nevertheless wing muscle represents the most active aerobic tissue known the metabolic rate corresponding to 0.5–2.5 kWatt/kg muscle. Insects lack a closed vascular system but have a highly developed system of air tubes which branch and taper profusely so that the terminal tracheoles have a diameter of only  $0.1 \mu$ . The problem is to account for the enormous exchanges of respiratory gases and of fuel by means of four different mechanisms obviously at the disposal of a flying insect: (1) ventilation of the tracheal system by means of respiratory movements; (2) local pumping of air and blood due to the length changes of the muscles themselves; (3) diffusion of gas in the air tubes; and (4) diffusion of dissolved gas and fuel in blood and tissue.

The large wing muscles of dragonflies (*Aeshna spp.*) were found to be organized in a sufficiently regular way to make possible detailed investigation on muscular pumping and diffusion. The results were extended by comparisons with other insects.

In all insects muscular pumping is essential not for moving air but for the exchange of blood (haemolymph) between the interior and the exterior of whole muscle. Nevertheless the tidal character of the pumping is shown to make necessary a very high concentration of fuel: 5–10 mg/ml in most insects. The high content of trehalose or protein bound lipids or of both in winged insects is therefore probably an adaptation to flapping flight. In addition some fibres are so large and active that the difference in concentration of carbohydrate between the plasma membrane and the centre must also reach 5–10 mg/ml but no direct estimates are available.

As to exchange in the tracheal system small insects like *Drosophila* depend exclusively on diffusion but in larger insects the primary air tubes are and must be strongly ventilated. In the remaining 1–2 mm of the pathways diffusion is the only effective mechanism and is found to be sufficient because of the large hole fraction. Between  $10^{-1}$  and  $10^{-3}$  of any cut surface area consists of air passages.

The exchange between air tubes and the sites of consumption

**Wahlstrom, Goran** (Institute of Pharmacology, University of Uppsala, Sweden) **RESETTING OF THE BIOLOGICAL CLOCK CONTROLLING THE SELF-SELECTED CIRCADIAN RHYTHM IN THE CANARY**

A method to study self-selected circadian rhythm in the canary has been developed. A cage is used thoroughly protected from outer light and in which there are two perches. When the bird sits on one of the perches (night perch) the light in the cage is extinguished. The other perch (activity perch) is used to measure the activity during the light period. With this method most of the birds put singly into the cages develop a circadian rhythm with only one period of activity and one of rest. The circadian period consisting of activity and rest is about 24 h but often longer or shorter. The waking up times are taken as start and end points of the circadian period, they are more constant than the retiring times.

Experiments have been performed where the self selection situation has been temporarily abolished by extinguishing the light. When these extrogenous dark periods occur within the normal activity period and thus form an interruption of it there is no change in waking up or retiring time as compared with the pre-experimental period.

When a dark period is placed so as to cover one waking up time there is a definite influence on the following one. If the duration of the light interruption  $D$  (calculated from the time the bird jumps off the night perch to the time the light is turned on) is shorter than 3 h, the next waking-up time is delayed by approximately  $D$  hours. If  $D$  is longer than 3 h the delay is only about 3 h irrespectively of the length of  $D$ . Once a delay has occurred it is not compensated later. The rhythm goes on from a new starting point the clock has been reset. Even with a rather long  $D$  there is no or only a slight delay of the following retiring time. The delays seen in the waking up times thus could not be secondary to a primary effect on the retiring time.

Weis-Fogh Torkel (Zoophysiological Laboratory B University of  
Copenhagen Denmark) DIFFUSION IN INSECT WING  
MUSCLE

The fibres of insect wing muscle are striated and they often approach giant dimensions. Nevertheless wing muscle represents the most active aerobic tissue known: the metabolic rate corresponding to 0.5–2.5 kWatt/kg muscle. Insects lack a closed vascular system but have a highly developed system of air tubes which branch and taper profusely so that the terminal tracheoles have a diameter of only 0.1  $\mu$ . The problem is to account for the enormous exchanges of respiratory gases and of fuel by means of four different mechanisms obviously at the disposal of a flying insect: (1) ventilation of the tracheal system by means of respiratory movements; (2) local pumping of air and blood due to the length changes of the muscles themselves; (3) diffusion of gas in the air tubes; and (4) diffusion of dissolved gas and fuel in blood and tissue.

The large wing muscles of dragonflies (*Aeshna spp.*) were found to be organized in a sufficiently regular way to make possible detailed investigation on muscular pumping and diffusion. The results were extended by comparisons with other insects.

In all insects muscular pumping is essential not for moving air but for the exchange of blood (haemolymph) between the interior and the exterior of whole muscle. Nevertheless the tidal character of the pumping is shown to make necessary a very high concentration of fuel: 5–10 mg/ml in most insects. The high content of trehalose or protein bound lipids or of both in winged insects is therefore probably an adaptation to flapping flight. In addition some fibres are so large and active that the difference in concentration of carbohydrate between the plasma membrane and the centre must also reach 5–10 mg/ml but no direct estimates are available.

As to exchange in the tracheal system, small insects like *Drosophila* depend exclusively on diffusion but in larger insects the primary air tubes are and must be strongly ventilated. In the remaining 1–2 mm of the pathways diffusion is the only effective mechanism and is found to be sufficient because of the large hole fraction. Between  $10^1$  and  $10^3$  of any cut surface area consists of air passages.

The exchange between air tubes and the sites of consumption



takes place *via* the tracheoles, which must approach the mitochondria to within 5–10  $\mu$ . In most cases they indent the fibre surface and form an internal network two or three times more dense than necessary. *Odonata* and *Blattidae* have no internal tracheoles and the respiring cortex of the fibres is reduced to the limiting thickness of 8–10  $\mu$ . The peculiar alternate, lamellar arrangement of fibrils and giant mitochondria in these insects may improve diffusion of oxygen as compared with the diffusion in an isotropic system.

**Werdinius B, N E Anden and B E Roos (Department of Pharmacology University of Göteborg Sweden) ON THE OCCURRENCE OF PHENOLIC ACIDS IN BRAIN AND CEREBROSPINAL FLUID**

The metabolism of the catecholamines in the brain is only partly known. Dopamine is located mainly in the corpus striatum and has probably a function of its own in the extrapyramidal system. Through the enzymes monoamine oxidase (MAO) and catechol O-methyltransferase (COMT) both present in the brain dopamine is degraded to homovanillic acid (HVA). By the action of MAO alone dopamine is converted into 3,4-dihydroxyphenylacetic acid (DOPAC) which may in turn be converted to HVA by COMT. Dopamine may also be attacked first by COMT then by MAO to form HVA.

A fluorometric method for the determination of HVA in brain and cerebrospinal fluid has been developed and we have studied the effect of reserpine and some other drugs on the HVA level of the rabbit corpus striatum. Various parts of the human brain were examined in necropsy material both from persons without cerebral diseases and from patients with parkinsonism.

**Wiesendanger, M** (Institute of Neurophysiology, University of Copenhagen, Denmark) **RIGIDITY IN CHRONICALLY DEAFFERENTED CATS**

Reports of the effect of chronic deafferentation of a limb upon posture and locomotion are controversial *Sherrington* (1897/98) found abolished postural tone after acute and chronic deafferentation in cats and monkeys *Ranson* (1928) elicited extensor hyper-tonus by chronic intradural deafferentation in cats I have reinvestigated the effect of chronic unilateral deafferentation (L3-5 to S2-3) in 13 cats In seven, the dorsal roots were cut extradurally and in six intradurally Only animals with loss of sensibility tested by squeezing and pinprick were included Both intradurally and extradurally operated cats had a scoliosis convex to the side of the operation, which often interfered with standing and stepping During sitting, standing, stepping and jumping the deafferented limb was held in an extended position it often slipped backwards or side-wards and touched the ground with the dorsum of the pad The tendency to keep the deafferented hind leg extended—seen both in extradurally and intradurally operated cats—increased for 3-4 weeks The scratch reflex was more readily elicited on the deafferented side, tonic neck- and labyrinthine reflexes were not exaggerated Only intradurally operated cats had disturbances in the function of the bladder In a standardized position (sling) in intradurally deafferented legs, the electrical activity of the extensor muscles exceeded that of the normal side in extradurally deafferented legs—as in normal legs—activity in the extensor muscles was absent or slight A typical supporting reaction was absent in both but intradurally deafferented legs showed varying degrees of resistance when supported Electrical stimulation (4 pulses 0.1 msec 500/sec) of the plantar nerve on the non-deafferented side provoked a burst of activity in the flexors as well as in the extensors of the deafferented leg In the extensors of extradurally operated legs a burst of about 50 msec occurred only with high strength of stimulation (4-8 times the threshold of the response in the flexor muscles) in intradurally deafferented legs the response evoked in the extensor muscles was more pronounced often lasted for several seconds and had the same low threshold as the response of the flexors Thus ■

true hypertonus of extensor muscles is only present in intradurally deafferented cats probably due to damage to the spinal cord. The occurrence of bladder disturbances is consistent with this interpretation (*Sprong* 1929)

Ranson ■ W., The role of the dorsal roots in muscle tonus. *Arch Neurol Psychiat* (Chicago) 1928 19 201-241

Sherrington, C ■ Decerebrate rigidity and reflex coordination of movements. *J Physiol (Lond)* 1897/98 22 319-332

Sprong, W L. A study of reflexes in the deafferented leg of the cat and their relation to tonus. *Bull J Hopk Hosp* 1929 45 371-395

**Wiesendanger, Mario and Arne Mosfeldt Laursen** (Institute of Neurophysiology, University of Copenhagen Denmark) **THE EFFECT OF THE PYRAMIDAL TRACT ON FLEXORS AND EXTENSORS IN CATS**

Reports of the effect of section of the medullary pyramids are controversial. A number of authors, beginning with *Magendie* (1834) found no effect on movements. Other observers reported extensor hypertonus (pyramidal rigidity *Ranson* 1932), some found it most pronounced in the contralateral upper (*Ranson* 1932), others in the lower extremities (*Liddell* and *Phillips* 1946). *Marshall* (1934) and *Tower* (1936) believed the extension to be due to hypofunction of flexor reflexes.

To decide whether extensor hypertonus is produced or flexor reflexes are reduced we have recorded muscle action potentials from one to three weeks after unilateral or bilateral pyramidotomy. With the cat supported in a sling and the paws free of the ground activity was absent in both flexors and extensors as in normal cats. Passive flexion elicited the same degree of activity in ipsilateral and contralateral extensors. The flexion elicited by pinching the skin of the foot appeared later and was less pronounced in the contralateral legs.

That the pyramidal tract acts predominantly on flexors was confirmed by stimulation of the medullary pyramids before and after section of the rest of the medulla oblongata (*Lloyd* 1941). With the pyramids preserved the movements evoked in decerebrate cats were complex and variable (*Landau* 1952). After isolation of the pyramids one and five sec trains of rectangular stimuli (100/sec 0.1 msec) evoked short bursts of activity confined to the flexors of the contralateral forelimb.

This is in agreement with the finding that the pyramidal tract in cats is distributed mainly to the cervical part of the spinal cord (*Wall McCulloch Lettvin* and *Pitts* 1956). Sensitive measures such as summation of pyramidal and monosynaptic afferent stimuli (*Lloyd* 1941), may be necessary to detect the pyramidal effect on the lumbar cord. That flexors were activated is in agreement with the results of intracellular recording from motoneurons (*Lundberg* and *Voorhoeve* 1962).

- Landau W M., Patterns of movement elicited by medullary stimulation in the cat *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1952 4 527-546
- Liddell E G T and C G Phillips, Pyramidal section in the cat *Brain* 1944 67 1-9
- Lloyd D P C The spinal mechanism of the pyramidal system in cat *J Neurophysiol* 1941 4 525-546
- Lundberg A and P Voorhoeve Effects from the pyramidal tract on spinal reflex arcs *Acta physiol scand* 1962 56 201-219
- Magendie F., *Précis élémentaire de physiologie* 4th ed H Dumont, Bruxelles 1834
- Marshall C., Lesions in the pyramidal tracts in cats *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1933 31 68-70
- Tower S ■ The dissociation of cortical excitation from cortical inhibition by pyramid section and the syndrome of that lesion in the cat *Brain* 1935 58 238-255
- Wall P D W S McCulloch J Y Lettvin and W H Pitts, The terminal arborisation of the cat's pyramidal tract determined by a new technique *Yale J Biol Med* 1956 28 457-464

**Wiesendanger, Mario and Arne Mosfeldt Laursen** (Institute of Neurophysiology, University of Copenhagen Denmark) **THE EFFECT OF THE PYRAMIDAL TRACT ON FLEXORS AND EXTENSORS IN CATS**

Reports of the effect of section of the medullary pyramids are controversial. A number of authors, beginning with *Magendie* (1834) found no effect on movements. Other observers reported extensor hypertonus (pyramidal rigidity *Ranson* 1932), some found it most pronounced in the contralateral upper (*Ranson* 1932), others in the lower extremities (*Liddell and Phillips* 1946). *Marshall* (1934) and *Tower* (1936) believed the extension to be due to hypofunction of flexor reflexes.

To decide whether extensor hypertonus is produced or flexor reflexes are reduced we have recorded muscle action potentials from one to three weeks after unilateral or bilateral pyramidotomy. With the cat supported in a sling and the paws free of the ground, activity was absent in both flexors and extensors as in normal cats. Passive flexion elicited the same degree of activity in ipsilateral and contralateral extensors. The flexion elicited by pinching the skin of the foot appeared later and was less pronounced in the contralateral legs.

That the pyramidal tract acts predominantly on flexors was confirmed by stimulation of the medullary pyramids before and after section of the rest of the medulla oblongata (*Lloyd* 1941). With the pyramids preserved the movements evoked in decerebrate cats were complex and variable (*Landau* 1952). After isolation of the pyramids one and five sec trains of rectangular stimuli (100/sec 0.1 msec) evoked short bursts of activity confined to the flexors of the contralateral forelimb.

This is in agreement with the finding that the pyramidal tract in cats is distributed mainly to the cervical part of the spinal cord (*Wall, McCulloch, Lettvin and Pitts* 1956). Sensitive measures such as summation of pyramidal and monosynaptic afferent stimuli (*Lloyd* 1941) may be necessary to detect the pyramidal effect on the lumbar cord. That flexors were activated is in agreement with the results of intracellular recording from motoneurons (*Lundberg and Voorhoeve* 1962).

- Landau W M., Patterns of movement elicited by medullary stimulation in the cat *Electroenceph clin Neurophysiol* 1952 4 527-546
- Liddell ■ G T and C G Phillips Pyramidal section in the cat *Brain* 1944 67 1-9
- Lloyd ■ P C The spinal mechanism of the pyramidal system in cat *J Neurophysiol* 1941 4 525-546
- Lundberg, A and P Voorhoeve Effects from the pyramidal tract on spinal reflex arcs *Acta physiol scand* 1967 56 201-219
- Magendie F., *Precis élémentaire de physiologie* 4th ed H Dumont Bruxelles 1834
- Marshall C Lesions in the pyramidal tracts in cats *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1933 31 68-70
- Tower S S The dissociation of cortical excitation from cortical inhibition by pyramid section and the syndrome of that lesion in the cat *Brain* 1935 58 238-255
- Wall P D W ■ McCulloch J Y Lettvin and W H Pitts The terminal arborisation of the cat's pyramidal tract determined by a new technique *Yale J Biol Med* 1956 28 457-464



**Willumsen, N B S and N A Thorn** (*Institute of Medical Physiology, University of Copenhagen, Denmark*) **INHIBITORY ACTION OF HIGH CONCENTRATIONS OF UREA ON THE OXYGEN COMSUMPTION BY RAT KIDNEY SLICES FROM CORTEX AND MEDULLA**

During dehydration there is a marked concentration gradient for urea through the medulla of the rat kidney, with ensuing high concentrations of urea in the papilla. The oxygen consumption of the kidney cortex (Robinson 1962) and of the papillary zone from rat kidney slices (Thorn and Willumsen 1963) decreased with high concentrations of urea, complete suppression being obtained in papillary tissue with 2 M urea. We have compared the sensitivity of cortical and papillary slices to urea and examined the reversibility of the effect. Furthermore, the inhibitory effect of urea on the oxygen consumption was compared with its effect on glycolysis.

Kidney slices of 0.3–0.4 mm thickness were cut longitudinally on the Stadie-Riggs microtome and divided into zones comprising cortex, outer medulla and papilla, respectively. The slices were transferred to Warburg vessels with different media containing urea in different concentrations, up to 4 M. Parallel sets of slices in media without urea served as controls. After equilibration and incubation with urea for 1 h the oxygen consumption per mg of dry tissue (corrected for the content of urea) was determined manometrically. The oxygen consumption of slices from cortex, outer and inner medulla was inhibited at urea concentrations above 1 M. There was no difference in sensitivity between cortex and medulla and the inhibition was largely irreversible.

Similar concentrations of urea inhibited the enzyme system which inactivates the antidiuretic hormone (Thorn and Willumsen 1963). These findings stress the special conditions which may exist for the metabolic functions of the kidney papilla during dehydration.

Robinson J R *J Physiol (Lond)* 1962 164 552

Thorn N A and N B S Willumsen 1963 This volume p 00

Winkler K., N Tygstrup and F Lundquist (Department of Biochemistry and Cardiologic Laboratory of the Medical Department II Rigshospitalet University of Copenhagen Denmark)  
**THE INFLUENCE OF FRUCTOSE ON THE HEPATIC CIRCULATION AND METABOLISM IN MAN**

Ethanol in non toxic doses causes a slight reduction in the hepatic blood flow without affecting the splanchnic oxygen uptake. In the present study we have investigated the effect of intravenous infusions of fructose (10 mmoles/min) both alone and in combination with ethanol (2.5 mmoles/min). With fructose alone (6 subjects) hepatic blood flow is insignificantly increased with fructose and ethanol together (9 subjects) there was a significant increase (30 per cent). This was found with both bromsulfalein (4 subjects) and indocyanine green (5 subjects) as indicators. In two cases (not included in the material) accurate measurement of the hepatic blood flow was not possible because the clearance of bromsulfalein was reduced during fructose-ethanol infusions.

Fructose alone resulted in an insignificant average increase of the splanchnic oxygen uptake (30 per cent) with fructose and ethanol in combination the increase was significant (60 per cent). The splanchnic production of carbon dioxide did not vary systematically when fructose was infused but was significantly lower during infusion of ethanol. The same applies to the respiratory quotient of the splanchnic area.

The total oxygen uptake of the subjects was increased by 25 per cent by fructose alone and by 38 per cent when fructose was applied together with ethanol. The respiratory quotient of the subjects was not changed by infusion of ethanol or of ethanol and fructose combined. With fructose alone the respiratory quotient was close to unity.

**Zade Oppen, A M M and T C Laurent** (Institute of Physiology  
and Institute of Medical Chemistry, University of Uppsala  
Sweden) **ON A POSSIBLE MODE OF ACTION OF  
POLYMERS ON HYPOTONIC HEMOLYSIS**

Dextran and other high molecular substances inhibit hemoglobin liberation in hypotonic media (Marsden 1954, Marsden Zade Oppen and Johansson 1957) and decreased the solubility of proteins (Laurent 1963) It was investigated whether these phenomena could be related

Washed erythrocytes were lysed by freezing, and the pigment was converted to cyanmethemoglobin The hemolysate was dialyzed against 0.1 M phosphate buffer (pH 7.6) and mixed with dextran ( $M_w$  80,000  $M_n$  41,000) of concentrations of 33–164 g/l The mixtures were allowed to stand at  $+4^\circ\text{C}$  for two days and then centrifuged at  $1500\times G$  for five min The amounts of microscopically visible cell fragments in the supernatants decreased with increasing concentration of dextran After centrifugation at  $60,000\times G$  for 30 min the precipitates were recovered from each tube and analysed for nitrogen and iron About half of the nitrogen content was non hemoglobin, and the absolute amount of this fraction increased with increasing dextran concentration

The experiment suggests that non hemoglobin proteins from erythrocytes are precipitated by dextran which might interfere with the normal pattern of hemolysis

Marsden N V B *Acta physiol scand* 1954 31 Suppl 114

Marsden N V B M Zade Oppen and L P Johansson *Exp Cell Res*  
1957 13 178

Laurent T C *Biochem J* 1963 In press

**Zimmermann Nielsen, C.** (Biochemical Institute University of Aarhus Denmark) **IN VIVO STUDIES ON PROTEIN DIGESTION**

There is uncertainty as to how long time is required for the proteolytic enzymes in the digestive tract to split the proteins into free amino acids. The rate of disappearance of pure animal and vegetable proteins from the small intestines was determined in cats in acute experiments under the following conditions: introduction of proteins into the small intestines with intact (1) or blocked (2) pancreatic secretion or introduction of proteins predigested with pepsin *in vitro* into the small intestines with intact (3) or blocked (4) pancreatic secretion. The proteins were introduced in isonitrogenous quantities and in iso-osmotic solutions or suspensions. After a suitable time the disappearance of tannic acid precipitable N and of total N from the small intestines was determined. The experiments indicate that pepsin predigestion is important for the rate of disappearance of the vegetable proteins, whereas in the case of animal proteins it is of minor importance. The proteolytic enzymes of the pancreas accelerated the disappearance of the predigested vegetable proteins and did not influence the disappearance of the native proteins. Pancreatic and intestinal enzymes influenced greatly the rate of disappearance of animal protein nitrogen from the small intestines. Elimination of pancreatic secretion did not abolish digestion of animal proteins but decreased the rate of disappearance.

**Anggård, Erik and Bengt Samuelsson** (Department of Pharmacology and Department of Chemistry, Karolinska Institutet Stockholm Sweden) **SMOOTH MUSCLE STIMULATING LIPIDS IN SHEEP LUNG**

Ethanol extracts of normal sheep lung were analyzed for smooth muscle stimulating factors. The lipids were separated into acidic and neutral fractions. Practically all spasmogenic activity was confined to the acidic fraction. This was subjected to further purification by means of silicic acid, reversed phase partition, and thin layer chromatography. Prostaglandin F $\alpha$  was the main smooth muscle stimulating acidic lipid. This compound has previously been isolated from sheep and swine lung (Bergstrom *et al* 1962). Injected i.v. in doses of 15–30  $\mu$ g/kg it has pronounced effects on pulmonary circulation in cats and stimulates various isolated smooth muscle organs in concentrations from 10<sup>-6</sup> g/ml (Anggård and Bergstrom 1963).

Utilizing an isotope dilution method with tritium labelled prostaglandin F $\alpha$  the amount of this compound in sheep lung was determined to about 0.5  $\mu$ g/g lung (wet weight). It was also possible to isolate prostaglandin E from sheep lung. This factor was identified by its chromatographic behaviour in various systems as compared with pure prostaglandins. Ultraviolet spectrophotometry and differential pharmacological assay afforded further proof as to the identity. Spasmogenic activity could also be found in fractions both more and less polar than the prostaglandins. These were not further characterized. Details of the isolation technique will be given and the physiological implications of the findings discussed.

Anggård E and Bergstrom B. Biological effects of an unsaturated trihydroxy acid (PGF $\alpha$ ) from swine lung. *Acta physiol scand* 1963 58 1–12.

Bergstrom S, F Dressler L, Krabich R, Ryhage and J Sjövall. The isolation and structure of a smooth muscle stimulating factor in normal sheep and pig lungs. *Arkiv kemi* 1962 20 63–66.

Öberg Bengt (Department of Physiology University of Göteborg Sweden) ASPECTS OF THE REFLEX CONTROL OF NET CAPILLARY FILTRATION IN SKELETAL MUSCLE AND INTESTINE

A study has been performed on anesthetized cats to evaluate the reflex effects elicited from carotid sinus and cardiac receptors on net transcapillary filtration in skeletal muscle and intestine. In addition reflexly induced shifts in capillary fluid exchange during hemorrhage were investigated.

The reactions of the resistance vessels were studied by blood flow pressure measurements and the filtration process by continuous recording of changes in tissue volume with a plethysmographic technique.

A lowering of carotid sinus pressure caused a marked vasoconstriction in skeletal muscle accompanied by an absorption of fluid from the extravascular space. The amount of fluid absorbed was related to the degree of vasoconstriction. An increase of carotid sinus pressure produced vasodilatation and outward filtration in skeletal muscle. These experimental procedures caused similar changes in flow resistance in the intestine although less pronounced than in muscle and did not affect the transcapillary fluid exchange. Activation of cardiac receptors with protoveratrin evoked a peripheral vascular response pattern resembling that induced by stimulation of arterial baroreceptors.

Acute hemorrhage elicited a sustained reflex vasoconstriction in skeletal muscle and an absorption of extravascular fluid quantitatively related to the magnitude of the hemorrhage. In the intestine bleeding produced a slight vasoconstriction but no transfer of fluid from the extravascular compartment.

Under the prevailing experimental conditions shifts in net capillary filtration reflect variations in capillary hydrostatic pressure in turn due to adjustments of the pre/postcapillary resistance ratio. The present experiments demonstrate that there is a powerful reflex control of this ratio in skeletal muscle. On the other hand such reflex adjustment is of little importance in the intestine probably due to a competitive action of local autoregulatory mechanisms.

In an attempt to evaluate the relative importance of carotid

sinus and cardiac receptors for inducing the peripheral vascular adjustments in hemorrhage, standardized bleedings were performed before and after blocking the afferent fibres from the respective receptor sites. These experiments suggest that the carotid sinus receptors exert a relatively more powerful influence than the cardiac receptors upon the peripheral vascular beds. The cardiac receptors are more important for the regulation of the heart.

ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 59 SUPPLEMENTUM 15.

ANALYSIS OF THE  $Mg^{++}$ -ATP  
DEPENDENT STORAGE MECHANISM  
IN THE AMINE GRANULES OF  
THE ADRENAL MEDULLA

BY

ARVID CARLSSON NILS ÅKE HILLARP  
AND BERTIL WALDECK

GÖTEBORG 1963





ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL. 59 SUPPLEMENTUM 215

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF PHARMACOLOGY UNIVERSITY OF GÖTEBORG  
AND THE DEPARTMENT OF HISTOLOGY KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET  
STOCKHOLM SWEDEN

ANALYSIS OF THE  $Mg^{++}$ -ATP  
DEPENDENT STORAGE MECHANISM  
IN THE AMINE GRANULES OF  
THE ADRENAL MEDULLA

BY

ARVID CARLSSON NILS ÅKE HILLARP  
AND BERTIL WALDECK

GÖTEBORG 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL 59 SUPPLEMENTUM 15

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF PHARMACOLOGY UNIVERSITY OF GÖTEBORG  
AND THE DEPARTMENT OF HISTOLOGY KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET  
STOCKHOLM, SWEDEN

ANALYSIS OF THE  $Mg^{++}$ -ATP  
DEPENDENT STORAGE MECHANISM  
IN THE AMINE GRANULES OF  
THE ADRENAL MEDULLA

BY

ARVID CARLSSON NILS ÅKE HILLARP  
AND BERTIL WALDECK

5115  
LIBRARY,

-41  
JAIPUR

GÖTEBORG 1963

**GÖTEBORG 1963**  
**ELANDERS BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG**

## CONTENTS

### Introduction

### Material and Methods

### Results and Discussion

- I Amino acid transport and metabolism
- II Uptake of L and D amino acids
- III Uptake of D/L-Asp-His and L-tyrosine
- IV Uptake as a function of external amino acid concentration
- V Uptake as a function of time and temperature
- VI Various factors (pH buffers etc.) influencing the uptake
- VII Experiments to protect or simulate the uptake mechanism with co-factors
- VIII Effect of adrenal cortex on amino acid uptake
- IX Effect of agent affecting mitochondrial enzyme system
- X Some comments on the nature of the amino acid uptake
- XI Effect of various substances
- XII Effect of phenyl and alkylamines
- XIII Effect of uncoupling agent interfering with a free energy mechanism
- XIV Transporters

### Summary

### Acknowledgements

### References



## INTRODUCTION

In an earlier paper we reported that the amine granules of the adrenal medulla are able to take up and concentrate monoamines *in vitro* by a  $Mg^{++}$ -ATP dependent storage mechanism which is blocked by low concentrations of reserpine (CARLSSON, HILLARP and WALDFOCK 1962). Independent work by VIKSHUS (1962a and b) yielded similar results. The significance of these observations is emphasized by the fact that the transmitter of the adrenergic nerves is stored in granules with similar properties (EULER and HILLARP 1956, EULER 1958, EULER and LINHJAKO 1961, SCHULMAN 1958). In fact EULER and LINHJAKO (1963) recently discovered a  $Mg^{++}$ -ATP dependent uptake of NA by these granules. This uptake was blocked by low concentrations of reserpine.

In the present paper the uptake mechanism is analyzed in further detail.

Abbreviations: DA = 3,4-dihydroxyphenylethylamine (dopamine), NA = norepinephrine, A = adrenaline, 5-HT = 5-hydroxytryptamine, ATP = adenosine triphosphate, ADP = adenosine diphosphate, AMP = adenosine monophosphate, respectively.



## MATERIAL AND METHODS

*Isolation of the medullary granules* Amine granules from 3 to 5 cow adrenal medullas were isolated in 0.3 M sucrose (HILLARP 1958). The granules were not washed but the looser layer above the more tightly packed bottom sediment (after centrifugation at  $26\,000\times g$  for 20 min) was removed by swirling with sucrose. Finally the granules were suspended in 0.3 M sucrose and stored at  $0^{\circ}$ . They were used the same and the next day.

*Standard conditions for  $C^{14}$  amine uptake* An aliquot (50  $\mu$ l) of the granule suspension, corresponding to 70 to 90  $\mu$ g of granule bound and 15 to 20  $\mu$ g of free catecholamines (wet wt. of granules about 2 mg) was transferred to 1.0 ml of an incubation mixture (at  $0^{\circ}$ ) containing 0.31 M glycylglycine (pH 7.3 with NaOH), 0.0025 M ATP and MgCl<sub>2</sub> 25  $\mu$ g unlabelled L-NA (or L-A) and 2.5 to 5  $\mu$ g  $C^{14}$ -NA (or  $C^{14}$ -A). Sometimes a 0.17 M histidine HCl buffer (pH 7 to 7.3) was used. Incubation was performed without shaking at  $-31^{\circ}$  and  $0^{\circ}$  (controls) for 30 min. The tests were practically always made in duplicates.

After the incubation the suspension was chilled to  $0^{\circ}$ , diluted about 30 times with cold 0.3 M sucrose and — after about one hour at  $0^{\circ}$  — centrifuged at  $100\,000\times g$  for 30 min. After thorough rinsing of the tubes with 0.3 M sucrose the granule sediment was extracted with 5.0 ml of 0.01 N HCl in 98% ethyl alcohol.

*Preincubations* The effect of several compounds was tested by a preincubation of the granules with the compound. 0.5 ml of the granule suspension was added to 8 ml 0.3 M sucrose containing the agent to be tested (concentration see the tables). Incubation was performed for 30 min at  $0^{\circ}$  or  $+31^{\circ}$ . The suspension was then centrifuged at  $26\,000\times g$  for 15 min at  $0^{\circ}$ . The granules were resuspended in 0.4 ml 0.3 M sucrose. Their capacity to take up  $C^{14}$  amines was tested by adding aliquots (50  $\mu$ l) to the standard incubation medium described above. The uptake was in every case compared with that of control granules treated in the same way.

*Determinations of catecholamines and  $C^{14}$  compounds* The catecholamine content of the extracts was determined spectrophotofluorimetrically (BENTLEY, CARLSSON and ROSENCRANTZ 1959). The  $C^{14}$  amine content was determined either directly in a liquid scintillation counter or after the catecholamines had

were taken up on a small cation exchanger (Dowex 50) and eluted with  $N$  HCl. The eluate was evaporated to dryness in vacuo and the residue extracted with the acid alcohol. The extract was then used for counting. The identity of the  $C^{14}$  compounds was checked by paper chromatography.

In the experiment with  $C^{14}$  ATP (Table 8) the granule sediments were extracted with 0.4  $N$  perchloric acid at 0°C. The extracts were immediately centrifuged in the cold and — after addition of 0.5 mg sodium ethylenediamine tetraacetate — neutralized with potassium carbonate to about pH 6 at 0°C. After removal of the precipitated potassium perchlorate the extract was passed through a cation exchange column (Dowex 50 W 200–400 mesh 20 × 5 mm pH 6). The effluent and washings were brought to about pH 11 with ammonium hydroxide and passed through an anion exchange column (Dowex 1-X4 200–400 mesh 100 × 6 mm  $Cl^-$ ). The elution of the nucleotides was performed with 0.01 (UMP), 0.06 (ADP) and 1  $N$  HCl (ATP) and was followed by ultraviolet absorption measurements. The fractions were evaporated to near dryness. The residue was dissolved in a small amount of water and the extract was used for counting after dilution with alcohol. — The catecholamines taken up by the cation exchanger were eluted with  $N$  HCl. The eluate was treated as described above to determine the content of  $C^{14}$  amines.

The purity and specific activity of the  $C^{14}$  ATP used were determined by anion exchange chromatography as described above. Small amounts of  $C^{14}$  ADP and AMP were present. Control chromatographies showed that the nucleotide recovery was more than 90% and that no appreciable breakdown of ATP occurred.

*Sul tanera* and pure nucleotides from the Pabst Laboratories and pure reserpine generously supplied by Ciba Ltd (Basel) were used. Solutions of reserpine were freshly made in acetic acid according to the method of HESSE and BRODIE (1956).

Monamines with one of the sidechain carbon atoms labelled with  $C^{14}$  (specific activities ranging from 1 to 22 mCi/mM) were obtained from California Corporation for Biochemical Research, Los Angeles (DL-adrenaline, dopamine, tyramine), Commissariat à l'Énergie Atomique, France (DL-adrenaline, DL-metadrenaline) and Radiochemical Centre, Amersham, England (5-hydroxytryptamine). ATP- $\gamma$ - $C^{14}$  (1.5  $\mu$ C/mg) was obtained from Schwarz BioResearch, Mount Vernon, N.Y.

## MATERIAL AND METHODS

*Isolation of the medullary granules* Amine granules from 3 to 5 cow adrenal medullas were isolated in 0.3 M sucrose (HILLARP 1958). The granules were not washed but the looser layer above the more tightly packed bottom sediment (after centrifugation at  $26\,000\times g$  for 20 min) was removed by swirling with sucrose. Finally the granules were suspended in 0.3 M sucrose and stored at  $0^\circ$ . They were used the same and the next day.

*Standard conditions for  $C^{14}$  amine uptake* An aliquot (50  $\mu$ l) of the granule suspension corresponding to 70 to 90  $\mu$ g of granule bound and 15 to 20  $\mu$ g of free catecholamines (wet wt of granules about 2 mg) was transferred to 1.0 ml of an incubation mixture (at  $0^\circ$ ) containing 0.31 M glycylglycine (pH 7.3 with NaOH), 0.0025 M ATP and  $MgCl_2$ , 25  $\mu$ g unlabelled L-NA (or L-A) and 2.5 to 5  $\mu$ g  $C^{14}$ -NA (or  $C^{14}$ -A). Sometimes a 0.17 M histidine HCl buffer (pH 7 to 7.3) was used. Incubation was performed without shaking at  $-31^\circ$  and 0 (controls) for 30 min. The tests were practically always made in duplicates.

After the incubation the suspension was chilled to  $0^\circ$ , diluted about 30 times with cold 0.5 M sucrose and — after about one hour at  $0^\circ$  — centrifuged at  $100\,000\times g$  for 30 min. After thorough rinsing of the tubes with 0.5 M sucrose the granule sediment was extracted with 5.0 ml of 0.01 N HCl in 95% ethyl alcohol.

*Preincubations* The effect of several compounds was tested by a preincubation of the granules with the compound. 0.5 ml of the granule suspension was added to 8 ml 0.3 M sucrose containing the agent to be tested (concentration see the tables). Incubation was performed for 30 min at 0 or  $+31^\circ$ . The suspension was then centrifuged at  $26\,000\times g$  for 15 min at 0. The granules were resuspended in 0.4 ml 0.3 M sucrose. Their capacity to take up  $C^{14}$  amines was tested by adding aliquots (50  $\mu$ l) to the standard incubation medium described above. The uptake was in every case compared with that of control granules treated in the same way.

*Determinations of catecholamines and  $C^{14}$  compounds* The catecholamine content of the extracts was determined spectrophotofluorimetrically (BLERT, CARLSSON and ROSENBERG 1958). The  $C^{14}$  amine content was determined either directly in a liquid scintillation counter or after the catecholamines had

## I Activation by nucleotides and metals

A small but significant uptake occurred without addition of MgATP at -31 (Fig 3 to 5). It was inhibited almost completely by reserpine and is thus considered to be specific. This uptake may well be ATP dependent since small amounts of ATP derived from the amine granules and mitochondria may be available for the specific uptake mechanism.

Addition of ATI alone — but not of  $Mg^{++}$  alone — gave increased uptake but a high amine incorporation was obtained only when both had been added (Fig. 4). The MgATP activation could be up to twentyfold but varied with different granules and usually was five to eight fold.  $Mg^{++}$  could be replaced by Mn — but not by  $Ca^{++}$  (Fig. 3 to 5). In the presence of 0.005 M MgATP the same concentration of  $Ca^{++}$  gave no significant inhibition (Fig 3). This is of interest since it has been reported that  $Ca^{++}$  produces a release of the granule amines (KUMPER and SCHMANN 1962).

The specificity of the nucleotide requirement is not clear. Inosine triphosphate gives the same activation as ATI but guanosine, uridine and cytidine triphosphates stimulate to a lower extent (CARLS ON, HILLARI and WALDECK 1966). The presence of transphosphatases cannot be ruled out, however, ATI could be replaced by deoxy ATI but not by sodium tripolyphosphate. AMI showed no and ADP no or very small activation and did not inhibit when present in the same concentration as that of ATI (Fig 3). Adenosine 3'-phosphate and phosphocreatine — with or without ATP — showed no effect (Table 2 and 3). No inhibition was obtained by adenine, adenosine and several other purine derivatives when present in the same concentration as ATI (Table 3). On the other hand 6-mercaptopurine and 5-azaguanine in the same concentrations caused about 50 per cent inhibition.

The amine uptake was optimal at 0.001 M  $Mg^{++}$  and ATP when the incubation time was 15 minutes. A maximal activation occurred already with 0.001 M  $Mg^{++}$  at both 0.001 and 0.005 M ATI (Fig 1). At this  $Mg^{++}$  concentration the uptake was maximally stimulated by 0.001 M ATI (Fig 2). — Under the standard conditions (31–39 mm) 0.0025 to 0.005 M  $Mg^{++}$  ATI gave optimal uptake.

Since  $Mg^{++}$  may complex with 3,4-dihydroxyphenethylamines it might be concluded that  $Mg^{++}$  is necessary for an association not with ATI but with the amines. However the  $Mg^{++}$  concentration producing maximal activation was the same at both low and high levels of external amines (data not shown).

The dependence of the uptake mechanism on the presence of divalent metal forming ATI complexes with high association constants and the fact that the amines occur in the granules together with an equivalent amount of

## RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

When not otherwise stated the amine uptake was studied under the standard conditions described above. The amount of granules (wet wt. about 2 mg) added to 1.0 ml incubation medium corresponded to 70 to 90  $\mu\text{g}$  bound catecholamines (about 70% A and 30% NA) and 15 to 20  $\mu\text{g}$  free amines (released from the granules at their suspension). The concentration of  $\text{C}^{14}$  NA (or  $\text{C}^{14}$  A) was usually 2.5 to 5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ . Unlabelled L NA (or L A) was usually added to the medium so that the total external concentration of catecholamines became about 50  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ . The monoamine oxidase (MAO) activity of the granule suspension was so low that the use of a MAO inhibitor was unnecessary.

The storage mechanism can be blocked by reserpine (LUBSHUTZ 1962; CARLSSON, HILLARP and WALDECK 1962) which therefore was used to test the specificity of the amine uptake in the experiments where deviations from the standard conditions were made. Other particles (e.g. mitochondria) present in the granule suspension take up or adsorb only insignificant amounts of catecholamines (CARLSSON, HILLARP and WALDECK 1962).

Only small amounts of  $\text{C}^{14}$  amines were found in granules incubated at 0 (Fig. 4 and 5). This uptake is probably unrelated to the specific storage mechanism since about the same amounts were recovered in sediments from granules ruptured by osmotic lysis. This view receives further support by the failure of MgATP to increase and of reserpine to block the uptake at 0 (Fig. 5). When not otherwise stated the value obtained in the 0 controls has been used as blank which has been subtracted from the values observed in the incubation at elevated temperatures. To calculate the absolute uptake the values were multiplied by the ratio of A + NA to  $\text{C}^{14}$  amine in the medium. This may give too low values on account of a preferential uptake of the L form of the added  $\text{C}^{14}$  amine (see Section II). Examples of observed and calculated uptake are found in the figures.

The tests were practically always made in duplicates which showed good agreement in the values obtained (see Fig. 3, 5 and 6). All experiments of importance were repeated with different samples of granules and often with both histidine and glycylglycine buffers. The figures for Per cent inhibition in the tables are mean values. In the cases where no effect of an agent was observed only the highest concentration tested is recorded in the tables.

## I Activation by nucleotide and metals

A small but significant uptake occurred without addition of MgATP at 1 (Fig 3 to 5). It was inhibited almost completely by reserpine and is considered to be specific. This uptake may well be ATP dependent since all amounts of ATI derived from the amine granules and mitochondria can be available for the specific uptake mechanism. Addition of ATP alone — but not of  $Mg^{++}$  alone — gave increased uptake.

A high amine incorporation was obtained only when both had been added (Fig 4). The MgATP activation could be up to twentyfold but varied with different granules and usually was five to eight fold.  $Mg^{++}$  could be replaced by  $Mn^{++}$  but not by  $Ca^{++}$  (Fig 3 to 5). In the presence of 0.001 M  $MgATP$  the same concentration of  $Ca^{++}$  gave no significant inhibition (Fig 3). This is of interest since it has been reported that  $Ca^{++}$  produces a release of the amine (LILLY and SCOTT, 1962).

The specificity of the nucleotide requirement is not clear. Inorganic triphosphate gives the same activation as ATP but guanosine, uridine and cytidine phosphates stimulate to a lower extent (CARLSON, HELLAR and WALDECK, 1962). The presence of transphosphorylases cannot be ruled out, however. TI could be replaced by deoxy ATP but not by sodium tripolyphosphate. MI showed no and ADP no or very small activation and did not inhibit when present in the same concentration as that of ATP (Fig 3). Adenosine triphosphate and phosphocreatine — with or without ATP — showed no effect (Tables 2 and 3). No inhibition was obtained by adenine, adenosine and several other purine derivatives when present in the same concentration as ATI (Table 2). On the other hand 6 mercaptopurine and 8 azaguanine in the same concentrations caused about 50 per cent inhibition.

The amine uptake was optimal at 0.001 M  $Mg^{++}$  and ATP when the incubation time was 1 minute. A maximal activation occurred already with 0.001 M  $Mg^{++}$  at both 0.001 and 0.005 M ATP (Fig 1). At this  $Mg^{++}$  concentration the uptake was maximally stimulated by 0.001 M ATP (Fig 2). Under the standard conditions (31–39 min) 0.001 to 0.005 M  $MgATP$  gave optimal uptake.

Since  $Mg^{++}$  may complex with 3,4-dihydroxyphenethylamines it might be possible that  $Mg^{++}$  is necessary for an association not with ATI but with the amines. However, the  $Mg^{++}$  concentration producing maximal activation was the same at both low and high levels of external amines (data not shown).

The dependence of the uptake mechanism on the presence of divalent metal forming ATI complexes with high association constants and the fact that the amines occur in the granules together with an equivalent amount of

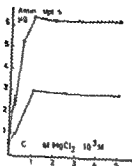


Fig 1

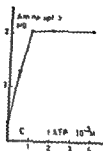


Fig 2

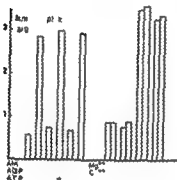


Fig 3

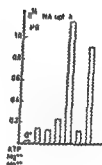


Fig 4

Fig 1 Influence of  $MgCl_2$  concentration on amine uptake

Two different samples of granules were used. The same result was obtained when the incubation time was 15 min. Histidine-HCl pH 7 ATP 0.005 or 0.001 M (upper and lower curve respectively)  $C^{14}$ -NA 15 or 6  $\mu g/ml$  +31 30 min

Fig 2 Influence of ATP concentration on amine uptake

Histidine-HCl pH 7  $MgCl_2$  0.001 M  $C^{14}$ -NA 15 or 6  $\mu g/ml$  unlabelled NA 50  $\mu g/ml$  +31 15 min

Fig 3 Influence of adenosine phosphates  $Mg^{++}$  and  $Ca^{++}$  on amine uptake

Two different samples of granules were used. Left diagram histidine-HCl pH 7 nucleotides and  $MgCl_2$  0.005 M  $C^{14}$ -NA 15  $\mu g/ml$  unlabelled NA 2  $\mu g/ml$  +31 30 min. Right diagram glycylglycine pH 7 ATP  $MgCl_2$  and  $CaCl_2$  0.005 M  $C^{14}$ -NA 15  $\mu g/ml$  unlabelled NA 20  $\mu g/ml$  +31 30 min

Fig 4 Influence of ATP  $Mg^{++}$  and  $Mn^{++}$  on amine uptake

Histidine-HCl pH 7 ATP  $MgCl_2$  and  $MnCl_2$  0.005 M  $C^{14}$ -NA 15  $\mu g/ml$  no unlabelled amines added +31 30 min





TABLE 1 (conts.)

Inhibitor	Conc. of Inhibitor M	Per cent Inhibition	Inhibitor	Conc. of Inhibitor M	Per cent Inhibition
Isopropyl fluorophosphate	$10^{-4}$	5	Acetic anhydride	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	10
	$10^{-3}$	20		$10^{-2}$	30
Amyl acetate	$5 \times 10^{-3}$	0	Phenyl isocyanate	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	0
Isocyanazide	$5 \times 10^{-3}$	0		$10^{-3}$	50
Hydroxy quinoline	$5 \times 10^{-4}$	10	Isofluphetin phosphate	20 $\mu$ g/ml	5
	$10^{-3}$	20		50 $\mu$ g/ml	40
Guacillamine	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	5		100 $\mu$ g/ml	60
	$10^{-3}$	15	Ouabaine	$10^{-3}$	0
Anhydride	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0			
	$10^{-4}$	5			

ATP might suggest that such a metal is a component of the storage structure. This possibility was examined in experiments where  $MgCl_2$  was replaced by  $MnCl_2$ . An ATP activated uptake of  $Mn^{2+}$  was found but there was no quantitative relation between this uptake and that of the amines and it was not inhibited by reserpine. Furthermore the mechanism responsible for the metal uptake was very labile and was destroyed soon after the preparation of the granules when amine uptake still was undiminished. Paper chromatography of the metals obtained from granules after ashing showed that the content of Mg, Mn, Ca and Zn was too low to satisfy the hypothesis.

TABLE 2 Effect of various purine derivatives

Compound	Conc. of Compound M	Per cent Inhibition	Compound	Conc. of Compound M	Per cent Inhibition
Adenine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	10	8-Azaxypoxanthine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0
Adenosine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	10	8-Azaguanine	$2.5 \times 10^{-3}$	50-60
Adenosine 5-phosphoric	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0		$6 \times 10^{-3}$	60
Adenosine 5-diphosphoric	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0	8-Aza-2,6-dihydro-1,3-dimethylpurine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	10
Adenosine 3,5-phosphoric (with or without)	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0	6-Mercaptopurine	$10^{-3}$	5
Adenine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0	2-Mercapto-6-aminopurine	$10^{-3}$	10
	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0	Trimethylxanthine	$10^{-3}$	0

When the amine uptake was performed in the presence of  $P^{32}$  labelled inorganic phosphate no significant incorporation of  $P^{32}$  in the adenosinephosphates of the granules occurred. KIRSHNER (1962) has reported the same result and also found no uptake of  $C^{14}$  ATP in the granules. In an experiment made in this laboratory before his data were published granules were incubated in a medium containing both  $C^{14}$  NA and  $C^{14}$  ATP (Table 8). The amines and adenosinephosphates in the granules were isolated and their  $C^{14}$  content determined. Table 8 shows that the granules contained significant amounts of  $C^{14}$  labelled ATP, ADI and AMP. However, calculated in equivalents this uptake is considerably smaller than the amine uptake. Furthermore reserpine completely blocked the amine incorporation but inhibited the uptake of  $C^{14}$  ATI only about 30 per cent.

## II Uptake of L- and D amines

Since  $C^{14}$  NA and  $C^{14}$  A were available only in the D L-form an indirect approach was tried to study the stereospecificity of the uptake mechanism. Granules were incubated in a medium containing a constant concentration of  $C^{14}$  NA or  $C^{14}$  A but varied concentrations of unlabelled L- or D A. Fig. 6 shows that the dilution with the D form decreased the uptake of the  $C^{14}$  amines considerably less than the dilution with the L-form. The result may be explained in three ways: 1) The L-form is not taken up and is an inhibitor of the uptake of the D form. 2) the D form is not taken up and is an inhibitor of the uptake of the L-form. 3) the mechanism is not specific but has preference for the L-form. Since the granules *in vivo* normally store the L-form the first alternative seems out of question. However, it has been shown (ANDERSON, 1961) that both D and L A are taken up by the mouse heart *in vivo* thereby displacing the NA of the granules in the adrenergic nerve terminals. This argues strongly for the third alternative.

## III Uptake of DA, NA, A, 5 HT and tyramine

No obvious differences in the uptake and in its blocking by various agents (i.e. reserpine, adrenergic blocking agents) were observed when  $C^{14}$  DA, NA or A were used. Uptake as function of external amine concentration was about the same when the concentration of  $C^{14}$  DA or  $C^{14}$  A was varied or when  $C^{14}$  NA was diluted with either NA or A. No careful quantitative comparisons have been made, however.

The  $C^{14}$  labelled compounds in extracts of granules incubated with  $C^{14}$  DA

TABLE 1 (conts.)

Inhibitor	Conc of Inhibitor M	Per cent Inhibition	Inhibitor	Conc of Inhibitor M	Per cent Inhibition
Di-n-propyl fluorophosphate	$10^{-4}$	5	Acetic anhydride	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	10
	$10^{-3}$	20		$10^{-2}$	35
Uranyl acetate	$5 \times 10^{-3}$	0	Phenyl isocyanate	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	0
Semicarbazide	$5 \times 10^{-3}$	0		$10^{-3}$	50
8-Hydroxy quinoline	$5 \times 10^{-4}$	10	Polyphloretin phosphate	25 µg/ml	0
	$10^{-3}$	20		50 µg/ml	40
1-methylamine	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	5		100 µg/ml	65
	$10^{-3}$	15	Ouabaine	$10^{-5}$	0
Ninhydrine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0			
	$10^{-4}$	5			

ATP might suggest that such a metal is a component of the storage structure. This possibility was examined in experiments where  $MgCl_2$  was replaced by  $Mn^{2+}Cl_2$ . An ATP activated uptake of  $Mn^{2+}$  was found but there was no quantitative relation between this uptake and that of the amines and it was not inhibited by reserpine. Furthermore the mechanism responsible for the metal uptake was very labile and was destroyed soon after the preparation of the granules when amine uptake still was undiminished. Paper chromatography of the metals obtained from granules after washing showed that the content of  $Mg$ ,  $Mn$ ,  $Ca$  and  $Zn$  was too low to satisfy the hypothesis.

TABLE 2 Effect of various purine derivatives

Compound	Conc of Compound M	Per cent Inhibition	Compound	Conc of Compound M	Per cent Inhibition
Adenine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	10	8-Azazahypoxanthine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0
Adenosine	$10^{-3}$	10	8-Azaguanine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	50
	$10^{-2}$	60		$10^{-3}$	60
Adenosine 5-phosphoric acid	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0	8-Aza-2,6-dihydro-1,3-dimethylpurine	$2.5 \times 10^{-3}$	0
Adenosine 5-diphosphoric acid	$5 \times 10^{-3}$	0		$10^{-2}$	50
Adenosine 3-phosphoric acid (with or without ATP)	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0	2-Mercapto-6-aminopurine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	10
8-Azaadenine	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0	Trime-thylxanthine	$10^{-3}$	0

When the amine uptake was performed in the presence of  $P^{32}$  labelled inorganic phosphate no significant incorporation of  $P^{32}$  in the adenosinephosphates of the granules occurred KIRSNER (1962) has reported the same result and also found no uptake of  $C^{14}$  ATP in the granules In an experiment made in this laboratory before his data were published granules were incubated in a medium containing both  $C^{14}$  NA and  $C^{14}$  ATP (Table 8) The amines and adenosinephosphates in the granules were isolated and their  $C^{14}$  content determined Table 8 shows that the granules contained significant amounts of  $C^{14}$  labelled ATP ADP and AMP However calculated in equivalents this uptake is considerably smaller than the amine uptake Furthermore reserpine completely blocked the amine incorporation but inhibited the uptake of  $C^{14}$  ATP only about 30 per cent

## II Uptake of L and D amines

Since  $C^{14}$  NA and  $C^{14}$  A were available only in the D L form an indirect approach was tried to study the stereospecificity of the uptake mechanism Granules were incubated in a medium containing a constant concentration of  $C^{14}$  NA or  $C^{14}$  A but varied concentrations of unlabelled L- or D A Fig 6 shows that the dilution with the D form decreased the uptake of the  $C^{14}$  amines considerably less than the dilution with the L-form The result may be explained in three ways 1) The L-form is not taken up and is an inhibitor of the uptake of the D form 2) the D form is not taken up and is an inhibitor of the uptake of the L-form 3) the mechanism is not specific but has preference for the L-form Since the granules *in vivo* normally store the L-form the first alternative seems out of question However it has been shown (ANDÉN 1962) that both D and L-A are taken up by the mouse heart *in vivo* thereby displacing the NA of the granules in the adrenergic nerve terminals This argues strongly for the third alternative

## III Uptake of DA NA A 5 HT and tyramine

No obvious differences in the uptake and in its blocking by various agents (i.e. reserpine adrenergic blocking agents) were observed when  $C^{14}$  DA NA or A were used Uptake as function of external amine concentration was about the same when the concentration of  $C^{14}$  DA or  $C^{14}$  A was varied or when  $C^{14}$  NA was diluted with either NA or A No careful quantitative comparisons have been made however

The  $C^{14}$  labelled compounds in extracts of granules incubated with  $C^{14}$  DA

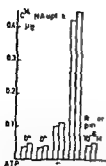


Fig. 4.

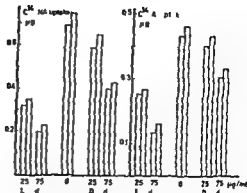


Fig. 6

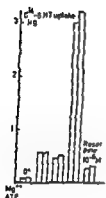


Fig 7

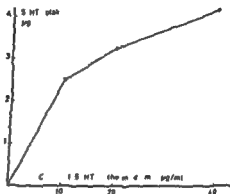


Fig. 3

Fig. 5 Influence of  $Mn^{++}$  on amine uptake

Histidine-HCl pH 7 ATP 0.005 M  $MnCl_2$  0.001 M  $Ca^{++}$  5  $\mu$ g/ml total extract  
 Na<sup>+</sup> 1.0 M 0.0004 M +31 30 min

**Fig 11 Influence of I and D adrenalins on  $C^{14}$ -amine uptake**

Two different samples of granules were used. Left diagram C<sup>14</sup>-A 1.6  $\mu$ g/ml. Right diagram C<sup>14</sup>-A 4.3  $\mu$ g/ml. Standard conditions. The concentration of external amines was varied by adding L or D adrenaline (25 and 7.5 g/ml).

Fig. 2. Uptake of  $C^{14}$ -HT

Glycylglycine pH 7.3 1M and  $\text{MgCl}_2$  0.005 M  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  0.1 g/ml no unlabelled  
amines were added +31 30 min

Fig. 8 Uptake of  $\alpha$ -HT as function of external amine concentration

The concentration of 5-HT was varied by adding unlabeled 5-HT

TABLE 3 Effect of miscellaneous agents interfering with adrenergic mechanisms

Drug	Conc of Drug M	Per cent Inhibition	Drug	Conc of Drug M	Per cent Inhibition
<i>Adrenergic blocking agents</i>			Impramine	$3 \times 10^{-5}$	0
1-hydroxybenzamine	$0.33 \times 10^{-5}$	3.5	N-monomethylated	$1 \times 10^{-4}$	3.5
	$1.6 \times 10^{-5}$	5	isoproprenaline	$3 \times 10^{-5}$	9.5
	$8 \times 10^{-5}$	80	Proprietary	$1.5 \times 10^{-4}$	100
Pre-nob + 31	$\times 10^{-5}$	10		$2 \times 10^{-5}$	40
Dibenzamine	$1.7 \times 10^{-5}$	10		$4 \times 10^{-5}$	6.5
	$8 \times 10^{-5}$	50		$2 \times 10^{-4}$	9
Isotub + 31	$7 \times 10^{-5}$	0	Papaverine	$10^{-4}$	0
51.8 (N-naphthyl methyl ethyl $\beta$ -bromoethylamine)	5 $\mu$ g/ml	15		$10^{-4}$	60
	7.5 $\mu$ g/ml	5	Quinidine	$1 \times 10^{-4}$	2.5
	50 $\mu$ g/ml	3	Quinine	$7 \times 10^{-5}$	70
Phenolamine	$10^{-5} - 10^{-4}$	0	Lysergic acid diethylamide	$0.3 \times 10^{-5}$	0
Pre-nob + 31	$6 \times 10^{-5}$	0		$3 \times 10^{-5}$	0
Idar	$1.4 \times 10^{-5}$	90	Cocaine	$5 \times 10^{-5}$	9.5
	$7 \times 10^{-5}$			$10^{-5}$	40
Ergotamine	$4 \times 10^{-5}$	50	Bretylum tosylate	$2.5 \times 10^{-4}$	5
Dihydroergotamine	$9 \times 10^{-5}$	90		$5 \times 10^{-4}$	10
3,4-Dihydroisopropyl noradrenaline (DCI)	$1.7 \times 10^{-5}$	3.5	FM 10 (cholera toxin)	$\mu$ g/ml 50-50	0
	$3.5 \times 10^{-5}$	50	ether bromide)		
	$10^{-5}$	85	Guanethidine	$4 \times 10^{-5}$	10
Pre-nob + 31	$\times 10^{-5}$	0		$8 \times 10^{-4}$	15
$\alpha$ -Methyl DCI (H 13/6)	$10^{-5}$	45	Apresoline	$3 \times 10^{-4}$	5
Phenoxyanalogue of DCI (H 13/2)	$1.7 \times 10^{-5}$	3.5		$1.5 \times 10^{-4}$	0
	$3.5 \times 10^{-5}$	4.5	Sodium nitro	$10^{-5}$	0
	$10^{-5}$	90			
L 1 (o-chlorophenyl)	$\times 10^{-5}$	50	<i>Mononitric oxidase inhibitors</i>		
oxyphenylmethanol	$4 \times 10^{-5}$	5	Transylpropramine	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	50
	$10^{-4}$	30		$5 \times 10^{-4}$	8.5
H 1 (o-chlorophenyl)	$2 \times 10^{-5}$			$10^{-3}$	9.5
oxyphenylmethanol	$4 \times 10^{-5}$	30	Iprorazid	$10^{-5}$	0
	$10^{-5}$	5.5	Pre-nob + 31	$10^{-5}$	0
			Nitroglycerine	$5 \times 10^{-4}$	0
<i>Miscellaneous drugs</i>				$5 \times 10^{-4}$	5
Nylid	$5 \times 10^{-5}$	50	Citro (JB 15)	$2 \times 10^{-5}$	1.5
	$10^{-5}$	8		$5 \times 10^{-5}$	40
Negot	$6 \times 10^{-5}$	4		$10^{-5}$	60
	$1.5 \times 10^{-5}$	5	1-Phenyl 3-hydrazino	$3 \times 10^{-4}$	15
	$6 \times 10^{-5}$	9.5	butane (JB 83)	$6 \times 10^{-4}$	2.5
			Harman	$10^{-5}$	5.5

or  $C^{14}$  A were examined by paper chromatography followed by scanning the chromatogram for radioactivity. Using labelled A  $C^{14}$  was present only in the A spot. When  $C^{14}$  DA was used however,  $C^{14}$  was present mainly in the DA spot but also in the NA spot (10%). This conversion of DA to NA has also been observed by KIRSNER (1962).

By experiments *in vitro* it has been shown that the storage mechanism is unspecific in the sense that granules normally storing only A can take up and store not only DA, NA and A but also 5 HT (BERTLER, HILLARP and ROSENGLIEN 1960). Exchange experiments with granules *in vitro* have also shown that DA (BERTLER *et al.* 1961), tyramine (SCHUMANN and PHILIPP 1961) and several other phenyl and indole alkylamines including 5 HT (CARLSSON and HILLARP 1961) can replace the endogenous catecholamines at the storage sites.

The unspecificity of the storage mechanism is even better shown in experiments where granules were incubated with  $C^{14}$  5 HT (Fig. 7 to 9). The uptake was greatly activated by MgATP and almost completely blocked by reserpine. The uptake as function of time and external amine concentration showed similar characteristics as that of the catecholamines (see Sections IV and V). The uptake mechanism seems to have a very high affinity for 5 HT. In spite of the presence of about 20  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  of A + NA in the medium and only 5  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  of  $C^{14}$  5 HT the granules took up not less than about 60 per cent of the added 5 HT under the standard conditions (Fig. 7). An uptake of this magnitude has never been observed with  $C^{14}$  catecholamines (compare with Fig. 4 which illustrates an experiment with a high uptake of  $C^{14}$  NA).

Tyramine is also taken up by the granules (SCHUMANN and PHILIPP 1961, CARLSSON and HILLARP 1961). Experiments with  $C^{14}$  tyramine in the present work showed that the uptake differs from that of the catecholamines however. It was only slightly activated by MgATP and reserpine (up to  $5 \times 10^{-6}$  M) did not block the incorporation (Fig. 10). This further supports the view that tyramine is taken up — at least mainly — by displacing the catecholamines in the granules from their storage sites.

#### IV Uptake as function of external amine concentration

The uptake mechanism operates efficiently at very low concentrations of external amines. Since the granule suspension contained free amines (see above) observations have not been made at levels below 20  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  where up to 20 per cent could be taken up in 30 min at  $-31^\circ\text{C}$  (which is far below the temperature optimum — see Section V). The high efficiency is illustrated in an experiment with  $C^{14}$  5 HT (Fig. 7) which is also taken up through a MgATP dependent mechanism blocked by reserpine (see Section III). In this case the

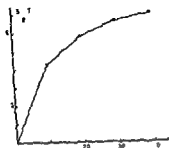


Fig 9

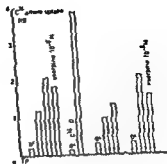


Fig 10

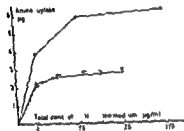


Fig 11

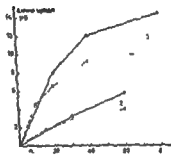


Fig 12

### Fig 9 Uptake of 5-HT as function of time

Glycylglycine pH 7.3 ATP and  $\text{MgCl}_2$  0.002 M  $\text{C}^{14}$ -5-HT 3  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  unlabelled 5-HT 40  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  +37

### Fig 10 Uptake of $\text{C}^{14}$ -tyramine

Three experiments with three different samples of granules Histidine-HCl pH 7.3 ATP and  $\text{MgCl}_2$  0.005 M  $\text{C}^{14}$ -tyramine 4  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  ( $\text{C}^{14}$ -DA 0.0  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) no unlabelled amines added +37 30 min

### Fig 11 Uptake of 5-HT as function of external amine concentration

Three experiments with three different samples of granules Glycylglycine pH 7.3 ATP and  $\text{MgCl}_2$  0.005 M  $\text{C}^{14}$ -5-HT 3  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  +37 30 min The concentration of external amines was varied by adding unlabelled L-5-HT

### Fig 12 Amine uptake as function of time

Four experiments with four different samples of granules Lower curves standard conditions upper curves glycylglycine pH 7.3 ATP 0.005 M  $\text{MgCl}_2$  0.005 M  $\text{C}^{14}$ -5-HT 3  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  unlabelled 5-HT 40 or 100  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  +37



C<sup>14</sup> 5 HT concentration was only 5  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  (no unlabelled 5 HT) The granules took up about 60 per cent in 30 min at  $+31^\circ$

With increasing concentration of external amine the absolute uptake increased at first rapidly and then very slowly (Fig 11) Thus the uptake mechanism seems to be saturated at about  $4$  to  $5 \times 10^{-4}$  M The same result was obtained with DA, NA and A and under other conditions (phosphate buffer shorter incubation time higher MgATP concentration see CARLSSON HILLARP and WALDECK 1962)

In the experiments with drugs enzyme inhibitors etc the amine concentration usually was  $3 \times 10^{-4}$  M At this level and under the other standard conditions used the uptake seldom exceeded 10 per cent of the external amine

Reserpine  $10^{-6}$  M almost completely blocked the uptake at levels of external amines up to  $5 \times 10^{-4}$  M (Fig 5)

At  $3 \times 10^{-4}$  M external amine the uptake was proportional to the granule amount between half and twice the amount used under standard conditions

## V Uptake as function of time and temperature

At  $+31^\circ$  the rate of amine uptake usually was nearly constant up to 30 min and then declined more or less rapidly Different samples of granules varied considerably in this respect as seen in Fig 12 The decline was not prevented by higher ATP concentrations It was more rapid at  $+37^\circ$  A progressive loss in uptake ability also occurred when granule suspensions were kept at  $0^\circ$  This loss is marked after 24 hours and considerable after 48 hours The incorporation mechanism is thus rather labile which may be one explanation to the great variability in uptake shown by different samples of granules (see Fig 1 and 11) (cf CARLSSON HILLARP and WALDECK 1962)

In some experiments the uptake was studied as function of temperature It increased three to five times between  $+21^\circ$  and  $+31^\circ$  and about two times between  $+31^\circ$  and  $+38^\circ$  Since the magnitude of the specific uptake at 0 is somewhat uncertain calculations of the temperature coefficient are met with difficulties The temperature dependence must be high however (cf HIRSHNER 1962)

## VI Various factors (pH buffers etc) influencing the uptake

Of the four buffers tested phosphate tri (hydroxymethyl) aminomethane HCl histidine HCl and glycylglycine NaOH the last two gave the highest and most prolonged uptake when used as the main osmotic constituent of the medium Mixtures of the buffers with sucrose or KCl were inferior

The pH optimum seemed to be about 7.3 when ascorbic acid was added to the medium to prevent oxidation of the amines. The uptake declined rapidly below pH 7 both with and without ascorbic acid. With 0.31 M glycylglycine pH 7.3 which consistently gave a higher uptake than histidine pH 7 to 7.3 no oxidation of the amines was observed which might interfere with the calculations of the uptake. The uptake (+31 and +37, 30 min) was the same with or without the presence of reducing agents (0.005 M ascorbic acid or 0.005 M sodium sulfite). No unspecific adsorption of  $C^{14}$  labelled oxidation products to the granules seemed to occur since the  $C^{14}$  content of the granule sediments was almost completely reduced to the level of the 0 controls by reserpine ( $10^{-6}$  M).

No consistent effect of  $Na^+$  or  $K^+$  (alone or in combination) was observed but incubation media totally free of both ions were not tested.

No decrease in the uptake occurred under anaerobic conditions. KCN ( $10^{-3}$  M) had no effect (Table 1).

Borate ( $10^{-3}$  M) which forms a complex with catecholamines was without effect (Table 4).

TABLE 4. Effect of agents interfering with cholinergic and other mechanisms.

Compound	Conc. of Compound M	Percent Inhibition	Compound	Conc. of Compound M	Percent Inhibition
Atropine	$10^{-6}$	0	Hydroxylamine	$5 \times 10^{-4}$	0
iso-atropine	$10^{-6}$ - $10^{-5}$	0 - 0	Spermine	$5 \times 10^{-4}$	0
Epinephrine	$10^{-6}$ - $10^{-5}$	0 - 10	Ethanolamine	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	10
Catecholamine	$10^{-6}$ - $10^{-5}$	0		$5 \times 10^{-4}$	30
0.5 M $Ca^{++}$	$< 10^{-6}$	5		$10^{-3}$	40
Atropine	$10^{-6}$ - $10^{-5}$	0	Ammonium chloride	$2 \times 10^{-4}$	10
Amethonium	$10^{-6}$ - $10^{-5}$	0		$5 \times 10^{-4}$	3
Subocaine				$10^{-3}$	45
Nitroide	$10^{-6}$ - $10^{-5}$	0	Sodium borate	$10^{-3}$	0
Epinephrine	$10^{-6}$ - $10^{-5}$	10 - 0	Sodium thiosulfate	$10^{-3}$	0
Epinephrine	$< 10^{-6}$	0	Sodium amytal	$5 \times 10^{-4}$	10
Epinephrine	$4 \times 10^{-6}$	0		$5 \times 10^{-4}$	15
	$4 \times 10^{-6}$	0	Sodium 5-diethyl		
Compound 14880	5 $\mu$ g/ml	0	barbiturate	$10^{-3}$	0

TABLE Effect of various co factors

Compound	Conc of Compound M	Per cent Activation of Inhibition
Ascorbic acid	$10^{-3}$	0
Glutathione	$10^{-3}$	0
Cysteine	$10^{-3}$	0
Choline chloride	$10^{-3}$	~10
Phosphocreatine (with or without ATP)	$2.5 \times 10^{-3}$	0
Pyridoxal $\alpha$ phosphate	$10^{-4}$	0
$\alpha$ Tocopheryl acetate	$2 \times 10^{-3}$	0
Carboxylase	$4 \times 10^{-4}$	0
Coenzyme A	$10^{-3}$	0
Riboflavin phosphate	$4 \times 10^{-4}$	0
Flavin adenine dinucleotide	$1.3 \times 10^{-4}$	~5
	$2.6 \times 10^{-4}$	~30
$\beta$ DPN (diphosphopyridine nucleotide)	$1.5 \times 10^{-3}$	~10
$\beta$ DPNH	$1.5 \times 10^{-3}$	~2
Liver concentrate (Sigma)	200 $\mu$ g/ml	~10
Yeast concentrate (Sigma)	200 $\mu$ g/ml	0
DL Thioctic acid	$2 \times 10^{-5}$ - $10^{-4}$	0
Adenosine 3,5 phosphoric acid (with or without ATP)	$2.4 \times 10^{-3}$	0

## VII Experiment to protect or activate the uptake mechanism with co factors etc

The effect on the amine uptake of many enzymic cofactors was examined both with freshly made granules and granules kept at 0° for 24 hours since the inactivation of the mechanism might be due to destruction of some co factor. None seemed to give a significant effect (Table 5).

Reducing agents such as ascorbic acid, sulfite, glutathione and cysteine showed no protective influence (Tables 1 and 5).

Isolation and storage of the granules in 0.3 M sucrose containing ethylenediamine tetraacetate (pH 7.3  $\times 10^{-3}$  M) did not prevent the deterioration of the mechanism. Other metal chelators (8-hydroxyquinoline, penicillamine  $10^{-3}$  M) had a slightly inhibitory action (Table 1).

The interesting work by LEHNINGER and co-workers (LEHNINGER 1959, 1962; LEHNINGER and REWERT 1959; NEUBERT and LEHNINGER 1962) on

TABLE 6 Effect of sodium oleate, ethyl and *n*-butyl alcohol

The capacity of the agents to release the endogenous amines was calculated from the amine content of the test and control granules after the incubations

Compound	Conc. of Compound	Inhibition Per cent	Release Per cent
Sodium oleate	$5 \times 10^{-4}$ M	40	0
	$10^{-4}$ M	60	20
	$5 \times 10^{-4}$ M	100	100
Ethyl alcohol	1°	15	0
	2.5°	25	0
	5°	80	0-10
Butanol	0.2°	15	0
	0.5°	50	0-10
	1°	90	30
	4°	100	100

the formation of a potent uncoupling agent of oxidative phosphorylation probably a long chain fatty acid on aging of mitochondria the deleterious effects of such acids on the mitochondrial integrity and the protection with bovine serum albumin inspired the thought that a similar mechanism might operate in the granule suspensions. In fact it was found that sodium oleate in low concentrations was a strong inhibitor of the amine uptake (see Section A and Table 6). However 6 per cent serum albumin in the incubation medium depressed the uptake considerably. A lipid antioxidant hydroxylamine neither activated nor inhibited the amine incorporation (Table 4). Spermine effective against mitochondrial swelling was also without effect (Table 4).

When the amine granules are incubated at elevated temperatures they swell and at the same time amines and ATP are released (HILLARP and NILSON 1954; HILLARP 1958). Similarly mitochondria swell and loose *ca* nucleotides (cf. BIERKEVITZ and POTTER 1955; LEHNINGER 1962). There is a profound difference however between these two structures in respect to the effect of ATP which protects against or reverses the swelling of mitochondria apparently through a contractile mechanism (LEHNINGER 1959; 1962). No such effect was observed when amine granules were incubated under the standard conditions. The swelling — indicated by the decrease in light scattering at  $20\text{ m}\mu$  (cf. HILLARP and NILSON 1954) — was if anything accelerated in the presence of Mg<sup>++</sup>ATI.

### VIII Influence of adrenal cortex on amine uptake

In the course of the experiments it was repeatedly found that some samples of granules showed much higher uptake than others and that the former had been prepared from medullary tissue contaminated with adrenal cortex. It was therefore thought possible that the cortex might influence the storage mechanism.

In three experiments the adrenals were cut in about 2 mm thick sections. From every other section the medulla was cut out with care taken to avoid contamination with cortex. From the other sections it was cut out together with a small zone of the inner cortex (representing maximally 5 per cent of the tissue weight). Granule suspensions were then made in the usual way and made to contain equal concentrations of amine granules (on the basis of amine determinations). The amine uptake was compared both immediately and after storage of the suspensions at 0° for 24 hours.

The contaminated granules showed a considerably higher uptake both when used fresh (33 to 65% increase) and after storage (70 to 76%). The uptake occurred only in the presence of MgATP, was blocked by reserpine and thus was no unspecific adsorption.

Since mitochondria are very scarce in the medulla the observed effect might be due to the increased amount of mitochondria from the cortex. The mitochondrial and supernatant fractions from homogenates of adrenal cortex were therefore tested as to their effect on the amine uptake by the medullary granules. The former showed a slight activation but the latter was inhibitory. The mitochondrial fraction from rabbit liver (the animal was given nialamide 100 mg/kg body wt 11-13 hr before the killing) also gave only slight stimulation. Liver or yeast concentrates were ineffective (Table 5).

Further experiments must obviously be made to decide whether any factor in the inner part of the cortex adjacent to the medulla is of importance for the amine storage mechanism.

### IX Influence of agents affecting mitochondrial enzyme systems

The possibility that the mitochondria present in the granule suspensions might influence the amine uptake was tested with use of inhibitors of the mitochondrial enzyme systems (cf. LEHNINGER 1959, HUNTER *et al.* 1959, CHING and PLAUT 1959, COOPER and KULKA 1961, WEINBACH 1961).

The results are found in Table 1. It is noteworthy that several agents showed no effect on the amine uptake in concentrations which give complete inhibition of the respiratory chain, uncouple oxidative phosphorylation essentially completely, block ATP exchange reactions or inhibit the mitochondrial ATPase.

Several compounds producing swelling of mitochondria (i.e. glutathione cysteine DL-thioctic acid ascorbate arsenite sulfite thyroxine cf LEHNINGER 1959 HUNTER et al 1959 NEUBERT and LEHNINGER 1962) were not inhibitory (Tables 1 and 5)

An interesting finding is that pentachlorophenol proved to be a strong inhibitor. Pentachloronitrobenzene was almost as potent while phenol and hexachlorocyclohexane (gamma isomer) showed no activity at the concentrations used

The effect of BAL and naphthoquinones which inhibit oxidative phosphorylation at the same site in mitochondria is discussed in Section VI

As stated above (Section VII) some agents with protective influence on mitochondria did not activate the amine uptake

#### 5. Some experiments on the nature of the storage mechanism

A total uptake of 10  $\mu\text{g}$  catecholamines has been observed when granules (initially containing about 80  $\mu\text{g}$  bound A + NA) were incubated at +37° for 30 min with an external amine concentration of 50  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$ . If present in the intragranular water the newly stored amines thus would reach levels of about 10 000  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  (calculated from data in HILLARP 1959). The storage mechanism thus is capable of accumulating amines against a high (apparent) concentration gradient (200:1). Its capacity is even more impressive in the experiments with 5-HT (see Fig. 7) where the gradient must be about 1000:1.

It has been proposed that the uptake and storage of 5-HT against a concentration gradient in blood platelets are due to an active transport mechanism (HUGHES, SNORE and BRODIE 1958). Several features of the amine uptake in the medullary granules also suggest such a mechanism. It cannot be true, however, that the amines are simply pumped into the granule water by a mechanism in the granule membrane. External catecholamines can move rather freely to and from the intragranular water and seem to have free access to most of it (CARLSSON and HILLARP 1958, HILLARP 1959) but the labelled amines taken up are not released for days at 0°.

The question thus arises if they become bound in the same way as the endogenous catecholamines. Since there seem to exist two different pools of amines in the granules (HILLARP 1960) two alternatives may be considered: they become incorporated in the large pool of amines bound together with ATP or in the more loosely bound pool without ATP.

The fact that equivalent amounts of amines and ATP are not taken up does not favour the first alternative. However, the final step in the uptake could

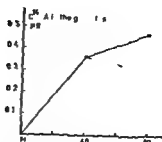


Fig. 13 Uptake of  $C^{14}$ -A by the amine granules (O—O) and nondisappearance of the  $C^{14}$ -A incorporated in the granules on further incubation in a medium containing unlabelled A (O—O)

Two experiments with the same sample of granules. The duplicates in both experiments showed good agreement in the values obtained. Glycylglycine pH 7.3 ATP 0.00 M  $MgCl_2$  0.0025 M  $C^{14}$ -A 4.3  $\mu g/ml$  unlabelled A 75  $\mu g/ml$  +37 °C at 40 min the medium was diluted seven times with a medium of the same composition but without  $C^{14}$ -A (with or without  $2 \times 10^{-6}$  M reserpine)

be an exchange with endogenous amines. Then the uptake mechanism observed here would not be the same as that operating *in vivo*. This does not seem likely.

Some experiments on the stability of the labelled amine pool have been made. It was not released for days if the granules were kept suspended in 0.5 M sucrose at 0° but immediately liberated on osmotic lysis. If the granules (after isolation and resuspension) were reincubated at +31° in the standard medium (without  $C^{14}$  amines) with or without MgATP a slow release of both labelled and unlabelled amines occurred (10 to 15% in 30 min). The release was not markedly accelerated by reserpine ( $2 \times 10^{-6}$  M) or tyramine ( $3 \times 10^{-4}$  M) (cf. EULER 1960, EULER and LISRAJKO 1960, 1961, SCHÜMANN 1960). The disappearance of the labelled amines was about the same when the granules were reincubated with or without  $10^{-3}$  M unlabelled NA in the medium. Thus no rapid exchange occurs between the amines incorporated in the granules and the external amines either with or without MgATP. This could be shown also in another type of experiments. Granules were first incubated with  $C^{14}$  A and then diluted with the same medium containing only unlabelled A (Fig. 13). Some of the  $C^{14}$  A taken up disappeared from the granules but most of the loss was accounted for by the spontaneous release occurring at elevated temperatures. Another significant finding was that the loss was neither accelerated nor prevented by reserpine ( $2 \times 10^{-6}$  M).

Thus no obvious differences in these respects were found between the labelled and endogenous amines.

All findings so far on the characteristics of the uptake mechanism (MgATP dependence, ionic temperature coefficient, blocking by drugs etc.) and the

stability of the pool strongly favour the view that the mechanism is identical with that operating *in vivo* and that the amines become bound in a similar way as the endogenous amines. The experiment with  $C^{14}$  ATP suggests that the amines are primarily taken up in the smaller pool of amines not containing ATP which may represent a more mobile pool. Since the first direct demonstration of the existence of more than one amine pool in the adrenal medulla (HILLARP 1960) it has now become generally recognized that also other cells storing and releasing monoamines may contain such pools (cf. SHORE 1962).

External amines can penetrate to the storage sites in the granules and there be bound by exchange with the endogenous amines (CARLSSON and HILLARP 1961). This exchange could not be blocked by reserpine (up to  $10^{-4}$  M preincubation) and does not require an addition of MgATP. Under the standard conditions used this uptake through exchange was of insignificant magnitude at external amine concentrations up to at least  $6 \times 10^{-4}$  M as shown by the following findings: 1) Very low uptake without MgATP. 2) almost complete block by reserpine. 3) very slow increase in uptake when the external amine concentrations was increased above the saturation level (Fig. 11). This increase may, however, at least partly, be due to simple exchange.

The finding that sodium oleate at low concentrations strongly inhibited the amine uptake might suggest that a lipid or lipoprotein is an essential component in the storage mechanism. The effect of ethyl and butyl alcohol was therefore examined (Table 6). Both were strong inhibitors at low concentrations. Obviously, profound and unspecific structural changes may be responsible since a lipid component is of high importance for the integrity of the granules (HILLARP and NILAÖN 1954). The agents — especially ethyl alcohol — were inhibitory in concentrations however which did not cause an accelerated amine release. It was also found that concentrations giving a strong inhibition produced no marked swelling of the granules.

## XI Effect of various enzyme inhibitors

Several more or less specific enzyme inhibitors were tested (Table 1). Agents found to be inhibitors were also examined as to their activity to release the granule amines in order to decide whether the inhibition was merely due to profound changes in the granule structure.

Quabain which specifically blocks active transport of cations through cell membranes in several cases (cf. POST *et al.* 1960) and also monoamine uptake by platelets and tissue slices (HICKEY, SHORE and BRODIE 1955; WEINSBACH, REDFIELD and TITUS 1960; DEGLER and TITUS 1961; DEGLER, SPIEGEL and TITUS 1961) showed no inhibition at all in high concentration. It would thus



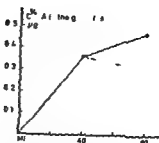


Fig 13 Uptake of  $C^{14}$ -A by the amine granules (0—0) and nondisappearance of the  $C^{14}$ -A incorporated in the granules on further incubation in a medium containing unlabelled A (0—0)

Two experiments with the same sample of granules. The duplicates in both experiments showed good agreement in the values obtained. Glycylglycine pH 7.3 ATP 0.005 M  $MgCl_2$  0.002 M  $C^{14}$ -A 4.3  $\mu g/ml$  unlabelled A 7.0  $\mu g/ml$  +37.0 °C at 40 min the medium was diluted even times with a medium of the same composition but without  $C^{14}$ -A (with or without  $2 \times 10^{-6} M$  reserpine)

be an exchange with endogenous amines. Then the uptake mechanism observed here would not be the same as that operating *in vivo*. This does not seem likely.

Some experiments on the stability of the labelled amine pool have been made. It was not released for days if the granules were kept suspended in 0.5 M sucrose at 0° but immediately liberated on osmotic lysis. If the granules (after isolation and resuspension) were reincubated at +31° in the standard medium (without  $C^{14}$  amines) with or without MgATP a slow release of both labelled and unlabelled amines occurred (10 to 15% in 30 min). The release was not markedly accelerated by reserpine ( $2 \times 10^{-6} M$ ) or tyramine ( $3 \times 10^{-4} M$ ) (cf. EULER 1960, EULER and LISHAJKO 1960, 1961, SCHUYMAN 1960). The disappearance of the labelled amines was about the same when the granules were reincubated with or without  $10^{-3} M$  unlabelled NA in the medium. Thus no rapid exchange occurs between the amines incorporated in the granules and the external amines either with or without MgATP. This could be shown also in another type of experiments. Granules were first incubated with  $C^{14}$ -A and then diluted with the same medium containing only unlabelled A (Fig. 13). Some of the  $C^{14}$ -A taken up disappeared from the granules but most of the loss was accounted for by the spontaneous release occurring at elevated temperatures. Another significant finding was that the loss was neither accelerated nor prevented by reserpine ( $2 \times 10^{-6} M$ ).

Thus no obvious differences in these respects were found between the labelled and endogenous amines.

All findings so far on the characteristics of the uptake mechanism (MgATP dependence, lability, temperature coefficient, blocking by drugs etc.) and the

stability of the pool strongly favour the view that the mechanism is identical with that operating in vivo and that the amines become bound in a similar way as the endogenous amines. The experiment with  $C^{14}$  ATP suggests that the amines are primarily taken up in the smaller pool of amines not containing ATP which may represent a more mobile pool. Since the first direct demonstration of the existence of more than one amine pool in the adrenal medulla (HILLARP 1960) it has now become generally recognized that also other cells storing and releasing monoamines may contain such pools (cf. SHORE 1962).

External amines can penetrate to the storage sites in the granules and there be bound by exchange with the endogenous amines (CARLSSON and HILLARP 1961). This exchange could not be blocked by reserpine (up to  $10^{-4}$  M preincubation) and does not require an addition of MgATP. Under the standard conditions used this uptake through exchange was of insignificant magnitude at external amine concentrations up to at least  $6 \times 10^{-4}$  M as shown by the following findings: 1) very low uptake without MgATP; 2) almost complete block by reserpine; 3) very slow increase in uptake when the external amine concentrations was increased above the saturation level (Fig. 11). This increase may however at least partly be due to simple exchange.

The finding that sodium oleate at low concentrations strongly inhibited the amine uptake might suggest that a lipid or lipoprotein is an essential component in the storage mechanism. The effect of ethyl and butyl alcohol was therefore examined (Table 6). Both were strong inhibitors at low concentrations. Obviously profound and unspecific structural changes may be responsible since a lipid component is of high importance for the integrity of the granules (HILLARP and NILSON 1964). The agents — especially ethyl alcohol — were inhibitory in concentrations however which did not cause an accelerated amine release. It was also found that concentrations giving a strong inhibition produced no marked swelling of the granules.

## VI Effect of various enzyme inhibitors

Several more or less specific enzyme inhibitors were tested (Table 1). Agents found to be inhibitors were also examined as to their activity to release the granule amines in order to decide whether the inhibition was merely due to profound changes in the granule structure.

Quabain which specifically blocks active transport of cations through cell membranes in several cases (cf. POST *et al.* 1960) and also monoamine uptake by platelets and tissue slices (HUGHES, SHORE and BRODIE 1958; WEISSBACH, REDFIELD and TITUS 1960; DENGGLER and TITUS 1961; DENGGLER, SPIEGEL and TITUS 1961) showed no inhibition at all in high concentration. It would thus

appear that in intact monoamine storing cells two different mechanisms of amine uptake operate at the same time, i.e. one sensitive to ouabain and probably located in the cell membrane the other sensitive to reserpine and located in the storage granules. The earlier studies on platelets lead to the concept that reserpine acts on a pump mechanism in a membrane. It is not surprising that attempts (BRODIE and COSTA 1961) to explain the events in nerve endings on this basis have led to a rather confusing concept. It should be emphasized that the distinction between the two mechanisms i.e. the ouabain sensitive transport mechanism and the specific reserpine sensitive storage mechanism is essential.

It is noteworthy that no or but slight inhibition was caused by inhibitors of various nucleotide enzymes (ATPases, transphosphorylases, hexokinase), metal chelators (ethylenediamine tetraacetate inhibited only when present in concentrations enough to bind  $Mg^{++}$ ) and diisopropylfluorophosphate, Poliphloretin phosphate which i.e. inhibits several phosphatases (DICZFALLS *et al.* 1953) was active at fairly high concentrations. The fact that NH reagents (acetic anhydride and phenylisocyanate but not ninhydrine) were inhibitory to some extent may be due to an attack on the catecholamines in the medium.

Potent SH reagents give profound structural changes in the granules resulting in release of both amines and intragranular proteins (D'ORIO 1957, HILLARP 1958). Mercuric chloride ( $10^{-6}$  M) and p-chloromercuribenzoate ( $10^{-3}$  M) caused an essentially complete amine release and block of uptake even if the granules were exposed to them at 0 (15 min) and then were isolated and tested (Table 1). When added directly to the incubation medium mercuric chloride also at lower concentrations ( $10^{-6}$  M) gave both release and inhibition of the uptake. The inhibition may thus be a consequence of structural changes.

It was found however that less potent SH reagents (N-ethylmaleimide, allicin, diethylthiosulfonate) were strong inhibitors at low concentrations although no marked amine release occurred even at higher concentrations. Preincubation at 0° with allicin also largely prevented amine uptake. One of the strongest inhibitors hitherto found — tranquilizers excluded — was an interesting thiosulfonate (bis 2-hydroxy benzoic acid 5-thio-sulfonate kindly suggested and supplied by Dr B. Hogberg, AB Leo, Helsingborg). This compound readily blocks SH groups e.g. the SH group of glutathione (tested by SH determinations according to ELLMAN 1954). Its inhibition of the amine uptake was prevented in the presence of  $10^{-3}$  M glutathione (Table 1). This suggests an action on SH groups in the granules. The compound gave a pronounced inhibition at  $2 \times 10^{-6}$  M but no amine release occurred even at a hundredfold higher concentration.

Three other SH reagents (o iodobenzoic acid iodoacetamide sodium arsenite) showed no inhibition. It is not an unusual finding however that some SH groups in enzymes do not react as easily with these reagents as with others (cf. BOYER 1959). The fact that  $\text{Cu}^{++}$  and  $\text{Zn}^{++}$  (in glycylglycine buffer) had no effect may be due *e.g.* to strong binding to other groups.

The finding that menadione was a fairly potent inhibitor prompted examination of other naphthoquinones and related compounds. 1,4-naphthoquinone, 5-hydroxy-1,4-naphthoquinone and dicoumarol were even more potent than menadione while 1,2-naphthoquinone showed about the same potency and 1,4-benzoquinone and ubiquinone were almost inactive at the same concentrations. The high activity of 1,4-naphthoquinone is further seen from the fact that the granules after a short (30 min) preincubation at 0° with this compound lost their uptake capacity (Table 1).

At present no definite data are available to decide in what way the naphthoquinones interfere with the storage mechanism. At the concentrations used they did not cause structural changes so profound that amine release occurred. There is evidence however that 1,4-naphthoquinones easily react with free SH groups also in proteins (FIESER 1941, CAVADY and ROE 1956). In fact 2-methyl-5,8-dihydroxy-1,4-naphthoquinone has been suggested as an efficient agent for blocking SH groups (HUBB and BERNERT 1947). Evidence for the view that 1,4-naphthoquinone acts in this way was obtained in experiments with granules preincubated at 0° with this agent. When such granules — after isolation — were reincubated under standard conditions the block of the amine uptake could largely be reversed by  $10^{-3}$  M cysteine or glutathione. This seems to show that some SH groups are essential for the uptake mechanism and can be blocked without profound and irreversible structural changes. 1,2-naphthoquinone probably also acts on SH since this compound — like 1,4-naphthoquinone — readily reacts with glutathione (tested by SH determinations according to ELLMAN 1958).

The water soluble menadione sodium bisulfite did not inhibit the amine uptake. It may not be able to penetrate to the sensitive sites or it may have lost the reactivity of menadione.

BAL was found to be a fairly potent inhibitor. No amine release occurred at the highest concentrations used ( $10^{-3}$  M). The experiment with preincubation at 11° showed that BAL either does not easily react at this temperature or that the blocking is reversible. It may act through metal binding or reduction of S-S bonds. The fact that other metal chelators and agents cleaving S-S bonds (sulfite cyanide) were without effect would then be due to poor penetration.

appear that in intact monoamine storing cells two different mechanisms of amine uptake operate at the same time i.e. one sensitive to ouabain and probably located in the cell membrane the other sensitive to reserpine and located in the storage granules. The earlier studies on platelets lead to the concept that reserpine acts on a pump mechanism in a membrane. It is not surprising that attempts (BRODIE and COSTA 1961) to explain the events in nerve endings on this basis have led to a rather confusing concept. It should be emphasized that the distinction between the two mechanisms i.e. the ouabain sensitive transport mechanism and the specific reserpine sensitive storage mechanism is essential.

It is noteworthy that no or but slight inhibition was caused by inhibitors of various nucleotide enzymes (ATPases, transphosphorylases, hexokinase), metal chelators (ethylenediamine tetraacetate inhibited only when present in concentrations enough to bind  $Mg^{++}$ ) and diisopropylfluorophosphate. Polyphlorethin phosphate which also inhibits several phosphatases (DICZFALUSY *et al.* 1953) was active at fairly high concentrations. The fact that  $\Delta H$  reagents (acetic anhydride and phenylisocyanate but not ninhydrine) were inhibitory to some extent may be due to an attack on the catecholamines in the medium.

Potent SH reagents give profound structural changes in the granules resulting in release of both amines and intragranular proteins (D'IONIO 1957, HILLARP 1958). Mercuric chloride ( $10^{-6}$  M) and p-chloromercuribenzoate ( $10^{-3}$  M) caused an essentially complete amine release and block of uptake even if the granules were exposed to them at  $0^\circ$  (15 min) and then were isolated and tested (Table 1). When added directly to the incubation medium mercuric chloride also at lower concentrations ( $10^{-6}$  M) gave both release and inhibition of the uptake. The inhibition may thus be a consequence of structural changes.

It was found however that less potent SH reagents (N-ethylmaleimide, allicin, diethylthiosulfonate) were strong inhibitors at low concentrations although no marked amine release occurred even at higher concentrations. Preincubation at  $0^\circ$  with allicin also largely prevented amine uptake. One of the strongest inhibitors hitherto found — tranquilizers excluded — was an interesting thiosulfonate (bis 2 hydroxy benzoic acid 5 thio-sulfonate kindly suggested and supplied by Dr B. Hogberg, AB Leo, Helsingborg). This compound readily blocks SH groups e.g. the SH group of glutathione (tested by SH determinations according to ELLMAN 1958). Its inhibition of the amine uptake was prevented in the presence of  $10^{-3}$  M glutathione (Table 1). This suggests an action on SH groups in the granules. The compound gave a pronounced inhibition at  $2.7 \times 10^{-6}$  M but no amine release occurred even at a hundredfold higher concentration.

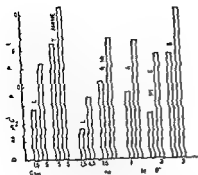


Fig 14

Fig 14 Decrease in  $C^{14}$ -A uptake on addition of L-NA tyramine tryptamine or  $\alpha$ -HT to the incubation medium

The same sample of granules was used in the two experiments with tyramine. Left diagram the medium contained no unlabelled NA before the additions indicated. Right diagram the medium contained  $3 \times 10^{-4}$  M NA before the additions indicated. The diagram showing the effect of tryptamine and  $\alpha$ -HT represents the mean values from two experiments with another sample of granules. The medium contained no unlabelled NA before the additions indicated. The standard conditions were used for all the incubations.  $C^{14}$ -A  $4 \mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$

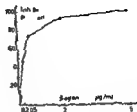


Fig 15

Fig 15 Effect of Segontin on  $C^{14}$ -A uptake

Glycylglycine pH 7.3 ATP and  $\text{MgCl}_2$  0.005 M  $C^{14}$ -A  $0.1 \mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  total external A + NA 45  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  + 31 30 min

from their storage sites (unpublished data). This demonstrates the essentiality of the amino group. This is further illustrated by the inhibitory action of ethanolamine and even  $\text{NH}_4^+$ . Histamine was inactive however (Table 4).

### VIII Effect of miscellaneous agents interfering with adrenergic mechanisms

As reported in our previous publication a number of adrenergic blocking agents caused a blockade of the amine uptake by the granules suggesting structural similarity between binding sites of the uptake mechanism and adrenergic receptors. The phenomenon has now been studied in some further detail (Table 3). Of all the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  adrenergic blocking agents studied only

## VII Effect of phenyl and indole alkylamines

Several phenyl and indole alkylamines structurally related to the catecholamines and 5 HT are able to replace the endogenous amines at the storage sites in the granules (CARLSSON and HILLARP 1961). It is thus not surprising that such compounds inhibited the catecholamine uptake. Most of the tested amines (L amphetamine, L ephedrine, mescaline, *n*-propylamino ethoxy oxylene (H 13/71), *N,N* diisopropyl tyramine (H 17/09), *N*-*n*-propyl NA, L aramine and tryptamine) did not show a markedly stronger depression of the  $C^{14}$  amino uptake than that caused by dilution of the external amine concentration by added catecholamines. No systematic study has been made however.

Tyramine had the most pronounced effect of the amines tested even in concentrations which did not produce any obvious amine release (Fig. 14). This is interesting in view of the finding that tyramine does not seem to be taken up through the MgATP dependent storage mechanism (Section III) although it can displace the endogenous amines in the granules. Thus the possibility must be considered that the pharmacological actions of tyramine are at least partly brought about by block of the uptake mechanism.

5 HT depressed the  $C^{14}$  amino uptake more and tryptamine somewhat less than catecholamines (Fig. 14). The effect of 5 HT is in accordance with the high affinity of the storage mechanism for this amine (Section III). This also illustrates the importance of the 5 OH group.

It is of interest that a phenox compound with two side chains each containing a tertiary amino group (2,3 bis (dimethylamino ethoxy)anisole (H 17/14), produced about the same inhibition as e.g. tyramine. On the other hand *p*-hydroxy phenoxylethyl trimethyl ammonium iodide (H 10/56) with a quaternary nitrogen showed no effect.

Another interesting finding is that L aramine which causes depletion of tissue NA (CARLSSON and LINDQVIST 1962, LUDVIGSSON and ZALTMAN NIKENBERG 1962) showed no strong affinity for the storage mechanism. In fact the decrease in  $C^{14}$  NA uptake produced by L aramine was slightly lower than that produced by L NA in the same concentration. This suggests that the depletion of NA by aramine in the brain depends due to displacement of NA (CARLSSON and LINDQVIST 1962) rather than a direct effect on the storage mechanism.

Ephedrine and amphetamine were inhibitory showing that phenolic hydroxyl groups are not essential.

3,4 dihydroxyphenylacetamide (H 13/49) was without effect even in very high concentrations ( $5 \times 10^{-3}$  M). Neither can it displace the endogenous amines.

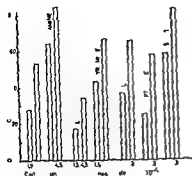


Fig 14

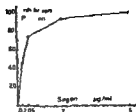


Fig 15

Fig 14 Decrease in  $C^{14}$ -A uptake on addition of L-NA, tyramine, tryptamine or 5-HT to the incubation medium

The same sample of granules was used in the two experiments with tyramine. Left diagram the medium contained no unlabelled NA before the additions indicated. Right diagram the medium contained  $3 \times 10^{-4}$  M NA before the additions indicated. The diagram showing the effect of tryptamine and 5-HT represents the mean values from two experiments with another sample of granules. The medium contained no unlabelled NA before the additions indicated. The standard conditions were used for all the incubations.  $C^{14}$ -A  $4 \mu\text{g/ml}$ .

Fig 15 Effect of Segontin on  $C^{14}$ -A uptake

Glycylglycine pH 7.3, ATP and MgCl  $0.005$  M,  $C^{14}$ -A  $0.15 \mu\text{g/ml}$ , total external A+NA  $4.5 \mu\text{g/ml}$ ,  $+31 \pm 30$  mm.

from their storage sites (unpublished data). This demonstrates the essentiality of the amino group. This is further illustrated by the inhibitory action of ethanolamine and even  $\text{NH}_4^+$ . Histamine was inactive however (Table 4).

### VIII Effect of miscellaneous agents interfering with adrenergic mechanisms

As reported in our previous publication, a number of adrenergic blocking agents caused a blockade of the amine uptake by the granules, suggesting structural similarity between binding sites of the uptake mechanism and adrenergic receptors. The phenomenon has now been studied in some further detail (Table 3). Of all the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  adrenergic blocking agents studied only



## VII Effect of phenyl and indole alkylamines

Several phenyl and indole alkylamines structurally related to the catecholamines and 5 HT are able to replace the endogenous amines at the storage sites in the granules (CARLSSON and HILLARP 1961). It is thus not surprising that such compounds inhibited the catecholamine uptake. Most of the tested amines (L amphetamine, L ephedrine, mescaline, isopropylamino ethoxy o xylene (H 13/71), N N diisopropyl tyramine (H 17/09), N isopropyl NA, L aramine and tryptamine) did not show a markedly stronger depression of the  $C^{14}$  amine uptake than that caused by dilution of the external amine concentration by added catecholamines. No systematic study has been made, however.

Tyramine had the most pronounced effect of the amines tested even in concentrations which did not produce any obvious amine release (Fig. 14). This is interesting in view of the finding that tyramine does not seem to be taken up through the MgATP dependent storage mechanism (Section III) although it can displace the endogenous amines in the granules. Thus the possibility must be considered that the pharmacological actions of tyramine are at least partly brought about by block of the uptake mechanism.

5 HT depressed the  $C^{14}$  amine uptake more and tryptamine somewhat less than catecholamines (Fig. 14). The effect of 5 HT is in accordance with the high affinity of the storage mechanism for this amine (Section III). This also illustrates the importance of the 5 OH group.

It is of interest that a phenoxyl compound with two side chains each containing a tertiary amino group (2,3 bis (dimethylamino ethoxy) anisole (H 17/14)) produced about the same inhibition as e.g. tyramine. On the other hand p hydroxy phenoxylethyl trimethyl ammonium iodide (H 10/56) with a quaternary nitrogen showed no effect.

Another interesting finding is that L aramine which causes depletion of tissue NA (CARLSSON and LINDQVIST 1962, UDEFRIED and ZALTMAN, NIRENBERG 1962) showed no strong affinity for the storage mechanism. In fact the decrease in  $C^{14}$  NA uptake produced by L aramine was slightly lower than that produced by L NA in the same concentration. This suggests that the depletion of NA by aramine in the brain depots is due to displacement of NA (CARLSSON and LINDQVIST 1962) rather than a direct effect on the storage mechanism.

Lphedrine and amphetamine were inhibitory showing that phenolic hydroxyl groups are not essential.

3,4 dihydroxyphenylacetamide (H 13/49) was without effect even in very high concentrations ( $5 \times 10^{-3}$  M). Neither can it displace the endogenous amines.

# XIV Tranquillizers

Reserpine tetrabenazine chlorpromazine and haloperidol are all potent inhibitors (CARLSSON HILLARP and WALDECK 1962) A marked inhibition was produced by  $4 \times 10^{-8}$  M reserpine while isoreserpine was about 100 times weaker which demonstrates the high specificity of reserpine to act on some vital point in the storage mechanism Reserpine has been shown to inhibit the uptake of 5 HT in blood platelets *in vitro* (BRONIE *et al* 1957) and the uptake of newformed catecholamines in the granules of the adrenal medulla *in vivo* (BERTLER HILLARP and ROSENBERG 1961)

The concentrations of tetrabenazine chlorpromazine and haloperidol necessary for 50 per cent block of uptake were about  $5 \times 10^{-8}$   $2 \times 10^{-8}$  and  $1 \times 10^{-8}$  M respectively Imipramine and promethazine (Table 3) which are chemically closely related to chlorpromazine but more or less devoid of tranquillizing activity were about as potent as chlorpromazine

No amine release was caused by reserpine in concentrations much higher than those ( $10^{-6}$  M) giving an essentially complete uptake block Chlorpromazine on the other hand caused release at levels higher than  $3 \times 10^{-6}$  M 80 to 90 per cent were liberated at  $9 \times 10^{-5}$  M (+31 - 30 min)

The effect of reserpine was not prevented by  $10^{-6}$  M iproniazid even if the granules were first preincubated with iproniazid (+31 - 30 min) In view of the mechanism of iproniazid reserpine interaction proposed below such an effect is not to be expected Glutathione ( $10^{-3}$  M) did not influence the inhibitory effect of reserpine

The blocking effect of reserpine — unlike that of phenoxybenzamine diben

TABLE Effect of reserpine at various concentrations of catecholamines in the incubation medium

The granules were incubated under the standard conditions (+31 - 30 min) with and without reserpine ( $8 \times 10^{-8}$  M) Unlabelled L-NA was added to the medium to make the total concentration of L-NA indicated in the table The concentration of  $C^{14}$  NA was  $\mu\text{g/ml}$

Concentration of L-NA in the medium $\mu\text{g/ml}$	$C^{14}$ amine uptake $\mu\text{g}$		Inhibition Per cent
	Controls	Reserpine	
0	0.8	0.9	63
0.5	0.39	0.19	51
1	0.18	0.1	33

one i.e. phentolamine proved devoid of activity on the uptake mechanism. This was found to be the case also in experiments where the granules were preincubated with phentolamine.

The  $\beta$  haloalkylamines among which phenoxybenzamine was the most potent, seemed to act by a reversible mechanism, because they were inactive when preincubated with granules for 30 minutes at 31°. Thiosulfate did not interfere with their inhibitory effect which argues against the assumption that the effect is mediated via ethyleniminium ions. The mode of action of the agents is therefore possibly not the same on the uptake mechanism as on  $\alpha$  receptors.

Also the action of 8-4 dichloro isopropyl noradrenaline (DCI) was reversible as shown by preincubation experiments.

A number of vasodilating agents have been tested. Of these a coronary dilating agent i.e. Segontin (N (3 phenylpropyl (2)) 1,1 diphenylpropyl (3) amine) proved most active (Fig. 15). It produced a 50 per cent block in a concentration of  $10^{-6}$  M. In fact Segontin is the most potent inhibitor of the uptake mechanism known so far apart from reserpine. No release occurred at a concentration giving almost complete block ( $6 \times 10^{-6}$  M). At ten times higher concentrations a complete release took place. Segontin is thus also the most active releasing agent known to date apart from mercuric chloride. This enormous activity invites the speculation that a compound with similar action is involved in physiological release.

Another vasodilator i.e. Nylidrine which has a chemical structure somewhat similar to that of Segontin was about ten times less potent. Even less potent were papaverine, quinine and quinidine and sodium nitrite was devoid of activity.

It is of interest to note that while reserpine is the strongest inhibitor of the uptake mechanism known so far a number of other presynaptic adrenergic blocking agents are devoid of such activity. This is true of TM 10, bretylium tosylate and guanethidine. As is well known there is evidence that these agents do not block adrenergic transmission by the same mechanism as reserpine. The sites of attack of these other agents remain to be located. They may possibly be sought in the mechanism by which the transmitter is released by nerve activity.

A number of monoamine oxidase inhibitors were studied (Table 3). The two hydrazides examined were inactive (iproniazid and nialamide). The moderate activity of the other compounds may be referable to their amine and hydrazine groups.

Several other compounds have been tested (see also Table 4).

## XIV Tranquillizers

Reserpine tetrabenazine chlorpromazine and haloperidol are all potent inhibitors (CAPLSON HILLARY and WALDECK 1962). A marked inhibition was produced by  $4 \times 10^{-8}$  M reserpine while isoreserpine was about 100 times weaker which demonstrates the high specificity of reserpine to act on some vital point in the storage mechanism. Reserpine has been shown to inhibit the uptake of 5 HT in blood platelets *in vitro* (BRODIE *et al* 1957) and the uptake of newly formed catecholamines in the granules of the adrenal medulla *in vivo* (BERTLER HILLARY and ROSENGREN 1961).

The concentrations of tetrabenazine chlorpromazine and haloperidol necessary for 50 per cent block of uptake were about  $5 \times 10^{-6}$ ,  $2 \times 10^{-6}$  and  $1 \times 10^{-6}$  M respectively. Imipramine and promethazine (Table 3) which are chemically closely related to chlorpromazine but more or less devoid of tranquillizing activity were about as potent as chlorpromazine.

No amine release was caused by reserpine in concentrations much higher than those ( $10^{-6}$  M) giving an essentially complete uptake block. Chlorpromazine on the other hand caused release at levels higher than  $3 \times 10^{-5}$  M. 80 to 90 per cent were liberated at  $9 \times 10^{-5}$  M (+31 : 30 min).

The effect of reserpine was not prevented by  $10^{-3}$  M iproniazid even if the granules were first preincubated with iproniazid (+31 : 30 min). In view of the mechanism of iproniazid reserpine interaction proposed below such an effect is not to be expected. Glutathione ( $10^{-3}$  M) did not influence the inhibitory effect of reserpine.

The blocking effect of reserpine — unlike that of phenoxy benzamine diben-

TABLE Effect of reserpine at various concentrations of catecholamines in the incubation medium

The granules were incubated under the standard conditions (+31 : 30 min) with and without reserpine ( $5 \times 10^{-6}$  M). Labeled L-NA was added to the medium to make the total concentration of L-NA indicated in the table. The concentration of C-NA was  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ .

Concentration L-NA in the medium $\mu\text{g/ml}$	$\text{C}^{14}$ amine uptake $\mu\text{g}$		Inhibition Per cent
	Controls	Reserpine	
0.5	0.8	0.9	63
1	0.39	0.19	51
1	0.18	0.1	33

one i.e. phentolamine proved devoid of activity on the uptake mechanism. This was found to be the case also in experiments where the granules were preincubated with phentolamine.

The  $\beta$  haloalkylamines among which phenoxylbenzamine was the most potent, seemed to act by a reversible mechanism because they were inactive when preincubated with granules for 30 minutes at 31°. Thiosulfate did not interfere with their inhibitory effect which argues against the assumption that the effect is mediated via ethyleniminium ions. The mode of action of these agents is therefore possibly not the same on the uptake mechanism as on  $\alpha$  receptors.

Also the action of 3,4-dichloro isopropyl noradrenaline (DCI) was reversible as shown by preincubation experiments.

A number of vasodilating agents have been tested. Of these a coronary dilating agent i.e. Segontin (N-(3-phenylpropyl (2)) 1,1-diphenylpropyl (3) amine) proved most active (Fig. 15). It produced a 50 per cent block in a concentration of  $10^{-6}$  M. In fact Segontin is the most potent inhibitor of the uptake mechanism known so far apart from reserpine. No release occurred at a concentration giving almost complete block ( $6 \times 10^{-6}$  M). At ten times higher concentrations a complete release took place. Segontin is thus also the most active releasing agent known to date apart from mercuric chloride. This enormous activity invites the speculation that a compound with similar action is involved in physiological release.

Another vasodilator i.e. Nylidrine which has a chemical structure somewhat similar to that of Segontin was about ten times less potent. Even less potent were papaverine, quinine and quinidine and sodium nitrite was devoid of activity.

It is of interest to note that while reserpine is the strongest inhibitor of the uptake mechanism known so far a number of other presynaptic adrenergic blocking agents are devoid of such activity. This is true of TM 10, bretylium tosylate and guanethidine. As is well known there is evidence that these agents do not block adrenergic transmission by the same mechanism as reserpine. The sites of attack of these other agents remain to be located. They may possibly be sought in the mechanism by which the transmitter is released by nerve activity.

A number of monoamine oxidase inhibitors were studied (Table 3). The two hydrazides examined were inactive (iproniazid and mialmidol). The moderate activity of the other compounds may be referable to their amine and hydrazine groups.

Several other compounds have been tested (see also Table 4).

## SUMMARY

Bovine adrenal medullary granules were isolated and incubated with radio active adrenaline noradrenaline dopamine 5 hydroxytryptamine or tyramine. The influence of various factors on the uptake of these monoamines was studied.

The presence of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) was required for the uptake. ATP could be replaced by some other nucleoside triphosphates but not by inorganic triphosphate or adenosine di or monophosphate. Experiments with  $C^{14}$  labelled ATP showed that ATP was taken up by the granules though in considerably smaller amounts than the amines when calculated on an equivalent basis. In contrast to the amine incorporation the uptake of ATP was only partially inhibited by reserpine.

In addition to ATP magnesium ions were essential for the uptake. They could be replaced by  $Mn^{++}$  but not by  $Ca^{++}$ . Several other cofactors were studied. They neither protected nor activated the uptake. However a factor present in the inner part of the adrenal cortex appears to stimulate or stabilize the uptake mechanism.

The uptake mechanism is only partially capable of discriminating between I and II adrenaline. It does not discriminate between adrenaline noradrenaline and dopamine, 5 hydroxytryptamine is taken up by the same mechanism for which it seems to have a high affinity. Tyramine is taken up by a different mechanism which does not require MgATP and is insensitive to reserpine but at the same time tyramine inhibits the MgATP dependent uptake mechanism. This supports the view that tyramine is taken up - at least mainly - by displacing the catecholamines from their storage sites. Several other analogues compete with the physiological amines for the uptake mechanism. The amino group but not the phenolic hydroxyl groups is essential.

The uptake mechanism operates efficiently at very low concentrations of external amines and seems to be saturated at about  $4$  to  $1 \times 10^{-4}$  M. Its temperature dependence is high.

The data indicate that the amines taken up by the granules become bound in a similar way as the endogenous amines. They seem to be primarily incorporated in a small labile pool not containing ATP. Once incorporated they do not rapidly exchange with external amines.

TABLE 8 Uptake of  $C^{14}$  ATP and  $C^{14}$  NA

0.2 ml of the granule suspension was added to 2 ml of an incubation medium containing 0.31 M glycolylglycine pH 7.3,  $0.005$  M  $C^{14}$  ATP and  $MgCl_2$ , 150  $\mu$ g unlabeled L NA and 20  $\mu$ g  $C^{14}$  NA. Incubation time 30 min. Reserpine  $1.5 \times 10^{-6}$  M.

	Uptake of $C^{14}$ NA $\mu$ g	Total amine uptake $\mu$ g	Uptake of $C^{14}$ nucleotides $\mu$ g		
			ATP	ADI	AMI
Controls 0	0.07		0.04		
Controls +31	1.0	14	1.1	0.5	0.44
Reserpine +31°	0.10	0.4	1.1		

amine and DCI — was not reversed by washing of the granules. Even if the granules were preincubated at  $0^\circ$  (30 min) with reserpine (0.2 ml granule suspension + 0.2 ml 0.3 M sucrose containing  $8 \times 10^{-6}$  or  $8 \times 10^{-7}$  M reserpine) and then isolated and resuspended the inhibition was about the same as that obtained by reserpine directly added to the medium used for testing the  $C^{14}$  amine uptake. The drug thus seems to be bound to a vital site and possibly causes persistent changes in the storage mechanism even at  $0^\circ$ .

It is of great interest that the inhibitory effect of reserpine can be counteracted by increasing the concentration of catecholamines in the incubation medium. Data from a typical experiment are found in Table 7. Further analysis (ROSENBERG unpublished results) shows that in all probability catecholamines and reserpine compete for the same sites of the mechanism responsible for the uptake. This may for the first time provide an explanation of the fact (CARLSSON *et al.* 1957) that MAO inhibitors are able to prevent the depletion of catecholamine stores in tissues caused by reserpine. The MAO inhibitors probably cause intracellular accumulation of catecholamines which may then counteract the effect of reserpine.

The inhibitory effect of reserpine ( $8 \times 10^{-6}$  M) could not be counteracted by increasing the  $Mg$  ATP concentration from 0.001 to 0.01 M.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

For skilful technical assistance we are indebted to Miss Inger Alexandersson  
Miss Gun Holmberg Miss Elvy Olsson and Mrs Eva Åhrman

For generous supplies of drugs we are indebted to the following companies

The Swedish Ciba Stockholm Sweden (reserpine isoreserpine)

Draco Lund Sweden (JB 516 JB 83)

Eli Lilly Company Indianapolis Indiana through Dr I H Slater (DCI  
L- and D 1 (o chlorophenyl) 2 isopropylaminoethanol)

Geigy Basel Switzerland (imipramine N monodemethylated imipramine)

Hassle Goteborg Sweden through Dr H Corrodi (H 10,06 H 13/49  
H 13/62 H 13/71 H 13,72 H 17,09 H 17/14)

Hoechst Frankfurt a M Germany (Segontin)

Hoffman La Roche Basel Switzerland through Dr A Fleischer (iproniazid  
tetraabenazine)

Leo Halsingborg Sweden through Dr H Hogberg (allicin compound  
45 80 polyphloretin phosphate and several thiosulfonates)

Merck Sharp and Dohme Research Laboratories Rahway N Y through  
Dr R C Verey (aramine)

Sterling Winthrop Research Institute Rensselaer N Y through Dr  
A M Lands (D adrenaline)

The Swedish Pfizer Stockholm Sweden (nialamide)

Compound 51 28 was kindly donated by Dr P Furebgott

This research was supported by the United States Air Force under Grant  
No 4F EOAR 63-14 and monitored by the European Office Office of  
Aerospace Research by grants from the United States Public Health Service  
(B 07954) and the Swedish Medical Research Council

For defraying printing expenses and other generous financial support we  
are indebted to AB Hassle Goteborg Sweden



A large number of enzyme inhibitors have been tested. The most significant findings so far is that SH groups seem to be essential for the uptake mechanism. A lipid component or nonpolar sites in a protein structure seem to be essential.

A number of adrenergic blocking agents caused a blockade of the amine uptake, suggesting structural similarity between binding sites of the uptake mechanism and adrenergic receptors.

Segontin (N (diphenylpropyl) amphetamine) proved to be the most potent inhibitor of the uptake mechanism known so far apart from reserpine. In higher but still very low concentrations it caused complete release of the granule amines.

All the major tranquilizers tested, i.e. reserpine, tetraabenazine, chlorpromazine and haloperidol are potent inhibitors of the uptake mechanism. Of these reserpine is by far the most potent agent ( $4 \times 10^{-8}$  M). Isoreserpine is about 100 times weaker, indicating high structural specificity. The drug seems to be bound to a vital site and possibly causes persistent changes in the storage mechanism. The inhibitory effect of reserpine can be counteracted by increasing the concentration of catecholamines in the incubation medium. This provides an explanation of the interaction between monoamine oxidase inhibitors and reserpine.

A number of other presynaptic adrenergic blocking agents i.e. TM 10, bretylium, and guanethidine, have no influence on the uptake mechanism.

Ouabain which blocks the uptake of amines and certain other cations by intact cells had no effect on the uptake of amines by the storage granule. The distinction between the ouabain sensitive transport mechanism and the specific reserpine sensitive storage mechanism is essential for understanding the events at nerve endings.

- COOPER C and R G KILKA Properties of the inorganic orthophosphate adenosine triphosphate and adenosine diphosphate adenosine triphosphate exchange reactions of digitonin particles J Biol Chem 1961 236 2301-2306
- DENGLER H J H E SPIEGEL and E O TITUS Uptake of tritium labeled norepinephrine in brain and other tissue of cat *in vitro* Science 1961 133 102-103
- DE GIER H J and E O TITUS Die Aufnahme von  $H^3$  Noradrenalin in Gewebeschlitten und deren Beeinflussung durch Pharmaka Arch exp Path Pharmacol 1961 241 53-60
- DICZFALSY F O FERNÖ H FÉNYI M HÖGBERG T LINDFROT and TH ROSENBERG Synthetic high molecular weight enzyme inhibitors I Polymeric phosphates of phloretin and related compounds Acta chem scand 1963 7 913-920
- D'IONIO A The release of catecholamine from the isolated chromaffine granule of the adrenal medulla using sulphhydryl inhibitors Canad J Biochem Physiol 1963 41 390-400
- ELLMAN G L A colorimetric method for determining low concentrations of mercaptans Arch Biochem Biophys 1953 4 443-450
- ELLER U S v The presence of the adrenergic neurotransmitter in intraxonal structures Acta physiol scand 1968 43 150-166
- ELLER U S v Release of noradrenaline from adrenergic transmitter granules by tyramine Experientia 1960 16 36
- ELLER U S v and A HILLARP Evidence for the presence of noradrenaline in submicroscopic structures of adrenergic axons Nature (London) 1966 204 44-45
- ELLER U S v and F LISHAJKO Effect of reserpine on the release of noradrenaline from transmitter granules in adrenergic nerve Science 1960 132 31-32
- ELLER U S v and F LISHAJKO Noradrenaline release from isolated nerve granules Acta physiol scand 1961 51 193-203
- ELLER U S v and F LISHAJKO Effect of reserpine on the release of catecholamines from isolated nerve and chromaffin cell granules Acta physiol scand 1961 52 13-14
- ELLER U S v and F LISHAJKO Effect of adenosine nucleotides on catecholamine release and uptake in isolated adrenergic nerve granules Acta physiol scand 1963 (in press)
- FISCHER L F The chemistry of vitamin K Ann Int Med 1941 15 648-658
- HEN S M P A SHORE and B B BRODIE Persistence of reserpine action after the disappearance of drug from brain J Pharmacol 1966 118 84-90
- HILLARP A A Functional systems involving adenosinephosphate in the adrenaline and noradrenaline containing granules of the adrenal medulla Acta physiol scand 1959 4 144-15
- HILLARP A Isolation and some biochemical properties of the catecholamine granules in the cow adrenal medulla Acta physiol scand 1958 43 8-98
- HILLARP A The release of catecholamines from the amine containing granules of the adrenal medulla Acta physiol scand 1959 43 907-920
- HILLARP A Further observations on the state of the catecholamines stored in the adrenal medulla granules Acta physiol scand 1959 4 271-279
- HILLARP A Different pools of catecholamines stored in the adrenal medulla Acta physiol scand 1960 40 8-9

## REFERENCES

- ANDÉN N E Paper read at Scandinavian pharmacology meeting Göteborg Aug 1961
- BERTLER A A CARLSSON and E ROSENBERG A method for the fluorimetric determination of adrenaline and noradrenaline in tissues *Acta physiol scand* 1958 **11** 273-292
- BERTLER A G HALL N A HILLARP and E ROSENBERG Uptake of dopamine by the storage granules of the adrenal medulla in vitro *Acta physiol scand* 1961 **5** 167-170
- BERTLER A N A HILLARP and E ROSENBERG Some observations on the synthesis and storage of catecholamines in the adrenaline cells of the suprarenal medulla *Acta physiol scand* 1960 **50** 124-131
- BERTLER A N A HILLARP and E ROSENBERG Storage of new formed catecholamines in the adrenal medulla *Experientia* 1960 **16** 419
- BERTLER A N A HILLARP and E ROSENBERG Effect of reserpine on the storage of new formed catecholamines in the adrenal medulla *Acta physiol scand* 1961 **5** 44-49
- BOYER P D Sulfhydryl and disulfide groups of enzymes In *The Enzymes* Ed 1 D Boyer H Lardy and K Myrback Academic Press Inc New York 1959 **1** 511-588
- BRODIE B B and E COSTA Some current views on brain monoamines In *Monoamines et système nerveux central Symposium Bel Air Genève* Sept 1961 13-49
- BRODIE B B E G TOMICH R KUNTZMAN and P A SHORE On the mechanism of action of reserpine effect of reserpine on capacity of tissues to bind serotonin *J Pharmacol* 1957 **119** 461-467
- CANADY W J and J H ROR Studies on the reaction of menadione with blood and denatured proteins *J biol chem* 1956 **220** 571-582
- CARLSSON A and N A HILLARP On the state of the catecholamines of the adrenal medullary granules *Acta physiol scand* 1958 **11** 163-169
- CARLSSON A and N A HILLARP Uptake of phenyl and indole alkylamines by the storage granules of the adrenal medulla in vitro *Med exp* 1961 **1** 123-124
- CARLSSON A N A HILLARP and B WALDECK A  $Mg^{++}$  ATP dependant storage mechanism in the amine granules of the adrenal medulla *Med exp* 1962 **2** 47-53
- CARLSSON A and M LINDQVIST In vivo decarboxylation of  $\alpha$  methyl dopa and  $\alpha$  methyl metatyrosine *Acta physiol scand* 1962 **25** 87-94
- CARLSSON A E ROSENBERG A BERTLER and I NISSENY Effect of reserpine on the metabolism of catecholamines In *Psychotropic Drugs* Ed S Garattini and V Chetti Amsterdam Elsevier Publ Comp 1961 363-3
- CHIGA M and G W E PLAUT An enzymic system from mitochondria catalyzing adenosine diphosphate adenosine triphosphate exchange reaction *J biol chem* 1959 **234** 3059-3066

- COOPER C and R C KULKA Properties of the inorganic orthophosphate adenosine triphosphate and adenosine diphosphate adenosine triphosphate exchange reactions of digitonin particles J biol chem 1961 236 23 1-13
- DENGLER H J H E SIEGEL and E O TITL Uptake of tritium labeled norepinephrine in brain and other tissues of cat *in vitro* Science 1961 133 10 9-10
- DENGLER H J and E O TITL Die Aufnahme von  $H^3$  Noradrenalin in Gewebeschnitte und deren Beeinflussung durch Pharmaka Arch exp Path Pharmacol 1961 241 5 3-30
- DICKFALLS E O FERRO H FEY B HÖGBERG T LINDEROT and TH ROSENBERG Synthetic high molecular weight enzyme inhibitors I Polymeric phosphates of phorbate and related compounds. Acta chem scand 1963 19 913-920
- DIGLIO A The release of catecholamines from the isolated chromaffine granules of the adrenal medulla using sulphhydryl inhibitor Canad J Biochem Physiol 1974 52 35-400
- ELLMAN G L A colorimetric method for determining low concentrations of mercaptans Arch Biochem Biophys 1951 4 443-450
- EULER U S v The presence of the adrenergic neurotransmitter in intraxonal structures Acta physiol scand 1963 43 165-166
- EULER U S v Release of noradrenaline from adrenergic transmitter granules by tyramine Experimenta 1960 16 36
- EULER U S v and Å HILLARY Evidence for the presence of noradrenaline in submicroscopic structures of adrenergic axons Nature (London) 1966 204 44-46
- EULER U S v and F LISNAJKO Effect of reserpine on the release of noradrenaline from transmitter granules in adrenergic nerves Science 1960 133 351-352
- EULER U S v and F LISNAJKO Noradrenaline release from isolated nerve granules Acta physiol scand 1961 51 193-203
- EULER U S v and F LISNAJKO Effect of reserpine on the release of catecholamines from isolated nerve and chromaffin cell granules Acta physiol scand 1961 51 13-14
- EULER U S v and F LISNAJKO Effect of adenosine nucleotides on catecholamine release and uptake in isolated adrenergic nerve granules Acta physiol scand 1963 (in press)
- FIXER L F The chemistry of vitamin B Ann Int Med 1941 15 648-658
- HILS M P A SNORE and H B BRODIE Persistence of reserpine action after the disappearance of drug from brain J Pharmacol 1956 118 84-90
- HILLARY Å Å Enzymic systems involving adenosine phosphates in the adrenaline and noradrenaline containing granules of the adrenal medulla Acta physiol scand 1959 4 144-16
- HILLARY Å Å Isolation and some biochemical properties of the catecholamine granules in the row adrenal medulla Acta physiol scand 1958 43 8-96
- HILLARY Å Å The release of catecholamines from the amine containing granules of the adrenal medulla Acta physiol scand 1963 43 29-30
- HILLARY Å Å Further observations on the state of the catecholamines stored in the adrenal medullary granules Acta physiol scand 1969 4 971-2
- HILLARY Å Å Different pools of catecholamines stored in the adrenal medulla Acta physiol scand 1960 50 8-9

- HILLARY A J and D NILSON The structure of the adrenaline and noradrenaline containing granules in the adrenal medullary cells with reference to the storage and release of the sympathomimetic amines *Acta physiol scand* 1954 57 Suppl 113
- HUGHES F B P A SHORE and B B BRODIE Serotonin storage mechanism and its interaction with reserpine *Experientia* 1958 14 178
- HUNTER F F J F LEVI J TINK H SCHULTZ E CUERBA and A HURWITZ Studies on the mechanism by which anaerobiosis prevents swelling of mitochondria in vitro Effect of electron transport inhibitors *J biol chem* 1959 234 2176-2186
- KIRSHNER V Uptake of catecholamine by a particulate fraction of the adrenal medulla *Science* 1962 a 135 107-109
- KIRSHNER V Uptake of catecholamines by a particulate fraction of the adrenal medulla *J biol chem* 1962 b 237 2311-2317
- KUHN R and H BEINERT Hemmstoffe der Carboxylase *Chem Ber* 1947 80 101-109
- LEHNINGER A L Reversal of thyroxine induced swelling of rat liver mitochondria by adenosine triphosphate *J biol chem* 1959 234 2187-2192
- LEHNINGER A L Reversal of various types of mitochondrial swelling by adenosine triphosphate *J biol chem* 1959 234 2465-2471
- LEHNINGER A L A heat labile factor required in extrusion of water from mitochondria *J biol chem* 1962 237 946-951
- LEHNINGER A L and I G REINERT An endogenous uncoupling and swelling agent in liver mitochondria and its enzymic formation *J biol chem* 1959 234 249-264
- NEUBERT D and A L LEHNINGER The effect of thiols and disulfides on water uptake and extrusion by rat liver mitochondria *J biol chem* 1962 237 955-959
- PHILIPPI A and H J SCHUMANN Der Einfluss von Calcium auf die Brenzcatechinaminfreisetzung *Experientia* 1962 18 139
- POST R L C R MERRITT C R KINSOLING and C D ALBRICHT Membrane adenosine triphosphatase as a participant in the active transport of sodium and potassium in the human erythrocyte *J biol chem* 1960 235 196-197
- SCHUMANN H J Über den Noradrenalin und ATP Gehalt sympathischer Nerven *Arch exp Path Pharmacol* 1958 23 296-300
- SCHUMANN H J Über die Freisetzung von Brenzcatechinaminen durch Tyramin *Arch exp Path Pharmacol* 1960 23 41-46
- SCHUMANN H J and A PHILIPPI Untersuchungen zum Mechanismus der Freisetzung von Brenzcatechinaminen durch Tyramin *Arch exp Path Pharmacol* 1961 24 23-27
- SHORE P A Release of serotonin and catecholamines by drugs *Pharmacol Rev* 1962 14 31-50
- SIEKAVITZ P and V R LOTTER Biochemical structure of mitochondria I Intramitochondrial component and oxidative phosphorylation *J biol chem* 1955 225 221-232
- UPENFELD S and P ZALTZMAN NIRENBERG On the mechanism of norepinephrine release produced by  $\alpha$  methyl meta tyrosine *J Pharmacol* 1962 175 194-199
- WEINBACH F C Oxidative phosphorylation with endogenous substrates of mitochondria *J biol chem* 1961 236 1526-1530
- WEINBACH H B G REDFIELD E TITUS Effect of cardiac glycosides and inorganic ions on binding of serotonin by platelets *Nature (London)* 1960 185 99-100



GÖTEBORG 1963  
ELANDERS BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG







*From the Department of Physiology Kungl Veterinärhögskolan  
Stockholm and Department of Physiology University of Göteborg*

Functional Organization in the Main Sensory  
Trigeminal Nucleus and in the Rostral Sub-  
division of the Nucleus of the Spinal  
Trigeminal Tract in the Cat

BY

J EISENMAN<sup>1</sup> S LANDGREN<sup>2</sup> AND D NOVIN<sup>3</sup>

LIBRARY,

JAIPUR

LUND 1963

<sup>1</sup> Present address Dept. of Physiology Med School Univ. Penna. Phila-  
delphia. Supported by U.S.P.H.S. post-doctoral fellowship no. BF 14 433.  
<sup>2</sup> Present address Fysiologiska Institutionen Medicinaregatan 11 Göte-  
borg S.  
<sup>3</sup> Present address Dept. of Psychology UCLA Los Angeles 24. Supported  
by a post-doctoral fellowship from US National Science Foundation.

LUND 1963

CARL BLOMS BOKTRYCKERI A. B.

# Contents

<i>Abstract</i>	v
<i>Introduction</i>	6
<i>Methods</i>	7
Anaesthesia and surgical procedure	7
Recording technique	7
Stimulation technique	7
Description of the receptive field	8
The localization of the recorded responses	8
<i>Results</i>	11
I Anatomy	12
Nucleus trigemini sensibilis principalis (N <sub>1</sub> snpr)	12
Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis $\gamma$ (N <sub>1</sub> spoy)	12
Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis $\beta$ (N <sub>1</sub> spob)	15
Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis $\alpha$ (N <sub>1</sub> spoa)	15
II The functional organization of N <sub>1</sub> snpr and N <sub>1</sub> spoy	17
The division of the units into primary and higher order neurones	17
Spontaneous activity and spike shape	18
The classification of the trigeminal cells	18
The localization of the cells within the trigeminal nucleus	19
Touch cells with small receptive fields	23
A Distribution within the nucleus and location of receptive fields	23
B Latency of response to orthodromic electrical stimulation	24
C The specificity to different types of stimulus	24
D Response pattern	28
Cells responding to movements of the vibrissae	28
Cells with periodontal receptive fields	29
Pressure cells with small receptive fields	31
Touch and pressure cells with wide receptive fields	32
Cells responding to noxious stimuli	33
Cells responding to movements of the lower jaw	33
Responses from ordering nuclei	36
Discussion	3
<i>References</i>	41



## Abstract

EKENMAN J. S. LANDGREN and D. NOVY *Functional organization in the main sensory trigeminal nucleus and in the rostral subdivision of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract in the cat* Acta physiol scand 1963 59 Suppl 214 — The activity of single cells in the trigeminal nucleus of the anaesthetized cat was studied. The cells were localized to morphologically defined parts of the trigeminal nucleus (*nucleus trigemini sensibilis principalis* or *nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis subnucleus*  $\gamma$ ). They were tested with different types of stimulus (mechanical, thermal, gustatory, sound, lightflash) applied to the peripheral receptors. The size and location of their receptive fields were mapped. Orthodromic latency and pattern of discharge in response to certain stimuli were recorded.

It was found that topographically organized longitudinal columns of specific secondary touch cells with small receptive fields occupied a dorsal and lateral shell of the nuclei. A column of cells discharged by periodontal receptors was located in the central region of the nuclei. Cells responding to noxious stimuli were mainly found in the central and medial parts. The results indicate a longitudinal distribution of the cells assumed to subserve tactile perception. They do not support the theory of GRANARD (1923) and SJÖQVIST (1938) according to which the tactile relay is restricted to the main sensory nucleus. The majority of the cells in the longitudinal columns are discharged only by one of the different types of stimuli applied and they are therefore specific in the sense of JOHANNES MÜLLER.



## Methods

### Anaesthesia and surgical procedure

All experiments were done with cats anaesthetized with pentobarbitone sodium in an initial intraperitoneal dose of 40 mg/kg and subsequent intravenous doses of 5–10 mg administered when required to maintain the anaesthesia.

The dorsal aspect of the cerebellum was exposed by a hole in the skull to the right of the midline just behind the bony tentorium. Parts of the tentorium was also removed in experiments on the rostral end of the main sensory nucleus. The cat's head was fixed in a Horsley Clarke apparatus. The bars of the head holder used for the fixation of the upper jaw were modified to give as free access as possible to the right half of the face and to the mouth (GORDON, LAND GREEN and SEED 1961). The cervical vertebral column was fixed by two rods pressing against the two sides of the  $C_3$ – $C_4$  region. The recording microelectrodes were placed in the trigeminal nucleus by means of Horsley Clarke readings in a system with the vertical axis at 30° angle to the conventional one which made the penetrations through the cerebellum approximately parallel to the tentorium. Leaving the cerebellum intact protected the underlying medulla, reduced interferences with its blood supply and reduced disturbing movements due to pulsations of the brain.

### Recording technique

Unitary responses were recorded extracellularly by means of glass pipette microelectrodes (tip diameter about 1  $\mu$ ) filled with 4.3 molar NaCl solution or by tungsten or steel microelectrodes pointed by electropolishing and insulated according to a technique modified from HUNZI (1957). In our hands the glass pipette microelectrodes gave a higher yield of single units than the metal electrodes and the latter were therefore mainly used to relate the site of a response to an identifiable lesion in the series of histological sections. The action potentials were recorded by a conventional system consisting of a cathode follower, a RC-coupled amplifier, a double beam CRO and a Grass camera.

### Stimulation technique

Two Grass stimulators with stimulus isolation units were used for the electrical stimulation of the receptive field. The stimulus was applied via a pair of silver wires touching the moistened surface of the skin or mucous membrane. Occasionally steel needles inserted into the skin were used as stimulating electrodes.

The following physiological stimuli were used: Light touch with a soft brush or a small glass rod, pressure with a glass rod, pinpricks and touching with a



## Introduction

Recent investigations into the organization of the trigeminal nucleus (GORDON LANDCERN and SPED 1960 and 1961 KRUEGER SIMMOND and WITOWSKI 1961 WALL and TAUB 1962) all agree in their observation that the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract shows the features of a typical tactile relay nucleus. Cells responding with short latency to light touch of hairs or skin within well defined and constant receptive fields are thus arranged in such a way within this nucleus that they form a detailed topographical map of the body surface. This result is somewhat surprising in view of GERHARDT's (1923) and SJÖQVIST's (1938, 1939) generally accepted interpretation that the main sensory trigeminal nucleus is the relay of the tactile fibres from the face and that fibres subserving pain and thermal sensations are relayed in the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract.

WALL and TAUB (1962) also investigated the main sensory nucleus and found that it was characterized by cells with large receptive fields located mainly on the outer surface of the ipsilateral face. A variety of afferent fibre types converged onto these cells and the topographical organization was less well maintained as compared to the middle and rostral parts of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. These findings further emphasize the divergence between the important results of GERHARDT and of SJÖQVIST and those building on detailed analysis of single unit responses within the trigeminal nucleus. Because of the importance of this conflict for our understanding of the functional organization of the trigeminal nucleus it was considered valuable to sample further detailed information from single cells within the main sensory trigeminal nucleus and the rostral part of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. In the present series particular attention was paid to the problem of localizing the observed units to morphologically described parts of the nucleus.

The cortical and thalamic neurones of the trigeminal path were studied by LANDCERN (1957 a, b, 1960 a, b) in a number of previous investigations. A particular point was made of applying different types of stimulus to the receptive field of the neurones. This line was followed also in the present experiments dealing with the medullary link in the trigeminal path. Further evidence of specificity of the trigeminal paths in the sense of JOHANNES MÜLLER (1835) will be presented in this report. The ascending projections of secondary trigeminal neurones will be described in a subsequent publication (ELISHMAN FROM LANDCERN and NOVIN 1964).

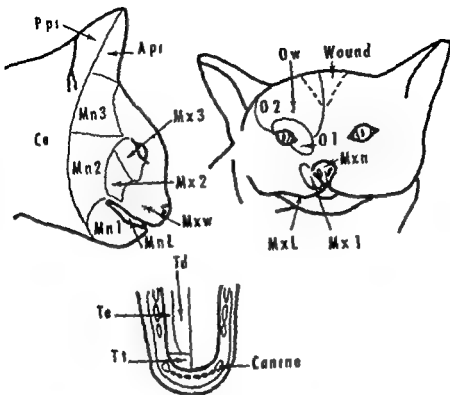


Fig 1 Code used to describe receptive fields of units Mn Mx O=Mandibular Maxillary and Ophthalmic dermatomes respectively T=tongue W=whiskers L=lip

variations which is too large to permit the localization of recording positions in different animals to a certain part of a subnucleus

The following method was used to relate recording positions along a microelectrode track to the histological section. In each experiment certain rostrocaudal levels separated by at least 1 mm were chosen for investigation. At such a level a transverse grid of parallel recording tracks was made across the nucleus using only one glass pipette microelectrode for all the tracks. The microelectrode was cut and left in the last track until after fixation. At the end of the experiment a tungsten or a steel microelectrode was chosen and its length was related to that of the glass pipette microelectrode by means of a measuring microscope with scale readings down to 0.01 mm. A track was made through the nucleus with this electrode; observed units were analyzed and the coordinates of the upper and lower borders of the tactile responses from the face were noted as well as the coordinates of the maximum amplitude focal potential evoked by electrical stimulation of the tip of the tongue. Finally two electrolytic lesions (Harris 1959) were made at the lower and upper borders of the responding region. The coordinates of the lesions were recorded. When steel electrodes were

pair of forceps. An electrically controlled mechanical stimulator (GORDON and PAINE 1960) was sometimes used for repetitive mechanical stimulation of the receptive field.

Radiant heat, ice and in some experiments an ethyl chloride spray were used as crude thermal stimuli. When applied for a sufficient time these stimuli may be noxious. Units responding to them were therefore tested with the thermode technique of HENSEL, STRÖM and ZOTTERMAN (1951). With this method rapid changes between constant temperatures can be applied to the skin or the mucous membranes. A series of seven water baths supplied a distribution panel with seven stopcocks. The water was allowed to flow continuously through the system and was bypassing the thermode when this was not in use. Water of seven constant temperatures were therefore always available for the thermode. The temperatures used were 10, 28, 35, 37, 40, 46 and 55°C. The thermode was always cooled or warmed from a control level of 37°C. The temperature of the water was measured with thermocouples at the outflow near the thermode and recorded on an automatic compensator with 12 recording channels (Philips PR 3210 A/00). The temperature of the silver plate of the thermode was measured with a thermistor and recorded on one of the beams of the CRO. This method allowed us to carry out a quantitative analysis of the response to thermal stimuli within the limited time available for the study of a single cell.

Units responding to stimulation of the tongue were tested with taste solutions: 0.5 M NaCl, 0.01 M Quinine HCl in Ringer's solution, 0.3 M acetic acid in Ringer's solution (PH 3) and distilled water.

In addition light flashes, auditory stimuli and vibrations produced by tapping of the stand were routinely presented to reveal convergence of a type expected to be found on cells in the reticular formation.

### Description of the receptive field

The location and extent of the receptive field was described in terms of the subdivisions of the face and mouth drawn on the outline maps shown in Fig. 1. A code was developed to name the subdivisions. In this code subdivisions of the ophthalmic dermatome are designated with an *O*, the maxillary with *Mx* and the mandibular dermatome with *Mn*. *W* stands for whisker, *L* for lip and *T* for tongue and *P* for pinna. When a receptive field could not be adequately described in terms of the code it was drawn on a standard outline drawing of the face.

### The localization of the recorded responses

The method we have chosen for our attempts to describe the anatomical location of our responses rests on the cytoarchitectural definitions of the trigeminal subnuclei. In order to facilitate the comparison between the present results and those of other authors using obex as a reference point the borders of the subnuclei are related to obex in the anatomical section of this paper. In our experiments the use of obex as a reference point introduces an error due to individual

mediolateral and rostrocaudal direction the error should be less as the localization in these directions depends directly upon the traces left by the recording microelectrode in the histological section

In the present series 50 maps of the type described above were prepared from grids of tracks passing *Nucleus trigemini sensibilis principalis* or *Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis*  $\gamma$  in 20 experimental animals

used iron was similarly deposited in two spots by passing a current of 1 micro ampere through the microelectrode for 10 seconds. India ink tracks were then made at known distances apart and also at known distance from the level of the grid as described by GORDON *et al* 1961.

The cat's head was then perfused with 0.9 % NaCl followed by BODIAN's solution. When steel electrodes had been used for marking 3 % potassium ferrocyanide in 10 % formaline solution was used for the perfusion. After fixation the skull was opened and the head replaced in the Horsley Clarke apparatus. The brain still in situ was then blocked with a knife carried by the micro manipulator in planes approximately parallel to that of the microelectrodes. The blocks were embedded in celloidin and serial sections (50  $\mu$  thick) were cut using the india ink tracks for orientation. The sections were stained with toluidin blue or else alternate sections were stained with toluidin blue and with LOEFZ fibre stain.

When examining the sections it was easy to identify the blue spots made by the steel electrodes but somewhat more difficult to find the electrolytic lesions left by the tungsten electrodes. It was also easy to follow the full length of the last track left by the cut glass pipette microelectrode (See track VI in Fig 5). The other tracks could generally be seen only when passing through the cerebellum as only the coarse shaft of the electrode left traces visible in the sections. As these tracks were made with the same microelectrode they were however assumed to run parallel to the last easily identified track and this assumption was confirmed by occasional traces observed further down the tracks (Fig 5 B). The section showing the passage through the trigeminal nucleus was projected onto paper and a 20 times enlarged tracing was made. All traces left by the microelectrodes in the different sections were projected and traced onto this map as shown in Fig 5 A. Lines were drawn along the traces left by identified tracks down through the trigeminal nucleus. A 60 times enlarged map of this nucleus and its immediate surroundings was then prepared (Fig 5 C) showing the course of the tracks.

Shrinkage which is a factor of great variability was estimated from the measured distances between the electrolytic lesions or blue spots (Fig 5 B large curved arrows). The vertical coordinates of the observations made with the glass pipette microelectrodes were related to the blue spots or the lesions by means of the above mentioned measurements of the length of the two electrodes. Allowing for shrinkage the positions of the observations were finally laid out on the map (as shown in Fig 5 C). The agreement in location of the responses recorded by the two electrodes demonstrated a successful reconstruction.

The error involved in the localization of our recording positions according to the above described method depends on the following factors:

- a) The error in reading the micrometer scales (backlash etc.)
- b) The actual position of the microelectrode tip relative to the centre of the marking spot
- c) The shrinkage of the tissue due to the histological procedure
- d) The dragging of the tissue along with the microelectrode

Considering these factors we appreciate the error in our localization in dorso-ventral direction (along the recording track) to be between 0.1 and 0.2 mm. In

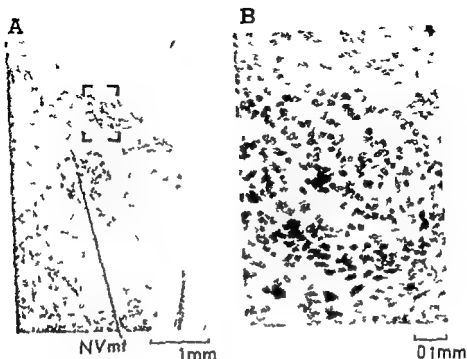


Fig. 9

- A Transverse section through rostral pole of N5snpr  
 B Region enclosed by brackets in A at higher magnification

Dech = Nucleus Berchterew

Di = Nucleus Deters

N5mt = Nucleus trigemini motorius

N5snpr = Nucleus trigemini sensilis principalis

N5s $\alpha$  = Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis subnucleus  $\alpha$

N5s $\beta$  = Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis subnucleus  $\beta$

N5s $\gamma$  = Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis subnucleus  $\gamma$

N5II = Nucleus nervi facialis

Ols = Nucleus olivaris superior

V = Nucleus or tractus spinalis trigemini

VII = Nervus facialis

30  $\mu$  cellulin sections stained with Toluidine Blue

scattered among small neurones of irregular size and shape. The cell density is considerably lower than that of N5snpr. We have found that these criteria could be applied to the cat (Fig. 4 A and C).

A few similar large neurones may be found in the caudal part of N5snpr which overlaps with subnucleus  $\gamma$ . They are however always much more common in the last mentioned nucleus. The large neurones in N5s $\gamma$  appeared to

# Results

## I Anatomy

We have attempted to study certain functional characteristics of the neurones in the trigeminal nucleus of the cat and to localize the investigated neurones to morphologically defined parts of the nucleus. As no detailed investigation of the cat's trigeminal nucleus seems to exist we decided to build on MELSSÉN and OLSZEWSKI's (1949) description of the same nucleus in the rabbit. In our experience there is a good agreement between the cytoarchitecture of the trigeminal nuclei in these two animals as will appear if the following summary of our morphological observations is compared with the description given by MEFSSÉN and OLSZEWSKI (1949).

### *Nucleus trigemini sensibilis principalis (NVsnpr)*

The main sensory nucleus is a rather compact nucleus of rounded cells uniform in size and shape (Fig. 2B and Fig. 3D). In our sections they appeared to have a diameter of 15–30  $\mu$ . Their size was about  $\frac{1}{3}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  of that of the cells in *Nucleus trigemini motorius* (NVmt). The rostral border of NVsnpr roughly corresponds to that of NVmt. At the rostral pole the dorsomedial part of NVsnpr generally forms a round island of densely arranged cells extending about 50–100  $\mu$  rostrally to NVmt (Fig. 2A and B). The sensory and motor nuclei are separated by a zone containing only few cells (cf. regio II of MEFSSÉN and OLSZEWSKI).

The caudal end of NVsnpr is found up to 1400  $\mu$  caudal to NVmt where the fibres of the Vth nerve travel across the medulla. Caudally to NVmt it overlaps with *Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis*  $\gamma$  lying laterally between this nucleus and the spinal trigeminal tract (Fig. 3B). Dorsally NVsnpr is related to *Nucleus Bechterew*. *Nuclei olivaris* and *paraolivaris superior* are found just ventral to its caudal half.

NVsnpr has a rostrocaudal extent of about 2.5 mm and is found approximately 6–10 mm rostral to obex and 3.5–5.5 mm lateral to the midline.

### *Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis* $\gamma$ (NVsp $\gamma$ )

This subnucleus forms the rostral division of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. According to MEFSSÉN and OLSZEWSKI it is characterized by large neurones

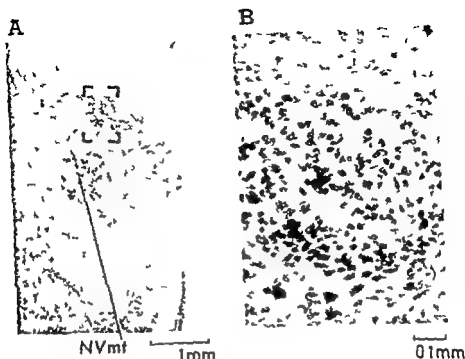


Fig. 2

A Transverse section through the rostral pole of N5npr

B Region enclosed by brackets in A at higher magnification

Bech = Nucleus Bechterew

Di = Nucleus Deters

N5mt = Nucleus trigemini motorius

N5npr = Nucleus trigemini sensibilis principalis

N5spo $\alpha$  = Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis subnucleus  $\alpha$

N5spo $\beta$  = Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis subnucleus  $\beta$

N5spo $\gamma$  = Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis subnucleus  $\gamma$

N5II = Nucleus nervi facialis

Ols = Nucleus olivae superior

V = Nervus or tractus spinalis trigeminus

VII = Nervus facialis

BB  $\mu$  celloidin sections stained with Toluidine Blue

scattered among small neurones of irregular size and shape. The cell density is considerably lower than that of N5npr. We have found that these criteria could be applied to the cat (Fig. 4 A and C).

A few similar large neurones may be found in the caudal part of N5npr which overlaps with subnucleus  $\gamma$ . They are however always much more common in the last mentioned nucleus. The large neurones in N5spo $\gamma$  appeared to



# Results

## 1 Anatomy

We have attempted to study certain functional characteristics of the neurones in the trigeminal nucleus of the cat and to localize the investigated neurones to morphologically defined parts of the nucleus. As no detailed investigation of the cat's trigeminal nucleus seems to exist we decided to build on MEFSKY and OLSZEWSKI (1949) description of the same nucleus in the rabbit. In our experience there is a good agreement between the cytoarchitecture of the trigeminal nuclei in these two mammals as will appear if the following summary of our morphological observations is compared with the description given by MEFSKY and OLSZEWSKI (1949).

### *Nucleus trigemini sensibilis principalis (NVsnpr)*

The main sensory nucleus is a rather compact nucleus of rounded cells uniform in size and shape (Fig. 2 B and Fig. 3 D). In our sections they appeared to have a diameter of 15—30  $\mu$ . Their size was about  $1/2$  to  $1/2$  of that of the cells in *Nucleus trigemini motorius* (NVmt). The rostral border of NVsnpr roughly corresponds to that of NVmt. At the rostral pole the dorsomedial part of NVsnpr generally forms a round island of densely arranged cells extending about 50—100  $\mu$  rostrally to NVmt (Fig. 2 A and B). The sensory and motor nuclei are separated by a zone containing only few cells (cf. region II of MEFSKY and OLSZEWSKI).

The caudal end of NVsnpr is found up to 1400  $\mu$  caudal to NVmt where the fibres of the Vth nerve travel across the medulla. Caudally to NVmt it overlaps with *Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis*  $\gamma$  lying laterally between this nucleus and the spinal trigeminal tract (Fig. 3 B). Dorsally NVsnpr is related to *Nucleus Bechterew*. *Nuclei olivaris* and *paraoливaris superior* are found just ventral to its medial half.

NVsnpr has a rostrocaudal extent of about 2.5 mm and is found approximately 6—10 mm rostral to obex and 3.5—5.5 mm lateral to the midline.

### *Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis $\gamma$ (NVspov)*

This subnucleus forms the rostral division of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. According to MEFSKY and OLSZEWSKI it is characterized by large neurones

have a diameter of 40–60  $\mu$ . They have large dendrites and are sometimes almost as large as the motoneurons in Nmt (cf Fig. 3C and Fig. 4C). The majority of the cells in subnucleus  $\gamma$  are small and have a diameter of about 10–20  $\mu$ .

Subnucleus  $\gamma$  is found in the region between Nmt and *Nucleus nervi facialis* (N VII). Its rostral end generally appears about 300  $\mu$  caudal to Nmt and some 100  $\mu$  rostral to N VII; it is replaced by subnucleus  $\beta$ . A short region of overlap between  $\gamma$  and  $\beta$  is sometimes seen with subnucleus  $\gamma$  lateral to  $\beta$ .

The rostrocaudal extent of Nspoy is about 1.5 mm, the region of Nsnpr and Nspoy overlap being roughly 1 mm. It is found approximately 5–6 mm rostral to obex and 3.0–5.5 mm lateral to the midline.

### *Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis* $\beta$ (Nvspo $\beta$ )

Subnucleus  $\beta$  differs from subnucleus  $\gamma$  in its lack of large neurons and in having a more cell-rich cytoarchitecture (cf Fig. 4C and D). In our sections the cell diameters varied from 10 to 40  $\mu$ . The shape of these neurons is not as uniform as that seen in Nsnpr, nor is the density of subnucleus  $\beta$  comparable with that seen in the main sensory nucleus.

The rostrocaudal extent of subnucleus  $\beta$  corresponds approximately to that of N VII. However, in cat a pure  $\beta$  type of nucleus is only seen at the rostral pole of N VII. At the level of the caudal part of this nucleus large neurons appear laterally near the spinal trigeminal tract indicating an overlap between subnucleus  $\beta$  and  $\alpha$ .

The length of Nvspo $\beta$  is about 1 mm. It is found approximately 4 to 5 mm rostral to obex and 2.5 to 5.0 mm lateral to the midline.

### *Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis* $\alpha$ (Nvspo $\alpha$ )

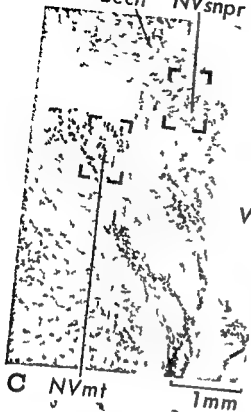
This subnucleus has large neurons with diameters of 40–80  $\mu$  scattered among smaller cells (10–30  $\mu$ ). It is found at the level of *Nucleus olivaris principalis* and extends roughly from the level of obex to N VII. At the caudal end of N VII it overlaps on the lateral side of subnucleus  $\beta$ .

At the level of obex Nspoa is replaced by *Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini caudalis* (Nspc). The three subnuclei (*magnocellularis gelatinosus* and *oralis*) do not appear clearly until about 0.5 mm caudal to obex.

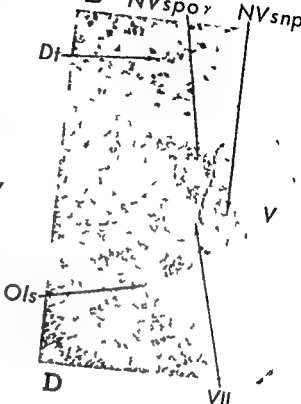
Fig. 3

- A Transverse section through Nsnpr at the level of Nmt.  
 B Zone of overlap of Nsnpr and Nspoy caudal to Nmt.  
 Note the greater cell density in Nsnpr and the characteristically large neurons in Nspoy.  
 C Region of Nmt enclosed in brackets in A at higher magnification.  
 D Region of Nsnpr enclosed in brackets in A at higher magnification.  
 1 mm scale refers to A and B. 0.1 mm scale to C and D.

A Bech NVsnpr



B NVspo NVsnpr



C NVmt



0.1mm

have a diameter of 40–60  $\mu$ . They have large dendrites and are sometimes almost as large as the motoneurons in Nmt (cf Fig 3 C and Fig 4 C). The majority of the cells in subnucleus  $\gamma$  are small and have a diameter of about 10–20  $\mu$ .

Subnucleus  $\gamma$  is found in the region between Nmt and Nucleus nervi facialis (N VII). Its rostral end generally appears about 300  $\mu$  caudal to Nmt and some 100  $\mu$  rostral to N VII. It is replaced by subnucleus  $\beta$ . A short region of overlap between  $\gamma$  and  $\beta$  is sometimes seen with subnucleus  $\gamma$  lateral to  $\beta$ .

The rostrocaudal extent of Nsp $\gamma$  is about 1.5 mm, the region of Nsnpr and Nsp $\gamma$  overlap being roughly 1 mm. It is found approximately 5–6 mm rostral to obex and 3.0–5.5 mm lateral to the midline.

#### Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis $\beta$ (Nsp $\beta$ )

Subnucleus  $\beta$  differs from subnucleus  $\gamma$  in its lack of large neurones and in having a more cell rich cytoarchitecture (cf Fig 4 C and D). In our sections the cell diameters varied from 10 to 40  $\mu$ . The shape of these neurones is not as uniform as that seen in Nsnpr, nor is the density of subnucleus  $\beta$  comparable with that seen in the main sensory nucleus.

The rostrocaudal extent of subnucleus  $\beta$  corresponds approximately to that of N VII. However, in cat a pure  $\beta$  type of nucleus is only seen at the rostral pole of N VII. At the level of the caudal part of this nucleus large neurones appear laterally near the spinal trigeminal tract indicating an overlap between subnuclei  $\beta$  and  $\alpha$ .

The length of Nsp $\beta$  is about 1 mm. It is found approximately 4 to 5 mm rostral to obex and 2.5 to 5.0 mm lateral to the midline.

#### Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini oralis $\alpha$ (Nsp $\alpha$ )

This subnucleus has large neurones with diameters of 40–90  $\mu$  scattered among smaller cells (10–30  $\mu$ ). It is found at the level of Nucleus olivaris principalis and extends roughly from the level of obex to N VII. At the caudal end of N VII it overlaps on the lateral side of subnucleus  $\beta$ .

At the level of obex Nsp $\alpha$  is replaced by Nucleus tractus spinalis trigemini caudalis (Nspc). The three subnuclei (magnocellularis, gelatinosus and oralis) do not appear clearly until about 0.5 mm caudal to obex.

Fig 3

- A Transverse section through Nsnpr at the level of Nmt
- B Zone of overlap of Nsnpr and Nsp $\gamma$  caudal to Nmt
- Note the greater cell density in Nsnpr and the characteristically large neurones in Nsp $\gamma$
- C Region of Nmt enclosed in brackets in A at higher magnification
- D Region of Nsnpr enclosed in brackets in A at higher magnification
- 1 mm scale refers to A and B. 0.1 mm scale to C and D

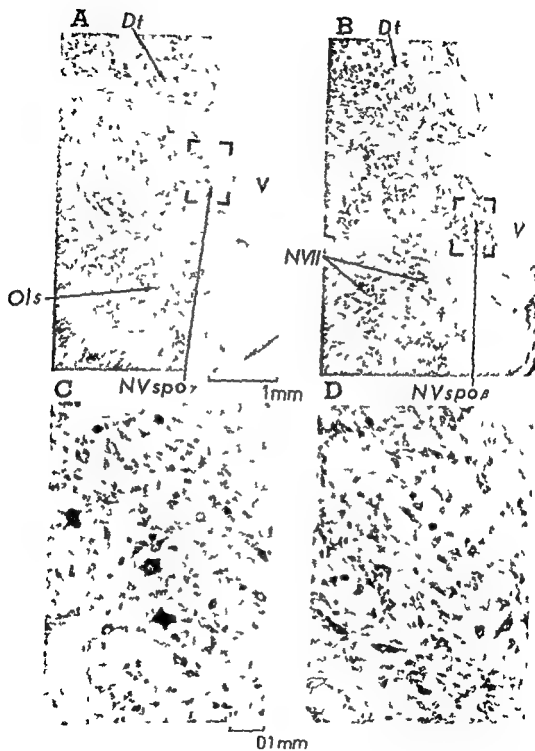


Fig. 1

- A Transverse section through NVsp at caudal end  
 B Transverse section through NVsp at level of transition to NVII

## II The functional organization of NVsnpr and NVspov

The following considerations are based upon records from single trigeminal neurones. In addition responses from several units were recorded. These responses helped in localizing the activated region and filled out the gaps between the observed units. However their origin cannot be precisely localized and they were therefore not considered in the final analysis.

### The division of the units into primary and higher order neurones

The first treatment of the responses from the trigeminal units was a division into those obtained from primary neurones i.e. from afferent fibres and those obtained from secondary or higher order neurones within the nucleus. We have no theoretical basis for making this division but we have used an empirical method involving the following criteria (cf GORDON *et al* 1961)

- 1 Units found in tracts which upon histological examination were clearly localized to the fifth tract were excluded
- 2 Units showing a monophasic positive spike and no spontaneous activity were excluded

The rest of the units localized to the trigeminal nucleus were assumed to be secondary or higher order neurones and they will be referred to as cells.

An attempt was made to apply still more rigorous criteria for the selection of secondary or higher order neurones. For a unit to be accepted in this group it was thus required that it should respond to antidromic stimulation of the ascending trigeminal paths or show a transsynaptic response to such stimuli. Units with receptive fields exceeding the dermatome of one of the three trigeminal branches were also accepted. During the analysis cells fulfilling these requirements were marked with an asterisk and the group will be referred to as starred cells.

It may be necessary to explain why units with monophasic positive spikes and without spontaneous activity were excluded from the cell group. The reasons were as follows. Units localized to a cell free region of the trigeminal tract showed a monophasic positive spike in combination with zero spontaneous activity in 84 % of the cases (17 units of 20). In the group of starred cells however these features were observed only in 34 % (4 units of 116). As the combina-

( Bracketed region in A at higher magnification

D Bracketed region in B at higher magnification

Note the large polygonal neurones characteristic of subnucleus  $\gamma$  (C) and the greater cell density in subnucleus  $\beta$  (D)

of a monophasic positive spike and no spontaneous activity was common and rare in nuclear neurones it was thought that removal of such units would tend to eliminate primary afferent fibres from our data. TASAKI, POJTEY and ORRICO (1954) have previously made similar observations and used them for classification of presynaptic responses in the geniculate body.

### Spontaneous activity and spike shape

In the present observations were made on 246 cells localized to NVsnpr and 10 cells localized to NVspo, and 8 cells found in the border zone between these nuclei. Out of these 340 cells, 131 belonged to the group of starred cells defined above.

Spontaneous activity was seen in 57 % of the cells. When the starred cells were considered alone this percentage was found to be 64. The spike was monophasic positive in 6 % of the cells and negative or diphasic in 74 % of the cells showed high frequency injury discharge when they were finally lost.

Spontaneous activity was found only in 16 % of the units anatomically localized to the trigeminal tract. The spikes of these units were monophasic positive in 84 % of the observations and they never showed an injury discharge.

### The classification of the trigeminal cells

The type of stimulus effective in discharging the cell was used as the primary criterion for the classification. The following groups were defined:

Cells responding to light mechanical stimulation of the receptive field such as light touch with a blunt glass rod (2 mm diameter at the end used for touching) or a soft brush. These types of stimuli will be referred to as touch and the cells in this class will be called touch cells.

Cells responding to mechanical stimulation of a moderate strength such as moderate pressure with the glass rod. They will be referred to as pressure cells.

Cells responding to strong mechanical stimuli such as pinching with forceps or pinprick and cells responding to heating above  $+30^{\circ}\text{C}$  or cooling below  $+10^{\circ}\text{C}$ . These types of stimuli will be referred to as noxious and the cells will be called nociceptive cells.

Cells responding to gentle tapping of the teeth or to pressure on the gingiva on both sides of the alveolar process. These cells were always

tested by tipping the strand to separate them from cells responding to general vibration of the skull and to sound a type that was regularly found in *nucleus obvarius superior* ventral to the trigeminal nucleus

### 5) Cells responding to movements of the jaw

B The second criterion used was the size of the receptive field. According to this criterion two groups were found

### 1) Cells with well defined stable receptive fields restricted to parts of the dermatome of one of the three trigeminal branches. This type of receptive field will be referred to as small

This group was formed by the pooling of three subgroups used during the investigation. These were

- a) very small receptive fields with a diameter of about 2 mm or receptive fields consisting of one or two vibrissae or a few hairs
- b) Receptive fields of the order of 1 cm<sup>2</sup> restricted to a subdivision of the dermatomes as described in Fig. 1. Receptive fields of more than two vibrissae also belonged to this subgroup
- c) Receptive fields extending beyond the borders of our subdivisions of the dermatome although not beyond the borders of this dermatome

### 2) Cells with receptive fields exceeding the borders of the dermatome of one of the trigeminal branches. These cells will be referred to as wide receptive

C The location of the receptive field was used as the third criterion. During the experiment the location was recorded as described in methods (Fig. 1). When analyzing the material it was found convenient to divide the receptive fields into three main groups

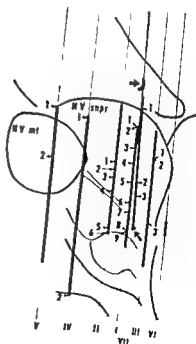
- 1) Oral (Tongue floor of the mouth gingiva on the alveolar processes hard palate inside of lips teeth)
- 2) Perioral (Lips nose M1 M2L M2W M22 M2N according to Fig. 1)
- 3) Periorbital (Eyelids nictitating membrane and O1 O2 M3 according to Fig. 1)

In addition to this a separate record was kept of receptive fields including the corner. The vibrissae were also studied as a separate group

### The localization of the cells within the trigeminal nucleus

In order to describe the data underlying the following analysis the results of one experiment are shown in Fig. 2. In this experiment a row of recording tracks was made through Msnpr. The reconstruction was done as described in methods. All tracks were identified and traced (Fig.



**A****B****C**

a A and C) It was possible to follow some of them into Vsnpr is seen in the photomicrograph of Fig 5B Responses to physiological stimulation of the face or mouth were obtained along those parts of the tracks marked as heavy bars in Fig 5C There is obviously a good agreement between the borders of the responsive region and the borders of the trigeminal nucleus derived from the histological section

The recorded cells were localized (figures near tracks in Fig 5C) on a tracing of the section from which the photomicrograph of Fig 5B was taken The effective stimuli and the location of the receptive field of the cells are listed below Unless specially noted the receptive fields were strictly ipsilateral

- Track I cell 1 Responded to light pressure inside and near the angle of the mouth 2 Touch Te middle third 3 and 4 Touch hairs Vnt 5 and 6 Touch VxL 7 and 8 Touch Vxn 9 Touch hairs O2
- Track II cell 1 Pressure Vn? 2 Tapping of Vx teeth 3 Tapping of Vx incisors 4 Pressure VxL near philtrum 5 Touch Vxn 6 Touch hairs O1 and O?
- Track III cells 1 and 2 Touch hairs VxJ near the angle of the mouth 3 Touch far back in the mouth
- Track IV cell 1 Touch Te 2 Pressure and pinprick all face (Vn Vx B bilateral) No response to noxious mechanical stimulation of the paws or body nor to light flash or sound No response to noxious thermal stimuli applied to eye and nose
- Track V cell 1 Responds to opening of the mouth 2 Pressure Te middle third
- Track VII cell 1 Touch hairs Vn? 2 Touch hairs O1 edges of eyelids No response from the corner 3 Touch hairs O1 edges of eyelids and cornea

The maps showing the localization of the cells were arranged according to their rostro-caudal positions and compared The caudal pole of Vnt was used as a reference point when the positions were determined

Fig. Results from one experiment at the level of Vsnpr

- A Outline drawing of transverse section at the level of penetrations through Vsnpr Superimposed on this are the traces left by microelectrodes in neighbouring sections The arrows point to the two Prussian Blue reference spots made in track VII a=roost of V 1=Vsnpr c=Vnt d=Beck e=Nucleus interpositus
- B Photomicrograph showing traces left by penetrations through Vsnpr (small horizontal arrows) and Prussian Blue reference spots (large curved arrows)
- C Outline drawing of B Responses from the face were obtained from those parts of the tracks marked by heavy bars The numbered arrows indicate the location of single units described in detail in the text The Roman numerals indicate microelectrode penetrations in the order of their placement

nr of cells

75

50

25

-2

-1

0

10 mm

NVspo $\gamma$ 

NVmt

NVII

NVsnpr

c

b

a

Fig 6 Diagram showing the rostro caudal distribution of the investigated trigeminal cells. The caudal pole of NVmt was used as a reference point. The cells in segments a, b and c were plotted on standard diagrams representative of each segment (cf Fig 4-9).

NVsnpr and NVspo $\gamma$  were divided into three transverse segments. These were a) NVsnpr at the level of NVmt, b) the region of overlap between NVsnpr and NVspo $\gamma$  and c) NVspo $\gamma$  caudal to NVsnpr. The borders of the trigeminal nucleus and of neighbouring structures were comparable within these segments. A tracing of a section selected from the middle

of the segment was taken to represent the topography of the segment and used as a standard diagram upon which all cells found in the segment were plotted in positions approximately corresponding to their location on the original maps. Such standard diagrams are shown in Figs 7—9. The rostrocaudal distribution of the cells within the three segments is given in Fig. 6.

For special purposes segment 7 was split in two divisions by separating out the cells found 0—199  $\mu$  rostral to the caudal pole of Nmt and plotting them on a standard diagram from this region (Figs 8 D and 9 B). This was done in order to illustrate more correctly the localization of cells in the immediate surroundings of Nmt.

### Touch cells with small receptive fields

#### A Distribution within the nucleus and location of receptive fields

At the level of Nmt this group of cells occupies a dorsal and lateral position within Nsnpr. As shown in Fig. 7 A and B there is a clearcut topographical organization within this part of the nucleus. The touch cells connected to the tongue are marked with dots. They form a column of cells situated dorsally in Nsnpr. Dorsolaterally in the nucleus there is a column of touch cells with perioral receptive fields. Those responding to touch of the mandibular dermatome (Fig. 7 B  $\bigcirc$ ) lie dorsally to the maxillary touch cells ( $\Delta$ ). In the ventrolateral part of the nucleus periorbital responses were obtained ( $\square$ ). It is obvious from Figs. 7 A and B that the touch cells are rare in the central and medial parts of Nsnpr.

The distribution of the touch cells with small receptive fields within the region of overlap between Nsnpr and Nspoy is shown in Fig. 7 C and D. The same topographical organization is seen as in Fig. 7 A and B. Columns of cells with oral perioral mandibular perioral maxillary and periorbital receptive fields are thus found dorsally and laterally in this segment also. The perioral and periorbital columns fill out Nsnpr and the oral column is found dorsally in Nspoy. The columns continue into Nspoy caudal to Nsnpr as indicated by Fig. 8 C. The topographical organization of the touch cells with small receptive fields is thus independent of the great difference in cytoarchitecture between the two subnuclei.

In Fig. 7 C the tongue column (dots) seems to be split in two divisions by periodontal cells responding to gentle tapping of the teeth ( $\wedge$ ). This separation may not be significant. It could very well be due to the small

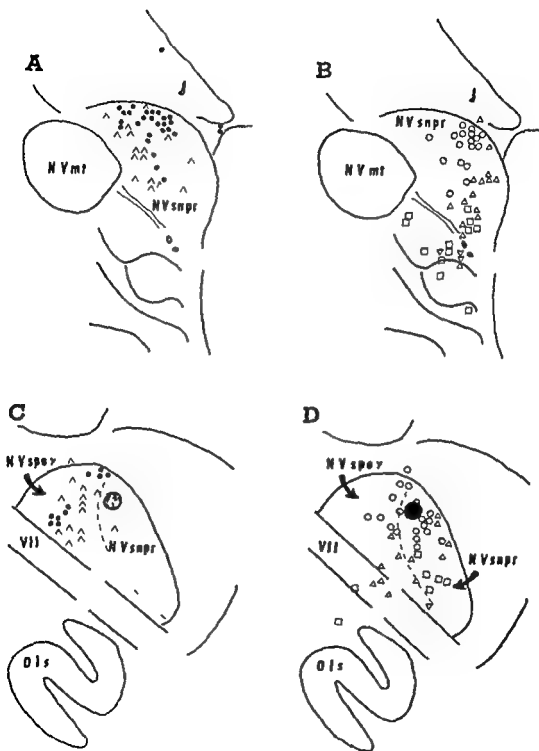


Fig 7 Diagram summarizing the distribution of touch cells with small receptive fields and cells with periodontal receptive fields

number of our observations and the errors involved in our localization method

As shown in Fig 7D several touch cells with small perioral or periorbital receptive fields were localized to  $\Delta$ spoy in a region near its border with  $\Delta$ snpr. These symbols may represent responses from axons of touch cells on their way from  $\Delta$ snpr to the contralateral trigeminal lemniscus. It can however not be excluded that they represent cell bodies actually located in  $\Delta$ spoy.

A detailed study of the topography revealed that touch cells with receptive fields on the mucous membranes of the floor of the mouth, the hard palate and the gingiva were localized to a region just ventral to the tongue nucleus. These cells lie in the border zone between the tongue region and the centrally situated nucleus of periodontal responses (Fig 7A  $\Delta$ ).

Cells responding to touch of the naked part of the nose around the nostril were found among the periorbital touch cells ventrolaterally in  $\Delta$ snpr. They were thus separated from the group of cells with receptive fields within the maxillary dermatome. In Fig 7B they are marked  $\nabla$ . This localization would be expected if the cat's ophthalmic dermatome also includes the tip of the nose as is the case in man (cf. DEJERINE 1914).

Touch cells with a receptive field including the cornea were often found in  $\Delta$ snpr at the level of  $\Delta$ mt. They were generally found among the periorbital cells in the ventrolateral part of the nucleus but the cornea region seemed to extend further medially. For example two cells responding only to touch of the cornea were isolated in a nucleus of similar responses found in the central part of  $\Delta$ snpr somewhat lateral and ventral to  $\Delta$ mt (See Fig 8D).

According to DEJERINE (1914) ascending syringobulbia causes a sensory deficit starting in a region involving parts of all the three trigeminal dermatomes but located far away from the mouth. As the process id

---

B. Cells with perioral and periorbital receptive fields found in  $\Delta$ snpr at the level of  $\Delta$ mt

C. Cells with oral receptive fields found in region of overlap of  $\Delta$ snpr and  $\Delta$ spoy

III. Cells with perioral and periorbital receptive fields found in region of overlap of  $\Delta$ snpr and  $\Delta$ spoy

(●) = tone receptive field

(○) = perioral mandibular receptive field

(Δ) = perioral maxillary receptive field

(□) = periorbital receptive field

(▽) = receptive field on naked tip of nose

(Λ) = periodontal receptive field

Shaded areas in diagrams are reference spots

vances rostrally in the medulla sensation is lost in concentric zones more and more approaching the mouth. The observation suggests a rostro-caudal organization of the trigeminal nucleus with perioral reception located near the rostral pole. The existence of a column of periorbital touch cells extending to the rostral part of NVsnpr is at variance with the observations of DEJERINE. It was found however that the majority of the perioral touch cells in the rostral half of NVsnpr (13 out of 21 cells) had their receptive fields on the lips whereas the majority of these cells found in the caudal half had receptive fields localized to the hairy skin surrounding the mouth (32 out of 39 cells). It is also of interest to note that touch cells with receptive fields on the cheek (Mn2 cheek w) or near the anterior base of the pinna (Mn3 O2) were very rare both in NVsnpr and in NVspoy. In all 8 such cells were recorded being only 5% of the total material of touch cells with small receptive fields.

Table I The location of the receptive fields of touch cells with small receptive fields

N1 snpr									
Oral		Perioral				Periorbital			
		Mandibular		Maxillary					
T <sup>1</sup>	34 cells	MnL	12 cells	MxL	7 cells	O1	13 cells		
Gi	4	Mn1	3	MxL	1 cell	Cornea			
Floor		Mn1	17	Mxn	4 cells	Corner O1	2		
Pal				Mx1	12	Mx3	1 cell		
					Mx2	2			
38 cells		32 cells		26 cells		18 cells			

Total NVsnpr=114 cells

Vspoy								
Oral		Perioral				Periorbital		
		Mandibular		Maxillary				
T	10 cells	MnL	4 cells	Mx1	1 cell	O1 N1		1 cell
T MnL	2	MnL Mn1	1 cell	Mx1	3 cells	O1 O2		1
Pal	1 cell	Mn1	2 cells	Mx1 Mn1	1 cell			
				Mx1 Mn1	1			
13 cells		7 cells			6 cells		2 cell	

Total NVspoy=28 cells

Total overall=142 cells

<sup>1</sup> For interpretation of the code of the receptive fields see Fig 1. Gi=gingiva Floor = floor of mouth Pal=hard palate N1=neutritive membrane

Touch cells with small receptive fields were always strictly ipsilateral. The size of their receptive field was about 1 cm<sup>2</sup> or less and the group contained a considerable number of cells (20 %) with very precise fields having a diameter of less than 5 mm. Details about the localization of the receptive fields are given in Table I.

### B *Latency of response to orthodromic electrical stimulation*

The shortest latency of our responses recorded at the level of Vsnpr from primary afferent fibres in the trigeminal tract was 1.1 msec which corresponds to a conduction velocity of 80 m/sec. As the length of the peripheral path is about 90 mm. Assuming a synaptic delay of 0.6 msec leads to the conclusion that all cells having a latency of response shorter than 2.3 msec should be secondary neurones. The latency to electrical stimulation in the receptive field was tested in 50 cells belonging to the group of touch cells with small receptive field. Out of these cells 26 (52 %) responded with a latency of less than 2.3 msec. These results suggest that the majority of the above mentioned group of cells are directly discharged by fast conducting afferent fibres with conduction velocities between 50 and 80 m/sec.

### C *The specificity to different types of stimulus*

Touch cells with small receptive fields showed a low threshold to mechanical stimuli and a high threshold to all other stimuli tested i.e. they were specific to touch. Thermal stimulation of the receptive field was carried out on 30 of these cells. None of them responded to cooling or warming between 20 and 45°C and 24 cells (i.e. 80 %) were also negative to noxious cooling and warming in the receptive field which was continued until reflex movements were observed. In 6 cells however the impulse frequency was increased by cooling below +10° or warming to +50°C. One of these 6 cells responded to noxious cooling and warming two only to warming and 3 only to cooling. The thermal responses were confirmed by repeated tests. They were not due to mechanical stimulation by the thermode and as far as could be judged by visual inspection they were independent of movements within the receptive field.

Nineteen touch cells with receptive fields on the tongue were tested with taste solutions (salt bitter acid and distilled water). No response was seen in 18 cells but 1 cell showed a delayed increase in impulse discharge when the acid solution was applied.



In 10 cells belonging to this group the effect of sound stimuli and light flashes were tested but none of them responded. Vibration due to tapping of the strand was routinely applied as responses to this stimulus occurred above and below the trigeminal nucleus. Touch cells with small receptive fields never responded to this stimulus.

#### D Response pattern

The touch cells with small receptive fields generally adapted rapidly to a maintained light mechanical stimulus. In 39 (74 %) of 53 investigated cells the response was thus phasic and consisted of a short burst of spikes. In 3 of them another burst was seen when the stimulus was removed. The remaining 14 cells (26 %) were slowly adapting and showed a persistent discharge to maintained touch or slight maintained bending of hairs.

In the group of 39 rapidly adapting touch cells 34 were tested by application of a strong steady pressure. The response was nevertheless phasic in 21 of them but 13 cells developed a persistent discharge in response to this stimulus. The fast adapting as well as the slowly adapting groups were represented at all rostro-caudal levels within NVsnpr and NVspo.

#### Cells responding to movements of the vibrissae

The cells responding to movements of the vibrissae may be looked upon as closely related to the group of touch cells with small receptive fields described above as they receive precisely localized tactile information from the periphery. However considering the rather specialized function of the vibrissae it was decided to treat them as a separate group.

The nuclear topography of these cells is interesting because they are very rare in the rostral half of NVsnpr i.e. at the level of NVmt. Fig. 8A shows just 4 cells lying along the lateral border of NVsnpr. The significance of this small number may be appreciated if compared with the large number of cells investigated in this part of the nucleus (cf. Fig. 7B). In the overlapping part of NVsnpr caudal to NVmt a large number of whisker cells were found. Their distribution is identical with that of the previously described touch cells with a column of maxillary whisker cells and another of ophthalmic whisker cells both in the same positions as the maxillary perioral and periorbital touch cell columns respectively. In this same region several whisker cells were found medially to NVsnpr in NVspo (Fig. 8B). In this respect also the distribution agrees with

that of the touch cells. Caudal to  $Nsnpr$  the columns of whisker cells continue through the lateral part of  $Nspo_1$  just as do the columns of touch cells. Their localization together with the first mentioned group of cells is shown in Fig. 8C in which cells belonging to the two groups are plotted together.

In all 38 cells responding to movement of whiskers were investigated and 24 of these were discharged by maxillary vibrissae 8 by ophthalmic and 2 by vibrissae on the cheek. 23 cells were localized to  $Nsnpr$  and 15 to  $Nspo_1$ . The receptive field was confined to one or two vibrissae in 48 % of the whisker cells found in  $Nsnpr$  but only 8 % (1 out of 13) of the cells localized to  $Nspo_1$  had such a well defined receptive field. The majority of the whisker cells responded to several vibrissae and some of them either to all ipsilateral maxillary or to all ipsilateral ophthalmic vibrissae.

The latency of the response to electrical stimulation in the receptive field was investigated in 9 whisker cells. Only 2 of these responded with a latency shorter than 23 msec. Thus some of the cells in this group are obviously activated directly by first conducting afferent fibres. The observations however are too few to allow conclusions concerning the relative size of this part of the group.

The whisker cells were occasionally tested by the application of thermal stimuli sound or light flashes but in no case was a positive response observed.

The response pattern was investigated in 19 whisker cells. Great sensitivity slow adaptation and a steady discharge to maintained bending of the whisker were found in 11 cells but 8 cells were rapidly adapting and also less sensitive. 50 % of the cells showed directional sensitivity.

#### Cells with periodontal receptive fields

The central region in  $Nsnpr$  is occupied by a column of cells responding to mechanical stimulation of the teeth as shown in Fig. 7A (A). The stimulus was a light tap of a tooth or moderate pressure on the gingiva near the root of a tooth often effective from either side of the alveolar process. These cells were generally very sensitive and some of them responded even to a stroke of a soft brush on the tooth. It was concluded that the receptors were located in the periodontal membrane (PFAFF MAY 1939).

The column of periodontal cells continues caudally into  $Nspo_1$  (Fig. 7C) and was observed in this nucleus in the overlapping region as well as caudal to  $Nsnpr$ . Only occasional periodontal responses were recorded from the laterally situated caudal overlapping half of  $Nsnpr$ .

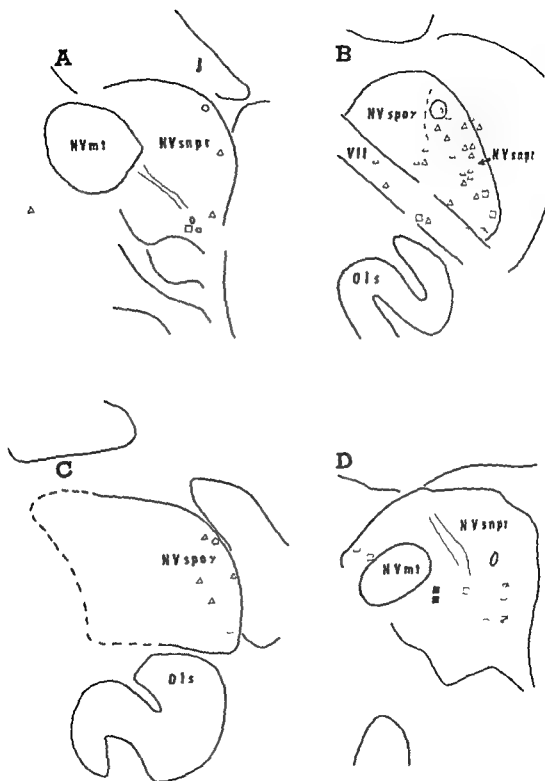


Table II The location of the receptive fields of cells activated by periodontal receptors

	Vlsnpr	Vlspon	Total
Mn periodontal	11 cells	7 cells	18 cells
Mx	6	3	9
Mn Mx	2	5	7
Total	19 cells	15 cells	34 cells

The receptive field of the periodontal cells was always restricted to the ipsilateral side. It could be rather small and was sometimes confined to one tooth. However, there was frequently convergence from several teeth and sometimes from all ipsilateral incisors and molars. As seen in Table II convergence from mandibular and maxillary teeth was also found.

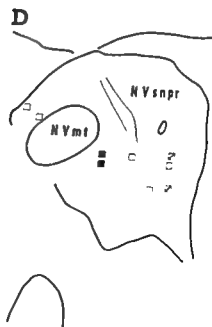
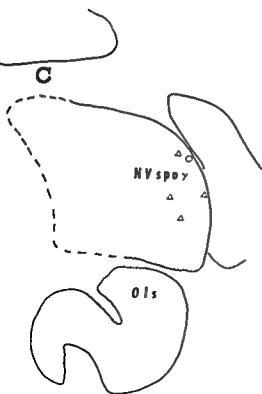
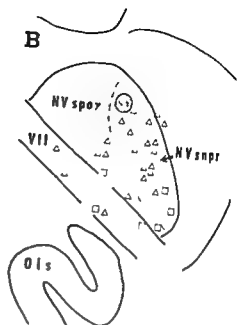
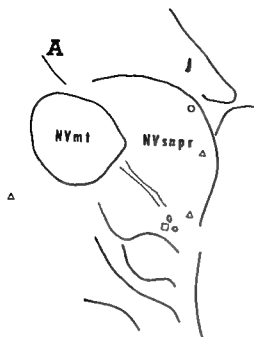
The latency of the response to electrical stimulation in the receptive field was investigated in 13 cells belonging to this group. Out of these 5 showed a latency shorter than 23 msec and all of these were found in Vlsnpr. The results suggest that a considerable part of the periodontal group in Vlsnpr consists of cells directly discharged by rapidly conducting afferent fibres.

#### Pressure cells with small receptive fields

Cells responding to moderate pressure were found scattered among the touch cells in Vlsnpr and Vlspon. They were localized to the appropriate columns of oral, perioral or periorbital touch cells according to the loca-

Fig 8

- A and B Diagrams summarizing the distribution of whisker cells found in Vlsnpr at the level of Vlm1 (A) and in the region of overlap of Vlsnpr and Vlspon (B).
- (○) = cells responding to movement of cheek whiskers  
 (Δ) = cells responding to movement of maxillary whiskers  
 (□) = cells responding to movement of ophthalmic whiskers
- C Distribution of whisker cells and of touch cells with small receptive fields found in Vlspon caudal to Vlsnpr  
 (○) = touch cell with mandibular receptive field  
 (Δ) = touch cell with maxillary receptive field or maxillary whisker cells  
 (□) = cell responding to movement of ophthalmic whiskers
- D Distribution of cells with receptive fields including the cornea found in Vlsnpr near the caudal pole of Vlm1  
 (■) = touch cells with receptive field restricted to cornea  
 (◻) = touch cells with receptive field restricted on cornea and eyelids  
 (◻) = cells with wide receptive fields responding to touch of the cornea and to noxious stimuli on other parts of the receptive field



was shown by four of these cells. Their receptive field was found apically on the ipsilateral side of the lower and the upper lip. The borders of the field were well defined and these cells were discharged by light touch. The latency of their response to electrical stimulation of the upper and the lower lip was the same and was shorter than 23 msec (17 and 20 msec) in two of them. It may therefore be assumed that they were discharged directly by fast conducting afferents from both lips. In the nucleus they were localized to the border zone between the mandibular and maxillary touch cell columns.

In all ten of the wide receptive touch cells were tested with electrical stimulation in their receptive field and only three (including the two mentioned above) responded with a latency shorter than 23 msec.

An exception from the rule of strictly ipsilateral connections was found in this group of cells. One of them was discharged by touching the internal ing membrane, the inside of the nostril and the lower lip on the contralateral side. It was localized to the medial part of *N*snpr.

#### Cells responding to noxious stimuli

A considerable group of cells, 49 in all, responded to noxious stimuli of mechanical (pinching with forceps, pinprick) and sometimes also of thermal ( $+10^{\circ}\text{C}$  or  $+50^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) type. These cells were scattered over the central and the medial part of *N*snpr (Fig. 9A and B, X). Several were found in regio II of MEESSEN and OLSEWICKI (1949), i.e. in the cell poor zone immediately surrounding *N*mt. Although some of them were found among the touch cells in the topographically organized columns, in general they were rare in this region. This was also true at the level of overlap between *N*snpr and *N*spo. As shown in Fig. 9C (X) many nociceptive cells were found in *N*spo, whereas the laterally situated and topographically organized *N*snpr contained only few such cells. Fig. 9D indicates that the same organization persists also in the part of *N*spo, situated caudal to *N*snpr.

According to size of the receptive field the nociceptive cells could be divided into a group with rather small fields localized to a part of one dermatome and another group with fields exceeding the borders of one dermatome. The first mentioned was the smaller of the groups and consisted of 10 cells, 8 of which had their receptive fields on the tongue. They all responded to noxious mechanical stimulation (pinch) but only from a small ipsilateral receptive field. They never responded to taste stimuli. Noxious thermal stimuli were tried on 7 cells. One of them showed an

Table III The location of the receptive fields of cells responding to localized pressure or stretch

Receptive field	Pressure	Stretch
<i>Nsnpr</i>		
T	15 cells	3 cells
Bucca	1	1
Perioral Mn	1	2
Perioral Mx	1	
Periorbital	3	
<i>Nspoy</i>		
T	3	
Bucca		2
Perioral	2	
Total	31 cells	9 cells

tion of their receptive field which was ipsilateral and always restricted to a part of one of the trigeminal dermatomes. The number of the observed pressure cells as well as the location of the receptive fields are given in Table III which also contains a small number of cells responding to stretch of the tongue, bucca or lip. Most of the pressure cells were discharged from the tongue.

The latency of the response to electrical stimulation in the receptive field was tested in 7 cells and was shorter than 23 msec in 3 of them. It may therefore be concluded that at least part of this group consisted of secondary neurones.

The pressure cells did not respond to noxious thermal stimuli. Taste stimuli were applied to those discharged from the tongue but they never responded. Slow adaptation to maintained pressure was most commonly observed but a number of rapidly adapting pressure cells were also found.

#### Touch and pressure cells with wide receptive fields

In *Nsnpr* and *Nspoy* there was a small group of cells responding only to touch (22 cells) or in other cases only to moderate pressure (3 cells) but from a wide receptive field which exceeded the borders of one trigeminal dermatome. No responses to noxious thermal or to gustatory stimuli were found in this group.

The distribution of these wide receptive cells within the nuclei is shown in Fig. 9 (○). They are obviously scattered all over *Nsnpr* and *Nspoy*. Some of them appeared in the dorsally and laterally situated columns of touch cells with small receptive fields. An interesting type of convergence

was shown by four of these cells. Their receptive field was found apically on the ipsilateral side of the lower and the upper lip. The borders of the field were well defined and these cells were discharged by light touch. The latency of their response to electrical stimulation of the upper and the lower lip was the same and was shorter than 23 msec (17 and 21 msec) in two of them. It may therefore be assumed that they were discharged directly by fast conducting afferents from both lips. In the nucleus they were localized to the border zone between the mandibular and maxillary touch cell columns.

In all ten of the wide receptive touch cells were tested with electrical stimulation in their receptive field and only three (including the two mentioned above) responded with a latency shorter than 23 msec.

An exception from the rule of strictly ipsilateral connections was found in this group of cells. One of them was discharged by touching the nictitating membrane, the inside of the nostril and the lower lip on the contralateral side. It was localized to the medial part of N5poxy.

#### Cells responding to noxious stimuli

A considerable group of cells 49 in all responded to noxious stimuli of mechanical (pinching with forceps, pinprick) and sometimes also of thermal ( $+10^{\circ}\text{C}$  or  $+50^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) type. These cells were scattered over the central and the medial part of N5snpr (Fig. 9A and B, X). Several were found in regio H of MEESSEN and OLSZEWSKI (1949), i.e. in the cell poor zone immediately surrounding N5mt. Although some of them were found among the touch cells in the topographically organized columns, in general they were rare in this region. This was also true at the level of overlap between N5snpr and N5poxy. As shown in Fig. 9C (X) many nociceptive cells were found in N5poxy whereas the laterally situated and topographically organized N5snpr contained only few such cells. Fig. 9D indicates that the same organization persists also in the part of N5poxy situated caudal to N5snpr.

According to size of the receptive field the nociceptive cells could be divided into a group with rather small fields localized to a part of one dermatome and another group with fields exceeding the borders of one dermatome. The first mentioned was the smaller of the groups and consisted of 10 cells 8 of which had their receptive fields on the tongue. They all responded to noxious mechanical stimulation (pinch) but only from a small ipsilateral receptive field. They never responded to taste stimuli. Noxious thermal stimuli were tried on 7 cells. One of them showed in



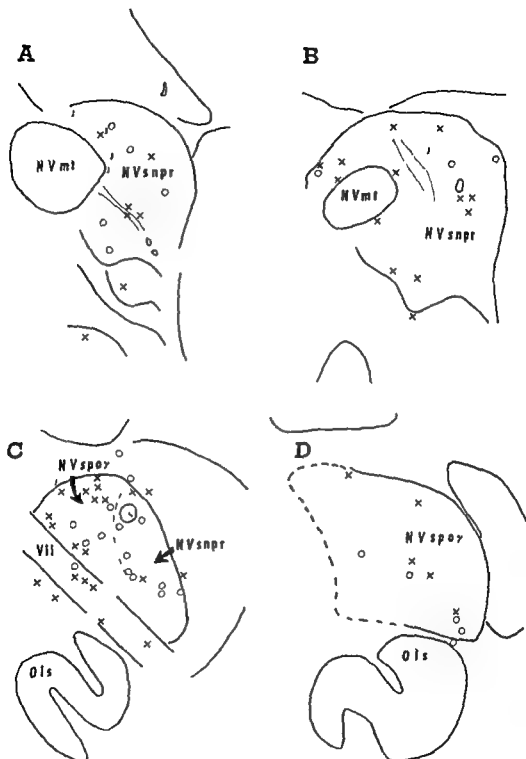


Fig 9 Diagram showing distribution of cells responding to noxious stimuli (x) or to touch within wide receptive fields ( ) or to jaw movement (o)

A Cells found in NVsnpr more than 19) a rostral to the caudal pole of NVmt

B Cells found in NVsnpr at the caudal pole of NVmt

C Cells found in region of overlap of NVsnpr and NVspoy

increased discharge frequency when  $+8^{\circ}\text{C}$  was applied to the tongue. It did not respond to noxious heat. The other 6 cells did not respond to either noxious cooling or warming. Rapidly as well as slowly adapting responses to pinch were observed in the group.

The majority of the nociceptive cells (39 out of 49) had a wide receptive field. Although the receptive field exceeded the borders of one trigeminal dermatome it was generally ipsilateral and confined to the face. Exceptions from this rule were however observed in 11 cells. Eight of these cells were discharged also by pinching the paws or the pinna. A bilateral receptive field on the face was observed in 4 of them. All these 9 cells were localized to the medial or ventromedial part of the nucleus.

The B cells described by GORDON, LANDGREEN and SEFN (1961) had a more sensitive region within the receptive field. This was also observed in the group of wide receptive nociceptive cells. The most sensitive region responded to touch in 14 cells but moderate pressure was required in 15 cells. Ten cells responded only to noxious stimuli and apparently lacked a region of higher sensitivity.

The B cells of GORDON *et al.* often had the most sensitive part of the receptive field localized to the medial angle of the eye. In the present population of cells obtained further rostrally in the nucleus it was more common to find the most sensitive region on the tongue, nose or lips. Oral structures (generally tongue) were included in the receptive field in 71% (35 of 49) of all the nociceptive cells.

Noxious thermal stimuli were applied to the receptive field of 25 nociceptive cells with wide receptive fields. No response was seen in 17 cells but 8 cells were discharged by noxious warming and 3 of them also responded to noxious cooling. Tests with taste solutions, light flashes and sound stimuli were tried in 4 cells but none of them responded.

The cells of this group always showed a slowly adapting discharge in response to noxious stimuli. The latency of the response to electrical stimulation in the receptive field was investigated in 24 nociceptive cells and only 3 of these had a latency shorter than 2.3 msec. The latency of the rest varied between 2.3 and 11.4 msec.

#### Cells responding to movements of the lower jaw

A small group of cells were observed some of which responded to opening and some to closing of the mouth. The receptors activating these cells could obviously have been located in greatly different structures and a

closer identification of them was not attempted. It is, however, of some interest to note that the cells were localized to the immediate surroundings of NVmt (regio H). See Fig. 9A symbol J.

### Responses from bordering nuclei

On the way down to the trigeminal nucleus the recording tracks passed through cerebellum, the cerebellar nuclei and the vestibular nuclei. Just ventrally to the fifth nucleus they entered into *nucleus olivaris superior*. Some characteristic responses from the bordering nuclei were noted and served as an aid in the preliminary localization of the borders of the trigeminal nucleus. Spontaneously active units with large spikes were thus recorded from *N. Bechterew* and from *Deiters* nucleus. These units never responded to our stimuli. In a cat showing nystagmus it was noted that a number of such units increased their discharge frequency in phase with the movements of the eye. These units were localized to *N. Bechterew*. Responses to vibration (tapping the stand or the skull) were sometimes observed in the vestibular nuclei just before entering the trigeminal nucleus. Such responses were regularly recorded from *nucleus olivaris superior*. They were easily recognized and appeared suddenly when the track left the trigeminal nucleus. In the histological reconstructions they were nicely localized to the S shaped superior olive.

Responses to touch and pressure on the face were occasionally recorded from the region of the cerebellar nuclei. In one experiment a group of 6 units showing such responses were localized just ventral to the border zone between *N. interpositus* and *N. dentatus*. Two of them responded to touch and four to pressure. Their receptive fields were located on the face but they received convergence from more than one of the trigeminal dermatomes. The latency of their response to electrical stimulation was long (75–160 msec).

## Discussion

The functional division of the trigeminal nucleus proposed by GERHARD (1953) and Sjöqvist (1958) is attractive because of its simplicity. According to their theory all relays essential to tactile perception are located in the main sensory nucleus and those essential for the reception of pain and temperature are located in the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. A functional subdivision of the long trigeminal cell column in transverse segments is thus suggested. However the present results disagree with such an interpretation. They suggest that cell columns of similar function are arranged longitudinally. Topographically arranged longitudinal columns of cells sensitive to touch within small receptive fields thus extend from the rostral pole of the main sensory nucleus over into the rostral subdivision of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. The studies of GORDON, LANDGREN and SEED (1961), KRUGER, SIMONOFF and WITKOWSKI (1961) and WALL and TAUB (1962) show that these columns continue through the middle and the caudal part of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. The nerve impulses arriving in the trigeminal touch fibres are thus spread out over the major part of the trigeminal nucleus, a finding which is suggested by the bifurcation of the coarse trigeminal afferents described by CAJAL (1902). In fact no unique functional property is localized to the main sensory nucleus according to our observations. This is in agreement with the view of ÅSTRÖM (1953) who emphasizes that the ascending collaterals to the main sensory nucleus are just the first of many similar branches given off by the afferent fibre during its course along the spinal trigeminal tract.

When preparing this report for publication the recent work of KRUGER and MICHEL (1962, a, b and c) came to our knowledge. Our findings concerning the longitudinal and topographical organization of the touch cells within the trigeminal nucleus confirm their results. The description of the cells in the main sensory nucleus given by WALL and TAUB (1962) on the other hand disagrees to some extent with our results as well as with those of KRUGER and MICHEL. According to WALL and TAUB the cells in the main sensory nucleus have large receptive fields generally

located on the face skin and less often in the mouth and the topographical organization is less apparent here than it is in the middle part of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. The fact that unanesthetized preparations were used in our series cannot explain the disagreement because the experiments of KRUGER and MICHEL were made on decerebrate animals and produced results consistent with ours. The wide receptive type of cell described by WALL and TAUB was observed also by us (the nociceptive cells with wide receptive fields). In our experience these cells are not however evenly distributed all over the transverse section of the nucleus but are more common in its central and medial parts. The percentage of spontaneously active cells in the nucleus was around 60 in our series as well as in that of WALL and TAUB and it therefore seems probable that the degree of depression of the activity in the two types of preparations is of the same order of magnitude.

The topographically organized columns of touch cells occupy a dorsal and lateral shell of the nucleus. The majority of the cells within this shell are secondary neurones and are apparently directly discharged by first conducting afferent fibres only. The cells found in the medial part of the nucleus showed a much more complex type of convergence from large receptive fields probably involving different types of afferents. There was even evidence of a greater complexity the further medially the cell was located. Some cells discharged from most parts of the body were thus found near the border between the trigeminal and the reticular nuclei.

KRUGER and MICHEL (1962a, b) found no rostrocaudal organization within the longitudinal cell columns. In our experience there is however certain evidence of such an organization. The small number of whisker cells in the rostral half of the main sensory nucleus compared to the large number in the caudal half is one example; the difference in the distribution of the touch cells discharged from the lips is another. A detailed investigation of large cell populations within continuous parts of the columns will probably reveal further inequalities in the rostrocaudal distribution of the different cell types. It is possible that such inequalities could explain the puzzling findings of DARIAN SMITH and MAYNARD (1960) which they interpreted as evidence of a double representation of the face within the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract.

It is necessary to consider the role that the described cell types may play in perceptive or reflex mechanisms in spite of the fact that any suggestions concerning function will be highly speculative. A cell which is discharged with a minimum of delay from a small well circumscribed receptive field by one type of stimulus only has properties expected in a neurone subserving perceptive functions. These features are found in

a majority of the touch cells in the longitudinal cell columns. It is therefore suggested that these cells are links in the chain of neurones subserving tactile perception. There is no reason to believe that this function is restricted to the main sensory nucleus. Still more evidence pertinent to this question will be presented in a following paper in which the trigeminal projection to the thalamus will be considered (LISMAN, FROMM, LANDGREN and LOVIN 1964).

According to WALL and TALB (1962) and to KRUGER and MICHEL (1962b) trigeminal cells responding only to noxious stimuli are very rare or do not exist. In the present material however 20 out of 49 nociceptive cells belonged to this group and they were all localized to the trigeminal nucleus. It is not possible to explain the nociceptive responses as artefacts (cf. KRUGER and MICHEL 1962b) due to movements between the brain and the electrode caused by reflex changes in the blood pressure because noxious stimuli applied outside the ipsilateral receptive field were without effect. In some cases it was further observed that noxious heat applied to the receptive field did not discharge a cell which was fired by noxious mechanical stimulation.

Some nociceptive cells were directly discharged by fast conducting afferents from the most sensitive part of their receptive field but most of them showed longer latencies. Noxious mechanical and thermal stimuli could affect these cells either directly via slowly conducting afferents or indirectly via polysynaptic connections. On the basis of the present evidence it is impossible to decide whether such cells are secondary or higher order neurones. This conclusion was also emphasized by GORDON, LANDGREN and SEED (1961) when discussing their B cells. The nociceptive cells with wide receptive fields found in the present series to be located near the trigeminal motor nucleus are probably interneurones in local reflex arcs. Similar cells located medially near the border with the reticular nuclei may have other so far unknown functions. In our opinion there is no *a priori* reason to exclude the possibility that cells of this type could be involved in mechanisms subserving the perception of pain. Our present knowledge based on results obtained from a selected sample of neurones is however not sufficient to allow the presentation of theories concerning the central mechanisms of pain.

JOHANNES MÜLLER'S (1835) law of the specific sensory energies was extended by M. BLIX (1882) and by MAX VON FREY (1893) to the skin sensations. The validity of this extension has however been much debated. As a consequence of JOHANNES MÜLLER'S theory the sensation of touch should depend on the activity in receptors and afferent nerve fibres activated exclusively by light mechanical deformation of the skin. These

located on the face skin and less often in the mouth and the topographical organization is less apparent here than it is in the middle part of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. The fact that anesthetized preparations were used in our series cannot explain the disagreement because the experiments of KRUCKER and MICHEL were made on decerebrate animals and produced results consistent with ours. The wide receptive type of cell described by WALL and TAUB was observed also by us (the nociceptive cells with wide receptive fields). In our experience these cells are not however evenly distributed all over the transverse section of the nucleus but are more common in its central and medial parts. The percentage of spontaneously active cells in the nucleus was around 60 in our series as well as in that of WALL and TAUB and it therefore seems probable that the degree of depression of the activity in the two types of preparations is of the same order of magnitude.

The topographically organized columns of touch cells occupy a dorsal and lateral shell of the nucleus. The majority of the cells within this shell are secondary neurones and are apparently directly discharged by first conducting afferent fibres only. The cells found in the medial part of the nucleus showed a much more complex type of convergence from large receptive fields probably involving different types of afferents. There was even evidence of a greater complexity the further medially the cell was located. Some cells discharged from most parts of the body were thus found near the border between the trigeminal and the reticular nuclei.

KRUCKER and MICHEL (1962 a, b) found no rostrocaudal organization within the longitudinal cell columns. In our experience there is however certain evidence of such an organization. The small number of whisker cells in the rostral half of the main sensory nucleus compared to the large number in the caudal half is one example; the difference in the distribution of the touch cells discharged from the lips is another. A detailed investigation of large cell populations within continuous parts of the columns will probably reveal further inequalities in the rostrocaudal distribution of the different cell types. It is possible that such inequalities could explain the puzzling findings of DARIAN SMITH and MAYDAY (1960) which they interpreted as evidence of a double representation of the face within the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract.

It is necessary to consider the role that the described cell types may play in perceptive or reflex mechanisms in spite of the fact that any suggestions concerning function will be highly speculative. A cell which is discharged with a minimum of delay from a small well circumscribed receptive field by one type of stimulus only has properties expected in a neurone subserving perceptive functions. These features are found in

a majority of the touch cells in the longitudinal cell columns. It is therefore suggested that these cells are links in the chain of neurones subserving tactile perception. There is no reason to believe that this function is restricted to the main sensory nucleus. Still more evidence pertinent to this question will be presented in a following paper in which the trigeminal projection to the thalamus will be considered (J. ISFENMAN, I. ROMM, L. LANDGREN and N. LOVIN 1964).

According to WALL and TALB (1962) and to KRUGER and MICHEL (1962b) trigeminal cells responding only to noxious stimuli are very rare or do not exist. In the present material however 20 out of 49 nociceptive cells belonged to this group and they were all localized to the trigeminal nucleus. It is not possible to explain the nociceptive responses as artefacts (cf. KRUGER and MICHEL 1962b) due to movements between the brain and the electrode caused by reflex changes in the blood pressure because noxious stimuli applied outside the ipsilateral receptive field were without effect. In some cases it was further observed that noxious heat applied to the receptive field did not discharge a cell which was fired by noxious mechanical stimulation.

Some nociceptive cells were directly discharged by fast conducting afferents from the most sensitive part of their receptive field but most of them showed longer latencies. Noxious mechanical and thermal stimuli could affect these cells either directly via slowly conducting afferents or indirectly via polysynaptic connections. On the basis of the present evidence it is impossible to decide whether such cells are secondary or higher order neurones. This conclusion was also emphasized by CORDON, LANDGREN and SEED (1961) when discussing their B cells. The nociceptive cells with wide receptive fields found in the present series to be located near the trigeminal motor nucleus are probably interneurones in local reflex arcs. Similar cells located medially near the border with the reticular nuclei may have other so far unknown functions. In our opinion there is no *a priori* reason to exclude the possibility that cells of this type could be involved in mechanisms subserving the perception of pain. Our present knowledge based on results obtained from a selected sample of neurones is however not sufficient to allow the presentation of theories concerning the central mechanisms of pain.

JOHANNES MÜLLER's (1835) law of the specific sensory energies was extended by M. BLIX (1882) and by MAX VON FREY (1893) to the skin sensations. The validity of this extension has however been much debated. As a consequence of JOHANNES MÜLLER's theory the sensation of touch should depend on the activity in receptors and afferent nerve fibres activated exclusively by light mechanical deformation of the skin. These



fibres should in turn be connected to chains of neurones within the central nervous system also activated by this type of stimulus only. Do such specific paths exist? In order to answer this question it is necessary to consider the evidence concerning the specificity of skin afferents.

HENSEL and ZOTTERMAN (1951 a) and DODT (1953) have shown that single afferent fibres from the cat's tongue may be activated by tactile as well as by thermal stimuli within the physiological range. This type of afferent is rather common in the sphenous and the sural nerves of the cat as demonstrated by WITT and HENSEL (1959) and by HUNT and McINTYRE (1960). Such findings made it necessary to reexamine the mechanoreceptors paying particular attention to their sensitivity to thermal stimuli. This was done in a number of recent papers (BOMAN 1959, HENSEL and BOMAN 1960, IGGO 1960, JOENFESTIN 1961) and it has been shown that a large number of sensitive mechanoreceptors are unaffected by thermal stimuli or in other cases show a high threshold to such stimuli. The experiments of BOMAN (1959) are of particular interest for the present discussion because they were carried out on sensitive mechanoreceptive fibres in *n. infraorbitalis* of the cat. These fibres were unaffected by rapid warming and cooling between 20° and 50°C.

Afferent fibres responding to cooling or to warming of the receptive surface but not to mechanical stimuli were described by ZOTTERMAN (1936), HENSEL and ZOTTERMAN (1951 b), DODT and ZOTTERMAN (1952), MARUHASHI, MIZUCHI and TASAKI (1952), HENSEL, IGGO and WITT (1960) and by IRIUCHIJIMA and ZOTTERMAN (1960). The existence of large groups of skin afferents specific to mechanical or to thermal stimuli is thus proven beyond reasonable doubt.

The specificity of the central neurones in the lemniscal system was emphasized by MOUNTCASTLE (1957, 1961) who based his opinion on experiments with thalamic and cortical neurones tested with different types of mechanical stimuli. Thermal stimuli were not applied in his experiments. This fact may possibly explain why they have failed to convince MELZACK and WALL (1962) who state 'there is no evidence that would allow us even at central levels to assume that each pathway carries information about a single physical dimension'.

In the present series a particular point was made of applying mechanical and thermal as well as other types of stimulus. The results clearly demonstrate the existence of a large group of secondary neurones in the rostral part of the trigeminal nucleus activated only by light mechanical stimulation of their receptive field. These neurones are specific to the stimulus of touch in the sense that the threshold of their activation by this stimulus was low whereas the threshold of all other stimuli used

were high. Their threshold to thermal stimuli was obviously outside the physiological range: cooling below  $+10^{\circ}\text{C}$  and warming to  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$  which gave rise to reflexes of nociceptive type did not discharge the cells. These findings are in agreement with the observations of GORDON, LANDGREY and SEED (1961) made on a similar group of cells (their A cells) in the caudal part of the nucleus of the spinal trigeminal tract. Only a small group of cells responding to mechanical and to thermal stimuli in a way similar to that seen in certain afferent fibres was found in the present experiments. The specific cells were however much more common and formed about 80 % of the group referred to above as "touch cells with small receptive fields".

Thalamic neurones discharged by the ascending trigeminal path were investigated by LANDGREY (1960 a and b) and neurones in the cortical projection area of the tongue have also been examined (LANDGREY 1967 a and b). At the thalamic and cortical levels of the trigeminal path the majority of the cells were specific to mechanical stimuli and a smaller but still considerable group of cells responded only to cooling of the receptive field on the tongue (cf LANDGREY 1961 p. 440 table 1). Specific thermoceptive cells have not so far been found within the trigeminal nucleus: a fact that serves mainly to emphasize that our sample of cells is not entirely representative of the trigeminal population. Nevertheless the above described series of investigations allow the important conclusion that chains of neurones specific to tactile or to thermal stimuli reach the cortical level within the trigeminal system of the cat and this conclusion is in full agreement with the principle of JOHANNES MÜLLER.

## References

- ÅSTRÖM K L On the central course of afferent fibres in the trigeminal facial glossopharyngeal and vagal nerves and their nuclei in the mouse *Acta physiol scand* 1953 29 Suppl 106 209—320 pp
- BLIX M Experimentella bidrag till lösning af frågan om hudnervernas specifika energi Uppsala Läkaref förh 1882 18 87—102 pp
- BOUMAN K Die Einwirkung von Druckreizen auf spontantätige mechanosensible Rezeptoren der Haut *Acta physiol scand* 1959 45 216—219
- CAJAL S RAMON y *Histologie du système nerveux de l'homme et des vertébrés* Tome I Consejo Superior de Investigaciones Científicas Madrid 1952 860 pp (Reprint of Orig Ed 1909)
- DARIAN SMITH I and G MAJDAI Somatotopic organization within the brain stem trigeminal complex of the cat *Exp Neurol* 1960 2 290—309
- DI JERINE J *Sémiologie des affections du système nerveux* Vol 2 Masson et Co Paris 1914 836—938 pp
- DODT E Differential thermosensitivity of mammalian A fibres *Acta physiol scand* 1953 29 91—104
- DODT E and I ZOTTERMAN Mode of action of warm receptors *Acta physiol scand* 1952 26 340—357
- LISFMAN J G FROMM S LANDGRAF and D VOSS 1964 In preparation
- ERLH M y Beiträge zur Sinnesphysiologie der Haut III *Ber Sachs Ges Wiss Leipzig Math Phys Cl* 1893 47 166—184
- GIMHARD M W Afferent impulses of the trigeminal nerve *Arch Neurol Psychiat* 1923 9 306—339
- GORDON G and C H PAINE Functional organization in nucleus gracilis of the cat *J Physiol* 1960 153 331—349
- GORDON G S LANDGRAF and W A SEED Responses of single cells in the caudal part of the spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve of the cat *J Physiol* 1960 153 12—13 P
- GORDON G S LANDGRAF and W A SEED The functional characteristics of single cells in the caudal part of the spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve of the cat *J Physiol* 1961 159 444—503
- HENSEL H and K BOUMAN Afferent impulses in cutaneous sensory nerves in human subjects *J Neurophysiol* 1960 23 561—578
- HENSEL H A ICGO and I WITT A quantitative study of sensitive cutaneous thermoreceptors with C afferent fibres *J Physiol* 1960 153 113 136
- HENSEL H L ÅSTRÖM and I ZOTTERMAN Electrophysiological measurements of depth of thermoreceptors *J Neurophysiol* 1951 14 423—429
- HENSEL H and I ZOTTERMAN The response of mechanoreceptors to thermal stimulation *J Physiol* 1951 7 115 16—24

- HEASEL H and Y ZOTTERMAN Quantitative Beziehungen zwischen der Entladung einzelner Kältefasern und der Temperatur *Acta physiologica* 1951 23 291-319
- HUBEL H U., Tungsten microelectrode for recording from single units: *Science* 1951 113 319-320
- HUBEL D H Single unit activity in striate cortex of unrestrained cats *J Physiol* 1959 147 276-292
- HUNT C G and A H McINTYRE Properties of cutaneous touch receptors in cat *J Physiol* 1960 153 89-98
- IGGO A Cutaneous mechanoreceptors with afferent C fibres *J Physiol* 1960 152 337-355
- IRUCHIMYA J and Y ZOTTERMAN The specificity of afferent cutaneous fibres in mammals *Acta physiologica* 1960 29 76-83
- KRUGER L and F MICHEL A morphological and somatotopic analysis of single unit activity in the trigeminal sensory complex of the cat *Exp Neurol* 1962a 5 132-156
- KRUGER L and F MICHEL Reinterpretation of the representation of pain based on physiological excitation of single neurones in the trigeminal sensory complex *Exp Neurol* 1962b 5 15-319
- KRUGER L and F MICHEL A single neuron analysis of buccal cavity representation in the sensory trigeminal complex of the cat *Arch Oral Biol* 1962c 7 421-433
- KRUGER L R SIMONOFF and P WITKOVSKY Single neuron analysis of dorsal column nuclei and spinal nucleus of trigeminal in cat *J Neurophysiol* 1961 24 333-345
- LANDGREY S Cortical reception of cold impulses from the tongue of the cat *Acta physiologica* 1959a 40 701-703
- LANDGREY S Convergence of tactile thermal and gustatory impulses on single cortical cells *Acta physiologica* 1959b 40 210-221
- LANDGREY S Thalamic neurones responding to tactile stimulation of the cat's tongue *Acta physiologica* 1960a 49 738-751
- LANDGREY S Thalamic neurones responding to cooling of the cat's tongue *Acta physiologica* 1960b 49 752-761
- LANDGREY S The response of thalamic and cortical neurons to electrical and physiological stimulation of the cat's tongue In *Sensory Communication* Ed W A Rosenbluth 11th J Wiley and Sons New York 1961 43-443
- LOEWENSTEIN W R On the specificity of a sensory receptor *J Neurophysiol* 1961 24 150-158
- MARUHASHI J H MIZUGUCHI and I TASAKI Action currents in single afferent nerve fibres elicited by stimulation of the skin of the hand and the cat *J Physiol* 1957 111 129-151
- MELZACK H and P D WALL On the nature of cutaneous sensory mechanisms *Brain* 1967 90 331-356
- MESSELEN H and J OLZEWSKI Cytoarchitektonischer Atlas des Rautenhirns des Kanariens *Verlag r Basel* 1949
- MOUNTCASTLE V B Modality and topographic properties of single neurons of cat's somatic sensory cortex *J Neurophysiol* 1957 20 408-431
- MOUNTCASTLE V B Some functional properties of the somatic afferent system In *Sensory Communication* Ed W A Rosenbluth J Wiley and Sons New York 1961 403-436
- MILLER J Handbuch der Physiologie des Menschen J Holtzner Coblenz 183
- RAYMAN D Afferent impulses from the teeth due to pressure and noxious stimulation *J Physiol* 1959 9 10-19

- SJÖQVIST O Studies of pain conduction in the trigeminal nerve *Acta psychiat scand* 1938 Suppl 17 1—139
- SJÖQVIST O The conduction of pain in the fifth nerve and its bearing on the treatment of trigeminal neuralgia *Yale J Biol Med* 1939 11 593—600
- TASAKI I L H POLLEY and F ORIGO Action potentials from individual elements in cat geniculate and striate cortex *J Neurophysiol* 1954 17 454—464
- WALL P D and A TAUB Four aspects of trigeminal nucleus and a paradox *J Neurophysiol* 1962 25 110—126
- WITT I and H HENSEL Afferente Impulse aus der Extremitätenhaut der Katze bei thermischer und mechanischer Reizung *Pflügers Arch* 1959 268 582—596
- ZOTTERMAN Y Specific action potentials in the lingual nerve of the cat *Scand Arch Physiol* 1936 70 100—120

1 5 1  
LIBRARY,

- 52 -  
JAIPUR

**S M S MEDICAL COLLEGE LIBRARY**

**DUE DATE SLIP**

*This book is to be returned on or before the date  
marked below —*

A fine of annis four will be charged for each day  
the book is kept overtime

--	--	--	--



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 59 SUPPLEMENTUM 216

---

**A ferro-erythrokinetic model and its properties**

B1

LARS GARBY, WERNER SCHNEIDER, OLOF SUNDQUIST  
AND JEAN CLAUDE VUILLE

---

STOCKHOLM 1962





*From the Swedish Medical Research Council Unit for Pediatric Hematology  
the Department of Pediatrics the Department of Medicine  
and the Department of Physics University of Uppsala Sweden*

# A ferro erythrokinitic model and its properties

BY

LARS GARBY WERNER SCHNEIDER OLOF SUNDQUIST  
AND JEAN CLAUDE VUILLE

SMS MEDICAL COLLEGE,  
LIBRARY, JAIPUR

This investigation was supported by grants from  
the Swedish Medical Research Council and by the International  
Atomic Energy Agency Research Contract No 154 RB

## Introduction

The introduction of suitable radioactive isotopes of iron has resulted in a great number of investigations concerning the kinetics of distribution of radioiron within the body in normal and pathological conditions. The aim of such studies has been to characterize certain aspects of iron metabolism and to get a further insight into the kinetics of the red cell mass i.e. the production and destruction of red blood cells.

Most of the published work has been of a descriptive nature and very few attempts have been made to interpret the tracer data in terms of the simple and fundamental physiological properties of the system i.e. the sizes of metabolic iron pools and the flows of iron between the pools. One notable exception is the work of POLLICONE and MORTIMER (1961) this will be discussed below. Since it is reasonable to assume that the degree of complexity of the real system is quite large i.e. the number of distinct pools of iron is probably quite large any attempt to describe the system in terms of a quantitative model must necessarily be looked upon as an oversimplification. However it should be remembered that the function of a model is only to fix the current ideas into a rigorous framework and to provide a basis for new experiments these will inevitably prove the inadequacy of the model.

The present paper describes the mode of analysis and the resulting properties of the simplest model that can be constructed on the basis of the available data.

# Theoretical part

## 1 The structure of the model

The model which will be considered here is shown in figure 1. This model although simple seems to contain all the elements necessary to satisfy the experimental data so far collected. In particular as will be shown in the present work it will satisfy all the available tracer data. It is, of course trivial to note that a more complicated model, with the same basic structure will also fulfill these requirements.

The present model is similar to that adopted by POLLACOV and MORTIMER (1961) but differs from the latter in one important aspect: no *a priori* assumption is made here concerning the pathway of the return of iron derived from senescent red cells. POLLACOV and MORTIMER assume although it is not explicitly stated that this iron is directly returned to the plasma iron pool. As will be shown in the following the question of the pathway of this flow of iron is of decisive importance for the calculation of the flows in the system.

## 2 The stationary state

Restricting our analysis to the stationary state i.e. the pool sizes and the flows are constant with respect to the time we have (for interpretation of the designations see fig. 1)

$$J_{SC} + J_{SP} = J_{PS} \quad (1 a)$$

$$J_{PS} + J_{PC} + J_{PM} = J_{SP} + J_{MP} \quad (1 b)$$

$$J_{MP} + J_{MC} - J_{PM} + J_{FM} \quad (1 c)$$

$$J_{PC} + J_{PM} = J_D \quad (1 d)$$

$$J_{SC} + J_{PC} + J_{MC} + J_{DC} = J \quad (1 e)$$

We furthermore define flow rate constants  $k$  such that

$$k_{SP} = J_{SP}/P \quad (1 a)$$

$$k_{PS} = J_{PS}/S \quad (2 b)$$

$$k_{PM} = J_{PM}/M \quad (2 c)$$

$$L_{MP} = J_{MP}/P \quad (2 d)$$

$$L_{PM} = J_{PM}/M \quad (2 e)$$

where  $S$ ,  $P$  and  $M$  denote the pool sizes

### 3 General mode of analysis

If the proposed model is in fact the correct model the dynamic properties of it i.e. the numerical values of the flow rate constants  $k$  can be calculated from the behaviour of the labelled iron in the plasma pool if and only if it is assumed that the pools are rapidly mixed (cp SHEPARD 1962). This assumption is by no means trivial (see for instance BERGNER 1962) but has to be made in order to extract meaningful information from the tracer data. Since there is obviously some uncertainty both concerning the structure of the model and in particular

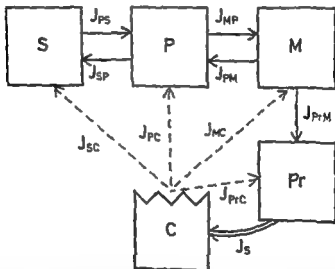


Figure 1 The structure of the model for ferro erythrokinetics.  $S$  = storage iron pool (liver spleen etc)  $P$  = plasma iron pool  $M$  = bone marrow iron pool i.e. that part of the bone marrow iron that is in reversible exchange with the plasma iron  $Pr$  = red cell precursor heme iron pool  $C$  = circulating red cell iron pool. The flows  $J_{SC}$ ,  $J_{PC}$ ,  $J_{MC}$  and  $J_{PrC}$  denote the iron flow from senescent red cells. Obviously  $J_{SC} + J_{PC} + J_{MC} + J_{PrC} = J_s$  is the total effective hemo lobin synthesis iron flow. Asterisks as superscript to the letters denote the amount and the flow of radioactive iron.

concerning the mixing properties of the pools the use of plasma radioactivity data alone does not seem to be realistic. In the present approach, plasma tracer data and data on the appearance of the tracer in peripheral blood cells i.e. pool C have been used. In this way it would appear that certain properties of the system can be revealed also when some freedom is given with respect to the mixing properties of the various pools. This approach differs from that of POLLACOVÉ and MORTIMER (1961) who used plasma data only. The use of data on the appearance of the tracer in peripheral red cells makes it necessary to develop a theory for the uptake of iron in the red cell precursors and the time course of the release of such cells from the marrow. This part of the analysis is given below (section 5).

#### 4. The plasma radioactivity disappearance curve

The model depicted in figure 1, together with the assumption of pool homogeneity constitutes a three-compartment open system that can be solved with conventional methods (see for instance SKINNIN, CLARK, BAKER and SHIPLEY 1959, SHIPLEY 1962). It should be noted that the time lag for the return of tracer by way of the flows  $J_{sc}$ ,  $J_{rc}$ ,  $J_{mc}$  and  $J_{rc}$  is so large that for all practical purposes the system can be treated as being open in the present context although it is actually closed. The solution for the plasma radioactivity  $P^*$  is

$$P^*_t = P^*_0 \sum_{i=1}^n H_i e^{-g_i t} \quad (n=3) \quad (3)$$

where

$$\sum_{i=1}^n H_i = 1 \quad (4)$$

and  $H_i$  and  $g_i$  are constants.

The flow rate constants  $l$  are contained in the constants  $H_i$  and  $g_i$  in such a way that the latter uniquely determine the values of the former.

It is an experimental fact (POLLACOVÉ and MORTIMER 1961) that the plasma radioactivity disappearance curve in normal individuals can be well described by an expression such as (3) and (4) where  $H_1 > H_2 > H_3 > 0$  and  $g_1 > g_2 > g_3 > 0$ . Limitations of the amount of radioactivity that can be given to normal individuals have so far prevented an analysis of such an accuracy that the form of (3), and thus of the

model can be subjected to a critical test. In fact both the precision and the accuracy of the observed plasma radioactivity in that part of the curve where  $H_2$ ,  $H_3$ ,  $g$  and  $g_2$  are "dominating" is rather low.

### 5 The red cell radioactivity appearance curve

The transfer of the tracer from the red cell precursor pool  $Pr$  to the circulating red cell pool  $C$  cannot be given by any ordinary first order reaction equation since there is a finite transit time for the precursors in the marrow. Instead the following mode of analysis seems more realistic and yet simple enough to be handled numerically.

The red cell precursor pool  $Pr$ , defined in the present model as non-exchangeable heme iron, takes up iron irreversibly from the pool  $M$  (or the pool  $P$  if the size of the pool  $M = 0$ ). The latter pool is defined here as exchangeable iron in the marrow; its morphological localisation may or may not be in the precursors.

The red cell precursors take up iron irreversibly from the pool  $M$  during a time period of  $T$  days. At the end of  $T$  they are delivered into the circulation. There may well be non-iron-uptaking precursors existing for a period of  $1$  days preceding the period of iron uptake so that the total time spent in the bone marrow by a red cell precursor is  $1 + T$  days. The length of the time period  $T$  is not well known but it seems most unlikely that it is less than 3 days and more than 5 days. This estimate and the data underlying its proposition have been discussed by REIZENSTEIN (1962). The rate of uptake of iron per unit of precursor stage during the time interval  $T$  is assumed to be uniform. The approximative nature of this assumption has been discussed by LAJTHA and OLIVER (1960). Moderate deviations from this simplified assumption will not materially influence the conclusions reached in this connection.

Let us consider a set of precursors that will reach the point of delivery to the pool  $C$  during the time interval  $du$  at the time  $t + u$  after the pool  $M$  has been labelled ( $t = 0$ ). During the time interval  $t = 0$  the set of precursors will take up the same amount of iron at any one time. Accordingly they will take up a constant fraction  $du$  of the labelled iron atoms which are flowing from pool  $M$  to pool  $Pr$  during the time interval  $dt$ . Thus the number of labelled iron atoms which are taken up by the set of precursors under consideration is given by



$$\frac{du}{T} J_{PM}^* dt \quad (5)$$

where  $J_{PM}^*$  is the flow of radioactive iron atoms from  $M$  to  $Pr$

The total amount of radioactivity taken up during the time interval between  $t = 0$  and  $t = u$  then becomes

$$\frac{du}{T} \int_0^u J_{PM}^* dt = \frac{du}{T} \int_0^u L_{PM} M^* dt \quad (6)$$

where  $M^*$  is the number of radioactive atoms in  $M$

All sets of precursors that are delivered to the pool  $C$  during the time  $t = 0$  to  $t = u < T$  will thus carry the following amount of labelled atoms

$$\frac{L_{PM}}{T} \int_0^u \int_0^u M^* dt du \quad (7)$$

This expression is valid for the case that the precursors under consideration were born before  $t = 0$  i.e.  $u < T$

If the cells were "born" at the time  $u - T > 0$  they have been able to take up labelled iron atoms during the whole time of their maturation. They will therefore deliver to the pool  $C$

$$\frac{L_{PM}}{T} \frac{du}{T} \int_{u-T}^u M^* dt \quad (8)$$

labelled atoms

The cells that are delivered during the time  $T$  to  $u > T$  will thus bring to the pool  $C$

$$\frac{L_{PM}}{T} \int_T^u \int_{u-T}^u M^* dt du \quad (9)$$

labelled atoms

The cells that are delivered from  $t = 0$  to  $t = u > T$  will thus bring to the pool  $C$  a number of labelled atoms equal to the sum of (7) and (9)

The amount of tracer in  $M$  at any one time is given by

$$M^*, \sim M^*_0 \sum_{i=1}^n K_i e^{-g_i t} \quad (n=3) \quad (10)$$

where

$$\sum_{i=1}^n K_i = 0 \quad (11)$$

and the expressions (7) and (9) can therefore be integrated. The result is

1. For  $t = 0$  to  $t = v < T$

$$\frac{C^*_{t_1}}{P^*_{t_0}} = \frac{k_{PM}}{T} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{K_i}{g_i} (v + e^{-g_i v} - 1) \quad (12)$$

2. For  $t = T$  to  $t = v > T$

$$\frac{C^*_{t_1}}{P^*_{t_0}} = \frac{k_{PM}}{T} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{K_i}{g_i} (g_i T - e^{-g_i (v-T)} + e^{-g_i v}) \quad (13)$$

Thus the amount of tracer in the circulating red cells  $C^*$ , at any one time is given in terms of the constants  $g$ ,  $k$  and  $T$  (the constant  $k_{PM}$  is contained in  $g_i$  and  $K_i$ ). It is thus possible in principle to evaluate the values of these constants from the experimentally observed quantities  $C^*$  and  $v = t$ .

## 6 Computations

**General** The data obtained in the present study on the appearance of radioiron in circulating red cells in normal individuals (see experimental part) were used in the following manner. Within the normal range of radioiron uptake two typical curves were constructed as seen in figure 2. From each of the two curves 14 paired values of the fraction of injected dose present in the circulation on each day were fed into an electronic digital computer (see below) together with the equations (12) and (13) and preselected values of  $T$  i.e. 3.4 and 5 days respectively. Also preselected values of  $g_1$  were given since this parameter is well known in the normal individual. The following values of  $g_2$  were chosen on the basis of the experimental data obtained in this work (see experimental part table 1) 7.0, 9.0, 11.0, 13.0 and 15.0 day<sup>-1</sup>. By a curve fitting procedure described below in more detail the values of

the remaining parameters i.e.  $g_2$ ,  $g_3$ ,  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  were determined. The values of  $H_3$ ,  $k_1$ ,  $k_2$  and  $k_3$  are then automatically given.

This procedure gives directly the values of all the flow rate constants. The values of the flows and the pool sizes are then fixed and given for any given value of the pool size  $P$  and for any given choice of the pathway of return of iron from senescent red cells.

*Specific.* As mentioned above the parameters  $g_1$  and  $H_1$  are determined by fitting the theoretical curves—predicted by the model—with the two experimental curves, i.e. the disappearance curve and the appearance curve. For this purpose the method of least squares was applied. The fact that the curves predicted by the model are sums of exponential functions implies however that the fitting problem becomes non linear. Iterative procedures have to be applied which increases the required computer time. Furthermore, the sum of the squares of the differences between the theoretical and experimental curves at the measured points is not a quadratic function. Thus there exist several minima to which the iterative methods applied may converge. Rather drastic changes in the estimated start values for the parameters  $g_1$  and  $H_1$  have therefore to be made in order to find the absolute minimum.

In the present case the method of least squares is of course somewhat academic. The series of parameter values of  $g_1$  and  $H_1$  which produces the best fit according to this criterion may not necessarily be the best from the point of view of the biologist. For this reason and since preliminary experiments showed it important and necessary that the experimentalist can continuously follow the fitting procedure we rejected the standard method of obtaining the mathematically best fit. Instead we developed the following procedure especially suited for a computer system as e.g. the IBM 1620. From the experiments a set of reasonable values for the parameters  $g_1$  and  $H_1$  is fed in. Using the least square method the most critical parameter specific for the case under investigation and usually easily found by experience is adjusted by the computer. Thereafter the rest of the parameters are adjusted in a sequence that can be determined by the operator. This is done automatically two or three times by the computer after which the whole procedure can be repeated with a new set of values of the parameters chosen by the operator/experimentalist on the basis of the results obtained. In this way several sets of values for the parameters are determined all giving a relatively good fit to one experimental appearance curve. These sets are then examined with respect to their goodness of fit to the disappearance curves. Those sets which are com-

patible with both curves are then used to calculate the flows and the pool sizes according to the model. As seen from the Results the sets of parameter values obtained give satisfactorily unique solutions.

Preliminary investigations concerning the choice of the method were performed on a FACIT electronic computer system. The final method was programmed in FORTRAN and run on IBM 1620.

## Experimental part

*Plasma radioactivity disappearance* The initial part of the disappearance of radioiron from plasma was measured in 25 healthy individuals 18 males and 7 females. Between 5–10  $\mu\text{Ci}$  of  $\text{Fe}^{59}$  as ferric citrate in physiological saline were injected into a cubital vein and samples drawn at 10, 40, 100, 160, 220 and 340 minutes after the injection. Plasma was separated by centrifugation and the radioactivity measured on 4.0 ml plasma samples in a conventional well type scintillation detector. Counting was performed so that the random (counting) error of the sample counts was less than 3%.

*Plasma iron determinations* were performed on the samples drawn at 40 and 340 minutes by using the method of HEILMEYER and PLÜTNER (1937) as modified by VAHLQUIST (1941).

*Plasma volume determinations* were performed by extrapolating the radioactivity values to zero time and by dividing the number of injected counts by the zero time radioactivity.

*Red cell radioactivity appearance* The uptake pattern of radioiron in circulating red cells after an intravenous injection was determined in 13 healthy male subjects. They received about 5  $\mu\text{Ci}$  of  $\text{Fe}^{59}$  as ferric citrate in physiological saline. Blood samples were drawn repeatedly for the next 14 days and the radioactivity in the red cells measured. The fraction of the injected dose present at any time in the circulating blood cells was obtained from the number of counts injected and the radioactivity in the red cells. Plasma volumes were estimated as above and the total red cell mass calculated from the venous hematocrit corrected by a factor of 0.91 to allow for the difference between venous and body hematocrit. No correction for trapped plasma was made since the hematocrit used (International Micro Capillary Centrifuge Model MB) has been shown (GARRI and LILLE 1961) to give less than 1.3% of trapped plasma.

## Results

### *Plasma radioactivity disappearance data*

Most of the data concerning the disappearance of the radioactivity from plasma is shown in table 1.

The remarkably small error of the individual rate constants calculated as the error of the slope from a least square analysis of the data indicate that there is no significant departure from a single exponential course of the disappearance curve for the first 340 minutes after injection. A further test of non departure from a single exponential course was made as follows. The seven observed values of the radioactivity in the plasma in each subject permitted the calculation of a value of the slope in each of the 6 periods of the disappearance curve. The mean value of the first three periods in each case was compared to the mean value of the last three periods in the same case. The ratio of the two mean values was 0.969 with a standard error of 0.045.

The reciprocal value of the slope and the mean plasma iron concentration in each experiment is shown in figure 3. The two regression lines have the equations  $y = 0.896x + 56.4$  and  $y = 1.443x + 4.9$  respectively.

Table 1

	Mean value	s.e.
Hematocrit	42.5	0.74
Plasma volume <i>PV</i> ml	290	
Red cell volume <i>RBC</i> ml	1874	
Initial disappearance rate constant $r$ day <sup>-1</sup>	11.1	0.71
Error of individual rate constant %	3.0	1.2
Average plasma iron concentration during experiment $Fe_p$ $\mu\text{g}/100$ ml	94	0.5
Plasma iron concentration at 40 minutes after injection $\mu\text{g}/100$ ml	106	8.4
Plasma iron concentration at 340 minutes after injection $\mu\text{g}/100$ ml	81	0.4
Individual difference in plasma iron concentration at 40 and 340 minutes respectively	29	0.2
Coefficient of correlation between $1/r$ and $Fe_p$	0.717	0.085
Coefficient of correlation between $1/r$ and $PV \cdot Fe_p$	0.512	0.141
Coefficient of correlation between $r$ , $PV$ , $Fe_p$ , and <i>RBC</i>	0.783	0.077

### *Red cell radioactivity appearance data*

The results are seen in figure 2. Also shown in the figure are the two typical curves selected for the curve fitting procedure.

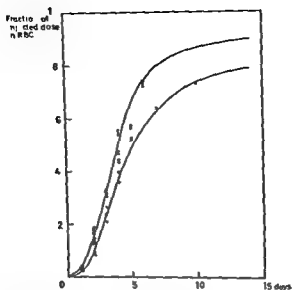


Figure 2 The red cell radioiron appearance data 76 determinations in 13 individuals. Also shown are the two curves selected for use in the fitting procedure. Lower curve = curve 1 and upper curve = curve 2.

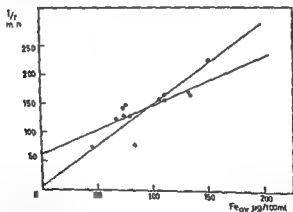


Figure 3 The relation between the reciprocal value of the slope  $r$  and the average plasma iron concentration. The two regression lines are also shown.

#### *Parameters of the model obtained from the curve fitting*

The values of the constants  $\gamma$ ,  $g_3$ ,  $H_1$ ,  $H_2$ , and  $H_3$  obtained from the fitting procedure described previously are shown in tables 2a and 2b. The resulting values of the flow rate constants  $\lambda$  are shown in tables

3 a and 3 b. Also shown in tables 3 are the sums of the squared deviations from the experimental curves i.e. the 14 points taken from the typical curves. The values of the sums show that there is a very good fit. For example if the sum of the squared deviations is  $14 \times 10^{-4}$ , each squared deviation is about  $10^{-4}$  and the mean deviation is about 0.01 the unit being the fraction of injected radioactivity in the circulating red cells.

Table 2 a

Values of the constants  $g_1$ ,  $g_2$ ,  $H_1$ ,  $H_2$  and  $H_3$  from curve 1

$T$	$g_1$	$g_2$	$g_3$	$H_1$	$H_2$	$H_3$
3.0	7.0	0.292	0.00360	0.978	0.0222	0.000180
	9.0	0.279	0.00507	0.977	0.0224	0.000220
	11.0	0.276	0.00762	0.977	0.0225	0.000303
	13.0	0.267	0.00923	0.977	0.0227	0.000349
	15.0	0.277	0.00975	0.977	0.0227	0.000347
4.0	7.0	0.536	0.0635	0.972	0.0206	0.00102
	9.0	0.527	0.0641	0.973	0.0207	0.00106
	11.0	0.512	0.0625	0.975	0.0201	0.00104
	13.0	0.480	0.0561	0.976	0.0201	0.000974
	15.0	0.470	0.0573	0.976	0.0204	0.000953
5.0	7.0	0.917	0.0698	0.972	0.0200	0.00095
	9.0	0.920	0.0726	0.973	0.0200	0.000703
	11.0	0.941	0.0761	0.973	0.0200	0.000655
	13.0	0.950	0.0779	0.974	0.0200	0.000602
	15.0	0.960	0.0803	0.974	0.0200	0.000574

Table 2 b

Values of the constants  $g_1$ ,  $g_2$ ,  $H_1$ ,  $H_2$  and  $H_3$  from curve 2

$T$	$g_1$	$g_2$	$g_3$	$H_1$	$H_2$	$H_3$
3.0	7.0	0.390	0.00410	0.996	0.0140	0.0000756
	9.0	0.396	0.00494	0.996	0.0140	0.0000735
	11.0	0.392	0.00594	0.996	0.0139	0.0000781
	13.0	0.377	0.00699	0.996	0.0139	0.0000812
	15.0	0.376	0.00748	0.996	0.0140	0.0000799
4.0	7.0	0.576	0.0268	0.999	0.0103	0.000069
	9.0	0.565	0.0280	0.975	0.0243	0.0000703
	11.0	0.559	0.0296	0.981	0.0187	0.0000606
	13.0	0.552	0.0304	0.991	0.0186	0.000055
	15.0	0.549	0.0306	0.991	0.0197	0.0000511
5.0	7.0	1.06	0.0603	0.980	0.0177	0.000237
	9.0	1.09	0.0683	0.990	0.0177	0.000232
	11.0	1.10	0.0769	0.990	0.0177	0.000237
	13.0	1.12	0.0812	0.990	0.0177	0.000240
	15.0	1.15	0.0901	0.990	0.0176	0.000240

Table 3 a  
k values from curve 1

T	$q_i$	$k_{PS}$	$k_{SP}$	$k_{PM}$	$k_{MP}$	$k_{PM}$	$\sum_{10}$
30	70	0.00139	0.833	0.167	6.00	0.261	1.3
	90	0.00621	0.967	0.216	7.83	0.263	2.2
	110	0.00936	1.07	0.264	9.67	0.254	3.1
	130	0.0113	1.17	0.315	11.5	0.252	3.9
	150	0.0121	1.27	0.367	13.4	0.252	4.5
40	70	0.100	1.90	0.192	4.90	0.473	7.8
	90	0.101	2.27	0.223	6.50	0.463	7.3
	110	0.099	2.57	0.300	8.17	0.479	7.0
	130	0.087	2.60	0.30	10.1	0.408	6.8
	150	0.083	2.83	0.402	13.6	0.402	6.7
50	70	0.119	2.43	0.183	4.40	0.865	21
	90	0.125	3.07	0.218	5.73	0.841	20
	110	0.133	3.67	0.316	7.03	0.836	20
	130	0.138	4.23	0.383	8.43	0.828	20
	150	0.145	4.83	0.441	9.80	0.823	20

Table 3 b  
k values from curve 2

T	$q$	$k_{PS}$	$k_{SP}$	$k_{PM}$	$k_{MP}$	$k_{PM}$	$\sum_{10}$
30	70	0.00455	0.533	0.0775	6.37	0.385	14
	90	0.00535	0.633	0.124	8.23	0.390	17
	110	0.00649	0.733	0.154	10.1	0.377	19
	130	0.00757	0.800	0.183	12.0	0.371	20
	150	0.00828	0.900	0.213	13.9	0.367	22
40	70	0.0316	0.800	0.136	6.07	0.510	5.7
	90	0.0325	0.900	0.213	7.87	0.518	4.3
	110	0.0347	1.13	0.211	9.67	0.553	3.5
	130	0.0355	1.27	0.250	11.5	0.534	3.2
	150	0.0353	1.37	0.288	13.3	0.522	3.0
50	70	0.0753	1.24	0.112	5.10	1.06	21
	90	0.0860	1.63	0.150	7.20	1.01	18
	110	0.100	2.07	0.195	8.73	1.02	16
	130	0.103	2.47	0.248	10.3	1.02	16
	150	0.119	2.90	0.300	11.8	1.12	16

#### Flow and pool sizes

With the flow rate constants thus given the model is completely characterized for any given choice concerning the pathway of iron



return by way of the flows  $J_{SC}$ ,  $J_{PC}$ ,  $J_{MC}$  and  $J_{FC}$  since only one pool size needs to be known *a priori* in the experimentally observed plasma pool size  $P$ . Since we shall here be concerned with the average normal man the plasma volume will be fixed to 3000 ml and the red cell mass accordingly to 2000 ml. The plasma iron pool size will then be 3.0 mg in the individual who shows an initial plasma disappearance rate constant  $r$  of  $11.0 \text{ day}^{-1}$ . Since there is a strong covariation between the constant  $r$  and the plasma iron concentration (figure 3 table 1) the normal man having a low plasma iron concentration is much more likely to have a more rapid disappearance than the normal man who has a high plasma iron concentration. Therefore on the basis of the data given in figure 3 we have chosen the following paired values of  $r$  ( $\text{day}^{-1}$ ) and  $P_i$  ( $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ ml}$ ) to be representative for the normal man 1.0 and 75, 1.3 and 90, 1.1 and 100, 0.9 and 125, 0.7 and 160.

Tables 4-5 give the results of the pool sizes and the flows compatible with the experimental curves as well as the data of  $r$  ( $g_1$ ) and the plasma pool data for given combination of the values the flows  $J_{SC}$ ,  $J_{PC}$ ,  $J_{MC}$  and  $J_{FC}$ .

Table 4a

Flows and pool sizes from curve 1 when  $J_{FC} = J$

$T$	$g_1$	$P$	$S$	$J_{PS}$	$J_{SP}$	$J_{MP}$	$J_{PM}$	$M$	$J_s$
30	7.0	4.80	911	4.00	4.00	28.8	11.2	67.3	17.6
	9.0	3.75	585	3.63	3.63	20.4	13.3	61.4	16.1
	11.0	3.00	343	3.21	3.21	20.0	14.8	56.0	14.2
	13.0	2.70	280	3.16	3.16	31.1	17.3	51.0	13.8
	15.0	2.25	236	2.89	2.89	30.2	17.9	48.9	12.3
40	7.0	4.80	91	9.12	9.12	23.5	6.9	35.2	16.6
	9.0	3.75	84	8.51	8.51	24.4	8.8	33.8	15.6
	11.0	3.00	78	7.71	7.71	24.5	9.9	33.2	14.6
	13.0	2.70	82	7.02	7.02	27.3	12.6	36.0	14.7
	15.0	2.25	72	6.37	6.37	30.6	15.3	38.1	15.3
50	7.0	4.80	98	11.7	11.7	21.1	3.7	20.1	17.4
	9.0	3.75	92	11.5	11.5	21.5	4.9	19.7	16.6
	11.0	3.00	88	11.0	11.0	21.1	5.8	18.3	15.3
	13.0	2.70	83	11.4	11.4	22.8	5.8	20.5	17.0
	15.0	2.25	75	10.9	10.9	22.1	7.8	17.4	14.3

**Table 4 b**  
Flows and pool sizes from curve 1 when  $J_{SC} = J$

$T$	$\theta$	$P$	$S$	$J_{PS}$	$J_{SP}$	$J_{MP}$	$J_{PM}$	$U$	$J_S$
30	70	480	490	216	400	288	112	67.3	176
	90	375	31	197	363	294	13.3	61.4	17.1
	110	300	18.0	175	321	290	14.8	56.0	14.2
	130	270	1504	170	316	311	17.3	54.9	13.8
	150	225	1174	152	289	302	17.9	49.9	12.3
40	70	480	257	257	912	235	69	35.2	166
	90	375	239	241	851	214	88	33.8	150
	110	300	225	223	771	245	99	33.2	148
	130	270	22	219	702	273	126	30.0	147
	150	225	217	217	637	306	153	34.1	153
50	70	480	215	231	117	211	37	20.1	174
	90	375	225	243	115	215	49	19.7	160
	110	300	109	263	110	211	58	18.3	153
	130	270	206	294	114	28	58	20.5	170
	150	225	114	252	103	21	78	17.4	143

**Table 4 c**  
Flows and pool sizes from curve 2 when  $J_{PC} = J$

$T$	$\theta$	$P$	$S$	$J_{PS}$	$J_{SP}$	$J_{MP}$	$J_{PM}$	$U$	$J_S$
30	70	480	563	256	24	306	69	64.1	247
	90	375	442	237	237	309	76	61.3	23.3
	110	300	339	220	220	303	88	57.1	21.5
	130	270	295	216	216	324	107	58.5	21.7
	150	225	245	203	203	313	115	54.0	19.8
40	70	480	122	384	384	221	56	41.2	23.5
	90	375	104	338	338	295	82	38.8	21.3
	110	300	98	329	329	290	80	35.0	21.0
	130	270	97	343	343	311	99	39.7	21.2
	150	225	87	308	308	299	105	36.6	19.4
50	70	480	80	600	600	215	23	20.9	22.2
	90	375	91	782	782	270	34	22.7	23.6
	110	300	78	776	776	262	41	21.0	22.1
	130	270	68	741	741	278	51	20.8	22.7
	150	225	55	653	653	266	57	18.7	20.9

return by way of the flows  $J_{SC}$ ,  $J_{IC}$ ,  $J_{MC}$  and  $J_{PC}$  since only one pool size needs to be known *a priori* i.e. the experimentally observed plasma pool size  $P$ . Since we shall here be concerned with the average normal man the plasma volume will be fixed to 3000 ml and the red cell mass accordingly to 2000 ml. The plasma iron pool size will then be 30 mg in the individual who shows an initial plasma disappearance rate constant  $r$  of  $11.0 \text{ day}^{-1}$ . Since there is a strong covariation between the constant  $r$  and the plasma iron concentration (figure 3 table 1) the normal man having a low plasma iron concentration is much more likely to have a more rapid disappearance than the normal man who has a high plasma iron concentration. Therefore on the basis of the data given in figure 3 we have chosen the following paired values of  $r$  ( $\text{day}^{-1}$ ) and  $I_0$  ( $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ ml}$ ) to be representative for the normal man 1.0 and 75, 13.0 and 90, 11.0 and 100, 9.0 and 125, 7.0 and 160.

Tables 4-5 give the results of the pool sizes and the flows compatible with the experimental curves as well as the data of  $r$  ( $g_1$ ) and the plasma pool data for given combination of the values the flows  $J_{SC}$ ,  $J_{PC}$ ,  $J_{MC}$  and  $J_{FC}$ .

Table 4a

Flows and pool sizes from curve 1 when  $J_{FC} = J$ 

$T$	$g_1$	$P$	$\delta$	$J_{PS}$	$J_{SP}$	$J_{MP}$	$J_{PM}$	$V$	$J_S$
3.0	7.0	4.80	911	4.00	4.00	23.8	11.2	67.3	17.6
	9.0	3.75	585	3.63	3.63	29.4	13.3	61.4	16.1
	11.0	3.00	343	3.21	3.21	29.0	14.8	56.0	14.2
	13.0	2.70	280	3.16	3.16	31.1	17.3	54.9	13.8
	15.0	2.25	236	2.89	2.89	30.2	17.9	48.9	12.3
4.0	7.0	4.80	91	9.12	9.12	23.5	6.9	31.7	16.6
	9.0	3.75	81	8.51	8.51	24.4	8.8	33.8	15.6
	11.0	3.00	78	7.71	7.71	21.5	9.9	33.2	11.6
	13.0	2.70	82	7.02	7.02	27.3	12.6	36.0	11.7
	15.0	2.25	72	6.37	6.37	30.6	15.3	38.1	15.3
5.0	7.0	4.80	98	11.7	11.7	21.1	3.7	20.1	17.4
	9.0	3.75	92	11.5	11.5	21.5	4.9	19.7	16.6
	11.0	3.00	83	11.0	11.0	21.1	5.8	18.7	15.3
	13.0	2.70	83	11.4	11.4	22.8	5.8	20.5	17.0
	15.0	2.25	75	10.9	10.9	27.1	7.8	17.4	14.3

Table 5b

Flows and pool sizes from curve 2 when  $J_{MC} = J$ 

$T$	$g$	$P$	$S$	$J_{PS}$	$J_{SP}$	$J_{MP}$	$J_{PM}$	$M$	$J_s$
30	70	4.80	563	2.56	2.56	30.6	30.6	331	127
	90	3.75	417	2.37	2.37	30.9	30.9	219	94.0
	110	3.00	339	2.20	2.20	30.3	30.3	197	74.3
	130	2.40	283	2.16	2.16	30.4	30.4	177	65.7
	150	2.25	245	2.03	2.03	31.3	31.3	147	53.9
40	70	4.80	127	3.81	3.81	29.1	29.1	214	127
	90	3.45	104	3.38	3.38	29.5	29.5	138	75.6
	110	3.00	98	3.39	3.39	29.0	29.0	137	75.8
	130	2.40	87	3.43	3.43	31.1	31.1	174	66.7
	150	2.25	87	3.08	3.08	29.9	29.9	104	55.0
50	70	4.80	80	6.00	6.00	24.5	24.5	219	232
	90	3.75	91	7.87	7.87	27.0	27.0	180	187
	110	3.00	78	7.46	7.76	26.2	26.2	134	141
	130	2.40	68	7.41	7.41	27.8	27.8	117	127
	150	2.25	55	6.53	6.53	26.6	26.6	83	99.3

## Discussion

### 1 Validity of the model

In the present work a quantitative ferro erythrokinetic model has been proposed. The basic requirements of any such model are that it must be consistent with all the available experimental data and that it does not contain any complicated *ad hoc* hypotheses. In particular the following requirements must be fulfilled in the present case:

- The model must be physiologically reasonable with respect to its structure.
- The model must be compatible with the experimental radioiron data i.e. the plasma radioiron disappearance and the red cell radioiron appearance.
- The model must generate acceptable pool sizes and flows i.e. acceptable from the point of view of other independently obtained data on these quantities.

Each of these requirements will now be discussed.

Table 4d

I lows and pool sizes from curve 2 when  $J_{SC} = J$ 

$T$	$g_i$	$P$	$S$	$J_{PS}$	$J_{SP}$	$J_{MP}$	$J_{PM}$	$M$	$J_S$
30	70	480	6000	273	256	306	59	641	247
	90	375	4801	257	237	309	76	613	233
	110	300	3652	237	220	303	88	571	215
	130	270	3157	239	216	324	107	555	217
	150	225	2633	218	203	313	115	540	198
40	70	480	861	273	384	291	6	412	335
	90	375	760	247	339	295	82	398	213
	110	300	703	244	339	290	80	390	210
	130	270	693	246	343	311	99	397	212
	150	225	637	225	309	299	105	366	194
50	70	480	375	282	600	245	23	309	222
	90	375	365	314	782	270	34	297	236
	110	300	299	299	776	262	41	210	221
	130	270	278	301	741	278	51	208	227
	150	225	230	274	653	266	57	187	209

Table 5a

I lows and pool sizes from curve 1 when  $J_{MC} = J$ 

$T$	$g_i$	$P$	$S$	$J_{PS}$	$J_{SP}$	$J_{MP}$	$J_{PM}$	$M$	$J_S$
30	70	480	911	400	400	288	288	172	449
	90	375	585	363	363	294	294	136	388
	110	300	343	321	321	290	290	110	279
	130	270	280	316	316	311	311	99	249
	150	225	236	289	289	302	302	83	209
40	70	480	91	912	912	235	235	121	572
	90	375	84	851	851	244	244	107	495
	110	300	78	771	771	245	245	82	360
	130	270	82	702	702	273	273	68	318
	150	225	72	637	637	306	306	66	305
50	70	480	98	117	117	211	211	115	995
	90	375	92	115	115	215	215	87	932
	110	300	83	110	110	211	211	67	560
	130	270	83	114	114	228	228	60	500
	150	225	75	109	109	221	221	50	412

5-20 mg/100 ml. The total amount of non heme in the bone marrow can therefore be estimated to be of the order of 50-300 mg. POLLACOVÉ and MORTIMER (1961) using plasma radioiron disappearance data on a two compartment model with the assumption of red cell iron return to the plasma estimated the non heme iron pool in the bone marrow to be 50 to 150 mg. Although these two estimates seem to be in good agreement it must be remembered that the chemically estimated pool is not necessarily identical with that estimated from isotope data. The latter estimate refers to rapidly exchangeable iron whereas the former refers to all the iron present. In view of the data obtained by FICUS (1959) on the exchangerability of body iron it appears unlikely that any substantial fraction of the bone marrow non heme iron is rapidly exchangeable. It is also evident that the estimate obtained by POLLACOVÉ and MORTIMER (1961) is critically dependant on the accuracy and precision of plasma radioiron data during the late part of the disappearance curve and that these characteristics are largely unknown. As shown in the present work the pool size of  $M$  is not uniquely determined from the tracer data but that its calculation requires knowledge of the pathway of red cell iron return. The smallest figure is obtained on the assumption that no red cell iron is returned directly to the marrow. In this case the present data indicate a pool size of the order of 17-70 mg the smaller values are obtained when  $T$  is large. It is reasonable to assume that this estimated range is a maximum value for the size of the pool  $M$  since the incorporation into the model of a mechanism for ineffective erythropoiesis must always lead to a smaller estimation of the size of this pool.

## 2 The pathway of iron return from senescent red cells

The question of the pathway of iron return from senescent red cells is of fundamental importance for the understanding of the whole system. As can be seen from figure 1 the part played by the plasma iron pool in the total metabolism of iron will critically depend on whether the iron returns by way of the marrow iron pool and/or the precursor iron pool or whether the return is by way of the plasma pool and/or the storage pool. In the latter case as much iron flows through the plasma as is being used for hemoglobin synthesis. In the former case there is no net transport of iron through the plasma at all. It is important to note that both these extreme possibilities are compatible with the plasma radioiron disappearance data. The approach used in the present work permits some more definite conclusions on this point.

- Ad A* In the absence of any detailed *a priori* knowledge concerning the basic structure of the system under investigation, we can only conclude that the model depicted in figure 1 is in accordance with generally held views. The assumption of pool homogeneity cannot be supported by any other argument than the fact that the tracer kinetics does not contradict it.
- Ad B* The experimental red cell radioiron appearance data and the initial part of the plasma radioiron disappearance data are in very good agreement with the model. The generated values of the constants  $g$ ,  $g_3$ ,  $H_1$ ,  $H_2$  and  $H_3$  which predict the pattern of the later part of the plasma radioiron disappearance curve are in good agreement with the data reported by POLLACK and MONTGOMERY (1961) although it should be realized that these figures are not known with any high degree of accuracy or precision.
- Ad C* This requirement is of special interest since it puts a definite upper limit to the total content of iron in the system i.e. the pool sizes of  $S$ ,  $P$  and  $M$ . The sum of these is very unlikely to exceed a value of 2000 mg. In fact the data of FINCH (1959) indicate strongly that total exchangeable non hemoglobin iron pool is less than 1000 mg. In view of this restriction, the combination of  $T = 3.0$  and the assumption of a quantitative iron return to the pool  $S$  can be rejected. Of even more importance is the fact that the requirement C puts a very strong restrictive condition on one of the flows namely the net hemoglobin synthesis iron flow  $J_8$  since this is known with a considerable accuracy in the normal man. The mean cell life span in normal individuals is 122 days with quite a small variation (BIRLIN, WALDMANN and WEISSMAN 1959, CERNISSER and VAN ROOD 1961, GARBY 1962). A red cell volume of 2000 ml thus predicts a daily net synthesis of hemoglobin iron of 19 mg. To this estimate may possibly be added some 2 mg per day in order to account for normal "ineffective" erythropoiesis i.e. the formation of iron containing tetrapyrroles that will never enter the circulation or will stay there for very short time. The present model generates values which are very close to this estimate for the flow  $J_8$  in the cases (table 4) where the return of iron from senescent red cells is to the plasma pool and/or the storage pool. Furthermore there is little variation in the value of  $J_8$  when the constant  $g_1$  varies within considerable limits.

The size and significance of the pool  $M$  requires some comments. Chemical estimations reviewed by HALLGREN (1953) indicate that the concentration of non heme iron in the bone marrow is of the order of

5-20 mg/100 ml. The total amount of non heme in the bone marrow can therefore be estimated to be of the order of 50-300 mg. POLLACOVE and MORTIMER (1961) using plasma radioiron disappearance data on a two compartment model with the assumption of red cell iron return to the plasma estimated the non heme iron pool in the bone marrow to be 50 to 150 mg. Although these two estimates seem to be in good agreement it must be remembered that the chemically estimated pool is not necessarily identical with that estimated from isotope data. The latter estimate refers to rapidly exchangeable iron whereas the former refers to all the iron present. In view of the data obtained by IACH (1959) on the exchangeability of body iron it appears unlikely that any substantial fraction of the bone marrow non heme iron is rapidly exchangeable. It is also evident that the estimate obtained by POLLACOVE and MORTIMER (1961) is critically dependent on the accuracy and precision of plasma radioiron data during the late part of the disappearance curve and that these characteristics are largely unknown. As shown in the present work the pool size of  $M$  is not uniquely determined from the tracer data but that its calculation requires knowledge of the pathway of red cell iron return. The smallest figure is obtained on the assumption that no red cell iron is returned directly to the marrow. In this case the present data indicate a pool size of the order of 17-70 mg the smaller values are obtained when  $T$  is large. It is reasonable to assume that this estimated range is a maximum value for the size of the pool  $M$  since the incorporation into the model of a mechanism for ineffective erythropoiesis must always lead to a smaller estimation of the size of this pool.

## 2 *The pathway of iron return from senescent red cells*

The question of the pathway of iron return from senescent red cells is of fundamental importance for the understanding of the whole system. As can be seen from figure 1 the part played by the plasma iron pool in the total metabolism of iron will critically depend on whether the iron returns by way of the marrow iron pool and/or the precursor iron pool or whether the return is by way of the plasma pool and/or the storage pool. In the latter case as much iron flows through the plasma as is being used for hemoglobin synthesis. In the former case there is no net transport of iron through the plasma at all. It is important to note that both these extreme possibilities are compatible with the plasma radioiron disappearance data. The approach used in the present work permits some more definite conclusions on this point.



Although there has been no direct evidence for it, the usual assumption has been that all the iron used for hemoglobin synthesis flows through the plasma by way of the transferrin. In the light of the present analysis this assumption is obviously equivalent to the assumption that there is no red cell death and subsequent iron transfer in the bone marrow, i.e.  $J_{MC} = J_{PC} = 0$ . The pathway of intravascular hemolysis and subsequent iron transfer has been excluded (GARBY and NOYES 1959). It has been claimed (MIESCHER 1956, EURENSTEIN and LOCKNER 1958, see also BESSIS and BRETON GORIUS 1962) that the bone marrow is the chief site of destruction of red cells. However the experimental data on which this claim is founded do not appear to be conclusive. MIESCHER (1956) injected red cells labelled with  $\text{Cr}^{51}$  into rabbits and analyzed the bone marrow, the spleen and the liver for radioactivity at a time when most of the labelled cells had left the circulation, i.e. after 25–35 days. He found that a considerable part of the radioactivity was located in the bone marrow. EURENSTEIN and LOCKNER (1958) injected red cells labelled with  $\text{Fe}^{59}$  into rabbits and found "after a lapse of some hours", that a considerable part of the radioactivity lost from the circulation was found in the bone marrow. The arguments for equating localisation of radioactivity with localisation of red cell death in these experiments are essentially kinetic and can be rejected on the same grounds since no information is given concerning the distribution kinetics of the labelled compounds whatever their nature after an initial localisation. An attempt to correct for this complication was made by HUGHES JONES (1961 a and b) who concluded that red cell death in the bone marrow was probably significant in the rabbit but not in the rat. BESSIS and BRETON GORIUS (1962) have given interesting evidence indicating that both erythroptysis and raphocytosis can occur in the bone marrow. Their evidence however has no quantitative implications.

The results obtained in the present study support the idea that only a small fraction of the red cells returns its iron directly to the bone marrow in human beings are admittedly indirect but seem to be the only and by the notion of iron return to these pools invariably gives too large values for the hemoglobin synthesis. Furthermore the variability with respect to the flow  $J_S$  is unreasonably large. These evidences against any significant direct red cell return to the bone marrow in human beings are admittedly indirect but seem to be the best existing.

There are no experimental data to support either one of the two pathways  $J_{SC}$  or  $J_{PC}$  to be dominating. This lack of knowledge makes

it impossible to estimate the pool size of  $S$  with any higher degree of accuracy. The results in the case when  $T = 30$  and  $J_{SC} = J$  offer some evidence against the idea that  $J_{SC}$  is the most important pathway since in this case the values for the pool size of  $S$  become unreasonably large.

#### *4 Hemoglobin synthesis as estimated from the initial plasma radioactivity disappearance curve and the plasma pool size*

It has been customary in clinical research to estimate the rate of hemoglobin synthesis whether ineffective or not by multiplying the initial plasma radioactivity disappearance slope by the plasma pool size. The estimate has been termed plasma iron turnover. The work of SHARNI, SCHWARTZ, WASSERMAN, PORT and LEAVITT (1954), HUFF and JUDD (1956) and POLLYCOVE and MORTIMER (1961) indicate that such a procedure has no theoretical justification: the plasma radioactivity disappearance curve does not exhibit the characteristics of a first order reaction. On the other hand data concerning the plasma iron turnover in experiments designed to imitate increased and

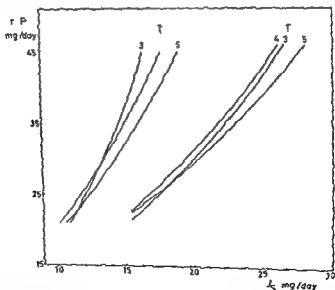


Figure 4 The relation between the plasma iron turnover  $rP$  and the flow  $J_S$  in terms of the present model. The plasma pool size was set to 30 mg and the initial plasma radioactivity disappearance slope  $r$  varied between 70 and 150 per day. The curves to the left correspond to the red cell radioactivity appearance curve 1 and those to the right to curve 2.

decreased hemoglobin synthesis (BOTHWELL, HURTADO, DONOHUE and FINCH 1957) indicate that this estimate is indeed somehow related to the degree of erythroid marrow activity. In view of this fact it appears to be of interest to see how the 'plasma iron turnover' correlates with the hemoglobin synthesis in terms of the model presented here. Figure 4 shows the relation between the two estimates in a series of cases calculated on the basis of the flow rate constants  $k$  of table 3 (a and b). As is seen the degree of correlation is quite large although the absolute values differ. It is evident that estimations of the absolute hemoglobin synthesis on the basis of the 'plasma iron turnover' alone will not likely be very accurate. The difference between the two cases corresponding to the two different appearance curves is quite large. This point is illustrated also by the experimental fact (see table 1) that although the correlation between the product of  $r$  and the pool size  $P$  and the total red cell volume is quite strong (coefficient of correlation = 0.783) there is a not inconsiderable variation (s.e. of coeff. of corr. = 0.077).

#### 4 Concluding remarks

The model presented and analyzed in the present work has been shown to be conceptually simple and to be consistent with the available experimental data. In addition to being a generalization of the model of POLLACOVE and MORTIMER its main characteristic and primary advantage is that it is based upon more data. Undoubtedly as more experimental data accumulate it will be subject to revision. The value of a model constructed as models are on insufficient data will be mainly judged by the success of experiments designed to disprove it.

One of the most critical points to be tested in the present system is that of the pathway of red cell iron return since direct estimations of the relative importance of the flow  $J_{SC}$ ,  $J_{FC}$  and  $J_{MC}$  will allow more rigid conclusions.

Furthermore the presence of a labile bone marrow iron pool of the size predicted by the present model might be a fruitful approach of testing.

The details of the kinetics of iron uptake by the red cell precursors and their release into the circulation are additional predictions to be tested although it is interesting to note that different assumptions concerning the length of the time period  $T$  does not seem to influence the calculated value of  $J_s$  to any considerable degree (see tables 4 and 5 and figure 4).

The most obvious approach a precise evaluation of the later part of the plasma radioactivity disappearance curve does not seem to be possible at present since the radiation load would be too large

## Summary

A model for ferro erythrokinetics in the normal human is presented. The quantitative evaluation of the model i.e. its flows and pool sizes is based upon a detailed analysis of the plasma radioactivity disappearance data and the red cell radioactivity appearance data as applied to the *a priori* given structure of the model.

It is shown that the model is in accordance with the available experimental data. In particular the generated values of the hemoglobin iron synthesis are in accordance with the data obtained from studies on red cell mean life span.

The implications of the results are discussed and possible ways of testing the model are suggested.

## References

- BERGNER, P. E. E. The significance of certain tracer kinetical methods especially with respect to the tracer dynamic definition of metabolic turnover. *Acta Radiol. Suppl.* 210, 1967.
- BERLIN, N. I., T. A. WALDMANN and S. M. WEISSMAN. Life span of red blood cell. *Physiol. Rev.* 1959, 39, 571-616.
- BESSIS, M. C. and J. BRETON-GORSUS. Iron metabolism in the bone marrow as seen by electron microscopy. A critical review. *Blood* 1967, 19, 635-663.
- BOTHWELL, T. H., A. V. HURTADO, D. M. DONOHUE and C. A. FRANK. Erythrokinetics. IV. The plasma iron turnover as a measure of erythropoiesis. *Blood* 1957, 10, 409-427.
- FRANSSON, J. G. and J. J. VAN ROOD. Erythrocyte survival time determinations with the aid of DF<sup>50</sup>P. *Brit. J. Haematol.* 1961, 7, 382-404.
- EHRENSTEIN, G. and H. LOCKNER. Sites of the physiological breakdown of red blood corpuscles. *Nature* 1953, 181, 911.

- FITCH C A Body iron exchange in man *J Clin Invest* 1959 38 392-396
- GARBY L and W NOYES Studies on hemoglobin metabolism I The kinetic properties of the plasma hemoglobin pool in normal man *J Clin Invest* 1959 38 1470-1483
- GARBY L and J C VUILLE The amount of trapped plasma in a high speed micro capillary hemitocrit centrifuge *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 1961 13 642-645
- GARBY L Analysis of red cell survival curves in clinical practice and the use of di iso propylfluorophosphate ( $\text{DF}^{32}\text{P}$ ) as a label for red cells in man *Brit J Haematol* 1962 8 15-27
- HALLGREN B Haemoglobin formation and storage iron in protein deficiency *Acta Soc Med Upsaliensis* 1953 59 79-208
- HEILMEYER L and A PLÖTNER Das Serumeisen und die Eisenmangelkrankheit Fischer Jena 1937
- HUIF H L and O J JIDD Kinetics of iron metabolism in *Advances in Biological and Medical Physics* J H Lawrence and C A Tobias Eds New York Academic Press 1956 4 223-246
- HUGHES JONES N C The use of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  and  $^{59}\text{Fe}$  as red cell labels to determine the fate of normal erythrocytes in the rabbit *Clin Sci* 1961 30 315-322
- The use of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  and  $^{59}\text{Fe}$  as red cell labels to determine the fate of normal erythrocytes in the rat *Clin Sci* 1961 20 323-332
- JAJTHA L and R OLIVER Studies on the kinetics of erythropoiesis A model of the erythron *Ciba Foundation Symposium on Hemopoiesis* Churchill London 1960
- MIRSCHER P Le mécanisme de l'erythroclase a l'etat normal *Rev Hematol* 1956 11 248-259
- POLLYCOVE M and R MORTIMER The quantitative determination of iron kinetics and hemoglobin synthesis in human subjects *J Clin Invest* 1961 40 753-759
- REIZFENSTEIN P Implications of the total erythrocyte production in man on erythroblast generation times *Acta Med Scand* 1962 172 683-690
- SHARNEY L L SCHWARTZ L R WASSERMAN S PORT and D LEAVITT Pool systems in iron metabolism with special reference to polycythemia vera *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 1954 87 480-491
- SHEPPARD C W Basic principles of the tracer method Wiley & Sons London and New York 1962
- SKINNER S M R I CLARK N BAKER and H A SHUTEY Complete solution of the three compartment model in steady state after single injection of radioactive tracer *Am J Physiol* 1959 196 238-244
- VAHLQUIST B Das Serumeisen *Acta Paed* 1911 Suppl 5

LIBRARY,                      OFFICE,  
JAIPUR





Cardiovascular Dynamics  
in the Amphibian  
*Amphiuma tridactylum* Cuvier

BY  
KJELL JOHANSEN

OSLO 1963





Cardiovascular Dynamics  
in the Amphibian  
*Amphiuma tridactylum* Cuvier



*ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA*  
*VOL 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 217*

FROM THE INSTITUTE FOR EXPERIMENTAL MEDICAL  
RESEARCH UNIVERSITY OF OSLO  
ULLEVAL HOSPITAL OSLO NORWAY

---

Cardiovascular Dynamics  
in the Amphibian  
*Amphiuma tridactylum* Cuvier

BY  
KJELL JOHANSEN

OSLO 1963



## Acknowledgements

The experimental part of the present investigation was done in the period from the beginning of 1960 until the late fall of 1962. The work done in 1960-61 was conducted in the United States and I am deeply grateful to Drs Horace Drury and John P. Hannon of the Arctic Aeromedical Laboratory, U. S. Air Force, Fairbanks, Alaska, for their sincere interest and support of the project. My thanks are also due to Dr. Arthur W. Martin for his encouragement during my period of work in his Department of Zoology at the University of Washington, Seattle, U. S. A. During my stay at the University of Washington the work was supported in part by a grant from The National Heart Institute of the United States Public Health Service.

A major part of the work has been done at the Institute for Experimental Medical Research of the University of Oslo at Ullevål Hospital, Oslo, Norway. The never failing interest and open minded attitude of Professor Dr. med. Carl Semb has been a great stimulus.

I am grateful to Professor Dr. med. Johan Frimann Dahl for permission to use the facilities of the Radiology Department at Ullevål Hospital. I moreover wish to thank my friend and colleague Dr. Ragnar Hol for invaluable assistance in all experiments involving roentgenologic technique. His interest and skill represent a major contribution to the investigation.

Dr. Johan B. Steen has given me great assistance in the blood gas analysis. I furthermore appreciate very much the generous help offered by Mrs. Helen Halsey and Miss Ingeborg Gjoen in making the illustrations and by Miss Marion Tonnesen in the careful typing of the manuscript. The expert photographic work has been executed by Mr. Kåre Porsbøl.

I am indebted to Professor Dr. med. Fredrik Kull, the present Director of the Institute for Experimental Medical Research, for permission to spend so much of my time in writing the present publication.

© The Norwegian Research Council for Science and the Humanities 1963  
(Norges almennyttige vitenskapsråd)  
*Section Medicine E 103 20 T*

PRINTING ARRANGEMENTS BY  
UNIVERSITETSFORLAGET

PRINTED IN NORWAY BY  
HARALD LYCHF & CO. DRAMMEN

## Acknowledgements

The experimental part of the present investigation was done in the period from the beginning of 1960 until the late fall of 1962. The work done in 1960-61 was conducted in the United States and I am deeply grateful to Drs. Horace Drury and John P. Hannon of the Arctic Aeromedical Laboratory, U. S. Air Force, Fairbanks, Alaska, for their sincere interest and support of the project. My thanks are also due to Dr. Arthur W. Martin for his encouragement during my period of work in his Department of Zoology at the University of Washington, Seattle, U. S. A. During my stay at the University of Washington the work was supported in part by a grant from The National Heart Institute of the United States Public Health Service.

A major part of the work has been done at the Institute for Experimental Medical Research of the University of Oslo at Ullevål Hospital, Oslo, Norway. The never failing interest and open minded attitude of Professor Dr. med. Carl Semb has been a great stimulus.

I am grateful to Professor Dr. med. Johan Frimann Dahl for permission to use the facilities of the Radiology Department at Ullevål Hospital. I moreover wish to thank my friend and colleague Dr. Ragnar Hol for invaluable assistance in all experiments involving roentgenologic technique. His interest and skill represent a major contribution to the investigation.

Dr. Johan B. Steen has given me great assistance in the blood gas analysis. I furthermore appreciate very much the generous help offered by Mrs. Helen Halsey and Miss Ingeborg Gjoen in making the illustrations and by Miss Marion Tonnesen in the careful typing of the manuscript. The expert photographic work has been executed by Mr. Håre Forsbøl.

I am indebted to Professor Dr. med. Fredrik Aul, the present Director of the Institute for Experimental Medical Research, for permission to spend so much of my time in writing the present publication.





# Contents

	Page
<b>PART ONE</b>	
Introduction	9
Material	10
General anatomy of the cardiovascular system of <i>Amphiuma tridactylum</i>	12
Methods and experimental procedure	14
References	17
<b>PART TWO</b>	
Intravascular pressures in the intact free moving amphibian, <i>Amphiuma tridactylum</i>	18
Results	18
Discussion	23
Summary	27
References	27
<b>PART THREE</b>	
A radiological study of the cardiac cycle in <i>Amphiuma tridactylum</i>	30
Results	30
Discussion	34
Summary	37
References	37
<b>PART FOUR</b>	
The functioning of the bulbus cordis in <i>Amphiuma tridactylum</i>	39
Results	40
Discussion	45
Summary	49
References	49
<b>PART FIVE</b>	
Cardiac output and dynamics of cardiac performance in <i>Amphiuma tridactylum</i>	51
Evaluation of the cardiac cycle from measurement of intracardiac pressures	51
Results and comments	51
Mechanics of venous return	53
Increased load on the sinus venosus and right atrium	53
Results and comments	53
The role of the intrapericardial pressure for the filling of the heart	54
Results and comments	54

Dynamics of ventricular ejection	56
Results and comments	56
Cardiac output Its adjustment and regulation	57
Results	57
Response to an increased venous return to the heart	58
Discussion	62
Summary	67
References	68

## PART SIX

An experimental evaluation of the double circulation in <i>Amphiuma tridactylum</i>	69
Results	70
Oxygen analysis	70
Radiological examinations	71
Pressure measurements	73
Discussion	73
Summary	81
References	81

## Introduction

The study of cardiovascular function has flourished greatly in the past two decades. This progress has been strongly stimulated by the rapid development of instrumentation for the continuous measurement of pressure, flow and dynamic dimensional changes within the cardiovascular system.

Hitherto most studies have covered a few mammalian species and have neglected the large variability in cardiovascular structure and function offered by the animal phylum.

Our understanding of the cardiovascular function in lower vertebrate forms has hence become retarded compared to the concepts developed about cardiovascular regulation in a limited number of mammalian species.

The present investigation is an attempt to study the dynamics of circulation in a lower vertebrate by using modern equipment for the measurement of intravascular pressures and pulsatile blood flow. Additional information has been obtained from angiocardiographic analysis using high speed cinefluorography and film changer technique. Efforts have been made to put the information acquired into a phylogenetical scheme. The investigation has been divided into six parts:

- Part One Introduction, material, general anatomy, methods and experimental procedures
- Part Two Intravascular pressures in the intact free moving amphibian, *Amphiuma tridactylum*
- Part Three A radiological study of the cardiac cycle in *Amphiuma tridactylum*
- Part Four The functioning of the bulbus cordis in *Amphiuma tridactylum*
- Part Five Cardiac output and dynamics of cardiac performance in *Amphiuma tridactylum*
- Part Six An experimental evaluation of the double circulation in *Amphiuma tridactylum*

The objective of the present investigation is rather wide in scope and a clear definition and limitation of the problems pursued are not easy to reach owing to the prevailing ignorance about comparative cardio

vascular physiology in general. In Part Two attempts are made to describe the course of venous and arterial pressures and the spontaneous reflex changes undergone in these in response to normal and artificial breathing and muscular activity.

The sequential contraction and functional interrelationship between the various cardiac compartments in the lower vertebrate heart are but vaguely understood. In Part Three, modern roentgenological instrumentation has been applied in an attempt to evaluate this problem in *Amphiuma tridactylum*.

The lower vertebrate heart is characterized by the existence of the bulbus cordis as a separate chamber of the heart. Part Four of this investigation is an attempt to describe the role this chamber plays in the dynamics of the heart. Its importance in exerting a 'Windkessel' function with a distributing effect on the energy released by the contracting heart must be fundamental in animals with particularly low heart rates.

The dynamic responses of the various cardiac compartments to different loads on the vascular system and their concerted action in the propulsion of the cardiac output have not earlier been subjected to experimental study in any lower vertebrate. Part Five is a description of experiments designed to throw light on these problems.

A main task of the cardiovascular system is the transport of oxygen from the respiratory organs to the site of respiration, the metabolizing body mass. In lung breathing animals the success of this transport function is closely linked with the establishment of a double circulation, a separation of the pulmonary and systemic vascular circuits. This separation is anatomically incomplete in lungfishes, amphibians, and reptiles. The degree of functional separation between the two incompletely separated vascular circuits is a highly controversial issue, in particular with reference to the class *Amphibia*.

In Part Six of the present investigation the results and equipment utilized in preceding parts have been used to design an experimental approach to the study of the pattern of circulation through the amphibian heart. The degree of shunting between the circuits and the factors modifying the shunting pattern are investigated.

#### MATERIAL

The species *Amphiuma tridactylum* (Cuvier) was selected as experimental animal in this investigation on account of several rare features among amphibians. *Amphiuma tridactylum* is a comparatively large animal. Adult specimens weigh between 600-1,000 g and measure from 70-100 cm in length. This fact was of fundamental consequence as the experimental

procedures demanded access to smaller blood vessels for cannulation and sampling. The lungs of *Amphiuma* are well developed and attain a considerable length. The large lungs also made possible cannulation of the pulmonary artery and vein in the distal portions of the lung. Pulmonary respiration is known to be the prime method for gas exchange (Baker 1949).

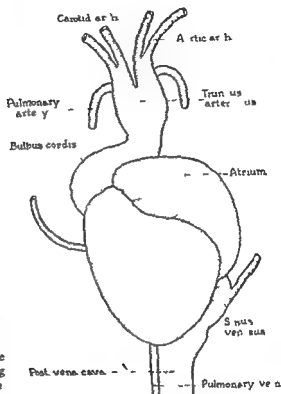


FIGURE ONE

Schematic drawing of the heart and larger adjoining vessels of *Amphiuma tridactylum*

The size of the bulbus cordis (Fig 1) permitted the use of electromagnetic flowmeter probes for measurement of pulsatile flow and cardiac output. Differential measurements of pressure within the various heart cavities and in the pulmonary and aortic arches were likewise possible on account of the large size of these structures compared with conditions in other amphibians.

The *Amphiuma* is readily anesthetized because of a proportionately large cutaneous and buccopharyngeal respiration. The anesthetic is dissolved in the surrounding water and passes into the blood stream by diffusion. *Amphiuma* is easy to keep and requires minimal attention in aquaria for extended periods of time.

vascular physiology in general. In Part Two attempts are made to describe the course of venous and arterial pressures and the spontaneous reflex changes undergone in these in response to normal and artificial breathing and muscular activity.

The sequential contraction and functional interrelationship between the various cardiac compartments in the lower vertebrate heart are but vaguely understood. In Part Three, modern roentgenological instrumentation has been applied in an attempt to evaluate this problem in *Amphiuma tridactylum*.

The lower vertebrate heart is characterized by the existence of the bulbus cordis as a separate chamber of the heart. Part Four of this investigation is an attempt to describe the role this chamber plays in the dynamics of the heart. Its importance in exerting a 'Windkessel' function with a distributing effect on the energy released by the contracting heart must be fundamental in animals with particularly low heart rates.

The dynamic responses of the various cardiac compartments to different loads on the vascular system and their concerted action in the propulsion of the cardiac output have not earlier been subjected to experimental study in any lower vertebrate. Part Five is a description of experiments designed to throw light on these problems.

A main task of the cardiovascular system is the transport of oxygen from the respiratory organs to the site of respiration, the metabolizing body mass. In lung breathing animals the success of this transport function is closely linked with the establishment of a double circulation, a separation of the pulmonary and systemic vascular circuits. This separation is anatomically incomplete in lungfishes, amphibians, and reptiles. The degree of functional separation between the two incompletely separated vascular circuits is a highly controversial issue, in particular with reference to the class *Amphibia*.

In Part Six of the present investigation the results and equipment utilized in preceding parts have been used to design an experimental approach to the study of the pattern of circulation through the amphibian heart. The degree of shunting between the circuits and the factors modifying the shunting pattern are investigated.

#### MATERIAL

The species *Amphiuma tridactylum* (Cuvier) was selected as experimental animal in this investigation on account of several rare features among amphibians. *Amphiuma tridactylum* is a comparatively large animal. Adult specimens weigh between 600-1,000 g and measure from 70-100 cm in length. This fact was of fundamental consequence as the experimental

procedures demanded access to smaller blood vessels for cannulation and sampling. The lungs of *Amphiuma* are well developed and attain a considerable length. The large lungs also made possible cannulation of the pulmonary artery and vein in the distal portions of the lung. Pulmonary respiration is known to be the prime method for gas exchange (Baker 1949).

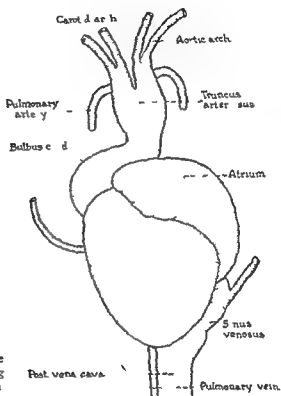


FIGURE ONE

Schematic drawing of the heart and larger adjoining vessels of *Amphiuma tridactylum*.

The size of the bulbus cordis (Fig. 1) permitted the use of electromagnetic flowmeter probes for measurement of pulsatile flow and cardiac output. Differential measurements of pressure within the various heart cavities and in the pulmonary and aortic arches were likewise possible on account of the large size of these structures compared with conditions in other amphibians.

The *Amphiuma* is readily anesthetized because of a proportionately large cutaneous and buccopharyngeal respiration. The anesthetic is dissolved in the surrounding water and passes into the blood stream by diffusion. *Amphiuma* is easy to keep and requires minimal attention in aquaria for extended periods of time.



From a phylogenetical viewpoint the urodeles in many respects form a nearly perfect transitional type between the fish and the land vertebrate, being in this regard much less specialized than the frog. The transitional position is particularly noticeable in the anatomy of the vascular system, and it is surprising that there exists no adequate account of its functional characteristics.

#### GENERAL ANATOMY OF THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM OF *Amphiuma tridactylum*

The literature on vertebrate anatomy is replete with references and descriptions of the cardiovascular system and its importance in ontogeny and phylogeny. It is not the purpose here to make a thorough treatment of cardiovascular anatomy in *Amphiuma*. Reference is only made to pertinent features in the physiological problems that are pursued in this investigation.

Figure 1 depicts in a schematical way the heart and adjoining vessels. The heart is situated distinctly to the right and slightly posterior to the coracoids. It is enclosed in a pericardium which also encloses most of the truncus arteriosus. The sinus venosus is an enlargement of the posterior vena cava in confluence with the right atrium. In a ventral view it will normally be seen lying dorsally and to the left of the heart. It joins the right atrium at the anterior, right hand, basal angle, quite close to where the right duct of Cuvier enters the sinus venosus. Contralaterally the left duct of Cuvier enters at a basal angle. The sinus venosus is a comparatively large chamber, capable of considerable distension. The wall of the sinus venosus is very thin but contains quite distinct muscular elements. The opening into the right atrium is guarded by a large flap valve, which prevents regurgitation of the blood from the right atrium to the sinus venosus (Zullich 1930).

The atria are markedly displaced to the left (Fig. 1). From the outside it is impossible to distinguish any border between the right and left atrium. The atrial wall is quite thin, with numerous trabecular muscle bands. The inner surface is not smooth, and the numerous ridges and bands also form isolated smaller fingerlike cavities within the walls. These detached projections give the atria a characteristic appearance. It is apparent that the atria can accommodate fairly large volumes of blood. Internal inspection reveals that the left atrium is considerably smaller than the right. The atrial septum is very thin and consists of a delicate muscular network, the fibers of which are continuous with those of both atria.

The single ventricle, like that of most amphibians, is composed of a trabecular muscular network, so dense that it gives the appearance of a

muscular sponge with a small central cavity. The ventricular lumen is thus in essence composed of a multitude of very small compartments like the meshes of a sponge. The trabecular muscle bands show a tendency to run in an antero-posterior course. The blood will in many places penetrate close to the surface of the ventricle, where it may be observed through the semi-transparent wall. The ventricular myocardium is nourished by the blood in the chamber and is devoid of a coronary supply. In *Amphiuma* the central ventricular cavity is very small, consisting of an L-shaped lumen extending from the atrioventricular opening to the bulbus cordis. Regurgitation to the atria is prevented by a pair of flap valves.

Between the ventricle and the arterial trunks are interposed the bulbus cordis and truncus arteriosus (Fig. 1). The bulbus cordis is a chamber in direct confluence with the ventricular myocardium and hence contains striated muscle cells, whereas the more distal truncus arteriosus contains smooth musculature similar to that found in vascular walls in general. The bulbus cordis arises from the right antero-ventral angle of the ventricle and is inclined to the left. It is cylindrical at its junction with the ventricle but expands transversely as it proceeds cranially into the truncus arteriosus. Reflux of blood from the bulbus into the ventricle is prevented by the ventriculo-bulbar valves, consisting of three non-muscular semilunar cusps. The border between the bulbus cordis and the truncus arteriosus is similarly guarded by four semilunar valves, one of which prolonged caudally is the spiral valve with its ventral edge lying free. At its proximal end the spiral valve is attached to the left bulbus wall, later passing obliquely across the bulbus and ending with a spiral twist back to the left. Just cephalad to this spiral twist is a ridge separating the upper part of the bulbus into two channels. The right channel connects with the two parts of systemic arteries in the truncus arteriosus, the carotid and aortic arches, while the left channel opens into the two divided pulmonary arteries.

The truncus arteriosus represents a base for the arterial arches. These however are all separated along the entire truncus in *Amphiuma*, although the structure is enclosed in a sheet which grows forward and around it from the bulbus. The greater vessels originating from the truncus arteriosus are the carotid, aortic, and pulmonary arches. The aortic arches pass to the branchial region where they loop behind and around the branchial fissure. They join to form the single dorsal aorta in posterior direction. The pulmonary arches turn caudal abruptly and pass along the lateral side of the lungs. There is no ductus Botalli.

## METHODS AND EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

The equipment used for the measurements of intracardiac and intravascular pressures consisted of Statham pressure transducers (model P23BB) and a differential pressure transducer (model Sanborn 267B). The transducers were connected with Sanborn carrier pre amplifiers and a 4 channel Sanborn recorder. The transducers were calibrated against columns of distilled water. During actual recording the transducers were connected with the various measuring sites by polyethylene catheters, according to the detailed description below. The flowmeter used (Parts Four and Five) was of the electro magnetic type, produced and constructed by Kiger Dennard Associates, U S A.

Calibration of the flowmeter was done postmortally with the probe in the same position as during actual recording. A short tube was inserted through the ventricular wall and passed on to the proximal end of the bulbus, where it was tied in place. Known volumes of blood or Ringer solution were injected into the tube and passed through the flow probe at the distal end of the bulbus cordis. The deflection obtained on the flowmeter record permitted calculation of the actual flow in ml per time unit.

The equipment utilized in the radiological experiments (Parts Three and Six) consisted of an under couch tube and a Philips image intensifier connected with an Arriflex camera which permitted rate of exposures limited upwards to 30 frames per second. In other experiments an Elema Schonander film changer was used. This equipment utilizes 24 x 20 cm film and gives a high degree of resolution. The rate of exposures varied between 2-4 frames per second, and they were made at 50-54 kV and 200 mA. Exposure time 0.02-0.04 sec. Film focus distance 90 cm. Tube focus 1.2 x 1.2 mm.

A total of 75 specimens of *Amphiuma tridactylum* were used in the investigation.

The animals were anesthetized by total immersion in Ms222<sup>1</sup> at a concentration of 5 g/l. During the immersion period the animals were deprived of access to atmospheric air, and anesthesia occurred in 10-25 minutes, depending upon the size of the animal.

Fifteen specimens were used in Part Two of the investigation. The experimental procedures were as follows. An incision was made in the midline ventrally, 10-15 cm cephalad to the cloacal opening. The pulmonary artery was dissected free and cannulated with a polyethylene catheter (P.E. 10). The cannulation was performed in the distal end of the lung. At this level the diameter of the pulmonary artery reaches

<sup>1</sup> Tricaine Methanesulphonate produced by Sandoz Switzerland

maximally 0.5 mm. A small artery branch of the gut was usually chosen for cannulation to obtain the systemic blood pressure. During cannulation the catheter tip was pushed toward the dorsal aorta, often projecting into the lumen of the latter vessel. A small vein in the mesenteric lining was cannulated in a similar way for recording of venous pressures. In all these cannulations polyethylene catheters were used and the vessels tied around the catheters. The smallest vessels possible for cannulation were used and no consequential changes in blood flow and distribution were likely to ensue. Subsequent to cannulation the catheters were filled with heparinized Ringer solution and closed at the end. In some experiments the tip of one lung was cannulated making possible recordings of an interference with the intrapulmonary pressures. The incision in the body wall was sutured in a double layer, special care being taken to close the lining of the visceral cavity and the muscle layer. The various catheters were marked and guided out through the caudal end of the incision. The animal was transferred back to the aquarium and within a very short time woke up and moved about seemingly undisturbed. These indwelling catheters could be in place for 8-10 days. Pressure recordings were made by connecting the implanted catheters to pressure transducers via connecting catheters. No recordings of pressures were made before the animals had completely recovered from the anesthesia.

Fifteen large specimens weighing from 800-900 g were used for the experiments described in Part Three. The operative procedures were kept at a minimum allowing only for cannulation of the posterior vena cava or the common pulmonary vein. The water soluble contrast medium Hypaque 45% was injected through polyethylene catheters (P.E. 10, P.E. 50). The injection volumes never exceeded 2 ml. The radiological examinations were made with the animals placed in both dorsal and ventral positions. Additional side projections with a horizontal beam direction were done to check the extent of contrast sedimentation.

The experiments described in Parts Four and Five were done on 20 specimens. After induction of anesthesia a small incision was made at a level corresponding to the distal end of the left lung (10 cm cephalad to the cloaca). The tip of one lung was exposed and cannulated with a polyvinyl catheter. This cannulation gave access to inflation and ventilation of the lungs with selected gas mixtures. During light anesthesia spontaneous breathing usually persisted.

Another incision was made in the midventral line from a level corresponding to the front legs extending to a level 2 cm behind the heart. The contracting heart can be observed as bulgings on the skin. Careful dissection exposed the systemic and pulmonary arterial arches. Opening of the pericardium gave free access to the heart structures, including the

bulbus segment Access to the posterior vena cava was secured close to the heart

Pressures from the arterial arches, the bulbus cordis and other cardiac compartments were recorded by introducing a needle catheter of a proper size through the vessel wall in an upstream direction or directly through the walls of the cardiac chambers The needle catheters were made from polyethylene tubing with the tip of a hypodermic needle inserted at the distal end The tubings used ranged between P E 10, 20, and 50, with needle tips of gauge 30, 27, and 20, according to the size of the vessel to be cannulated The introduction of a needle catheter presumably caused no significant obstruction to the blood stream The length of the catheters was standardized, and their size always matched in experiments of the same kind Four pressures could be recorded simultaneously

A square wave electro magnetic flowmeter was used for measurement of stroke volume and cardiac output The flow probes used were carefully selected to fit the vessel snugly without exerting unnecessary pressure on the vessel or the adjoining tissues Flow was most commonly measured in the distal portion of the bulbus cordis, where the rhythmic changes in size with each heartbeat are smallest

Part Six of the investigation is based upon studies of 25 specimens In the experiments involving oxygen analysis and pressure measurements, the heart and adjoining vessels were exposed and dissected free, precautions being taken to eliminate hemorrhage

Blood samples for oxygen analysis were collected simultaneously from the pulmonary artery and an aortic arch, followed by immediate sampling from the sinus venosus and pulmonary vein The sampling was done by inserting a 30 gauge cannula through the appropriate vessel The cannula was connected by a small plastic adapter directly on to a micro pipette used in the analysis of the blood gas The small volume withdrawn (25  $\mu$ l) was anaerobically transferred to the blood gas analyser for analysis by the method of Scholander and van Dam (1956), or with the use of a Natelson micro blood gas analyser In most experiments the lungs were inflated with pure oxygen some time prior to an experiment The skin was kept moist to maintain normal cutaneous respiration

The large size of the experimental animals permitted repeated sampling without disturbance of the blood volume and intravascular pressures The radiological experiments followed the procedure described in Part Three, and the intravascular pressure measurements followed the procedure described in experiments in Parts Four and Five

# REFERENCES

- BAKER C L The comparative anatomy of the aortic arches of the urodeles and their relation to respiration and degree of metamorphosis *J Tennessee Acad Sci* 1949 24 12-40
- SCHOLANDER P F and L VAN DAM Microgasometric determination of oxygen in fish blood *J Cell Comp Physiol* 1936 48 529-532
- ZULICH R Über das Herz von *Salamandra maculosa* *Morph Jahrb* 1930 65 178-228

## PART TWO

### Intravascular pressures in the intact, free-moving amphibian, *Amphiuma tridactylum*

Recent studies on mammalian species have demonstrated a marked difference in the cardiovascular characteristics of the nonanesthetized, unrestrained subject compared to the anesthetized animal. These findings have necessitated modifications in earlier concepts of cardiovascular regulation and control (Rushmer *et al.* 1960).

Attempts were made in these experiments to record cardiovascular parameters in the conscious, unrestrained amphibian, *Amphiuma tridactylum*. The interrelations of breathing patterns and muscular movements to cardiovascular responses were examined.

In the urodeles five methods of respiration are utilized (Noble 1925), namely branchial, pulmonary, cutaneous, aerial buccopharyngeal, and aquatic buccopharyngeal respiration. Modifications in development tend to eliminate certain of these methods, but most often the animals specialize and one or two of the methods will prevail. In *Amphiuma*, which is an aquatic amphibian, the four last methods are undoubtedly in operation, although pulmonary respiration is the most important (Baker 1945).

## RESULTS

Figure 2 demonstrates an arterial blood pressure tracing recorded through an indwelling catheter. The animal was submerged and rested quietly in the aquarium. The systolic pressure fluctuated in a cyclic pattern around 30 mm Hg. The corresponding diastolic pressure was

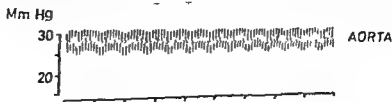


FIGURE TWO

Blood pressure record from the aorta of an intact free moving specimen of *Amphiuma tridactylum*. Note the cyclic changes in blood pressure. Time marks 30 seconds.

about 25 mm Hg giving a pulse pressure of 5 mm Hg. The blood pressure cycles consisted of regularly recurring cycles of about 20 sec duration (Fig. 2). The cycles were not related in any way to the respiratory movements or breathing pattern otherwise. They were not consistently present but occurred when the animals rested quietly for fairly long periods.

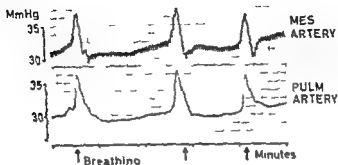


FIGURE THREE.

Demonstration of the marked pressure increase in both the systemic and pulmonary circuit that occurs with each respiratory effort. Time marks one minute.

Figure 3 shows simultaneous recordings of arterial pressure from a mesenteric artery branch and from a pulmonary artery cannulated at the tip of the lung. The difference in pulse pressure can be ascribed to the marked difference in distance from the cannulating sites to the heart. The small pulse pressure in most tracings in Part Two results from large damping inherent in the small bore catheters used to obtain indwelling cannulation of small vessels. A sharp rise in pressure occurred with each breathing cycle. The animal lifted its head about 12 cm above water level inhaled by lowering the floor of the mouth, and performed a series of swallowing movements. During the breathing effort there was a noticeable increase in the muscle tension in the body wall.

It was demonstrable in all experiments with intact animals that the state of contraction of the musculature in the body wall had a decisive influence on the intravascular pressures. The diastolic level of pressure in the pulmonary artery often showed abrupt, spontaneous changes probably of a vasomotor origin.

Figure 4 shows fluctuations in arterial and venous pressure during a period of active movement. The fluctuations in the intravascular pressures were obviously related to the muscular activity.

The following is a brief description of some spontaneously occurring changes in blood pressure and heart rate of probable reflex origin. Some attempts to evoke such reflex changes in blood pressure by artificial means are described.



## PART TWO

### Intravascular pressures in the intact, free-moving amphibian, *Amphiuma tridactylum*

Recent studies on mammalian species have demonstrated a marked difference in the cardiovascular characteristics of the nonanesthetized, unrestrained subject compared to the anesthetized animal. These findings have necessitated modifications in earlier concepts of cardiovascular regulation and control (Rushmer *et al.* 1960).

Attempts were made in these experiments to record cardiovascular parameters in the conscious, unrestrained amphibian, *Amphiuma tridactylum*. The interrelations of breathing patterns and muscular movements to cardiovascular responses were examined.

In the urodeles five methods of respiration are utilized (Noble 1925), namely branchial, pulmonary, cutaneous, aerial buccopharyngeal, and aquatic buccopharyngeal respiration. Modifications in development tend to eliminate certain of these methods, but most often the animals specialize and one or two of the methods will prevail. In *Amphiuma*, which is an aquatic amphibian, the four last methods are undoubtedly in operation, although pulmonary respiration is the most important (Baker 1945).

## RESULTS

Figure 2 demonstrates an arterial blood pressure tracing recorded through an indwelling catheter. The animal was submerged, and rested quietly in the aquarium. The systolic pressure fluctuated in a cyclic pattern around 30 mm Hg. The corresponding diastolic pressure was

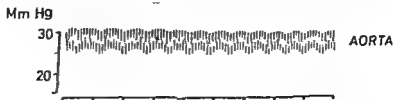


FIGURE TWO

Blood pressure record from the aorta of an intact free moving specimen of *Amphiuma tridactylum*. Note the cyclic changes in blood pressure. Time marks 30 seconds.

about 25 mm Hg giving a pulse pressure of 5 mm Hg. The blood pressure cycles consisted of regularly recurring cycles of about 20 sec duration (Fig 2). The cycles were not related in any way to the respiratory movements or breathing pattern otherwise. They were not consistently present, but occurred when the animals rested quietly for fairly long periods.

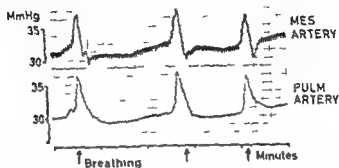


FIGURE THREE

Demonstration of the marked pressure increase in both the systemic and pulmonary circuit that occurs with each respiratory effort. Time marks one minute.

Figure 3 shows simultaneous recordings of arterial pressure from a mesenteric artery branch and from a pulmonary artery cannulated at the tip of the lung. The difference in pulse pressure can be ascribed to the marked difference in distance from the cannulating sites to the heart. The small pulse pressure in most tracings in Part Two results from large damping inherent in the small bore catheters used to obtain indwelling cannulation of small vessels. A sharp rise in pressure occurred with each breathing cycle. The animal lifted its head about 12 cm above water level inhaled by lowering the floor of the mouth and performed a series of swallowing movements. During the breathing effort there was a noticeable increase in the muscle tension in the body wall.

It was demonstrable in all experiments with intact animals that the state of contraction of the musculature in the body wall had a decisive influence on the intravascular pressures. The diastolic level of pressure in the pulmonary artery often showed abrupt, spontaneous changes probably of a vasomotor origin.

Figure 4 shows fluctuations in arterial and venous pressure during a period of active movement. The fluctuations in the intravascular pressures were obviously related to the muscular activity.

The following is a brief description of some spontaneously occurring changes in blood pressure and heart rate of probable reflex origin. Some attempts to evoke such reflex changes in blood pressure by artificial means are described.

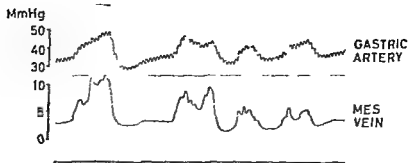


FIGURE FOUR

Fluctuations in arterial and venous pressure during a period of active movement  
Time marks 30 seconds

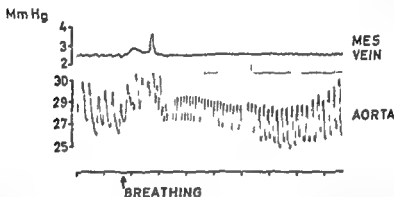


FIGURE FIVE

Venous and arterial pressures recorded in an intact specimen of *Amphiuma tridactylum*. A marked tachycardia resulted subsequent to a pressure rise following a breathing movement  
Time marks 15 seconds

Figure 5 shows recordings of venous and arterial pressure. At the point of the arrow the animal lifted its head above water and commenced an inspiration. The initial response consisted of a sudden pressure increase in the artery and the vein, immediately followed by a marked tachycardia. The frequency became doubled and the pulse pressure reduced accordingly. Gradually the heart rate returned to initial values, while the pulse pressure simultaneously increased. There was also a distinct pulse noticeable in the venous pressure record. Figure 6 similarly demonstrates a reflex doubling of the heart rate at the first inspiration. This time, however, another inspiration took place before the heart had returned to its initial frequency. In spite of a similar change in pressure, which was obviously related to the increased muscle tension, no further increase in heart rate was detectable at the second inspiration. The reflex change in heart rate concurrent with the inspiratory effort was obviously dependent upon the initial heart rate. In an attempt to determine the effective stimulus to the reflex tachycardia described in Figures 5 and 6

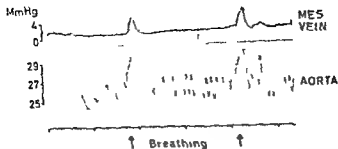


FIGURE SIX

Venous and arterial pressure recorded during two successive breathing movements. In response to the first a marked tachycardia resulted. The frequency remained unchanged after the second breathing movement. Time marks 15 seconds.

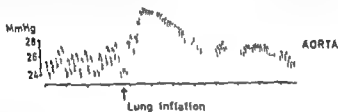


FIGURE SEVEN

Aortic pressure recorded during an artificial inflation of the lungs. Note the pressure rise and subsequent tachycardia. Time marks 15 seconds.

an artificial inflation of the lungs through an indwelling catheter was performed. Care was exercised to inflate the lungs to a natural degree of distension. The inflation evoked no signs of discomfort or abnormal behavior in the animal. Figure 7 demonstrates the marked tachycardia that resulted from inflation of the lungs. Again the tachycardia was dependent upon the initial heart frequency and rarely occurred if a high rate prevailed when the stimulus was applied. In all experiments giving a reflex onset of tachycardia the initial frequency was below 20 beats per minute.

A reflex tachycardia could similarly be elicited by other stimuli. Figure 8 was recorded when the water surrounding an animal was slowly drained from the aquarium. At the time indicated by the arrow the water level had sunk to a point where the dorsal side of the animal was exposed to air. A sudden contraction of the body musculature could be observed. The arterial pressure as well as the heart rate rose immediately.

Typical depressor responses were similarly observed to occur spontaneously in *Amphiuma*. Figure 9 demonstrates arterial and venous pressures as well as pressure inside the lung, recorded continuously in an intact

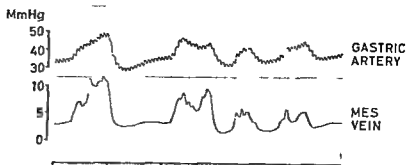


FIGURE FOUR

Fluctuations in arterial and venous pressure during a period of active movement  
Time marks 30 seconds

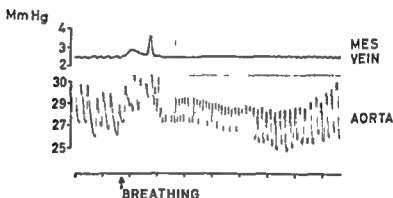


FIGURE FIVE

Venous and arterial pressures recorded in an intact specimen of *Amphiuma tridactylum*  
A marked tachycardia resulted subsequent to a pressure rise following a breathing movement  
Time marks 15 seconds

Figure 5 shows recordings of venous and arterial pressure. At the point of the arrow the animal lifted its head above water and commenced an inspiration. The initial response consisted of a sudden pressure increase in the artery and the vein, immediately followed by a marked tachycardia. The frequency became doubled and the pulse pressure reduced accordingly. Gradually the heart rate returned to initial values, while the pulse pressure simultaneously increased. There was also a distinct pulse noticeable in the venous pressure record. Figure 6 similarly demonstrates a reflex doubling of the heart rate at the first inspiration. This time, however, another inspiration took place before the heart had returned to its initial frequency. In spite of a similar change in pressure, which was obviously related to the increased muscle tension, no further increase in heart rate was detectable at the second inspiration. The reflex change in heart rate concurrent with the inspiratory effort was obviously dependent upon the initial heart rate. In an attempt to determine the effective stimulus to the reflex tachycardia described in Figures 5 and 6,

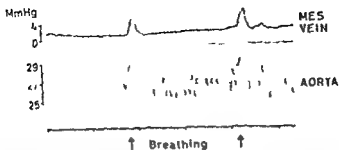


FIGURE SIX

Venous and arterial pressure recorded during two successive breathing movements. In response to the first a marked tachycardia resulted. The frequency remained unchanged after the second breathing movement. Time marks 15 seconds.

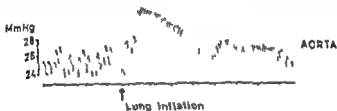


FIGURE SEVEN

Aortic pressure recorded during an artificial inflation of the lungs. Note the pressure rise and subsequent tachycardia. Time marks 15 seconds.

an artificial inflation of the lungs through an indwelling catheter was performed. Care was exercised to inflate the lungs to a natural degree of distension. The inflation evoked no signs of discomfort or abnormal behavior in the animal. Figure 7 demonstrates the marked tachycardia that resulted from inflation of the lungs. Again the tachycardia was dependent upon the initial heart frequency, and rarely occurred if a high rate prevailed when the stimulus was applied. In all experiments giving a reflex onset of tachycardia the initial frequency was below 20 beats per minute.

A reflex tachycardia could similarly be elicited by other stimuli. Figure 8 was recorded when the water surrounding an animal was slowly drained from the aquarium. At the time indicated by the arrow the water level had sunk to a point where the dorsal side of the animal was exposed to air. A sudden contraction of the body musculature could be observed. The arterial pressure as well as the heart rate rose immediately.

Typical depressor responses were similarly observed to occur spontaneously in *Amphiuma*. Figure 9 demonstrates arterial and venous pressures as well as pressure inside the lung recorded continuously in an intact

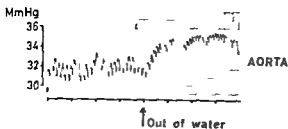


FIGURE EIGHT

Aortic pressure recorded during a slow drainage of the water in the aquarium. At the time of the arrow the water had receded and the animal responded with a general muscle contraction. Time marks 15 seconds.

FIGURE NINE

Simultaneous recordings of venous intrapulmonary and aortic pressures. A spontaneously occurring breathing movement gave a rise in all pressures followed by a typical depressor response in the aortic pressure record. Time marks 30 seconds.

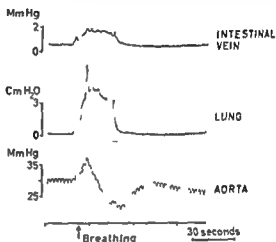
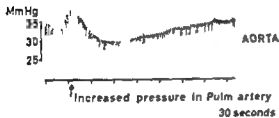


FIGURE TEN

Aortic pressure showing a typical depressor effect in response to an artificial increase of pressure in one pulmonary artery.

Time marks 30 seconds.



animal. At the time shown by the arrow an inspiration started. The venous pressure rose and stayed elevated during the entire breathing process. The pressure inside the lung increased from 0 to 3 cm of water, demonstrating the typical positive pressure breathing in amphibians. The arterial pressure rose sharply but subsequently fell abruptly toward a minimal value, after which it climbed to initial pressure levels. This typical depressor response could also be elicited in the intact animal by artificially increasing the pressure in the pulmonary artery while recording the systemic arterial pressure, or vice versa. Figure 10 depicts the common response to such a procedure, demonstrating the presence of a depressor mechanism.

Small amounts of epinephrine were injected intravenously in the resting, awake animal. Figure 11A shows a marked increase in the force of contraction apparent in a higher diastolic pressure and an increased pulse pressure. In the experiment underlying Figure 11B, the response was in addition associated with a conspicuous tachycardia.

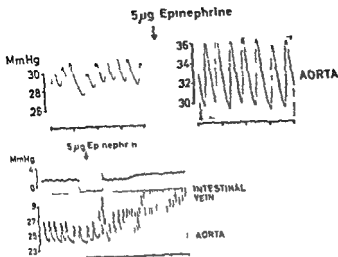


FIGURE ELEVEN

Response in arterial and venous pressures to intravenous injection of  $5 \mu\text{g}$  epinephrine  
Time marks  $\parallel$  seconds

#### DISCUSSION

The author is unaware of any published study of a similar nature using intact nonanesthetized species of amphibians as experimental subjects. Earlier references to intra arterial pressure measurements in urodeles are also entirely lacking. Schulz (1906) recorded values up to 60 mm Hg for *Rana esculenta*. The pressure values obtained in this study compare with those recorded by de Graaf (1957) for the anuran *Xenopus laevis*. Similarly, the systolic values of pressure correspond with those obtained by Shannon and Wiggers (1939) in the frog (*Rana sp*). Kuno (1914) recorded an average blood pressure of 30 mm Hg in large specimens (200 g) of *Rana esculenta*. More recently Simons (1957) has presented a paper on the blood pressure and pressure pulses in the arterial arches of the frog and the toad. The pressures in the pulmocutaneous vessels were on the average the same as those in the systemic and carotid arches. These averaged 26/19 mm Hg (systolic/diastolic) in the toad against 15/8 mm Hg in the frog.

Rhythmically recurring cycles in blood pressure of a similar nature to those depicted in Figure 2 have been described in the frog by Kuno (1914). The changes he recorded were not related to changes in frequency of respiration or pulse pressure changes. Hence he attributes the changes to cyclic differences in the tonus of smooth musculature of the vascular walls. He feels justified in comparing them with the blood pressure



cycles described by Mayer (1876) in the mammal. A rhythmic vasomotion resulting in blood pressure cycles had already been described in the frog by Saviotti (1870). Similarly Riegel (1871) observed rhythmic contractions of the mesenteric arteries of frogs.

The lability in the levels of intravascular pressures in intact *Amphiuma* apparent with each respiration or the slightest movement has an obvious relationship to the state of muscular contraction. In anesthetized frogs and toads Simons (1957) recorded small changes in the pulmonary arterial pressure levels seemingly without corresponding changes in systemic arterial pressure. Simons feels justified in attributing these changes to the degree of inflation of the lungs which will directly affect the pressures registered in the pulmonary arteries. The cylindrical elongated body form of *Amphiuma* with all the visceral structures enclosed within a fluid filled cavity surrounded by a muscular body wall is immediately suggestive of a relationship between muscle tension and intravascular pressures. An increased muscle tension will affect arterial as well as venous pressures directly, which in turn can give secondary reflexly induced pressure changes. The net effect of such interrupted pressure elevations transmitted from increased muscle tension (Figs 3, 4, 8) will undoubtedly be a facilitation of the cardiovascular function. In particular the vascular capacity spaces, i.e. the larger veins, will empty their contents and increase the venous return quite markedly. This in turn will augment cardiac contraction and output.

Most of the available knowledge on cardiovascular reflexes is of necessity derived from experiments with anesthetized, surgically treated animals. The quality and strength of the nervous and mechanical stimuli which elicit these reflex responses in experiments may not have a parallel in any normal situation which the animal is likely to encounter. Such experiments may elucidate the mechanisms of the reflex action, but fall short of explaining their normal role in physiological adjustment.

The results obtained in the present study are a clear manifestation that cardiovascular reflex responses can be easily evoked in *Amphiuma* and, even more important, that the reflexes occur within the limits of stimulus threshold that are encountered in experimental situations as close to normal as possible. We are therefore justified in interpreting both depressor responses and reflex changes in heart rate as normally occurring physiological adjustments in the intact *Amphiuma*. Since the exact nature and site of action of the stimuli are not known, the data obtained permit no analysis of specific reflexogenic areas of the vascular system of *Amphiuma*. The reflex onset of tachycardia occurring spontaneously (Figs 5, 6, 7, and 8) might have been the result of a stimulation arising from an increased venous return accompanying the increase in general

body muscle tonus. Its dependence upon the initial frequency was markedly consistent. Particular interest attaches to the tachycardia following either a normally occurring inspiration or an artificial inflation of the lungs (Figs 6-7). One cannot exclude the possibility that this effect results from a direct stimulation of inflation receptors in the lungs. In particular the experiments with artificial inflation point in that direction since no accompanying muscular effort increased the venous pressure and return of blood to the heart. Hering (1871) is credited with being the first to observe that an increase in the pulmonary inflation volume causes an acceleration of the heart. Anrep *et al.* (1936) showed that the heart rate changes associated with lung inflation are of central as well as of reflex nature. A moderate inflation such as a spontaneous inspiration causes a cardiac acceleration whereas a stronger inflation causes a bradycardia. Von Saalfeld (1933) independently arrived at the same results. Anrep *et al.* worked with a heart-lung preparation, whereas von Saalfeld used an intact preparation but artificial ventilation. More recently Ariado and Schmidt (1955) have emphasized the generally accepted view that reflex circulatory effects of normal lung inflation and deflation are insignificant in man. Simons (1957) raises the possibility that nervous control mechanisms responding to lung inflation may exist in frogs and points to the observation of Neil, Strom and Zotterman (1950) that afferent fibers of the vagus originating in the lung tissue show an increase in impulse discharge as the lungs are inflated. The cardiac acceleration following spontaneous inspiration in *Amphiuma* may be of importance in showing that the effect is a normally occurring phenomenon with a possible regulatory function on heart rate.

The depressor responses recorded (Figs 9 and 10) similarly cannot be attributed to specific stimulator sites especially as there is anatomical connection between the systemic and pulmonary circuits in all *Amphibia*. A pressure increase applied in the pulmonary artery may well exert its stimulatory effect in the systemic circuit and vice versa.

The presence of a depressor mechanism in the arcus aortae of amphibians (*Rana*) was demonstrated by Kuno (1914). He increased the stretch of the aortic wall by ligating the contralateral aortic arch which resulted in a prompt decrease in blood pressure after a slight initial rise. He also clearly showed that electrical stimulation of the central end of the cut vagus caused a reflex fall of blood pressure. On more uncertain ground Nikiforowsky (1913) claimed that there are depressor afferents in the vagus of the frog. However, Neil, Strom and Zotterman (1950) searched in vain for vagal nerve fibers connected to the main vessels of the truncus arteriosus. They suggest that the afferent fibers stimulated by Kuno arise directly from the heart and not from the aorta. This however opposes the

finding that increased aortic pressure leads to a blood pressure fall. The presence of sensory innervation of the truncus arteriosus has not yet been demonstrated. Meyer (1927) demonstrated tonically active depressor fibers in the glossopharyngeal nerve of the frog by local increase in intravascular pressure in the carotid region he could evoke a depressor effect. He concluded that this vascular reflex must be homologous to the carotid sinus reflex first described by Hering (1924, a,b) in the mammal. Neil, Strom and Zotterman (1950) showed that the proper nerve endings in the frog could be activated by stretching the blood vessels. The nerve endings seemed to arise from the carotid gland as well as from the adjacent part of the common carotid artery. Carman (1955) rejected the idea that the carotid gland of amphibians is associated mainly or only with vaso- and possibly chemoreceptor functions. Its structure indicates some distributing adjustment of blood flow in the external carotid artery, since this vessel bifurcates at an acute angle to the common carotid. It should be noted that many amphibians, among these *Amphiuma*, lack a carotid gland. It seems likely that the phylogenetical development of the carotid sinus reflexes as they appear in the mammal has more diffuse origin. Such a viewpoint receives support from the wide spread sensory areas in the branchial system found in the lowest vertebrates. The carotid arteries of the higher vertebrates are true derivatives of the primitive branchial system of the lower vertebrates. Lutz and Wyman (1932) and Satchell (1961), among a number of others, have amply demonstrated the unspecific origin of inhibiting cardiovascular reflexes in the lower vertebrates, notably the elasmobranchs.

Lutz and Wyman (1932) were able to obtain cardiovascular reflex responses in the urodele *Necturus maculosus*. With this exception, there are no reports on reflex cardiovascular responses in other urodele amphibians.

It seems noteworthy that the reflex response depicted in Figure 10 may depend on baroreceptors located in the pulmonary circuit. The existence of vascular baroreceptors in the pulmonary vessels has been claimed from time to time. Churchill and Cope (1929) and later Schwiegk (1935) proved that the bradycardia and hypotension resulting from increased pressure in the lung circuit are of reflex nature and depend on the integrity of the vagi. Aviado *et al* (1951) and Guyton *et al* (1954) have more recently claimed that baroreceptors localized in the pulmonary arteries of mammals exert a significant inhibitory effect on the vasomotor center. Other authors, Daly, Ludwig, Todd and Verney (1937) have produced evidence that the pulmonary veins possess a sensory innervation linked with cardiovascular and respiratory reflexes in mammals. No reports on the existence of reflexogenic areas in the pulmonary vessels of lower vertebrates have come to my attention. The

response depicted in Figure 10 may have resulted from stimulation of receptors located to the venous side of the pulmonary circuit. In this connection it should be noted that the caliber of capillaries in *Amphiuma* in all likelihood surpasses that known in other vertebrates. The red cells of *Amphiuma* are 70-80  $\mu$  in diameter and by far the largest on record. Hence an artificially applied pressure head on the arterial side will also immediately exert an increase in pressure on the venous side of the capillary bed.

The effects of intravenous infusion of epinephrine in the intact *Amphiuma* are demonstrated in Figure 11. With reference to Figure 11B it is particularly noteworthy that the increase in venous pressure precedes the onset of a rapid pressure rise in the aorta. In this connection it is an important but often overlooked fact that epinephrine constricts veins. This observation was noted by Oliver as long ago as 1897. By this act a considerable effect on the capacity of the vascular system is exerted. McDowall (1935) has emphasized that the main role of the sino-aortic reflexes is the adjustment of the circulatory capacity, thus influencing the cardiac output and general systemic blood pressure.

#### SUMMARY

Intravascular pressures have been recorded in intact nonanesthetized specimens of the large salamander *Amphiuma tridactylum*. The systolic values of arterial blood pressure fluctuated around 30 mm Hg with a pulse pressure of about 5 mm Hg. The level of blood pressure was related to the state of activity of the animal. Movements and respiratory efforts were commonly associated with increased pressure.

Some spontaneously occurring reflex changes in heart rate and blood pressure are described. A reflex tachycardia was observed in response to inspiratory efforts. A similar tachycardia could result from an artificial inflation of the lungs or from a sudden contraction of the body wall musculature. The tachycardia response depended upon the initial heart frequency. Typical depressor responses were also observed to occur spontaneously. The phylogenetical relationship of a branchiogenic intravascular baroreceptor area is discussed.

#### REFERENCES

- ANDERSON, G. V. W. PASCLA, R. ROSSLER. Respiratory variations of the heart rate. I. The reflex mechanism of the respiratory arrhythmia. *Proc. Roy. Soc. B* 1936 119 191-230.

- AVIADO D M JR T H LI W KALOW I W PESKIN, G L TURNBULL M E HESS  
Respiratory and circulatory reflexes from perfused heart and pulmonary circulation of dog *Am J Physiol* 1951 165 460-470
- AVIADO D M JR C F SCHMIDT, Reflexes from stretch receptors in blood vessels heart and lungs *Physiol Rev* 1955 35 247-300
- BAKER C L The natural history and morphology of *Amphiumae* *J Tenn Acad Sci* 1945 20 55-91
- CARMAN, J B The carotid labyrinth in *Hyla aurea* with a note on that in *Leopelma hochstetteri* *J Anat Lond* 1955 89 503-525
- CHURCHILL E D O COPE, The rapid shallow breathing resulting from pulmonary congestion and edema *J exp Med* 1929 49 531-537
- DALY I DE B G LUDANY A TODD E B VERNEY Sensory receptors in the pulmonary vascular bed *Quart J exp Physiol* 1937 27 123
- GRAEF A R DE Investigations into the distribution of blood in the heart and aortic arches of *Xenopus laevis* (Daud) *J Exp Biol* 1957 34 143-172
- GUYTON A C A W LINDSAY J J GILLULLY Limits of right ventricular compensation following acute increase in pulmonary circulatory resistance *Circ Research* 1954 2 236-332
- HERING E Über eine reflektorische Beziehung zwischen Lunge und Herz Sitzsber Akad Wiss Wien *Math Naturwiss Kl* 1871 64 (2) 333-352
- HERING H E (a) Der Sinus caroticus in der Ursprungsstelle der Carotis interna als Ausgangsort eines hemmenden Herzreflexes und eines depressorischen Gefäßreflexes *Munch med Wschr* 1924 71 701-704
- HERING H E (b) Die Sinusreflexe vom Sinus caroticus werden durch einen Nerven (Sinus nerv) vermittelt der ein Ast des Nervus glossopharyngeus ist *Munch med Wschr* 1924 71 1265-1266
- KUNO Y Einige beobachtungen über den Blutdruck des Frosches *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1914 158 1-18
- LUTZ B R L C WYMAN The evolution of a carotid sinus reflex and the origin of vagal tone *Science* 1932 75 591
- MCDOWALL R J S Capacity effects from the carotid sinus *J Physiol* 1935 81 24
- MAYER S VON Studien zur Physiologie des Herzens und der Blutgefäße Über spontane Blutdruckschwankungen *S B Akad Wiss Wien* 1876 74 281-307
- MEYER F Versuche über Blutdruckzugler beim Frosch *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1927 215 545-552
- NEIL I G STROM and Y ZOTTERMAN Action potential studies of afferent fibers in the Vth and Xth cranial nerves of the frog *Acta Physiol Scand* 1950 20 338-350
- NIMROFOWSKY P M On depressor nerve fibers in the vagus of the frog *J Physiol Lond* 1913 45 459-461
- NOBLE G K The integumentary pulmonary and cardiac modifications correlated with increased cutaneous respiration in the *Amphibia* a solution to the hairy frog problem *J Morph* 1925 40 341-416
- OLIVER G The action of animal extracts on the peripheral vessels *J Physiol Lond* 1897 21 22P
- RIEGEL F Über den Einfluss des Nervensystems auf den Kreislauf und die Körpertemperatur *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1871 4 350-434
- RUSHMER R F O A SMITH JR and H P LASHER Neural mechanisms of cardiac control during exertion *Physiol Rev* 1960 Suppl No 4 27-34
- SAALFELD E VON Herzreflexe pulmonalen Ursprungs *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1933 231 33-47

- SATCHELL G H The response of the dogfish to anoxia *J Exp Biol* 1961 33 531-543
- SAVIOTTI G Untersuchungen über die Veränderungen der Blutgefäße bei der Entzündung *Virchow's Arch* 1870 50 592-623
- SCHULZ F N Studien über das Verhalten des Blutdruckes von *Rana esculenta* unter den verschiedenen äusseren Bedingungen insbesondere bei verschiedener Körpertemperatur *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1906 115 386-447
- SCHWIECK H Der Lungenentlastungsreflex *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1935 237 206-219
- SHANNON F W and C. J. WIGGERS The dynamics of the frog and turtle hearts. The nonrefractory phase of systole *Am J Physiol* 1939 129 709-715
- SMITHS J R The blood pressure and the pressure pulses in the arterial arches of the frog (*Rana temporaria*) and the toad (*Bufo bufo*) 1957 137 12-21

### PART THREE

## A radiological study of the cardiac cycle in *Amphiuma tridactylum*

Cinefluorography and high speed film changer techniques are particularly well suited for analysis of the cardiac cycle with regard to functional anatomy, timing of the contractile processes, and other hemodynamic events. Information of this kind is scarce for most lower vertebrate forms, and the author is unaware of any such study having been done on an amphibian.

The following is a survey of results obtained with both the above methods on lightly anesthetized specimens of the large amphibian *Amphiuma tridactylum*.

### RESULTS

The contrasts injected in the posterior vena cava outlined the inflow channels to the right atrium clearly. As it approaches the heart, the posterior vena cava is discernible as a large vessel slightly to the left of the midline (Fig. 12A). The vessel is in direct confluence with the sinus venosus and no valves demarcate the beginning of the latter. A functional border between the posterior vena cava and the sinus venosus became apparent when the latter exhibited rhythmic contractions. These contractions could be observed as a general shortening of the sinus venosus as well as a narrowing of the vessel diameter. The reduction in diameter never resulted in a closure of the vessel lumen. Accordingly, one would assume that a certain regurgitation into the greater veins takes place as the sinus venosus contracts. The contractions resulted in a reduction to about one half of the maximal area covered by the contrast filled sinus venosus (Fig. 12 B, D). The main chamber of the sinus venosus has a triangular shape. It is a capacity space and shows ordinarily a considerable residual volume after filling of the right atrium (Fig. 13).

The two other inflow channels to the sinus venosus, the right and left ducts of Cuvier, are relatively small and enter the sinus venosus at acute angles in the anterior direction. There are no valves preventing regurgitation into these vessels.

The inflow tract from the sinus venosus to the right atrium has a

characteristic appearance (Fig 12) In its posterior part, shortly interior to the entrance of the left jugular vein there is a narrowing giving the sino atrial connection the shape of a small dilatation The sino atrial valves are most likely situated at the point of this narrowing At the time of closure of these valves the sino atrial connection was interrupted right at this point (Fig 12B) Following opening of the sino atrial valves the initial filling took place while the sinus venosus volume was still increasing and may therefore be attributed to the prevailing pressure head in the larger veins Shortly later, the sinus venosus started to contract actively, and seemed responsible for a significant portion of the right atrial filling

At a heart rate of 30 beats per minute with a cardiac cycle length of 2 seconds the sinus venosus displayed volume changes consisting of a rapid distension followed by a more extended subsequent contraction (Fig 12 A, B, C D) The timing of the sinus venosus contraction and its relation to the other contractile processes of the heart are revealed in Figure 14 This Figure is a plot of the changes the various cardiac chambers undergo throughout the cardiac cycle measured as projected areas on the films The films supporting the analysis were exposed at a rate of 4 frames per second Owing to the limited rate of exposures (four frames per second) the accuracy in the timing of the minimum and maximum values in the areas covered by the various cardiac compart

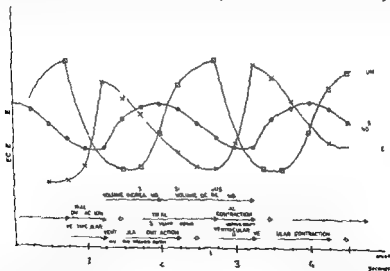


FIGURE FOURTEEN

Demonstration of the interrelationship between the various cardiac compartments measured as projected areas on the roentgen films throughout a cardiac cycle At the bottom of the Figure is indicated the time sequence of the filling and contraction of the various compartments The films on which the Figure is based were exposed at a rate of 4 frames per second at 50 Kv Exposure time 0.04 seconds



ments, and hence the timing of opening and closure of the valves, will be within 0.25 seconds, as indicated by the stippled lines in the lower part of the Figure.

Atrial filling (Fig. 14) lasted 1 second at a heart rate of thirty beats per minute. After the sino-atrial valves had opened there was a rapid phase of atrial inflow while the sinus venosus volume was still increasing. The early rapid filling lasted for about 0.25 seconds and contributed approximately 1/3 of the atrial filling, judged from the area projected on the roentgen films. The rapid influx of blood to the atrium was sustained for another 0.25 seconds, after which the inflow rate declined and reached a summit 0.5 seconds later. These latter phases of atrial filling were presumably a consequence of an active contraction of the sinus venosus. This was observed by direct visual inspection as well as on the roentgen films, and was verified by intracardiac pressure measurements (Part Five).

The right atrium had a characteristic appearance. It showed a central cavity, which received the inflow from the sinus venosus. This central lumen had connections to a number of peripheral projections, which were subsequently filled (Fig. 12A). At times when the volume flow through the heart was low, the fingerlike projections were not filled at all. However, as soon as the venous return increased, for instance by a slight lifting of the tail, the atrial filling involved the extensive system of diverticula. The fact that the right atrium adjusted its effective lumen according to the volume inflow by filling of these diverticular spaces may have consequences for its performance (see Discussion, p. 65). The characteristic structure of the right atrium suggests that it forms a capacity space. In fact the right atrium could accommodate a larger volume than any of the other cardiac chambers.

Atrial contraction turned out to be a remarkably rapid process. The atrio-ventricular valves opened in response to this contraction and the entire process of ventricular filling was the result of atrial contraction. One could substantiate this observation by direct visual inspection. No blood entered the transparent ventricle prior to atrial contraction. The right atrio-ventricular connection was situated slightly median to the sino-atrial connection. The direction of inflow was in antero-posterior direction, making an initial  $60^\circ$  angle with the midline and entering the ventricle at its left medio-lateral side. The atrio-ventricular valves were open 0.5 seconds or 1/4 of the cardiac cycle (Fig. 14). The right atrio-ventricular opening was of a large caliber, no doubt of importance for the rapid ventricular filling. Most commonly there was a clear preference for selective filling to the right portion of the ventricle when the contrast entered through the right atrium. The selective filling was clearly supported by the numerous muscular ridges and trabeculae inside the ven-

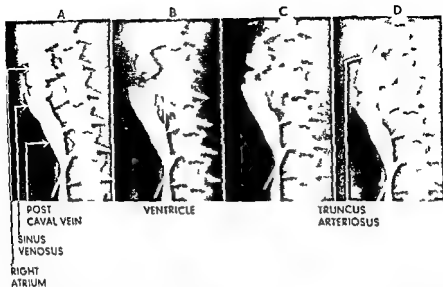


FIGURE TWELVE

Contrast injection in the posterior vena cava. Animal in ventral position. Rate of exposure 2 frames per second at 50 kv. Exposure time 0.03 seconds. A, B, C, D are consecutive frames.

ments, and hence the timing of opening and closure of the valves, will be within 0.25 seconds, as indicated by the stippled lines in the lower part of the Figure.

Atrial filling (Fig. 14) lasted 1 second at a heart rate of thirty beats per minute. After the sino atrial valves had opened there was a rapid phase of atrial inflow while the sinus venosus volume was still increasing. The early rapid filling lasted for about 0.25 seconds and contributed approximately 1/3 of the atrial filling, judged from the area projected on the roentgen films. The rapid influx of blood to the atrium was sustained for another 0.25 seconds, after which the inflow rate declined and reached a summit 0.5 seconds later. These latter phases of atrial filling were presumably a consequence of an active contraction of the sinus venosus. This was observed by direct visual inspection as well as on the roentgen films, and was verified by intracardiac pressure measurements (Part Five).

The right atrium had a characteristic appearance. It showed a central cavity, which received the inflow from the sinus venosus. This central lumen had connections to a number of peripheral projections, which were subsequently filled (Fig. 12A). At times when the volume flow through the heart was low, the fingerlike projections were not filled at all. However, as soon as the venous return increased, for instance by a slight lifting of the tail, the atrial filling involved the extensive system of diverticula. The fact that the right atrium adjusted its effective lumen according to the volume inflow by filling of these diverticular spaces may have consequences for its performance (see Discussion, p. 65). The characteristic structure of the right atrium suggests that it forms a capacity space. In fact the right atrium could accommodate a larger volume than any of the other cardiac chambers.

Atrial contraction turned out to be a remarkably rapid process. The atrio ventricular valves opened in response to this contraction and the entire process of ventricular filling was the result of atrial contraction. One could substantiate this observation by direct visual inspection. No blood entered the transparent ventricle prior to atrial contraction. The right atrio ventricular connection was situated slightly median to the sino atrial connection. The direction of inflow was in antero posterior direction, making an initial 60° angle with the midline and entering the ventricle at its left medio lateral side. The atrio ventricular valves were open 0.5 seconds or 1/4 of the cardiac cycle (Fig. 14). The right atrio ventricular opening was of a large caliber, no doubt of importance for the rapid ventricular filling. Most commonly there was a clear preference for selective filling to the right portion of the ventricle when the contrast entered through the right atrium. The selective filling was clearly supported by the numerous muscular ridges and trabeculae inside the ven

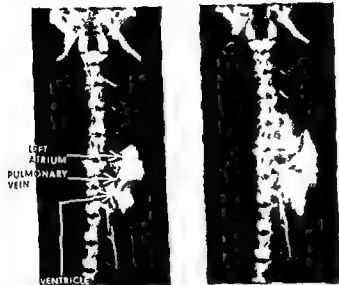


FIGURE FIFTEEN

Contrast injection in the pulmonary vein. Animal in dorsal position. Rate of exposure 2 frames per second at 50 kV. Exposure time 0.03 seconds. Frames A and B are spaced one second apart.



FIGURE SIXTEEN

A contrast injection in the posterior vena cava has outlined the sinus venosus, the right atrium and the ventricle. The first set of bulbar outflow valves is seen situated quite far up into the bulbus cordis. Exposure done at 50 kV. Exposure time 0.04 seconds.

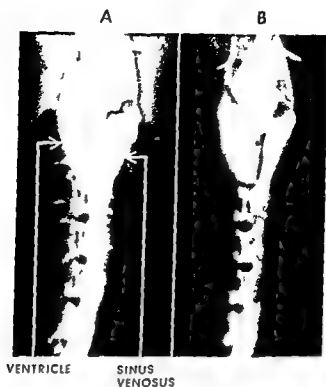


FIGURE THIRTEEN

Maximum and minimum area covered by the sinus venosus. Rate of exposure 4 frames per second at 52 Kv. Exposure time 0.04 seconds. Frames A and B are spaced one second apart.

tricle. The inflow pattern to the ventricle had a very characteristic appearance. The filling occurred in discrete furrows demonstrating the dense trabeculation of the inner ventricular surface. This trabeculation was arranged mainly in antero-posterior direction. The lumen of the ventricle was thus split into numerous slits, in structural confluence but with a seemingly high degree of functional separation. The atrial residual volume showed great variance.

The left atrium is smaller than the right. It is filled directly from the pulmonary vein. There is no venous reservoir comparable to the sinus venosus on the left side of the heart. The common pulmonary vein is formed by fusion of the two pulmonary veins returning from each lung. The vessel passes alongside the sinus venosus in actual structural contact with the latter. The movements of the sinus venosus will possibly result in some movements of the pulmonary vein that may have an indirect propulsive effect on blood in this vessel.

Like the right atrium the left has a distinct central lumen which fills directly from the pulmonary vein (Fig 15A). According to Francis (1934) there are no valves at this point. It was observed in the present study that a small communication between the pulmonary vein and the left atrium persisted also during atrial contraction but no reflux into the pulmonary vein could be observed. The inflow tract however was long and relatively narrow lumened and regurgitation into the pulmonary veins may be prevented by a narrowing of the inflow tract during atrial contraction. Zulich (1930) working on *Salamandra maculosa* suggested that the ostium of the pulmonary vein may be closed by the contraction of the adjoining atrial myocardium. The central part of the left atrial lumen was circular in shape and the numerous projections leading off from it gave the appearance of a triangular shape when filled maximally (Fig 15B). The left atrial contraction opened the atrio-ventricular connection which was far smaller than the connection between the right atrium and the common ventricle (Fig 15A). The ventricle was filled in an upper left position when the left atrium contracted (Fig 15B). The inflow outlined the ventricle in furrows arranged in parallel much like the inflow pattern from the right atrium. During the subsequent ventricular ejection this arrangement was retained. A detailed description of the selective distribution in the ventricle can be found in Part Six. In consonance with conditions on the right side the left atrium also displayed a variable residual volume.

Ventricular contraction opened the valves to the bulbous, and the subsequent ventricular ejection filled the arterial trunks. The first set of bulbar valves (phylangium valves) can be seen situated quite far up into the bulbous cordis (Fig 16). If contrast was injected in the posterior

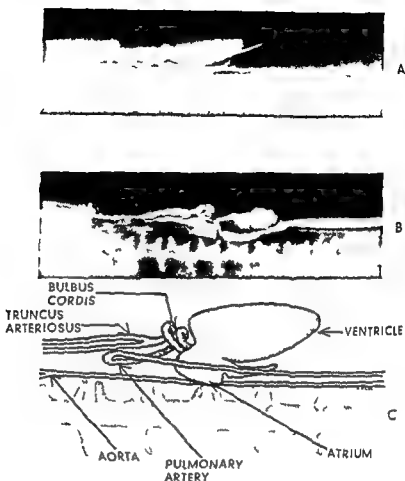


FIGURE SEVENTEEN

Demonstration of the outflow pattern from the contracting ventricle recorded in side projection with horizontal direction of the roentgen beam. There is no significant contrast sedimentation. A Contrast injection in the pulmonary vein. B Contrast injection in the posterior vena cava. Exposures at 50 kV. Exposure time 0.03 seconds. C Schematic drawing of the outflow pattern from the ventricle.

It seems of significance that ventricular systole is timed with the filling phase of the sinus venosus (fig 14) Bohme (1936), using radiological methods has explicitly demonstrated that ventricular systole facilitates atrial filling in mammals Brunnings (1899) made similar claims for fish hearts Benninghoff (1935) compared amphibian larvae and embryos of fishes and birds He concluded that ventricular systole exerted a sucking attraction on blood in the greater veins

The atria (or more specifically in the present context the right atrium) are very important chambers of the heart in *Amphiuma* The right atrium is more than three times larger than the left and can accommodate a volume far exceeding the end diastolic volume of the common ventricle The numerous fingerlike cavities projecting from the walls of the atria undoubtedly contribute to the large capacity factor The fact that the filling of these diverticula was related to the volume inflow suggests that they represent a reserve atrial space which at times of resting heart activity does not contribute to the current of blood passing through the heart but is rather more of a dead space filled with stagnant blood It is conceivable that an increased demand on the heart will increase the vigor of atrial contraction and empty the diverticula Their significance may be thought of as a functional reserve, not only for accommodation of a larger volume but also to facilitate an increased contractility In this regard it is noteworthy that the reserve space is composed of numerous small cylinders which by their contraction can create a higher pressure with less tension needed on account of their small radius compared to a cylinder or main chamber of larger dimensions

The greatest difference in atrial performance compared with conditions in a mammal is the role of the atrium in ventricular filling In *Amphiuma* ventricular filling is solely the result of atrial contraction The atrio-ventricular valves are open for a comparatively short period during which a very rapid atrial contraction takes place The effectiveness of right atrial contraction for ventricular filling depends on the presence of effective valves between the right atrium and the sinus venosus Comparable valves are not present in the mammalian heart In mammals however the contribution of atrial contraction to ventricular filling seem to vary greatly A rapid phase of ventricular filling generally terminates early in diastole The blood responsible for this filling flows in from the great veins through the right atrium The period of rapid ventricular inflow is followed by a quick transition to a period of slower filling which finally transcends into atrial systole Wiggers and Katz (1922) estimated that atrial contraction accounts for 18.60 per cent of ventricular filling Land, Wegelius and Lichtenstem (1954) demonstrated that the atria of mammals empty more completely if they contract very



vena cava and passed on to the right portion of the ventricle, this selective distribution of blood persisted and blood passed on selectively to the pulmonary arterial trunks. The ventricular residual volume varied greatly and was presumably related to the end diastolic ventricular volume and the force of the subsequent contraction. The ventricular discharge followed discrete paths from the ventricle up through the incompletely divided bulbus and on to the various arterial conduits. This highly selective pattern was obviously related to a strictly laminar outflow which in turn depended on the typical filling in discrete furrows and the retention of this distribution during the subsequent ventricular contraction. Figure 17 A, B, demonstrates the laminar outflow pattern recorded in side projection with contrast injected into the pulmonary vein. There was no significant sedimentation of the contrast medium.

#### DISCUSSION

Figure 14 summarizes the timing and sequential coordination of the various cardiac chambers in *Amphiuma*. The interrelationships of these and their role in the propulsing activity of the heart are significantly at variance with conditions in higher vertebrates, notably mammals. Davies and Francis (1941) have described the course of the wave of contraction in the salamander heart, *Salamandra salamandra*, by cine photographic technique. Their experimental procedure and instrumental technique as well as the size and rate of contraction of the heart are at great variance with the present conditions. However, a comparison reveals correspondence in contraction and relaxation time of the right atrium and the ventricle.

The presence of a rhythmic contraction in the sinus venosus makes right atrial filling an active process. Moreover the capacity for storage in the sinus venosus provides a source for a cardiac reserve that can easily be mobilized at times of demand for an increased cardiac output.

In the vertebrate series the sinus venosus exists in its original form in fishes as a fusion of the two ducts of Cuvier. It is the point of origin of the whole contractile process that proceeds to the atrium and later sweeps over the ventricle and bulbus. The sinus venosus is retained as a discrete cardiac compartment in all vertebrates below birds. In birds and especially in mammals the sinus venosus is markedly reduced and has become incorporated in the right atrium. In a cineradiographic study of the snake heart, Johansen and Hol (1960) demonstrated a rhythmic blood propelling activity of the sinus venosus. In amphibians the present study provides evidence of the importance of the sinus venosus in cardiac performance.

refuted for the turtle by Woodbury and Robertson (1942) Studies on mammalian hearts have substantiated the former view (Rushmer 1955)

Quite often one could observe in the studies on *Amphiuma* that a large heart responded with rather weak contractions That this phenomenon did not characterize a failing heart but could be ascribed to changes in the contractile state of the myocardium was demonstrated in several ways The stroke volume often increased spontaneously and ventricular discharge was markedly influenced by administration of catecholamines such as nor epinephrine (Parts Two and Four)

The cinefluorographic films disclosed rather marked changes in the dimensions of the actively contracting bulbus cordis during the cardiac cycle An accurate analysis of these movements however was hampered by the fact that the atria occupied the same area on the films The hemodynamics of the bulbus cordis is discussed separately in Part Four

#### SUMMARY

Angiocardiography with cinefluorography and high speed film changer technique have been used to study functional aspects of the cardiac cycle in *Amphiuma tridactylum*

The propagation of contrast from the posterior vena cava or the pulmonary vein through the heart is described The sinus venosus contraction is responsible for a significant part of atrial filling The right atrium is larger than the left The atria form an important capacity space and their contraction is responsible for the entire process of ventricular filling Ventricular filling is short lasting whereas the ventricular contraction and ejection last long compared to conditions in higher vertebrates The residual volumes of all the cardiac chambers vary greatly

#### REFERENCES

- BENNINGHOFF A Anatomische Grundlagen der Beziehungen von Atmung und Kreislauf Fortbildung Lehrgang Vortr II 1935 (Quoted by Lohme 1936)  
BOHME W Über den aktiven Anteil des Herzens an der Förderung des Venenblutes *Erg der Physiol* 1936 38 251 338  
BRUNING W Zur Physiologie des Kreislauf der Fische *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1899 73 593 641  
CANNON J L H L MURRAY H W WEENS and J V WARREN Cine-radiographic studies on circulatory effects of hemorrhage and intravenous infusion *Am J Physiol* 1950 163 702  
DAVIES F and E T M FRANCIS The heart of the salamander (*Salamandra salamandra* L.) with special reference to the conducting (connecting) system and its bearing on the phylogeny of the conducting systems of mammalian and avian hearts *Phil Trans Roy Soc B* 1941 221 90 130

early in diastole than if they contract after the ventricle is distended Cannon *et al* (1950), doing cinefluorographic angiocardiology of dogs, observed a positive correlation between the reduction in atrial dimensions and the stroke change in the projected ventricular area. This latter point suggests that the contribution of atrial contraction to ventricular filling is significant enough to influence the cardiac output also in mammals. This statement brings up the key role of atrial contraction in cardiac output in *Amphiuma*. In *Amphiuma* the end diastolic ventricular volume and thus the degree of ventricular distension are determined solely by the output of the atrium, except for possible changes in distensibility of the ventricle. This puts direct emphasis on the atrial contraction as one determinant of the cardiac output. The author believes that the larger role of atrial function in cardiac performance demonstrated so clearly in *Amphiuma*, is a character common to all the lower vertebrates. It has been demonstrated in the lowest vertebrates (the cyclostomes) by Hol and Johansen (1960). In teleosts the atrium is similarly a sole contributor to ventricular filling (Johansen unpublished). Working with reptiles (snakes) Johansen (1959) and Johansen and Hol (1960) claimed that ventricular filling chiefly takes place during atrial contraction and thereby differs from ventricular filling in mammals, which mainly takes place prior to and during ventricular diastasis.

Ventricular contraction and the accompanying ejection last for a comparatively long time in *Amphiuma* (Fig 14). They occupy twice the time for ventricular filling. If we set the time lapse for ventricular filling in *Amphiuma* at one, then the volume changes during ventricular contraction last twice as long. In comparison a filling time set at one for a mammal would be followed by a contraction giving volume changes lasting only one third of that time. The ejection pattern varied greatly. In the experiment supporting Figure 14 the ejection proceeded at a fairly steady rate all through the ejection phase. In other cases there was commonly a rapid initial phase of ejection declining gradually throughout systole.

The roentgen films as well as direct visual observation demonstrated that an increase in the ventricular discharge could also result from a more complete ventricular ejection rather than by a great diastolic filling. In the radiological studies this fact was verified from the great variance in ventricular residual volume. The sinus venosus and atria behaved in a similar fashion, and it is beyond doubt that the residual volume in all chambers is an important means for temporary increase in cardiac output. A similar reasoning seems to apply to reptilian hearts (Johansen and Hol 1960) and to the amphibian heart (Shannon and Wiggers 1939, see also detailed discussion in Part I), although

#### PART FOUR

### The functioning of the bulbus cordis in *Amphiuma tridactylum*

The myocardial segment designated as the bulbus cordis appears as a developmental feature in all vertebrate embryos. In the course of vertebrate evolution there has been a gradual transformation of the bulbus cordis segment. In elasmobranchs, ganoid and dipnoan fishes and amphibians it exists as a distinct cardiac compartment. In teleosts it is reduced, but the nonhomologous bulbus arteriosus composed of smooth muscle and elastic tissue exerts a similar function (Mott 1950, Johansen 1962). In reptiles the bulbus cordis represents a discrete segment at the base of the ventricle, with its distal portion absorbed into the truncus arteriosus (Greil 1903). With the development of an anatomically complete double circulation, the proximal bulbar ridges participate in the completion of the intraventricular septum, and the proximal bulbus is incorporated into the developing ventricle and forms the base of the pulmonary outflow tract in the right ventricular infundibulum (March 1961). Functional importance was early attached to the bulbus cordis. Muller (1839) designated the bulbus as an important accessory heart, and Brucke (1852) ascribed to the bulbus segment a role as an elastic regulator of the pressure impetus on the gills in fishes.

Brucke's (1852) idea of the bulbus as a safeguard against damage to the delicate respiratory capillaries has been supported and elaborated on by several workers. Thus Keith (1924) wrote in a paper on the fate of the bulbus cordis: 'No doubt, between the strokes of the ventricular pump, the musculature of the bulbus maintains a steady flow of blood, but its main purpose seems to be that of a shock absorber — a safety mechanism which prevents the ventricular pump in states of extreme exertion from damaging the respiratory network of vessels.' The present investigation aims at clarifying how the bulbus cordis forms a functional link between the discharging ventricle and the receiving arterial tree in *Amphiuma tridactylum*.

- FRANCIS, E T B The anatomy of the salamander Oxford Univ Press 1934 38 pp
- HOL, R and K JOHANSEN A cineradiographic study of the central circulation in the hagfish, *Myxine glutinosa* L *J Exp Biol* 1960 37 469 473
- JOHANSEN K, Circulation in the three chambered snake heart *Circ Research* 1959 1 828 832
- JOHANSEN K, HOL, R, A cine radiographic study of the snake heart *Circ Research* 1960 8 253 259
- LIND, J, C WEGELIUS and H LICHTENSTEIN, Dynamics of heart in complete A V block angiocardigraphic study *Circulation* 1954 10 195 200
- RUSHMER, R F Applicability of Starling's law of the heart to intact unanesthetized animals *Physiol Rev* 1955 35 138 142
- WIGGERS C J and L N KATZ The contour of the ventricular volume curves under different conditions *Am J Physiol* 1922 58 439 475
- WOODBURY, R A G G ROBERTSON The one ventricle pump and the pulmonary arterial pressure of the turtle The influence of artificial acceleration of the heart changes in temperature hemorrhage and epinephrine *Am J Physiol* 1942 137 628 636
- ZULLICH R, Über das Herz von *Salamandra maculosa* *Morph Jahrb* 1930 63 178 228

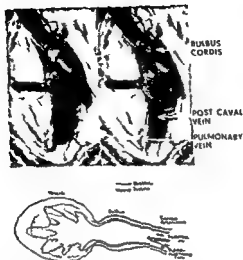


FIGURE EIGHTEEN

Demonstration of the dimensional changes of the bulbus cordis during a cardiac cycle. A Ventricular diastole. B Late ventricular systole. Note the increase in the ventricular outflow tract. A and B seen in ventral aspect. C Schematic drawing of the dimensional changes during ventricular contraction.

## RESULTS

The direct confluence of the bulbus cordis with the ventricular myocardium is immediately suggestive of an active role in the cardiac cycle. By visual inspection or from cinefluorographic films of a beating heart one can clearly follow the movements of the various parts. During the early part of ventricular systole the bulbus cordis is swiftly distended by the outflowing blood. Later the bulbus cordis contracts and displays a marked reduction in its diameter. Figure 18 illustrates this point. There is a manifest widening of the orifice of the ventricular outflow tract during its most active ejection phase (Fig. 18B). The increase could amount to 20% compared to the smallest value during the subsequent bulbar contraction (Fig. 18C). The largest dimensional changes of the bulbus cordis took place about midway between the base of the ventricle and the truncus arteriosus. At this level a doubling of the diameter was apparent during vigorous ventricular contractions. This means that the volume changes the bulbus cordis undergoes may be of the order of at least one to four.

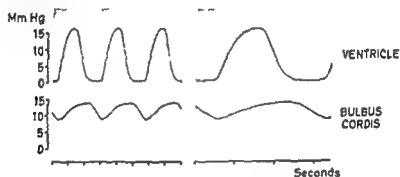


FIGURE NINETEEN

Simultaneous recordings of pressure from the ventricle (top tracing) and the bulbus cordis  
Time marks one second

Figure 19 demonstrates simultaneous records of pressure recorded from the ventricle (top tracing) and the bulbus cordis less than 1 cm from the ventricle. There is a conspicuous difference in the slope of the two tracings. The rate of change of pressure ( $dp/dt$ ) was more than seven times greater for the ventricle than for the bulbus in their ascending pressure slopes. Note also that the peak pressure in the bulbus cordis appeared far later than peak intraventricular pressure. In fact it was reached at a time when the intraventricular pressure had fallen to its minimum value.

In most cases the highly compliant, elastic walls of the bulbus cordis made it impossible to distinguish the phase of distension from the subsequent phase of contraction on the pressure records. In some cases,

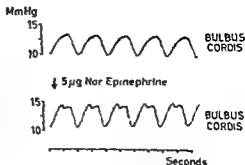






FIGURE TWENTY

Pressure records from the bulbus cordis before (upper tracing) and after injection of 5  $\mu$ g nor-epinephrine. Note the steeper pressure slope and the biphasic peak in the bottom record. Time marks one second.



however, particularly at very forceful heart beats, a distinct double pulse was discernible. Figure 20 depicts two pressure records recorded from the same animal. The bottom tracing was recorded subsequent to an injection of 5  $\mu$ g nor-epinephrine. As is readily apparent, nor-epinephrine affected the contractility or the rate of change in shortening the contracting ventricle. This became evident through a markedly increased rate of change of pressure ( $dp/dt$ ) although the increase in the general level of pressure was moderate. The more vigorous contraction became manifest as a double pulse in the bulbus cordis pressure record in which the second pulse can be referred to the contraction of the bulbus itself. The distension-contraction sequence of the bulbus cordis could similarly become discernible as a marked change in the rising pressure slope.



FIGURE TWENTY-ONE

Simultaneous recordings of pressure from the bulbus cordis (lower tracing) and the ventricle.

Time marks one second.

without a distinct double pulse being present. Figure 21 illustrates this point. The initial rapid pressure rise stemmed from the inflow of the ventricular discharge, while the subsequent more gentle pressure rise occurred as a result of the contraction of the bulbus itself.

Figure 21 demonstrates how the intraventricular pressure gives rise to an arterial pulse wave and how the propagation of this is related to the characteristics of the bulbus cordis. The depulsation in the bulbus occurred at the obvious expense of the level of systolic pressure produced by the ventricle. The peripheral pulse wave, however, showed a gentle distal run-off which must be of special value for a continued circulation at such low heart rates.

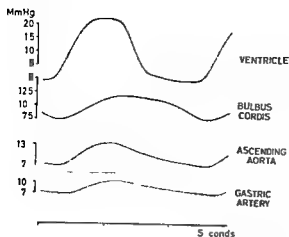


FIGURE TWENTY TWO

Simultaneous recordings of pressure from the ventricle (top tracing) the bulbus cordis the ascending aorta and a branch of the gastric artery Time marks one second

FIGURE TWENTY THREE

Simultaneous recordings of pressure from the ventricle (top tracing) the bulbus cordis and a gastric artery branch The extra systole demonstrates the pressure chamber effect exerted by the bulbus cordis

Time marks one second

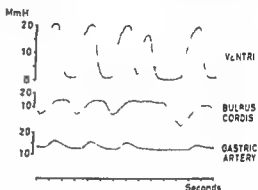


Figure 23 is particularly illuminating in its demonstration of the pressure chamber effect exerted by the bulbus cordis. A spontaneous ventricular extra systole occurred shortly after the third heart beat, which was then followed by a compensatory pause. The extra systolic pressure peak is hardly recognizable in the bulbus cordis pressure record, which demonstrates how the energy released by the extra systole was stored as potential energy in the bulbus. The bulbus cordis finally relaxed toward the end of the compensatory pause and released its potential energy to the peripheral arteries. The net effect was that the extra systole was not perceptible in the peripheral arterial pressure, which was kept at a steady diastolic level during the entire course of the extra systole.

One would predict a greater importance of the bulbar pressure chamber mechanism at the lower heart rates. Figure 24 attempts to illustrate this point. The first portion of the record was recorded while the heart was under the influence of epinephrine, while the last part was recorded subsequent to intravenous administration of  $4\mu\text{g}$  acetylcholine, which gave rise to a marked bradycardia. Note the conspicuous difference in the appearance of the bulbus cordis pressure record in the two situations. During tachycardia the pressure slopes were not much at variance with the slope of the intraventricular pressure. The bulbus contraction extended the pressure into ventricular diastole but did not add to the pres

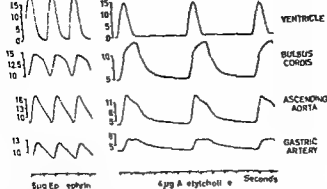


FIGURE TWENTY FOUR

Simultaneous recordings of pressure from the ventricle (top tracing) the bulbus cordis the ascending aorta and a branch of the gastric artery. The tracings to the left were recorded while the heart was under influence of epinephrine while the bradycardia to the right resulted from injection of acetylcholine. Note the marked difference in the appearance of the bulbus cordis pressure record. Time marks: one second.

pressure level created by ventricular contraction. During the pronounced bradycardia, however, the bulbus contraction changed the appearance of the pressure pulse markedly and added to the general level of pressure. More peripherally the bulbus effect became manifest as a biphasic wave in the pressure records from the aorta and the gastric artery, and resulted in a maintenance of systolic pressure for an extended time in the peripheral arteries. An extraordinarily gentle diastolic run off is seen to keep the diastolic pressure up in spite of the profound bradycardia.

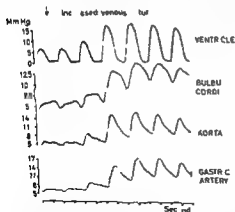


FIGURE TWENTY FIVE

Simultaneous recordings of pressure from the ventricle (top tracing) the bulbus cordis the aorta and a branch of the gastric artery during a period of severely weak heart action followed by an increased venous return. Time mark: one second.

Figure 25 depicts simultaneous pressure recordings from the ventricle the bulbus cordis the ascending part of the right aorta and from a branch

of a gastric artery. The first part of the recordings were made during an extremely weak heart action. The stroke volume discharged from the ventricle at this time was evidently too small to give rise to any significant pressure rise in the bulbus. It is noteworthy, however, that the bulbus cordis contraction (first two heart beats) appears as a distinct second pulse and adds to the general level of systolic pressure. At the time indicated by the arrow an increase in venous return was applied by infusion of Ringer solution into a mesenteric vein. Within a very short time the ventricular pressure was more than doubled. The bulbus cordis pressure similarly underwent a marked increase as well as a change in general appearance. As the force of contraction increased, the rate of change of pressure ( $dp/dt$ ), and the pulse pressure increased sharply, and already the subsequent heart beat resulted in a threefold increase in pressure peripherally and a doubling of the pulse pressure. The rounded top of the bulbus cordis pressure record demonstrates the pressure chamber effect. The rapidly increasing levels of diastolic pressure reached peripherally disclose the key role of the bulbus as an energy distributor.

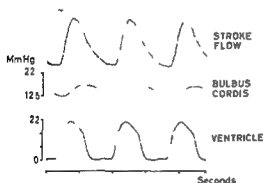
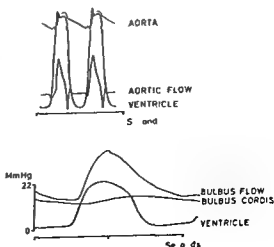


FIGURE TWENTY SIX

Simultaneous recordings of stroke flow and pressures in the bulbus cordis and the ventricle. Note the depulsating effect of the bulbus cordis and the maintenance of positive flow through the entire cardiac cycle. Time marks: one second.

FIGURE TWENTY SEVEN

Contours and time relationships of intraventricular and aortic pressure together with pulsatile outflow from the heart. A shows conditions in a dog (redrawn from Spencer and Greiss 1962). B shows the results obtained presently on *Amphiuma*. Note the marked depulsating effect of the bulbus cordis and the maintenance of flow throughout the cardiac cycle.



Figures 26 and 27 throw light upon the importance of the bulbus cordis in the adjustment of the outflow from the heart. The upper set of records Fig. 27 (A), ■ redrawn from Spencer and Greiss (1962), and shows contours and time relationships of aortic pressure, left ventricular pressure and the flow in the ascending aorta of a dog. In Fig. 27 B are shown the corresponding parameters recorded in the present study on *Amphiuma*. Note the marked depulsating effect of the bulbus cordis and the maintenance of positive flow through the entire cardiac cycle.

#### DISCUSSION

The role of the larger arteries in exerting a pressure chamber effect, or Windkessel effect has been amply evaluated in regard to the mammal. This function in brief provides the larger arteries with a rhythmic, highly pulsatile input from the heart and then converts this to a smooth output to the peripheral arteries.

In the lower vertebrates the difference in anatomical structure as well as a more slow heart action focus the emphasis on the bulbus cordis as the important site for pressure chamber activity. A low frequency, low pressure vascular system must have means to distribute the energy released from ventricular contraction over an extended time if a continuous circulation is to be achieved.

The large variations measured in the dimensions of the bulbus cordis associated with the cycles of distension and contraction have several consequences. An increase in the ventricular outflow orifice during the most vigorous ejection phase (Fig. 18) will favor an increased output by reducing the outflow resistance.

To be able to receive the ventricular discharge and force it onward, the bulbus cordis is endowed with an exceptional elasticity. Valves situated within this highly compliant structure would not be mechanically competent were they not furnished with a muscular support such as that provided by the bulbus. This adds to the importance of the bulbus cordis in the lower vertebrates as a support for and a supplement to the action of the ventricular semilunar outflow valves (Keith 1904, 1924, March 1961). Keith (1904) makes the interesting point that the lower vertebrate bulbus segment divides during phylogeny to form the roots of the aorta and pulmonary artery but while its musculature disappears from the aorta it remains as a loop which encircle the terminal part of the infundibulum of the right ventricle and take their fixed origin from the base of the aorta. In all vertebrates the efficiency of the semilunar valves depends on this musculature.

As early as 1834 Weber postulated that the elastic properties and the

distensibility of the arterial tree enabled it to receive the ejected stroke volume, and that subsequently the stretched arterial walls provided the propulsive force which caused blood to flow not only in systole but also during diastole. The present use of the term 'Windkessel effect' for this function derives from Weber. He compared the elastic storage capacity of the arterial tree with physical 'Windkessel' devices such as the manually operated fire engines or the compressed air reservoirs of pipe organs. Weber reasoned that ejection into an elastic outflow system would save work because pulsating flow in a rigid outflow system would require acceleration of the stroke volume as well as of the large arterial blood column at the beginning of systole.

The idea that a rational relationship exists between cardiac function and the elastic storage capacity of the outflow system takes on importance when considered in a phylogenetical context. In the original one circuit vascular system of fishes the heart is primarily a gill pump where the remaining pressure head, after traversing the respiratory capillary bed, represents the propulsive force for the systemic circulation. A respiratory network of vessels in the immediate proximity of the main pump seems in obvious need of mechanisms to protect the delicate vessels against sudden changes in pressure. The bulbus segment interposed between the heart and the gills performs a crucial task in this respect by providing a depulsating effect on the ventricular pressure pulses. Radiological studies on the eel (Mott 1950) demonstrated an exceptional elasticity of the bulbus arteriosus tissue. From pressure and flow measurements a conspicuous depulsating effect of the bulbus arteriosus in the cod (*Gadus morhua*) has been demonstrated (Johansen 1962). The centralization of the important depulsating function in the bulbus arteriosus segment of fishes is retained in the bulbus cordis of amphibians and partly in the reptiles toward the development of a complete double circulation in birds and mammals. In birds and mammals the discrete, effective, depulsating activity of the bulbus is lost and the 'Windkessel' function resides in the entire system of the larger arteries. An interesting comparison between conditions in lower and higher vertebrates, however, can again be made. The elasticity of the higher vertebrate aorta has a definite limit at which further expansibility is halted. This limit differs very much from conditions in the pulmonary circuit where pressure increments several times the original pressure may be tolerated before the same limit is reached. The connection of the bulbus in the lower vertebrates with a low pressure, low frequency system shows in this respect a parallel to the low pressure system of the higher vertebrate pulmonary circuit which has descended anatomically from the same segment.

The data presently obtained provide experimental proof of a number of suppositions advanced to explain the role of the bulbus cordis. Figures 19, 22 and 23 demonstrate clearly not only the marked depulsating effect but also the fact that bulbus contraction persists into ventricular diastole thereby affording significant support for the bulbar valves.

The changes in the sequence of distension and contraction of the bulbus segment at weak heart actions (Fig. 25), or in response to epinephrine and acetylcholine (Figs. 20, 24), are difficult to interpret in particular because the components of the ventricular and bulbar contractions are not always distinguishable in the pressure record. At times of severely weak ventricular contractions (Fig. 25), when the bulbar distension from the ventricular discharge was reduced or abolished there was a noticeably persistent phase of bulbar contraction. The data furthermore, justify the assumption that rapid and pronounced bulbar distension during vigorous ventricular contraction is followed by a subsequent forceful bulbar contraction. In this regard the time course of the initial bulbar pressure rise seems to have a decisive effect (Fig. 20).

A number of authors have emphasized a rational relationship between cardiac performance and the elastic properties of the outflow system (Knebel 1941 a, b; Alexander 1952; Kenner 1959). With particular reference to the arterial pressure levels, the form of the pressure pulses and how these are influenced by outflow elasticity, Wegler and Boger (1939) and Wiggers (1938) have added important information.

Salisbury *et al.* (1962) have investigated the influence on cardiac function exerted by the elasticity of the outflow system under rigidly controlled experimental conditions. At slow heart rates the diastolic pressure in rigid outflow systems reflected the level of controlled resistance. When more distensible systems were interposed between the ventricle and the controllable arterial reservoir at the same level of resistance, higher diastolic pressures were observed, which they interpret to be a function of the elastic force applied in diastole to the blood column by the distensible outflow system.

In general, lower vertebrates have low heart rates and the pressure chamber effect in the bulbus cordis is probably a significant contributing factor to the maintenance of adequate diastolic pressures. The data acquired in the present study give ample experimental support to this supposition (Figs. 23, 24 and 25). Figures 19, 21 and 26 all demonstrate that the rapidly developing pressure in the ventricle during contraction is converted in the bulbus to a smooth long lasting pressure output. It is apparent from Figure 19 that the maximal pressure reached in the bulbus is far lower than maximal intraventricular pressure. There is thus a positive pressure gradient from ventricle to bulbus during the entire



period of ventricular outflow. Recent studies on mammals (Spencer and Greiss 1962) have shown that there is only a very short period during which outflow from the left ventricle follows a positive pressure gradient. The major outflow takes place against a pressure gradient propelled by the inertia of the initial impact of ventricular pressure (Fig 2/A). Available evidence suggests that the right ventricular ejection follows a positive pressure gradient all through the ejection phase also in mammals (Johansen, unpublished). The significance of this difference is amplified when remembering that the bulbus segment in the mammal remains as loops which encircle the terminal part of the infundibulum. The large pressure gradient from ventricle to bulbus in *Amphiuma* may result in a high velocity of the blood on its passage from the ventricle to the first part of the bulbus. Such a high initial velocity may be related to the presence of a typical laminar outflow pattern, which in turn will be of significance for the mixing of systemic and pulmonary blood (Part Six).

The alleged role of the bulbus in maintaining aortic flow in late systole has hitherto not been experimentally proven. The present results (Figs 26 and 27) demonstrate that positive flow in *Amphiuma* lasts during the entire cardiac cycle, thereby adding another conspicuous difference between the higher and lower vertebrates. Spencer and Greiss (1962) have demonstrated that positive aortic flow prevails in less than one third of the cardiac cycle in mammals (dogs). Figure 27 compares the results of Spencer and Greiss (1962) (top figure) with those of the present investigation. In *Amphiuma*, with a heart rate almost 1/4 of that in the dog, the extreme depulsating effect of the bulbus helps maintain a positive flow throughout the entire cardiac cycle. After the short period of positive aortic flow on the dog there follows an abrupt shortlasting period of reversed flow, which terminates in a phase of zero flow. The significance of a maintained flow is demonstrated in *Amphiuma* is enhanced when the normally prevailing low heart rate is considered. March (1962) studied the movements of the bulbus cordis segment in elasmobranchs with cinematographic technique. He concluded that the bulbus cordis exerts its influence by limiting the ventral aortic pressure variations in early systole when a rapid flow through the gills can be achieved by a small trans gill pressure gradient. The active contraction of the bulbus in late systole provides an additional discharge which maintains pressure and flow through the gills in the period of highest pressure in the dorsal aorta. As a consequence he thought that gill flow is kept up until closure of the semilunar valves. Satchell (1960), also studying elasmobranchs, took differential pressure measurements and evaluated a lasting period of flow on this basis. It remained to take direct measurements of flow in the

ventral aorta. Such studies have been done recently on the teleost, *Gadus morhua* (Johansen 1962). A conspicuous pressure chamber effect of the bulbus arteriosus and a long lasting aortic outflow were demonstrated.

#### SUMMARY

The functional importance of the highly elastic and muscular bulbus cordis segment of the amphibian heart has been evaluated from measurements of intracardiac and intravascular pressures taken while monitoring flow in the bulbus cordis. The main role of the bulbus cordis is its marked pressure chamber function. The depulsating effect tends to keep up the diastolic levels of pressure in the peripheral arteries at low heart rates. Another consequence is the distributing effect on the ventricular discharge which results in a maintained positive outflow from the heart throughout the cardiac cycle even at very low heart rates. The bulbus cordis is also important in assisting the valve function and preventing regurgitation of the ventricular outflow.

#### REFERENCES

- ALEXANDER R. S. Factors determining the contour of pressure pulses recorded from the aorta. *Fid. Proc.* 1952 11 738.
- BRÜCKE E. v. O. Beiträge zur vergleichenden Anatomie und Physiologie des Gefäßsystems. *Denkschr. Akad. Wiss. Wien* 1852 3 335-367.
- GREIL A. Beiträge zur vergleichenden Anatomie und Entwicklungsgeschichte des Herzens und der Wirbeltiere. *Morph. Jahrb.* 1903 31 123-310.
- JOHANSEN K. Cardiac output and pulsatile aortic flow in the teleost *Gadus morhua*. *J. Comp. Biochem. Physiol.* 1962 7 169-174.
- KEITH A. The evolution and action of certain muscular structures of the heart. *Lancet* 1904 161 703-707.
- KEITH A. Fate of the bulbus cordis in the human heart. *Lancet* 1924 207 1267-1273.
- KREYER T. Der Eingangswiderstand des Arteriensystems. *Z. Biol.* 1959 111 178-188.
- KNEBEL R. (a) Die Elastizitätsverhältnisse des arteriellen Systems am Starlingschen Herzhengenpräparat. *Arch. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.* 1941 197 485-494.
- KNEBEL R. (b) Über den Einfluss des elastischen Widerstandes auf die Kreislaufverhältnisse am Herzhengenpräparat. *Arch. exper. Path. u. Pharmacol.* 1941 197 496-518.
- MARCH H. W. Persistence of a functioning bulbus cordis homologue in the turtle heart. *Am. J. Physiol.* 1961 201 1109-1112.
- MARCH H. W. Cinematographic observations on the behavior of the bulbus cordis in the Leopard shark *Triakis semifasciatus*. In press 1963.
- MOTT J. C. Some factors affecting the blood circulation in the common eel (*Anguilla anguilla*). *J. Exp. Biol.* 1950 27 324-333.

- MULLER, J , Vergleichende Anatomie der Myxinoiden II Vergleichende Bemerkungen  
über das Gefasssystem der Fische *Abh Akad Wiss Berlin* 1839 175 303
- SALISBURY, P F , C E CROSS and P A RIEBEN, Ventricular performance modified by  
elastic properties of outflow system *Circ Res* 1962 *11* 319 328
- SACHELL G H , The reflex coordination of the heart beat with respiration in the  
dogfish *J Exp Biol* 1960 *37* 719 731
- SPENCER M P and F C GREISS, Dynamics of ventricular ejection *Circ Res* 1967 *10*  
274 279
- WEBER, E H , De utilitate parietis elastici arteriarum *Annotationes Anat et Physiol*  
*Programmata collecta* Leipzig 1834 1 12
- WEZLER, K and A BOGER Die Dynamik des arteriellen Systems *Ergbn Physiol* 1939  
*41* 292 606
- WIGGERS, C J , Dynamics of Hypertension *Am Heart J* 1938 *16* 515 543

## PART FIVE

# Cardiac output and dynamics of cardiac performance in *Amphiuma tridactylum*

The functional interrelationships between the various cardiac compartments and the larger conduits connected to the heart in the lower vertebrates is a subject of which very little is known

No measurements of intracardiac and intravascular pressures with simultaneous recording of stroke volume and cardiac output have been reported for any amphibian

The experiments to be described are attempts to analyze cardiac performance in *Amphiuma tridactylum* based on simultaneous measurements of pressure and flow using modern cardiovascular instruments

### EVALUATION OF THE CARDIAC CYCLE FROM MEASUREMENT OF INTRACARDIAC PRESSURES

#### Results and Comments

The heart of *Amphiuma* consists of five distinctly separate parts all of which contribute to the propulsion of blood by active contractions. These are the sinus venosus the two atria the common ventricle and the bulbus cordis. At room temperature (18-20°) the heart rate in a quietly resting or lightly anesthetized specimen is around 25 beats per minute

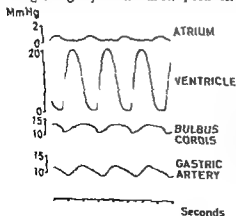


FIGURE TWENTY EIGHT

Simultaneous pressure recordings from the right atrium the ventricle the bulbus cordis and a branch of the gastric artery demonstrating the successive contractions of the various chambers in the heart of *Amphiuma tridactylum*. Time marks one second

Figure 28 demonstrates the successive contractions of the various chambers in the heart of *Amphiuma*. The first mechanical event of a cardiac cycle was a slow pressure rise in the sinus venosus. This contraction proceeded much in the manner of a peristaltic wave as well as a general shortening of the sinus venosus segment, starting at a level corresponding to the apex of the distended ventricle and passing anteriorly toward the right atrium. Both the sinus venosus and the right atrium are typical capacity spaces and only small increments of pressure in the sinus venosus will suffice to propel a sizable volume against a small resistance into the right atrial cavity.

The right atrial pressure curve has a very conspicuous appearance. In some of the records a smaller pressure wave preceded the actual contractions of the atrium (Fig. 28). This small wave most likely represented the contraction wave in the sinus venosus, transmitted into the

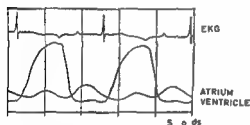


FIGURE TWENTY NINE

Demonstration of the time relations between the components of the electrocardiogram and the atrial and ventricular pressure records. Time marks one second.

atrium through the open sino atrial connection. Figure 29 demonstrates the time relations between the electrocardiogram and the atrial and ventricular pressure records. The P-Q interval of the EKG is particularly extended compared to the sequence of excitation in higher vertebrate forms. Accordingly, practically the whole period of ventricular relaxation and diastasis is occupied by atrial contraction. Ventricular excitation and contraction, the Q-T interval, occupies a considerable portion of the cardiac cycle. The T-P interval is therefore of a very short duration and radically different from conditions in electrocardiograms from human and mammalian hearts. The same short T-P interval has earlier been emphasized by Davies *et al.* (1951) in *Crocodylia*, Johansen (1959) in the snake heart and by Mullen (1962) in two species of iguanid lizards.

Figures 28 and 29 provide substantial support for the major conclusions drawn in the radiological analysis of the cardiac cycle in *Amphiuma* (Part Three). First of all it emphasizes the paramount importance of atrial activity for cardiac performance. Atrial contraction coincides with ventricular relaxation and is thus entirely responsible for ventricular filling. Ventricular contraction is comparatively long lasting, and the period available for filling, is accordingly shorter.

## Mechanics of venous return

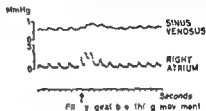
### INCREASED LOAD ON THE SINUS VENOSUS AND RIGHT ATRIUM

#### Results and Comments

It has been pointed out that venous pressure and the return of blood to the heart is markedly influenced by muscular movements in the intact

FIGURE THIRTY

Simultaneous pressure recordings from the sinus venosus and right atrium. Pharyngeal breathing movements were followed by a rise in pressure and rate of contraction. Time marks: one second.



*Amphiuma* (Part Two) Figure 30 demonstrates several points of interest in this connection. Simultaneous recordings of pressures in the sinus venosus and right atrium were done on a spontaneously breathing specimen. The arrow indicates a period of spontaneous pharyngeal breathing movements. Such movements were accompanied by increased tension in the general body musculature. The breathing movements were followed by a rise in venous pressure which was transmitted to the sinus venosus. The sinus venosus pressure rose and, more important, its frequency of contraction nearly doubled. These responses are even more pronounced when the atrial pressure curve is considered. Thus the systolic atrial pressure increased threefold from one beat to the next. The frequency of contraction was similarly doubled. The Figure demonstrates how a naturally occurring increase in venous return evokes a prompt increase in both

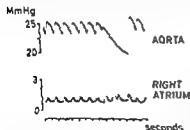


FIGURE THIRTY-ONE

Simultaneous pressure recordings from the aorta and right atrium. A short period of ventricular asystole is promptly followed by an increase in the force of contraction of the right atrium. Time marks: one second.

frequency and force of contraction of the receiving chambers: the sinus venosus and right atrium. Figure 31 demonstrates the prompt response of the atrium<sup>1</sup> to an increase in outflow resistance. The ventricle had stopped contracting spontaneously for three beats and ventricular

<sup>1</sup> Unless otherwise stated the atrium referred to is the right

ejection was consequently temporarily halted. This in turn represented an increase in resistance to the still beating atria, which immediately increased their force of contraction.

These findings demonstrate the significant role played by the sinus venosus and atrium for the filling of the ventricle. An increased load on these chambers, whether in the form of an increased venous return or an increased outflow resistance, will produce an immediate augmentation in both rate and force of contraction.

## THE ROLE OF THE INTRAPERICARDIAL PRESSURE IN THE FILLING OF THE HEART

### *Results and Comments*

Intrapericardial pressure fluctuations set up by the changes in volume of the contracting ventricle, and similar fluctuations related to the breathing movements, have been reported in a number of gill breathing vertebrates (Brunings, 1899, in teleosts and Lyon, 1928, in elasmobranchs). Such pressure changes will in all likelihood transmit through the thin walled atria and hence influence the resistance to atrial inflow. In fishes, several investigators have recorded negative pressures in the sinus venosus and greater veins. Negative venous pressures were never recorded during the present study. Obviously, pressure measurements alone can only contribute indirect evidence but can never conclusively decide whether a *vis a fronte*, or sucking action of the heart, is created by the contraction of the ventricular myocardium. However, a facilitation of atrial filling will most likely result at times when intrapericardial pressure falls. Even a small decrease of atrial pressure concurrent with ventricular systole can be expected to have a great effect on inflow because of the low resistance in the sino atrial inflow tract. It was demonstrated in the present study that at each ventricular contraction there was a drop in intrapericardial pressure (Fig. 32).

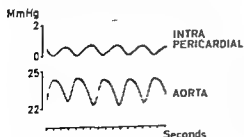


FIGURE THIRTY TWO

Cyclic changes in intrapericardial pressure related to aortic pressure (ventricular contraction). Time marks one second.

To elucidate more fully the importance of the intrapericardial pressure for the cardiac performance, attempts were made to produce slight intrapericardial pressure changes when recording the aortic blood

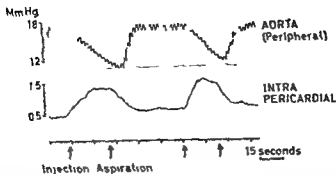


FIGURE THIRTY THREE

Simultaneous recordings of aortic and intrapericardial pressure. When the intrapericardial pressure was artificially raised by injection of saline cardiac filling was impeded and aortic pressure fell rapidly. Time marks one second.

pressure. Figure 33 depicts the results of such a procedure. At the point of the arrow a small volume of Ringer solution, 0.204 ml, was slowly introduced into the pericardium. This increased the intrapericardial pressure and resulted in a concurrent drop in arterial pressure. As soon as the volume added to the pericardium was withdrawn, the intrapericardial pressure dropped and the initial values of arterial pressure were quickly re-established. From visual inspection of the beating heart it became apparent that the increased intrapericardial pressure first of all impeded the filling of the heart and did not hinder the subsequent contraction. It seems of particular interest that only small increases in intrapericardial volume could effect a sizable change in cardiac performance.

In mammals the theory of an attraction of venous blood by the contraction of the ventricle has been debated extensively (Brecher 1956). Among a number of workers Hamilton (1930) found it necessary to assume a strong systolic sucking action of the heart upon the *venae cavae*. The alleged explanation for the effect in mammals dates back to the finding by Purkinje (1843) that there is an alternating descent and ascent of the atrio-ventricular junction during heart activity. The apex of the heart, however, remains more stationary. These movements would result in an enlargement of the atria during ventricular contraction with a consequent sucking action on the blood in the greater veins.

No mention except tangentially by Nerlich (1951) seems to have been made in the literature on mammalian physiology of a possible mechanism related to intrapericardial pressure fluctuations. Conditions in the lower vertebrates are markedly different, however. There is no thoracic cavity with a negative pressure. Moreover the pericardium is



ejection was consequently temporarily halted. This in turn represented an increase in resistance to the still beating atria, which immediately increased their force of contraction.

These findings demonstrate the significant role played by the sinus venosus and atrium for the filling of the ventricle. An increased load on these chambers, whether in the form of an increased venous return or an increased outflow resistance, will produce an immediate augmentation in both rate and force of contraction.

## THE ROLE OF THE INTRAPERICARDIAL PRESSURE IN THE FILLING OF THE HEART

### *Results and Comments*

Intrapericardial pressure fluctuations set up by the changes in volume of the contracting ventricle, and similar fluctuations related to the breathing movements, have been reported in a number of gill breathing vertebrates (Brunings, 1899, in teleosts and Lyon, 1928, in elasmobranchs). Such pressure changes will in all likelihood transmit through the thin walled atria and hence influence the resistance to atrial inflow. In fishes, several investigators have recorded negative pressures in the sinus venosus and greater veins. Negative venous pressures were never recorded during the present study. Obviously, pressure measurements alone can only contribute indirect evidence but can never conclusively decide whether *a vis a fronte*, or sucking action of the heart, is created by the contraction of the ventricular myocardium. However, a facilitation of atrial filling will most likely result at times when intrapericardial pressure falls. Even a small decrease of atrial pressure concurrent with ventricular systole can be expected to have a great effect on inflow because of the low resistance in the sino atrial inflow tract. It was demonstrated in the present study that at each ventricular contraction there was a drop in intrapericardial pressure (Fig. 32).

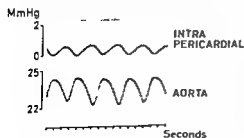


FIGURE THIRTY TWO

Cyclic changes in intrapericardial pressure related to aortic pressure (ventricular contraction). Time marks one second.

To elucidate more fully the importance of the intrapericardial pressure for the cardiac performance, attempts were made to produce slight intrapericardial pressure changes when recording the aortic blood

isometric contraction is easily discernible. It lasts 0.12 seconds of a cardiac cycle of 1.70 seconds duration at a heart rate of approximately 33 beats per minute. The ventricular outflow phase lasts 0.72 seconds. Ventricular outflow terminates at the time of closure of the bulbar valves. Subsequently ventricular relaxation sets in. The period of isometric relaxation lasts about 0.30 seconds and is followed by atrial contraction and renewed ventricular filling. The general appearance of the ventricular outflow curve is smooth. There is an early rapid ejection phase reaching a summit at peak intraventricular pressure. From that point on the velocity of ejection declines gradually, but does not reach zero level until commencement of the next ventricular contraction. The flow in the bulbus cordis is always positive and attains zero level only for a brief period just prior to ventricular contraction. The gentle decline in outflow velocity during ventricular relaxation is not influenced by closure of the ventricular outflow valves. For comparison, positive flow in mammals prevails for only about 35% of the cardiac cycle.

### Cardiac output: Its adjustment and regulation

#### Results

The experiments on cardiac output were all done on immobilized, lightly anesthetized animals. The measurements were taken with the animal in dorsal position. The heart region was carefully exposed; the pericardium opened in the midline and retracted bilaterally. This gave access to the bulbus cordis and the remainder of the heart and greater vessels. Infusion of drugs, blood or Ringer solution was done through a catheter in a mesenteric vein. Figure 34 demonstrates pulsatile flow in the bulbus together with pressures in the bulbus and the ventricle. The bulbus pressure was recorded through a catheter placed somewhat distal to the flow probe. The stroke volume in this particular specimen was

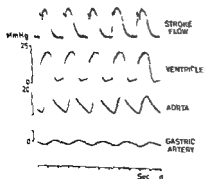


FIGURE THIRTY FIVE

Simultaneous recordings of pulsatile flow in the bulbus (upper tracing) and pressures from the ventricle, the aorta, and a branch of the gastric artery. Note the biphasic flow pattern. Time marks: one second.

never spaced freely, but is generally attached to the heart as well as to adjoining muscular tissue, a condition necessary if a sucking action on the thin walled atria is to exist

In *Amphiuma* it seems reasonable to assume that venous return depends upon the concerted action of both *vis a tergo* and a *vis a fronte*

## Dynamics of ventricular ejection

### Results and Comments

In general physiology the traditional concept is taught that ventricular ejection can be pictured as a sawtooth wave with peak velocity occurring early in systole. Following the rapid ejection phase the velocity of forward flow decreases gradually until closure of the aortic valves (Spencer and Greiss 1962). Subsequently there is a sharp backflow in the aorta corresponding to the incisura on the pressure pulse. During diastole there is zero flow. The above description refers to experiments on the left ventricle of mammalian forms. Reference of a similar nature to lower vertebrate forms is entirely lacking. In the present experiments ventricular ejection in *Amphiuma* was studied by measuring intraventricular and intrabulbar pressures directly. These pressures were fed into a differential pressure transducer giving instantaneous values of the existing pressure gradients. Stroke flow was monitored simultaneously, using electromagnetic flowmeter technique. The flow probe was placed around the distal part of the bulbus cordis. Figure 34 depicts the results. A period of

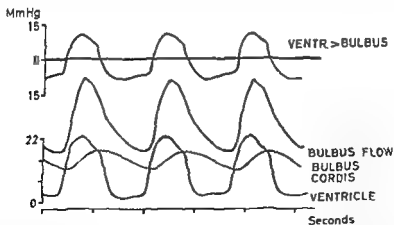


FIGURE THIRTY FOUR

Simultaneous recordings of ventricular outflow measured in the distal part of the bulbus cordis and pressure recordings from the bulbus cordis and ventricle. The pressures were fed into a differential pressure transducer giving instantaneous values of the pressure gradient from ventricle to bulbus (upper tracing).

Time marks one second

very quickly to an increased venous return. Within a few beats (4 in number) the stroke volume was augmented twofold. The ventricular pressure increased by about 14 cm H<sub>2</sub>O and the bulbous pressure by about 10 cm H<sub>2</sub>O during the same period. The cardiac output increased from 12.95 ml/min to 25.90 ml/min. The elevated cardiac output persisted for more than 30 seconds after the actual cessation of infusion. This indicates that the initial increase in cardiac output has mobilized the blood reserves and facilitated the force of contraction of the sinus venosus and the atria as well as of the ventricle itself. Note, however, that the heart rate stayed unchanged during this process.

In other experiments a marked tachycardia was observed in response to an increased venous return. In Figure 37 the heart rate increased from

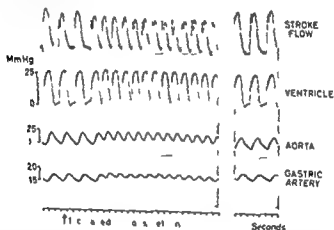


FIGURE THIRTY SEVEN

An artificial increase in venous return evoked a prompt tachycardia. The stroke volume fell and cardiac output increased significantly. Time marks one second.

ca. 25 to 35 beats per min. Within two beats the stroke volume was reduced from 0.45 ml before onset of increased venous backflow to 0.35 ml during the tachycardia. The accompanying changes in cardiac output were 11.25 ml/min before and 12.25 ml/min during the infusion. Forty seconds later the heart rate was back to the initial level. The stroke volume, however, was somewhat increased from before onset of venous return being 0.52 ml. The intraventricular as well as the intra arterial pressures increased only slightly in response to the increased backflow stimulus. The increase in cardiac output was very small compared to the response depicted in Figure 36 in which the heart rate did not change at all. In another experiment repeated increases in venous return gave

0.67 ml of blood, giving a cardiac output of approximately 22 ml/min. The animal weighed 750 g, giving a flow of about 30 ml/kg/min.

Figure 35 demonstrates stroke flow and ventricular and arterial pressures. Note the sharp notch and subsequent rounded wave in the pulsatile flow record. The idea emerged early that the second wave in the biphasic flow curve represented a discharging function of the bulbus cordis. The aforementioned dimensional changes of the bulbus may represent a source of error in this regard, as these changes might have influenced the pick up signal of the flow probe. However, even with the flow probe in the anterior-most position at the bulbus, where the movements were minor, the double wave often appeared distinctly. The evidence thus supports the view that the initial sharp drop in the flow record can be referred to the distending phase of the elastic bulbus tissue. The accompanying rapid volume changes momentarily decelerate the ventricular discharge. Subsequently, when the bulbus is maximally dilated and starts contracting, the flow swiftly accelerates again. It seems conceivable that the size of the area under this second phase of increased flow will depend upon the extent and force of bulbar contraction, which therefore may provide a real contribution to the discharge of blood from the heart.

#### RESPONSE TO AN INCREASED VENOUS RETURN TO THE HEART

Figure 36 shows a continuous record of pulsatile stroke flow, and bulbus and ventricular pressures during a period of slow infusion of Ringer solution into a peripheral vein. One can appreciate that the heart responded

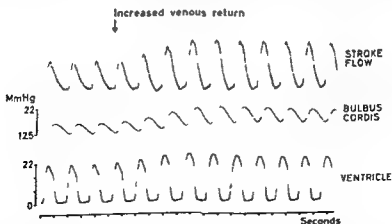


FIGURE THIRTY SIX

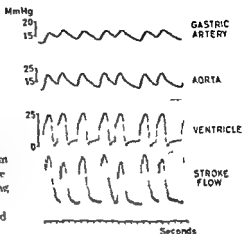
Pulsatile ventricular outflow and pressures in the bulbus cordis and ventricle during an artificial increase in venous return. The stroke volume increased rapidly giving a doubling of the cardiac output.

Time marks one second

FIGURE THIRTY NINE

Simultaneous records of flow (bottom record) and pressures in the ventricle aorta and a gastric artery branch during a period of arrhythmia

Time marks one second



second beat of the pairs was markedly smaller than in the first beat. The reduction could be from 0.84 ml to 0.48 ml in the next contraction. Although the heart at this time worked at large residual volumes in both atria and ventricle this reserve was evidently not mobilized in the instantaneous regulation of stroke volume. However, if the load on the heart was slightly influenced by for instance a lifting of the tail end and thereby an increase in the general arterial pressure and resistance to the outflowing blood from the heart a sizable increase and consistency in the stroke volume could result. The stroke volume could increase up to 50% in a single beat a plain indication of residual blood ready for instant mobilization.

In the experiment underlying Figure 40 a small dose of acetylcholine

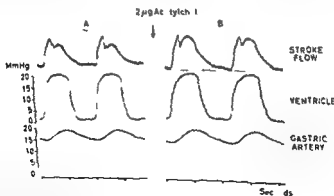


FIGURE FORTY

Response in stroke flow ventricular and arterial pressures to injection of 2 µg acetylcholine giving rise to a slight bradycardia. The stroke volume increased from 0.64 ml to 1.00 ml. The intraventricular pressure increased insignificantly.

Time marks one second

examples of the two types of responses described above, but now occurring in one and the same animal only a few minutes apart

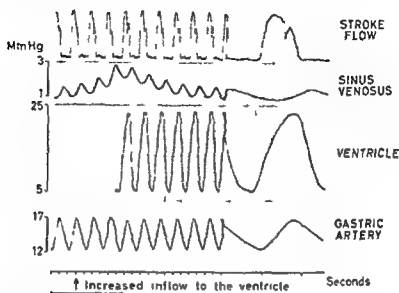


FIGURE THIRTY EIGHT

Simultaneous records of pulsatile outflow from the heart and pressures in the sinus venosus the ventricle and a branch of the gastric artery. An increased filling of the ventricle by direct infusion through the cardiac wall gave no response in stroke volume or frequency of the heart. The sinus venosus pressure rose simultaneously without eliciting any immediate response from the heart. Time marks one second

Figure 38 contains records of outflow from the heart as well as pressures in the sinus venosus, the ventricle, and a gastric artery branch. An increased inflow and distension of the ventricle was effected by direct infusion of Ringer solution through a needle catheter inserted through the wall of the ventricle. No tachycardia was detectable, neither did the stroke volume increase. Meanwhile, the backflow from the greater veins dammed up, resulting in a pressure increase in the sinus venosus. The increased pressure did not evoke any responses from the heart. During this experiment the heart was working at a large size with a fairly high stroke volume of 0.74 ml. The stimulus of an increased backflow was thus certainly not always adequate in itself to bring about an increased cardiac output or a change in rhythm. If the stroke volume was fairly high initially, with all the cardiac chambers working at large sizes with significant residual volumes, the heart generally did not respond immediately to an increased backflow stimulus.

Figure 39 shows a series of records observed during a period of arrhythmia. The arrhythmia consisted in a grouping of the beats in pairs followed by a compensatory period of rest. The stroke volume in the

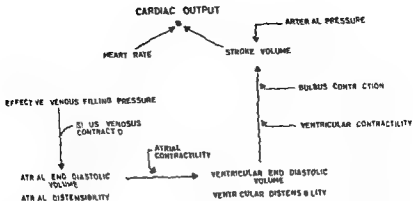


FIGURE FORTY TWO

Simplified scheme of the various factors influencing the cardiac output in *Amblystoma*

The available data seem to justify a listing of the following factors as important determinants of cardiac output in *Amblystoma* (Fig. 42)

#### A THE EFFECTIVE FILLING PRESSURE IN THE GREATER VEINS

The pressure gradient toward the heart in the greater veins i.e. the effective filling pressure seems to be related to the following dynamic factors in *Amblystoma*

- 1) Force of ventricular ejection with accompanying changes in intra pericardial pressure a *vis a fronte* effect
- 2) Muscle pumping and tissue pressure changes the level of which is largely determined by motor activity
- 3) Influence from the breathing movements. Such movements are in general accompanied by a dual effect, one of increased muscle tension related to the pharyngeal breathing movements and the other a direct compressing effect on the visceral veins by the inflated lungs
- 4) Venous tone. Indirect evidence from the response in cardiac output to an artificially applied increase in venous return suggests that changes in venous tone will affect the venous capacity factor and hence influence venous return. Similarly experiments with drug administration (epinephrine see Part Two) point toward a reduction in the capacity spaces in all likelihood elicited by changes in venous tone

#### B SINUS VENOSUS CONTRACTIONS

The sinus venosus exists as a separate cardiac chamber in all lower vertebrates up to and including the reptilia. Evidence of active rhythmic contractions of a propulsive nature in the sinus venosus has been presented



resulted in a very slight reduction in heart rate, an increased filling time, and hence a greater distension of the ventricle. The stroke volume increased from 0.64 ml in part A to 1.00 ml in part B of the figure. The increased filling time as well as changes in myocardial distensibility and amounts of residual blood may be involved in the response obtained.

Several investigators have recently emphasized that major factors in the cardiac adjustment may stem from neural and humoral mechanisms which act to alter the inherent distensibility and contractility of the myocardium. This view is disregarded in the Starling concept, and has come to play a major part in the revision of the views on cardiac control that have emerged during recent years.

The present investigation gave repeated indications that changes in distensibility and/or contractility of the myocardium take place in the

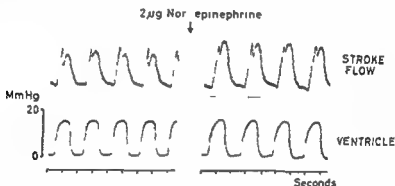


FIGURE FORTY ONE

The response in stroke flow and intraventricular pressure to injection of 2 µg nor epinephrine. The intraventricular pressure increased moderately while the stroke volume rose from 0.26 ml to 0.41 ml. There was a net increase in cardiac output from 8.85 ml/min to 12.3 ml/min. Time marks: one second.

lower vertebrate heart as well. Figure 41 demonstrates the effects on ventricular outflow and pressure from injection of 2 µg nor epinephrine into a mesenteric vein. The stroke volume increased conspicuously from 0.26 ml to 0.41 ml. There was a slight reduction in heart rate while there was a net increase in cardiac output from 8.85 ml/min to 12.30 ml/min.

#### DISCUSSION

No earlier results on cardiac output and simultaneous intracardiac and intravascular pressures in a lower vertebrate have to the author's knowledge been published. A discussion and evaluation of the data will therefore be an attempt to put the acquired information in proper relation to modern views on cardiac performance and regulation in higher vertebrates in general, notably a selected group of mammalian species.

most efficient functioning. A small heart has to contract through a wider range than a large heart in order to expel the same volume. However, the strain on a muscle fiber in holding a high pressure or in rapidly ejecting a given volume is concurrently smaller (Laplace law). The atria in *Amphiuma* seem in a unique way to have taken advantage of both these physical factors. The volume of the atrium (right atrium) is generally large and a relatively small shortening will expel a sizable volume. A considerable portion of the atrial volume, however, is made up of the finger like muscular diverticula of very small dimensions. These spaces may contribute to the rapid ejection and development of tension without necessitating a large strain on their muscle fibers.<sup>1</sup>

#### II VENTRICULAR END DIASTOLIC VOLUME AND VENTRICULAR DISTENSIBILITY

As has been emphasized earlier the ventricular end diastolic volume in *Amphiuma* is the result solely of atrial activity combined with possible concomitant changes in ventricular distensibility. Distensibility is here taken to imply changes in the resistance to stretch of the myocardium. The atria in *Amphiuma* are hence given a double task, namely to act as receiving and storing chambers and at the same time by their contraction to be responsible for the degree of ventricular distension and hence the energy release of ventricular contraction in accordance with the Starling concept. The results demonstrated, however, that the diastolic fiber length was not the sole determinant of the stroke volume. Thus the stimulus of an increased backflow was not always sufficient to bring about an increased cardiac output. Both the general state of the myocardium and the size of the residual volume seemed to exert an effect on the shortening of the ventricular myocardium. Likewise it was frequently observed that an increased stroke volume could prevail for a considerable time, even at smaller heart sizes when the ventricle adjusted to a smaller systolic residue. The resistance of the ventricle to the inflowing blood seemed similarly to be an independent variable. This was disclosed by drug injections (acetylcholine, epinephrine) when a larger end diastolic volume could ensue. Changes in distensibility and amount of systolic residue must therefore be considered important modifying factors for the end diastolic fiber length and the stroke volume discharged also in *Amphiuma*. Shannon and Wiggers (1939) maintain that the cardiac reserve represented by the large residual volume in frogs differs widely from conditions in mammalian forms where the residual volume is relatively far smaller. They argue that both the turtle and frog retain

<sup>1</sup> This idea is the outcome of discussions with Dr. R. Hol of the Radiology Department at Ullevaal Hospital, Oslo, Norway.

for representatives of all classes of lower vertebrates. A considerable storage factor is represented in the sinus venosus of *Amphiuma*. The reservoir is particularly accessible for instant mobilization. The fact that both rate and force of the sinus venosus contractions may be markedly influenced by signals of an increased filling pressure from the greater veins seems of fundamental consequence.

#### C. ATRIAL END DIASTOLIC VOLUME AND ATRIAL DISTENSIBILITY

The aforementioned importance of the atria for cardiac performance in *Amphiuma* puts particular emphasis on the atrial end diastolic volume and its determinants. It seems of importance that atrial filling to a large extent takes place as a result of an active contraction in the sinus venosus. The atrial structure thus appears to be highly compliant. This is a factor of possible importance for its filling, considering the changes in intrapericardial pressure set up during ventricular contraction. These pressure changes will likely affect the atrial attraction or acceptance to the inflowing blood.

The large spontaneous changes in end systolic or residual volumes observed in the atria, particularly in the right, provide further evidence of the important role played by these compartments in the total cardiac energy release.

#### D. ATRIAL CONTRACTILITY

It was clearly demonstrable from the radiological experiments (Part Three) that ventricular filling is an extraordinarily rapid process occupying considerably less time than it would in a mammalian heart at comparable heart rate. The impedance to ventricular inflow must be extremely low as the atrial contraction only rarely appeared in the ventricular pressure record. The almost explosive filling of the ventricle also points toward a very high rate of change in length of the atrial muscle fibers. An increase in the rate of change in length and the rapid development of tension is exactly what is covered by the term 'increased contractility' in the present context. This term does not have a generally accepted definition and much confusion has arisen from its diffuse meaning. Rushmer (1961) maintains that increased contractility means that the myocardium develops tension more rapidly, shortening occurs more quickly and ejection is faster, without a necessary accompanying increase in the actual quantities of these variables. The stroke volume can hence be increased by increased contractility, in particular by more complete systolic ejection.

The peculiar atrial structure referred to earlier in this discussion invites some speculations about the optimal size of a cardiac chamber for its

most efficient functioning. A small heart has to contract through a wider range than a large heart in order to expel the same volume. However, the strain on a muscle fiber in holding a high pressure or in rapidly ejecting a given volume is concurrently smaller (Laplace law). The atria in *Amphiuma* seem in a unique way to have taken advantage of both these physical factors. The volume of the atrium (right atrium) is generally large and a relatively small shortening will expel a sizable volume. A considerable portion of the atrial volume, however, is made up of the finger like muscular diverticula of very small dimensions. These spaces may contribute to the rapid ejection and development of tension without necessitating a large strain on their muscle fibers.<sup>1</sup>

#### E. VENTRICULAR END DIASTOLIC VOLUME AND VENTRICULAR DISTENSIBILITY

As has been emphasized earlier the ventricular end diastolic volume in *Amphiuma* is the result solely of atrial activity combined with possible concomitant changes in ventricular distensibility. Distensibility is here taken to imply changes in the resistance to stretch of the myocardium. The atria in *Amphiuma* are hence given a double task, namely to act as receiving and storing chambers and at the same time by their contraction to be responsible for the degree of ventricular distension and hence the energy release of ventricular contraction in accordance with the Starling concept. The results demonstrated, however, that the diastolic fiber length was not the sole determinant of the stroke volume. Thus the stimulus of an increased backflow was not always sufficient to bring about an increased cardiac output. Both the general state of the myocardium and the size of the residual volume seemed to exert an effect on the shortening of the ventricular myocardium. Likewise it was frequently observed that an increased stroke volume could prevail for a considerable time even at smaller heart sizes when the ventricle adjusted to a smaller systolic residue. The resistance of the ventricle to the inflowing blood seemed similarly to be an independent variable. This was disclosed by drug injections (acetylcholine, epinephrine) when a larger end diastolic volume could ensue. Changes in distensibility and amount of systolic residue must therefore be considered important modifying factors for the end-diastolic fiber length and the stroke volume discharged also in *Amphiuma*. Shannon and Wiggers (1939) maintain that the cardiac reserve represented by the large residual volume in frogs differs widely from conditions in mammalian forms where the residual volume is relatively far smaller. They argue that both the turtle and frog retain

<sup>1</sup> This idea is the outcome of discussions with Dr. R. Hol of the Radiology Department at Ullevaal Hospital, Oslo, Norway.

for representatives of all classes of lower vertebrates. A considerable storage factor is represented in the sinus venosus of *Amphiuma*. The reservoir is particularly accessible for instant mobilization. The fact that both rate and force of the sinus venosus contractions may be markedly influenced by signals of an increased filling pressure from the greater veins seems of fundamental consequence.

#### C. ATRIAL END DIASTOLIC VOLUME AND ATRIAL DISTENSIBILITY

The aforementioned importance of the atrium for cardiac performance in *Amphiuma* puts particular emphasis on the atrial end diastolic volume and its determinants. It seems of importance that atrial filling to a large extent takes place as a result of an active contraction in the sinus venosus. The atrial structure thus appears to be highly compliant. This is a factor of possible importance for its filling, considering the changes in intrapericardial pressure set up during ventricular contraction. These pressure changes will likely affect the atrial attraction or acceptance to the inflowing blood.

The large spontaneous changes in end systolic or residual volumes observed in the atria, particularly in the right, provide further evidence of the important role played by these compartments in the total cardiac energy release.

#### ■ ATRIAL CONTRACTILITY

It was clearly demonstrable from the radiological experiments (Part Three) that ventricular filling is an extraordinarily rapid process occupying considerably less time than it would in a mammalian heart at comparable heart rate. The impedance to ventricular inflow must be extremely low as the atrial contraction only rarely appeared in the ventricular pressure record. The almost explosive filling of the ventricle also points toward a very high rate of change in length of the atrial muscle fibers. An increase in the rate of change in length and the rapid development of tension is exactly what is covered by the term 'increased contractility' in the present context. This term does not have a generally accepted definition, and much confusion has arisen from its diffuse meaning. Rushmer (1961) maintains that increased contractility means that the myocardium develops tension more rapidly, shortening occurs more quickly, and ejection is faster, without a necessary accompanying increase in the actual quantities of these variables. The stroke volume can hence be increased by increased contractility, in particular by more complete systolic ejection.

The peculiar atrial structure referred to earlier in this discussion invites some speculations about the optimal size of a cardiac chamber for its

pressure. Their results evoke an obvious objection in that an artificially increased heart rate such as they used is radically different from a tachycardia governed by an increased load on the heart arising from normal conditions.

An increase in the load on the heart produced by an artificial increase in venous return as applied in the present study is similarly not comparable with normally occurring exercise or similar conditions demanding an increased output from the heart. However, an increase in the venous return is a necessary accompaniment to any adjustment to a maintained higher level of cardiac output.

The responses obtained varied greatly, and even in one specimen two successive attempts to artificially increase the venous return could give opposite results: one a tachycardia with a decreased stroke volume and one an increase in stroke volume with unchanged heart rate. No conclusive evidence became available indicating the factors responsible for each response. There are indications that a heart with a large end diastolic size responded with no change in heart rate.

Meanwhile it was conclusively demonstrated that a significant increase in cardiac output was always associated with an unchanged heart rate and increased stroke volume. The decreased stroke volume during tachycardia was never compensated for by the increased heart rate and cardiac output remained unchanged or increased insignificantly. This finding is at variance with results obtained in mammalian forms where an increase in stroke volume is not an essential feature of the cardiac response to exercise (Franklin *et al.* 1959).

The stronger emphasis on stroke volume for an increased output in the lower vertebrates is most marked in fishes, where the heart seems to lack sympathetic innervation entirely (Stannius 1849) and rarely responds with a tachycardia to an artificial increase in venous return (Johansen 1962).

#### SUMMARY

Pulsatile cardiac outflow and intracardiac and intravascular pressures have been recorded simultaneously in *Amphiuma tridactylum*.

An increased venous return or outflow resistance to the sinus venosus and atria produced augmentation in both rate and force of contraction of these chambers. Atrial contraction coincided with the period of ventricular filling and was entirely responsible for the latter. Ventricular contraction lasted long compared to conditions in higher vertebrates. The timing and ejection pattern from the heart is described.

In a 750 g specimen the stroke volume was 0.67 ml, giving a cardiac

a substantial residual volume at the end of each ejection, sufficient to cause a significant ventricular discharge in a premature contraction beginning during the isometric relaxation phase. The importance of the systolic residue as a regulating factor has more recently become accepted teaching in mammalian cardiovascular physiology, thanks to a number of workers (Rushmer 1955, Katz 1955, and Gauer 1955). The difference between the lower and higher vertebrates in this respect is hence a matter of degree. In the present context it can be said that the residual volumes of all cardiac compartments in *Amphiuma* seem to participate in the instantaneous regulation of cardiac output.

#### F VENTRICULAR CONTRACTILITY

The results obtained with injections of cathecolamines demonstrated an explicit change in contractility with only minor changes in the actual levels of pressure reached in the ventricle. The slope of the pressure gradient  $dp/dt$  was used as a measure of changes in contractility.

#### G THE CONTRACTION OF THE BULBUS CORDIS

The principal role of the contractile, highly compliant bulbus segment is to act as a pressure chamber (Part Four). This in turn makes the bulbus responsible for the maintenance of diastolic pressure and a long lasting outflow period from the heart. The data obtained offer additional suggestive evidence that the bulbar contraction may add volume to the ventricular discharge.

#### H ARTERIAL PRESSURE

The prevailing level of pressure in the systemic and pulmonary circuits will modify the ventricular output by changing the resistance to outflow. The relative changes in diastolic pressure in the two circuits set up by vasomotor reactions will be a major factor in the adjustment of volume flow in the two circuits.

It was demonstrated that an increase in peripheral resistance brought forth by lifting the tail represented a strong stimulus to an increased ventricular force of contraction.

#### I HEART RATE

Shannon and Wiggers (1939) concluded from their studies on turtles and frogs that these animals, unlike mammals, do not increase the minute output by an increase in heart rate. They noted that the normal heart rate was optimal in the sense that a further increase in rate caused a progressive reduction in minute volume with decline in systolic blood

most efficient functioning. A small heart has to contract through a wider range than a large heart in order to expel the same volume. However, the strain on a muscle fiber in holding a high pressure or in rapidly ejecting a given volume is concurrently smaller (Laplace law). The atria in *Amphiuma* seem in a unique way to have taken advantage of both these physical factors. The volume of the atrium (right atrium) is generally large and a relatively small shortening will expel a sizable volume. A considerable portion of the atrial volume, however, is made up of the finger like muscular diverticula of very small dimensions. These spaces may contribute to the rapid ejection and development of tension without necessitating a large strain on their muscle fibers.<sup>1</sup>

#### ■ VENTRICULAR END DIASTOLIC VOLUME AND VENTRICULAR DISTENSIBILITY

As has been emphasized earlier the ventricular end diastolic volume in *Amphiuma* is the result solely of atrial activity combined with possible concomitant changes in ventricular distensibility. Distensibility is here taken to imply changes in the resistance to stretch of the myocardium. The atria in *Amphiuma* are hence given a double task namely to act as receiving and storing chambers and at the same time by their contraction to be responsible for the degree of ventricular distension and hence the energy release of ventricular contraction in accordance with the Starling concept. The results demonstrated however, that the diastolic fiber length was not the sole determinant of the stroke volume. Thus the stimulus of an increased backflow was not always sufficient to bring about an increased cardiac output. Both the general state of the myocardium and the size of the residual volume seemed to exert an effect on the shortening of the ventricular myocardium. Likewise it was frequently observed that an increased stroke volume could prevail for a considerable time even at smaller heart sizes when the ventricle adjusted to a smaller systolic residue. The resistance of the ventricle to the inflowing blood seemed similarly to be an independent variable. This was disclosed by drug injections (acetylcholine epinephrine) when a larger end diastolic volume could ensue. Changes in distensibility and amount of systolic residue must therefore be considered important modifying factors for the end diastolic fiber length and the stroke volume discharged also in *Amphiuma*. Shannon and Wiggers (1939) maintain that the cardiac reserve represented by the large residual volume in frogs differs widely from conditions in mammalian forms where the residual volume is relatively far smaller. They argue that both the turtle and frog retain

<sup>1</sup> This idea is the outcome of discussions with Dr. R. Hol of the Radiology Department at Ullevaal Hospital Oslo, Norway.



for representatives of all classes of lower vertebrates. A considerable storage factor is represented in the sinus venosus of *Amphiuma*. The reservoir is particularly accessible for instant mobilization. The fact that both rate and force of the sinus venosus contractions may be markedly influenced by signals of an increased filling pressure from the greater veins seems of fundamental consequence.

#### C ATRIAL END DIASTOLIC VOLUME AND ATRIAL DISTENSIBILITY

The aforementioned importance of the atria for cardiac performance in *Amphiuma* puts particular emphasis on the atrial end diastolic volume and its determinants. It seems of importance that atrial filling to a large extent takes place as a result of an active contraction in the sinus venosus. The atrial structure thus appears to be highly compliant. This is a factor of possible importance for its filling, considering the changes in intrapericardial pressure set up during ventricular contraction. These pressure changes will likely affect the atrial attraction or acceptance to the inflowing blood.

The large spontaneous changes in end systolic or residual volumes observed in the atria, particularly in the right, provide further evidence of the important role played by these compartments in the total cardiac energy release.

#### D ATRIAL CONTRACTILITY

It was clearly demonstrable from the radiological experiments (Part Three) that ventricular filling is an extraordinarily rapid process occupying considerably less time than it would in a mammalian heart at comparable heart rate. The impedance to ventricular inflow must be extremely low as the atrial contraction only rarely appeared in the ventricular pressure record. The almost explosive filling of the ventricle also points toward a very high rate of change in length of the atrial muscle fibers. An increase in the rate of change in length and the rapid development of tension is exactly what is covered by the term 'increased contractility' in the present context. This term does not have a generally accepted definition, and much confusion has arisen from its diffuse meaning. Rushmer (1961) maintains that increased contractility means that the myocardium develops tension more rapidly, shortening occurs more quickly, and ejection is faster, without a necessary accompanying increase in the actual quantities of these variables. The stroke volume can hence be increased by increased contractility, in particular by more complete systolic ejection.

The peculiar atrial structure referred to earlier in this discussion invites some speculations about the optimal size of a cardiac chamber for its

## An experimental evaluation of the double circulation in *Amphiuma tridactylum*

The transformation from a single circulation in fishes to the complete double circulation with separated systemic and pulmonary circuits in post embryonic birds and mammals is a major event in the phylogeny of vertebrates. In fact very few phenomena have had such decisive influence on modern views of vertebrate evolution as the development of the heart and great vessels.

Until recently the subject has been treated exclusively from an anatomical viewpoint and although physiological implications have been discussed the inference has most often been solely from anatomical deductions. Experimental data recorded with adequate physiological technique are very scarce. This holds particularly true with reference to conditions within the class *Amphibia*. The question whether or not a selective distribution of blood on its passage through the heart exists in amphibians is hence subjected to sharp differences of opinion.

The existing controversy is complicated by the uncertain position of modern *Amphibia* in a direct evolutionary line from the piscine condition to the higher tetrapods. Problems of specialization, regression and convergence add difficulties to the discussion. From the point of view of circulatory adaptations to different modes of respiration the *Amphibia* provide an exclusive class of the utmost importance.

The present investigation is an attempt to produce experimental evidence about the pattern of circulation through the heart of an amphibian. By selecting a large species it has been possible to apply a hitherto unattempted methodical approach to the problem. This involves analysis of the blood oxygen content in the incoming vessels to the heart compared with the corresponding conduits leaving the heart. Apart from a preliminary report (Johansen 1962), such analysis has never been recorded for any species of *Amphibia* in spite of the fact that such procedures have put an end to the discussion about mixing conditions in the reptilian heart (White 1956, 1959; Steggerda and Essex 1957).

The present investigation also contains data obtained with high speed cinefluorography and film changer technique as well as simultaneous measurement of intravascular pressures in the systemic aorta and pulmonary circuit.

output of about 30 ml/kg/min. An artificial increase in venous pressure could evoke an increase in the stroke volume with no change in heart rate, or a marked tachycardia with reduced stroke volume. In the present case the cardiac output remained largely unchanged, whereas the increased stroke volume gave a significant increase in cardiac output. The residual volumes in the atria and ventricle represented an important part of the cardiac reserve. Factors other than the end diastolic volume, such as changes in distensibility and contractility, were important in the regulation of the stroke volume.

#### REFERENCES

- BRECHER G A, *Venous return* Grune and Stratton N Y London 1936
- BRUNINGS W, Zur Physiologie des Kreislaufs der Fische *Pflügers Arch ges Physiol* 1955 328 599 642
- DAVIES, F, E T H FRANCIS and T S KING, Electrocardiogram of the crocodilian *Nature* 1951 167 146
- FRANKLIN D L, R M ELLIS and R F RUSHMER, Aortic blood flow in dogs during treadmill exercise *J Appl Physiol* 1959 14 809 812
- GAUER O H, Volume changes of the left ventricle during blood pooling and release in the intact animal. Their effects on left ventricular performance *Physiol Rev* 1955 35 143 155
- HAMILTON W F, Filling of the normal human heart in relation to the cardiogram and abdominal plethysmogram *Am J Physiol* 1930 91 712 719
- JOHANSEN K, Circulation in the three chambered snake heart *Circ Research* 1955 3 828 832
- JOHANSEN, K, Cardiac output and pulsatile aortic flow in the teleost *Gadus* *Comp Biochem Physiol* 1962 7 169 174
- KATZ L N, Analysis of the several factors regulating the performance of the heart *Physiol Rev* 1955 35 91 106
- LION E P, A study of the circulation, blood pressure and respiration of the frog *J Gen Physiol* 1928 8 279 290
- MULLEN R K, The effect of calcium on the electrocardiogram of two iguanid lizards *Copeia* 1962 269 272
- NERLICH W E, Determinants of impairment of cardiac filling during progressive pericardial effusion *Circulation* 1951 3 377 383
- PURKINJE J E, Jahresbericht schles Ges f Vaterl Cultur Breslau 1843 pp 157
- RUSHMER, R F, Applicability of Starling's law of the heart to intact unanesthetized animals *Physiol Rev* 1955 35 138 142
- RUSHMER R F, Cardiovascular dynamics Saunders Phil London 1961 503 pp
- SHANNON E W and C J WIGGERS, The dynamics of the frog and turtle hearts during the non refractory phase of systole *Am J Physiol* 1939 128 709 715
- SPENCER M P and F C GREISS, Dynamics of ventricular ejection *Circ Research* 1962 10 274 279
- STANNIUS, H, Das peripherische Nervensystem der Fische Rostock 1849

ration with pure oxygen. If cutaneous respiration was restricted by drying the skin the measured arterio-venous differences in oxygen content increased significantly. Blood returning from the skin is drained in the sinus venosus and contributes only to a general elevation of the blood oxygen content.

#### *Radiological examinations*

A primary requisite for a selective distribution of blood on its passage through the amphibian heart is to keep the two types of inflowing blood separate in the undivided ventricle. In order to elucidate this problem contrast was injected in the posterior vena cava and followed by serial roentgen exposures on its passage through the heart.

Figure 43 demonstrates an early stage of right atrial contraction subsequent to contrast injection in the posterior vena cava. Atrial contraction had closed the sino-atrial valves opening the atrio-ventricular valves and the ventricle is seen to be filled in its right segment. The filling occurred in discrete furrows arranged in antero-posterior direction.

Figure 44 is a series of roentgen frames demonstrating the passage of contrast injected into the posterior vena cava. The animal was placed in dorsal position. The contrast injection filled the right atrium (Fig. 44A). One frame later (0.50 sec.) the rapid atrial contraction filled the right portion of the ventricle leaving a distinct demarcation toward the left side (Fig. 44B). During the subsequent ventricular contraction (Fig. 44 C D E) the clear demarcation between the right and left portion of the ventricle was maintained both in the phase of isometric contraction as well as throughout the entire period of ventricular ejection. Details about the course of the ventricular discharge up through the bulbus cordis and on to the various arterial arches were somewhat obscured by the next atrial filling covering the same area on the films. It is, however, beyond doubt that there existed a clear preference for filling of the pulmonary arteries. Frame D in Figure 44 shows that the contrast had propagated past the arch in the truncus arteriosus and in a posterior direction to a level corresponding to the apex of the heart. At the same time there was only a vague filling of one of the aortic trunks of the truncus arteriosus. In the subsequent frame (Fig. 44E) the pulmonary arteries are well defined along their entire course while only the right aortic arch is faintly defined.

Figures 45 and 46 depict corresponding series of roentgen films with the contrast medium injected in the pulmonary vein. Figure 45A shows a simultaneous filling of the veno-atrial and the atrio-ventricular junction. The ventricle is filled in discrete furrows in the upper left section. It should be noted again that the increase in intraventricular pressure

# RESULTS

Table 1

Oxygen content of blood from the great vessels of *Amphiuma tridactylum*

Animal No	O <sub>2</sub> cont (vol %) Pulmonary arch	O <sub>2</sub> cont (vol %) Aortic arch	O cont (vol %) Sinus venosus	O cont (vol %) Pulmonary vein	Method
1	48	77			Natelson (micro van Slyke)
2	53	115			
3	65	101			
4	48	67			Scholander
4	53	82		84	
5	63	86			
5	68	81			
6	61	63			
7	64	105			
7	69	85	50	85	
8	88	88			
9	79	86			
9	68	81	67	76	
10	96	110			
10	90	100	68	105	
11	75	91			
12	82	102	79	102	
13	85	102	50	102	

## Oxygen Analysis

Table 1 summarizes the results obtained from the analysis of oxygen content in the great vessels of *Amphiuma tridactylum*. In animals 7, 12, and 13 there is a complete correspondence in oxygen content between blood from the pulmonary vein and the aortic arch. In animal 12 the correspondence extends to blood from the sinus venosus and pulmonary arch respectively. In animal 13, however, the blood oxygen values in the pulmonary artery are increased compared to the values from the sinus venosus.

In other animals studied there was always some degree of mixing. The selective passage could easily be disturbed or abolished, as can be seen from animals 6 and 8. A factor of prime importance was the general level of pressure in the heart, bulbus cordis, and various arterial arches. At low pressures (and hemorrhage, animals 6 and 8) an almost complete mixing seemed to ensue.

It is interesting to note the small arterio venous differences in oxygen content. The difference remained small, even following lung respi-



FIGURE FORTY THREE.

A contrast injection in the posterior vena cava demonstrates the inflow pattern from the right atrium into the right portion of the ventricle. Animal in ventral position. Exposure at 50 kV. Exposure time 0.03 seconds.

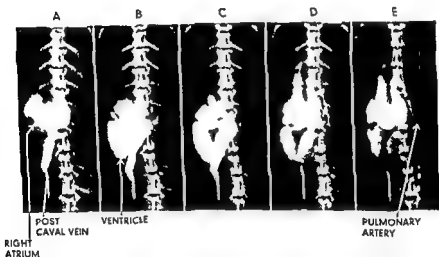


FIGURE FORTY FOUR.

Contrast injection in the posterior vena cava. Note the clear demarcation between the right and left portion of the ventricle. The selective distribution is largely maintained in the bulbus cordis with a preference for filling of the pulmonary arteries. Animal in dorsal position. Rate of exposures 2 frames per second at 50 kV. Exposure time 0.03 seconds. A, B, C, D, E are consecutive frames.

during ventricular contraction did not deteriorate the selective ventricular filling (Figs 45 and 46). At maximal ventricular contraction (Fig 45E) the residual ventricular content was still arranged in furrows with no admixture to the right side. Figure 46, taken with the animal in a slightly oblique ventral position, reveals the pattern of ventricular outflow through the bulbus cordis. The contrast is seen to be expelled in well defined streams through the partially divided bulbus cordis. Reaching the truncus arteriosus, which is completely divided into systemic and pulmonary conduits, the sharp laminar outflow pattern is dissolved and defines the large caliber of the systemic conduits of the truncus arteriosus. Figures 45 and 46 both give a manifest demonstration of a high degree of selective filling from the left atrium through the undivided ventricle and bulbus cordis and on to the systemic arterial arches.

To describe more closely the pattern of ventricular outflow a series of contrast injections were done with roentgen exposures taken with a horizontal beam. By doing this it was possible to avoid a large extent of overlapping between the atrium and the bulbus cordis. In the experiment underlying Figure 47 the contrast medium was injected into the pulmonary vein. The left atrium and the ventricle as well as the bulbus cordis and truncus arteriosus leading off into the various arches are well defined. In the proximal part of the bulbus cordis the ventricular discharge is arranged in two separate streams. Where the bulbus makes a bend toward the left, the two streams depart, each making a loop. The most ventral stream makes a sharp loop and passes dorsally in the anterior direction after having crossed the other stream. In the truncus arteriosus this stream comes to lay dorsally, but later makes an acute bend in the posterior direction. The bend represents one pulmonary arch leading off into one of the two pulmonary arteries. The other stream makes a loop and passes ventrally in the anterior direction (Fig 47E) and on to the truncus arteriosus, where it splits up into paired aortic and carotid trunks. In the occipital region they turn dorsally, and the two aortic arches unite to form the dorsal aorta in the posterior direction.

In the truncus arteriosus there is complete anatomical separation between the various systemic and pulmonary arterial trunks. In the bulbus, however, the anatomical structures, including the spiral valve, offer guidance to the two streams, although there is ample opportunity for admixture. Figure 48 demonstrates how the discrete, streamlined outflow pattern extends far into the contracting ventricle. When too large volumes of contrast were injected the selective distribution was reduced or abolished.

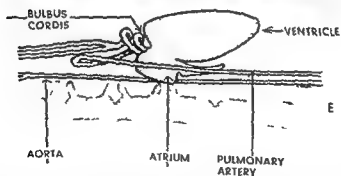
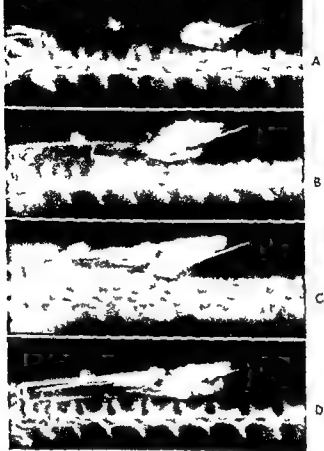


FIGURE FORTY SEVEN

Contrast injection in the pulmonary vein. Animal in dorsal position. Roentgen exposures in side projection (horizontal beam). The outflow pattern from the ventricle to the various arterial arches is demonstrated. The schematic drawing illustrates the helical motion of the outflow streams when passing through the bulbus cordis. Rate of exposures: 2 frames per second at 50 kV. Exposure rate: 0.03 seconds. A and B are consecutive frames. BC and CD are spaced one second apart.



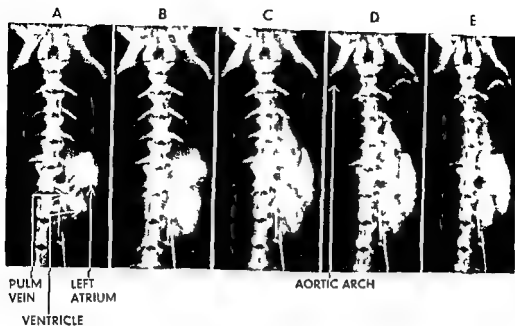


FIGURE FORTY FIVE

Contrast injection in the pulmonary vein. Frame A shows the left atrium with veno-atrial and atrio-ventricular junctions. Ventricular filling is restricted to the upper left portion of the ventricle (frames A and B). Frames C, D, E demonstrate a clear preference for filling of the systemic arteries. Animal in dorsal position. Rate of exposures 2 frames per second at 50 kV. Exposure time 0.03 seconds. A, B, C, D, E are consecutive frames.

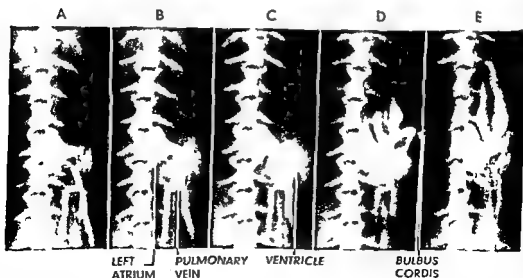


FIGURE FORTY SIX

Contrast injection in the pulmonary vein demonstrates the streamlined outflow pattern from the contracting ventricle through the undivided bulbus cordis and on to the pulmonary arteries. There is no filling of the pulmonary arches. Animal in slightly

### Pressure measurements

The simultaneous recording of pressures in one pulmonary artery and a systemic artery gave a rather wide range of pressures in different animals. The systolic pressure values were always quite similar in the two circuits, while the diastolic pressures varied greatly, particularly in the pulmonary circuit, which could display diastolic pressures similar to those recorded

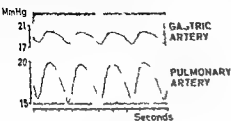


FIGURE FORTY NINE

Simultaneous pressure recordings from a branch of the gastric artery and a pulmonary artery

Time marks onesecond

in the systemic circuit or markedly lower. Figure 49 demonstrates a situation where the pressures in the gastric artery and a pulmonary artery were recorded simultaneously, cannulated at equal distance from the heart. The results were checked by interchanging the pressure transducers. The systolic values are quite similar, and fluctuate around 20 mm Hg. The diastolic levels however were decidedly lower in the pulmonary artery. Note also the more abrupt and rapid rise and fall of pressure in the pulmonary circuit. There is a slightly earlier pressure rise in the pulmonary artery. Their maxima however, are reached at the same time.

### DISCUSSION

The long lasting discussion about the mode of circulation through the amphibian heart is centered around an old account of the circulation through the heart of the frog (Brücke 1852, later modified by Sabauer 1873) now referred to as the classical hypothesis. In brief this theory states that oxygen rich blood returning from the lungs through the pulmonary veins to the left atrium will occupy the left portion of the ventricle whereas the oxygen depleted blood returning through the sinus venosus to the right atrium will come to occupy the right portion of the ventricle. It was alleged that the trabeculate structure of the ventricle tended to keep the two types of blood unmixed in the ventricle. Upon ventricular contraction the oxygen poor blood occupying the right portion of the ventricle was assumed to leave the ventricle first because of a closer situation of the bulbus aperture to the right of the ventricle. The bulbus cordis is partially divided by a spiral valve. Aided by this valve the oxygen poor blood was directed toward the pulmonary

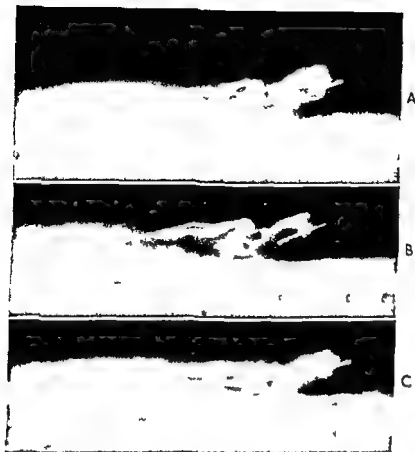


FIGURE FORTY EIGHT

Contrast injection in the pulmonary vein. Animal in dorsal position. Roentgen exposures in side projection (horizontal beam). The typical channeling of the ventricular discharge extends far into the contracting ventricle. In frame C the aorta is well defined while there is no filling of the pulmonary arteries past the pulmonary arches. Rate of exposure: 2 frames per second at 50 kV. Exposure rate: 0.03 seconds. A and B are consecutive frames. C falls 1.5 seconds later.

flow conditions within the heart became clear as relatively slight hemorrhage and weakening of the heart abolished the selective distribution

The experimental series is too limited to document a definite trend in the shunting pattern. The six experiments with values obtained on the venous as well as on the arterial side of the heart suggest that a left to right shunt is prevalent. The samples from the sinus venosus were taken posterior to the entrance of the left and right ducts of Cuvier. As these vessels carry blood from the pharyngeal region, the oxygen values in the right atrium were possibly slightly higher.

Steggerda and Essex (1957) demonstrated the pattern of circulation in the turtle heart (*Chelhydra serpentina*) by oxygen analysis. They emphasize the dominance of a left to right shunt (50-80%) compared to a small (> 10%) right to left shunt. They point out the similarity between this finding and what is commonly encountered in mammals with large congenital ventricular septal defects.

The small arteriovenous oxygen differences found in the present study serve to emphasize the importance of cutaneous and pharyngeal respiration in *Amphiuma*.

Most studies dealing with the mode of circulation through the amphibian heart utilize some form of indicator technique based on the injection of a substance that can be traced along its course through the heart to the larger arteries.

Most of these techniques suffer serious deficiencies and great caution must be observed in the interpretation of the results. If, however, the pressure and volume relations on the venous side are not unduly disturbed by the injection of an indicator and provided the surgical interference necessary to study the indicator's passage through the heart is not too disturbing, the method should disclose whether mixing takes place within the undivided ventricle and bulbus. The method will, however, be of less use in the evaluation of the extent of admixture between the left and right side.

Ozorio de Almeida (1923) studying the large South American bullfrog *Leptodactylus ocellatus* found distinct demarcations between the two types of blood in the ventricle when he applied artificial lung respiration. As soon as the respiration was suspended the demarcation disappeared promptly. He observed the heart with direct illumination. As early as 1869 Fritsch had argued that the color changes that can be observed in this way are due entirely to differences in the transparency of the vessel walls. Similarly, Foxon (1947) maintains that observations from a visual inspection in direct light have no obvious relationship to the blood inside but merely reflect varying shades of red ascribable to the vessel

artery This directional flow was also thought to be assisted by a lower pressure existing in the pulmonary vessels As ventricular contraction proceeds and the pressure increases the spiral valve was assumed to change position, shutting off the flow to the pulmonary artery, with a consequent channeling of blood into the aortic arches This blood was called mixed blood, and was assumed to have occupied the middle portion of the ventricle Finally, toward the end of ventricular contraction the purely oxygen rich blood would enter the carotid arches ensuring the supply of only oxygen rich blood to the brain The reasoning for this last separation was based on the idea that pressure in the carotid labyrinths had to be overcome before blood could be expelled into the carotid arteries This 'classical hypothesis' was accepted early and has been the general teaching, even in modern textbooks

Vandervael (1933) discarded the hypothesis as completely erroneous and produced evidence of a randomized distribution of blood in the amphibian heart His work made the basis of the so called 'mixing hypothesis' More recent accounts have not conclusively solved the problem

The major part of the studies published to elucidate the pattern of the circulation in amphibians deals with anurans, and species of the genus *Rana* have aroused particular interest Few earlier experimental studies on the urodele amphibians have been published (Noble 1925) Foxon (1955) has pointed out that when considering recent *Amphibia* it should be noted that the *Anura* and *Urodela* differ from each other in many respects, and that the frogs and the salamanders are descended from 'very different Palaeozoic stocks' (Romer 1945)

In the present context differences between anurans and urodeles are of secondary importance, as the main objective is to describe the status and possible mechanisms of a double circulation without considering its phylogenetical relationship On this basis a comparison with anurans is justifiable, particularly because the anatomy of the central cardiovascular structures in *Amphiuma* shows many similarities with conditions in frogs The mode of respiration with primarily lung breathing but also pharyngeal and cutaneous breathing shows small variance from conditions in *Rana* (Baker 1949)

No available method can bring more conclusive evidence to the question of mixing conditions than analysis of the blood oxygen content in the greater vessels connected with the heart The data presently obtained bring indisputable support to the idea that the amphibian heart, represented by *Amphiuma tridactylum*, can accommodate two separate blood streams with only slight mixing occurring under certain circumstances That such a selective distribution depends closely on normal pressure and

which de Graaf maintains is the larger of the two will to a considerable extent contaminate the right ventricular blood. De Graaf is unable to offer any explanation as to how the selection is maintained in the bulbus. He feels that the larger circulating volume in the pulmonary circuit is a natural consequence of the lesser peripheral resistance in that direction. The smaller resistance in the pulmonary circuit he evaluated from the low diastolic pressure levels in these vessels. From the form of the pulse curve he deduced that the spiral valve blocks off the entrance to the pulmonary arch before the major propulsive force of the ventricular contraction is expended. The significance of the spiral valve continues to remain obscure. He suggests that its movement may ensure that the systemic vessels receive sufficient blood in spite of their greater peripheral resistance. In a more recent study Simons (1959) arrived at conclusions equally distinct from the 'classical hypothesis' although he defends a selective distribution. He worked with the anurans *Rana temporaria* and *Bufo bufo* and the urodeles *Salamandra maculosa* and *Triturus cristatus*. His methodical approach consisted in using the dye Evans Blue as an indicator and cinephotographic technique in recording the passage of the dye through the heart. He drew the conclusion that the movement of the blood is simultaneous in all the arterial arches. The contents expelled from the two atria remained virtually separate in the passage through the ventricle as far as the base of the bulbus cordis (conus arteriosus). From there on the separation was maintained in the anurans by the presence of the spiral valves whereas mixing took place in the two species of urodeles because of the reduction or lack of a spiral valve.

The larger size of *Amphiuma* compared to amphibians studied earlier gives a definite advantage in the application of an indicator technique. The volume of contrast injected was small compared to the total in flowing volume. The injection pressure was similarly kept low. It should be noted however that the contrast medium used Hypaque 45% has a fairly strong vasodilatory effect in mammals (Landgren and Tornell 1958). The procedure involved a minimum of surgery with no direct interference to the heart itself. Caneradiography and film changer techniques gave a direct recording of the phenomena independent of the investigator's visual observations. Figures 44, 45 and 46 leave no doubt that atrial in flow is largely kept separated in the undivided ventricle. The trabeculate sponge like structure of the ventricle seems to be mainly responsible for this by receiving the blood from the two sources into the numerous slit like chambers in the ventricular wall. The effectiveness of such means for separation is stressed when it is remembered that the selective distribution may also be retained during the entire ventricular systole. The author contends that in order to achieve this high degree of

walls Ozorio de Almeida's observations clearly refute the statement of Foxon, in particular because the color changes were also apparent in the ventricle and were clearly related to the artificial respiration Foxon's approach to the problem was to use the transillumination method devised by Vandervael (1933) Vandervael, in his work on *Rana (temporaria and esculenta)*, had not only discarded the explanation for selective distribution in accordance with the 'classical theory', but he denies that a selective distribution takes place at all He found no time difference in the movement of blood in the carotid, aortic, and pulmo cutaneous arteries, and that blood coming into the ventricle from the two atria was mixed completely in the ventricle and not kept separated Noble (1925), working with a large number of species, both anurans and urodeles, had used ink solutions and followed their pathways visually through the heart and great vessels He gave his full support to the 'classical theory' for the species that use their lungs as the most important respiratory mechanism and have a correspondingly well developed spiral valve arrangement in the bulbus cordis Peelle (1931) and Acolat (1931, 1938 a, b) similarly used dye injections and obtained separation of the streams, although Acolat admits that some mixing must take place Foxon and Walls (1947), in agreement with Vandervael, maintain that the distribution in the ventricle is considerable

Hazelhoff (1952), working with *Rana*, and Simons and Michaelis (1953), working with the Austrian frog, *Hyla caerulea*, found a selective distribution The latter authors used ultraviolet illumination and injections of a fluorescent dye into the venous system They found the selective distribution a very labile characteristic depending on circumstances which had yet to be defined Apart from the meticulous works of Foxon (1947, 1951), Simons and Michaelis (1953), de Graaf (1957), and Simons (1959), most workers have approached the problem largely in a speculative way, with few experimental verifications of their suppositions This is true also of Sharma (1957), who worked with *Rana tigrina* and deduced a selective distribution from purely anatomical studies He is, however, the only author to report the existence of a particular ventricular septum in an amphibian He is not referring to an extension of the atrial septum into the ventricular lumen, but to a muscular ridge existing as a separate entity De Graaf (1957) presented an experimental study on *Xenopus laevis*, dealing with the blood distribution Like Simons and Michaelis, he used injection of fluorescein as indicator He concludes that there must be a physiological connection between the right side of the ventricle and the pulmo cutaneous arches and between the left side of the ventricle and the other arches However, although the right atrial blood does not contaminate the left side of the ventricle, the output of the left atrium,

laminar flow through the bulbus cordis. The retention of the discrete, separate paths through the entire bulbus and into the arterial conduits of the truncus arteriosus strongly suggests that some form of anatomical guidance supports the laminar outflow pattern, especially as the two paths make a full loop without losing their separate course. The spiral valve as well as the bulbar in- and outflow valves assumingly participate in this anatomical support. The films did not disclose whether the filling of the pulmonary arches preceded or was simultaneous with the filling of all the arterial arches.

Figure 48 shows that following a contrast injection in the pulmonary vein the systemic arches are visible throughout the bulbus and truncus, and continue as the dorsal aorta far back in posterior direction, whereas the pulmonary circuit is only faintly discernible past the arch. This may indicate that the separating mechanism at this level may involve an obstruction in the bulbus, possibly related to the position of the spiral valve. When a heart was working at a large size with a relatively large stroke volume, the degree of mixing seemed to increase.

The lower resistance in the pulmonary circuits and the role of this in the separating mechanism is frequently stressed in the literature. Only a few workers, however, have measured the pressure difference in the two circuits, and nobody has earlier conducted measurements on intact free moving specimens.

Gomperts (1884) working with frogs, found no difference in pressure, but that there was a simultaneous rise and fall of pressure in the three arches. Acolat (1938a, b) found a slightly lower pressure (1.3 mm Hg) in the pulmonary artery of frogs. He noted that the pressure rose and fell more abruptly in the pulmonary artery. De Graaf (1957) recorded simultaneous pressures with adequate techniques. He found wide ranges in pressure in some experiments ascribable to the level of anesthesia. The main feature of his results was that the pulmocutaneous artery showed consistently lower pressure than those in the carotid or aortic arches. The pulmonary artery pressure was most commonly 7 mm Hg lower in diastolic levels compared to the others. The rise and fall of pressures in the pulmonary artery were invariably more rapid than the others, and he found a slight but true delay in the beginning of the pressure rise in the systemic arch (ca. 0.1 sec). Simons (1957), on the other hand, found on the average no difference in pressure between the pulmonary and systemic circuits, although the individual pressure levels were very labile.

The pressures recorded in the present study present an extremely variegated picture, particularly in the awake free moving animals. The author fully believes that these variations were not circumstantial but reflect normal events in the pressure levels. It is generally appreciated



selective distribution, the marked antero posterior trabeculation of the ventricular lumen is of paramount importance. The trabeculation will not only tend to keep the two types of blood separate during diastole, but as systole begins the shortening of the muscle fibers will close the free ventricular lumen and prevent admixture during isometric contraction. When the bulbar valves open, the ventricular content will escape with a high initial velocity in two main streams formed by the numerous enclosed crypts. The antero posterior orientation of the trabeculation inside the ventricle is probably a main factor in setting up the discrete laminar outflow, which makes a right-hand spiral movement at the exit from the ventricle and is guided higher up in the bulbus by the anatomical support of the bulbar valves. The tendency of the slit like chambers to be arranged in the longitudinal axis of the heart gets stronger closer to the ventricular exit, where the muscular trabeculae form a main directional outflow avenue (Zullich 1930). The central cavity of the ventricle is small, even smaller than in the frog, and does not extend any distance caudal to the atrioventricular opening (Benninghof 1921). The present radiological data offer for the first time a recorded picture of the flow pattern through the entire amphibian heart, and justify the assumption that the ventricular structure described above forms the discrete streams seen during ventricular ejection. The fact that under laminar flow conditions streamlines can exist as separate paths for long distances is well known from hydrodynamics. Similar situations in hemodynamics have only sporadically been referred to. It should be emphasized in this regard that Simons (1959) assumed that the contents of the ventricle as they are expelled into the bulbus are given a right handed spiral movement. He feels that such a helical deflection will exert a directive effect and in a major way be responsible for the separation of the blood streams.

It is of great interest to note that spiral streaming of a similar pattern has been reported to take place in the bulbar region of embryonic hearts. Bremer (1932) described a double spiral streaming in the heart of the chick embryo. Romhányi (1952) and Goertler (1955) observed a similar pattern in models of the embryonic human bulbus cordis. Simons (1959) stated that the alleged helical motion of the blood passing from the ventricle in fully developed amphibians must be a property retained from the embryonic stages, where a helical arrangement of the muscle bundles prevails (Benninghoff 1933).

In Part Four of the present investigation a smooth long lasting outflow pattern from the heart of *Amphiuma* was described made possible by the pressure chamber action of the bulbus cordis. It seems conceivable that the extended, smooth outflow may be a contributing factor to the maintained

Blood oxygen analysis, radiological techniques, and intravascular pressure measurements have been used to evaluate the mode of circulation through the heart of *Amphiuma tridactylum*. The blood oxygen values from the greater vessels arriving at and leaving the heart, as well as the radiological data, demonstrated a selective passage of blood from the right and left atria to the pulmonary arteries and systemic arteries respectively. The selective distribution was very labile and could easily be abolished. The trabeculate structure of the ventricle was an important separating factor. The ventricular discharge showed a laminar outflow pattern with a right hand spiral movement through the undivided bulbus cordis. The levels of blood pressure in the heart and larger vessels as well as the diastolic size and amount of systolic residue of the cardiac chambers were modifying factors in the selective passage. Vasomotor activity in the pulmonary and systemic circuits will similarly influence the distribution of the ventricular discharge.

## REFERENCES

- ACOLAT M. L. Recherches anatomiques relatives à la séparation du sang veineux et du sang artériel dans la corce de la Grenouille. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris* 1931 197 767-769.
- ACOLAT M. L. (a) Étude comparée de la pression sanguine dans le circuit pulmonaire et dans le circuit général chez les Batraciens et les Reptiles. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris* 1938 206 207-209.
- ACOLAT M. L. (b) Sur la répartition des sangs artériel et veineux dans les artères centrales des Batraciens et des Reptiles. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris* 1938 206 940-943.
- BAKER C. L. The comparative anatomy of the aortic arches of the urodeles and their relation to respiration and degree of metamorphosis. *J. of the Tennessee Acad. of Sci.* 1949 24 12-40.
- BENNINGHOFF A. Beiträge zur vergleichenden Anatomie und Entwicklungsgeschichte des Amphibienherzens. *Morph. Jahrb.* 1921 51 335-412.
- BENNINGHOFF A. Die Architektur des Herzmuskels der Wirbeltiere. *Handbuch vergl. Anat. Histologie* 1933 6 533-541. Berlin and Vienna: Urban & Schwarzenberg.
- BREMER J. I. The presence and influence of two spiral streams in the heart of the chick embryo. *Am. J. Anat.* 1932 49 409-440.
- BRUNKE E. von. Beiträge zur vergleichenden Anatomie und Physiologie des Gefäßsystems der Amphibien. *Deutsche Akad. Wiss. Wien* 1852 3 335-367.
- FOXON C. F. H. The mode of action of the heart of the frog. *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1917 116 565-574.
- FOXON C. F. H. A radiographic study of the passage of the blood through the heart in the frog and the toad. *Proc. Zool. Soc. London* 1951 121 509-538.
- FOXON C. F. H. Problems of the double circulation in vertebrates. *Biol. Rev.* 1955 30 1-18.
- FOXON C. F. H. and E. W. WALLS. The radiographic demonstration of the mode of action of the heart of the frog. *J. Anat. London* 1947 81 111-117.
- FRITSCH G. Zur vergleichenden Anatomie des Amphibienherzens. *Arch. Anat. Physiol.* 1891 634.

that the pulmonary vasculature is highly nonreactive both to neural and humoral stimuli, and is unaffected by the general vascular responses. As a reason for this assumption (Rushmer 1961), it is argued that the lungs are the only recipient of the output from the right heart, hence there is no need for the distributing effect of vasomotor mechanisms. This reasoning gives little thought to the phylogenetical development of the cardiovascular system. In animals devoid of a complete double circulation, vasomotor activity must have decisive importance for pulmonary flow and hence the whole mixing problem. Furthermore, it should be noted that the major cutaneous arteries (anurans) and arteries to the pharyngeal and esophageal region (urodeles) in amphibians are derived from the pulmonary arteries, which for this reason are often designated as pulmo cutaneous arteries. The skin and pharyngeal region represent most important respiratory surfaces in amphibians, and distributing effects of vasomotor activity must be important. Poczosko (1960) has shown from capillary counts *in vivo* that a deprivation of aerial breathing in frogs opens up a large number of cutaneous capillaries. The same response could be evoked during graded hypoxia and aerial breathing. He assumes a nervous control of the underlying vasomotor mechanisms. Vasomotor activity in the skin or pharyngeal region will influence the overall pressure level in the pulmonary arch, which in turn will influence the distribution of volume flow in the systemic and pulmonary circuit. Similarly, vasomotor changes in the systemic circuit will exert an effect on the pulmonary circuit.

The diversity of the results obtained by the many workers on the mixing conditions in the amphibian heart can be attributed to the extraordinary lability of the factors responsible for a selective distribution. These factors include the levels of pressure inside the heart and greater vessels as well as the size of the stroke volume and vasomotor reactions. The mode of respiration may presumably also alter the circulatory pattern. Most of these factors cannot be checked during experimental situations.

The small arterio venous oxygen differences related to the multiple ways of respiration, and the lability of the selective distribution in itself suggest that the selection pressure for the establishment of a selective distribution of blood is only influenced to a limited extent by the oxygen needs of the tissues. It seems possible that the mere presence of functional lungs provides the main stimulus in alterations of hemodynamic conditions in the direction of a functional double circuit in *Amphibia*.





ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 218.

STUDIES ON THE DETERMINATION OF  
SPERMIDINE AND SPERMINE AND  
THEIR METABOLISM IN THE  
DEVELOPING CHICK EMBRYO

BY

AARNE RAINA

HELSINKI 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 213.

STUDIES ON THE DETERMINATION OF  
SPERMIDINE AND SPERMINE AND  
THEIR METABOLISM IN THE  
DEVELOPING CHICK EMBRYO

BY

AARNE RAINA

HELSINKI 1963





ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 218

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF MEDICAL CHEMISTRY  
UNIVERSITY OF HELSINKI FINLAND

STUDIES ON THE DETERMINATION OF  
SPERMIDINE AND SPERMINE AND  
THEIR METABOLISM IN THE  
DEVELOPING CHICK EMBRYO

BY

AARNE RAINA

HELSINKI 1963



## PREFACE

The present work was carried out in the Department of Medical Chemistry University of Helsinki. I am very much indebted to my honoured teacher and chief the late Professor P. E. SIMOLA M.D. Ph.D. for suggesting to me the subject of this investigation for his unfailing interest and advice and for his kindness in placing all the facilities of his department at my disposal.

I am also greatly indebted to Assistant Professor MARTTI KOIVU SÄILO M.D. for his interest and valuable guidance during the work and for his criticism of the manuscript.

My deep gratitude is also due to Docent TAPANI LUUKKAINEN M.D. for his suggestions regarding the methodical problems of my study and to Docent JUSSI J. SAUKKONEN M.D. for his criticism of the manuscript.

I further wish to thank my colleagues in the department for many discussions and assistance during the work.

I am indebted to Mrs Sisko Asp M.A. for drawing the figures.

The English text of my manuscript has been revised by Mrs J. M. PERTTUNEN B.Sc. whom I should like to thank.

This investigation has been aided by a grant from the *1930 Johnson Foundation*.

Helsinki May 1963

AARNE RAINA

KI SKUSKIRJAPAINO  
HELSINKI 1963

# CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	7
REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE	9
Determination of Spermidine and Spermine	9
Purification and Separation of Amines for Assay	9
Quantitative Determination	11
Occurrence and Metabolism of Spermidine and Spermine	12
Occurrence	12
Biosynthesis	15
Degradation	16
Possible Physiological Role of Polyamines	18
PRESENT INVESTIGATION	22
Determination of Spermidine and Spermine	22
Material	22
Preliminary Experiments	22
Tissue Homogenization	24
Homogenization Technique	24
Effect of Hydrolysis	24
Recovery of Spermidine and Spermine Added to Homogenate	26
Purification and Separation of Spermidine and Spermine	2
Butanol Extraction	27
Paper Electrophoresis	29
Identification of Spermidine and Spermine by Paper and Thin Layer Chromatography	31
Determination of Spermidine and Spermine with Amido Black	33
Factors Affecting Staining	33
Staining and Washing Procedures	34
Dye binding Capacity of Spermidine and Spermine	37
Stability of Amido Black in Alkaline Solution	38
Specificity of the Present Method for Polyamines	39
Precision and Sensitivity	41
The Present Method	43
Discussion	45
Metabolism of Spermidine and Spermine in the Developing Chick Embryo	46
Material and Methods	46
Occurrence of Spermidine and Spermine in the Chick Embryo	49
Contents of Spermidine and Spermine in the Whole Chick Embryo at Different Stages of Development	51
Contents of Spermidine and Spermine in Various Tissues of the Embryo and in Extra-embryonic Parts	53









## INTRODUCTION

Spermidine  $H_2N(CH_2)_4NH(CH_2)_3NH_2$  and spermine  $H_2N(CH_2)_3NH(CH_2)_4NH(CH_2)_3NH_2$  are aliphatic polyamines that have long been known to be normal tissue constituents. However, our knowledge of these amines, their metabolism and biological function advanced relatively slowly until recent years.

Studies concerning the occurrence of polyamines have shown that they are widely distributed in animal tissues. Large quantities of spermidine and spermine are found, for instance, in the pancreas, liver, spleen and kidney. Large amounts of spermine are found in human semen. During the last few years polyamines have also been detected in several microorganisms and bacterial viruses. The intracellular localization of polyamines is poorly understood at present. Evidence has been presented that certain intracellular particles, e.g. ribosomes, contain polyamines.

Many reports have confirmed that polyamines are able to stabilize nucleic acids and nucleic acid containing particles, such as ribosomes and viruses, against degradation and certain denaturing agents. This property, taken with the occurrence of polyamines in the subcellular particles, has suggested that these substances may play a physiological role as stabilizers. Further evidence is needed, however, to establish the correctness of this hypothesis.

During the last decade much additional knowledge has accumulated concerning the metabolic fate of spermidine and spermine in microorganisms. The degradation pathway has been elucidated in several bacteria *in vivo* and recently also using partially purified enzymes. It has further been shown that certain isotopically labelled compounds are incorporated into polyamines. The various steps in the biosynthesis of spermidine have also been confirmed with purified bacterial enzymes, whereas the enzymic synthesis of spermine has not been successful at present.

The metabolism of spermidine and spermine in animal tissues is as yet much less well understood. There is only meagre evidence

Discussion	6
Biosynthesis of Spermidine and Spermine in the Developing Chick	
Embryo	8
Preliminary Experiments	58
Effect of Ethionine on the Polyamine Content of Whole Chick	
Embryos	59
Incorporation Studies with $^{14}\text{C}$ Labelled Compounds	60
Incorporation of 1-4 $^{14}\text{C}$ Putrescine	61
Incorporation of 2 $^{14}\text{C}$ DL Ornithine	63
Incorporation of 2 $^{14}\text{C}$ DL Methionine	65
Effect of Ethionine on the Incorporation of 2 $^{14}\text{C}$ Methionine	66
Discussion	67
GENERAL SUMMARY	71
REFERENCES	74

## REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

Most of the early reports regarding the chemical, biochemical and pharmacological properties of spermidine and spermine have been reviewed in a monograph on the biogenic amines (GROGNEHM 1951). In the last ten years much additional knowledge respecting these amines has been accumulated. A review of the literature on the biochemistry of spermidine and spermine has recently been published by TABOR, TABOR and POSENTHAL (1961). In the following section the various methods used for quantitative estimation as well as the occurrence, biosynthesis and degradation of these polyamines are described in broad outline. Some recent papers have also been cited which seem to afford a clue to the physiological role possibly played by spermidine and spermine in biological systems.

### DETERMINATION OF SPERMDINE AND SPERMINE

The older methods used for the quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine were gravimetric based on isolation and purification of the polyamines as their poorly soluble salts e.g. as phosphates, picrates or flavanates (for references and methods see GROGNEHM 1951). These precipitation procedures were time consuming and in most cases only semiquantitative being generally more suitable for the estimation of spermine because the corresponding spermidine salts e.g. phosphate are more soluble and therefore give poor yields. Further for accurate determination large quantities of material were required.

For a reliable quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine a preliminary procedure is required to separate the polyamines from each other and from other contaminating substances because the methods and particularly the various colour reactions used for quantification are more or less unspecific. A review of the methods employed in the isolation and quantitative determination of polyamines is given below.

### PURIFICATION AND SEPARATION OF AMINES FOR ASSAY

For isolation of spermine butanol extraction and steam distillation from alkaline solution were used by DUDLEY, ROSENHEIM and ROSENHEIM (1924). In the purification of histamine butanol extraction had given good yields when an alkaline salt mixture was added to the aqueous phase (McINTIRE, ROTH and

of the degradation of polyamines *in vitro*. *In vivo* experiments however, have demonstrated that some breakdown does occur, although the degradation products are largely unidentified. Similarly, practically nothing is known concerning the biosynthesis of spermidine and spermine in animal tissues.

Studies on polyamines have been greatly hindered by lack of adequate analytical methods. Thus a few years ago when the present work was started, the development of a reliable and sensitive method for quantitative determination was the first essential.

The object of the present study was thus to develop a quantitative method for the determination of spermidine and spermine, which would allow estimation of small amounts of these amines. The next problem was to study the metabolism of these amines in the developing chick embryo with special reference to their biosynthesis.

## QUANTITATIVE DETERMINATION

In quantitative determinations of spermidine and spermine two reagents 2,4-dinitro-1-fluorobenzene and ninhydrin have mainly been used. In addition *p*-nitroaniline has also been suggested for quantitative estimation (LANGE, VITTA, RAYNA and HEIKEL 1957).

Since DANCER (1945) introduced 2,4-dinitro-1-fluorobenzene as a quantitative reagent for labelling the free amino groups in proteins and peptides this compound has found many applications. It was shown for instance that dinitrofluorobenzene could be widely employed as a quantitative reagent for primary and secondary amines (McINTIRE, CLEMENTS and SPOTILL 1953). This permitted the determination of quantities of the order of 0.1  $\mu$ mol of amine. For estimation of spermidine and spermine the dinitrofluorobenzene method was then used by ROSENTHAL and TABOR (1956). Their method consisted of allowing the amine in sodium tetraborate buffer to react with dinitrofluorobenzene. After acidification the dinitrophenyl derivatives of amines were extracted with ethyl acetate, methyl isobutyl ketone or cyclohexanone and determined photometrically. A further modification was developed by DUBRY (1960) who employed dioxane to bring the dinitrophenylamines into solution which made extraction with an organic solvent unnecessary. He also reduced the volume of the reaction mixture. According to DUBRY with these modifications his method was about ten times as sensitive as that of McINTIRE, CLEMENTS and SPOTILL (1953) and four times as sensitive as that of ROSENTHAL and TABOR (1956) permitting accurate determination of 10 to 150 m $\mu$ equivalents of amino group. A simple test based on differences in spectral properties of dinitrophenyl derivatives was also given for differentiating between primary and secondary amines.

It was reported by HOLBESEN, ECKERT and BRETSCHNEIDER (1967) however that with the several modifications of the 2,4-dinitrofluorobenzene method cited above they could not attain the accuracy and precision required for the quantitative determination of some simple primary aliphatic amines. To mention the difficulties encountered when any of the above mentioned methods was used such as the formation of 2,4-dinitrophenetole or a high background they suggested several modifications to the procedure. However exact information about the accuracy and sensitivity of the final method was not given.

Ninhydrin is the other reagent commonly used in the quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine. FISCHER and BORN (1956) described a method for the determination of various amines from tissue extracts after paper electrophoretic separation. After electrophoresis the paper strips were held in an air flow containing a minimum of ammonia then impregnated with ninhydrin solution and dried again. The coloured amine fractions were then cut off and sprayed with copper nitrate solution as described by KAWERAU and WIELAND (1951). The red copper pigment was eluted with methanol and determined photometrically. This method was fairly accurate giving duplicates with deviations of less than  $\pm 3$  to 5 per cent and allowing quantitative determination of as little as 1.5  $\mu$ g of spermine. Inconveniently the relationship between ninhydrin colour and amine concentration was not linear. Consequently

SHAW 1947) This method was modified by ROSENTHAL and TABOR (1956) for quantitative estimation of spermidine and spermine using *tertiary* butanol for extraction. With this procedure about 90 per cent of the polyamines were recovered from the butanol phase. Steam distillation has also been used as a preliminary to the subsequent separation of amines by paper electrophoresis (HERBST, WEAVER and KEISTER 1959).

For a further purification of the amine fraction and for separation of the amines from each other several methods have been introduced.

A paper chromatographic technique has been used by several authors for the qualitative separation of spermidine and spermine (e.g. BRENNER and KENTEN 1951; ACKERMANN 1955; FISCHER and BOHN 1957a; HERBST, KEISTER and WEAVER 1958; LINES, DUBIN and ROSENTHAL 1959) but has also been applied to quantitative analyses (RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1957; RAZIN, GERY and BACHRACH 1959).

A paper electrophoretic technique has also been used for the qualitative separation of polyamines (FISCHER and BOHN 1957a; HERBST, KEISTER and WEAVER 1958). Using citric acid or sulphosalicylic acid buffer systems in paper electrophoresis HERBST, KEISTER and WEAVER (1958) obtained a distinct and reproducible separation of the individual components in complex mixtures of monoamines, diamines or polyamines. The paper electrophoretic technique allowed a rapid separation of several amines occurring in the animal organism e.g. 1,4-diaminobutane (putrescine), spermidine and spermine which was also suitable for quantitative analyses (FISCHER and BOHN 1957b; LAHDEVIRTA, RAINA and HEIKEL 1957). Quantitative paper electrophoresis has further been used for clarifying the metabolism of diamines and polyamines in microorganisms (WEAVER and HERBST 1958; RAZIN, GERY and BACHRACH 1959). High voltage paper electrophoresis was used by ZILLIO, KRONF and ALBERS (1959) for analysing the amines from ribosomes.

An adequate separation of various diamines and polyamines for quantitative analysis is also possible with ion exchange chromatography. According to ROSENTHAL and TABOR (1956) ion exchange resins such as Amberlite MB 3 and Dowex 50 were suitable for chromatography. Deproteinized tissue extracts as such or purified by butanol extraction could be placed on the column. Elution was carried out with sodium sulphate in phosphate buffer or with hydrochloric acid. Under special conditions when only spermine was to be determined as little as 2 µg per sample could be analysed quantitatively. However when a complex mixture of various bases had to be analysed several successive chromatographic procedures with different adsorbents were required to achieve a complete separation (TABOR, ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1958). Ion exchange chromatography was also used for the separation of the various reaction products in clarifying the biosynthesis and degradation of spermidine and spermine (RAZIN, GERY and BACHRACH 1959; DUBIN 1960; TABOR 1962a, b).

spermine (expressed as phosphate) per 100 g of fresh tissue. Further organs relatively rich in spermine were ox liver, kidneys and spleen. The highest value however was obtained from human semen, namely 760 mg of spermine phosphate per 100 g of semen. On the other hand, none of this base could be isolated from bull semen. Nor was any spermine found in ox blood or hen's eggs.

A number of later studies have concerned the occurrence of spermine in human organs (VREDE 1976; HARRISON 1931, 1933). According to HARRISON (1931) the spermine in human semen is principally derived from the prostate, which was found to contain 130 mg of spermine phosphate per 100 g of tissue. HAMALAINEN (1941) analysed a necropsy series consisting of 69 cadavers. The flavanate method used by him also signified an improvement in analytical technique. Some average values expressed as mg of phosphate per 100 g wet weight obtained by HAMALAINEN were as follows: prostate 122.9, pancreas 28.0, liver 14.3, spleen 11.0, adrenals 9.4 and kidneys 7. All in all, spermine could be isolated from twenty different tissues. In some cases spermine was also found in blood. In general, marked differences in spermine content between the same organs from different cadavers were observed, and no clear correlation with any particular disease was observed. However, in leukemia a high content was found in the bone marrow and liver.

The introduction of more sensitive analytical methods made it possible to study the occurrence of spermidine and spermine in small laboratory animals. ROSENTHAL and TABOR (1956) who analysed a number of organs of various laboratory animals generally obtained higher contents than those presented above. Thus rat pancreas was shown to contain 194 µg of spermine and 19.0 µg of spermidine expressed as free base per g of wet weight. In mice and rats the content of spermidine was as high as or even higher than that of spermine. Another interesting observation was the high content of spermidine in the newborn rat. In chicken liver they found only traces of polyamine, which was suggested to be due to a high turn over rate.

More recently the occurrence of certain diamines, viz putrescine (1,4-diaminobutane) and 1,3-diaminopropane has been reported besides the polyamines in some animal tissues (FISCHER and BONY 1957b; WEAVER and HERST 1958). These findings are of interest because putrescine can act as a precursor in the biosynthesis of polyamines in microorganisms (cf p. 15) and 1,3-diaminopropane has been shown to be one of the degradation products of polyamines in microorganisms (p. 14).

The occurrence of spermine in the blood of man has been reported by ROSENTHAL and TABOR (1956). This was found in the formed elements, principally in leucocytes, and none in the plasma. Recently the occurrence of both spermine and spermidine in normal human blood was established by PAINA (1962a). In all cases studied, small amounts of these amines were found in the cell fraction, but none in the plasma.

A number of studies have purported to demonstrate the presence of spermine in the serum in certain pathological conditions, for example in malignant diseases (e.g. MOGGIAN 1953; for further references see TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL 1961). In most cases a colour reaction obtained by treating the sample with copper carbonate has been used. However, this method has been



■ standard with a concentration near to that of the unknown sample had to be run simultaneously.

Another ninhydrin method introduced by GIRI RADHAKRISHNAN and VAIDYANATHAN (1952) for the paper chromatographic study of transamination reactions has also been used by some authors for quantitative estimation of amines after paper chromatographic separation (RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1957, RAZIN, GERY and BACHRACH 1959, BACHRACH, PERSKY and RAZIN 1960). In principle this method is the same as that described above with the difference that the coloured ninhydrin spots were eluted with ethanol solution containing copper sulphate. However no information about the accuracy or sensitivity is available. With the method used by HAY, HARRIS and EXTENMAN (1956) for quantitative estimation of amino acids on paper, WEAVER and HERBST (1958) could detect as little as 0.01  $\mu$ mole of amine after paper electrophoretic separation. In addition absorption was linear up to 1.5  $\mu$ mole. In this modification paper strips were sprayed with alkaline ninhydrin solution without addition of copper salt. ZILLIO, KROWE and ALBERS (1959) analysed the ribosomal di- and polyamines quantitatively with ninhydrin reagent prepared according to MOORE and STEIN (1954). Their method consisted of elution of polyamines separated by high voltage electrophoresis after which the amines were heated in ninhydrin solution and determined photometrically.

Diazotized *p*-nitroaniline was used for the determination of some di- and polyamines after paper electrophoretic separation (LAKSEVIK, RAINA and HEIKEL 1957). However absorption was not linear and in addition a strict standardization of the procedure was required when this reagent was used. Deviations of duplicates were less than  $\pm 5$  per cent of the mean for spermine and spermidine.

Microbiological methods based on the growth factor activity of some di- and polyamines have also been devised. Thus *Haemophilus parainfluenzae* which requires putrescine for growth has been used as a test organism (HERBST, WEAVER and KEISTER 1958). Conversely inhibition of the growth of a sensitive strain of *Staphylococcus aureus* in the presence of spermine has been used for the quantitative determination of this amine (RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1959).

## OCCURRENCE AND METABOLISM OF SPERVIDINE AND SPERVINE

### OCCURRENCE

A number of studies regarding the occurrence of spermidine and spermine in animal tissues and micro organisms have been reported. The values obtained with the older gravimetric methods are generally low but nevertheless provide a certain standard of comparison. Some of the results are cited below.

**Animal tissues.** The wide distribution of spermine in various mammalian organs was demonstrated long ago (DUDLEY and ROSENHEIM 1925). According to these investigators ox pancreas for example contained 25 to 30 mg of

of the high affinity of these basic substances for nucleic acids and phospholipids (see p. 18). Secondary redistribution of polyamines during and after homogenization must therefore be taken into account.

It was reported by ZILIC, KROCE and ALLEN (1959) that they have demonstrated the presence of 13 diaminopropane, putrescine and cadaverine (13 diaminopentane) in *E. coli* ribosomes. In liver ribonucleoprotein particles they found putrescine, cadaverine and spermidine. Quantitative analysis of *E. coli* particles indicated that diamines were present in sufficient amounts to neutralize at least a third of the acidic groups of the ribonucleic acids. However, as pointed out by TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1961), a secondary redistribution was not excluded. CONEY and LICHTENSTEIN (1960) showed that of the total amount of putrescine and spermidine isolated from *E. coli*, 1% to 15 per cent was in the ribosomal fraction. According to these authors, the total molar amount of these amines was only 0.5 to 1 per cent of the molar amount of the ribosomal ribonucleic acid phosphorus. Experiments with labelled polyamines showed that the polyamines were attached to the ribosomes prior to cell disruption and that the polyamines were not adsorbed onto the ribosomes in significant amounts after formation of the extract. Recently SPANIK (1962) has likewise isolated several bases from *E. coli* ribosomes including putrescine, spermidine and cadaverine in the molar ratio 3:1. The total content of these amines amounted to 0.4 per cent (wt/wt) of the dry ribosomes.

WACHRACH and CONEY (1961) studied the localization of spermidine in cells of *Bacillus subtilis*. The  $^{14}\text{C}$  spermidine formed by the growing cells was localized in both the protoplasts and the bacterial cell walls. TABOR (1963) investigated the binding of labelled spermine by cells and protoplasts of *E. coli*. As possible binding sites of polyamines, diaminopimelic acid in the mucopeptide layer of the inner cell wall or phosphate groups in the outer layers of the cell wall were considered.

## BIOSYNTHESIS

The biosynthesis of spermidine and spermine has been little understood until the last few years. The studies cited below have thrown considerable light on the mechanism of the process in microorganisms. On the other hand, very little has been reported about the synthesis of these amines in animal tissues. A small incorporation of labelled putrescine into the polyamine fraction has been observed, however, in minced rat prostate. No incorporation was found in minced liver, muscle, spleen or kidney (TABOR, ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956).

Studies with radioactive putrescine labelled with  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $^3\text{H}$  demonstrated that this substance was incorporated as a unit into polyamines in growing cultures of *E. coli* and *Aspergillus nidulans* (TABOR, ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956) being the source of the four carbon chain of polyamines. Then it was reported by GREENE (1957) that in *Neurospora crassa* cultures DL-methionine

$^{14}\text{C}$  was incorporated into spermidine. By oxidizing the resulting radioactive spermidine with permanganate it was further shown that methionine is the source of the three carbon chain of spermidine. It was also demonstrated that

claimed to be insensitive and not very specific for spermine (GROFFER WITTIG and GRIMALT 1957 ZETTLER 1961) and the results require to be confirmed by other methods. Further spermine was found as a component in a new phospholipid "malignolipin" (KOŠAKI *et al* 1958) which could be isolated from human malignant tumours but not from normal tissues. KAMAT (1962) however using the same technique as reported by KOŠAKI *et al* could not obtain a compound like "malignolipin" from five different types of malignant tumours.

The occurrence of polyamines in free or bound form has also been demonstrated in some invertebrates (ACKERMANN 1952 ACKERMANN and JANAK 1954 FISCHER and BOHN 1957a).

*Micro organisms and viruses* The occurrence of spermine in several yeasts was already reported by DUDLEY and ROSENHEIM (1925). HERBST and SYLL (1949) observed that putrescine was an essential growth factor for *Haemophilus parainfluenzae* and could be replaced by spermidine or spermine. One or several of these growth factors could be found in a variety of micro organisms (HERBST, WEAVER and KEISTER 1958, WEAVER and HERBST 1958). Recently BACHRACH and COHEN (1961) have analysed several micro organisms for their spermidine content. The highest value 21  $\mu\text{g}$  of spermidine per mg of protein was obtained in extracts of *Neurospora crassa*.

The amine content is markedly affected by the pH of the culture medium (TABOR, ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1958). More spermidine relative to putrescine could be isolated from *Escherichia coli* cells grown in an alkaline medium than from cells grown in an acid one.

Some micro organisms e.g. *E. coli* and *Staphylococcus aureus* are able to acetylate putrescine and polyamines (DUBIN and ROSENTHAL 1960, ROSENTHAL and DUBIN 1962). Conjugates between glutathione and spermidine or spermine have also been isolated from *E. coli* cells (DUBIN 1959). There is no evidence to suggest that similar polyamine derivatives occur in mammalian tissues.

Great interest attaches to observations that certain viruses contain diamines and polyamines. It has been reported by AMES, DUBIN and ROSENTHAL (1958) that putrescine and spermidine occur in phage T4 of *E. coli* B in quantities even sufficient for neutralization of one third to one half of the deoxyribonucleic phosphate. Spermine was found in the *Salmonella* phage PTL 22. The amines were injected together with deoxyribonucleic acid into the host cells. Moreover in experiments with radioactive putrescine direct exchange of the putrescine in the medium with the phage putrescine was ruled out. Phage 3 of *E. coli* was shown to contain spermidine and putrescine (KAY 1959). More recently AMES and DUBIN (1960) have studied a number of other viruses. Certain *E. coli* and *Salmonella typhi* murium phages did not contain polyamines. It was suggested by these authors that this difference is linked with the greater permeability of these viruses so that during the isolation of the phage displacement of polyamines by the  $\text{Mg}^{++}$  in the suspending medium could occur. Further evidence of the general occurrence of diamines and polyamines in phages has been presented by KAY and FILDES (1962).

*Intracellular distribution* The question of the intracellular distribution of the polyamines is interesting but its elucidation presents certain difficulties because

of the high affinity of these basic substances for nucleic acids and phospholipid (see p. 18). Secondary redistribution of polyamines during and after homogenization must therefore be taken into account.

It was reported by ZILLIO, HAYE and ALBERS (1959) that they have demonstrated the presence of 1,3-diaminopropane, putrescine and cadaverine (1,5-diaminopentane) in *E. coli* ribosomes. In liver ribonucleoprotein particles they found putrescine, cadaverine and spermidine. Quantitative analysis of *E. coli* particles indicated that diamines were present in sufficient amounts to neutralize at least a third of the acidic groups of the ribonucleic acids. However, as pointed out by TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1961), a secondary redistribution was not excluded. COHEN and LICHTENSTEIN (1960) showed that of the total amount of putrescine and spermidine isolated from *E. coli*, 12 to 15 per cent was in the ribosomal fraction. According to these authors, the total molar amount of these amines was only 1 to 8 per cent of the molar amount of the ribosomal ribonucleic acid phosphorus. Experiments with labelled polyamines showed that the polyamines were attached to the ribosomes prior to cell disruption and that the polyamines were not adsorbed onto the ribosomes in significant amounts after formation of the extract. Recently SPARR (1961) has likewise isolated several bases from *E. coli* ribosomes including putrescine, spermidine and cadaverine in the molar ratio 3:2:1. The total content of these amines amounted to 0.4 per cent (wt/wt) of the dry ribosomes.

BACHRACH and COHEN (1961) studied the localization of spermidine in cells of *Bacillus subtilis*. The  $^{14}\text{C}$ -spermidine formed by the growing cells was localized in both the protoplasts and the bacterial cell wall. TABOR (1962a) investigated the binding of labelled spermine by cells and protoplasts of *E. coli*. As possible binding sites of polyamines, diaminopimelic acid in the mucopeptide layer of the inner cell wall or phosphate groups in the outer layers of the cell wall were considered.

## BIOSYNTHESIS

The biosynthesis of spermidine and spermine has been little understood until the last few years. The studies cited below have thrown considerable light on the mechanism of the process in micro-organisms. On the other hand, very little has been reported about the synthesis of these amines in animal tissues. A small incorporation of labelled putrescine into the polyamine fraction has been observed, however, in minced rat prostate. No incorporation was found in minced liver, muscle, spleen or kidney (TABOR, ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956).

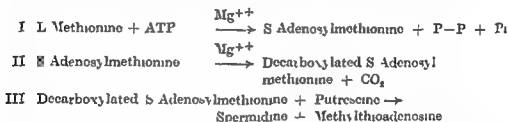
Studies with radioactive putrescine labelled with  $^{15}\text{N}$  and  $^{14}\text{C}$  demonstrated that this substance was incorporated as a unit into polyamines in growing cultures of *E. coli* and *Aspergillus nidulans* (TABOR, ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956) being the source of the four carbon chain of polyamines. Then it was reported by GREEVE (1957) that in *Neurospora crassa* cultures DL-methionine

$^{14}\text{C}$  was incorporated into spermidine. By oxidizing the resulting radioactive spermidine with permanganate it was further shown that methionine is the source of the three carbon chain of spermidine. It was also demonstrated that

adenosine triphosphate was required for the incorporation of methionine by cell free extracts of *Neurospora crassa*

These results have been confirmed with cell free extracts and partially purified enzymes from *E. coli* (TABOR ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1957 1958) Synthesis of spermidine from putrescine required L methionine, adenosine triphosphate and  $Mg^{++}$  L methionine and adenosine triphosphate could be substituted by adenosyl L methionine. Radioactivity was not incorporated when methionine labelled in the methyl or carboxyl group was used. It was further stated by these authors that  $2^{14}C$  labelled ornithine could also be incorporated into spermidine. When  $^{14}C$  labelled putrescine was added to the growth medium of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* both labelled spermidine and spermine were recovered.

Purification of the enzymes catalysing the various steps in the biosynthesis of spermidine from putrescine and methionine in *E. coli* has been reported (TABOR and TABOR 1960 TABOR 1962a b). According to these authors the enzymic synthesis of spermidine involves the following three steps



The enzyme that catalyses the formation of S adenosylmethionine is similar to the methionine activating enzyme isolated from liver by CANTONI and DURELL (1957). The *E. coli* enzyme has been purified 1,00 fold. The enzyme that catalyses the decarboxylation of S adenosylmethionine has been purified twenty fold. This enzyme which requires  $Mg^{++}$  as activator was inhibited by sodium cyanide. No effect on activity was exerted by pyridoxal or pyridoxamine phosphate. The enzyme that catalyses the third step also called propylamine transferase, has been purified a thousandfold from *E. coli*. For the purified enzyme no cofactor requirements have been observed. Putrescine but not spermidine could act as an acceptor of the propylamine moiety. The enzymic synthesis of spermine has not yet been demonstrated.

That methionine can act as precursor of spermidine has also been demonstrated recently by BALCH and COHEN (1961) with several micro organisms. 1,3 Diaminopropane has also been stated to act as a precursor of spermidine (WEAVER and HERBST 1958) but this finding was not confirmed with isotope methods.

## DEGRADATION

Mammals HIRSCH (1953a b) observed that beef and sheep sera contained an enzyme which attacked spermidine and spermine causing a rapid oxidative deamination of these amines which was reflected by consumption of oxygen.

and liberation of ammonia. Carbonyl reagents almost completely blocked the action of this enzyme. Histamine, tyramine and various aliphatic diamines were not attacked. On account of its substrate specificity the name spermine oxidase was proposed by HIRSCH. Sera obtained from man, rabbit, guinea pig, horse and pig were inactive against polyamines.

This soluble beef plasma enzyme has been purified 150 to 200 fold by TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1954). In addition to polyamines, several aliphatic amines and benzylamine were oxidized, but not tryptamine, 5-hydroxytryptamine or epinephrine. Spermidine could be identified as an intermediate in the oxidation of spermine. The formation of spermidine from spermine by heep serum has also been observed by BACHRACH and BAR OR (1960). Unidentified aldehyde and putrescine are found as other degradation products (TABOR and ROSENTHAL 1956). The exact nature and stoichiometry of the oxidation of polyamines are not known at present.

Little is yet known concerning the chemical nature of plasma spermine oxidase. According to HIRSCH (1953a), its mobility in electrophoresis was like that of alpha globulin. Inhibition by carbonyl reagents suggests the presence of a carbonyl group in the active centre (BLASCHKO 1967). Recently it has been reported by GORKIN (1961) that zinc participates in spermine oxidase activity. The absorption spectrum of the purified enzyme did not contain bands characteristic of vitamin B<sub>12</sub> or B<sub>12</sub> derivatives.

The occurrence of spermine oxidase in the sera of all ruminants but not of non-ruminants (BLASCHKO and HAINES 1953, 1959) is a peculiar feature. It has been further shown that spermine oxidase activity is low or absent in goat serum immediately after birth but tends to increase gradually with time. The ontogenetic course of development of spermine oxidase, its relation to other amine oxidases, its distribution and functional significance have recently been discussed by BLASCHKO (1967) in an extensive review to which the reader is referred.

Very little is known of the metabolic fate of polyamines in animal tissues. Attempts to show degradation of polyamines *in vitro* have been virtually unsuccessful except for experiments with crude preparations from hog kidney which showed some activity (ZELLER 1933) and those reported by HIRSCH (1953a) who found tuberculo-tatic activity in guinea pig kidney and heart homogenates when incubated with spermine. In contrast TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1954) could not demonstrate degradation of spermine in minced tissues or homogenates from liver, spleen and lung. But spermine was degraded *in vivo* (LOFFENTHAL and TABOR 1956). When spermine was administered to mice, rats and rabbit, a small part appeared in the urine as spermidine. Apart from the report of ZELLER cited above, nothing is known about the fate of spermidine either *in vivo* or *in vitro*.

*Micro-organisms*. It has been shown that a number of microorganisms are able to oxidize polyamines. Several degradation products have been identified. SILVERMAN and EVANS (1944) found that spermine and spermidine were rapidly oxidized by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. Recent studies have shown that this organism oxidizes spermine to spermidine which is further degraded to 1,3-diaminopropane,  $\beta$ -alanine and  $\gamma$ -aminobutyric acid. Aldehydes were

detected as intermediates. 1,3 Diaminopropane was oxidized to  $\beta$  alanine. Degradation was inhibited by carbonyl reagents such as hydroxylamine and semicarbazide (RAZIN, BACHRACH and GERY 1958, RAZIN, GERY and BACHRACH 1959). Several other micro organisms e.g. *Mycobacterium smegmatis* (BACHRACH, PERSKY and RAZIN 1960) are able to oxidize polyamines. Some differences have been found in substrate specificity and reaction products. These are described in detail in the review of TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1961) to which the reader is referred.

Recently, an enzyme from spermidine adapted cells of *Serratia marcescens* has been purified 20 to 30 fold by BACHRACH (1962a, b). This enzyme oxidized spermidine but did not attack spermine, short chain diamines or benzylamine. 1,3 Diaminopropane and pyrroline were found as oxidation products of spermidine in stoichiometric amounts; aminobutyraldehyde was suggested as an intermediate which would spontaneously form pyrroline. Ammonia was not liberated. As pointed out by BACHRACH, this spermidine oxidase from *Serratia marcescens* differed from the plasma spermine oxidase described both in specificity and in reaction products.

## POSSIBLE PHYSIOLOGICAL ROLE OF POLYAMINES

Although the physiological role of polyamines is at present obscure, recent studies on these substances have afforded much additional data which should eventually lead to an understanding of their function. Various stabilizing effects of polyamines on certain bacteria, protoplasts and bacterial cell walls have been shown in a number of studies. Polyamines also exert a stabilizing effect on preparations of mitochondria. Reference may be made to the recent review by TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1961) where the above mentioned effects and their possible mechanisms are described and discussed in detail.

**Complex formation of polyamines.** One possible mechanism of the stabilization and protection by polyamines could be explained by the high affinity of these compounds for cell constituents having acidic groups. In a number of studies it has been demonstrated that polyamines are able to form complexes with nucleic acids (KEISTER 1958a, b, RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1959, CANTONI 1960, FELSENFELD and HUANG 1960, AMES and DUBIN 1960), with leucithin (RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1959) and with heparin (AMES and WELLS 1960). According to KEISTER (1958b) the complexes of polyamine with nucleic acids are stable within a large pH range but are completely dissociated by 1.5 to 2 per cent sodium chloride. The reversibility of complexing by inorganic salt was also found by RAZIN and ROZANSKY (1959). CANTONI (1960) found differences in solubility of complexes between spermine and soluble ribonucleic acids from rabbit liver. Of the synthetic polyribonucleotides polyadenylic and polyinosinic acids were precipitated by equivalents of spermine per mole of polymer phosphorus whereas polycytidylic and polynucleic acids were precipitated only with excess of spermine (HUANG and FELSENFELD 1960). It was further shown by the authors (FELSENFELD and HUANG 1960) by means of

conductometric titrations that spermine was capable of displacing barium stoichiometrically from polyuridylic acid which was precipitated as a spermine polyuridylic acid complex. It was suggested that in physiological situations nucleic acids carry significant amounts of polyamines. The quantity of polyamines carried would depend on the concentration of small ions which can compete for sites on the nucleic acids.

**Stabilization of nucleic acids by polyamines** The protective effect of polyamines and to a lesser extent of diamines against denaturation and enzymic degradation is obviously due to complex formation. According to REISTER (1938b) spermine at a concentration of  $2.5 \times 10^{-4} M$  completely blocked the degradation of both ribo- and deoxyribonucleic acids in crude bacterial sonicates. Spermine inhibited purified ribonuclease and deoxyribonuclease although not completely. The inhibiting action of spermine on the autolytic degradation of bacterial ribonucleic acid was also noted by HERBST and DOCTOR (1939). The stabilizing effect of polyamines on deoxyribonucleic acid has recently been confirmed (MAHLER, MEHROTRA and DHARF 1961, TABOR 1962). Spermine and spermidine protected deoxyribonucleic acid from calf thymus and from *Bacillus subtilis* against heat denaturation; spermine even in concentrations of  $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-4} M$  if the salt concentration in the medium was relatively low. The protective effect was manifested as an increase of the melting temperature. Larger amounts of these amines were required to demonstrate the same effect in the presence of higher ionic strengths (TABOR 1962). Similarly, spermin stabilized a transforming deoxyribonucleic acid from *Lacillus subtilis* against heat inactivation (TABOR 1961).

**Stabilization of bacteriophages by polyamines** The stabilizing effects on bacteriophages are also apparently due to complex formation between polyamines and nucleic acid (FRASER and MAHLER 1958, TABOR 1960, FRASER and MAHLER 1961, MORA, YOUNG and RIZVI 1962). According to TABOR (1960) even in concentrations of  $10^{-3}$  to  $10^{-2} M$  spermine and spermidine were effective in stabilizing *E. coli* bacteriophage T5. This effect was most pronounced at low salt concentrations.

AMFIS and DUBIN (1960) studied the role of di- and polyamines in bacteriophage. They stated that the normal cation content of phage T4 of *E. coli* which was in equilibrium with the total deoxyribonucleic acid anions consisting of putrescine, spermidine and  $Mg^{++}$  was changed under certain conditions. When the host cells were grown in a medium containing spermine this polyamine and its acetylated derivatives replaced the normal constituents spermidine and putrescine. Thus the phage polyamines were qualitatively determined by the polyamine content of the host cells. It was concluded that the role of the polyamines in phages is probably that of a non-specific cation for neutralization and stabilization of deoxyribonucleic acid. This was supported by the finding that in a mutant of phage T4 all cations neutralizing deoxyribonucleic acid could be displaced without loss of infectivity.

**Stabilizing effect on ribosomes** Some recent studies have demonstrated the stabilizing effect of polyamines and diamines on ribosomes (COHEN and LICHTENSTEIN 1960, COLBOURN, WITHERSPOON and HERBST 1961, COHEN and BARBER 1962). COHEN and LICHTENSTEIN (1960) observed that spermidine



detected as intermediates. 1,3 Diaminopropane was oxidized to  $\beta$  alanine. Degradation was inhibited by carbonyl reagents such as hydroxylamine and semicarbazide (PAZIN, BACHRACH and GERY 1958, RAZIN, GERY and BACHRACH 1959). Several other micro organisms e.g. *Mycobacterium mageritense* (BACHRACH, PERSKY and RAZIN 1960) are able to oxidize polyamines. Some differences have been found in substrate specificity and reaction products. These are described in detail in the review of TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1961) to which the reader is referred.

Recently an enzyme from spermidine adapted cells of *Serratia marcescens* has been purified 20 to 30 fold by BACHRACH (1962a, b). This enzyme oxidized spermidine but did not attack spermine, short chain diamines or benzylamine. 1,3 Diaminopropane and pyrroline were found as oxidation products of spermidine in stoichiometric amounts, aminobutyraldehyde was suggested as an intermediate which would spontaneously form pyrroline. Ammonia was not liberated. As pointed out by BACHRACH this spermidine oxidase from *Serratia marcescens* differed from the plasma spermine oxidase described both in specificity and in reaction products.

## POSSIBLE PHYSIOLOGICAL ROLE OF POLYAMINES

Although the physiological role of polyamines is at present obscure, recent studies on these substances have afforded much additional data which should eventually lead to an understanding of their function. Various stabilizing effects of polyamines on certain bacteria, protoplasts and bacterial cell walls have been shown in a number of studies. Polyamines also exert a stabilizing effect on preparations of mitochondria. Reference may be made to the recent review by TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1961) where the above mentioned effects and their possible mechanisms are described and discussed in detail.

*Complex formation of polyamines.* One possible mechanism of the stabilization and protection by polyamines could be explained by the high affinity of these compounds for cell constituents having acidic groups. In a number of studies it has been demonstrated that polyamines are able to form complexes with nucleic acids (KEISTER 1958a, b, RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1959, CANTONI 1960, FELSENFELD and HUANG 1960, AMES and DUBIN 1960) with lecithin (RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1959) and with heparin (AMANN and WERLE 1956). According to KEISTER (1958b) the complexes of polyamines with nucleic acids are stable within a large pH range but are completely dissociated by 1.5 to 2 per cent sodium chloride. The reversibility of complexing by inorganic salts was also found by RAZIN and ROZANSKY (1959). CANTONI (1960) found differences in solubilities of complexes between spermine and soluble ribonucleic acids from rabbit liver. Of the synthetic polynucleotides polyadenylic and polyinosinic acids were precipitated by equivalents of permure per mole of polymer phosphorus whereas polycytidylic and polyuridylic acid were precipitated only with excess of spermine (HUANG and FELSENFELD 1960). It was further shown by these authors (FELSENFELD and HUANG 1960) by means of



detected as intermediates. 1,3 Diaminopropane was oxidized to  $\beta$  alanine. Degradation was inhibited by carbonyl reagents such as hydroxylamine and semicarbazide (RAZIN, BACHRACH and GERY 1958, RAZIN, GERY and BACHRACH 1959). Several other micro organisms e.g. *Mycobacterium smegmatis* (BACHRACH, PERSKY and RAZIN 1960) are able to oxidize polyamines. Some differences have been found in substrate specificity and reaction products. These are described in detail in the review of TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1961) to which the reader is referred.

Recently, an enzyme from spermidine adapted cells of *Serratia marcescens* has been purified 20 to 30 fold by BACHRACH (1962a, b). This enzyme oxidized spermidine but did not attack spermine, short chain diamines or benzylamine. 1,3 Diaminopropane and pyrroline were found as oxidation products of spermidine in stoichiometric amounts; aminobutyraldehyde was suggested as an intermediate which would spontaneously form pyrroline. Ammonia was not liberated. As pointed out by BACHRACH, this spermidine oxidase from *Serratia marcescens* differed from the plasma spermine oxidase described both in specificity and in reaction products.

## POSSIBLE PHYSIOLOGICAL ROLE OF POLYAMINES

Although the physiological role of polyamines is at present obscure, recent studies on these substances have afforded much additional data which should eventually lead to an understanding of their function. Various stabilizing effects of polyamines on certain bacteria, protoplasts and bacterial cell walls have been shown in a number of studies. Polyamines also exert a stabilizing effect on preparations of mitochondria. Reference may be made to the recent review by TABOR, TABOR and ROSENTHAL (1961) where the above mentioned effects and their possible mechanisms are described and discussed in detail.

*Complex formation of polyamines.* One possible mechanism of the stabilization and protection by polyamines could be explained by the high affinity of these compounds for cell constituents having acidic groups. In a number of studies it has been demonstrated that polyamines are able to form complexes with nucleic acids (KEISTER 1958a, b, RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1959, CANTONI 1960, FELSENFELD and HUANG 1960, AMES and DEBIS 1960) with lecithin (RAZIN and ROZANSKY 1959) and with heparin (AMANN and WERLE 1956). According to KEISTER (1958b) the complexes of polyamines with nucleic acids are stable within a large pH range but are completely dissociated by 1 to 2 per cent sodium chloride. The reversibility of complexing by inorganic salt was also found by RAZIN and ROZANSKY (1959). CANTONI (1960) found differences in solubilities of complexes between spermine and soluble ribonucleic acids from rabbit liver. Of the synthetic polyribonucleotides polyadenylic and polyinosinic acids were precipitated by equivalents of spermine per mole of polymer phosphorus whereas polycytidylic and polynucleic acids were precipitated only with excess of spermine (HUANG and FELSENFELD 1960). It was further shown by these authors (FELSENFELD and HUANG 1960) by means of

incorporation in the presence of polyuridylic acid in a system containing *Salmonella typhi murium* ribosomes (MARTIN and AMES 1961). In these experiments also the stimulating effect was most pronounced at suboptimal levels of  $Mg^{++}$ .

The mode of action of polyamines in the amino acid incorporating system requires further elucidation. The parallelism between these effects of polyamines and  $Mg^{++}$  which was mentioned above (HERSHKO, AMOS and MAGER 1961) has been confirmed in another work (MACKER, BENEDICT and ARTMAN 1962). It has been suggested that these effects are due to stabilization of the ribonucleoprotein particles (HERSHKO, AMOS and MAGER 1961). MARTIN and AMES (1962) pointed out the ability of polyamines to convert nonfunctional 40 S ribosomal particles to functional 100 S particles.

Some recent reports indicate that polyamines are able to affect nucleotide synthesis. HEISTER (1958a) observed that spermine stimulated nucleic acid synthesis in the presence of chloramphenicol. A striking effect of spermine on polyribonucleotide synthesis in the *E. coli* membrane fraction has been reported by SPIEGELMAN (1959). In the absence of spermine the polyribonucleotides synthesized tended afterwards to degrade. This degradation was inhibited by spermine. Polyamines were also capable of stimulating the incorporation of adenine nucleotides into ribonucleic acid (CHENG and MAHLER 1959).

but not putrescine was able to preserve *E. coli* ribosomal constituents which otherwise tended to decompose.  $Mg^{++}$  had the same effect.  $Mg^{++}$  and spermidine together had an even greater effect. On the basis of their experiments the authors suggested that  $Mg^{++}$  and spermidine were the naturally occurring clamps on the complex ribosomal components in the bacteria. COLBOURN, WITHERSPOON and HERNST (1961) found that polyamines increased the size of *E. coli* ribosomes. When the cells were grown in a glucose salt medium or in the same medium with added spermine a complete absence of larger ribosomes was observed in the former case whereas in the latter experiment large ribosomes (96 S and 65 S) were also observed. Spermine was incorporated into ribosomes during the exponential growth of bacteria. It was considered that the role of spermine is similar to  $Mg^{++}$  in the formation and preservation of large ribosomes.

Recently, SIFKEVITZ (1961) has described the effects of spermine on ribosomes from guinea pig pancreas. On removal of  $Mg^{++}$  from the particle with chelating agents bound amylase and ribonuclease as well as most of the ribosomal ribonucleic acid were also removed from the particles. It was found that the bound enzymes were released by diamines and even more readily by spermine. Spermine replaced the ribosomal  $Mg^{++}$  and stabilized the particles in the absence of  $Mg^{++}$  by inhibiting the leakage of ribonucleic acid almost completely.

*Effects on amino acid incorporation and nucleotide synthesis:* Diamines and polyamines are able to stimulate *in vitro* incorporation of amino acids into ribonucleoprotein particles (HERSHKO, AMOZ and MAGER 1961, TISSIÈRES and HOPKINS 1961, DOERFLER *et al* 1962, MAGER, BENEDICT and ARTMAN 1962, MARTIN and AMES 1962, LUCAS, SCHUURS and BURSON 1963). Inhibition by spermine of haemoglobin synthesis in reticulocytes and cell free systems has also been reported (ALLEN and SCHWEET 1962). According to YOSHIKAWA and MARUO (1960) polyamines and diamines are able to stimulate amylase formation.

HERSHKO, AMOZ and MAGER (1961) showed that spermine in a concentration of  $10^{-4}M$  stimulated the incorporation of labelled leucine into rat liver microsome and ribosomes. This effect was most pronounced at suboptimal levels of  $Mg^{++}$ , the amount incorporated being above the maximum value reached with optimal  $Mg^{++}$  concentration alone. When the  $Mg^{++}$  content was optimal (about  $10^{-2}M$ ) the spermine effect became inhibitory. The latter effect was considered to be due to a shift of the  $Mg^{++}$  excess inhibition zone to lower levels of  $Mg^{++}$ . Evidence was presented in support of the hypothesis that the site at which the spermine was acting is located in the ribonucleoprotein particle. Spermidine, putrescine and agmatine had effects similar to spermine although less marked.

Spermidine and spermine also had a stimulating effect on the incorporation of amino acids by *E. coli* ribosomes (TISSIÈRES and HOPKINS 1961, DOERFLER *et al* 1962). Addition of deoxyribonucleic acid to the reaction mixture increased the amino acid incorporation. When deoxyribonucleic acid was added together with small amounts of spermidine this increase was even higher whereas spermidine alone had no significant effect in this system (TISSIÈRES and HOPKINS 1961). Polyamines and diamines also markedly increased phenylalanine

incorporation in the presence of polyuridylic acid in a system containing *Salmonella typhimurium* ribosomes (MARTIN and AMES 1967) In these experiments also the stimulating effect was most pronounced at suboptimal levels of  $Mg^{++}$

The mode of action of polyamines in the amino acid incorporating system requires further elucidation The parallelism between these effects of polyamines and  $Mg^{++}$  which was mentioned above (HERSHKO AMOZ and MAGER 1961) has been confirmed in another work (MAGER BENEDICT and ARTMAN 1967) It has been suggested that these effects are due to stabilization of the ribonucleo protein particles (HERSHKO AMOZ and MAGER 1961) MARTIN and AMES (1967) pointed out the ability of polyamines to convert nonfunctional 30 S ribosomal particles to functional 100 S particles

Some recent reports indicate that polyamines are able to affect nucleotide synthesis REISTER (1968) observed that spermine stimulated nucleic acid synthesis in the presence of chloramphenicol A striking effect of spermine on polyribonucleotide synthesis in the *E. coli* membrane fraction has been reported by SPIEGELMAN (1959) In the absence of spermine the polyribonucleotides synthesized tended afterwards to degrade This degradation was inhibited by spermine Polyamines were also capable of stimulating the incorporation of adenine nucleotides into ribonucleic acid (CHUNG and MAHLER 1959)

but not putrescine was able to preserve *E. coli* ribosomal constituents which otherwise tended to decompose.  $Mg^{++}$  had the same effect.  $Mg^{++}$  and spermidine together had an even greater effect. On the basis of their experiments these authors suggested that  $Mg^{++}$  and spermidine were the naturally occurring clamps on the complex ribosomal components in the bacteria. COLBOURN, WITHERSPOON and HERBST (1961) found that polyamines increased the size of *E. coli* ribosomes. When the cells were grown in a glucose salt medium or in the same medium with added spermine a complete absence of larger ribosomes was observed in the former case whereas in the latter experiment large ribosomes (96 S and 65 S) were also observed. Spermine was incorporated into ribosomes during the exponential growth of bacteria. It was considered that the role of spermine is similar to  $Mg^{++}$  in the formation and preservation of large ribosomes.

Recently SILKOVITZ (1961) has described the effects of spermine on ribosomes from guinea pig pancreas. On removal of  $Mg^{++}$  from the particles with chelating agents bound amylase and ribonuclease as well as most of the ribosomal ribonucleic acid were also removed from the particles. It was found that the bound enzymes were released by diamines and even more readily by spermine. Spermine replaced the ribosomal  $Mg^{++}$  and stabilized the particles in the absence of  $Mg^{++}$  by inhibiting the leakage of ribonucleic acid almost completely.

**Effects on amino acid incorporation and nucleotide synthesis.** Diamines and polyamines are able to stimulate *in vitro* incorporation of amino acids into ribonucleoprotein particles (HERSHKO AMOS and MAGER 1961, TISSIÈRES and HOPKINS 1961, DOERFLER *et al.* 1962, MAGER, BENEDICT and ARTMAN 1962, MARTIN and AMES 1962, LUCAS, SCHUURS and SIMMONS 1963). Inhibition by spermine of haemoglobin synthesis in reticulocytes and cell free systems has also been reported (ALLEY and SCHWARTZ 1962). According to YOSHIMAWA and MARUO (1960) polyamines and diamines are able to stimulate amylase formation.

HERSHKO AMOS and MAGER (1961) showed that spermine in a concentration of  $10^{-4}M$  stimulated the incorporation of labelled leucine into rat liver microsomes and ribosomes. This effect was most pronounced at suboptimal levels of  $Mg^{++}$  the amount incorporated being above the maximum value reached with optimal  $Mg^{++}$  concentration alone. When the  $Mg^{++}$  content was optimal (about  $10^{-3}M$ ) the spermine effect became inhibitory. The latter effect was considered to be due to a shift of the  $Mg^{++}$  excess inhibition zone to lower levels of  $Mg^{++}$ . Evidence was presented in support of the hypothesis that the site at which the spermine was acting is located in the ribonucleoprotein particle. Spermidine, putrescine and agmatine had effects similar to spermine although less marked.

Spermidine and spermine also had a stimulating effect on the incorporation of amino acids by *E. coli* ribosomes (TISSIÈRES and HOPKINS 1961, DOERFLER *et al.* 1962). Addition of deoxyribonucleic acid to the reaction mixture increased the amino acid incorporation. When deoxyribonucleic acid was added together with small amounts of spermidine this increase was even higher whereas spermidine alone had no significant effect in this system (TISSIÈRES and HOPKINS 1961). Polyamines and diamines also markedly increased phenylalanine

reagent for accurate work. Many attempts were made to develop a method which would permit an accurate and if possible specific determination of spermidine and spermine directly on paper without previous elution of these amines. As only a rather small amount of amine can be applied to paper a high sensitivity is required. Neither spraying the paper strips with dinitrofluorobenzene reagent (ISHFUR WOOD and CRUICKSHANK 1954) nor colorimetric estimation (POSEN THAL and TABOR 1956) after elution of spermidine and spermine from the paper gave satisfactory results. Dyeing with flavianic acid by spraying the paper strips with an aqueous solution of flavianic acid was also tried but spermine was precipitated on the paper only when present in large amounts and spermidine not at all.

*Selection of amido black as quantitative reagent for polyamines*  
In connexion with paper electrophoretic fractionation of human seminal plasma which contains large amounts of spermine some authors have found a basic fraction which moves rapidly to the cathode and forms a poorly soluble complex with acidic protein dyes. Thus CAMBA and CARTA (1954) observed a fraction moving rapidly to the cathode which stained with bromphenol blue. They identified this fraction as spermine. SCHNEIDER, NOWAKOWSKI and VOIGT (1954) found a similar fraction which stained bluish violet with amido black in contrast to protein. They considered this fraction to be mucous matter. In the secretions of bird spiders the basic complex compounds which also took up amido black contained 1,3-diaminopropane and spermine (FISCHER and BOHN 1957a). Intensive staining of the spermine fraction with amido black was also noted by LUTK KATZEN (1957 personal communication) in a paper electrophoretic study of spermatid fluid. This observation led the present author to try to devise a quantitative method using amido black or some other protein dye as reagent. More recently staining of spermine with amido black has also been observed by ESTERON and SWEDEN (1959).

In preliminary experiments in addition to amido black azocarmine was also found to form very sparingly soluble compounds with spermidine and spermine whereas experiments with bromphenol blue and lysamine green were unsuccessful. In this work azocarmine was not tested as a quantitative reagent but according to preliminary experiments it behaves in the same way as amido black. Amido black which was introduced for protein dyeing by GRASSMAN and HANNIG (1950) is an acidic azo dye having two sulphonyl groups per



## PRESENT INVESTIGATION

### DETERMINATION OF SPERMIDINE AND SPERMINE

#### MATERIAL

*Reference standards* Spermidine phosphate and spermine tetrahydrochloride were used as reference standards in the present study. These were preparations obtained from F. Hoffmann — La Roche & Co. Basel or from Mann Research Laboratories Inc. New York. The standards usually prepared in 0.1 N hydrochloric acid were stable for several months at  $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

*Reagents* The amido black used as quantitative reagent for polyamines was obtained from E. Merck Darmstadt (Amidoschwarz 10 B für Elektrophorese und Redoxindikator). Reagents used in preliminary experiments were 2,4-dinitro-1-fluorobenzene (Hoffmann — La Roche), flavamic acid (Hoffmann — La Roche), Azocarmine B (Farbenfabriken Bayer AG, Leverkusen), bromphenol blue (Merck) and hexamine green (British Drug Houses [B.D.H.] Ltd, London). The anhydrous sodium sulphate and trisodium phosphate were manufactured by May & Baker Ltd, Dagenham. The sulphosalicylic acid used as buffer was obtained from Merck.

*Solvents* *n*-butanol (B.D.H.), ethylene glycol monomethyl ether (Merck), propionic acid (Fluka AG, Buchs SG) and pyridine (Baker Chemical Co., Phillipsburg, Missouri). Methanol used for washing both *in situ* preparation from Merck and technical methanol containing 99.8 weight per cent methanol (Enso Gutzeit Co., Imatra) were used. The technical methanol was redistilled at  $64-65^{\circ}\text{C}$  before use.

Other reagents used were *in situ* preparations obtained from Merck.

#### PRELIMINARY EXPERIMENTS

As seen from the review of the literature the chemical methods used for the determination of polyamines are in no way specific. In addition, *p*-nitroaniline was found to be too labile and insensitive a

reagent for accurate work. Many attempts were made to develop a method which would permit an accurate and if possible specific determination of spermidine and spermine directly on paper without previous elution of these amines. As only a rather small amount of amine can be applied to paper a high sensitivity is required. Neither spraying the paper strips with dimethylfluorobenzene reagent (ISHERWOOD and CRICKSHANK 1954) nor colorimetric estimation (ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956) after elution of spermidine and spermine from the paper gave satisfactory results. Dyeing with flavianic acid by spraying the paper strips with an aqueous solution of flavianic acid was also tried but spermine was precipitated on the paper only when present in large amounts and spermidine not at all.

*Selection of amido black as quantitative reagent for polyamines*  
In connexion with paper electrophoretic fractionation of human seminal plasma which contains large amounts of spermine some authors have found a basic fraction which moves rapidly to the cathode and forms a poorly soluble complex with acidic protein dyes. Thus CAMBA and CARTA (1954) observed a fraction moving rapidly to the cathode which stained with bromphenol blue. They identified this fraction as spermine. SCHNEIDER, NOWAKOWSKI and VOIGT (1954) found a similar fraction which stained bluish violet with amido black in contrast to protein. They considered this fraction to be mucous matter. In the secretions of bird spiders the basic complex compounds which also took up amido black contained 1,3 diamino propane and spermine (FISCHER and BOHN 1957a). Intensive staining of the spermine fraction with amido black was also noted by LUTKE KATZEN (1957 personal communication) in a paper electrophoretic study of spermatid fluid. This observation led the present author to try to devise a quantitative method using amido black or some other protein dye as reagent. More recently staining of spermine with amido black has also been observed by ESTERON and SWENBY (1959).

In preliminary experiments in addition to amido black azocarmine was also found to form very sparingly soluble compounds with spermidine and spermine whereas experiments with bromphenol blue and disamine green were unsuccessful. In this work azocarmine was not tested as a quantitative reagent but according to preliminary experiments it behaves in the same way as amido black. Amido black which was introduced for protein dyeing by GRASSMANN and HANNIG (1950) is an acidic azo dye having two sulphonyl groups per

molecule and a mol wt of 572 (DITTMER 1961, p 78) It stains very intensely, thus being useful for the detection of minute amounts of polyamines

Various factors affecting the isolation and paper electrophoretic separation, as well as photometric determination, of spermidine and spermine with amido black are discussed at greater length in the following sections For purposes of orientation, a brief outline of the present method is given below

Tissue is homogenized in dilute hydrochloric acid The homogenate is deproteinized with trichloroacetic acid The protein free filtrate is then extracted with ether to remove most of the trichloroacetic acid and made alkaline After addition of a sodium sulphate-tertiary sodium phosphate salt mixture the amines are extracted into n butanol After extraction the butanol phase is separated, made acidic and evaporated to dryness The residue is dissolved with dilute hydrochloric acid and subjected to paper electrophoresis After electrophoresis the paper strips are dried and stained with amido black solution, dried again and the extra colour washed off in a methanol-acetic acid bath The coloured amine fractions are cut off, eluted with sodium hydroxide and determined photometrically

## TISSUE HOMOGENIZATION

### *Homogenization Technique Effect of Hydrolysis*

As yet it has not been demonstrated whether the polyamines occurring in mammalian tissues are primarily in a firmly bound form (cf FISCHER and BOHLY 1957b) However as spermidine and spermine being highly basic substances have a high affinity for compounds containing acidic groups (see p 18) it seemed possible that during the homogenization procedure a secondary distribution and binding might occur especially if the homogenization medium was nearly neutral This was supported by the finding that in preliminary experiments when 70 per cent ethyl alcohol was used for protein precipitation instead of trichloroacetic acid very poor recoveries were obtained

In the following experiments one rat liver was cut into slices and divided into two equal portions one of which was homogenized in 0.9 per cent sodium chloride and the other in 0.1 N hydrochloric acid one part of tissue to 4 parts of solution (wt/vol) with an Ultra Turrax homogenizer (Janke & Kunkel AG Staufen). For each homogenate three different procedures were applied. In the first series the protein was precipitated with 10 per cent trichloroacetic acid immediately after homogenization in the second the homogenate was stored for 24 hours at  $-18^{\circ}\text{C}$  and then deproteinized. The third series was stored as described above then hydrolysed in 1 N hydrochloric acid for 4 hours at  $100^{\circ}\text{C}$  and finally deproteinized. The protein free filtrates were analysed as described on p. 43. The results are summarized in Table 1. When 0.1 N HCl was used as homogenization

Table 1 Effect of homogenization technique and hydrolysis on the recovery of spermidine and spermine from rat liver. Polyamine content expressed as  $\mu\text{g/g}$  fresh tissue

Procedure	Homogenization medium			
	0.9 per cent NaCl		0.1 N HCl	
	Spermidine	Spermine	Spermidine	Spermine
I Precipitation immediately after homogenization	109	183.0	100	199.4
	109	185.0	118.9	194.6
	105.3	185.3	138	198.8
	Mean	103.7	183.6	109
II Homogenate stored 4 h at -18°C and then deproteinized	95.6	17.3	149	199.4
	91.8	17.6	141.1	196.0
	95.0	18.3	165	199.4
	Mean	94.1	16.0	144
III Homogenate stored as in II then hydrolysed in 1 N HCl 4 h at 100°C	104.8	196.7	111	199.4
	109.1	199.9	138	199.9
	110.8	198.8	165	200.5
	Mean	108	198.1	138

medium all three procedures gave practically the same mean recovery that is for spermidine 120.9, 124.2 and 123.7  $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet weight and for spermine 197.6, 198.3 and 200.6  $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet weight. In this case acid hydrolysis did not enhance the recovery. In contrast smaller

yields were obtained when 0.9 per cent sodium chloride was used as homogenization medium. The mean percentage recoveries if compared with the same series homogenized in hydrochloric acid, were about 86, 76 and 87 per cent for spermidine, and 93.89 and 99 per cent for spermine. This indicates that spermidine was bound the binding increasing with storage of the homogenate, acid hydrolysis could only partly release the bound amine. Spermine seemed to be bound to a smaller extent.

Hydrolysis in 3 or 6 N hydrochloric acid at 100°C did not enhance the recovery from tissues when 0.1 N HCl was used as homogenization medium. When even stronger hydrolysis was tried viz in 6 N HCl at 130°C for 4 hours, the recoveries from the tissues were only 60 to 70 per cent, a yield of 100 per cent was obtained, however, from pure polyamine solutions.

Thus it appears that when homogenization was carried out in a neutral medium a secondary binding of polyamines occurred. The experiments in which hydrochloric acid was used as homogenization medium do not support the hypothesis that the polyamines occur primarily in a firmly bound form in rat liver or in whole chick embryo which was also tested. This is in agreement with the results reported by FISCHER and BOHN (1957b). These workers found that alkaline hydrolysis did not improve the recovery of spermidine and spermine from several mammalian tissues for which reason they concluded that in the tissues studied these amines occur in entirely unbound form, i.e. as salts.

#### *Recovery of Spermidine and Spermine Added to Homogenate*

To discover the extent to which spermidine and spermine could be recovered when added to the homogenate the following experiments were made. Chick embryos were homogenized in 4 parts (wt/vol) of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride. To 2.5 ml of homogenate 20 or 40 µg of spermidine and spermine were added the protein was precipitated after 10 min with 10 per cent trichloroacetic acid and the polyamines determined from the filtrates. The results are presented in Table 2. The mean recoveries of added spermidine were 93.3 and 95.9 per cent and of added spermine 96.9 and 98.4 per cent.

Table 2 Recovery of spermidine and spermine added to homogenate Homogenate from chick embryo was prepared by homogenizing one part of tissue in 4 parts (wt/wt) of 0.2 per cent sodium chloride the stated amount of polyamines was added and deproteinized with trichloroacetic acid 10 min later Mean value  $\pm$  standard deviation of 4 determinations

Addition	Spermidine recovered		Spermine recovered	
	%	per cent of added	%	per cent of added
No addition	33 $\pm$ 13		39.5 $\pm$ 14	
20 $\mu$ g	51.9 $\pm$ 0.4	93.3 $\pm$ 3.6	54.9 $\pm$ 0.8	96.9 $\pm$ 3.8
40 $\mu$ g	1.6 $\pm$ 1.6	9.9 $\pm$ 4.0	8.9 $\pm$ 1.3	23.4 $\pm$ 3.3

## PURIFICATION AND SEPARATION OF SPERMIDINE AND SPERMINE

### Butanol Extraction

To achieve a distinct separation and to increase specificity on paper electrophoresis a previous purification of the protein free tissue extracts is needed. In the present work butanol extraction according to McINTIRE, ROTH and SHAW (1947) has been employed. The following procedure was used: 8 ml of protein free filtrate in a glass stoppered test tube was made alkaline (pH 12-13) with sodium hydroxide. 2 g of a salt mixture consisting of 62.5 g anhydrous sodium sulphate and 9 g trisodium phosphate was added. The solution was then extracted with 8 ml of *n*-butanol with vigorous mechanical shaking for 30 min. After centrifugation at low speed the butanol phase was sucked up carefully in a pipette with a rubber bulb, transferred to a small evaporation dish, evaporated to dryness after acidification and then applied to paper electrophoresis.

The recovery of spermidine and spermine in the butanol phase was determined by addition of 20 or 40  $\mu$ g of each polyamine to 8 ml of water and treating as described above. The results are presented in Table 3. The mean percentage recovery for spermidine was  $91.8 \pm 1.5$  and for spermine  $95.3 \pm 0.6$  (standard deviation). ROSENTHAL and TABOR (1956) using tertiary butanol for extraction obtained approximately 90 per cent of spermidine and spermine in the butanol phase. Thus in the present study somewhat higher yields were

*Table 5 Recovery of spermidine and spermine by butanol extraction. The amines were extracted from 8 ml of alkaline aqueous solution treated with 2 g of sodium sulphate - trisodium phosphate salt mixture with 8 ml of n butanol for 30 min*

Addition $\mu\text{g}$	Amine recovered in butanol phase			
	Spermidine		Spermine	
	$\mu\text{g}$	per cent	$\mu\text{g}$	per cent
25	23.8	91.2	23.6	94.4
"	23.2	92.8	24.0	96.0
"	22.8	91.2	23.8	95.2
50	45.6	91.2	47.3	94.6
"	47.0	94.0	47.4	94.8
"	44.6	89.2	47.6	95.2
"	45.4	90.8	47.8	95.6
"	46.9	93.8	47.9	95.8
"	46.2	92.4	48.0	96.0
Mean $\pm$ S.D.		91.5 $\pm$ 1.5		95.3 $\pm$ 0.6

obtained with n butanol. The extraction recovery was checked several times during the course of the work by adding spermidine and spermine to the protein free filtrate prior to butanol extraction and was found to be about 92 per cent for spermidine and 95 per cent for spermine. Therefore the standards were not included in the experiments until the paper electrophoresis stage, and the extraction loss of 8 per cent for spermidine or 5 per cent for spermine was taken into account in the calculation of the polyamine content of the unknown sample.

The «amine fraction» obtained by extraction of the protein free tissue extract with n butanol was by no means pure but contained traces of amino acids and other ninhydrin positive substances which on paper electrophoresis migrated more slowly than did the polyamines (Fig 5 p 40). Thus in addition to polyamines more than ten ninhydrin positive spots could be detected on thin layer chromatograms from chick embryo extracts. However the butanol extract was found to be pure enough to allow an adequate separation of polyamines on paper electrophoresis. By contrast in some experiments in which protein free tissue extracts were subjected to paper electrophoresis without previous butanol extraction the polyamine fractions were not separated distinctly enough.

## Paper Electrophoresis

**Apparatus and materials** For paper electrophoresis two non commercial apparatuses were used in which the paper strips were placed horizontally on three glass rods 18 paper strips  $3 \times 30$  cm Whatman No 1 could be placed for a simultaneous run Stabilized power of 300 V was employed All runs were made at room temperature No cooling device was used

*Table 4 Effect of buffer concentration on the recovery of spermidine and spermine on paper electrophoresis Sulphosalicylic acid buffer pH 3.5 Staining with amido black Each value is a mean of 4 or 5 determinations  $\pm$  1% of each polyamine per strip*

Molar concentration of buffer	Spermidine		Spermine	
	Absorbance	Change per cent	Absorbance	Change per cent
0.07	0.40		0.31	
0.06	0.40	$\pm 0$	0.341	-0.3
0.05	0.465	-11	0.333	-6
0.03	0.451	-40	0.317	-3

**Selection of buffers** 0.065 M sulphosalicylic acid buffer at pH 3.5 was used unless otherwise stated Variations of pH from 2.5 to 5.0 had no significant effect on the recovery of polyamines In contrast when the buffer concentration was varied losses due to adsorption especially in the spermine fraction were noted when the buffer concentration was less than 0.06 M (Table 4) The adsorption of spermidine was smaller With a buffer concentration higher than 0.07 M the separation of spermidine and spermine from each other was not complete 0.065 M buffer gave a good separation and recovery was still optimal Some typical paper electrophoretic strips stained with amido black are seen in Fig. 1

Citric acid buffer was also used for paper electrophoresis mainly in isotope experiments The adsorption effect in the spermine fraction at a low buffer concentration (less than 0.07 M) was similar to that described above With 0.1 M citric acid buffer a distinct separation was obtained and adsorption was negligible Sulphosalicylic acid buffer was preferred for routine work however because of the lower background values after staining with amido black



*Table 3 Recovery of spermidine and spermine by butanol extraction. The amines were extracted from 8 ml of alkaline aqueous solution treated with 2 g of sodium sulphate - trisodium phosphate salt mixture with 8 ml of n butanol for 30 min*

Addition $\mu$ g	Amine recovered in butanol phase			
	Spermidine		Spermine	
	$\mu$ g	per cent	$\mu$ g	per cent
2	22.8	91.2	23.6	94.4
"	23.2	92.8	24.0	96.0
"	22.8	91.2	23.8	95.7
50	45.6	91.2	47.3	94.6
"	47.0	94.0	47.4	94.8
"	44.6	89.2	47.6	95.2
"	45.4	90.8	47.8	95.6
"	46.9	93.8	47.9	95.8
"	46.2	92.4	48.0	96.0
Mean $\pm$ S.D.		91.8 $\pm$ 1.5		95.3 $\pm$ 0.6

obtained with n butanol. The extraction recovery was checked several times during the course of the work by adding spermidine and spermine to the protein free filtrate prior to butanol extraction and was found to be about 92 per cent for spermidine and 95 per cent for spermine. Therefore the standards were not included in the experiments until the paper electrophoresis stage and the extraction loss of 8 per cent for spermidine or 5 per cent for spermine was taken into account in the calculation of the polyamine content of the unknown sample.

The amine fraction obtained by extraction of the protein free tissue extract with n butanol was by no means pure, but contained traces of amino acids and other ninhydrin positive substances which on paper electrophoresis migrated more slowly than did the polyamines (Fig 5 p 40). Thus in addition to polyamines more than ten ninhydrin positive spots could be detected on thin layer chromatograms from chick embryo extracts. However the butanol extract was found to be pure enough to allow an adequate separation of polyamines on paper electrophoresis. By contrast in some experiments in which protein free tissue extracts were subjected to paper electrophoresis without previous butanol extraction, the polyamine fractions were not separated distinctly enough.

amido black (p 39) As shown in Fig 11 lysine and ornithine migrated near to spermine Owing to the relatively short duration of the run (2 h) used in this experiment lysine also migrated near to spermine 1,3 Diaminopropane putrescine and histamine were distinctly separated from spermidine and spermine

As stated on p 41 ornithine and lysine even in high concentrations did not interfere with the quantitative determination of polyamines with amido black However to achieve a distinct separation between ornithine and spermine as required in isotope experiments in which radioactive ornithine was used 0.07 M citric acid buffer at pH 3.5 was employed for paper electrophoresis (cf p 48) In these conditions ornithine migrated 5.7 cm spermine 7.7 cm and spermidine 9.0 cm in 2.5 hours

### *Identification of Spermidine and Spermine by Paper and Thin Layer Chromatography*

Few solvent systems give an adequate separation of polyamines HLRST, KEISTER and WEAVER (1956) tested more than 50 solvent systems and found only two to be useful for the separation of diamines and polyamines viz diethylene glycol monomethyl ether-propionic acid-water (70:10:10) saturated with sodium chloride and ethylene glycol monomethyl ether-propionic acid-water (70:15:10) saturated with sodium chloride The latter was used in the present study and gave a distinct separation of spermidine and spermine The following solvent systems were used in paper chromatography

- Solvent 1: ethylene glycol monomethyl ether-propionic acid-water 70:15:15 saturated with sodium chloride  
 Solvent 2: n-butanol-acetic acid-water 4:1:1  
 Solvent 3: buffered phenol pH 1 (buffer 50 ml of 0.2 M HCl and 97 ml of 0.2 N HCl buffer-phenol 1:1)  
 According to FISCHER and BOHR (1957b)

Both one and two dimensional ascending paper chromatography was performed with Whatman No. 1 paper Solvents 1 and 3 were used in one dimensional chromatography The average R<sub>f</sub> values were as follows solvent 1 spermine 0.20 spermidine 0.31 solvent 3 spermine 0.14 spermidine 0.21 In the two dimensional method

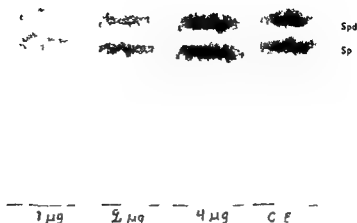


Fig 1 Separation of spermidine and spermine by paper electrophoresis: 0.065 M sulphosalicylic acid buffer pH 3.5 Potential gradient 8 V/cm time of electrophoresis 2.5 h Paper Whatman No. 1 3 × 39 cm Staining with amido black 1, 2 or 4 μg of each polyamine per strip C.E. = extract of 4 day old chick embryo Spd = spermidine Sp = spermine

*Paper electrophoretic separation of various amines and basic amino acids* The studies in which the paper electrophoretic migration of spermidine and spermine has been compared with that of other amines and basic amino acids have shown that the naturally occurring aliphatic diamines, viz. 1,3-diaminopropane, putrescine and cadaverine having a greater mobility, can be distinctly separated from the polyamines with several buffer systems (FISCHER and BOHN 1957b, HERBST, KEISTER and WEAVER 1958). Of the various monoamines, butylamine and amylamine had a mobility near to that of the polyamines in a system in which 0.05 M sulphosalicylic acid buffer at pH 4.0 was used (HERBST, KEISTER and WEAVER 1958). FISCHER and BOHN (1957b) using pyridine-acetic acid-citric acid buffer systems obtained a good separation of basic amino acids including arginine, histidine and lysine from the polyamines. Ornithine was not studied in their system. Histamine and ethanolamine had a mobility near to that of spermidine.

In the present experiments attention was paid to the paper electrophoretic mobility of the basic compounds which would interfere with the quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine with

amido black (p 39) As shown in Fig 3 1-ornithine and ornithine migrated near to spermine Owing to the relatively short duration of the run (2 h) used in this experiment lysine also migrated near to spermine 1,3 Diaminopropane putrescine and histamine were distinctly separated from spermidine and spermine

As stated on p 41 ornithine and lysine even in high concentrations did not interfere with the quantitative determination of polyamines with amido black However to achieve a distinct separation between ornithine and spermine as required in isotope experiments in which radioactive ornithine was used 0.07 M citric acid buffer at pH 3.5 was employed for paper electrophoresis (cf p 49) In these conditions ornithine migrated 5.7 cm spermine 7.7 cm and spermidine 9.0 cm in 2.5 hours

### *Identification of Spermidine and Spermine by Paper and Thin Layer Chromatography*

Few solvent systems give an adequate separation of polyamines HEPST, KEISTER and WPAFF (1958) tested more than 50 solvent systems and found only two to be useful for the separation of diamines and polyamines viz diethylene glycol monomethyl ether-propionic acid-water (70:15:15) saturated with sodium chloride and ethylene glycol monomethyl ether-propionic acid-water (70:15:15) saturated with sodium chloride The latter was used in the present study and gave a distinct separation of spermidine and spermine The following solvent systems were used in paper chromatography

- Solvent 1: ethylene glycol monomethyl ether-propionic acid-water 70:15:15 saturated with sodium chloride  
Solvent 2: *n*-butanol-acetic acid-water 4:1:5  
Solvent 3: buffered phenol pH 1 (buffer 50 ml of 0.2 M HCl and 97 ml of 0.2 N HCl buffer-phenol 1:1)  
According to FISCHER and BOHN (1957b)

Both one and two dimensional ascending paper chromatography was performed with Whatman No 1 paper Solvents 1 and 3 were used in one dimensional chromatography The average *R<sub>F</sub>* values were as follows solvent 1 spermine 0.20 spermidine 0.31 solvent 3 spermine 0.14 spermidine 0.21 In the two dimensional method

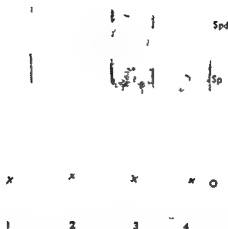


Fig 2 Separation of spermidine and spermine by one dimensional paper chromatography Solvent ethylene glycol monomethyl ether—propionic acid—water, 70 15 15 saturated with sodium chloride Paper Whatman No 1 Ascending technique run for 6 hours Staining with amido black Strip No 1 0.5  $\mu$ g No 2 1  $\mu$ g and No 3 2  $\mu$ g of each polyamine per strip No 4 chromatogram from a 10 day old chick embryo Spd = spermidine Sp = spermine O = origin

solvent 2 was used in the first stage (Rf values spermine 0.04 spermidine 0.07) solvent 1 in the second stage (Rf values spermine 0.07 spermidine 0.18)

For thin layer chromatography the layer of adsorbent (Kieselgel G nach Stahl Merck) was applied to glass plates of 20  $\times$  20 cm with the Desaga applicator (C Desaga Heidelberg) Solvent 1 was used in slightly modified form

Solvent 4 ethylene glycol monomethyl ether—propionic acid—water 77.5 15 7.5

For detection of polyamines the chromatograms were sprayed with 0.2 per cent ninhydrin (in abs ethanol—pyridine—conc hydrochloric acid 94 4 1) or with amido black solution As little as 0.25  $\mu$ g of each polyamine could be detected with both reagents on paper chromatograms and 0.1  $\mu$ g on silica gel chromatograms Some typical

paper chromatograms stained with amido black are seen in Fig 2. As shown in Fig 2 (see also Fig 1) spermidine and spermine are the only compounds in chick embryo extracts which formed poorly soluble complexes with amido black.

## DETERMINATION OF SPERMIDINE AND SPERMINE WITH AMIDO BLACK

Since GRASSMANN and HANNO (1950) introduced amido black for protein staining many modifications to the method have been suggested especially that the washing procedure should be made more rapid. In the present method the washing procedure was in principle the same as was used by GRASSMANN and HANNO whereas it was necessary to modify the dye solution as well as the staining technique to achieve optimal recoveries. In the following experiments the procedure was studied step by step to rule out possible sources of error and to find reasons for the method finally adopted (p. 43).

### *Factors Affecting Staining*

*Drying of paper strips before staining* A slight decrease of 2 to 5 per cent in recoveries was observed when the paper strips were dried in an oven at 105°C for 5 to 60 min before staining compared with the values obtained from papers dried at room temperature. For this reason the strips were allowed to stand at room temperature after electrophoresis to lose most of the extra moisture which took about one hour and were then stained.

*Interference with dye binding on papers stored unstained* When sulphosalicylic acid buffer was used for electrophoresis a decrease in the recovery of the dye was sometimes observed. In these cases the paper strips had been kept unstained for several days to a few months after electrophoresis. This observation led to a more accurate study of this effect. From 20 strips run simultaneously 3 or 4 papers at a time were stained at intervals of several days. As little as four days later a slight decrease in the recovery of the dye of both the spermidine and spermine fractions could be observed. As seen from Fig 3 the decrease became more marked with time.

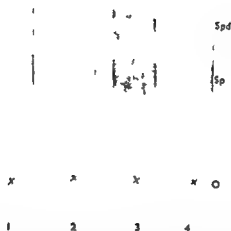


Fig. 2 Separation of spermidine and spermine by one dimensional paper chromatography. Solvent ethylene glycol monomethyl ether—propionic acid—water 70:15:15 saturated with sodium chloride. Paper Whatman No. 1. Ascending technique run for 6 hours. Staining with amido black. Strip No. 1 0.5  $\mu$ g No. 2 1  $\mu$ g and No. 3 2  $\mu$ g of each polyamine per strip. No. 4 chromatogram from a 10 day old chick embryo. Spd = spermidine Sp = spermine O = origin.

solvent 2 was used in the first stage (Rf values spermine 0.04 spermidine 0.07) solvent 1 in the second stage (Rf values spermine 0.07 spermidine 0.15).

For thin layer chromatography the layer of adsorbent (Kieselgel G nach Stahl Merck) was applied to glass plates of 20  $\times$  20 cm with the Desaga applicator (C. Desaga Heidelberg). Solvent 1 was used in slightly modified form.

Solvent 4 ethylene glycol monomethyl ether—propionic acid—water 77:5:15:7:5.

For detection of polyamines the chromatograms were sprayed with 0.2 per cent ninhydrin (in abs. ethanol—pyridine—conc. hydrochloric acid 94:4:1) or with amido black solution. As little as 0.25  $\mu$ g of each polyamine could be detected with both reagents on paper chromatograms and 0.1  $\mu$ g on silica gel chromatograms. Some typical

Table 5 Dye binding of spermidine and spermine by different staining procedures

- spray with saturated amido black in methanol—acetic acid—water (2:1:7) = present method
- spray with saturated amido black in methanol—acetic acid (9:1)
- staining for 10 min in dye bath with the same solution as in b)

After staining the papers were dried for 5 min at 105°C followed by washing in methanol—acetic acid (9:1) for 90 min. Each absorbance value represents a mean of 4 determinations of 4 µg of each polyamine per strip

Amine	Staining technique		
	a	b	c
Spermidine	0.44	0.41*	0.419
Spermine	0.340	0.39*	0.331

Table 5 However as the polyamines are water soluble staining with aqueous solution in a dye bath was not feasible. For this reason spraying of papers with the dye solution was tested and found to be very suitable for the purpose. Staining of 20 strips took only a few minutes and consumed little dye solution. In addition contamination of the dye with buffer was avoided. It was only necessary to spray one side of the paper.

After spraying the papers were dried in an oven at 105°C for 5 min. No significant differences in recoveries were found when the drying time was varied from 5 to 30 min. On the other hand when the strips were washed without previous drying a considerable loss of colour was found in the spermidine fraction.

**Washing procedure** An essential step in the present method is the washing of the excess dye from the paper after staining. As is generally known amido black is bound very firmly by cellulose so that to achieve a nearly colourless background a washing time of several hours is required if the usual methanol—acetic acid (9:1) is used. For protein staining many modifications of the washing procedure have been introduced e.g. the use of aqueous acetic acid solution (e.g. OOSTERHUIS 1954; FICKE 1954). In the present method methanol—acetic acid (9:1 vol/vol) was preferred because addition of water causes losses of the spermidine fraction as does the use of methanol alone. Prolongation of the washing time naturally gives lower background values but at the same time a possible washing



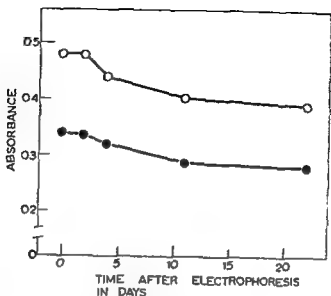


Fig 3 Interference with dye binding on papers stored unstained after electrophoresis Sulphosalicylic acid buffer Each spot represents a mean of 3 or 4 determinations ○ = spermidine ● = spermine  $\frac{1}{2}$   $\mu$ g of each polyamine per strip

Citric acid buffer was also used in a similar experiment but no change in the recovery was observed during 20 days. It is probable that oxidized sulphosalicylic acid reacts in some way with the polyamines, so interfering with their dye binding. However if the paper strips are stained within one day after electrophoresis, the sulphosalicylic acid buffer can be used without any loss of colour.

During electrophoresis, the sulphosalicylic acid buffer became markedly coloured especially in the anode side reservoir. When such a coloured buffer was used again a similar «washing off» effect was found to that described above. Therefore the sulphosalicylic acid buffer must be changed after every run. By contrast the same citric acid buffer can be used several times in succession provided it is always remixed between runs.

### Staining and Washing Procedures

**Staining** In protein staining amido black is used as a rule in a saturated methanolic solution with 10 per cent acetic acid. In the present experiments, however it was found that staining with an aqueous solution of amido black gave better results as is seen from

*Table 3 Dye binding of spermidine and spermine by different staining procedures*

- spray with saturated amido black in methanol-acetic acid-water (2:1:7) — present method
- spray with saturated amido black in methanol-acetic acid (9:1)
- staining for 10 min in dye bath with the same solution as in b)

After staining the papers were dried for 5 min at 105°C followed by washing in methanol-acetic acid (9:1) for 90 min. Each absorbance value represents a mean of 4 determinations 1 µg of each polyamine per strip

Amine	Staining technique		
	a	b	c
Spermidine	0.474	0.41 <sup>a</sup>	0.419
Spermine	0.340	0.39 <sup>a</sup>	0.331

Table 5 However as the polyamines are water soluble staining with aqueous solution in a dye bath was not feasible. For this reason spraying of papers with the dye solution was tested and found to be very suitable for the purpose. Staining of 20 strips took only a few minutes and consumed little dye solution. In addition contamination of the dye with buffer was avoided. It was only necessary to spray one side of the paper.

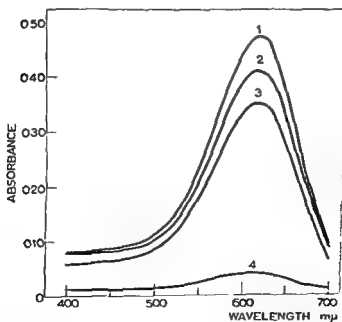
After spraying the papers were dried in an oven at 10°C for 5 min. No significant differences in recoveries were found when the drying time was varied from 5 to 30 min. On the other hand when the strips were washed without previous drying a considerable loss of colour was found in the spermidine fraction.

*Washing procedure* An essential step in the present method is the washing of the excess dye from the paper after staining. As is generally known amido black is bound very firmly by cellulose so that to achieve a nearly colourless background a washing time of several hours is required if the usual methanol-acetic acid (9:1) is used. For protein staining many modifications of the washing procedure have been introduced e.g. the use of aqueous acetic acid solution (e.g. OOSTERHUIS 1954; PEAR 1954). In the present method methanol-acetic acid (9:1 vol/vol) was preferred because addition of water causes losses of the spermidine fraction as does the use of methanol alone. Prolongation of the washing time naturally gives lower background values but at the same time a possible washing

off of the polyamine fractions must be taken into account. In Table 6 the effect of the washing time is shown. This indicates that the amido black-spermine complex is practically insoluble in methanol-acetic acid and very firmly attached to the paper. By contrast small losses can be observed in the spermidine fraction, for in this case prolongation

*Table 6* Effect of washing time on the dye binding of spermidine and spermine on paper 4  $\mu$ g of each polyamine per strip. The absorbance values represent means of 4 determinations

Washing time min	Absorbance		
	Spermidine - blank	Spermine - blank	Blank
60	0.479	0.349	0.065
75	0.481	0.348	0.058
90	0.471	0.349	0.048
120	0.461	0.350	0.045
150	0.449	0.353	0.040
180	0.444	0.356	0.034



*Fig. 4* Absorption spectra of amido black in 0.1 N NaOH measured in 1 cm cells against water. No. 2: 10  $\mu$ g authentic amido black. No. 1, 3, 4: absorption spectra of the dye eluted from a paper electrophoretic strip with 1 ml of 0.1 N NaOH. No. 1: 4  $\mu$ g of spermidine (- blank). No. 3: 4  $\mu$ g of spermine (- blank). No. 4: blank.

of the washing time from 60 to 180 min caused a fall of 7 per cent in the recovery. A washing time of 90 min was chosen since thereafter the background colour decreased relatively little and on the other hand the background was quite evenly decolourized.

In this connexion it can be mentioned that spermidine and spermine give different colours with amido black on paper. The amido black-spermidine complex is greyish whereas with spermine amido black gives a bluish colour. However the absorption spectra of the amido black-polyamine complexes eluted with sodium hydroxide solution from paper are identical with that of authentic amido black showing an absorption maximum at 615 m $\mu$  (Fig. 4). This indicates that the complexes are dissociated in alkaline solution.

### *Dye binding Capacity of Spermidine and Spermine*

The molar ratio (amido black/polyamine) in the amido black-polyamine complex was determined as follows:

To determine the molar extinction coefficient of amido black the dye was carefully dried to constant weight and 4 samples of 572 mg (1 mmole) each were dissolved in 1 l of 0.1 N sodium hydroxide and further diluted to 1/100 with the same solution. This diluted solution ( $10^{-3}$ M) gave a mean absorbance of 0.418 in 1 cm cells at 615 m $\mu$  against water. The molar extinction coefficient calculated from this value was 41 800/mole/l at 615 m $\mu$ . The corresponding extinction values of amido black bound to one mole of spermidine or spermine on paper were 85 200 and 85 900 respectively (Table 7). This indicates that two moles of amido black are bound per mole of polyamine.

*Table 7* Dye binding capacity of spermidine and spermine on paper. Calculated from extinction of amido black bound per mole of polyamine on paper dissolved in 1 l of 0.1 N sodium hydroxide. Molar extinction coefficient of amido black 41 800 at 615 m $\mu$ .

	Extinction of amido black bound per mole polyamine	Mole of amido black bound per mole of polyamine
Spermidine	85 200	2.04
Spermine	85 900	2.05

Since the amido black spermine complex appeared to be insoluble in water, an experiment was made in which spermine was precipitated with amido black in aqueous solution. 0.1 mmole of spermine was precipitated with 0.4 mmole of amido black in 10 ml of distilled water, and 20 ml of methanol—acetic acid (9:1) was added at  $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$ . After two hours the precipitate was separated by centrifugation and washed ten times with 20 ml of methanol—acetic acid mixture, the supernatant was then practically colourless. The precipitate was collected, dried at  $105^{\circ}\text{C}$  and weighed. The yield was 140.0 mg. If it is assumed that the spermine was precipitated quantitatively, the amount of amido black in the amido black spermine complex would be

$140.0\text{ mg} - 20.2\text{ mg (0.1 mmole of spermine)} = 119.8\text{ mg}$   
is equal to 0.209 mmole of amido black. Thus this result is in agreement with the ratio calculated above from the molar extinction coefficient.

Because the amido black spermidine complex is slightly soluble in water, spermidine was not precipitated quantitatively in the above mentioned conditions.

### *Stability of Amido Black in Alkaline Solution*

PEZOLD and PEISER (1953) using amido black for protein staining observed a marked and rapid decrease in the colour of amido black in 0.1 N sodium hydroxide solution after elution of the dye from the paper, especially if the concentration of stained protein was high. A similar instability of the colour was also found by MONCKF (1956) in experiments in which the protein was fixed by heating, the colour remained constant if methanol—ether was used for fixation. The decrease in colour was greatest at the absorption maximum, while at 500 to 520  $\text{m}\mu$  it remained constant (EBERHARD 1956).

In contrast, in the course of the present work amido black was not found to be unstable in alkaline solution after elution of the dye from the paper. During the first 3 to 4 hours there was no significant change in the colour measured at the absorption maximum (615  $\text{m}\mu$ ). Similarly, pure amido black dissolved in 0.1 N sodium hydroxide showed no instability during 6 hours. In this connexion it may be emphasized that according to DITTMER (1961, p. 88) the colour remains unchanged for two hours after elution from the paper.

### *Specificity of the Present Method for Polyamines*

According to OSBORN (1960) the important combining sites of protein with acidic dyes are the basic groups of histidine lysine and arginine. To test the degree to which various basic substances other than spermidine and spermine *eg* other amines and basic amino acids would be able to form poorly soluble complexes with amido black a rapid screening on paper was carried out with relatively strong solutions. 20 to 40  $\mu\text{g}$  of each compound (expressed as free base or as salt) was applied in acid solution onto paper dried and stained with amido black. The commercial preparations tested included

Glutamine (L Light & Co Ltd Colnbrook Bucks) asparagine (Merck) ornithine (Fluka) arginine (B D H) lysine (Merck) histidine methylamine diethylamine (all from Hoffmann - La Roche) propylamine (Fluka) isoamylamine ethanolamine (both from Hoffmann - La Roche) tryptamine (Sigma Chemical Co St Louis) serotonin (Hoffmann - La Roche) noradrenalin (Light) histamine (B D H) 1,3-diaminopropane (Th. Schuchardt CMBH & Co Munchen) putrescine cadaverine adenine and uracil (all from Hoffmann - La Roche)

Eight of these including ornithine arginine lysine histamine propylamine isoamylamine 1,3-diaminopropane and putrescine gave a more or less sparingly soluble precipitate with amido black. These compounds were then subjected in amounts of 4  $\mu\text{g}$  of each expressed as free base to paper electrophoresis along with 2  $\mu\text{g}$  of spermidine and spermine. One of the duplicate sheets was stained with amido black and the other with ninhydrin (Fig 5). All the fractions other than the polyamines were gradually washed off. After a washing time of 90 min a weak spot of amido black was left in the histamine area whilst only negligible traces of amido black could be found in the 1,3-diaminopropane putrescine ornithine arginine and lysine areas. The propylamine and isoamylamine precipitates were washed off completely. Of the various diamines tested 1,3-diaminopropane formed the least soluble complex with amido black whereas the cadaverine amido black precipitate was readily washed off from the paper.

These results indicate that the specificity of the amido black method for spermidine and spermine is not absolute even though of high degree. Therefore butanol extraction and paper electrophoresis

Since the amido black spermine complex appeared to be insoluble in water an experiment was made in which spermine was precipitated with amido black in aqueous solution. 0.1 mmole of spermine was precipitated with 0.4 mmole of amido black in 10 ml of distilled water, and 20 ml of methanol—acetic acid (9:1) was added at + 3°C. After two hours the precipitate was separated by centrifugation and washed ten times with 20 ml of methanol—acetic acid mixture. The supernatant was then practically colourless. The precipitate was collected, dried at 105°C and weighed. The yield was 140.0 mg. If it is assumed that the spermine was precipitated quantitatively, the amount of amido black in the amido black spermine complex would be

$140.0 \text{ mg} - 20.2 \text{ mg (0.1 mmole of spermine)} = 119.8 \text{ mg}$   
119.8 mg is equal to 0.209 mmole of amido black. Thus this result is in agreement with the ratio calculated above from the molar extinction coefficient.

Because the amido black spermidine complex is slightly soluble in water, spermidine was not precipitated quantitatively in the above mentioned conditions.

### *Stability of Amido Black in Alkaline Solution*

PEZOLD and PEISER (1953) using amido black for protein staining observed a marked and rapid decrease in the colour of amido black in 0.1 N sodium hydroxide solution after elution of the dye from the paper, especially if the concentration of stained protein was high. A similar instability of the colour was also found by MONCKE (1956) in experiments in which the protein was fixed by heating; the colour remained constant if methanol—ether was used for fixation. The decrease in colour was greatest at the absorption maximum, while at 500 to 520 m $\mu$  it remained constant (EBERHARD 1956).

In contrast, in the course of the present work amido black was not found to be unstable in alkaline solution after elution of the dye from the paper. During the first 3 to 4 hours there was no significant change in the colour measured at the absorption maximum (615 m $\mu$ ). Similarly, pure amido black dissolved in 0.1 N sodium hydroxide showed no instability during 6 hours. In this connexion it may be emphasized that according to DITTMER (1961, p. 88) the colour remains unchanged for two hours after elution from the paper.

electrophoresis (Fig 5) However the bulk of these basic amino acids remains in the aqueous phase in butanol extraction and does not interfere with the determination of spermidine and spermine This was demonstrated by adding ornithine and lysine to the protein free tissue extract in amounts corresponding to a tissue concentration of 0.5 per cent (4 mg to 8 ml) prior to butanol extraction and analysing as described on p 43 This addition had no effect on the recovery of spermidine and spermine

In conclusion it may be stated that the present method which involves butanol extraction subsequent paper electrophoresis and in addition quantitative determination with amido black is highly specific for the determination of spermidine and spermine

### *Precision and Sensitivity*

Assuming that the main sources of error discussed in the preceding sections are eliminated the amido black method for the determination of spermidine and spermine is quite reproducible Thus twenty one standards run in a week 4  $\mu\text{g}$  of each polyamine per strip gave a mean absorbance of  $0.470 \pm 0.006$  (standard deviation) for spermidine and  $0.343 \pm 0.005$  for spermine At the level of 2  $\mu\text{g}$  of each polyamine a standard deviation of  $\pm 2.1\%$  for spermidine and  $\pm 1.9\%$  for spermine was found at the same time Even at the level of 0.5 to 1  $\mu\text{g}$  of polyamine the duplicates did not as a rule deviate by more than 2 to 3 per cent from the mean Hence with this method quantities of 0.5 to 1  $\mu\text{g}$  of polyamine still permitted an accurate determination provided that in these cases the concentration of the standard was near to that of the unknown sample Qualitatively as little as 0.2  $\mu\text{g}$  of polyamine could be detected

To check the precision of the present method as applied to the determination of polyamines from tissue ten simultaneous analyses were made from the same tissue homogenate The result is shown in Table 8 The standard deviation was  $\pm 1.9\%$  for spermidine and  $\pm 2.1\%$  for spermine

Calibration curves for spermidine and spermine are given in Fig 6 The amount of polyamine is expressed as  $\mu\text{moles}$  since in the following part of this work calculation of the polyamine content in tissue as molar concentration was preferred Absorption was linear up to at least 50  $\mu\text{moles}$  of polyamine The calibration curve for



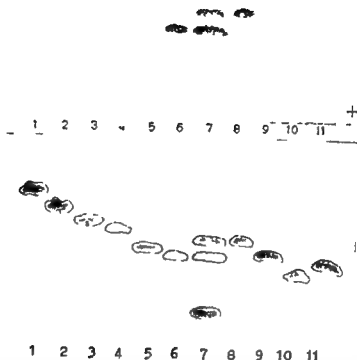


Fig 5 Separation of certain amines and amino acids by paper electrophoresis 0.065 M sulphosalicylic acid buffer pH 3.0 2 h at 300 V paper Whatman No 1 26 x 39 cm Upper sheet stained with amido black lower sheet with ninhydrin 4 µg (2 µg of spermidine and spermine) of the following compounds expressed as free base were applied (electrophoretic migration in cm in parentheses)

1	1,3 diaminopropane	(10.7)	6	spermine	(6.3)
2	putrescine	(9.5)	8	spermidine	(7.4)
3	propylamine	(8.7)	9	ornithine	(6.3)
4	histamine	(8.2)	10	arginine	(5.0)
5	isoamylamine	(6.8)	11	lysine	(5.8)

Sample No 7 extract of chick embryo liver corresponding to 20 mg of fresh tissue. In addition to spermine (6.3 cm) and spermidine (7.3 cm) a weak ninhydrin positive fraction is seen in the putrescine area (9.4 cm)

are required to achieve complete specificity. As previously stated (p. 31) 1,3 diaminopropane, putrescine and histamine were distinctly separated from the polyamines, whereas of the basic amino acids, ornithine and lysine had a mobility near to that of spermine on paper

spermidine passed slightly below the origin. This was due to a small loss of about one  $\mu$ mole in the spermidine fraction during the washing procedure. With a standardized procedure this loss was found to remain constant.

### THE PRESENT METHOD

A summary of the detailed procedure for the determination of spermidine and spermine in tissue based on the experiments described in the preceding part is given below.

*Reagents:* Salt mixture for butanol extraction: 62.5 g of anhydrous sodium sulphate and 9 g of trisodium phosphate are mixed by grinding in a mortar and stored in a vacuum desiccator.

*Saturated amido black* in methanol-acetic acid-water (2:1:7). Saturated solution is prepared by allowing a suspension to stand overnight and then filtering. This solution is stable for several months at room temperature.

*Methanol-glacial acetic acid* (9:1 vol/vol) mixture for washing. Technical methanol redistilled at 64–65°C was found useful for this purpose.

*Buffers:* 0.06% *N* sulphosalicylic acid buffer pH 3.5: 16.5 g of sulphosalicylic acid is dissolved in distilled water, 30 ml of 4 *N* NaOH is added and diluted with distilled water ad 1000 ml. 0.1 *N* citric acid buffer pH 3.5: 21.0 g of citric acid is dissolved in distilled water, 20 ml of 4 *N* NaOH is added and diluted with distilled water ad 1000 ml.

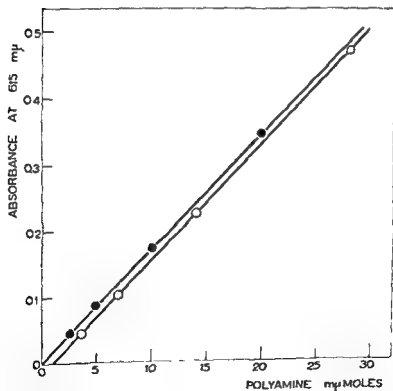
*Reference standards:* Polyamine solutions containing 1, 2 or 4  $\mu$ g of spermidine and spermine in 20  $\mu$ l of 0.1 *N* HCl.

### Procedure

One part of tissue is homogenized with the Ultra Turrax homogenizer in 4 parts (wt/vol) of 0.1 *N* hydrochloric acid for 40 sec. 5 ml of homogenate is deproteinized by addition of an equal volume of 10 per cent trichloroacetic acid and the mixture shaken several times and filtered after about one hour. 8 ml of the filtrate is transferred to a glass stoppered test tube and extracted three times with an equal volume of ether to remove most of the trichloroacetic acid. With the aid of a metal rack 30 to 40 samples can be treated simultaneously.

*Table 8 Spermidine and spermine content determined in ten simultaneous analyses from the same tissue homogenate of 15 day old chick embryos Contents of polyamines are expressed as  $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet weight*

No	Concentration $\mu\text{g/g}$ wet wt	
	Spermidine	Spermine
1	77.9	85.1
2	79.3	86.5
3	81.5	84.6
4	81.0	85.1
5	79.0	83.8
6	79.0	88.3
7	79.0	88.9
8	77.4	84.6
9	77.1	88.6
10	77.1	86.2
Mean $\pm$ S.D.	78.8 $\pm$ 1.5	86.2 $\pm$ 1.9



*Fig. 6 Calibration curves for spermidine and spermine Absorbance at 615 mμ*  
*Abscissa mμmoles of polyamine in 20  $\mu\text{l}$  sample applied to paper electrophoresis*  
 ○ = spermidine ● = spermine

The present method for the quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine from tissues consists principally of three steps viz 1) partial purification of the amine fraction from protein free tissue extracts by butanol extraction 2) paper electrophoretic separation of amines and 3) quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine with amido black. Every step has been commented on to some extent in the preceding sections and therefore only some aspects are discussed here.

Butanol extraction serves as a rapid procedure for preliminary purification of the amine fraction and gives relatively good recoveries. The steam distillation method used by some authors is more time consuming requiring the collection of a large amount of distillate which then has to be evaporated before electrophoresis (HERBST, WEAVER and KEISTER 1958). The percentage recoveries of polyamines about 92 per cent for spermidine and 95 per cent for spermine in the butanol extraction were constant which made the use of standards in this step unnecessary. One disadvantage of butanol extraction was that when the polyamine content of the sample was very low and considerable concentration was therefore needed before electrophoresis the small amount of salt mixture which always passed into the butanol phase interfered with accurate analysis.

Paper electrophoretic separation of polyamines is a reliable simple and fairly rapid method allowing the performance of several runs daily. For accurate work careful application of the sample is necessary. Sulphosalicylic acid and citric acid buffers are useful for separation of polyamines (HERBST, KEISTER and WEAVER (1958) used 0.05 M sulphosalicylic acid buffer at pH 4.0 and 0.03 M citric acid buffer at pH 6.0 for qualitative detection of various aliphatic amines. It was found in the present study that somewhat higher buffer concentrations are required for quantitative analyses. Distinct separation and compact bands were obtained with 0.06 M sulphosalicylic acid buffer at pH 3.5.

The present amido black method for quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine is accurate sensitive and fairly specific for polyamines. In the handling of the paper strips the great caution necessary with ninhydrin methods is not required. Further ammonia does not interfere with this method. As little as 5  $\mu$ moles of polyamine

Ether is removed with a thin pipette connected to a vacuum and finally careful warming. The sample is then treated with 2 g (measured with a calibrated metal cup) of the salt mixture, the salt being dissolved by slight warming. To make the sample strongly alkaline 0.4 ml of 4 N NaOH is finally added. The alkaline salt mixture is then extracted with 8 ml of *n*-butanol with vigorous shaking for 30 min in a mechanical shaker. After centrifugation of the tubes at low speed for 15 min, the butanol layer is carefully sucked into a pipette with a rubber bulb, transferred to a small porcelain dish, acidified with a few drops of conc. hydrochloric acid and then evaporated to dryness in a vacuum oven at 70 to 80°C. The residue is dissolved with 400  $\mu$ l of 0.1 N HCl and stored in a small test tube until paper electrophoresis is performed.

*Paper electrophoresis* The paper strips 7  $\times$  39 cm of Whatman No. 1 are dipped in buffer solution and then blotted to remove the extra moisture. The buffer remaining in the paper is about 1.2 to 1.4 times the original weight of the paper. The strips are then placed on the rack and with a micropipette 20  $\mu$ l of the sample is applied on the starting line, 2 cm to the anode side of the centre of the strip, the margins of the strip being avoided. A constant potential of 300 V corresponding to a potential gradient of about 8 V/cm is applied, giving a sufficient resolution within 2.5 to 3 hours. After the electrophoresis is finished the ends of the papers are blotted and the strips allowed to dry at room temperature until stained.

*Staining and photometric evaluation* The paper strips are sprayed with amido black solution and then dried at 105°C for 5 min. The excess dye is then removed by washing in a methanol-acetic acid bath for exactly 90 min, the washing solution being changed at intervals of 10, 20 and 30 min (the last two 30 min each). After a final drying of the strips for 5 min at 105°C the polyamine fractions and the blank, each of equal size, are cut off and the dye is eluted with 5 ml of 0.1 N NaOH for 20 to 30 min in a test tube shaken twice during the elution. The colour is measured within one hour after elution in a Beckman B spectrophotometer at 615  $m\mu$  using cells with a 1 cm light path.

The polyamine content of the unknown sample is read from a calibration curve obtained from the reference standards run simultaneously with unknown samples in electrophoresis. Corrections of 8 per cent for spermidine and of 5 per cent for spermine are applied on account of losses incurred during the butanol extraction.

## *Incubation of Eggs*

Fertilized eggs of White Leghorn chickens weighing  $55 \pm 2$  g were obtained from a commercial source (Saariönen Oy, Sahalahti) and incubated at  $38 \pm 0.5$  C in a relative humidity of  $65 \pm 5$  per cent with forced air circulation. The eggs were placed on racks with the air space upwards. The racks, each containing 30 eggs, were kept tilted at an angle of about 30 degrees to the horizontal and turned once daily.

## *Injection Technique*

Before injection the eggs were transilluminated to make sure of the viability of the embryos. The blunt end of the egg was then swabbed with 70 per cent ethyl alcohol. All injections were made into the air space (onto the chorion allantoic membrane) through a small hole drilled in the shell straight above the air space in a volume of 100 to 200  $\mu$ l. After the injection the hole was sealed with adhesive tape. The injected eggs were kept in an upright position and not turned thereafter.

## *Preparation of Homogenates*

Homogenates of whole embryos were prepared in the following manner: embryos were removed with forceps, freed from the adherent membranes and yolk sac and then dried gently with blotting paper. Small embryos were removed from the eggs with a spoon and prepared on a cooled sheet of steel. The embryos were then weighed and homogenized with the Ultra Turrax homogenizer for 40 sec in 0.1 N HCl (one part of fresh tissue to 4 parts (wt/vol) of hydrochloric acid). Embryos 10 days old or younger were homogenized in a Potter Elvehjem type homogenizer for 2 min. This technique was also used in the isotope experiments. The polyamine contents obtained from 10-day embryos with these two different homogenization techniques were the same.

A suitable number (2 to 90) of small embryos were pooled for the determination of both the polyamine content and dry weight of the same sample. Homogenates from individual organs were prepared in a similar manner (1 to 10 organs being pooled and homogenized with the Ultra Turrax homogenizer).

## *Analytical Methods*

*Determination of relative dry weight:* 5 ml of homogenate was pipetted into a small beaker, weighed and dried in an oven at 105 C usually for two days to constant weight. For calculation of the relative dry weight  $D$  (mg/g wet weight) the following equation was used (weights as mg):

$$D = \frac{a \cdot b \cdot d}{c \cdot e} \quad \text{where} \quad \begin{aligned} a &= \text{weight of homogenate containing} \\ &\quad 1 \text{ g of fresh tissue} \\ b &= \text{wet weight of the sample} \\ d &= \text{dry weight of the sample} \\ c &= \text{weight of hydrochloric acid per a mg of} \\ &\quad \text{homogenate} \end{aligned}$$

could be determined accurately with amido black. Thus the present method is at least as sensitive as the ninhydrin methods (FISCHER and BOHN 1957b, WEAVER and HERBST 1958), if not more so. The dinitrofluorobenzene method reported by DUBIN (1960) also allowed the determination of quantities as small as 10  $\mu$ equivalents of amino groups but this method as such is not applicable to paper.

The principle of the present quantitative method is precipitation of the polyamines with amido black on paper. As previously stated two moles of the dye are bound to one mole of either polyamine, which seems to indicate that the amount of dye bound is determined by the number of primary amino groups in these amines. This does not, however, exclude the possibility that the secondary amino groups — one in spermidine and two in spermine — also participate in the complex formation. In fact, the differences in the colours and solubilities of the amido black polyamine complexes, which are described in the previous sections, appear to support the latter assumption. The amido black polyamine precipitate is amorphous and strikingly firmly attached to the paper, especially in the spermine fraction. Although the complex is very poorly soluble in a methanol-acetic acid mixture, it readily dissolves in all alkaline solution, in which the complex is dissociated. It is therefore possible to use amido black precipitation for purification of the polyamines as described in connexion with the isotope experiments (p. 48).

## METABOLISM OF SPERMIDINE AND SPERMINE IN THE DEVELOPING CHICK EMBRIO

### MATERIAL AND METHODS

The chick embryo was chosen as the experimental object for the present study on the basis of preliminary experiments. For it was found that neither spermidine nor spermine could be detected in unincubated eggs or in their hydrolysates whereas both these amines were present in embryos indicating synthesis during embryonic development. The chick embryo was therefore considered to be suitable for studying the biosynthesis of polyamines.

## *Incubation of Eggs*

Fertilized eggs of White Leghorn chickens weighing  $50 \pm 2$  g were obtained from a commercial source (Saaronen Oy, Sahalahti) and incubated at  $38 \pm 0.5^\circ \text{C}$  in a relative humidity of  $65 \pm 3$  per cent with forced air circulation. The eggs were placed on racks with the air space upwards. The racks, each containing 30 eggs, were kept tilted at an angle of about 30 degrees to the horizontal and turned once daily.

## *Injection Technique*

Before injection the eggs were transilluminated to make sure of the viability of the embryos. The blunt end of the egg was then swabbed with 70 per cent ethyl alcohol. All injections were made into the air space (onto the chorio-allantoic membrane) through a small hole drilled in the shell straight above the air space in a volume of 100 to 200  $\mu\text{l}$ . After the injection the hole was sealed with adhesive tape. The injected eggs were kept in an upright position and not turned thereafter.

## *Preparation of Homogenates*

Homogenates of whole embryos were prepared in the following manner: embryos were removed with forceps, freed from the adherent membranes and yolk sac and then dried gently with blotting paper. Small embryos were removed from the eggs with a spoon and prepared on a cooled sheet of steel. The embryos were then weighed and homogenized with the Ultra Turrax homogenizer for 40 sec in 0.1 N HCl (one part of fresh tissue to 4 parts (wt/vol) of hydrochloric acid). Embryos 10 days old or younger were homogenized in a Potter Elvehjem type homogenizer for 2 min. This technique was also used in the isotope experiments. The polyamine contents obtained from 10 day embryos with these two different homogenization techniques were the same.

A suitable number (ca. to 90) of small embryos were pooled for the determination of both the polyamine content and dry weight of the same sample. Homogenates from individual organs were prepared in a similar manner, 5 to 10 organs being pooled and homogenized with the Ultra Turrax homogenizer.

## *Analytical Methods*

*Determination of relative dry weight:* 5 ml of homogenate was pipetted into a small beaker, weighed and dried in an oven at  $105^\circ \text{C}$  usually for two days to constant weight. For calculation of the relative dry weight (D (mg/g wet weight)) the following equation was used (weights as mg):

$$D = \frac{a}{b} \times d - c \quad \text{where}$$

- a = weight of homogenate containing 1 g of fresh tissue
- b = wet weight of the sample
- d = dry weight of the sample
- c = weight of hydrochloric acid per a mg of homogenate



Without noteworthy error it was used in the following form

$$D \approx 5\,000/b \times d \sim 14\,6$$

*Determination of spermidine and spermine* Details of the method are given on p 43

### *Isotope Experiments*

*Radioactive material* The following  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled compounds were used

- putrescine 14  $^{14}\text{C}$  dihydrochloride specific activity 417 mC/mmmole (New England Corporation Boston Massachusetts)
- DL ornithine 2  $^{14}\text{C}$  hydrochloride specific activity 10 mC/mmmole (California Corporation for Biochemical Research Los Angeles California)
- DL methionine 2  $^{14}\text{C}$  specific activity 127 mC/mmmole (Volk Radiochemical Company Skokie Illinois)

The labelled compounds were dissolved in 0.9 per cent sodium chloride and injected in a volume of 100 to 200  $\mu\text{l}$

*Liquid scintillator* 'Scintipak 2' (Nash & Thompson Ltd. Tolworth) was used as phosphor for liquid scintillation counting. It was dissolved in an appropriate volume of dioxane (for Chromatographie Merck). As an alternative solvent a mixture containing dioxane, xylene (for Chromatographie Merck), absolute ethyl alcohol and conc. hydrochloric acid (p.a. Merck) according to BOUSQUET and CHRISTIAN (1960) was tested. These solvents gave very similar results.

*Preparation of samples and radioactivity measurements* The isolation of spermidine and sperminine from tissues was largely the same as the isolation of unlabelled polyamines (p. 43). However, to achieve a strict separation of spermidine and spermine 0.06 M (instead of 0.065 M) sulphosalicylic acid or 0.07 M (instead of 0.1 M) citric acid buffer of pH 3.5 was used in isotope experiments. The latter buffer was used especially in experiments with  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled ornithine to separate ornithine distinctly from spermine.

After paper electrophoretic separation the paper strips to be counted were sprayed with ninhydrin solution and kept in an oven at 105°C until the coloured fractions just appeared. The fractions, usually 12 x 30 mm, were cut off and counted directly from the papers in a liquid scintillation counter by placing these freely on the bottom of the counting vials parallel to the face of the photomultiplier tube. This technique was simple and gave reproducible results (cf. BOUSQUET and CHRISTIAN 1960; BLAIR and SGOAL 1962). A linear relation between the counts applied and yielded was obtained up to at least 10 000 cpm. For calculation of specific activity spermidine and sperminine were determined quantitatively from duplicate strips with amido black.

Counting was carried out in an Ecl-o type 664 A liquid scintillation counter (Ecko Electronics Ltd.) with 10 ml of liquid scintillator in the counting vials (Ecko type N671A coated containers). The samples were counted to give a counting error of less than 2 per cent.

The radioactivity of the spermidine and spermine fractions was tested as follows. The polyamines were separated by paper electrophoresis and stained with amido black. The coloured fractions were cut off and eluted with 0.1 N

sodium hydroxide and the polyamines extracted into *n* butanol while amido black remained in the aqueous phase. After the second electrophoresis the specific activity of spermidine and spermine was essentially the same as after the first separation.

*Autoradiographic technique* The electrophoretic paper strips stained with amido black were exposed to the films (Kodak «Industrex» D Kodak Ltd. London) and placed in a lightproof box. The exposure time varied from 10 to 30 days.

The films were developed in «Kodak» D 19b Developer for 1 min, rinsed in water and fixed in «Kodak» Rapid Acid Fixer. The films were then washed for 20 min in running water and dried.

### *Statistical Procedures*

The mean values presented are arithmetic means  $\pm$  SD (standard deviation).

The experimental groups were compared by means of the *t* test. The *t* values were calculated according to BANCROFT (1957, p. 16) it being assumed that the variations of the groups to be compared are basically the same.

## OCCURRENCE OF SPERMIDINE AND SPERMINE IN THE CHICK EMBRYO

In preliminary experiments unincubated hen's eggs were analysed for their polyamine contents: the yolk and the albumen being analysed separately. As mentioned before, neither spermidine nor spermine could be detected in the eggs before or after acid hydrolysis. This indicates that the polyamine contents of the yolk and the albumen are less than 1  $\mu$ mole per g of wet matter. It is therefore evident that the polyamines detected in relatively high concentrations in the chick embryo cannot be derived in appreciable amounts from the egg.

In the following experiments the polyamine contents of the whole chick embryos were determined at different stages of development. Analyses of whole embryos were made at intervals of two days from the third day of incubation. The polyamine contents were calculated per unit of embryo wet weight and dry weight. The results for several incubation batches are summarized in Table II and discussed in greater detail in the following section. In addition the polyamine contents were determined separately from some tissues of the 18 day old embryos. In the following the expression embryo age has been used in the same sense as incubation time.

Table 9 Weight relative dry weight and polyamine contents of the chick embryo at different stages of development Relative dry weight expressed as mg per g of wet weight the polyamine contents as  $\mu\text{moles per g}$  of wet weight and per 100 mg of dry weight Mean values  $\pm$  SD (standard deviation) Spd = spermidine Sp = spermine

Age in days	Series	Number of embryos	Wt of embryos g	Relat dry wt mg/g w wt	Mean content of polyamine			
					$\mu\text{M/g wet wt}$		$\mu\text{M/100 mg dry wt}$	
					Spd	Sp	Spd	Sp
2 2/3	20	1* (90)	0.004	60	611	488	1020	813
4	16	1* (24)	0.059	57	488	397	850	691
6	12	3* (4)	0.312	61	356	321	587	506
"	17	2* (3)	0.367	60	340	331	567	552
Total		5*	$0.335 \pm 0.043$	$61 \pm 1$	$350 \pm 9$	$325 \pm 15$	$579 \pm 13$	$536 \pm 14$
8	12	3* (2)	1.026	62	324	298	525	493
"	17	2* (2)	1.170	62	342	305	556	496
Total		5*	$1.084 \pm 0.101$	$62 \pm 1$	$331 \pm 17$	$301 \pm 19$	$538 \pm 26$	$488 \pm 30$
10	9	5	$1.74 \pm 0.08$		$306 \pm 12$	$292 \pm 12$		
"	18	6	$2.30 \pm 0.18$	$66 \pm 4$	$308 \pm 22$	$292 \pm 21$	$466 \pm 10$	$442 \pm 15$
Total		11	$2.04 \pm 0.32$	$66 \pm 4$	$307 \pm 18$	$292 \pm 16$	$466 \pm 15$	$441 \pm 15$
12	17	6	$4.97 \pm 0.09$	$81 \pm 3$	$377 \pm 10$	$376 \pm 15$	$469 \pm 10$	$466 \pm 11$
14	12 <sup>1</sup>	6	$8.37 \pm 0.42$	$100 \pm 7$	$504 \pm 56$	$394 \pm 40$	$501 \pm 34$	$393 \pm 19$
"	17	3	$9.18 \pm 0.35$	$111 \pm 7$	$484 \pm 19$	$453 \pm 34$	$437 \pm 21$	$408 \pm 8$
"	18 <sup>2</sup>	7	$9.42 \pm 0.46$	$111 \pm 3$	$530 \pm 15$	$438 \pm 16$	$460 \pm 18$	$393 \pm 19$
Total		16	$8.98 \pm 0.64$	$107 \pm 8$	$512 \pm 30$	$424 \pm 38$	$478 \pm 34$	$396 \pm 18$
15	11	5	$11.03 \pm 1.57$	$141 \pm 8$	$544 \pm 19$	$459 \pm 19$	$510 \pm 30$	$376 \pm 17$
"	12	"	$11.01 \pm 0.69$	$137 \pm 5$	$601 \pm 21$	$423 \pm 30$	$439 \pm 21$	$309 \pm 24$
"	18 <sup>3</sup>	6	$11.4 \pm 1.36$	$129 \pm 6$	$570 \pm 24$	$439 \pm 41$	$443 \pm 20$	$341 \pm 38$
Total		18	$11.29 \pm 1.15$	$136 \pm 9$	$586 \pm 24$	$438 \pm 33$	$434 \pm 27$	$344 \pm 29$
16	10	6	$14.61 \pm 1.3$	$176 \pm 11$	$613 \pm 30$	$469 \pm 45$	$349 \pm 17$	$270 \pm 16$
"	17	3	$14.69 \pm 1.00$	$170 \pm 6$	$570 \pm 14$	$404 \pm 10$	$340 \pm 10$	$238 \pm 5$
"	23a	7	$14.82 \pm 0.72$	$180 \pm 10$	$570 \pm 2$	$421 \pm 11$	$313 \pm 14$	$231 \pm 7$
"	23b	"	$14.71 \pm 0.72$	$174 \pm 10$	$485 \pm 29$	$402 \pm 17$	$314 \pm 10$	$231 \pm 12$
Total		23	$14.71 \pm 0.88$	$176 \pm 8$	$570 \pm 40$	$426 \pm 36$	$316 \pm 11$	$231 \pm 18$
18	17	6	$19.70 \pm 1.94$	$187 \pm 9$	$373 \pm 10$	$354 \pm 16$	$300 \pm 10$	$112 \pm 10$

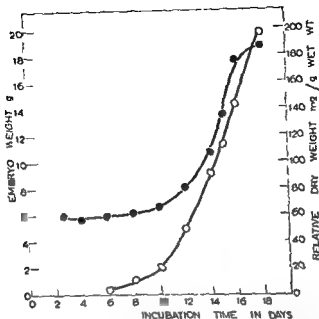


Fig 7 Embryo weight and relative dry weight in relation to embryo age. Relative dry weight expressed as mg per g of wet weight ○ = wet weight ● = relative dry weight

**Wet weight and relative dry weight of embryos** The wet weights (g) and relative dry weights (mg/g of wet weight) of embryos from different incubation batches are presented in Table 9 and the mean values plotted against the embryo age in Fig 7. The dispersion in values obtained from different batches is fairly small and can be explained by minor variations in the incubation conditions, incubation time and analysing technique.

#### *Contents of Spermidine and Spermine in the Whole Chick Embryo at Different Stages of Development*

The mean spermidine and spermine contents of the whole chick embryos from different incubation batches are presented in Table 9.

- 
- pooled sample, number of embryos per pooled sample in parentheses  
 a = homogenized in 0.1 N HCl  
 b = homogenized in 0.01 N HCl  
 1, 2, 3 = treated 1, 2 or 3 times with 900  $\mu$ l of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride

**Table 2** Weight relative dry weight and polyamine contents of the chick embryo at different stages of development. Relative dry weight expressed as mg per g of wet weight the polyamine contents as  $\mu\text{M}$  moles per g of wet weight and per 100 mg of dry weight. Mean values  $\pm$  SD (standard deviation). Spd = spermidine  
Sp = spermine

Age in days	Series	Number of embryos	Wt of embryos g	Relat dry wt mg/g w wt	Mean content of polyamine			
					$\mu\text{M/g}$ wet wt		$\mu\text{M}/100$ mg dry wt	
					Spd	Sp	Spd	Sp
2 2/3	20	1* (90)	0.004	60	611	488	1020	813
"	16	1* (24)	0.059	67	488	397	856	60
"	12	3* (4)	0.312	61	356	321	587	506
"	17	2* (3)	0.367	60	340	331	567	552
Total		5*	$0.335 \pm 0.043$	$61 \pm 1$	$350 \pm 9$	$325 \pm 15$	$570 \pm 13$	$536 \pm 18$
8	12	3* (2)	1.026	62	324	298	525	483
"	17	2* (2)	1.170	62	342	305	556	490
Total		5*	$1.084 \pm 0.101$	$62 \pm 1$	$331 \pm 17$	$301 \pm 19$	$538 \pm 26$	$488 \pm 30$
10	9	5	$1.74 \pm 0.08$		$306 \pm 12$	$292 \pm 12$		
"	18	6	$2.30 \pm 0.18$	$66 \pm 4$	$308 \pm 29$	$292 \pm 21$	$466 \pm 10$	$442 \pm 15$
Total		11	$2.04 \pm 0.32$	$66 \pm 4$	$307 \pm 18$	$292 \pm 16$	$466 \pm 15$	$442 \pm 15$
12	17	6	$4.97 \pm 0.09$	$81 \pm 3$	$377 \pm 15$	$316 \pm 15$	$468 \pm 12$	$406 \pm 11$
14	12 <sup>1</sup>	6	$8.37 \pm 0.42$	$100 \pm 7$	$504 \pm 56$	$394 \pm 40$	$502 \pm 34$	$393 \pm 19$
"	17	3	$9.18 \pm 0.35$	$111 \pm 7$	$484 \pm 19$	$453 \pm 34$	$437 \pm 21$	$408 \pm 8$
"	18	7	$9.42 \pm 0.46$	$111 \pm 3$	$530 \pm 10$	$438 \pm 16$	$411 \pm 18$	$393 \pm 19$
Total		16	$8.98 \pm 0.64$	$107 \pm 8$	$512 \pm 39$	$424 \pm 38$	$478 \pm 34$	$396 \pm 15$
15	11	5	$11.03 \pm 1.57$	$141 \pm 8$	$584 \pm 19$	$459 \pm 19$	$410 \pm 30$	$370 \pm 10$
"	12	7	$11.51 \pm 0.69$	$137 \pm 5$	$601 \pm 22$	$423 \pm 30$	$439 \pm 21$	$390 \pm 24$
"	18 <sup>2</sup>	6	$11.24 \pm 1.36$	$129 \pm 5$	$572 \pm 24$	$439 \pm 41$	$443 \pm 26$	$341 \pm 38$
Total		18	$11.29 \pm 1.15$	$136 \pm 8$	$586 \pm 24$	$438 \pm 33$	$434 \pm 27$	$324 \pm 29$
16	10	8	$14.61 \pm 1.32$	$176 \pm 11$	$613 \pm 20$	$469 \pm 40$	$349 \pm 17$	$267 \pm 10$
"	17	3	$14.69 \pm 1.00$	$170 \pm 5$	$579 \pm 14$	$404 \pm 5$	$340 \pm 10$	$235 \pm 5$
"	23a	7	$14.82 \pm 0.72$	$182 \pm 5$	$550 \pm 22$	$421 \pm 11$	$313 \pm 14$	$234 \pm 5$
"	23b	7	$14.71 \pm 0.72$	$174 \pm 8$	$548 \pm 19$	$401 \pm 17$	$314 \pm 17$	$231 \pm 12$
Total		23	$14.71 \pm 0.89$	$176 \pm 8$	$570 \pm 40$	$426 \pm 36$	$326 \pm 11$	$242 \pm 18$
18	17	6	$19.75 \pm 1.94$	$187 \pm 5$	$533 \pm 10$	$354 \pm 16$	$200 \pm 9$	$100 \pm 7$

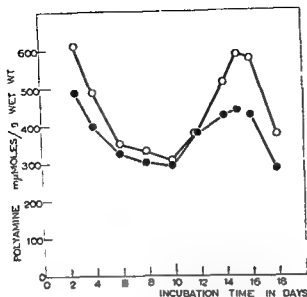


Fig 8 Spermidine and spermine content of the whole chick embryo at various stages of development expressed as  $\mu$ moles per g of wet weight  
 ○ = spermidine ● = spermine

The mean contents of spermidine and spermine as  $\mu$ moles per 100 mg of dry weight in relation to the embryo age are presented in Fig 9. With increasing age of the embryos the content of spermidine fell from the maximum value of 1020  $\mu$ moles on the third day of incubation being only one fifth of this value at the age of 18 days. The corresponding contents of spermine were 813 and 152  $\mu$ moles respectively. However, between the ages of 10 and 14 days the content of spermidine per unit of dry weight remained fairly constant indicating as rapid an increase in the polyamine content as in the dry weight. The spermine content remained constant between the ages of 10 and 12 days.

The total spermidine and spermine contents as  $\mu$ moles per embryo are plotted against the age of the embryos in Fig 10. The amounts of both polyamines increased steadily up to the age of 16 days. In the 16 day embryos the total amount of spermidine was about 8  $\mu$ moles whereas only 7.4  $\mu$ moles was obtained from 18 day embryos. A similar decrease was also found in the total amount of spermine after the age of 16 days.

grouped according to the age of the embryos. The mean contents  $\pm$  S D (standard deviation) are expressed both as  $\mu$ moles per g of wet weight and per 100 mg of dry weight. Up to the age of 10 days the values were obtained from pooled samples. Table 9 includes a further three groups which have been injected one to three times with 200  $\mu$ l of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride, as treatment with sodium chloride has been found to have no effect on the polyamine contents.

The polyamine contents of embryos belonging to the same incubation batch and age group deviate relatively little from the mean, the standard deviation being with few exceptions about  $\pm$  5 per cent. Some of the greatest deviations are due to differences in embryo weights. On the other hand the degree of correlation between embryo weight and polyamine concentration is not consistent. In general, the dispersion is smaller if the polyamine contents are calculated per unit of dry weight than per unit of wet weight.

As indicated in Table 9 (incubation series 23a, b) homogenization in 0.1 or 0.01 N HCl gave essentially the same recoveries. The slightly lower values of the relative dry weight and polyamine contents per g of wet weight obtained with 0.01 N HCl were mainly due to a single low value in this group.

The polyamine contents of embryos of the same age but from different incubation batches agree fairly well. Therefore groups of the same age have been combined and the mean values  $\pm$  S D have also been calculated from these combined groups. In the following, attention is paid to changes in these mean polyamine contents during embryonic development.

The mean contents of spermidine and spermine expressed as  $\mu$ moles per g of wet weight in relation to embryo age are presented in Fig. 8. It can be seen that the changes in the concentrations of these two amines are fairly parallel. The highest concentrations 611  $\mu$ moles of spermidine and 488  $\mu$ moles of spermine per g were obtained on the third day of incubation. The concentrations of both polyamines then gradually fell to a low level, about 300  $\mu$ moles of each polyamine in the 8 to 10 day old embryos. There followed a rapid increase in the polyamine contents which reached its maximum about 600  $\mu$ moles of spermidine and 430  $\mu$ moles of spermine on the 16th day of incubation. After this stage there was a sharp decrease in the polyamine contents as only about 370  $\mu$ moles of spermidine and 280  $\mu$ moles of spermine were detected in the 18 day embryos.

The molar ratio spermidine/spermine varied between 1.0 and 1.3 during the course of development. It gradually decreased from a value of 1.25 on the third day to about 1 on the 12th day, after which it increased, being above 1.3 from the 15th to the 18th day.

### *Contents of Spermidine and Spermine in Various Tissues of the Embryo and in Extra embryonic Parts*

The contents of spermidine and spermine in brain, heart, small intestine, liver and skeletal muscle of 18 day embryos are presented in Table 10. The values were obtained from samples consisting of the pooled organs of 6 to 10 embryos.

*Table 10 Spermidine and spermine content in some tissues of 18-day-old chick embryos. Polyamine content expressed as  $\mu$ moles per g of wet weight and per 100 mg of dry weight relative dry weight as mg per g of wet weight. For determination 6 to 10 organs or tissue samples were pooled. Spd = spermidine, Sp = spermine.*

Tissue	Relat dry weight	Polyamine content				Molar ratio Spd/Sp
		$\mu\text{M/g w wt}$		$\mu\text{M}/100 \text{ mg d.wt}$		
		Spd	Sp	Spd	Sp	
Brain	13°	333	462	93	301	0.7°
Heart	137	957	548	187	400	0.47
Intestine	123	539	61°	408	461	0.89
Liver	130	878	5	601	558	1.17
Muscl (th gh)	14	456	363	715	250	1.98

There are marked differences between the polyamine contents of the different tissues. The highest spermidine content, 878  $\mu$ moles per g of fresh tissue, was obtained from the liver, whereas less than one third of the liver concentration was found in the heart. The liver was also rich in spermine, containing 752  $\mu$ moles per g, whereas only 363  $\mu$ moles per g was obtained from the skeletal muscle.

The molar ratio spermidine/spermine also varied markedly from tissue to tissue. Thus the molar concentration of spermidine in the heart was only one half of the spermine concentration, whereas in skeletal muscle and liver its molar concentration exceeded that of spermine.



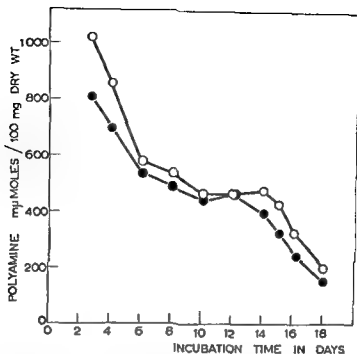


Fig 9 Spermidine and spermine content of the whole chick embryo at different stages of development expressed as  $\mu$ moles per 100 mg of dry weight  
 ○ = spermidine ● = spermine

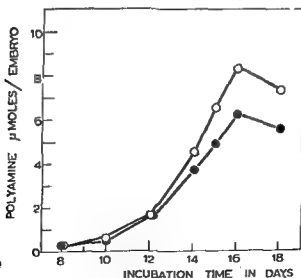


Fig 10 Total spermidine and spermine content ( $\mu$ moles/embryo) of the chick embryo in relation to age  
 ○ = spermidine ● = spermine

day earlier the similarity of the ribonucleic acid curve to that of the polyamines is obvious. The nucleic acid content per unit of dry weight (REDDY, LOMBAPDO and CERECEDO 1952; MAPRIAN, HUGHES and WERBA 1956) also shows changes similar to those occurring in the polyamines. Thus it can be stated that the polyamines and ribonucleic acid show similar changes during embryonic development but the importance of this correlation as well as the causal relation is not possible to evaluate at present.

The total nitrogen content expressed as a percentage of the wet weight (LEVY and PALMER 1940) shows minor changes during development. However a peak can be observed on the 2nd day and another on the 17th day i.e. somewhat later than in the polyamines. Per unit of dry weight the total nitrogen varies within a range of 10 to 12 per cent of the dry weight (KIVIRIKKO 1963). The changes in free amino nitrogen (KIVIRIKKO 1963) from the 10th to the 18th day are fairly similar to those of the polyamines. It is evident that these peaks observed at the age of 14 to 16 days are correlated with general changes in the nitrogen metabolism of the embryo. Thus for example of the total material that is resorbed daily protein constitutes the largest proportion at this stage (NEEDHAM 1942 p. 62). Certain enzymes from whole chick embryo extracts for example dipeptidase (LEVY and PALMER 1940) and aminopeptidase (LEVY and PALMER 1943) show two peaks of activity, one on the 2nd day and the other on the 14th to 16th days, some others for example glutamic dehydrogenase (SOLOMONY 1957) show a similar peak on the 15th to 16th day.

The occurrence of spermidine and spermine in the chick embryo in relatively large amounts as noted in the present study may also be taken as evidence that the polyamines are connected in some way with growth and protein synthesis. Large amounts of polyamines especially of spermidine were also found in newborn rat liver where the concentration of spermidine was several times that of spermine (ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956). Further support for this view was afforded by the observations that the tissues in which protein synthesis is rapid such as the bone marrow in leukemia (HAMALAINEN 1941) or the liver and pancreas (ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956) are especially rich in polyamines. However the possible physiological significance of these facts is obscure at the present time.

According to the present results there are marked differences between the polyamine contents of different tissues of the chick

The polyamine content in the extra embryonic parts was in general much lower than in the embryo. On the 16th day of incubation the yolk sac contained about 40  $\mu$ moles of spermidine and 90  $\mu$ moles of spermine per g of wet matter, two days later the concentrations of both polyamines were only one half of these values. In amniotic and allantoic fluids both spermidine and spermine were only found in traces ( $< 5$   $\mu$ moles/ml) at different stages of development.

## DISCUSSION

The results of the present investigation demonstrate that the polyamine concentration in the whole chick embryo is highest at the early stage of development. Another peak was found at the age of 15 to 16 days, after which a sharp decrease was observed. The polyamine content per unit of dry weight decreased continuously during development, except at the age of 10 to 14 days, at which time it remained fairly constant. The changes in both spermidine and spermine at different stages were fairly parallel.

The results further indicate that the concentrations of spermidine and spermine in whole chick embryos varied within quite a small range in groups of the same age. On the other hand the changes in the polyamine contents at different stages are apparently connected with the changes in metabolism that occur during embryonic development. As stated previously, some recent studies have shown that the polyamines like  $Mg^{++}$  are able to stabilize nucleic acids and the nucleic acid containing particles of the cell. In addition they are in certain conditions able to stimulate incorporation of amino acids into protein (see pp 18—21). These studies suggest that spermidine and spermine are possibly connected in some way with nucleic acid and protein metabolism. It is therefore interesting to compare the changes in the polyamines with those observed in the nucleic acids and nitrogen content during embryonic development.

According to NOVIKOFF and POTTER (1948) the concentration of deoxyribonucleic acid (per cent wet weight) in the whole chick embryo rises from the 2nd to the 15th day after which it falls. In contrast the concentration of ribonucleic acid has two maximum values, one on the 2nd and the other on the 14th day after which it falls sharply. Except that the latter maximum is reached about one

day earlier the similarity of the ribonucleic acid curve to that of the polyamines is obvious. The nucleic acid content per unit of dry weight (REDDY, IOMBARDO and CERECEDO 1952, MARRIAN, HUGHES and WERBA 1956) also shows changes similar to those occurring in the polyamines. Thus it can be stated that the polyamines and ribonucleic acid show similar changes during embryonic development but the importance of this correlation as well as the causal relation is not possible to evaluate at present.

The total nitrogen content, expressed as a percentage of the wet weight (LEVY and PALMER 1940) shows minor changes during development. However a peak can be observed on the 2nd day and another on the 17th day, i.e. somewhat later than in the polyamines. Per unit of dry weight the total nitrogen varies within a range of 10 to 12 per cent of the dry weight (KIVIRIKKO 1963). The changes in free amino nitrogen (KIVIRIKKO 1963) from the 10th to the 18th day are fairly similar to those of the polyamines. It is evident that these peaks observed at the age of 14 to 16 days are correlated with general changes in the nitrogen metabolism of the embryo. Thus for example of the total material that is resorbed daily protein constitutes the largest proportion at this stage (NEEDHAM 1942 p. 62). Certain enzymes from whole chick embryo extracts, for example dipeptidase (LEVY and PALMER 1940) and aminopeptidase (LEVY and PALMER 1943) show two peaks of activity, one on the 2nd day and the other on the 14th to 16th days. Some others, for example glutamic dehydrogenase (SOLOMONOV 1957) show a similar peak on the 15th to 16th day.

The occurrence of spermidine and spermine in the chick embryo in relatively large amounts as noted in the present study may also be taken as evidence that the polyamines are connected in some way with growth and protein synthesis. Large amounts of polyamines, especially of spermidine, were also found in newborn rat liver where the concentration of spermidine was several times that of spermine (ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956). Further support for this view was afforded by the observations that the tissues in which protein synthesis is rapid such as the bone marrow in leukemia (HAMALAINEN 1941) or the liver and pancreas (ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956) are especially rich in polyamines. However the possible physiological significance of these facts is obscure at the present time.

According to the present results there are marked differences between the polyamine contents of different tissues of the chick.

embryo The highest values were obtained from the liver They were somewhat lower than the values obtained from livers of mouse rat or rabbit (ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956) The molar ratio spermidine/spermine also varied appreciably being above 1 in the liver and skeletal muscle It is probable that the molar ratio reflects the metabolic activity of the polyamines in the tissue in question ROSENTHAL and TABOR (1956) reported that only traces of polyamines were recovered from the liver of the chicken, which they suggested to be due to a high turn over rate However some preliminary experiments by the present author (unpublished) seem to indicate that the polyamine content in the chicken liver is of the same order as in chick embryos but the concentration of spermine is nearly twofold compared with that of spermidine At present the extent to which degradation of polyamines occurs in the chick embryo is not known The total content of polyamines per embryo decreased after the age of 16 days It is therefore likely that this decrease is due to increased degradation because the contents of the yolk sac and of the amniotic and allantoic fluids were quite small and did not indicate noteworthy excretion of polyamines

## BIOSYNTHESIS OF SPERMIDINE AND SPERMIN IN THE DEVELOPING CHICK EMBRYO

### *Preliminary Experiments*

In preliminary experiments several non labelled compounds which might act as precursors in the biosynthesis of polyamines were injected into eggs in order to demonstrate changes in the polyamine contents of the embryos These compounds injected into the air space on the 8th to 10th day of incubation in amounts of 1 to 10 mg included putrescine (Hoffmann — La Roche) DL ornithine (Fluka) and L methionine (Fluka) However no consistent changes were found in the polyamine contents

### *Effect of Ethionine on the Polyamine Content of Whole Chick Embryos*

In micro organisms it has been shown that methionine participates in the biosynthesis of spermidine Assuming that the mechanism is also the same in the chick embryo it seemed likely that ethionine

**Table 11** *Effect of DL ethionine on the spermidine and spermine contents of whole chick embryos*

Ethionine was injected in 200  $\mu$ l of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride into the air space controls receiving the same amount of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride. Relative dry weight expressed as mg per g wet weight and polyamine contents as  $\mu$ moles per g wet weight and per 100 mg dry weight. Mean values  $\pm$  standard deviation.

C = controls E = treated with ethionine Spd = spermidine Sp = spermine

**Treatment Series I** 20  $\mu$ moles of ethionine to 12-day old embryos analysed 40 h after injection

**Series II** 15  $\mu$ moles of ethionine twice the first injection at 12 days the second at 13 days. Analysed 24 h after the latter administration

**Series III** 15  $\mu$ moles three times the first injection at 12 days the two others at intervals of 24 h each. Analysed 24 h after the last injection

Series	Num- ber of embr	Wt of embryos	Relat dry wt	Polyamine content $\mu$ moles				Molar ratio Spd/Sp
				/g wet wt		/100 mg d wt		
				Spd	Sp	Spd	Sp	
I C	6	8.37	100	04	394	502	393	1.28
		$\pm 0.4$	$\pm 7$	$\pm 56$	$\pm 40$	$\pm 34$	$\pm 19$	
E	6	61*	106	550	359	519	340	1.53
		$\pm 0.38$	$\pm 10$	$\pm 55$	$\pm 96$	$\pm 95$	$\pm 44$	
II C	7	9.4*	111	530	438	416	393	1.21
		$\pm 0.46$	$\pm 3$	$\pm 15$	$\pm 16$	$\pm 18$	$\pm 19$	
E	7	8.37	108	543	381* *	603	354	1.43
		$\pm 0.88$	$\pm 5$	$\pm 30$	$\pm 14$	$\pm 4$	$\pm 18$	
III C	6	11.4	109	572	439	437	341	1.30
		$\pm 1.36$	$\pm 5$	$\pm 24$	$\pm 41$	$\pm 30$	$\pm 38$	
E	7	10.98	109	568	359	443	280	1.58
		$\pm 1.37$	$\pm 9$	$\pm 18$	$\pm 99$	$\pm 37$	$\pm 9$	

P < 0.05

\*\* P < 0.01

\*\*\* P < 0.001

as a methionine antagonist might affect the polyamine concentration. The effect of ethionine (DL-ethionine L. Light & Co. Ltd) was studied in three different experimental series 20 to 45  $\mu$ moles of ethionine in one to three doses was injected into eggs incubated 12 to 14 days. The treatments and results are presented in Table 11.

Ethionine retarded the weight gain of the embryos in all the doses used. The mean wet weight of the embryos treated with ethionine

was about 90 per cent of the controls. The difference in the first two series was also statistically significant ( $P < 0.01$  and  $< 0.05$  respectively). In contrast no noteworthy changes could be found in the relative dry weights.

The concentration of spermidine was only slightly affected by ethionine. In the first two series the spermidine content was even higher in the ethionine treated groups than in the controls. However, owing to the difference in the weights of the embryos the total amount of spermidine per embryo was 1 to 9 per cent smaller in the ethionine treated groups than in the controls.

In contrast to spermidine, the concentration of spermine was significantly lower in all the groups that received ethionine compared with the controls. The contents of spermine, expressed per unit of wet weight, were in the first series 11, in the second 13 and in the third series 18 per cent lower in the ethionine treated embryos. The total amount of spermine per embryo was 17 to 25 per cent smaller in the embryos treated with ethionine. Most of the changes in spermine were also statistically significant.

The molar ratio spermidine/spermine also clearly reflects the effect of ethionine on the polyamines which was to cause an increase of 18 to 22 per cent in the molar ratio. This increase was chiefly due to the decrease in the spermine content and to a lesser extent to the increase in the spermidine content.

### *Incorporation Studies with $^{14}\text{C}$ Labelled Compounds*

In the following experiments 1- $^{14}\text{C}$  putrescine, 2- $^{14}\text{C}$  DL ornithine and 2- $^{14}\text{C}$  DI methionine were used to study the biosynthesis of polyamines in the developing chick embryo. Radioactivity was found in both spermidine and spermine after administration of all these compounds. In contrast no radioactivity could be detected in the polyamines after administration of uniformly labelled  $^{14}\text{C}$  glucose or uniformly labelled  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline (both from The Radiochemical Centre, Amersham, dose  $2\text{ }\mu\text{Ci/gg}$ ). In addition the effect of ethionine on the methionine incorporation was studied. Some of these results have been presented in a preliminary note (RAINA 1962b) and are discussed in greater detail in the following section.

## Incorporation of $14^{\text{C}}$ Putrescine

In these experiments 5 to 10  $\mu\text{C}$  of  $14^{\text{C}}$  putrescine was injected into eggs on the 9th day of incubation. At appropriate time intervals after the injection the embryos were analysed one at a time. The specific and total activities of the polyamines are presented in Table 12 and Fig. 11.

*Table 12 Incorporation of radioactivity into polyamines in the chick embryo after injection of  $14^{\text{C}}$  putrescine on the 9th day of development. Specific activity counts per minute per  $\mu\text{mole}$  of polyamine. One embryo analysed at a time.*

Time after injection h	Dose $\mu\text{C}$	Specific activity	
		Spermidine	Spermine
5	5	17 300	1 500
15	5	59 300	19 800
" "	"	9 400	5 400
30	5	54 700	9 000
60	"	27 600	9 600
140	5	1 800	4 500
27	10	8 700	40 400

The specific activity of spermidine (cpm/ $\mu\text{mole}$ ) 5 h after injection of 5  $\mu\text{C}$  of putrescine was 17 300 cpm/ $\mu\text{mole}$  and increased steadily for about twenty hours. The specific activity then began to decrease being only 1 800 cpm 140 hours (6 days) after injection.

The specific activity of the spermine fraction increased more slowly than that of spermidine and at its maximum was less than half that observed in spermidine. 15 hours after administration the radioactivity in the spermine fraction barely exceeded that of the background. 15 hours after injection the specific activity of spermine was 19 800 and at 22.5 hours 25 700 cpm/ $\mu\text{mole}$  then remaining fairly constant up to at least 60 hours. 11 days after administration the specific activity was only 4 500 cpm.

The corresponding changes in the total activities of spermidine and spermine (cpm/embryo) are presented in Fig. 11. Spermidine reached a total activity of about 37 000 cpm/embryo 22.5 to 30 hours after the injection and then slowly decreased being 9 000 cpm 6 days



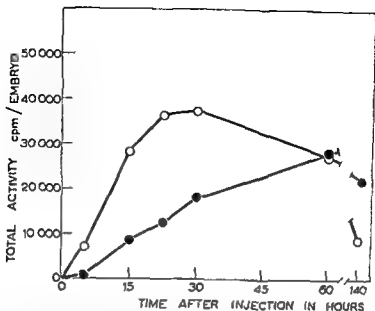


Fig 11 Incorporation of radioactivity into spermidine and spermine in the chick embryo after injection of  $5 \mu\text{C}$  of  $1-^{14}\text{C}$  putrescine on the 9th day of development Total activity as counts per minute per embryo  
 ○ = spermidine ● = spermine



A

B

Fig 12 Autoradiogram (B) obtained from extract of a chick embryo treated with  $10 \mu\text{C}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$  putrescine and analysed 27 h later Paper electrophoretic strip stained with amino black and then exposed to film (Kodak Industrex Type D) Exposure time 30 days A duplicate strip stained with amino black

after administration. The total activity of spermine increased up to at least 60 hours being at this time approximately the same as that of spermidine. 6 days after the injection the total activity was still 22 300 cpm or about 2.5 times that of spermidine. It can be further noted that at 60 hours a total activity of about 56 000 cpm was recovered in the polyamines whereas only 31 000 cpm was detected 3 days after administration. Of the total radioactivity injected per egg about 1 per cent could be detected in the polyamines 60 hours after administration.

The radioactivity of the putrescine fraction gradually decreased and was about 3 per cent of that in the polyamines 60 hours after administration of 5  $\mu$ C of putrescine. Thus the administered putrescine is largely metabolized by some other pathway than via the polyamines.

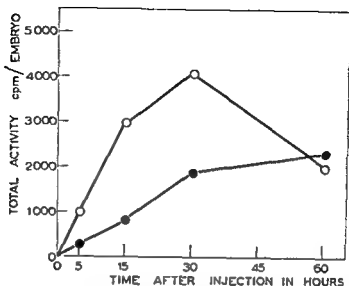
The radioactivity of spermidine and spermine 27 hours after injection of 10  $\mu$ C of  $^{14}$ C putrescine is also shown by the autoradiographic technique (Fig. 12). In the electropherogram stained with amido black the only active fractions were the polyamines indicating the washing off of other fractions for example putrescine which was highly active in the unstained strips.

### *Incorporation of 2 $^{14}$ C DL-Ornithine*

The specific activities of the polyamines (cpm/ $\mu$ mole) after administration of 1  $\mu$ C of 2  $^{14}$ C DL ornithine on the 9th day of incubation are presented in Table 13. The incorporation of radioactivity after ornithine was quite similar to that after putrescine. However the

*Table 13. Incorporation of radioactivity into polyamines in the chick embryo after administration of  $^{14}$ C DL ornithine on the 9th day of development. Specific activity counts per minute per  $\mu$ mole of polyamine. One embryo analysed at a time.*

Time after injection h	Dose $\mu$ C	Specific activity	
		Spermidine	Spermine
0	1	~140	00
15	1	5 000	1 600
30	1	6 600	3 400
60	1	16 0	2 080
30	5	61 00	3 800



*Fig 13 Incorporation of radioactivity into polyamines in the chick embryo after injection of 1  $\mu$ C of 2  $^{14}$ C DL ornithine on the 9th day of development Total activity as counts per minute per embryo  
 ○ = spermidine ● = spermine*

specific activities were only about one tenth of those obtained with putrescine, partly because the dose used was smaller. With a dose of 5  $\mu$ C, the specific activities were of the same order as those obtained with 5  $\mu$ C of putrescine.

The total activities (cpm/embryo) of spermidine and spermine obtained with 1  $\mu$ C of ornithine are presented in Fig 13. The curves are fairly similar to those for putrescine showing that there was a more rapid incorporation of radioactivity into spermidine in the beginning, whereas 60 hours after injection the total activity of spermine exceeded that of spermidine.

In addition to spermidine and spermine a weak, more rapidly moving fraction could be detected as a rule in electropherograms of chick embryo extracts stained with ninhydrin. After administration of labelled ornithine this fraction contained radioactivity showing a maximum total activity about 5 times that of spermidine 5 hours after injection of ornithine. This fraction had the same mobility as putrescine in paper electrophoresis (cf Fig 5) and in two dimensional paper chromatography. The identity of this compound with putrescine, although likely, has not yet been strictly confirmed.

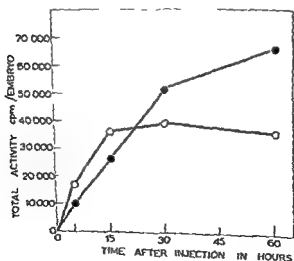
## Incorporation of $2^{14}\text{C}$ DL Methionine

In these experiments  $5\text{ }\mu\text{C}$  of  $2^{14}\text{C}$  DL methionine was administered to eggs on the 10th day of incubation. Incorporation of radioactivity into the polyamines is seen in Table 14 and Fig. 14.

The specific activity (cpm/ $\mu\text{mole}$  Table 14) of spermidine increased rapidly and reached its maximum about 59 000 cpm 15 hours after

*Table 14 Incorporation of radioactivity into polyamines in the chick embryo after administration of  $5\text{ }\mu\text{C}$  of  $2^{14}\text{C}$  DL methionine on the 10th day of development. Specific activity counts per minute per  $\mu\text{mole}$  of polyamine. Each value represents the specific activity obtained from a single embryo.*

Time after injection h	Specific activity	
	Spermidine	Spermine
5	30 600	19 000
15	59 100	45 600
30	49 00	63 900
60	31 100	60 100
	24 600	66 600



*Fig. 14 Incorporation of radioactivity into polyamines in the chick embryo after injection of  $5\text{ }\mu\text{C}$  of  $2^{14}\text{C}$  DL methionine. Total activity as counts per minute per embryo.  $\circ$  = spermidine  $\bullet$  = spermine.*

administration and then gradually decreased. Except that the peak was reached earlier, the curve of activity is quite similar to that obtained with putrescine. In contrast, incorporation of radioactivity into spermine after administration of methionine was more rapid than after putrescine. As little as 5 hours after treatment the specific activity of spermine was 19 000 cpm and exceeded the maximum activity of spermidine about 30 h after injection.

The total activity (cpm/embryo, Fig. 14) of spermidine reached its maximum between 15 and 30 hours after injection and showed only a slight decrease at 60 hours. The total activity of spermine gradually increased up to at least 60 hours at which time it was 65 000 cpm or nearly twofold that of spermidine. Of the total radioactivity injected per egg about 2.8 per cent was recovered in the polyamines of the embryo 60 hours after administration.

#### *Effect of Ethionine on the Incorporation of 2-<sup>14</sup>C Methionine*

In these experiments 6  $\mu$ moles of DL ethionine was injected into eggs on the 10th day of incubation. 5 hours later 2  $\mu$ C of 2-<sup>14</sup>C DL methionine was injected into the eggs treated with ethionine and into those serving as controls. Analyses were made 30 hours after the latter injection. The results are presented in Table 15.

Ethionine caused a retardation in the weight gain similar to that described previously. The mean wet weight of the control group was 2.72 g and 2.46 g or 10 per cent lower in the group that received ethionine.

Incorporation of radioactivity into polyamines was quite uniform in the embryos of the same group. The specific and total activities of spermidine were only slightly affected by ethionine. The mean specific activity of spermine was 23 900 cpm/ $\mu$ mole in the control group and 14 per cent lower in the ethionine treated group. The mean total activity (cpm/embryo) of spermine was 20 per cent lower in the ethionine treated embryos than in the controls.

The results described here are in agreement with the data presented in a previous section. They confirm the observation that ethionine in the doses used especially affects the synthesis of spermine and only slightly the synthesis of spermidine.

Table 15 Effect of ethionine on  $^{14}\text{C}$  methionine incorporation into polyamines in the chick embryo

6  $\mu\text{moles}$  of DL ethionine was administered into the airspace on the 10th day of incubation in 200  $\mu\text{l}$  0.9 per cent sodium chloride controls receiving sodium chloride solution only 5 h later 2  $\mu\text{C}$  of 2  $^{14}\text{C}$  DL methionine in 200  $\mu\text{l}$  of sodium chloride solution was administered to each egg Analysis 30 h after the latter injection

Spd = spermidine Sp = spermine

Treatment	No of embryo	Wt of embryo	Specific activity cpm per $\mu\text{mole}$		Total activity cpm per embryo	
			Spd	Sp	Spd	Sp
$^{14}\text{C}$ methionine	1	0.8	15 100	23 800	17 400	0 800
	2	0.60	17 600	23 000	16 800	19 800
	3	0.61	19 500	25 000	17 700	21 000
	4	2.5	19 100	23 900	17 800	21 400
	Mean	0.9	18 800	23 900	17 400	20 800
Ethionine + $^{14}\text{C}$ methionine	1	0.39	18 100	20 500	15 400	15 800
	2	0.47	19 700	21 500	16 500	16 300
	3	0.73	19 000	19 700	17 400	17 400
	4	2.48	19 500	0 600	18 900	17 800
	Mean	0.46	19 800	20 600	16 700	16 800

## DISCUSSION

The results of the present experiments with labelled compounds demonstrate that putrescine, ornithine and methionine can act as precursors in the biosynthesis of spermidine and spermine in the developing chick embryo whereas radioactivity was not incorporated into the polyamines after administration of labelled glucose or labelled proline. Ethionine reduces the concentration of spermine in the whole embryo and also reduces the incorporation of radioactivity into spermine after administration of labelled methionine.

Experiments with micro organisms have shown that putrescine and ornithine are incorporated into spermidine and spermine being the source of the four carbon chain of the polyamines (TABOR, ROSE, THAL and TABOR 1956, 1958). It has further been shown by GREENE (1957) that the source of the three carbon chain of spermidine is methionine. Experiments with partially purified enzyme systems from

administration and then gradually decreased. Except that the peak was reached earlier, the curve of activity is quite similar to that obtained with putrescine. In contrast incorporation of radioactivity into spermine after administration of methionine was more rapid than after putrescine. As little as 5 hours after treatment the specific activity of spermine was 19 000 cpm and exceeded the maximum activity of spermidine about 30 h after injection.

The total activity (cpm/embryo, Fig. 14) of spermidine reached its maximum between 15 and 30 hours after injection and showed only a slight decrease at 60 hours. The total activity of spermine gradually increased up to at least 60 hours at which time it was 65 000 cpm or nearly twofold that of spermidine. Of the total radioactivity injected per egg about 2.8 per cent was recovered in the polyamines of the embryo 60 hours after administration.

#### *Effect of Ethionine on the Incorporation of $2^{14}\text{C}$ Methionine*

In these experiments 6  $\mu\text{moles}$  of DL ethionine was injected into eggs on the 10th day of incubation. 5 hours later 2  $\mu\text{C}$  of  $2^{14}\text{C}$  DL methionine was injected into the eggs treated with ethionine and into those serving as controls. Analyses were made 30 hours after the latter injection. The results are presented in Table 15.

Ethionine caused a retardation in the weight gain similar to that described previously. The mean wet weight of the control group was 2.72 g and 2.46 g or 10 per cent lower in the group that received ethionine.

Incorporation of radioactivity into polyamines was quite uniform in the embryos of the same group. The specific and total activities of spermidine were only slightly affected by ethionine. The mean specific activity of spermine was 23 900 cpm/ $\mu\text{mole}$  in the control group and 14 per cent lower in the ethionine treated group. The mean total activity (cpm/embryo) of spermine was 20 per cent lower in the ethionine treated embryos than in the controls.

The results described here are in agreement with the data presented in a previous section. They confirm the observation that ethionine in the doses used especially affects the synthesis of spermine and only slightly the synthesis of spermidine.

probable that the polyamines in adult tissues are metabolically more or less inert and their synthesis therefore difficult to demonstrate. In contrast as stated in the present study, synthesis in developing embryos is quite rapid. It seems likely that by using embryonic tissues it will also be possible to demonstrate the enzymic synthesis of polyamines in animal tissues.

Of the compounds which are incorporated into the polyamines, putrescine is widely distributed in micro organisms (HERBST, WEAVER and KEISTER 1958) but not until recent years has it been shown that small amounts of putrescine also occur in animal tissues e.g. in liver and pancreas (FISCHER and BOHLY 1957b, WEAVER and HERBST 1958). In the present study a weak ninhydrin positive fraction could repeatedly be detected in extracts of chick embryos. This showed a mobility similar to putrescine in paper electrophoresis and paper chromatography. It is therefore possible that in animal tissues also putrescine is a natural precursor in the biosynthesis of polyamines. The above mentioned fraction from chick embryo extracts contained radioactivity after administration of  $2^{14}\text{C}$  labelled ornithine and therefore it is possible that incorporation of ornithine into polyamines occurs via putrescine.

In experiments with ethionine a retardation in weight gain was observed in all the doses used. This effect of ethionine on the rapidly growing organism is at least partly due to inhibition of protein synthesis (e.g. SIMPSON, FARBER and TARVER 1950, FARBER and CORBAY 1958). Similar effects have also been obtained with several other methionine homologues (CESTARI *et al.* 1962). In contrast to the results of CESTARI *et al.* no noteworthy changes were found in the relative dry weights in the present study, which is probably due to the smaller doses of ethionine used.

The effect of ethionine on the contents of the polyamines was somewhat unexpected. While the concentration of spermidine as well as the incorporation of labelled methionine into spermidine were only slightly affected or even increased by ethionine, the concentration of spermine was significantly lower in the ethionine treated groups. Ethionine also reduced the incorporation of labelled methionine into spermine. Because methionine participates in the biosynthesis of polyamines, these effects of ethionine may be regarded as antagonistic effects of ethionine on methionine metabolism. In recent years evidence has been presented that the inhibiting effect of



*Escherichia coli* have confirmed these results and shown that the enzymic synthesis of spermidine from putrescine and methionine involves three different steps (cf p 16), viz formation of S adenosyl methionine, which then, after decarboxylation, serves as the donor of the propylamine moiety to putrescine (TABOR, ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1958, TABOR 1962a,b) Up to the present time attempts at the enzymic synthesis of spermine have not met with success but the mechanism has been suggested to be comparable with that described for spermidine (TABOR TABOR and ROSENTHAL 1961) No data have been presented which would indicate incorporation of methionine into spermine in whole bacterial cells

The results of the present study suggest that the mechanism of biosynthesis of the polyamines in the chick embryo is comparable with that in micro organisms Incorporation of radioactivity into spermidine after administration of labelled putrescine ornithine and methionine was fairly rapid and began without any clear lag period In contrast, at 5 hours after injection of labelled putrescine or ornithine, the radioactivity in the spermine fraction barely exceeded that of the background The total activity of spermine then increased during a period of at least 60 hours while the total activity of spermidine began to decrease after only 30 hours It is therefore likely that spermidine is a precursor of spermine Further support for this assumption is given by the finding that after administration of labelled methionine which is the source of the three carbon chain of the polyamines the activities of both spermidine and spermine were from the beginning more or less parallel indicating that the labelled compound was incorporated simultaneously into both polyamines in roughly equivalent amounts On the other hand TABOR (1962b) has reported that *in vitro* systems containing purified propylamine transferase from *E coli* spermidine could not substitute for putrescine as an acceptor of the propylamine moiety However it seems evident that both the propylamine moieties of spermine are derived from methionine since at 60 hours the specific and total activities of spermine were about twofold those of spermidine

Until recently the biosynthesis of spermidine and spermine in animal tissues has been quite obscure A small incorporation of  $^{14}\text{C}$   $^{15}\text{N}$  putrescine mainly into spermidine was obtained in minced rat prostate but no incorporation was found in minced liver muscle spleen or kidney (TABOR ROSENTHAL and TABOR 1956) It appears

probable that the polyamines in adult tissues are metabolically more or less inert and their synthesis therefore difficult to demonstrate. In contrast as stated in the present study synthesis in developing embryos is quite rapid. It seems likely that by using embryonic tissues it will also be possible to demonstrate the enzymic synthesis of polyamines in animal tissues.

Of the compounds which are incorporated into the polyamines putrescine is widely distributed in micro organisms (HERBST, WEAVER and KEISTER 1958) but not until recent years has it been shown that small amounts of putrescine also occur in animal tissues e.g. in liver and pancreas (FISCHER and BOHR 1957b, WEAVER and HERBST 1958). In the present study a weak ninhydrin positive fraction could repeatedly be detected in extracts of chick embryos. This showed a mobility similar to putrescine in paper electrophoresis and paper chromatography. It is therefore possible that in animal tissues also putrescine is a natural precursor in the biosynthesis of polyamines. The above mentioned fraction from chick embryo extracts contained radioactivity after administration of  $2^{14}\text{C}$  labelled ornithine and therefore it is possible that incorporation of ornithine into polyamines occurs via putrescine.

In experiments with ethionine a retardation in weight gain was observed in all the doses used. This effect of ethionine on the rapidly growing organism is at least partly due to inhibition of protein synthesis (e.g. SIMPSON, FARBER and TARVER 1950, FARBER and CORBAV 1958). Similar effects have also been obtained with several other methionine homologues (CESTARI *et al.* 1962). In contrast to the results of CESTARI *et al.* no noteworthy changes were found in the relative dry weights in the present study which is probably due to the smaller doses of ethionine used.

The effect of ethionine on the contents of the polyamines was somewhat unexpected. While the concentration of spermidine as well as the incorporation of labelled methionine into spermidine were only slightly affected or even increased by ethionine the concentration of spermine was significantly lower in the ethionine treated groups. Ethionine also reduced the incorporation of labelled methionine into spermine. Because methionine participates in the biosynthesis of polyamines these effects of ethionine may be regarded as antagonistic effects of ethionine on methionine metabolism. In recent years evidence has been presented that the inhibiting effect of

ethionine on protein synthesis is not a direct inhibition of methionine metabolism, but rather due to the adenine trapping effect of ethionine. It has been shown that the S adenosyl derivatives of methionine and ethionine are formed at almost equal rates in rat liver, but that the adenine moiety of S adenosylethionine is much less available than that of S adenosylmethionine (MODA *et al* 1963). Thus ethionine causes a decrease in the tissue adenosine triphosphate concentration (SHULL 1962, BARTELS and HOHORST 1963). Administration of adenine or adenosine triphosphate protects against the inhibition of protein synthesis induced by ethionine (VILLA TREVINO and FARBER 1962, VILLA TREVINO, SHULL and FARBER 1963). It is probable that the mechanism by which ethionine caused a decrease in the spermine content is comparable with that described above. This however does not explain the difference between spermidine and spermine in this respect, presuming that the mechanisms of synthesis of these amines are comparable. This difference, as well as the extent if any, to which ethionine can act as a precursor in the synthesis of polyamines, needs further elucidation.

Degradation of polyamines in the chick embryo has not been studied in the present work. Some indirect evidence, however, indicates that degradation does occur. The isotope experiments with labelled putrescine showed that of the total activity detected in the polyamines at 60 hours after administration, about one half was recovered at 140 hours. As discussed previously, the decrease in the total content of polyamines per embryo at a late stage of development may also indicate increased degradation.

## GENERAL SUMMARY

The objects of the present investigation were to develop a quantitative method for the determination of the spermidine and spermine contents of tissues and to study the metabolism of these polyamines in the developing chick embryo with special reference to their biosynthesis.

The quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine in tissues consisted of the following steps: 1) partial purification by extraction of amines from alkaline protein free tissue extracts into *n*-butanol; 2) subsequent separation of amines by paper electrophoresis; and 3) quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine with amido black. The various steps have been studied separately and the optimum conditions are given.

The present method for quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine with amido black is based on complex formation between amido black and polyamines: two moles of amido black per mole of polyamine. A complex which is very sparingly soluble in a methanol-acetic acid mixture but dissolves readily in alkaline solution. The present method consisted of spraying the electrophoretic paper strips with amido black solution, drying them and washing off the extra colour. The coloured fractions were then cut off, eluted in alkaline solution and determined spectrophotometrically at 615 m $\mu$ . The method has proved to be sensitive, reproducible and specific for spermidine and spermine, allowing an accurate determination of quantities of these amines as small as 5  $\mu$ moles per strip. Duplicate determinations deviated from the mean by less than 2 to 3 per cent. Absorption was rectilinear up to at least 50  $\mu$ moles of polyamine per strip.

The concentrations of spermidine and spermine in the whole chick embryo were determined at different stages of development from the third day of incubation. The highest values, 611  $\mu$ moles of spermidine and 488  $\mu$ moles of spermine per g of wet weight, were obtained on the third day of incubation. The polyamine concentration

ethionine on protein synthesis is not a direct inhibition of methionine metabolism, but rather due to the adenine trapping effect of ethionine. It has been shown that the S adenosyl derivatives of methionine and ethionine are formed at almost equal rates in rat liver, but that the adenine moiety of S adenosylethionine is much less available than that of S adenosylmethionine (MODY *et al* 1963). Thus ethionine causes a decrease in the tissue adenosine triphosphate concentration (SHULL 1962, BARTELS and HOHORST 1963). Administration of adenine or adenosine triphosphate protects against the inhibition of protein synthesis induced by ethionine (VILLA TREVINO and FARBER 1962, VILLA TREVINO, SHULL and FARBER 1963). It is probable that the mechanism by which ethionine caused a decrease in the spermine content is comparable with that described above. This, however, does not explain the difference between spermidine and spermine in this respect, presuming that the mechanisms of synthesis of these amines are comparable. This difference, as well as the extent, if any, to which ethionine can act as a precursor in the synthesis of polyamines, needs further elucidation.

Degradation of polyamines in the chick embryo has not been studied in the present work. Some indirect evidence, however, indicates that degradation does occur. The isotope experiments with labelled putrescine showed that of the total activity detected in the polyamines at 60 hours after administration, about one half was recovered at 140 hours. As discussed previously, the decrease in the total content of polyamines per embryo at a late stage of development may also indicate increased degradation.

## GENERAL SUMMARY

The objects of the present investigation were to develop a quantitative method for the determination of the spermidine and spermine contents of tissues and to study the metabolism of these polyamines in the developing chick embryo with special reference to their biosynthesis

The quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine in tissues consisted of the following steps 1) partial purification by extraction of amines from alkaline protein free tissue extracts into *n*-butanol 2) subsequent separation of amines by paper electrophoresis and 3) quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine with amido black. The various steps have been studied separately and the optimum conditions are given

The present method for quantitative determination of spermidine and spermine with amido black is based on complex formation between amido black and polyamines two moles of amido black per mole of polyamine a complex which is very sparingly soluble in a methanol-acetic acid mixture but dissolves readily in alkaline solution. The present method consisted of spraying the electrophoretic paper strips with amido black solution drying them and washing off the extra colour. The coloured fractions were then cut off eluted in alkaline solution and determined spectrophotometrically at 615  $m\mu$ . The method has proved to be sensitive reproducible and specific for spermidine and spermine allowing an accurate determination of quantities of these amines as small as 5  $m\mu$ moles per strip. Duplicate determinations deviated from the mean by less than 2 to 3 per cent. Absorption was rectilinear up to at least 50  $m\mu$ moles of polyamine per strip.

The concentrations of spermidine and spermine in the whole chick embryo were determined at different stages of development from the third day of incubation. The highest values 611  $m\mu$ moles of spermidine and 488  $m\mu$ moles of spermine per g of wet weight were obtained on the third day of incubation. The polyamine concentration

gradually decreased to a low level at the age of 10 days and then increased, reaching a peak at the age of 15 to 16 days. A sharp decrease was observed after this stage. Per unit of dry weight the polyamine contents decreased during development from values of 1020  $\mu\text{moles}$  of spermidine and 813  $\mu\text{moles}$  of spermine per 100 mg of dry weight on the third day of incubation to 200  $\mu\text{moles}$  of spermidine and 152  $\mu\text{moles}$  of spermine per 100 mg of dry weight in the 18 day old embryos.

Great differences were found between the polyamine contents of different tissues analysed at the age of 18 days. The highest values, 878  $\mu\text{moles}$  of spermidine and 752  $\mu\text{moles}$  of spermine were obtained from the liver. The molar ratio spermidine/spermine also showed marked differences from tissue to tissue. The lowest value 0.47, was obtained from the heart and the highest 1.26 from the skeletal muscle. The polyamine contents of the extra embryonic parts were much lower than those of the embryo.

Studies with  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled compounds showed that radioactivity was incorporated into both spermidine and spermine after administration of 1,4  $^{14}\text{C}$  putrescine, 2  $^{14}\text{C}$  DL ornithine or 2  $^{14}\text{C}$  DL methionine into the egg but not after administration of uniformly labelled  $^{14}\text{C}$  glucose or  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline. Measurements of radioactivity were carried out in a liquid scintillation counter directly from the paper. Both the specific and total activities (per embryo) were determined.

After administration of labelled putrescine or ornithine incorporation of radioactivity into spermidine was quite rapid and reached a maximum within 30 hours whereas incorporation into spermine was slower, showed a clear latent period at the beginning and then increased for at least 60 hours. After administration of labelled methionine incorporation of radioactivity into spermidine was fairly similar to that obtained with putrescine and ornithine whereas incorporation into spermine was more rapid and began without any clear latency. 60 hours after the injection of methionine the total activity of spermine per embryo was about twofold compared with spermidine.

Of the total radioactivity injected per egg about 1 per cent after injection of putrescine and 8 per cent after injection of methionine was recovered in the polyamines 60 hours after administration.

Ethionine in amounts totalling 20 to 45  $\mu\text{moles}$  per egg retarded the weight gain of the embryos by about 10 per cent. The concentration of spermidine was only slightly affected or even increased by

ethionine treatment whereas a decrease of 11 to 18 per cent was observed in the concentration of spermine. Ethionine also reduced incorporation of radioactivity into spermine after injection of labelled methionine but had no noteworthy effect on incorporation into spermidine.



## REFERENCES

- ACKERMANN D Über biogene Amine der Seidenraupe *Hoppe Seylers Z physiol Chem* 1952 291 169-176
- ACKERMANN D Über die biogenen Amine der Puppe des Seidenspinners *Bombyx mori* L *Hoppe Seylers Z physiol Chem* 1955 302 87-91
- ACKERMANN D and R JANLA Erstmalige Beobachtung von Spermin bei Avertebraten (*Ciona intestinalis*) *Hoppe Seylers Z physiol Chem* 1954 296 279-282
- ALLEN E H and R S SCHWEET Synthesis of hemoglobin in a cell free system I Properties of the complete system *J biol Chem* 1962 237 760-767
- AMANN R and E WERLE Über Komplexe von Heparin mit Histamin und anderen Di- und Polyaminen *Klin Wschr* 1956 34 207-209
- AMES B N and D T DUBIN The role of polyamines in the neutralization of bacteriophage deoxyribonucleic acid *J biol Chem* 1960 235 769-775
- AMES B N D T DUBIN and M M ROSENTHAL Presence of polyamines in certain bacterial viruses *Science* 1958 127 814-816
- BACHRACH U Formation of pyrroline and propane diamine from spermidine by extracts of *Serratia marcescens* *Nature (Lond)* 1962a 194 377-378
- BACHRACH U Spermidine oxidase from *Serratia marcescens* *J. biol Chem* 1962b 237 3443-3448
- BACHRACH U and R BAR OR The formation of spermidine from spermine by serum amine oxidase *Biochim biophys Acta* 1960 40 343
- BACHRACH U and I COHEN Spermidine in the bacterial cell *J gen Microbiol* 1961 26 1-9
- BACHRACH U M PERSKI and S RAZIN Metabolism of amines 2 The oxidation of natural polyamines by *Mycobacterium smegmatis* *Biochem J* 1960 76 306-310
- BANCROFT H *Introduction to Biostatistics* Hoeber Harper New York 1957 pp 210
- BARTELS H and H J HOHORST Zur Wirkung des Aethionins auf den Metabolit status der Rattenleber *Biochim biophys Acta* 1963 71 214-216
- BLAIR A and S DEGAL Use of filter paper mounting for determination of the specific activity of gluconate C<sup>14</sup> by liquid scintillation assay *Analyt Biochem* 1962 3 221-229
- BLASCHKO H The amine oxidases of mammalian blood plasma In *Advances in Comparative Physiology and Biochemistry* Vol 1 Ed O Lowenstein Acad Press London 1962 67-116
- BLASCHKO H and R HAWES Observations on spermine oxidase *Biochem J* 1958 69 8P-9P

- BLASCHKO H and R HAWES Observations on spermine oxidase of mammalian plasma *J Physiol (Lond)* 1959 115 121-131
- BORSQUET W F and J F CHRISTIAN Quantitative radioassay of paper chromatograms by liquid scintillation counting Application to carbon 14 labeled aspartic acid *Analyt Chem* 1960 32 22-23
- BRENNER J M and R H KENTON Paper chromatography of amines *Biochem J* 1951 49 651-653
- CAMBA R and R CARTA Studi elettroforetici sul plasma serminale umano *Arch De Vecchi Anat pat* 1954 22 565-577
- CANTONI G L Action of spermine on soluble ribonucleic acid and some polynucleotides Spermine fractionation of soluble ribonucleic acid of rabbit liver *Nature (Lond)* 1960 188 300-301
- CANTONI G L and J DURELL Activation of methionine for transmethylation II The methionine activating enzyme Studies on the mechanism of the reaction *J Biol Chem* 1957 225 1033-1048
- CESTARI A, C CONCILIO P, DESSI and C RIZZOLI A study of the action of methionine homologues at cellular level and in the systems of organized growth *Biochem Pharmacol* 1960 9 233-245
- CHUNG C W and H P MANLER Incorporation of adenine nucleotide into internucleotide linkages of RNA *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1959 1 32-35
- COHEN S S and H D BARBER Spermidine in the extraction of the deoxyribosyl synthesizing system from Tbr<sup>+</sup> infected *Escherichia coli* *J Biol Chem* 1962 237 1376-1378
- COHEN S S and J LICHTENSTEIN Polyamines and ribosome structure *J Biol Chem* 1960 235 2112-2116
- COLBOURN J L, H WITHERSPOON and E J HERBERT Effect of intracellular spermine on ribosomes of *Escherichia coli* *Biochim biophys Acta* 1961 49 422-424
- DITTMER A *Papierelektrophorese Grundlagen - Methodik - Atlas* 2 Aufl VEB Gustav Fischer Verlag Jena 1961 pp 323
- DOERFLER W, W ZILLIG E, FUCHS and M ALBERS Untersuchungen zur Biosynthese der Proteine V Die Funktion von Nucleinsäuren beim Einbau von Aminosäuren in Proteine in einem zellfreien System aus *Escherichia coli* *Hoppe Seylers Z physiol Chem* 1960 330 96-123
- DUBIN D T Evidence for conjugates between polyamines and glutathione in *E coli* *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1959 1 262-263
- DUBIN D T The assay and characterization of amines by means of 2,4-dinitrofluorobenzene *J Biol Chem* 1960 235 783-786
- DUBIN D T and S M ROSENTHAL The acetylation of polyamines in *Escherichia coli* *J Biol Chem* 1960 235 776-780
- DUDLEY H W, M C ROSENHEIM and O ROSENHEIM The chemical constitution of spermine I The isolation of spermine from animal tissues and the preparation of its salts *Biochem J* 1924 18 163-127
- DUDLEY H W and O ROSENHEIM Notes on spermine *Biochem J* 1925 19 1034-1036

- ESERHARD H. Bemerkungen zur Arbeit von C. Monclé Zur Stabilität bei der  
Papierelektrophorese verwendeter Farbstoffe in alkalischen Lösungen  
*Klin Wschr* 1956 34 817
- ESTBORN B and B SWEDIN Localisation of acid phosphatase by starch gel  
electrophoresis of fractionally collected human semen *Scand J clin Lab  
Invest* 1959 11 235-237
- FARBER E and M S CORBAN Sex difference in ethionine inhibition of hepatic  
protein synthesis *J biol Chem* 1958 233 625-630
- FELSENFIELD G and S HUANG The interaction of polynucleotides with metal  
ions amino acids and polyamines *Biochim biophys Acta* 1960 37 425-433
- FISCHER F G and H BOHN Die Giftsekrete der Vogelspinnen *Justus Liebig's  
Ann Chem* 1957a 603 232-250
- FISCHER F G and H BOHN Über die Bestimmung von Spermin Spermidin  
und anderen biogenen Aminen nach papierelektrophoretischer Abtrennung  
und ihre Mengenverhältnisse in tierischen Organen *Hoppe Seyler's Z physiol  
Chem* 1957b 308 108-115
- FRASER D and H R MAHLER Effects of diamines on the protoplast infecting  
agent derived from T2 bacteriophage *J Am chem Soc* 1958 80 6456
- FRASER D and H R MAHLER Studies in partially resolved bacteriophage host  
systems VII Diamines dyes empty phage heads and protoplast infecting  
agent *Biochim biophys Acta* 1961 53 199-213
- GIRI K V, A N RADHAKRISHNAN and C S VAIDYANATHAN A simple paper  
chromatographic method for the study of transamination reactions *Nature  
(Lond)* 1952 170 1025-1026
- GORKIN V Z Rol emka i dejstva aminokisloty sivorotli krovi *Dop med  
Him* 1961 7 632-638
- GRASSMANN, W and K HANNIG Ein einfaches Verfahren zur Analyse der  
Serumproteine und anderer Proteingemische *Naturwissenschaften* 1950 37  
496-497
- GREENE R C Incorporation of the carbon chain of methionine into spermidine  
*J Am chem Soc* 1957 79 3929
- GROPPER H R WITTIG and F GRUNALT Kritik an der serologischen Krebs  
diagnostik nach Tokuda *Arch klin exp Derm* 1957 206 623-628
- GUGGENHEIM M *Die biogenen Amine* 4 Aufl Verlag von S. Karger Basel  
1951 pp 619
- HARRISON G A Spermine in human tissues *Biochem J* 1931 25 1895-1892
- HARRISON G A The approximate determination of spermine in single human  
organs *Biochem J* 1933 27 1152-1156
- HERBST E J and H P DOCTOR Inhibition of ribonucleic acid degradation in  
bacteria by spermine *J biol Chem* 1959 234 1497-1500
- HERBST E J D L KEISTER and R H WEAVER The separation of aliphatic  
amines by paper chromatography or paper electrophoresis *Arch Biochem*  
1958 75 178-185
- HERBST E J and E E SNELL Putrescine and related compounds as growth  
factors for *Hemophilus parainfluenzae* 7001 *J biol Chem* 1949 181 47-54
- HERBST E J R H WEAVER and D L KEISTER The gram reaction and cell  
composition Diamines and polyamines *Arch Biochem* 1958 75 171-177

- HERSHKO A S AMOZ and J MAGER Effect of polyamines and divalent metals on *in vitro* incorporation of amino acids into ribonucleoprotein particles *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1961 **4** 46-51
- HIRSCH J G The essential participation of an enzyme in the inhibition of growth of tubercle bacilli by spermine *J exp Med* 1953a **97** 327-343
- HIRSCH J G Spermine oxidase an amine oxidase with specificity for spermine and spermidine *J exp Med* 1953b **9** 345-355
- HUANG S L and G FELSENFELD Action of spermine on soluble ribonucleic acid and some polynucleotides Solubility of complexes of polynucleotides with spermine *Nature (Lond.)* 1960 **188** 301-302
- HAMALAINEN R Über die quantitative Bestimmung des Spermins im Organismus und sein Vorkommen in menschlichen Geweben und Körperflüssigkeiten Acad Dissertation University of Helsinki 1941 Also published in *Acta Soc Med "Duodecim"* 1941 Series A **93** 97-165
- ISHERWOOD F A and D H CRITCHFIELD A new method for the colorimetric estimation of amino acids on paper chromatograms *Nature (Lond.)* 1954 **174** 123-125
- KAMAT V B Malignolin and malignant tumours *Nature (Lond.)* 1960 **190** 190
- KAWESAU E and T WIELAND Conservation of amino acid chromatograms *Nature (Lond.)* 1951 **168** 77-78
- KAY D The inhibition of bacteriophage multiplication by proflavine and its reversal by certain polyamines *Biochem J* 1959 **73** 149-154
- KAY D and P FIELDS Hydroxymethylcytosine containing and tryptophan dependent bacteriophages isolated from city effluents *J gen Microbiol* 1960 **2** 143-146
- KAY R F D C HARRIS and C EYENMAN Quantification of the ninhydrin color reaction as applied to paper chromatography *Arch Biochem* 1956 **63** 14-25
- KEISTER D L Some aspects of the metabolic function of the naturally occurring amines Doctoral Thesis University of Maryland Medical School Baltimore 1958a University Microfilms Ann Arbor Michigan
- KEISTER D L Occurrence and properties of nucleic acid amine complexes *Fed Proc* 1958b **17** 84
- KIVIRIKKO K I Hydroxyproline containing fractions in normal and cortisone treated chick embryos *Acta physiol scand* 1963 **60** Suppl 219 1-92
- KOLBEZEV M J J W ECKERT and B F BRETSCHNEIDER The microdetermination of amines with 2,4-dinitrofluorobenzene *Analyt Chem* 1962 **34** 583-584
- KOSAKI T T IKODA Y KOTANI S YAKAGAWA and T SAKA A new phospholipid malignolin in human malignant tumors *Science* 1958 **1** 1176-1177
- LEVY M and A H PALMER Chemistry of the chick embryo II Weight nitrogen and dipeptidase accumulation *J biol Chem* 1940 **136** 415-423
- LEVY M and A H PALMER Chemistry of the chick embryo IV Amino peptidase *J biol Chem* 1943 **150** 1-279

- LUCAS J M A H W M SCHUURS and M V SIMPSON Amino acid incorporation in a ribosomal system derived from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* *Fed Proc* 1963 22 302
- LAHDEVIRTA J A RAINA and T HEIKEL Quantitative determination of putrescine cadaverine spermine and spermidine *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 1957 9 345-348
- MAGER J M BENEDICT and M ARTMAN A common site of action for polyamines and streptomycin *Biochim biophys Acta* 1962 62 202-204
- MAHLER H R B D MEHROTRA and C W SHARP Effects of diamines on the thermal transition of DNA *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1961 4 79-82
- MARRIAN D H A F W HUGHES and S M WERBA Nucleic acid metabolism of the developing chick embryo *Biochim biophys Acta* 1956 19 318-323
- MARTIN R G and B N AMES The effect of polyamines and of poly U size on phenylalanine incorporation *Proc nat Acad Sci (Wash)* 1962 48 2171-2178
- MCINTIRE F C L M CLEMENTS and M SPROULL I Fluoro 2,4 dinitrobenzene as a quantitative reagent for primary and secondary amines *Analyt Chem* 1953 25 1757-1758
- MCINTIRE F C L W ROTH and J L SHAW The purification of histamine for bioassay *J biol Chem* 1947 170 537-544
- MODY U S BULBA O HOLOWECKY and J A STEKOL The availability of the adenine moiety of S adenosyl derivatives of methionine and thionine for the synthesis of liver AMP ADP ATP and RNA in male and female rats *Fed Proc* 1963 22 471
- MOGGIAN G Valore diagnostico e prognostico della sieroreazione alla spermina nelle neoplasie dell apparato genitale femminile *Riv ital Ginec* 1963 36 409-420
- MONCKE C Zur Stabilität bei der Papierelektrophorese verwendeter Farbstoffe in alkalischen Lösungen *Klin Wochr* 1956 34 100-101
- MOORE S and W H STEIN A modified ninhydrin reagent for the photometric determination of amino acids and related compounds *J biol Chem* 1954 211 907-913
- MORA P T B G YOUNG and S RIZVI Inactivation of bacteriophage with polyanions and the role of amines in activity *J biol Chem* 1962 237 157-164
- NEEDHAM J *Biochemistry and Morphogenesis* Cambridge University Press Cambridge 1942 pp 785
- NOVIAKOFF A B and V R POTTER Changes in nucleic acid concentration during the development of the chick embryo *J biol Chem* 1948 173 233-238
- OOSTERHUIS H K Studies on paper electrophoresis A comparison with the chemical method as an aid in clinical diagnosis *J Lab clin Med* 1954 44 280-291
- OSBORN D A Dye binding by protein as applied to quantitative paper electrophoresis *Clin chim Acta* 1960 5 777-794
- PEZOLD F A and U PEISER Untersuchungen über die Affinität papier elektrophoretisch aufgetrennter und denaturierter Serumproteinfraktionen

- gegenüber den Eiweiß farbstoffen Amidoschwarz / Azocarmun und Brom phenolblau *Alin Wochr* 1953 31 982-983
- PLCAR M Über die Färbung der Papier Flektropherogramme mit Amido schwarz Hoppe Seylers *Z physiol Chem* 1954 996 62-66
- RAINA A Spermine and spermidine in normal human blood *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 1962a 14 318-319
- RAINA A Biosynthesis of spermine and spermidine in the developing chick embryo *Acta chem scand* 1962b 16 2163-2164
- RAZIN S U BACHRACH and I GERY Formation of  $\beta$  alanine from spermine and spermidine by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* *Nature (Lond)* 1958 181 700-701
- RAZIN S I GERY and U BACHRACH The degradation of natural polyamines and diamines by bacteria *Biochim J* 1959 71 551-553
- RAZIN S and H ROZANSKY The responsibility of spermine for the antibacterial action of human semen *J Lab clin Med* 1957 49 874-881
- RAZIN S and R ROZANSKY Mechanism of the antibacterial action of spermine *Arch Biochem* 1959 81 36-54
- PEDDY D V V M E LOVBARDO and L R CERECEDO Nucleic acid changes during the development of the chick embryo *J biol Chem* 1955 198 267-270
- ROSENTHAL S M and D T DUBIN Metabolism of polyamines by *Staphylococcus* *J Bact* 1962 84 859-863
- ROSENTHAL S M and C W TABOR The pharmacology of spermine and spermidine Distribution and excretion *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1956 116 131-138
- SANGER F The free amino groups of insulin *Biochem J* 1945 39 507-515
- SCHNEIDER W H NOWAKOWSKI and K D VOIGT Die Papierelektrophorese von menschlichem Spermaplasma I Mitteilung Methodik und Art der Fraktionen *Alin Wochr* 1954 3 863-867
- SHILL K H Hepatic phosphorylase and adenosine triphosphate levels in thionine treated rats *J biol Chem* 1962 237 1734-1736
- SIEKERTZ P The effects of spermine on the ribonucleoprotein particles of guinea pig pancreas In *Biological Structure and Function* Vol 1 Ed T W Goodwin and O Lindberg Acad Press London 1961 239-253
- SILVERMAN M and F A EVANS JR The effects of spermine spermidine and other polyamines on the growth inhibition of *Escherichia coli* by atabrine *J biol Chem* 1944 154 521-534
- SIMPSON M V H FARRER and H TARTER Studies on ethionine I Inhibition of protein synthesis in intact animals *J biol Chem* 1950 187 81-89
- SOLOMON J B Glutamic dehydrogenase in the developing chick embryo *Molec J* 1957 66 264-270
- SPARR P F Amino acid composition of ribosomes from *Escherichia coli* *J mol Biol* 1962 4 393-406
- SPINGELMAN S Protein and nucleic acid synthesis in subcellular fractions of bacterial cells In *Recent Progress in Microbiology* Ed G Tunell Blackwell Scientific Publications Oxford 1959 81-163

- LUCAS J M A H W M SCHUURS and M V SIMPSON Amino acid incorporation in a ribosomal system derived from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* *Fed Proc* 1963 22 302
- LAHDEVIRTA J A RAINA and T HEIKKILÄ Quantitative determination of putrescine cadaverine spermine and spermidine *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 1957 9 345-348
- MAGER J M BENEDICT and M ARTMAN A common site of action for polyamines and streptomycin *Biochim biophys Acta* 1962 62 202-204
- MAHLER H R B D MEHROTRA and C W SHARP Effects of diamines on the thermal transition of DNA *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1961 4 79-82
- MARRIAN D H A F W HUGHES and S M WERBA Nucleic acid metabolism of the developing chick embryo *Biochim biophys Acta* 1956 19 318-323
- MARTIN R G and B N AMES The effect of polyamines and of poly U size on phenylalanine incorporation *Proc nat Acad Sci (Wash)* 1962 48 2171-2178
- McINTIRE F C L M CLEMENTS and M SPROULL 1 Fluoro 2 4 dinitrobenzene as a quantitative reagent for primary and secondary amines *Analyt Chem* 1953 25 1757-1758
- McINTIRE F C L W ROTH and J L SHAW The purification of histamine for bioassay *J biol Chem* 1947 170 537-544
- MODI U S BULBA O HOLOWECKI and J A STEARL The availability of the adenine moiety of Sadenosyl derivatives of methionine and ethionine for the synthesis of liver AMP ADP ATP and RNA in male and female rats *Fed Proc* 1963 22 471
- MOGGIAN G Valore diagnostico e prognostico della sieroreazione alla spermina nelle neoplasie dell apparato genitale femminile *Riv ital Ginec* 1953 36 409-420
- MONCKE C Zur Stabilität bei der Papierelektrophorese verwendeter Farbstoffe in alkalischen Lösungen *Klin Wschr* 1956 34 100-101
- MOORE S and W H STEIN A modified ninhydrin reagent for the photometric determination of amino acids and related compounds *J biol Chem* 1954 211 907-913
- MORA P T B G YOUNG and S RIZVI Inactivation of bacteriophage with polyamines and the role of amines in activity *J biol Chem* 1962 237 157-164
- NEEDHAM J *Biochemistry and Morphogenesis* Cambridge University Press Cambridge 1942 pp 785
- NOVIKOFF A B and V R LOTTER Changes in nucleic acid concentration during the development of the chick embryo *J biol Chem* 1948 173 233-238
- OOSTERHUIS H K Studies on paper electrophoresis A comparison with the chemical method as an aid in clinical diagnosis *J Lab clin Med* 1954 44 280-291
- OSBORN D A Dye binding by protein as applied to quantitative paper electrophoresis *Clin chim Acta* 1960 5 777-794
- PEZOLD F A and U PEISER Untersuchungen über die Affinität papier elektrophoretisch aufgetrennter und denaturierter Serumproteinfraktionen

- ZELLER F. A. Zur Kenntnis der Diamin-oxydase II Mitteilung über den enzymatischen Abbau von Polyaminen *Helv. chim. Acta* 1938 21 1645—1665
- ZILLIG W. W. KRÖNE and M. ALBERS Untersuchungen zur Biosynthese der Proteine III Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Zusammensetzung und Struktur der Ribosomen *Hoppe Seylers Z. physiol. Chem.* 1959 317 131—143



- TABOR C W Adenosylmethionine decarboxylase In *Methods in Enzymology* Vol 5 Ed E P Colowick and N O Kaplan Acad Press New York 1962a 756-760
- TABOR C W Propylamine transferase (Spermidine synthesis) In *Methods in Enzymology* Vol 5 Ed E P Colowick and N O Kaplan Acad Press New York 1962b 761-766
- TABOR C W Stabilization of protoplasts and spheroplasts by spermine and other polyamines *J Bact* 1962c 83 1101-1111
- TABOR C W and S M ROSENTHAL Pharmacology of spermine and spermidine Some effects on animals and bacteria *J Pharmacol exp Ther* 1966 116 139-155
- TABOR C W H TABOR and S M ROSENTHAL Purification of amine oxidase from beef plasma *J biol Chem* 1964 238 645-661
- TABOR H Stabilization of bacteriophage T<sub>2</sub> by spermine and related polyamines *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1960 3 382-385
- TABOR H The stabilization of *Bacillus subtilis* transforming principle by spermine *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1961 4 228-231
- TABOR H The protective effect of spermine and other polyamines against heat denaturation of deoxyribonucleic acid *Biochemistry* 1962 1 496-501
- TABOR H S M ROSENTHAL and C W TABOR Biosynthesis of spermidine and spermine from putrescine *Fed Proc* 1956 15 367
- TABOR H S M ROSENTHAL and C W TABOR The role of putrescine and methionine in the enzymatic synthesis of spermidine in *Escherichia coli* extracts *J Am chem Soc* 1957 79 2978-2979
- TABOR H S M ROSENTHAL and C W TABOR The biosynthesis of spermidine and spermine from putrescine and methionine *J biol Chem* 1958 233 907-914
- TABOR H and C W TABOR Further purification of the enzymes concerned with the biosynthesis of spermidine in *E coli* *Fed Proc* 1960 19 6
- TABOR H C W TABOR and S M ROSENTHAL The biochemistry of the polyamines Spermidine and spermine *Ann Rev Biochem* 1961 30 579-604
- FISSIÈRES A and J W HOPKINS Factors affecting amino acid incorporation into proteins by *Escherichia coli* ribosomes *Proc nat Acad Sci (Wash)* 1961 47 2015-2023
- VILLA TREVINO E and L FARBER The reversal by adenosine triphosphate of ethionine induced inhibition of protein synthesis *Biochim biophys Acta* 1962 61 649-651
- VILLA TREVINO S A H SHULL and L FARBER On the mechanism of inhibition of hepatic protein synthesis by ethionine *Fed Proc* 1963 22 237
- WEAVER R H and E J HERBST Metabolism of diamines and polyamines in microorganisms *J biol Chem* 1958 231 637-646
- WREDE F Zur Kenntnis des Spermins IV *Hoppe Seylers Z physiol Chem* 1926 153 291-313
- YOSHIKAWA H and M MARUO Stimulation of amylase formation by an amine from *Bacillus subtilis* *Biochim biophys Acta* 1960 45 270-278
- ZEITLER E Klinische Überprüfung des Spermin-tests nach Tokunaka *Med Klin* 1961 56 1388-1390

**ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA**  
**VOL. 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 219**

**HYDROXYPROLINE-CONTAINING  
FRACTIONS IN NORMAL AND  
CORTISONE-TREATED CHICK EMBRYOS**

**BY**

**KARI I. KIVIRIKKO**

**HELSINKI 1963**



**ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA**  
**VOL. 86 SUPPLEMENTUM 219**

**HYDROXYPROLINE-CONTAINING  
FRACTIONS IN NORMAL AND  
CORTISONE-TREATED CHICK EMBRYOS**

**BY**

**KARI I KIVIRIKKO**

**HELSINKI 1963**



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL. 50 SUPPLEMENTUM 219

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF MEDICAL CHEMISTRY UNIVERSITY OF  
HELSINKI FINLAND

HYDROXYPROLINE CONTAINING  
FRACTIONS IN NORMAL AND  
CORTISONE TREATED CHICK EMBRYOS

BY

KARI I KIVIRIKKO

LIBRARY,

JAIPUR

HELSINKI 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 719

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF MEDICAL CHEMISTRY UNIVERSITY OF  
HELSINKI, FINLAND

HYDROXYPROLINE CONTAINING  
FRACTIONS IN NORMAL AND  
CORTISONE TREATED CHICK EMBRYOS

BY

KARI I KIVIRIKKO

LIBRARY,

JAIPUR

HELSINKI 1963



Printed  
MERCATORIN AIRJAPANE  
Hill 1963

## PREFACE

The present work was carried out at the Department of Medical Chemistry University of Helsinki. I am very much indebted to the former Head of this Department the late Professor P. E. SIMOLA M.D. Ph.D. for suggesting to me the subject of this investigation and for his kindness in placing the facilities of the Department at my disposal.

I am also greatly indebted to Assistant Professor MARTTI KOIVUSALO M.D. and Docent JOHAN JÄRVFELT M.D. for many stimulating discussions and suggestions during the work and for their criticism of the manuscript.

I wish to express my deep gratitude to Professor ERIC KULONEN M.D. Head of the Department of Medical Chemistry University of Turku for inspiring discussions and for criticism of the manuscript.

I further wish to thank my colleagues at the Department for their discussions and willing assistance given to me.

I also express my thanks to Mr. ERKKI JÄRVINEN M.A. for the statistical treatment of the results at the Statistical Section of the Institute of Occupational Health Helsinki and to Mrs. Sisko Aho M.A. for drawing the figures.

My thanks are further due to Miss ILJA LEHTOLA and Miss JENNY PIIRILÄ for their skilful technical assistance in various phases of the work.

I owe my best thanks to Mrs. JHAN M. PERTTUNEN B.Sc. for revising the language of my manuscript.

This work was aided by a grant from the Reumalitto (Finnish Rheumatism Association) for which I express my gratitude.

Helsinki May 1963

Kari Linnirikko

P u b l i s h e d  
MERCATORIS AIRJAPANESE  
H i l k 1963

# CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION	7
REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE	9
Relation of Various Hydroxyproline-containing Fractions to the Metabolism of Collagen	9
Effect of Cortisone and Hydrocortisone on the Metabolism of Collagen	13
Effect of other Factors on the Metabolism of Collagen	15
Hydroxyproline in Tissues of Embryos	19
OUTLINES OF PRESENT INVESTIGATION	22
MATERIAL AND METHODS	24
Analytical Methods	24
Determination of Hydroxyproline	24
Determination of the Specific Activity of Hydroxyproline	25
Other Methods	28
Material	29
Fractionation Procedures	30
Reliability of the Fractionation Method	34
HYDROXYPROLINE CONTAINING FRACTIONS IN NORMAL CHICK EMBRYOS	38
Content of Hydroxyproline in the Fractions of Whole Embryos	38
Changes in the Contents of Free Peptide 1 M Sodium Chloride Soluble Collagen Citrate Soluble Collagen Insoluble and Total Hydroxyproline during Embryonic Development	40
Comparison of Changes in Hydroxyproline with Changes in Free and Total Proline Free Amino Nitrogen and Total Nitrogen	45
Content of Hydroxyproline in the Fractions of the Skin	46
Specific Activities of Free 1 M Sodium Chloride Soluble Collagen and Insoluble Hydroxyproline after Administration of $^{14}C$ Proline	49
Discussion	50
EFFECT OF CORTISONE ON HYDROXYPROLINE CONTAINING FRACTIONS IN CHICK EMBRYOS	58
Content of Hydroxyproline in the Fractions of Whole Embryos after Administration of Cortisone	58



## INTRODUCTION

Hydroxyproline is an amino acid found in the animal organism in specific relation to the connective tissue. Practically all protein bound hydroxyproline occurs in collagen. Apart from this only very small amounts are present in elastin. Therefore it has been generally assumed that all hydroxyproline is derived from collagen.

Collagen is the main fibrous protein of the connective tissue and the most abundant protein in the body. It has a characteristic amino acid composition for the amino acids proline and hydroxyproline together make up almost one-third and the amino acid glycine another third of the collagen molecule. Special interest attaches to the two hydroxy acids hydroxyproline and hydroxylysine which are almost specific to collagen. It is further known that they are not derived from free hydroxyproline or hydroxylysine but from proline and lysine which are hydroxylated during the synthesis of collagen.

Besides its amino acid composition collagen has other characteristic features such as its appearance under the electron microscope its X-ray diffraction pattern and physicochemical properties. These various characteristic features have made it possible to study collagen by several different methods. Investigations during the past decade have indicated that collagen fibres are composed of rod like macromolecules called tropocollagen which are synthesized within the fibroblasts and removed from there into the extracellular space where they combine to form the collagen fibres. When connective tissue is extracted with various organic acids or salt solutions the collagen molecules are dissolved to varying extents depending on the solvent used. The significance of these macromolecular hydroxyproline-containing fractions in the normal metabolism of collagen and in conditions with altered metabolism has been the subject of several investigations during the last decade. Furthermore during recent years increasing attention has been paid to the free and peptide bound hydroxyproline present in the tissues and biological fluids with a view to explaining the role of these low molecular fractions in the metabolism of collagen.

Effect of a Single Injection	58
Effect of Repeated Injections	64
Content of Hydrocortisone in the Fractions of the Skin after Administration of Cortisone	67
Discussion	70
SUMMARY	73
REFERENCES	78
APPENDIX	89

## REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

### RELATION OF VARIOUS HYDROXYPROLINE CONTAINING FRACTIONS TO THE METABOLISM OF COLLAGEN

Although collagen has long been regarded as an insoluble protein it has been known since the beginning of this century that part of the rat tail tendon collagen will dissolve in dilute acetic acid (ZACHARIADIS 1900). In a series of investigations VAGEOTTE (e.g. 1927 1930 1933) studied the solubilisation of rat tail tendon collagen in dilute acetic acid and the formation of fibrils from this solution. In 1934 VAGEOTTE and GLYON found that the amount of collagen that could be dissolved in acetic acid decreased with age.

V. V. OREHOVIČ and co workers [e.g. OREHOVIČ TUSTAYOVSKIY OREHOVIČ and PLOTNIKOVA 1948 OREHOVIČ 1953 OREHOVIČ and ŠKRETER 1957 OREHOVIČ and ŠKRETER 1958] studied the properties of a fraction that can be extracted with acid citrate buffer. They suggested that this fraction was a precursor of the insoluble collagen and called it procollagen. Later it was found that collagen could also be extracted from connective tissue with alkaline phosphate buffer (HIGBERGER Gross and SCHWITT 1951) and neutral salt solutions of varying ionic strengths (Gross HIGBERGER and SCHWITT 1955). It was shown that the fractions soluble in alkaline phosphate buffer called alkali soluble collagen (HARKNESS MARKO ULLR and NEUBERGER 1954) ■ 2 M sodium chloride (JACKSON 1957) and 0.45 M sodium chloride (Gross 1958b) represented even earlier stages in the metabolism of collagen than the citrate soluble fraction. In addition a water soluble collagen fraction was found to be present in the granuloma induced by carrageenin injection and comprised the greater part of the 0.2 M sodium chloride soluble collagen formed during the early stages of development of the granuloma (JACKSON 1957).

An explanation for the significance of the various soluble collagen fractions in the metabolism of collagen was proposed by JACKSON (1958) Gross (1959a) JACKSON (1959) CREEV and LOWTHER (1959) and JACKSON and BEVLEY (1960). Collagen fibres are built up from rod like macromolecules called tropocollagen that have a weight of 360 000 and dimensions of about  $14 \times 2800 \text{ \AA}$ . They consist of three polypeptide chains helically coiled upon themselves (see also SCHWITT 1959 HOPPE and SCHWITT 1961). These molecules are synthesized within fibroblasts from which they escape into the extracellular space and there aggregate to form collagen fibres. Dilute salt solutions (0.14 M NaCl) extract the most recently synthesized molecules which are partly intracellular partly already extracellular but aggregated only very



Since the discovery that cortisone has a therapeutic effect on the collagen diseases the mechanism by which cortisone acts on connective tissue has been studied in a number of investigations. It has been found that cortisone at least in large doses inhibits the metabolism of connective tissue and the formation of new collagen. The mechanism of this inhibition, however is not known.

Although the problems of connective tissue have been discussed in several reviews and symposia the rapid advances in the chemistry of collagen make it worth while to introduce the present investigation with a brief review of the literature concerning the metabolic aspects of collagen. This review is mainly concerned with papers that have appeared during the last few years but the most important of the older publications are also mentioned. For more extensive references to the literature concerning collagen the reader is referred to the proceedings of a conference edited by STAIRS (1958) and to the extensive review by HARNES (1961) on the biological functions of collagen. Regarding physicochemical and structural aspects reference should further be made to the articles of HODGE and SCHWITT (1961) and RICH and CRICK (1961). The problems associated with connective tissue in general have been dealt with in the reviews of JACKSON (1958) and SMILEY and ZIFF (1962) for instance and in the reports of connective tissue symposia edited by TUNBRIDGE (1957) and PAGE (1959).

The object of the present investigation was to make a simultaneous study of the various low-molecular and macromolecular hydroxyproline-containing fractions during the formation of collagen in developing chick embryos. In addition the effect of the inhibition of collagen formation by cortisone on the proportions of these hydroxyproline-containing fractions was investigated.

## REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

### RELATION OF VARIOUS HYDROXYPROLINE CONTAINING FRACTIONS TO THE METABOLISM OF COLLAGEN

Although collagen has long been regarded as an insoluble protein it has been known since the beginning of this century that part of the rat tail tendon collagen will dissolve in dilute acetic acid (ZACHARIADIS 1900). In a series of investigations VAGOTTE (e.g. 1927, 1930, 1933) studied the solubilisation of rat tail tendon collagen in dilute acetic acid and the formation of fibrils from this solution. In 1934 VAGOTTE and GILSON found that the amount of collagen that could be dissolved in acetic acid decreased with age.

V. V. OREHOVIČ and co-workers (e.g. OREHOVIČ, TISTANOVSKI, OREHOVIČ and PLOTNIKOVA 1918, OREHOVIČ 1933, OREHOVIČ and SPIKITER 1937, OREHOVIČ and SPIKITER 1938) studied the properties of a fraction that can be extracted with acid citrate buffer. They suggested that this fraction was a precursor of the insoluble collagen and called it procollagen. Later it was found that collagen could also be extracted from connective tissue with alkaline phosphate buffer (HIGBERGER, GROSS and SCHWITT 1931) and neutral salt solutions of varying ionic strengths (GROSS, HIGBERGER and SCHWITT 1935). It was shown that the fractions soluble in alkaline phosphate buffer called alkali soluble collagen (HARVESS, MARKO, ALR and NEUBERGER 1954), 0.2 M sodium chloride (JACKSON 1937) and 0.45 M sodium chloride (GROSS 1938b) represented even earlier stages in the metabolism of collagen than the citrate soluble fraction. In addition a water soluble collagen fraction was found to be present in the granuloma induced by carrageenin injection and composed the greater part of the 0.2 M sodium chloride soluble collagen formed during the early stages of development of the granuloma (JACKSON 1957).

An explanation for the significance of the various soluble collagen fractions in the metabolism of collagen was proposed by JACKSON (1938), GROSS (1959a), JACKSON (1959), CHERY and LOWTHER (1959) and JACKSON and BENTLEY (1960). Collagen fibres are built up from rod-like macromolecules called tropocollagen that have a weight of 360,000 and dimensions of about  $14 \times 2,800 \text{ \AA}$ . They consist of three polypeptide chains helically coiled upon themselves (see also SCHWITT 1939, HODGE and SCHWITT 1961). These molecules are synthesized within fibroblasts from which they escape into the extracellular space and there aggregate to form collagen fibres. Dilute salt solutions (0.14 M NaCl) extract the most recently synthesized molecules which are partly intracellular, partly already extracellular but aggregated only very

loosely or not at all. More concentrated salt solutions extract in addition collagen that has become somewhat more firmly associated with the fibrils. Citrate buffers and organic acids are capable of dissolving collagen bound still more firmly to the fibril and finally there remains the insoluble collagen which has the lowest metabolic activity.

Quite recently BENTLEY and JACKSON (1963) have reported that there are two peaks in the specific activity of the 0.14 M sodium chloride soluble collagen fraction in the skin and wound granulation tissue of guinea pigs after the administration of  $^{14}\text{C}$  glycine,  $^3\text{H}$  glycine and  $^3\text{H}$  proline. They suggested that the newly formed collagen is first extractable with 0.14 M sodium chloride for a short period after which it is temporarily rendered unextractable for a short time and then again rendered extractable. The cell surface was regarded as its possible site during the period of unextractability.

Further fractions are obtained from the soluble collagen fractions when they are denatured with urea or certain salts or by mild heating at acidic pH. The fractions that are formed are called the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  components and they can be isolated by such methods as ammonium sulphate fractionation or chromatography on carboxymethyl cellulose columns (e.g. OREHOVIČ and ŠPIKITER 1958, DOTY and NISHIHARA 1958, OREHOVIČ, ŠPIKITER, MAZUROV and KUNINA 1960, PIEZ, WEISS and LEWIS 1960). It has been found that the rate of incorporation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  glycine is greater into the  $\alpha$  than the  $\beta$  component of the citrate soluble fraction (OREHOVIČ, ŠPIKITER, KASAKOVA and MAZUROV 1959) and that the alkali soluble procollagen which is close to the 0.2 M sodium chloride soluble collagen fraction consists solely of  $\alpha$  components (MAZUROV and OREHOVIČ 1960). PIEZ, LEWIS, MARTIN and GROSS (1961) and PIEZ, FICNER and LEWIS (1963) have reported that there are two kinds of both  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  components ( $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ ,  $\beta_1$  and  $\beta_2$ ). The neutral salt soluble collagen consisted mainly of  $\alpha$  subunits and the ratio of  $\alpha_1$  to  $\alpha_2$  was close to 2. They suggested that these subunits represent single chains of tropocollagen molecules. When the molecule matures and becomes insoluble in sodium chloride but can still be dissolved in acid, the chains cross link intramolecularly in pairs which are the  $\beta$  components. Probably  $\beta_1$  is composed of one  $\alpha_1$  and one  $\alpha_2$  chain and  $\beta_2$  of two  $\alpha_1$  chains. A further subfraction of denatured collagen is  $\gamma$  tropocollagen which probably represents a more mature form than the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  components (ALTGELT, HODGE and SCHWITT 1961).

LOWTHER, GREEN and CHAPMAN (1961) have studied the metabolic activity of collagen in different subcellular fractions of carrageenin granulomas. After the incubation of granuloma slices with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline, the ratio of the specific activities of hydroxyproline in the microsomal, mitochondrial and nuclear fractions was 2:2:1 indicating that the primary synthesis of collagen takes place in the microsomes. The amino acid composition of this microsomal collagen was similar to that of insoluble collagen (EASTOP 1961). In the intact chick embryo the microsomal collagen likewise showed the highest metabolic activity (PROCKOP, PETERKOFSKY and LEDENFRIEND 1962). Further support for the view that collagen is synthesized in the microsomes was obtained from the observation that chick embryo microsomes can incorporate  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline into hydroxyproline *in vitro* in the absence of mitochondria (PETERKOFSKY and LEDENFRIEND 1961, 1962).

The results of the above mentioned experiments indicated that collagen is synthesized by the same ribosomal system as has been postulated for the synthesis of other proteins (see also PROCKOP 1962a) although it is not known whether the whole

tropocollagen peptide chain is synthesized as a single molecule or whether it consists of more than one building block (GERRER and ALTMAN 1961 PROCKOP 1962a SWELL MAY 1962). There is one special feature however of the synthesis of collagen which is unique. Since the experiments of STETTIN and SCHÖENHEIMER (1944) and STETTIN (1949) it has been known that the hydroxyproline of collagen is not derived from free hydroxyproline but from proline that is hydroxylated in bound form during the synthesis of collagen. This has since been confirmed by several investigators (e.g. SMITH and JACKSON 1957 WOLF and BERGER 1958 GREEN and LOWTHER 1959 PETERKOVSKY and UDEYFRIEND 1961). Moreover it has been found that the hydroxyllysine of collagen originates from free lysine and not from free hydroxyllysine (e.g. SIVEX and VAN SLIKE 1955 PIEZ and LARIVS 1957 VAN SLIKE and SIVEX 1958 HAO and BOLGER 1958 a & b SIVEX VAN SLIKE and CHRISTMAN 1959 POPEVOE and VAN SLIKE 1967). Only in the work of MITOMA SMITH FRIEDBERG and RAYFORD (1959) was slight incorporation of  $^3\text{C}$  hydroxyproline into collagen found in the chick embryo but the specific activity of bound hydroxyproline was only one tenth of that observed after the administration of  $^3\text{C}$  proline. The later work of PROCKOP PETERKOVSKY and UDEYFRIEND (1962) further indicated that free hydroxyproline is not an appreciable source of collagen hydroxyproline even in the chick embryo.

Several investigations have dealt with the question of whether the hydroxylation occurs after the synthesis of the tropocollagen peptide chain or whether activated proline or proline residues of a precursor peptide are already hydroxylated. Some observations indirectly favoured the hypothesis that hydroxylation occurs before the completion of the collagen peptide chain (ROBERTSON HIGGITT and HERMAN 1959 GREEN and LOWTHER 1959 UDEYFRIEND WEISSBACH and MITOMA 1960 HALLMANN and NELMAN 1961 DALCHADAY and MARIZ 1967b STONE and MEISTER 1962 PETERKOVSKY and UDEYFRIEND 1962). Therefore attempts have been made to demonstrate the presence of activated hydroxyproline or an active peptidic precursor. LEVINE (1962) who incubated minced skin of young rats with  $^3\text{C}$  proline found in the medium a non dialyzable fraction in which the specific activity of hydroxyproline was 8 to 12 times as high as that of proline. After treatment of this fraction by autoradiating or at pH 10 or with ribonuclease the radioactivity could be removed by dialysis. Therefore he suggested that this fraction represents a highly active peptide collagen precursor possibly bound to ribonucleic acid. In addition in chick embryos after the administration of  $^3\text{C}$  proline MAYER and GOLDB (1967) have found small amounts of highly reactive hydroxyproline bound to soluble ribonucleic acid. As to the mechanism of hydroxylation of proline recent investigations suggest that it is addition of molecular oxygen that is involved rather than dehydrogenation and addition of water (Fujimoto and TAYATA 1962 EBERT and PROCKOP 1962 WILKINSON and CHAPPEL 1967a PROCKOP KAPLAN and UDEYFRIEND 1962 KONTO and TETSUKA 1962).

Since free hydroxyproline is not utilized for the synthesis of collagen the question arises of what role is played by the free and peptide bound hydroxyproline present in the tissues and biological fluids in collagen metabolism.

Investigators of a Czechoslovakian group have studied the biological significance of ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline i.e. free and peptide bound hydroxyproline in a series of works (e.g. CHAPPEL 1958 CHAPPEL 1959 CHAPPEL and ČULČHALOVÁ 1960 KOBŘELE and CHAPPEL 1961a & b CHAPPEL and ČULČHALOVÁ 1961 KOBŘELE and CHAPPEL 1962 WILKINSON and CHAPPEL 1962a & b CHAPPEL HOLÉČKOVÁ ČULČHALOVÁ KOBŘELE and

HURYCH 1962) These investigations indicated the presence of free and peptide bound hydroxyproline in the tissues of several animals and in the carrageenin granuloma. In addition some of these peptides were isolated from pig embryo and identified (KOBRLÉ and CHVAPIL 1961 a). In the carrageenin granuloma maximum accumulation of ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline was found to occur at the same time as that of deoxyribonucleic acids (cells) and after this stage there was a decrease in the content of ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline and an increase in the content of collagen bound hydroxyproline (CHVAPIL and ČVUCHALOVÁ 1960, 1961). The bulk of the hydroxyproline present in the microsomal fraction of the carrageenin granuloma was found to be ultrafiltrable (CHVAPIL, HOLECKOVÁ, ČVUCHALOVÁ, KOBRLÉ and HURYCH 1962). It was suggested that free and peptide bound hydroxyproline participate in the synthesis of collagen and are intracellular although their origin by breakdown could not be excluded (CHVAPIL and ČVUCHALOVÁ 1961, CHVAPIL, HOLECKOVÁ, ČVUCHALOVÁ, KOBRLÉ and HURYCH 1962). Additional support for this view was obtained from the observations that during the incubation of chick embryo skin with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline the specific activity of ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline was considerably higher than that of neutral salt soluble or insoluble collagen hydroxyproline (HURYCH and CHVAPIL 1962 b) and similar results were later obtained with intact chick embryos also (refer HURYCH and CHVAPIL 1962 b). The findings that the concentrations of free hydroxyproline in the serum (KOBRLÉ and CHVAPIL 1961 b) and in several organs (KOBRLÉ and CHVAPIL 1962) of rats decreased with the aging of the animals were also consistent with the above hypothesis. Since the differences in the concentration of free hydroxyproline in different organs were better correlated with the metabolic activity of the organs than with their collagen contents it was further suggested that the concentration of free hydroxyproline in the tissues of animals of the same age is indirectly dependent on the metabolic activity of the collagen in the organ investigated (KOBRLÉ and CHVAPIL 1962).

A similar parallelism to that found between deoxyribonucleic acids (cells) and ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline in the carrageenin granuloma (CHVAPIL and ČVUCHALOVÁ 1960, 1961) has also been found between deoxyribonucleic acids and free hydroxyproline during the development of polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue by WOESSNER and BOUCEK (1961). They proposed that there might normally be a constant amount of free hydroxyproline within the fibroblasts. In the experiments of DAUGHADAY and MARIZ (1962 h) in which cartilage was incubated *in vitro* with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline the specific activity of free hydroxyproline was 20 times as high as that of neutral salt soluble collagen hydroxyproline suggesting the origin of free hydroxyproline from activated hydroxyproline in this system. In the intact chick embryo however the specific activity of free hydroxyproline was considerably lower than that of microsomal or soluble collagen hydroxyproline indicating that in the chick embryo free hydroxyproline may be formed by degradation of some of the more highly labelled protein fractions (PROCKOP, PETERKOFSKY and UDENFRIED 1962).

In relation to the problem of the significance of free and peptide bound hydroxyproline some investigations concerning the urinary hydroxyproline are also of interest. ZIFF, KIBRICK, DRESNER and GRIBETZ (1956) who found that the excretion of urinary hydroxyproline decreases with age suggested that the urinary hydroxyproline may be derived from metabolically active forms of collagen such as the soluble collagens. It has been suggested that the free hydroxyproline of urine may be derived from

building blocks of collagen and peptide bound hydroxyproline from the catabolism of collagen fibres (GERBER GERBER and ALTMAN 1960 GERBER and ALTMAN 1961) But these results could not be confirmed by LINDSTEDT and PROCKOP (1961) who found that the specific activities of free and peptide bound hydroxyproline in the urine were the same after the administration of  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline They further showed that in young rats there are at least three pools of hydroxyproline in the urine with half lives of approximately one day 5 days and 50 to 100 days These half lives suggested that the first two pools had their origin in various soluble collagens and the third pool in the insoluble collagen In the later work of PROCKOP (1962 b) comparisons were made between the specific activities of urinary hydroxyproline and with various collagen fractions of the skin In investigations dealing with the changes in the excretion of hydroxyproline in scurvy and lathyrism and in relation to growth (MARTIN MARGENHAGEN and PROCKOP 1961 JASIN and ZIFF 1962 JASIN FINE SMILEY and ZIFF 1962 JASIN FINE WISE and ZIFF 1962) it was also emphasized that urinary hydroxyproline reflects changes in body collagen and especially in the more active forms of collagen

Thus far the role of the various hydroxyproline containing fractions has been considered in relation to the synthesis and normal metabolism of collagen Finally the role of these fractions during increased catabolism will be discussed JACKSON (1957) proposed that the catabolism of collagen during the resorption of the carcinoma granuloma is initiated by conversion of fibrous collagen into soluble form since the contents of neutral salt soluble and citrate soluble collagen fractions were increased during the resorption of the granuloma This was confirmed by WOESSNER (1962) in the involuting uterus where the amount of soluble collagen per uterus increased An even greater increase occurred in the free hydroxyproline whereas the amount of peptide bound hydroxyproline was not significantly altered WOESSNER (1962) suggested that the resorption of uterine collagen is initiated by solubilisation of the collagen which thereafter undergoes thermal denaturation Acid cathepsins split the denaturated collagen into peptides and peptidases split the peptides into free amino acids

## EFFECT OF CORTISONE AND HYDROCORTISONE ON THE METABOLISM OF COLLAGEN

Cortisone and hydrocortisone at least when administered in large doses have a general inhibitory effect on the metabolism of connective tissue This is evident from the decrease in the number of mast cells and the changes in their morphology and histochemistry the delay in the formation of granulation tissue and in the healing of wounds associated with impairment of their tensile strength and the inhibition of the metabolism of the mucopolysaccharides of the ground substance (for general reference see LEXELL 1954 DORFMAN and SCHILLER 1958 ASHOK HANSEN 1958 1959) The investigations concerning the effect of cortisone and hydrocortisone on the content of fibroblasts in vitro are not quite consistent for some indicate a decrease but others no effect Nevertheless in healing wounds the content of fibroblasts is decreased when cortisone is given in doses sufficient to delay wound healing (for references see ASHOK HANSEN 1958 1959) In agreement with this the increase in the total amount of collagen is inhibited by cortisone and hydro-

cortisone during the formation of new connective tissue in the polyvinyl sponge implants (PERNOAS EDWARDS and DUNPHY 1957) in the carrageenin granuloma (ROBERTSON and SANBORN 1958 FISHER and PAAR 1960) in healing skin wounds (SAKATA 1960 b) and during the early stages of fibrosis of the liver (ATFMAN 1954)

Conflicting results have been obtained in investigations into the effect of cortisone on the total amount of collagen in the more mature connective tissue SILBER and PORTER (1953) found that large doses of cortisone primarily led to extensive losses of nitrogen from the rat carcass resulting in a decrease in body weight Collagen seemed to be relatively stable but a relative and absolute increase was found in the collagen of the carcass Other investigations have similarly shown an increase in the amount of collagen in the skeletal muscle of mice (FRIBERG 1957) and in the stomach liver and bone of rats (KOWALCZYNSKI 1961) The investigations of SOBEL and MARVON STON (1954) SOBEL GADAY and JOHNSON (1959) and SOBEL GADAY JOHNSON and HASSAN (1959) indicated that the collagen of the tissues of rats was relatively stable compared with the decrease in the content of hexosamine and thus that a decrease occurred in the ratio of hexosamine to collagen after administration of cortisone Nevertheless in the investigations of SAKATA (1960 a) SETHI RAMEY and HOLCK (1961) SMITH (1962 a & b) and HOUCK (1962) a decrease in the collagen content of the skin was observed after administration of cortisone or hydrocortisone

In 1951 ROBERTS KARNOWSKI and FRANKEL found a great increase in the content of free hydroxyproline in the tissues of chick embryo six to ten days after a single injection of cortisone acetate onto the chorioallantoic membrane The contrary was found however when hydrocortisone was given to pregnant rats for the concentrations of free and total hydroxyproline in the tissues of new born rats decreased but the concentration of free proline increased (CHVAPIL 1958) Therefore CHVAPIL (1959) repeated the experiments of ROBERTS KARNOWSKI and FRANKEL (1951) but this investigation likewise showed that six to ten days after the administration of cortisone acetate the concentrations of free and total hydroxyproline in the chick embryo were greatly increased The discrepancy could be explained however by taking into consideration the fact that the dose of cortisone acetate (1 mg) used in the experiments with chick embryos greatly reduced the weight of the treated embryos When the absolute amounts of free and total hydroxyproline per embryo were calculated a decrease was observed that tallied with the results obtained in rat embryos On the basis of these experiments CHVAPIL (1959) proposed that cortisone inhibits hydroxyproline synthesis possibly during the hydroxylation of proline

DAUCHADAY and MARIE (1962 a & b) who incubated rat cartilage *in vitro* with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline in the presence of hydrocortisone did not find any inhibition in the amount or labelling of free hydroxyproline in the medium although the incorporation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline into cartilage bound hydroxyproline was significantly inhibited They concluded that in this system cortisone inhibited the terminal steps of collagen synthesis and not the formation of the supposed hydroxyproline intermediate

In studies on urinary hydroxyproline therapeutic doses of cortisone have been found to have no effect on the excretion of hydroxyproline in patients with rheumatoid arthritis or normal subjects (ZIFF KIBRIK DRESNER and CHIBETZ 1956) Even large doses of cortisone did not change the concentration of free hydroxyproline in the blood or its excretion in the urine in 1 and 11 month old rats although the weight of the animals and the concentration of free proline in the blood decreased considerably (KIVIRIAGO and IJESMAA 1958)

During recent years attention has been paid to the effect of cortisone on the soluble collagen fraction. SILKO STELL and KILLOREN (1959) found that a decrease occurred in the content of alkali soluble collagen in the skin of guinea pigs after administration of hydrocortisone. A similar decrease was later observed in the neutral salt soluble collagen fractions of rat skin following administration of hydrocortisone (SETHI RAMEY and HOLCK 1961) or cortisone acetate (SABATA 1960 a GUTHER and CARSTEN 1961). The results concerning the effect of hydrocortisone or cortisone on the citrate soluble collagen fraction were not so consistent for the two first mentioned investigations indicated an increase and the two last mentioned and the investigation of SMITH (1962 a) a decrease in this fraction. The investigations of SETHI RAMEY and HOLCK (1961) and of SMITH (1962 b) further indicated that the effects of hydrocortisone and cortisone on the cutaneous collagen are dependent on the age of the animals although as regards the nature of this age effect the results were not entirely consistent.

In the study of GUTHER and CARSTEN (1961) the effects of adrenalectomy and aldosterone were also investigated. The contents of the various soluble collagen fractions increased after adrenalectomy while administration of aldosterone had no effect. Since the increase after adrenalectomy was not greater in the 0.14 M sodium chloride soluble collagen fraction than in the other fractions it was argued that this effect was not due to increased synthesis of collagen but possibly to altered stability of the collagen due to changes in the composition or degree of polymerization of the mucopolysaccharides of the ground substance.

MAKUROV and ORENOVITZ (1960) have studied the effect of cortisone on the incorporation of  $^3\text{C}$  glycine into the citrate soluble procollagen fraction of the skin. The results indicated that cortisone inhibited the synthesis of procollagen and under certain conditions the incorporation of  $^3\text{C}$  glycine was even reduced by half. In the investigations of DALCHADAY and MARIZ (1962 a & b) to which reference has already been made it was also evident that hydrocortisone inhibited the incorporation of  $^3\text{C}$  proline into cartilage bound hydroxyproline *in vitro*. By contrast the investigations of KOBLET and FRIEDEN (1960) revealed no inhibition of the incorporation of  $^3\text{C}$  glycine into the protein fractions of polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue.

## EFFECT OF OTHER FACTORS ON THE METABOLISM OF COLLAGEN

In this section a brief survey will be given of the effects of other factors known to influence the metabolism of collagen. The following factors are included in the present review: age, growth hormones, aortic acid and experimental lathyrism. The effect of most of these factors on the metabolism of connective tissue have been recently reviewed by SWILEY and ZIFF (1962).

**Age, growth and growth hormone.** — The contents of soluble collagens in the tissues (NAGEOTTE and GILROY 1934, K. D. ORENOVITZ 1950, BAYFIELD 1952, KOBLET and CHAPIL 1955, BOLCEK, NOBLE, HAO and ELDER 1958, HAO and MCGAVACK 1959, KONT and ROLLERSON 1959, BAKERMAN 1962) the contents of free hydroxyproline in the blood (KOBLET and CHAPIL 1961 b) and in the tissues (CADAVID, DENDUCHIS and MANCINI 1961, KOBLET and CHAPIL 1962) and the excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine (ZIFF, HIBBICK, DRESNER and GARRETT 1956, HÄNIRIKKO and LIESMÄA



cortisone during the formation of new connective tissue in the polyvinyl sponge implants (PERNOKAS EDWARDS and DUNPHY 1957) in the carrageenin granuloma (ROBERTSON and SANBORN 1956 FISHER and PAAR 1960) in healing skin wounds (SAKATA 1960 b) and during the early stages of fibrosis of the liver (ALTERMAN 1954)

Conflicting results have been obtained in investigations into the effect of cortisone on the total amount of collagen in the more mature connective tissue SILBER and PORTER (1953) found that large doses of cortisone primarily led to extensive losses of nitrogen from the rat carcass resulting in a decrease in body weight Collagen seemed to be relatively stable but a relative and absolute increase was found in the collagen of the carcass Other investigations have similarly shown an increase in the amount of collagen in the skeletal muscle of mice (FRIBERG 1957) and in the stomach liver and bone of rats (KOWALEWSKI 1961) The investigations of SOBEL and MANNORSTON (1954) SOBEL GABAY and JOHNSON (1958) and SOBEL GABAY JOHNSON and HASSAN (1959) indicated that the collagen of the tissues of rats was relatively stable compared with the decrease in the content of hexosamine and thus that a decrease occurred in the ratio of hexosamine to collagen after administration of cortisone Nevertheless in the investigations of SAKATA (1960 a) SETHI RAMEY and HOLCK (1961) SMITH (1962 a & b) and HOUCK (1962) a decrease in the collagen content of the skin was observed after administration of cortisone or hydrocortisone

In 1951 ROBERTS KARNOFSKY and FRANKEL found a great increase in the content of free hydroxyproline in the tissues of chick embryo six to ten days after a single injection of cortisone acetate onto the chorionallantoic membrane The contrary was found however when hydrocortisone was given to pregnant rats for the concentrations of free and total hydroxyproline in the tissues of new born rats decreased but the concentration of free proline increased (CHVAPIL 1958) Therefore CHVAPIL (1959) repeated the experiments of ROBERTS KARNOFSKY and FRANKEL (1951) but this investigation likewise showed that six to ten days after the administration of cortisone acetate the concentrations of free and total hydroxyproline in the chick embryo were greatly increased The discrepancy could be explained however by taking into consideration the fact that the dose of cortisone acetate (1 mg) used in the experiments with chick embryos greatly reduced the weight of the treated embryos When the absolute amounts of free and total hydroxyproline per embryo were calculated a decrease was observed that tallied with the results obtained in rat embryos On the basis of these experiments CHVAPIL (1959) proposed that cortisone inhibits hydroxyproline synthesis possibly during the hydroxylation of proline

DAUGHADAY and MARIZ (1962 a & b) who incubated rat cartilage *in vitro* with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline in the presence of hydrocortisone did not find any inhibition in the amount or labelling of free hydroxyproline in the medium although the incorporation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline into cartilage bound hydroxyproline was significantly inhibited They concluded that in this system cortisone inhibited the terminal steps of collagen synthesis and not the formation of the supposed hydroxyproline intermediate

In studies on urinary hydroxyproline therapeutic doses of cortisone have been found to have no effect on the excretion of hydroxyproline in patients with rheumatoid arthritis or normal subjects (ZIFF KIDRICK DRESSER and CRIBETZ 1956) Even large doses of cortisone did not change the concentration of free hydroxyproline in the blood or its excretion in the urine in 1 and 11 month old rats although the weight of the animals and the concentration of free proline in the blood decreased considerably (HJORTHJAAO and LIESMAA 1958)

*Parathyroid hormone* — The excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine (KLEIN ALBERTSEN and CURTIS 1967 DILL CALSING and HEYEMAN 1962) and the concentration of hydroxyproline in the plasma (BATES MCGOVER and TALMAGE 1962) are increased in hyperparathyroidism. The incorporation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline into  $^{14}\text{C}$  hydroxyproline *in vitro* has been found to be reduced in the bones of rats treated with parathyroid extract although the incorporation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  2 glucose into the hexosamine of the bone matrix was increased in similarly treated animals (JONASTON DEISS and MAYER 1962).

*Steroid hormones* — The effect of cortisone and hydrocortisone on the metabolism of collagen has already been described (pp 13—15). As regards the other anti inflammatory steroids it has been found that 6 methyl prednisolone inhibited collagen formation in polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue and that growth hormone methyl testosterone or stilboestrol were not able to counteract this inhibition (BAYETTA BEKRON and NIMCI 1967). KILNY HOLZMANN and KORTING (1962) have reported that the contents of 0.5 M sodium chloride soluble and citrate soluble collagen were decreased in the skin of rats by administration of prednisolone.

The effect of deoxycorticosterone acetate has been reported to be the opposite of that of cortisone in carrageenin granulomas for it increased collagen formation (ROBERTSON and SAINBORN 1958) and the weight (АТКИНСОН JENKINS TOMICH and WOOLLETT 1962) of the granulomas. In the skin of rats however the effect of deoxycorticosteroid was similar to that of cortisol with the exception of aged animals both hormones causing a decrease in the contents of neutral salt soluble and insoluble collagen and an increase in the content of citrate soluble collagen (SETRI RAMZY and HOUCK 1961).

Anabolic steroids increased the tensile strength of healing fracture callus of bone in normal rats (WIAVLO and KOWALEWSKI 1961) and the tensile strength and collagen content of experimental granulation tissue in undernourished rats in which formation of connective tissue was retarded (VILJANTO ISOMAKI and KILLOVEY 1962).

Collagen formation in polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue is dependent on the sex of the host males displaying a more active synthesis of collagen and formation of larger amounts of stable collagen than females (KAO BOLCEK and NOBLE 1957 BOLCEK NOBLE and WOESSNER 1959 a & b BOLCEK and NOBLE 1961). According to BAYETTA BEKRON and NIMCI (1967) stilboestrol inhibits collagen formation in the polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue whereas ROBERTSON and SAINBORN (1958) have found enhanced collagen formation in the carrageenin granuloma after the administration of stilboestrol. KILNY HOLZMANN and KORTING (1962) have reported that the administration of testosterone increased the content of 0.5 M sodium chloride soluble collagen in the skin.

*Ascorbic acid* — Several investigations have shown that collagen formation is reduced in ascorbic acid deficiency. The mechanism of action of ascorbic acid on collagen formation is still unknown however (for general references see GOLD 1960 ROBERTSON 1961). In 6 or 7 week guinea pigs the contents of soluble collagens in the skin (OREHOVICH and SPIKITER 1957 GROSS 1959 b SAKATA 1960 a) and wound tissue (S KATA 1960 b) the contents of free and peptide bound hydroxyproline in granulomas (СМЕЧАЛОВА and ЧИВАПИЛ refer KOBLE and ЧИВАПИЛ 1962) and the excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine (MARTIN MERGETHAGEN and PROCKOP 1961) are decreased. It has been suggested that ascorbic acid is needed for hydroxylation of peptide bound proline (ROBERTSON and SCHWARTZ 1953 GOLD and WOESS

1958 LINDSTEDT and PROCKOP 1961 MARTIN MERGENHAGEN and PROCKOP 1961) decrease during the aging of animals and human subjects. The content of 0.45 M sodium chloride soluble collagen in the skin of guinea pigs however is dependent not only on the age but also on the growth rate (GROSS 1958 b) and the same has also been observed concerning the excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine (JASIN FINK SMILEY and ZIFF 1962 JASIN FINK WISE and ZIFF 1962). In agreement with this WIRTSCHAFTER and BENTLEY (1962 a) have found that the maximum content of 0.45 M sodium chloride soluble collagen in the skin of rats occurred at the age of 35 days when the rate of weight gain was likewise greatest. Administration of growth hormone to experimental animals is followed by an increase in the content of acid soluble collagen in the skin (BANFIELD 1958) and in the content of free hydroxyproline in the blood (KIVIRIKKO LIESMAA and LUUKKAINEN 1958). Furthermore growth hormone administered to patients with hypopituitarism increases the excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine (JASIN FINK SMILEY and ZIFF 1962 JASIN FINK WISE and ZIFF 1962).

The above mentioned findings have several times been taken to indicate a decrease in collagen metabolism with age or with cessation of growth and an increase in collagen metabolism after administration of growth hormone. This is also evident from the isotope experiments of NEUBERGER PERRONE and SLACK (1961) NEUBERGER and SLACK (1953) and KAO HILKER and MCGAVACK (1961) which indicated that the rate of turnover of collagen is greater in young than in old animals. The isotope experiments of LINDSTEDT and PROCKOP (1961) further showed that there are larger hydroxyproline pools with short half lives in young than in old animals. In experiments *in vitro* DALGHADAI and MARIZ (1962 a) have found that the rate of formation of collagen is reduced in the cartilage of hypophysectomized animals and increased in that of animals treated with growth hormone.

*Thyroid hormones and thyroid stimulating hormone* — Thyroid hormones have an inhibitory effect on the formation of collagen as measured by the tensile strength of healing wounds (MOLTAR 1958). In the aortic walls of normal rabbits (LOREYSEN 1961) and in the bones of normal rats (GABAY VIVANCO RAMOS and DIAZ 1961) no change in the total collagen content has been observed after administration of thyroxine although in the latter investigation thyroxine inhibited the increase in the collagen caused by methylene aminoacetonitrile. The excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine is increased in normal human subjects and young and old rats after the administration of thyroid hormones (KEISER and SJØERDSMA 1962 KIVIRIKKO KOIVUSALO LAITINEN and LIESMAA 1963) and in patients with hyperthyroidism (DULL and HENNEMAN 1963 KIVIRIKKO KOIVUSALO LAITINEN and LAMBERG to be published) and reduced in adult patients with hypothyroidism (KEISER and SJØERDSMA 1962) and in children with cretinism (JASIN FINK SMILEY and ZIFF 1962 JASIN FINK WISE and ZIFF 1962). The contents of 0.45 M sodium chloride soluble and citrate soluble collagen in the skin of young rats have been found to be slightly decreased after the administration of thyroxine (KIVIRIKKO KOIVUSALO LAITINEN and LIESMAA 1963).

Besides its stimulatory effect on the thyroid gland thyroid stimulating hormone has a direct stimulatory effect on the metabolism of the mucopolysaccharides of the ground substance (see ASBOE HANSEN 1958 SMILEY and ZIFF 1962) but the possible direct effect of this hormone on the metabolism of collagen is unknown (SMILEY and ZIFF 1962).

genic agents act by blocking carbonyl groups on the collagen molecule and thus preventing the cross linking essential to normal maturation. Further support for this hypothesis was obtained in the same investigation from the finding that purified lathyritic collagen took up small amounts of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine than normal collagen. In addition STALDER and STEGMANN (1967) have reported that  $\beta$ -aminopropionitrile is built up into the collagen molecule for  $\beta$ -alanine which is formed during the hydrolysis of  $\beta$ -aminopropionitrile was found in the hydrolysates of acid soluble collagen obtained from lathyritic animals but not in those obtained from normal animals.

## HYDROXYPROLINE IN TISSUES OF EMBRYOS

According to NEUMAN (1950) hydroxyproline was not found in crude hen's egg contents except in the egg shell membranes where its content was 0.66-1.0 per cent. Since the content of hydroxyproline in these membranes did not change during embryonic development it was concluded that the hydroxyproline of the chick embryo cannot be derived in appreciable amounts from the egg contents. Recently FUJIMOTO and TAMURA (1962) have reported a value of 270  $\mu\text{g/egg}$  for hydroxyproline in the crude egg contents but even this value is too low to be a noteworthy source of hydroxyproline for the embryo.

In the chick embryo hydroxyproline has been reported to be present after 5 (NEUMAN 1950) or 4 (CHAPIL 1959) days incubation after which its content increases continuously and on the 19th day of incubation amounts to 1.16 per cent of the dry weight of the embryo (NEUMAN 1950). An equation  $y = 0.630 x^{1.11}$  has been formulated between the absolute amount of hydroxyproline and the weight of the embryo (CHAPIL 1959). The hydroxyproline content of the whole egg likewise increases during the incubation period whereas the content of tyrosine remains unchanged (FUJIMOTO and TAMURA 1962). As regards the increase in the hydroxyproline in the different tissues HERRMANN and BARRY (1955) have found that a significant increase in the collagen content of the muscle of the embryo begins on the 12th day of the heart on the 15th day and of the liver on the 18th day of development. By histological histochemical methods it has been possible to demonstrate the first minute collagenous fibres (argyrophilic fibres) in the chick embryo after 4 or 5 days incubation (LINDNER 1961).

Relatively large amounts of free hydroxyproline are present in chick embryos (1  $\mu\text{g}$  ROBERTS, KARTOFSKY and FRAYZEL 1951; PASICKA and MORAN 1956; DECKER, LEVINE and GROSS 1959; MITOMA, SMITH, FRIEDBERG and RAYFORD 1959). According to CHAPIL (1959) there was no change (from the value 20 to 30  $\mu\text{g}$  per 100 mg dry weight of the embryo) in the free hydroxyproline after the 8th day of development although a marked decrease was found in free proline and free amino acids after the 14th day of development. The value of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of free hydroxyproline per embryo at the age of 13 days found by MITOMA, SMITH, FRIEDBERG and RAYFORD (1959) however suggests a higher concentration. As already mentioned (p. 11) MITOMA et al (1959) found a slight incorporation of free hydroxyproline into the collagen in the chick embryo but the later investigation of PROCTOR et al (1962) indicated that free hydroxyproline is not an appreciable source of collagen hydroxyproline even in the chick embryo. They further suggested that the free hydroxyproline of the chick

NER 1957) or for the synthesis or incorporation of activated hydroxy proline (ROBERTSON HEWITT and HERMAN 1959) The investigation of MITOMA and SMITH (1960) with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline did not support the hypothesis of impaired hydroxylation and suggested that ascorbic acid influences the maturation of fibroblasts but the more recent investigation of STONE and MEISTER (1962) with tritiated proline was in agreement with the hypothesis that ascorbic acid is involved in the hydroxylation step

The action of ascorbic acid seems to be a local one for injection of ascorbic acid directly into the polyvinyl sponge in a guinea pig previously depleted of ascorbic acid was followed by rapid hydroxyproline formation in the treated sponge although there was little or no synthesis in another sponge in the same animal (GOULD 1958) Ascorbic acid also stimulated hydroxyproline formation when it was added *in vitro* to a granuloma cell suspension (ROBERTSON and HEWITT 1961) or granuloma minces (STONE and MEISTER 1962) obtained from scorbutic guinea pigs

**Lathyrism** — Lathyrism is an experimental disease of connective tissue associated with vascular and skeletal malformations and weakness of fibrous tissue During the last few years a number of investigations concerning the changes in the histo and biochemistry of connective tissue in lathyrism have been made (for general reference see LEVENE and GROSS 1959 KULONEN *et al* 1961) Lathyrism can be induced with various nitriles ureides hydrazides and hydrazines most investigations have been made using  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile (see LEVENE 1961 b) In this condition the tensile strengths of healing wounds (KALLIOMAKI YLI POUJA and KULONEN 1957 FRIEDGER and WARNER 1957) and aortas (LYKKE MULLER and ROBERTSON 1960 LEVENE 1961 c) are decreased and the fragility of chick embryos is increased (LEVENE and GROSS 1959 GROSS LEVENE and ORLOFF 1960, LEVENE 1961 a) The contents of soluble collagens (CLEMONS 1958 MIKKONEN TUOMINEN and KULONEN 1959 1960 GROSS and LEVENE 1959 LEVENE and GROSS 1959 DASLER STOVER and MILLISER 1961 BOLOGNANI and PONSETI 1962) and free hydroxyproline (DECKER LEVENE and GROSS 1959) in the tissues and the excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine (MARTIN MergenHAGEN and PROCKOP 1961 JASIN and ZIFF 1962) are increased LEVENE and GROSS (1959) suggested that the increased amounts of soluble collagen are due to solubilisation of insoluble fibres but the electron microscopic investigations of FOLLIS and TOUSIMIS (1958) the fact that the increase in soluble collagen is greater in young than in old animals (WIRTSCHAFTER and BENTLEY 1962 b) and the experiments with  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled proline (GERRER GERBER and ALTMAN 1962 SMILEY YEAGER and ZIFF 1962 SMITH and SHUSTER 1962) indicate that this soluble collagen is newly synthesized and hence that there is impairment of the conversion of soluble collagen to insoluble form in lathyrism The utilisation of amino acids is probably also inhibited for the loss of  $^{14}\text{C}$  from the amino acid pool was retarded in lathyrific chick embryos (SALVI and KULONEN 1962)

MARTIN GROSS PIEZ and LEWIS (1961) have found that collagen has a decreased ability to form pairs ( $\beta$  components) in lathyrism suggesting a defect in the maturation of collagen at the intramolecular level In agreement the investigations of MIKKARI and KULONEN (1962) on the properties of collagen in lathyrism showed that the ratio of  $\alpha$  to  $\beta$  components in gelatinized acetic acid soluble collagen was increased whereas the physicochemical properties of the collagen were unchanged LEVENE (1962) has found that incubation of lathyrific bones *in vitro* with carbonyl compounds reduces the amount of soluble collagen and he suggests that the lathyr-

genic agents act by blocking carboxyl groups on the collagen molecule and thus preventing the cross linking essential to normal maturation. Further support for this hypothesis was obtained in the same investigation from the finding that purified lathyratic collagen took up smaller amounts of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine than normal collagen. In addition STALDER and STEGEMANN (1967) have reported that  $\beta$ -aminopropionitrile is built up into the collagen molecule for  $\beta$ -alanine which is formed during the hydrolysis of  $\beta$ -aminopropionitrile. This was found in the hydrolysates of acid soluble collagen obtained from lathyratic animal but not in those obtained from normal animals.

## HYDROXYPROLINE IN TISSUES OF EMBRYOS

According to NELMAN (1950) hydroxyproline was not found in crude hen's egg contents except in the egg shell membranes where its content was 0.66–1.0 per cent. Since the content of hydroxyproline in these membranes did not change during embryonic development it was concluded that the hydroxyproline of the chick embryo cannot be derived in appreciable amounts from the egg contents. Recently FUJIMOTO and TANIYA (1967) have reported a value of 2.0  $\mu\text{g}/\text{egg}$  for hydroxyproline in the crude egg contents but even this value is too low to be a noteworthy source of hydroxyproline for the embryo.

In the chick embryo hydroxyproline has been reported to be present after 5 (NELMAN 1950) or 4 (CHAPIL 1959) days incubation after which its content increases continuously and on the 19th day of incubation amounts to 1.16 per cent of the dry weight of the embryo (NELMAN 1950). An equation  $y = 0.630 x^{1.44}$  has been formulated between the absolute amount of hydroxyproline and the weight of the embryo (CHAPIL 1959). The hydroxyproline content of the whole egg likewise increases during the incubation period whereas the content of tyrosine remains unchanged (FUJIMOTO and TANIYA 1967). As regards the increase in the hydroxyproline in the different tissues HERRMANN and BARRY (1955) have found that a significant increase in the collagen content of the muscle of the embryo begins on the 12th day of the heart on the 15th day and of the liver on the 18th day of development. By histological histochemical methods it has been possible to demonstrate the first minute collagenous fibres (argyrophilic fibres) in the chick embryo after 4 or 5 days incubation (LIVDTER 1961).

Relatively large amounts of free hydroxyproline are present in chick embryos (e.g. ROBERTS, KARYOFKY and FRANKEL 1951; PASIEKA and MORGAN 1956; DECKER, LEVINE and CROSS 1959; MITOMA, SMITH, FRIEDBERG and RAYFORD 1959). According to CHAPIL (1959) there was no change (from the value 20 to 30  $\mu\text{g}$  per 100 mg dry weight of the embryo) in the free hydroxyproline after the 8th day of development although a marked decrease was found in free proline and free amino acids after the 14th day of development. The value of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of free hydroxyproline per embryo at the age of 13 days found by MITOMA, SMITH, FRIEDBERG and RAYFORD (1959) however suggests a higher concentration. As already mentioned (p. 11) MITOMA *et al.* (1959) found a slight incorporation of free hydroxyproline into the collagen in the chick embryo but the later investigation of PROCKOP *et al.* (1961) indicated that free hydroxyproline is not an appreciable source of collagen hydroxyproline even in the chick embryo. They further suggested that the free hydroxyproline of the chick

NER 1957) or for the synthesis or incorporation of activated hydroxyproline (ROBERTSON HEWITT and HERMAN 1959) The investigation of MITOMA and SMITH (1960) with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline did not support the hypothesis of impaired hydroxylation and suggested that ascorbic acid influences the maturation of fibroblasts but the more recent investigation of STONE and MEISTER (1962) with tritiated proline was in agreement with the hypothesis that ascorbic acid is involved in the hydroxylation step

The action of ascorbic acid seems to be a local one for injection of ascorbic acid directly into the polyvinyl sponge in a guinea pig previously depleted of ascorbic acid was followed by rapid hydroxyproline formation in the treated sponge although there was little or no synthesis in another sponge in the same animal (GOULD 1958) Ascorbic acid also stimulated hydroxyproline formation when it was added *in vitro* to a granuloma cell suspension (ROBERTSON and HEWITT 1961) or granuloma minces (STONE and MEISTER 1962) obtained from scorbutic guinea pigs

**Lathyrism** — Lathyrism is an experimental disease of connective tissue associated with vascular and skeletal malformations and weakness of fibrous tissue During the last few years a number of investigations concerning the changes in the histo- and biochemistry of connective tissue in lathyrism have been made (for general reference see LEVENE and GROSS 1959 KULOVEN *et al* 1961) Lathyrism can be induced with various nitriles ureides hydrazides and hydrazines most investigations have been made using  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile (see LEVENE 1961 b) In this condition the tensile strengths of healing wounds (KALLIONIEMI YLI POHJA and KULOVEN 1957 ENZINGER and WARNER 1957) and aortas (LYKKE MULLER and ROBERTSON 1960 LEVENE 1961 c) are decreased and the fragility of chick embryos is increased (LEVENE and GROSS 1959 GROSS LEVENE and ORLOFF 1960 LEVENE 1961 a) The contents of soluble collagens (CLENNONS 1958 MIKKONEN TUOMINEN and KULOVEN 1959 1960 GROSS and LEVENE 1959 LEVENE and GROSS 1959 DASLER STOFFER and MILLISER 1961 BOLOGNYI and POVSETI 1962) and free hydroxyproline (DECKER LEVENE and GROSS 1959) in the tissues and the excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine (MARTIN MERGENHAGEN and PROCKOP 1961 JASIN and ZIFF 1962) are increased LEVENE and GROSS (1959) suggested that the increased amounts of soluble collagen are due to solubilisation of insoluble fibres but the electron microscopic investigations of FOLLIS and TOUSIMIS (1958) the fact that the increase in soluble collagen is greater in young than in old animals (WIRTSCHAFTER and BENTLEY 1962 b) and the experiments with  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled proline (GERBER GERBER and ALTMAN 1962 SMILEY YEAGER and ZIFF 1962 SMITH and SHUSTER 1962) indicate that this soluble collagen is newly synthesized and hence that there is impairment of the conversion of soluble collagen to insoluble form in lathyrism The utilisation of amino acids is probably also inhibited for the loss of  $^{15}\text{N}$  from the amino acid pool was retarded in lathyrotic chick embryos (SALMI and KULOVEN 1962)

MARTIN GROSS PIEZ and LEWIS (1961) have found that collagen has a decreased ability to form pairs ( $\beta$  components) in lathyrism suggesting a defect in the maturation of collagen at the intramolecular level In agreement the investigations of NIKKARI and KULOVEN (1962) on the properties of collagen in lathyrism showed that the ratio of  $\alpha$  to  $\beta$  components in gelatinized acetic acid soluble collagen was increased whereas the physicochemical properties of the collagen were unchanged LEVENE (1962) has found that incubation of lathyrotic bones *in vitro* with carbonyl compounds reduces the amount of soluble collagen and he suggests that the lathyr-

genic agents act by blocking carbonyl groups on the collagen molecule and thus preventing the cross linking essential to normal maturation. Further support for this hypothesis was obtained in the same investigation from the finding that purified lathyrus collagen took up smaller amounts of 2,4-dinitrophenylhydrazine than normal collagen. In addition STALDER and STEGEMANN (1962) have reported that  $\beta$ -aminopropionitrile is built up into the collagen molecule for  $\beta$ -alanine which is formed during the hydrolysis of  $\beta$ -aminopropionitrile was found in the hydrolysates of acid soluble collagen obtained from lathyrus animals but not in those obtained from normal animals.

## HYDROXYPROLINE IN TISSUES OF EMBRYOS

According to NELSON (1950) hydroxyproline was not found in crude hen's egg contents except in the egg shell membranes where its content was 0.66—1.0 per cent. Since the content of hydroxyproline in these membranes did not change during embryonic development it was concluded that the hydroxyproline of the chick embryo cannot be derived in appreciable amounts from the egg contents. Recently FUJIMOTO and TANIYA (1962) have reported a value of  $\approx 70 \mu\text{g}$  egg for hydroxyproline in the crude egg contents but even this value is too low to be a noteworthy source of hydroxyproline for the embryo.

In the chick embryo hydroxyproline has been reported to be present after 3 (NELSON 1950) or 4 (CHAPIL 1959) days incubation after which its content increases continuously and on the 19th day of incubation amounts to 1.16 per cent of the dry weight of the embryo (NELSON 1950). An equation  $y = 0.630 \cdot x^{1.44}$  has been formulated between the absolute amount of hydroxyproline and the weight of the embryo (CHAPIL 1959). The hydroxyproline content of the whole egg likewise increases during the incubation period whereas the content of tyrosine remains unchanged (FUJIMOTO and TANIYA 1962). As regards the increase in the hydroxyproline in the different tissues HERRMANN and BARRY (1955) have found that a significant increase in the collagen content of the muscle of the embryo begins on the 11th day of the heart on the 15th day and of the liver on the 18th day of development. By histological histochemical methods it has been possible to demonstrate the first minute collagenous fibres (argyrophilic fibres) in the chick embryo after 4 or 5 days incubation (LIDVOR 1961).

Relatively large amounts of free hydroxyproline are present in chick embryos (e.g. ROBERTS, HARTVORSEY and FRAYKEL 1951; PASIEKA and MORGAN 1956; DECKER, LEVINE and GROSS 1959; MITOMA, SMITH, FRIEDBERG and RAYFORD 1959). According to CHAPIL (1959) there was no change (from the value 20 to 30  $\mu\text{g}$  per 100 mg dry weight of the embryo) in the free hydroxyproline after the 8th day of development although a marked decrease was found in free proline and free amino acids after the 14th day of development. The value of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of free hydroxyproline per embryo at the age of 13 days found by MITOMA, SMITH, FRIEDBERG and RAYFORD (1959) however suggests a higher concentration. As already mentioned (p. 11) MITOMA *et al.* (1959) found a slight incorporation of free hydroxyproline into the collagen in the chick embryo but the later investigation of PROCKOP *et al.* (1962) indicated that free hydroxyproline is not an appreciable source of collagen hydroxyproline even in the chick embryo. They further suggested that the free hydroxyproline of the chick



NER 1957) or for the synthesis or incorporation of activated hydroxy proline (ROBERTSON HEWITT and HERMAN 1959). The investigation of MITOMA and SMITH (1960) with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline did not support the hypothesis of impaired hydroxylation and suggested that ascorbic acid influences the maturation of fibroblasts but the more recent investigation of STONE and MEISTER (1962) with tritiated proline was in agreement with the hypothesis that ascorbic acid is involved in the hydroxylation step.

The action of ascorbic acid seems to be a local one for injection of ascorbic acid directly into the polyvinyl sponge in a guinea pig previously depleted of ascorbic acid was followed by rapid hydroxyproline formation in the treated sponge although there was little or no synthesis in another sponge in the same animal (GOULD 1958). Ascorbic acid also stimulated hydroxyproline formation when it was added *in vitro* to a granuloma cell suspension (ROBERTSON and HEWITT 1961) or granuloma masses (STONE and MEISTER 1962) obtained from scorbutic guinea pigs.

**Lathyrism** — Lathyrism is an experimental disease of connective tissue associated with vascular and skeletal malformations and weakness of fibrous tissue. During the last few years a number of investigations concerning the changes in the histo- and biochemistry of connective tissue in lathyrism have been made (for general reference see LEVEY and GROSS 1959, KULOVICH *et al.* 1961). Lathyrism can be induced with various nitriles, ureides, hydrazides and hydrazines; most investigations have been made using  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile (see LEVEY 1961 b). In this condition the tensile strengths of healing wounds (KALLIOMAKI, ELI-PONJA and KULOVEN 1957, FRIEDGER and WARNER 1957) and tortas (LILKE, MULIER and ROBERTSON 1960, LEVEY 1961 c) are decreased and the fragility of chick embryos is increased (LEVEY and GROSS 1959, GROSS, LEVEY and ORLOFF 1960, LEVEY 1961 a). The contents of soluble collagens (CLEMONS 1958, MIKKOEN, TUOVINEN and KULOVEN 1959, 1960, GROSS and LEVEY 1959, LEVEY and GROSS 1959, DASLER, STOFFER and MILLISER 1961, BOLOGNANI and PONSETI 1962) and free hydroxyproline (DECKER, LEVEY and GROSS 1959) in the tissues and the excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine (MARTIN, MERGENHAGEN and PROCKOP 1961, JASIN and ZIFF 1962) are increased. LEVEY and GROSS (1959) suggested that the increased amounts of soluble collagen are due to solubilisation of insoluble fibres but the electron microscopic investigations of FOLLIS and TOUSIMIS (1958) the fact that the increase in soluble collagen is greater in young than in old animals (WIRTSCHAFTER and BEUTLER 1962 b) and the experiments with  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled proline (GERBER, GERBER and ALTMAN 1962, SMILEY, YEAGER and ZIFF 1962, SMITH and SHUSTER 1962) indicate that this soluble collagen is newly synthesized and hence that there is impairment of the conversion of soluble collagen to insoluble form in lathyrism. The utilisation of amino acids is probably also inhibited, for the loss of  $^{15}\text{N}$  from the amino acid pool was retarded in lathyratic chick embryos (SALVI and KULOVEN 1962).

MARTIN, GROSS, PIEZ and LEWIS (1961) have found that collagen has a decreased ability to form pairs ( $\beta$  components) in lathyrism suggesting a defect in the maturation of collagen at the intramolecular level. In agreement the investigations of MIKKARI and KULOVEN (1962) on the properties of collagen in lathyrism showed that the ratio of  $\alpha$  to  $\beta$  components in gelatinized acetic acid soluble collagen was increased whereas the physicochemical properties of the collagen were unchanged. LEVEY (1962) has found that incubation of lathyratic bones *in vitro* with carbonyl compounds reduces the amount of soluble collagen and he suggests that the lathyr-

salt soluble and citrate soluble collagen were present and were able to form fibrils. They also contained more hydroxyproline than corresponding fractions from embryos 6—8 cm long. Since the neutral salt soluble collagen of the smaller embryos could not form fibrils, it was suggested that new collagen fibrils are formed by envelopment of precollagenous filaments with soluble collagen molecules rather than by coprecipitation. It was further pointed out that mucoproteins must play a noteworthy role in this mechanism.

embryo may be derived from some of the more highly labelled collagen fractions. Neither was there any incorporation of free hydroxyproline into the microsomal protein of the cell free system obtained from chick embryo microsomes (PETERKOFsky and UDENFRIEND 1961).

There are only a few reports in the literature concerning the content of peptides containing hydroxyproline in the chick embryo. DECKER, LEVENE and GROSS (1959) have found that the content of acid extractable peptides was very low in 10 and 17 day old chick embryos. The values for ultrafiltrable peptides in chick embryo lung fibroblast cultures were also considerably lower than the values for free hydroxyproline (CHVAPIL, HOLEČALOVÁ, ČUCHALOVÁ, KOBRLÉ and HURICH 1962). When the skin of chick embryos was incubated *in vitro*, however, the content of ultrafiltrable peptides was 30 to 60 per cent of the total ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline and the total ultrafiltrable fraction showed a high metabolic activity (HURICH and CHVAPIL 1962 b).

The contents of soluble collagens have not been studied systematically during chick embryo development. HERRMANN and BARRY (1955) first suggested that during some phases of development a form of collagen is present which can be extracted with 0.1 N sodium hydroxide although their attempts to extract citrate soluble collagen were inconclusive. LEVENE and GROSS (1959) studying the effect of  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile on collagen in chick embryos reported values of 27.0, 16.5 and 20.0  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  for hydroxyproline in crude 1 M sodium chloride extracts (2 ml of 1 M sodium chloride per g of fresh tissue) of skin, bone and cartilage in 17 day old control embryos. About 7  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  of these values represented free hydroxyproline. They further reported that collagen could not be extracted from normal skin or bone with acid citrate buffer or 0.5 per cent acetic acid. Some other investigations on lathyrism have also given values for hydroxyproline in crude 1 M sodium chloride extract of control embryos at some stage of development (e.g. LEVENE 1961; SMILEY, YACER and ZIFF 1962). The values for nondialyzable 1 M sodium chloride soluble hydroxyproline reported by SMITH and SHUSTER (1962) in 15 day old embryos were considerably lower than those presented by other investigators for the crude 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction.

There are also some reports in the literature concerning the occurrence of hydroxyproline in other embryos. In the frog embryo hydroxyproline is not present during the earliest stages of development and only appears at stage 21 or 22 (FORD 1959). As in chick embryos, the content of free hydroxyproline is relatively high in rat (CHVAPIL 1958) and pig (KOBRLÉ and CHVAPIL 1961 a) embryos. In rats the content of 0.4 M sodium chloride soluble collagen is considerably lower in embryos than after birth (WIRTSCHAFTER and BENTLEY 1962 a). In human embryos the maximum content of citrate soluble hydroxyproline is reached several weeks before birth and a steady decrease then occurs with age (BAKERMAN 1962). Both free and bound hydroxyproline are present in human amniotic fluid and there is a significant decrease in the content of free hydroxyproline and in the ratio of free to bound hydroxyproline from early to full term pregnancy (KIVIRIKKO, KOIVISALO and KOIVISALO 1963).

ULSTANOVSKI, ZAJDEŠ, ORLOVSKAJA and MJACKAJA (1961) have studied the collagen components in the skin of pig embryos of two age groups. In 6–8 cm long embryos the neutral salt soluble collagen was unable to form fibril and it had high proline:hydroxyproline and glycine:hydroxyproline ratios. The content of citrate soluble collagen was negligible at this stage. In embryos 19 cm long both neutral

— The specific activities of hydroxyproline in free hydroxyproline in hydroxyproline of the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen and in the insoluble fraction after administration of  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline

In the last part of the investigation the cortisone induced inhibition of collagen formation is studied. The following effects were studied

— The effect on the hydroxyproline-containing fractions in whole embryos

— The effect on the hydroxyproline-containing fractions in the skin of the embryos

## OUTLINES OF PRESENT INVESTIGATION

When the preliminary experiments for the present investigation were started in 1959 there were only a few reports in the literature concerning the low molecular hydroxyproline-containing fractions. It was known however that tissues of chick embryos have a high content of free hydroxyproline. Since it was also known that hydroxyproline is not present in appreciable amounts in the egg, chick embryos seemed to be suitable material for investigations dealing with the changes in the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions during the formation of collagen.

The purpose of the present investigation was to make a simultaneous study of the low-molecular and macromolecular hydroxyproline-containing fractions during the formation of collagen in chick embryos. The following fractions were studied: free hydroxyproline, peptide hydroxyproline, 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline, citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline, insoluble hydroxyproline and total hydroxyproline. The changes in the amounts of these fractions were considered not only in relation to dry weight but also as percentages of the total hydroxyproline.

The purposes of the first part of the investigation were as follows:

- to test the reliability of the methods for the determination of hydroxyproline in the fractions in question
- to work out a suitable procedure for the preparation of the various fractions from the same tissue sample
- to study the reliability of this fractionation method

The next part of the investigation deals with the properties of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions during the formation of collagen in normal chick embryos. The following points were studied:

- The changes occurring in the hydroxyproline containing fractions in whole embryos during embryonic development
- The changes taking place in the hydroxyproline-containing fractions of the skin to discover whether the changes observed in whole embryos are similar to those occurring in tissues rich in collagen

(KIVIRIKKO and LIESMAA 1959) were intended to increase the stability and sensitivity of the oxidation and colour formation

In the present investigation two methods have been used for the determination of hydroxyproline. These were the method suggested by KIVIRIKKO and LIESMAA (1959) with some further modifications and procedure II of the method suggested by PROCKOR and UDENFRIEND (1960). The latter method was used for the determination of hydroxyproline in the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline fraction and for the determination of hydroxyproline in all fractions of embryos up to and including the 8th day of development since in these cases the content of hydroxyproline compared with that of other substances was too low to be determined by the former method. In other cases the former method was used since it was considerably more rapid and yet gave results identical with the latter. A more detailed description of the methods is given in the following.

#### *The method of KIVIRIKKO and LIESMAA (1959) with some further modifications*

The following slightly modified procedure was used in the present investigation.

#### *Reagents*

*Permutox* — Permutox ammoniakfrei nach Folin (Th. Schuchardt GMBH & Co. München) or Permutox Folin (The Permutox Company Ltd. London) were used.

*Hydroxyproline standards* — Standards containing 1  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  or 2  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  were diluted daily from standard stock solution containing 1 mg/ml (stored at  $+2^\circ\text{C}$ ).

*Sodium hypobromite* — 3.2 ml of bromine was added to 500 ml of ice cold 5 per cent sodium hydroxide. This stock solution which has a bromine content of 2 per cent (wt/vol.) was stored at  $+2^\circ\text{C}$  and only used after one week. The solution was then stable for several months. Always on the evening of the day before the analysis a portion of this solution was diluted with cold 5 per cent sodium hydroxide to a bromine content of 0.35 per cent and then also stored at  $+2^\circ\text{C}$ .

*Sodium sulphite* — 3 per cent (wt/vol.) in distilled water.

*p-Dimethylaminobenaldehyde* — 5 per cent (wt/vol.) in *n*-propanol.

*Hydrochloric acid* — 6 N.

#### *Procedure*

Solutions containing 1–3  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  of hydroxyproline were shaken with approximately one tenth their weight of permutox for 5 minutes. After filtration the clear solutions were used for analysis.

Into test tubes standing in ice water 2 ml of the unknown solution or standard containing 1  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  or 2  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  of hydroxyproline or distilled water for blank determination were pipetted. Analyses were mostly carried out in series of 36 tubes. Then

# MATERIAL AND METHODS

## ANALYTICAL METHODS

### DETERMINATION OF HYDROXYPROLINE

Most colorimetric methods for the determination of hydroxyproline are based on the oxidation of hydroxyproline to pyrrole or pyrrole 2-carboxylic acid which is then condensed with *p* dimethylaminobenzaldehyde to give a coloured compound.

The first methods were developed by LANG (1933) and by WALDSCHMIDT, FITZ and AKABORI (1934). In these methods sodium hypochlorite was used for oxidation and pyrrole was separated from the reaction mixture by distillation before colour formation. The method of WISS (1949) which also involved oxidation with sodium hypochlorite and distillation of pyrrole before the colour reaction was used for the determination of hydroxyproline in blood and urine. Further modifications of this method have been suggested by MITOMA, SMITH, DAVIDSON, UDENFRIEND and DeCOSTA and SJOERDSEMA (1959).

In the method of NEUMAN and LOCAN (1950) hydroxyproline is oxidized with hydrogen peroxide in the presence of copper sulphate and sodium hydroxide to  $\Delta^1$  pyrroline 4 carboxylic acid (see RADHAKRISHNAN and MEISTER 1957) which is then condensed with *p* dimethylaminobenzaldehyde in *n* propanol for colour formation. The method has the disadvantages that an interfering colour is formed with tyrosine and tryptophan and that there is some variability in the colour reaction with hydroxyproline. Therefore several modifications of this method have been suggested in order to improve the specificity and stability of the colour formation (e.g. MARTIN and AXELROD 1953, MIYADA and TAPPEL 1956, FELS 1958, MITOMA *et al* 1959, DAILY 1960, HILTNER and SINGER 1960, LEACH 1960).

In the method of STECFMANN (1958) chloramine T is used for oxidation of hydroxyproline to pyrrole. Tyrosine and tryptophan do not give an interfering colour. Further modifications of this method have been suggested by WORSFOLD (1961).

PROCKOP and UDENFRIEND (1960) who also used chloramine T for oxidation have investigated the conditions of oxidation and colour formation with respect to great excesses of other amino acids. Their method can be applied directly to the analysis of hydroxyproline in solutions containing less than 0.01 per cent hydroxyproline including urine.

MURING (1952) developed a method in which sodium hypobromite was used for the oxidation of hydroxyproline. The modifications to this method suggested later

(KIVIRIKKO and LIESMAA 1959) were intended to increase the stability and sensitivity of the oxidation and colour formation

In the present investigation two methods have been used for the determination of hydroxyproline. These were the method suggested by KIVIRIKKO and LIESMAA (1959) with some further modifications and procedure II of the method suggested by PROCKOP and UEDENHARD (1960). The latter method was used for the determination of hydroxyproline in the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline fraction and for the determination of hydroxyproline in all fractions of embryos up to and including the 8th day of development since in these cases the content of hydroxyproline compared with that of other substances was too low to be determined by the former method. In other cases the former method was used since it was considerably more rapid and yet gave results identical with the latter. A more detailed description of the methods is given in the following.

#### *The method of KIVIRIKKO and LIESMAA (1959) with some further modifications*

The following slightly modified procedure was used in the present investigation

#### *Reagents*

*Permutil* — Permutil ammoniakfrei (nach Folin (Th. Schuchardt GMBH & Co. Munchen) or Permutil Folin (The Permutil Company Ltd. London) were used.

*Hydroxyproline standards* — Standards containing 1  $\mu$ g/ml or 2  $\mu$ g/ml were diluted daily from standard stock solution containing 1 mg/ml (stored at + 2 C).

*Sodium hypobromite* — 3.2 ml of bromine was added to 500 ml of ice cold 5 per cent sodium hydroxide. This stock solution which has a bromine content of 2 per cent (wt/vol) was stored at + 2 C and only used after one week. The solution was then stable for several months. Always on the evening of the day before the analysis a portion of this solution was diluted with cold 5 per cent sodium hydroxide to a bromine content of 0.35 per cent and then also stored at + 2 C.

*Sodium sulphite* — 3 per cent (wt/vol) in distilled water

*p*-Dimethylaminobenaldehyde — 5 per cent (wt/vol) in *n*-propanol

*Hydrochloric acid* — 6 N

#### *Procedure*

Solutions containing 1–3  $\mu$ g/ml of hydroxyproline were shaken with approximately one tenth their weight of permutil for 5 minutes. After filtration the clear solutions were used for analysis.

Into test tubes standing in ice water 2 ml of the unknown solution or standard containing 1  $\mu$ g/ml or 2  $\mu$ g/ml of hydroxyproline or distilled water for blank determination were pipetted. Analyses were mostly carried out in series of 36 tubes. Then



# MATERIAL AND METHODS

## ANALYTICAL METHODS

### DETERMINATION OF HYDROXYPROLINE

Most colorimetric methods for the determination of hydroxyproline are based on the oxidation of hydroxyproline to pyrrole or pyrrole  $\beta$  carboxylic acid which is then condensed with *p* dimethylaminobenzaldehyde to give a coloured compound.

The first methods were developed by LANG (1933) and by WALDSCHMIDT FITZ and AARHØI (1934). In these methods sodium hypochlorite was used for oxidation and pyrrole was separated from the reaction mixture by distillation before colour formation. The method of WISS (1949) which also involved oxidation with sodium hypochlorite and distillation of pyrrole before the colour reaction was used for the determination of hydroxyproline in blood and urine. Further modifications of this method have been suggested by MITOMA SMITH DAVIDSON UDENFRIEND DaCOSTA and SJOERDSMA (1959).

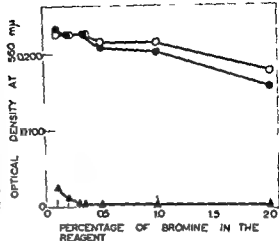
In the method of NEUMAN and LOGAN (1950) hydroxyproline is oxidized with hydrogen peroxide in the presence of copper sulphate and sodium hydroxide to  $\Delta^1$  pyrroline 4 carboxylic acid (see RADHAKRISHNAN and MEISTER 1957) which is then condensed with *p* dimethylaminobenzaldehyde in *n* propanol for colour formation. The method has the disadvantages that an interfering colour is formed with tyrosine and tryptophan and that there is some variability in the colour reaction with hydroxyproline. Therefore several modifications of this method have been suggested in order to improve the specificity and stability of the colour formation (e.g. MARTIN and AXELROD 1953 MIYADA and TAPPEL 1956 FELS 1959 MITOMA *et al* 1959 BAILY 1960 HILTEGGER and SINGER 1960 LEACH 1960).

In the method of STEGEMANN (1958) chloramine T is used for oxidation of hydroxyproline to pyrrole. Tyrosine and tryptophan do not give an interfering colour. Further modifications of this method have been suggested by WORSNER (1961).

PROCKOP and UDENFRIEND (1960) who used chloramine T for oxidation have investigated the conditions of oxidation and colour formation with respect to great excesses of other amino acids. Their method can be applied directly to the analysis of hydroxyproline in solutions containing less than 0.01 per cent hydroxyproline including urine.

MILING (1952) developed a method in which sodium hypobromite was used for the oxidation of hydroxyproline. The modifications to this method suggested later

Fig. 1 Effect of bromine content in the sodium hypobromite reagent on colour formation with 4  $\mu$ g of hydroxyproline in distilled water  $\circ$  with 4  $\mu$ g of hydroxyproline added to 1000  $\mu$ g of casein amino acids  $\bullet$  and with 1000  $\mu$ g of casein amino acids  $\Delta$



### Accuracy and specificity

If the method was giving optimal values a standard containing 4  $\mu$ g of hydroxyproline (1 ml of standard containing 2  $\mu$ g/ml) gave an optical density of 0.270. Some what lower optical densities were often obtained especially when the hypobromite stock standard was newly prepared. It was found however that the recoveries of hydroxyproline added to protein hydrolysates were 100 per cent provided the standard gave an optical density of more than 0.190. The standard deviation calculated from the 200 last duplicate analyses representing the various fractions was  $\pm 3.1$  per cent. If the deviation between the duplicates of one sample exceeded 10 per cent the sample was reanalysed.

The sodium chloride formed during neutralization of the samples did not have an effect on the recoveries since even 170 mg of sodium chloride added to 4  $\mu$ g of hydroxyproline permitted a recovery of 100 per cent. The recoveries were tested several times during the present investigation by adding varying amounts of hydroxyproline to the solutions to be analysed and invariably a recovery of 95 to 103 per cent was obtained.

The specificity of the method was tested with other amino acids including tyrosine and tryptophan but no appreciable interfering colour was observed. The absorption spectra were often determined for the coloured compound obtained with the present method in various fractions but peaks that might have given a significant non-specific colour at 560 m $\mu$  were not generally observed. Only in the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline fraction was a peak observed at 460 m $\mu$  which could possibly have given about 10 per cent unspecific colour at 560 m $\mu$ . Therefore after the preliminary experimental series this method was not used for the determination of 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline.

Final evidence of the reliability of the method was obtained by analysing the same samples by the method of PROCTOR and UNDERHILL (1960). Identical values were obtained in all fractions except the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline fraction where the method of PROCTOR and UNDERHILL (1960) gave lower values than the present method. This was also true of the other fractions in embryos up to the 8th day of development.

tube no 1 contained the blank determination tubes nos 2 and 20 standard 1  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  and tubes nos 11 18 and 30 standard 2  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  The samples were pipetted into the other tubes in duplicate in such a way that the duplicate values were not in adjacent tubes When the solutions were definitely ice cold 2 ml of sodium hypobromite was added with an ice cold pipette to twelve test tubes The pipette was emptied without blowing so as to prevent its warming and the tubes were then shaken The pipette was re cooled by drawing up cold hypobromite several times and allowing it to run out again and hypobromite was then added to the following twelve test tubes When these tubes had been shaken the last twelve tubes received their hypobromite About 3 to 10 min after the addition of the hypobromite 0.1 ml of sodium sulphite was added This was followed by 2 ml of *p* dimethylaminobenzaldehyde reagent and by 1 ml of 6 N HCl The tubes were shaken immediately after each addition The tubes were then transferred from ice water to a boiling water bath for 3 min 30 sec During this time cold air was blown onto the upper parts of the tubes to prevent evaporation After cooling in cold water for 3 min the tubes were allowed to stand at room temperature for 15—60 min before the optical densities were read at 560  $m\mu$  in a Beckman model B spectrophotometer in 10 mm cuvettes

### *Optimum conditions for the method*

When our original method (KIVINIAHO and LIESMAA 1959) was used it was found that especially with the newly prepared sodium hypobromite reagent recoveries slightly lower than 100 per cent were often obtained when hydroxyproline was added to protein hydrolysates This suggested further investigation of the oxidation reaction The values presented by PROCTOR and UNDERHILL (1960) also indicated that the concentration of the oxidant is important for optimum recoveries

The optimum concentration of sodium hypobromite was investigated in experiments in which 2 ml of sodium hypobromite reagents of varying concentrations were added to 3 ml samples containing 4  $\mu\text{g}$  of hydroxyproline in distilled water with or without addition of 1000  $\mu\text{g}$  of acid casein hydrolysate (Casamino Acids Difco Laboratories Inc Detroit) or only 1000  $\mu\text{g}$  of acid casein hydrolysate without hydroxyproline The optimum concentration of sodium sulphite needed for the destruction of hypobromite was first determined for each hypobromite concentration and in these experiments sodium sulphite was then added in the amounts optimal for each hypobromite concentration The sodium hypobromite reagent in our original method was prepared as suggested by MITCHELL (1952) by addition of 1.8 ml bromine to 500 ml of 3 per cent sodium hydroxide and accordingly had a bromine content of 1.125 per cent The results (Fig 1) indicated that the optimum concentration of sodium hypobromite was less than 1.125 per cent On the other hand if the concentration was too low casein amino acid hydrolysate in which no hydroxyproline is present began to give some colour In the light of these results a hypobromite reagent containing 0.35 per cent bromine was chosen for oxidation Since a more concentrated reagent is more stable when stored for any length of time a stock solution containing 2 per cent bromine in 3 per cent sodium hydroxide was used

The optimum amount of sodium sulphite was found to be 3  $m\text{g}$  at this hypobromite concentration The amounts of other reagents were found to be optimal in our original method

obtained by the present fractionation method for the former values were only about 80 per cent of the latter in embryos 13 days of age. Therefore it is not quite correct to compare the extents of the changes in the free hydroxyproline with those in the free proline or free amino nitrogen.

Total nitrogen was determined by the micro Kjeldahl technique from an aliquot of the same neutralized and filtered sample as was used for the determination of total hydroxyproline and total proline. This had the advantage that any errors in the pipetting of the homogenate would be reflected as similar changes in the total nitrogen. Since the sample was taken after neutralization and filtration the unfiltered part of the humin nitrogen was not included in the value.

The relative dry weight of the embryo or of the skin was determined in a sample of the homogenate (p. 30) transferred to a small tared beaker. The beaker with its contents was weighed and then dried at 105°C for 24 hours. The beaker was then weighed again and the wet and dry weights of the homogenate sample were calculated by subtracting the weight of the beaker. The relative dry weight of the embryo or of the skin was then calculated from the following equation:

$$D = \frac{b - 3.08}{a} - 117$$

where D = relative dry weight in mg/g wet weight

a = wet weight of the homogenate sample (g)

b = dry weight of the homogenate sample (mg)

3.08 = the weight of the homogenate (g) containing 1 g of the tissue (specific gravity of 1 M NaCl = 1.01; 1 g + 2.08 g = 3.08 g)

117 = dry weight of 2 ml of 1 M NaCl (mg)

**Statistical methods.** The results are given in the tables as arithmetic means  $\pm$  standard deviations.

In that part of the investigation in which the effect of cortisone was studied the significance of the differences between the cortisone treated groups and the controls was estimated by Student's *t* test on the assumption that the variations of the cortisone treated and control groups are basically equal (see e.g. BAYCROFT 1951, p. 146).

## MATERIAL

Fertilized eggs of white Leghorn chickens weighing  $55 \pm 2$  grams were purchased from Sasriäinen Oy, Sahalahäki. They were placed in an incubator of 120 egg capacity at a temperature of  $37.5 \pm 0.5^\circ\text{C}$  and relative humidity of  $65 \pm 5$  per cent in which the air was kept moving with the aid of an electric fan. The eggs were supported in trays containing 30 eggs with the air chamber upwards, the axis of the egg forming an angle of  $30^\circ$  with the vertical and they were turned once daily. At the 8th or 9th day of incubation the eggs were tested for fertility with a lamp and infertile eggs were removed.

Injections of substances were made through a small hole in the egg shell into the air chamber (onto the chorioallantoic membrane) after which the hole was covered with adhesive tape and incubation continued. In the experiments with cortisone the eggs were so arranged in the trays that the control eggs were not adjacent to each other but among the cortisone treated ones.

## *The method of PROCKOP and UDENFRIEND (1960)*

In procedure II of this method hydroxyproline is oxidized to  $\Delta^1$  pyrroline 4 hydroxy 2 carboxylic acid and pyrrole 2 carboxylic acid with chloramine T in the presence of great excess of alanine. Since these first oxidation products are not soluble in toluene substances that might interfere with colour formation can be removed by extraction with toluene. The tubes are then placed in a boiling water bath to form pyrrole from the first oxidation products. Since pyrrole is soluble in toluene it can be extracted with toluene from the reaction mixture. Colour is finally formed by addition of *p* dimethylaminobenzaldehyde reagent in acid ethanol to the toluene containing pyrrole.

The only modification made to this method was that all volumes were reduced to one half. Besides increasing sensitivity this had the advantage that the procedure could now be carried out in screw capped tubes of the same size as ordinary test tubes. Thus it was easy to work with a series of 36 test tubes in the same rack.

In the case of the samples that were neutralized to pH 4—6 with universal indicator paper (p. 33) the sample taken for analysis was further neutralized with 0.05 N potassium hydroxide to a faint pink colour of phenolphthalein as described in the method.

### DETERMINATION OF THE SPECIFIC ACTIVITY OF HYDROXYPROLINE

For the determination of the specific activity of hydroxyproline the method of PROCKOP, UDENFRIEND and LINDSTEDT (1961) was used. In this method as in the method of PROCKOP and UDENFRIEND (1960) hydroxyproline is first oxidized to oxidation products that are insoluble in toluene. Interfering substances are removed by repeated extraction with chloroform and toluene and the first oxidation products are then converted to pyrrole which is extracted with toluene. An aliquot of the toluene extract is taken for pyrrole assay and another aliquot for counting in a liquid scintillation counter with 2,5 diphenyloxazole and *p* bis(2 (5 phenyloxazolyl)) benzene as phosphor.

In the present investigation an Ecko type 661 A liquid scintillation counter (Ecko Electronics Ltd) was used. The samples were counted to have an error of less than 1 per cent. The results are expressed as counts/min/ $\mu$ mole.

### OTHER METHODS

Proline was determined by the method of TROLL and LINDSLEY (1955).

Free amino nitrogen was determined by the ninhydrin method of REINSTEIN and PRYCE (1959).

Since the methods used for the determination of free proline and free amino nitrogen also give some reaction with peptides containing proline or amino nitrogen the values obtained do not represent simply free proline or free amino acids. Because the 80 per cent ethanol used in the fractionation procedure of the present investigation extracted considerable amounts of peptides the error may be fairly considerable. This was also evident from the experiments in which values obtained by direct trichloroacetic acid precipitation of the homogenate were compared with the values

was used for the determination of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble ethanol-insoluble hydroxyproline termed in the present investigation 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline

LEVENE and GROSS (1959) used 1 M sodium chloride solution buffered with phosphate buffer pH 7.6 ionic strength 0.02. Since it seemed probable that the pH values of the homogenates obtained from various chick embryos would not differ significantly from each other 1 M sodium chloride was used unbuffered in the present investigation in the same way as GROSS (1958 a) had earlier used 0.45 M sodium chloride solution. Measurements of the pH of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction made during the present study always gave values between 7.0 and 7.3 even if the homogenate was stored at +2°C for 2 days indicating that buffering of the 1 M sodium chloride solution was unnecessary.

In addition to the above mentioned fractions the value for total hydroxyproline was determined from the crude homogenate and after deduction of the values for other fractions the value for insoluble hydroxyproline was obtained by difference. In those series in which peptide hydroxyproline was not determined the insoluble hydroxyproline was calculated as if no peptides had been present. Since the values for peptide hydroxyproline were very small this method of calculation introduces an error of less than 1 per cent. In the samples of 2<sup>1</sup>, 3- and 4 day-old embryos the insoluble hydroxyproline was determined and total hydroxyproline was calculated.

The citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline (insoluble in 1 M sodium chloride) was only determined in a few series. Since the values for this fraction were very low they were not taken into consideration while calculating the value for insoluble hydroxyproline.

The details of the fractionation procedure are described in the following

#### *Preparation of various fractions from the homogenate*

A sample of the homogenate corresponding to  $\frac{1}{2}$  gram of the embryo or of the skin was transferred to a small test tube of 4–5 ml capacity. Since some of the rather viscous homogenate remained on the inner walls of the pipette the latter was calibrated by pipetting several samples into small tared beakers and weighing them. Thereafter it was possible to take the sample with an accuracy of  $\pm 3$  per cent with the exception of the homogenate from 18- and 20 day old embryos in which the error was no doubt considerably greater since the feathers often blocked the pipette. To this sample of about 1 ml 1 ml 10% concentrated hydrochloric acid was added and it was used after hydrolysis for the determination of total hydroxyproline, total proline and total nitrogen.

The rest of the homogenate was allowed to stand for 24 hours at +2°C with occasional vigorous shaking after which a sample was taken and centrifuged for

*Preparation of the samples for fractionation* — After the desired incubation time the embryos were removed from the eggs killed by pressure on the neck and freed from the membranes. The embryos were then dried gently with filter paper with the exception of embryos up to the 8th day of development which were dried only by rolling them gently on a dry porcelain dish since the filter paper removed some of the skin from these small embryos. When dried the embryos were rapidly weighed and in experiments with whole embryos placed in cold ( $\pm 0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) 1 M NaCl solution 2 ml per g of embryo.

In the experiments with the skin the embryos after weighing were skinned on ice cooled metal trays. Special attention was paid to the complete removal of feathers with forceps and to the removal of fascia and subcutaneous fat. The skin samples obtained were rapidly weighed and put into cold 1 M NaCl 2 ml per g of skin. Skins of several embryos were pooled to form one sample.

The samples were homogenized with an Ultra Turrax homogenizer (Janke and Kunkel KG Staufen) for 20 seconds in tubes kept in ice cooled water. A homogenate which could be fairly easily pipetted was obtained from all samples of the skin and of whole embryos up to and including the 16th day of development. Embryos aged 18 and 20 days were first cut up with scissors and then homogenized for 20 seconds three times at 2 minute intervals but even so it was rather difficult to take accurate samples of the homogenate with a pipette. This was mainly due to the presence of feathers which stuck together and blocked the pipette for no pieces of embryo were recognizable after the treatment. Not longer than 20 seconds was used for the homogenization lest warming of the sample should occur. The sample obtained from 2<sup>1</sup> day old embryos was too small for the Ultra Turrax homogenizer and it was therefore treated in a homogenizer of Potter Elvehjem type.

After careful shaking a sample was taken from the homogenate for dry weight determination. The rest of the homogenate was poured with shaking into test tubes which were stoppered and stored at  $+ 2^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

## FRACTIONATION PROCEDURES

The procedure used for the preparation of the various hydroxyproline containing fractions was based on the fact that in addition to soluble collagen the neutral salt extracts of connective tissue also contain free amino acids and peptides. Therefore it was obvious that after precipitation of the protein bound hydroxyproline of the neutral salt extract the soluble fraction would still contain free amino acids and peptides.

In the present procedure 1 M sodium chloride was used for the extraction of the soluble fraction as suggested by LIVENE and GROSS (1959). Proteins of the soluble fraction were then precipitated by addition of cold ethanol to a final concentration of 80 per cent. The ethanol soluble fraction was used for the determination of free hydroxyproline and after hydrolysis for the joint determination of free and peptide hydroxyproline. Peptide hydroxyproline was then calculated as the difference between the values obtained before and after hydrolysis of the ethanol soluble fraction. The precipitate

was used for the determination of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble ethanol insoluble hydroxyproline termed in the present investigation 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline

LEVENE and GROSS (1959) used 1 M sodium chloride solution buffered with phosphate buffer pH 7.6 ionic strength 0.02. Since it seemed probable that the pH values of the homogenates obtained from various chick embryos would not differ significantly from each other 1 M sodium chloride was used unbuffered in the present investigation in the same way as GROSS (1958a) had earlier used 0.45 M sodium chloride solution. Measurements of the pH of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction made during the present study always gave values between 7.0 and 7.3 even if the homogenate was stored at +2°C for 2 days indicating that buffering of the 1 M sodium chloride solution was unnecessary.

In addition to the above mentioned fractions the value for total hydroxyproline was determined from the crude homogenate and after deduction of the values for other fractions the value for insoluble hydroxyproline was obtained by difference. In those series in which peptide hydroxyproline was not determined the insoluble hydroxyproline was calculated as if no peptides had been present. Since the values for peptide hydroxyproline were very small this method of calculation introduces an error of less than 1 per cent. In the samples of 24, 3- and 1 day-old embryos the insoluble hydroxyproline was determined and total hydroxyproline was calculated.

The citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline (insoluble in 1 M sodium chloride) was only determined in a few series. Since the values for this fraction were very low they were not taken into consideration while calculating the value for insoluble hydroxyproline.

The details of the fractionation procedure are described in the following

#### *Preparation of various fractions from the homogenate*

A sample of the homogenate corresponding to  $\frac{1}{2}$  gram of the embryo or of the skin was transferred to a small test tube of 4–5 ml capacity. Since some of the rather viscous homogenate remained on the inner wall of the pipette the latter was calibrated by pipetting several samples into small tared beakers and weighing them. Thereafter it was possible to take the sample with an accuracy of  $\pm 2$  per cent with the exception of the homogenate from 18 and 20 day old embryos in which the error was no doubt considerably greater since the feathers often blocked the pipette. To this sample of about 1 ml 1 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid was added and it was used after hydrolysis for the determination of *total hydroxyproline* and *total nitro en*.

The rest of the homogenate was allowed to stand for 24 hours at +2°C with occasional vigorous shaking after which a sample was taken and centrifuged for



*Preparation of the samples for fractionation* — After the desired incubation time the embryos were removed from the eggs killed by pressure on the neck and freed from the membranes. The embryos were then dried gently with filter paper with the exception of embryos up to the 8th day of development which were dried only by rolling them gently on a dry porcelain dish since the filter paper removed some of the skin from these small embryos. When dried the embryos were rapidly weighed and in experiments with whole embryos placed in cold ( $\pm 0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) 1 M NaCl solution 2 ml per g of embryo.

In the experiments with the skin the embryos after weighing were skinned on ice cooled metal trays. Special attention was paid to the complete removal of feathers with forceps and to the removal of fascia and subcutaneous fat. The skin samples obtained were rapidly weighed and put into cold 1 M NaCl 2 ml per g of skin. Skins of several embryos were pooled to form one sample.

The samples were homogenized with an Ultra Turrax homogenizer (Janke and Kunkel AG, Staufen) for 20 seconds in tubes kept in ice cooled water. A homogenate which could be fairly easily pipetted was obtained from all samples of the skin and of whole embryos up to and including the 16th day of development. Embryos aged 18 and 20 days were first cut up with scissors and then homogenized for 20 seconds three times at 2 minute intervals but even so it was rather difficult to take accurate samples of the homogenate with a pipette. This was mainly due to the presence of feathers which stuck together and blocked the pipette for no pieces of embryo were recognizable after the treatment. Not longer than 20 seconds was used for the homogenization lest warming of the sample should occur. The sample obtained from 2<sup>1</sup> day old embryos was too small for the Ultra Turrax homogenizer and it was therefore treated in a homogenizer of Potter Elvehjem type.

After careful shaking a sample was taken from the homogenate for dry weight determination. The rest of the homogenate was poured with shaking into test tubes which were stoppered and stored at  $+ 2^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

## FRACTIONATION PROCEDURES

The procedure used for the preparation of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions was based on the fact that in addition to soluble collagen the neutral salt extracts of connective tissue also contain free amino acids and peptides. Therefore it was obvious that after precipitation of the protein bound hydroxyproline of the neutral salt extract the soluble fraction would still contain free amino acids and peptides.

In the present procedure 1 M sodium chloride was used for the extraction of the soluble fraction as suggested by LIVEN and Gross (1959). Proteins of the soluble fraction were then precipitated by addition of cold ethanol to a final concentration of 80 per cent. The ethanol soluble fraction was used for the determination of free hydroxyproline and after hydrolysis for the joint determination of free and peptide hydroxyproline. Peptide hydroxyproline was then calculated as the difference between the values obtained before and after hydrolysis of the ethanol soluble fraction. The precipitate

was used for the determination of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble ethanol insoluble hydroxyproline termed in the present investigation 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline

LEVENE and GROSS (1959) used 1 M sodium chloride solution buffered with phosphate buffer pH 7.6 ionic strength 0.02. Since it seemed probable that the pH values of the homogenates obtained from various chick embryos would not differ significantly from each other 1 M sodium chloride was used unbuffered in the present investigation in the same way as GROSS (1958a) had earlier used 0.45 M sodium chloride solution. Measurements of the pH of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction made during the present study always gave values between 7.0 and 7.3 even if the homogenate was stored at +2°C for 2 days indicating that buffering of the 1 M sodium chloride solution was unnecessary.

In addition to the above mentioned fractions the value for total hydroxyproline was determined from the crude homogenate and after deduction of the values for other fractions the value for insoluble hydroxyproline was obtained by difference. In those series in which peptide hydroxyproline was not determined the insoluble hydroxyproline was calculated as if no peptides had been present. Since the values for peptide hydroxyproline were very small this method of calculation introduces an error of less than 1 per cent. In the samples of 2, 3- and 4-day-old embryos the insoluble hydroxyproline was determined and total hydroxyproline was calculated.

The citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline (insoluble in 1 M sodium chloride) was only determined in a few series. Since the values for this fraction were very low they were not taken into consideration while calculating the value for insoluble hydroxyproline.

The details of the fractionation procedure are described in the following

#### *Preparation of various fractions from the homogenate*

A sample of the homogenate corresponding to  $\frac{1}{2}$  gram of the embryo or of the skin was transferred to a small test tube of 4–5 ml capacity. Since some of the rather viscous homogenate remained on the inner walls of the pipette the latter was calibrated by pipetting several samples into small tared beakers and weighing them. Thereafter it was possible to take the sample with an accuracy of  $\pm 2$  per cent with the exception of the homogenate from 18- and 20-day old embryos in which the error was no doubt considerably greater since the leathers often blocked the pipette. To this sample of about 1 ml 1 ml of concentrated hydrochloric acid was added and it was used after hydrolysis for the determination of total hydroxyproline total proline and total nitro en.

The rest of the homogenate was allowed to stand for 24 hours at +2°C with occasional vigorous shaking after which a sample was taken and centrifuged for

30 min at 30 000 rpm (about  $60\,000 \times g$ ) in a Spinco model L preparative ultracentrifuge in rotor No. 40. The clear supernatant between the precipitate and the fat at the surface was drawn off with a narrow tipped pipette.

The precipitate was discarded in most cases but sometimes it was resuspended in cold 1 M sodium chloride and recentrifuged. The washing was discarded and the precipitate washed once more with 1 M sodium chloride and recentrifuged and thereafter transferred to a small test tube and dried at  $+102^{\circ}\text{C}$ . 2–5 ml of 6 N HCl was added to the sample which was used after hydrolysis for the determination of insoluble hydroxyproline.

Proteins of the supernatant obtained after centrifugation at 30 000 rpm were precipitated by addition of 4 vols of cold ethanol in a centrifuge tube. Since 96 vol % ethanol was often used the final concentration of ethanol varied between 71 and 80 vol %. The tube was allowed to stand stoppered at  $+4^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 3 hours with occasional stirring after which it was centrifuged at 3 200 rpm in a bench centrifuge (M. Christ Osterode Typ UJ 1) for 10 minutes.

The ethanol soluble supernatant was divided into two parts which were evaporated to dryness on a steam bath in porcelain dishes. The parts are here termed sample *a* and *b*.

Sample *a* was taken up in a suitable volume of distilled water and filtered through a filter paper (No. 589\* Schleicher and Schull Dassel). If the filtrate was not quite clear it was refiltered whereupon a clear filtrate was obtained. The filtrate was used for the determination of free hydroxyproline, free proline and free amino nitro en.

Sample *b* was suspended in 1 ml of 3 N HCl and poured into a small test tube. The porcelain dish was washed once with 0.5 ml and twice with 0.25 ml of 6 N HCl and these portions were also poured into the same test tube. After hydrolysis sample *b* was used for the determination of the amount of free and peptide hydroxyproline combined and peptide hydroxyproline was calculated as  $b - a$ .

Since the values for peptide hydroxyproline were very low compared with those for free hydroxyproline the calculation probably gave rather large errors for the peptide hydroxyproline. Thus the relatively high standard deviations in peptide hydroxyproline in Table 5 (p. 41) are evidently largely due to errors in the analysis. In a few embryos negative values were even obtained. These values were treated as negative ones when the means and standard deviations were calculated because it is probable that the values for some other embryos were too high. Therefore the standard deviations sometimes indicate a dispersion of the values beyond zero. The values for peptide hydroxyproline were not determined in all series. In such cases the mean values for the whole material in Table 5 (p. 41) were calculated from the series in which peptide hydroxyproline had been determined.

The ethanol insoluble precipitate was washed with 80 per cent ethanol by resuspension and recentrifugation and transferred to a small test tube. The sample was dried at  $+102^{\circ}\text{C}$  and used after hydrolysis with 2 ml of 6 N HCl for the determination of 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline.

The citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline was only determined in a few cases. In these experiments the precipitate that was obtained from the homogenate after centrifugation at 30 000 rpm was washed twice by resuspension in cold 1 M NaCl and recentrifugation at 30 000 rpm for 30 min after which the precipitate was suspended in 0.2 M citrate buffer pH 3.0. 2 ml per g. original wet weight of the tissue taken for this sample and extracted for 24 hours with occasional vigorous shaking.

The tube was then centrifuged at 30 000 rpm for 30 min and 1 ml of the citrate soluble supernatant was transferred to a small test tube. 1 ml of concentrated HCl was added and the sample used after hydrolysis for the determination of citrate soluble *colla en hydroxyproline*.

Since the dry weight of the embryos ranged from 50 to 720 mg/g wet weight, the water content of 1 g = about 0.8—0.9 ml. Since 2 ml of 1 M NaCl was used per g of fresh tissue, about 2.9 ml of the 1 M NaCl soluble supernatant would represent 1 g of fresh tissue. Therefore, in the calculation, 2.9 ml of supernatant was taken to be equal to 1 g of original fresh tissue when the values were converted to values per g wet weight. Since 4 vols of ethanol was added to 1 vol of the 1 M NaCl soluble supernatant, 14.5 ml of ethanol soluble supernatant is equal to 1 g of fresh tissue. The values for the citrate soluble fraction could not be converted quite accurately to values per g of fresh tissue, since some of the 1 M NaCl solution always remained in the precipitate and thus diluted the added citrate buffer. This dilution was not taken into consideration and it was assumed that 2 ml of citrate soluble fraction represents 1 g of fresh tissue.

### *Hydrolysis and neutralization*

The small test tubes containing the samples to be hydrolysed were drawn out into ampoules and hydrolysis of the peptide fraction was carried out in an autoclave at 130 °C for 3 h and of other fractions at 138 °C for 6 h.

The effect of hydrolysis was tested by hydrolysing samples taken from a pooled homogenate of 14 day old embryos for 1.5, 3, 6 and 9 h at 138 °C, 4 samples in each batch. The hydrolyses for 6 h and 9 h gave identical values for total hydroxyproline. The mean value of the samples hydrolysed for 1.5 h was 93 per cent of this value and of those hydrolysed for 3 h 10 per cent. In the ethanol soluble fraction hydrolysis for 3 h at 130 °C was sufficient to give maximum values.

After hydrolysis the ampoules were opened, their contents transferred to graduated test tubes and the ampoules washed 3 times with 1—2 ml of distilled water. The samples were then neutralized, first with 3 N and then with 0.3 N sodium hydroxide using universal indicator papers (L. Merck AG, Darmstadt) to pHs of 4—6 and made up to a known volume with distilled water. After filtration through a filter paper (S. Schleicher and Schüll No. 589) the samples were stored frozen until analysed the same day.

In the method of Proctor and Loeffler (1960) precipitation of humin and neutralization with potassium hydroxide are recommended. It was found, however, that in the present study humin precipitation was unnecessary, except in the samples of hydrolysed egg yolk and white and that only in 2<sup>1</sup>, 3 and 4 day old embryos was it better to use potassium hydroxide in place of sodium hydroxide for neutralization.

### *Fractionation procedures in isotope experiments*

The procedures were essentially the same as already described. Additional purification was carried out as follows.

The 1 M NaCl insoluble fraction was washed three times by resuspension in 1 M NaCl and recentrifugation at 30 000 rpm for 30 min. The portions of 1 M NaCl used

for washing were discarded. These washings were followed by suspension in cold distilled water and centrifugation at 30 000 rpm for 30 min. The precipitate was transferred to a test tube of 7—8 ml capacity and extracted twice with absolute ethanol and twice with ether always by suspension and centrifugation at 1500 rpm for 10 min. The samples were then dried at 102°C and hydrolysed with 3 ml of 6 N HCl at 138°C for 6 hours.

The 1 M NaCl soluble ethanol insoluble fraction was washed twice with 80 per cent ethanol twice with absolute ethanol twice with ether and after drying at 10°C hydrolysed with 3 ml of 6 N HCl at 138°C for 6 hours.

After hydrolysis the contents of the test tubes of both hydrolysed fractions were diluted by addition of 3 ml of distilled water and the humins were removed by the method of PROCKOP and UDENFRIEND (1960). The samples were filtered and the filter papers washed several times with small volumes of 2 N HCl. The filtrates were evaporated to dryness on a steam bath in porcelain dishes and dissolved in a known volume of distilled water. The samples were used for the determination of the specific activities of insoluble and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline.

The ethanol soluble fraction was not subjected to more purification procedures than in the other experiments and it was used without hydrolysis for determination of the specific activity of free hydroxyproline.

## RELIABILITY OF THE FRACTIONATION METHOD

The following experiments were carried out to test the reliability of the fractionation method used in the present investigation.

1 Crude homogenates of five 15-day old embryos were each divided into two parts. One part of each homogenate was fractionated as described under the fractionation procedures. The other part of each homogenate received an addition of 200  $\mu$ g of hydroxyproline per 3 g wet weight of the embryo and was then fractionated as above. A recovery of 95 to 101 per cent was obtained for the added hydroxyproline when determined as free hydroxyproline.

2 Since the values for peptide hydroxyproline obtained in the present investigation were low, it seemed necessary to test whether the recovery of hydroxyproline added to the ethanol-soluble fraction was the same in the samples analysed after hydrolysis as in the samples analysed without hydrolysis. In this experiment ethanol soluble fractions obtained from four 13 day old embryos were pooled, and the resulting extract divided into 21 equal parts.

— Four samples were analysed for hydroxyproline without hydrolysis and four samples after hydrolysis.

— Eight samples received an addition of 20  $\mu$ g of hydroxyproline per g wet weight of the embryo. Four samples were then analysed without hydrolysis and four samples after hydrolysis.

— Eight samples received an addition of 10  $\mu\text{g}$  of hydroxyproline per  $\mu\text{g}$  wet weight of the embryo and were analysed as above

The results (Table 1) indicated that the recovery of hydroxyproline in the ethanol soluble fraction was the same whether the analysis was made after hydrolysis or without it

3 The value for hydroxyproline present in the unfractionated 1 M sodium chloride-soluble fraction (d) was determined after hydrolysis in samples of this fraction from four 13-day-old embryos. The rest of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction was fractionated further and analysed for free (a) peptide (b) and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline (c). The results (Table 2) indicated that the value obtained by summation of  $a + b + c$  was in good agreement with the value d. This experiment indicated that significant losses of hydroxyproline do not occur during fractionation of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction

Table 1 Recoveries of hydroxyproline added to the ethanol soluble fraction with and without hydrolysis

Hydroxyproline added <sup>1</sup>	Hydroxyproline found <sup>2</sup>	
	Without hydrolysis	After hydrolysis
None	54.1 $\pm$ 1.1	49.5 $\pm$ 0.1
20 $\mu\text{g}/\mu\text{g}$	50.1 $\pm$ 1.4	50.0 $\pm$ 1.1
40 $\mu\text{g}/\mu\text{g}$	93.6 $\pm$ 0.7	100.3 $\pm$ 1.0

Expressed as  $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet weight of the embryo

<sup>1</sup> Each value is mean  $\pm$  S.D. of 4 samples

Table 2 Comparison of the values for hydroxyproline in the 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction obtained by calculation from the values for free (a) peptide (b) and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen (c) hydroxyproline and by analysis of an aliquot of the crude 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction (d)

No.	Hydroxyproline <sup>1</sup>				
	a	b	c	a + b + c	d
1	51.8	6.2	67.4	125.4	123.0
2	61.8	4.5	64.1	130.4	137.8
3	53.8	3.9	63.3	121.0	126.1
4	56.0	8.9	63.7	127.9	130.4

Expressed as  $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet weight of the embryo

for washing were discarded. These washings were followed by suspension in cold distilled water and centrifugation at 30 000 rpm for 30 min. The precipitate was transferred to a test tube of 7-8 ml capacity and extracted twice with absolute ethanol and twice with ether always by suspension and centrifugation at 1 500 rpm for 10 min. The samples were then dried at 102°C and hydrolysed with 3 ml of 6 N HCl at 138°C for 6 hours.

The 1 M NaCl soluble ethanol insoluble fraction was washed twice with 80 per cent ethanol twice with absolute ethanol twice with ether and after drying at 102°C hydrolysed with 3 ml of 6 N HCl at 138°C for 6 hours.

After hydrolysis the contents of the test tubes of both hydrolysed fractions were diluted by addition of 3 ml of distilled water and the humins were removed by the method of PROCTOR and UDENFRIEND (1960). The samples were filtered and the filter papers washed several times with small volumes of 2 N HCl. The filtrates were evaporated to dryness on a steam bath in porcelain dishes and dissolved in a known volume of distilled water. The samples were used for the determination of the specific activities of insoluble and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline.

The ethanol soluble fraction was not subjected to more purification procedures than in the other experiments and it was used without hydrolysis for determination of the specific activity of free hydroxyproline.

## RELIABILITY OF THE FRACTIONATION METHOD

The following experiments were carried out to test the reliability of the fractionation method used in the present investigation.

1 Crude homogenates of five 15-day-old embryos were each divided into two parts. One part of each homogenate was fractionated as described under the fractionation procedures. The other part of each homogenate received an addition of 200 µg of hydroxyproline per 3 g wet weight of the embryo and was then fractionated as above. A recovery of 95 to 101 per cent was obtained for the added hydroxyproline, when determined as free hydroxyproline.

2 Since the values for peptide hydroxyproline obtained in the present investigation were low it seemed necessary to test whether the recovery of hydroxyproline added to the ethanol-soluble fraction was the same in the samples analysed after hydrolysis as in the samples analysed without hydrolysis. In this experiment ethanol soluble fractions obtained from four 13-day-old embryos were pooled and the resulting extract divided into 24 equal parts.

— Four samples were analysed for hydroxyproline without hydrolysis and four samples after hydrolysis.

— Eight samples received an addition of 20 µg of hydroxyproline per g wet weight of the embryo. Four samples were then analysed without hydrolysis and four samples after hydrolysis.

the method of KAVIRAKO and LIESVÄÄ (1959) was used. The values for free hydroxyproline obtained in these experiments are in good agreement.

■ In some experiments embryos were homogenized in 0.15 M sodium chloride solution. The proteins of the homogenate were precipitated in these experiments with trichloroacetic acid. The values for free hydroxyproline obtained were in good agreement with those obtained in the experiments in which 1 M sodium chloride was used. These results indicated that the ionic strength of the sodium chloride solution has no effect on the amount of free hydroxyproline extracted.

The results of the experiments described above indicate that the fractionation method used in the present investigation can be regarded as satisfactory, since there is no loss of hydroxyproline (1—4) or artificial formation of free hydroxyproline (5) during the procedure. In addition, the amount of free hydroxyproline extracted is not dependent on the ionic strength of the sodium chloride solution used (6).



4 The value for insoluble hydroxyproline which was generally calculated from the other values was actually determined in some of the experiments. The value obtained by analysis always agreed with that calculated to within  $\pm 5$  per cent. The only exceptions were the embryos of 2<sup>1</sup> and 3 days of age in which the values for total hydroxyproline obtained by analysis were about 10 per cent higher than the calculated values. Since the error in these embryos is probably due to too low recoveries in more than one fraction, the value obtained by analysis in these embryos was taken as the insoluble fraction and the sum obtained by calculation as the total hydroxyproline. This calculation had the advantage that the values for hydroxyproline in the various fractions expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline were probably more correct than if they had been calculated from the value obtained by analysis of total hydroxyproline.

5 Crude homogenates of six 13-day old embryos were divided into two parts immediately after homogenization. The proteins of one part of each homogenate were precipitated immediately with trichloroacetic acid and after filtration the trichloroacetic acid was removed from the filtrate by three extractions with ether. The other part of each homogenate was treated as described in the section on fractionation procedures. The values for free hydroxyproline obtained with both procedures are given in Table 3. This experiment indicated that no artificial formation of free hydroxyproline occurs during the fractionation procedure used in the present investigation. It is further noteworthy that in this experiment free hydroxyproline was determined by the method of PROCTOR and UPTON (1960) in contrast to the experiments presented in tables 1 and 2 in which the method

Table 3 Comparison of the values for free hydroxyproline obtained by trichloroacetic acid precipitation of the homogenate (TCA precipitation) or by the procedure used in the present investigation (Present procedure)

No	Free hydroxyproline <sup>1</sup>	
	TCA precipitation	Present procedure
1	50.3	49.1
2	68.2	71.2
3	51.2	52.8
4	57.0	57.8
5	46.5	48.2
6	48.3	50.2
Mean	53.6	51.9

<sup>1</sup> Expressed as  $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet weight of the embryo

Table 4 Numbers wet weights and relative dry weights of the embryos in different series of experiments with whole embryos

Age in days	Series	Number of embryos <sup>a</sup>	Wet weight g $\pm$ S D <sup>b</sup>	Dry weight mg/g wet wt. $\pm$ S D <sup>c</sup>
2½	J	1 × 194	0.006	60
3	F	1 × 100	0.015	49
	H	1 × 120	0.011	61
	Mean		0.013	55
4	E	1 × 48	0.055	64
5	D	2 × 18	0.159 $\pm$ 0.003	66 $\pm$ 3
6	C	3 × 12	0.309 $\pm$ 0.029	66 $\pm$ 2
8	C	3 × 5	1.08 $\pm$ 0.06	68 $\pm$ 2
10	A	3 × 2	2.39 $\pm$ 0.30	73 $\pm$ 1
	G	4	2.40 $\pm$ 0.18	68 $\pm$ 3
	Mean		2.39 $\pm$ 0.21	70 $\pm$ 4
11	A <sup>1</sup>	6	3.34 $\pm$ 0.36	83 $\pm$ 2
	B	6	3.33 $\pm$ 0.25	77 $\pm$ 2
	Mean		3.33 $\pm$ 0.30	80 $\pm$ 4
12	A	5	4.76 $\pm$ 0.38	88 $\pm$ 2
13	E	4	7.40 $\pm$ 0.60	100 $\pm$ 4
14	A	6	7.70 $\pm$ 0.97	112 $\pm$ 7
	B <sup>1</sup>	4	9.11 $\pm$ 0.18	120 $\pm$ 8
	I	6	8.68 $\pm$ 0.89	104 $\pm$ 4
	Mean		8.42 $\pm$ 0.96	111 $\pm$ 9
16	A	6	13.06 $\pm$ 0.65	167 $\pm$ 6
	B <sup>1</sup>	6	14.97 $\pm$ 0.59	164 $\pm$ 6
	C	8	13.40 $\pm$ 1.51	167 $\pm$ 9
	Mean		13.55 $\pm$ 1.14	162 $\pm$ 7
18	A	6	16.58 $\pm$ 0.84	195 $\pm$ 19
	B <sup>1</sup>	7	17.39 $\pm$ 1.75	215 $\pm$ 8
	Mean		16.95 $\pm$ 1.08	204 $\pm$ 17
20	A	5	23.50 $\pm$ 1.01	195 $\pm$ 18

Received one or more injections of 0.1 ml 0.9 per cent sodium chloride  
 Number of samples  $\times$  embryos in sample  
 In 5-day-old embryos  $\pm$  deviation

## HYDROXYPROLINE-CONTAINING FRACTIONS IN NORMAL CHICK EMBRYOS

The purpose of this part of the investigation was to study the changes occurring in the contents of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions during the formation of collagen in whole embryos and in the skin of the embryos. This part of the investigation also includes determinations of the specific activities of hydroxyproline in some of the fractions after administration of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline.

### CONTENT OF HYDROXYPROLINE IN THE FRACTIONS OF WHOLE EMBRYOS

Ten different incubation series designated as series A—J were made. The values in the tables are mean values  $\pm$  standard deviations for the age groups of the different incubation series. Since the differences between the different series were relatively small the pooled mean values  $\pm$  standard deviations were also calculated for each age group from the whole of the data and these values are presented in the figures. Some groups of embryos in the series A, B and C were used as controls in the experiments in which the effect of cortisone was investigated. These embryos received one or more injections of 0.1 per cent sodium chloride solution. Since these embryos did not differ from the normal ones they are included in the normal material. However these groups are indicated in the tables.

*Weights of the embryos* — The number of embryos in each series, their wet weights and relative dry weights as mg dry substance per g wet weight are given in Table 4. The weights of the embryos are in fairly good agreement with those presented in other investigations (see ROMANOFF 1960 p. 1141) with the exception of the values for 18- and 20-day-old embryos which are slightly lower than has been reported by others. Nevertheless the values obtained by CHAPIL (1959) for instance for 20-day-old embryos were of the same magnitude as in the present investigation.

Table 4 Numbers wet weights and relative dry weights of the embryos in different series of experiments with whole embryos

Age in days	Series	Number of embryos <sup>a</sup>	Wet weight g $\pm$ S.D. <sup>a</sup>	Dry weight mg/g wet wt $\pm$ S.D. <sup>a</sup>
2	J	1 $\times$ 191	0.006	60
3	F	1 $\times$ 100	0.015	49
	H	1 $\times$ 120	0.011	61
	Mean		0.013	55
4	E	1 $\times$ 48	0.055	61
5	D	2 $\times$ 18	0.159 $\pm$ 0.008	66 $\pm$ 3
6	C	3 $\times$ 12	0.309 $\pm$ 0.029	66 $\pm$ 2
8	C	3 $\times$ 5	1.08 $\pm$ 0.06	63 $\pm$ 2
10	A	3 $\times$ 2	2.39 $\pm$ 0.30	73 $\pm$ 1
	G	4	2.40 $\pm$ 0.18	68 $\pm$ 3
	Mean		2.39 $\pm$ 0.21	70 $\pm$ 4
11	A <sup>1</sup>	6	3.31 $\pm$ 0.36	83 $\pm$ 2
	B	6	3.33 $\pm$ 0.25	77 $\pm$ 2
	Mean		3.33 $\pm$ 0.30	80 $\pm$ 4
12	A	5	4.76 $\pm$ 0.38	88 $\pm$ 2
13	E	4	7.40 $\pm$ 0.60	100 $\pm$ 4
14	A <sup>1</sup>	6	7.70 $\pm$ 0.92	112 $\pm$ 7
	D	4	9.11 $\pm$ 0.18	120 $\pm$ 8
	I	6	8.68 $\pm$ 0.89	104 $\pm$ 4
	Mean		8.42 $\pm$ 0.96	111 $\pm$ 9
16	A	6	13.06 $\pm$ 0.60	162 $\pm$ 6
	B <sup>1</sup>	6	14.27 $\pm$ 0.59	164 $\pm$ 6
	C <sup>1</sup>	8	13.40 $\pm$ 1.51	162 $\pm$ 9
	Mean		13.55 $\pm$ 1.14	162 $\pm$ -
18	A	6	16.58 $\pm$ 0.84	195 $\pm$ 19
	B	5	17.39 $\pm$ 1.25	215 $\pm$ 8
	Mean		16.9 $\pm$ 1.08	201 $\pm$ 17
20	A	5	23.50 $\pm$ 1.01	190 $\pm$ 18

Received one or more injections of 0.1 ml 0.9 per cent sodium chloride  
<sup>a</sup> Number of samples  $\times$  embryos in sample  
 In 5-day-old embryos  $\pm$  deviation

CHANGES IN THE CONTENTS OF FREE PEPTIDE 1 M SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUBLE  
COLLAGEN CITRATE SOLUBLE COLLAGEN INSOLUBLE AND TOTAL HYDROXY  
PROLINE DURING EMBRYONIC DEVELOPMENT

The values for hydroxyproline are presented mainly as  $\mu\text{g}$  per 100 mg dry weight of the embryo and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. In some cases when the values expressed as  $\mu\text{g}$  per g wet weight or as  $\mu\text{g}$  per whole embryo are of interest these values are mentioned in the text. A short preliminary report of a part of the results described in this section has already been published (KIVIRIKKO 1963 b).

The contents of free peptide 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen insoluble and total hydroxyproline in the various series and in the whole material are given in Table 5. The reproducibility of the values was rather high. Since moreover the standard deviations are mostly relatively small it appears that the hydroxyproline contents at a given stage of development were relatively constant. Some of the variation in the values depends upon the variation in the weights of the embryos. However when the hydroxyproline values were plotted against the weights of the embryos the scatter was not essentially smaller, indicating that it was not solely due to weight differences. Therefore the values are hereafter only expressed as a function of the ages of the embryos.

All the fractions presented in Table 5 were already present in the embryo at the age of 2<sup>1</sup> days. In all fractions the absorption spectra obtained for the coloured compound in the method of PROCKOR and UDELMAN (1960) showed the characteristic peak at 560 m $\mu$ . Therefore the content of hydroxyproline was also determined in hydrolysed samples of crude egg yolk and white. In both samples some colour was obtained at 560 m $\mu$  but the absorbances were only slightly higher at 560 m $\mu$  than at 500 m $\mu$ . If all the colour obtained had been derived from hydroxyproline the values would have been about 2  $\mu\text{g}/100$  mg dry matter for egg yolk and about 5  $\mu\text{g}/100$  mg dry matter for egg white. The correct values must be considerably lower which indicates that even at the age of 2<sup>1</sup> days most if not all of the hydroxyproline was newly synthesized. Smaller embryos could not be obtained in amounts sufficient for the fractionation procedure.

The contents of free peptide 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen insoluble and total hydroxyproline expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100$  mg dry weight of the embryo and the absolute amounts of dry matter per embryo are also presented in Fig. 2 (upper and lower).

The contents of total and insoluble hydroxyproline increased continuously during embryonic development. This increase was about 27 fold in total hydroxyproline and about 18 fold in insoluble hydroxyproline.

Table 5 Hydroxyproline-containing fractions in whole embryos in different series and in the material as a whole

Age in days	Series	Hydroxyproline*				
		Free	Peptide	Insoluble collagen	Insoluble	Total
2½	J	68	12	119	20.3	39.5
3	F	102	10	186	37.7	60.5
	H	92	10	138	25.2	49.2
	Mean	97	10	152	31.5	58.4
4	F	154	19	147	35.6	130
5	D	209 ± 03	16 ± 02	189 ± 08	57.5 ± 2.0	99.1 ± 3.9
6	C	267 ± 13	14 ± 02	205 ± 11	78.4 ± 6.6	176 ± 8
8	C	232 ± 11	23 ± 10	310 ± 16	110 ± 13	231 ± 17
10	A	200 ± 04	42 ± 07	378 ± 13	243 ± 40	312 ± 46
	G	294 ± 10	—	419 ± 21	238 ± 21	310 ± 27
	Mean	294 ± 11	42 ± 07	401 ± 19	292 ± 33	362 ± 34
11	A	331 ± 29	—	394 ± 31	33 ± 36	445 ± 40
	B	351 ± 47	—	405 ± 27	424 ± 30	509 ± 39
	Mean	341 ± 38	—	445 ± 60	398 ± 43	477 ± 50
12	A	464 ± 63	3 ± 03	506 ± 18	503 ± 21	604 ± 21
13	E	362 ± 41	50 ± 0	650 ± 19	558 ± 70	680 ± 21
14	A	627 ± 44	45 ± 60	804 ± 50	637 ± 52	710 ± 47
	B	505 ± 77	—	28 ± 67	612 ± 51	40 ± 62
	I	604 ± 62	40 ± 28	694 ± 51	631 ± 22	4 ± 70
	Mean	603 ± 0	42 ± 45	687 ± 60	630 ± 41	761 ± 44
16	A	383 ± 40	53 ± 49	593 ± 27	723 ± 90	826 ± 95
	B	391 ± 50	—	672 ± 38	812 ± 45	910 ± 49
	C	352 ± 75	—	691 ± 48	710 ± 93	873 ± 96
	Mean	373 ± 60	53 ± 49	652 ± 50	769 ± 86	873 ± 86
18	A	181 ± 24	46 ± 13	616 ± 72	831 ± 362	915 ± 30
	B	181 ± 30	—	674 ± 75	—	—
	Mean	181 ± 6	46 ± 13	643 ± 61	831 ± 362	915 ± 370
20	A	164 ± 33	103 ± 23	564 ± 39	911 ± 90	1044 ± 97

Received one or more injections of 0.1 ml 0.9 per cent sodium chloride  
 µg/100 mg dry weight of the embryo mean ± standard deviation in 5-day old  
 embryos ± deviation

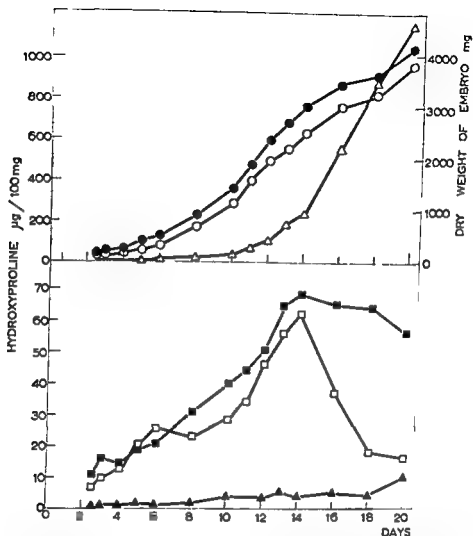


Fig 2 Contents of free  $\square$  peptide  $\triangle$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  Insoluble  $\circ$  and total  $\bullet$  hydroxyproline in whole embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{mg}$  dry weight of the embryo. In addition in the upper graph the absolute dry weights of embryos are shown on the ordinate on the right. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

The contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline both increased up to the 14th day of development. After this a rapid decrease was observed in the content of free hydroxyproline and a slight decrease in the content of 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline. If the values are expressed as  $\mu\text{g}$  per g wet weight a similar maximum is observed in free hydroxyproline at the age of 11 days but the rate of decrease is then less rapid than in Fig 2 for the following values are obtained: 69.1  $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$  in 14- 60.1  $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$  in 16- 37.0  $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$  in 18- and 31.5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$  in 20 day old embryos. By contrast the content of 1 M sodium chloride

soluble collagen hydroxyproline increases up to the 18th day of development if this value is expressed as  $\mu\text{g/g}$  wet weight. Even if the values for free hydroxyproline are expressed as absolute values in  $\mu\text{g/embryo}$  a decrease is observed towards the end of embryonic development although the increase in the weight of the embryos displaces the maximum value to the 16th day. The values for free hydroxyproline per embryo are as follows: 583  $\mu\text{g}$  in 14-, 816  $\mu\text{g}$  in 16-, 627  $\mu\text{g}$  in 18- and 738  $\mu\text{g}$  in 20-day-old embryos.

To show that there is no possibility that the decrease in the content of free hydroxyproline might be due to an unusual delay in the growth curve towards the 18th day of development the values that were obtained in five 18-day old embryos in preliminary experiments are presented. In those experiments free hydroxyproline was not determined but the value for ethanol soluble hydroxyproline (free and peptide hydroxyproline) can be compared with the values for free and peptide hydroxyproline of series A. At the age of 14 days the mean weight of the embryos was 9.23 and at the age of 18 days 20.85 g in the preliminary experiments. The corresponding values for ethanol soluble hydroxyproline were 64.7  $\mu\text{g}/100$  mg dry weight and 21.6  $\mu\text{g}/100$  mg dry weight which are in good agreement with the values of series A (cf. Table 5).

The content of *peptide hydroxyproline* did not show marked changes during embryonic development. A definite increase was observed however when the values obtained in young embryos were compared with those of old embryos. In 20-day-old embryos peptide hydroxyproline formed a noteworthy part of the total ethanol soluble hydroxyproline since a decrease in free hydroxyproline and an increase in peptide hydroxyproline occurred during the final stage of embryonic development.

The content of *citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline* was only determined in a few series. The following values expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100$  mg dry weight of the embryo were obtained: 0.0 in 4-, 1.6 in 6-, 1.8 in 10-, 4.8 in 13- and 4.4 in 16-day old embryos. Although the insoluble fraction was washed twice with 1 M sodium chloride after the extraction of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction it is still possible that some of the above values may be derived from 1 M sodium chloride soluble hydroxyproline that has remained in spite of the washing of the insoluble residues. The content of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline is thus very low in chick embryos.

The contents of free, peptide, 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen and insoluble hydroxyproline expressed as a percentage of total hydroxyproline are presented in Fig. 3 (upper and lower). In the youngest embryos the content of insoluble hydroxyproline formed 51.5 per cent of the total hydroxy



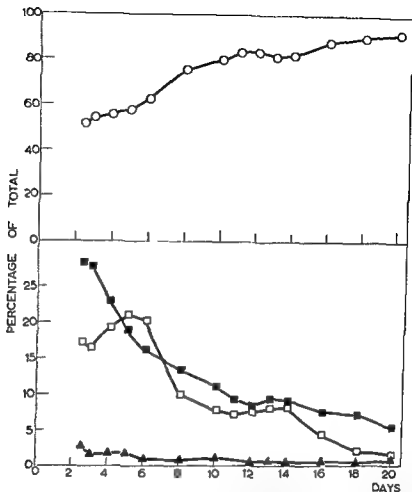


Fig 3 Contents of free  $\square$  peptide  $\blacktriangle$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  and insoluble  $\circ$  hydroxyproline in whole embryos expressed as a percentage of total hydroxyproline  
 Abscissa Age of embryos in days

*proline* A great increase in this fraction then occurred during embryonic development but between the 11th and 11th days there was a period with no relative increase in this fraction. In 20 day-old embryos insoluble hydroxyproline formed 92.1 per cent of the total hydroxyproline.

In contrast to the insoluble hydroxyproline the relative amount of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline decreased during embryonic development. Nevertheless, between the 11th and 11th days there was a period during which the relative amount of this fraction showed no appreciable change. The curve of free hydroxyproline differs from that of 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline only in that a small initial increase occurred between the ages of 2<sup>1</sup> and 5 days. At the age of 2<sup>1</sup> days the value was 17.1 per cent and then varied from 15.1 to 21.1 per

cent until the 5th day of development. Thereafter this curve shows a decrease until the 10th day and a further decrease after the 11th day to the value 1.6 per cent in 20-day-old embryos.

The percentage of peptide hydroxyproline was small throughout embryonic development and no noteworthy changes occurred in this fraction. The relative amount of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline which is not presented in the figure was smaller still.

#### COMPARISON OF CHANGES IN HYDROXYPROLINE WITH CHANGES IN FREE AND TOTAL PROLINE, FREE AMINO NITROGEN AND TOTAL NITROGEN

The contents of *free proline* and *free amino nitrogen* after the 10th day of development are presented in Fig. 4. Between the 10th and 11th days of development at which time there occurred a great increase in the content of free hydroxyproline, there was also some increase in the content of free proline but no significant changes in the content of free amino nitrogen. After the 11th day when the content of free hydroxyproline showed a rapid decrease, there was also a decrease in the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen. The magnitude of these decreases was considerably smaller however than that of free hydroxyproline. Since the values for free proline and free amino nitrogen also include some peptides (see p. 28) the extents of the changes in these fractions are possibly somewhat erroneous. The direction of the changes (decrease after the 11th day) must nevertheless be regarded as significant.

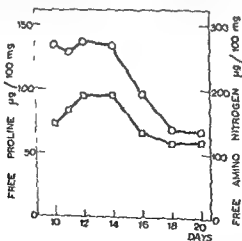


Fig. 4. Contents of free proline  $\square$  and free amino nitrogen  $\circ$  in whole embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

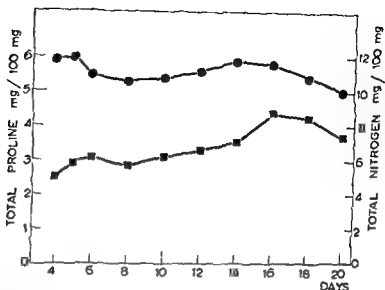


Fig 5 Contents of total proline ■ and total nitrogen ● in whole embryos expressed as mg/100 mg dry weight of the embryo. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

The contents of total proline and total nitrogen were determined after the 11th day of development (Fig 5). The content of total proline increased to the 16th day, after which there was some decrease towards the end of incubation period. Throughout the observation period the content of total nitrogen was between 10 and 12 mg/100 mg dry weight, indicating that the changes in hydroxyproline that were expressed in relation to the dry weight of the embryo would have been essentially similar if they had been expressed in relation to the total nitrogen.

### CONTENT OF HYDROXYPROLINE IN THE FRACTIONS OF THE SKIN

To compare whether the changes observed during embryonic development in the contents of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions in whole embryos are similar to those that occur in tissues rich in collagen, the fractions were also analysed in the skin after the 12th day of development.

Two series of experiments were made. The values for each sample are presented in Table 14 in the Appendix. Differences could be observed between the age groups, although there were only a few samples in each. For the reproducibility of the values seemed to be fairly good. The differences in the dry weights of samples of the same age group are probably due to varying degrees of water loss during their preparation.

The contents of free peptide, 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen insoluble and total hydroxyproline expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the

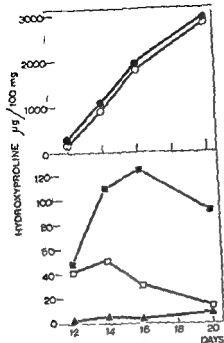


Fig. 6

Fig. 6 Contents of free  $\square$  peptide  $\triangle$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  insoluble  $\bullet$  total hydroxyproline in the skin expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

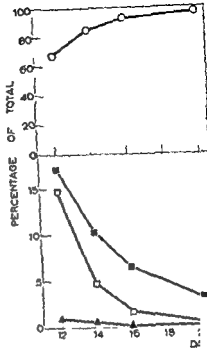


Fig. 7

Fig. 7 Contents of free  $\square$  peptide  $\triangle$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  and insoluble hydroxyproline in the skin expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

skin are presented in Fig. 6 (upper and lower). An increase of about 10-fold occurred in the content of total hydroxyproline and of about 14-fold in the content of insoluble hydroxyproline between days 12 and 20. The content of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline in the skin is already considerably higher than that of free hydroxyproline at the age 14 days and in the former fraction in the skin the maximum value was reached until the 16th day, whereas in whole embryos it occurred at age of 14 days. In other respects the curves presented in Fig. 6 are similar to those obtained in whole embryos. The maximum value for total hydroxyproline occurred in the skin and in whole embryos at the age 14 days and a decrease then occurred in free hydroxyproline; there was an increase in the peptide hydroxyproline towards the end of embryo.

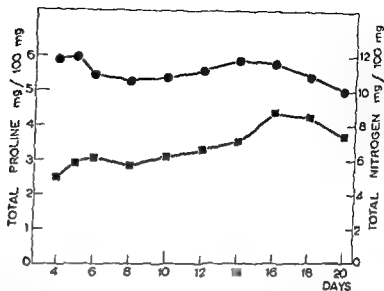


Fig. 5. Contents of total proline ■ and total nitrogen ● in whole embryos expressed as mg/100 mg dry weight of the embryo. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

The contents of *total proline* and *total nitrogen* were determined after the 4th day of development (Fig 5). The content of total proline increased to the 16th day, after which there was some decrease towards the end of incubation period. Throughout the observation period the content of total nitrogen was between 10 and 12 mg/100 mg dry weight, indicating that the changes in hydroxyproline that were expressed in relation to the dry weight of the embryo would have been essentially similar if they had been expressed in relation to the total nitrogen.

### CONTENT OF HYDROXYPROLINE IN THE FRACTIONS OF THE SKIN

To compare whether the changes observed during embryonic development in the contents of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions in whole embryos are similar to those that occur in tissues rich in collagen, the fractions were also analysed in the skin after the 12th day of development.

Two series of experiments were made. The values for each sample are presented in Table 14 in the Appendix. Differences could be observed between the age groups, although there were only a few samples in each; for the reproducibility of the values seemed to be fairly good. The differences in the dry weights of samples of the same age group are probably due to varying degrees of water loss during their preparation.

The contents of free peptide, 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen, insoluble and total hydroxyproline expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the

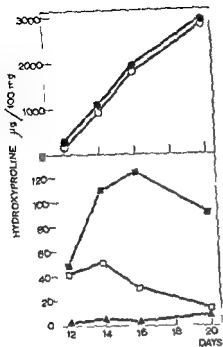


Fig. 6

Fig. 6. Contents of free  $\square$  peptide  $\triangle$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  insoluble  $\circ$  and total  $\bullet$  hydroxyproline in the skin expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

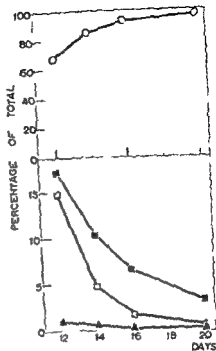


Fig. 7

Fig. 7. Contents of free  $\square$  peptide  $\triangle$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  and insoluble  $\circ$  hydroxyproline in the skin expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

skin are presented in Fig. 6 (upper and lower). An increase of about 10-fold occurred in the content of total hydroxyproline and of about 14-fold in the content of insoluble hydroxyproline between days 12 and 20. The content of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline in the skin was already considerably higher than that of free hydroxyproline at the age of 14 days and in the former fraction in the skin the maximum value was not reached until the 16th day, whereas in whole embryos it occurred at the age of 14 days. In other respects the curves presented in Fig. 6 are very similar to those obtained in whole embryos. The maximum value for free hydroxyproline occurred in the skin and in whole embryos at the age of 14 days and a decrease then occurred in free hydroxyproline, there being an increase in the peptide hydroxyproline towards the end of embryonic

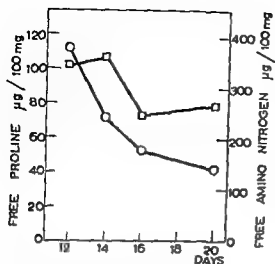


Fig. 8



Fig. 9

Fig. 8 Contents of free proline  $\square$  and free amino nitrogen  $\circ$  in the skin expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

Fig. 9 Contents of total proline  $\blacksquare$  and total nitrogen  $\bullet$  in the skin expressed as  $\text{mg}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

development. Thus peptide hydroxyproline formed a noteworthy part of the total ethanol soluble hydroxyproline in 20 day-old embryos both in the skin and in whole embryos. The content of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline, which is not presented in the figures, was very small in the skin as in the whole embryos.

The contents of the fractions expressed as a percentage of total hydroxyproline are presented in Fig. 7 (upper and lower). There was a continuous increase in the relative amount of insoluble hydroxyproline and a decrease in the relative amounts of free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline during the observation period. The relative amounts of peptide and citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline remained very small all the time.

The contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the skin are shown in Fig. 8. Free proline seems to be unchanged between the 12th and 14th days, after which there was a decrease between the 14th and 16th days, as in free hydroxyproline. Free amino nitrogen decreased continuously from the 12th to the 20th day.

The contents of total proline and total nitrogen are shown in Fig. 9. There seems to be a small increase in the content of total proline of the skin and a small decrease in the total nitrogen from the 12th to the 20th day of development. Thus the increases observed in total and insoluble hydroxyproline appear even slightly greater if they are expressed in relation to total nitrogen.

# SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES OF FREE 1 M SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUBLE COLLAGEN AND INSOLUBLE HYDROXYPROLINE AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ PROLINE

The role of free hydroxyproline in the metabolism of collagen and the rapidity of the turnover of the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen and insoluble hydroxyproline in the chick embryo were studied using  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline. A short preliminary report of these results has already been published (Kiviniemi 1963 c).

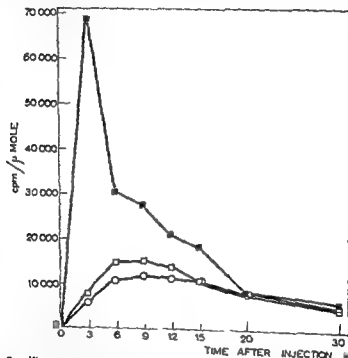


Fig 10 Specific activities of free  $\square$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  and insoluble  $\blacksquare$  hydroxyproline after the administration of  $2 \mu\text{C}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline to 11 day-old chick embryos

Two series of experiments were made. In both series  $2 \mu\text{C}$  of uniformly labelled  $\text{L-}^{14}\text{C}$  proline ( $10.8 \mu\text{C}/\mu\text{mole}$  The Radiochemical Centre Amersham) was injected in  $100 \mu\text{l}$  of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride solution onto the chorioallantoic membrane of 11-day-old embryos. The values for each embryo are presented in Table 1a in the Appendix and the mean values for each group in Fig 10. There was some variation between the values of the same group but this variation was partly due to weight differences at the time of isotope administration.



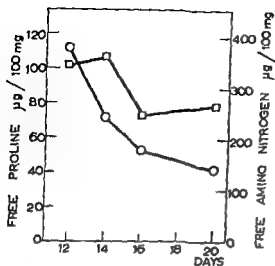


Fig 8

Fig 8 Contents of free proline  $\square$  and free amino nitrogen  $\circ$  in the skin expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin Abscissa Age of embryos in days

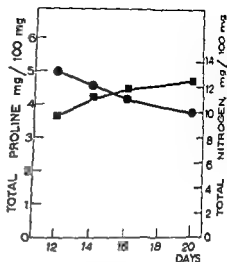


Fig 9

Fig 9 Contents of total proline  $\blacksquare$  and total nitrogen  $\bullet$  in the skin expressed as  $\text{mg}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin Abscissa Age of embryos in days

development. Thus peptide hydroxyproline formed a noteworthy part of the total ethanol-soluble hydroxyproline in 20 day old embryos both in the skin and in whole embryos. The content of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline which is not presented in the figures was very small in the skin as in the whole embryos.

The contents of the fractions expressed as a percentage of total hydroxyproline are presented in Fig 7 (upper and lower). There was a continuous increase in the relative amount of insoluble hydroxyproline and a decrease in the relative amounts of free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline during the observation period. The relative amounts of peptide and citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline remained very small all the time.

The contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the skin are shown in Fig 8. Free proline seems to be unchanged between the 12th and 14th days after which there was a decrease between the 14th and 16th days as in free hydroxyproline. Free amino nitrogen decreased continuously from the 12th to the 20th day.

The contents of total proline and total nitrogen are shown in Fig 9. There seems to be a small increase in the content of total proline of the skin and a small decrease in the total nitrogen from the 12th to the 20th day of development. Thus the increases observed in total and insoluble hydroxyproline appear even slightly greater if they are expressed in relation to total nitrogen.

# SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES OF FREE 1 M SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUBLE COLLAGEN AND INSOLUBLE HYDROXYPROLINE AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ -PROLINE

The role of free hydroxyproline in the metabolism of collagen and the rapidity of the turnover of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen and insoluble hydroxyproline in the chick embryo were studied using  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline. A short preliminary report of these results has already been published (KIVIRIKKO 1963 c)

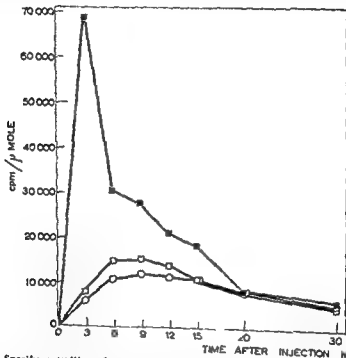


Fig 10 Specific activities of free  $\square$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  and insoluble  $\circ$  hydroxyproline after the administration of  $2\mu\text{C}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline to 11 day old chick embryos

Two series of experiments were made. In both series  $2\mu\text{C}$  of uniformly labelled  $\text{L-}^{14}\text{C}$  proline ( $10.8\mu\text{C}/\mu\text{mole}$  The Radiochemical Centre Amersham) was injected in  $100\mu\text{l}$  of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride solution onto the chorioallantoic membrane of 11-day-old embryos. The values for each embryo are presented in Table 15 in the Appendix and the mean values for each group in Fig 10. There was some variation between the values of the same group but this variation was partly due to weight differences at the time of isotope administration.

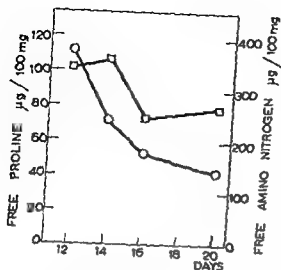


Fig 8

Fig 8 Contents of free proline  $\square$  and free amino nitrogen  $\circ$  in the skin expressed in  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin Abscissa Age of embryos in days

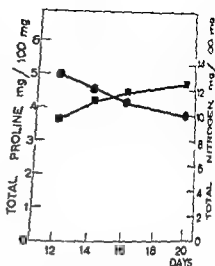


Fig 9

Fig 9 Contents of total proline  $\blacksquare$  and total nitrogen  $\bullet$  in the skin expressed as  $\text{mg}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin Abscissa Age of embryos in days

development Thus peptide hydroxyproline formed a noteworthy part of the total ethanol soluble hydroxyproline in 20 day old embryos both in the skin and in whole embryos The content of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline which is not presented in the figures was very small in the skin as in the whole embryos

The contents of the fractions expressed as a percentage of total hydroxyproline are presented in Fig 7 (upper and lower) There was a continuous increase in the relative amount of insoluble hydroxyproline and a decrease in the relative amounts of free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline during the observation period The relative amounts of peptide and citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline remained very small all the time

The contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the skin are shown in Fig 8 Free proline seems to be unchanged between the 12th and 14th days after which there was a decrease between the 14th and 16th days as in free hydroxyproline Free amino nitrogen decreased continuously from the 12th to the 20th day

The contents of total proline and total nitrogen are shown in Fig 9 There seems to be a small increase in the content of total proline of the skin and a small decrease in the total nitrogen from the 12th to the 20th day of development Thus the increases observed in total and insoluble hydroxyproline appear even slightly greater if they are expressed in relation to total nitrogen

# SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES OF FREE 1 M SODIUM CHLORIDE-SOLUBLE COLLAGEN AND INSOLUBLE HYDROXYPROLINE AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ -PROLINE

The role of free hydroxyproline in the metabolism of collagen and the rapidity of the turnover of the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen and insoluble hydroxyproline in the chick embryo were studied using  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline. A short preliminary report of these results has already been published (KIVIRIAKO 1963 c).

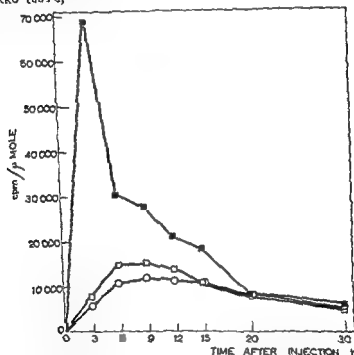


Fig 10 Specific activities of free  $\square$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  and insoluble  $\circ$  hydroxyproline after the administration of  $2\ \mu\text{C}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline to 11 day old chick embryos

Two series of experiments were made. In both series  $2\ \mu\text{C}$  of uniformly labelled  $\text{L-}^{14}\text{C}$  proline ( $10.8\ \mu\text{C}/\mu\text{mole}$  The Radiochemical Centre, Amersham) was injected in  $100\ \mu\text{l}$  of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride solution onto the chorioallantoic membrane of 11 day-old embryos. The values for each embryo are presented in Table 15 in the Appendix and the mean values for each group in Fig 10. There was some variation between the values of the same group but this variation was partly due to slight differences at the time of isotope administration.

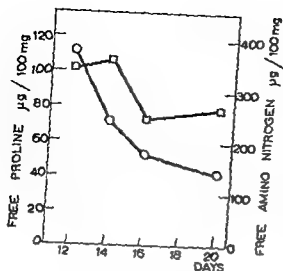


Fig 8

Fig 8 Contents of free proline  $\square$  and free amino nitrogen  $\circ$  in the skin expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

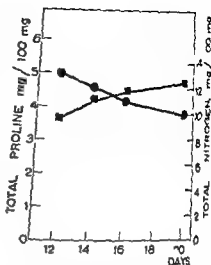


Fig 9

Fig 9 Contents of total proline  $\blacksquare$  and total nitrogen  $\bullet$  in the skin expressed as  $\text{mg}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

development. Thus peptide hydroxyproline formed a noteworthy part of the total ethanol-soluble hydroxyproline in 20 day-old embryos both in the skin and in whole embryos. The content of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline which is not presented in the figures was very small in the skin as in the whole embryos.

The contents of the fractions expressed as a percentage of total hydroxyproline are presented in Fig 7 (upper and lower). There was a continuous increase in the relative amount of insoluble hydroxyproline and a decrease in the relative amounts of free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline during the observation period. The relative amounts of peptide and citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline remained very small all the time.

The contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the skin are shown in Fig 8. Free proline seems to be unchanged between the 12th and 14th days, after which there was a decrease between the 14th and 16th days, as in free hydroxyproline. Free amino nitrogen decreased continuously from the 12th to the 20th day.

The contents of total proline and total nitrogen are shown in Fig 9. There seems to be a small increase in the content of total proline of the skin and a small decrease in the total nitrogen from the 12th to the 20th day of development. Thus the increases observed in total and insoluble hydroxyproline appear even slightly greater if they are expressed in relation to total nitrogen.

# SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES OF FREE 1 M SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUBLE COLLAGEN AND INSOLUBLE HYDROXYPROLINE AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ PROLINE

The role of free hydroxyproline in the metabolism of collagen and the rapidity of the turnover of the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen and insoluble hydroxyproline in the chick embryo were studied using  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline. A short preliminary report of these results has already been published (HIVIRIKKO 1963 c).

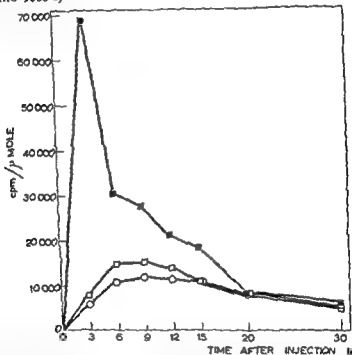


Fig 10 Specific activities of free  $\square$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  and insoluble  $\circ$  hydroxyproline after the administration of  $2\mu\text{Ci}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline to 11-day old chick embryos

Two series of experiments were made. In both series  $2\mu\text{Ci}$  of uniformly labelled L- $^{14}\text{C}$  proline ( $10.8\mu\text{Ci}/\mu\text{mole}$ , The Radiochemical Centre, Amersham) was injected in  $100\mu\text{l}$  of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride solution onto the chorioallantoic membrane of 11-day-old embryos. The values for each embryo are presented in Table 1a in the Appendix and the mean values for each group in Fig 10. There was some variation between the values of the same group but this variation was partly due to weight differences at the time of isotope administration.

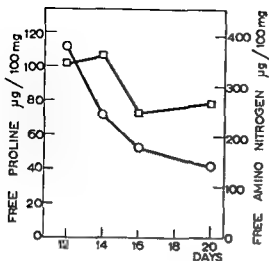


Fig 8

Fig 8 Contents of free proline  $\square$  and free amino nitrogen  $\circ$  in the skin expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin. Abscissa, Age of embryos in days.

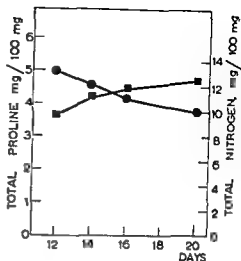


Fig 9

Fig 9 Contents of total proline  $\blacksquare$  and total nitrogen  $\bullet$  in the skin expressed as  $\text{mg}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin. Abscissa, Age of embryos in days.

development. Thus peptide hydroxyproline formed a noteworthy part of the total ethanol-soluble hydroxyproline in 20-day-old embryos both in the skin and in whole embryos. The content of citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline, which is not presented in the figures, was very small in the skin as in the whole embryos.

The contents of the fractions expressed as a percentage of total hydroxyproline are presented in Fig 7 (upper and lower). There was a continuous increase in the relative amount of insoluble hydroxyproline and a decrease in the relative amounts of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline during the observation period. The relative amounts of peptide and citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline remained very small all the time.

The contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the skin are shown in Fig 8. Free proline seems to be unchanged between the 12th and 14th days, after which there was a decrease between the 14th and 16th days as in free hydroxyproline. Free amino nitrogen decreased continuously from the 12th to the 20th day.

The contents of total proline and total nitrogen are shown in Fig 9. There seems to be a small increase in the content of total proline of the skin and a small decrease in the total nitrogen from the 12th to the 20th day of development. Thus the increases observed in total and insoluble hydroxyproline appear even slightly greater if they are expressed in relation to total nitrogen.

# SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES OF FREE 1 M SODIUM CHLORIDE SOLUBLE COLLAGEN AND INSOLUBLE HYDROXYPROLINE AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ PROLINE

The role of free hydroxyproline in the metabolism of collagen and the rapidity of the turnover of the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen and insoluble hydroxyproline in the chick embryo were studied using  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline. A short preliminary report of these results has already been published (KIVIRIKKO 1963 c)

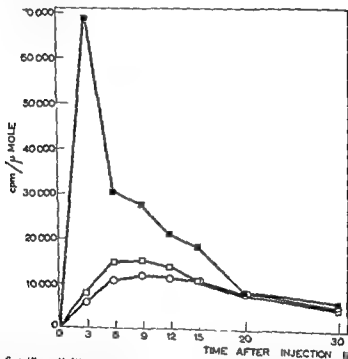


Fig 10 Specific activities of free  $\square$  1 M NaCl soluble collagen  $\blacksquare$  and insoluble  $\circ$  hydroxyproline after the administration of  $2\mu\text{C}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline to 11 day old chick embryos

Two series of experiments were made. In both series  $2\mu\text{C}$  of uniformly labelled L- $^{14}\text{C}$  proline ( $10.8\mu\text{C}/\mu\text{mole}$  The Radiochemical Centre Amersham) was injected in  $100\mu\text{l}$  of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride solution onto the chorioallantoic membrane of 11-day-old embryos. The values for each embryo are presented in Table 15 in the Appendix and the mean values for each group in Fig 10. There was some variation between the values of the same group but this variation was partly due to weight differences at the time of isotope administration.



The specific activity of the *hydroxyproline of the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen* fraction reached its maximum value at 3 h after which there was a continuous decrease during the observation period. The rate of this decrease was considerably more rapid between 3 and 6 h than thereafter. The ratio of the specific activity of 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline to the specific activity of insoluble hydroxyproline calculated from the mean values of the groups was 11.8 at 3 h, 2.78 at 6 h, 2.29 at 9 h, 1.85 at 12 h, 1.65 at 15 h, 1.06 at 20 h and 1.02 at 30 h.

The specific activity of *free hydroxyproline* was considerably less than that of 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline during the first 15 hours but slightly higher than that of insoluble hydroxyproline during the first 12 hours. No sharp peak could be observed in the specific activity of free hydroxyproline but the maximum evidently occurred between 6 and 9 h. The ratio of the specific activity of free hydroxyproline to the specific activity of insoluble hydroxyproline was 1.31 at 3 h, 1.36 at 6 h, 1.27 at 9 h, 1.22 at 12 h, 0.97 at 15 h, 1.03 at 20 h and 0.90 at 30 h.

The specific activity of *insoluble hydroxyproline* also increased rapidly and showed a maximum value at as little as 9 h. The decrease observed thereafter was mainly due to synthesis of new unlabelled hydroxyproline in the chick embryo. This was evident when an attempt was made to calculate the total activities of insoluble hydroxyproline from the amounts of insoluble hydroxyproline per embryo. These values were calculated for embryos of different weights from the embryos used in the experiments summarized in Table 5, p. 11. The following mean values were obtained for the total activities of insoluble hydroxyproline as cpm/embryo: 112,000 at 9 h, 117,000 at 12 h, 118,000 at 20 h and 115,000 at 30 h. The results indicated that there was no appreciable change in the total activity of insoluble hydroxyproline between 9 and 30 h. Since the rates of increase in the contents of free and insoluble hydroxyproline are similar at this stage of development, increases in their contents cannot be the explanation of the differences in the rates of decrease in their specific activities that were noted towards the end of the observation period.

## DISCUSSION

Since the rate of turnover of collagen is low in mature connective tissue, most investigations dealing with the metabolism of collagen have been carried out with material in which rapid formation of new connective tissue is occurring. Much use has been made of the granulomas induced by subcutaneous injection of carrageenin or the connective tissue induced by subcutaneous implantation of polyvinyl sponges. During recent years developing

chick embryos have been increasingly used especially in investigations concerning the action of lathyrogenic agents on collagen formation. In the present study it was found that the hydroxyproline of chick embryos could be fractionated satisfactorily by the procedure used and that chick embryos seemed to be material giving reproducible results and suitable for the study of collagen formation.

NELMAN (1950) did not find hydroxyproline in chick embryos until the 5th day of development but CHAPPEL (1959) has reported the presence of hydroxyproline even in 1 day-old chick embryos. Nor was hydroxyproline found in frog embryos during the earliest stages of development (TODD 1958). Nothing was known about the fractions of hydroxyproline during its appearance in the embryos. In the present investigation all the fractions studied except citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline were found to be present in the embryos after an incubation time of as little as 2½ days. Since the hydroxyproline content was found to be very small in hydrolysed egg yolk and white it seems evident that most if not all of the hydroxyproline already present in the embryos at this stage of development was newly synthesized.

The total and insoluble hydroxyproline contents per 100 mg dry weight of the embryo or of the skin increased continuously throughout embryonic development. The increase in total hydroxyproline was about 27 fold in whole embryos between the ages of 2½ and 20 days and about 10-fold in the skin between the ages of 12 and 20 days. The corresponding values were still greater in the case of the insoluble hydroxyproline. In contrast to the total hydroxyproline the content of total proline increased only slightly and the content of total nitrogen did not show noteworthy changes during embryonic development. The values observed for total hydroxyproline are in fairly good agreement with those presented by LEVINE and GROSS (1959) for the skin of 14 and 17 day-old embryos and by NELMAN (1950) and by CHAPPEL (1959) for whole embryos with the exception of the youngest. Since the method of PROCTOR and LUDWIG (1960) has a greater specificity and accuracy than that of NELMAN and LOGAN (1950) used in the earlier investigations the present values are possibly more reliable.

Collagen fibres are built up from macromolecules called tropocollagen which are synthesized within the fibroblasts and from there transported into the extracellular space where they aggregate together to form collagen fibres (see p. 9). During the maturation of connective tissue these fibres increase in amount and the relative amounts of cellular and extracellular non fibrous elements decrease. Therefore the increase observed during embryonic development in the present study in the relative amount of insoluble hydroxyproline expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxy

The specific activity of the *hydroxyproline of the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen* fraction reached its maximum value at 3 h after which there was a continuous decrease during the observation period. The rate of this decrease was considerably more rapid between 3 and 6 h than thereafter. The ratio of the specific activity of 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline to the specific activity of insoluble hydroxyproline calculated from the mean values of the groups was 11.8 at 3 h, 2.78 at 6 h, 2.29 at 9 h, 1.85 at 12 h, 1.65 at 15 h, 1.06 at 20 h and 1.02 at 30 h.

The specific activity of *free hydroxyproline* was considerably less than that of 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline during the first 15 hours but slightly higher than that of insoluble hydroxyproline during the first 12 hours. No sharp peak could be observed in the specific activity of free hydroxyproline but the maximum evidently occurred between 6 and 9 h. The ratio of the specific activity of free hydroxyproline to the specific activity of insoluble hydroxyproline was 1.31 at 3 h, 1.36 at 6 h, 1.27 at 9 h, 1.22 at 12 h, 0.97 at 15 h, 1.03 at 20 h and 0.90 at 30 h.

The specific activity of *insoluble hydroxyproline* also increased rapidly and showed a maximum value at as little as 9 h. The decrease observed thereafter was mainly due to synthesis of new unlabelled hydroxyproline in the chick embryo. This was evident when an attempt was made to calculate the total activities of insoluble hydroxyproline from the amounts of insoluble hydroxyproline per embryo. These values were calculated for embryos of different weights from the embryos used in the experiments summarized in Table 5, p. 41. The following mean values were obtained for the total activities of insoluble hydroxyproline as cpm/embryo: 112,000 at 9 h, 147,000 at 12 h, 118,000 at 20 h and 115,000 at 30 h. The results indicated that there was no appreciable change in the total activity of insoluble hydroxyproline between 9 and 30 h. Since the rates of increase in the contents of free and insoluble hydroxyproline are similar at this stage of development, increases in their contents cannot be the explanation of the differences in the rates of decrease in their specific activities that were noted towards the end of the observation period.

## DISCUSSION

Since the rate of turnover of collagen is low in mature connective tissue, most investigations dealing with the metabolism of collagen have been carried out with material in which rapid formation of new connective tissue is occurring. Much use has been made of the granuloma induced by subcutaneous injection of carrageenin or the connective tissue induced by subcutaneous implantation of polyvinyl sponges. During recent years developing

Earlier investigations had already indicated that there are relatively large amounts of free hydroxyproline in chick embryos (e.g. ROBERTS, KARNOFSKY and FRANKEL 1951, PASIEKA and MORGAN 1956, DICKER, LEVINE and GROSS 1959, MITOMA, SMITH, FRIDBERG and RAYFORD 1959, CHVAPIL 1959) but the values presented were somewhat variable. The observation of CHVAPIL (1959) that the value for free hydroxyproline in the whole embryo was about 20 to 30  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight between the 8th and 20th days of development, could not be confirmed. MITOMA *et al.* (1959) reported a value of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  free hydroxyproline per 13-day-old embryo which also suggests a higher concentration at the age of 13 days than that observed by CHVAPIL (1959).

Recently studies have been made on the changes occurring in the ultrafiltrable, i.e. free and peptide hydroxyproline during the formation of collagen in the carrageenin granuloma (CHVAPIL and ČULČHALOVÁ 1960, 1961) and in free hydroxyproline during the formation of collagen in polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue (WOFSSNER and BOLČEK 1961). These investigations indicated that the maximum content of ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline in the carrageenin granuloma and of free hydroxyproline in polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue was reached at the same stage as the maximum value of deoxyribonucleic acids which reflects the number of cells. Further the bulk of the hydroxyproline in the microsomal fraction of the carrageenin granuloma was ultrafiltrable (CHVAPIL, HOLÍČKOVÁ, ČULČHALOVÁ, HONRLE and HURÝCH 1962). These findings suggested that free and peptide hydroxyproline participate in the synthesis of collagen and are intracellular although their origin from breakdown could not be excluded (CHVAPIL and ČULČHALOVÁ 1961, CHVAPIL *et al.* 1962). WOFSSNER and BOLČEK (1961) also suggested that there may normally be a constant amount of free hydroxyproline within the fibroblasts.

In the present investigation the values for free hydroxyproline and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline resembled each other in many respects. Both fractions showed a maximum value at the age of 11 days expressed per 100 mg dry weight and both fractions formed a considerable part of the total hydroxyproline in the early stages of embryonic development. The similarities between the changes in the free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline and the fact that there were no similarities between the changes in free hydroxyproline and insoluble hydroxyproline suggest that free hydroxyproline in chick embryos might be derived to a great extent from the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline. Experiments with  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline in the present investigation provide evidence in support of this suggestion and opposing such possibilities as that free hydroxyproline in chick embryos is derived in considerable

proline was expected for this fraction is mainly derived from the insoluble collagen fibres. The decrease during embryonic development in the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline expressed as a percentage of total hydroxyproline was likewise expected as this fraction represents the intracellular and extracellular non aggregated collagen molecules with some additional collagen from the surface of the fibres (pp 9—10).

Changes in relative amounts similar to those occurring in the above fractions have been described by JACKSON (1957) during the first days of development of the carrageenin granuloma where likewise an initial decrease in the relative amount of neutral salt-soluble collagen and an increase in the relative amount of insoluble collagen were seen. In the carrageenin granuloma 60 per cent of the total hydroxyproline was insoluble after 3 days development but JACKSON (1957) considered it possible that this insoluble collagen was derived from contamination with collagen from pre-existing loose fascia and did not represent new insoluble collagen. In the present investigation in which the insoluble hydroxyproline formed 51.5 per cent of the total hydroxyproline after incubation for 2½ days such contamination seems impossible since the embryos could be obtained free from the shell membranes. Some contamination from the embryonic membranes is certainly possible but these membranes are not present before incubation and thus the insoluble hydroxyproline found after incubation for 2½ days must be newly synthesized.

However, the insoluble hydroxyproline present in young embryos does not necessarily represent the extracellular insoluble collagen fibrils. LOWTHER GREEN and CHAPMAN (1961) have found that in the carrageenin granuloma only 80 per cent of the microsomal collagen and only 35 per cent of the mitochondrial collagen could be extracted with 0.2 M sodium chloride. An additional 15 to 20 per cent of the mitochondrial collagen could be extracted with 0.45 M sodium chloride but about half the mitochondrial collagen still remained unextracted. In the light of their investigation it is possible that in the young chick embryos a considerable amount of the insoluble hydroxyproline might be derived from intracellular insoluble collagen.

The content of free hydroxyproline also showed marked changes during embryonic development. At the age of 2½ days free hydroxyproline amounted to 6.8 µg/100 mg dry weight and thereafter an increase occurred to a maximum value of 62.3 µg/100 mg at the age of 11 days. This stage was followed by rapid decrease in free hydroxyproline to a value of 16.1 µg/100 mg at the age of 20 days. This decrease was also visible when the values were expressed per unit wet weight and even the absolute amount of free hydroxyproline showed a decrease after the 16th day. A similar maximum was also seen in the free hydroxyproline of the skin at the age of 11 days.

Earlier investigations had already indicated that there are relatively large amounts of free hydroxyproline in chick embryos (e.g. ROBERTS KARNOFSKY and FRANKEL 1951 PASIKOVA and MORGAN 1956 DECKER LEVINE and GROSS 1959 MITOMA SMITH FRIDBERG and HAYFORD 1959 CHVAPIL 1959) but the values presented were somewhat variable. The observation of CHVAPIL (1959) that the value for free hydroxyproline in the whole embryo was about 20 to 30  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight between the 8th and 20th days of development could not be confirmed. MITOMA *et al* (1959) reported a value of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  free hydroxyproline per 13-day-old embryo which also suggests a higher concentration at the age of 13 days than that observed by CHVAPIL (1959).

Recently studies have been made on the changes occurring in the ultrafiltrable i.e. free and peptide hydroxyproline during the formation of collagen in the carrageenin granuloma (CHVAPIL and ČMELČALOVÁ 1960 1961) and in free hydroxyproline during the formation of collagen in poly vinyl sponge implant connective tissue (WOLSSNER and BOLCH 1961). These investigations indicated that the maximum content of ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline in the carrageenin granuloma and of free hydroxyproline in polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue was reached at the same stage as the maximum value of deoxyribonucleic acids which reflects the number of cells. Further the bulk of the hydroxyproline in the microsomal fraction of the carrageenin granuloma was ultrafiltrable (CHVAPIL HOLEČKOVÁ ČMELČALOVÁ KOBŘIL and HURVICH 1962). These findings suggested that free and peptide hydroxyproline participate in the synthesis of collagen and are intracellular although their origin from breakdown could not be excluded (CHVAPIL and ČMELČALOVÁ 1961 CHVAPIL *et al* 1962). WOLSSNER and BOLCH (1961) also suggested that there may normally be a constant amount of free hydroxyproline within the fibroblasts.

In the present investigation the values for free hydroxyproline and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline resembled each other in many respects. Both fractions showed a maximum value at the age of 14 days expressed per 100 mg dry weight and both fractions formed a considerable part of the total hydroxyproline in the early stages of embryonic development. The similarities between the changes in the free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline and the fact that there were no similarities between the changes in free hydroxyproline and insoluble hydroxyproline suggest that free hydroxyproline in chick embryos might be derived to a great extent from the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline. Experiments with  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline in the present investigation provide evidence in support of this suggestion and opposing such possibilities as that free hydroxyproline in chick embryos is derived in considerable

amounts either from the activated hydroxyproline or alternatively from the insoluble hydroxyproline alone (p 57) Studies on the effect of age growth scurvy and lathyrism on the excretion of hydroxyproline in the urine also suggest that a considerable part of the hydroxyproline in the urine of young animals is derived from soluble collagens (e.g. ZIFF KIBRICK DRISNER and GRIBLITZ 1956 MARTIN MARGENHAGEN and PROCKOP 1961 JASIN and ZIFF 1962, JASIN FINK SMILEY and ZIFF 1962 JASIN FINK WISL and ZIFF 1962)

Since the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline represents mainly the intracellular and extracellular recently synthesized collagen molecules the above hypothesis that the free hydroxyproline of chick embryos is largely derived from the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline fraction of the present study is in agreement with observations indicating that the content of free hydroxyproline is related to that of deoxyribonucleic acids in the carrageenin granuloma and in the polyvinyl sponge implant connective tissue (CHAPIL and ČUCHALOVA 1960 1961 WOISSNER and BOUCLER 1961) In addition such a correlation is also found in chick embryos for the maximum content of deoxyribonucleic and ribonucleic acids occurs in chick embryos near the 11th day of development (NOVIKOFF and POTTIER 1948 RLEDDY LOMBARDO and CINCERDO 1952 MARRIAN, HUGHES and WELBA 1956)

The content of peptide hydroxyproline was very low throughout embryonic development Although there was some increase in this fraction, when expressed in relation to dry weight during embryonic development this increase was so small that there were no noteworthy changes in the relative amount It is of interest however that a small increase in peptide hydroxyproline was seen towards the end of embryonic development both in whole embryos and in the skin although there was a simultaneous decrease in free hydroxyproline Thus peptide hydroxyproline formed a considerable part of the total ethanol soluble hydroxyproline in 20 day old embryos The values are in agreement with those presented by DECIER LEVINE and GROSS (1959) for acid extractable peptides in 10- and 17 day old embryos

The present data do not allow any definite conclusions to be drawn about the significance of peptide hydroxyproline in the collagen metabolism of chick embryos The small amounts present made it difficult to study this fraction with the isotope technique and no such study was therefore made It seems possible that at least some part of the small hydroxyproline containing peptides represents the stage preceding free hydroxyproline in the catabolism of collagen molecules LINDSTROM and PROCKOP (1961) have found that the specific activities of free and peptide hydroxyproline in the

urine were equal after the administration of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline but it is not known whether the peptides studied in the present investigation can be compared with the peptides of the urine. Recently HURVICH and CHAVARIL (1962 b) have reported that the specific activity of ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline became very high during the incubation of skin slices of 17 day-old chick embryos *in vitro* with  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline. In their experiments about half the ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline was free and about half peptide bound but in the present investigation only about 10 to 20 per cent of the ethanol soluble hydroxyproline in the skin of 16-day-old embryos and in whole 16 and 18 day old embryos was peptide-bound. It seems probable therefore that the bulk of their ultrafiltrable peptides was present in the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen fraction in the present study. Similarly the highly active non dialysable peptide collagen precursor found by LEVINE (1962) during incubation of the skin of young rats *in vitro* might be insoluble in 80 per cent ethanol and therefore the ethanol soluble peptides possibly do not include this fraction.

The finding that the content of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline was very low both in whole embryos and in the skin is in distinct contrast to the observations in the carrageenin granuloma. Certainly the content of citrate soluble collagen is also very low in the carrageenin granuloma on the 3rd day of development but thereafter there is a rapid increase in this fraction (JACKSON 1957). It is also well known that after birth the skin of animals contains considerable amounts of citrate-soluble collagen. JACKSON (1957) has suggested that the large amounts of citrate soluble collagen in the carrageenin granuloma may be due to the resorption of collagen that occurs simultaneously with its synthesis in the carrageenin granuloma. Values for citrate soluble hydroxyproline in chick embryos similar to those obtained in the present investigation have also been reported by HILBERSMA and BARRY (1955) who stated that attempts to extract citrate soluble procollagen were inconclusive and by LEVINE and GROSS (1959) who reported that collagen could not be extracted from bone and skin of 17 day-old normal embryos with acid citrate buffers or with 0.5 per cent acetic acid. In the skin of 6 to 8 cm long pig embryos the content of citrate soluble collagen has likewise been found to be negligible but in the 19 cm long embryos this fraction is already present (TILSTANDISKAJA ZAJEDN. ORLOVSKAJA and VJAGHKAJA 1961). Thus it seems evident that citrate soluble collagen is a fraction of little importance in the formation of embryonic collagen.

The results of the present investigation indicated the occurrence of changes of some kind in the metabolism of collagen both in whole embryos and in the skin around the 14th day of development as evidenced by the contents



of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline. Both fractions when expressed per 100 mg dry weight increased greatly before the 14th day and both fractions began to decrease after this stage. The 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline of the skin formed a slight exception for the mean value continued to increase slightly between the 14th and 16th days before it began to decrease. The values for free proline and free amino nitrogen likewise showed an increase or no change between the 10th and 14th days and a decrease thereafter except the free amino nitrogen of the skin, which also decreased before the 14th day. A similar change in the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen in whole embryos after the 14th day has also been found by CHVAPIL (1959). It is further noteworthy that the contents of deoxyribonucleic acids and ribonucleic acids (NOVIKOFF and POTTER 1948, REDDY, LOMBARDO and CERECEDO 1952, MARRIAN, HUGHES and WIRBA 1956) and the contents of the polyamines spermine and spermidine (RAJVA 1963) which are possibly connected in some way with nucleic acid and protein metabolism (refer RAJVA 1963) show appreciable changes near the 14th day of development. These observations suggest that the changes in the metabolism of collagen near the 14th day of development may be correlated with more generalized changes in the metabolism of chick embryos at this stage of development.

The experiments in which  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline was administered indicated that the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline fraction had a very high turnover rate since the maximum specific activity of this fraction occurred as little as 3 h after isotope administration or possibly even earlier. As discussed on page 55 the highly active peptide hydroxyproline fractions found by LEVINE (1962) and by HURVICH and CHVAPIL (1962b) during incubation of the skin of young rats or of chick embryos *in vitro* are possibly included in the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline fraction. Such peptide fractions might contribute to the high peak observed if they are also present *in vivo*. The microsomal collagen fraction studied by PROCKOP, PETERLOFSKY and UDENFRIED (1962) in chick embryos *in vivo* likewise showed a maximal specific activity as little as 2 hours after the administration of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline to 9 day old embryos. Thus it is evidently present in the high peak observed here.

Since the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen fraction is heterogeneous in origin it is not surprising that the specific activity of this fraction decreased after the first high peak at a lower rate for the other subfractions possibly have a less rapid turnover. However although resorption of the labelled proline from the chorionallantoic membrane seems to be very rapid some additional resorption may have taken place at a lower rate which

might account for the delay in the decrease in the specific activity of the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline

The main purpose of the isotope experiments was to obtain some information on the role of free hydroxyproline in the metabolism of collagen in chick embryos. The results of the experiments made without isotopes suggested that the free hydroxyproline originated largely from the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline. The results of the isotope experiments are in good agreement with this suggestion since during the first 12 h after the administration of labelled proline the specific activity of free hydroxyproline was higher in all embryos than that of insoluble hydroxyproline. If the free hydroxyproline had been derived only from the insoluble hydroxyproline its specific activity would have been considerably lower than that of the insoluble hydroxyproline since the considerable amounts of unlabelled free hydroxyproline formed before the administration of the isotope dilute the specific activity of the labelled free hydroxyproline. However it is not impossible that part of the free hydroxyproline was derived from the insoluble hydroxyproline.

The results further suggest that the bulk of the free hydroxyproline of chick embryos is probably not derived from the activated hydroxyproline although such an origin for free hydroxyproline has been considered possible during the incubation of rat cartilage *in vitro* (DALCHANDAN and MARIZ 1962 b). Nor did the investigation of PROCKOP, PETERKOWSKI and LDEFRIED (1962) with chick embryos *in vivo* in which the specific activities were measured at quite short intervals during a period of 6 hours show any peak in free hydroxyproline that might suggest the derivation of free hydroxyproline from activated hydroxyproline. These workers suggested that free hydroxyproline may be derived from the catabolism of one of the more highly labelled protein fractions probably of the  $15\,000 \times g$  fraction in their fractionation system. Investigations on the specific activity of the hydroxyproline in rat urine likewise indicated that hydroxyproline of urine is not derived from activated hydroxyproline. Apparently a part of the hydroxyproline present in the urine of young rats is derived from soluble collagens although catabolism of insoluble collagen also occurs (LINDSTEDT and PROCKOP 1961, PROCKOP 1962 b).

It is of interest that in chick embryos the specific activity of insoluble hydroxyproline also increased rapidly and showed a maximum as little as 3 h after administration of the isotope. The decrease observed thereafter was mainly due to synthesis of new unlabelled hydroxyproline but some catabolism of insoluble hydroxyproline may also have occurred.

## EFFECT OF CORTISONE ON HYDROXYPROLINE-CONTAINING FRACTIONS IN CHICK EMBRYOS

The purpose of this part of the investigation was to study how the cortisone induced inhibition of collagen formation is reflected in the contents of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions expressed per unit dry weight and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. The total amounts of hydroxyproline per embryo were also calculated in the experiments with whole embryos since the investigation of CHAVIR (1959) suggested that when the effect of cortisone on total hydroxyproline is studied it may be more correct to express the values in this way than per unit dry weight. Most experiments were made with whole embryos but finally one series was also used to investigate whether the changes observed in whole embryos were similar to those that occurred in the skin. A short preliminary report of the results obtained in whole embryos has already been published (HIVINIKKO 1963 a).

The cortisone effect was induced with cortisone acetate (ADDERSON & V. Organon Oss<sup>1</sup>). It was used as a suspension diluted with 0.9 per cent sodium chloride solution to contain the amount injected in 0.1 ml. Injections were made onto the chorioallantoic membrane. Control embryos received corresponding injections of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride.

### CONTENT OF HYDROXYPROLINE IN THE FRACTIONS OF WHOLE EMBRYOS AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF CORTISONE

#### LITERATURE OF A SINGLE INJECTION

##### *Effect of a single injection at the age of 10 days*

The experiments dealing with the effect of cortisone were started using a single injection at the age of 10 days. Two series of experiments were made designated as series A and B.

<sup>1</sup> Kindly supplied by Mr. HARRI WILLANMÄKI, Mag. Phil., Organon Finland.

Table 6 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate at the age of 10 days on the wet weights and relative dry weights of the embryos on different days of development

Day and series	Group	Number of embryos	Wet weight g $\pm$ S D	Relative dry weight mg/g wet wt $\pm$ S D
10 A	Controls	3 $\times$ 2 <sup>1</sup>	2.39 $\pm$ 0.30	73 $\pm$ 1
11 A	Controls	6	3.31 $\pm$ 0.36	83 $\pm$ 2
	100 $\mu$ g	6	1.788 $\pm$ 0.15	187 $\pm$ 0
	300 $\mu$ g	5	2.22 $\pm$ 0.19	190 $\pm$ 3
12 A	Controls	5	4.16 $\pm$ 0.38	88 $\pm$ 2
	100 $\mu$ g	6	4.45 $\pm$ 0.36	91 $\pm$ 3
	300 $\mu$ g	6	3.38 $\pm$ 0.31	93 $\pm$ 5
	900 $\mu$ g	6	3.18 $\pm$ 0.35	90 $\pm$ 10
14 A	Controls	6	7.10 $\pm$ 0.97	112 $\pm$ 7
	100 $\mu$ g	6	7.14 $\pm$ 0.4	106 $\pm$ 4
	300 $\mu$ g	6	4.44 $\pm$ 0.50	102 $\pm$ 8
	900 $\mu$ g	5	3.91 $\pm$ 0.31	103 $\pm$ 4
16 B	Controls	6	14.27 $\pm$ 0.59	164 $\pm$ 6
	100 $\mu$ g	6	12.03 $\pm$ 0.56	153 $\pm$ 7
	300 $\mu$ g	6	8.82 $\pm$ 1.57	123 $\pm$ 9
18 A	Controls	6	16.58 $\pm$ 0.84	195 $\pm$ 19
	300 $\mu$ g	2	10.76 $\pm$ 0.94	165 $\pm$ 7
B	Controls	3	17.39 $\pm$ 1.20	210 $\pm$ 8
	100 $\mu$ g	3	16.71 $\pm$ 0.67	196 $\pm$ 5
	300 $\mu$ g	4	9.53 $\pm$ 2.03	145 $\pm$ 17

The significance of the differences as compared with the controls is denoted by  
 $\mu = P < 0.05$   $\mu = P < 0.01$   $\mu = P < 0.001$

<sup>1</sup> pooled samples 2 embryos in each

In this group the  $\pm$  deviation is given and the significance of the differences is not calculated

Dose of cortisone acetate

**Weights of the embryos** — The number of embryos in the different groups their wet weights and relative dry weights are presented in Table 6. All doses of cortisone used in the experiments presented in the table caused a delay in the weight gain of the embryos. The effect of 30  $\mu$ g of cortisone acetate was also studied but since this dose caused no significant changes in the weights of the embryos or in the contents of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions the results are not presented. Table 6 further indicates that the administration of cortisone was followed by marked changes in the water content of the treated embryos. Initially after the

## EFFECT OF CORTISONE ON HYDROXYPROLINE-CONTAINING FRACTIONS IN CHICK EMBRYOS

The purpose of this part of the investigation was to study how the cortisone induced inhibition of collagen formation is reflected in the contents of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions expressed per unit dry weight and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. The total amounts of hydroxyproline per embryo were also calculated in the experiments with whole embryos since the investigation of CHVATIL (1959) suggested that when the effect of cortisone on total hydroxyproline is studied it may be more correct to express the values in this way than per unit dry weight. Most experiments were made with whole embryos but finally one series was also used to investigate whether the changes observed in whole embryos were similar to those that occurred in the skin. A short preliminary report of the results obtained in whole embryos has already been published (KIVIMÄKI 1963 a).

The cortisone effect was induced with cortisone acetate (ADRESON N V Organon Oss<sup>1</sup>). It was used as a suspension diluted with 0.9 per cent sodium chloride solution to contain the amount injected in 0.1 ml. Injections were made onto the chorioallantoic membrane. Control embryos received corresponding injections of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride.

### CONTENT OF HYDROXYPROLINE IN THE FRACTIONS OF WHOLE EMBRYOS AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF CORTISONE

#### EFFECT OF A SINGLE INJECTION

##### *Effect of a single injection at the age of 10 days*

The experiments dealing with the effect of cortisone were started using a single injection at the age of 10 days. Two series of experiments were made designated as series A and B.

<sup>1</sup> Kindly supplied by Mr. HARRI WILLAND, Mag. Phil. Organon Finland.

Table 7 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate at the age of 10 days on the hydroxyproline-containing fractions in whole embryos on different days of development expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo or as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline <sup>4</sup>

Day and series	Group <sup>a</sup>	Hydroxyproline					
		Free		1 M NaCl soluble collagen		Total	Total in embryo in $\mu\text{g}$
		$\frac{\mu\text{g}}{100 \text{ mg}}$	of total	$\frac{\mu\text{g}}{100 \text{ mg}}$	of total	$\frac{\mu\text{g}}{100 \text{ mg}}$	
10 A	Controls	27.0	7.6 <sup>~</sup>	37.8	10.72	3.2	621
11 A	Controls	33.1	7.4 <sup>~</sup>	39.4	8.49	4.45	1270
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 27.1	<sup>a</sup> 5.40	38.7	<sup>a</sup> 7.78	<sup>a</sup> 5.04	1260
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 21.6	4.80	3 <sup>~</sup> .3	<sup>a</sup> 7.27	<sup>a</sup> 5.16	1790
12 A	Controls	46.4	7.0	50.6	8.40	6.01	2530
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	37.7	5.95	50.8	8.00	6.10	2580
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 32.1	<sup>a</sup> 4.78	49.9	<sup>a</sup> 7.45	6.75	2110
	900 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 26.7	<sup>a</sup> 3.60	46.5	<sup>a</sup> 6.22	7.52	2130
13 A	Controls	62.7	8.18	65.4	8.53	7.70	6640
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 72.7	8.52	68.4	7.99	8.55	9150
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 34.4	<sup>a</sup> 3.55	70.6	<sup>a</sup> 7.24	<sup>a</sup> 9.15	<sup>a</sup> 4810
	900 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 23.4	<sup>a</sup> 2.64	66.8	7.31	9.36	<sup>a</sup> 3830
16 II	Controls	39.1	4.24	67.2	7.34	9.19	21420
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	43.8	3.95	<sup>a</sup> 73.3	6.66	<sup>a</sup> 11.03	20230
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 60.2	4.81	<sup>a</sup> 82.1	<sup>a</sup> 6.51	<sup>a</sup> 12.64	<sup>a</sup> 13870
18 A	Controls	18.1	2.22	61.6	7.42	9.15	29120
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	58.5	4.13	<sup>a</sup> 9.5	4.91	14.15	25650
D	Controls	18.1	—	67.4	—	—	—
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	19.6	—	<sup>a</sup> 74.4	—	—	—
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>a</sup> 72.1	—	<sup>a</sup> 76.4	—	—	—

The significance of the differences as compared with the controls is denoted by  $\approx P < 0.05$  <sup>a</sup>  $\approx P < 0.01$  <sup>b</sup>  $\approx P < 0.001$ . In 18 day old cortisone treated embryos of series A the significance of the differences is not calculated.

<sup>4</sup> The values for insoluble hydroxyproline and the standard deviations for all values are given in Table 16 in the Appendix.

<sup>a</sup> Dose of cortisone acetate

100 mg dry weight during the first 4 days after the injection. However when this fraction was expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline the values were significantly lower in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls. Later this fraction when expressed per 100 mg dry

injection the cortisone-treated embryos contained more dry matter per g wet weight than the controls and later they contained less dry matter per g wet weight than the controls

**Hydroxyproline-containing fractions** — The contents of free 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen and total hydroxyproline expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline and the total amounts of hydroxyproline per embryo are presented in Table 7. The effect of 100  $\mu\text{g}$  and 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of cortisone acetate on the content of free hydroxyproline is also shown in Fig. 11.

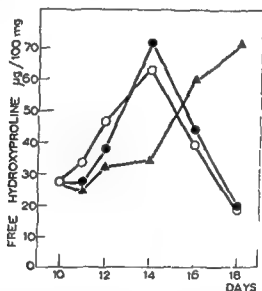


Fig. 11 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate at the age of 10 days on the content of free hydroxyproline in whole embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo. ○ Controls ● 100  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate ▲ 300  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate. In 18 day old embryos only the values of series B are presented. Abscissa: Age of embryos in days.

After the administration of cortisone the content of free hydroxyproline was initially considerably lower in the treated embryos than in the controls both when expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight and when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. This stage was later followed by a second stage in which the content of free hydroxyproline per 100 mg dry weight and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline was higher in the treated embryos than in the controls. The second stage was reached earlier in those embryos that received 100  $\mu\text{g}$  of cortisone acetate than in those embryos that received 300  $\mu\text{g}$ .

The administration of cortisone had no significant effect on the content of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline when expressed per

Table 7 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate at the age of 10 days on the hydroxyproline-containing fractions in whole embryos on different days of development expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo or as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline<sup>4</sup>

Day and series	Group <sup>a</sup>	Hydroxyproline					Total in embryo in $\mu\text{g}$
		Free		1 M NaCl soluble collagen		Total	
		$\frac{\mu\text{g}}{100 \text{ mg}}$	of total	$\frac{\mu\text{g}}{100 \text{ mg}}$	of total	$\frac{\mu\text{g}}{100 \text{ mg}}$	
10 A	Controls	27.6	7.67	37.8	10.72	352	621
11 A	Controls	33.1	7.47	39.4	8.79	445	1260
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>1</sup> 27.1	5.40	38.7	<sup>1</sup> 7.78	<sup>1</sup> 504	1260
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>2</sup> 21.6	<sup>2</sup> 4.80	37.3	<sup>1</sup> 7.27	<sup>1</sup> 516	1290
12 A	Controls	46.4	7.70	50.6	8.40	601	2530
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>1</sup> 37.7	<sup>1</sup> 5.95	50.8	8.00	610	2,880
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>2</sup> 32.1	<sup>2</sup> 4.78	49.9	<sup>1</sup> 7.45	675	2110
	900 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>2</sup> 26.7	<sup>2</sup> 3.60	46.5	<sup>1</sup> 6.22	<sup>1</sup> 752	2130
14 A	Controls	62.7	8.18	65.4	8.53	770	6640
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>1</sup> 72.2	8.52	68.4	7.99	<sup>1</sup> 855	6150
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>2</sup> 34.4	<sup>2</sup> 3.55	66	<sup>1</sup> 7.21	987	<sup>1</sup> 4910
	900 $\mu\text{g}$	<sup>2</sup> 23.4	<sup>2</sup> 2.64	66.8	7.31	938	<sup>1</sup> 3830
16 B	Controls	39.2	4.24	67.2	7.34	919	21420
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	43.8	3.95	<sup>1</sup> 73.3	6.64	<sup>1</sup> 1103	20230
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	60.2	4.81	<sup>1</sup> 82.1	<sup>1</sup> 6.51	<sup>1</sup> 1284	<sup>1</sup> 13870
18 A	Controls	18.1	2.72	61.6	7.42	915	29420
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	58.5	4.13	69.5	4.91	1415	25650
B	Controls	18.1	—	67.4	—	—	—
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	19.6	—	<sup>1</sup> 74.4	—	—	—
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	72.1	—	<sup>1</sup> 76.4	—	—	—

The significance of the differences as compared with the controls is denoted by  $\approx P < 0.05$   $\approx P < 0.01$   $\approx P < 0.001$ . In 18-day-old cortisone treated embryos of series A the significance of the differences is not calculated.

<sup>a</sup> The values for insoluble hydroxyproline and the standard deviations for all values are given in Table 16 in the Appendix.

Dose of cortisone acetate

100 mg dry weight during the first 4 days after the injection. However when this fraction was expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline the values were significantly lower in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls. Later this fraction when expressed per 100 mg dry



weight increased above the values of the controls. This increase was considerably smaller, however, than that of free hydroxyproline and 8 days after the injection the content of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline was still below that of the controls expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline.

The contents of *insoluble* and *total hydroxyproline* were higher in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls when expressed per 100 mg dry weight. But the absolute amounts of insoluble and total hydroxyproline were unchanged or lower than in the controls. When the content of insoluble hydroxyproline was expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline an increase corresponding to the decrease in free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline was observed.

In the content of *peptide hydroxyproline* no significant changes were observed after the administration of cortisone. Since the error of the present method was considerably greater in this fraction than in the other fractions (see p. 32) no small changes possibly occurring in the peptide hydroxyproline would have been detected.

Since the administration of cortisone caused a retardation in the weight gain of the embryos the question arose whether the cortisone treated embryos should be compared with controls of the same weight rather than with controls of the same age. When such a comparison was made it was observed that qualitatively the initial changes were similar to those described above although there were quantitative differences between these two types of comparison. Thus all the changes described above expressed as percentages of the total hydroxyproline appeared still greater in comparisons between embryos of the same weight. The differences between the cortisone treated embryos and the controls in the contents of insoluble and total hydroxyproline expressed per 100 mg dry weight were likewise greater in this than in the previous comparison whereas the differences in the content of free hydroxyproline were smaller but nevertheless statistically significant in some groups of embryos.

*Free proline, free amino nitrogen, total proline and total nitrogen* — The effects of 100  $\mu$ g and 300  $\mu$ g of cortisone acetate on the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen expressed as  $\mu$ g/100 mg dry weight of the embryo are presented in Figs. 12 and 13. The content of *free proline* after administration of cortisone like the content of free hydroxyproline (cf. Fig. 11 p. 60) was initially lower in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls (in 11 day-old embryos after 300  $\mu$ g  $P < 0.05$  in 12 day old embryos after 100  $\mu$ g  $P < 0.01$ ). In contrast to the free hydroxyproline

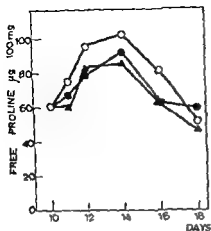


Fig 12

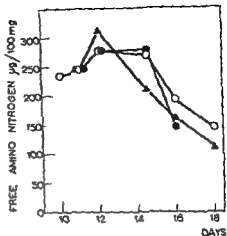


Fig 13

Fig 12 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate at the age of 10 days on the content of free proline in whole embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo ○ Controls ● 100  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate ▲ 300  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate In 18 day-old embryos only the values of series B are presented Abscissa Age of embryos in days

Fig 13 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate at the age of 10 days on the content of free amino nitrogen in whole embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo ○ Controls ● 100  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate ▲ 300  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate In 18-day-old embryos only the values of series A were determined Abscissa Age of embryos in days

however the content of free proline remained lower in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls even during the second stage when the content of free hydroxyproline was higher than in the controls

The content of free amino nitrogen in the cortisone treated embryos did not differ significantly from that in the controls at the age of 11 or 12 days Thereafter the values were significantly lower in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls (at the age of 14 days with 300  $\mu\text{g}$   $P < 0.0$ ) at the age of 16 days with 100  $\mu\text{g}$   $P < 0.01$  with 300  $\mu\text{g}$   $P < 0.00$ )

The administration of cortisone had no effect on the contents of total proline or total nitrogen and therefore these values are not presented in detail

#### *Effect of a single injection at the age of 8 days*

The increase in the content of free hydroxyproline observed in the 18 day old embryos of series A which had received 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of cortisone acetate at the age of 10 days might have been due to a delay in reaching the maximum value observed in the controls at the age of 14 days Therefore in series B

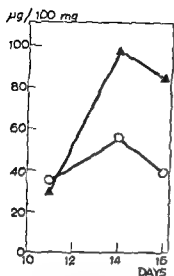


Fig 14

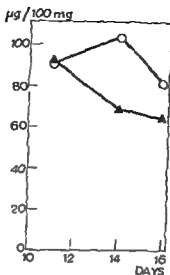


Fig 15

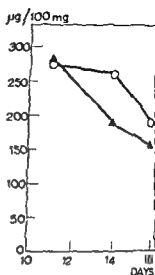


Fig 16

Figs 14 15 and 16 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate at the age of 8 days on the content of free hydroxyproline (Fig 14) free proline (Fig 15) and free amino nitrogen (Fig 16) in whole embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo O Controls  $\Delta$  300  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate Abscissa Age of embryos in days

the effect of a single injection of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of cortisone acetate at the age of 8 days was also investigated

The contents of free hydroxyproline free proline and free amino nitrogen in this experiment are shown in Figs 14 15 and 16 The results indicated that there was a great increase in free hydroxyproline in the cortisone-treated embryos even at the age of 14 days although the controls had a maximum value at this stage of development

In the present experiment as in the experiments in which a single injection of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of cortisone acetate was given at the age of 10 days the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen in the cortisone treated embryos were below those in the controls during the stage when the content of free hydroxyproline was greatly increased

#### EFFECT OF REPEATED INJECTIONS

The foregoing experiments suggested that the true effect of cortisone would be to decrease the contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline compared with the controls and that the later increases in the free hydroxyproline above the values of the controls are secondary Therefore the effect of repeated administration of cortisone during

a period of 8 days was studied in series C. The administration of cortisone was begun at the age of 8 days and the analysis was made at 16 days.

Cortisone was given in amounts depending on the weights of the control embryos which were known from the earlier experiments. The following daily weights were taken as a basis for the dosage of cortisone (age in days — weight in grams): 8—10, 9—15, 10—25, 11—33, 12—5, 13—7, 14—9 and 15—11. The daily doses of cortisone acetate used were 3  $\mu\text{g/g}$ , 10  $\mu\text{g/g}$  and 30  $\mu\text{g/g}$ . The corresponding total doses given during 8 days were thus 121  $\mu\text{g}$ , 403  $\mu\text{g}$  and 1210  $\mu\text{g}$ . In addition to these groups one group received injections of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  at the ages of 8, 11 and 14 days and one group only one injection of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  at the age of 8 days. The controls received daily injections of 0.1 ml of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride.

**Weights of the embryos** — The number of embryos in each group, the weights of the embryos and their relative dry weights are presented in Table 8. Even the smallest dose of cortisone used retarded the weight gain.

Table 8. Effect of repeated injections of cortisone acetate on the wet weights and relative dry weights of the embryos at the age of 16 days.

Group	Number of embryos	Wet weight g $\pm$ S.D.	Relative dry wt. mg/g wet wt.
Controls	8	13.40 $\pm$ 1.51	162 $\pm$ 8
3 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8—15	6	<sup>1</sup> 11.84 $\pm$ 0.85	157 $\pm$ 13
10 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8—15	7	<sup>2</sup> 9.20 $\pm$ 1.17	<sup>1</sup> 157 $\pm$ 7
30 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8—15	6	<sup>2</sup> 7.10 $\pm$ 0.73	<sup>2</sup> 105 $\pm$ 12
300 $\mu\text{g}$ 8, 11, 14	5	<sup>2</sup> 5.83 $\pm$ 0.40	<sup>2</sup> 111 $\pm$ 10
300 $\mu\text{g}$ 8	6	<sup>2</sup> 7.10 $\pm$ 1.47	<sup>2</sup> 112 $\pm$ 14

The significance of the differences as compared with the controls is denoted by <sup>1</sup> =  $P < 0.05$ , <sup>2</sup> =  $P < 0.01$ , <sup>3</sup> =  $P < 0.001$ .

<sup>4</sup> Dose of cortisone acetate and age of embryos in days when the cortisone was administered.

of the embryos. In addition the cortisone treated embryos contained more water than the controls of the same age but especially those embryos that received daily injections of 3  $\mu\text{g/g}$  or 10  $\mu\text{g/g}$  of cortisone acetate contained less water than untreated embryos of the same weight usually contain.

**Hydroxyproline containing fractions** — The contents of free 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen and total hydroxyproline expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100$  mg dry weight of the embryo and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline

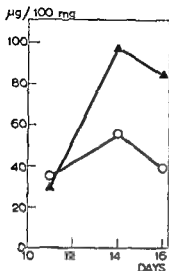


Fig 14

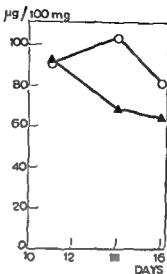


Fig 15

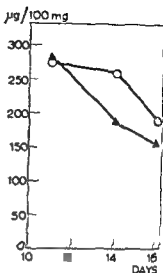


Fig 16

Figs 14 15 and 16 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate at the age of 8 days on the content of free hydroxyproline (Fig 14) free proline (Fig 15) and free amino nitrogen (Fig 16) in whole embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo.  $\circ$  Controls  $\blacktriangle$  300  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate. Abscissa Age of embryos in days

the effect of a single injection of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of cortisone acetate at the age of 8 days was also investigated

The contents of free hydroxyproline free proline and free amino nitrogen in this experiment are shown in Figs 14 15 and 16. The results indicated that there was a great increase in free hydroxyproline in the cortisone treated embryos even at the age of 14 days although the controls had a maximum value at this stage of development.

In the present experiment as in the experiments in which a single injection of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  of cortisone acetate was given at the age of 10 days the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen in the cortisone-treated embryos were below those in the controls during the stage when the content of free hydroxyproline was greatly increased.

#### EFFECT OF REPEATED INJECTIONS

The foregoing experiments suggested that the true effect of cortisone would be to decrease the contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline compared with the controls, and that the later increases in the free hydroxyproline above the values of the controls are secondary. Therefore the effect of repeated administration of cortisone during

Table 10 Effect of repeated injections of cortisone acetate on the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen in whole embryos at the age of 16 days expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight of the embryo

Group <sup>1</sup>	Free proline mean $\pm$ S.D.	Free amino-N mean $\pm$ S.D.
Controls	60.9 $\pm$ 12.8	200 $\pm$ 24
3 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8-15	49.0 $\pm$ 3.8	167 $\pm$ 22
10 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8-15	43.9 $\pm$ 4.7	159 $\pm$ 18
30 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8-15	38.7 $\pm$ 3.8	160 $\pm$ 14
300 $\mu\text{g}$ 8 11 14	34.5 $\pm$ 5.4	149 $\pm$ 14
300 $\mu\text{g}$ 8	48.3 $\pm$ 6.5	181 $\pm$ 29

The significance of the differences as compared with the controls is denoted by <sup>1</sup> =  $P < 0.05$  \* =  $P < 0.01$

<sup>2</sup> Dose of cortisone acetate and age of embryos in days when the cortisone was administered

**Free proline free amino nitrogen total proline and total nitrogen** — In all the cortisone treated groups the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen were lower than in the controls (Table 10). In those groups in which the content of free hydroxyproline was below that of the controls the percentage change in the content of free proline compared with the controls was of the same magnitude as the change in free hydroxyproline except in those groups that received 10  $\mu\text{g/g}$  or 30  $\mu\text{g/g}$  daily. In these groups the change in free hydroxyproline was greater than that in free proline. The percentage change in free amino nitrogen was smaller than the change in free hydroxyproline in all groups in which the content of free hydroxyproline was lower than in the controls.

The mean content of total proline expressed per 100 mg dry weight in the group receiving a daily dose of 30  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate per g was 9 per cent lower than in the controls ( $P < 0.05$ ) and in the group receiving 3 injections of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate 8 per cent lower ( $P < 0.05$ ). In the other groups this value was within  $\pm 2$  per cent of the control value.

The content of total nitrogen expressed in relation to the dry weight of the embryo did not differ significantly from that of the controls in any group.

#### CONTENT OF HYDROXYPROLINE IN THE FRACTIONS OF THE SKIN AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF CORTISONE

To determine whether the changes observed in the hydroxyproline-containing fractions in whole embryos were similar to those found in tissues rich in collagen the effect of cortisone on the hydroxyproline-containing

Table 10 Effect of repeated injections of cortisone acetate on the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen in whole embryos at the age of 10 days expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight  
c) the embryos

Group <sup>a</sup>	Free proline mean $\pm$ S D	Free amino N mean $\pm$ S D
Controls	609 $\pm$ 178	200 $\pm$ 24
3 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8-15	420 $\pm$ 38	167 $\pm$ 22
10 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8-15	439 $\pm$ 42	159 $\pm$ 18
30 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8-15	387 $\pm$ 38	160 $\pm$ 14
300 $\mu\text{g}$ 8-11-14	375 $\pm$ 54	143 $\pm$ 14
300 $\mu\text{g}$ 8	487 $\pm$ 65	181 $\pm$ 29

The significance of the differences as compared with the controls is denoted by  $\ast P < 0.05$   $\ast\ast P < 0.01$

<sup>a</sup> Dose of cortisone acetate and age of embryos in days when the cortisone was administered

**Free proline free amino nitrogen total proline and total nitrogen** — In all the cortisone treated groups the contents of free proline and free amino nitrogen were lower than in the controls (Table 10). In those groups in which the content of free hydroxyproline was below that of the controls the percentage change in the content of free proline compared with the controls was of the same magnitude as the change in free hydroxyproline except in those groups that received 10  $\mu\text{g/g}$  or 30  $\mu\text{g/g}$  daily. In these groups the change in free hydroxyproline was greater than that in free proline. The percentage change in free amino nitrogen was smaller than the change in free hydroxyproline in all groups in which the content of free hydroxyproline was lower than in the controls.

The mean content of total proline expressed per 100 mg dry weight in the group receiving a daily dose of 30  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate per g was 9 per cent lower than in the controls ( $P < 0.01$ ) and in the group receiving 3 injections of 300  $\mu\text{g}$  cortisone acetate 8 per cent lower ( $P < 0.05$ ). In the other groups this value was within  $\pm 2$  per cent of the control value.

The content of total nitrogen expressed in relation to the dry weight of the embryo did not differ significantly from that of the controls in any group.

#### CONTENT OF HYDROXYPROLINE IN THE FRACTIONS OF THE SKIN AFTER ADMINISTRATION OF CORTISONE

To determine whether the changes observed in the hydroxyproline containing fractions in whole embryos were similar to those found in tissues rich in collagen the effect of cortisone on the hydroxyproline-containing

fractions of the skin was studied. One group of embryos received 3  $\mu$ g cortisone acetate per g body weight daily between days 8 and 15 and another group 300  $\mu$ g of cortisone acetate as a single injection at the age of 15 days. Controls received daily injections of 0.1 ml of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride between days 8 and 15.

The preparation of the skin samples was begun 3 hours before the age of 16 days in the following order: first pooled sample of the embryos that received 3  $\mu$ g/g daily; first pooled sample of controls; first pooled sample of the embryos that received 300  $\mu$ g at the age of 15 days; second pooled sample of the embryos that received 3  $\mu$ g/g daily; and so forth. The preparation of this series, containing three pooled samples in each group, took over 13 hours. Thus the preparation of the third pooled sample was begun in each group about 9 hours after the first sample of the group.

**Weights of the embryos** — The number of embryos in each pooled sample was 4–6. The mean weights of the embryos in each group and the mean relative dry weights of the pooled skin samples and their range are given in Table 11. In both cortisone-treated groups the mean weights of the embryos were below those of the controls, but the difference between the group that received 300  $\mu$ g of cortisone acetate and the controls was very small.

Table 11. Effect of cortisone acetate on the weights of the embryos and on the relative dry weights of the pooled skin samples of 16-day-old embryos in the experiments with the skin<sup>1</sup>

Group <sup>2</sup>	Number of embryos	Wt. of embryos g	Relative dry wt. of the pooled skin sample <sup>3</sup>
Controls	14	14.69	128 (116–144)
3 $\mu$ g/g 8–15	15	11.67	121 (113–132)
300 $\mu$ g 15	16	14.06	135 (120–141)

<sup>1</sup> Three pooled samples in each group; skin of 4–6 embryos in each pooled sample.

<sup>2</sup>  $\mu$ g/g wet wt., mean and range.

<sup>3</sup> Dose of cortisone acetate and age of embryos in days when it was administered.

**Hydroxyproline-containing fractions** — The contents of free peptide in 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen-insoluble and total hydroxyproline in each sample, expressed both as  $\mu$ g/100 mg dry weight of the skin and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline, are given in Table 12. Both modes of administration of cortisone resulted in changes similar to those observed in whole embryos in the following respects. The contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline were lower than in the controls, both when expressed as  $\mu$ g/100 mg dry weight of the skin and when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline, and the



Table 1\* Effect of cortisone acetate on hydroxyproline-containing fractions of the pooled skin samples of 16-day-old embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline

Group	No.	Hydroxyproline								
		Free		Peptide		1 M NaCl soluble collagen		Insoluble		Total
		$\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$	% of total	$\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$	% of total	$\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$	% of total	$\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$	% of total	$\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$
Controls	1	36.9	1.81	4.8	0.24	134	6.57	1860	91.4	2040
	2	34.5	1.73	2.9	0.15	131	6.55	1870	91.5	1990
	3	30.0	1.61	6.4	0.34	170	6.72	1700	91.3	1860
	Mean	33.8	1.72	4.7	0.24	130	6.62	1790	91.4	1960
3 $\mu\text{g/g}$ 8-15	1	23.0	1.46	2.1	0.13	71.6	4.53	1480	93.9	1580
	2	26.7	1.55	4.1	0.24	7.8	4.57	1610	93.7	1720
	3	22.9	1.49	4.1	0.27	2.3	4.70	1440	93.6	1540
	Mean	24.2	1.50	3.4	0.21	73.9	4.58	1510	93.7	1610
300 $\mu\text{g}$ 15	1	20.4	1.19	2.8	0.16	73.7	4.31	1610	91.3	1710
	2	14.2	0.82	2.4	0.14	66.3	3.84	1600	90.2	1730
	3	12.6	0.72	3.3	0.19	60.9	3.76	1670	90.3	1750
	Mean	15.7	0.91	2.8	0.16	63.6	3.97	1640	91.9	1730

\*No. of pooled sample skin of 4-6 embryos in each

Dose of cortisone acetate and days on which it was administered

content of insoluble hydroxyproline was higher than in the controls when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. The peptide hydroxyproline did not show any changes that could be regarded as significant although the mean values for this fraction were lower than in the controls after the administration of cortisone whether expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight or as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. In contrast to the changes observed in whole embryos the contents of insoluble and total hydroxyproline in the skin were lower in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls when expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin.

The content of citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline decreased from the value of 3.3 (3.0-3.5)  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin in the controls to the value of 1.1 (0.9-1.8)  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  in the group that received 3  $\mu\text{g/g}$  daily and to the value of 1.6 (1.0-2.2)  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  in the group that received 300  $\mu\text{g}$  as a single injection.

fractions of the skin was studied. One group of embryos received 3  $\mu$ g cortisone acetate per g body weight daily between days 8 and 15 and another group 300  $\mu$ g of cortisone acetate as a single injection at the age of 15 days. Controls received daily injections of 0.1 ml of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride between days 8 and 15.

The preparation of the skin samples was begun 8 hours before the age of 16 days in the following order: first pooled sample of the embryos that received 3  $\mu$ g/g daily, first pooled sample of controls, first pooled sample of the embryos that received 300  $\mu$ g at the age of 15 days, second pooled sample of the embryos that received 3  $\mu$ g/g daily and so forth. The preparation of this series containing three pooled samples in each group took over 13 hours. Thus the preparation of the third pooled sample was begun in each group about 9 hours after the first sample of the group.

*Weights of the embryos* — The number of embryos in each pooled sample was 4–6. The mean weights of the embryos in each group and the mean relative dry weights of the pooled skin samples and their range are given in Table 11. In both cortisone treated groups the mean weights of the embryos were below those of the controls but the difference between the group that received 300  $\mu$ g of cortisone acetate and the controls was very small.

Table 11 *Effect of cortisone acetate on the weights of the embryos and on the relative dry weights of the pooled skin samples of 16 day old embryos in the experiments with the skin*<sup>1</sup>

Group <sup>2</sup>	Number of embryos	Wt. of embryos g	Relative dry wt of the pooled skin sample <sup>3</sup>
Controls	11	14.69	129 (116–144)
3 $\mu$ g/g 8–15	15	11.67	121 (113–132)
300 $\mu$ g 15	11	14.06	135 (129–141)

<sup>1</sup> Three pooled samples in each group, skin of 4–6 embryos in each pooled sample.

<sup>2</sup> mg/g wet wt. mean and range.

<sup>3</sup> Dose of cortisone acetate and age of embryos in days when it was administered.

*Hydroxyproline containing fractions* — The contents of free peptide 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen insoluble and total hydroxyproline in each sample expressed both as  $\mu$ g/100 mg dry weight of the skin and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline are given in Table 12. Both modes of administration of cortisone resulted in changes similar to those observed in whole embryos in the following respects. The contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline were lower than in the controls both when expressed as  $\mu$ g/100 mg dry weight of the skin and when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline and the

Table 1 Effect of cortisone aceto on hydroxyproline-containing fractions of the pooled skin samples of 16-day old embryos expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin and as  $\%$  percentage of the total hydroxyproline

Group	No.	Hydroxyproline									
		Free		Peptide		1 M NaCl soluble collagen		Insoluble		Total	
		$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg	of total	$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg	of total	$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg	% of total	$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg	of total	$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg	
Controls	1	36.9	1.81	4.8	0.24	134	6.57	1860	91.4	2040	
	2	31.5	1.73	2.9	0.15	131	6.58	1870	91.5	1990	
	3	30.0	1.61	6.4	0.34	125	6.72	1700	91.3	1860	
	Mean	32.8	1.72	4.7	0.24	130	6.62	1860	91.4	1960	
3 $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$ 1	1	23.0	1.46	2.1	0.13	71.6	4.53	1480	93.9	1580	
	2	26.7	1.55	4.1	0.21	77.8	4.57	1610	93.7	1720	
	3	22.9	1.40	4.1	0.27	72.3	4.70	1440	93.8	1540	
	Mean	24.2	1.50	3.4	0.21	73.9	4.60	1510	93.7	1610	
300 $\mu\text{g}$ 15	1	0.4	1.19	2.8	0.16	73.7	4.31	1610	94.3	1710	
	2	14.2	0.87	2.4	0.14	66.3	3.81	1630	95.2	1730	
	3	12.6	0.72	3.3	0.19	6.9	3.76	16.0	95.3	1750	
	Mean	12.4	0.91	2.8	0.15	68.6	3.97	1640	94.9	1730	

No. = pooled sample skin of 4-6 embryos in each

\* Dose of cortisone acetate and days on which it was administered

content of insoluble hydroxyproline was higher than in the controls when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. The peptide hydroxyproline did not show any changes that could be regarded as significant although the mean values for this fraction were lower than in the controls after the administration of cortisone whether expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight or as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. In contrast to the changes observed in whole embryos, the contents of insoluble and total hydroxyproline in the skin were lower in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls when expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin.

The content of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline decreased from the value of 3.3 (3.0-3.5)  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  dry weight of the skin in the controls to the value of 1.4 (0.9-1.8)  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  in the group that received 3  $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$  daily and to the value of 1.6 (1.0-2.2)  $\mu\text{g}/100 \text{ mg}$  in the group that received 300  $\mu\text{g}$  as a single injection.

Table 13 *Effect of cortisone acetate on free proline free amino nitrogen total proline and total nitrogen of the skin of 16 day old embryos expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the skin*

Group <sup>1</sup>	Free proline μg/100 mg	Free amino N μg/100 mg	Total proline μg/100 mg	Total N mg/100 mg
Controls	69.4	189	4370	10.7
3 μg/g 8—15	55.8	157	4010	10.4
300 μg 15	67.3	167	4200	10.3

<sup>1</sup> Dose of cortisone acetate and days on which it was administered

*Free proline free amino nitrogen total proline and total nitrogen* — Although these values were slightly lower in the cortisone-treated embryos than in the controls the changes in all cases were smaller than the corresponding changes in hydroxyproline (Table 13)

## DISCUSSION

Cortisone at least when administered in large doses is capable of inhibiting the formation of new collagen (for ref see pp 13—15). In the foregoing experiments the effect of this inhibition on the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions was studied in whole chick embryos and in the skin of the embryos. Since all doses of cortisone used in the present study retarded the weight gain of the embryos it seems evident that the changes observed concern the pharmacological action rather than the physiological action of cortisone on collagen formation. It is noteworthy however that a dose of 3 μg cortisone acetate daily per g wet weight of the embryo although it resulted in changes qualitatively similar to those produced by larger doses caused only a slight inhibition in the weight gain especially in the experiments with whole embryos.

The results obtained in the present study were complicated by the fact that in the experiments with whole embryos the contents of total and insoluble hydroxyproline when expressed per unit dry weight of the embryo were higher in the cortisone-treated embryos than in the controls. A similar change has also been found by CHVATIN (1959) in the content of total hydroxyproline after the administration of 1 mg of cortisone acetate to 8-day old chick embryos. However he called attention to the fact that the absolute amount of hydroxyproline was lower in the cortisone-treated embryos than in the controls although its concentration was higher. He therefore suggested that the synthesis of some other substances was inhibited

even more than the synthesis of collagen which would result in an increased concentration of collagen

The values calculated in the present study for the amounts of total and insoluble hydroxyproline per embryo were likewise lower than in the controls or not changed by the administration of cortisone. In addition in the skin of the embryos even the contents of total and insoluble hydroxyproline expressed per unit dry weight of the skin were lower than in the controls after the administration of cortisone although the other effects of cortisone were similar to those in whole embryos. Therefore it seems probable that the above described suggestion of CHAPIL (1959) is correct and that the changes observed in the present study may be discussed in the light of inhibited collagen formation.

The earlier investigations concerning the effect of cortisone on the content of free hydroxyproline in the embryos indicated that the content of free hydroxyproline was greatly increased in chick embryos 6 to 10 days after administration of 1 mg of cortisone acetate to 8-day-old embryos (ROSENTHAL, KARNOWSKI and FRANKEL 1951; CHAPIL 1959) but decreased in newborn rats after the administration of hydrocortisone to pregnant rats or directly to the newborn young (CHAPIL 1958). The present study indicates that the reason for this discrepancy was that the time factor was not taken into consideration in the earlier investigations with chick embryos. After administration of cortisone as a single dose or repeatedly during a period of eight days the content of free hydroxyproline was initially lower in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls both when expressed per unit dry weight of the embryo or of the skin and when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. When cortisone was administered as a single injection this first stage was followed by a second stage during which the content of free hydroxyproline was higher in the cortisone-treated embryos than in the controls both when expressed per unit dry weight and when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. The second stage was reached earlier in those embryos that received a smaller dose of cortisone than in those that received a larger dose.

From the present results it seems likely that the true effect of cortisone was to decrease the content of free hydroxyproline compared with the controls and that the increase observed later after a single injection was a secondary one. It is possible that the secondary effect was due to qualitative changes in the synthesis or stability of collagen after the massive dose of exogenous cortisone was metabolized. Since large doses of cortisone reduce the secretory activity of the adrenal cortex it is possible that adrenocortical hypofunction contributed to the secondary effect observed. The present

results indicate that considerable danger attends the interpretation of data obtained in studies in which a substance is administered to chick embryos as a single injection and only one measurement is made some days later since secondary effects may be observed and taken for primary ones

The changes in the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline were on the whole similar to the changes in the free hydroxyproline. The content of this fraction was initially lower in the treated embryos than in the controls both after the administration of cortisone as a single injection and after repeated administration of cortisone during eight days. The change in free hydroxyproline was as a rule greater than that in the 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline and this was especially the case after administration of cortisone as a single massive dose. Earlier investigations indicated a decrease in the contents of alkali soluble and neutral salt soluble collagens in the skin of guinea-pigs or rats after the administration of hydrocortisone or cortisone (SIUKO SÄVELÄ and KULONEN 1959, SAKATA 1960 a, GUNTHER and CARSTEN 1961, SETHI, RAMEY and HOUGH 1961). Thus the effect of cortisone on the content of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline observed in the present study in whole embryos and in the skin was similar to that described earlier in more mature connective tissue.

Earlier investigations concerning the effect of hydrocortisone or cortisone on the content of citrate soluble collagen in the skin of guinea pigs or rats have yielded conflicting results: for both increased values (SIUKO SÄVELÄ and KULONEN 1959, SETHI, RAMEY and HOUGH 1961) and decreased values (SAKATA 1960 b, GUNTHER and CARSTEN 1961, SMITH 1962 a) have been reported. In the investigation of SAKATA (1960 a) in which the citrate-soluble collagen was found to have decreased, the decrease in the other fractions was even greater and thus there was a relative increase in citrate-soluble collagen. Evidently one reason for the conflicting results in the literature concerning the content of citrate-soluble collagen is that different fractions are termed citrate-soluble collagen by different investigators because the preliminary extraction of alkali soluble or neutral salt soluble collagen has been carried out with solutions of different ionic strengths. In addition there are differences due to the method of homogenization of the skin samples, to the ages of the animals and to the further purification of the fractions termed citrate soluble collagen. The content of citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline was very low in chick embryos. Therefore it cannot be established whether the decrease observed in the present study after the administration of cortisone really occurred in the citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline or whether it was due to contamination of this fraction with

small amounts of hydroxyproline from the 1 M sodium chloride soluble fraction. Nevertheless it is apparent that there was no increase in the citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline in the present investigation.

The content of peptide hydroxyproline showed no significant changes either in whole embryos or in the skin after the administration of cortisone. The analytical error was considerably greater in this fraction than in the other fractions and small changes would thus not have been detected. At all events it seems evident that no increase occurred in this fraction.

Different opinions have been voiced in the literature as to the mode of the inhibitory action of cortisone on collagen formation. CHAPLIN (1958, 1959) suggested that in rat and chick embryos cortisone inhibited hydroxyproline synthesis possibly during the hydroxylation of proline. Nevertheless when rat cartilage was incubated *in vitro* with  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline neither the amount nor the labelling of free hydroxyproline in the medium was inhibited by cortisone although the incorporation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline into cartilage bound hydroxyproline was significantly reduced (DALGHADAY and MARITZ 1962 b). The finding that the contents of alkali soluble and neutral salt-soluble collagens decreased in the skin of guinea pigs and rats after administration of hydrocortisone or cortisone (SIUKO SÄVELÄ and HÄLLÖNEN 1959, SAKATA 1960 a, SETHI, RAMEY and HOUCK 1961) suggests inhibition of the formation of collagen before the synthesis of soluble collagens. In agreement with this the experiments of MAZUROV and OREHOVIĆ (1960) with  $^{14}\text{C}$  glycine indicated that the synthesis of citrate soluble procollagen was greatly reduced after the administration of cortisone. SAKATA (1960 a) regarded it as possible that cortisone not only suppressed the synthesis of collagen but also promoted its breakdown since the content of citrate soluble collagen expressed as a percentage of total collagen was increased in his experiments. GLANTHER and CARSTEN (1961) who found that the contents of soluble collagens were increased after adrenalectomy suggested that this effect was possibly due to altered stability of the collagen fibrils caused by changes in the mucopolysaccharides of the ground substance of the connective tissue.

The changes observed in the present investigation suggest an inhibition of collagen formation at an early stage by cortisone. Such an inhibition would cause a decreased content of soluble collagens and also of free hydroxyproline if the latter is derived largely from the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline as suggested earlier in this study. It is possible that an altered stability of collagen fibres caused by cortisone contributed to the changes observed. It seems unlikely that cortisone also increased the catabolism of collagen primarily for the content of free hydroxyproline was

results indicate that considerable danger attends the interpretation of data obtained in studies in which a substance is administered to chick embryos as a single injection and only one measurement is made some days later since secondary effects may be observed and taken for primary ones

The changes in the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline were on the whole similar to the changes in the free hydroxyproline. The content of this fraction was initially lower in the treated embryos than in the controls both after the administration of cortisone as a single injection and after repeated administration of cortisone during eight days. The change in free hydroxyproline was as a rule greater than that in the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline and this was especially the case after administration of cortisone as a single massive dose. Earlier investigations indicated a decrease in the contents of alkali soluble and neutral salt-soluble collagens in the skin of guinea pigs or rats after the administration of hydrocortisone or cortisone (SIUKO SÄVELA and KULONEN 1959, SAKATA 1960a, GUNTHER and CARSTEN 1961, SETHI, RAMAY and HOUCK 1961). Thus the effect of cortisone on the content of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline observed in the present study in whole embryos and in the skin was similar to that described earlier in more mature connective tissue.

Earlier investigations concerning the effect of hydrocortisone or cortisone on the content of citrate-soluble collagen in the skin of guinea pigs or rats have yielded conflicting results for both increased values (SIUKO SÄVELA and KULONEN 1959, SETHI, RAMAY and HOUCK 1961) and decreased values (SAKATA 1960, GUNTHER and CARSTEN 1961, SMITH 1962) have been reported. In the investigation of SAKATA (1960) in which the citrate-soluble collagen was found to have decreased the decrease in the other fractions was even greater and thus there was a relative increase in citrate-soluble collagen. Evidently one reason for the conflicting results in the literature concerning the content of citrate-soluble collagen is that different fractions are termed citrate-soluble collagen by different investigators because the preliminary extraction of alkali soluble or neutral salt soluble collagen has been carried out with solutions of different ionic strengths. In addition there are differences due to the method of homogenization of the skin samples, to the ages of the animals and to the further purification of the fractions termed citrate-soluble collagen. The content of citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline was very low in chick embryos. Therefore it cannot be established whether the decrease observed in the present study after the administration of cortisone really occurred in the citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline or whether it was due to contamination of this fraction with



## SUMMARY

The purpose of the present investigation was to make a simultaneous study of the low molecular and macromolecular hydroxyproline-containing fractions during the formation of collagen in developing chick embryos. In addition the effect of administration of cortisone on the contents of these fractions was studied.

A procedure suitable for the isolation of the various hydroxyproline containing fractions from the same tissue sample was worked out. The following fractions were studied: 1) free hydroxyproline; 2) peptide hydroxyproline soluble in 80 per cent ethanol; 3) 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline; insoluble in 80 per cent ethanol; 4) citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline; insoluble in 1 M sodium chloride; 5) insoluble hydroxyproline; 6) total hydroxyproline. By the methods used for the determination of hydroxyproline optimum recoveries and specific colour reactions were obtained in all the fractions in which they were used.

The experiments carried out to test the reliability of the fractionation procedure showed that neither losses of hydroxyproline nor artificial formation of free hydroxyproline occurred during the procedure. In addition the amount of free hydroxyproline extracted was independent of the ionic strength of the sodium chloride solution used.

In the first part of the investigation the contents of the various fractions were determined in normal whole embryos between the ages of 2<sup>1</sup> and 20 days and in the skin of embryos between the ages of 12 and 20 days. The values for hydroxyproline in the various fractions were expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the embryo or of the skin and as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. In addition in this part experiments are reported in which the specific activities of the hydroxyproline in some of the fractions were studied after the administration of <sup>14</sup>C proline.

All the fractions investigated except citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline were present in the embryo after an incubation period of as little as 2<sup>1</sup> days. At this stage of development the content of total hydroxy

decreased. It is not possible to establish whether the inhibition was due to a direct action of cortisone on the fibroblasts or whether it was caused indirectly by a decrease in the amount of amino acids available for the synthesis of collagen. The latter alternative cannot be excluded because there was often some decrease in the free proline and free amino nitrogen observed after the administration of cortisone. Neither is it possible to decide whether the effects of large doses of cortisone on the secretory activity of other endocrine glands contributed to the changes observed.

Both in this part of the investigation and in the preceding part the changes in the hydroxyproline containing fractions were similar in whole embryos and in the skin with but a few slight exceptions. Thus it seems probable that whole embryos can be used for investigations on the formation of collagen in chick embryos. The fact that after administration of cortisone the content of total hydroxyproline was higher in whole embryos than in the controls but lower in the skin of the embryos than in the controls when expressed per unit dry weight indicates that there may be difficulty in selecting a basis for the expression of the changes observed. This difficulty may be partly avoided by expressing the fractions as percentages of the total hydroxyproline. The use of whole embryos is preferable to the use of the skin, since the preparation of the skin of the embryos is troublesome and time consuming.

In the last part of the investigation the effect of cortisone on the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions was studied in whole embryos and in the skin of the embryos

After the administration of cortisone as a single injection or repeatedly during a period of eight days the contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline were lower in the treated embryos than in the controls both when expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the embryo or of the skin and when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. When the cortisone was administered as a single injection a second stage followed. During this the contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline expressed per 100 mg dry weight and the content of free hydroxyproline expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline were higher in the cortisone-treated embryos than in the controls.

The contents of peptide and citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline did not show appreciable changes after the administration of cortisone.

The contents of insoluble and total hydroxyproline in whole embryos were higher after the administration of cortisone than in the controls when expressed per 100 mg dry weight but their absolute amounts per embryo were lower than in the controls or unchanged. In the skin of the embryos the contents of insoluble and total hydroxyproline were lower in the cortisone-treated embryos than in the controls even when expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the skin. The relative content of insoluble hydroxyproline expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline was higher in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls.

To study the specificity of the changes in hydroxyproline of normal and cortisone treated embryos the contents of free proline, free amino nitrogen, total proline and total nitrogen were determined in the same embryos as the values for hydroxyproline.

In the discussion which is divided into two parts one appearing after each of the two principal parts of the investigation special attention was paid to the significance of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions in the metabolism of collagen during embryonic development in chicks.

proline was 39.5  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight whereas before incubation in hydrolysed egg yolk it was considerably less than 2  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  and in egg white considerably less than 5  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  dry weight.

The content of total hydroxyproline per 100 mg dry weight increased continuously during embryonic development. The increase was about 27-fold between the ages of 2½ and 20 days in whole embryos and about 10-fold between the ages of 12 and 20 days in the skin. In the case of insoluble hydroxyproline the corresponding values were still greater.

The relative content of insoluble hydroxyproline was 51.5 per cent of the total hydroxyproline in 2½-day-old embryos and had increased to the value of 92.1 per cent in 20-day-old embryos. In the skin of the embryo the corresponding values were 67.4 per cent in 12-day-old embryos and 96.1 per cent in 20-day-old embryos.

The contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline showed a maximum value at the age of 14 days when expressed per 100 mg dry weight except the 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline in the skin, the maximum value of which was reached at the age of 16 days. After the maximum a rapid decrease occurred in the content of free hydroxyproline whereas the content of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline decreased only slightly. The values for free hydroxyproline were 6.8  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  in 2½-day-old, 62.3  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  in 14-day-old and 16.4  $\mu\text{g}/100\text{ mg}$  in 20-day-old embryos. Even the absolute amount of free hydroxyproline in the embryo decreased after the 16th day of development. Free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline formed a considerable part of the total hydroxyproline during the early stages of development and a marked decrease in the relative contents of these fractions occurred during development.

Throughout embryonic development the contents of peptide hydroxyproline and citrate-soluble collagen hydroxyproline were very low both in whole embryos and in the skin.

When  $^{14}\text{C}$ -proline was administered to 11-day-old embryos the specific activity of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline showed a maximum value as little as 3 hours after isotope administration. During the first 12 hours the specific activity of free hydroxyproline was considerably lower than that of 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline but higher than that of insoluble hydroxyproline. The specific activities of all the fractions decreased towards the end of the 30-hour observation period. However, the decrease in the specific activity of insoluble hydroxyproline was so small that it was mainly due to the synthesis of new unlabelled hydroxyproline.

In the last part of the investigation the effect of cortisone on the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions was studied in whole embryos and in the skin of the embryos

After the administration of cortisone as a single injection or repeatedly during a period of eight days the contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen hydroxyproline were lower in the treated embryos than in the controls both when expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the embryo or of the skin and when expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline. When the cortisone was administered as a single injection a second stage followed. During this the contents of free and 1 M sodium chloride-soluble collagen hydroxyproline expressed per 100 mg dry weight and the content of free hydroxyproline expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline were higher in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls.

The contents of peptide and citrate soluble collagen hydroxyproline did not show appreciable changes after the administration of cortisone.

The contents of insoluble and total hydroxyproline in whole embryos were higher after the administration of cortisone than in the controls when expressed per 100 mg dry weight but their absolute amounts per embryo were lower than in the controls or unchanged. In the skin of the embryos the contents of insoluble and total hydroxyproline were lower in the cortisone-treated embryos than in the controls even when expressed per 100 mg dry weight of the skin. The relative content of insoluble hydroxyproline expressed as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline was higher in the cortisone treated embryos than in the controls.

To study the specificity of the changes in hydroxyproline of normal and cortisone treated embryos the contents of free proline, free amino nitrogen, total proline and total nitrogen were determined in the same embryos as the values for hydroxyproline.

In the discussion which is divided into two parts, one appearing after each of the two principal parts of the investigation, special attention was paid to the significance of the various hydroxyproline-containing fractions in the metabolism of collagen during embryonic development in chicks.

## REFERENCES

- ALTCEIT K A J HODGE and F O SCHMITT Gamma tropocollagen a reversibly denaturable collagen macromolecule *Proc nat Acad Sci (Wash)* 1961 47 1914-1924
- ASBOP HANSEN G Hormonal effects on connective tissue *J Physiol Res* 1958 35 410-462
- ASBOP HANSEN C Endocrine control of connective tissue *Amer J Med* 1959 6 470-484
- ATKINSON R M I JENKINS I G TOMICH and F A WOOLLETT The effects of some anti inflammatory substances on carrageenin induced granulomata *J Endocr* 1962 25 87-93
- BAILY I The biochemistry of lungs in relation to silicosis I The amino acid content of normal guinea pig lung tissue *Arch Biochem* 1960 87 144-148
- BAKERMAN S Quantitative extraction of acid soluble human skin collagen with age *Nature (Lond)* 1962 196 375-376
- BANCROFT H Introduction to Biostatistics New York Hoeber Harper 1957 pp 210
- BANFIELD W G The solubility and swelling of collagen in dilute acid with age variations in man *Anat Rec* 1952 114 157-171
- BANFIELD W G Effect of growth hormone on acetic acid extractable collagen of hamster skin *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1958 9 309-312
- BATES W K J MCGOWAN and R V PALMACE Influence of the parathyroids on plasma hydroxyproline levels *Endocrinology* 1962 71 189-195
- BAFFETA I V I BRADON and M I NIMMI Effects of hormone administration on collagen biosynthesis in the rat *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1962 110 294-297
- BENTLEY J P and D S JACKSON *In vivo* incorporation of labeled amino acids during early stages of collagen biosynthesis *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1963 10 271-276
- BOLOGNANI L and I V PONSATI Extractable collagen in the fracture callus of normal and aminoacetoneitrile treated rats *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1962 105 509-510
- BOUCKA R J and N I NOBLE Metabolism of collagen Appearance and disappearance of  $^{14}\text{C}$  hydroxylysine in rat connective tissue *Biochem J* 1961 80 148-151
- BOUCKA R J N I NOBLE K Y T KAO and H R ILDIN The effects of age sex and race upon the acetic acid fractions of collagen *J Geront* 1958 13 2-9

- BOLCEK H J N L NOBLE and J F WOESSNER JR Properties of fibroblasts in Connective Tissue Thrombosis and Atherosclerosis Ed I H PAGE New York Academic Press 1959 a pp 193-211
- BOLCEK H J N L NOBLE and J F WOESSNER JR The effects of tissue age and sex upon connective tissue metabolism *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1959 b 7 1016-1030
- CADAVID N G B DE DUCHIS and H E MANCINI Collagen fractions in the skin of new born and adult rats *Nature (Lond)* 1961 191 1297-1299
- CHVAPIL M Studies in fibroplasia IX Notes on the mechanism of the effect of cortisone on fibroblasts *Physiol bohemoslov* 1958 7 391-398
- CHVAPIL M Changes in free and bound hydroxyproline during the development of normal and cortisone treated chick embryos *Physiol bohemoslov* 1959 8 186-194
- CHVAPIL M and B ČMELČALOVÁ Biological significance of peptide containing hydroxyproline during the development of carrageenin granuloma *Nature (Lond)* 1960 186 806-807
- CHVAPIL M and B ČMELČALOVÁ Dynamics of changes in connective tissue components during development of carrageenin granuloma *Exp Med Surg* 1961 19 171-182
- CHVAPIL M E HOLEČKOVÁ B ČMELČALOVÁ V KOBŘELE and J HLAVYCH Ultrafiltrable and collagen bound hydroxyproline in chicken lung tissue cultures and in subcellular fractions *Exp Cell Res* 1962 6 1-8
- CLEMONS J J Use of aminoacetonitrile in the study of connective tissue formation and removal *Fed Proc* 1958 17 432
- DASLER W H F STONER and R V MILLISER Effect of osteolathyris on soluble collagen fractions of rat connective tissue *Metabolism* 1961 10 883-887
- DALGHADAY W H and I K MARIZ Conversion of proline to  $C^{14}$  labeled hydroxyproline by rat cartilage *in vitro* Effects of hypophysectomy, growth hormone and cortisol *J Lab clin Med* 1962 a 59 741-752
- DALGHADAY W H and I K MARIZ The formation of free hydroxyproline by rat cartilage *in vitro* *J Biol Chem* 1962 b 237 2831-2835
- DECKER J L C I LEVINE and J GROSS Effect of  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile (lathyris factor) on free hydroxyproline, proline and glycine in chick embryo *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1959 101 472-474
- DORFMAN A and S SCHILLER Effects of hormones on the metabolism of acid mucopolysaccharides of connective tissue *Rec Adv Progr Hormone Res* 1958 14 427-456
- DOTT P and T NISHIHARA The molecular properties and thermal stability of soluble collagen In Recent Advances in Gelatin and Glue Research Ed G STANNBY London Pergamon Press 1958 pp 92-99
- DILL T A L C LING and P H HENNEMAN Urinary total hydroxyproline as an index of connective tissue turnover in bone *J Clin Invest* 1962 41 1355
- DILL T A and P H HENNEMAN Urinary hydroxyproline as an index of collagen turnover in bone *New Engl J Med* 1963 268 132-134
- EASTOE J E The composition of collagen from subcellular fractions of guinea pig granuloma tissue *Biochem J* 1961 79 648-652
- HEAT P S and D J PROCKOP The hydroxylation of proline to hydroxyproline during the synthesis of collagen in chick embryos *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1962 8 305-309
- JONES M V JR Development of collagen in the frog embryo *Proc nat Acad Sci (Wash)* 1959 44 296-305

- ENZINGER F M and E B WARNER Wound healing in experimental lathyrisms *Lab Invest* 1957 6 251-258
- FELS I G Determination of hydroxyproline in liver *Clin Chem* 1958 4 62-65
- FISHER E H and J PAAR Carrageenin granuloma in the guinea pig and rat I Effect of hydrocortisone estradiol and mast cell depletion on its histological and histochemical features 4 *MA Arch Path* 1960 70 565-575
- FOLLIS R H JR and A J TOUSIMIS Experimental lathyrisms in the rat Nature of defect in epiphyseal cartilage *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1958 98 843-848
- FRIBERG O Effect of adrenocortical hormones on hydroxyproline concentration of heart and skeletal muscle An experimental investigation with mice *Ann Med exp Fenn* 1957 35 Suppl 8 1-70
- FUJIMOTO D and N TAMURA Incorporation of  $^{18}\text{O}$  from air into hydroxyproline by chick embryo *Biochem J* 1962 84 333-335
- GABAY S I VIVANCO I RAMOS and C J DIAZ Influence of DL thyroxine and cortisone on femurs of rats with odoratism *Arch Biochem* 1961 90 87-93
- GERBER G B and K I ALTMAN Mechanism of collagen synthesis *Nature (Lond)* 1961 189 813-814
- GERBER G B G GERBER and K I ALTMAN Some interrelated aspects of proline and hydroxyproline metabolism *Nature (Lond)* 1960 188 767-768
- GERBER G B G GERBER and K I ALTMAN Studies of collagen turnover in lathyratic rats *Arch Biochem* 1962 96 601-604
- GOLDB B S Biosynthesis of collagen III The direct action of ascorbic acid on hydroxyproline and collagen formation in subcutaneous polyvinyl sponge implants in guinea pigs *J Biol Chem* 1958 230 637-649
- GOULD B S Ascorbic acid and collagen fiber formation *Vitam and Horm* 1960 18 89-120
- GOULD B S and J F WOESSNER Biosynthesis of collagen The influence of ascorbic acid on the proline hydroxyproline glycine and collagen content of regenerating guinea pig skin *J Biol Chem* 1957 226 289-300
- GREFN N M and D A LOWTHE Formation of collagen hydroxyproline *in vitro* *Biochem J* 1959 71 55-66
- GROSS J Studies on the formation of collagen I Properties and fractionation of neutral salt extracts of normal guinea pig connective tissue *J exp Med* 1958 a 107 247-263
- GROSS J Studies on the formation of collagen II The influence of growth rate on neutral salt extracts of guinea pig dermis *J exp Med* 1958 b 107 265-277
- GROSS J On the significance of the soluble collagens In *Connective Tissue Thrombosis and Atherosclerosis* Ed I H PAGE New York Academic Press 1959 a pp 77-95
- GROSS J Studies on the formation of collagen IV Effect of vitamin C deficiency on the neutral salt extractible collagen of skin *J exp Med* 1959 b 109 557-569
- GROSS J J H HIGHERBERGER and F O SCHWITT Extraction of collagen from connective tissue by neutral salt solutions *Proc nat Acad Sci (Wash)* 1955 41 1-7
- GROSS J and C I LEVENE Effect of  $\beta$  aminopropionitril on extractability of collagen from skin of mature guinea pigs *Amer J Path* 1959 35 687-688
- GROSS J C I LEVENE and S ORLOFF Fragility and extractable collagen in the lathyratic chick embryo An assay for lathyrigenic agents *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1960 105 148-151
- GLÄTHER T and P M CARSTEN Über die Löslichkeit von Kollagen in Abhängigkeit von Nebennierenrindenhormonen *Naturwissenschaften* 1961 48 690



- HARKNESS R D Biological functions of collagen *Biol Rev* 1961 36 399—463
- HARKNESS R D A M MARGO H M MLEN and A NELBERGER The metabolism of collagen and other proteins of the skin of rabbits *Biochem J* 1954 56 558—569
- HAUSMANN E and W F NEUMAN Conversion of proline to hydroxyproline and its incorporation into collagen *J Biol Chem* 1961 236 149—152
- HERRMANN H and S R BARRY Accumulation of collagen in skeletal muscle heart and liver of the chick embryo *Arch Biochem* 1955 55 526—533
- HILBERGER J H J GROSS and F O SCHMITT The interaction of mucoprotein with soluble collagen in an electron microscope study *Proc nat Acad Sci (Wash)* 1961 37 286—291
- HODGE A J and F O SCHMITT The tropocollagen macromolecule and its properties of ordered interaction In *Macromolecular Complexes* Ed M V EDDS JR New York The Ronald Press Company 1961 pp 19—52
- HOTICK J C Response of the connective tissue to cortisol or salicylates *Arthritis Rheum* 1960 3 111
- HUYCK J and M CHVAPIL Hydroxylation of proline in cell free systems isolated from carrageenan granuloma *Naturwissenschaften* 1962 a 49 17—18
- HUYCK J and M CHVAPIL Conversion of proline into hydroxyproline and their incorporation into hydroxyproline containing compounds in skin slices of chicken embryos *Biochim biophys Acta* 1962 b 65 10—172
- HUTTENRER F and E J SINGER A modified method for hydroxyproline determination *Analyt Chem* 1960 32 856—558
- IVERSEN K Hormonal influence on connective tissue In *Connective Tissue in Health and Disease* Ed G ASHOR HANSEN Copenhagen Ejnar Munksgaard 1954 pp 130—150
- JACKSON D S Connective tissue growth stimulated by carrageenin I The formation and removal of collagen *Biochem J* 1957 65 277—284
- JACKSON D S Some biochemical aspects of fibrogenesis and wound healing *New Engl J Med* 1958 259 814—820
- JACKSON D S Chemistry of the fibrous elements of connective tissue In *Connective Tissue Thrombosis and Atherosclerosis* Ed I H PAGE New York Academic Press 1959 pp 67—76
- JACKSON D S and J P BEVLEY On the significance of the extractable collagens *J biophys biochem Cytol* 1960 7 37—4
- JASIN H F C FINK J D SMILEY and M ZIFF Influence of growth on total urinary hydroxyproline *J clin Invest* 1960 41 1365
- JASIN H F C W FINK W WISE and M ZIFF Relationship between urinary hydroxyproline and growth *J clin Invest* 1960 41 1928—1935
- JASIN H F and M ZIFF Relationship between soluble collagen and urinary hydroxyproline in the lathyritic rat *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1960 110 837—841
- JONASTON C C JR W P DEISS JR and E B MEYER Bone matrix biosynthesis in vitro II Effects of parathyroid hormone *J Biol Chem* 1962 237 3560—3564
- ALLIOMARI L M YLI-PORJA and E KALLONEN Collagen in experimental lathyrism *Experientia (Basel)* 1957 13 495
- KAO H Y T and M J BOLCEK Incorporation and conversion of lysine 2- $C^{14}$  in rat biopsy-connective tissue *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1958 a 98 526—530
- KAO H Y T and M J BOLCEK *In vitro* incorporation and hydroxylation of lysine 2- $C^{14}$  in rat biopsy connective tissue *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1958 b 98 530—534

- KAO K Y T R J BOUCEK and N L NOBLE Rate of collagen formation in biopsy connective tissue of the rat *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1957 **98** 535—538
- KAO K Y T D M HILNER and T H MCGAVACK Connective tissue V Comparison of synthesis and turnover of collagen and elastin in tissues of rat at several ages *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1961 **106** 335—338
- KAO K Y T and T H MCGAVACK Connective tissue I Age and sex influence on protein composition of rat tissues *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1959 **101** 153—157
- KEISER H H and A SJÖRDSMA Effect of thyroid hormone on collagen metabolism *J clin Invest* 1962 **41** 1371
- KIVIRIKKO K I Effect of cortisone on collagen formation in the chick embryo *Nature (Lond)* 1963 **197** 385—386
- KIVIRIKKO K I Changes in hydroxyproline containing fractions in the developing chick embryo *Nature (Lond)* 1963 **197** 593—594
- KIVIRIKKO K I Specific activities of free neutral salt soluble and insoluble hydroxyproline after administration of  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline to chick embryos *Acta chem scand* 1963 **c 17** 270—272
- KIVIRIKKO K I M KOIVUSALO and P KOIVUSALO Free and bound hydroxyproline in the human amniotic fluid in early and full term pregnancy *Ann Chir Gynaec Fenn* 1963 **52** 356—360
- KIVIRIKKO K I M KOIVUSALO O LAITINEN and M LIESMAA Effect of thyroxine on the hydroxyproline in rat urine and skin *Acta physiol scand* 1963 **57** 462—467
- KIVIRIKKO K I and M LIESMAA Effect of cortisone and age on the hydroxyproline and proline concentrations of blood and urine in the rat *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1959 **27** 441—445
- KIVIRIKKO K I and M LIESMAA A colorimetric method for determination of hydroxyproline in tissue hydrolysates *Scand J clin Lab Invest* 1959 **11** 128—133
- KIVIRIKKO K I M LIESMAA and T LUUKKAINEN Effect of growth hormone and of pregnancy on the hydroxyproline concentration of the blood of rats *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1958 **27** 118—122
- KLEIN L K ALBERTSEN and P H CURTISS JR Urinary hydroxyproline in hyperparathyroidism A study of three cases with and without bone lesions *Metabolism* 1962 **11** 1023—1027
- KOBLET H and E H FRIEDEN Uptake of glycine  $^{14}\text{C}$  by connective tissue III Effects of adrenal hormones and aging *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1960 **104** 624—627
- KOBRLE V and M CHVAPIL Veränderungen von Kollagenweissstoffen im Verlaufe des Alters und bei der experimentellen Silikose *Arch Gewerbepath Gewerbehyg* 1958 **16** 526—538
- KOBRLE V and M CHVAPIL Isolation of peptides containing hydroxyproline from animal tissues *Nature (Lond)* 1961 **a 190** 909—910
- KOBRLE V and M CHVAPIL Changes of ultrafiltrable hydroxyproline in blood serum during development of carrageenin granuloma and during aging of rats and guinea pigs *Experientia (Basel)* 1961 **b 17** 519—520
- KOBRLE V and M CHVAPIL The amount of ultrafiltrable and collagen bound hydroxyproline in different organs of the rat during aging *Physiol bohemoslov* 1962 **11** 213—248
- KOHN H R and F ROLLERSON Effect of age and heat on human collagenous tissue Studies on acid solubility titration curves and elasticity *J M A Arch Path* 1959 **68** 316—321

- JOHNSON I and T TETSLKA The isotopic studies on the conversion of proline to hydroxy proline *J Biochem (Tokyo)* 1967 54 466-467
- KOWALEWSKI K Effect of cortisone on hydroxyproline of liver gastric tissue skin and bone of male rats *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1961 38 427-431
- KÜHN K H HOLZMANN and C W KORTING Quantitative Bestimmungen der löslichen Kollagenvorstufen nach Anwendung einiger Bindegewebstherapeutika *Naturwissenschaften* 1962 49 131
- ILKOVIC E with the assistance of K JULA L MIKOVIC T NIKKARI A SALMI and T TUOMINEN Biochemistry of experimental lathyrism *Biochem Pharmacol* 1961 6 56-60
- LANG K Eine Mikromethode zur Bestimmung des Prolins und des Oxyprolins *Hoppe Seyler's Z physiol Chem* 1933 19 148-154
- LEACH A A Notes on a modification of the Newman & Logan method for the determination of the hydroxyproline *Biochem J* 1960 74 70-71
- LEVE C I The lathyrogenic effect of isonicotinic acid hydrazide (INH) on the chick embryo and its reversal by pyridoxal *J exp Med* 1961 a 111 793-809
- LEVE C I Structural requirements for lathyrogenic agents *J exp Med* 1961 b 116 295-310
- LEVE C I Collagen as a tensile component in the developing chick aorta *Brit J exp Path* 1961 c 4 89-94
- LEVE C I Studies on the mode of action of lathyrogenic compounds *J exp Med* 1967 116 119-130
- LEVE C I and J Gross Alterations in state of molecular aggregation of collagen induced in chick embryos by  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile (lathyrus factor) *J exp Med* 1959 110 71-789
- LEVINE M Conversion of proline to hydroxyproline in rat skin in vitro *Fed Proc* 1962 21 169
- LINDER J Histochemische Untersuchungen am embryonalen Bindegewebe *Beitr Mikrosk Forsch* 1961 Suppl 4 311-331
- LIVSTEDT S and D J IROCKOR Isotopic studies on urinary hydroxyproline as evidence for rapidly catabolized forms of collagen in the young rat *J Biol Chem* 1961 236 1399-1403
- LORENGER S Vascular connective tissue under the influence of thyroxine II Effect of thyroxine on the aortic wall in rabbits *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1961 37 183-190
- LOWTHE D A N M GREEN and J A CHAPMAN Morphological and chemical studies of collagen formation II Metabolic activity of collagen associated with subcellular fractions of guinea pig granulomata *J biophys biochem Cytol* 1961 10 373-388
- LYNKE A W J R I MILLER and J S ROBERTSON Effects of hexamethonium bromide and  $\beta$  amino propionitrile on the tensile strength of the aorta of mice *Natur (Lond)* 1960 181 238-239
- MAYER G and B S GOLD Collagen biosynthesis The formation of an S RNA hydroxy proline comp *Fed Proc* 1962 21 169
- MARRAS D H A F W HUGHES and S M WERSA Nucleic acid metabolism of the developing chick embryo *Biochim biophys Acta* 1956 19 318-323
- MARTIN C J and A E AXELROD A modified method for determination of hydroxy proline *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1963 111 461-462
- MARTIN G R J GROSS K A PILZ and M S LEWIS On the intramolecular cross linking of collagen in lathyrus rats *Biochim biophys Acta* 1961 53 599-601

- MARTIN G R S E MergenHAGN and D J PROCKOP Influence of scurvy and lathyrism (odoratism) on hydroxyproline excretion *Nature (Lond)* 1961 191 1008—1009
- MAZUROV V I and V N OREHOVIČ Izučenie  $\alpha$  i  $\beta$  komponentov prokolagena *Biokhimiya* 1960 25 814—824
- MIKKONEN L T TUOMINEN and E KULONEN Collagen fractions in experimental lathyrism *Acta chem scand* 1959 13 2125
- MIKKONEN, L T TUOMINEN and E KULONEN Collagen fractions in lathyratic rats *Biochem Pharmacol* 1960 3 181—183
- MITOMA C and T F SMITH Studies on the role of ascorbic acid in collagen synthesis *J biol Chem* 1960 35 426—428
- MITOMA C T F SMITH J D DAVIDSON S UDENFRIEND F M DiCOSTA and A SJOERDUMA Improvements in methods for measuring hydroxyproline Application to human urine *J Lab clin Med* 1959 53 970—976
- MITOMA, C T F SMITH F FRIEDBERG and C R RAYFORD Incorporation of hydroxyproline into tissue proteins by chick embryos *J biol Chem* 1959 234 78—90
- MIZADA D S and A L TAPPEL Colorimetric determination of hydroxyproline *Analyt Chem* 1956 28 909—910
- MOLYAR E Mechanism of the action of thyroxine and ascorbic acid deficiency on the tensile strength of healing wounds *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1958 29 421—424
- MUTING D Zur quantitativen Bestimmung des Oxyprolins in Eiweißhydrolysaten *Hoppe Seylers Z physiol Chem* 1952 291 234—235
- NAGEOTTE J Sur le caillot artificiel de collagène signification morphologie générale et technique *C R Soc Biol (Paris)* 1927 96 172—174
- NAGEOTTE J Collagène A et collagène B *C R Soc Biol (Paris)* 1930 104 156—159
- NAGEOTTE J Fibrilles collagènes anatomiques et fibrilles collagènes artificielles *C R Soc Biol (Paris)* 1933 113 841—844
- NAGEOTTE J and L GUYON Les propriétés physico chimiques du collagène et leurs conséquences morphologiques *C R 1as Acad* 1931 29 408—433
- NEUBERGER A J C PIRROVE and H C B SLACK The relative metabolic inertia of tendon collagen in the rat *Biochem J* 1953 50 199—204
- NEUBERGER A and H C B SLACK The metabolism of collagen from liver bone skin and tendon in the normal rat *Biochem J* 1953 51 47—52
- NEUMAN H L Hydroxyproline content of the developing chick embryo *J res Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1950 75 37—39
- NEUMAN R C and M A LOGAN The determination of hydroxyproline *J biol Chem* 1950 184 299—306
- NIKKARI T and E KULONEN Studies in experimental lathyrism — II On the properties of collagen *Biochem Pharmacol* 1962 11 931—936
- NOVIKOFF A H and V R POTTER Changes in nucleic acid concentration during the development of the chick embryo *J biol Chem* 1948 173 233—239
- OREHOVIČ K D O sodržanosti prokolagena v koži živočichů různého věku *Dokl Akad Nauk SSSR* 1950 1 521—522
- ORIFKHOVITCH V N (OREHOVIČ V N) Les procollagènes composition chimique Propriétés et rôle biologique In 2<sup>e</sup> Congrès International de Biochimie Symposium sur la Biogénèse des Protéines Paris Masson et Cie 1953 p 62
- OREKHOVITCH V N and V O SHPIKITER (OREHOVIČ V N and V O ŠPIKITER) Procollagens as biological precursors of collagen and the physico chemical nature of

- these proteins in *Connective Tissue* E J R T LEXINGTON Oxford Blackwell Scientific Publications 1957 pp 281—293
- OREKHOVITCH V V and V O SPIKITER (OREKHOVICH V V and V O SPIKITER) Procollagens A citrate soluble fraction of collagen II assumed to form a special group of connective tissue proteins *Science* 1958 127 1371—1376
- OREKHOVITCH V V SPIKITER O I ASAKOVA and V MAZOLHOV (OREKHOVICH V V SPIKITER O ASAKOVA and V MAZOLHOV) The incorporation of  $C^{14}$  labeled glycine into the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  components of procollagen *Arch Biochem* 1959 44 541—556
- OREKHOVITCH V V V O SPIKITER V I MAZOLHOV and O V KOUNINA (OREKHOVICH V V V O SPIKITER V I MAZOLHOV and O V KOUNINA) Procollagènes — Classification métabolisme action des protéinases *Bull Soc Chim biol (Paris)* 1960 4 203—218
- OREKHOVICH V N V V TSYRANOVSKIS K M OREKHOVICH and V F PLOTNIKOVA II pro kollazene kod *Biohimija* 1948 11 53—60
- PAGE I H (Ed) *Connective Tissue Thrombosis and Atherosclerosis* New York Academic Press 1959 pp 316
- PASIEKA A E and J F MORGAN Specific determination of hydroxy L proline in biological materials *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1956 9 96—99
- PERKINS L V L C EDWARDS and J F DUNPHY Hormonal influence on healing wounds the effect of adrenalectomy and cortisone on the quantity and collagen content of granulation tissue *Surg Forum* 1957 8 74—16
- PETERKOPSKY B and S UDENFRIEND Conversion of proline  $C^{14}$  to peptide bound hydroxyproline  $C^{14}$  in a cell free system from chick embryo *Biochem biophys Res Commun* 1961 6 184—190
- PETERKOPSKY B and S UDENFRIEND Further studies on collagen synthesis in a cell free system from chick embryo *Fed Proc* 1962 1 169
- PIEZ K A E A FIBER and M S LEWIS The chromatographic separation and amino acid composition of the subunits of several collagens *Biochemistry* 1963 2 58—66
- PIEZ K A M S LEWIS G R MARTIN and J GROSS Subunits of the collagen molecule *Biochim biophys Acta* 1961 53 596—598
- PIEZ K A and R L LIKINS The conversion of lysine to hydroxylysine and its relation to the biosynthesis of collagen in several tissues of the rat *J Biol Chem* 1957 229 101—109
- PIEZ K A E WEISS and M S LEWIS The separation and characterization of the  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ -components of calf skin collagen *J Biol Chem* 1960 235 1987—1993
- POPENOE E A and D H VAN SLYKE The formation of collagen hydroxylysine *J Biol Chem* 1962 237 3491—3494
- PROCKOP D J Synthesis of collagen *Nature (Lond)* 1962 a 184 477
- PROCKOP D J Collagen degradation and urinary hydroxyproline *Fed Proc* 1962 b 21 169
- PROCKOP D J KAPLAN and S UDENFRIEND Oxygen 18 studies on the conversion of proline to hydroxyproline *Biochim biophys Res Commun* 1962 9 162—166
- PROCKOP D J M PETERKOPSKY and S UDENFRIEND Studies on the intracellular localization of collagen synthesis in the intact chick embryo *J Biol Chem* 1962 237 1581—1584
- PROCKOP D J and S UDENFRIEND A specific method for the analysis of hydroxyproline in tissues and urine *Analyt Biochem* 1960 1 228—239

- PROCKOP D J S UDENFRIEND and S LINDSTEDT A simple technique for measuring the specific activity of labeled hydroxyproline in biological materials *J biol Chem* 1961 236 1395-1398
- RADHAKRISHNAN A N and A MEISTER Conversion of hydroxyproline to pyrrole  $\alpha$  carboxylic acid *J biol Chem* 1957 226 559-571
- RAINA A Studies on the determination of spermidine and spermine and their metabolism in the developing chick embryo *Acta physiol scand* 1963 60 Suppl 218 1-81
- REDDY D V N M E LOUBARDO and I R CERECEDO Nucleic acid changes during the development of the chick embryo *J biol Chem* 1952 198 267-270
- RICH A and F H C CRICK The molecular structure of collagen *J molec Biol* 1961 3 483-506
- ROBERTS E D A KARNOFSKY and S FRANKEL Influence of cortisone on free hydroxyproline in the developing chick embryo *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1951 6 287-291
- ROBERTSON W VAN B The biochemical role of ascorbic acid in connective tissue *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1961 90 159-167
- ROBERTSON W VAN B and J HEWITT Augmentation of collagen synthesis by ascorbic acid *in vitro* *Biochim biophys Acta* 1961 49 404-406
- ROBERTSON W VAN B J HEWITT and C HERMAN The relation of ascorbic acid to the conversion of proline to hydroxyproline in the synthesis of collagen in the carrageenan granuloma *J biol Chem* 1959 234 105-108
- ROBERTSON W VAN B and I C SANBORN Hormonal effects on collagen formation in granulomas *Endocrinology* 1956 6 250-252
- ROBERTSON W VAN B and B SCHWARTZ Ascorbic acid and the formation of collagen *J biol Chem* 1953 201 689-696
- ROMANOFF A L The Avian Embryo Structural and Functional Development New York The Macmillan Company 1960 pp 1305
- RUBINSTEIN H M and J D PRYCE The color metric estimation of alpha amino nitrogen in tissue fluids *J clin Path* 1959 1 80-84
- SAKATA H Biochemical studies on the collagen metabolism II Collagen metabolism of the skin in some pathological states *Kumamoto med J* 1960 a 13 41-53
- SAKATA H Biochemical studies on the collagen metabolism III Collagen metabolism in healing wounds *Kumamoto med J* 1960 b 13 54-72
- SALMI A and F HILLOFEN Inhibited incorporation of ammonium chloride labelled with nitrogen 15 in chick embryos treated with  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile *Nature (Lond)* 1962 196 895
- SCHMITT F O The macromolecular basis of collagen structure In *Connective Tissue Thrombosis and Atherosclerosis* Ed I H PAGE New York Academic Press 1959 pp 43-65
- SETHI P E R RAMEY and J C HOLCK Connective tissue IX Effect of age upon dermal chemical response to adrenal hormones *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1961 108 74-77
- SILBER R H and C C PORTER Nitrogen balance liver protein repletion and body composition of cortisone treated rats *Endocrinology* 1953 50 518-525
- SINCE F M and D D VAN SLYKE The source and state of the hydroxylysine of collagen *J biol Chem* 1955 216 245-250
- SINCE F M D D VAN SLYKE and D H CHRISTMAN The source and state of the hydroxylysine of collagen II Failure of free hydroxylysine to serve as a source of the hydroxylysine or lysine of collagen *J biol Chem* 1959 234 918-921

- SILKO H J SÄVELA and E KELLONEN Effect of the hydrocortisone on the formation of collagen in guinea pig skin *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1959 31 113-116
- SMILEY J D H YEAGER and M ZIFF Collagen metabolism in osteolathyrism in chick embryos site of action of  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile *J exp Med* 1962 116 43-51
- SMILEY J D and M ZIFF The metabolism of connective tissue *Ann Rev Med* 1962 13 287-300
- SMITH D J and R C SHELSTON Biochemistry of lathyrism I Collagen biosynthesis in normal and lathyrine chick embryos *Arch Biochem* 1962 99 493-501
- SMITH R H and S F JACKSON Studies on the biosynthesis of collagen II The conversion of L-proline to L-hydroxyproline by fowl osteoblasts in tissue culture *J biophys biochem Cytol* 1961 3 913-922
- SMITH Q T Quantitative studies on cutaneous collagen procollagen and hexosamine in normal and cortisone treated rats *J invest Derm* 1962 a 39 65-68
- SMITH Q T Effects of cortisone administration on cutaneous collagen and hexosamine in rats of various ages *J invest Derm* 1962 b 39 219-224
- SWELLMAN O Some observations on protein biosynthesis *Acta chem scand* 1957 11 2195-2198
- SOBEL H S LABAY and L JOHNSON Effect of cortisone on connective tissues of the rat *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1958 99 296-299
- SOBEL H S LABAY C JOHNSON and B HASSAN Carcass nitrogen and the hexosamine collagen ratio of skin following starvation and cortisone administration in rats and guinea pigs *Metabolism* 1959 8 180-184
- SOBEL H and J MARJORSTON The effect of cortisone on the collagen and hexosamine content of the skin and femurs of one year old rats *Endocrinology* 1954 45 21-27
- STAINSBY M (Ed) Recent Advances in Gelatin and Glue Research London Pergamon Press, 1958 pp 27
- STALDER K and H STEDEMAN Einbau von  $\beta$  Aminopropionitril in die Kollagen molekel beim Lathyrismus der Ratte *Naturwissenschaften* 1952 49 392-399
- STEDEMAN H Mikrobestimung von Hydroxyprolin mit Chloramin T und p Dimethylaminobenzaldehyd *Hoppe Seylers Z physiol Chem* 1958 311 41-45
- STETTER M Some aspects of the metabolism of hydroxyproline studied with the aid of isotopic nitrogen *J biol Chem* 1949 182 31-37
- STETTER M R and R SCHÖNHEIMER The metabolism of L-proline studied with the aid of deuterium and isotopic nitrogen *J biol Chem* 1941 137 113-132
- STONE A and A MEISTER Function of ascorbic acid in the conversion of proline to collagen hydroxyproline *Nature (Lond)* 196 191 550-557
- TAGLI, W and J LINDSLEY A photometric method for the determination of proline *J biol Chem* 1945 15 655-660
- TE BRIDGE R E (Ed) Connective Tissue Oxford Blackwell Scientific Publications 1957 pp 371
- TEST OYSKIJ A A A I ZAJDES C V ORLOVSKAJA and G L MIAKKAJA O razviti komponentov kollagen v embriogeneze *Dokl Akad Nauk SSSR* 1961 118 967-965 Cited in Collagen Currents 1961 2 No 6 4-6
- UDENFRIEND S H WEISSER and C URTONA Metabolism of amino acids *Ann Rev Biochem* 1960 29 207-260
- VAN SLYKE D D and F M SNEY The course of hydroxylation of lysine to form hydroxylysine in collagen *J biol Chem* 1958 23 97-80r

- PROCKOP, D J S UDFRIED and S LINDSTEDT A simple technique for measuring the specific activity of labeled hydroxyproline in biological materials *J biol Chem* 1961 236 1395—1398
- RADHAKRISHNAN A N and A MEISTER Conversion of hydroxyproline to pyrrole 2 carboxylic acid *J biol Chem* 1957 226 559—571
- RAINA A Studies on the determination of spermidine and spermine and their metabolism in the developing chick embryo *Acta physiol scand* 1963 60 Suppl 218 1—81
- REDDY D V N M F LOVBARDO and I H CERECEDO Nucleic acid changes during the development of the chick embryo *J biol Chem* 1952 198 267—270
- RICH A and F H C CRICK The molecular structure of collagen *J molec Biol* 1961 3 483—506
- ROBERTS E D V KAROFENY and S FRANKEL Influence of cortisone on free hydroxyproline in the developing chick embryo *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1951 16 289—292
- ROBERTSON W VAN B The biochemical role of ascorbic acid in connective tissue *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1961 90 159—167
- ROBERTSON W VAN B and J HEWITT Augmentation of collagen synthesis by ascorbic acid *in vitro Biochim biophys Acta* 1961 49 401—406
- ROBERTSON W VAN B J HEWITT and C HERMAN The relation of ascorbic acid to the conversion of proline to hydroxyproline in the synthesis of collagen in the carrageenan granuloma *J biol Chem* 1959 234 105—108
- ROBERTSON W VAN B and C C SANBORN Hormonal effects on collagen formation in granulomas *Endocrinology* 1958 6 250—252
- ROBERTSON W VAN B and H SCHWARTZ Ascorbic acid and the formation of collagen *J biol Chem* 1953 201 689—696
- ROMANOFF A L The Avian Embryo Structural and Functional Development New York The Macmillan Company 1960 pp 1305
- RUBINSTEIN H M and J D PRYCE The color metric estimation of alpha amino nitrogen in tissue fluids *J clin Path* 1959 1 80—84
- SAKATA R Biochemical studies on the collagen metabolism II Collagen metabolism of the skin in some pathological states *Kumamoto med J* 1960 a 13 41—53
- SAKATA R Biochemical studies on the collagen metabolism III Collagen metabolism in healing wounds *Kumamoto med J* 1960 b 13 54—72
- SALMI A and E KULONEN Inhibited incorporation of ammonium chloride labelled with nitrogen 15 in chick embryos treated with  $\beta$  aminopropionitrile *Nature (Lond)* 1962 196 895
- SCHWITT F O The macromolecular basis of collagen structure In Connective Tissue Thrombosis and Atherosclerosis Ed I H PAOF New York Academic Press 1959 pp 43—65
- SETHI I F R RAMEY and J C HOUCK Connective tissue IV Effect of age upon dermal chemical response to adrenal hormones *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1961 108 74—77
- SILBER H H and C C PORTER Nitrogen balance liver protein repletion and body composition of cortisone treated rats *Endocrinology* 1953 5 518—525
- SINEX F M and D D VAN SLYKE The source and state of the hydroxylysine of collagen *J biol Chem* 1955 216 245—250
- SINEX F M D D VAN SLYKE and D H CHRISTMAN The source and state of the hydroxylysine of collagen II Failure of free hydroxylysine to serve as a source of the hydroxylysine or lysine of collagen *J biol Chem* 1959 234 918—921



# APPENDIX

Table 11 Hydroxyproline containing fractions in the samples of skin of normal embryos

Age in days	S	No	Dry wt of sample	Number of embryos	Mean wt of embryos	Hydroxyproline <sup>a</sup>					Total
						Free	Pept	1 M NaCl soluble collagen	Citrate soluble collagen	Insoluble	
12	L	1	9	12	5.08	42.3	3.3	50.6	1.0	191	287
		2	86	10	5.37	42.8	2.0	47.9	1.5	200	283
14	I	1	129	10	10.90	50.1	7.7	101	—	981	1140
		1	97	7	9.49	57.2	4.3	119	3.7	864	1040
16	h	1	155	4	16.69	26.5	2.7	123	5.0	1770	1430
		2	169	5	15.83	26.2	—	103	4.0	1720	1850
		1	118	4	14.47	36.9	4.8	134	3.0	1860	2040
	I	2	144	5	14.95	34.5	2.9	131	3.5	1820	1990
		3	124	5	14.67	30.0	6.4	127	3.3	1700	1860
										---	---
20	h	1	161	4	28.90	15.2	8.1	93.1	4.3	2730	2850
			162	3	28.36	12.7	9.9	90.1	4.1	2830	2940

Series mg/g wet weight g  $\mu$ g/100 mg dry weight of the skin

Received 0.1 ml of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride daily between days 8 and 15

- VILJANTO J H ISOMAKI and L KULONEN Effect of an anabolic steroid on the tensile strength of granulation tissue in various nutritional states *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1962 **41** 395—399
- WALDSCHMIDT LEITZ L and S VABORI Bestimmung von Oxyprolin Zur Methode nach K Lang *Hoppe Seylers Z physiol Chem* 1931 **24** 187—192
- WANGCHAO K B and K KOWALEWSKI Strength of callus in fractured humerus of rat treated with anti anabolic and anabolic compounds *Acta endocr (Kbh)* 1961 **36** 310—318
- WIRTSCHAFTER Z T and J P BENTLEY The influence of age and growth rate on the extractable collagen of skin of normal rats *Lab Invest* 1962 **11** 316—320
- WIRTSCHAFTER Z T and J P BENTLEY The extractable collagen of lathyratic rats with relation to age *Lab Invest* 1962 **11** 365—367
- WISS O Über eine Mikrobestimmung des Oxyprolins in Blut und Harn Beeinflussung des Oxyprolin Gehaltes durch Verabreichung von Prolin *Helv chim Acta* 1940 **3** 149—153
- WOESSNER J F JR The determination of hydroxyproline in tissue and protein samples containing small proportions of this amino acid *Arch Biochem* 1961 **93** 440—447
- WOESSNER J F JR Catabolism of collagen and non collagen protein in the rat uterus during post partum involution *Biochem J* 1962 **83** 304—314
- WOESSNER J F JR and R J BOUCEK Connective tissue development in subcutaneously implanted polyvinyl sponge I Biochemical changes during development *Arch Biochem* 1961 **93** 85—94
- WOLF G and C R V BERGER The metabolism of hydroxyproline in the intact rat Incorporation of hydroxyproline into protein and urinary metabolites *J Biol Chem* 1958 **230** 231—240
- ZACHARIADIS M P A Recherches sur la structure du tissu conjonctif sensibilité du tendon aux acides *C R Soc Biol (Paris)* 1900 **54** 182—184
- ZIFF M A KIDRICK I DRFSNER and H J CRIBETZ Excretion of hydroxyproline in patients with rheumatic and non rheumatic diseases *J Clin Invest* 1956 **35** 579—587

# APPENDIX

Table 14 Hydroxyproline-containing fractions in the samples of skin of normal embryos

Age in days	Sex	No	Dry wt of sample <sup>a</sup>	Number of embryos	Mean wt of embryos	Hydroxyproline <sup>b</sup>					
						Free	Lept	1 M NaCl soluble collagen	Citrate soluble collagen	In soluble	Total
12	L	1	9	12	5.08	42.3	3.3	50.6	1.0	191	297
		2	86	10	5.37	42.8	2.0	44.9	1.5	200	293
14	H	1	129	10	10.90	50.1	7.7	101		991	1140
		1	91	7	9.49	52.2	4.3	119	3.7	864	1040
16	H	1	155	4	16.69	26.5	2.7	129	5.0	1770	1930
		2	169	5	15.83	26.2	—	103	4.0	1720	1850
	L	1	116	4	14.42	36.9	4.8	134	3.0	1860	2040
		2	144	5	14.95	31.5	2.9	131	3.5	1820	1990
		3	124	5	14.1	30.0	6.4	127	3.3	1700	1860
20	H	1	161	4	28.90	15.2	8.1	93.1	4.3	2730	2850
		2	162	3	28.36	12.7	9.9	90.1	4.1	2830	2940

Series mg g wet wt; ht <sup>a</sup> g  $\mu$ g/100 mg dry weight of the skin

R received 0.1 ml of 0.9 per cent sodium chloride daily between days 8 and 15

Table 10 Specific activities of free 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen and insoluble hydroxyproline after administration of 2  $\mu$ C of  $^{14}$ C-prolin to 11-day-old chick embryos

Hours after injection	Series	No	Weight g	Specific activities of hydroxyproline <sup>1</sup>		
				Free	1 M NaCl soluble collagen	Insoluble
3	M	1	3.80	8200	69000	5000
		2	3.98	7080	66000	6140
		3	3.89	7070	69000	5760
6	M	1	3.83	13600	33600	10200
		2	4.13	12000	28100	9700
		3	3.46	18000	41700	13100
	N	1	3.42	17100	32400	13300
		2	4.07	13100	16000	8450
9	M	1	4.03	17100	27400	11300
		2	3.96	13000	24300	11400
		3	3.91	15200	31500	13600
12	M	1	3.78	14000	22600	11300
		2	3.61	12900	17700	11400
		3	3.06	14700	23600	11800
15	M	1	3.71	11000	18600	11300
20	N	1	3.52	8130	8190	8480
		2	3.93	8000	8980	7280
		3	3.11	7700	7720	7730
30	N	1	6.81	5100	5150	5430
		2	6.01	5200	4700	5150
		3	5.17	6100	9030	7000

<sup>1</sup> cpm/ $\mu$ mole

Table 16 Effect of a single injection of cortisone acetate of the age of 10 days on the hydroxyproline-containing fractions in whole embryos on different days of development expressed as  $\mu\text{g}$  100 dry weight of the embryo or as a percentage of the total hydroxyproline

Day and series	Group	Hydroxy proline								Total in embryo in $\mu\text{g}$
		Free		1 M NaCl soluble collagen		Insoluble		Total		
		$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg	of total	$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg	of total	$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg	of total	$\mu\text{g}/100$ mg		
10 A	Contr	22.0	7.67	37.8	10.2	293	80.4	3.2	621	
11 A	Contr	33.1	7.47	39.4	8.9	373	83.7	4.5	1260	
		9	0.36	3.1	0.67	36	0.9	40	2.0	
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	27.1	5.40	38.7	7.68	439	86.9	5.01	1.00	
		4.1	0.93	7.6	0.50	33	1.9	37	140	
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	24.6	4.80	37.3	7.27	453	87.9	5.16	1280	
		2.3	0.51	4.0	0.58	37	1.4	37	190	
12 A	Contr	46.4	7.70	50.6	8.40	507	83.9	6.01	2530	
		6.3	1.16	7.8	0.4	33	1.2	1	370	
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	3.7	1.59	50.8	8.00	352	86.0	6.10	2380	
		4.9	1.11	4.4	1.3	64	2.3	60	370	
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	37.1	4.78	49.9	7.45	593	87.7	6.75	2110	
		8.8	1.01	3.7	0.84	77	2.1	3	370	
	900 $\mu\text{g}$	26.7	3.00	46.5	6.22	678	90.2	7.52	2130	
		3.1	0.55	7.5	0.98	94	1.0	98	290	
14 A	Contr	62	8.18	60.3	8.53	637	82.7	7.0	6640	
		4.4	0.88	5	0.93	3	1.9	47	1010	
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	72.2	8.57	68.4	7.99	712	82.6	8.55	6150	
		9.3	1.15	1.6	0.64	48	1.3	41	810	
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	34.4	3.50	0.6	7.24	843	88.5	9.85	4810	
		4.9	0.74	3.6	0.94	122	1.8	119	810	
	900 $\mu\text{g}$	23.4	2.64	66.8	34	844	89.7	93.9	3830	
		2.6	0.84	4.9	1.28	190	2.0	191	1020	
16 B	Contr	39.1	4.24	67.2	7.34	812	88.4	91.9	21420	
		3.9	0.44	3.8	0.67	45	0.4	49	1890	
	100 $\mu$	43.8	3.95	73.3	6.66	986	89.4	110.3	20230	
		8.1	0.45	4.7	0.58	69	0.7	77	1700	
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	60.2	4.81	82.1	6.51	1171	85.4	126.1	13870	
		15.2	1.21	7.1	0.5	101	1.8	101	3910	
18 A	Contr	18.1	2.22	61.6	7.42	831	80.9	91.5	29420	
		2.2	0.64	7.2	1	362	2.9	170	11910	
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	58.5	4.13	69.5	4.91	1280	90.5	141.5	25650	
		3	0.21	0.7	0.06	4	0.2	5	3.50	
B	Contr	18.1	—	67.4	—	—	—	—	—	
		3.0	—	2.5	—	—	—	—	—	
	100 $\mu\text{g}$	19.6	—	74.4	—	—	—	—	—	
		1.4	—	3.8	—	—	—	—	—	
	300 $\mu\text{g}$	2.1	—	6.4	—	—	—	—	—	
		9.6	—	8.5	—	—	—	—	—	

The significance of the differences as compared with the controls is denoted by  $\leq 1 < 0.01 < 0.001$

The values are given as mean  $\pm$  S.D. except in 18 day-old cortisone treated embryos of series A where the  $\pm$  deviation is given and the significance of the differences is not calculated

In 12-day-old embryos proline hydroxyproline was not taken into consideration when the values for insoluble hydroxyproline were calculated since...

Table 15 Specific activities of free 1 M sodium chloride soluble collagen and insoluble hydroxyproline after administration of  $\sim \mu\text{C}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$  proline to 11 day old chick embryos

Hours after inject	Series	No	Weight g	Specific activity of hydroxyproline <sup>1</sup>		
				I rec	1 M NaCl soluble collagen	Insoluble
3	M	1	3.80	8290	69500	5550
		2	3.98	7580	66500	6140
		3	3.89	7570	69500	5760
6	M	1	3.89	13600	33800	10200
		2	4.13	12600	28100	9700
		3	3.46	18000	41700	13100
	N	1	3.42	17100	32400	13300
		2	4.57	13100	16500	8450
9	M	1	4.05	17100	27400	11300
		2	3.96	13500	24300	11400
		3	3.94	15200	31500	13000
12	M	1	3.78	14500	22600	11300
		2	4.61	12900	17700	11400
		3	4.06	14700	23600	11800
15	M	1	4.71	11000	18600	11300
20	N	1	5.52	8430	8190	8180
		2	4.99	8050	8980	7280
		3	5.11	7750	7720	7730
30	N	1	6.84	5400	5150	5130
		2	6.03	5250	4700	5150
		3	5.37	6100	9030	7050

<sup>1</sup> cpm/ $\mu\text{mole}$







**ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA**

**VOL. 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 220**

**HISTAMINE METABOLISM  
IN ADRENALECTOMIZED RATS**

**BY**

**THORVALD BJURÖ**



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL. 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 270

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF CLINICAL PHYSIOLOGY, ÅHLGREN'SKA  
Sjukhuset, UNIVERSITY OF GÖTEBORG GÖTEBORG SWEDEN

# HISTAMINE METABOLISM IN ADRENALECTOMIZED RATS

BY

THORVALD BJURÖ

LIBRARY,

JALFUK

GÖTEBORG 1963



# CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1 Introduction</b>	<b>v</b>
A Previous work on the relationship between histamine and the endocrine glands	v
B The urinary excretion of histamine in rats and the changes caused by adrenalectomy	8
C The present investigation	10
<b>CHAPTER 2 Methods</b>	<b>12</b>
Animals and their care	12
Operations and adrenal insufficiency	15
Non radioactive histamine	17
<sup>14</sup> C labelled compounds	18
The formation of <sup>14</sup> C histamine in tissues	20
Measurement of <sup>14</sup> C radioactivity	21
Statistical	-
<b>CHAPTER 3 The catabolism of histamine</b>	<b>23</b>
Experimental procedures	23
Results	4
Rats given aminoguanidine	4
Summary	27
Rats not given aminoguanidine	27
Summary	31
The relation between the amount of non radioactive (endogenous) histamine the amount of <sup>14</sup> C histamine excreted in the same sample of urine and the degree of adrenal insufficiency	33
Summary	33
Discussion	35
<b>CHAPTER 4 The formation of histamine</b>	<b>40</b>
I The urinary excretion of <sup>14</sup> C histamine and <sup>3</sup> H methylhistamine in rats given intravenous injections of <sup>14</sup> C histidine	40
Experimental procedures	40
Results	40
Summary	43
II The formation of <sup>3</sup> H histamine in various tissues <i>in vitro</i>	43
Experimental procedures	43
Results	44
Summary	48

Supported by grants from the Faculty of Medicine  
University of Goteborg

# CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 Introduction	5
A Previous work on the relationship between histamine and the endocrine glands	5
B The urinary excretion of histamine in rats and the changes caused by adrenalectomy	8
C The present investigation	10
CHAPTER II Methods	10
Animals and their care	12
Operations and adrenal insufficiency	15
Non radioactive histamine	17
<sup>14</sup> C labelled compounds	18
The formation of <sup>14</sup> C histamine in tissues	19
Measurement of <sup>14</sup> C radioactivity	21
Statistical	22
CHAPTER 3 The catabolism of histamine	23
Experimental procedures	23
Results	24
II B given aminoguanidine	25
Summary	27
Rats not given aminoguanidine	27
Summary	31
The relation between the amount of non radioactive (endogenous) histamine the amount of <sup>14</sup> C histamine excreted in the same sample of urine and the degree of adrenal insufficiency	33
Summary	33
Discussion	35
CHAPTER 4 The formation of histamine	40
I The urinary excretion of <sup>14</sup> C histamine and <sup>14</sup> C methylhistamine in rats given intravenous injections of <sup>14</sup> C histidine	40
Experimental procedures	40
Results	40
Summary	43
II The formation of <sup>14</sup> C histamine in various tissues in vitro	43
Experimental procedures	43
Results	43
Summary	44

III The formation of $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine in various tissues <i>in vivo</i>	49
Experimental procedures	49
Results	49
Summary	51
Discussion	51
CHAPTER 5 General discussion	54
(a) The sensitivity to histamine injections	54
(b) The catabolism of histamine	55
(c) The content of histamine in tissues	55
(d) The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine	56
(e) The formation of histamine	56
(f) An interpretation of the present work	57
CHAPTER 6 General summary	61
(a) The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine	61
(b) The catabolism of small quantities of $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine given by subcutaneous injections	61
(c) The formation of histamine <i>in vivo</i> and <i>in vitro</i>	63
REFERENCES	64



## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION

#### *A Previous work on the relationship between histamine and the endocrine glands*

The possible relationship between the function of histamine and the endocrine glands has been the subject of several studies. This is particularly so for the adrenal glands the removal of which leads to conspicuous changes in the actions and the metabolism of histamine.

Thus DALE (1920) found that removal of the adrenal glands in the cat caused an increased sensitivity to histamine injections. The lethal dose of injected histamine is also much decreased after adrenalectomy in other species e.g. the rat (VOEGTLIN and DYER 1924 CRIVELLARI 1927 SCOTT 1928 MARMORSTON, GOTTESMAN and GOTTESMAN 1928 and HOLDSAY 1953). The sensitivity was more pronounced with increasing degrees of adrenal insufficiency (PERLA and MARMORSTON, GOTTESMAN 1931). The increased sensitivity after adrenalectomy was not limited to histamine but could be demonstrated for various other substances too.

WYMAN (1928) concluded that the increased sensitivity to histamine after adrenalectomy in rats was caused by lack of medullary tissue rather than lack of cortical tissue. This was not verified by PERLA and GOTTESMAN (1929 1931) who found that injections of an adrenal cortical extract after adrenalectomy restored the sensitivity to histamine approximately to normal whereas adrenaline had little effect and the sex hormones none at all. INGLE (1937) confirmed the importance of the adrenal cortex for maintaining the resistance to histamine injections after adrenalectomy. He found however that the medulla also played a role.

NOBLE and COLLIP (1941) found that rats kept on 0.9% NaCl as drinking fluid for 11 to 18 days after adrenalectomy had an increased lethality to histamine injections which could be decreased but not restored to normal by giving desoxycorticosterone. Furthermore they found an increased lethality to histamine injections 14 to 16 days after hypophysectomy which could be

III The formation of $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine in various tissues <i>in vivo</i>	49
Experimental procedures	49
Results	49
Summary	51
Discussion	51

## CHAPTER 5 General discussion 54

(a) The sensitivity to histamine injections	54
(b) The catabolism of histamine	55
(c) The content of histamine in tissues	55
(d) The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine	56
(e) The formation of histamine	56
(f) An interpretation of the present work	57

## CHAPTER 6 General summary 61

(a) The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine	61
(b) The catabolism of small quantities of $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine given by subcutaneous injections	61
(c) The formation of histamine <i>in vivo</i> and <i>in vitro</i>	62

## REFERENCES 81

in the later experiments by isotope dilution. A schematic illustration of the principal chemical reactions involved is shown in Figure 1.

SCHAYER *et al* (1953) found that mainly two enzymes inactivated histamine *in vivo*. Histaminase was the most important histamine inactivating enzyme in the rat since  $^{14}\text{C}$ -imidazoleacetic acid (cf. Figure 1) was the main excretory product. The other main enzyme inactivated histamine by adding a methyl group to a nitrogen atom in the imidazole ring (called ring N methylation) thereby forming methylhistamine (SCHAYER and KARJALA 1956). This enzyme has been called histamine methyl transferase (LINDAHL 1958) and imidazole N methyl transferase (BROWN *et al* 1959). A review of the Catabolism of Physiological Quantities of Histamine *in Vivo* has been published by SCHAYER (1959).

In view of the previous findings of changes in histaminase activity *in vitro* after adrenalectomy it is of interest to note that SCHAYER *et al* (1952) reported that no significant difference was found between adrenalectomized or sham operated mice in the ability to destroy minute quantities of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. — This discrepancy with the findings of ROSE and BROWN may be due to differences in histamine concentrations administered, species differences or variations in experimental procedure. The finding that adrenalectomy did not change the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine in mice was again reported by SCHAYER *et al* (1953).

Endogenous formation of histamine from the amino acid L histidine is catalyzed by the enzyme histidine decarboxylase (e.g. WERLE 1941, SCHAYER 1952, WATSON 1956).

The formation of histamine *in vitro* can be studied by adding  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine to a tissue and measuring the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed. With this technique SCHAYER *et al* (1955) and SCHAYER (1956) found that after adrenalectomy skin and lung tissue formed more  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* whereas glandular stomach tissue formed less. Thus the formation of histamine *in vitro* is modified after adrenalectomy. This factor along with the decrease in histaminase activity *in vitro* affords another explanation for the changes in the histamine content of the tissues in the adrenalectomized animal.

To summarize, four different approaches have hitherto been used to study the effects of adrenalectomy on the metabolism of histamine in the rat.

- 1) the sensitivity to histamine injections
- 2) *in vitro* studies on the activity of histaminase
- 3) the content of histamine in tissues
- 4) the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro*

restored approximately to normal by giving an ACTH extract but not by giving desoxycorticosterone

Thyroidectomy in rats had no effect on the development of adrenal insufficiency and the increased sensitivity to histamine injections after adrenalectomy (WILMAN 1929)

Histaminase is an enzyme that inactivates histamine by oxidative deamination (e.g. BEST and McHENRY 1930). Histaminase has also been called diamine oxidase (ZELLER 1938) since it can oxidize several diamines. KARADY *et al* (1940) found a *decreased histaminase activity in vitro* in lung tissue of adrenalectomized rats. The decrease after adrenalectomy was more pronounced if water was substituted for sodium chloride as drinking fluid. The decreased histaminase activity could be restored approximately to normal by giving an adrenal cortical extract. TELFORD and WEST (1961) found a decreased histaminase activity *in vitro* in the ileum of adrenalectomized rats given water.

A decreased histaminase activity *in vitro* in various tissues after adrenalectomy was also found in cats (HAEGER and KAHLSON 1952) and guinea pigs (KAHLSON *et al* 1953). The decrease in kidney and intestinal histaminase activity *in vitro* in the cat was apparently caused by the release of the enzyme into the thoracic duct lymph (CARLSTEIN 1950).

The decreased histaminase activity was thought partly to explain the findings of ROSE and BROWNE (1938) that rats after adrenalectomy had a *decreased ability to eliminate injected histamine* from the blood; the elimination could be restored to normal by giving an adrenal cortical extract (ROSE 1939).

ROSE and BROWNE (1941) reported an *increase in the histamine content* of the stomach and small intestine in adrenalectomized rats. The increase was larger if the animals were given water as drinking fluid (which caused adrenal insufficiency) instead of saline. MARSHALL (1943), GEIRINGER and HARDWICK (1953), HICKS and WEST (1958), BARTLET and LOCKETT (1959) and TELFORD (1963) have reported findings generally in agreement with those of ROSE and BROWNE (1941).

*The introduction by SCHAYER (e.g. 1952, 1955) of methods using  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine provided entirely new means for studying the catabolism and the formation of histamine in vivo as well as in isolated tissue preparations.*

The catabolism of histamine *in vivo* was studied by SCHAYER and his co-workers (e.g. 1953) who injected small quantities of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine into animals. The amount of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and its  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled derivatives excreted in the urine was measured using paper chromatography and



Such experiments have shown that the adrenal glands can influence the metabolism and the effects of histamine. The decreased histaminase activity *in vitro* after adrenalectomy might be consistent with an increased content of histamine in the tissues and may also explain the less effective elimination of histamine from the blood. However, a decreased histamine inactivation could not be demonstrated using  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histamine (SCHAYER *et al* 1952 1953).

In view of the reported changes in histamine elimination, inactivation and formation it was thought of interest to study the urinary excretion of free histamine in adrenalectomized rats. Such experiments were therefore started in this laboratory (BJURO and WESTLING 1959, ANGERVALL *et al* 1961, BJURO and WESTLING 1962 1963).

### *B The urinary excretion of histamine in rats and the changes caused by adrenalectomy*

The excretion of histamine in the urine was demonstrated by e.g. ANREI *et al* (1944). They showed that there were two forms of urinary histamine, free and conjugated. Conjugated histamine became biologically active after acid hydrolysis and was later shown to be acetylhistamine (URBACH 1949, TABOR and MOSETTIG 1949). Excretion of histamine has been found in all the species investigated.

The method of using the amount of free histamine excreted in the urine as an indicator of the liberation of endogenous histamine was applied to rats by WILSON (1954). However, histamine excreted in the urine is both of endogenous and exogenous origin (e.g. SCHAYER *et al* 1954, GADDUM 1956). The exogenous histamine may be present in the food or be formed by decarboxylation of dietary histidine by certain bacteria in the intestines (e.g. GALE 1946). In both cases histamine is absorbed and part of it may be excreted in the free form. If the contribution of exogenous histamine is large, the amount of histamine excreted in the urine would obviously give poor information about the endogenous metabolism of histamine. SCHAYER *et al* (1954) succeeded in suppressing the formation of exogenous histamine in the intestines by feeding rats antibacterial agents. With such a procedure the urinary histamine is entirely of endogenous origin and therefore a better indicator of the formation and release of histamine in the body. GUSTAFSSON *et al* (1957) showed that rats kept on a semi-synthetic food without histamine did not excrete more free histamine in the urine than germ-free rats. This indicated that bacterial formation of histamine in the intestines was unimportant with this diet and antibacterial agents were thus not necessary.

BJURO *et al* (1963 b) found in rats kept on this food no difference in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine whether  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine was injected intravenously or given by mouth. This provides a further confirmation that bacterial formation of histamine in the intestines does not occur in rats given this semisynthetic food.

The amount of free histamine excreted in the urine can be determined by bio assay using the atropinized guinea pig ileum (BARSOUM and GADDUM 1935). An advantage of this method is that histamine can be measured by rather simple means in comparison with those required for determination of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine.

However when evaluating variations in the amount of histamine excreted in the urine changes in the activity of histaminase and the histamine ring N methylating enzyme must be taken into account. This difficulty can be overcome partly by giving aminoguanidine in a dose sufficient to inhibit histaminase as shown *in vitro* by SCHULER (1952) and *in vivo* by SCHAYER *et al* (1953).

As mentioned above injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and presumably also non radioactive (endogenous) histamine is inactivated in part by ring N methylation. In female rats the proportion of histamine methylated is less than in male rats (WESTLING 1958) but nevertheless only about 30% of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine is excreted in unchanged form in the urine in female rats given aminoguanidine. The remaining 70% can be accounted for largely by ring N methylation. Thus changes in the methylation of histamine can obviously alter the urinary excretion of histamine in rats given aminoguanidine. Therefore variations in the amount of histamine excreted in the urine cannot be said to reflect parallel changes in the amount of histamine formed or released unless the enzymatic inactivation of histamine is known in each experimental condition.

Rather little is known about the relative importance of histamine from various tissues as sources of the histamine excreted in the urine. After an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine to intact rats the glandular stomach contained more  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than other organs examined (BJURO *et al* 1963 a). The  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed in the glandular stomach showed a high rate of turnover in contrast with e.g. the skin. Thus it seems probable that histamine from the glandular stomach constitutes a large fraction of the histamine excreted in the urine in rats.

As mentioned above the present investigation was initiated by observations on the urinary excretion of free histamine in adrenalectomized rats given aminoguanidine. It was found that the amount of sodium chloride intake





aminoguanidine This was done to obtain information about the level of activity of histaminase and the ring N methylating enzyme *in vivo* (Chapter 3)

2 the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vivo* from injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine was measured in the urine and in various tissues (Chapter 4)

3 the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in various tissues formed from intravenously injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine (Chapter 4)

In most experiments the findings with  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled histamine and histidine were correlated with the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted into the urine or present in the tissues

and with this the degree of adrenal insufficiency were of decisive importance for the changes in urinary histamine. In the later experiments (BJURÖ and WESTLING 1962-1963) the intake of sodium chloride was therefore controlled. Two main changes in the urinary free histamine were observed after adrenalectomy:

1 a progressive decrease in the amount of histamine excreted in the urine in rats developing adrenal insufficiency when kept on a sodium free diet.

2 a sudden and large increase in the amount of urinary histamine when sodium chloride was given to rats after a period of adrenal insufficiency. In such rats the adrenal insufficiency was corrected and with this the urinary histamine increased. It remained at a higher than normal level for several days.

In rats kept on large amounts of 0.9% NaCl there were no significant changes in the urinary histamine for approximately the first eight days after adrenalectomy, but then a progressive increase was observed.

It was difficult to reconcile these findings with the previously mentioned changes in the metabolism of histamine after adrenalectomy. The decreased histaminase activity *in vitro* reported by other authors could not play a role since aminoguanidine was given to the rats. An increased formation of histamine could explain the increase in urinary histamine but not the decrease observed in rats with adrenal insufficiency.

### C The present investigation

The object of the present investigation has been to elucidate the effects of adrenalectomy on the metabolism of histamine. In two experiments have been performed using both a non radioactive method for the determination of the urinary excretion of free histamine and methods using  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histidine and histamine. These were done both before and after adrenalectomy or sham operation on rats given a semisynthetic food free from histamine. The food was either free from sodium or supplied with sodium by giving 0.9% NaCl as drinking fluid. With these two diets the sodium chloride consumption and the degree of adrenal insufficiency could to a large extent be controlled and reproduced. As in previous experiments (BJURÖ and WESTLING 1962-1963) female rats were used.

The following main problems were studied:

1 the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine as judged by analysis of the urinary excretion of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and its  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled derivatives. Such experiments were carried out both in rats given and those not given

aminoguanidine This was done to obtain information about the level of activity of histaminase and the ring N methylating enzyme *in vivo* (Chapter 3)

2 the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vivo* from injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine was measured in the urine and in various tissues (Chapter 4)

■ the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in various tissues formed from intravenously injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine (Chapter 4)

In most experiments the findings with  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histamine and histidine were correlated with the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted into the urine or present in the tissues

and with this the degree of adrenal insufficiency were of decisive importance for the changes in urinary histamine. In the later experiments (BJURÖ and WESTLING 1962-1963) the intake of sodium chloride was therefore controlled. Two main changes in the urinary free histamine were observed after adrenalectomy:

1 a progressive decrease in the amount of histamine excreted in the urine in rats developing adrenal insufficiency when kept on a sodium free diet

2 a sudden and large increase in the amount of urinary histamine when sodium chloride was given to rats after a period of adrenal insufficiency. In such rats the adrenal insufficiency was corrected and with this the urinary histamine increased. It remained at a higher than normal level for several days.

In rats kept on large amounts of 0.9% NaCl there were no significant changes in the urinary histamine for approximately the first eight days after adrenalectomy, but then a progressive increase was observed.

It was difficult to reconcile these findings with the previously mentioned changes in the metabolism of histamine after adrenalectomy. The decreased histaminase activity *in vitro* reported by other authors could not play a role since aminoguanidine was given to the rats. An increased formation of histamine could explain the increase in urinary histamine but not the decrease observed in rats with adrenal insufficiency.

### C The present investigation

The object of the present investigation has been to elucidate the effects of adrenalectomy on the metabolism of histamine. *In vivo* experiments have been performed using both a non radioactive method for the determination of the urinary excretion of free histamine and methods using  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histidine and histamine. These were done both before and after adrenalectomy or sham operation on rats given a semisynthetic food free from histamine. The food was either free from sodium or supplied with sodium by giving 0.9% NaCl as drinking fluid. With these two diets the sodium chloride consumption and the degree of adrenal insufficiency could to a large extent be controlled and reproduced. As in previous experiments (BJURÖ and WESTLING 1962-1963) female rats were used.

The following main problems were studied:

1 the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine as judged by analysis of the urinary excretion of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine and its  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled derivatives. Such experiments were carried out both in rats given and those not given

## Food

A semisynthetic food (GUSTAFSSON *et al* 1957) was used. This food consists of approximately 19.5% (w/w) casein, 63% wheat starch, 10% arachis oil, 4% of a salt mixture (HUBBEL *et al* 1937) and 1% of a vitamin mixture. Its content of histamine was less than 0.05  $\mu\text{g/g}$  of potassium chloride approximately 9 mg/g and of sodium chloride approximately 3 mg/g.

By not adding sodium chloride to the food, the sodium chloride content could be decreased to approximately 0.2 mg/g. At 8 a.m. every day each rat was given 10 g of this food with a low content of sodium chloride. To the food was added 10 ml of drinking fluid. Thus two different diets were obtained.

1. 10 g food mixed with 10 ml distilled water. In addition distilled water *ad libitum* as drinking fluid. This diet is called "sodium free" indicated as  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in the Tables and the Figures.

2. 10 g food mixed with 10 ml of a 0.9% NaCl solution which also was used *ad libitum* as drinking fluid. This diet is called 0.9% NaCl.

The diet was started 4–5 days before the beginning of the experiment. At the end of each day the food not consumed was removed from the cup and weighed. The amount of water evaporated from the food during twenty-four hours was approximately 1 g. The food was mixed with drinking fluid so as to prevent spillage.

## Collection of urine

The urine was collected every 24 hours at 8 a.m. In some experiments the urine was collected in periods of eight and sixteen hours respectively (from 8 a.m. to 4 p.m. and from 4 p.m. to 8 a.m.).

The urine was collected in vessels containing 0.5 ml of 10 N hydrochloric acid which brought the pH of the collected specimen to less than 2. This was done to prevent decomposition of histamine and the growth of bacteria which could form histamine from histidine.

The volume of the urine was measured and the urine passed through a filter paper into a test tube. The collection vessel was washed with approximately 5 ml of distilled water. This solution was filtered, added to the urine sample and the total volume was measured. As a rule the urinary samples were stored at  $-20^\circ\text{C}$ .

## Loss of urine

To estimate the loss of urine in the metabolism cage the following experiment was performed. At the end of a twenty-four hour collection period after

## CHAPTER 2

### METHODS

#### ANIMALS AND THEIR CARE

##### *Animals*

White female, non pregnant inbred Sprague Dawley rats were used<sup>1</sup> when they were between 2 and 4 months old and weighed from 120 to 180 g. Sham operated intact and adrenalectomized rats were chosen so that the body weight was about the same in the different groups at the beginning of the experiment.

The experimental series were indicated by a figure. The individual rat in each series was marked at random by a letter plus the figure of the series.

##### *Cages*

The rats were kept individually in metabolism cages or in groups of three to five in storage cages. The metabolism cage had a wire mesh (width 3 mm) in the collecting polyethylene funnel (diameter 20 cm) for separating the faeces from the urine. Special drinking fountains were used (LAZAROW 1954). These fountains do not leak or spill and therefore accurate measurement of the volume of fluid consumed can be made. The food and drinking fluid were easily accessible even to a rat with adrenal insufficiency.

All rats were kept in the same room at a temperature of from 18 to 22 °C. The electric light was automatically switched on at 8 a.m. and off at 5 p.m. This was done to eliminate variations in the duration of natural light during the year.

##### *Drinking fluid*

The drinking fluid used was either distilled water or 0.9% NaCl (w/v) which was prepared from sodium chloride (reagent grade) and distilled water.

---

<sup>1</sup> Obtained from AB Anticimex, Stockholm.

three subcutaneous injections of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine into each of four rats (G7 H7 E7 and F7 see Table 1) the cage bottom wire mesh and the funnel were carefully washed with 25 to 30 ml of distilled water. The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled compounds in this fluid was determined in the same way as the amount of total  $^{14}\text{C}$  in the urinary samples.

The volume of urine excreted varied from 0.9 to 54.9 ml. The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  in twelve urinary samples from these rats corresponded to an average loss of urine of  $0.37 \pm 0.0$  ml and was largely independent of the total urinary volume (see Figure 2).

### *Injections*

All injections were given at the beginning of the ordinary urine collection period (thus close to 8 a.m.).

Aminoguanidine sulfate in distilled water (20 mg/ml) was injected subcutaneously once daily in a dose of about 20 mg/kg body weight (SCHAIER *et al.* 1954 WESTLING 1958).

In the catabolism experiments  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine (see p. 18) was given in a dose of 2.0 or 30  $\mu\text{g}$  (base) as a subcutaneous injection with a long needle to avoid leakage.

In the *in vivo* experiments  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine (see p. 18) was dissolved in a sodium phosphate buffer (see p. 20) to a concentration of 88  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  (12.5  $\mu\text{C}/\text{ml}$ ) or 177.5  $\mu\text{g}/\text{ml}$  (25.0  $\mu\text{C}/\text{ml}$ ) and was injected into a tail vein. About 1.5 ml 0.5% (w/v) glucose was injected through the same needle to flush in all the  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine.

### OPERATIONS AND ADRENAL INSUFFICIENCY

Bilateral adrenalectomy (in 94 rats) or sham operation (in 73 rats) was performed in the forenoon during 12 to 15 min of ether anaesthesia. A 4 to 5 cm skin incision was made in the dorsal midline and after a gentle dissection a muscular incision was made below the lowest rib on each side. The adrenal glands were removed with care in order not to injure the adrenal capsule. In the sham operation the adrenal region was not touched.

Three rats died from an accidental overdosage of ether but otherwise no rats died from the operation. On the day of operation the feeding was postponed until immediately after the end of the operation. The rats recovered quickly and started to eat and drink within about half an hour. The day of operation was not counted when indicating the time in relation to the operation.

Certain amounts of sodium chloride in adrenalectomized rats can prevent or postpone signs of insufficiency in adrenalectomized rats. In the present

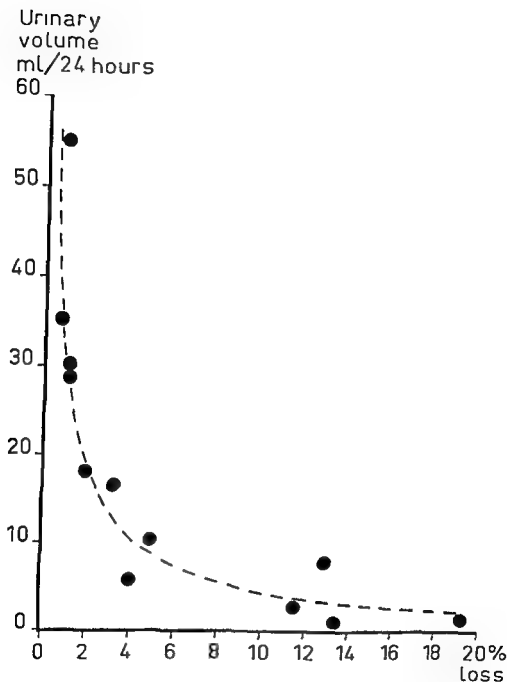


FIG 2 *Loss of urine in the metabolism cage*

The loss in each specimen is expressed as per cent of the volume of urine collected  
The dotted line is not mathematically calculated



developed in all rats except those given 0.9% NaCl. Apparently accessory adrenocortical tissue is rare in the strain of rats used.

As age and initial body weight varied somewhat this might explain the slight variation in the time of onset and the degree of adrenal insufficiency noted.

#### NON-RADIOACTIVE HISTAMINE

##### *In the urine*

The urinary samples were diluted with Tyrode's solution: a dilution of 1:20 was used in rats not given aminoguanidine and 1:40 in rats given aminoguanidine. Samples of urines containing a higher concentration of histamine were further diluted.

With a few drops of bromthymol blue as indicator the samples were adjusted with sodium hydroxide to a pH of approximately 7.4.

##### *In the tissues*

Extraction of free histamine was performed according to the method described by CODE (1937).

##### *Assay of histamine*

Histamine was assayed using the isolated guinea pig ileum as described by BAROT and GADDUM (1935) and modified by CODE (1937). Reviews of the determination of non-radioactive histamine have been published by e.g. CODE and McVITTIE (1956) and CROSSLAND (1961).

The histamine doses were injected into the bath at 1 min intervals which were indicated by an electro-mechanical timer. This apparatus also automatically washed the two cups with Tyrode's solution by activating solenoid valves (BUTSON to be published). The volume of each cup in the organ bath was 4 ml, the temperature 34.5°C and the Tyrode's solution was kept aerated by a steady stream of air bubbles.

The composition of Tyrode's solution was (g/l): NaCl 8.0, KCl 0.2, CaCl<sub>2</sub> 0.0, MgCl<sub>2</sub> 0.1, NaHCO<sub>3</sub> 1.0, NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> 0.05, Atropine sulfate 0.1 mg/l and glucose 0.1 g/l were regularly added. The glucose increased the sensitivity of the guinea pig ileum.

Several consecutive samples of urine from each rat were usually assayed in series. This made the determination of small changes in the amount of urinary histamine more reliable. As a control samples of special importance were assayed a second time after having been kept frozen for some days or weeks.

experiments the amounts of sodium chloride consumed by the adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl was of the same magnitude as reported by ANDERSSON *et al* (1940 a) (from 650 to 940 mg NaCl/day) to be optimal for maintaining life. In a companion publication they observed that such a consumption of sodium chloride (by giving 1% NaCl as drinking fluid) also prevents the increase in the amount of radioactive sodium and the decrease in radioactive potassium excreted in the urine by rats with adrenal insufficiency (ANDERSSON *et al* 1940 b). Though such rats are still very sensitive to e.g. cold and starvation it is evident that the effects of adrenalectomy in some respects can be compensated for by the intake of sodium chloride.

In the present experiments adrenal insufficiency was said to appear when a rat did not finish its food. This occurred from approximately the fourth day after adrenalectomy and on the sixth day they ate an average of  $6.3 \pm 0.8$  g of solid food (cf. *Experiment C*).

The degree of adrenal insufficiency was judged from the decrease in body weight and the decrease in the intake of food. In addition rats developing adrenal insufficiency showed increasing lassitude, muscular weakness, coldness and diarrhea. Rats with moderate or severe adrenal insufficiency survived if given adequate amounts of sodium chloride. This was not the case in rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency which ate and drank very little.

The volume of urine excreted by the rats kept on the sodium free diet was  $12.5 \pm 2.4$  ml/24 hours. After adrenalectomy the volume of urine was increased for three to four days and then gradually decreased. On the sixth day the value was  $11.6 \pm 1.2$ . When these rats in severe adrenal insufficiency were given 0.9% NaCl on the seventh day onwards the volume of urine increased to  $59.8 \pm 6.4$  ml but after one day fell to values between 17.6 and 24 ml/24 hours (cf. BJURO and WESTLING 1963). In rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency the volume of urine was much decreased (see p. 31).

Regarding the decrease in body weight in rats with adrenal insufficiency see Figure 7 and *Experiment C*.

Where the experimental design permitted all adrenalectomized rats were put on a sodium free diet at the conclusion of the period of observation. All 22 rats (see Tables 1—4) treated in this manner died after two to four days from adrenal insufficiency and this proved that no adrenocortical tissue of functional importance remained in these rats. In 51 rats used for the purpose of determining the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* or *in vivo* (Tables 5 and 6) adrenal insufficiency regularly appeared when the rats were kept on the sodium free diet for more than four days after adrenalectomy. In 21 rats (Chapter 4) kept on 0.9% NaCl adrenal insufficiency did not develop.

Thus approximately four days after adrenalectomy adrenal insufficiency

developed in all rats except those given 0.9% NaCl. Apparently accessory adrenocortical tissue is rare in the strain of rats used.

As age and initial body weight varied somewhat this might explain the slight variation in the time of onset and the degree of adrenal insufficiency noted.

### NON RADIOACTIVE HISTAMINE

#### *In the urine*

The urinary samples were diluted with Tyrode's solution a dilution of 1:20 was used in rats not given aminoguanidine and 1:40 in rats given aminoguanidine. Samples of urines containing a higher concentration of histamine were further diluted.

With a few drops of bromthymol blue as indicator the samples were adjusted with sodium hydroxide to a pH of approximately 7.4.

#### *In the tissues*

Extraction of free histamine was performed according to the method described by CODE (1937).

#### *Assay of histamine*

Histamine was assayed using the isolated guinea pig ileum as described by BARSOBY and GADDUM (1935) and modified by CODE (1937). Reviews of the determination of non radioactive histamine have been published by e.g. CODE and MCINTIRE (1956) and CROSSLAND (1961).

The histamine doses were injected into the bath at 1 min intervals which were indicated by an electro mechanical timer. This apparatus also automatically washed the two cups with Tyrode's solution by activating solenoid valves (BUTTER to be published). The volume of each cup in the organ bath was 4.5 ml, the temperature 34.5 °C and the Tyrode's solution was kept aerated by a steady stream of air bubbles.

The composition of Tyrode's solution was (g/l): NaCl 8.0, KCl 0.2, CaCl<sub>2</sub> 0.1, MgCl<sub>2</sub> 0.1, NaHCO<sub>3</sub> 1.0, NaH<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub> 0.05, Atropine sulfate 0.1 mg/l and glucose 0.1 g/l were regularly added. The glucose increased the sensitivity of the guinea pig ileum.

Several consecutive samples of urine from each rat were usually assayed in series. This made the determination of small changes in the amount of urinary histamine more reliable. As a control samples of special importance were assayed a second time after having been kept frozen for some days or weeks.

The values for non radioactive histamine are expressed as  $\mu\text{g}$  of free histamine base

The identity of the gut contracting substance was checked with mepyramine (an antihistaminic agent) as described by REUSE (1948)

## <sup>14</sup>C LABELLED COMPOUNDS

### General

<sup>14</sup>C histamine (histamine dihydrochloride) and <sup>14</sup>C histidine (L histidine) both labelled in the 2 position of the imidazole ring were obtained from the Radiochemical Centre Amersham England. The specific activity of the <sup>14</sup>C histamine was 720 mC/mM 1  $\mu\text{g}$  base giving 2500 cpm (counts per minute) under the standardized conditions used (histamine carrier added precipitated as dipicrate and counted at infinite thickness in a gas flow counter)

The <sup>14</sup>C histamine used for the subcutaneous injection was dissolved in 0.9% NaCl to a concentration of 100  $\mu\text{g}$  histamine base per ml. Glucose was added to a concentration of 0.2% (w/v) (e.g. SCHAEFER and COOPER 1956)

The <sup>14</sup>C histidine used had the following specific activities

Experiment A 12.47 mC/mM experiments B-D 21.6 mC/mM in the *in vivo* experiments E-G 22.0 mC/mM. In the experiment in section I Chapter 4 the specific activity of the <sup>14</sup>C histidine was 9.80 mC/mM. 1  $\mu\text{g}$  <sup>14</sup>C histamine base formed from the <sup>14</sup>C histidine should give the following approximate values in our standardized conditions 6500 11300 11500 and 5100 cpm respectively

To make the values in the *in vitro* experiments A-D directly comparable with each other the values for <sup>14</sup>C histamine in experiment A were multiplied by 1.73 (21.6 divided by 12.47)

The <sup>14</sup>C histidine was dissolved in the sodium phosphate buffer in a concentration of 25.0 or 12.5  $\mu\text{C}/\text{ml}$

The <sup>14</sup>C histidine used for the intravenous injections contained a small amount of <sup>14</sup>C histamine as an impurity (cf. WHITE 1960). In the experiment in Chapter 4 section I about 3/4 of the <sup>14</sup>C histamine was removed from the <sup>14</sup>C histidine using butanol and ether extractions. The amount of <sup>14</sup>C histamine in the injected <sup>14</sup>C histidine corresponded to approximately 100 cpm. Part of this <sup>14</sup>C histamine would be excreted in unchanged form and contribute to the figures for <sup>14</sup>C histamine in the urine during the first day after the injection of <sup>14</sup>C histidine.

The methods for determining <sup>14</sup>C histamine and its <sup>14</sup>C labelled derivatives have been described by SCHAEFER and others (SCHAEFER 1952 SCHAEFER and

COOPER 1956 ROTHSCHILD and SCHAYER 1958 LINDELL and SCHAYER 1958  
KARLSON *et al* 1958 WHITE 1959 1960)

To an aliquot (0.5–2.0 ml) of the urine was added non radioactive carrier equivalent to 206 mg of the respective picrate (SCHAYER and KARJALA 1956)

#### <sup>14</sup>C histamine

The sample of urine was made strongly alkaline with NaOH and saturated with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. Histamine was extracted with n butanol and reextracted with HCl evaporated to dryness. The histamine dipicrate was prepared and its radioactivity measured. By passing the histamine dipicrate through a Dowex 1 (Cl<sup>-</sup>) ion exchange column it was converted to histamine dihydrochloride from which the pipsyl derivative (p iodobenzene sulfonyl chloride) was prepared.

#### <sup>14</sup>C methylhistamine (1 methyl 4 (β aminoethyl) <sup>14</sup>C imidazole)

The urine was made strongly alkaline saturated with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and methyl histamine was extracted with chloroform. The extract was acidified with ethyl alcohol saturated with dry HCl. The methylhistamine picrate was prepared after evaporation.

#### <sup>14</sup>C methylimida oleacetic acid (1 methyl <sup>14</sup>C imidazole 4 acetic acid MeImAA)

The acid urine was passed through a Dowex 50 (H<sup>+</sup>) column and the MeImAA was eluted with ammonia. The picrate of MeImAA was prepared after evaporation.

#### <sup>14</sup>C imida oleacetic acid (<sup>14</sup>C imidazole 4(5) acetic acid) ImAA)

An aliquot of urine was hydrolyzed in 1 N hydrochloric acid in a sealed glass tube at about 160 °C for 6 hours. The hydrolysis splits off the ribose conjugated to the ImAA. Thus the values given are the sum (total ImAA) of free ImAA and ImAA riboside. The ImAA picrate was isolated in the same manner as MeImAA and by passing through a Dowex 1 (Cl<sup>-</sup>) column it was converted into ImAA hydrochloride the pipsyl derivative of which was then prepared.

#### Total <sup>14</sup>C in the urine

The total <sup>14</sup>C-activity was measured as described by SCHAYER and COOPER (1956). From the urine suitably diluted with Tyrode's solution two solutions

were prepared 1) 3.0 ml urine + 0.6 ml  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine 2) 3.0 ml urine + 0.6 ml distilled water From each solution was prepared 5 plates of 0.5 ml each The plates were dried and their radioactivity measured The difference of counts in the plates prepared from the two solutions was due to the added  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine (internal standard) The amount of total  $^{14}\text{C}$  originally present in the sample of urine could then be calculated by proportion

## THE FORMATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTAMINE IN TISSUES

### General

The rats were killed by a blow on the head and bleeding through the cut carotid arteries The tissues were removed quickly The stomach was separated from the oesophagus (at the cardia) and the duodenum (at the pyloric sphincter) and opened by cutting along the lesser curvature The glandular stomach (fundus and antrum) was separated from the squamous stomach (forestomach) by cutting slightly oral to the marginal ridge The gut used was the upper part of the jejunum The skin specimen was taken from the abdomen

The tissue specimens were blotted with a filter paper but were not washed since this could influence their electrolyte composition They were then put in beakers diced (about 1 mm cube) and weighed to the nearest 0.01 g The approximate wet weights of the tissues used in the *in vitro* experiments were glandular stomach 0.4–0.6 g jejunum and skin 1 g lung 0.3–0.4 g kidney 0.6 g, liver 0.9–1 g In the *in vivo* experiments the wet weights were glandular stomach 0.7–0.8 g jejunum 3–4 g skin 1 g lungs 1.2–1.3 g kidneys 1.2–1.4 g liver 4–5 g

### *In vitro*

To the tissue specimens was added 1.0 ml (2.0 ml for the skin) of a 0.1 M sodium phosphate buffer with a pH of 7.4 The composition of the buffer was 1.9 ml 0.1 M  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$  8.1 ml 0.1 M  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$  (GOMORI 1955) to which 20 mg glucose was added The sodium concentration of the buffer was 181 mEq/l To the tissue specimens were further added 0.10 ml  $10^{-3}$  M aminoguanidine to inhibit histaminase and 0.10 ml (12.5  $\mu\text{g}$ )  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine In each incubation two samples of liver were used as blanks About 10 to 15 min before adding  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine 0.5 ml  $10^{-1}$  M semicarbazide was added to these samples to inhibit histidine decarboxylase

The beakers with the tissue specimens were put in a shaking incubator (water bath) in a nitrogen atmosphere at 37 °C for 3 hours After this incubation 66.4 mg non radioactive histamine dihydrochloride (50 mg base) dissolved in 1.0 ml distilled water was added as carrier 50 mg non radioactive

L-histidine monohydrochloride dissolved in 10 ml distilled water was added to dilute the  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine to a similar specific activity as the  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine. Perchloric acid was added to a final concentration of 0.1 M to precipitate enzymes and other proteins. The sample was allowed to stand for at least 30 min and then it was ground with sand in a mortar and passed through a filter paper. Perchloric acid 0.2 M was used for washing.  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine was extracted from the filtrate as described above with the addition of an extraction to reduce the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine in the sample. This was made by shaking a butanol fraction with 20 mg non-radioactive L-histidine monohydrochloride.

### In vivo

The tissue specimens taken out after the intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine were placed in the sodium phosphate buffer 0.10 M  $10^{-3}$  M amino guanidine and 10 ml of histamine histidine carrier was added. Extraction and determination of the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine was carried out as described above.

### MEASUREMENT OF $^{14}\text{C}$ RADIOACTIVITY

The  $^{14}\text{C}$  radioactivity in the picrate or piperyl compounds was measured at infinite thickness under standardized conditions in a gas flow counter without window. The counter was operated in the proportional region; the gas used was methane at atmospheric pressure. The geometrical efficiency of the counter was about 50%. The background activity averaged  $19.6 \pm 0.1$  cpm. Background and a standard were counted after every 10 to 15 samples. At least 1000 counts were registered from each sample but it was never counted for less than 3 min. The background and standard were counted in the same manner. The average of two counts was used. The background count was subtracted from the observed counting rate. The blank values were subtracted from the figures for formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine.

The crystalline samples were put on standard planchets with a diameter of 1 inch. Purity was considered achieved when repeated recrystallizations (three to five) with different activated charcoal adsorbents caused no significant change in the level of radioactivity. In some samples the amount of substance after repeated recrystallizations was too small to cover the planchet at infinite thickness. Such samples were diluted with non-radioactive carrier and the results corrected accordingly. The counts obtained from the piperyl derivatives —  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and total  $^{14}\text{C}$ -imidazoleacetic acid — were recalculated to the corresponding values for their picrates thus allowing, for

were prepared 1) 3 ml urine + 0.6 ml  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine 2) 3.0 ml urine + 0.6 ml distilled water From each solution was prepared 5 plates of 0.6 ml each The plates were dried and their radioactivity measured The difference of counts in the plates prepared from the two solutions was due to the added  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine (internal standard) The amount of total  $^{14}\text{C}$  originally present in the sample of urine could then be calculated by proportion

## THE FORMATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTAMINE IN TISSUES

### General

The rats were killed by a blow on the head and bleeding through the cut carotid arteries The tissues were removed quickly The stomach was separated from the oesophagus (at the cardia) and the duodenum (at the pyloric sphincter) and opened by cutting along the lesser curvature The glandular stomach (fundus and antrum) was separated from the squamous stomach (forestomach) by cutting slightly oral to the marginal ridge The gut used was the upper part of the jejunum The skin specimen was taken from the abdomen

The tissue specimens were blotted with a filter paper but were not washed since this could influence their electrolyte composition They were then put in beakers diced (about 1 mm cube) and weighed to the nearest 0.01 g The approximate wet weights of the tissues used in the *in vitro* experiments were glandular stomach 0.4–0.6 g jejunum and skin 1 g lung 0.3–0.4 g kidney 0.6 g liver 0.9–1 g In the *in vivo* experiments the wet weights were glandular stomach 0.7–0.8 g jejunum 3–4 g skin 1 g lungs 1.2–1.3 g kidneys 1.2–1.4 g liver 4–5 g

### *In vitro*

To the tissue specimens was added 1 ml (2.0 ml for the skin) of a 0.1 M sodium phosphate buffer with a pH of 7.4 The composition of the buffer was 1.9 ml 0.1 M  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$  8.1 ml 0.1 M  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$  (GOMORI 1955) to which 20 mg glucose was added The sodium concentration of the buffer was 181 mEq/l To the tissue specimens were further added 0.10 ml  $10^{-3}$  M aminoguanidine to inhibit histaminase and 0.10 ml (12  $\mu\text{g}$ )  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine In each incubation two samples of liver were used as blanks About 10 to 15 min before adding  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine 0.5 ml  $10^{-1}$  M semicarbazide was added to these samples to inhibit histidine decarboxylase

The beakers with the tissue specimens were put in a shaking incubator (water bath) in a nitrogen atmosphere at 37°C for 3 hours After this incubation 66.4 mg non radioactive histamine dihydrochloride (50 mg base) dissolved in 1.0 ml distilled water was added as carrier 50 mg non radioactive



## CHAPTER 3

### THE CATABOLISM OF HISTAMINE

The present investigation started with a combination of two *in vivo* methods measurement of the amount non radioactive (endogenous) free histamine excreted in the urine and a simultaneous study of the urinary  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled compounds excreted after a subcutaneous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine

Experiments were first performed on rats given aminoguanidine (cf BJURÖ and WESTLUND 1963) Similar experiments were then carried out in rats not given aminoguanidine to elucidate whether the earlier reported changes in histaminase activity *in vitro* after adrenalectomy (cf Chapter 1) had any significance *in vivo*

The following information was obtained about the effects of adrenalectomy and adrenal insufficiency on the catabolism *in vivo* (a) the pattern of catabolism and the effect of aminoguanidine (b) the rate of excretion of the  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled compounds in the urine (c) the relation between the amount of non radioactive and  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histamine excreted in the urine

#### EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

All the twenty three rats had three subcutaneous injections of 25 or 30  $\mu\text{g}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine each on the third (or fifth) day before the operation and on the fourth day and the ninth (or tenth) day after the operation In most cases the urine was collected in twenty four hour periods Non radioactive (endogenous) histamine total  $^{14}\text{C}$   $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylhistamine  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylimidazoleacetic acid and  $^{14}\text{C}$ -imidazoleacetic acid were determined in the urinary samples The values for total  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled compounds are given in per cent of the  $^{14}\text{C}$  (injected as  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine) In the text variations in the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine are expressed as changes from the value obtained the day before the operation

From the seventh or eighth day after operation the diet was altered in all rats The rats previously kept on the sodium free diet now had 0.9% NaCl and vice versa Thus regarding the intake of sodium chloride the last injection

the small differences in molecular weight. In this way the values for  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and its  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled derivatives were made directly comparable.

#### STATISTICAL

Mean values are given together with the standard error of the mean (MEAN  $\pm$  S.E.M.). Comparison of the different groups of rats was made by Student's *t* test (FISCHER 1954). A *P* value of 0.05 or less was considered significant in these experiments.

## CHAPTER 3

### THE CATABOLISM OF HISTAMINE

The present investigation started with a combination of two *in vivo* methods measurement of the amount non radioactive (endogenous) free histamine excreted in the urine and a simultaneous study of the urinary  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled compounds excreted after a subcutaneous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine

Experiments were first performed on rats given aminoguanidine (cf BRUNO and WESTLING 1963) Similar experiments were then carried out in rats not given aminoguanidine to elucidate whether the earlier reported changes in histaminase activity *in vivo* after adrenalectomy (cf Chapter 1) had any significance *in vivo*

The following information was obtained about the effects of adrenalectomy and adrenal insufficiency on the catabolism *in vivo* (a) the pattern of catabolism and the effect of aminoguanidine (b) the rate of excretion of the  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled compounds in the urine (c) the relation between the amount of non radioactive and  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histamine excreted in the urine

#### EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

All the twenty three rats had three subcutaneous injections of 20 or 30  $\mu\text{g}$  of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine each on the third (or fifth) day before the operation and on the fourth day and the ninth (or tenth) day after the operation In most cases the urine was collected in twenty four hour periods Non radioactive (endogenous) histamine total  $^{14}\text{C}$   $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylhistamine  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylimidazoleacetic acid and  $^{14}\text{C}$ -imidazoleacetic acid were determined in the urinary samples The values for total  $^{14}\text{C}$  and  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled compounds are given in per cent of the  $^{14}\text{C}$  (injected as  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine) In the text variations in the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine are expressed as changes from the value obtained the day before the operation

From the seventh or eighth day after operation the diet was altered in all rats The rats previously kept on the sodium free diet now had 0.9% NaCl and vice versa Thus regarding the intake of sodium chloride the last injection

of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine was given under conditions opposite to those during the two preceding injections

The experimental design is depicted in Figures 2 and 4

## RESULTS

### *Rats given aminoguanidine*

The first seven rats were given daily injections of aminoguanidine. Aminoguanidine inhibits histaminase and the inactivation of histamine (see Figure 1) will then be due mainly to transformation into ring N methyl derivatives (methylhistamine and methylimidazoleacetic acid). The effectiveness of the aminoguanidine given in the present experiments can be judged from the low values for  $^{14}\text{C}$  imidazoleacetic acid excreted in the urine (less than 5 %)

The results are shown in Tables 1 and 3 and Figure 3

### *Non radioactive histamine and adrenal insufficiency*

The development of adrenal insufficiency and the simultaneous changes in the urinary excretion of histamine in the four adrenalectomized rats were the same in principle as those reported by BJURO and WESTLING (1963)

### *Catabolism of $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine*

**BEFORE THE OPERATION** — The urinary excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in four rats given the sodium free diet did not differ from that in three rats given 0.9% NaCl ( $26.4 \pm 2.0\%$  and  $29.7 \pm 1.4\%$  respectively). There was also no difference in the excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histamine derivatives

**THE FOURTH DAY AFTER THE OPERATION** — Moderate adrenal insufficiency developed in the two adrenalectomized rats kept on the sodium free diet and they excreted somewhat less  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than before the operation. The excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled derivatives did not change. In two adrenalectomized rats kept on 0.9% NaCl the catabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine did not change. Sham operation caused no significant changes in the catabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine

From the seventh or eighth day the diet was altered in all rats (see Experimental procedures)

**THE NINTH OR TENTH DAY AFTER THE OPERATION** — Severe adrenal insufficiency developed in the adrenalectomized rats changed to the sodium free diet and as shown in Figure 2 the urinary excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine was less than before the operation. These rats excreted a correspondingly increased amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylimidazoleacetic acid in the urine

# AMINO GUANIDINE

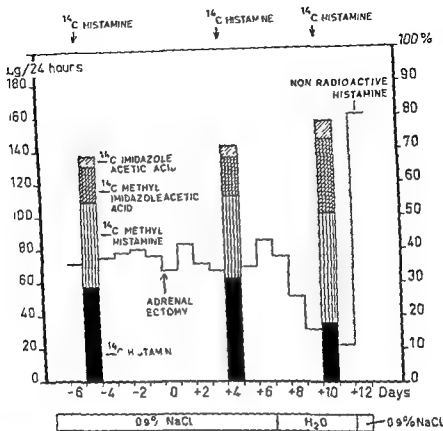


FIG 3 The metabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in a rat given aminoguanidine

Rat C7 see Table 1 The amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine is expressed as  $\mu\text{g}/24 \text{ hours}$  The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine and its  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled derivatives is expressed as percentage of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine - Note that there is no difference in the metabolism before and after adrenalectomy in a rat not showing adrenal insufficiency (kept on 0.9% NaCl) When the sodium free diet ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) is given, adrenal insufficiency develops and thus is accompanied by a decrease in the amount of both non radioactive and  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine

TABLE 1

*Catabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in rats given aminoguanidine*

The amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and its  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled derivatives and total  $^{14}\text{C}$  excreted in the urine within twenty four hours after a subcutaneous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. The amounts are expressed in per cent of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. Non radioactive histamine is given as  $\mu\text{g}$  free base/24 hours.

$\text{H}_2\text{O}$  = sodium free diet

0.9% NaCl = 0.9% NaCl as drinking fluid (and mixed in the food)

Operation	Day in relation to operation	Drinking fluid	$^{14}\text{C}$ histamine	$^{14}\text{C}$ methyl histamine	$^{14}\text{C}$ methyl imidazole acetic acid	$^{14}\text{C}$ imidazole acetic acid	Sum	Total $^{14}\text{C}$	$\mu\text{g}$ non radioactive histamine
Adrenalectomy	-	NaCl	29.6	25.8	11.0	2.9	69.3	78	10
	+ 4	NaCl	30.9	24.9	11.8	3.4	71.0	98	76
	+ 10	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	17.3	33.2	24	4.4	79.3	78	23
Adrenalectomy	- 5	NaCl	32.4	24.6	12.5	3.5	73.0	94	84
	+ 4	NaCl	26.6	26.6	11.8	3.1	68.1	94	66
	+ 10	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	18.2	33.3	24.4	3.6	79.5	89	34
Adrenalectomy	- 5	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	22.0	23.2	14.9	4.4	64.5	91	"
	+ 4	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	19.4	25.5	12.2	2.0	60.0	71	45
	+ 10	NaCl	30	43.4	23.1	5.4	101.9	101	240
Adrenalectomy	-	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	30.5	20	13.6	3.6	68.4	95	75
	+ 4	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	21.9	26.5	11.1	3.1	62.6	93	52
	+ 10	NaCl	45.5	37.3	19.5	5	107.3	110	336
Sham operation	-	NaCl	28.0	23.6	13.4	4.5	69.5	93	63
	+ 4	NaCl	36	22.4	17.3	4.3	79.8	97	71
	+ 10	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	29.2	44.9	18.7	4.6	97.4	84	67
Sham operation	-	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	29.1	27.0	16.4	4.3	76.8	80	9
	+ 4	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	26.7	21.5	16.0	3.5	67.7	75	61
	+ 10	NaCl	29.4	21.6	17.6	4.0	72.6	79	11
Sham operation	-	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	24.1	26.6	14.8	4.4	69.9	80	60
	+ 4	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	25.4	21.9	13.6	3.9	64.8	77	63
	+ 9	NaCl	30.6	22	14.5	4.4	71.5	94	69

Contrary to this the adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl from the seventh day excreted more  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylhistamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylimidazoleacetic acid than before the operation. The independently determined amount of total urinary  $^{14}\text{C}$  was also increased.

As can be seen in Tables 1 and 3 the catabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine did not significantly change in the five sham operated rats. This was the case whether they were given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl.

### Summary

1 Adrenalectomized rats given a sodium free diet and with adrenal insufficiency excreted less unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine in the urine than before operation. When 0.9% NaCl was given to these rats the adrenal insufficiency was corrected and they then excreted more unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the urine than before operation.

2 The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine thus changed in the same direction as the urinary non radioactive histamine in adrenalectomized rats in which histaminase was effectively inhibited by aminoguanidine.

### *Rats not given aminoguanidine*

In experiments by other authors (cf. Introduction) the histaminase activity *in vitro* in various tissues from different species including the rat decreased after adrenalectomy. In order to see whether a similar decrease occurred *in vivo* the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine was studied in rats not given aminoguanidine. A decreased histaminase activity should cause a decrease in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -imidazoleacetic acid excreted in the urine (see Figure 1).

The results are given in Table 2. Figure 4 shows a typical example. The results from the six rats not given aminoguanidine (Table 3) were also used.

### *Non radioactive histamine and adrenal insufficiency*

As expected intact rats not given aminoguanidine excreted less non radioactive histamine in the urine than intact rats given aminoguanidine ( $31.8 \pm 1.7$  and  $67.7 \pm 2.9 \mu\text{g}/24$  hours respectively). These values are from Tables 1—3 eleven and nine rats respectively.

Adrenal insufficiency developed in the five adrenalectomized rats kept on the sodium free diet and the excretion of non radioactive histamine in the urine decreased progressively to an average value of  $10 \pm 2.1 \mu\text{g}$  on the sixth day after the adrenalectomy. These rats were given 0.9% NaCl from the

TABLE 2

*Catabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in rats not given aminoguanidine**For explanation see Table 1*

Operation	Day in relation to operation	Drinking fluid	$^{14}\text{C}$ histamine	$^{14}\text{C}$ methyl histamine	$^{14}\text{C}$ methyl imidazole acetic acid	$^{14}\text{C}$ imidazole acetic acid	Sum	Total $^{14}\text{C}$	$\mu\text{g}$ non radioactive histamine
Adrenal ectomy	- 5	NaCl	6.2	5.8	7.4	60.1	79.5	79	31
	+ 4	NaCl	8.3	8.5	8.3	11.8	76.8	94	34
	+10	H <sub>2</sub> O	2.2	8.0	11.2	14.9	76.3	76	11
Adrenal ectomy	- 5	NaCl	8.2	7.1	2.9	1.9	76.9	87	40
	+ 4	NaCl	7.6	8.4	4.2	17.4	77.6	94	37
	+10	H <sub>2</sub> O	3.5	7.4	6.9	20.1	37.9	38	18
Adrenal ectomy	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	4.8	5.7	1.9	61.0	80	83	28
	+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	3.6	4.2	3.7	64	75.6	83	16
	+10	NaCl	2.1	—	—	—	—	—	—
Adrenal ectomy	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	5.6	5.9	5.8	3.1	70.4	80	—
	+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	5.9	4.0	3.9	62.4	76	90	24
	+10	NaCl	8.7	10.3	7	63.8	89	94	38
Adrenal ectomy	- 3	H <sub>2</sub> O	6.6	8.1	6.6	47.1	68.3	72	7
	+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	1.3	7.8	6.0	49.9	65.0	68	7
	+ 11	NaCl	9.2	6.4	6.3	52.8	74	70	40
Sham operation	- 5	NaCl	7.3	9.2	7	61	3	8	33
	+ 4	NaCl	10.3	6.8	6.5	44.4	68.4	81	34
	+10	H <sub>2</sub> O	6.8	12.0	10.9	47.6	77.3	90	3
Sham operation	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	2.1	—	—	—	—	—	—
	+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	12.2	7.1	8.5	49.4	—	70	27
	+10	NaCl	12.3	8.2	8.4	4.0	82.1	97	32
Sham operation	- 3	H <sub>2</sub> O	7.1	9.5	7	50.7	74	88	6
	+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	10.3	7.6	6.5	47	71.5	81	—
	+ 11	NaCl	16.1	13	10.8	38.9	76.8	91	70

sample lost



eighth day. Within forty eight hours the adrenal insufficiency was corrected and the excretion of histamine in the urine increased to an average of  $91 \pm 8.3$   $\mu\text{g}$ . During the first six days after the adrenalectomy the urinary excretion of histamine in four rats kept on 0.9% NaCl did not change. When the sodium free diet was given to these rats adrenal insufficiency developed and the amount of histamine excreted in the urine decreased.

Thus the changes in the amount of non radioactive (endogenous) histamine excreted in the urine after adrenalectomy were in principle the same whether or not histaminase was inhibited by giving aminoguanidine.

### *Catabolism of $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine*

**BEFORE THE OPERATION** — Seven rats kept on the sodium free diet excreted approximately the same amount of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the urine as six rats kept on 0.9% NaCl:  $6.8 \pm 0.13\%$  and  $7.0 \pm 0.65\%$  respectively. There was also no difference in the urinary excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histamine derivatives.

**THE FOURTH DAY AFTER THE OPERATION** — Moderate adrenal insufficiency developed in the five adrenalectomized rats given the sodium free diet and the excretion of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine was slightly less than before the operation but the decrease was not significant. The excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled derivatives did not change significantly. In the four adrenalectomized rats kept on 0.9% NaCl the catabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine was unchanged.

Four sham operated rats excreted somewhat more  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine than before the operation whether given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl. The increase was however not significant.

The diet was changed in all rats from the sixth or seventh day after the operation.

**THE NINTH OR TENTH DAY AFTER THE OPERATION** — Severe adrenal insufficiency developed in the adrenalectomized rats now given the sodium free diet and the excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine ( $3.7 \pm 0.58\%$ ) was significantly less than in unoperated rats on the sodium free diet ( $P < 0.01$ ). The adrenalectomized rats now given 0.9% NaCl excreted somewhat more  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than before the operation but the increase was not significant. In the adrenalectomized rats whether given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl the sum of  $^{14}\text{C}$  methyl histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylimidazoleacetic acid was somewhat increased but not significantly.

The catabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine in five sham operated rats did not significantly change.

## NO AMINOGUANIDINE

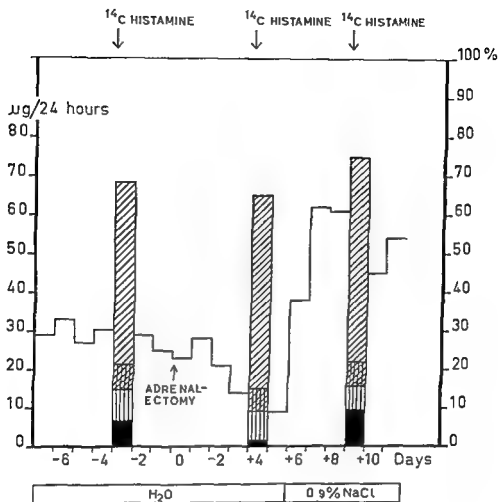


FIG 4 The catabolism of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in a rat not given aminoguanidine

Rat C 17 see Table II For explanation of the symbols see Fig 3 — Adrenal insufficiency develops when the rat is kept on the sodium free diet ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and there is a decrease in the amount of non radioactive and  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine

### *The rate of urinary excretion of total $^{14}\text{C}$ , $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine and non radioactive histamine*

As mentioned rats with severe adrenal insufficiency excreted less  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the urine than adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl. To see whether this could be caused by a decreased rate of excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine the daily urine was collected in two fractions during the first eight hours and then for the next sixteen hours after each injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. Due to the

low urinary volumes of rats in severe adrenal insufficiency shorter collection periods were not feasible

The amounts of total  $^{14}\text{C}$   $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and non radioactive histamine were determined in the urine samples Six rats were not given aminoguanidine of these four were adrenalectomized and two sham operated Two other sham operated rats were given aminoguanidine The results are shown in Table 3

TOTAL  $^{14}\text{C}$  — Before the operation an average of 80% of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  was excreted during the first eight hours and 17% during the next sixteen hours Thus most of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine could be accounted for by excretion into the urine This was also the case after adrenalectomy or sham operation in rats given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl with two exceptions Rat B 12 (see Table 3) with extreme adrenal insufficiency on the tenth day after adrenalectomy excreted only 25% during the first eight hours and an additional 26% during the next sixteen hours Thus twenty four hours after the injection 49% of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine was retained in this rat A similar result was obtained in another rat (B 16 see Table 2) which excreted only 38% of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine as total  $^{14}\text{C}$  in twenty four hours This rat also showed extreme adrenal insufficiency

The volume of urine in these two rats was 1.6 and 2.2 ml/24 hours respectively

$^{14}\text{C}$  HISTAMINE — About 4/5 of the  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in twenty four hours appeared during the first eight hours after the injection and about 1/5 during the next sixteen hours A similar distribution of excreted  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine between the two collection periods was seen also in rats with severe adrenal insufficiency in which the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine in the total twenty four hour period was very small

In two rats given aminoguanidine the excretion rate of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine did not change after sham operation whether they were given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl

NON RADIOACTIVE HISTAMINE — The rate of urinary excretion (in  $\mu\text{g}/\text{h}$ ) of non radioactive (endogenous) histamine was about 50% higher during the first eight hours of the entire twenty four hour collection period This was the case also after adrenalectomy whether the rats were given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl

### Summary

1 The changes in the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine in rats not given aminoguanidine were in principle the same as in the rats given aminoguanidine

TABLE 3

*The rate of excretion of subcutaneously injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine*

Amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and total  $^{14}\text{C}$  excreted in the urine within the first eight hours and the following sixteen hours after the injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. For explanation see Table 1. Aminoguanidine was given to rats F12 and G12.

Rat	Operation	Day in relation to operation	Drinking fluid	$^{14}\text{C}$ histamine %			Non radioactive histamine $\mu\text{g}$			Total $^{14}\text{C}$ %		
				8h	16h	Sum	8h	16h	Sum	8h	16h	Sum
A12	Adrenal ectomy	- 5	NaCl	5.1	1.6	6	-	-	-	-	23	-
		+ 4	NaCl	7.3	1.2	8.5	16	25	41	103	18	121
		+10	H <sub>2</sub> O	4.0	0.5	4.5	9	14	23	83	29	112
B12	Adrenal ectomy	- 5	NaCl	7.7	2.9	10.6	14	25	39	96	14	110
		+ 4	NaCl	7.9	1.5	9.4	17	22	39	98	12	110
		+10	H <sub>2</sub> O	1.9	0.5	2.4	6	7	13	25	26	51
C12	Adrenal ectomy	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	6.5	2.2	8	15	11	30	74	17	91
		+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	5.6	1.4	7.0	8	18	26	71	14	85
		+10	NaCl	6.7	1.1	7.8	11	16	31	96	13	109
D12	Adrenal ectomy	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	4.0	0.9	4.9	10	11	25	75	11	86
		+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	4.4	0.9	5.3	10	18	28	89	14	103
		+10	NaCl	9.9	1	11.1	20	28	48	96	11	111
E12	Sham operation	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	7	2.0	9.0	17	20	37	76	27	103
		+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	7.3	3.3	10.6	15	21	36	76	29	105
		+10	NaCl	8	1	10.4	20	21	41	107	18	125
H12	Sham operation	- 5	NaCl	8.0	1.0	9.0	17	19	36	89	10	99
		+ 4	NaCl	8.9	0.9	9.8	19	19	38	81	1	82
		+10	H <sub>2</sub> O	6.1	1.9	8.1	11	16	31	89	11	100
F12	Sham operation	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	28.6	5.6	34.2	32	40	72	82	10	101
		+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	38.9	8	47.6	30	39	69	81	26	111
		+10	NaCl	45.9	1.3	51	36	39	7	79	18	96
G12	Sham operation	- 5	NaCl	46.5	4.9	51.4	33	36	69	75	-	-
		+ 4	NaCl	39.9	7.1	46.9	34	40	76	81	-	-
		+10	H <sub>2</sub> O	37.8	4.3	42.1	31	34	6	71	-	-

2 Adrenalectomized rats given the sodium free diet and in severe adrenal insufficiency excreted significantly less  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than before operation. This decrease could be prevented by giving 0.9% NaCl. The excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine thus changed in the same direction as the excretion of non radioactive histamine.

3 In extreme adrenal insufficiency the excretion of total  $^{14}\text{C}$  but not that of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine was delayed.

4 The rate of urinary excretion of endogenous histamine was higher in day time both before and after adrenalectomy.

*The relation between the amount of non radioactive (endogenous) histamine, the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the same sample of urine and the degree of adrenal insufficiency*

As mentioned rats with adrenal insufficiency excreted less non radioactive histamine and less  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than before the operation. Giving 0.9% NaCl to these rats caused an increase in the amount of non radioactive histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine.

Both before and after adrenalectomy as can be seen in Figure 5 the changes in the amount of non radioactive histamine were approximately proportional to the changes in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine (nine rats not given aminoguanidine cf Tables 2 and 3).

Figure 6 shows that a similar parallelism occurred in adrenalectomized rats given aminoguanidine (Table 2) except in two rats (E 7 F 7). They excreted a very large amount of non radioactive histamine on the tenth day after adrenalectomy (given 0.9% NaCl) but the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted did not increase proportionally.

Comparison of Figures 5 and 6 indicates that aminoguanidine increases the amount of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine more than it increases the amount of unchanged non radioactive histamine excreted into the urine.

Figure 7 shows that there was a relation between the degree of adrenal insufficiency and the decrease in the urinary excretion of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine. The rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency as judged from the decrease in body weight excreted the least amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine.

### Summary

The present results indicate a close relation between the increase in adrenal insufficiency and the decrease in the urinary excretion of endogenous histamine and unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine.

TABLE 3

*The rate of excretion of subcutaneously injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine*

Amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and total  $^{14}\text{C}$  excreted in the urine within the first eight hours and the following sixteen hours after the injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. For explanation see Table 1. Aminoguanidine was given to rats F12 and G12.

Rat	Operation	Day in relation to operation	Drinking fluid	$^{14}\text{C}$ histamine %			Non radioactive histamine $\mu\text{g}$			Total $^{14}\text{C}$ %		
				8h	16h	Sum	8h	16h	Sum	8h	16h	Sum
A12	Adrenal ectomy	- 5	NaCl	5.1	1.6	6.7	-	-	-	-	73	-
		+ 4	NaCl	7.3	1.2	8.5	16	25	41	103	18	121
		+ 10	H <sub>2</sub> O	4.0	0.5	4.5	0	14	23	83	20	113
B12	Adrenal ectomy	- 5	NaCl	7.7	2.3	10.0	14	25	39	86	14	100
		+ 4	NaCl	7.9	1.5	9.4	17	22	39	98	12	110
		+ 10	H <sub>2</sub> O	1.9	0.5	2.4	6	7	13	25	26	51
C12	Adrenal ectomy	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	6.5	2.2	8.7	15	15	30	74	17	91
		+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	5.6	1.4	7.0	8	18	26	88	14	102
		+ 10	NaCl	6.7	1.1	7.8	15	16	31	96	13	109
D12	Adrenal ectomy	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	4.6	0.9	5.5	10	1	25	75	17	92
		+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	4.4	0.9	5.3	10	16	26	69	14	103
		+ 10	NaCl	9.9	1	11.1	20	28	48	96	15	111
E12	Sham operation	- 5	H <sub>2</sub> O	7	2.0	9.0	17	20	37	76	21	103
		+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	7.3	3.3	10.6	15	21	36	76	20	106
		+ 10	NaCl	8	1	10.4	20	21	41	107	18	125
H12	Sham operation	- 5	NaCl	8.0	1.0	9.0	17	19	36	89	10	99
		+ 4	NaCl	8.0	0.9	8.9	19	19	38	81	12	93
		+ 10	H <sub>2</sub> O	6	1.0	7.1	1	16	31	90	11	100
F12	Sham operation	-	H <sub>2</sub> O	28.6	5.6	34.2	32	40	72	82	19	101
		+ 4	H <sub>2</sub> O	39.9	8	47.9	36	38	74	81	26	111
		+ 10	NaCl	45.0	5.3	50.3	36	39	75	78	18	96
G12	Sham operation	- 5	NaCl	46.5	4.1	50.6	33	38	71	75	-	-
		+ 4	NaCl	39.8	7.1	46.9	34	41	75	81	-	-
		+ 10	H <sub>2</sub> O	31.8	4.3	36.1	31	34	65	1	-	-

Non radioactive  
histamine  
ug/24 hours

AMINO GUANIDINE

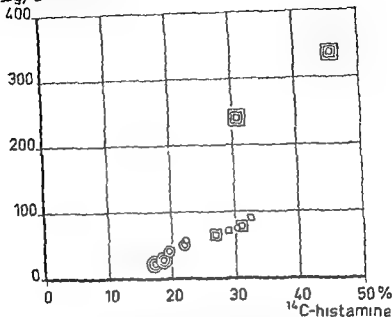


FIG. 8 The relation between the amount of non radioactive histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the same sample of urine

Adrenalectomized rats given aminoguanidine (see Table 1) behaved as in Figure 8 — Two rats excreted disproportionately large amounts of non radioactive histamine when given 0.9% NaCl at the time of the last injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine

#### DISCUSSION

Confirming previous results in rats with a known intake of sodium chloride (BURRO and WESTLUND 1962, 1963) these experiments show that after adrenal ectomy two main changes occur in the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine

- 1 a progressive decrease when adrenal insufficiency develops
- 2 a large increase when sodium chloride is given to rats with adrenal insufficiency

The present study shows that similar changes in the amount of urinary histamine also occurred in adrenalectomized rats not given aminoguanidine

Non-radioactive  
histamine  
 $\mu\text{g}/24$  hours  
50

NO AMINOGUANIDINE

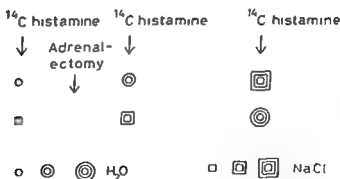
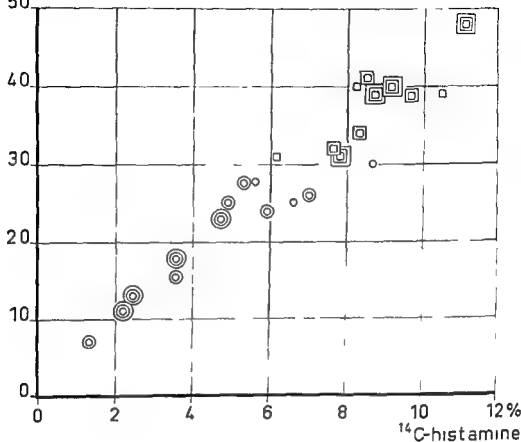


FIG. 2. The relation between the amount of non radioactive histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the same sample of urine

Adrenalectomized rats not given aminoguanidine (see Tables 2 and 3) Below the figure is an explanation of the symbols. The circles indicate that the rats were given the sodium free diet ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and the squares indicate 0.9% NaCl. The number of circles and squares refer to the first, second and third injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine respectively. Observe the change in diet before the last injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. — Note that the two "types" of histamine change in the same proportion.



The decrease in urinary non radioactive histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine appeared from about the fourth day after adrenalectomy. Thus the absence of the adrenal glands *per se* does not seem to influence the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine. This is in accordance with the findings in mice by SCHAYER *et al* (1952).

The decrease in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and non radioactive histamine in the urinary samples might be caused by (a) loss of urine in the metabolism cage (b) retention of histamine in tissues (c) a slower absorption or slower excretion of histamine (d) a more efficient catabolism of histamine (e) a decreased formation of histamine or combinations of these alternatives.

(a) Loss of urine can at most explain 15–20% of the changes observed (see Methods). For the volumes of urine actually obtained the loss is probably of the order of 2–10%.

(b) Injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine is not bound in the tissues of intact rats (SCHAYER 1952). Whether or not this is the case also in adrenalectomized rats has not been studied specifically in the present work. This seems unlikely since the excretion of total  $^{14}\text{C}$  in the urine was not significantly decreased except in extreme adrenal insufficiency.

(c) Rats with adrenal insufficiency have an impaired peripheral circulation. In such rats the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine might be more slowly absorbed or excreted. It seems reasonable to assume that if a slower absorption or excretion occurred this would also affect the endogenously released histamine.

The rate of the urinary excretion of histamine was studied by dividing the daily collection of urine into one period from zero to eight hours and in a second period from eight to twenty four hours after the subcutaneous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. A slower excretion (or absorption) of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine might lead to a larger percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine being excreted in the eight to twenty four hour collection period. However in rats with adrenal insufficiency the amount of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine (as per cent of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine) was decreased in both urinary portions by the same proportion. This indicates that the decrease in the percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine cannot be explained *only* by a slower absorption or slower excretion of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. However it should be noted that a slower excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histamine derivatives occurred in two rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency. A slower absorption or slower excretion is likely to give more time for the catabolizing enzymes to inactivate histamine and can thus contribute to the observed decrease in the percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine.

(d) The decrease in the percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine was not caused by increased histaminase activity since there was no increase in the excretion

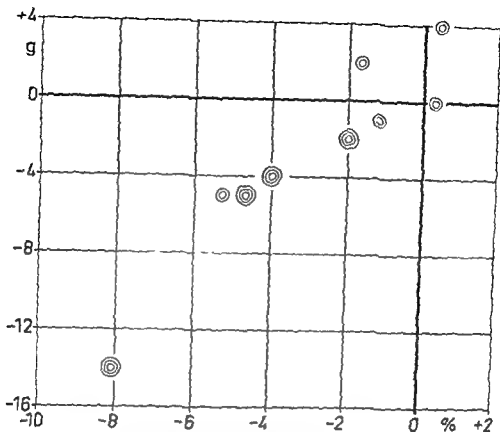


FIG 7 The relation between the changes in body weight (b) and the changes in  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine (%) excreted in the urine

Nine adrenalectomized rats not given aminoguanidine (see Tables 2 and 3) Symbols as in Figure 5. The changes in the percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine are expressed as the value before operation minus the value obtained on the fourth or tenth (ninth) day after adrenalectomy. The change in body weight was calculated similarly. Note that the greater degree of adrenal insufficiency the smaller is the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine.

TELFORD (1963) claims that there were no changes in the amount of urinary histamine in female adrenalectomized rats not given aminoguanidine whether kept on water or 0.9% NaCl as drinking fluid. However nothing was reported about the sodium chloride intake or presence of adrenal insufficiency in these rats.

Rats given the sodium free diet and with adrenal insufficiency excreted less  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than before adrenalectomy. This decrease appeared to be parallel to the development of adrenal insufficiency and to the decrease in the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine in the same sample of urine.

The decrease in urinary non radioactive histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine appeared from about the fourth day after adrenalectomy. Thus the absence of the adrenal glands *per se* does not seem to influence the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine. This is in accordance with the findings in mice by SCHAYER *et al* (1952).

The decrease in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine and non radioactive histamine in the urinary samples might be caused by (a) loss of urine in the metabolism cage (b) retention of histamine in tissues (c) a slower absorption or slower excretion of histamine (d) a more efficient catabolism of histamine (e) a decreased formation of histamine or combinations of these alternatives.

(a) Loss of urine can at most explain 15–20% of the changes observed (see Methods). For the volumes of urine actually obtained the loss is probably of the order of 2–10%.

(b) Injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine is not bound in the tissues of intact rats (SCHAYER 1952). Whether or not this is the case also in adrenalectomized rats has not been studied specifically in the present work. This seems unlikely, since the excretion of total  $^{14}\text{C}$  in the urine was not significantly decreased except in extreme adrenal insufficiency.

(c) Rats with adrenal insufficiency have an impaired peripheral circulation. In such rats the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine might be more slowly absorbed or excreted. It seems reasonable to assume that if a slower absorption or excretion occurred this would also affect the endogenously released histamine.

The rate of the urinary excretion of histamine was studied by dividing the daily collection of urine into one period from zero to eight hours and in a second period from eight to twenty four hours after the subcutaneous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. A slower excretion (or absorption) of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine might lead to a larger percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine being excreted in the eight to twenty four hour collection period. However in rats with adrenal insufficiency the amount of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine (as per cent of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine) was decreased in both urinary portions by the same proportion. This indicates that the decrease in the percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine cannot be explained *only* by a slower absorption or slower excretion of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine. However it should be noted that a slower excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled histamine derivatives occurred in two rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency. A slower absorption or slower excretion is likely to give more time for the catabolizing enzymes to inactivate histamine and can thus contribute to the observed decrease in the percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted in the urine.

(d) The decrease in the percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine was not caused by increased histaminase activity since there was no increase in the excretion

of  $^{14}\text{C}$  imidazoleacetic acid (and its riboside) — the final products of histaminase action. Moreover, a decrease in  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and non radioactive histamine also occurred in rats given aminoguanidine in a dose that almost completely inhibited histaminase. There could also be an increase in the activity of the histamine methylating enzyme since it appears that in some rats the decreased percentage of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in adrenal insufficiency was accompanied by a corresponding increase in  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylimidazoleacetic acid excreted in the urine. However, the few animals studied and the variations in the figures make a definite conclusion unjustified.

Thus an explanation for the decrease in the urinary excretion of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and non radioactive histamine in adrenal insufficiency might be alternatives c and d i.e. a slower absorption or excretion of histamine resulting in a prolonged exposure of histamine to its inactivating enzymes. The possibility of a decreased formation of histamine (e) is discussed in Chapter 4.

Possible explanations for the increase in the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine when 0.0% NaCl was given to rats with adrenal insufficiency are: (f) a decreased histaminase activity; (g) a decreased activity of the histamine methylating enzyme, (h) release of histamine from the tissues; (i) an increased formation of histamine.

(f) A decreased histaminase activity would have caused a decrease in the percentage of  $^{14}\text{C}$  imidazoleacetic acid excreted in the urine after an injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine but no such decrease occurred. Furthermore the increase in the excretion of non radioactive histamine was also seen in rats given aminoguanidine in a dose that almost completely inhibited histaminase.

At present it seems difficult to reconcile the findings of a decreased histaminase activity *in vitro* in the lung of the adrenalectomized rat (KARADY *et al.* 1940) and in the ileum of the adrenalectomized rat (TELFORD and WEST 1961) with the result of the present study. On the basis of observation on the urine the present study indicates no alteration in histaminase activity after adrenalectomy in the rat.

(g) The increase in the urinary excretion of histamine cannot be due to a diminished ring N methylation of histamine since the methylated derivatives were somewhat increased.

(h) It is possible that the increase in urinary histamine is caused by the release of histamine retained in the tissues during severe adrenal insufficiency. The magnitude of the increase and its duration make this explanation unlikely.

(i) Two rats given aminoguanidine and with adrenal insufficiency were given 0.9% NaCl. This caused a disproportionate increase in the amount of non-radioactive histamine excreted in the urine as compared with the amount of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted. This suggests that an increased formation of histamine occurred in these rats (see Chapter 4).

The total  $^{14}\text{C}$  excreted in the urine could not be fully accounted for by the sum of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and its measured derivatives. This is in agreement with the findings of several other authors using the same technique. The missing radioactivity might be due to  $^{14}\text{C}$  acetylhistamine and unknown derivatives of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine e.g. aldehydes which are intermediate steps in the catabolism of histamine (cf. SCHAYER 1959).

## CHAPTER 4

### THE FORMATION OF HISTAMINE

#### I THE URINARY EXCRETION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTAMINE AND $^{14}\text{C}$ METHYLHISTAMINE IN RATS GIVEN INTRAVENOUS INJECTIONS OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTIDINE

$^{14}\text{C}$  histamine is excreted in the urine after an injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  L histidine (SCHAYER *et al* 1954). The amount excreted is apparently dependent upon the rate of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formation and the rate of its catabolism. It is likely that  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed endogenously from  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine is inactivated by ring N methylation to a similar extent as  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine given by injection (BJURO *et al* 1963 b). The sum of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine constitute 50—60% of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in a female rat given aminoguanidine. Determining  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine will thus give information about the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed from the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine.  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylimidazoleacetic acid would probably be difficult to isolate from other  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine metabolites excreted in the urine of these rats (cf. LINDELL and SCHAYER 1958).

#### EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Five rats were given 0.9% NaCl (group 1) and four rats the sodium free diet (group 2). On the fourth day before and on the fourth day after adrenalectomy each rat was given an intravenous injection of 350  $\mu\text{g}$  (22.5  $\mu\text{C}$ )  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine.

#### RESULTS

In all the rats (cf. Figure 8) the first injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine led to the appearance of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the urine. The urinary level of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine decreased rapidly. Rats given the sodium free diet did not differ from those given 0.9% NaCl in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine.

On the fourth day after adrenalectomy all rats were given another intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine. As can be seen in Figure 8 the rate of decrease

# Urinary $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine

cpm/24 hours

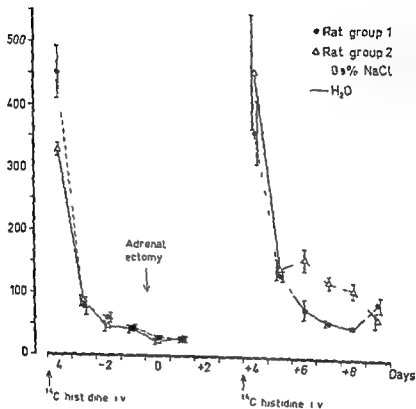


FIG. 2 The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine after two intravenous injections of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine

Rats given aminoguanidine. The values are expressed as  $\text{MEAN} \pm \text{SEM}$ . — Note that after adrenalectomy the change from the sodium free diet (H O) to 0.9% NaCl caused an increase in the amount of urinary  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine while the change from 0.9% NaCl to the sodium free diet (H O) caused a decrease in the amount of urinary  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine.

## CHAPTER 4

### THE FORMATION OF HISTAMINE

#### I THE URINARY EXCRETION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTAMINE AND $^{14}\text{C}$ METHYLHISTAMINE IN RATS GIVEN INTRAVENOUS INJECTIONS OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTIDINE

$^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine is excreted in the urine after an injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -L-histidine (SCHAYER *et al* 1954). The amount excreted is apparently dependent upon the rate of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formation and the rate of its catabolism. It is likely that  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formed endogenously from  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine is inactivated by ring N methylation to a similar extent as  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine given by injection (BJURÖ *et al* 1963 *b*). The sum of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine constitute 50–60% of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine in a female rat given aminoguanidine. Determining  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine will thus give information about the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formed from the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine.  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylimidazoleacetic acid would probably be difficult to isolate from other  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine metabolites excreted in the urine of these rats (cf LINDELL and SCHAYER 1958).

#### EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Five rats were given 0.9% NaCl (group 1) and four rats the sodium free diet (group 2). On the fourth day before and on the fourth day after adrenalectomy each rat was given an intravenous injection of 350  $\mu\text{g}$  (22.5  $\mu\text{C}$ )  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine.

#### RESULTS

In all the rats (cf Figure 8) the first injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine led to the appearance of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine in the urine. The urinary level of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine decreased rapidly. Rats given the sodium free diet did not differ from those given 0.9% NaCl in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted in the urine.

On the fourth day after adrenalectomy all rats were given another intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine. As can be seen in Figure 8 the rate of decrease



Urinary  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine  
cpm/24 hours

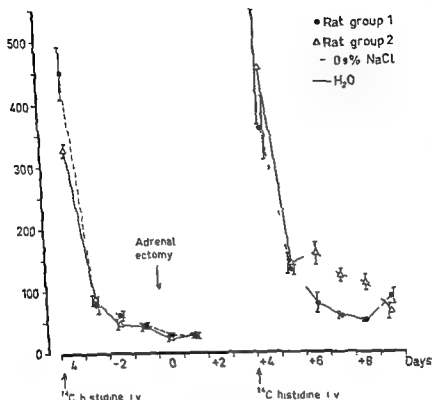


FIG. 2 The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine after two intravenous injections of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine

Rats given aminoguanidine The values are expressed as  $\text{MEAN} \pm \text{SEM}$ . Note that after adrenalectomy the change from the sodium free diet ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) to 0.9% NaCl caused an increase in the amount of urinary  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine while the change from 0.9% NaCl to the sodium free diet ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) caused a decrease in the amount of urinary  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine

## CHAPTER 4

### THE FORMATION OF HISTAMINE

#### I THE URINARY EXCRETION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTAMINE AND $^{14}\text{C}$ METHYLHISTAMINE IN RATS GIVEN INTRAVENOUS INJECTIONS OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTIDINE

$^{14}\text{C}$  histamine is excreted in the urine after an injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -L histidine (SCHAYER *et al* 1954). The amount excreted is apparently dependent upon the rate of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formation and the rate of its catabolism. It is likely that  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed endogenously from  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine is inactivated by ring N methylation to a similar extent as  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine given by injection (BJURO *et al* 1963 b). The sum of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine constitute 50–60% of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in a female rat given aminoguanidine. Determining  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine will thus give information about the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formed from the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine.  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylimidazoleacetic acid would probably be difficult to isolate from other  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine metabolites excreted in the urine of these rats (cf. LINDALL and SCHAYER 1958).

#### EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Five rats were given 0.9% NaCl (group 1) and four rats the sodium free diet (group 2). On the fourth day before and on the fourth day after adrenalectomy each rat was given an intravenous injection of 350  $\mu\text{g}$  (22.5  $\mu\text{C}$ )  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine.

#### RESULTS

In all the rats (cf. Figure 8) the first injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine led to the appearance of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the urine. The urinary level of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine decreased rapidly. Rats given the sodium free diet did not differ from those given 0.9% NaCl in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine.

On the fourth day after adrenalectomy all rats were given another intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine. As can be seen in Figure 8 the rate of decrease

groups of rats. Changing from 0.9% NaCl to the sodium free diet caused a decrease in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted in the urine whereas the opposite occurred in rats changed from the sodium free diet to 0.9% NaCl (group 1). In the latter group the adrenal insufficiency disappeared.

The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine on the third day after each injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine was determined in all rats. The results together with the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted are given in Table 4. On the day before adrenalectomy rats given the sodium free diet (group 2) did not differ from rats given 0.9% NaCl in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine. On the seventh day after adrenalectomy however the rats now given 0.9% NaCl (group 2) excreted about three times more  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylhistamine while the rats given the sodium free diet excreted about twice as much  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylhistamine as before operation.

It appears that after adrenalectomy the increase in  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine was greater than the increase in  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine.

The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine was greatly increased in the adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl after a period of adrenal insufficiency. This is in agreement with rats E7 and F7 see Table 1.

### Summary

After an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine the excretion of both  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine is increased when 0.9% NaCl is given to rats after a period of adrenal insufficiency.

## II THE FORMATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTAMINE IN VARIOUS TISSUES *IN VITRO*

The technique developed by SCHAYER (e.g. 1956) was used in a preliminary attempt to locate the possible increased formation of histamine in rats given 0.9% NaCl after a period of adrenal insufficiency. Small amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine are added to a tissue preparation and the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formed is determined by isotope dilution. Since part of the formed  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine may be catabolized to other  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled compounds the obtained figures are minimum values.

### EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

In most of the experiments the adrenalectomized rats were kept in metabolism cages. Aminoguanidine was given in *experiment A*.

TABLE 4

$^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine after two intravenous injections of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine and the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the same samples

The values for  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine are expressed as cpm/24 hours Non radioactive histamine is given as  $\mu\text{g}$  free base/24 hours

Rat	On the third day after								
	the first injection				the second injection				
	Drink ing fluid	<sup>14</sup> C hist amine	<sup>14</sup> C methyl hist amine	Non radio active hist amine	Drink ing fluid	<sup>14</sup> C hist amine	<sup>14</sup> C methyl hist amine	Non radio active hist amine	
Group 2	H <sub>2</sub> O	A22	39	21	60	0.9% NaCl	129	86	184
		C22	41	39	76		139	121	204
		F22	40	29	65		111	116	196
		G22	—	—	—		89	100	161
		MEAN ± S.E.	41 ± 2.0	30 ± 1.3	64 ± 4		119 ± 11	106 ± 9.0	187 ± 8.5
Group 1	0.9% NaCl	B22	—	26	—	H <sub>2</sub> O	—	64	—
		D22	54	47	78		59	44	61
		E22	39	28	63		69	36	54
		H22	41	22	59		44	33	42
		L22	41	21	61		56	61	46
MEAN ± S.E.	44 ± 3.6	29 ± 4.7	67 ± 4.1	56 ± 10	56 ± 3	51 ± 4			

in the urinary excretion of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine was similar to that after the first injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine. However the values were greater due possibly to  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine or  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine remaining from the first injection.

The change from the sodium free diet to 0.9% NaCl corrected the adrenal insufficiency and with this there was an increase in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine. The excreted amount remained larger than in the rats given the sodium free diet.

Adrenal insufficiency appeared in rats given the sodium free diet instead of 0.9% NaCl from the sixth day (group 1). They excreted less  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the urine than the rats given 0.9% NaCl.

Again on the ninth day after adrenalectomy the diet was changed in both

groups of rats. Changing from 0.9% NaCl to the sodium free diet caused a decrease in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted in the urine whereas the opposite occurred in rats changed from the sodium free diet to 0.9% NaCl (group 1). In the latter group the adrenal insufficiency disappeared.

The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine on the third day after each injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine was determined in all rats. The results together with the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted are given in Table 4. On the day before adrenalectomy rats given the sodium free diet (group 2) did not differ from rats given 0.9% NaCl in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine. On the seventh day after adrenalectomy however the rats now given 0.9% NaCl (group 2) excreted about three times more  $^{14}\text{C}$ -methylhistamine while the rats given the sodium free diet excreted about twice as much  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine as before operation.

It appears that after adrenalectomy the increase in  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine was greater than the increase in  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine.

The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine was greatly increased in the adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl after a period of adrenal insufficiency. This is in agreement with rats E7 and F7 see Table 1.

### Summary

After an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine the excretion of both  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine is increased when 0.9% NaCl is given to rats after a period of adrenal insufficiency.

## II THE FORMATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTAMINE IN VARIOUS TISSUES *IN VITRO*

The technique developed by SCHAYER (e.g. 1936) was used in a preliminary attempt to locate the possible increased formation of histamine in rats given 0.9% NaCl after a period of adrenal insufficiency. Small amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine are added to a tissue preparation and the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed is determined by isotope dilution. Since part of the formed  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine may be catabolized to other  $^{14}\text{C}$ -labelled compounds the obtained figures are minimum values.

### EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

In most of the experiments the adrenalectomized rats were kept in metabolism cages. Aminoguanidine was given in experiment A.

The rats were fasted the morning they were killed. Measurement of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formation *in vitro* from  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histidine and determination of non-radioactive histamine content in the tissues and urine were made as described in Chapter 2.

## RESULTS

The effect of the sodium free diet and 0.9% NaCl on adrenal insufficiency and the urinary excretion of non-radioactive histamine in these rats were in accordance with previous findings in this study and with those of BJURO and WESTLING (1963).

It should be noted that there were multiple punctuate bleedings in the mucosa of the glandular stomach of rats with severe and extreme adrenal insufficiency. The stomachs contained some mucus but as a rule no food.

The results are shown in Table 5 and Figure 9.

### Experiment A

Twenty five rats were divided into five groups: ten rats were adrenalectomized, five had the sodium free diet and the other five 0.9% NaCl. Ten rats were sham operated, five of these had the sodium free diet and five had 0.9% NaCl. Five intact rats were given the sodium free diet. The glandular stomach, the skin, the lungs, the liver and the kidneys were studied.

The glandular part of the stomach was used since it has been shown (SCHÄLER 1956) that almost all of the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vitro* in the stomach in normal and adrenalectomized rats is located in this region.

As can be seen in Table 5 the glandular stomach of rats in severe or extreme adrenal insufficiency formed a significantly greater amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vitro* ( $27\,900 \pm 6\,400$  cpm/g) than that of adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl ( $3\,400 \pm 1\,750$  cpm/g) ( $P < 0.01$ ).

The amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formed *in vitro* in the liver and kidney in all rats were not significantly different from the blank activity (10–15 cpm). i.e. no detectable formation occurred. In the skin and lung (average 45 and 400 cpm/g respectively) there were no significant changes in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vitro* after adrenalectomy or sham operation.

The content of non-radioactive histamine in the glandular stomach of five rats with severe or extreme adrenal insufficiency was significantly greater ( $19.3 \pm 2.8$   $\mu\text{g/g}$ ) than in five adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl ( $12.2 \pm 1.1$ ) ( $P < 0.05$ ). In five intact rats kept on the sodium free diet the value was  $16.8 \pm 2.0$   $\mu\text{g/g}$ . The skin of five rats with adrenal insufficiency contained more non-radioactive histamine ( $41.4 \pm 2.5$   $\mu\text{g/g}$ ) than the skin from adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl ( $30.4 \pm 3.4$ ). This difference

TABLE 2

The formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach of R. norvegicus

The values indicate cpm/g and are expressed as mean  $\pm$  SEM. Number within parentheses is the number of rats.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  - sodium free diet.

In eighteen intact rats (given the sodium free diet) used as controls to experiments A-C the value was  $3450 \pm 600$ . Note that half of the rats in experiment A were kept on  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  the other half were kept on 0.9% NaCl after the operation. The rats in experiment D were kept on  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  for six days after the operation and on 0.9% NaCl from the seventh day.

Experiment	Day after operation	Drinking fluid	Sham operated rats	Adrenalectomized rats
A	0	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	$3300 \pm 700$ (5)	$2600 \pm 700$ (8)
	4	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	$2700 \pm 300$ (5)	$4900 \pm 610$ (8)
	6	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	$2400 \pm 1000$ (5)	$9900 \pm 670$ (8)
B	6	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	$900 \pm 300$ (5)	$9100 \pm 300$ (6)
C	7	$\text{H}_2\text{O}$	$900 \pm 1900$ (5)	$9790 \pm 6400$ (5)
		0.9% NaCl	$400 \pm 1650$ (5)	$3400 \pm 1700$ (5)
D	8	0.9% NaCl	$4800 \pm 990$ (5)	$7800 \pm 1880$ (5)
	18	0.9% NaCl	$3300 \pm 450$ (7)	$2300 \pm 830$ (6)

was also significant ( $P < 0.05$ ). In five intact rats kept on the sodium free diet the value was  $324 \pm 25 \mu\text{g/g}$ . The content of non radioactive histamine in the lung did not differ appreciably among the various groups ( $19-29 \mu\text{g/g}$ ).

From this experiment it was evident that a large increase occurred in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formed *in vitro* in the glandular stomach of rats with severe and extreme adrenal insufficiency. This increase could be prevented by giving the rat 0.9% NaCl after adrenalectomy. It is possible that minor changes in the amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formed *in vitro* occurred also in other tissues but were masked by the individual variations in the small number of rats in each group.

### Experiment B

By giving 0.9% NaCl to rats with adrenal insufficiency an increase in the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine can be elicited from the fourth or fifth day after adrenalectomy (BRUNO and WESTLING

1963) Thus it became of interest to see whether the increased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach did appear earlier than on the seventh day after adrenalectomy

Forty seven rats were kept on the sodium free diet They were killed on the second fourth or sixth day after operation together with the intact rats

In the adrenalectomized rats killed on the second day after the operation no significant changes occurred in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach, whereas on the fourth day a slight and on the sixth day a significant increase occurred ( $P < 0.02$ )

These results together with the findings in *experiment A* show that in adrenalectomized rats given the sodium free diet (developing adrenal insufficiency) there is a progressive increase in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed *in vitro* in the glandular stomach This increased formation seems to start from the fourth day after adrenalectomy and seems to be parallel with the increase in adrenal insufficiency

### *Experiment C*

It was found (BJURO and WESTLING 1963) that in sham operated and intact rats smaller amounts of non radioactive histamine were excreted in the urine when the rats were given less food but the decrease was not as pronounced as in the adrenalectomized rats Rats developing adrenal insufficiency spontaneously eat less food which might cause a decrease in the formation of histamine in the glandular stomach (see General discussion) and thus a decrease in the urinary excretion of histamine On the contrary there was an increase in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach of rats with adrenal insufficiency Therefore it became of interest to see whether the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach was dependent on the amount of food consumed

In a pair feeding experiment sham operated and intact rats were given the same amount of sodium free food as the adrenalectomized rats had eaten the day before Drinking fluid was given *ad libitum* Six adrenalectomized rats were killed on the sixth day after operation and the following day the sham operated and intact rats were killed

The intake of solid food in the adrenalectomized rats decreased from 10 g before operation to an average of  $5.8 \pm 0.2$  g on the sixth day after operation Adrenal insufficiency developed in the adrenalectomized rats with an average decrease in body weight of  $9.5 \pm 1.2$  g on the fifth day after operation as compared to the day before adrenalectomy The restriction of the amount of food to the sham operated and intact rats caused a slowing of their normal weight increase but had no visible influence on their vitality



$^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed in vitro

cpm/gram glandular stomach

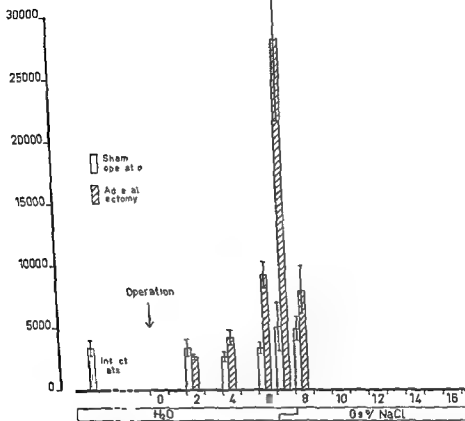


FIG. 9 The formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in vitro in the glandular stomach of the rat

The line separating  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and 0.2%  $\text{NaCl}$  is drawn so as to indicate that the rats killed on the seventh day after operation were kept on the sodium free diet ( $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and that the rats killed on the eighth day and eighteenth day were given 0.2%  $\text{NaCl}$  from the seventh day onwards. Note the progressive increase in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in vitro in rats developing adrenal insufficiency when kept on the sodium free diet and the decrease when 0.2%  $\text{NaCl}$  is given.

The formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* increased in the adrenalectomized rats to approximately the same magnitude as in *experiment B*. In sham operated and intact rats the results were also similar to those in *experiment B*.

Thus it was shown with this experimental procedure that decrease in food intake alone cannot explain the difference in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach between rats with adrenal insufficiency and sham operated or intact rats.

### *Experiment D*

Severe or extreme adrenal insufficiency develops on the sixth or seventh day after adrenalectomy in rats kept on a sodium free diet. In order to survive the rats then had to have sodium. In rats given 0.9% NaCl from the sixth or seventh day after adrenalectomy adrenal insufficiency can be corrected. This is accompanied by a large increase in the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine.

Twenty three rats were adrenalectomized or sham operated. The rats were kept on the sodium free diet until the sixth day after operation. From the seventh day after operation 0.9% NaCl was given to all rats. On the eighth and eighteenth day after the operation ten and thirteen rats respectively were killed.

In rats killed on the eighth day after adrenalectomy the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed *in vitro* in the glandular stomach was about the same as that in rats killed on the sixth day after adrenalectomy (cf. *experiment B* and *C*). However the values were much decreased in comparison with those obtained on the seventh day after adrenalectomy (cf. *experiment A*) which indicates a partial return to normal after the rats were given 0.9% NaCl for one day. Although on the eighth day the values for the adrenalectomized rats were not significantly different from those for the sham operated control rats, they were still increased in comparison with the values for rats examined on the second, fourth or eighteenth day after operation.

The adrenalectomized and sham operated rats kept on 0.9% NaCl until the eighteenth day after the operation did not differ in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed *in vitro* in the glandular stomach. The values were similar to those seen in intact rats.

### *Summary*

- 1 The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed *in vitro* in the rat glandular stomach progressively increased with increasing degrees of adrenal insufficiency.
- 2 Giving 0.9% NaCl to a rat with adrenal insufficiency reduced the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed *in vitro* in the glandular stomach.

### III THE FORMATION OF $^{14}\text{C}$ HISTAMINE IN VARIOUS TISSUES *IN VIVO*

The observation that the glandular stomach of rats with adrenal insufficiency formed very large amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vitro* was not in agreement with the findings of a pronounced decrease in the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine in these rats. To elucidate the formation of histamine in rats with adrenal insufficiency and the effects of sodium chloride in these rats *in vivo* experiments were performed.

#### EXPERIMENTAL PROCEDURES

Rats were killed at various times after they had been given an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine and the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the tissues was measured (cf. SCHAYER *et al.* 1954; SCHAYER and SMILEY 1954).

The adrenalectomized rats were kept in metabolism cages. The rats were given no food the day they had an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine and they were killed either ten or sixty min after the injection.

#### RESULTS

The effects of the sodium free diet and 11.9% NaCl on adrenal insufficiency and the urinary excretion of histamine were in agreement with previous findings.

The results can be seen in Table 6.

#### Experiment E

Of twenty rats kept on the sodium free diet ten were adrenalectomized and ten sham operated. On the sixth day after the operation each rat had 88.8  $\mu\text{g}$  (12  $\mu\text{C}$ )  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine injected intravenously. Both ten and sixty min after the injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine the glandular stomach of the adrenalectomized rats contained about the same amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine as that of the sham operated rats.

Sixty min after the injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine the jejunum of the seven adrenalectomized rats contained more  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than that of the seven sham operated rats ( $14 \pm 2.0$  and  $6 \pm 0.4$  cpm/g respectively) ( $P < 0.01$ ). The skin of the adrenalectomized rats contained significantly more  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine ( $17 \pm 2.0$  and  $6 \pm 0.3$  cpm/g respectively) ( $P < 0.01$ ).

The glandular stomach both in the sham operated and the adrenalectomized rats contained more  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than the other tissues examined. This is in agreement with the previous findings of BURRO *et al.* (1963a).

TABLE 6

*The formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in vivo in the glandular stomach of the rat*

The amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the glandular stomach 10 min 60 min and 24 hours after an intravenous injection of  $12.5 \mu\text{C } ^{14}\text{C}$  histidine. The values are expressed as cpm/g  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ =sodium free diet 0.9% NaCl=0.9% NaCl as drinking fluid

	<i>Experiment E</i>		<i>Experiment F</i> Six days on $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ +one day on 0.9% NaCl		<i>Experiment G</i> Six days on $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ +one day on 0.9% NaCl
Time after injection of $^{14}\text{C}$ histidine	10 min	60 min	10 min	60 min	24 hours
<i>Adrenalectomized rats</i>	329	331	293	361	28
	138	166	662	287	20
	224	150	278	506	90
		287		341	46
		120			
		231			
		244			
MEAN $\pm$	230	219	411	374	32
S.E.M.	$\pm 50$	$\pm 20$	$\pm 120$	$\pm 47$	$\pm 4$
<i>Sham operated rats</i>	105	184	156	166	29
	139	141	128	162	50
	141	671	102	98	28
		128		175	38
		276			
		627			
		129			
MEAN $\pm$	128	294	120	148	38
S.E.M.	$\pm 12$	$\pm 83$	$\pm 16$	$\pm 17$	$\pm 0.3$

### *Experiment F*

Seven rats were adrenalectomized and seven sham operated. All rats were given the sodium free diet for six days after the operation and 0.9% NaCl on the seventh day. On the eighth day after the operation each rat had an intravenous injection of  $12.5 \mu\text{C } ^{14}\text{C}$  histidine.

Both ten and sixty min after the injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine the glandular stomach of the adrenalectomized rats contained more  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine than that of the sham operated rats. This difference was significant ( $P < 0.00$ ). The

jejunum skin lung kidney and liver contained about 5-15 cpm/g not significantly different from the sham operated rats

### Experiment G

Four rats were adrenalectomized and four sham operated. They were kept on the sodium free diet for six days. On the seventh day after the operation the rats were given 0.9% NaCl and 12.5  $\mu$ C  $^{14}$ C histidine was injected intravenously into each rat. Twenty four hours later they were killed.

The amount of  $^{14}$ C histamine in the glandular stomach of the adrenalectomized rats did not differ from that in the sham operated rats. The values were low in comparison with the values for  $^{14}$ C histamine content ten and sixty min after the injection of  $^{14}$ C histidine (cf. experiment F). This indicates a high rate of histamine turnover in the glandular stomach in adrenalectomized rats given 0.9% NaCl after six days on a sodium free diet.

### Summary

1 Rats with adrenal insufficiency and sham operated rats did not differ significantly in the amount of  $^{14}$ C histamine in the glandular stomach ten and sixty min after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}$ C-histidine.

2 In adrenalectomized rats given a sodium free diet for six days and 0.9% NaCl for one day the glandular stomach contained significantly more  $^{14}$ C-histamine than that of the sham operated rats at ten and sixty min after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}$ C histidine. Twenty four hours after the injection the content of  $^{14}$ C histamine in the glandular stomach was much reduced and there was no difference between the adrenalectomized and sham operated rat. This indicates a high rate of histamine turnover.

### DISCUSSION

Giving 0.9% NaCl to a rat with adrenal insufficiency caused a great increase in the amount of  $^{14}$ C histamine and  $^{14}$ C-methylhistamine excreted in the urine after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}$ C-histidine. This was in agreement with the increase in the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine in these rats. Together with the lack of evidence for a decrease in the ring N-methylation of histamine (cf. Chapter 3) this seems to justify the conclusion that giving 0.9% NaCl to a rat with adrenal insufficiency caused an increase in the formation of histamine.

To locate the increased histamine formation the *in vitro* method developed by SCHAYER (e.g. 1956) was used. This method is sensitive and the  $^{14}$ C-histamine can be determined independently of the histamine formed.

in the tissues. This is not the case with the *in vitro* method described by e.g. WATON (1956) and TELFORD and WEST (1961) in which a large amount of non radioactive histidine is used.

Rats with adrenal insufficiency showed progressively decreasing amounts of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine. A paradoxical finding in these rats was the progressive and large increase in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach. Furthermore after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine rats with severe adrenal insufficiency did not differ from the sham operated rats in the content of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the glandular stomach which suggests no change in the formation of histamine.

Giving 0.9% NaCl to rats with adrenal insufficiency caused a decrease in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed *in vitro* in the glandular stomach. This was a discrepancy from the significantly increased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vivo* as judged by the increased amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the glandular stomach after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine. Furthermore, there was an increase in the amount of endogenous histamine excreted in the urine.

Therefore the increased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach of rats with adrenal insufficiency seems not to be representative of conditions *in vivo*.

Several factors connected with adrenal insufficiency might be responsible for this discrepancy between the *in vitro* and *in vivo* results. Of these the decrease in the amount of sodium (and an increase in potassium) in most tissues of rats with adrenal insufficiency (e.g. EFRON 1957, PETERS 1959) was of special interest in view of the effects of 0.9% NaCl in rats with adrenal insufficiency.

This suggested the possibility that placing the tissue of the glandular stomach (partly depleted of sodium) in a solution with 152 mEq/l of sodium caused an activation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formation. Thus an increased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine would be recorded which is not present *in vivo*. A similar mechanism may explain the obtained increased formation of histamine *in vivo* when sodium chloride is given as drinking fluid.

Preliminary experiments have shown that smaller amounts of sodium in the buffer (by diluting with isotonic glucose or urea) result in a much decreased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in glandular stomach tissue of rats with adrenal insufficiency. Decreased amounts of sodium in the buffer also caused a decrease in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach from the sham operated and intact rats. For corresponding values of sodium in the buffer the amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine formed in the sham operated and intact rats were significantly less than those in the adrenalectomized rats. The decreased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine thus observed might be due to factors

other than the decrease in sodium content. For example the solutions used to dilute the buffer might have an inhibitory effect on histidine decarboxylase activity. However the similarity in principle between the results obtained with glucose and urea makes this explanation unlikely.

SCHAYER *et al* (1954) and SCHAYER (1956) found a decrease in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine formed *in vitro* in the glandular stomach in adrenalectomized rats and an increase in  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine in the skin and the lung. These findings might seem to be different from the observations of the present work. However the rats in SCHAYER'S experiments were killed on the second day after the adrenalectomy (the day of operation not counted) and probably given a diet containing sodium chloride. Thus it is very unlikely that adrenal insufficiency occurred in these rats. As can be seen in Table 5 experiment B on the second day after the adrenalectomy the glandular stomach formed somewhat less  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vitro* than that of the intact or sham operated rats. This result in rats not showing adrenal insufficiency is thus in accordance with the findings obtained by SCHAYER.

TELFORD and WEST (1961) found no change in the formation of non radio active histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach on the fourth day after adrenalectomy in rats given a normal diet and water to drink. However methodological differences make a comparison with the present work difficult.

As mentioned above the degree of ring N methylation of histamine was somewhat increased after adrenalectomy whether the rats were given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl. This is in agreement with the findings in the catabolism experiments (see p 39). Thus the possibility exists that there is an increased ring N methylation after adrenalectomy in the female rat.

## CHAPTER 5

### GENERAL DISCUSSION

#### (a) *The sensitivity to histamine injections*

Previously several attempts have been made to decide whether the absence of the adrenal medulla or the adrenal cortex causes the observed changes in histamine metabolism after adrenalectomy. As mentioned in the Introduction there are different opinions about the protective effect of adrenaline injections upon the increased lethality of histamine given by injection to adrenalectomized rats. This might be due to different amount of adrenaline used in rats with varying degrees of adrenal insufficiency. However adrenaline seems to offer some protection (e.g. LECOURTE 1961). The shock that develops when large doses of histamine are injected is probably caused by the profound decrease in arterial blood pressure (e.g. VOEGTLIN and DIER 1924) due to the vasodilatory action of histamine. Thus the protection obtained with adrenaline injections might be due to its vasoconstrictive action.

In the present work significant changes in the metabolism of histamine were found to be closely associated with adrenal insufficiency. It is well established that after adrenalectomy injections of adrenal cortical hormones can prevent and abolish signs of adrenal insufficiency. This is not the case with adrenaline or the adrenal sex hormones.

Thus it seems reasonable to assume that the effects of the absence of corticosterone and/or desoxycorticosterone is the cause of the changes in the metabolism of histamine after adrenalectomy. Whether it is their mineralocorticoid or glucocorticoid action that is of importance remains to be studied.

Previous experiments (BJURO and WESTLING 1960) and unpublished observations suggest that the glucocorticoids but not desoxycorticosterone can prevent the changes in the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine after adrenalectomy.



### (b) The catabolism of histamine

As discussed in Chapter 3 the present experiments are not in accordance with the observations of other authors of a decreased histaminase activity *in vitro* in adrenalectomized rats (see Introduction). If such a decrease also occurs *in vivo* it would however seem to be of little importance in the catabolism of histamine as judged from the urinary excretion of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and its  $^{14}\text{C}$  labelled derivatives after subcutaneous injections of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. Moreover the excretion of non radioactive histamine in the urine after adrenalectomy was essentially the same whether or not amino guanidine was given. The findings of other authors interpreted by them as indicating a decreased histaminase activity *in vitro* after adrenalectomy might instead be due to a decreased ring N methylation of histamine. This explanation however cannot be supported by the *in vivo* catabolism experiments in the present work. Thus the biological significance of the decrease in histaminase activity *in vitro* after adrenalectomy in the rat remains unknown.

POSE and BAOWE (1938) found in rats with adrenal insufficiency a decreased rate of disappearance of injected histamine from blood and tissues. Since the amounts of histamine used were necessarily large the injections could have caused a further impairment in the circulation in these rats. The observed decreased elimination of histamine in these rats might thus have been caused by a circulatory deficiency rather than the postulated decreased histaminase activity. Another explanation discussed by SCHAYER *et al* (1953) is that the large amounts of injected histamine "may have been very close to saturation for the histamine metabolizing enzymes in the strain of rats employed".

### (c) The content of histamine in tissues

A retention of histamine might also explain the repeated observations of an increased content of histamine in most tissues of rats with adrenal insufficiency e.g. by MARSHALL (1953) HICKS and WEST (1958). The finding of an increased content of histamine in the glandular stomach and skin of rats with severe and extreme insufficiency in the present experiments (cf. experiment 4 Chapter 4) is thus in accordance with the previous studies of this kind. In the present work this increase did not occur in rats with lesser degrees of adrenal insufficiency. The increased content of histamine in the tissues was thus probably caused by a nonspecific retention of histamine in the last phase of adrenal insufficiency. This explanation is also in agreement with the finding in the present experiments of a retention of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine and/or its

$^{14}\text{C}$  labelled derivatives in rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency as judged from the decreased urinary excretion of total  $^{14}\text{C}$

Obviously changes in the formation of histamine (see below) can contribute to variations in the content of histamine in the tissues

#### (d) *The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine*

The amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine progressively decreased in rats with adrenal insufficiency. This decrease seems at least partly to be caused by a more efficient catabolism of histamine which in turn might be due to an impaired peripheral circulation giving more time for contact between histamine and its inactivating enzymes

Adrenal insufficiency disappears in rats when a sufficient amount of sodium chloride is given, and with this there is a large increase in the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine (BJURO and WESTLING 1962, 1963). Obviously a contribution to the urinary histamine, during the first one or two days after giving 0.9% NaCl is likely to come from histamine retained in rats with severe adrenal insufficiency. As discussed previously changes in the level of activity of histaminase are very unlikely. Thus neither washing out of retained histamine nor changes in the catabolism of histamine can be the main causes of the increased urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine in these rats. It seems likely that changes in histamine formation are of importance for the amount of histamine excreted in the urine

#### (e) *The formation of histamine*

From the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine and the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine it seems justified to conclude that there is an increased formation of histamine in rats given sodium chloride after a period of adrenal insufficiency. Such an increase was demonstrated by using two different *in vivo* methods. First after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine the simultaneous increase in  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine indicated an increase in the formation of histamine. Second after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine there was an increase in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in some tissues in rats given sodium chloride after a period of adrenal insufficiency. The increased formation was located mainly in the glandular stomach. This increase in tissue  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine has not been studied beyond the ninth day after adrenalectomy. However, it seems unnecessary to suggest an explanation for the prolonged increase in the urinary excretion of histamine other than an increased formation of histamine (cf BJURO and WESTLING 1963).

The findings concerning the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vitro* were generally opposite to that which could be expected from the urinary excretion of non-radioactive histamine and the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vivo*. Thus *in vitro* methods used to study the metabolism of histamine in adrenalectomized rats can apparently give misleading results.

An explanation for this discrepancy may be that the glandular stomach of a rat with adrenal insufficiency is partly depleted of sodium. When this tissue is put into a buffer solution (containing sodium) it might take up sodium ions and in doing so increase the formation of histamine. The same mechanism may explain the increased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vivo* in the glandular stomach which occurs when a rat with adrenal insufficiency is given a sodium chloride solution as drinking fluid. A support for this suggestion is that the time of the onset of the increase in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach (see Figure 9) is approximately the same as *in vivo* at the time when 0.9% NaCl can elicit an increase in the urinary histamine in rats kept on a sodium free diet after adrenalectomy (BJURK and WESTLING 1963).

The present experiments do not provide any detailed information about the relation between histamine formation and sodium metabolism. It is of interest to note that histamine has been proposed as a mediator of sodium transport across the cell membrane (EYRING and DOUGHERTY 1955) but experimental evidence for this hypothesis is lacking.

However there may be other causes for the paradoxical increase in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in rats with adrenal insufficiency. It should be emphasized that regardless of the cause the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach of adrenalectomized rats seems to have no counterpart *in vivo*. It should be noted here that an increased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine measured both *in vitro* and *in vivo* occurred in hyperthyroid rats (BJURK *et al.* 1963 a).

#### (f) *In interpretation of the present work*

In recent years two new hypotheses have been put forward to explain the function of histamine in the body. KAHILSON (for references see KAHILSON 1962) has produced evidence for an intimate association between histamine formation and rapid tissue growth. SCHAYER (for references see SCHAYER 1962) has described experiments in which there was a close connection between histamine formation and certain circulatory reactions e.g. in response to stressful stimuli.

It seems premature to try to associate the findings of the present investiga-

$^{14}\text{C}$  labelled derivatives in rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency as judged from the decreased urinary excretion of total  $^{14}\text{C}$

Obviously changes in the formation of histamine (see below) can contribute to variations in the content of histamine in the tissues

#### *(d) The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine*

The amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine progressively decreased in rats with adrenal insufficiency. This decrease seems at least partly to be caused by a more efficient catabolism of histamine which in turn might be due to an impaired peripheral circulation giving more time for contact between histamine and its inactivating enzymes

Adrenal insufficiency disappears in rats when a sufficient amount of sodium chloride is given and with this there is a large increase in the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine (BJURO and WESTLING 1962, 1963). Obviously a contribution to the urinary histamine, during the first one or two days after giving 0.9% NaCl, is likely to come from histamine retained in rats with severe adrenal insufficiency. As discussed previously changes in the level of activity of histaminase are very unlikely. Thus neither washing out of retained histamine nor changes in the catabolism of histamine can be the main causes of the increased urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine in these rats. It seems likely that changes in histamine formation are of importance for the amount of histamine excreted in the urine

#### *(e) The formation of histamine*

From the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine and the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine it seems justified to conclude that there is an increased formation of histamine in rats given sodium chloride after a period of adrenal insufficiency. Such an increase was demonstrated by using two different *in vivo* methods. First after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine the simultaneous increase in  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted in the urine indicated an increase in the formation of histamine. Second after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine there was an increase in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in some tissues in rats given sodium chloride after a period of adrenal insufficiency. The increased formation was located mainly in the glandular stomach. This increase in tissue  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine has not been studied beyond the ninth day after adrenalectomy. However it seems unnecessary to suggest an explanation for the prolonged increase in the urinary excretion of histamine other than an increased formation of histamine (cf BJURO and WESTLING 1963)

The findings concerning the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* were generally opposite to that which could be expected from the urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine and the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vivo*. Thus *in vitro* methods used to study the metabolism of histamine in adrenalectomized rats can apparently give misleading results.

An explanation for this discrepancy may be that the glandular stomach of a rat with adrenal insufficiency is partly depleted of sodium. When this tissue is put into a buffer solution (containing sodium) it might take up sodium ions and in doing so increase the formation of histamine. The same mechanism may explain the increased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach which occurs when a rat with adrenal insufficiency is given a sodium chloride solution as drinking fluid. A support for this suggestion is that the time of the onset of the increase in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach (see Figure 9) is approximately the same as *in vivo* is the time when 0.9% NaCl can elicit an increase in the urinary histamine in rats kept on a sodium free diet after adrenalectomy (BJURO and WEST LING 1963).

The present experiments do not provide any detailed information about the relation between histamine formation and sodium metabolism. It is of interest to note that histamine has been proposed as a mediator of sodium transport across the cell membrane (EYRING and DOUGHERTY 1955) but experimental evidence for this hypothesis is lacking.

However there may be other causes for the paradoxical increase in the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in rats with adrenal insufficiency. It should be emphasized that regardless of the cause the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach of adrenalectomized rats seems to have no counterpart *in vivo*. It should be noted here that an increased formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine measured both *in vitro* and *in vivo* occurred in hyperthyroid rats (BJURO *et al.* 1963 a).

#### (f) *An interpretation of the present work*

In recent years two new hypotheses have been put forward to explain the function of histamine in the body. KAHLSON (for references see KAHLSON 1962) has produced evidence for an intimate association between histamine formation and rapid tissue growth. SCHAYER (for references see SCHAYER 1962) has described experiments in which there was a close connection between histamine formation and certain circulatory reactions e.g. in response to stressful stimuli.

It seems premature to try to associate the findings of the present investiga-

tion with either of these hypotheses. Nevertheless it should be pointed out that an impaired circulation is a cardinal feature of adrenal insufficiency.

However, the increased formation of histamine was located mainly in the glandular stomach. Therefore the increased formation of histamine might be related to the increased duration and intake of food and drinking fluid.

The relation between histamine and the production of gastric secretion has been investigated for a long time. CODE (1956) in a review concluded that stimulation of gastric secretion is a function of histamine. No other chemostimulator is interposed between histamine and the parietal cell. When starved rats are fed  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine (formed from injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine) is released from the glandular stomach and the intestine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine is excreted in the urine (SCHAYER and IVY 1957, 1958). Another observation that links histamine with gastric activity has recently been made by HANLSON *et al* (1963). They found that feeding a rat that had been starved for twenty-four hours increased the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach. This increase reached a peak value 3 to 4 hours after feeding with a return to the fasting value after about 8 hours. Moreover from the studies of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine injections it appears that the greater part of histamine excreted in the urine in intact and hyperthyroid rats comes from the glandular stomach (BJURO *et al* 1963 a).

Thus a reason for the changes in the metabolism of histamine after adrenalectomy might be variations in the amount of food and drinking fluid intake with subsequent changes in formation of histamine in the glandular stomach and the gastric secretion rather than the absence of the adrenal glands *per se*. The following findings support this suggestion.

1. Adrenal insufficiency developing in rats is accompanied by a progressive decrease in the intake of food and in the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine.

2. Intact or sham operated rats given decreased amounts of food also show a progressive decrease in their urinary histamine but this decrease is not as pronounced as in rats with adrenal insufficiency (BJURO and WESTLING 1963). When the ordinary amount of food is given to such intact or sham operated rats there is an increase in the amount of urinary histamine with a return to normal values after about one day.

It is well established that changes in gastric secretion occur after adrenalectomy. Thus TIERKISCHER and WERTHEIMER (1945) found that adrenalectomized rats had a decreased amount of free and total acid and volume of gastric juice as compared with normal rats. These changes could be restored to approximately normal with injections of an adrenal cortical extract but not

with desoxycorticosterone. These findings were confirmed by MADSEN and RAMSBURG (1951) and HARTMANN (1956).

Furthermore TURKISCHER and WERTHEIMER (1945) found a decrease in the amount of pepsin excreted in rats with adrenal insufficiency. BAKER and BRIDGMAN (1954) found a decrease in the size of the cells producing pepsin (zymogenic cells) in rats with adrenal insufficiency. HIRSCHOWITZ *et al* (1956) found a decrease in the amount of pepsinogen in the stomach of adrenalectomized rats. This could be restored to normal by giving hydrocortisone.

As mentioned above rats with adrenal insufficiency consume their food and drinking fluid mainly during day time. Since the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the glandular stomach after an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine was determined about twenty four hours after the preceding feeding it is likely that the glandular stomach was in a relatively resting state. The formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine as judged from the *in vivo* experiments did not differ between the sham operated rats and the rats with adrenal insufficiency. However a decrease in the formation of histamine during a period of twenty four hours might have occurred and contributed to the decrease in the urinary histamine in rats with adrenal insufficiency.

Adrenalectomized rats have a taste preference for sodium (FREGLE 1958, NACHMAN 1962). Rats given 0.9% NaCl after a period of adrenal insufficiency consume large amounts of this drinking fluid throughout the observation period. In analogy this might explain why the formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine *in vivo* in the glandular stomach was increased although the analyses were made about twenty four hours after the rats were given food.

*To summarize* the present work indicates that the following changes in the metabolism of histamine occur in female rats after adrenalectomy. During approximately the first three days after adrenalectomy there are no significant changes in the metabolism of histamine regardless of the intake of sodium chloride. After approximately the fourth day progressive adrenal insufficiency develops in rats given the sodium free diet.

Parallel with the increase in the degree of adrenal insufficiency there is a decrease in the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine that might be caused in part by a more efficient catabolism of histamine due to an impaired circulation. The progressive decrease in the intake of food in these rats might cause a decrease in the formation of histamine in the glandular stomach contributing to the decrease in urinary histamine.

Sodium consumed by these rats can correct the adrenal insufficiency and this is accompanied by a large increase in the urinary excretion of histamine.

This increase is caused by an increased formation of histamine mainly in the glandular stomach and might be related to the increased amount of drinking fluid and food consumed by these rats. Obviously a contribution to the increased urinary histamine during the first day after the rats had received 0.9% NaCl could be from histamine retained when the rat was in severe or extreme adrenal insufficiency. The sustained increase in urinary histamine reported by BJURO and WESTLING (1963) however, cannot have been caused by a "washing out" of histamine from the tissues. This is so since an increase in urinary histamine also occurred in rats in whom no increase was found in the histamine content of the tissues.



## CHAPTER 6

### GENERAL SUMMARY

The metabolism of histamine has been studied in female rats before and after bilateral adrenalectomy or sham operation. Different methods mainly *in vivo* have been used.

#### (a) *The urinary excretion of non radioactive histamine*

The amount of non radioactive (endogenous) free histamine excreted in the urine decreased progressively when adrenal insufficiency developed in rats kept on a sodium free diet after adrenalectomy. In rats given 0.9% NaCl after a period of adrenal insufficiency there was a large and sustained increase in the amount of histamine excreted in the urine.

These changes in urinary histamine were in principle the same whether or not histaminase (the main histamine inactivating enzyme in female rats) was inhibited by giving aminoguanidine. Thus the changes in the amount of histamine excreted in the urine after adrenalectomy cannot have been caused by variations in the level of activity of histaminase.

Sham operation caused no significant changes in the amount of histamine excreted in the urine whether the rats were given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl.

#### (b) *The catabolism of small quantities of $^{14}\text{C}$ histamine given by subcutaneous injections*

On the fourth day after adrenalectomy there were no significant changes in the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in comparison with the values obtained before operation whether the rats were given the sodium free diet or 0.9% NaCl.

Thus the absence of the adrenal glands *per se* seems not to influence the catabolism of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine.

After approximately the fourth day after adrenalectomy progressive adrenal insufficiency developed in rats kept on the sodium free diet. Rats with severe adrenal insufficiency showed a significant decrease in the amount

of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine after a subcutaneous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine. This decrease occurred whether or not histaminase was inhibited by giving aminoguanidine.

Twenty four hours after the injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency retained 40–50% of the injected  $^{14}\text{C}$ . However in rats with lesser degrees of adrenal insufficiency there was no decrease in the rate of urinary excretion of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine.

There was a close correlation between the changes in the amount of non radioactive histamine and the percentage of unchanged  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine.

The decrease in the amount of non radioactive histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine excreted in the urine was proportional to the increase in the degree of adrenal insufficiency.

The present work indicates that a larger proportion of injected  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine is catabolized in rats with adrenal insufficiency than in intact rats. This is due possibly to the impaired circulation in rats with adrenal insufficiency which should give more time for contact between histamine and its inactivating enzymes.

The impaired circulation (and decrease in urinary volume) might also explain the retention of histamine that occurs in rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency. This is a possible explanation for the increase in the content of tissue histamine found in the present investigation in rats with extreme adrenal insufficiency but not in rats with lesser degrees of adrenal insufficiency.

*There is no evidence in the present work for altered histaminase activity after adrenalectomy in rats*

1 there were no significant changes in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  imidazoleacetic acid excreted in the urine after a subcutaneous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in adrenalectomized rats not given aminoguanidine. This was the case whether or not the rats were in adrenal insufficiency.

2 the changes in the amount of non radioactive histamine and of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine excreted in the urine after adrenalectomy were essentially the same whether or not histaminase was inhibited by giving aminoguanidine.

#### (c) *The formation of histamine in vivo and in vitro*

When rats with adrenal insufficiency are given 0.9% NaCl the amount of non radioactive histamine excreted in the urine increases. Intravenous injections of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine to such rats resulted in

1 an increase in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and  $^{14}\text{C}$  methylhistamine excreted into the urine (the rats were given aminoguanidine).

2 an increase in the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the glandular stomach in comparison with sham operated rats or rats with adrenal insufficiency. Thus  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine showed a fast rate of turnover.

This indicates that there is an increase in the formation of histamine in rats given 0.9% NaCl after a period of adrenal insufficiency. This increased formation seems to be located mainly in the glandular part of the stomach.

After an intravenous injection of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histidine the amount of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine in the glandular stomach of rats with adrenal insufficiency did not differ from that of sham operated rats. This suggests an unchanged formation of histamine in the glandular stomach of rats with adrenal insufficiency but a decrease in the formation of histamine during a period of twenty four hours might have occurred in these rats.

*In vitro* experiments showed that the glandular stomach of rats developing adrenal insufficiency formed increased amounts of  $^{14}\text{C}$  histamine and decreased amounts when they had 0.9% NaCl. Thus regarding the formation of histamine in the glandular stomach there was a discrepancy between the *in vitro* and the *in vivo* experiments.

The formation of  $^{14}\text{C}$ -histamine *in vitro* in the glandular stomach after adrenalectomy was generally opposite to that *in vivo*. The reason for this discrepancy is not known. A possible explanation is that when the glandular stomach of rats with adrenal insufficiency is put into the buffer to incubate it may take up sodium ions and thereby increase the formation of histamine.

It should be emphasized that in the present investigation significant changes in the metabolism of histamine were found only in rats with adrenal insufficiency or in rats that had had a period of adrenal insufficiency. Changes in the metabolism were not observed during approximately the first three days after adrenalectomy.

## REFERENCES

- ANDERSSON E JOSEPH M and HERRING V Salt after adrenalectomy I Growth and survival of adrenalectomized rats given various levels of NaCl *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1940 a 44 477-481
- ANDERSSON E JOSEPH M and HERRING V Salt after adrenalectomy II Urinary excretion of radioactive Na and K in adrenalectomized rats given various levels of salt *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1940 b 44 482-485
- ANGERVALL L BJURÖ T and WESTLING H The effect of adrenalectomy on the urinary excretion of histamine in the rat *Acta Endocr* 1961 36 467-478
- ANREP G V AYADI M S BARSOUM G S SMITH J R and TALAAT M M The excretion of histamine in urine *J Physiol* 1944 103 155-174
- BAKER B L and RITA M BRIDGMAN The histology of the gastro intestinal mucosa (rat) after adrenalectomy or administration of adrenocortical hormones *Ann J Anatomy* 1954 94 363-397
- BARSOUM G S and GADDUM J H The pharmacological estimation of adrenaline and histamine in blood *J Physiol* 1935 85 1-14
- BARTLET A L and MARY F LOCKETT Effect of adrenalectomy on tissue histamine in rats *J Physiol* 1950 147 51-57
- BEST C H and McHENRY E W The inactivation of histamine *J Physiol* 1930 80 340-372
- BJURÖ T and WESTLING H Sodium chloride intake and urinary histamine in adrenalectomized rats *Nature* 1950 164 1241
- BJURÖ T and WESTLING H Observations on the urinary excretion of histamine in adrenalectomized rats *Acta Physiol Scand* 1960 50 25-26
- BJURÖ T and WESTLING H Sodium chloride and urinary histamine in adrenalectomized rats *Excerpta Med Internat Congr Ser* 48 1962 Abstr no 692
- BJURÖ T and WESTLING H The effect of sodium chloride intake on the urinary histamine in adrenalectomized rats *Brit J Pharmacol* 1963
- BJURÖ T WESTLING H and WETTERQVIST H The formation of <sup>14</sup>C histamine in vivo in normal and hyperthyroid rats *Brit J Pharmacol* 1963 a
- BJURÖ T WESTLING H and WETTERQVIST H On the evaluation of histamine formation and catabolism in rats by analysis of the urine *Arch Int Pharmacodyn* 1963 b (In press)
- BROWN D D AXELROD J and THOMCHICK R Enzymatic N-methylation of histamine *Nature* 1959 183 680
- BROWN D M THOMCHICK R and AXELROD J The distribution and properties of a histamine methylating enzyme *J Biol Chem* 1959 234 2948-2950
- CARLSTEN A Effect of adrenalectomy on lymph and plasma histaminase *Acta Physiol Scand* 1950 Suppl 70 33-46

- CODE C F The quantitative estimation of histamine in the blood *J Physiol* 1937 89  
93-68
- CODE C F Histamine and gastric secretion *Ciba Foundation Symposium on Histamine*  
London 1956 189-219
- CODE C F and MCINTIRE F C Quantitative determination of histamine *Meth Bio*  
*chem Anal* 1956 3 49-93
- CRIVELLARI C A Sensitiveness of adrenalectomized rats to certain toxic substances *Am*  
*J Physiol* 1927 87 414-41
- CROSSLAND J Biologic estimation of histamine *Meth Med Res* 1961 9 186-191
- DALE H H Conditions which are conducive to the production of shock by histamine  
*Brit J Exp Path* 1950 1 103-114
- ERROV D H The effect of adrenalectomy on the content and turnover of sodium and  
potassium in various organs *Acta Endocr* 1951 96 209-214
- EYRING H and DOUGHERTY T F Molecular mechanisms in inflammation and stress  
*I American Scientist* 1955 43 457-46
- FISCHER R A Statistical methods for research workers *Biological Monographs and*  
*Manuals no 5* 10th ed Edinburgh & London 1954
- FREELY M J Specificity of the sodium chloride appetite of adrenalectomized rats Sub  
stitution of lithium chloride for sodium chloride *Am J Physiol* 1958 195 640-  
653
- GADDUM J H The origin of histamine in the body *Ciba Foundation Symposium on*  
*Histamine* London 1956 780-79
- GALE E F The bacterial amino acid decarboxylases *Advances Enzym* 1946 6 1-39
- GERLINGER E and HARDWICK D C Changes in skin histamine after remote injury  
*J Physiol* 1953 119 410-40
- GOMORI G Preparation of buffers for use in enzyme studies *Meth Enzymol* 1955 1  
143
- OSTAPENCOV B KARLSON G and ELISA ROSEVORREY Biogenesis of histamine studied by  
its distribution and urinary excretion in germ free reared and not germ free rats  
fed a histamine free diet *Acta Physiol Scand* 1957 41 917-918
- HAEGER A and KARLSON G Disappearance of histaminase from the whole body following  
adrenalectomy in cats *Acta Physiol Scand* 1955 95 953-958
- HARTMAN G Influence of adrenal function on hydrochloric acid production of rat  
stomach *Ztschr ges inn Med* 1956 11 614-618
- HICKS R and WEST G B Adrenalectomy and tissue amines *Nature* 1938 182 401-409
- HILCROWITZ B I STRAZEV D H P and POLLARD H M Influence of adrenal cortex  
on gastric pepsinogen in the rat *Endocrin* 1956 59 419-41
- HORSBAY H H Protection of adrenalectomized rats against histamine intoxication by  
adrenal hormones or antihistamine drugs *Rev Soc Argent Biol* 1953 99 2-9
- HUTCHESON R B MEYDEL L B and WAKEMAN A J New salt mixture for use in experi  
mental diets *J Nutrition* 1937 14 23-28
- IVYLE D J Resistance of the rat to histamine shock after destruction of the adrenal  
medulla *Am J Physiol* 1937 118 87-83
- KARLSON G Nascent histamine and methods of its estimation *Excerpta Med Internat*  
*Co gr Ser* 47 1967 8 8-86
- KARLSON G LYNDELL S E and WESSLING H The influence of adrenocortical steroids  
on the histaminase concentration in some organs of the guinea pig *Acta Physiol*  
*Scand* 1953 5 suppl 111 19-21

- KAHLSON M, ELSA ROSENGREN WESTLING H and WHITE T The site of increased formation of histamine in the pregnant rat *J Physiol* 1958 144 337-348
- KAHLSON G, ELSA ROSENGREN SVANH D and THUNBERG R Increased formation of histamine in the gastric mucosa elicited by gastrin and food intake *J Physiol* 1963 167 P 4.
- KARADY S, ROSE H and BROWNE J S L Decrease of histaminase in tissue by adrenal ectomy and its restoration by cortico adrenal extract *Am J Physiol* 1940 130 539-542
- LAZAROW A Rat metabolism cages *Meth Med Res* 1954 11 216-242
- LFCOMTE J Suprarenal factors conditioning resistance of rats intoxicated by histamine I Exogenous histamine *Arch Int Physiol* 1961 69 563-581
- LINDAHL KERSTIN M On the biological methylation of histamine *Acta Chem Scand* 1958 12 1690-1691
- LINDELL S E and SCHAYER R W The renal removal of injected  $C^{14}$  histamine from the blood in dogs *Brit J Pharmacol* 1958 13 44-51
- MADDEY R J and RAMSBURG H H Gastric secretion in the adrenalectomized rat *Endocrin* 1951 49 82-85
- MARMORSTON GOTTESMAN J and GOTTESMAN J Use of histamine as standard test for diminished resistance in suprarenalectomized rats *J Exp Med* 1929 47 503-514
- MARSHALL P B The influence of adrenal cortical deficiency on the histamine content of rat tissues *J Physiol* 1943 102 180-190
- NACHMAN M Taste preferences for sodium salts by adrenalectomized rats *J Comp Physiol* 1962 55 1124-1129
- NOBLE R L and COLLIP J B The response of normal hypophysectomized and adrenal ectomized rats to histamine administration *Am J Physiol* 1941 133 623-633
- PERLA D and MARMORSTON GOTTESMAN J The effect of repeated injection of epinephrin on the resistance of suprarenalectomized rats to histamine poisoning *Am J Physiol* 1929 89 152-156
- PERLA D and MARMORSTON GOTTESMAN J Effect of injections of cortin on resistance of suprarenalectomized rats to histamine poisoning *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1931 28 650-653
- PETERS G Distribution of water and electrolytes in organisms of normal and adrenal ectomized rats: untreated or treated with cortisone and influence of large oral  $H_2O$  uptake *Arch exp Path Pharmacol* 1959 237 119-150
- RFUSE J J Comparisons of various histamine antagonists *Brit J Pharmacol* 1948 3 174-180
- ROSE B The effect of cortin and desoxy corticosterone acetate on the ability of the adrenalectomized rat to inactivate histamine *Am J Physiol* 1939 127 780-784
- ROSE H and BROWNE J S L The distribution and rate of disappearance of intravenously injected histamine in the rat *Am J Physiol* 1938 124 412-420
- ROSE H and BROWNE J S L The effect of adrenalectomy on the histamine content of the tissues of the rat *Am J Physiol* 1941 589-594
- ROTSCHILD Z and SCHAYER R W Synthesis and metabolism of a histamine metabolite I methyl 4( $\beta$  aminoethyl) imidazole *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1958 30 23-24
- SCHAYER R W Biogenesis of histamine *J Biol Chem* 1959 199 245-250
- SCHAYER R W, ROSA L, SMILEY and JEAN KENNEDY Effect of adrenalectomy on rate of metabolism of histamine in the mouse *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1957 91 416-417

- SCHAYER R W, JEAN KENNEDY and RO A L SMILEY Studies on histamine metabolizing enzymes in intact animals II *J Biol Chem* 1953 205 39-748
- SCHAYER R W and RO A L SMILEY Binding and release of radioactive histamine in intact rats *Am J Physiol* 1954 17 401-404
- SCHAYER R W, WILKINSON T and ROSA L SMILEY Sources of urinary histamine in the rat *Am J Physiol* 1954 179 491-485
- SCHAYER R W, H JANE DAVIS and ROSA L SMILEY Binding of histamine *in vitro* and its inhibition by ortho- *Am J Physiol* 1955 187 4-6
- SCHAYER R W Formation and binding of histamine by rat tissues *in vitro* *Am J Physiol* 1956 193 113-116
- SCHAYER R W and COOPER J A D Metabolism of  $C^{14}$  histamine in man *J Appl Physiol* 1956 9 481-483
- SCHAYER R W and KARJALA S A Ring N methylation a major route of histamine metabolism *J Biol Chem* 1956 231 301-313
- SCHAYER R W and IVY A C Evidence that histamine is a gastric secretory hormone in the rat *Am J Physiol* 1955 189 369-3
- SCHAYER R W and IVY A C Release of  $C^{14}$  histamine from stomach and intestine on feeding *Am J Physiol* 1955 193 400-40
- SCHAYER R W The catabolism of physiological quantities of histamine *in vivo* *Physiol Rev* 1955 35 116-176
- SCHAYER R W Induced histamine and microcirculatory regulation *Excerpta Med Internat Congr Sci* 17 1956 857-855
- SCHULER W Zur Hemmung der Diaminoxidase (Histaminase) *Experientia* 1952 8 30-3
- SCOTT W J M The influence of the adrenal glands on resistance III Susceptibility to histamine as a test of adrenal deficiency *J Exp Med* 1953 47 181-191
- TABOR H and MOSETTIO E Isolation of acetylhistamine from urine following oral administration of histamine *J Biol Chem* 1949 180 93-96
- TELFORD J M Effect of adrenalectomy on histamine metabolism in the rat *Nature* 1953 177 600
- TELFORD J M and WEST G B The formation of histamine in the rat *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1961 13 73-80
- TIERSCHER E and WERTHEIMER E Adrenalectomy and gastric secretion *J Endocr* 1945 1 143-151
- URBACH H F Nature and probable origin of conjugated histamine excreted after ingestion of histamine *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 1949 40 146-152
- VOKOTILY C and HELEY A DYER Natural resistance of albino rats and mice to histamine, pituitary and certain other poisons *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 1954 94 101-117
- WATSON N G Studies on mammalian histidine decarboxylase *Brit J Pharmacol* 1956 11 119-3
- WEBER J Über das Vorkommen von Diaminoxidase und Histidin Decarboxylase in Mikroorganismen *Biochem Z* 1941 99 81-8
- WENTLEY H The difference in the metabolism of injected  $^{14}C$  histamine in male and female rat *Brit J Pharmacol* 1959 13 498-500
- WHITE T Formation and catabolism of histamine in brain tissue *in vitro* *J Physiol* 1959 149 34-4

- WHITE T Formation and catabolism of histamine in cat brain *in vivo* *J Physiol* 1960 152 299-308
- WILSON C W M The metabolism of histamine as reflected by changes in its urinary excretion in the rat *J Physiol* 1954 120 534-545
- WYMAN L C Studies on suprarenal insufficiency II The relative importance of cortex and medulla in the susceptibility to histamine of suprarenalectomized rats *Am J Physiol* 1928 87 29-41
- WYMAN L C Studies on suprarenal insufficiency III The effect of thyroidectomy and of forcing fluid on suprarenal insufficiency in rats *Am J Physiol* 1928 87 42-50
- ZELLER E A Über den enzymatischen Abbau von Histamin und Diaminen *Helv Chim Acta* 1938 21 880-890



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 221

★

THE TRANSPORT OF  
NONELECTROLYTES IN MUSCLE  
AS A DIFFUSIONAL PROCESS  
IN CYTOPLASM

BY

I R FENICHEL AND S B HOROWITZ

---

UPPSALA 1963

**GÖTEBORG 1963**  
**ELANDERS BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG**

ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA  
VOL. 60 SUPPLEMENTUM 221

FROM THE EASTERN PENNSYLVANIA PSYCHIATRIC INSTITUTE PHILADELPHIA U.S.A.  
AND THE INSTITUTE OF PHYSIOLOGY UNIVERSITY OF UPPSALA SWEDEN

THE TRANSPORT OF  
NONELECTROLYTES IN MUSCLE  
AS A DIFFUSIONAL PROCESS  
IN CYTOPLASM

BY

I R FENICHEL AND S B HOROWITZ

*Laboratory of Cellular Biophysics the Albert Einstein Medical Center  
Research Laboratories Philadelphia 41 Pennsylvania*

LIBRARY  
SIS MEDICAL  
LIBRARY

---

UPPSALA 1963



# CONTENTS

Introduction	5
Chapter 1 Experimental Procedure and General Results	7
Materials	8
Methods	8
Sartorius	8
Extensor longus digiti IV	9
Sample Handling and Analysis	9
Experimental Results	11
Chapter 2 Analysis of the Form of the Efflux Curves	14
Theoretical Kinetics in the Sartorius	15
The First Approximation	16
The Surface Permeation Model	16
The Bulk Diffusion Model	17
Comparison of Experimental and Theoretical Kinetics	18
Evaluation of Parameters	18
a The extracellular space	19
b The partition coefficient	19
c The diffusion coefficient in the extracellular space	21
d The thickness of the muscle	22
Comparison	2
a Sartorius	22
b Extensor longus digiti IV	24
Chapter 3 The Diffusional Parameters in Muscle Cytoplasm	27
Evaluation of the Diffusion Coefficient in Muscle Cytoplasm $D_c$	27
Temperature Dependence	28
Chemical Specificity	30
Dimensional Specificity—the influence of alkyl groups	31
Chapter 4 Origins of the Diffusional Properties of Cytoplasm	33
The Properties of Cytoplasmic Water	33
The Magnitude of the Diffusion Coefficients	36
Evaluation from Diffusive Dispersion Measurements	37
Evaluation from Viscosity Measurements	39
Chemical Specificity	41
The Occurrence of Chemical Specificity in H bonding Liquids	43
The Magnitude of Chemical Specificity in H bonding Liquids	43

UPPSALA 1963

ALMQVIST & WIKSELLS BOKTRYCKERI AB

## Introduction

The transport of simple organic nonelectrolytes in cells is a passive process often showing marked chemical specificity. The pattern of this specificity has been elucidated leading to the widely accepted view that the transport is primarily determined by the permeability of a thin lipid membrane at the cell surface (Collander and Barlund 1933 Hober 1950 Ch 10). In the simplest formulation of this model chemical specificity arises from the distribution coefficients of non-electrolytes between lipid and aqueous phases. Such a model roughly accounts for the observed transport but disconcerting features exist.

1 Calculated membrane diffusion coefficients are unusually small (Zwolinski Eyring and Reese 1949). For example using data from the present work for the efflux of *n*-butanol from frog sartorius muscle a diffusion coefficient on the order of  $10^{-11}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/sec can be calculated for a 100 Å membrane. No adequate explanation has been offered for the magnitude of these coefficients which are extraordinarily small for a material that by hypothesis acts as a nonpolar solvent and thus is capable of only weak interactions.

2 As a corollary of membrane permeation models cellular transport should show a simple exponential time course. However with the advent of radioisotopic techniques the more complex bulk diffusion kinetics have been demonstrated in both nonelectrolyte (Horowitz and Fenchel 1963) and ion transport (Harris and Frankard 1957 Ling 1962 Ch 11). Also autoradiographic evidence for bulk diffusion has been provided for sodium (Abelson and Duryee 1949).

3 The pattern of chemical specificity observed in cellular transport can be shown to occur commonly in the diffusion of nonelectrolytes in hydrogen bonding solvents (see Ch 4). Thus the need to invoke a lipid-water distribution process to account for the presence of this pattern in cellular transport is open to question.

Chemical Specificity in Diffusion in Water	43
Chemical Specificity in Cytoplasmic Diffusion	46
Dimensional Specificity	49
A Comment on Narcosis	50
Appendix I	52
Appendix II	56
Acknowledgments	58
Literature Cited	59



## CHAPTER 1

# Experimental Procedure and General Results

Frog skeletal muscle recommends itself to transport studies for a variety of reasons

- 1 As observed by Overton (1902) and confirmed in the present study transport in this tissue shows the lipid solubility pattern of chemical specificity

- 2 The large size of the individual muscle fibers results in a slow flux of materials permitting detailed resolution of the time course of flux

- 3 The muscle bundle is homogeneous in the dimensions of the individual fibers composing the tissue

- 4 Muscle fibers are regular in shape and show a degree of microscopic long range homogeneity and order that is unsurpassed among commonly available cells

- 5 By virtue of adherent connective tissue muscle bundles may be manipulated with speed and precision without being damaged

- 6 Frog muscle is durable *in vitro* in a proper Ringer solution it may be kept alive for days

The commonly used sartorius possesses all these virtues but has the disadvantage of being multicellular and containing extensive channels of extracellular space. As a result the experimental kinetics represent in a complex manner diffusion in the extracellular space in addition to the desired single fiber flux. This complication can be mitigated by using a single fiber or a small bundle of fibers which permits more direct exposure of individual fibers to the bathing solution. But small bundle kinetics are themselves complicated by uncertainties such as adherent fluid and extraneous connective tissue—much less controllable than in large tissues—which make the early kinetics difficult to interpret. The latter are critical since in all models the flux is ultimately exponential.

There is consequently advantage in using both large and small preparations. We have studied both the sartorius and the very small

Each of these points suggests an alternative to lipid membrane permeation models ; that the properties of nonelectrolyte transport in cells may arise from the nature of the diffusional process in cytoplasm. The intent of the present study is to examine the feasibility of this explanation. The hypothesis of cytoplasmic diffusion as the rate limiting step will be considered in the light of the major features of the transport: the time course, the magnitude of the flux coefficients, and the specificity.

## CHAPTER 1

# Experimental Procedure and General Results

Frog skeletal muscle recommends itself to transport studies for a variety of reasons:

- 1 As observed by Overton (1902) and confirmed in the present study transport in this tissue shows the lipid solubility pattern of chemical specificity

- 2 The large size of the individual muscle fibers results in a slow flux of materials permitting detailed resolution of the time course of flux

- 3 The muscle bundle is homogeneous in the dimensions of the individual fibers composing the tissue

- 4 Muscle fibers are regular in shape and show a degree of microscopic long range homogeneity and order that is unsurpassed among commonly available cells

- 5 By virtue of adherent connective tissue muscle bundles may be manipulated with speed and precision without being damaged

- 6 Frog muscle is durable *in vitro* in a proper Ringer solution it may be kept alive for days

The commonly used sartorius possesses all these virtues but has the disadvantage of being multicellular and containing extensive channels of extracellular space. As a result the experimental kinetics represent in a complex manner diffusion in the extracellular space in addition to the desired single fiber flux. This complication can be mitigated by using a single fiber or a small bundle of fibers which permits more direct exposure of individual fibers to the bathing solution. But small bundle kinetics are themselves complicated by uncertainties such as adherent fluid and extraneous connective tissue—much less controllable than in large tissues—which make the early kinetics difficult to interpret. The latter are critical since in all models the flux is ultimately exponential.

There is consequently advantage in using both large and small preparations. We have studied both the sartorius and the very small

Each of these points suggests an alternative to lipid membrane permeation models that the properties of nonelectrolyte transport in cells may arise from the nature of the diffusional process in cytoplasm. The intent of the present study is to examine the feasibility of this explanation. The hypothesis of cytoplasmic diffusion as the rate limiting step will be considered in the light of the major features of the transport: the time course, the magnitude of the flux, coefficients, and the specificity.

temperature of the experiment for about two hours. Twenty five milliliter portions of washout fluid were placed in small beakers (usually 10 to 12) held in the constant temperature water bath by a plastic frame. These came to temperature equilibrium with the bath. The muscle was drawn up out of its incubation fluid and grasped at its tendinous insertion with a fresh forceps which was then clamped with a hemostat. The muscle was carefully wiped against the inside surface of the incubation flask to drain off excess fluid and then suspended successively in the 20 ml washout solutions for appropriate periods of time. Transfer of the muscle between baths took 1 to 1½ seconds. The muscle was agitated manually in each bath to assure good mixing of the washout fluid. At the conclusion of these wash periods, the muscle was placed in a 20 ml portion of washout fluid at room temperature for several hours to recover the remainder of the radioactive material. Finally, the muscle was blotted briefly on filter paper, weighed and tested for excitability by being placed across the terminals of a 1½ volt dry cell. No experiment was considered acceptable in which a muscle underwent change in appearance during the course of the experiment or failed to twitch when stimulated.

#### *Extensor longus digiti II*

The procedure with the extensor was similar to that with the sartorius. However, the fragility of the muscle dictated that manipulation be minimized. The following modifications of the above procedure were used:

- (1) Equilibration times were reduced on the basis of previously determined flux rates in the sartorius.
- (2) The muscle was held at both ends by fine pointed forceps (Keynes 1954).
- (3) The volume of each portion of washout fluid was 7 ml, corresponding to the smaller size of the muscle.

#### *Sample handling and analysis*

A one ml aliquot of each portion of washout fluid and of diluted incubation fluid was pipetted into a 22 ml counting vial with 20 ml of

---

This volume dilutes the muscle about 300 fold, effectively the concentration of tracer in the washout fluid is always zero.

extensor longus digiti IV of *R. pipiens*. The detailed kinetics in the sartorius are compared with theoretical kinetics for both bulk and membrane models; the extensor on the other hand provides direct evaluation of the cellular flux rate constants essentially unmodified by slow extracellular diffusion and permits confirmation of the theoretical treatment of the sartorius.

## Materials

Muscles from recently captured healthy (green flanked) *Rana pipiens* were used. Radioactive material was added to the stock Ringer's solution (Ling 1962) to serve as the incubation fluid; washout fluid contained an equal concentration of nonradioactive material. Osmotic and concentration dependent effects are thus avoided.

Efflux kinetics were obtained for ten compounds, members of three homologous series at various temperatures between 0°C and 30°C and in some cases at several concentrations.

The labeled compounds, with specific activities, sources and lot numbers were: methanol  $C^{14}$  (1.0 mC/mM New England Nuclear Corp. NENC 45 290); ethanol  $C^{14}$  (2.0 mC/mM NENC 65 64); n-propanol  $C^{14}$  (0.80 mC/mM NENC 65 13); n-butanol  $C^{14}$  (2.74 mC/mM NENC 45 163); formamide  $C^{14}$  (0.509 mC/mM NENC 65 203); acetamide  $C^{14}$  (1.0 mC/mM NENC 42 260); propionamide  $C^{14}$  (1.93 mC/mM NENC 71 73); thiourea  $C^{14}$  (2.0 mC/mM NENC 65 31); thiourea  $S^{35}$  (20.5 mC/mM when received NENC 50 236); thiourea  $C^{14}$  (1.77 mC/mM the Radiochemical Center, Amersham); methyl thiourea  $S^{35}$  (4.15 mC/mM when received Nuclear Chicago Radiochemical Center, Amersham, NC RC 18168); ethyl thiourea  $S^{35}$  (5.04 mC/mM when received NC RC 18169). Nonradioactive compounds were all reagent grade or better: Merck methanol and n-butanol; Eastman n-propanol; formamide, acetamide and propionamide; Mallinckrodt thiourea. The substituted thioureas were synthesized from Eastman isothiocyanates by the method of Moore and Crooks (1955).

## Methods

### Sartorius

An isolated sartorius was rinsed in Ringer's solution and placed for a short time in a volume of Ringer's containing nonradioactive compound. It was then placed into 3–5 ml of radioactive Ringer's for several hours—never less than three and usually overnight—at 4°C. Then the muscle in its equilibration fluid was brought to the

## Experimental Results

Three typical efflux curves for the sartorius appear in Fig. 1. All of the more than sixty curves obtained in this study are of similar appearance. The gross characteristics of these curves are a long pre-exponential curved phase followed by an exponential phase which extrapolated to zero time intercepts the ordinate axis generally between 0.45 and 0.60.

The kinetic parameters derived from the experimental efflux curves for the sartorius— $S$ —the negative slope of the exponential phase of

TABLE 1 *The efflux parameters of 10 nonelectrolytes from R. pipiens sartorius*

Compound	Temperature (°C)	Muscle weight (mg)	$S \times 10^4$ (sec <sup>-1</sup> )	$I$
thiourea	16	9.8	1.59	64
	17	9.3	2.09	55
	67	71.6	9.60	73
	106	75.0	4.17	64
	105	103.5	5.74	63
	73	87.7	7.09	59
	98	78.4	11.5	60
methyl thiourea	08	83.1	4.01	5
	08	101.4	2.81	0
	106	101.9	4.83	66
	01	80.2	9.56	55
	108	100.2	7.12	63
	93	101.3	9.65	5
ethyl thiourea	07	93.5	5.44	59
	08	90.3	4.01	52
	5	89.3	3.98	55
	105	85.5	4.63	35
	09	89.7	9.56	55
	02	71.0	10.2	46
	21.9	80.9	5.9	58
	30.0	9.0	12.5	48
formamide	10.3	83.2	1.1	38
	10.3	83.2	10.5	45
	95	87.5	34.6	47
	96	78.6	7.4	59

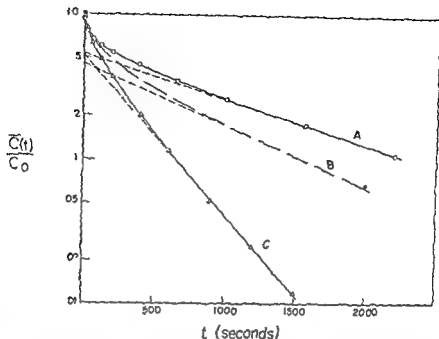


Fig. 1 Efflux of three nonelectrolytes from the sartorius of *P. pupinus*. Ordinate: mean fractional tissue concentration. Points are experimental; curves are fitted. Curve A: thiourea at 22.3°C. Curve B: formamide at 10.3°C. Curve C: ethanol at 7.3°C.

scintillation fluid<sup>1</sup> and counted in a 314 EX Packard Liquid Scintillation Spectrometer at 2°C. The standard error of the count was generally below 1½ per cent.

Data was analyzed as follows. Let  $n_i$  represent the number of counts per minute less background in a one ml aliquot from the  $i$ th washout bath,  $V$  the volume of a washout bath, and  $N$  the total number of washout baths. Then  $V \sum_{i=1}^N n_i$  represents the total counts in the muscle at the start of the experiment and  $V \sum_{i=1}^N n_i / \text{wt}$  of muscle represents the initial total tissue concentration in counts per minute per gram. At the end of the first washout period  $V n_1$  counts have left the muscle and so the mean tissue concentration at this time is  $\bar{C}(t_1) = V \sum_{i=2}^N n_i / \text{wt}$ . Similarly, at the end of the  $j$ th washout period the mean concentration is  $V \sum_{i=j+1}^N n_i / \text{wt}$ . At any time the relative mean concentration  $\bar{C}(t_j)/C_0$  is given by

$$\bar{C}(t_j)/C_0 = \frac{\sum_{i=j+1}^N n_i}{\sum_{i=1}^N n_i}$$

This is plotted semilogarithmically against time.

1. 70 g of PPO (2,2-diphenylloxazole) and 10 mg of POPOP (1,4-bis(2-phenyloxazolyl) benzene) and 150 g. of naphthalene in 1 liter of 1,4-dioxane.



## Experimental Results

Three typical efflux curves for the sartorius appear in Fig. 1. All of the more than sixty curves obtained in this study are of similar appearance. The gross characteristics of these curves are a long pre-exponential curved phase followed by an exponential phase which extrapolated to zero time intercepts the ordinate axis generally between 0.45 and 0.60.

The kinetic parameters derived from the experimental efflux curves for the sartorius— $S$  the negative slope of the exponential phase of

TABLE 1 *The efflux parameters of 10 nonelectrolytes from R. pipiens sartorius*

Compound	Temperature (°C)	Muscle weight (mg)	$S \times 10^4$ (sec <sup>-1</sup> )	$t$
thiourea	16	97.8	1.49	64
	17	59.3	0.09	50
	18	1.6	2.60	73
	10.6	70.0	4.17	64
	20.0	103.5	5.14	63
	22.3	87.7	7.09	57
	29.8	18.4	11.5	60
methyl thiourea	0.8	83.1	4.01	0
	0.8	101.4	0.81	70
	10.6	101.2	4.83	06
	20.1	80.0	9.56	50
	0.8	100.2	7.10	63
	29.3	101.3	9.60	57
ethyl thiourea	0.7	29.5	5.44	09
	0.8	90.3	4.01	0
	7.5	8.3	3.93	53
	10.5	8.5	4.69	00
	20.0	88.7	9.56	05
	0.0	71.0	10.2	40
	21.9	80.9	0.8	09
	30.0	9.0	1.5	49
formamide	10.3	85	1.1	39
	10.3	83.2	10.5	40
	9.5	87.5	31.6	40
	9.6	78.6	27.4	59

Table 1 (continued)

Compound	Temperature (°C)	Muscle weight (mg)	$S_e \times 10^4$ ( $\text{sec}^{-1}$ )	$I$
acetamide	0.8	100.2	8.87	53
	1.1	66.3	7.74	57
	1.1	64.5	11.4	62
	1.3	109.0	9.27	41
	19.8	70.5	26.8	40
	19.8	77.3	18.2	52
	22.0	102.1	23.4	58
	22.0	111.0	18.1	55
propionamide	0.6	82.6	11.5	61
	1.0	87.3	10.3	57
	1.0	107.5	10.9	53
	19.8	82.0	20.5	55
	19.8	87.4	21.2	52
	21.7	102.2	19.9	63
	21.8	77.0	20.4	55
methanol	1.5	82.6	23.4	51
	1.5	115.7	21.6	58
	7.4	91.4	31.0	52
	20.4	121.8	50.1	62
	20.4	95.6	54.8	46
ethanol	1.1	85.1	25.7	56
	1.1	107.3	25.9	55
	7.3	88.7	27.2	57
	20.4	85.3	44.3	46
	20.6	80.7	51.1	47
	20.6	91.0	56.5	50
<i>n</i> propanol	0.8	60.8	25.3	55
	0.9	95.2	20.4	59
	7.6	86.1	26.2	54
	20.0	99.5	44.3	60
	20.0	67.2	52.9	48
	20.6	83.5	39.7	54
<i>n</i> butanol	0.4	105.4	24.1	55
	0.5	79.1	7.6	47
	7.4	92.6	18.6	47
	7.6	83.5	1	45
	20.1	71.0	45.2	55
	20.1	85.7	46.2	60
	20.4	96.3	55.7	41

$S_e$  is the negative slope of the exponential phase of efflux.  $I$  is the ordinate intercept.

TABLE 2 *The efflux of three nonelectrolytes of similar molecular weight from R. pipiens M. extensor longus digiti II*

Compound	Temperature (°C)	$k \times 10^3$ (sec <sup>-1</sup> )
thiourea	12	0.315
	10.4	0.45
	19.8	1.94
propionamide	12	5.38
	10.5	9.03
	20.2	14.8
n butanol	12	14.5
	13	13.1
	18	1.5
	10.9	18.4
	11.1	18.9
	20.2	28.1

$k$  is the negative slope of the exponential phase of efflux

efflux and  $I$  the ordinate intercept—are given in Table 1. The temperature of each experiment and the muscle weight are also provided.

Some efflux curves for the extensor are given in Chapter 2 (Figs. 5 and 6). The values of  $k$  obtained in the extensor appear in Table 2.

The analysis of these curves and data will be pursued in Chapters 2 and 3.

## CHAPTER 2

### Analysis of the Form of the Efflux Curves

The purpose of this chapter is to attempt to establish the identity of the rate limiting process in the cellular transport of nonelectrolytes. In principle this is easily accomplished for fluxes in the individual cell since the kinetics for membrane permeation and bulk diffusion are distinctive. In radial bulk diffusion in a long cylinder such as the muscle cell the efflux kinetics are given by (Crank, 1956)

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{4}{j^2 \gamma_j^2} \exp(-D_c \gamma_j^2 t / r_0^2) \quad (1)$$

when the bathing solution is free of solute  $\bar{C}(t)$  is the mean concentration at time  $t$ ,  $C_0$  the uniform initial concentration,  $\gamma_j$  the  $j$ th root of the Bessel function  $J_0(\gamma) = 0$  and  $r_0$  the fiber radius. The parallel equation for surface permeation is

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = e^{-\sigma t} \quad (2)$$

where  $\sigma$  is a surface rate constant for thin membrane of permeability  $P$ ,  $\sigma = 2P/r_0$ .

In a multicellular tissue containing extracellular space however the cellular fluxes are in part regulated by concentration gradients in the extracellular space so that the simple expressions of Lqs. 1 and 2 are no longer strictly applicable. The more important the contribution of diffusion in the extracellular space the less discernible become the contributions of the cellular processes. Nevertheless it will be shown that for nonelectrolyte transport in the sartorius a distinction persists in the overall tissue kinetics which allows the resolution of the rate limiting process. Another potential complication of multicellularity, heterogeneity of fiber size is discountable so that in the theoretical treatments of the kinetics the fibers in a muscle will be taken to be all of the same diameter. This course is justified by several

lines of evidence that the small degree of heterogeneity does not influence the principal features of transport (Creeve Neil and Stephenson 1956 Pitts 1954) Direct confirmation of this in both the sartorius (Lang 1962) and the extensor (Keynes 1954) is provided by the strictly exponential kinetics observed in the efflux of potassium

### Theoretical Kinetics in the Sartorius

The measured concentration in the sartorius contains three components cellular solute extracellular solute (within the muscle) and carryover solute The latter is extra solute brought from the equilibration fluid to the first washout bath in the fluid adhering to the muscle and in the pieces of connective tissue attached to the ends of the muscle This extra solute is lost from the muscle almost instantaneously once the washout has begun but its presence will affect the mean total tissue concentration as follows Let  $n_0$  represent the total tracer solute molecules in the muscle at the beginning of the washout  $V$  and  $V_c$  the volumes of cellular space extracellular space and carryover space resp and  $C^0$  and  $C^e$  the cellular and extracellular tracer solute concentrations prior to washout Then

$$n_0 = V C^0 + V_c C^e + V_c C^e$$

since the concentration of material in  $V_c$  is the same as that in the extracellular space Introducing the distribution coefficient  $K = C^0/C^e$  we obtain

$$n_0 = C^e \left( V + \frac{V + V_c}{K} \right) = C^e (K V + V + V_c)$$

The mean relative tissue concentration after loss of the carryover solute is therefore

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = \frac{V}{V_c + \frac{V + V_c}{K}} \frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C^0} + \frac{1}{V_c + \frac{V + V_c}{K} + 1} \frac{\bar{C}_c(t)}{C^e} \quad (t > 0)$$

where  $\bar{C}(t)$  and  $\bar{C}_c(t)$  are the mean cellular and extracellular concentrations at time  $t$  By algebraic manipulation this can be written

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = \frac{V K + V_c}{V K + V + V_c} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + \frac{V}{V_c K}} \frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C^0} + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{V}{V_c K}} \frac{\bar{C}_c(t)}{C^e} \right] \quad [t > 0] \quad (3)$$

## CHAPTER 2

### Analysis of the Form of the Efflux Curves

The purpose of this chapter is to attempt to establish the identity of the rate limiting process in the cellular transport of nonelectrolytes. In principle this is easily accomplished for fluxes in the individual cell since the kinetics for membrane permeation and bulk diffusion are distinctive. In radial bulk diffusion in a long cylinder such as the muscle cell the efflux kinetics are given by (Crank 1956)

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{4}{j^2 \gamma_j^2} \exp(-D_c \gamma_j^2 t / r_0^2) \quad (1)$$

when the bathing solution is free of solute.  $\bar{C}(t)$  is the mean concentration at time  $t$ ,  $C_0$  the uniform initial concentration,  $\gamma_j$  the  $j$ th root of the Bessel function  $J_0(\gamma) = 0$  and  $r_0$  the fiber radius. The parallel equation for surface permeation is

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = e^{-\sigma t} \quad (2)$$

where  $\sigma$  is a surface rate constant for thin membrane of permeability  $P$ ,  $\sigma = 2P/r_0$ .

In a multicellular tissue containing extracellular space however the cellular fluxes are in part regulated by concentration gradients in the extracellular space so that the simple expressions of Eqs. 1 and 2 are no longer strictly applicable. The more important the contribution of diffusion in the extracellular space the less discernible become the contributions of the cellular processes. Nevertheless it will be shown that for nonelectrolyte transport in the sartorius a distinction persists in the overall tissue kinetics which allows the resolution of the rate limiting process. Another potential complication of multicellularity, heterogeneity of fiber size, is discountable so that in the theoretical treatments of the kinetics the fibers in a muscle will be taken to be all of the same diameter. This course is justified by several

lines of evidence that the small degree of heterogeneity does not influence the principal features of transport (Creese Neil and Stephenson 1956 Pitts 1954) Direct confirmation of this in both the sartorius (Lang 1962) and the extensor (Haynes 1954) is provided by the strictly exponential kinetics observed in the efflux of potassium

### Theoretical kinetics in the Sartorius

The measured concentration in the sartorius contains three components cellular solute extracellular solute (within the muscle) and carryover solute The latter is extra solute brought from the equilibration fluid to the first washout bath in the fluid adhering to the muscle and in the pieces of connective tissue attached to the ends of the muscle This extra solute is lost from the muscle almost instantaneously once the washout has begun but its presence will affect the mean total tissue concentration as follows Let  $n_0$  represent the total tracer solute molecules in the muscle at the beginning of the washout  $V$ ,  $V_c$  and  $V_e$  the volumes of cellular space extracellular space and carryover space resp and  $C_c^0$  and  $C^0$  the cellular and extracellular tracer solute concentrations prior to washout Then

$$n_0 = V C^0 + V_c C_c^0 + V_e C_c^0$$

since the concentration of material in  $V_e$  is the same as that in the extracellular space Introducing the distribution coefficient  $\lambda = C_c^0/C^0$  we obtain

$$n_0 = C^0 \left( V + \frac{V_c + V_e}{\lambda} \right) = C^0 (\lambda V + V_c + V_e)$$

The mean relative tissue concentration after loss of the carryover solute is therefore

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = \frac{V}{V + \frac{V_c + V_e}{\lambda}} \frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C^0} + \frac{V_c}{V + \frac{V_c + V_e}{\lambda}} \frac{\bar{C}_c(t)}{C_c^0} \quad [t > 0]$$

where  $\bar{C}(t)$  and  $\bar{C}_c(t)$  are the mean cellular and extracellular concentrations at time  $t$  By algebraic manipulation this can be written

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = \frac{V \lambda + 1}{V \lambda + 1 + 1} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{V \lambda}} \frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C^0} + \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{V \lambda}} \frac{\bar{C}_c(t)}{C_c^0} \right] \quad [t > 0] \quad (3)$$

so that the influence of carry over in the tissue kinetics is incorporated in the factor  $(V_c K + V_x)/(V_c K + V_x + I)$

To evaluate this factor we determined the fractional carry over space  $\alpha = I/(I_c + I_x + I)$  by weighing drained muscles before and after blotting and by dissecting and weighing the connective tissue pads. Several determinations of carry over space gave 7.5–8.0 per cent of the total muscle mass the adherent fluid and connective tissue each contributing about 4.0 per cent.

### *The First Approximation*

A useful approximation is made possible by the fact that the cellular flux of many solutes is very slow in comparison to the extracellular flux. In the limit the extracellular space empties essentially independently of the cellular space. In this case extracellular flux is sufficiently rapid so that we may set  $\bar{C}_x(t)/C_x^0$  equal to zero for all but a short initial time period. The cellular flux is then given by Eqs. 1 or 2 and  $\bar{C}(t)/C_0$  can be evaluated from Eq. 3 and the conditions

$$\bar{C}_x(t)/C_x^0 = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{at } t=0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t>0 \end{cases} \quad (4)$$

### *The Surface Permeation Model*

The complete solution for the efflux kinetics from the sartorius in the surface permeation is given by Harris and Burn (1949). Taking the muscle to be a plane sheet of thickness  $B$  containing long parallel right circular cylinders of radius  $r_0$  between which course extracellular channels of mean length  $1/B$  they obtain the flux equations

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \frac{\partial C_c(t, y)}{\partial t} &= -\sigma[C_c(t, y) - K C_x(t, y)] \\ \frac{\partial C_x(t, y)}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{1_x} \frac{\partial C_c(t, y)}{\partial t} &= \frac{D_x}{1} \frac{\partial^2 C_x(t, y)}{\partial y^2} \end{aligned} \right\} \quad (5)$$

where  $y$  is the diffusion coordinate ( $0 \leq y \leq B$ ) and  $D_x$  is the extracellular diffusion coefficient. The starting and boundary conditions are

$$C(0, y) = C^0 = K C_x(0, y) = K C^0$$

$$C_x(t, 0) = C_x(t, B) = 0$$

for  $t > 0$



The solutions averaged over  $y$  to give mean concentrations are

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{C}(t) &= \frac{8C_0}{\pi^2} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k+1)^2} \left[ \frac{r_2 e^{t/r_2} - r_1 e^{t/r_1}}{r_2 - r_1} \right] \\ \bar{C}(t) &= 8C_0^2 \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left\{ \frac{1}{(2k+1)^2} \left[ \frac{r_2 e^{t/r_2} - r_1 e^{t/r_1}}{r_2 - r_1} \right] + \frac{D}{j^2 B^2} \left[ \frac{e^{t/r_2} - e^{t/r_1}}{r_2 - r_1} \right] \right\} \quad (6) \end{aligned}$$

where for each value of  $k$   $r_1$  and  $r_2$  are the roots of

$$r + \left[ \sigma \left( 1 + \frac{F_d}{j} \Lambda \right) + (2k+1)^2 \pi^2 D / j^2 B^2 \right] r + \sigma (2k+1)^2 \pi^2 D / j^2 B^2 = 0$$

The tissue kinetics are given by these equations and Eq. 3. Several curves plotted from these kinetics appear in Figs. 3-5 labeled *A*. They have two important features: there is a short curved preexponential phase in contrast to the purely exponential kinetics for a single fiber and the slope of the exponential phase differs from  $\sigma$ , the cellular rate constant.

We may fix limits for the intercept  $I$  of the exponential phase on the ordinate axis for these kinetics. When the extracellular flux is relatively fast, the approximate analysis above gives a limiting intercept of  $\mu/(1 + j_s/j_c \Lambda)$  where  $\mu$  is the carryover factor in Eq. 3. When the extracellular flux is relatively slow, the kinetics approach diffusion from a plane sheet with intercept  $8\mu/\pi^2$ . Figs. 3 and 6 show these to be lower limits, i.e., the intercept is never less than the smaller of  $\mu/(1 + j_s/j_c \Lambda)$  and  $8\mu/\pi^2$  and usually is larger than either. These limits are nearly equal numerically (see below) so that the minimum intercept is about 0.73.

### The Bulk Diffusion Model

Because of mathematical difficulties, analysis of the bulk diffusion model can be extended only semi-quantitatively from the first approximation. This will prove adequate for present purposes for two reasons: (1) The conditions for the validity of the first approximation will be shown to hold for the slowest moving solutes studied. (2) The range of intercepts appropriate to the bulk diffusion model can be specified with reasonable certainty and shown to differ from that for surface permeation.

The phase does not necessarily correspond to a single exponential term in Eq. 6; usually there are two similar terms whose sum is linear to well with  $n$  if precision is necessary for this analysis.

The approximate analysis of bulk diffusion gives a minimum intercept of  $\mu(2/\gamma_1)(1 + V_z/V_c A)$  since the intercept of Eq. 1 must be included. This limit is about 0.53 whereas the minimum intercept in the surface permeation model was shown to be 0.73. Thus there is a range of intercepts 0.53 to 0.73 wherein the kinetics can only be bulk diffusion. Several curves plotted for bulk diffusion appear in Figs. 3-5 labelled B.

It seems likely that  $8\mu/\tau^2$  is an upper rather than secondary lower limit to the intercept in bulk diffusion so that the intercept ranges in the two models are completely exclusive. This is because the physical origins of the intercepts in the two models differ essentially, one arises from a two compartment process and the other from a bulk diffusion. For a given cellular rate constant as the extracellular diffusion becomes slower (i.e. as the first approximation is deviated from) the preexponential phase changes more rapidly than the exponential in the surface permeation model. There is reason to believe that the reverse occurs in bulk diffusion, because the extracellular concentration while not falling instantaneously to zero as in the first approximation still falls more rapidly than the average intracellular level thus permitting the establishment of large concentration gradients in the cell with the consequent long period of nonexponential flux which occurs before a quasi steady state is set up.

## Comparison of Experimental and Theoretical Kinetics

### Evaluation of Parameters

The clearest comparison of experimental and theoretical kinetics is provided by superposition of the curves in a single plot. We will use the complete expression of Eqs. 3 and 6 for surface permeation kinetics and the approximate treatment for the bulk diffusion given by Eqs. 1, 3 and 4. In this section we will discuss the choice of parameters for the theoretical curves and in the next section we will present the comparison of kinetics.

In the calculation of bulk diffusion curves for comparison with experiment the value of the experimental limiting slope  $S$  of the exponential phase may be used directly for the theoretical slope  $D_c\gamma_1/\tau_0$ . The calculation of surface permeation curves is more difficult. The calculated limiting slope  $S$  is different from the cellular flux parameter  $\sigma$  and their relationship is not easily determined beforehand. We found it best to calculate curves using several values of  $\sigma$  in the range of the experimental slopes and then to choose for graphical

comparison curves of similar  $S_e$  and  $S$ . The values used for  $\sigma$  were  $2 \times 10^{-4}$ ,  $3 \times 10^{-4}$ ,  $10^{-3}$ ,  $3 \times 10^{-3}$  and  $5 \times 10^{-3}$  ( $\text{cc}^{-1}$ ).

$D$ ,  $\gamma_i/r_0^2$  and  $\alpha$  were the only parameters chosen by fit. The others— $i_c/i_z$ ,  $h$ ,  $D$ ,  $B$ ,  $\lambda$ —were chosen as follows:

a. The extracellular space  $i/i_z$  was taken equal to 7 corresponding to 12.5 per cent extracellular space. We also calculated curves with  $i/i_z$  decreased to 4 giving an extracellular space of 20 per cent and found this had no important influence. These values are all exclusive of the connective tissue pads at the ends of the muscle.

The extracellular pore of close packed cylinders is 9.7 per cent compression of the cylinder will reduce even this. One would expect the extracellular space of sartorius muscle to be near this value. But reported values do not always confirm this: they range from the widely accepted values of 8–13 per cent (Boyle *et al.* 1941) and  $1.5 \pm 0.4$  per cent (D's medet 1953) to 8–40 per cent (Tasker *et al.* 1959) and 16–47 per cent (Johnson 1955). Most of the methods of determining extracellular space are based on the assumption that the probe molecule is excluded from the intracellular space while the measurement is made. The wide range of reported values, the great variability within a single study (Tasker *et al.* 1959) and the dependence on the physiological state or age of the tissue (Johnson 1955) make it doubtful that this assumption can be correct in any simple universal manner even for as large a molecule as serum albumin. The assumption has never adequately been examined. Generally its correctness is inferred when the equilibrium distribution of the probe molecule between the tissue and the bathing solution is less than unity. This is hardly justified: such distributions may indicate limited accumulation within the cells and are not inconsistent with rapid permeation (cf. Bozler 1959 and the results for alcohols in the present work).

Since we are concerned here with the true anatomical extracellular space we have used values of  $i/i_z$  which seem most consistent with it.

b. The partition coefficient  $h$  of a solute between cellular and extracellular phases may be evaluated from the experimental data if it is assumed that the distribution coefficient between the extracellular space and free solution = unity and if a value of  $i/i_z$  is taken. The values of  $h$  used to calculate theoretical curves 0.6, 0.8, and 1.1 span the range of experimental values.

Knowing the total tracer solute present in the muscle after incubation and the weight of the blotted muscle we may write for the weight based initial tissue concentration

$$C = \frac{n}{\text{wt}} = \frac{n}{e(i + i_z + i)} = \frac{C_c^0 i + C_z^0 (i + i_z)}{e(i + i_z + i)}$$

The approximate analysis of bulk diffusion gives a minimum intercept of  $\mu(4/\gamma_1)(1 + V_x/l, \lambda)$  since the intercept of Eq 1 must be included. This limit is about 0.53 whereas the minimum intercept in the surface permeation model was shown to be 0.73. Thus there is a range of intercepts 0.53 to 0.73 wherein the kinetics can only be bulk diffusion. Several curves plotted for bulk diffusion appear in Figs 3-5 labelled B.

It seems likely that  $8\mu/\tau^2$  is an upper rather than secondary lower limit to the intercept in bulk diffusion so that the intercept ranges in the two models are completely exclusive. This is because the physical origins of the intercepts in the two models differ essentially, one arises from a two compartment process and the other from a bulk diffusion. For a given cellular rate constant as the extracellular diffusion becomes slower (i.e. as the first approximation is deviated from) the preexponential phase changes more rapidly than the exponential in the surface permeation model. There is reason to believe that the reverse occurs in bulk diffusion because the extracellular concentration while not falling instantaneously to zero as in the first approximation still falls more rapidly than the average intracellular level thus permitting the establishment of large concentration gradients in the cell with the consequent long period of nonexponential flux which occurs before a quasi steady state is set up.

## Comparison of Experimental and Theoretical Kinetics

### *Evaluation of Parameters*

The clearest comparison of experimental and theoretical kinetics is provided by superposition of the curves in a single plot. We will use the complete expression of Eqs 3 and 6 for surface permeation kinetics and the approximate treatment for the bulk diffusion given by Eqs 1, 3 and 4. In this section we will discuss the choice of parameters for the theoretical curves and in the next section we will present the comparison of kinetics.

In the calculation of bulk diffusion curves for comparison with experiment the value of the experimental limiting slope  $S$  of the exponential phase may be used directly for the theoretical slope  $D_c\gamma_1/r_0$ . The calculation of surface permeation curves is more difficult. The calculated limiting slope  $S$  is different from the cellular flux parameter  $\sigma$  and their relationship is not easily determined beforehand. We found it best to calculate curves using several values of  $\sigma$  in the range of the experimental slopes and then to choose for graphical

$\tau$  The diffusion coefficient in the extracellular space  $D_x$  was taken as  $9 \times 10^{-6} \text{ cm}^2/\text{sec}$  in all cases. This is a modal value for the diffusion coefficients of the nonelectrolytes studied in aqueous solution.

Several investigators have estimated  $D_x$  for compounds which enter tissues to a limited extent by assuming that part of the flux curve represents diffusion into the extracellular space. These studies give values of  $D/\lambda^2 B^2$  where  $B$  is the actual tissue thickness and  $\lambda$  is the factor by which the diffusion path length exceeds  $B$ . McLennan (1950, 1951) studying mammalian muscle derived for  $\lambda$  the expression

$$\lambda = 1 + \frac{4}{\pi} \left\{ \frac{V_f}{V_m} \right\} \left( 1 - \frac{\tau}{4} \right)$$

where  $V_f/V_m$  is the fractional cellular space determined from the inulin space. McLennan showed  $\lambda$  to be equal to 1.41 when  $V_f/V_m$  is 0.83 and found  $D_x$  for inulin and sucrose to be equal to or slightly greater than the diffusion coefficients in free solution  $D_w$ . Johnson (1951) studying frog sartorius muscle used a value of  $\lambda$  of  $\pi/2$  and found  $D_x$  for sucrose to be 63 per cent of  $D_w$ . Creese (1954) found  $D/\lambda$  for inulin in rat diaphragm to be 75 per cent of  $D_w$ . McLennan (1957) using the data of Boyle et al (1941) for frog sartorius muscle found  $D$  of inulin to be 40 per cent larger than  $D_w$ .

All of these studies show that the overall flux in the extracellular space as reflected in the measured apparent diffusion coefficient  $D/\lambda$  is slower than in a comparable thickness of free solution. It is not clear that this is attributable solely to increased path length rather than partly to decrease in the diffusion coefficient. But for the present work this differentiation is unimportant since the factors occur only in the combined form  $D_x/\lambda B$  so that  $\lambda$  may be incorporated into either  $D$  or  $B$ ; in general we choose the latter (see below). Since we have studied compounds whose molecular weights range from 32 to 104 and a temperature range of 10 to 30°C the diffusion coefficient in the extracellular space will vary from one experiment to another. Ideally, this variation should be reflected in the theoretical curves but this is neither necessary nor feasible for several reasons: (1) it may be unwise to extrapolate too finely the conclusions based on studies of diffusion of the large molecules inulin and sucrose to the small molecules of the present study; (2) the calculation of theoretical curves in the surface permeation model is so lengthy as to make detailed calculations for each experiment impossible; (3) in the bulk diffusion approximation we can account only very roughly for extracellular diffusion; (4) those aspects of the theoretical curves with which we are most concerned are quite insensitive to variations in  $D$  of the magnitude likely to occur.

Combination of the assumed value of  $D$  with the different values of  $B$  mentioned below enable us to span the appropriate range of values of  $D/\lambda B$ .

where  $V$  is the volume of the connective tissue pads representing about 4 per cent of the total tissue and  $\rho$  is the density of the tissue. Assuming that  $C_x^0$  is equal to  $C_s$ , the concentration of tracer in the incubation solution we derive for the distribution coefficient

$$K = \frac{C_c^0}{C_x^0} = \rho \frac{C_s}{C_s} \left( \frac{\alpha_c + \alpha_x + \alpha}{\alpha_c} \right) = \frac{\alpha_x + \alpha}{\alpha_c}$$

where

$$\alpha_i = V_i / (V_c + V_x + V)$$

Taking  $\rho = 1.06$ ,  $\alpha/\alpha_x = 7$ ,  $\alpha = 0.08$ ,  $\alpha_c = 0.04$  we get

$$K = 1.265 C_0/C_s = 0.242$$

The values of  $K$  found for the compounds studied are given in Table 3

TABLE 3 *The equilibrium distribution coefficient  $K$  between the cellular and extracellular spaces in *R. pipiens sartorius* at low and high temperatures*

	Temperature (°C)	$K$
methanol	15	0.74
	10.3	0.79
ethanol	16	0.70
	15.1	0.81
n-propanol	15	0.73
	15.2	0.73
n-butanol	7.4	0.89
	20.4	0.84
formamide	2.9	0.96
	19.6	0.92
acetamide	1.1	0.99
	20.9	0.87
propionamide	0.8	1.00
	20.8	0.97
thiourea	1.6	1.28
	20.5	1.03
methyl thiourea	0.8	1.14
	20.8	1.10
ethyl thiourea	0.8	0.90
	20.2	0.97

*c* The diffusion coefficient in the extracellular space  $D$  was taken as  $9 \times 10^{-6}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/sec in all cases. This is a modal value for the diffusion coefficients of the nonelectrolytes studied in aqueous solution.

Several investigators have estimated  $D_e$  for compounds which enter tissues to a limited extent by assuming that part of the flux curve represents diffusion into the extracellular space. These studies give values of  $D/\lambda B$  where  $B$  is the actual tissue thickness and  $\lambda$  is the factor by which the diffusion path length exceeds  $B$ . McLennan (1956, 1957) studying mammalian muscle derived for  $\lambda$  the expression

$$\lambda = 1 + \frac{4}{\pi} \left( \frac{I_f}{I_m} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{\pi}{4} \right)$$

where  $I_f/I_m$  is the fractional cellular space determined from the inulin space. McLennan showed  $\lambda$  to be equal to 1.242 when  $I_f/I_m$  is 0.80 and found  $D$  for inulin and sucrose to be equal to or slightly greater than the diffusion coefficients in free solution  $D_w$ . Johnson (1955) studying frog sartorius muscle used a value of  $\lambda$  of  $\pi/2$  and found  $D$  for sucrose to be 63 per cent of  $D_w$ . Creese (1954) found  $D/\lambda^2$  for inulin in rat diaphragm to be 20 per cent of  $D_w$ . McLennan (1957) using the data of Boyle et al (1941) for frog sartorius muscle found  $D_e$  of inulin to be 40 per cent larger than  $D_w$ .

All of these studies show that the overall flux in the extracellular space as reflected in the measured apparent diffusion coefficient  $D/\lambda^2$  is slower than in a comparable thickness of free solution. It is not clear that this is attributable solely to increased path length rather than partly to decrease in the diffusion coefficient. But for the present work this differentiation is unimportant since the factors occur only in the combined form  $D/\lambda^2 B$  so that  $\lambda$  may be incorporated into either  $D$  or  $B$  in general we choose the latter (see below). Since we have studied compounds whose molecular weights range from 32 to 104 and a temperature range of 0 to 30°C the diffusion coefficient in the extracellular space will vary from one experiment to another. Ideally this variation should be reflected in the theoretical curves but this is neither necessary nor feasible for several reasons: (1) it may be unwise to extrapolate too finely the conclusions based on studies of diffusion of the large molecules inulin and sucrose to the small molecules of the present study; (2) the calculation of theoretical curves in the surface permeation model is so lengthy as to make detailed calculation for each experiment impossible; (3) in the bulk diffusion approximation we can account only very roughly for extracellular diffusion; (4) those aspects of the theoretical curves with which we are most concerned are quite insensitive to variations in  $D$  of the magnitude likely to occur.

Combination of the assumed value of  $D$  with the different values of  $B$  mentioned below enable us to span the appropriate range of values of  $D/\lambda^2 B$ .

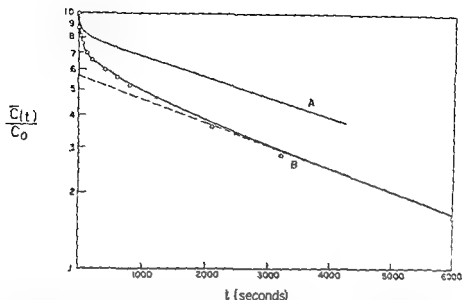


Fig 2 Efflux of thiourea from the sartorius of *R. pipiens* at 17°C Ordinate mean fractional tissue concentration Points are experimental Curve A theoretical efflux based on surface limited cellular flux Curve B theoretical efflux curve based on bulk diffusion limited cellular flux

d The thickness of the muscle  $B$  was measured to be 0.05–0.065 cm. As pointed out above, it is desirable to modify this parameter in most instances to include the effect of increased diffusional path length by multiplying  $B$  by a factor whose value is in the range 1.20–1.25. We have chosen the values 0.055 and 0.075 for this analysis to include the ranges of both uncorrected and corrected path lengths.

### Comparison

■ *Sartorius*: In Figs. 2, 3, and 4 the experimental points in the efflux of thiourea at 17°C, acetamide at 0.9°C, and methanol at 7.5°C respectively are plotted with theoretical curves for surface permeation (labeled A) and bulk diffusion (labeled B).

The parameters used were  $V_c/V = 7$ ,  $K = 1.1$  for thiourea and acetamide, 0.6 for methanol (values from Table 3 were used for the carryover factor since this can be incorporated after the main calculation),  $D_x = 11 \times 10^{-6}$  cm<sup>2</sup> sec<sup>-1</sup>,  $\lambda B = 0.07$  cm for thiourea and acetamide, 0.05 cm for methanol (to balance the underestimation of  $D_x$ ),  $\sigma = 10^{-4}$  sec<sup>-1</sup> (thiourea),  $1 \times 10^{-3}$  sec<sup>-1</sup> (acetamide),  $5 \times 10^{-3}$  sec<sup>-1</sup> (methanol).  $D/r_0^2$  was fitted. The effect of improving the values of  $\sigma$ ,  $K$ , and  $D_x/\lambda^2 B^2$  is too small to influence the comparison.



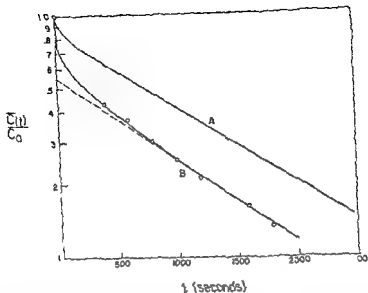


Fig. 3 Efflux of a toamide from the sartorius of *R. pipiens* at 0.9°C Ordinate is an fractional tissue concentration Points are experimental Curve A theoretical efflux based on surface limited cellular flux Curve B theoretical efflux curve based on bulk diffusion limited cellular flux

Figs. 2-4 show that the experimental efflux is entirely inconsistent with surface permeation kinetics but agrees well with the approximate bulk diffusion treatment. The same was true for all of about sixty experiments.

The detailed fit of experimental points to the bulk diffusion curves is better for slow moving solutes such as thiourea compare Figs. 2 and 4. This is expected from the approximation. Nonetheless the fit is striking and unambiguous for all solutes.

The agreement of the experimental efflux curves with a theoretical model based on the assumption of uniform resistance to transport throughout the entire cell is a serious objection to membrane permeability models. However the basic feature of nonelectrolyte transport which membrane permeation models attempt to explain is the rates of flux rather than the form of the flux curve. The question arises whether a model can be constructed combining membrane and bulk processes in such a way that the rate of flux is controlled by permeation while the form of the kinetics is determined by bulk diffusion.

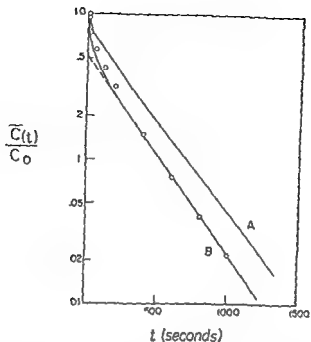


Fig 4 Efflux of methanol from the sartorius of *R. pipiens* at 7.4°C. Ordinate: mean fractional tissue concentration. Points are experimental. Curve A: theoretical efflux based on surface limited cellular flux. Curve B: theoretical efflux curve based on bulk diffusion limited cellular flux.

This is impossible primarily because the large preexponential phase in diffusion kinetics is due to rapid unhindered flux under large concentration gradients at the surface. A surface barrier will affect this phase most, neutralizing the effect of the large gradients. We can show this quantitatively for a single cylindrical fiber with reactive surface for which the theoretical relationships of intercept, slope, and rate constants can be obtained. This demonstration is lengthy and has been deferred to Appendix I.

b. *Extensor longus digiti II*: The extraneous volume of the extensor preparation is large and variable. Consequently, theoretical curves based on an independently determined carryover will be unreliable. Nevertheless, the better exposure of fibers to bathing solutions in the extensor than in the sartorius makes the approximate bulk diffusion equations (Eqs. 1, 3, and 4) more appropriate in principle to this tissue. A comparison of experimental flux in the extensor with these equations therefore provides a check on the conclusion drawn from the sartorius studies.

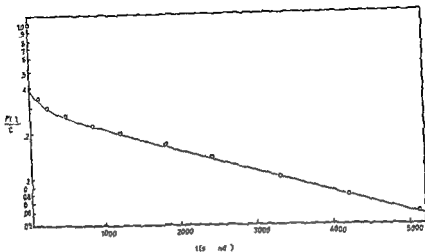


Fig. 5 Efflux of thionin from the extensor at 1.2°C. Points are experimental; solid curve is theoretical efflux based on bulk diffusion limited cellular flux.

The efflux of thionin from the extensor at 1.2°C is shown in Fig. 5. The points are experimental and the line is a bulk diffusion curve. This curve is plotted from Eqs. 1, 3, and 4, but there is an important difference between it and the sartorius curves: the carryover in the extensor is determined by fitting the position of the diffusion curve to that of the experimental points, whereas in the sartorius the carryover is measured independently.

The combined carryover and extracellular space from Fig. 6 is 61 per cent, which seems reasonable. The initial sharp drop in concentration which this represents is distinct from the long preexponential phase which follows. The latter lasts about 1000 seconds, much longer than could be accounted for by diffusion from adherent connective tissue. In Fig. 6 the efflux of *n*-butanol from the extensor at 1.3°C is presented. The flux is more rapid than in the sartorius. This curve shows a feature which appears in the extensor studies at low concentrations—a small (0.5 to 3 per cent) very slow fraction of uncertain origin. In order to obtain the principal exponential phase of the kinetics for calculation of  $D_c$ , the extrapolated contribution of the slow fraction was subtracted, as shown in Fig. 6.

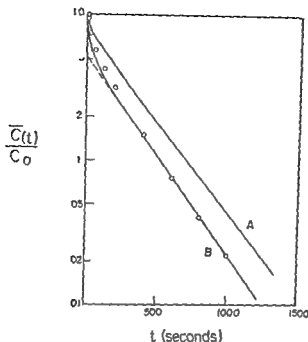


Fig 4 Efflux of methanol from the sartorius of *R. pipiens* at 7.4°C Ordinate: mean fractional tissue concentration Points are experimental Curve A: theoretical efflux based on surface limited cellular flux Curve B: theoretical efflux curve based on bulk diffusion limited cellular flux

This is impossible primarily because the large pre-exponential phase in diffusion kinetics is due to rapid unhindered flux under large concentration gradients at the surface. A surface barrier will affect this phase most, neutralizing the effect of the large gradients. We can show this quantitatively for a single cylindrical fiber with reactive surface for which the theoretical relationships of intercept, slope and rate constants can be obtained. This demonstration is lengthy and has been deferred to Appendix I.

b. *Extensor longus digiti II* The extraneous volume of the extensor preparation is large and variable. Consequently, theoretical curves based on an independently determined carryover will be unreliable. Nevertheless, the better exposure of fibers to bathing solution in the extensor than in the sartorius makes the approximate bulk diffusion equations (Eqs. 1, 3 and 4) more appropriate in principle to this tissue. A comparison of experimental flux in the extensor with these equations therefore provides a check on the conclusion drawn from the sartorius studies.

## The Diffusional Parameters in Muscle Cytoplasm

In the preceding chapter it was shown that the efflux of the simple organic nonelectrolytes from frog muscle follows the kinetics of a cytoplasmic diffusion process with no evidence for the influence of a surface or membrane permeation process. In this chapter the diffusion parameters which characterize the experimental kinetics will be evaluated. They will be used in the following chapter as the basis for examining the hypothesized cytoplasmic diffusion in the light of diffusion in other physical systems and the properties of cytoplasm.

Evaluation of the Diffusion Coefficient in Muscle Cytoplasm,  $D$ 

Equations 1, 3, and 4 give the following relationship between  $S$  and the diffusion coefficient in muscle cytoplasm  $D_c$ :

$$S = D \gamma_1 / r_0^2$$

All diffusion coefficients will be calculated from this using the values of  $S$  given in Tables 1 and 2. The values obtained in the sartorius and the extensor will be distinguished by the symbols  $D_s$  and  $D_e$  respectively.

The value of  $\gamma_1$  is 0.83. The values for the mean cellular radius  $r$  in the two muscles were determined by measurement of cellular cross-sectional areas in photomicrographs of the tissues fixed in Susa and imbedded in paraffin. The radii were corrected for shrinkage in processing by assuming this to be proportional to the linear shrinkage undergone by the tissue. The mean values of  $r$  determined were  $31.9 \mu$  and  $24.4 \mu$  for the sartorius and extensor respectively.

A comparison of  $D_s$  and  $D_e$  is provided by Table 4 which gives values interpolated to 5°C and 20°C from the least squares Arrhenius lines described on p. 28 and by Figs. 7 and 9. It can be seen from this

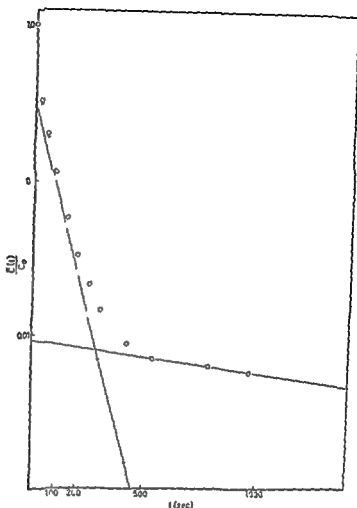


Fig 6 Efflux of *n* butanol from the extensor at 13°C Open circles are experimental points closed circles represent the residual flux after the slow component has been subtracted

The efflux of *n* butanol has a large preexponential phase like that of thiourea but we shall not attempt a precise delineation of it. There is nothing new to be learned and the uncertainties already described are accentuated by the rapid flux.

## CHAPTER 3

# The Diffusional Parameters in Muscle Cytoplasm

In the preceding chapter it was shown that the efflux of the simple organic nonelectrolytes from frog muscle follows the kinetics of a cytoplasmic diffusion process with no evidence for the influence of a surface or membrane permeation process. In this chapter the diffusion parameters which characterize the experimental kinetics will be evaluated. They will be used in the following chapter as the basis for examining the hypothesized cytoplasmic diffusion in the light of diffusion in other physical systems and the properties of cytoplasm.

### Evaluation of the Diffusion Coefficient in Muscle Cytoplasm, $D$

Equations 1, 3, and 4 give the following relationship between  $S_0$  and the diffusion coefficient in muscle cytoplasm,  $D$ :

$$S_0 = D \gamma_1 / r_0^2$$

All diffusion coefficients will be calculated from this using the values of  $S_0$  given in Table 1 and 2. The values obtained in the sartorius and the extensor will be distinguished by the symbols  $D_s$  and  $D_e$  respectively.

The value of  $\gamma_1$  is 5.783. The values for the mean cellular radius,  $r_0$ , in the two muscles were determined by measurement of cellular cross-sectional areas in photomicrographs of the tissues fixed in Susa and imbedded in paraffin. The radii were corrected for shrinkage in processing by assuming this to be proportional to the linear shrinkage undergone by the tissue. The mean values of  $r_0$  determined were  $31.9 \mu$  and  $124.4 \mu$  for the sartorius and extensor respectively.

A comparison of  $D_s$  and  $D_e$  is provided by Table 4 which gives values interpolated to 5°C and 20°C from the least squares Arrhenius lines described on p. 28 and by Figs. 7 and 9. It can be seen from this

TABLE 4 *Interpolated diffusion coefficients in the sartorius,  $D_s$  and extensor,  $D_E$  at two temperatures for three nonelectrolytes*

	$10^3 D_E$ (cm <sup>2</sup> /sec)		$10^3 D_s$ (cm <sup>2</sup> /sec)	
	50°C	20.0°C	50°C	20.0°C
n butanol	15	27	4.9	7.3
propionamide	6.8	15	2.8	4.4
thiourea	0.46	2.0	0.50	1.3

table that there is good agreement between  $D_s$  and  $D_E$  for the slow moving thiourea. At any temperature the agreement becomes progressively poorer for the more rapidly diffusing compounds. Also the agreement is better the lower the temperature. These relationships are in accord with the expected effect discussed in Chapter 2 of extracellular diffusion and provide a notion of the range in which this effect becomes significant.

Since there is a substantial difference between  $D_s$  and  $D_E$  for most compounds, principal reliance in the remainder of this work will be placed on  $D_E$ .

### Temperature Dependence

In Fig. 7  $\ln D_E$  is plotted against  $1/T$  for thiourea, propionamide and n butanol. The linear relationships permit the temperature dependence to be described by Arrhenius equations

$$D_E = D_E^0 e^{-E/RT}$$

where  $D_E^0$  is a temperature independent frequency factor and  $E$  an activation energy. The values of these parameters are given in Table 5.

TABLE 5 *Arrhenius parameters for  $D_E$  for three nonelectrolytes in the extensor*

	$D_E^0$ (cm <sup>2</sup> /sec)	$E$ (kcal/mole)
n butanol	$1.8 \cdot 10^{-2}$	6.4
propionamide	$3 \cdot 10^{-2}$	8.6
thiourea	$8.3 \cdot 10^2$	15.6



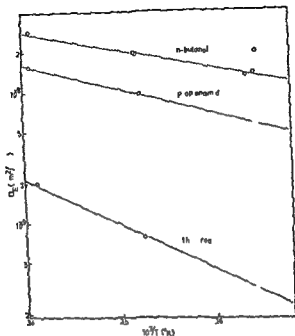


Fig 7 Arrhenius plot of  $D_E$  for thiourea propionamide and n butanol

In the sartorius a non linear relationship may be expected because two processes—extracellular and cytoplasmic diffusion—make significant contributions to the flux. However the precision of available data does not permit resolution of this non linearity. It is found that

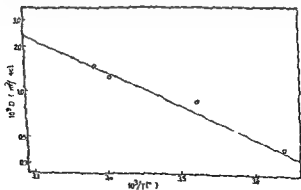


Fig 8 Arrhenius plot of  $D_2$  for thiourea

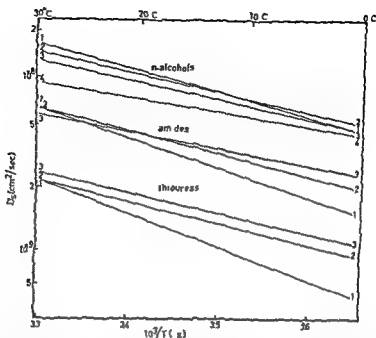


Fig 9 Least squares Arrhenius lines for  $D_s$  for ten compounds. The *n* alcohols are (1) methanol (2) ethanol (3) *n* propanol (4) *n* butanol the amides are (1) formamide (2) acetamide (3) propionamide the thioureas are (1) thiourea (2) methyl thiourea (3) ethyl thiourea

a least squares Arrhenius line adequately represents the temperature dependence of  $D_s$  as shown in Fig 8 for thiourea. The least squares lines for  $D_s$  for ten compounds are presented in Fig 9. Within a group of homologous compounds the slopes of these lines are distinct. Although the probable error in ordinate position of the lines is large the separations thiourea-ethyl thiourea and formamide-propionamide are significant at low temperatures. Because of the impossibility of assigning the observed Arrhenius parameters for  $D_s$  to either of the two processes involved in the flux these parameters will not be presented.

### Chemical Specificity

The pattern of diffusional specificity in respect to chemical grouping is seen in Figs 7 and 9. The nature of the polar grouping—alcoholic, amide, or thiourea—dominates the diffusion coefficients without regard to molecular size. Among compounds of equal molecular size the most polar diffuses most slowly. Since diffusion in the extracellular

space reduces the extent of observable chemical specificity in the sartorius a better estimate of the magnitude of specificity is obtainable from the extensor. The three compounds in Fig. 7 are of nearly equal molecular weight the spread in  $D_E$  between thiourea and *n*-butanol is fifty fold at 11°C and fifteen fold at 20°C. This is comparable to the spread in *Chara* (Collander and Barlund 1933).

The data of Table 5 show the chemical specificity in  $D_E$  to be energy controlled as is usual in diffusional processes.

### Dimensional Specificity—the influence of alkyl groups

It can be seen in Fig. 9 that the pattern of specificity in  $D_E$  among the members of each homologous class is temperature dependent. Two processes determine these patterns: cellular and extracellular diffusion.

These patterns can be clarified somewhat by a recognition of the probable contribution of extracellular diffusion. The latter may be expected to resemble diffusion in free aqueous solution in showing a small temperature dependence (corresponding to an activation energy of about 5 kcal) and a pattern in which larger molecules in a homologous series diffuse more slowly than smaller. Since this temperature dependence is smaller than that of most of the lines in Fig. 9 the relative contribution of extracellular diffusion will be greatest at high temperatures and least at low where the most reliable estimate of dimensional specificity in cellular diffusion in the sartorius is obtainable. Among the thioureas and the amides the largest members diffuse most rapidly at low temperatures. The overall separation in each group about two fold near 0°C represents a minimum estimate of the true cellular specificity. The reduction in spread among the thioureas at high temperatures and the crossover among the amides leading to an inverted order in  $D_E$  are favored by the increased contribution from extracellular diffusion in this range. However if the low temperature specificity pattern is energy controlled as the data suggests the cellular diffusion itself will show the same tendency toward inversion of order at high temperatures. Thus the high temperature tendency may have a dual origin and the relative contributions are not specifiable from present data.

Dimensional specificity among the alcohols in the full temperature range resembles that in the amides at high temperatures. The cellular

flux of alcohols is very rapid so that extracellular diffusion is likely to contribute significantly to the order observed. This order is consistent with a variety of patterns of cellular flux to resolve these and the uncertainties in the amide and thiourea data additional studies using the extensor will be necessary.

## CHAPTER 4

# Origins of the Diffusional Properties of Cytoplasm

The presumption that nonelectrolyte transport in cells is a bulk diffusional process draws our attention to both the composition and molecular organization of cytoplasm. The gross composition of cytoplasm as a protein-water-ion system is relatively well known and must be considered as a baseline in characterizing the system as a diffusional medium. Yet few physical properties of such systems can be defined by composition alone and much evidence exists for believing that the particular organization of the cytoplasmic components is responsible for the unique characteristics of this material. Of special interest to the understanding of nonelectrolyte transport is the evidence that significant organization extends to the level of cytoplasmic water. The importance of this may be understood when one considers that cytoplasm is about 80 per cent water so that the molecular neighbors of a diffusing solute are almost entirely water molecules.

### The Properties of Cytoplasmic Water

The principal determinants of the interactions of a water molecule are its dipole moment of 1.87 debyes and its ability to form four tetrahedrally directed hydrogen bonds. The energy of the latter depends upon both the electronic properties of the second molecular species and the geometry of the bond. The maximum bond energy is realized when a linear nuclear array is possible. The effect of nonlinearity is to reduce the bond energy roughly according to a cosine law for small angles and more rapidly for large. The energy of an unrestrained hydrogen bond between two water molecules is about 5 kcal/mole (Coulson 1959; Pimentel and McClellan 1960).

The crystalline structure of ice is determined by the tetrahedral orientation of the hydrogen bonding directions of the water molecule. Each molecule is linearly bonded to four nearest neighbors, a loose packing which results in an open lattice. The breaking or bending of

TABLE 6 *Depth of the water layer stabilized by a variety of materials*

Material	Depth (Å)	Method
Mica <sup>a</sup>	1000-2000	compressive strength
Mica <sup>b</sup>	2000-5000	dielectric constant and dispersion
Montmorillonite <sup>c</sup>	10-20	x ray diffraction
Silica and Glass <sup>d</sup>	45-5300	multilayer adsorption
Lipid emulsion <sup>e</sup>	85	x ray diffraction
Soap micelle <sup>f</sup>	42	x ray diffraction
Desoxyribonucleic acid and hyaluronic acid <sup>g</sup>	500-1000	streaming dielectric
Crystalline Methemoglobin <sup>h</sup>	15-25	x ray diffraction
Turnip yellow mosaic virus <sup>i</sup>	78	x ray diffraction

### Reference

a DERJAGUIN and KUSSAKOV 1939 b PALMER CUNLIFFE and HOUGH 1952 c HOFFMANN and BILKE 1936 SHAW 1942 d LENNER 1924 McHAFFIE and LENNER 1925 e SCHMITT and PALMER 1940 f HESS PHILIPPOFF and HIRSSIG 1939 g JACOBSON 1955 h JACOBSON and LAURENT 1954 i BOLES WATSON DAVIDSON and PERUTZ 1947 j BERNAL and CARLISLE 1948

hydrogen bonds associated with melting relaxes the spatial requirements of the lattice and permits closer molecular packing. However water cannot be treated as a structureless close packed liquid. Much evidence exists that like ice the liquid shows substantial lattice ordering. While the structural forms involved are still subject to investigation agreement is universal that water molecules exist in a variety of more or less extensive quasi crystalline orderings. These are based as in ice on the four tetrahedrally directed hydrogen bonds but they may in any region have only transient existence longer at lower temperatures shorter at higher temperatures (Bernal and Fowler 1933 Forshind 1952 Frank 1958 Pauling 1935 Pople 1951).

The stability form and extent of the lattice ordering is profoundly influenced by the presence of solutes. The solutes that principally determine the properties of cytoplasm are protein. This follows from the high concentrations of protein in cells and the fact that all of the functional groups of proteins are capable of interacting with water.

These functional groupings fall broadly into three classes ionic hydrogen bonding and nonpolar. Some notion of the interactions of proteins may be inferred from the aqueous properties of monomeric solutes containing these functional groupings—such as the hydration of ions the generation of low entropy structured domains by nonpolar molecules and the hydrogen bond interactions between solvent and solute in aqueous solutions (Claussen 1951 Feates and Ives 1956 Frank and Evans 1945 Robinson 1946). As significant as these interactions are much evidence suggests that even more extensive interaction of protein with water is made possible by the stabilization of arrays of functional groupings by the covalent linkages of the polypeptide backbone (Jacobson 1955a Ling 1962 Chap. 2).

Two variables in this fixed array seem important the nature and reactivity of the interacting sites and their spatial distribution. When these are appropriate the macromolecule may impose or stabilize an ordered water lattice whose extent is greater than and whose fluctuations are smaller than those of liquid water at the same temperature (Jacobson 1955a Klotz 1958). Other conditions which have been suggested as favoring extensive structuring include the presence of elongated fibrous proteins rather than globular ones the matching of structured domains denseness and regular packing of macromolecules. Each of these conditions appears to be fulfilled by the proteins in muscle.

The distances from a matrix over which the stabilization of water structure may be enhanced can be large. Estimates taken from various literature references are given in Table 6.

The distance that separates adjoining protein backbones in protoplasm can be shown to average 16.9 Å (Ling 1962 Chap. 3) the magnitudes presented in Table III make plausible the possibility that all of the water interspersed between cellular protein molecules is highly ordered. Of possible importance also is the fact that cellular proteins are probably laid down in particular patterns in the process of synthesis if these patterns are such that the lattice ordered domains of individual protein fibers are able to match a great extension of lattice stabilization could come about. The observation that the crystallinity of pectinic acids (Palmer Merrill and Ballantine 1948) and collagen (Harrington and Von Hippel 1961) is enhanced by increased water content may be relevant to a reciprocal role of the water lattice on the pattern of protein laydown (Jacobson 1955a).

Evidence for structuring of water has been elicited in direct studies in cells using the phosphorescence of dyes (Szent Gyorgyi 1957) and nuclear magnetic resonance (Odeblad 1959 1960). Physiological processes in which ordered water lattices have been suggested to play a role are muscle contraction and photosynthesis (Szent Gyorgyi 1957) ionic selectivity (Baird *et al* 1957 Lang 1962 Chap 4) energy and electron transport (Klotz 1962) and signal propagation and radiation damage (Privalov 1958).

The above discussion makes it clear that in examining the transport properties of cytoplasm as an aqueous system one must be prepared to consider the water as modified from its pure state. This modification seems to be in the direction of increased lattice ordering. While the details of the structure of protoplasmic water are unknown some general properties can be assumed. These are that protoplasmic water in comparison with pure water has reduced translational and rotational freedom and a statistically more orderly microscopic structure. In these respects the properties of the water of cytoplasm may be thought of as intermediate between those in liquid water and in crystalline aqueous systems such as ice and crystal hydrates. Therefore examination of the influence of these microscopic properties on the diffusional behavior of water ice and related physical systems should provide a basis for assessing the physical plausibility of the bulk diffusion model of nonelectrolyte transport.

### The Magnitude of the Diffusion Coefficients

The self diffusion coefficient in liquid water at 0°C is about  $10^{-5} \text{ cm}^2/\text{sec}$  while that of ice is about  $10^{-10} \text{ cm}^2/\text{sec}$  (Kuhn and Thurkauf 1954 Wang Robinson and Edelman 1953). This type of discontinuity in the magnitude of  $D$  is not uncommonly associated with phase changes. It parallels the microscopic phenomena associated with the increased crystallinity itself. These are in the case of water a decrease in translational and rotational freedom consequent on an increase in the strength and frequency of bonds and a reduction in fluctuation of orientation of molecules about the linear hydrogen bonding direction a reduction in the number of lattice defects and the requirement of cooperative involvement of a number of hydrogen bonds in the neighborhood of a structural distortion. The preceding discussion has indicated that these features are common to ice and cytoplasmic water.



Insofar as such concomitants of lattice ordering determine the diffusion coefficient in aqueous systems one may expect that cytoplasmic water will present a greater barrier to diffusion than the pure liquid. The diffusion coefficients calculated for water in a variety of cells by Dick (1959) fall in the range  $1.5 \times 10^{-8}$  to  $5.0 \times 10^{-10} \text{ cm}^2/\text{sec}$  and those calculated for a variety of nonelectrolytes in the present study  $3 \times 10^{-8}$  to  $3 \times 10^{-10} \text{ cm}^2/\text{sec}$ . These values do fall between those of ice and water and in a loose sense agree with expectation. However it is desirable to obtain independent estimates of the appropriateness of these values.

The evidence for lattice ordering presented above is largely concerned with the equilibrium extent of lattice ordering and gives no direct information of the dynamical properties of the lattice from which an independent estimate of the diffusional barrier could be inferred. In order to obtain such an estimate it is necessary to turn to measurements of rate processes in cytoplasm and other aqueous systems. These are basically of two types: wave propagation processes of which dielectric dispersion has been most studied and transport processes of which next to diffusion itself viscosity is most important. Unfortunately the interpretation of viscosity and dielectric dispersion in cells is made difficult by the complexity of the material. The presence of macromolecules and other solutes, gross structural heterogeneity and the metastability of the system may all make significant and often unresolvable contributions. Nevertheless we believe that if cognizance is taken of these uncertainties these processes may be examined with profit.

#### *Evidence from Dielectric Dispersion Measurements*

Near the melting point liquid water has a dielectric dispersion of about  $9 \times 10^8$  cycles/sec and ice of about  $8 \times 10^3$  cycles/sec. A number of mechanisms have been suggested to explain these values involving proton displacements, rotation of water molecules or the breaking of hydrogen bonds (Forshlund 1952, Haggis, Hasted and Buchanan 1952, Pople 1951). Regardless of the particular mechanism it seems likely that the unit dielectric process involves a molecular movement or hydrogen bond breakage which is closely related to the unit process in diffusion (Frank and Wen 1957, Wang, Robinson and Edelman 1953). This relationship may be roughly formalized by equating the characteristic time  $\tau$  in the equation

$$D = \frac{\lambda^2}{\tau} \quad (7)$$

with the dielectric relaxation time defined as  $1/2\tau$  where  $f$  is the dispersion frequency. Taking the unit displacement  $\lambda$  as 1.5 Å (Glasstone Laidler and Eyring 1941 Wang Robinson and Edelman 1953) and the dispersion frequencies given above we obtain diffusion coefficients of  $10^{-5}$  and  $10^{-11}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/sec for water and ice respectively, in rough agreement with the experimental values.

Protein solutions show a characteristic dispersion at  $10^5$ – $10^7$  cycles/sec (Onley 1943). While the interpretation of this is still subject to investigation evidence has been presented that the observed dispersion is attributable to lattice ordered water in the vicinity of the macromolecule (Jacobson 1955b).<sup>1</sup> These dispersion frequencies would be expected according to Eq. 7, to give diffusion coefficients in the lattice ordered water of  $10^{-8}$  to  $10^{-10}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/sec.

In protein solutions the ordered lattices do not form a continuum and therefore the gross diffusion coefficients for such systems only partially reflect the ordered water being determined largely by the free solution. If as hypothesized the lattice ordering of cytoplasm were essentially continuous the observed cytoplasmic diffusion coefficients would be those calculated for the lattice. Values for  $D_F$  obtained in the present study and for water by Dick (1959) agree in magnitude with the latter.

#### *Evidence from Viscosity Measurements*

The Stokes Einstein equation

$$D = kT/6\pi\eta r \quad (8)$$

where  $r$  is the radius of the diffusing particle and  $\eta$  the gross viscosity of the medium although developed for the diffusion of colloidal particles, approximately describes the covariance of diffusion and viscosity for small molecules in simple hydrogen bonded systems of widely varying viscosity (Irani and Adamson 1958 Mariani 1956). This is shown by Fig. 10 in which  $D$  is seen to vary as an inverse function

<sup>1</sup> Three dispersion regions have been observed in muscle tissue (Schwan 1957). One of these the  $\beta$  dispersion corresponds in frequency range to that seen in protein solutions. However the interpretation of this is complicated by the possibility of gross structural relaxation (Maxwell Wagner mechanism) as well as by uncertain knowledge of molecular relaxation mechanisms.

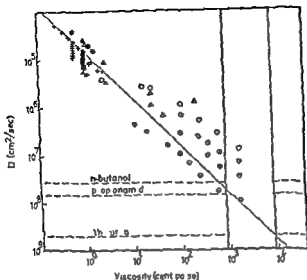


Fig 10  $D$  diffusion coefficient as function of viscosity in  $H$  bonding systems. The solid line is plotted from the equation

$$D = kT/6\pi\eta r$$

for  $r = 1.5 \text{ \AA}$ .

The systems represented are  $\square$  mutual or self diffusion of nonelectrolytes in organic solvents (Int Crit Tables V Johnson and Babb 1956)  $\bullet$  mutual diffusion of nonelectrolytes in water (Int Crit Tables V Johnson and Babb 1956) and self diffusion of water at various temperatures (Wang, Robinson and Edelman 1953)  $\Delta$  self diffusion of water and sucrose in aqueous sucrose solution (Irani and Adamson 1958)  $\circ$  mutual diffusion of water  $\ominus$  methanol  $\oplus$  acetamide and  $\oslash$  sucrose in glycerol-water and glycerol-alcohol mixtures (Warren 1955 1957).

The overlay represents Seifriz (1936 Ch 13) estimate of the usual range of cytoplasm viscosity. The dotted lines are the values of  $D_f$  at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ .

of  $\eta$  through a fourfold range of magnitudes. The reason for the success of this relationship lies in the similarity of the unit processes in diffusion and viscosity (Glasstone, Laidler and Eyring 1941) in such simple systems.

Cross viscosity measurements are available for cytoplasm but in systems containing macromolecules several kinds of unit processes both structural and molecular may be operative in determining viscosity.

**Structural Components of Viscosity** Structural interactions have little influence on small molecule diffusion and when they dominate

$$D = \frac{\lambda^2}{\tau} \quad (7)$$

with the dielectric relaxation time defined as  $1/2\pi f$  where  $f$  is the dispersion frequency. Taking the unit displacement  $\lambda$  as  $1.5 \text{ \AA}$  (Glasstone, Laidler and Eyring 1941, Wang, Robinson and Edelman 1963) and the dispersion frequencies given above we obtain diffusion coefficients of  $10^{-5}$  and  $10^{-11} \text{ cm}^2/\text{sec}$  for water and ice respectively, in rough agreement with the experimental values.

Protein solutions show a characteristic dispersion at  $10^5$ – $10^6$  cycles/sec (Onley 1943). While the interpretation of this is still subject to investigation evidence has been presented that the observed dispersion is attributable to lattice ordered water in the vicinity of the macromolecule (Jacobson, 1955b).<sup>1</sup> These dispersion frequencies would be expected according to Eq. 7 to give diffusion coefficients in the lattice ordered water of  $10^{-6}$  to  $10^{-10} \text{ cm}^2/\text{sec}$ .

In protein solutions the ordered lattices do not form a continuum and therefore, the gross diffusion coefficients for such systems only partially reflect the ordered water being determined largely by the free solution. If as hypothesized the lattice ordering of cytoplasm were essentially continuous the observed cytoplasmic diffusion coefficients would be those calculated for the lattice. Values for  $D_g$  obtained in the present study and for water by Dick (1959) agree in magnitude with the latter.

### *Evidence from Viscosity Measurements*

The Stokes-Einstein equation

$$D = kT/6\pi\eta r \quad (8)$$

where  $r$  is the radius of the diffusing particle and  $\eta$  the gross viscosity of the medium although developed for the diffusion of colloidal particles approximately describes the covariance of diffusion and viscosity for small molecules in simple hydrogen bonded systems of widely varying viscosity (Irani and Adamson 1958, Mariani 1956). This is shown by Fig. 10 in which  $D$  is seen to vary as an inverse function

<sup>1</sup> Three dispersion regions have been observed in muscle tissue (Suzman 1957). One of these the  $\beta$  dispersion corresponds in frequency range to that seen in protein solutions. However the interpretation of this is complicated by the possibility of gross structural relaxation (Maxwell-Wagner mechanism) as well as by uncertain knowledge of molecular relaxation mechanisms.

TABLE 7 Correlation of  $S_e$  in the extensor and  $\Lambda_w^*$ 

	Temperature (°C)	$S \times 10^3$ (sec <sup>-1</sup> )	$\Lambda_w$ ether/water
n butanol	10.9	18.4	7.7
prop. onamide	10.5	9.03	0.013
thiourea	10.4	0.745	0.0063

Values for  $\Lambda_w$  were taken from Collander (1949)

ponent for the purpose of predicting diffusion coefficients must recognize two complicating factors: structural viscosity arising from the cellular proteins and unrelated to diffusion and the non Newtonian nature of cellular viscosity. These cannot be quantitatively assessed but their influence on the estimation of diffusion coefficients from gross viscosity will be in opposite directions.

With the assumption that a major portion of cellular viscosity is molecular in origin a range of diffusion coefficients may be predicted using Eq. 8 and the values of cellular viscosity given by Seifriz (1936 Chap. 13).<sup>1</sup> The coincidence of predicted values and the values of  $D_e$  obtained in the present study is shown in Fig. 10.

### Chemical Specificity

The flux rates of non electrolytes are markedly influenced by the nature of functional groupings in the diffusing molecule. In Chapter 3 the pattern and extent of this chemical specificity are described. The flux rates show a positive correlation with the equilibrium distribution coefficients  $\Lambda_w$  between a nonpolar solvent such as ether and the polar solvent water as shown in Table 7. In the classical membrane hypothesis this correlation is attributed to the participation in the transport of a distribution process between a nonpolar membrane and aqueous solution. Such a process is precluded in an hypothesis like the present one in which nonelectrolyte transport properties are attributed to bulk diffusion in cytoplasm. Chemical specificity must arise from the diffusional process itself. In this hypothesis the covariance of  $\Lambda_w$  and  $D$  signifies not the actual involvement of a distribution

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix II for justification for the use of these values. The values in  $D_e$  among the three compounds which is outside the domain of Eq. 8 is examined in the section on chemical specificity.

they lead to the dissociation of observed gross viscosity and diffusion. This is exemplified by the study of Wang, Anfinsen and Polestra (1954). Concentrated (24 per cent) solutions of ovalbumin have a viscosity six times that of water and the self diffusion coefficient of ovalbumin is one sixth that extrapolated to infinite dilution where is the self diffusion coefficient of the water is 60 per cent of that in pure water. In the case of proteins which form a network the dissociation of *apparent viscosity and small molecule diffusion* may be even more marked. Friedman and Kraemer (1930) studied the entry of urea from 3 per cent aqueous solutions into gelatin gels of 4.0 to 20.0 per cent protein. While the consistency of such gels may be comparable to viscosities of  $10^4$ – $10^5$  centipoise the diffusion coefficients are 30 to 50 per cent of those of water.

Systems showing such dissociation characteristically contain large amounts of relatively free water. While the individual protein molecules may be hydrated the ordered system is far from continuous. Thus the relative displacement of two macromolecules involves only a minimal modification of the interspersed water. Other mechanisms are more important: the intertwining of the polymer chains and the energy dissipation in aligning macromolecules in the direction of shear (Alexander and Johnson 1950 Chap. 13). Neither of these appreciably affects the diffusion of solutes in the nonhydrated water and thus relatively high diffusion coefficients may be observed even when gross viscosity is high.

*Molecular Components of Viscosity.* The second important influence of a macromolecule on the viscosity of a system arises from its ability to modify the molecular transport properties of the solvent itself (Frisch and Simha 1956). The argument for the importance of this mechanism for biological macromolecules has been presented by Jacobson (1955a). Viewed simply, the high viscosities of these materials arise from the distortion of water lattices associated with the macromolecules as they move relative to each other. The energy dissipated in this distortion and reflected in the observed viscosity provides a direct measure of the dynamical properties of water molecules in the lattice and this component of viscosity may therefore be expected to show a Stokes-Einstein correlation to diffusion.

It is a corollary of the hypothesized lattice ordering of cellular water that the molecular component of viscosity will make a large contribution to the gross viscosity. The attempt to isolate this com-

TABLE 7 Correlation of  $S$  in the extensor and  $\lambda_w$ 

	Temperature (°C)	$S \times 10^3$ (sec <sup>-1</sup> )	$\lambda_w^*$ ether/water
<i>n</i> butanol	10.9	18.4	7.7
propionamide	10.5	9.03	0.013
thiourea	10.4	0.745	0.0063

\* Values for  $\lambda_w$  were taken from Collander (1949)

ponent for the purpose of predicting diffusion coefficients must recognize two complicating factors: structural viscosity arising from the cellular proteins and unrelated to diffusion and the non-Newtonian nature of cellular viscosity. These cannot be quantitatively assessed but their influence on the estimation of diffusion coefficients from gross viscosity will be in opposite directions.

With the assumption that a major portion of cellular viscosity is molecular in origin, a range of diffusion coefficients may be predicted using Eq. 8 and the values of cellular viscosity given by Seifriz (1936, Chap. 13).<sup>1</sup> The coincidence of predicted values and the values of  $D_E$  obtained in the present study is shown in Fig. 10.

### Chemical Specificity

The flux rates of nonelectrolytes are markedly influenced by the nature of functional groupings in the diffusing molecule. In Chapter 3 the pattern and extent of this chemical specificity are described. The flux rates show a positive correlation with the equilibrium distribution coefficients  $\lambda_w$  between a nonpolar solvent such as ether and the polar solvent water, as shown in Table 7. In the classical membrane hypothesis this correlation is attributed to the participation in the transport of a distribution process between a nonpolar membrane and aqueous solution. Such a process is precluded in an hypothesis like the present one in which nonelectrolyte transport properties are attributed to bulk diffusion in cytoplasm. Chemical specificity must arise from the diffusional process itself. In this hypothesis the covariance of  $\lambda_w$  and  $D$  signifies not the actual involvement of a distribution

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix II for the justification for the use of these values. The variation in  $D_E$  among the three compounds which is outside the domain of Eq. 8 is examined in the section on chemical specificity.

TABLE 8 *Diffusion coefficients,  $D$  in alcohols and  $K_w^n$  in ether/water and isobutanol/water*

Compound	MW	$10^5 D$ (cm <sup>2</sup> /sec)	$K_w^n$ ether	$K_w^n$ isobutanol
<i>in methanol at 15 C (Thoveri from Int Crit Tables V)</i>				
allyl alcohol	58.1	1.80	—	2.34
acetamide	59.1	1.50	0.0025	0.33
urea	60.1	1.24	0.00047	0.13
ethyl ether †	74.1	2.00	10	—
pyridine	79.0	1.58	1.2	—
propylene glycol	76.0	1.24	0.018	—
isopentanol	88.1	1.34	19	—
aniline	93.1	1.49	14	—
ethyl acetate †	88.1	2.10	8.5	7.2
urethane	89.1	1.41	0.64	1.78
glycerol	92.1	1.15	0.00060	0.10
<i>in ethanol at 20 C (Öholm from Int Crit Tables V)</i>				
1,1 diethoxyethane †	118.2	1.13	> 1	—
monoacetin	134	0.51	0.041	—
<i>in 96% ethanol at 20 C (Öholm from Int Crit Tables V)</i>				
camphor †	152.2	0.06	> 1	—
glycerol	92.0	0.41	0.00006	—

Within each group the compounds are listed in descending order of  $K_w^n$ . The compounds noted by † are unable to donate protons for H bonding and show inordinately large  $D$  in relationship to both molecular weight and  $K_w^n$ .

$K_w^n$  in ether/water are taken from Collander (1949) those in isobutanol/water from Collander (1950) and work of the present authors.  $K_w^n$  for 1,1 diethoxyethane and camphor were estimated.

process in the transport but a common determinant in the unit processes underlying both diffusion and distribution.

The common determinant is readily adduced. The energetically dominant element in both is hydrogen bonding interaction. The chemical specificity of  $K_w^n$  arises largely from the relative number and strength of H bonds between the solute and the two solvents of greatly unequal H bonding ability. A parallel involvement of H



bonds exists in diffusion. This is because the loosening of solute solvent bonds in the activation process reflects in the same manner as  $\Lambda_w$  the number and strength of these bonds.

### *The Occurrence of Chemical Specificity in H bonding Liquids*

There is nothing in the above mechanism that suggests its uniqueness to cytoplasm. We may expect it to occur in other H bonding systems and to be reflected in a similar pattern of chemical specificity. That this is the case may be seen from Table 8 in which the diffusion coefficients in methanol and ethanol for several substances separated into groups by molecular weight are given along with the appropriate ether/water and isobutanol/water distribution coefficients.<sup>1</sup>

The existence of  $\Lambda_w$  correlated diffusion in liquids supports the idea that the correlation observed in cellular transport arises from the specificity of diffusion in cytoplasm. Nevertheless one must expect marked differences in the magnitude of specificity between diffusion in liquids and in a stabilized system like cytoplasm. For while specificity is common in diffusion it is never great in liquids while it is generally of notable extent in more crystalline systems (Jost 1952 Chs 4, 5 and 9). Comparison of Tables 7 and 8 shows that consistent with this expectation a greater specificity is observed in cell than in the liquids. A closer examination of the basis of the low specificity of diffusion in liquids can provide a better understanding of the greater specificity attributed to cytoplasmic diffusion.

### *The Magnitude of Chemical Specificity in H bonding Liquids*

The relation of chemical specificity to solute-solvent interaction advanced above suggests that the difference in the extent of specificity between  $D$  in liquids and  $\Lambda_w$  is attributable to a difference in the mode of involvement of solute-solvent bonds in the two processes. In the dissolution process the transfer of a solute molecule from the polar to the nonpolar phase involves the breakage of H bonds which to a first approximation is of a completeness comparable to that occurring in vaporization. On the other hand the energy requirements for diffusion in liquids are less stringent involving only a fraction of the energy of vaporization (Glasstone Laidler and Eyring 1941 Ch

<sup>1</sup> In effect this observation constitutes a generalization of the Overton-Collander Rule formulated for cellular transport to include diffusion in other H bonding systems.

TABLE II Diffusion coefficients,  $D$  in water at  $15^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $K_w^{\#}$  in ether/water and isobutanol/water

Compound	MW	$10^3 D$ ( $\text{cm}^2/\text{sec}$ )	$K_w^{\#}$ ether	$K_w^{\#}$ isobutanol
n propanol	60.1	0.87	1.9	0.54
allyl alcohol	58.1	0.90	—	2.74
acetamide	59.1	0.96	0.0025	0.33
urea	60.1	0.94	0.00047	0.13
isopentanol	88.1	0.69	1.9	—
urethane	89.1	0.80	0.64	1.79

Within each group the compounds are listed in descending order of  $K_w^{\#}$ .

Sources of  $K_w^{\#}$  are the same as in Table 8.  $D$  is taken from Thayer as quoted in the Int. Crit. Tables.

9) This is reflected in the great uniformity of diffusion coefficients among liquids of widely varying composition all being near  $10^{-5} \text{ cm}^2/\text{sec}$  (Johnson and Brabb 1956 Jost 1952 Ch. 9) as well as in the low specificity in the alcohols in Table 8 and in water in Table 9 and Fig. 11. Solids in general show a smaller reduction in the energy of diffusion in relation to the energy of sublimation and for molecular crystals there is evidence of a close correspondence of the two energies (Glasstone Laidler and Eyring 1941 Ch. 9 Jost 1952 Ch. 2 and 5). As an example the characteristic activation energy for transport processes in ice is 12–13 kcal/mole (Auer and Colver 1952 Bradley 1957 Privalov 1958) while the energy of sublimation is 11.7 kcal/mole. On the other hand liquid water with an energy of vaporization of about 10.2 kcal/mole has a characteristic activation energy of 4.6 kcal/mole (Wang Robinson and Edelman 1953). The rupture of intermolecular bonds in liquid diffusion can therefore be viewed as being facilitated by the greater orientational freedom enjoyed by the molecules in the liquid state. In H bonding liquids the facilitation may be visualized as arising because orientational freedom is great enough to permit the approach of H bonded groups the subsequent transfer of a bond from one group to another occurring with only small bond distortion. Thus the contribution to the diffusional barrier of hydrogen bonds in polar liquids is small as will also be diffusional specificity based on these bonds.

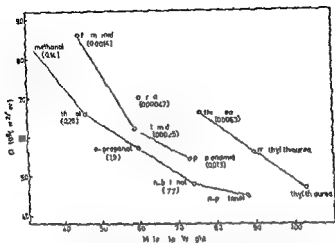


Fig. 11 Diffusion coefficients of 12 nonelectrolytes in a Sephadex<sup>®</sup>-water gel as a function of molecular weight. The lines join members of homologous series. The numbers in parentheses are the  $H^+$  values ether/water (Collander 1943).

### Chemical Specificity in Diffusion in Water

Before considering diffusion in cytoplasm in the context of H bonding specificity it is necessary to examine the special attributes of diffusional specificity in liquid water. The specificity pattern observed in the alcohols is not seen in liquid water. Rather as the data in Table D indicate the inverse pattern with respect to  $H^+$  seems to prevail. A more complete picture of this inverted pattern than can be had from the limited data in pure water is shown in Fig. 11 in which the diffusion coefficients for 12 nonelectrolytes in a Sephadex<sup>®</sup>-water gel<sup>1</sup> are presented as a function of solute molecular weight (unpublished results of authors). The correlation of  $D$  for a given molecular weight with the values of  $H^+$  (given in parentheses) can be seen to be the inverse of that in the alcohols.

In view of the great potential for solute solvent H bonding in water one might expect a pattern of specificity comparable to that in the other H bonding liquids. That water is anomalous in this respect is not surprising in view of the unusual properties of other water-nonelectrolyte interactions. On the basis of the inordinately large

<sup>1</sup> Sephadex<sup>®</sup> is the trade mark of AB Pharmacia Uppsala for cross-linked dextran. In these experiments it was used as a gel in bead form containing about 80% water by weight.

TABLE 9 Diffusion coefficients  $D$  in water at  $15^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $K_w^H$  in ether/water and isobutanol/water

Compound	MW	$10^5 D$ ( $\text{cm}^2/\text{sec}$ )	$K_w^H$ ether	$K_w^H$ isobutanol
<i>n</i> propanol	60.1	0.87	1.9	0.54
allyl alcohol	58.1	0.90	—	2.74
acetamide	59.1	0.96	0.0025	0.33
urea	60.1	0.94	0.00047	0.13
isopentanol	58.1	0.69	1.9	—
urethane	59.1	0.80	0.64	1.78

Within each group the compounds are listed in descending order of  $K_w^H$ .

Sources of  $K_w^H$  are the same as in Table 5.  $D$  is taken from Thorbert as quoted in the Int. Crit. Tables 3.

9) This is reflected in the great uniformity of diffusion coefficients among liquids of widely varying composition all being near  $10^{-5}\text{cm}^2/\text{sec}$  (Johnson and Babb 1956 Jost 1952 Ch. 9) as well as in the low specificity in the alcohols in Table 8 and in water in Table II and Fig. 11. Solids in general show a smaller reduction in the energy of diffusion in relation to the energy of sublimation and for molecular crystals there is evidence of a close correspondence of the two energies (Glasstone, Laidler and Eyring 1941 Ch. 9 Jost 1952 Ch. 2 and 3). As an example the characteristic activation energy for transport processes in ice is 12–13 kcal/mole (Luty and Cole 1952 Bradley 1957 Privalov 1959) while the energy of sublimation is 11.7 kcal/mole. On the other hand liquid water with an energy of vaporization of about 10.2 kcal/mole has a characteristic activation energy of 4.6 kcal/mole (Wang, Robinson and Edelman 1953). The rupture of intermolecular bonds in liquid diffusion can therefore be viewed as being facilitated by the greater orientational freedom enjoyed by the molecules in the liquid state. In H-bonding liquids the facilitation may be visualized as arising because orientational freedom is great enough to permit the approach of H-bonded groups, the subsequent transfer of a bond from one group to another occurring with only small bond distortion. Thus the contribution to the diffusional barrier of hydrogen bonds in polar liquids is small as will also be diffusional specificity based on these bonds.

is comparable to that in hole formation. The total energy  $E_0 + E_1$  which may be viewed as an upper limit to the activation energy for diffusion of water in aqueous systems will thus be about 20 kcal/mole. In the diffusion of other nonelectrolytes  $E_1$  will depend upon the strength and number of H bonds between the solute and the water molecules of the lattice and chemical specificity will arise from this variation in  $E_1$ , a process comparable to but more selective than that which occurs in H bonding liquids.

In the real systems involved in the present study the lattice structuring is far from perfectly rigid so that one cannot expect the simple rigid model to be entirely applicable. In non rigid models the separation of two components in the unit diffusional process is less clear cut. Furthermore an effect of the solute on the local state of the lattice becomes admissible. The result of this in terms of the above model is to make  $E_0$  as well as  $E_1$  dependent on the nature of the solute because  $E_0$  is determined by the state of the lattice in the vicinity of the solute. The stability of the ordered array of water in cytoplasm is dependent upon the H bond interaction of the individual water molecules as well as the stabilizing influence of the macromolecules. When a solute replaces one or more water molecules in the lattice its influence will be to either strengthen or weaken the lattice structure depending upon its size and the strength and orientation of its H bonding groups. Solutes having multiple H bond directions and the possibility of orientating to fit the lattice can be expected to have a minimal disordering effect and may even strengthen the lattice. Of the solutes employed in the present study this description best fits the smaller members of the more polar series—the thioureas and amides—which have the highest measured activation energies.

When a solute is relatively nonpolar there will be disordering of the lattice in its vicinity. The mechanisms of this disorder may be illustrated with the aid of Fig 12 which represents schematically a water lattice based on H bonds. The circles with extended radii represent water molecules; the extended radii are H bonding directions. A typical water molecule labelled A will execute torsional oscillations involving the bending of the H bonds between it and its neighbors as indicated by the arrowed lines. This is describable in terms of a potential energy curve for the oscillation. Consider now a second water molecule B adjacent to a nonpolar solute C. The energy of interaction of B and C due to van der Waals forces will be

negative entropies of solution of nonpolar solutes in water as compared to other liquids, and the very large positive partial molar heat capacities of these solutes in aqueous solution. Frank and Evans (1945) concluded that the solutes produce a stabilization of low entropy structured domains, icebergs of water molecules in their vicinity. The stabilization is greater the less polar the molecule. The significance of this stabilization for dynamical processes has been explored by Frank (1958) who attributed the increase in dielectric relaxation time in nonelectrolyte solutions to the stabilizing influence of these molecules. The pattern of diffusion in liquid water appears to be explicable on a common basis with these other anomalous properties if it is assumed that the stabilized water structures associated with nonpolar groups are able to depress the mobility of the solute. That this depression in mobility is greater than that produced by solute solvent H bonding is indicated by the inversion of the pattern of specificity found in the other H bonding liquids.

### *Chemical Specificity in Cytoplasmic Diffusion*

The mechanistic basis for the argument that cellular nonelectrolyte transport is a bulk diffusional process lies in the hypothesis that the water of cytoplasm forms an extensive ordered lattice stabilized by its interaction with protein. The stabilization of orientation of H bond directions in this lattice reduces the possibility of the facilitated activation in diffusion which accounts for the low chemical specificity observed in liquids. For this reason a formulation of diffusion in cytoplasm in terms emphasizing its resemblance to that in crystalline solids seems justified.

In the simplest rigid crystalline model of diffusion one can recognize two contributions to the unit process: hole formation in the lattice and the freeing of a molecule from its lattice position to occupy the hole (Jost 1952, Ch. 3). This simple picture is most closely represented by self diffusion. In it the activation involves the energy of hole formation,  $E_0$ , which for a molecular crystal may be taken as roughly equal to the energy of sublimation and the energy,  $E_1$ , required for the diffusing molecule to surmount the energy barrier between equilibrium positions. The energy of vaporization of the water in cytoplasm must lie in the same range as that of water and ice: 10 to 11 kcal/mole. The additional energy required to move a molecule into the hole is more difficult to assess but one may assume that the H bond breakage

is comparable to that in hole formation. The total energy  $E_0 + E_1$  which may be viewed as an upper limit to the activation energy for diffusion of water in aqueous systems will thus be about 20 kcal/mole. In the diffusion of other nonelectrolytes  $E_1$  will depend upon the strength and number of H bonds between the solute and the water molecules of the lattice and chemical specificity will arise from this variation in  $E_1$ , a process comparable to but more selective than that which occurs in H bonding liquids.

In the real systems involved in the present study the lattice structuring is far from perfectly rigid so that one cannot expect the simple rigid model to be entirely applicable. In non rigid models the separation of two components in the unit diffusional process is less clear cut. Furthermore an effect of the solute on the local state of the lattice becomes admissible. The result of this in terms of the above model is to make  $E_0$  as well as  $E_1$  dependent on the nature of the solute because  $E_0$  is determined by the state of the lattice in the vicinity of the solute. The stability of the ordered array of water in cytoplasm is dependent upon the H bond interaction of the individual water molecules as well as the stabilizing influence of the macromolecules. When a solute replaces one or more water molecules in the lattice its influence will be to either strengthen or weaken the lattice structure depending upon its size and the strength and orientation of its H bonding groups. Solutes having multiple H bond directions and the possibility of orientating to fit the lattice can be expected to have a minimal disordering effect and may even strengthen the lattice. Of the solutes employed in the present study this description best fits the smaller members of the more polar series—the thioureas and amides—which have the highest measured activation energies.

When a solute is relatively nonpolar there will be disordering of the lattice in its vicinity. The mechanisms of this disorder may be illustrated with the aid of Fig. 12 which represents schematically a water lattice based on H bonds. The circles with extended radii represent water molecules; the extended radii are H bonding directions. A typical water molecule labelled A will execute torsional oscillations involving the bending of the H bonds between it and its neighbors as indicated by the arrowed lines. This is describable in terms of a potential energy curve for the oscillation. Consider now a second water molecule B adjacent to a nonpolar solute C. The energy of interaction of B and C due to van der Waals forces will be

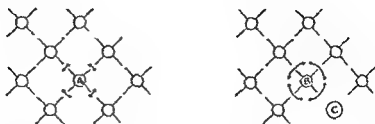


Fig. 12 A schematic water lattice based on H bonds. A a water molecule in an undisturbed volume of the lattice. B a water molecule adjacent to a nonpolar solute. C For additional description see text.

small in comparison to the energy of a H bond it will also be relatively insensitive to the orientation of molecule B. The potential energy of oscillation of B will therefore be smaller than that of A so that B will execute oscillations of greater amplitude or may rotate completely. The oscillations of molecules neighboring B are cooperatively linked to that of B as B turns its H bonding directions will deviate greatly from linearity with those of its neighbors so that the H bonds will weaken and the potential energy of oscillation for the neighboring molecules will be smaller. They then will execute wider oscillations or will rotate. Thus a region of disorder or lattice collapse in the neighborhood of a nonpolar solute could be established.

A second mechanism will reinforce this: the nearest neighbors of molecule C are no longer tetrahedrally H bonded. It would be energetically preferable if a new equilibrium configuration of the molecules involving an increase in H bonding and consistent with the continued existence of the other H bond in the system could be realized. Such configurations are possible in liquid water because the orientational freedom permits a wide variety of configurations to coexist. However in the more ordered system of cytoplasm such new configurations would be unlikely to match the structure imposed by the protein and thus would necessitate the substantial breaking of other H bonds. The opposing influences will result in increased disordering in a manner much like that operative in the disordered region beyond the primary hydration shell in ionic solutions in liquid water (Frank and Evans 1945; Wang 1954).

The region of lattice collapse would be, from preceding arguments, one in which diffusion is faster and the activation energy smaller.



Among the classes of compounds involved in the present study the relatively nonpolar alcohols may be expected to show the greatest disordering effect. This is consistent with the observed diffusional parameters. Some notion of the magnitude of the effect is indicated by the fact that the activation energy for *n* butanol in cytoplasm 6.4 kcal/mole is only slightly greater than the 5.3 kcal/mole (calculated from data tabulated by Johnson and Babb 1956) for its diffusion in water.

The purpose of this section has been to provide a framework in which the very great specificity of cellular transport can be understood. The range of this specificity is embodied in the diffusional parameters of thiourea and *n* butanol which differ by a factor of 50 fold in  $D_r$  and 9 kcal/mole in activation energy. In terms of the model offered these differences are explicable in that the polar thiourea must diffuse by the breakage of strong H bonds in a medium of substantial lattice integrity characterized by a high barrier to kinetic processes while *n* butanol as a relatively nonpolar solute diffuses under circumstances that require less bond breakage in a local environment which has been disordered in the direction of liquid water.

### Dimensional Specificity

The fact that the addition of alkyl groups to a molecule increases its rate of cytoplasmic diffusion seems explicable in terms of the preceding discussion of chemical specificity. In the first place the addition of each nonpolar group decreases the number of potentially supportive H bonds relative to the volume the molecule must occupy in the lattice. Secondly the steric limitations imposed by the presence on a molecule of bulky nonpolar groups tends to prevent the formation of linear H bonds between the molecule and the lattice. For these reasons the same mechanisms that distinguish molecules of equal size as reflected in chemical specificity may be expected to be influenced by varying alkyl groups in an homologous series of compounds. However there is insufficient data of diffusional parameters to permit further examination of the extent of this influence.

While the phenomenon of a larger particle diffusing more rapidly than a smaller is rather uncommon in liquids it is a frequent feature of diffusion in *lattice systems*. In such systems the fit of a solute into the lattice has a profound effect on the diffusion coefficient

Those solutes which most closely resemble the normal components of the crystal or which can form new compatible crystal structures provide the minimal distortion and diffuse more slowly than those for which incompatibilities exist. When increasing size is a measure of incompatibility, concomitant increasing diffusion coefficients can be observed. Numerous examples of this are to be found in standard references on diffusion.

### A Comment on Narcosis

A relationship between nonelectrolyte transport and cellular narcosis has long been observed, in that both the rate of transport and narcotic potency are correlated with  $A_v$ . It is therefore not unnatural that an hypothesis such as the present one which deals with one of these phenomena, should have implications for the other. Within the framework of the present hypothesis such common bases as the phenomena may have must arise from the interaction of nonpolar materials with the stabilized water lattice of cytoplasm. A common mechanism can be adduced if, as suggested by several authors (see p. 36) the presence of a well ordered water lattice plays an important role in a number of physiological processes. One would then expect regions of disorder in the lattice to impair the operation of these processes; a mechanism of cellular narcosis is thus provided by the phenomenon of disordering of the water lattice by nonpolar solutes. In this formulation the correlation observed between narcosis and transport is explicable in the dependence of both on lattice structure disordering.

While examination of the ramifications of this view must be deferred to another publication, two recent papers of immediate relevance because they deal with the interaction of nonpolar solutes with cellular water must be noted. Pauling (1961) has suggested that microcrystals of gas hydrates involving the anesthetic gas and stabilized by cellular components form in cytoplasm. Miller (1961) has offered a model in which anesthetic gases enter cavities in "icebergs" which pre-exist in the vicinity of proteins or surfaces in the cell and new icebergs form to maintain an iceberg-liquid equilibrium; the overall effect is an increase in the "ice cover" of proteins and surfaces. We have argued that the forces underlying nonelectrolyte interactions with water within the protein stabilized water lattice of cytoplasm give rise not to

crystalline regions but to regions of disorder. Two points lie at the crux of this difference of view. These are whether substantial amounts of unstabilized water exist in cytoplasm and whether the dominant stabilizing influences in cytoplasm are compatible with the requirements of water structures associated with a wide variety of anesthetic substances of different sizes and functional groupings. Studies on the solubility of nonelectrolytes in cells now in progress should help resolve this problem.

In respect to transport the Pauling and Miller models would seem to suggest in parallel with the diffusional properties of nonelectrolytes in liquid water that the diffusion of nonpolar materials in cytoplasm will be selectively slowed. This of course is at variance with the evidence of the present work.

## Appendix I

As indicated in Chapter 2 (p. 23) it can be shown using the model of a single cylindrical fiber with resistive surface that the relationships of intercept, slope and rate constant preclude the possibility that the rate of flux is controlled by the surface barrier while the form of the flux is determined by bulk diffusion. This is so because (a) the bulk diffusion coefficients required to provide intercepts as low as those in the experimental flux curves are very small on the order of those calculated assuming only diffusion and (b) the contribution of the surface process to the overall flux must be very small if the diffusional process is substantially to influence the intercept.

Crank (1956) gives the total flux in a cylinder of radius  $a$  having diffusion coefficient  $D$  and a resistive surface with permeability coefficient  $P$ . Taking without loss of generality the external concentration as zero and letting  $h = P/D$  we find for the mean fractional concentration

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = 4(ah) \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-D\beta_j^2 t/a^2}}{\beta_j [\beta_j + (ah)]}$$

where  $\beta_j$  are the roots of

$$\beta J_1(\beta) = ah J_0(\beta)$$

Plotted semilogarithmically this equation shows a limiting slope  $s_e$  given by

$$s_e = D\beta_1/a$$

The intercept  $I$  of the linear portion at  $t=0$  is given by

$$I = \frac{4(ah)^2}{\beta_1 [\beta_1 + (ah)]^2}$$

Taking  $10^{-3} \text{ sec}^{-1}$  as a typical value for the experimentally determined slope and  $3 \times 10^{-3} \text{ cm}$  for the cellular radius we get

$$D\beta_1 = 0.1 \times 10^{-3} \text{ cm/sec} \quad (A1)$$

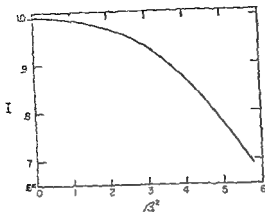


FIG. 13 Intercept  $I$  as a function of  $\beta_1$  in the combined permeation-diffusion model

as a condition which  $D$  and  $\beta_1$  must satisfy. The second condition is that the intercept  $I$  be substantially less than 1. Depending on the value of  $ah$ ,  $\beta_1$  ranges from 0 (infinite  $D$ ) to 5.783 (infinite  $P$ ).  $I$  varies simultaneously from 1 to 0.602. In Fig. 13  $I$  is plotted as a function of  $\beta_1^2$ .  $I$  remains very nearly equal to 1 for small values of  $\beta_1$  and does not begin to change much until  $\beta_1$  reaches the range of 3–4. Values of  $D$  in the range  $10^{-5}$  to  $10^{-6}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/sec which from Eq. A1 give a range of  $\beta_1$  of  $9 \times 10^{-4}$  to 0.9 will have almost no effect on the intercept and so cannot lead to curves of the form observed experimentally. It is not until  $D$  becomes smaller than  $3 \times 10^{-6}$  cm<sup>2</sup>/sec that a large effect on the intercept appears. Similar results can be obtained using other values of the slope as well as the true mean cellular radius. Thus, the combined permeation-diffusion model requires bulk diffusion coefficients of the same magnitude as those calculated from the simple bulk diffusion model.

Examination of the permeation-diffusion process from another point of view shows that the contribution of the surface process to the overall flux must be small if the intercept of the flux curves is substantially lower than unity. We take the ratio of the calculated slope  $s$  to the value  $s^P$  for the pure permeation model ( $D = \infty$ ) as an index of the effect of diffusion in the combined model. Similarly we take the ratio of  $s$  to the value for the pure diffusion model  $s^D$  ( $P = \infty$ ) as an index of the influence of permeation. Then we have

## Appendix I

As indicated in Chapter 2 (p. 23) it can be shown using the model of a single cylindrical fiber with resistive surface that the relationships of intercept, slope and rate constant preclude the possibility that the rate of flux is controlled by the surface barrier while the form of the flux is determined by bulk diffusion. This is so because (a) the bulk diffusion coefficients required to provide intercepts as low as those in the experimental flux curves are very small, on the order of those calculated assuming only diffusion and (b) the contribution of the surface process to the overall flux must be very small if the diffusional process is substantially to influence the intercept.

Crank (1956) gives the total flux in a cylinder of radius  $a$  having diffusion coefficient  $D$  and a resistive surface with permeability coefficient  $P$ . Taking without loss of generality the external concentration as zero and letting  $h = P/D$  we find for the mean fractional concentration

$$\frac{\bar{C}(t)}{C_0} = 4(ah) \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-D\beta_j^2 t/a^2}}{\beta_j [\beta_j + (ah)]}$$

where  $\beta_j$  are the roots of

$$\beta J_1(\beta) = ah J_0(\beta)$$

Plotted semilogarithmically this equation shows a limiting slope  $s_e$  given by

$$s_e = D\beta_1^2/a^2$$

The intercept  $I$  of the linear portion at  $t=0$  is given by

$$I = \frac{4(ah)^2}{\beta_1 [\beta_1 + (ah)^2]}$$

Taking  $10^{-3} \text{ sec}^{-1}$  as a typical value for the experimentally determined slope and  $3 \times 10^{-3} \text{ cm}$  for the cellular radius we get

$$D\beta_1 = 9 \times 10^{-8} \text{ cm/sec} \quad (A1)$$

relatively greater than its effect on the slope while the reverse is true of the effect of diffusion. In other words a resistive surface capable of influencing the flux rate should have a significant effect on the intercept. The experimentally determined intercepts however do not indicate the presence of such an effect rather their magnitudes are consistent with a pure diffusion model. Thus the overall flux rate must be determined essentially by the bulk diffusion.

$$\frac{s_e}{s_e^P} = \frac{D\beta_1^2/a^2}{2P/a} = \frac{\beta_1}{2ah}$$

$$\frac{s_e}{s_e^D} = \frac{D\beta_1^2/a^2}{5.783D/a} = \frac{\beta_1}{5.783}$$

We take further

$$\frac{I-0.692}{1-0.692} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1-I}{1-0.692}$$

as indices of the approach of the intercept  $I$  to its value for pure diffusion and pure permeation respectively. In Fig. 14  $s_e/s_e^P$  and  $(I-0.692)/0.308$  are plotted in Fig. 15  $s_e/s_e^D$  and  $(1-I)/0.308$ . From these figures we may see that the effect of a resistive surface on the intercept is

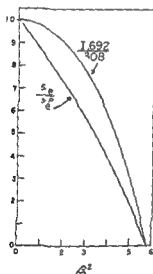


Fig. 14

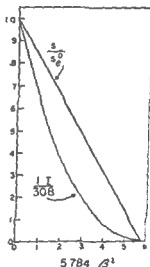


Fig. 15

Fig. 14 The effect of diffusion in the combined permeation-diffusion model and the approach of the intercept  $I$  to its value for pure diffusion as functions of  $\beta_1^2$

$$\text{Ordinate } s_e/s_e^P \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{I-0.692}{0.308}$$

Fig. 15 The effect of permeation in the combined permeation-diffusion model and the approach of the intercept  $I$  to its value for pure permeation as functions of  $\beta_1$

$$\text{Ordinate } s_e/s_e^D \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1-I}{0.308}$$



ever seen to occur. This observation is consistent with other in showing that insult to the protoplasm brought about profound local changes. In fact it was only rarely that a micropipette could be introduced without causing sufficient disturbance of the protoplasm to totally prevent the movement of the oil drop. The experiments which Pieper considered as significant for the measurement of viscosity appear to be those injections in which the front along which the damage from micropuncture was propagated was behind the oil drop at the instant it was freed from the micropipette. The movement of such a front is almost certainly associated with a local contracture of the contractile elements as they denature. Such a process will result in an asymmetrical force on the oil droplet and will cause it to be pushed along as the front progresses. That the oil droplet itself may as it is squeezed through the protoplasm bring about a trail of denaturation so that the process is self-perpetuating can only be postulated. What Pieper's experiment appears to measure is the rate of propagation of a change of muscle protoplasm from one metastable state to another.

Such difficulties notwithstanding numerous observations of the behavior of protoplasm have indicated that though in special conditions it may be quite fluid its usual viscosity is high. Seifriz (1936 Ch. 13) places the usual value as 800 to 5000 centipoise and considers extremely high values admissible following gelation. Allen's (1961) estimates for the endoplasm of the amoeba based on a variety of subtle and carefully considered techniques is in agreement with this order of magnitude.

## Appendix II

There are many difficulties associated with the measurement of protoplasmic viscosity. These have been reviewed by R. D. Allen (1961). It is clear from this review that protoplasmic viscosity is highly non-Newtonian and that transient rigidity under mechanical stress may also be observed. When one considers in addition the structural and functional complexity of protoplasm the difficulty of interpreting measured values of viscosity becomes understandable.

An attempt at the measurement of cellular viscosity (Rieser 1960 see also Hüllbrunn 1956, Ch. 2) of special interest to the present work because it was performed in muscle furnishes an example of the inherent difficulties. In this experiment a drop of oil about  $20\ \mu$  in diameter was injected into a frog muscle fiber. Occasionally the drop would rise through the protoplasm and its rate of rise could be observed. Assuming that the rise was solely under the influence of gravity the viscosity of the medium could be calculated. A mean viscosity of about 29 centipoise was obtained (less than that of light machine oil) a value diagnostic of a fluid protoplasm. That this conclusion is not acceptable may be seen from the following.

Striated muscle is about 18 per cent protein by weight and of this at least 57 per cent is actomyosin or its components and tropomyosin whose viscosity increments as well as ability to form gels at low concentration argue against low values for cytoplasmic viscosity (Edvall 1943 Ch. 21; Ling 1962 Ch. 3; Szent-Györgyi 1951 Ch. 8). Moreover the contractile elements in muscle are known to be in a latticed structure held in a three dimensional array of linkages an arrangement suggestive of substantial solidity. Additional contradictory evidence can be derived from Rieser's experiment itself for he found that the injected oil drop was not round as expected in a fluid but oval. This shows the system to be sufficiently solid to permit the maintenance of an asymmetrical force.

How can one account for the rapid movement of the oil drop? The resolution of the problem seems to lie in the observation that the movement of the oil drop was irreversible. If the fiber was turned 180° following the passage of the drop no reversal of direction was

## Literature Cited

- ABELSON P H and DURYEE W R Radioactive sodium permeability and exchange in frog eggs *Biol Bull* 1949 96 205-217
- ALEXANDER A E and JOHNSON P *Colloid Science* Oxford Clarendon Press 1939 852
- ALLEN R D *Amoeboid Movement in The Cell* 2 (Mursky A E and Brachet J ed) New York Academic Press 1961 135-216
- AUTI M P and COLE R H Dielectric properties of ice and solid D<sub>2</sub>O *J Chem Phys* 1952 20 1309-1314
- BAIRD D L JR HARREMAN G MUELLER H and SZEVI GYÖRGYI A Ionic semipermeability as a bulk property *Proc Natl Acad Sci U.S.* 1957 43 105-108
- BERNAL J H and CARLISLE C H Unit cell measurements of wet and dry crystalline turnip yellow mosaic virus *Nature* 1948 162 139-140
- BERNAL J D and FOWLER R H A theory of water and ionic solution with particular reference to hydrogen and hydroxyl ions *J Chem Phys* 1933 1 515-549
- BOYES WATSON J DAVIDSON E and PERUTZ M F An X ray study of horse methaemoglobin I *Proc Roy Soc (Land) A* 1947 191 83-139
- BOYLE P J CONWAY E J KANE F and O'REILLY H L Volume of interfibre spaces in frog muscle and the calculation of concentrations in the fibre water *J Physiol* 1941 99 401-414
- BOZLER E Osmotic effects and diffusion of nonelectrolytes in muscle *Am J Physiol* 1959 19 505-510
- BRADLEY H H The electrical conductivity of ice *Trans Faraday Soc* 1957 53 687-691
- CLAESSEN W P Second water structure for inert gas hydrates *J Chem Phys* 1951 19 1425-1426
- COLLANDER R Die Verteilung organischer Verbindungen zwischen Äther und Wasser *Acta Chem Scand* 1949 3 717-747
- The distribution of organic compounds between 100 butanol and water *Acta Chem Scand* 1950 4 1085-1098
- COLLANDER R and BARLEND H Permeabilitätsstudien an *Chara* *cera* (phylla II) Die Permeabilität für Nichteletkrolyte *Acta Botan Fennica* 1933 11 1-114
- COLLSON C A The hydrogen bond in *Hydrogen Bonding* (Hadzi D ed) London Pergamon Press 1959 339 355
- CRANK J *The Mathematics of Diffusion* Oxford Clarendon Press 1956

## Acknowledgements

We wish first to acknowledge our gratitude to Dr Gilbert A. Ling for his support and counsel. The present study was initiated under his auspices and he has proved a constant and understanding friend.

Dr George Karreman kindly permitted us to use the computer facilities under his supervision. He and Mr James U. Casby have been most generous in their willingness to consider the mathematical treatment of the flux models, and have made important suggestions. Another colleague and friend, Dr George Eisenman, has contributed greatly through discussion and constructive criticism.

For making our stay in Uppsala possible and rewarding, as well as for his encouragement and interest, our grateful thanks go to Professor Torsten Teorell.

We owe our thanks to all of the personnel at the Institute of Physiology and Medical Biophysics, and especially Dr Nigel V. B. Marsden, Laborator Karl Johan Öbrink, Med. Lic. Goran Östling, and Med. Lic. Martin Zade Oppen. We wish also to acknowledge the help of Med. Lic. C. Hellström of the Histological Institute, who has kindly aided in the preparation of muscle sections.

Miss Ebon Hellström and Mrs Karin Bohlin have facilitated our work in Uppsala by innumerable favors.

Technical help was provided with skill and devotion by Mrs Marilyn Miller in Uppsala, and Mrs Kay Conroy in Philadelphia. Our thanks also to Mrs Priscilla Miller for computer programming, Mrs Kathryn Kalls, Miss Karin Knutsson, Mrs Birgitta Larsson, Mrs Shirley Ripka, and Mr Sheryl J. Winters for help in the preparation of the manuscript.

Sephadex<sup>®</sup> was provided through the courtesy of Docent V. Gelotte by AB Pharmacia, Uppsala.

Financial support for the early part of the work was provided by the Department of Public Welfare of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, and later by National Science Foundation Grants G18713 and GB665. Computer facilities were provided for from Public Health Grant A 3055. BBC Scintillation counting equipment in Uppsala were provided by Public Health Grant B 3712.

Part of the work was done while Dr Fenchel was a National Science Foundation Postdoctoral Fellow in Biophysics.

- HLSS K, PHILIPPOFF W and KLEISSIG H Viskositätsbestimmungen Dichtemessungen und Röntgenuntersuchungen an Seifenlösungen *Kolloid Zeits* 1939 88 40-51
- HOBER R *Physical Chemistry of Cells and Tissues* Philadelphia Blakiston 1950 676
- HOFMANN U and HILKE W Über die innerkristalline Quellung und das Basenaustauschvermögen des Montmorillonits *Kolloid Zeits* 1936 11 238-250
- HOROWITZ S B and FLEVICHET I R A model for non electrolyte diffusion in cytoplasm *Proc VIII Int Cong Physiol Sci* 1967 2 873 (abstract)
- International Critical Tables V 1929 New York Macmillan Press
- IRANI R R and ADAMSON A W Transport processes in binary liquid systems I Diffusion in the sucrose-water system at 25 *J Phys Chem* 1958 62 1517-1521
- JACOBSON H The hydration structure of macromolecules *Sciencel Kemi Tidsskr* 1955a 6: 1-17
- On the interpretation of dielectric constants of aqueous macromolecular solutions *J Am Chem Soc* 1955b 77 2919-2926
- JACOBSON H and LAURENT T C Streaming dielectric data of hyaluronic acid *J Colloid Sci* 1954 9 36-40
- JOHNSON J A Kinetics of release of radioactive sodium sulfate and sucrose from the frog sartorius muscle *Am J Physiol* 1955 181 63-68
- JOHNSON P A and BARR A L Liquid diffusion of non electrolytes *Chem Rev* 1956 56 387-453
- JOST W *Diffusion* New York Academic Press 1955 558
- KEYNES R D The ionic fluxes in frog muscle *Proc Roy Soc (Lond) B* 1954 142 319-382
- KLOTZ I M Protein hydration and behavior *Science* 1958 128 815-827
- Water in Horizons in Biochemistry (Baasha M and Pullman B eds) New York Academic Press 1967 523-550
- KERN W and THURKAUF M Isotopentrennung beim Gefrieren von Wasser und Diffusionskonstanten von D und  $\text{O}$  im Eis *Helv Chim Acta* 1958 41 938-971
- LENER S The adsorption of benzene vapour on the plane surfaces of glass fused quartz and platinum The molar heat of adsorption of benzene on platinum *J Chem Soc* 1957 192 272-291
- LING C N A Physical Theory of the Living State the Association Induction Hypothesis New York Blaisdell Publ 1962 680
- MCHAFFIE I R and LENER S The adsorption of water from the gas phase on plane surfaces of glass and platinum *J Chem Soc* 1955 17 152-152
- McLENNAN R The diffusion of potassium anion and thiocyanate in the extracellular spaces of mammalian muscle *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1956 21 4-481

- CREESE, R Measurement of cation fluxes in rat diaphragm *Proc Roy Soc (Lond) B* 1954 142 497-513
- CREESE R NEIL M W and STEPHENSON G Effect of cell variation on potassium exchange of muscle *Trans Faraday Soc* 1956 52 1022-1032
- DERJAGIN I and KUSSAKOV M Anomalous properties of thin poly molecular films V *Acta Physicochimica URSS* 1939 10 25-44 153-174
- DESMEDT J E Electrical activity and internal sodium *J Physiol (Lond)* 1953 121 191-205
- DICK D A T The rate of diffusion of water in the protoplasm of living cells *Exp Cell Res* 1959 17 5-12
- EDSALL J T Rotary brownian movement in Proteins Amino Acids and Peptides (Cohn E J and Edsall J T eds) New York Reinhold Publ 1943 506-542
- FEATES F S and IVES D J G The ionisation functions of cyanoacetic acid in relation to the structure of water and the hydration of ions and molecules *J Chem Soc* 1956 2798-2812
- FORSLIND E A theory of water *Proc Swedish Cement and Concrete Res Inst* 1952 No 16 1-43
- FRANK H S Covalency in the hydrogen bond and the properties of water and ice *Proc Roy Soc (Lond) A* 1958 247 481-492
- FRANK H S and LIANS M W Free volume and entropy in condensed systems III *J Chem Phys* 1945 13 507-532
- FRANK H S and WEN W Structural aspects of ion solvent interaction in aqueous solutions a suggested picture of water structure *Disc Faraday Soc* 1957 24 133-140
- FRIEDMAN L and KRAEVLER L O The structure of gelatin gels from studies of diffusion *J Am Chem Soc* 1930 52 1295-1304
- FRISCH H L and SINHA R Viscosity of colloidal suspensions and macromolecular solutions in Rheology I (Eirich F R ed) New York Academic Press 1956 525 613
- GLASSTONE S LAIDLER K J and LARING H The Theory of Rate Processes New York McGraw Hill 1941 611
- HAGGIS G H HASTED J B and BUCHANAN T J The dielectric properties of water in solutions *J Chem Phys* 1952 20 1452-1465
- HARRINGTON W and VON HUFEL P H Formation and stabilization of the collagen fold *Arch Biochem Biophys* 1961 92 100-113
- HARRIS E J and BURN G P The transfer of sodium and potassium ions between muscle and the surrounding medium *Trans Faraday Soc* 1940 45 508-528
- HARRIS E J and PRANKERD T A J Diffusion and permeation of cations in human and dog erythrocytes *J Gen Physiol* 1957 41 197-218
- HEILBRUNN L V The Dynamics of Living Protoplasm New York Academic Press 1956 327

- SCHWAN H P Electrical properties of tissue and cell suspensions in  
Adv in Biol and Med Phys V (Lawrence J H and Tobias C A  
eds) New York Academic Press 1957 141-209
- SEIFRIZ W Protoplasm New York McGraw Hill 1936 584
- SHAW H T The nature of colloidal clay as revealed by the electron micro-  
scope *J Phys Chem* 1942 46 1032-1043
- SZENT-GYORGYI A Muscular Contraction 1951 New York Academic  
Press 1967
- Bioenergetics New York Academic Press 1957 143
- TASKER P SIMON S E JOHNSTONE M M SHANKLIN K H and SHAW  
F H The dimensions of the extracellular space in sartorius muscle  
*J Gen Physiol* 1959 43 39-53
- WANG J H Eff ct of ions on the self diffusion and structure of water in  
aqueous electrolytic solutions *J Phys Chem* 1954 58 686-691
- WANG J H ANDERSEN C B and POLESTRA F M The self diffusion  
coefficients of water and ovalbumin in aqueous ovalbumin solu-  
tions at 10 *J Am Chem Soc* 1954 76 4763-4765
- WANG J H PETERSON C V and EDELMAN I S Self diffusion and  
structure of liquid water III Measurement of the self diffusion of  
liquid water with  $H^+$ ,  $H^2$  and  $O^{18}$  as tracers *J Am Chem Soc*  
1953 75 466-470
- ZWOLINSKI H J EYRING H and REESE C E Diffusion and membrane  
permeability I *J Phys Colloid Chem* 1949 53 1426-1433

SMS MEDICAL COLLEGE,  
LIBRARY,  
JAIPUR

- The diffusion of potassium sodium sucrose and inulin in the extra cellular spaces of mammalian tissues *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1957 24 1-8
- MARININ V A Diffusion coefficients of some substances in glycerol alcohol mixtures *Zhur Fiz Khim* 1955 29 1564-1568
- The temperature relation of the diffusion coefficient of some substances in glycerol *Zhur Fiz Khim* 1956 30 129-133
- MILLER S L A theory of gaseous anesthetics *Proc Natl Acad Sci US* 1961 47 1515-1524
- MOORE M L and CROSSLEY F S in *Organic Syntheses Collected Volume 3* (Hornig E C, ed) New York Wiley 1955 617
- ODEBLAD L Studies on vaginal contents and cells with proton magnetic resonance *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1959 83 189-200
- Some investigations with nuclear magnetic resonance on water associated with the vaginal cells *Acta Obst et Gynec Scand* 1960 39 528-539
- ONCLEY, J L The electric moments and the relaxation times of proteins as measured from their influence upon the dielectric constants of solutions in *Proteins Amino Acids and Peptides* (Cohn E J and Edsall J T eds) New York Reinhold Publ 1943 543-568
- OVERTON E Beiträge zur allgemeinen Muskel und Nervenphysiologie *Pflügers Arch* 1902 82 115-280 346-386
- PALMER K J MERRILL R C and BALLANTYNE M Equilibrium moisture and X ray diffraction investigations of pectinic and pectic acids *J Am Chem Soc* 1948 70 570-577
- PALMER L S CUNLIFFE A and HOUGH J M Dielectric constant of water films *Nature* 1952 170 796
- PALLING L The structure and entropy of ice and of other crystals with some randomness of atomic arrangement *J Am Chem Soc* 1935 57 2680-2684
- A molecular theory of general anesthesia *Science* 1961 134 15-21
- PIMENTEL G C and McCLELLAN A L The Hydrogen Bond San Francisco Freeman 1960 475
- PITTS E The theory of radioactive ion exchange *J Chem Phys* 1954 22 56-65
- POPLE J A Molecular association in liquids II A theory of the structure of water *Proc Roy Soc (Lond) A* 1951 205 163-178
- PRIVALOV P L The state and role of water in biological systems *Biophysika* 1958 3 691-696
- RIESER P The protoplasmic viscosity of muscle *Protoplasma* 1956 39 95-98
- ROBINSON A L The differential entropy of dilution in aqueous solutions of amino acids *J Chem Phys* 1946 14 588-590
- SCHMITT F O and PALMER K J X ray diffraction studies of lipid and lipid protein systems in Cold Spring Harbour Symp Quant Biol 1940 8 94-99



- SCHWAM H P Electrical properties of tissue and cell suspensions in  
Adv in Biol and Med Phys 5 (Lawrence J H and Tobias C A  
eds) New York Academic Press 1957 147-209
- SEIFRIZ W Protoplasm New York McGraw Hill 1936 584
- SHAW B T The nature of colloid clay as revealed by the electron micro-  
scope *J Phys Chem* 1949 46 1032-1043
- SZENT-GYORGYI A Muscular Contraction 1951 New York Academic  
Press 1969
- Bioenergetics New York Academic Press 1957 143
- TASKER P SIMON S E JOHNSTONE B M SHANKLY H H and BRAW  
F H The dimensions of the extracellular space in sartorius muscle  
*J Gen Physiol* 1959 43 39-53
- WANG J H Effect of ions on the self diffusion and structure of water in  
aqueous electrolytic solutions *J Phys Chem* 1954 58 686-691
- WANG J H LARSEN C B and POLESTA F M The self diffusion  
coefficients of water and ovalbumin in aqueous ovalbumin solu-  
tions at 10 *J Am Chem Soc* 1954 76 4163-4176
- WANG J H ROBINSON C V and EDELMAN I M Self diffusion and  
structure of liquid water III Measurement of the self diffusion of  
liquid water with  $H^3$  and  $O^{18}$  as tracers *J Am Chem Soc*  
1953 75 466-470
- ZWOLINSKI B J EYRING H and REESE C E Diffusion and membrane  
permeability I *J Phys Colloid Chem* 1949 53 1446-1453

- The diffusion of potassium sodium sucrose and inulin in the extra cellular spaces of mammalian tissues *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1957 24 1-8
- MARININ V A Diffusion coefficients of some substances in glycerol-alcohol mixtures *Zhur Fiz Khim* 1955 29 1564-1568
- The temperature relation of the diffusion coefficient of some substances in glycerol *Zhur Fiz Khim* 1956 30 129-133
- MILLER E L A theory of gaseous anesthetics *Proc Natl Acad Sci US* 1961 47 1515-1524
- MOORE M L and CROSSLEY F S in *Organic Syntheses Collected Volume 3* (Hornung E C ed) New York Wiley 1955 617
- ODEBLAD L Studies on vaginal contents and cells with proton magnetic resonance *Ann NY Acad Sci* 1959 83 189-206
- Some investigations with nuclear magnetic resonance on water associated with the vaginal cells *Acta Obst et Gynec Scand* 1960 39 528-539
- ONCLEY J L The electric moments and the relaxation times of proteins as measured from their influence upon the dielectric constants of solutions in *Proteins Amino Acids and Peptides* (Cohn E J and Edsall J T eds) New York Reinhold Publ 1943 543-568
- OVERTON E Beitrage zur allgemeinen Muskel und Nervenphysiologie *Pflugers Arch* 1902 92 115-280 346-386
- PALMER K J MERRILL R C and BALLANTYNE M Equilibrium moisture and X ray diffraction investigations of pectinic and pectic acids *J Am Chem Soc* 1948 70 570-577
- PALMER L S CONLIFFE A and HUGHES J M Dielectric constant of water films *Nature* 1952 170 796
- PAULING L The structure and entropy of ice and of other crystals with some randomness of atomic arrangement *J Am Chem Soc* 1935 57 2680-2684
- A molecular theory of general anesthesia *Science* 1961 134 15 21
- PIMENTEL G C and MCCLELLAN A L *The Hydrogen Bond* San Francisco Freeman 1960 475
- PITTS E The theory of radioactive ion exchange *J Chem Phys* 1954 22 50-65
- POPLE J A Molecular association in liquids II A theory of the structure of water *Proc Roy Soc (Lond) A* 1951 205 163-178
- PRIVALOV P L The state and role of water in biological systems *Biofizika* 1958 3 691-696
- RIESER P The protoplasmic viscosity of muscle *Protoplasma* 1950 39 95-98
- ROBINSON A L The differential entropy of dilution in aqueous solutions of amino acids *J Chem Phys* 1946 14 588-590
- SCHMITT F O and PALMER K J X ray diffraction studies of lipid and lipid-protein systems in Cold Spring Harbour Symp Quant Biol 1940 8 94-99





ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

VOL 61 SUPPLEMENTUM 222

VASCULAR REACTIVITY IN CATS  
DURING INDUCED CHANGES IN THE  
ACID-BASE BALANCE  
OF THE BLOOD

By

STELLAN BYGDEMAN

STOCKHOLM 1963



ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

*Vol 61 Supplementum 277*

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY

KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET

STOCKHOLM 60 SWEDEN

VASCULAR REACTIVITY IN CATS  
DURING INDUCED CHANGES IN THE  
ACID-BASE BALANCE  
OF THE BLOOD

BY

STELLAN BYGDEMAN

STOCKHOLM 1963





ACTA PHYSIOLOGICA SCANDINAVICA

*Vol 61 Supplementum 279*

FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF PHYSIOLOGY

KAROLINSKA INSTITUTET

STOCKHOLM 60 SWEDEN

VASCULAR REACTIVITY IN CATS  
DURING INDUCED CHANGES IN THE  
ACID-BASE BALANCE  
OF THE BLOOD

BY

STELLAN BYGDAMAN

STOCKHOLM 1963

*Printed in Sweden*

BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAGET THULE

# CONTENTS

## Chapter I INTRODUCTION

## Chapter II METHODS

- 1 Operative procedure
- 2 Recording and measuring techniques
- 3 Compounds utilized in the study
- 4 Course of a standard experiment

## Chapter III INTRODUCTORY EXPERIMENTS

## Chapter IV EFFECT OF NORADRENALINE ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM DURING RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

- 1 Special methods
- 2 Results
- 3 Discussion

## Chapter V THE EFFECT OF OTHER VASOCONSTRICTOR STIMULI DURING RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

- 1 Results
- 2 Discussion

## Chapter VI THE VASOCONSTRICTOR EFFECT OF NORADRENALINE DURING RESPIRATORY ALKALOSIS AND NON RESPIRATORY CHANGES IN THE ACID BASE BALANCE OF THE BLOOD

- 1 Results
- 2 Discussion

## Chapter VII GENERAL DISCUSSION

### SUMMARY

### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

### REFERENCES



# CHAPTER I

## INTRODUCTION

The cardiovascular system is known to be affected in many ways by an alteration in the acid base balance of the blood. The change in the acid base balance may affect the heart directly, it may act peripherally on the blood vessels. It may act on the central nervous system or it may have some reflexogenic action. Many studies have dealt with various aspects of this problem and a complete review of the literature is beyond the scope of this work. This introductory chapter will therefore deal primarily with one aspect of the problem, namely the influence of a shift in the acid base balance of the blood on the cardiovascular effects of vasoconstrictor stimuli.

PAGE and McCUBBIN (1954) have pointed out that the extent to which vessels constrict or dilate and the extent to which the myocardium is stimulated or depressed depends not only on nervous stimuli or on the presence and concentration of humoral substances but also on the responsiveness or *reactivity* of the different components in the circulatory system. When the responsiveness of the whole circulatory system was being considered by these authors the term *cardiovascular reactivity* was used. The same terminology has been adopted in this study.

Four main types of acid base shift in the body are usually considered: respiratory acidosis and alkalosis primarily due to changes in the  $\text{CO}_2$ -tension of the blood and non respiratory or metabolic acidosis and alkalosis primarily due to non respiratory changes in the bicarbonate concentration of the blood. These alterations in the acid base balance may be more or less compensated by secondarily induced changes in respiratory activity in kidney function or in both.

### *Systemic blood pressure responses to vasoconstrictor substances during acid base shifts in the blood*

Previous workers have studied mainly the influence of various vasoconstrictor agents on the arterial blood pressure during experimentally induced alterations in the acid base balance.

*Respiratory acidosis* was usually induced by increasing the percentage of  $\text{CO}_2$  in the inspired gas mixtures. In some instances controlled artificial ventilation was also employed. Other investigators have induced acidosis by de



naline after injections of  $\text{NaH PO}_4$  1 v and an increased effect after  $\text{Na CO}_3$ . KEITH SANDER and CAMPBELL (1960) and SANDER KEITH and CAMPBELL (1960) have also reported decreased blood pressure responses to adrenaline during non respiratory acidosis NAHAS et al (1960) as well as MEFSMAN et al (1961) observed further that the pressor effect of noradrenaline which had been decreased by respiratory acidosis could be improved if the arterial blood pH was restored to the normal value through 1 v infusions of either tris hydroxymethylaminomethane (THAM) or  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ . However RADER et al (1961) reported that the systemic pressor effects of adrenaline were unaltered by non respiratory alkalosis.

### *Reactivity of some vascular beds in the peripheral circulation during acid base shifts*

Observations of blood pressure responses to vasoconstrictor agents give information only about the overall reactivity of the circulatory system. They allow no conclusions to be drawn concerning the reactivity of either local vascular beds or of the heart. For this reason many workers studying individual vascular beds have altered the acid base balance of the perfusion fluid and studied the effect of this alteration on the reactivity to vasoconstrictor substances. A decreased effect of adrenaline has been observed when non respiratory acidosis is present in the hind leg of the frog (ALDAY REDONNET 1920 SCHMIDT 1921 HULSE 1922, MILDICI 1924 OKUYAMA 1925) and in the rabbit ear (ALPERN 1924 LEITES 1925). On the other hand SANO in 1933 found an increased effect of adrenaline in the perfused rabbit ear when the pH of the perfusate was decreased.

The majority of the preceding experiments were performed on poikilothermic animals. Salt solutions were employed as perfusates and unphysiological changes in pH were induced. More recent investigators employing moderate acid base shifts have encountered difficulties in confirming those earlier results. BOHR and McVAUGH (1959) and BOHR (1962) perfused the rabbit ear and rat hind leg preparations with Krebs's solution at a constant rate of flow and evaluated the influence of changes in pH on the effect of adrenaline. In their experiments a decrease in pH from 7.4 to 6.9 respiratory or non respiratory increased the response to intraarterial (1 a) adrenaline injections while an increase in pH from 7.4 to 7.9 decreased the response. In the dogs foreleg perfused *in situ* with the animal's own blood the effect of 1 a injections of adrenaline remained unchanged during 75 minutes ventilation with 20%  $\text{CO}_2$  (FLEISHMAN SCOTT and HADDOY 1957). However while studying the vascular bed of the carotid artery in dogs NASH

creasing the ventilation. The accompanying hypoxia in these cases makes the analysis of the results rather difficult, however.

Ventilation of the dog with 10—30 % CO (PAGE and OLMPSTED 1951, HOULE et al 1957) or of the human with 10% CO (CAMPBELL et al 1958) diminished the blood pressure response to administered adrenaline. A reduced response of the blood pressure to noradrenaline and angiotensin during ventilation with 10—30% CO has been reported in dogs (PAGE and OLMPSTED 1951, HOULE et al 1957, MIESMANN, BLASCH and HERRBERG 1961). The pressor effect of adrenaline and noradrenaline is also diminished during hypoventilation in normal cats (DUZAR and FRITZ 1924, DUNER and LUNN 1959), in spinal cats (STAVRAKI 1942) and in normal dogs (apneic oxygenation) (NATHAN, LIGOU and MEHLMAN 1960). PAGE and OLMPSTED (1951) found that of the vasopressor substances tested the response to adrenaline was most easily abolished, noradrenaline was next and angiotensin was the least easily abolished. However, MIESMANN et al (1961) reported that the ratio between the isopressor doses of angiotensin and noradrenaline changed from 1:5 to 1:1.25 during ventilation with 15% CO.

PAGE and OLMPSTED (1951) suggested that the refractory state observed during respiratory acidosis was a result of inhibitory impulses emanating from stimulation of sympathetic ganglia. BURDET and CRISLER (1927) observed in cats that the blood pressure responses to stimulation of the sympathetic chain in the neck and to  $\alpha$  adrenaline injections varied in the same way and at the same time as changes in the pH of the blood. They suggested that these variations in blood pressure responses were due to alterations in the irritability of the myoneural junction.

From the above survey it seems that respiratory acidosis usually diminishes the effect of vasoconstrictor substances. However, the reports of the influence of respiratory alkalosis are more conflicting. An increased pressor effect of adrenaline has been observed during hyperventilation in normal cats (DUZAR and FRITZ 1924), in pithed cats (BURDET and VISSCHER 1927), in dogs (RADFORD and CAMPBELL 1961) and in humans (CAMPBELL et al 1958). On the other hand a diminished response to adrenaline during hyperventilation has been reported by STAVRAKI (1942) in pithed cats and by HALANT and GOLDSCHMIDT (1922) and BRUNER and PODOVICI (1926) in humans.

Earlier workers studying the influence of non respiratory shifts in the acid base balance on cardio-vascular reactivity have also produced conflicting reports. PAGE and OLMPSTED (1951) did not observe any change in the pressor effects of adrenaline, noradrenaline or angiotensin during infusions of 0.1 N HCl. COLLIER (1921) however, noted a diminished response to adre-



naline after injections of  $\text{NaH PO}_4$  1 v and an increased effect after  $\text{Na CO}_3$ . KEITH SNYDER and CAMPBELL (1960) and SNYDER KEITH and CAMPBELL (1960) have also reported decreased blood pressure responses to adrenaline during non respiratory acidosis. NAHAS et al (1960) as well as MEESMAN et al (1961) observed further that the pressor effect of noradrenaline which had been decreased by respiratory acidosis could be improved if the arterial blood pH was restored to the normal value through i v infusions of either tris hydroxymethylaminomethane (THAM) or  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ . However RADER et al (1961) reported that the systemic pressor effects of adrenaline were unaltered by non respiratory alkalosis.

### *Reactivity of some vascular beds in the peripheral circulation during acid base shifts*

Observations of blood pressure responses to vasoconstrictor agents give information only about the overall reactivity of the circulatory system. They allow no conclusions to be drawn concerning the reactivity of either local vascular beds or of the heart. For this reason many workers studying individual vascular beds have altered the acid base balance of the perfusion fluid and studied the effect of this alteration on the reactivity to vasoconstrictor substances. A decreased effect of adrenaline has been observed when *non respiratory* acidosis is present in the hind leg of the frog (ALDAY REDON VET 1920 SCHMIDT 1921, HULSE 1922, MEDICI 1924 OKUYAMA 1925) and in the rabbit ear (ALPERN 1924 LEITES 1925). On the other hand SAVO in 1933 found an increased effect of adrenaline in the perfused rabbit ear when the pH of the perfusate was decreased.

The majority of the preceding experiments were performed on poikilothermic animals. Salt solutions were employed as perfusates and unphysiological changes in pH were induced. More recent investigators employing moderate acid base shifts have encountered difficulties in confirming those earlier results. BOHR and McVAUGH (1959) and BOHR (1962) perfused the rabbit ear and rat hind leg preparations with Krebs's solution at a constant rate of flow and evaluated the influence of changes in pH on the effect of adrenaline. In their experiments a decrease in pH from 7.4 to 6.9 *respiratory* or *non respiratory* increased the response to intraarterial (i a) adrenaline injections while an increase in pH from 7.4 to 7.9 decreased the response. In the dogs foreleg perfused *in situ* with the animals own blood the effect of i a injections of adrenaline remained unchanged during 75 minutes ventilation with 20%  $\text{CO}_2$  (FLEISHMAN SCOTT and HADDY 1957). However while studying the vascular bed of the carotid artery in dogs NASH

and HEATH (1961) observed that *respiratory acidosis*, induced by ventilating with 30% CO<sub>2</sub>, diminished the vasoconstriction produced by 1  $\mu$ g injections of noradrenaline. In agreement with these results BIGDEMAN and EULER (1962), working with cats, reported that ventilation with 6.5–20% CO<sub>2</sub> diminished the noradrenaline induced vasoconstriction in the vascular bed supplied by the femoral artery. Hyperventilation increased the peripheral effect of noradrenaline (NASH and HEATH 1961).

*In vitro* experiments employing isolated aorta strips have made it possible to study the effect of noradrenaline on vascular smooth muscle during different acid base shifts. The noradrenaline induced contractions of strips from rat aorta were found to decrease by 43% during "*respiratory acidosis*" (pH 7.19) (TOBIAN, MARTIN and EILERS 1959). The result also suggested that the diminished effect was due mainly to the change in pH and not to the concomitant increase in CO<sub>2</sub>-tension. Using strips from rabbit aorta and a ten times greater noradrenaline concentration (10  $\mu$ g/l) WILLIAMSSON and MOORE (1960) failed to observe an altered response when the pH was changed from 7.14 to 7.56. The response to noradrenaline was diminished equally if there was a greater fluctuation in pH in either direction (pH 6.8 or 7.7).

The function of the heart is impaired during acidosis. This is most obvious in the isolated preparations (JERUSALEM and STAPLING 1910, MARKWATER and STARLING 1913, NATHAN and CAVERT 1957, McFLOY et al 1958) but in the intact heart a slight reduction in stroke work has also been observed (MONROE, FRENCH and WHITTENBERGER 1960). A state of acidosis will also decrease the effect of noradrenaline on ventricular isometric tension (DARBY et al 1960).

From the investigations mentioned in the preceding review it is evident, that alterations in the acid base balance of the blood can markedly influence the reactivity of various components of the circulatory system to vasoconstrictor substances. In spite of the conflicting reports it is generally assumed that the systemic blood pressure responses to 1  $\mu$ g injections of vasoconstrictor substances is enhanced by alkalosis and hindered by acidosis. However, the nature of the altered reactivity is still uncertain. This may account for the earlier practice of measuring systemic blood pressure responses and using them as the only index of cardiovascular reactivity. As previously noted an alteration in the acid base balance will by itself induce major cardiovascular adjustments. A failure to consider these when observing a changed blood pressure response to a vasoconstrictor substance may well invalidate any conclusion relating to cardiovascular reactivity. To illustrate this point it can be

mentioned that, for example during respiratory acidosis some vascular beds constrict while others dilate leading to an altered distribution of the i.v. injected substance (for references see chapter VII). By means of such a shunt a larger portion of an injected compound may be directed to a vascular bed with a basically low sensitivity resulting in a decreased blood pressure response even though no change in the reactivity of any area has occurred.

*In vitro* experiments on isolated vascular smooth muscle are not subject to these errors. Employing *in vitro* techniques the influence of well controlled changes in the acid base balance on the noradrenaline induced contractions can be studied. However it must always be remembered that erroneous conclusions can be drawn if the results obtained *in vitro* on smooth muscle from major vessels are regarded as the same as one would expect from the resistance vessels *in vivo*. Also the results of the present study suggest that the reactivity of different peripheral vascular beds can change in quantitatively different ways during acid base shifts. This observation will of course increase the possible errors when generalizing about results obtained on smooth muscle strips from major vessels.

In spite of the efforts to elucidate the *in vivo* mechanisms governing the altered responses to vasoconstrictor substances during shifts in the acid base balance of the blood many basic questions remain. Since this problem is not only of physiological interest but also has most important clinical implications the present study was undertaken.

In the present investigation the altered reactivity of the circulatory system during respiratory acidosis has been studied. Special attention has been given to the reactions of some peripheral vascular beds. The effect on vascular reactivity of some types of acid base shift other than respiratory acidosis have also been included in the study.

The results will be presented in three sections. In the first part (chapter IV) the effect of noradrenaline on the systemic blood pressure and the response of some peripheral vascular beds to i.a. injections of noradrenaline were observed during respiratory acidosis. The importance of an intact sympathetic nervous system for the observed changes in reactivity was evaluated. The second part (chapter V) contains the results obtained with a vasoconstrictor other than noradrenaline namely angiotensin and with sympathetic nerve stimulation. In the third part (chapter VI) the results obtained during respiratory alkalosis and non respiratory changes in the acid base balance have been summarized.

Preliminary reports of some of the results included in the present study have been published (BYGDEMÅN and EULER 1962, BYGDEMÅN 1963 a, b and c).

## CHAPTER II

### METHODS

Experiments were undertaken to determine the influence of individual or combined changes in pH and CO<sub>2</sub> tension on the reactivity of various peripheral vascular beds to different vasoconstrictor stimuli. A satisfactory analysis of the local hemodynamic events in a vascular bed necessitates determination of at least two important basic parameters a) the volume of blood circulating through the vascular region and b) the arterio venous blood pressure gradient across the vascular bed. In practice the venous pressure is taken as zero and, accordingly, the systemic arterial blood pressure or the perfusion pressure is generally used for the calculation of resistance to blood flow offered by the vascular region. According to GREEN et al (1944) the resistance to flow in a vascular bed can be expressed as the ratio between arterial pressure and blood flow through the bed

$$1 \text{ unit of peripheral resistance } 1 \text{ PRU} = \frac{1 \text{ mm Hg}}{1 \text{ ml/min}}$$

When the effects of different vasoconstrictor stimuli on a peripheral vascular bed are compared quantitatively it is usually the induced changes in resistance that are calculated and compared. There are three different ways to obtain the data necessary for such calculations

- a) by perfusing a vascular bed at a constant pressure and measuring changes in flow
- b) by using a constant flow and measuring changes in perfusion pressure
- c) by measuring both flow and pressure, neither of them being held constant at the time of the vasoconstrictor stimuli

The first two ways have been widely used. The use of the third method can give in many cases erroneous results even in a qualitative respect (GREEN et al 1944). The first two methods were compared by BURTON and STANSON (1960). Their results suggest that the constant flow perfusion technique produces a better relationship between the tension developed by the smooth muscle of the vascular wall in response to a pressor stimuli, the so called "primary response," and the change in resistance. GREEN et al (1944) plotted the ratio between the peripheral resistance of a vascular bed in a constricted state and the resistance in a control state at the same perfusion pressure against the perfusion pressure. The resulting curve showed more

fluctuations than if the resistances at the same flow rate had been compared. These results therefore suggested that the constant flow perfusion technique was preferable in experiments quantitatively comparing the peripheral effects of vasoconstrictors where different degrees of vascular resistance often prevailed. This method adopted throughout this study may also possess some marked disadvantages (FOULOW 1953). These will be discussed later. In the present work the perfusion pressure responses to different vasoconstrictor stimuli during the various experimental conditions were used directly for all comparisons. The peripheral resistance was seldom calculated. An estimation of the reactivity of a perfused vascular bed during different conditions was therefore based on the response of the perfusion pressure when the flow was kept constant.

It is well known that the acid base balance of the blood can be expressed in terms of three variables: the hydrogen ion concentration  $[H^+]$ , the concentration of carbonic acid  $[H_2CO_3]$  and the bicarbonate concentration  $[BHCO_3]$ . The relation between these variables may be represented by the following equation:

$$[H^+] = K \frac{[H_2CO_3]}{[BHCO_3]} \text{ in which } K \text{ is a constant}$$

The concentration of  $H_2CO_3$  is directly proportional to the  $CO_2$  tension. Since this is practically the same in the alveolar air as it is in the arterial blood (KROGH and KROGH 1910) at least during constant ventilation (MATELL 1963) changes in the acid base status can be adequately followed by continuously recording the end-tidal  $CO_2$ -tension together with the arterial blood pH. However, in the majority of experiments dealing with the effects of respiratory acidosis the  $CO_2$ -tension has not been continuously recorded. Observed changes in vascular reactivity were therefore correlated with the arterial blood pH and with the %  $CO_2$  in the inhaled gas mixture.

### 1 Operative procedure

Successful experiments were performed on 90 cats. They weighed between 1.6 kg and 5.0 kg. The animals were anaesthetized with sodium pentobarbital (Nembutal® Abbott) 35 mg/kg b.w. injected intraperitoneally. During the experiments small additional doses of sodium pentobarbital or urethane (20% solution) were given as needed in order to maintain a uniform depth of anaesthesia. No difference was observed between the experiments in which urethane was used and those employing sodium pentobarbital.

The animals were placed on a thermostatically controlled operating table.

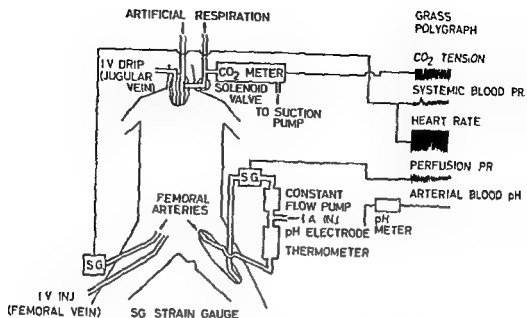


Fig 1 General scheme of the experimental set up used in most experiments

The body (blood) temperature was kept at  $38^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The general principle of the preparation of the animals is illustrated in Fig 1.

The trachea was cannulated and spontaneous breathing was permitted during the operative procedure.

Injections were given intravenously through a cannula inserted in the right femoral vein. In experiments where two venous cannulae were needed the second one was placed in the left jugular vein.

Vascular reactivity was studied employing the constant flow perfusion technique. The following peripheral beds were perfused *in vivo* using the rat's own blood:

- skinned hind leg
- unskinned hind leg
- kidney

In perfusion experiments on the skinned hind leg or the unskinned hind leg, the left leg was prepared at the proximal part of the thigh. Special care was taken to exclude all possible routes of collateral circulation. The method has been employed previously in this laboratory (YAMADA and ÅSTRÖM 1959). The muscles were divided by blunt dissection into four portions and these together with areas of the skin, were tied off with individual rope ligatures. A fifth ligature was interwoven throughout the other four and tied around the bone and adjacent muscles. The femoral and sciatic nerves as well as the

femoral vessels remained intact. The bone marrow cavity of the femur was plugged with absorbent paper through a hole drilled at the same level. In the first series of experiments the leg was subsequently skinned and the paw tied off just above the ankle joint leaving the femoral artery to perfuse mainly skeletal muscles. The leg was kept moist during the skinning procedure with warm Ringer solution and during the experimental period drying was prevented by sewing the skin back in place again. Both in the skinned leg preparation and in the intact leg preparation the femoral artery was cannulated proximally and distally. The blood flow was externalized in a polyethylene loop containing a thermometer, a pH electrode (Radiometer GK 264) and a pump (Sigmamotor). To prevent cooling of the blood during the passage through the loop the section containing the pH electrode and the thermometer was surrounded by a constant temperature water bath (38°C). The remaining part of the loop was passed through a sack through which air warmed to approximately 40°C was blown.

In the kidney perfusion experiments the left renal artery was cannulated with a polyethylene catheter close to the aorta and the kidney perfused with blood from the ipsilateral femoral artery via a polyethylene loop arranged in the same way as above.

In experiments where carotid occlusion tests were performed both common carotid arteries were dissected free at the neck and the vagus nerves were cut.

In one series of experiments the left sympathetic chain was dissected free in the lumbar part. Sympathetic denervation of the ipsilateral lower extremity was carried out by dissecting and removing a section of the lumbar sympathetic chain including 2—3 ganglia at the level of the fourth to sixth lumbar vertebrae. Electrical stimulation of the chain was performed by cutting the chain at the level of the fourth lumbar vertebra and placing a bipolar platinum electrode on the peripheral end. In this series of experiments the adrenal glands were denervated by bilateral section of the splanchnic nerves. Difficulty in denervating the right adrenal was occasionally encountered and in such cases the venous outflow from the gland was ligated instead.

## *2. Recording and measuring techniques*

For continuous recording of the measured physiological functions a 4 channel polygraph (Grass) was used.

*Systemic arterial blood pressure* was measured with a Statham strain gauge pressure transducer connected to a polyethylene tube filled with saline and inserted in the right femoral artery.

*Perfusion pressure* was measured with another strain gauge transducer connected to the exteriorized arterial loop distal to the pump

*Heart rate* was determined with an interval recorder (GOLDSCHMIDT and LINDGREN 1962) via impulses from the systemic blood pressure channel of the Grass instrument, when end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension was not recorded

*Arterial blood pH* was measured with a pH electrode inserted in the exteriorized arterial loop as described above and connected to a pH meter (Radiometer 1 HM 22). The pH electrode was shielded by adding sodium chloride to the water bath and grounding it to earth. To prevent the blood from entering the calomel part of the electrode during the experiment and thus interfering with the readings, its upper end was placed under a pressure slightly above the blood pressure. This pressure was supplied through a plastic tube connected to the loop about 5 cm before the electrode and filled with saline in one part and saturated potassium chloride in the other, the liquids being separated by a thin latex finger stall. The pressure difference over the electrode was thus determined by the blood pressure drop in the 5 cm part of the loop. The electrode was calibrated with 0.067 M phosphate buffers, pH approximately 7.38 and  $6.84 \pm 0.02$ . The absolute values of these buffers were regularly checked against commercially available buffers, pH  $7.381 \pm 0.005$  and  $6.840 \pm 0.005$  at  $38^\circ\text{C}$  (Radiometer). The calibrations were carried out at  $38^\circ\text{C}$  employing approximately the same rate of flow as the blood. Minor changes in flow did not, however, change the recorded pH values.

*End-tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension* was determined by continuously drawing the expiratory air through the 'micro catheter sample cell' of a  $\text{CO}_2$  infra red analyzer (Beckman Spinco, Model LB 1) at a speed of 200 ml/min. The highest value recorded during each breath was taken as the end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension. The short response time of the analyzer, 90% deflection in 0.1 sec as well as the constant artificial ventilation made this approach acceptable. To diminish the space between the tracheal cannula and the sensing unit of the analyzer the expiratory valve of the Starling pump was replaced with a solenoid valve placed as near the branch of the cannula as possible. To the other opening of the valve a 40 cm long tube with an inner diameter of 7 mm was connected. The gas was drawn from the first part of this tube and passed through the analyzer. The tube thus served as a reservoir which supplied the analyzer with expiratory air during the inspiratory phase of the respiratory cycle. The opening of the valve was monitored by a microswitch and was synchronized to operate with the pump. The  $\text{CO}_2$  meter was calibrated by using a series of known mixtures of  $\text{CO}_2$  in  $\text{O}_2$  saturated with water vapour at room temperature.



The reactivity of chosen vascular beds in the peripheral circulation was tested with three types of vasoconstrictor stimuli: a) noradrenaline b) angiotensin (both these substances were injected i.a. in the exteriorized loop just proximal to the pump) c) electrical stimulation of the left sympathetic chain (see above under operative procedure). The i.a. injections were given with the help of an infusion apparatus. The plunger of the syringe was uniformly pushed by means of a motor driven propelling screw. In each experiment a constant injection time of 20 or 30 sec was used. In the stimulation experiments the electrode was connected to a square wave generator (Grass) and stimulation was performed with a supramaximal voltage 4–15 V, duration of 10 msec and a frequency range of 0.1–8 imp/sec. The duration of each period of stimulation was 30 sec.

*Changes in vascular reactivity* concomitant with induced changes in the acid base balance of the blood were determined in two ways:

a) The dose of the vasoconstrictor substance used or the stimulation frequency employed was adjusted so that the perfusion pressure responses amounted to about 50 (range 40–60) mm Hg during a period of normal arterial blood pH. The change in response during a subsequent acid base shift was recorded and calculated in per cent of control response.

b) The dose of the vasoconstrictor substance or the stimulation frequency was changed to obtain an increase in perfusion pressure of 50 mm Hg also during periods with altered acid base balance. Employing this method the change in vascular reactivity could be expressed by the ratio between the doses eliciting this standard response. However, it was often difficult to find a dose giving an exact 50 mm Hg response. For this reason two or more doses were often used and the dose was then calculated from the dose response curve.

### 3. Compounds utilized in the study

1. *Noradrenaline* Noradrenaline hydrochloride (1 form) was employed generally in this study as a vasoconstrictor substance and was adopted as a standard substance for the comparative analysis of other vasoconstrictor stimuli. The noradrenaline was freshly prepared for each experiment by diluting a stock solution with isotonic saline acidified to pH 4 with HCl. Noradrenaline doses given in the text refer to the hydrochloride.

2. *Angiotensin* (Hypertensin  $\times$ ® Ciba) The powerful peripheral vasoconstrictor effects of angiotensin are mediated via receptors different from those sensitive to noradrenaline (PAGE and BURRUS 1961). In the present study angiotensin was compared with noradrenaline in order to eval

*Perfusion pressure* was measured with another strain gauge transducer connected to the exteriorized arterial loop distal to the pump

*Heart rate* was determined with an interval recorder (GOLDSCHMIDT and LINDGREN 1962) via impulses from the systemic blood pressure channel of the Grass instrument, when end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension was not recorded

*Arterial blood pH* was measured with a pH electrode inserted in the exteriorized arterial loop as described above and connected to a pH meter (Radiometer PHM 22) The pH electrode was shielded by adding sodium chloride to the water bath and grounding it to earth To prevent the blood from entering the calomel part of the electrode during the experiment and thus interfering with the readings, its upper end was placed under a pressure slightly above the blood pressure This pressure was supplied through a plastic tube connected to the loop about 5 cm before the electrode and filled with saline in one part and saturated potassium chloride in the other, the liquids being separated by a thin latex finger stall The pressure difference over the electrode was thus determined by the blood pressure drop in the 5 cm part of the loop The electrode was calibrated with 0.067 M phosphate buffers, pH approximately 7.38 and  $6.84 \pm 0.02$  The absolute values of these buffers were regularly checked against commercially available buffers, pH  $7.381 \pm 0.005$  and  $6.840 \pm 0.005$  at  $38^\circ\text{C}$  (Radiometer) The calibrations were carried out at  $38^\circ\text{C}$  employing approximately the same rate of flow as the blood Minor changes in flow did not, however, change the recorded pH values

*End tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension* was determined by continuously drawing the expiratory air through the 'micro catheter sample cell' of a  $\text{CO}_2$  infra red analyzer (Beckman Spinco Model LB 1) at a speed of 200 ml/min The highest value recorded during each breath was taken as the end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension The short response time of the analyzer, 90% deflection in 0.1 sec as well as the constant artificial ventilation, made this approach acceptable To diminish the space between the tracheal cannula and the sensing unit of the analyzer the expiratory valve of the Starling pump was replaced with a solenoid valve placed as near the branch of the cannula as possible To the other opening of the valve a 40 cm long tube with an inner diameter of 7 mm was connected The gas was drawn from the first part of this tube and passed through the analyzer The tube thus served as a reservoir which supplied the analyzer with expiratory air during the inspiratory phase of the respiratory cycle The opening of the valve was monitored by a microswitch and was synchronized to operate with the pump The  $\text{CO}_2$  meter was calibrated by using a series of known mixtures of  $\text{CO}_2$  in  $\text{O}_2$  saturated with water vapour at room temperature

or angiotensin until a constant perfusion pressure response was obtained. During this control period the animals were ventilated with oxygen.

The desired change in acid base balance was subsequently induced and the vascular reactivity of the perfused bed was determined again 20 to 40 minutes later.

*Respiratory acidosis* was obtained by ventilating with 10% or 20% CO in O<sub>2</sub> instead of pure O<sub>2</sub>. The gas mixtures during the experiment were kept in special Douglas bags of polyvinylchloride connected to the inspiratory valve of the Starling pump with a five way stopcock.

*Respiratory alkalosis* was induced by hyperventilation with O<sub>2</sub>. With the experimental procedure employed the ventilation rate and tidal volume always remained unaltered between the control and experimental period. It was thus found necessary to ventilate during the control period with 3—5% CO in O<sub>2</sub> according to the degree of hyperventilation to maintain the CO<sub>2</sub> tension and arterial blood pH within normal levels.

*Non respiratory changes* in the acid base balance were induced by i.v. infusions of 0.6 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> or 0.2 M HCl. The NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solutions were always freshly prepared to avoid transition to Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> by escape of CO<sub>2</sub>.

In some experiments the CO<sub>2</sub>-tension in end tidal air was decreased while the arterial blood pH was kept constant (compensated non respiratory acidosis). This was accomplished by a slow infusion of HCl along with a suitable degree of hyperventilation.

uate the specificity of the recorded changes in vascular reactivity during acid base shifts. It was diluted with normal saline before infusion.

3 *Atropine* Atropine sulphate (1%) was administered after the operation was finished in experiments involving either carotid occlusion or sympathetic chain stimulation. The dose employed, 0.2—0.4 mg/kg i.v., has been shown to block the actions of the sympathetic vasodilator system (LINDGREN 1955).

4 *Reserpine* (Serpasil®, Ciba), 5 mg/kg, was given intraperitoneally to a series of animals 24 hours before the perfusion experiment was to be made. It was given in order to prevent the effect of sympathetic vasoconstrictor impulses. The reserpine treatment was tested at the end of each experiment and was considered successful if electrical stimulation of the lumbar sympathetic chain, after atropine treatment, failed to cause a vasoconstriction.

5 *Succinylcholine iodide* (Clocurin Iodide®, Vitrum), a neuromuscular blocking agent with a short-acting effect, was given in the experiments where artificial ventilation was used. It was administered as a slow iv drip added to 100 ml of a 3% solution of dextran (RHEOMACRODEX®, Pharmacia) in an amount of 0.1—0.2 g. The rate of the drip was adjusted so that the spontaneous respiratory movements were just abolished.

6 *Dextran* (Rheomacrodex®, Pharmacia) diluted with 5% glucose to an isotonic solution (3%) was used to fill the tubes of the arterial loop and for the iv drip to compensate for fluid loss during the experiments. Rheomacrodex does not change the suspension stability of the blood corpuscles (LIASSON and SAMELIUS BROBERG 1963).

#### 4 Course of a standard experiment

When the operative procedures were finished the animals were heparinized. The artificial ventilation and the perfusion pump were started. The ventilation was adjusted to maintain a constant pH of 7.35—7.40. The spontaneous respiratory movements were abolished through the iv drip of succinylcholine. The recording of CO<sub>2</sub> tension in end-tidal air was started. A decreased tension was usually noticed and at the prevailing normal arterial pH this was interpreted as an indication of a decrease in bicarbonate concentration (compensated non-respiratory acidosis) developed during the operative procedure. Sodium bicarbonate was injected iv to restore the normal acid base balance. The perfusion pump rate was adjusted to obtain a perfusion pressure equal to the systemic blood pressure. The reactivity of the perfused vascular bed was determined with repeated i.v. injections (into the loop) of noradrenaline.

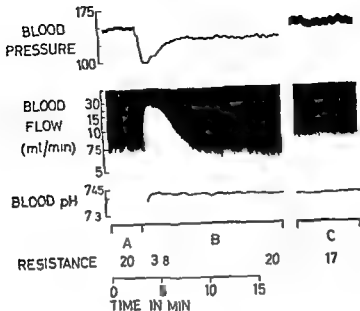


Fig 2 Cat 3.9 kg Influence of the constant flow perfusion technique on the vascular tone of the perfused vessels in the hind leg For details see text

senteric artery and the loop. This technique was used in two cats and Fig 2 shows selected parts from one such experiment.

During period A in this figure the arterial blood flow to the leg was directed via the normal arterial pathway. At the beginning of period B the abdominal aorta was occluded and the clamp on the superior mesenteric artery released. The arterial inflow had then to pass through the loop, the pump being open instead of by the normal way. This caused a very marked dilatation of the vessels in the limb in accordance with the observation made by FOLKOW (1953). The vasodilatation was shortlasting however, and within 5 minutes the vascular resistance had returned to its previous value in spite of the fact that the blood still passed through the loop. The mere passing of the blood through the loop therefore did not interfere with the basal tone of the vessels except during the first minutes. This also indicated that the small contamination of the blood with potassium chloride from the pH electrode did not reach a sufficient concentration to induce vasodilatation (KJELLMER 1961). At the beginning of period C in Fig 2 the flow was adjusted to give the same perfusion pressure as at the start. This reduced the vascular resistance from

## CHAPTER III

### INTRODUCTORY EXPERIMENTS

#### *Perfusion device and vascular tone*

It has been mentioned in the preceding chapter that the constant flow perfusion technique offers many advantages in a study of the effect of vasoconstrictor substances. FOLKOW (1953) has pointed out, however, in a critical study concerning the methods usually used in experimental work on circulatory problems that even the mere passing of the arterial blood through a pump device or flow recorder could induce an almost maximal dilatation in the cognate vascular bed. He also observed that the active reactions of the vascular smooth muscle to changes in blood pressure were depressed at the same time. He suggested that the dilatation was due to a release of ATP from injured red blood corpuscles. The passing of blood through a pump device will evidently cause some hemolysis and ATP release although the degree of the hemolysis will vary with the type of pump and connecting tubes used (CAHILL and KOLFF 1959). Because of this it seemed necessary to evaluate to what extent the basal tone of perfused vessels was influenced by the perfusing and recording devices used in the present study. This was done using principally the same method as before. The technique therefore will be only briefly outlined. The right hind limb was chosen for the study and the skin and muscles were tightly ligated at the upper part of the thigh. The right sympathetic chain was resected at the midlumbar level and the suprarenal glands were denervated. The intestines were resected. The branches of the lower part of the abdominal aorta, of the right iliac artery and of the right femoral artery were ligated down to the level of the ligatures around the muscles (upper part of the thigh). The superior mesenteric artery and the central stump of the ligated left femoral artery were cannulated and the cannulae were connected by a polyethylen loop. In the loop the pH electrode and the thermometer were inserted. The blood flow through the loop could be regulated by the Sigmamotor pump (see chapter II). The venous outflow from the right leg was measured with a drop recorder (LINDEN 1958) inserted in the femoral vein. The blood pressure was recorded from the caudal extension of the aorta. Through clamps on the abdominal aorta and superior mesenteric artery the arterial blood flow to the right leg could be directed either via the normal arterial pathway or via the superior me-

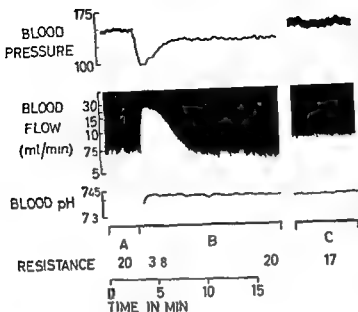


Fig 2 Cat 3.9 kg Influence of the constant flow perfusion technique on the vascular tone of the perfused vessels in the hind leg For details see text

senteric artery and the loop This technique was used in two cats and Fig 2 shows selected parts from one such experiment

During period A in this figure the arterial blood flow to the leg was directed via the normal arterial pathway At the beginning of period B the abdominal aorta was occluded and the clamp on the superior mesenteric artery released The arterial inflow had then to pass through the loop the pump being open instead of by the normal way This caused a very marked dilatation of the vessels in the limb in accordance with the observation made by FOLKOW (1953) The vasodilatation was shortlasting however and within 5 minutes the vascular resistance had returned to its previous value in spite of the fact that the blood still passed through the loop The mere passing of the blood through the loop therefore did not interfere with the basal tone of the vessels except during the first minutes This also indicated that the small contamination of the blood with potassium chloride from the pH electrode did not reach a sufficient concentration to induce vasodilatation (KJELLMER 1961) At the beginning of period C in Fig 2 the flow was adjusted to give the same perfusion pressure as at the start This reduced the vascular resistance from

20 to 17 units indicating a slight interference with the basal vascular tone. In the second experiment the resistance was unchanged when the pump was started (increased from 10.7 to 10.9 units).

A decrease in basal vascular tone, tested with 12 injections of acetylcholine, could not be observed in the perfused hind leg of cats treated with reserpine even after several hours of pump perfusion.

When the choice was to be made between recording venous outflow or using a constant flow perfusion technique it was evident that both methods had advantages, which could not be combined. The final reason for using the constant flow perfusion technique was that this method seemed to reflect best the changes in tension of the vascular smooth muscle. The introductory experiments also suggested that with this set up, the damage to the blood interfered with the basal vascular tone of the perfused vessels either only slightly or not at all.

### *Effect of noradrenaline and vascular tone*

It soon became evident that during the course of the experiments the acid base shifts of the blood induced not only changes in the vasoconstrictor effect of noradrenaline but also altered the resistance of the perfused vascular bed. FOLKOW and ÖBLERG (1959) as well as LÅNERT (1962) have, however, shown that changes in the resistance of a vascular bed alter the effect of vasoconstrictor substances. For the interpretation of the results therefore it seemed necessary to evaluate to what extent the observed changes in vascular resistance could alter the vasoconstrictor effect of noradrenaline during acid base shifts. In these experiments the skinned hind leg preparation was used. Changes in vascular resistance was induced by stimulation of the ipsilateral sympathetic chain at the lumbar level. The effects of 12 injections of noradrenaline on the perfusion pressure were tested before and during graded sympathetic stimulation. The mean dose of noradrenaline was  $0.038 \mu\text{g/kg}$  (range  $0.017$ — $0.068$ ). Fig. 3 sums up the results obtained in 11 experiments on 3 cats. In two cats (○—○ and ◐—◐ in Fig. 3) an increased vascular tone only slightly affected the perfusion pressure responses to 12 injections of noradrenaline while in the third cat (●—●) the perfusion pressure responses decreased. In this cat the control level of the perfusion pressure was 120—135 mm Hg. In the other two cats the control pressure varied between 160 and 185 mm Hg.

It was also calculated that during a period of sympathetic nerve stimulation, which induced a 50 mm Hg increase of the perfusion pressure the test



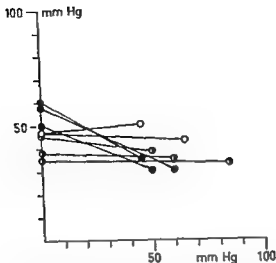


Fig 3 Effect of an increase in vascular tone induced through stimulation of the sympathetic chain on the perfusion pressure responses to  $1 \mu$  injections of noradrenaline in the perfused skinned hind leg. The results were obtained in three cats. Curves from the same cat are marked in the same way ( O—O □—□ or ●—● ). Ordinate: Increase in perfusion pressure following  $1 \mu$  noradrenaline injections. Abscissa: Increase in perfusion pressure during electrical stimulation of the sympathetic vasoconstrictor nerves.

dose of noradrenaline injected  $1 \mu$  had to be doubled (mean value) to give the same pressure response as during the control period.

#### *Determination of changes in vascular reactivity*

When this study was started the question arose of how to measure changes in vascular reactivity quantitatively so that results obtained during different types of acid base shifts and in different vascular beds could directly be compared.

One way was to measure the perfusion pressure response to repeated  $1 \mu$  injections of a test dose of noradrenaline before and during an acid base shift and calculate the change. This has been the method principally employed in earlier studies. If we assume that during a period of acidosis the perfusion pressure response to a test dose of noradrenaline decreased by 50%, this result will be rather meaningless in a quantitative respect unless we know either the relative position of the test dose within the dose response curve or the slope of the curve. For instance if we compare the results obtained

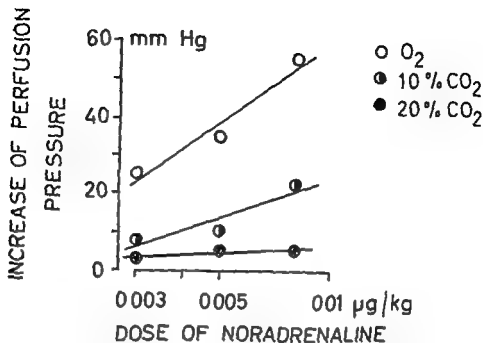


Fig. 4 Cat 3.0 kg Dose response curve obtained with 1 a noradrenaline injections in the perfused unskinned hind leg during ventilation with O (control period) 10 and 20% CO in O

in two experiments during acidosis we cannot draw the conclusion that a 50% decrease of the perfusion pressure response in both experiments will mean the same change in vascular reactivity, unless we make the assumption that the slope of the dose response curves are the same in the two experiments

A more meaningful measurement of a change in vascular reactivity during an acid base shift can be obtained by determining the horizontal shift of the dose response curve

Fig. 4 illustrates the relationship between different doses of noradrenaline and the perfusion pressure responses in the perfused unskinned hind leg. The figure shows that during acidosis the position of the doses of noradrenaline within the dose response curve has changed. The decreased slope of the curves during acidosis indicate a horizontal shift of the dose response curve to the right. The magnitude of the shift cannot however be determined from the curves in Fig. 4

If we assume that the only thing that happens to the dose response curve of noradrenaline during acidosis is a horizontal shift, a part of the curve with the same slope as that during the control period will be obtained if the doses of noradrenaline are increased so that the responses are kept basically un

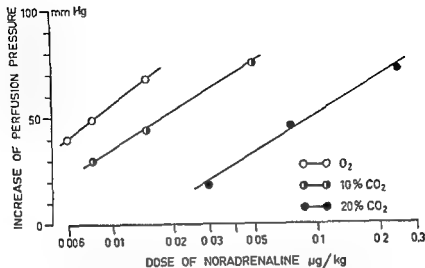


Fig 5 Cat 3.0 kg Dose response curves obtained with i.a. injections of noradrenaline in the perfused unskinned hind leg during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. The doses of noradrenaline were increased during ventilation with CO<sub>2</sub> to keep the perfusion pressure responses at the same range as during the control period.

changed. This was done in the experiment from which the curves in Fig 5 have been taken. Now it is possible to measure the horizontal shifts of the dose response curve and this measure of a changed reactivity is independent of the original slope of the curve. With this method it is thus possible to make quantitative comparisons between changes in vascular reactivity obtained in different experiments. The magnitude of the shift in an experiment can be expressed in different ways. One way which has been used in the present study is to calculate the ratio between equieffective doses (cf. GADDUM et al 1955). In Fig 5 the ratio will be the same if both doses giving for instance a 40 mm Hg or a 60 mm Hg response are compared, since the curves are parallel. It was not always possible, however, to obtain parallel curves and therefore the doses eliciting a 50 mm Hg response were used for determining the ratio.

In the present study both the reduction of a response during acidosis and the ratio between equieffective doses were calculated (cf. chapter II).

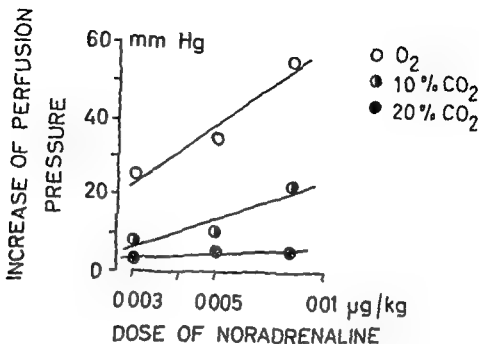


Fig 4 Cat 3.0 kg Dose response curve obtained with 1a noradrenaline injections in the perfused unskinned hind leg during ventilation with O (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O

in two experiments during acidosis, we cannot draw the conclusion that a 50% decrease of the perfusion pressure response in both experiments will mean the same change in vascular reactivity, unless we make the assumption that the slope of the dose response curves are the same in the two experiments

A more meaningful measurement of a change in vascular reactivity during an acid base shift can be obtained by determining the horizontal shift of the dose response curve

Fig 4 illustrates the relationship between different doses of noradrenaline and the perfusion pressure responses in the perfused unskinned hind leg. The figure shows that during acidosis the position of the doses of noradrenaline within the dose response curve has changed. The decreased slope of the curves during acidosis indicate a horizontal shift of the dose response curve to the right. The magnitude of the shift cannot, however be determined from the curves in Fig 4

If we assume that the only thing that happens to the dose response curve of noradrenaline during acidosis is a horizontal shift, a part of the curve with the same slope as that during the control period will be obtained if the doses of noradrenaline are increased so that the responses are kept basically un

## CHAPTER IV

### EFFECT OF NORADRENALINE ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM DURING RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

The systemic blood pressure responses to i.v. injections of noradrenaline were recorded before and during respiratory acidosis. The effects of respiratory acidosis on the reactivity of peripheral vessels were studied in the skinned hind leg (muscle vessels) in the unskinned hind leg (skin and muscle vessels) and in the kidney.

#### 1 Special methods

In some experiments the distribution of the blood flow between skin and muscle vascular beds in the unskinned hind leg preparation was investigated. This was made by measuring the venous outflow from a skin and a muscle vascular bed or by measuring the venous outflow only from a skin vascular bed when the arterial inflow to the leg was kept constant with the pump.

When the muscle blood flow was studied the leg was skinned as described earlier and immediately above the ankle a tight ligature was applied. The femoral vein was dissected free just below the inguinal ligament and cannulated.

To obtain a predominate skin blood flow the saphena magna vein which drains the paw was dissected free for cannulation a few cm proximal to the ankle. To prevent the blood from passing via collaterals to the saphena parva vein the latter was ligated.

When the skin and muscle blood flow were recorded in the same animal both hind legs were used.

The volume of blood flow was determined with the help of a closed drop chamber filled with silicon oil (Grave DC 200 viscosity 0.65 cS) connected to the venous cannula (LINDGREN 1958). For recording the drop rate a photocell operating an electronic interval recorder (GOLDSCHMIDT and LINDGREN 1962) or a Grass preamplifier model SP4 was used. With the former recorder the heights of the deflections were approximately inversely proportional to the rate of blood flow. After passing the chamber the blood

### *Correction of the acid-base balance of the blood*

In the present study a mean end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension of 26 mm Hg (20—35) at a mean arterial blood pH of 7.37 (7.30—7.40) was observed when the recordings were started. According to available data (YANNET 1940) the normal acid base balance of the blood of the cat is characterized by a  $\text{CO}_2$  tension of 36 mm Hg at a pH of 7.35. To restore the normal conditions according to YANNET it was necessary to inject  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  into the blood stream.

## CHAPTER IV

### EFFECT OF NORADRENALINE ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM DURING RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

The systemic blood pressure responses to i.v. injections of noradrenaline were recorded before and during respiratory acidosis. The effects of respiratory acidosis on the reactivity of peripheral vessels were studied in the skinned hind leg (muscle vessels) in the unskinned hind leg (skin and muscle vessels) and in the kidney.

#### x Special methods

In some experiments the distribution of the blood flow between skin and muscle vascular beds in the unskinned hind leg preparation was investigated. This was made by measuring the venous outflow from a skin and a muscle vascular bed or by measuring the venous outflow only from a skin vascular bed when the arterial inflow to the leg was kept constant with the pump.

When the muscle blood flow was studied the leg was skinned as described earlier and immediately above the ankle a tight ligature was applied. The femoral vein was dissected free just below the inguinal ligament, and cannulated.

To obtain a predominate skin blood flow the saphena magna vein which drains the paw was dissected free for cannulation a few cm proximal to the ankle. To prevent the blood from passing via collaterals to the saphena parva vein the latter was ligated.

When the skin and muscle blood flow were recorded in the same animal both hind legs were used.

The volume of blood flow was determined with the help of a closed drop chamber filled with silicon oil (Grave DC 200 viscosity 0.65 cS) connected to the venous cannula (LINDGREN 1958). For recording the drop rate a photocell operating an electronic interval recorder (GOLDSCHMIDT and LINDGREN 1962) or a Grass preamplifier model SP4 was used. With the former recorder the heights of the deflections were approximately inversely proportional to the rate of blood flow. After passing the chamber the blood

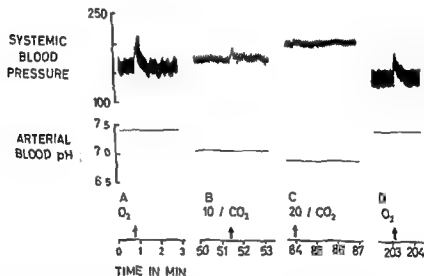
### *Correction of the acid base balance of the blood*

In the present study, a mean end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension of 26 mm Hg (20—35) at a mean arterial blood pH of 7.37 (7.30—7.40) was observed when the recordings were started. According to available data (YANNET 1940) the normal acid base balance of the blood of the cat is characterized by a  $\text{CO}_2$ -tension of 36 mm Hg at a pH of 7.35. To restore the normal conditions according to YANNET it was necessary to inject  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  into the blood stream.



*Table 1 Systemic blood pressure responses to i.v. injections of noradrenaline and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with  $O_2$  (control period) 10 and 20%  $CO_2$  in  $O_2$  in cats anesthetized with sodium pentobarbital. The pressor responses are given in relative units  $\pm$  standard error of mean. Control response during ventilation with  $O_2 = 100$*

% $CO_2$ in insp. gas	Number of animals	Arterial blood pH	Dose of noradr. $\mu g/kg$	Systemic blood pressure response
0	11	7.38	0.17—2.0	100
10	5	7.04		$55 \pm 5.8$
20	10	6.84		$27 \pm 3.6$



*Fig. 6. Cat 3.4 kg. Systemic blood pressure responses to i.v. injections of noradrenaline during ventilation with  $O_2$  (control period) 10 and 20%  $CO_2$  in  $O_2$ . Each arrow indicates an injection of  $1 \mu g/kg$  noradrenaline.*

increased 3.7 times (range 2.4—4.5, 3 cats) during ventilation with 10%  $CO_2$  and 3.7 times (range 1.5—5.0, 3 cats) during ventilation with 20%  $CO_2$ . The same result was obtained when i.v. infusions of noradrenaline were used instead of injections.

#### *Peripheral vascular beds*

The reactivity of the following vascular beds was studied before and during respiratory acidosis: a) skinned hind leg (7 cats), b) unskinned hind leg (10 cats), c) kidney (3 cats).

was returned to the animal either via the proximal stump of the same vein or by another vein

The upper part of the femoral artery was ligated and then two cannulae were inserted, one on either side of this ligature. The cannulae were connected by a polyethylene tube and from a T tube in the small loop thus formed, the arterial pressure was recorded. When flow recordings were to be made in both hind legs at the same time a cannula was inserted into the other femoral artery and this was also connected into the loop. By partial clamping of the upper part of the loop the inflow pressure to both legs could then be changed to the same degree.

In some experiments the arterial blood flow was kept constant with the help of a Sigmamotor pump. In the cases the arterial loop was arranged in the same way as described in chapter II.

## 2 Results

### *Systemic circulation*

The induction of respiratory acidosis was usually followed by an increase in systemic blood pressure. When the operative procedure was extended to include denervation of the suprarenal glands and resection of a part of the left lumbar sympathetic chain a decrease in the systemic blood pressure was obtained in 9 out of 19 cats. In the reserpine treated animals the systemic blood pressure always decreased during respiratory acidosis.

The heart rate usually decreased during respiratory acidosis. In cats treated with reserpine respiratory acidosis always induced a decrease in heart rate. The decrease was so marked in these animals that the induction of the acidosis had to be made gradually since otherwise a temporary cardiac arrest would occur. Cardiac arrhythmias were only occasionally seen and then in the form of single extrasystoles.

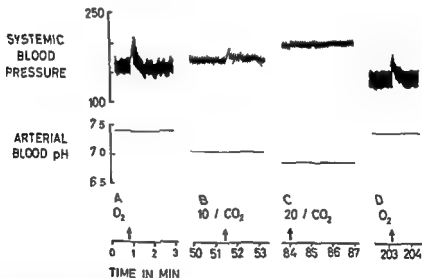
The end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension was measured in 9 cats and increased from 35 mm Hg (range 33—39) during the control period to 85 (range 71—96, 6 cats) and 166 mm Hg (range 154—178, 9 cats) during ventilation with 10 and 20%  $\text{CO}_2$  in  $\text{O}_2$ .

The mean values of arterial blood pH recorded in the different groups of cats are given in the respective figures.

The systemic blood pressure response to iv injections of noradrenaline was followed during periods of acidosis in 11 cats. Fig. 6 shows a representative experiment and the results are summarized in Table I. To keep the blood pressure responses unchanged, the dose of noradrenaline had to be

*Table I Systemic blood pressure responses to i.v. injections of noradrenaline and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub> in cats anesthetized with sodium pentobarbital. The pressor responses are given in relative units  $\pm$  standard error of mean. Control response during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> = 100*

% CO in insp. gas	Number of animals	Arterial blood pH	Dose of noradr. $\mu$ g/kg	Systemic blood pressure response
0	11	7.36	0.17–2.0	100
10	5	7.04		55 $\pm$ 5.8
20	10	6.84		27 $\pm$ 3.6



*Fig. 6 Cat 3.4 kg. Systemic blood pressure responses to i.v. injections of noradrenaline during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. Each arrow indicates an injection of 1  $\mu$ g/kg noradrenaline.*

increased 3.7 times (range 2.4–4.5, 3 cats) during ventilation with 10% CO<sub>2</sub> and 3.7 times (range 1.5–5.0, 3 cats) during ventilation with 20% CO<sub>2</sub>. The same result was obtained when i.v. infusions of noradrenaline were used instead of injections.

#### *Peripheral vascular beds*

The reactivity of the following vascular beds was studied before and during respiratory acidosis: a) skinned hind leg (7 cats) b) unskinned hind leg (10 cats) c) kidney (3 cats).

The arterial blood flow was adjusted at the start of an experiment so that the perfusion pressure equalled the systemic blood pressure. The mean blood flow was 8.3 (range 5.9–10.4), 9.4 (range 6.6–14.4) and 25 (range 20–30.6) ml/min in the respective groups (1–3).

Ventilation with 10 and 20% CO in O<sub>2</sub> caused an increase in the resistance of the perfused leg preparations resulting in an increase in the perfusion pressure. This pressure increase amounted to 35 (5–90) and 80 (45–125) mm Hg in the skinned leg and to 35 (0–50) and 60 (–25–130) mm Hg in the unskinned leg. During ventilation with 10% and 20% CO the perfusion pressure decreased by 14 (5–28) and 13 mm Hg in the kidney.

Before and during the acidotic period 1 a injections of noradrenaline were given repeatedly and the effect on the perfusion pressure was observed. The dose of noradrenaline used for the 1 a injections was adjusted to give about

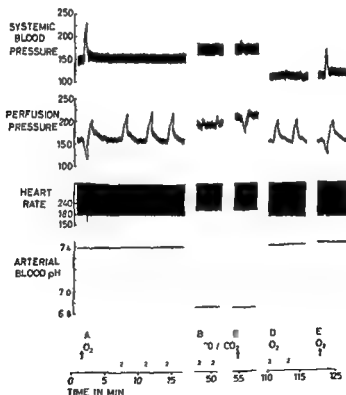


Fig. 7. Cat 2.5 kg. The left hind leg perfused with the cat's own blood at a constant flow of 7.2 ml/min.

Systemic and perfusion pressure responses to 1 v and 1 a (to the perfused leg) injections of noradrenaline during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) and 20% CO in O<sub>2</sub>.

1 1 v injection of 0.5 µg/kg noradrenaline

2 1 a injection of 0.025 µg/kg noradrenaline

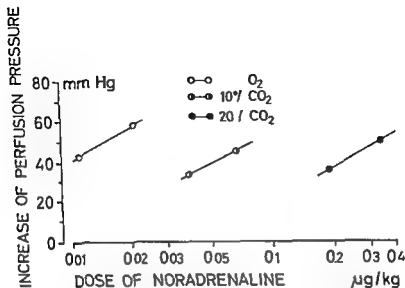


Fig 8 Cat 2.2 kg Dose response curves obtained with i.a. injections of noradrenaline in the perfused hind leg during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. The noradrenaline doses were increased during the periods of acidosis to keep the responses relatively unchanged.

a 50 mm Hg increase in the perfusion pressure during the control period (ventilation with oxygen). In the skinned leg the dose varied from 0.036 to 0.21 µg/kg b.w. (mean 0.088) in the unskinned it varied from 0.008 to 0.065 µg/kg b.w. (mean 0.028) and in the kidney experiments the range was from 0.093 to 0.33 µg/kg b.w. (mean 0.20).

Along with an increasing degree of acidosis the peripheral vasoconstrictor effect of noradrenaline diminished. It could sometimes be noticed, however, that there was a lag time up to 10 minutes between the rapid decrease in arterial blood pH and the change in reactivity. The degree of the reduction was measured either as the percentual change of the response (Fig 7) or as the ratio between the doses which induced the same pressor response of 50 mm Hg (Fig 8). The results are summarized in Fig 9 and 10.

From figures 9 and 10 it can be seen that even if the change in vascular reactivity was qualitatively similar, quantitative differences existed between the different vascular beds. The difference observed between the results obtained in the two leg preparations was significant ( $p < 0.005$  (decrease in response) resp.  $< 0.05$  (equieffective doses) at ventilation with 20% CO<sub>2</sub>). The change in arterial pH between the two groups was not significantly different.

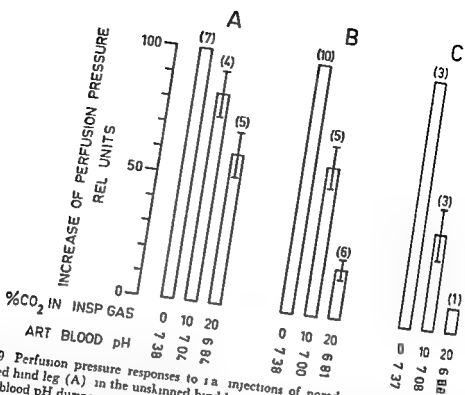


Fig 9 Perfusion pressure responses to 10 and 20% injections of noradrenaline in the perfused unskinned hind leg (A) and in the kidney (B) and in the perfused kidney (C) and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. The bars indicate the pressure responses in relative units. Control response = 100. In this and in the following figures numerals within parenthesis indicate number of cats. Standard error of means are also given.

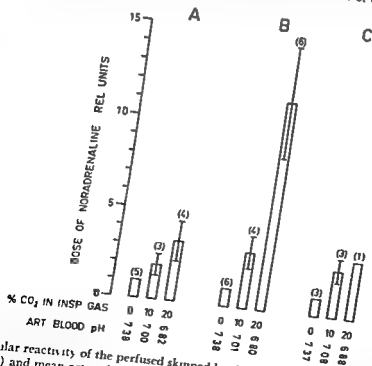


Fig 10 Vascular reactivity of the perfused unskinned hind leg (A), unskinned hind leg (B) and kidney (C) and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. The bars indicate the dose of noradrenaline in relative units. Control response = 100. In this and in the following figures numerals within parenthesis indicate number of cats. Standard error of means are also given.

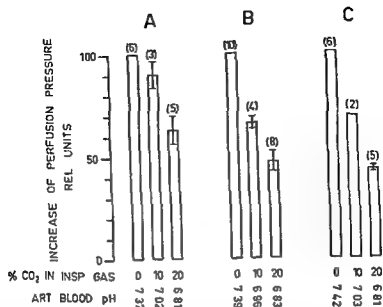


Fig 11 Perfusion pressure responses to i.a. injections of noradrenaline in the sympathetically denervated skinned (A) and unskinned (B) hind leg preparations and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. For comparison the values obtained in the intact hind leg of reserpine treated animals have been included (C). The bars indicate in relative units the pressure responses. Control response = 100.

### *Role of the sympathetic nerves in the diminished peripheral effect of noradrenaline*

The peripheral vasoconstrictor effect of noradrenaline was studied both in the sympathetically denervated skinned (6 cats) and sympathetically denervated unskinned (13 cats) hind leg preparations during respiratory acidosis. The results obtained in the denervated animals were extended by some experiments on reserpine treated animals (6 cats) in which the unskinned hind leg was used for the perfusion.

The noradrenaline dose found to elicit a 50 mm Hg increase in the perfusion pressure on i.a. administration in the usual way were on an average 0.035 (range 0.003–0.081) and 0.033 (range 0.008–0.075)  $\mu\text{g/kg b.w.}$  in the skinned and unskinned hind leg preparations. After treatment with reserpine the mean dose used was 0.016 (range 0.007–0.031)  $\mu\text{g/kg b.w.}$  The mean arterial blood flow was for the same groups 9.8 (range 5.9–14.4), 13.0 (range 8.7–20.0) and 12.5 (range 6.0–14) ml/min respectively.

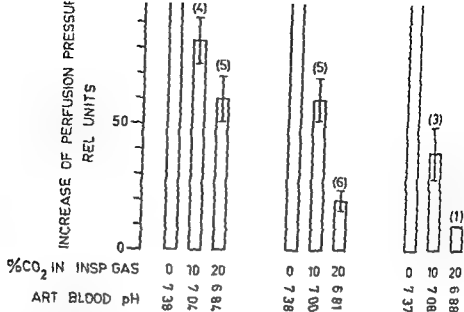


Fig 9 Perfusion pressure responses to i.a. injections of noradrenaline in the perfused skinned hind leg (A) in the unskinned hind leg (B) and in the kidney (C) and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO in O<sub>2</sub>. The bars indicate the pressure responses in relative units. Control response = 100. In this and in the following figures numerals within parenthesis indicate number of cats. Standard error of means are also given.

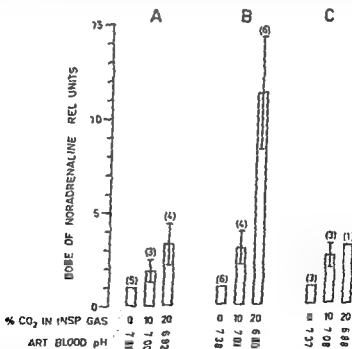


Fig 10 Vascular reactivity of the perfused skinned hind leg (A) unskinned hind leg (B) and kidney (C) and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) 10 and 20% CO in O<sub>2</sub>. The bars indicate in relative units the dose of noradrenaline which had to be injected i.a. to give a 50 mm Hg increase of the perfusion pressure. Control dose = 1.



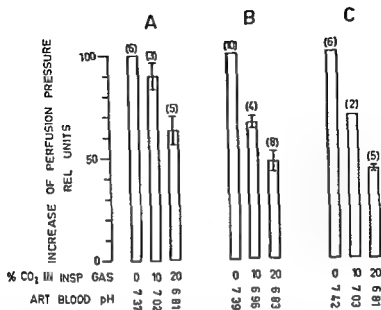


Fig. 11 Perfusion pressure responses to i.a. injections of noradrenaline in the sympathetically denervated skinned (A) and unskinned (B) hind leg preparations and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with 0 (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in D. For comparison the values obtained in the intact hind leg of reserpine treated animals have been included (C). The bars indicate in relative units the pressure responses. Control response = 100.

### *Role of the sympathetic nerves in the diminished peripheral effect of noradrenaline*

The peripheral vasoconstrictor effect of noradrenaline was studied both in the sympathetically denervated skinned (6 cats) and sympathetically denervated unskinned (13 cats) hind leg preparations during respiratory acidosis. The results obtained in the denervated animals were extended by some experiments on reserpine treated animals (6 cats) in which the unskinned hind leg was used for the perfusion.

The noradrenaline dose found to elicit a 50 mm Hg increase in the perfusion pressure on i.a. administration in the usual way were on an average 0.035 (range 0.003–0.081) and 0.033 (range 0.008–0.075)  $\mu\text{g/kg b.w.}$  in the skinned and unskinned hind leg preparations. After treatment with reserpine the mean dose used was 0.016 (range 0.007–0.031)  $\mu\text{g/kg b.w.}$  The mean arterial blood flow was for the same groups 9.8 (range 5.9–14.4) 13.0 (range 8.7–20.0) and 12.6 (range 6.0–14) ml/min respectively.

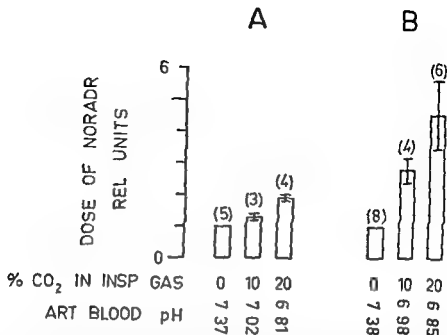


Fig 12 Vascular reactivity of the perfused sympathetically denervated skinned (A) and unskinned (B) hind leg preparations and mean arterial blood pH during ventilation with O (control period) 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. The bars indicate in relative units the dose of noradrenaline which had to be given to give a 50 mm Hg increase of the perfusion pressure. Control dose = 1

In the denervated hind leg preparations both vasoconstriction and dilatation were seen during respiratory acidosis. The usual finding was a decrease in resistance. Simultaneously the overall effect of noradrenaline decreased as can be seen in Fig 11 and Fig 12.

When the results obtained in the denervated skinned and unskinned leg preparations are compared the difference is less marked than the difference between the same preparations with intact sympathetic supply. It is significant when the ratios between equieffective doses during ventilation with 20% CO (see Fig 12) are used for comparison ( $p = 0.005$ ). The perfusion pressure responses to noradrenaline are significantly less impaired in the sympathetically denervated hind leg than in the innervated preparation during ventilation with 20% CO ( $p < 0.005$  and  $< 0.05$ ). A similar difference is also apparent between the results obtained in the innervated and denervated skinned hind leg preparations.

#### *Distribution of blood flow*

As distinct from the other vascular beds perfused the unskinned hind leg preparation consists of two main different types of vessel: the skin vessels and

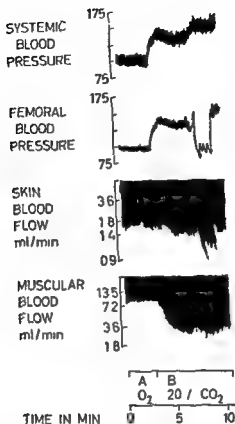


Fig 13 Cat 3.0 kg Venous outflow from the skinned hind leg (muscle blood flow) and from the paw (skin blood flow) during ventilation with  $O_2$  (A) and 20%  $CO_2$  in  $O_2$  (B). During the acrotic period the arterial inflow to the legs is partly occluded during 1½ min.

the muscle vessels. It seemed conceivable that the induced acidosis might cause an uneven vasoconstriction in these two vascular beds leading to an altered distribution of the arterial blood stream and the injected noradrenaline. This could probably interfere with the overall effect of noradrenaline on the perfused leg. Before the results were interpreted it was therefore necessary to investigate whether such a changed distribution of blood really took place.

In the first experiments carried out the venous outflow from skin and muscle vascular beds were measured simultaneously. It was then observed that during respiratory acidosis the blood flow through the muscle vascular bed was markedly reduced in spite of the increased systemic blood pressure.

On the other hand the skin blood flow either remained unchanged or increased (Fig 13). The small vasoconstriction in the skin vascular bed in Fig 13 is not revealed until the arterial loop is partially clamped reducing the blood pressure to the same value as before the induction of the acidosis.

In experiments employing the constant flow perfusion technique this uneven degree of vasoconstriction led to a changed distribution of the blood stream from the muscle vessels to the skin. In the intact hind leg the venous outflow from the paw thus increased 100—130% during ventilation with 20% CO. After section of the sympathetic nerves to the perfused leg this type of changed distribution of the blood flow did not occur.

### 3 Discussion

Respiratory acidosis is known to exert many different actions on the circulatory system. The overall effect, as reflected by the systemic blood pressure, represents a balance between three components. First, a direct peripheral vasodilating effect (BAYLISS 1901, FLFISCH 1921, ILFISCH et al 1932, McDOWALL 1930, HERMANN, MORIN and VIAL 1935, SCHNEIDER and WILDBOLZ 1937, STECK and GELLHORN 1939). Second, a vasoconstrictor effect initiated from the vasomotor centre (HYMANS, NOWAK and SAMAN 1934, McDOWALL 1935, GELLHORN and LAMBERT 1939) and third, to a lesser extent, a vasoconstrictor effect exerted via the chemoreceptors (HYMANS et al 1932, HYMANS and BOUCKAERT 1933, BERNTHAL 1938). The usual result reported of the effect of respiratory acidosis is an increase in systemic blood pressure, this is also the finding of the present investigation. It is known, however, that an increasing depth of narcosis can diminish or even reverse the blood pressure reaction brought about by an excess of CO due to depression of the vasomotor center allowing the peripheral vasodilator action to predominate (CATHCART and CLARK 1914, GILLHORN and LAMBERT 1939). It is possible that the decrease in the number of animals reacting with an increase in systemic blood pressure during respiratory acidosis in the sympathetically denervated cats can be attributed to a deeper narcosis than in the un denervated group. It might also be attributed to the denervation of the adrenal glands.

In cats pretreated with reserpine a decrease in systemic blood pressure was obtained during acidosis. This is in accordance with earlier observations for example on cats treated with ergotamine (eg LILJE and LILJESTRAND 1946) or on dogs subjected to total sympathectomy (PAUF and OLIMSTED 1951).

The pronounced bradycardia observed in reserpine treated animals at the induction of respiratory acidosis indicates that sympathetic nerves may play some role in the performance of the heart during acidosis. This confirms earlier results obtained in the denervated heart lung preparation of dogs (NATHAN and CAVERT 1957). It is interesting to observe, however, that if the respiratory acidosis is gradually induced the reserpine treated cats survived exposure to 20% CO<sub>2</sub>.

The decreased systemic blood pressure responses to i.v. noradrenaline injections during respiratory acidosis confirms the findings of previous workers (for references see chapter I). However, these former studies have not been quantitative and so although the results are similar qualitatively it is not possible to say whether or not there is any quantitative difference between their work and the present work.

The reactivity of the perfused vascular beds to noradrenaline decreased during acidosis and the decrease was related to the degree of acidosis. It was however smaller than and can probably only partly explain the decreased systemic blood pressure responses observed along with periods of acidosis.

Two recent investigations NASH and HEATH (1961) and BYGDEMAN and ELLER (1962) reported a diminished effect of noradrenaline in the vascular beds perfused by the carotid artery of the dog and the femoral artery of the cat during acidosis. At variance with the results obtained in the present study FLEISHMAN et al (1957) using the dog foreleg and BOHR and McVALCH (1959) and BOHR (1962) using the rat and rabbit hind legs observed an unchanged or even increased degree of vasoconstriction following i.a. injections of noradrenaline or adrenaline during periods of respiratory acidosis. This difference might in the case of FLEISHMAN et al be explained by the short time of exposure to 20% CO<sub>2</sub> (7½ minutes) they used. Even if this time was enough to allow the main change in arterial blood pH to occur it is probable that it is too short to alter the vascular reactivity. As regards the studies of BOHR and McVALCH and BOHR no information is given about the time of exposure to the different changes in pH. However in their experiments modified Krebs's solution was used for the perfusion and it is possible that the relative degree of tissue hypoxia associated with this perfusion technique may have interfered with the vascular reactivity. Of course it is also conceivable that the discrepancy may be explained by species differences and until further information is available a discussion of this problem can be only speculative.

The change in vascular reactivity differed quantitatively in the different vascular beds and it is interesting to note that the muscle vessels which are normally exposed to a local decrease in pH during muscular work preserved

On the other hand the skin blood flow either remained unchanged or increased (Fig 13). The small vasoconstriction in the skin vascular bed in Fig 13 is not revealed until the arterial loop is partially clamped reducing the blood pressure to the same value as before the induction of the acidosis.

In experiments employing the constant flow perfusion technique this uneven degree of vasoconstriction led to a changed distribution of the blood stream from the muscle vessels to the skin. In the intact hind leg the venous outflow from the paw thus increased 100—130% during ventilation with 20% CO. After section of the sympathetic nerves to the perfused leg this type of changed distribution of the blood flow did not occur.

### 3 Discussion

Respiratory acidosis is known to exert many different actions on the circulatory system. The overall effect, as reflected by the systemic blood pressure, represents a balance between three components. First, a direct peripheral vasodilating effect (BAVJSS 1901, FLEISCH 1921, FLEISCH *et al* 1932, McDOWALL 1930, HERMANN, MORIN and VIAL 1935, SCHLIDER and WILDBOLZ 1937, STECK and GELLHORN 1939). Second, a vasoconstrictor effect initiated from the vasomotor centre (HEYMANS NOWAK and SAMIAN 1934, McDOWALL 1935, GILLHORN and LAMBERT 1939) and third, to a lesser extent, a vasoconstrictor effect exerted via the chemoreceptors (HEYMANS *et al* 1932, HEYMANS and BOUCKAERT 1933, BERNTHAL 1938). The usual result reported of the effect of respiratory acidosis is an increase in systemic blood pressure, this is also the finding of the present investigation. It is known, however, that an increasing depth of narcosis can diminish or even reverse the blood pressure reaction brought about by an excess of CO due to depression of the vasomotor center allowing the peripheral vasodilator action to predominate (CATHCART and CLARK 1914, GELLHORN and LAMBERT 1939). It is possible that the decrease in the number of animals reacting with an increase in systemic blood pressure during respiratory acidosis in the sympathetically denervated cats can be attributed to a deeper narcosis than in the un-denervated group. It might also be attributed to the denervation of the adrenal glands.

In cats pretreated with reserpine a decrease in systemic blood pressure was obtained during acidosis. This is in accordance with earlier observations for example on cats treated with ergotamine (e.g. FLICK and LILJESTRAND 1946) or on dogs subjected to total sympathectomy (PACI and OLMSTED 1951).

The difference between the results obtained in the innervated and denervated skinned hind leg preparations cannot be explained by a changed distribution of the blood flow. In chapter III it was shown however that an increased tone in a perfused muscle vascular bed could decrease the effect of i.a. injections of noradrenaline. It is probable that the difference between the innervated and denervated skinned hind leg preparations mentioned can at least partly be explained by the nervous vasoconstriction elicited by the acidosis only in the innervated preparation. To what extent this mechanism might explain the difference between the sympathetically innervated and denervated whole leg preparations has not been defined but it is thought that it will play some role.

their reactivity better than the other vascular beds studied in this investigation

There was a significant difference between the decrease in reactivity observed in the skinned hind leg and the decrease found in the unskinned hind leg preparation during acidosis. This at first seemed difficult to explain even although one assumed that during respiratory acidosis the reactivity of the skin vessels was more diminished than the reactivity of the muscle vessels. In two parallel coupled vascular beds as in the hind leg, the reactivity of the muscle vascular bed, through which most of the blood flows, will largely determine the vascular reactivity of the whole leg. What happens to the reactivity of the skin vessels will be less important. The changed distribution of the blood flow, observed in the intact leg preparation during acidosis, will naturally change this picture so that a marked decrease in the reactivity of the skin vessels will now influence the vascular reactivity of the whole leg more than would be expected with the original distribution of the blood flow between skin and muscle vessels.

A concomitant constriction of muscle vessels and dilatation of skin vessels during periods of respiratory acidosis has been reported earlier in dogs and cats (BETZ 1962), in rats (TAKACS and KALLAY 1963) and in humans (MCARDLE and RODDIE 1958). The same pattern can also be obtained in nonanesthetized animals (BETZ 1962) and humans (MCARDLE et al 1957). It has further been shown by FOLKOW, JOHANSSON and LOFVING (1961) that during reflex activation of the sympathetic nervous system, vasoconstrictor nerves to different vascular beds can be activated independently.

It will perhaps be claimed that the changed distribution of the blood obtained in the perfusion experiments on the unskinned leg is an artifact due to the constant blood flow. Also, Fig. 13 does not show an increased blood flow through the skin vessels. However, even in this case, the relationship between the skin and muscle blood flow changed from  $1/5$  to  $1/2$  during acidosis. This means that in this case also the importance of the changes in the resistance of the skin vessels, in accounting for the total vascular resistance of the leg, had increased considerably, even if the absolute volume of blood flow had not increased.

The decrease in vascular reactivity to noradrenaline observed during acidosis in the sympathetically denervated skinned and unskinned hind legs was less than in the same preparations with an intact nervous supply. The results obtained in the denervated skinned leg and in the denervated unskinned leg preparations were still significantly different in spite of the fact that the requirements for a changed distribution of the blood flow did not exist. This gives further support for the assumption that the reactivity of skin vessels is more decreased than that of muscle vessels during acidosis.



The difference between the results obtained in the innervated and denervated skinned hind leg preparations cannot be explained by a changed distribution of the blood flow. In chapter III it was shown, however, that an increased tone in a perfused muscle vascular bed could decrease the effect of small injections of noradrenaline. It is probable that the difference between the innervated and denervated skinned hind leg preparations mentioned can at least partly be explained by the nervous vasoconstriction elicited by the acidosis only in the innervated preparation. To what extent this mechanism might explain the difference between the sympathetically innervated and denervated whole leg preparations has not been defined but it is thought that it will play some role.

their reactivity better than the other vascular beds studied in this investigation

There was a significant difference between the decrease in reactivity observed in the skinned hind leg and the decrease found in the unskinned hind leg preparation during acidosis. This at first seemed difficult to explain even although one assumed that during respiratory acidosis the reactivity of the skin vessels was more diminished than the reactivity of the muscle vessels. In two parallel coupled vascular beds as in the hind leg, the reactivity of the muscle vascular bed, through which most of the blood flows, will largely determine the vascular reactivity of the whole leg. What happens to the reactivity of the skin vessels will be less important. The changed distribution of the blood flow, observed in the intact leg preparation during acidosis, will naturally change this picture so that a marked decrease in the reactivity of the skin vessels will now influence the vascular reactivity of the whole leg more than would be expected with the original distribution of the blood flow between skin and muscle vessels.

A concomitant constriction of muscle vessels and dilatation of skin vessels during periods of respiratory acidosis has been reported earlier in dogs and cats (BETZ 1962), in rats (TAKACS and KALLAY 1963) and in humans (MCARDLE and RODDIE 1958). The same pattern can also be obtained in nonanesthetized animals (BETZ 1962) and humans (MCARDLE et al 1957). It has further been shown by GOLKOW, JOHANSSON and LÖVING (1961) that during reflex activation of the sympathetic nervous system, vasoconstrictor nerves to different vascular beds can be activated independently.

It will perhaps be claimed that the changed distribution of the blood obtained in the perfusion experiments on the unskinned leg is an artifact due to the constant blood flow. Also, Fig. 13 does not show an increased blood flow through the skin vessels. However, even in this case, the relationship between the skin and muscle blood flow changed from  $1/5$  to  $1/2$  during acidosis. This means that in this case also the importance of the changes in the resistance of the skin vessels, in accounting for the total vascular resistance of the leg, had increased considerably, even if the absolute volume of blood flow had not increased.

The decrease in vascular reactivity to noradrenaline observed during acidosis in the sympathetically denervated skinned and unskinned hind legs was less than in the same preparations with an intact nervous supply. The results obtained in the denervated skinned leg and in the denervated unskinned leg preparations were still significantly different in spite of the fact that the requirements for a changed distribution of the blood flow did not exist. This gives further support for the assumption that the reactivity of skin vessels is more decreased than that of muscle vessels during acidosis.

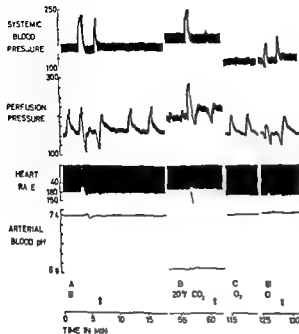


Fig 14 Cat 2.5 kg Atropine 0.2 mg/kg i.v. Left hind leg perfused at a constant blood flow of 7.2 ml/min. Systemic and perfusion pressure responses to i.v. and i.a. (to the perfused leg) injections of noradrenaline and bilateral occlusion of the common carotid arteries during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>. 1 i.a. injection of 0.075 µg/kg noradrenaline 2 carotid occlusion test 3 i.v. injection of 0.5 µg/kg noradrenaline

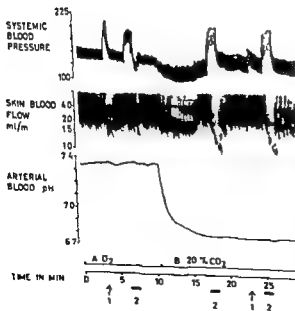


Fig 15 Cat 2.0 kg Atropine 0.2 mg/kg i.v. Skin (paw) blood flow and systemic blood pressure responses to i.v. injections of noradrenaline (1 µg/kg at 1) and bilateral occlusion of the common carotid arteries (2) during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>.

## CHAPTER V

### THE EFFECT OF OTHER VASOCONSTRICTOR STIMULI DURING RESPIRATORY ACIDOSIS

The vasoconstrictor effect of carotid occlusion and stimulation of the sympathetic chain were studied in the perfused hind leg before and during exposure to respiratory acidosis, and they were compared to the effect of noradrenaline. The influence of respiratory acidosis on the vasoconstrictor effect of angiotensin was also evaluated in the unskinned hind leg.

In the experiments where the skin blood flow (from the paw) was measured this was made with a drop recorder on the venous side in the same way as described in chapter IV.

#### I Results

##### *Carotid occlusion*

The systemic blood pressure response to bilateral occlusion of the common carotid arteries was found to remain almost unchanged during periods of respiratory acidosis (ventilation with 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub>). On the other hand the pressor effect of i.v. noradrenaline injections decreased in the same experiments in the usual way (Fig. 14). In the perfused hind leg during acidosis occlusion of the common carotid arteries caused a similar response as during the control period, while, at the same time the effect of noradrenaline was diminished as reported in the preceding chapter (Fig. 14).

The venous outflow from the paw of the hind leg was measured in another series of experiments (6 cats), together with the systemic blood pressure and arterial blood pH (Fig. 15). The systemic blood pressure response to occlusion of the carotid arteries and i.v. injections of noradrenaline changed during acidosis as described in the preceding paragraph. The skin blood flow, however, which remained unchanged during occlusion of the carotid arteries at a normal pH, decreased when the same test was repeated during acidosis (Fig. 15). This decrease in blood flow could not always be obtained but was clearly seen in 3 out of 6 experiments.

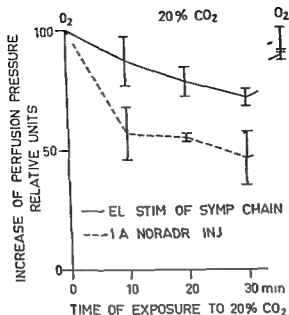


Fig 17 Perfusion pressure responses to 1a injections of noradrenaline and electrical stimulation of the ipsilateral sympathetic chain in the perfused unskinned hind leg during ventilation with O (control periods) and 20% CO in O. The pressure responses are given in relative units; control response = 100. Each point represents a mean value from results obtained in 4–6 cats. Standard error of means are also given.

In Fig 17 the perfusion pressure responses induced by 1a injections of noradrenaline and sympathetic chain stimulation are plotted against time of exposure to 20% CO. The dose of noradrenaline and the frequency of stimulation were chosen so that in each cat the effect on the perfusion pressure was almost equal during the control period. The different change in reactivity was significant at the 5% level ( $p < 0.05$ ). To obtain the same increase in the perfusion pressure during ventilation with 20% CO in O as during the control period the noradrenaline doses had to be increased 3.7 times (range 2.0–6.2) and the stimulation frequencies 1.5 times (range 1.3–1.8) ( $p < 0.02$ ).

### Angiotensin

The vasoconstrictor effect of angiotensin was tested before and during respiratory acidosis using the sympathetically innervated (4 cats) and denervated hind leg preparations (4 cats). The dose of angiotensin was in the

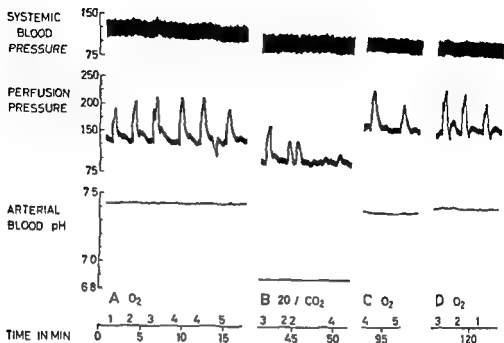


Fig 16 Cat 3.6 kg Atropine 0.2 mg/kg i.v. Left hind leg perfused with a constant blood flow of 12.3 ml/min

Perfusion pressure responses to electrical stimulation of the left sympathetic chain at the midlumbar level and i.a. noradrenaline injections during ventilation with  $O_2$  (control periods A, C and D) and 20%  $CO_2$  in  $O_2$  (B)

- 1 el stimulation 5 V 0.2 imp/sec duration 30 sec
- 2 el stimulation 5 V, 0.4 imp/sec duration 30 sec
- 3 el stimulation 5 V 0.8 imp/sec duration 30 sec
- 4 i.a. injection of noradrenaline 0.007  $\mu\text{g/kg}$
- 5 i.a. injection of noradrenaline 0.004  $\mu\text{g/kg}$

### *Electrical stimulation of the sympathetic vasoconstrictor nerves*

Electrical stimulation of the sympathetic chain at the midlumbar level was employed in 6 cats to obtain a more defined stimulation, than reflex activation of the vasoconstrictor nerves leading to the ipsilateral hind leg. The perfusion pressure responses were compared with those of i.a. injections of noradrenaline before and during respiratory acidosis. Fig. 16 shows examples from an experiment of this kind. An i.a. injection of noradrenaline of 0.007  $\mu\text{g/kg}$  b.w. (at 4, section A) gave, in this experiment, a perfusion pressure response, which equalled stimulation of the sympathetic chain with a frequency of 0.8 imp/sec (at 3 section A) during ventilation with oxygen. During ventilation with 20%  $CO_2$  the effect of i.a. injections of noradrenaline was almost abolished while the pressor response induced by electrical stimulation decreased less.

and pulse pressures observed during acidosis. Both these changes will tend to increase the systemic and perfusion pressure responses to occlusion of the common carotid arteries (HEYMANS and NEIL 1958). It is difficult to believe however, that this is enough to compensate the decreased reactivity of the circulatory system found during ventilation with 20% CO<sub>2</sub> (chapter IV) when tested with iv injections of noradrenaline.

LOFVING (1961) reported that bilateral occlusion of the common carotid arteries induces a greater constriction of the muscle vessels than of the skin and intestinal vessels and leaves the tonus of the renal vessels unchanged. FOLKOW, JOHANSSON and LOFVING (1961) suggested that this discrepancy could be explained by different thresholds to excitatory stimuli between the different medullary neuron pools controlling these functionally different vascular beds. They showed that other excitatory impulses can so affect the excitability of inactive neuron pools that they may be activated by otherwise subthreshold stimuli. A decrease in ventilation thus changed the effect of a carotid occlusion on the renal vessels from that of no change in tonus to a marked vasoconstriction. The same change in reactivity pattern could be observed in the present study in a skin vascular bed during respiratory acidosis. This indicated that an accumulation of CO<sub>2</sub> even without a concomitant hypoxia might constitute an excitatory stimulus of the kind mentioned above.

In the preceding paragraphs some explanations have been discussed for the unchanged pressor responses to bilateral occlusion of the common carotid arteries during respiratory acidosis. These explanations will all result in an increased vasoconstrictor discharge during carotid occlusion at a low pH in comparison with that induced at a normal pH possibly compensating the decreased cardiovascular reactivity.

Another way to explain the unchanged pressor responses to carotid occlusion during acidosis is to assume that the effect of injected noradrenaline is influenced by respiratory acidosis in a way different from the locally released transmitter. The experiments in which electrical stimulation of the sympathetic chain were performed suggested that such a difference can be recognized. To my knowledge no earlier study has been made on the effect of vasoconstrictor nerve stimulation during respiratory acidosis. BURGET and CRISLER (1927) have observed however that the systemic blood pressure response to electrical stimulation of the sympathetic cord in the neck diminished during periods of decreased ventilation.

It is difficult to believe that the difference in result between nerve stimulation and iv injections of noradrenaline can be due to a changed excitability of the nerves since a supramaximal voltage strength has been used. But if there is a change in the excitability of the nerves then one would ex-

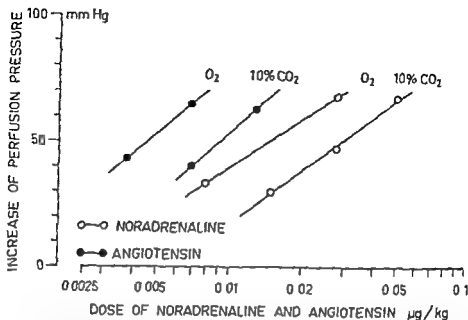


Fig. 18 Cat 3.0 kg. Dose response curves obtained with i.a. injections of angiotensin and noradrenaline in the perfused sympathetically denervated unskinned hind leg during ventilation with O<sub>2</sub> (control period) and 10% CO<sub>2</sub> in O. Note the equal horizontal distance between corresponding angiotensin and noradrenaline curves.

innervated group 0.005 μg/kg (range 0.003—0.008) and in the denervated group 0.017 μg/kg (range 0.004—0.038). The perfusion pressure responses decreased during induced respiratory acidosis (ventilation with 10 and 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O) to a similar extent as had earlier been shown for noradrenaline. To keep the response unchanged during acidosis the dose of angiotensin had to be increased to a similar degree as noradrenaline (Fig. 18).

## 2 Discussion

The striking difference between the well maintained blood pressure responses to bilateral occlusion of the common carotid arteries and the decreased effect of injected noradrenaline during acidosis is somewhat surprising in view of the general assumption that the effect of carotid occlusion on the cardiovascular system is mediated by the adrenergic neurotransmitter. DUNER and EULFR (1959) observed the same difference when studying the systemic blood pressure responses of i.v. noradrenaline injections during periods of reduced ventilation in the cat.

This difference may partly be explained by the increased systemic blood



## CHAPTER VI

### THE VASOCONSTRICTOR EFFECT OF NORADRENALINE DURING RESPIRATORY ALKALOSIS AND NON RESPIRATORY CHANGES IN THE ACID BASE BALANCE OF THE BLOOD

The vasoconstrictor effect of noradrenaline was recorded in the perfused skinned hind leg of the cat a) during respiratory alkalosis b) during non respiratory alkalosis induced by infusion of 0.6 M  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  c) during shifts in the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension of the blood. In the latter case the pH of the blood was kept constant by infusion of 0.2 M HCl.

The ipsilateral sympathetic chain was cut so that variations in the systemic blood pressure concomitant with the acid base shifts would not cause reflex changes in the peripheral resistance of the perfused vascular bed.

#### 1 Results

The mean arterial blood flow to the perfused leg was 8.3 ml/min (range 4.7—10.4). The dose of noradrenaline which had to be injected i.a. to increase the perfusion pressure 50 (40—60) mm Hg had a mean of 0.079 (range 0.015—0.38).

##### *Respiratory alkalosis*

The effect of respiratory alkalosis was investigated in 10 cats. These were divided into two groups with 5 cats in each. The degree of hyperventilation was adjusted to give a mean arterial blood pH of 7.56 (range 7.52—7.63) in the first group and a mean arterial blood pH of 7.80 (range 7.71—8.00) in the second group. The mean end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$  tension decreased from 40 mm Hg (38—41) to 19 (17—20) and 13 mm Hg (11—16). The rate and volume of respiration were kept constant during both the control period and the period of alkalosis. During the control period the pH and  $\text{CO}_2$  values were kept normal by the addition of 3—5%  $\text{CO}_2$  to the inhaled oxygen.

Respiratory alkalosis usually caused a decrease in both the systemic and perfusion blood pressures. The perfusion pressure decrease was in mean 8

pect a decrease in the nerve excitability, since it has been shown that respiratory acidosis decreases the excitability of peripheral nerves (LORENTZ DE NO 1947, MONNIER 1952, CORAPOEUF 1951, 1954)

Decreased systemic blood pressure responses to angiotensin during acidosis has earlier been observed by PAGE and OLMSTED (1951) and MIESMANN et al (1961). The present experiments show that this decreased effect could partly be explained by a decrease in peripheral vascular reactivity to about the same extent as has been shown for noradrenaline.

HALPERN (1956 a and b), HALPERN, MAYER and BURNARD (1956) and HALPERN et al (1959) reported that "respiratory acidosis" decreased the contractions induced by histamine in the isolated guinea pig ileum and by acetylcholine in the uterus from rat, rabbit and guinea pig. The effect of other stimulating substances tested was not affected, however. These results indicate that the effect of the acidosis is specific and only influences the sensitivity of cellular receptors for certain substances and not the ability of the smooth muscle itself to contract. As far as the vascular smooth muscle is concerned the results obtained in this present investigation do not give evidence for a decreased sensitivity of only one type of specific receptor. However, if it is accepted that respiratory acidosis will influence the action of circulating noradrenaline more than the locally released neurotransmitter, the factor causing this difference might influence the effect of other injected vasoconstrictor substances as well.

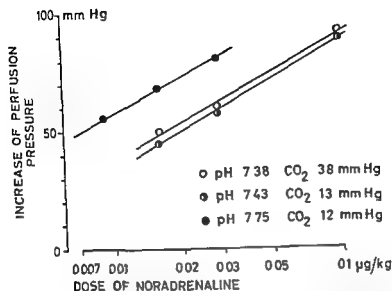


Fig. 21 Cat 4.3 kg. Dose response curves obtained with i.a. injections of noradrenaline in the perfused skinned hind leg. Sympathetic chain cut. ○—○ normal acid base balance, ◐—◐ compensated non respiratory acidosis, ●—● uncompensated respiratory alkalosis.

mm Hg (range —55— +20) in the first group and 13 mm Hg (range —40— +10) in the second group. The perfusion pressure response to the i.a. injection of noradrenaline was increased (Fig. 19). The results are summarized in Fig. 20.

#### *Compensated non respiratory acidosis*

In seven of the cats used in the experiments described in the preceding paragraph a corresponding decrease in  $\text{CO}_2$  tension was also induced while the arterial blood pH was kept constant. In four cats the effect of noradrenaline decreased or was unchanged while an increased effect was observed in three. Only in one of these three cats was the increase similar to that obtained during a subsequent alkalosis. Dose response curves from one experiment are shown in Fig. 21. In this case no change in reactivity was observed during compensated non respiratory acidosis. Respiratory alkalosis however shifted the dose response curve to the left as described above.

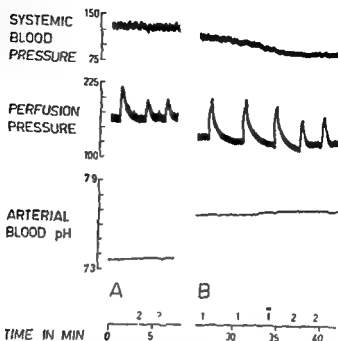


Fig 19 Cat 4.1 kg The skinned sympathetically denervated hind leg perfused with a constant blood flow of 8.7 ml/min Effect of respiratory alkalosis on the perfusion pressure responses to i.a. injections of noradrenaline A  $P_{CO_2}$  in end tidal air 41.1 mm Hg B  $P_{CO_2}$  in end tidal air 15.9 mm Hg

1 Noradrenaline injection i.a. 0.02  $\mu$ g/kg 2 Noradrenaline injection i.a. 0.006  $\mu$ g/kg

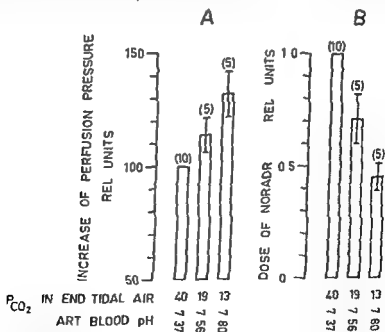


Fig 20 Effect of respiratory alkalosis on mean arterial blood pH mean end tidal  $CO_2$  tension and on the vascular reactivity of the perfused sympathetically denervated skinned hind leg A The bars indicate in relative units the perfusion pressure responses to noradrenaline Control response = 100 B The bars indicate in relative units the dose of noradrenaline which had to be injected i.a. to give a perfusion pressure response of 50

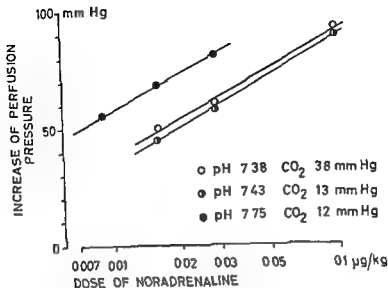


Fig 21 Cat 4.3 kg Dose response curves obtained with i.a. injections of noradrenaline in the perfused skinned hind leg Sympathetic chain cut ○—○ normal acid base balance ◐—◐ compensated non respiratory acidosis ●—● uncompensated respiratory alkalosis

mm Hg (range —55— +20) in the first group and 13 mm Hg (range —40 — +10) in the second group The perfusion pressure response to the i.a. injection of noradrenaline was increased (Fig 10) The results are summarized in Fig 20

#### *Compensated non respiratory acidosis*

In seven of the cats used in the experiments described in the preceding paragraph a corresponding decrease in CO<sub>2</sub> tension was also induced while the arterial blood pH was kept constant In four cats the effect of noradrenaline decreased or was unchanged while an increased effect was observed in three Only in one of these three cats was the increase similar to that obtained during a subsequent alkalosis Dose response curves from one experiment are shown in Fig 21 In this case no change in reactivity was observed during compensated non respiratory acidosis Respiratory alkalosis however shifted the dose response curve to the left as described above

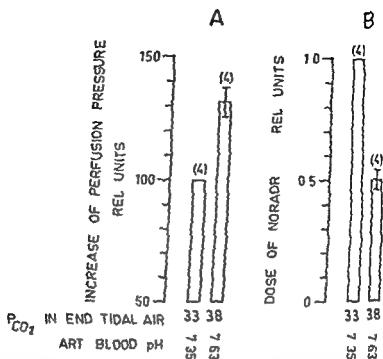


Fig 22 Effect of non respiratory alkalosis on mean arterial blood pH mean end tidal  $CO_2$  tension and on the vascular reactivity of the perfused sympathetically denervated skinned hind leg

A The bars indicate in relative units the perfusion pressure responses to noradrenaline. Control response = 100

B The bars indicate in relative units the dose of noradrenaline which had to be injected i.a. to give a perfusion pressure of 50 mm Hg. Control dose = 1

### Non respiratory alkalosis

During a period of non respiratory alkalosis (4 cats) the effect of noradrenaline increased (Fig 22). In two of the cats this was however preceded by a transient decrease in the effect of noradrenaline. The mean end tidal  $CO_2$  tension changed from 33 mm Hg (range 32—33) to 38 mm Hg (36—39). Arterial blood pH increased from 7.35 (7.34—7.36) to 7.63 (7.58—7.65). The perfusion pressure decreased at the induction of the alkalosis. The decrease was 14 mm Hg (range —35—+25) at the time when the test doses of noradrenaline were given.

## 2 Discussion

In the present experiments a period of respiratory alkalosis regularly decreased the systemic blood pressure. Previous reports of systemic blood pressure during respiratory alkalosis have been conflicting. This is perhaps not

surprising, since the periods of alkalosis have been induced in different ways and their degree and duration have varied markedly (cf BROWN 1953). However the usual finding in muscle vascular beds is a vasodilatation and it does not seem to matter whether the sympathetic nerve supply is intact or not (CLARKE 1952; BURVILL, HICKMAN and MCINTOSH 1954; RODDIE, SHEPHERD and WHELAN 1957). This is in agreement with the results of the present study. The dilating effect of non respiratory alkalosis on muscle vessels confirms earlier results on dogs (DEAL and GREEN 1954).

Respiratory alkalosis has been reported in dogs, to increase the effect of noradrenaline on the vascular bed perfused by the common carotid artery (NASH and HEATH 1961). In their work the increased effect of noradrenaline during alkalosis was partly explained by an increased vascular reactivity. On the other hand their results could also be explained by the marked decrease in flow through the vascular bed resulting in an increase in the local concentration of the injected noradrenaline.

Respiratory alkalosis has also been reported to decrease the response of the blood vessels to adrenaline in the isolated perfused rat hind leg (BOHR and McLAUGH 1959). However a period of alkalosis should induce a vasoconstriction of the skin vessels and dilate the muscle vessels—provided the results obtained in dogs (DEAL and GREEN 1954) and humans (CLARKE 1952) can be applied to rats. This would make the result of a comparison between the effect of 1  $\mu$ g noradrenaline injections at a normal and at an increased blood pH difficult to interpret since the distribution pattern of injected noradrenaline between skin and muscle vessels may have changed.

The increased effect of noradrenaline on the muscle vascular bed observed in the present study during alkalosis indicates that a change although small in vascular reactivity occurs. The increased effect of noradrenaline could not be explained by the vasodilatation during alkalosis (cf chapter IV) since this was too small and the change in reactivity was not correlated with the degree of dilatation in different experiments.

Both respiratory and non respiratory alkalosis increased the effect of noradrenaline. This suggests that it is the blood pH which is mainly responsible for the changes observed in vascular reactivity during acid base shifts in *in vivo*. Changes in CO<sub>2</sub> tension may thus influence the effect of noradrenaline through its ability to change the blood pH. The fact that a period of compensated non respiratory acidosis did not increase the effect of noradrenaline to the same extent as a period of respiratory alkalosis also favours this view.

Further evidence can be obtained from investigations dealing with the effect of noradrenaline on the systemic blood pressure during acid base shifts

Thus MERSMANN, BRAASCH and HILBERG (1961) reported an enhanced response to noradrenaline in dogs during respiratory acidosis when 5%  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  was infused. NATHAN et al (1960) made the same observation using 0.33 M tris hydroxymethylaminomethane buffer and adrenaline. MATTHEWS (1962) observed that the amount of noradrenaline necessary to keep the blood pressure normal in patients suffering from cardiac shock along with acidosis could be decreased if the acidosis was treated with  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ . However, PAGE and OLMSTED (1951) found unchanged systemic blood pressure responses to noradrenaline during non respiratory acidosis in dogs while a respiratory acidosis with the same pH shift diminished the effect of noradrenaline. RADER et al (1961) observed increased systemic blood pressure responses to adrenaline during non respiratory alkalosis in dogs, while during a period of respiratory alkalosis the effect remained unchanged. On the other hand the same group reported decreased systemic blood pressure responses to adrenaline both during respiratory and non respiratory acidosis (HOLLAND et al 1957, KEITH et al 1960).

Using isolated strips from rat aorta, TOBIAN et al (1959) observed a decrease in the noradrenaline induced contractions *in vitro* both during 'respiratory' and 'non respiratory' types of acidosis. This also speaks in favour of the causative role played by the pH.



## CHAPTER VII

### GENERAL DISCUSSION

The results presented have shown that a shift in the acid base balance of the blood as for example during a period of respiratory acidosis markedly influences the cardiovascular effects of vasoconstrictor stimuli. In the analysis special attention has been given to some vascular beds in the peripheral circulation. The analysis has also included the effects of other types of alterations in the acid base balance of the blood.

During a period of respiratory acidosis the systemic blood pressure responses to  $\alpha$  injections and infusions of noradrenaline markedly decreased. Also during the acidosis a diminished effect of injected noradrenaline was observed in some peripheral vascular beds. However this peripheral decrease was not enough to explain entirely the diminished effect of noradrenaline on the systemic blood pressure during acidosis. This difference may be explained by a decreased reactivity of the heart but it may also be accounted for by a decreased effect of noradrenaline on other vascular beds not investigated in the present study. It is thus not possible to evaluate the relative importance of the changed reactivity of the heart and the summed change in peripheral reactivity when attempting to explain the decreased effect of noradrenaline on the circulatory system during respiratory acidosis.

The results obtained indicate that the decreased vasoconstrictor effect of injected noradrenaline during respiratory acidosis can partly be attributed to the increased activity of the sympathetic nervous system. The influence of an increased sympathetic discharge on the effects of catecholamines during respiratory acidosis has been discussed in two earlier investigations.

PAGE and OLUFSEN (1951) who studied the effect of vasoconstrictor substances on the blood pressure suggested that the refractory state observed during respiratory acidosis was the result of inhibitor impulses emanating from stimulated sympathetic ganglia. This suggestion is not supported by the present findings since if this was the case a difference would have been found between the results obtained in the sympathetically denervated hind leg and in the hind leg of the animals treated with reserpine.

TANNEY (1956) on the other hand proposed from studies on the nictitat

ing membrane, that "much of the inhibition of response to administered adrenaline by CO was more apparent than real, because the CO tension itself served as a stimulus to raise the endogenous adrenaline titer and each subsequently administered test dose of adrenaline was then examined against a background of hormone action. Because of the ailinear shape of the adrenaline dose response curve this could be misinterpreted as inhibition. However, results both from earlier work (FOLKOW and ÖBERG 1959, LAWERTZ 1962, BILDEMAN unpublished observations) and from the present study indicate that as far as vascular reactivity is concerned the increase in tone induced by the activity in the sympathetic vasoconstrictor nerves is more important in explaining the decreased effect of noradrenaline than the increased background level of the transmitter.

During respiratory acidosis a vasoconstriction was obtained in a muscle vascular bed while an unchanged tone was seen in a skin vascular bed. This difference was probably due to a varying degree of activation, central and reflexogenic, of the different medullary neuron pools controlling these functionally different vascular beds. In the hind leg, perfused at a constant rate of flow this led to a redistribution of the blood from vessels with a well maintained reactivity (muscle vessels) to vessels with a more decreased reactivity (skin vessels). This constituted the second way observed by which the sympathetic activation during respiratory acidosis could decrease the effect of injected noradrenaline. It is probable that a changed distribution of the blood flow also occurs between other vascular beds during respiratory acidosis if results obtained in other species can be applied to cats. It has been shown for example that some vascular beds such as the cerebral (SOKOLOFF 1960) and mesenteric (BRICKNER et al 1956) dilate, while other e.g. leg (LI and GIBBS 1932, STICK and GELHORN 1939) contract during acidosis. If this is the case in cats it is probable that the overall effect of noradrenaline on the circulatory system will be increased or decreased depending on the reactivity of the vascular beds receiving the increased blood flow.

The results obtained in the present study during acid base shifts in the blood indicate that the change in vascular reactivity, which remains after sympathetic denervation, is mainly due to the shifts in H<sup>+</sup> ion concentration and not to changes in CO tension by itself. This is in agreement with results obtained *in vitro* by TOBIAN, MARTIN and EILERS (1959) on aortic strips from rats, which could not be confirmed by WILLIAMSON and MOORE (1960) using strips from rabbit aorta.

The decreased vascular reactivity usually observed during a period of marked compensated non respiratory acidosis also emphasizes the importance

of the pH of the blood in determining the response of a vascular bed to injected noradrenaline. During this type of acid base shift the buffer capacity of the blood is reduced. This will be followed by a decrease in the tissue and in the venous blood pH which is not apparent when arterial blood pH is measured.

In the experiments where end tidal  $\text{CO}_2$ -tension was continuously recorded together with arterial blood pH a lower  $\text{CO}_2$  tension than that considered by previous authors to be normal was regularly noticed at the start at the recordings. The  $\text{CO}_2$  tension was therefore adjusted to this supposedly normal value by reducing the ventilation and iv infusion of  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (chapter III). In a recent study (FRANK and SCHOOLMAN 1963) it has been argued however that the normal acid base balance of cats is characterized by a  $\text{CO}_2$ -tension of 28 mm Hg (range 22—33.6) at an arterial blood pH of 7.38 (7.28—7.45) that is the same as the values observed initially in the experiments in the present study (chapter III). The difference in  $\text{CO}_2$ -tension will not, however, invalidate the conclusion that the change in reactivity to injected noradrenaline which occurs in a sympathetically denervated vascular bed during acid base shifts is more closely correlated to a change in pH than to a change in  $\text{CO}_2$  tension.

Earlier studies have shown that other effects of catecholamines are also hindered during a period of respiratory acidosis. The decreased effects have usually been attributed to the increased H ion concentration instead of the change in  $\text{CO}_2$ -tension. DARBY et al (1960) for instance have shown that the effect of noradrenaline on ventricular isometric tension is decreased during acidosis and that the change in reactivity of the heart is correlated to the pH change. It has further been reported that in dogs the increase in oxygen consumption which follows an injection of adrenaline is diminished during a period of apneic oxygenation. The effect reappeared however in spite of the still increased  $\text{CO}_2$ -tension when enough tris-hydroxymethylaminomethane (TRISAM) was given to normalize the blood pH (NAHAAS et al 1960). A similar rise in plasma adrenaline and noradrenaline was found by MORRIS and MILLAR (1962 a and b) during both respiratory and non respiratory acidosis. This indicates that the activation of the sympathetic nervous system during acidosis is mainly due to the pH change and not to the  $\text{CO}_2$  tension by itself.

On the other hand it seems as if the vascular smooth muscle in this respect behaves differently from some other types of smooth muscle. In a series of studies HALPERN (1956 a and b) and HALPERN et al (1956 and 1959) showed that *in vitro* the histamine induced contraction of the guinea pig ileum and the oxytocin induced contractions of the guinea pig rabbit and rat uterus diminished during a "respiratory acidosis". This decreased contrac-

tility was better correlated to the change in CO<sub>2</sub> tension than to the pH of the surrounding fluid

During a period of respiratory acidosis a marked and sustained vasoconstriction due to the acidosis may be observed in a perfused vascular bed. At the same time the vasoconstrictor effect of injected noradrenaline may be abolished. This puzzling observation could be explained by the finding that the vasoconstriction obtained in a perfused hind leg during sympathetic nerve stimulation is less impaired by a period of respiratory acidosis than the vasoconstrictor effect of injected noradrenaline. Since the relationship between the response of the perfusion pressure and the vascular reactivity is probably the same, whether the reactivity is tested with injected noradrenaline or with stimulation of the vasoconstrictor nerves, the difference in these responses during acidosis must be attributed to the different sites of 'administration' of noradrenaline. During nerve stimulation noradrenaline is liberated in close proximity to the receptor sites, while the noradrenaline in i.v. injections has to pass by a much longer route before it reaches the receptor. Respiratory acidosis may thus in some way change the fraction of injected noradrenaline reaching the receptors or the number of receptors reached. Whatever the factors involved in this mechanism one conclusion is that the ability of the vascular smooth muscle to contract *in vivo* is only slightly affected by a period of respiratory acidosis.

MALTESOS and HADJIMINAS (1956) have reported that in dogs a brief electrical stimulation of the sympathetic chain at the lumbar level will strongly inhibit the vasoconstrictor effect of noradrenaline for up to 5 minutes in the ipsilateral hind leg. After 5–10 minutes of sympathetic stimulation (cf. chapter III) a decreased vasoconstrictor effect of noradrenaline was sometimes observed in a muscle vascular bed although the effect always reappeared in a few minutes. In the experiments on the hind leg, however, where i.v. injections of noradrenaline were alternated with short periods of electric stimulation of the ipsilateral sympathetic chain the above phenomenon was not seen. It is therefore improbable that this can explain the different results obtained when the reactivity of a vascular bed during acidosis is tested with injected noradrenaline and stimulation of the vasoconstrictor nerves.

LEWIS and MUIRHEAD (1962) have reported that during a period of decreased blood flow through a muscle vascular bed in cats the vasoconstrictor effect of sympathetic nerve stimulation was abolished. From the results discussed in the above paragraphs it is likely that the decreased vasoconstrictor effect in their experiments is due not only to an acidosis but is partly due to the hypoxia.

In the present study it was observed that the systemic blood pressure response to an iv infusion of noradrenaline decreased markedly during ventilation with 20% CO<sub>2</sub> and a more than thirtyfold increase in the dose was necessary to restore the blood pressure response. If these results can be transferred to man it will be possible to draw some clinical implications.

A more or less severe degree of respiratory acidosis is not uncommon during general anesthesia. CO<sub>2</sub>-tensions in the blood ranging from 120 to 200 mm Hg have been reported (DRIPPS 1947, TAYLER and ROOS 1950, BUCKLEY et al 1953, STEPHEN BOURGEOIS-GAVARDIN and DENT 1959 and SCHULTZE et al 1960). That is about the same or even above the tensions recorded in the present study. In patients with acute respiratory disturbances a decrease in blood pH is also to be expected (e.g. MANFREDI et al 1960). It is unlikely that an infusion of noradrenaline as a means of raising a low blood pressure or improving an inadequate blood flow will be successful during these conditions unless the dose of noradrenaline is exceptionally high. This will not be without harm, however, since it has been shown that after a period of infusion with a high dose of noradrenaline the phenomenon of post infusion hypotension will appear (DUNER and EULER 1957 and 1959). This hypotension can make it difficult to discontinue the infusion.

Noradrenaline has been widely used in the treatment of different types of shock. Since the term shock has been applied to hypotensive states associated with virtually every conceivable mechanism affecting blood pressure it is not surprising that the beneficial effect of a treatment with noradrenaline can vary in different cases.

Favourable results of noradrenaline treatment are to be expected in hypotensive states due to intake of poisons or drugs such as barbiturates, since in these cases the failing vasomotor and cardiac nerve activity causing the hypotension can be replaced by the normal substance noradrenaline. However, it is also likely that a failing ventilation will be another symptom which will certainly interfere with the effect of noradrenaline.

In other types of shock such as hemorrhagic, oligemic and shock due to myocardial infarction the organism will probably respond to the hypotension with an activation of the sympatho-adrenal system with vasoconstriction and decreased regional blood flow. Under these circumstances the beneficial effect of noradrenaline treatment will be less obvious than during other hypotensive states which are due to failing vasomotor nerve activity, although it is widely used. In hemorrhagic and oligemic shock noradrenaline treatment may even prove harmful (NICKERSON 1962).

In these types of shock the disorder of the acid base balance to be expected is a non respiratory acidosis. Although the influence of a period of non re-

spiratory acidosis on the response of the blood pressure to injected noradrenaline has not been examined in the present study, the results obtained with other types of acid base disorder suggest that the effect of injected noradrenaline on a vascular bed changes along with changes in the blood pH. An increasing degree of acidosis may therefore constitute one of the reasons for the unsatisfactory response of the blood pressure to noradrenaline treatment, which sometimes can be observed clinically during prolonged shock states of these types. Although the change in response to injected noradrenaline observed in the sympathetically denervated skinned hind leg along with acid base shifts was small, it is conceivable that the longer time of exposure to the acidosis, which can be found under clinical conditions, will increase the significance of the acidosis in explaining the decreased effect of noradrenaline.

In shock states due to myocardial infarction treatment of the hypotension with noradrenaline have been reported to give favourable results (SAMPSON and ZIPSER 1954) probably due to the improved blood flow through the coronary arteries. In this case therefore it is important to obtain a satisfactory blood pressure response with as small a dose of noradrenaline as possible. Thus it is essential to correct first, any defect of acid base balance.

## SUMMARY

The aim of the present investigation was to study the mechanisms by which the cardiovascular effect of vasoconstrictor stimuli are modified during respiratory acidosis and primarily the behaviour of some vascular beds in the peripheral circulation

The reactivity (responsiveness) of peripheral vessels during acid base shifts was estimated in the following vascular beds perfused *in situ* using the cats own blood and with a constant flow perfusing technique a) muscle vessels (skinned hind leg) b) skin and muscle vessels (unskinned hind leg) and c) renal vessels (kidney)

Changes in reactivity during acid base shifts were determined either as the change in the pressor response of a vasoconstrictor stimulus or as the ratio between doses eliciting the same pressor response both during the control period and during a period of changed acid base balance

Respiratory acidosis decreased the systemic blood pressure responses to injected noradrenaline and the decrease was correlated with the degree of acidosis To induce the same pressor response during ventilation with 20% CO<sub>2</sub> in O<sub>2</sub> as during a control period the dose of noradrenaline had to be increased 37 times

The decreased effect of noradrenaline on the cardiovascular system could partly be explained by a decreased reactivity of the perfused vascular beds The decrease in response to noradrenaline of the peripheral vessels was most marked in the unskinned leg less in the kidney and least in the skinned leg

The decreased reactivity of peripheral vascular beds (skinned and unskinned leg) during respiratory acidosis could partly be attributed to the activation of the sympathetic nervous system

The change in reactivity to injected noradrenaline which was observed in a sympathetically denervated vascular bed (skinned hind leg) during different types of acid base shifts of the blood was closely related to induced alterations in blood pH Changes in CO<sub>2</sub> tension of the blood affected vascular reactivity mainly through its ability to change pH

The effect of injected angiotensin was decreased during acidosis to the same degree as noradrenaline

spiratory acidosis on the response of the blood pressure to injected noradrenaline has not been examined in the present study, the results obtained with other types of acid base disorder suggest that the effect of injected noradrenaline on a vascular bed changes along with changes in the blood pH. An increasing degree of acidosis may therefore constitute one of the reasons for the unsatisfactory response of the blood pressure to noradrenaline treatment, which sometimes can be observed clinically during prolonged shock states of these types. Although the change in response to injected noradrenaline observed in the sympathetically denervated skinned hind leg along with acid base shifts was small, it is conceivable that the longer time of exposure to the acidosis, which can be found under clinical conditions, will increase the significance of the acidosis in explaining the decreased effect of noradrenaline.

In shock states due to myocardial infarction treatment of the hypotension with noradrenaline have been reported to give favourable results (Svarson and ZIPSER 1954) probably due to the improved blood flow through the coronary arteries. In this case therefore it is important to obtain a satisfactory blood pressure response with as small a dose of noradrenaline as possible. Thus it is essential to correct first, any defect of acid base balance.



## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The present investigation was carried out in the years 1960 to 1963 during the tenure of a research fellowship from Karolinska Institutet

I wish to express my sincere gratitude to Professor U S v Euler who has been my teacher, and under whose guidance it has been my privilege to work

I also wish to thank Mr Nils Åke Persson for his invaluable and skilful technical assistance

The investigation was supported by research grants from the Air Force Office of Scientific Research OAR through the European Office Aerospace Research United States Air Force (AF EOAR 62—14) The Swedish National Association for Heart and Chest Diseases Magnus Bergvalls stiftelse Svenska Sällskapet för Medicinsk Forskning Stiftelsen Lars Hiertas Minne and from Karolinska Institutet All these grants are gratefully acknowledged

I also wish to thank Pharmacia Ltd for generous supply of Rheomacrodex and Ciba Ltd for Hypertensin

The vasoconstriction caused by reflex activation or electrical stimulation of sympathetic vasoconstrictor nerves was less impaired during respiratory acidosis than the effect of injected noradrenaline. This indicates that the decreased vasoconstrictor effect of injected noradrenaline during respiratory acidosis cannot be explained only by a decreased ability of the vascular smooth muscles to contract. The fraction of the injected noradrenaline which reaches the receptors in an active state may also have changed.

Some clinical implications of the results are briefly discussed.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The present investigation was carried out in the years 1960 to 1963 during the tenure of a research fellowship from Karolinska Institutet

I wish to express my sincere gratitude to Professor U S v Euler, who has been my teacher, and under whose guidance it has been my privilege to work

I also wish to thank Mr Nils-Åke Persson for his invaluable and skilful technical assistance

The investigation was supported by research grants from the Air Force Office of Scientific Research OAR through the European Office Aerospace Research United States Air Force (AF EOAR 62—14), The Swedish National Association for Heart and Chest Diseases Magnus Bergvalls stiftelse Svenska Sällskapet för Medicinsk Forskning Stiftelsen Lars Hiertas Minne and from Karolinska Institutet All these grants are gratefully acknowledged

I also wish to thank Pharmacia Ltd for generous supply of Rheomacrodex and Ciba Ltd for Hypertensin



# REFERENCES

- ALDAY REDONNET T Sensibilisierung des Trendelenburgschen Froschpräparates zur Adrenalinmessung *Biochem Z* 1920 110 306—318
- ALPERN D Die Abhängigkeit der kontraktilen Reaktion der peripheren Gefäße von der H-Ionenkonzentration in der durchstromenden Flüssigkeit *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1924 203 578—589
- BALINT A and J GOLDSCHMIDT Klinisch experimentelle Studien über die Zerstörung des Adrenalins im menschlichen Körper *Jb Kinderheilk* 1972 99 252—267
- BALLISS W M The action of carbon dioxide on blood vessels *J Physiol (Lond)* 1901 26 32—33
- BERNHART T Chemo-reflex control of vascular reactions through the carotid body *Amer J Physiol* 1938 121 1—20
- BETZ F Die Wirkung von Kohlendioxidinhalationen auf die Durchblutung von Myokard Gehirn Skelettmuskulatur und Haut *Archiv für physikalische Therapie* 1967 14 53—60
- BOHR DF In Shock pathogenesis and therapy *Springer Verlag Berlin* 1967 ■ 207
- BOHR DF and R B McALGH Influence of pH on vascular response *The Physiologist* 1959 2 12—13
- BREHM T and G POPOVICU Beiträge zum Tetanieproblem *Z ges exp Med* 1976 57 579—594
- BRICKNER EW EC DOWDS B WILLITS and EE SELKURT Mesenteric blood flow as influenced by progressive hypercapnia *Amer J Physiol* 1956 184 275—281
- BROWN JR EB Physiological effects of hyperventilation *Physiol Rev* 1953 33 445—471
- BUCKLEY JJ FH van BERGEN AB DORRIN EB BROWN JR FA MILLER and RL VARCO Postanesthetic hypotension following cyclopropane its relationship to hypercapnia *Anesthesiology* 1953 14 226—237
- BURGET GE and G CRILLER Relation of the pH of the blood to the irritability of the vasoconstrictor mechanism *Amer J Physiol* 1927 88 373—376
- BURGET GE and MB VISSCHER Variations of the pH of the blood and the response of the vascular system to adenaline *Amer J Physiol* 1927 81 113—123
- BURNAM JF JB HICKMAN and HD MCINTOSH Effect of hypocapnia on arterial blood pressure *Circulation* 1934 ■ 89—95
- BURTON AC and RH STINSON The measurement of tension in vascular smooth muscle *J Physiol (Lond)* 1960 153 290—305
- BYGDEMANN S Reactivity of skin and muscular blood vessels to noradrenaline during induced respiratory acidosis in cats *Nature* 1963 a 197 491—492
- BYGDEMANN S Reactivity of cat skeletal muscle vessels to noradrenaline during induced changes in acid base balance of the blood *Acta physiol scand* 1963 b 59 suppl 213 p 24
- BYGDEMANN ■ Reactivity of cat skeletal muscle vessels to noradrenaline during induced respiratory alkalosis *Experimentia (Basel)* 1963 c 19 354—355
- BYGDEMANN S and US v EULER The effect of respiratory acidosis upon the peripheral vascular reactivity to noradrenaline in the cat. *Acta physiol scand* 1962 54 138—146
- CAMILL JJ and W J KOLFF Hemolysis caused by pumps in extracorporeal circulation (in vitro evaluation of pumps) *J appl Physiol* 1959 14 1039—1044

- CAMPBELL GS DB HOULE NW CRISP JR MH WEIL and EB BROWN JR Depressed response to intravenous sympathicomimetic agents in humans during acidosis *Dis Chest* 1958 33 18—22
- CATHCART EP and GH CLARK The influence of carbon dioxide on the heart in varying degrees of anaesthesia *J Physiol (Lond)* 1913—1914 47 393—406
- CLARKE RSJ Effect of voluntary overbreathing on blood flow through the human forearm *J Physiol (Lond)* 1952 118 537—544
- COLLIP JB Reversal of depressor action of small doses of adrenalin *Amer J Physiol* 1921 55 450—454
- CORABOEUF E L'action particuliere du CO sur le nerf myelinise et son independance a legard du pH *CR Soc Biol (Paris)* 1951 145 544—547
- CORABOEUF E, Analyse electrophysiologique de l'action de l'anhydride carbonique sur le nerf isole *J Physiol (Paris)* 1954 46 745—775
- DARBY TD EE ALDINGER RH GADSEN and WB THROWER Effects of metabolic acidosis on ventricular isometric systolic tension and the response to epinephrine and levarterenol *Circulat Res* 1960 8 1242—1253
- DEAL JR CP and HD GREEV Effects of pH on blood flow and peripheral resistance in muscular and cutaneous vascular beds in hind limb of pentobarbitalized dog *Circulat Res* 1954 2 148—154
- DRIPLS RD The immediate decrease in blood pressure seen at the conclusion of cyclopropane anesthesia cyclopropane shock *Anesthesiology* 1947 8 15—35
- DUNER H and US v EULER Secondary fall in blood pressure following noradrenaline infusion in the cat *Acta physiol scand* 1957 38 355—363
- DUNER H and US v EULER The effect of reduced ventilation on systemic blood pressure and blood flow in the hind part of the cat during infusion of noradrenaline *Acta physiol scand* 1959 46 201—208
- DUZAR J and G FRITZ Hyperventilations Alkalose und Adrenalinwirkung *Älin Hschr* 1924 3 2338—2341
- ELIASSON R and U SAMELIUS BROBERG The effect of various dextran fractions on the suspension stability of the blood after intravenous injections in cats *Acta physiol scand* 1963 58 211—215
- FULER U ■ and G IILJESTRAND The regulation of the blood pressure with special reference to muscular work *Acta physiol scand* 1946 12 279—300
- FINK BR and A SCHOOLMAN Arterial blood acid base balance in unrestrained waking cats *Proc Soc exp Biol (NY)* 1963 112 328—330
- FLFISCH A Die Wasserstoffionenkonzentration als peripher regulatorisches Agens der Blutversorgung *Z allg Physiol* 1921 19 269—334
- FLEISCH A I STELL and V PONOMAREV Über nutritive Kreislaufregulierung I Kohlensäure und Sauerstoffmangel als auslösende Reize *Pflug Arch ges Physiol* 1932 230 814—834
- FIFINCHMA M J SCOTT and FJ HADDEY Effect of pH change upon systemic large and small vessel resistance *Circulat Res* 1957 5 602—606
- FOLKOW ■ A critical study of some methods used in investigations on the blood circulation *Acta physiol scand* 1953 27 118—129
- FOLKOW B ■ JOHANSSON and ■ LILJING Aspects of functional differentiation of the sympatho adrenergic control of the cardiovascular system *Med Exp (Basel)* 1961 4 321—328
- FOLKOW B and B ÖBERG The effect of functionally induced changes of wall/lumen ratio of the vasoconstrictor response to standard amounts of vasoactive agents *Acta physiol scand* 1959 47 131—135
- GADDUM JH KA HAMFD DE HATHAWA and FF STEPHENS Quantitative studies on antagonists for 5 hydroxytryptamine *Quart J exp Physiol* 1955 40 47—74

- GELLHORN E and E H LAMBERT The vasomotor system in anoxia and asphyxia *The University of Illinois press Illinois* 1939
- GOLDSCHMIDT H and P LUNDGREN An electronic interval recorder for measuring peripheral blood flow and heart rate *J appl Physiol* 1962 17 169—171
- GREEN HD R \ LEWIS \ D \ICKER ON and AL HELLER Blood flow peripheral resistance and vascular tonus with observation on the relationship between blood flow and cutaneous temperature *Amer J Physiol* 1944 141 518—536
- HALPERN BN Inhibition reversible de la contraction histaminique et anaphylactique des muscles lisses de Cobaye par la substitution dans le milieu de survie de l'anhydride carbonique à l'oxygène moléculaire *CR Soc Biol (Paris)* 1956 a 150 505—506
- HALPERN BN Modalités et spécificité de l'action inhibitrice de l'anhydride carbonique sur la contraction histaminique des organes à muscles lisses *CR Soc Biol (Paris)* 1956 b 150 897—902
- HALPERN BN R BINAGHI M MAYER and C BUGNARD The mechanism of the inhibition by carbonic acid of the smooth muscle contraction produced by histamine and oxytocin *Brit J Pharmacol* 1959 14 19—25
- HALPERN BN M MAYER and C BUGNARD Inhibition de l'action de l'ocytocine sur la musculature utérine par l'anhydride carbonique Modalités et spécificité de cette action *CR Soc Biol (Paris)* 1956 150 2060—2063
- HERMANN H G MORIN and J VIAL Influence de l'acapnie et de l'hypercapnie sur les appareils vaso-moteurs périphériques *CR Soc Biol (Paris)* 1935 118 1446—1448
- HEYMANS C and J J BOUCKAERT Influence hypotensive de l'ergotamine et de l'acétylcholine sur la pression artérielle du chien en hypertension chronique expérimentale Inversion par l'ergotamine des effets vasomoteurs du CO<sub>2</sub> *CR Soc Biol (Paris)* 1933 112 717—719
- HEYMANS C J J BOUCKAERT US v EULER and L DALTREBANDE Sur la sensibilité réflexogène vasomotrice des vaisseaux artériels aux excitants chimiques *CR Soc Biol (Paris)* 1932 109 568—570
- HEYMANS C and E NEIL Reflexogenic areas of the cardiovascular system *J A Churchill Ltd* 1938
- HEYMANS C S J G NOWAK and A SAMAAH Sur l'action vasomotrice réflexe centrale et périphérique de l'acide carbonique de l'anoxémie et de l'asphyxie *CR Soc Biol (Paris)* 1934 117 248—251
- HOLLE DB M H WEIL E B BROWN JR and S G CAMPBELL Influence of respiratory acidosis on ECG and pressure responses to epinephrine norepinephrine and metaraminol *Proc Soc exp Biol (N Y)* 1957 94 561—564
- HULLE W Zur Frage der Blutdrucksteigerung 1 Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Bedingungen der Adrenalinwirkung *Z ges exp Med* 1922 40 240—267
- JERUSALEM E and E H STARLING On the significance of carbon dioxide for the heart beat *J Physiol (Lond)* 1910 40 279—294
- KEITH HB DD SNYDER and GS CAMPBELL Effect of metabolic acidosis on cardiac output and pressure responses to epinephrine *Trans Amer Soc artificial internal organs* 1960 11 275—279
- KJELLNER I The role of potassium ions in exercise hyperaemia *Med Exp (Basel)* 1961 5 56—60
- KROGH A and M KROGH On the tensions of gases in the arterial blood *Skand Ark Physiol* 1909—10 23 179—192
- LAVERY R Relation in rat hind limb blood vessels between nervous vasomotor tone and the response to vasoconstrictor drugs *Brit J Pharmacol* 1962 18 451—464

- LEITES S Die Bedeutung einiger Electrolyte für den Mechanismus der gefäßverengenden Wirkung des Adrenalins *Z ges exp Med* 1925 44 319—327
- LENNOX W G and L L GIBBS The blood flow in the brain and the leg of man and the changes induced by alternation of blood gases *J clin Invest* 1932 11 1155—1177
- LEWIS D H and S MEILANDER Competitive effects of sympathetic control and tissue metabolites on resistance and capacitance vessels and capillary filtration in skeletal muscle *Acta physiol scand* 1962 56 162 188
- LINDGREN P The mesencephalon and the vasomotor system An experimental study on the central control of peripheral blood flow in the cat *Acta physiol scand* 1955 35 suppl 121
- LINDGREN P An improved method for drop recording of arterial or venous blood flow *Acta physiol scand* 1958 41 5—11
- LORENTE DE NO R A study of nerve physiology *Stud Rockefeller Inst med Res* 1947 131
- LOFVING B Differentiated vascular adjustments reflexly induced by changes in the carotid baro- and chemoreceptor activity and by asphyxia *Med Exp (Basel)* 1961 4 307—312
- MALTESSON C and J HADJIMINIS Hemmung der Wirkung des Adrenalins und Arterenols durch Grenzstrangreizung *Abstr Communications 11 Int Physiol Congr (Brussels)* 1956 607—608
- MANFREDI F H O SIFKER A P SPOTO and H A SALTZMAN Severe carbon dioxide intoxication *J Amer med Ass* 1960 173 999—1003
- MARKWAIDER J and E H STARLING A note on some factors which determine the blood flow through the coronary circulation *J Physiol (Lond)* 1913—1914 47 275—285
- MATELL G Time courses of changes in ventilation and arterial gas tensions in man induced by moderate exercise *Acta physiol scand* 1963 58 suppl 206
- MATTHEIS K Myocardial shock In *Shock pathogenesis and therapy* Springer Verlag Berlin 1962 253—266
- MCAULIFF I and I C RODDIE Vascular responses to carbon dioxide during anaesthesia in man *Brit J Anaesth* 1958 30 358—366
- MCAULIFF I C RODDIE J T SHEPHERD and R F WHELAN The effect of inhalation of 30 % carbon dioxide on the peripheral circulation of the human subject *Brit J Pharmacol* 1957 12 293—296
- MCDOWALL R J S The effect of carbon dioxide on the circulation *J Physiol (Lond)* 1930 70 301—315
- MCDOWALL R J S The nervous control of the blood vessels *Physiol Rev* 1935 15 98—174
- MCLEOD JR W T A J GERDES and E B BROWN JR Effects of CO<sub>2</sub> bicarbonate and pH on the performance of isolated perfused guinea pig hearts *Amer J Physiol* 1958 195 412—416
- MEDICI G Untersuchungen über den Einfluss einzelner Bestandteile der Ringerlösung auf die Wirkung von Hormonen *Biochem Z* 1924 151 133—145
- MIESMANN W W BRAASCH and D HERBERG Wirkung des Noradrenalins und Hypertensins auf die Herzdynamik und das EKG und deren Abhängigkeit vom pH des Blutes *Fortschr deutsch Ges Kreisf Forsch* 1961 27 309—314
- MONNIER A M The damping factor as a functional criterion in nerve physiology *Cold Spr Harb Symp quant Biol* 1957 17 69—93
- MONROE R G G FRENCH and J L WHITTFENBERGER Effects of hypocapnia and hypercapnia on myocardial contractility *Amer J Physiol* 1960 199 1121—1124



- MORRIS ME and RA MILLAR Blood pH/plasma catecholamine relationships respiratory acidosis *Brit J Anaesth* 1962 a 34 672—681
- MORRIS ME and RA MILLAR Blood pH/plasma catecholamine relationships non respiratory acidosis *Brit J Anaesth* 1962 b 34 682—689
- NAHAS GG and HM CAVERT Cardiac depressant effect of CO<sub>2</sub> and its reversal *Amer J Physiol* 1957 190 483—491
- NAHAS GG JC LICOU and B MEHLMAN Effects of pH changes on O<sub>2</sub> uptake and plasma catecholamine levels in the dog *Amer J Physiol* 1960 198 60—66
- NASH CW and C HEATH Vascular responses to catecholamines during respiratory changes in pH *Amer J Physiol* 1961 200 755—758
- NICKERSON M Drug therapy of shock In *Shock pathogenesis and therapy* Springer Verlag Berlin 1962 356—370
- OKUYAMA Y Versuche über die Empfindlichkeit der Blutgefäße des Frosches gegen Adrenalin *Biochem Z* 1926 175 18—26
- PAGE IH and FM BUMPUS Angiotensin *Physiol Rev* 1961 4 331—391
- PAGE IH and JW McLEUBBIN Cardiac vascular reactivity *Circulat Res* 1954 2 395—396
- PAGE IH and OF OLINSTEAD The influence of respiratory gas mixtures on arterial pressure and vascular reactivity in normal and in hypertensive dogs *Circulation* 1951 3 801—819
- RADER JR LE HB KEITH and GS CAMPBELL Influence of metabolic and respiratory alkalosis on cardiac output and pressor response to epinephrine *Trans Amer Soc Artif Internal Organs* 1961 7 223—225
- RODDIE IC JT SHEPHERD and RF WHELAN Humoral vasodilatation in the forearm during voluntary hyperventilation *J Physiol (Lond)* 1957 137 80—85
- SAMPSON JJ and A ZIPER Norepinephrine in shock following myocardial infarction Influence upon survival rate and renal function *Circulation* 1954 9 38—47
- SAVO U Studies upon blood vessels Influence of acid and base upon action of adrenaline and histamine upon blood vessels *Orient J Dis Infants* 1933 4 1—13
- SCHMIDT AK Über die Bedeutung der Bestandteile der Ringerschen Lösung für die Gefäßarteriellbarkeit überlebender Organe *Nahrungsmittelschmeldebergs Arch exp Path Pharm* 1921 89 144—170
- SCHWEIDER M and E WILDEBOLZ Dekapsulation und Denervation der Niere und Nierendurchblutung *Z urol Gynak* 1937 43 1—19
- SCHULTZE EA JJ BUCKLEY AJ OSWALD and FH VAN BERGEN Profound acidosis in an anesthetized human report of a case *Anesthesiology* 1960 21 285—291
- SNYDER DD HB KEITH and GS CAMPBELL Influence of metabolic acidosis on pressor responses to epinephrine in intact dogs as compared with dogs with cardiac bypass *Surg Forum* 1960 11 159—161
- SOKOLOFF L The effects of carbon dioxide on cerebral circulation *Anesthesiology* 1960 21 664—673
- STAIRAKY CW The effect of pulmonary ventilation on the pressor action of adrenaline *Amer J Physiol* 1949 137 485—491
- STECK IE and E GELHORN The effect of carbon dioxide inhalation on the peripheral blood flow in the normal and in the sympathectomized patient *Amer Heart J* 1939 18 206—212
- STEPHEN CR M BERGEON GALARDIN and S DENT Anomalies of ventilation during anesthesia *Anesthesiology* 1959 20 167—172
- TARÁCS L and K KÁLLAY Effect of carbon dioxide inhalation on the circulation of the anesthetized rat *Acta physiol Acad Sci Hung* 1963 23 13—19

- TAYLER F H and A ROOS, Disturbances in acid base balance during ether anesthesia with special reference to the changes occurring during thoracic surgery *J thorac Surg* 1950 20 289—295
- TENNEY S M Sympathoadrenal stimulation by carbonic acid and the inhibitory effect of carbonic acid on epinephrine response *Amer J Physiol* 1956 187 341—346
- TOBIAN L S MARTIN and W EILERS Effect of pH on norepinephrine induced contractions of isolated arterial smooth muscles *Amer J Physiol* 1959 196 998—1009
- WILLIAMSON A W R and F D MOORE Norepinephrine sensitivity of isolated rabbit aorta strips in solutions of varying pH and electrolyte content *Amer J Physiol* 1960 198 1157—1160
- YAMADA S I and A ASTROM Critical closing pressure and vasomotor tone in the hind leg and the kidney of the cat *Amer J Physiol* 1959 196 213—220
- YANNEY H 1940 In *Handbook of respiration* W B Saunders Philadelphia 1958 p 93

